



3 1761 04905246 7



Purchased for the  
University of Toronto Library  
from funds donated by  
Hannah Institute  
for the History of Medicine





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation















# THE PRACTICE OF MEDICINE

---

TYSON

## BY THE SAME AUTHOR

---

### **A Guide to the Practical Examination of Urine,**

for the use of Physicians and Students. Tenth Revised Edition. With Colored Plate and 35 other Illustrations. Cloth, *net* \$1.50.

"The book is a reliable one and has no superior among the numerous manuals devoted to the subject."—*Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*.

---

### **A Treatise on Bright's Disease and Diabetes.**

With especial reference to Pathology and Therapeutics. Including a section on Ocular Changes in Bright's Disease and Diabetes. Second Edition Revised. Seven Colored Plates and 43 other Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, *net* \$4.00.

"Dr. Tyson's special interest and long experience in the observation and treatment of Bright's disease and Diabetes cause the profession to welcome with pleasure this second edition."—*Bulletin of Johns Hopkins Hospital*.

THE  
PRACTICE  
OF  
M E D I C I N E

A TEXT-BOOK FOR PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS  
WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO DIAG-  
NOSIS AND TREATMENT

BY  
JAMES TYSON, M. D.

EMERITUS PROFESSOR OF MEDICINE, IN THE UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA AND PHYSICIAN TO THE  
HOSPITAL OF THE UNIVERSITY; PHYSICIAN TO THE PENNSYLVANIA HOSPITAL, PRESI-  
DENT OF THE COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS OF PHILADELPHIA; MEMBER  
OF THE ASSOCIATION OF AMERICAN PHYSICIANS, ETC.

FIFTH EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED  
REPRINTED WITH CORRECTIONS

WITH FIVE PLATES  
AND 245 OTHER ILLUSTRATIONS

PHILADELPHIA  
P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.  
1012 WALNUT STREET  
1911



COPYRIGHT, 1909 BY P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.

TO THE MEMORY OF  
PROFESSOR J. M. DA COSTA, M.D., LL.D.  
LATE PROFESSOR OF PRACTICE OF MEDICINE AND OF CLINICAL MEDICINE  
IN THE JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE OF PHILADELPHIA





## PREFACE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

---

THE usual effort has been made to place this edition abreast of the requirements of a new edition. This has not been altogether easy. In the first place, it is most important to keep a text-book within reasonable limits, while the literature on the diseases considered has become so large that it is often difficult to decide what is truly new knowledge and worth including. Again, it takes quite a long while to see a book of the size of this through the press, and it not rarely happens that new facts arise too late to be availed of for a given edition.

As to actual additions, the infectious diseases have been revised, diseases of the blood have been worked over, and the treatment of tuberculosis has been modernized; *that* with tuberculin has been elaborated by the assistance of Dr. Trudeau and Dr. Baldwin, of Saranac. The opsonic index has received as much attention as it seemed to deserve. The importance of blood cultures has been emphasized.

The subject of diseases of the stomach has been enlarged and a section on testing for occult blood by the late lamented Dr. J. Dutton Steele, added. Cammidge's pancreatic reaction has been inserted. Additions to diseases of the circulatory system are many and include an elaboration of the Adams-Stokes syndrome; and enlargement of the space devoted to pericarditis.

Tetany and exophthalmic goiter have been largely rewritten, and I have had the advice of Drs. John Rogers and Silas P. Beebe on these affections. Dr. Rogers has himself written the paragraphs on the treatment of Graves' disease by the anti-serum.

In nervous diseases, Marie's new views as to aphasia have been inserted and amaurotic family idiocy and congenital myatonia (general or localized hypotonia of the muscles in childhood) have been considered. A short sketch of herpes zoster is included. Wassermann's reaction is inserted under syphilis of the nervous system because received too late for insertion under syphilis. Dr. Spiller has again read the proof sheets for this section and Dr. Allen J. Smith has revised the section on parasites.

The technic of physical exploration, such as that of determining blood-pressure, pulse tracing and the like, is regarded as belonging to works especially devoted to Medical Diagnosis.

My son, Dr. T. Mellor Tyson, has read the proofs of this edition.

To my friends who have helped me I am indebted.

1506 SPRUCE STREET, *September 1, 1909.*



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

---

I HAVE no apology to make for preparing this book. I have long contemplated it, and have finished it after several years' labor. It has taken some time, because it represents almost purely personal work, which has been frequently interrupted. It does not pretend to be based on my personal practice only. In these days of specialized work this would be impossible, though with most of even the rare forms of disease in every section I have had some experience. To fill in the gaps of my own knowledge, I have used that of others, but have always sought to make suitable acknowledgment to the proper source, and if this has not been done in any case, it has been a matter of oversight.

I had not, at the outset, expected to illustrate the work, but, as it progressed, a certain number of illustrations seemed necessary, not only to explain the text, but also, in a few instances, to render clearer the treatment described. Thus the number of charts and other drawings has grown to nearly a hundred, all of which, it is hoped, will be found useful. In expectation of the ultimate adoption of the metric system for the measuring of doses, these have been indicated throughout the book in the metric and English measures.

Acknowledgment is due to Dr. Joseph P. Walsh and Mr. M. A. Morin for suggestions after reading the text, to Dr. William Schleif for material assistance in Section XV, and to my son, Dr. T. Mellor Tyson, for assistance throughout the work and especially in preparing the index.

1506 SPRUCE ST., PHILADELPHIA, *October*, 1896.



# CONTENTS.

## SECTION I.

### INFECTIOUS DISEASES.

	PAGE		PAGE
Typhoid Fever, . . . . .	1	Bronchopneumonia, . . . . .	245
Paratyphoid Fever, . . . . .	41	Chronic Interstitial Pneumonia, . . . . .	250
Mountain Fever, . . . . .	41	Embolio Pneumonia, . . . . .	253
Typhus Fever, . . . . .	42	Embolio Non-septic Pneumonia, . . . . .	253
Relapsing Fever, . . . . .	47	Embolio Septic Pneumonia, . . . . .	254
Malta Fever, . . . . .	51	Tuberculosis, . . . . .	255
The Malarial Fevers, . . . . .	53	I. General Etiology and Invasion, . . . . .	
Clinical Varieties, . . . . .	63	Morbid Anatomy, . . . . .	255
Intermittent Fever, . . . . .	63	II. Acute Tuberculosis, . . . . .	263
Remittent Fever—Estivo-autumnal Fever, . . . . .	66	1. Pulmonary Form, . . . . .	263
Pernicious Malarial Fever—The Congestive Chill, . . . . .	67	2. General or Typhoid Form, . . . . .	266
Irregular Forms of Malarial Fever, . . . . .	68	3. Meningeal Form. Tuberculous Meningitis, . . . . .	268
Malarial Hematuria or Hemoglobinuria or Intermittent Hematuria—Blackwater Fever, . . . . .	69	III. Chronic Tuberculosis, . . . . .	271
Chronic Malarial and Malaria Cachexia, . . . . .	70	Pulmonary Tuberculosis, . . . . .	271
Yellow Fever, . . . . .	76	Chronic Ulcerative Phthisis, . . . . .	273
Dengue, . . . . .	84	Fibroid Phthisis, . . . . .	286
Cholera, . . . . .	86	Treatment of Tubercular Phthisis, . . . . .	287
Dysentery, . . . . .	98	IV. Tuberculosis of Lymphatic Glands, . . . . .	304
Catarrhal Dysentery, . . . . .	99	V. General Tuberculosis of the Serous Membranes, . . . . .	306
Bacillary Dysentery, . . . . .	101	Tuberculosis of the Pleura, . . . . .	306
Amebic Dysentery, . . . . .	104	Tuberculosis of the Peritoneum, . . . . .	307
Chronic Dysentery, . . . . .	108	VI. Tuberculosis of the Genitourinary Organs, . . . . .	308
The Plague, . . . . .	109	Tuberculosis of the Kidney, . . . . .	308
Measles, . . . . .	114	Tuberculosis of the Pelvis of the Kidney, Ureters, and Bladder, . . . . .	309
Rubella, . . . . .	118	Tuberculosis of the Ovaries, Fallopian Tubes, and Uterus, . . . . .	310
Scarlet Fever, . . . . .	120	Tuberculosis of the Testes, Prostate Gland, and Seminal Vesicles, . . . . .	310
The "Fourth Disease," . . . . .	120	VII. Tuberculosis of the Mammary Glands, . . . . .	311
Diphtheria, . . . . .	130	VIII. Tuberculosis of the Heart and Blood-vessels, . . . . .	311
Smallpox, . . . . .	143	Leprosy, . . . . .	312
Vaccine Disease, . . . . .	151	Infectious Diseases of Doubtful Nature, . . . . .	315
Chicken-pox, . . . . .	156	Acute Febrile Jaundice, . . . . .	315
Whooping-cough, . . . . .	157	Miliary Fever, . . . . .	316
Mumps, . . . . .	161	Glandular Fever, . . . . .	317
Influenza, . . . . .	162	Irritative Fever, . . . . .	318
Cerebrospinal Fever, . . . . .	168	Protracted Simple continued Fever, . . . . .	319
Erysipelas, . . . . .	179	Incubation Periods, Infectious Diseases, . . . . .	321
Septicemia and Pyemia, . . . . .	183	The Opsonin Treatment of Infections, . . . . .	321
Hydrophobia, . . . . .	187		
Tetanus, . . . . .	193		
Anthrax, . . . . .	198		
Glanders and Farcy, . . . . .	201		
Actinomycosis, . . . . .	203		
Foot and Mouth Disease, . . . . .	204		
Milk Sickness, . . . . .	206		
Syphilis, . . . . .	206		
The Gonorrheal Infection, . . . . .	216		
Gonorrheal Arthritis, . . . . .	216		
Rheumatic Fever, . . . . .	218		
Croupous Pneumonia, . . . . .	227		

## SECTION II.

## DISEASES OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

	PAGE		PAGE
Diseases of the Mouth, . . . . .	323	Diseases of the Stomach and Intes-	
The Coated Tongue, . . . . .	323	tines:	
Derangement of Dentition, . . . . .	323	Gastralgia, . . . . .	380
Stomatitis, . . . . .	325	Anorexia Nervosa, . . . . .	381
Simple Acute Catarrhal, . . . . .	325	Nervous Vomiting, . . . . .	382
Herpetic or Aphthous, . . . . .	326	Gastric and Duodenal Ulcers, . . . . .	383
Thrush—Mycotic Stomatitis, . . . . .	327	Lenhartz Treatment of Gastric	
Ulcerative Stomatitis, . . . . .	327	Ulcer, . . . . .	392
Treatment of Different Forms of		Cancer of the Stomach, . . . . .	393
Stomatitis, . . . . .	329	Dilatation of the Stomach, . . . . .	400
Cancrum Oris, . . . . .	330	Visceroptosis, . . . . .	403
Glossitis, . . . . .	331	Diseases of the Intestines, . . . . .	405
Desiccans, . . . . .	331	Simple Acute Catarrhal Enteritis, . . . . .	405
Parenchymatous, . . . . .	331	Chronic Catarrhal Enteritis, . . . . .	409
Epithelial Desquamation, . . . . .	331	Cholera Morbus, . . . . .	412
Leukoplakia Buccalis, . . . . .	332	Diarrheas of Children, . . . . .	414
Mucous Patches, . . . . .	332	Acute Dyspeptic Enteritis, . . . . .	414
Diseases of the Salivary Glands, . . . . .	332	Acute Entero-colitis, . . . . .	416
Functional Derangements, . . . . .	332	Cholera Infantum, . . . . .	417
Inflammation of the Salivary		The Celiac Affection in Children	419
Glands, . . . . .	333	Pseudo-membranous Enteritis, . . . . .	419
Ludwig's Angina, . . . . .	334	Phlegmonous Enteritis, . . . . .	420
Vincent's Angina, . . . . .	334	Hemorrhagic Infarct of the	
Mikulicz's Disease, . . . . .	335	Bowel, . . . . .	420
Diseases of the Tonsils and Pharynx	335	Ulceration of the Bowel, . . . . .	420
Quinsy, . . . . .	335	Tubercular Ulcer, . . . . .	421
Follicular Tonsillitis, . . . . .	337	Syphilitic Ulcer, . . . . .	421
Chronic Tonsillitis and Hyper-		Embolic Ulcer, . . . . .	422
trophy of the Adenoid Tissue		Appendicitis, . . . . .	422
of the Pharynx, . . . . .	337	Recurring and Relapsing Appen-	
Simple Circulatory Derangements		dicitis—Chronic Appen-	
of the Pharynx, . . . . .	340	dicitis, . . . . .	434
Acute Catarrhal Pharyngitis, . . . . .	341	Intestinal Obstruction, . . . . .	438
Chronic Catarrhal Pharyngitis, . . . . .	342	I. Internal Strangulation, . . . . .	439
Ulceration of the Pharynx, . . . . .	342	II. Intussusception—Invag-	
Phlegmonous Pharyngitis, . . . . .	343	ination, . . . . .	440
Postpharyngeal Abscess, . . . . .	343	III. Twists and Knots—Vol-	
Diseases of the Esophagus, . . . . .	344	vulus, . . . . .	441
Exploration of the Esophagus		IV. Obstruction by Abnormal	
with the Bougie, . . . . .	344	Contents or Foreign	
Esophagitis, . . . . .	344	Bodies, . . . . .	441
Peptic Ulcer of the Esophagus, . . . . .	345	V. Strictures and Morbid	
Cancer of the Esophagus, . . . . .	347	Growths, . . . . .	442
Spasm of the Esophagus, . . . . .	348	VI. Fecal Obstruction, . . . . .	442
Stricture of the Esophagus, . . . . .	348	Constipation, . . . . .	450
Dilatation of the Esophagus, . . . . .	349	Dilatation of the Colon, . . . . .	453
Diseases of the Stomach and Intes-		Nervous Affections of the Bowel, . . . . .	454
tines, . . . . .	351	I. Derangements of Motion, . . . . .	454
Examination of patients for diag-		II. Derangements of Sensibil-	
nosis of diseases of the		ity, . . . . .	455
stomach, . . . . .	351	III. Secretion Neuroses, . . . . .	457
Diagnostic Technique, . . . . .	351	Carcinoma of the Bowel, . . . . .	458
External Examination, . . . . .	351	Hemorrhoids, . . . . .	461
Chemical Examination of Gas-		Diseases of the Liver, . . . . .	465
tric Contents, . . . . .	355	Abnormalities in the Shape and	
Occult Hemorrhage from the		Position of the Liver . . . . .	465
Digestive Tract, . . . . .	364	General Symptomatology of Dis-	
Acute Catarrhal Gastritis, . . . . .	365	eases of the Liver, . . . . .	466
Chronic Catarrhal Gastritis, . . . . .	366	Diseases of the Bile Passages and	
Phlegmonous or Suppurative		Gall-bladder, . . . . .	466
Gastritis, . . . . .	372	Jaundice or Icterus, . . . . .	466
Traumatic and Toxic Gastritis, . . . . .	373	Icterus Neonatorum, . . . . .	469
Diphtheritic Gastritis, . . . . .	374	Duodeno—cholangitis or Simple	
Mycotic Gastritis, . . . . .	374	Catarrhal Jaundice, . . . . .	469
Nervous Dyspepsia, . . . . .	374	Cholelithiasis, . . . . .	471
Atonic Dyspepsia, . . . . .	376	Acute Impaction, . . . . .	473
Hyperchlorhydria, . . . . .	376	Chronic Impacted Gall-stone, . . . . .	475

	PAGE		PAGE
Diseases of the Bile Passages and Gall-Bladder:		Diseases of the Blood-vessels of the Liver:	
Acute Infectious Cholecystitis, . . .	479	Morbid Growths of the Liver, . . .	504
Cancer of the Gall-bladder, . . .	482	Carcinoma of the Liver, . . .	504
Carcinoma, . . .	482	Sarcoma, . . .	505
Stenosis, . . .	483	Syphilis of the Liver, . . .	508
Cicatrical Contraction, . . .	483	Parasites of the Liver, . . .	510
Parasites, . . .	483	Echinococcus Disease or Hydatid Cyst of the Liver, . . .	510
Diseases of the Blood-vessels of the Liver, . . .	483	Other Parasites of the Liver, . . .	514
Hyperemia, . . .	483	Diseases of the Pancreas, . . .	514
Passive Hyperemia—Red Atrophy, . . .	483	Acute Pancreatitis, . . .	515
Active Hyperemia, . . .	485	Chronic Pancreatitis, . . .	516
Thrombosis and Embolism, . . .	485	Cancer of the Pancreas, . . .	516
Pylethrombosis, . . .	485	Sarcoma of the Pancreas, . . .	517
Pylephlebitis, . . .	486	Cysts of the Pancreas, . . .	517
Other Changes in the Hepatic Artery and Vein, . . .	487	Pancreatic Calculi, . . .	518
Fatty Liver, . . .	487	Cambridge Test, . . .	518
Fatty Infiltration, . . .	487	Diseases of the Peritoneum, . . .	520
Fatty Metamorphosis, . . .	488	Ascites, . . .	520
The Amyloid Liver, . . .	488	Acute Peritonitis, . . .	523
The Cirrhosis of the Liver, . . .	490	Chronic Peritonitis, . . .	528
Suppurative Hepatitis, . . .	497	Chronic Adhesive Peritonitis, . . .	528
Perihepatitis, . . .	500	Diffuse Chronic Peritonitis, . . .	529
Glissonian Cirrhosis, . . .	501	Multiple Serositis, . . .	529
Acute Yellow Atrophy of the Liver, . . .	502	Cancer of the Peritoneum, . . .	531
		Hydrated Disease, . . .	531

## SECTION III.

## DISEASES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

	PAGE		PAGE
Diseases of the Nose, . . .	532	Diseases of the Trachea and Bronchial Tubes:	
Acute Rhinitis, . . .	532	Bronchiectasis, or Bronchial Dilatation, . . .	561
Chronic Nasal Catarrh, . . .	533	Bronchial Asthma, . . .	563
Hay-Fever, . . .	536	Plastic or Fibrinous Bronchitis, . . .	568
Diseases of the Larynx . . .	539	Diseases of the Lungs, . . .	569
Local Measures Employed in the Treatment of Laryngeal Disease, . . .	541	Emphysema, . . .	569
Acute Catarrhal Laryngitis, . . .	543	Vesicular Emphysema—Pseudohypertrophic Emphysema, . . .	570
Spasmodic, Catarrhal Laryngitis, or False Croup, . . .	544	Tumors of the Lung . . .	575
Simple Chronic Catarrhal Laryngitis, . . .	546	Diseases of the Pleura, . . .	577
Tuberculous Laryngitis, . . .	547	Acute Pleurisy, . . .	577
Syphilitic Laryngitis, . . .	549	Chronic Pleurisy . . .	587
Edema of the Glottis, . . .	550	Hydrothorax and Hematothorax, . . .	588
Paralysis of the Laryngeal Muscles . . .	550	Pneumothorax, . . .	589
Diseases of the Trachea and Bronchial Tubes, . . .	553	Morbid Growths of the Pleura, . . .	591
Acute Bronchitis, . . .	553	Mediastinal Disease, . . .	592
Chronic Bronchitis, . . .	556	Mediastinal Tumors, . . .	594
		Mediastinal Abscess, . . .	598
		Simple Lymphadenitis, . . .	598

## SECTION IV.

## DISEASES OF THE HEART AND BLOOD-VESSELS.

	PAGE		PAGE
General Symptomatology of Cardiac Disease, . . .	599	Diseases of the Endocardium, . . .	610
Cardiac Asthma, . . .	599	Acute Endocarditis, . . .	610
Diseases of the Pericardium, . . .	602	The Mild or Simple Form of Acute Endocarditis, . . .	611
Acute Pericarditis, . . .	602	The Severe or Malignant Form of Acute Endocarditis, . . .	614
Other Pericardial Affections, . . .	609	Chronic Valvular Defects, . . .	618
Hydropericardium, . . .	609	Mitral Insufficiency, . . .	620
Hemopericardium, . . .	610	Mitral Stenosis, . . .	623
Pneumopericardium, . . .	610		



	PAGE		PAGE
Diseases of the Endocardium:		Diseases of the Myocardium:	
Mitral Insufficiency and Stenosis, . . . . .	627	Parenchymatous or Albuminoid Degeneration, . . . . .	656
Aortic Insufficiency or Incompetency, . . . . .	627	Fatty Degeneration or Fatty Metamorphosis, . . . . .	656
Aortic Stenosis and Roughening, . . . . .	631	Fatty Infiltration or Fatty Overgrowth, . . . . .	657
Aortic Stenosis and Insufficiency, . . . . .	633	Amyloid Infiltration, . . . . .	658
Tricuspid Insufficiency or Incompetency, . . . . .	633	Calcareous Infiltration, . . . . .	658
Tricuspid Stenosis, . . . . .	635	Myocarditis, . . . . .	658
Pulmonary Insufficiency or Incompetency, . . . . .	635	Chronic Myocarditis or Fibromyocarditis, . . . . .	658
Pulmonary Stenosis, . . . . .	636	Acute Suppurative Myocarditis, . . . . .	661
Congenital Defects, . . . . .	636	Aneurysm of the Heart, . . . . .	661
Relative Frequency of Valvular Defects, . . . . .	637	Rupture of the Heart, . . . . .	662
Associated or Combined Valvular Lesions, . . . . .	638	Neuroses of the Heart, . . . . .	662
Diseases of the Myocardium, . . . . .	647	Nervous Palpitation, . . . . .	662
Hypertrophy and Dilatation, . . . . .	647	Tachycardia and Bradycardia, . . . . .	663
Hypertrophy of the Heart, . . . . .	647	Irregular Pulse, . . . . .	665
Dilatation of the Heart, . . . . .	650	Heart Block. Stokes-Adams Syndrome, . . . . .	670
Atrophy of the Heart—Brown Atrophy, . . . . .	655	Angina Pectoris, or Stenocardia, . . . . .	672
Degenerations of the Cardiac Muscle, . . . . .	656	Diseases of the Blood-vessels, . . . . .	675
		Arteriosclerosis, . . . . .	675
		Aneurysm, . . . . .	679
		Aneurysm of Aorta . . . . .	680

## SECTION V.

### DISEASES OF THE BLOOD AND BLOOD-MAKING ORGANS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Diseases of the Blood, . . . . .	694	The Primary or Essential Anemias:	
Minute Structure of the Blood, . . . . .	694	III. Leukemia, . . . . .	713
The Anemias, . . . . .	698	IV. Lymphatic Anemia—Hodgkin's Disease, . . . . .	721
Secondary or Symptomatic Anemia—Simple Anemia, . . . . .	699	Status Lymphaticus, . . . . .	725
The Primary or Essential Anemias, . . . . .	702	V. Splenic Anemia, or Splenic Pseudoleukemia, . . . . .	726
I. Chlorosis . . . . .	702		
II. Progressive Pernicious Anemia, . . . . .	706		

## SECTION VI.

### DISEASES OF THE DUCTLESS GLANDS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Goitre, . . . . .	729	Diseases of the Spleen, . . . . .	748
Simple Goiter, or Struma, . . . . .	729	Splinitis, . . . . .	748
Exophthalmic Goitre, . . . . .	731	Perisplinitis, . . . . .	748
Myxedema, . . . . .	738	Abscess of the Spleen, . . . . .	748
Pure Myxedema, . . . . .	739	Rupture of the Spleen, . . . . .	748
Congenital Cretinism, . . . . .	740	The Amyloid Spleen, . . . . .	748
Tetany, . . . . .	742	Atrophy of the Spleen, . . . . .	749
Neoplasms of the Thyroid, . . . . .	745	Hemorrhagic Infarct of the Spleen . . . . .	749
Diseases of the Suprarenal Capsules, . . . . .	745	Neoplasms of the Spleen, . . . . .	749
Addison's Disease, . . . . .	745	Echinococcus of the Spleen, . . . . .	749
Diseases of the Spleen other than of a Blood-making Organ, . . . . .	748	Wandering Spleen, . . . . .	749

## SECTION VII.

### DISEASES OF THE URINARY ORGANS.

	PAGE		PAGE
General Remarks on Albuminuria, . . . . .	751	General Remarks on Albuminuria:	
Extrarenal Albuminuria, . . . . .	751	Physiological or Functional Albuminuria, . . . . .	753
Renal Albuminuria, . . . . .	752		

	PAGE		PAGE
General Remarks on Albuminuria:		Diseases of the Kidney:	
Tests for Albumin and Globulin	754	Congenital Absence of the Kidney,	821
Renal Dropsy,	755	Congenital Absence of One Kidney,	821
Uremia,	756	Lobulated Kidney,	821
Tube-casts,	759	Horse-shoe Kidney,	821
Diseases of the Kidney,	762	The Movable or Floating Kidney,	822
Derangements of Circulation,	762	Idiopathic Hematuria,	824
Active Congestion,	762	Hemoglobinuria,	825
Passive Congestion of Cyanotic Induration	762	Toxic Hemoglobinuria,	826
Acute Parenchymatous Nephritis,	765	Paroxysmal Hemoglobinuria,	826
Chronic Parenchymatous Nephritis,	776	Non-Parasitic Chyluria,	827
Chronic Interstitial Nephritis,	786	The Relation of Heart Disease to Kidney Disease,	828
Lardaceous Kidney,	799	Diseases of the Bladder,	835
Suppurative Interstitial Nephritis, and Pyelonephritis,	803	Cystitis,	835
Paranephritis or Perinephric Abscess,	809	Stone in the Bladder,	842
Nephrolithiasis (Stone in the Kidney),	810	Neurosis of the Bladder,	842
Tumors of the Kidney,	816	Paralysis of the Bladder,	842
Cysts of the Kidney,	819	Muscular Spasm of the Bladder,	843
Anomalies of Form and Position of the Kidney,	821	Hemorrhoidal Veins of the Bladder,	846
Normal Situation of the Kidney,	821	Morbid Growths of the Bladder,	846

## SECTION VIII.

## DISEASES OF DERANGED METABOLISM (Constitutional Diseases).

	PAGE		PAGE
Rheumatism,	848	Obesity,	905
Muscular Rheumatism,	848	Rickets,	909
Chronic Articular Rheumatism,	851	Achondroplasia,	914
Joint Affections Simulating Rheumatism,	852	Osteomalacia,	915
Arthritis Deformans,	852	Multiple Myeloma,	917
1. Multiple Arthritis Deformans,	855	Purpura,	918
2. The Partial or Monoarthritic form,	856	Symptomatic Purpura,	919
Gout,	858	Scurvy,	919
Lithemia,	874	Infantile Scurvy,	921
Diabetes Mellitus,	876	Arthritic Purpura,	922
Diabetes Insipidus,	900	Purpura Hemorrhagica,	923
		Hemorrhagic Diseases of the New-born,	924
		Hemophilia,	925

## SECTION IX.

## DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

	PAGE		PAGE
General Introduction,	928	General Introduction:	
Histology of the Nervous System,	928	VIII. Focal Disease and Focal Symptoms,	956
General Symptomatology (Investigation of a Case of Nervous Disease,	931	Affections of the Peripheral Nerves,	957
I. Phenomena of Motion,	931	Neuritis,	957
II. Sensory Phenomena,	949	Localized Neuritis,	957
III. Sensory Motor Phenomena,	953	Sciatica,	960
IV. Vasomotor and Trophic Phenomena,	953	Multiple Neuritis,	963
V. Mental Phenomena,	954	Endemic Neuritis,	970
VI. Alterations in Vision and Hearing,	955	Malarial Neuritis,	970
VII. Alterations in Breathing and Pulse,	955	Beri-Beri, the Kakké of Japan	970
		Leprous Neuritis,	971
		Adiposis Dolorosa,	972
		Neuralgia,	972
		Varieties Depending upon the Nerves Involved,	973

	PAGE		PAGE
Affections of the Peripheral Nerves:		Diseases of the Brain:	
Tumors of Nerves, . . . . .	979	Cortical Areas Whose Function	
Affections of the Spinal Cord, . . .	981	is Unknown or Uncertain, . . . . .	1082
Localization of the Functions of		Tracts Within the Brain—Cen-	
the Segments of the Spinal		trum Ovale, Internal Cap-	
Cord, . . . . .	986	sule, Central Ganglia, Cor-	
Affections of the Membranes of the		pora Quadrigemina, . . . . .	1082
Cord, . . . . .	992	Cerebellar Disease, . . . . .	1085
Spinal Pachymeningitis, . . . . .	993	Diseases of the Cranial Nerves, . . .	1087
Spinal Leptomeningitis, . . . . .	994	Olfactory Nerve, . . . . .	1087
Hemorrhage into the Spinal		Optic Nerve and Tract, . . . . .	1088
Membranes, . . . . .	996	1. Affections of the Retina, . . . . .	1088
Affections of the Substance of the		2. Affections of the Optic	
Cord, . . . . .	997	Nerve, . . . . .	1090
Secondary Systematic Degen-		3. Lesions of the Chiasm and	
erations of the Spinal Cord, . . . . .	998	Tract, . . . . .	1093
Acute Affections of the Spinal		4. Lesions of the Tract and	
Cord, . . . . .	1001	Cortical Centers, . . . . .	1095
Disturbances of the Circulation		Lesions of the Motor Nerves of	
of the Spinal Cord, . . . . .	1001	the Eyeball, . . . . .	1099
Hemorrhage into the Substance		Third Nerve, . . . . .	1099
of the Cord, . . . . .	1002	Fourth Nerve, . . . . .	1102
Caisson Disease, . . . . .	1003	Sixth Nerve, . . . . .	1102
Diffuse Myelitis (Acute and		Phenomena in General of Par-	
Chronic), . . . . .	1005	alysis of Motor Nerves of	
Acute Anterior Poliomyelitis of		the Eye, . . . . .	1102
Children, . . . . .	1012	Ophthalmoplegia, . . . . .	1103
Acute Poliomyelitis in Adults, . . .	1015	Treatment of Ocular Palsies, . . . . .	1104
Subacute and Chronic Poliomye-		Lesions of the Trifacial, or Fifth	
litis, . . . . .	1016	Nerve, (Trigeminus), . . . . .	1106
Acute Ascending Spinal Paralysis, . . .	1016	Lesions of the Facial Nerve or	
Chronic Affections of the Spinal		Seventh Pair, . . . . .	1107
Cord, . . . . .	1018	Paralysis, . . . . .	1107
Spastic Spinal Paralysis, . . . . .	1018	Facial Spasms, . . . . .	1113
Tabes Dorsalis, . . . . .	1020	Lesions of the Auditory or Eighth	
Hereditary Ataxia, . . . . .	1032	Nerve, . . . . .	1116
Cerebellar Hereditary Ataxia, . . .	1034	1. Loss of Function; Nervous	
Progressive Interstitial Hypertro-		Deafness, . . . . .	1116
phic Neuritis of Childhood, . . . . .	1034	2. Auditory Hyperesthesia, . . . . .	1118
Toxic Sclerosis, . . . . .	1034	3. Irritation of the Auditory	
Ataxic Plastic Paraplegia, or		Nerve — Tinnitus Aur-	
Combined Sclerosis, . . . . .	1034	ium, . . . . .	1118
Syringomyelia, . . . . .	1036	4. Disturbance of Equilibrium	
Morvan's Disease, . . . . .	1038	Associated with Defect	
Compression of the Spinal Cord, . . .	1039	of Hearing Labyrinthine	
Tumors of the Spinal Cord and		Vertigo, Ménière's Dis-	
Membranes, . . . . .	1042	ease, . . . . .	1119
Lesions of the Cauda Equina and		Lesions of the Ninth or Glossophar-	
Conus Medullaris, . . . . .	1046	yngcal Nerve, . . . . .	1121
Spina Bifida, . . . . .	1047	Lesions of the Pneumogastric or	
Progressive Bulbar Palsy, . . . . .	1047	Vagus Nerve, the Tenth Pair, . . . . .	1122
Acute Bulbar Palsy, . . . . .	1051	Lesions Involving the Nucleus	
Myasthenia Gravis, . . . . .	1051	and Trunk of the Pneumo-	
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis, . . .	1053	gastric and Branches, . . . . .	1122
Progressive Spinal Muscular		Lesions of the Pharyngeal	
Atrophy, . . . . .	1055	Branches, . . . . .	1123
Diseases of the Brain, . . . . .	1061	Lesions of the Laryngeal	
Localization of Cerebral Disease, . . .	1061	Branches, . . . . .	1123
I. The Motor Areas of the		Spasm of the Larynx, . . . . .	1126
Cortex, . . . . .	1062	Lesions of the Cardiac	
II. Sensory Areas of the Cor-		Branches, . . . . .	1127
tex and Sensory Paths, . . . . .	1067	Lesions of Gastric and Esoph-	
Cortical Areas Covering		ageal Branches, . . . . .	1127
Speech, . . . . .	1071	Lesions of Pulmonary	
The Various Forms of Aphasia		Branches, . . . . .	1128
and their Anatomical Les-		Lesions of the Eleventh Pair or	
ions, . . . . .	1071	Spinal Accessory Nerve, . . . . .	1129
The Physical Basis of Thought—		Paralysis of the External	
Apraxia, . . . . .	1073	Branch of the Spinal Acces-	
Aphasia, or Loss of the Faculty		sory, . . . . .	1130
of Speech, . . . . .	1075	Accessory Spasm, . . . . .	1130
Derangements of Speech of Irrita-		1. Congenital Torticollis, or	
tive Origin, . . . . .	1079	Fixed Wry-neck, . . . . .	1131

	PAGE		PAGE
Lesions of the Eleventh Pair or Spinal Accessory Nerve:		Intracranial Aneurysms.	
2. Spasmodic Wry-neck, . . .	1131	Multiple Sclerosis of the Brain and Spinal Cord, . . .	1179
Lesions of the Twelfth Pair or Hypoglossal Nerve, . . .	1133	Paretic Dementia, . . .	1181
Diseases of the Spinal Nerves and Branches, . . .	1135	Paralysis Agitans, . . .	1185
Cervical Plexus, . . .	1135	Other Forms of Tremor, . . .	1188
Affections of the Phrenic Nerve, . . .	1135	Tumors of the Brain, . . .	1188
Lesions of the Brachial Plexus, . . .	1136	Suppurative Encephalitis, . . .	1196
Of the Combined Plexus, . . .	1136	Encephalitis without Abscess, . . .	1199
Lesions of Individual Nerves, . . .	1136	Chronic Hydrocephalus, . . .	1199
Of the long Thoracic or Posterior Thoracic—Serratus Palsy, . . .	1136	Congenital, . . .	1200
Nerves of the Arm, . . .	1137	Acquired, . . .	1201
Lumbar and Sacral Plexuses, . . .	1140	Neuroses, . . .	1203
Effect of Sections of Sensory Nerves. Sensory Mechanism of Peripheral Nerves, . . .	1141	Acute Delirium, . . .	1203
Diseases of the Membranes of the Brain, . . .	1144	Acute Chorea, . . .	1204
Pachymeningitis, . . .	1144	Choreiform Affections, . . .	1210
External Pachymeningitis, . . .	1144	I. Simple Tic, . . .	1211
Internal Pachymeningitis, . . .	1144	Dubini's Disease, . . .	1212
Purulent and Pseudomembranous Internal Pachymeningitis, . . .	1144	II. Tic with Explosive Utterances, Coprolalia, Echolalia, etc., . . .	1212
Internal Hemorrhagic Pachymeningitis, . . .	1145	III. Complex Co-ordinated Tic, . . .	1212
Leptomenigitis, . . .	1146	IV. Spasms of the Muscles of Respiration and Deglutition, . . .	1213
Acute, . . .	1146	V. Chronic Progressive Chorea, . . .	1213
Chronic, . . .	1150	VI. Chorea Major, . . .	1215
Affections of the Blood-vessels of the Brain, . . .	1151	VII. Postparalytic Chorea, and Postchoreal Paralysis, . . .	1215
Hyperemia, . . .	1151	Epilepsy, . . .	1216
Anemia, . . .	1152	Reflex Convulsions of Children, . . .	1226
Edema, . . .	1154	Migraine, . . .	1227
Apoplexy, . . .	1154	Occupation Neuroses, . . .	1230
I. Cerebral Hemorrhage, . . .	1155	Writers' Cramp, . . .	1230
II. Embolism and Thrombosis of the Cerebral Vessels, . . .	1163	Hysteria, . . .	1234
Thrombosis of the Cerebral Sinuses and Veins, . . .	1169	Neurasthenia, . . .	1244
Intracranial Aneurysms, . . .	1170	Traumatic Neuroses, . . .	1247
The Cerebral Palsies for Children, . . .	1170	Other Forms of Functional Paralysis, . . .	1248
Spastic Infantile Hemiplegia, . . .	1171	Abasia-ataxia, . . .	1248
Bilateral Infantile Spastic Hemiplegia, . . .	1174	Family Periodical Paralysis, . . .	1250
Infantile Spastic Paraplegia, . . .	1176	Vasomotor and Trophic Derangements, . . .	1251
Herpes Zoster, . . .	1177	Acute Angioneurotic Edema, . . .	1251
General or Localized Hypotonia of the Muscles in Childhood, . . .	1179	Raynaud's Disease, . . .	1252
		Progressive Facial Hemiatrophy, . . .	1254
		Acromegaly, . . .	1255
		Scleroderma, . . .	1257
		Morphea, . . .	1258
		Ainhum, . . .	1259
		Syphilis of the Nervous System, . . .	1260
		Leontiasis Ossea, . . .	1267
		Micromegaly, . . .	1267

## SECTION X.

## DISEASES OF THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM.

	PAGE		PAGE
Myositis, . . .	1268	Progressive Muscular Dystrophies:	
Rheumatic Myositis (Acute and Chronic), . . .	1268	II. Erb's Juvenile Form of Progressive Muscular Dystrophy, . . .	1270
Infectious Myositis, . . .	1268	III. The Facio-scapulo-humeral Type, . . .	1271
Progressive Ossifying Myositis, . . .	1268	IV. The Peroneal Type of Progressive Muscular Atrophy, . . .	1271
Progressive Muscular Dystrophies. Primary Myopathic Forms of Muscular Atrophy, . . .	1269	Myotonia Congenita (Thomsen's Disease), . . .	1272
I. Pseudohypertrophic Muscular Paralysis, . . .	1269	Amaurotic Family Idiocy, . . .	1273

## SECTION XI.

## THE INTOXICATIONS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Alcoholism, . . . . .	1275	Lead Poisoning, . . . . .	1285
Acute Alcoholism, . . . . .	1275	Arsenical Poisoning, . . . . .	1291
Chronic Alcoholism, . . . . .	1276	Bisulphide of Carbon Poisoning, . . . . .	1292
Delirium Tremens, or Mania a Potu, . . . . .	1278	Ptomain and Leukomain Poisoning, . . . . .	1293
The Morphin Habit—Morphinism, . . . . .	1281	Grain Poisoning, . . . . .	1295
Chloralism, . . . . .	1283	1. Ergotism, . . . . .	1296
Cocainism, . . . . .	1284	2. Pellagra, . . . . .	1296
The Tobacco Habit, . . . . .	1284	3. Lathyrism, or Lupinosis, . . . . .	1297

## SECTION XII.

## EFFECTS OF EXPOSURE TO HIGH THOUGH BEARABLE TEMPERATURE.

	PAGE		PAGE
Heat Exhaustion, . . . . .	1298	Thermic Fever, . . . . .	1299

## SECTION XIII.

## ANIMAL PARASITES AND THE CONDITIONS CAUSED BY THEM.

	PAGE		PAGE
Introductory, . . . . .	1303	<i>Gastrodiscus hominis</i> , . . . . .	1322
I.—PROTOZOA, . . . . .		<i>Cladorchis Watson</i> , . . . . .	1322
I.—RHIZOPODA, . . . . .	1306	<i>Fasciola hepatica</i> , . . . . .	1323
<i>Amaba coli</i> , . . . . .	1306	<i>Distomum oculi humani</i> , . . . . .	1325
<i>A. urogenitalis</i> and errant forms of <i>a. coli</i> , . . . . .	1307	<i>Monostomum lentis</i> , . . . . .	1325
<i>A. gracilis</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>Fasciolopsis buski</i> , . . . . .	1325
<i>Leydenia gemmipara</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>Distomum rathousi</i> , . . . . .	1326
<i>A. dentalis</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>Paragonimus westermanni</i> , . . . . .	1326
<i>A. gingivalis</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>Opisthorchis felineus</i> , . . . . .	1328
<i>A. buccalis</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>O. pseudo-felineus</i> , . . . . .	1329
<i>A. miurai</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>O. sinensis</i> , . . . . .	1329
II.—FLAGELLATA, . . . . .	1309	<i>O. noverca</i> , . . . . .	1329
<i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>Clonorchis Sincusis</i> , . . . . .	1329
<i>T. intestinalis</i> , . . . . .	1309	<i>Cotylagonimus heterophyes</i> , . . . . .	1330
<i>Lamblia intestinalis</i> , . . . . .	1310	<i>Dicrocalium lanceatum</i> , . . . . .	1331
<i>Cercomonas intestinalis</i> , . . . . .	1310	<i>Schistosomum hamatobium</i> , . . . . .	1332
<i>C. hominis</i> , . . . . .	1311	<i>Schistosomum Japonicum</i> , . . . . .	1333
<i>C. intestinalis</i> , . . . . .	1311	II.—Cestodes, . . . . .	1334
<i>Trypanosoma gambiense</i> , . . . . .	1311	<i>Dibothriocephalus latus</i> , . . . . .	1337
<i>T. evansi</i> , . . . . .	1312	<i>D. cordatus</i> , . . . . .	1340
<i>T. brucei</i> , . . . . .	1312	<i>Bothriocephalus mansoni</i> , . . . . .	1340
<i>Bodo urinarius</i> , . . . . .	1313	<i>Diplogonoporus grandis</i> , . . . . .	1340
III.—SPOROZOA: . . . . .		<i>Dipylidium caninum</i> , . . . . .	1341
<i>Coccidium cuniculi</i> , . . . . .	1314	<i>Hymenolepis nana</i> , . . . . .	1341
<i>C. hominis</i> , . . . . .	1316	<i>H. diminuta</i> , . . . . .	1343
<i>C. bigeminum</i> , . . . . .	1317	<i>H. lanceolata</i> , . . . . .	1344
<i>Haemosporidia</i> , . . . . .	1317	<i>Davainea madagascariensis</i> , . . . . .	1344
<i>Plasmodium malariae</i> , . . . . .	1317	<i>Tænia saginata</i> , . . . . .	1344
<i>P. vivax</i> , . . . . .	1317	<i>T. solium</i> , . . . . .	1347
<i>P. præcox</i> , . . . . .	1317	<i>T. echinococcus</i> , . . . . .	1350
<i>Neosporidia</i> , . . . . .	1317	<i>Hydatid Disease</i> , . . . . .	1350
<i>Sarcosporidia</i> , . . . . .	1317	<i>T. marginata</i> , . . . . .	1352
IV.—INFUSORIA: . . . . .		<i>T. africana</i> , . . . . .	1352
<i>Bulantidium coli</i> , . . . . .	1318	<i>T. confusa</i> , . . . . .	1352
<i>B. minutum</i> , . . . . .	1319	Treatment of Tape-Worm Diseases, . . . . .	1353
<i>Nictotherus faba</i> , . . . . .	1319		
		B. NEMATHELMINTHES. . . . .	
II.—VERMES. . . . .		I.—Nematoda, . . . . .	1355
A. PLATHELMINTHES. . . . .		<i>Anguillulida</i> , . . . . .	1358
I.—Trematodes, . . . . .	1319	<i>Strongyloides intestinalis</i> , . . . . .	1358
		<i>Gnathosoma siamense</i> , . . . . .	1360

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Filaria bancrofti</i> , . . . . .	1360	<i>Physaloptera caucasica</i> , . . .	1381
<i>F. diurna</i> , . . . . .	1364	<i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> , . . .	1381
<i>F. perstans</i> , . . . . .	1364	<i>A. maritima</i> , . . . . .	1384
<i>F. demarquayi</i> , . . . . .	1364	<i>A. texana</i> , . . . . .	1385
<i>F. ozzardi</i> , . . . . .	1364	<i>A. canis</i> , . . . . .	1385
<i>F. magalhæsi</i> , . . . . .	1365	<i>Oxyuris vermicularis</i> , . . .	1385
<i>F. medinensis</i> , . . . . .	1365		
<i>F. loa</i> , . . . . .	1368	III.—ARTHROPODA.	
<i>F. immitis</i> , . . . . .	1368	ARACHNOIDEA:	
<i>F. oculi humani</i> , . . . . .	1368	<i>Sarcoptes scabiei</i> , . . . . .	1389
<i>F. hominis</i> , . . . . .	1368	<i>Demodex folliculorum</i> , . . .	1390
<i>F. restiformis</i> , . . . . .	1369	<i>Leptus autumnalis</i> , . . . . .	1390
<i>F. peritonei hominis</i> , . . . .	1369	<i>Linguatulida</i> , . . . . .	1390
<i>F. labialis</i> , . . . . .	1369	<i>Pentastomum tænioides</i> , . .	1390
<i>F. lymphatica</i> , . . . . .	1369	<i>P. constructum</i> , . . . . .	1391
<i>F. volvulus</i> , . . . . .	1369	INSECTA:	
<i>F. romanorum-orientalis</i> , . .	1369	<i>Hemiptera</i> , . . . . .	1391
<i>F. kilimarae</i> , . . . . .	1369	<i>Pediculus capitis</i> , . . . . .	1391
<i>Trichiuris trichiura</i> , . . . . .	1370	<i>P. vestimentorum</i> , . . . . .	1391
<i>Trichinella spiralis</i> , . . . . .	1370	<i>P. pubis</i> , . . . . .	1392
<i>Eustrongylus gigas</i> , . . . . .	1374	<i>Cimex lectularius</i> , . . . . .	1393
<i>Strongylus apri</i> , . . . . .	1376	<i>Diptera</i> , . . . . .	1394
<i>Trichostrongylus instabilis</i> , .	1376	<i>Pulex irritans</i> , . . . . .	1394
<i>Uncinaria duodenalis</i> , . . . .	1377	<i>P. penetrans</i> , . . . . .	1395
<i>U. americana</i> , . . . . .	1378	<i>Brachycera</i> , . . . . .	1395
<i>Necator Americanus</i> , . . . . .	1379	<i>Myosia</i> , . . . . .	1395

## SECTION XIV.

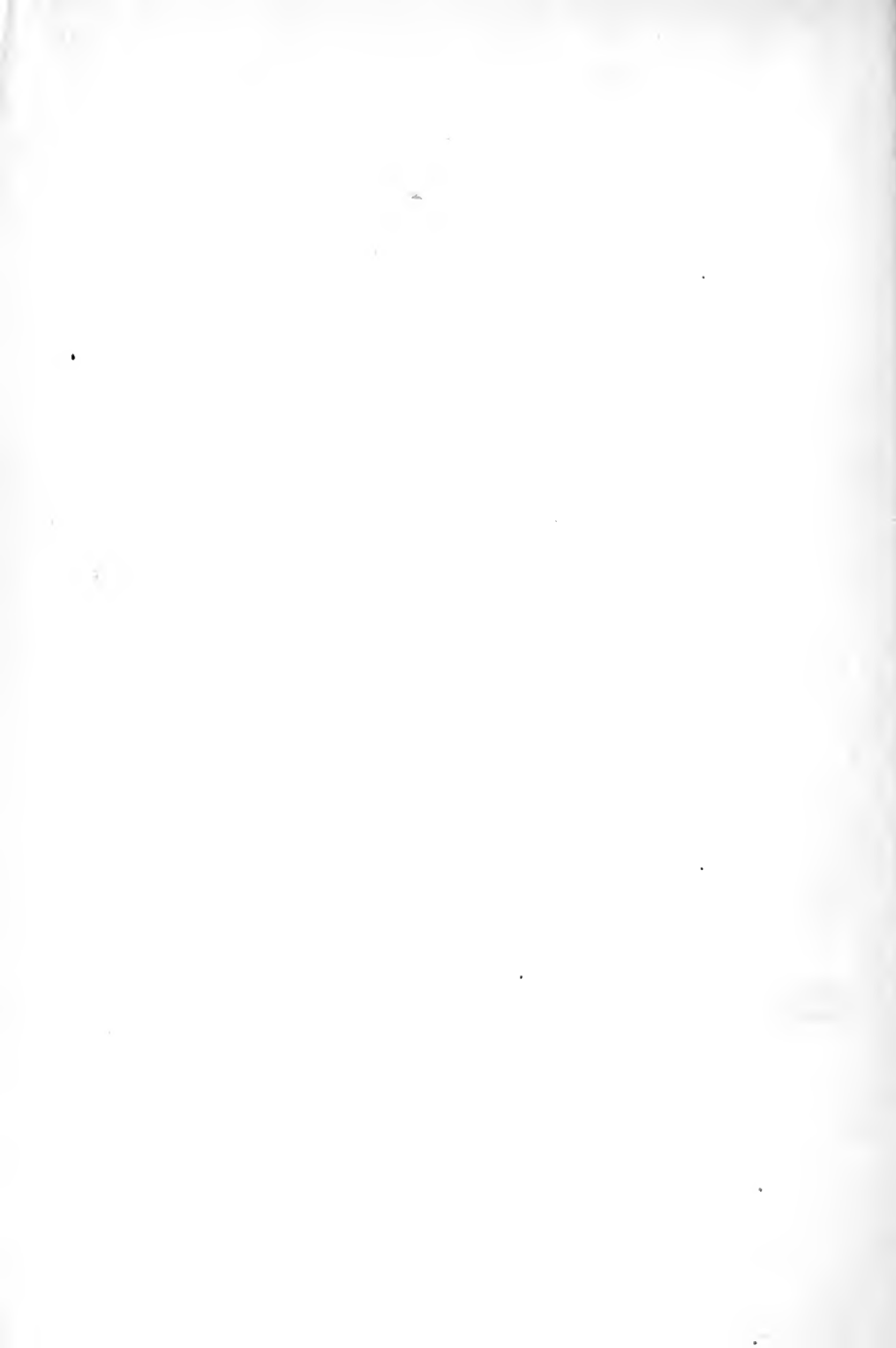
## SUMMARY OF SYMPTOMS FOLLOWING OVERDOSES OF POISONS.

(Alphabetically Arranged.)

	PAGE		PAGE
Aconite, . . . . .	1397	Hydrochloric Acid, . . . . .	1403
Alcohol, . . . . .	1397	Hydrocyanic Acid, . . . . .	1403
delirium tremens, . . . . .	1397	Iodin, . . . . .	1403
Ammonia, . . . . .	1398	Iodoform, . . . . .	1403
Antimony, . . . . .	1398	Lead, . . . . .	1404
Arsenic, . . . . .	1398	Meat, . . . . .	1404
Atropin, . . . . .	1399	Nitric Acid, . . . . .	1405
Belladonna, . . . . .	1399	Sulphuric Acid, . . . . .	1405
Bromin, . . . . .	1399	Mushroom Poisoning, . . . .	1405
Bromism, . . . . .	1399	Nicotin, . . . . .	1406
Carbonic Acid Gas, . . . . .	1399	Nitro Benzol, . . . . .	1406
Carbonic Oxid, . . . . .	1400	Opium, . . . . .	1406
Caustic Potash or Soda, . . . .	1400	Oxalic Acid, . . . . .	1407
Cheese Poisoning, . . . . .	1400	Phenol and Creosote, . . . .	1407
Chloral, . . . . .	1400	Phosphorus, . . . . .	1407
Chloroform, . . . . .	1401	Potassium Nitrate, . . . . .	1408
Cocain, . . . . .	1401	Ptomain Poisoning, . . . . .	1408
Conium, . . . . .	1401	Silver Nitrate, . . . . .	1409
Copper, . . . . .	1402	Strychnin, . . . . .	1409
Digitalis, . . . . .	1402	Sulphuretted Hydrogen, . . .	1410
Ergot, . . . . .	1402	Zinc, . . . . .	1410
Fish Poisoning, . . . . .	1403		

## APPENDIX.

TABLES FOR THE CONVERSION OF THE ENGLISH INTO METRIC SYSTEM, AND	
THE REVERSE, . . . . .	1411
INDEX, . . . . .	1415





## CHARTS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

PLATE	FACING PAGE
I. Mosquitoes. 1. <i>Anopheles punctipennis</i> ; 2. <i>Culex tæniorhynchus</i> ; 3. Resting position of anopheles; 4. Resting position of culex, . . . . .	60
II. The Pathognomonic Sign of Measles, . . . . .	116
III. A Normal Stomach, . . . . .	350
IV. Bone Marrows, . . . . .	711
V. Stained Corpuscles from the Blood of a Case of Leukemia, . . . . .	712
FIG.	
1. Temperature Chart of a Typical Case of Typhoid Fever Uninfluenced by Treatment, . . . . .	10
2. Chart Showing Drop in Temperature Incident to Intestinal Hemorrhage, . . . . .	12
3. Chart Showing Anemia of Typhoid Fever, . . . . . (Colored)	16
4. Chart Contrasting the Drop in Temperature after the Bath Early and Later in the Disease, . . . . .	30
5. Burr's Portable Bath-tub, . . . . .	32
6. Temperature Chart in Typhus Fever, . . . . .	44
7. Temperature Chart of Relapsing Fever, Showing Relapses, . . . . .	49
8. Chart Showing Morning and Evening Temperature in Malta Fever—Two Distinct Relapses are Shown, . . . . .	52
9. Illustrating Different Forms of the Malarial Organism with Their Stages of Development, . . . . . (Colored)	56
10. Temperature Chart in Intermittent Fever, Showing the Paroxysms and Intermision, . . . . .	64
11. Temperature Chart in Intermittent Fever, Showing the Paroxysms and Intermision, . . . . .	65
12. Chart of Yellow Fever—Produced by the Bite of <i>Culex Fasciatus</i> , . . . . .	79
13. Temperature Chart of Measles, . . . . .	115
14. Temperature Chart of Scarlet Fever, . . . . .	124
15. Temperature Chart of Smallpox, . . . . .	146
16. Chart of a Case of Influenza, . . . . . (Colored)	165
17. Method of Puncture for Spinal Drainage, . . . . .	176
18, 19. Syphilitic Teeth, . . . . .	213
20. Chart Showing Crisis in Pneumonia, . . . . .	232
21. Chart Showing Drop in Temperature in a Case of Pneumonia Succeeding the Application of the Cold, Wet Jacket, . . . . . (Colored)	243
22. Lobule of Lung, Showing Acini and Alveolar Passages, . . . . .	272
23. To Illustrate Gerhart's Change of Note, . . . . .	279
24. Temperature Chart Showing Extreme Range of Temperature in Tubercular Phthisis, . . . . .	282
25. Temperature Chart of a Case of Tubercular Consumption without Fever, . . . . .	283
26. Pasteboard Spit-cup, . . . . .	301
27. Diagram Showing Eruption of Milk Teeth, . . . . .	324
28. Thin-edged and Broken Teeth, not Syphilitic, . . . . .	325
29. The Permanent Front Teeth of a Boy, aged Fifteen, Who Had Taken Much Mercury in Infancy, . . . . .	325
30. Leube-Rosenthal Arrangement for Auto-lavage, . . . . .	372
31. Oppler-Boas Bacillus from Contents of a Carcinomatous Stomach, . . . . .	395
32. Temperature Chart of Appendicitis, Showing Temperature Maintained by Abscess after Partial Decline, . . . . .	431
33. Chart of Appendicitis, Showing Misleading Fall to Normal, Incident to Perforation, . . . . .	432
34. Vertical and Transverse Sections of an Intussusception, . . . . .	440
35. Giant Congenital Dilatation of Human Colon, . . . . .	453
36. The Cystic Duct in Section, with Part of the Gall-bladder and Hepatic and Common Bile-ducts, . . . . .	472
37. Comparative Enlargements of the Liver, Corresponding to the Different Diseases, . . . . .	506
38. <i>Tenia Echinococcus</i> , . . . . .	511
39. Section through an <i>Echinococcus</i> Cyst with Brood Capsules, . . . . .	512
40. So-called "Ovarian Cells," . . . . .	522
41. Technique of Rhinoscopic Examination, . . . . .	533
42. Technique of Laryngoscopic Examination, . . . . .	540

FIG.	PAGE
43. Natural Size of Image of the Vocal Apparatus, . . . . .	541
44. Cadaveric Position of the Left Vocal Cord, . . . . .	552
45. Complete Both-sided Abductor Paralysis of the Posterior Crico-arytenoid Muscles, . . . . .	552
46. Paralysis of the Internal Thyro-arytenoid Muscles, . . . . .	552
47. Paralysis of the Transverse and Oblique Interarytenoid Muscles, . . . . .	552
48. Bilateral Paralysis of the Thyro-arytenoids Combined with Paresis of the Arytenoid, . . . . .	553
49. Curschmann's Spirals, . . . . .	505
50. Section through Frozen Thorax at Second Interspace in Front, Looking from Above Downward, . . . . .	593
51. Section through Frozen Thorax at Second Interspace in Front, Looking from Below Upward, . . . . .	593
52. Pulsus Paradoxus, . . . . .	604
53. Ewart's Posterior Pericardial Patch, Pins' Sign, . . . . .	605
54. Temperature Chart, Malignant Endocarditis, . . . . .	616
55. Tracing of Pulse of Mitral Insufficiency, . . . . .	622
56. Tracings of Pulse of Mitral Regurgitation, . . . . .	625
57. Tracings of Pulse of Aortic Regurgitation, . . . . .	628
58. Pulse-tracing of Aortic Stenosis, . . . . .	632
59. Normal Pulse-tracing, . . . . .	607
60. Diastolic, . . . . .	607
61. Pulsus Bisferiens, . . . . .	668
62. Tracing of Pulse of High Arterial Tension, . . . . .	668
63. Sphygmogram of an Atheromatous Vessel, . . . . .	678
64. Aneurysm of the Aorta, Showing Sites of Election, . . . . .	681
65. Chart, Showing the Blood in Simple Anemia, . . . . .	(Colored) 700
66. Chart, Showing Blood in Chlorosis, . . . . .	(Colored) 704
67. Liver Lobules in a Case of Pernicious Anemia, . . . . .	(Colored) 707
68. Cells from Liver in Pernicious Anemia, . . . . .	(Colored) 708
69. Chart, Showing Blood in Pernicious Anemia, . . . . .	(Colored) 709
70. Showing the Different Forms of Colorless Corpuscles in the Blood of Leukemia, . . . . .	(Colored) 716
71. Epithelial Casts and Compound Granule Cells, . . . . .	759
72. Pus Cast, . . . . .	759
73. Blood Casts, . . . . .	759
74. Hyaline Casts, . . . . .	760
75. Hyaline and Granular Casts, Illustrating the Formation of the Former, . . . . .	760
76. Dark Granular Casts, Casts Partly Hyaline, Containing Oil-drops and Granular Matter, . . . . .	760
77. Waxy Casts, . . . . .	760
78. Oil Casts and Fatty Epithelium, . . . . .	761
79. Cylindroid or Mucus-Casts, . . . . .	761
80. Hilus of Kidney with a Large and Small Renal Calculus, Showing How Precipitation and Aggregation Take Place, . . . . .	812
81. Diagram Showing Probable Plan of the Center for Micturition, . . . . .	843
82. Heberden's Nodosities, . . . . .	855
83. Tophaceous Gout, . . . . .	866
84. Deformed Skeleton from a Case of Rickets, . . . . .	910
85. Outline of Rickety Chest, . . . . .	911
86. Diagram of an Element of the Motor Path, . . . . .	929
87. Diagram Illustrating Crossed Paralysis, . . . . .	932
88. Diagram Illustrating the Possibility of Paralysis of Arm on one Side and Leg on the other, . . . . .	933
89. Diagram Showing Probable Plan of the Center for Micturition, . . . . .	936
90. Motor Nerve Points on Face and Neck, . . . . .	942
91. Motor Nerve Points on Upper Limb, Flexor Surface, . . . . .	943
92. Motor Nerve Points on Upper Limb, Extensor Surface, . . . . .	944
93. Motor Nerve Points on Thigh, Anterior Surface, . . . . .	945
94. Motor Nerve Points on Lower Limb, Posterior Surface, . . . . .	947
95. Motor Nerve Points on Leg, External Surface, . . . . .	948
96. Diagram Showing Relation of Vertebral Spines to their Bodies and to the Nerve-roots, . . . . .	982
97. Diagram Showing Relative Size and Shape of the Cord and Gray Matter at Different Levels, . . . . .	982
98. Section of Spinal Cord in the Cervical Region, . . . . .	983
99. Diagram of Sensory Skin Areas Corresponding to the Different Spinal Segments, Anterior Surface, . . . . .	984
100. Diagram of Lesion Showing Brown-Séquard's Paralysis, . . . . .	988
101. Schema Showing Chief Symptoms in Left Unilateral Lesion of the Dorsal Cord, . . . . .	988
102, 103. Diagram of Sensory Skin Areas Corresponding to the Different Spinal Segments, Posterior Surface, . . . . .	990-991

FIG.	PAGE
104. Secondary Descending Degeneration of the Pyramidal Tracts in a Primary Lesion of the Left Half of the Cerebrum, . . . . .	999
105. Diagram of Descending Degeneration of the Pyramidal Tracts due to a Lesion in the Left Internal Capsule, . . . . .	1000
106. Secondary Ascending and Descending Degeneration in a Transverse Section of the Upper Dorsal Region, . . . . .	1000
107. Section through the Cervical Enlargement in Anterior Poliomyelitis, . . . . .	1013
108. Transverse Section through the Lumbar Region in Tabes Dorsalis, . . . . .	1021
109. Transverse Section through the Thoracic Region in Tabes Dorsalis, . . . . .	1022
110. Transverse Section through the Cervical Region in Tabes Dorsalis, . . . . .	1023
111. Transverse Section through the Lumbar Region in Beginning Tabes Dorsalis, . . . . .	1024
112. Sarcoma of the Lower Cervical Cord, . . . . .	1043
113. Sarcoma Compressing the Cervical Cord, . . . . .	1043
114. Situation of the Cranial Nerves, . . . . .	1048
115. Bird-Claw Hand, . . . . .	1057
116. Lateral Aspect of the Brain, . . . . .	1062
117. Brain of Chimpanzee, . . . . .	1063
118. Aspect of the Median Surface of the Cerebrum, as it Appears when the Two Hemispheres are Separated, . . . . .	1064
119. Lateral Aspect of the Brain, . . . . .	1065
120. The Motor Tract, . . . . .	1066
121. Sensory and Motor Paths in the Spinal Cord, . . . . . (Colored)	1068
122. Primitive Speech of the Child in Mechanical Repetition of Words, . . . . .	1071
123. Wernicke's Schema, Showing the Association of the Various Partial Conceptions to Form the Whole Conception or Word Image of an Object, . . . . .	1072
124. Simplification of the Schema of Voluntary Speech, . . . . .	1074
125. Diagram of Seats of the Lesions of Word-deafness, Word-blindness, Motor Aphasia, and Agraphia, . . . . .	1075
126. The Left Hemisphere, with the Fissure of Sylvius Drawn Apart in Order to Show the Convolution in Island of Reil, . . . . .	1076
127. Simplification of Wernicke's Schema of Voluntary Speech, . . . . .	1080
128. Transverse Section through the Crura Cerebri in Secondary Degeneration of the Right Pyramidal Tract, . . . . .	1083
129. Commencing Optic Neuritis from a Case of Caries of the Sphenoid Bone with Secondary Meningitis, . . . . .	1091
130. Diagram Showing Course of Optic Nerve-Fibers, . . . . .	1094
131. Situation of the Cranial Nerves, . . . . . (Colored)	1101
132. Schema for Central Innervation of the Facial Nerve, . . . . .	1109
133. Simplified Drawing of the Peripheral Distribution of the Facial Nerve, . . . . . (Colored)	1111
134. Wrist-drop in Musculospinal Paralysis, . . . . .	1138
135. Position of Wrist, Hand, and Fingers in Ulnar Paralysis, . . . . .	1139
136. Circle of Willis and Arteries of Brain, . . . . .	1153
137. Focal Symptoms of Brain Tumor, . . . . .	1192
138. Left Facial Hemiatrophy, . . . . .	1255
139. Temperature Chart from a Case of Sunstroke Treated by Ice-water Baths and Frictions. Recovery, . . . . .	1301
140. Fecal Matter Containing <i>Amœba coli</i> , . . . . .	1306
141. Section of Wall of Colon at Border of Dysenteric Ulcer, . . . . .	1307
142. <i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i> , . . . . .	1310
143. <i>Lamblia intestinalis</i> , . . . . .	1310
144. <i>Cercomonas hominis</i> , (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1311
145. Trypanosomes, . . . . .	1311
146. <i>Coccidium cuniculi</i> (Railliet, after Balbiani), . . . . .	1315
147. Wall and Lumen of Gall Duct of Rabbit and Coccidiosis, . . . . .	1315
148. <i>Coccidium hominis</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1316
149. <i>Coccidium bigeminum</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1317
150. Muscle of Hog Containing Miescher's Tubules, . . . . .	1317
151. <i>Balantidium coli</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1318
152. <i>Balantidium coli</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1318
153. Group of Cercariæ, . . . . .	1321
154. <i>Gastrodiscus hominis</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1322
155. <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1323
156. Sexual Organs of <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> , . . . . .	1324
157. Alimentary System of <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1324
158. Miracidium of <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1325
159. Ovum of <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> , . . . . .	1325
160. <i>Fasciolopsis buski</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1326
161. <i>Paragonimus westermanni</i> (Braun, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1327
162. <i>Paragonimus westermanni</i> , . . . . .	1327
163. <i>Paragonimus westermanni</i> (Braun, after Katsurada), . . . . .	1327

FIG.	PAGE
164. Ovum of <i>Paragonimus westermanni</i> (Braun, after Katsurada), . . . . .	1327
165. Ovum of <i>Paragonimus westermanni</i> (Braun, after Katsurada), . . . . .	1327
166. Ovum of <i>opisthorchis felineus</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1328
167. <i>Opisthorchis felineus</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1328
168. Ovum and miracidium of <i>opisthorchis sinensis</i> (Braun, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1329
169. <i>Clonorchis sinensis</i> , . . . . .	1329
170. <i>Clonorchis sinensis</i> (Braun, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1330
171. <i>Cotylagonimus heterophyes</i> (Braun, after Loos), . . . . .	1331
172. <i>Dicrocoelium lanceatum</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1332
173. Miracidium of <i>Dicrocoelium lanceatum</i> (Braun, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1332
174. Ovum of <i>Dicrocoelium lanceatum</i> , . . . . .	1332
175. Ova and Miracidium of <i>Schistosomum hamatobium</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1333
176. <i>Schistosomum hamatobium</i> (Braun, after Loos), . . . . .	1334
177. <i>Dibothriocephalus latus</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1338
178. Ova of <i>Dibothriocephalus latus</i> , . . . . .	1338
179. Free-Swimming Embryo of <i>Dibothriocephalus latus</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1338
180. Plerocercoid of <i>Dibothriocephalus latus</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1338
181. <i>Dibothriocephalus cordatus</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1339
182. Young Specimens of <i>Dibothriocephalus cordatus</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1339
183. Head and Anterior Segments of <i>Dibothriocephalus cordatus</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1339
184. <i>Bothriocephalus mansoni</i> (Leuckart and Cobbold), . . . . .	1340
185. <i>Dipylidium caninum</i> (Leuckart, after Weinland), . . . . .	1341
186. <i>Hymenolepis nana</i> (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1342
187. Head of <i>Hymenolepis nana</i> (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1342
188. Ovum of <i>Hymenolepis nana</i> (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1342
189. Head and Neck of <i>Hymenolepis diminuta</i> (Braun, after Zschokke), . . . . .	1343
190. Proglottids of <i>Hymenolepis diminuta</i> (Braun, after Grassi), . . . . .	1344
191. Ovum of <i>Hymenolepis diminuta</i> (Braun, after Grassi), . . . . .	1344
192. <i>Tania segmata</i> (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1345
193. Head and Neck of <i>Tania segmata</i> (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1345
194. Proglottid of <i>Tania segmata</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1345
195. Head and Neck, and Ovum of <i>Tania solium</i> (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1348
196. <i>Cysticercus cellulosæ</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1348
197. <i>Cysticercus cellulosæ</i> , invaginated (Coplin and Bevan, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1348
198. <i>Cysticercus cellulosæ</i> after Digestion of Bladder (Leuckart), . . . . .	1348
199. <i>Tania echinococcus</i> , Adult Worm and Head (Coplin and Bevan, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1350
200. Hydatid Cyst (Coplin), . . . . .	1350
201. Daughter Cyst, from Hydatid Cyst (Coplin), . . . . .	1351
202. A Group of Daughter Cysts, from a Hydatid Cyst (Coplin), . . . . .	1351
203. <i>Strongyloides intestinalis</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1359
204. Larval <i>Filaria bancrofti</i> in human blood (Coplin), . . . . .	1361
205. <i>Filaria medinensis</i> (Braun, after Claus), . . . . .	1366
206. <i>Filaria immitis</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1369
207. <i>Trichiuris trichiura</i> , . . . . .	1370
208. Ovum of <i>Trichiuris trichiura</i> , . . . . .	1370
209. <i>Trichinella spiralis</i> (Braun, after Claus), . . . . .	1371
210. Section of Human Muscle with Encysted Larval <i>Trichinella spiralis</i> , . . . . .	1372
211. <i>Eustrongylus gigas</i> , Female (Railliet), . . . . .	1375
212. <i>Eustrongylus gigas</i> , Male (Braun, after Railliet), . . . . .	1376
213. Ova of <i>Eustrongylus gigas</i> (Braun, after Railliet), . . . . .	1376
214. <i>Strongylus apri</i> (Braun, after Railliet), . . . . .	1376
215. Ova of <i>Uncinaria duodenalis</i> , . . . . .	1377
216. Head of <i>Uncinaria duodenalis</i> , . . . . .	1377
217. Tail of Male <i>Uncinaria duodenalis</i> , . . . . .	1377
218. Ova of <i>Uncinaria americana</i> , . . . . .	1380
219. Head of <i>Uncinaria americana</i> , . . . . .	1380
220. Tail of Male <i>Uncinaria americana</i> , . . . . .	1380
221. Head of <i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1381
222. Male and Female <i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1382
223. Ova of <i>Ascaris texana</i> and <i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> , . . . . .	1383
224. Lips of <i>Ascaris texana</i> , . . . . .	1384
225. <i>Ascaris canis</i> (Railliet), . . . . .	1384
226. Male and Female <i>Oxyuris vermicularis</i> (Braun, after Claus), . . . . .	1386
227. Ovum of <i>Oxyuris vermicularis</i> , . . . . .	1386
228. Ova, etc., Found in Human Feces, . . . . .	1387
229. <i>Acarus scabiei</i> (Gould, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1389
230. <i>Demodex folliculorum</i> (Braun, after Mègnin), . . . . .	1390
231. <i>Leptus autumnalis</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1390
232. <i>Linguatula rhinaria</i> , Adult Female (Braun), . . . . .	1391
233. <i>Linguatula rhinaria</i> , Larva (Braun, after Leuckart), . . . . .	1391
234. Ovum of <i>Pediculus capitis</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1392
235. <i>Pediculus capitis</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1392

FIG.		PAGE
236.	<i>Pediculis vestimentorum</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1392
237.	<i>Phthirius inguenalis</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1392
238.	<i>Pulex irritans</i> (Braun), . . . . .	1394
239.	Larva of <i>Pulex irritans</i> (Gould), . . . . .	1394
240.	<i>Sarcopsylla</i> ( <i>pulex</i> ) <i>penetrans</i> , Gravid Female (Braun, after Moniez), . . . . .	1394
241.	<i>Sarcopsylla</i> ( <i>pulex</i> ) <i>penetrans</i> , Young Female (Braun, after Moniez), . . . . .	1394
242.	Larva of <i>Lucilia macellaria</i> (Braun, after Conel), . . . . .	1395
243.	Larva of <i>Calliphora vomitoria</i> (Leuckart), . . . . .	1395
244.	Larva of <i>Dermatobia cyaniventris</i> (Braun, after Blanchard), . . . . .	1395
245.	Larva of <i>Anthomyia canicularis</i> (Gould), . . . . .	1395



# PRACTICE OF MEDICINE.

## SECTION I.

### INFECTIOUS DISEASES.

#### TYPHOID FEVER.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Typhus abdominalis*; *Enteric Fever*; *Pythogenic Fever*; *Gastro-enteric Fever*; *Nervous Fever*; *Autumnal Fever*; *Slow Nervous Fever*.

**Definition.**—Typhoid fever is an acute infectious fever due to the implantation and proliferation of the typhoid bacillus—the bacillus of Eberth. It is especially characterized anatomically by hyperplastic and ulcerative lesions of the lymph follicles of the intestine, of the mesenteric glands, and by enlargement of the spleen.

**Historical.**—The disease is probably coeval with civilization, and is easily recognizable in the descriptions of Hippocrates (B. C. 460-357) and Galen (A. D. 130-200); and in more modern times in those of Adrianus Spigelius (1624), Thomas Willis (1659), N. Hoffmann (1699), Thomas Sydenham (1685), and others in the seventeenth century and in the next. Noteworthy are the writings of E. Gilchrist (1734), John Huxham (1739), J. C. Riedel (1748), and R. Manningham (1746). Doubtless Huxham's "slow nervous fever," described in his "Essays on Fevers," was the typhoid of the present day, and his "putrid malignant" the rarer typhus of to-day. But Huxham regarded typhoid as a variety of continued fever rather than as a distinct and separate fever, and it was not until 1813 that Pierre Bretonneau, of Tours, described it under the name *dothiënentérite* and Petit and Serres as *fièvre entero-mésentérique*. It was, however, the writings and teachings of the great French physician, Louis, which did most to disseminate a knowledge of the true nature of typhoid fever, to which he gave the name it bears. His great work was published in 1829.<sup>1</sup> Among his pupils, who came from every country, was a coterie of brilliant young Americans, including William W. Gerhard and C. W. Pennock, of Philadelphia, and James Jackson, Jr., of Boston. The first, after his return to America, had the opportunity, in conjunction with Pennock, of studying the disease in the wards of the Philadelphia Hospital in the spring and summer of 1836, and of contrasting it with typhus fever, of which there was an epidemic then prevalent in Philadelphia. These two observers were the first to point out the difference between the two diseases. This they did in the "American Journal of the Medical Sciences" in 1837. Their publications were followed in 1838 by a paper by James Jackson, Sr., entitled "Report on Typhoid Fever," and another by Enoch Hale "On the Typhoid Fever of New England," which probably had their impulse in the information furnished by the younger Jackson to his father on his return from Paris. Thus it came to pass that Elisha Bartlett's work on the "Diagnosis and Treatment of Typhus and Typhoid Fevers," an American text-book published in 1842, contained the first separate description of the diseases. For up to 1838 only typhoid fever was known in Paris. At this time Alfred Stillé, who had been the house physician of Gerhard and Pennock in the Philadelphia Hospital, and had learned there the distinctive features of typhus and typhoid, went to Paris, and in 1838 read a paper before the Société Médicale d'Observation pointing out the differences between them. George C. Shattuck had been similarly trained in Boston, and contributed a paper to the same society. Shattuck also went to London at Louis' request and at the Fever Hospital there saw the two distinct affections, on which he reported to the Society on his return to Paris. He insisted on the existence of two fevers in England. His results were published in an admirable paper on the Continued Fevers of Great Britain.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Louis, P. C. A., "Recherch. anatom., patholog., et thérapeutiques sur la maladie connue sous les noms gastro-entérite, fièvre putride," etc., Paris, 1829.

<sup>2</sup> "Medical Examiner," Philadelphia, February 29, March 7, 1840.

In Germany, J. V. Hildenbrand had pointed out differences between typhoid and typhus as early as 1810, but also regarded them as varieties of the same disease, and not distinct diseases. These views were maintained for many years in Germany, but since 1850, at least, correct notions have prevailed. In Great Britain, in 1835, Peebles, of Glasgow, who had observed the rubeoloid eruption in the contagious typhus of Italy, pointed it out to R. Perry and A. P. Stewart. The former, according to Stewart, was the first to contend for the difference between the eruptions of typhus and typhoid. His writings, as quoted by Murchison, do not show this. Stewart, however, separated the two affections in a paper published in 1840.<sup>1</sup> In England it was not until 1849-51 that Sir William Jenner,<sup>2</sup> by his experiments and observations, clearly demonstrated their difference, and about the same time definite ideas were arrived at in France. Since 1850 the two diseases have been everywhere recognized and described as distinct and separate, except in Germany, where the recognition came a few years later.<sup>3</sup>

**Etiology.**—The *bacillus typhosus*, to which prevailing views ascribe typhoid fever, was discovered by Eberth in 1880 in the intestine of a case of the disease. This observation was promptly confirmed by Klebs, Eppinger, Koch, Wilhelm Meyer, Friedländer, Gaffky, and in England by Coates and Crook. It was found in the intestines, lymphatic system, including the mesenteric glands and spleen, in the liver and the kidneys, the blood and bone-marrow, and even in bile and urine, as well as in the rose-colored spots. It was secured in pure culture from the spleen and infected lymphatic glands by Gaffky in 1884.

The bacillus is described as a short, rod-like bacterium, whose length is three micromillimeters, breadth one micromillimeter,<sup>4</sup> though its size and shape vary somewhat with the culture-medium and the age of the bacillus. Roughly estimated, its length is about one-third the diameter of a red blood-disk. Its ends are rounded, and sometimes there can be seen toward them, dark, glistening, round bodies. These were at one time believed to be spores, but recently this germ has been classed among those that do not produce spores.<sup>5</sup> Early observations have been rendered somewhat unreliable by the very close resemblance of this bacterium to the bacterium coli. Several methods, notably those of Hiss,<sup>6</sup> Piorkowski and Rémy, all more or less successful, have superseded that suggested by Elsner<sup>7</sup> differentiating the two bacilli. Elsner's method did not guard against contamination of cultures by urine.

The bacillus stains readily in a saturated watery solution of methyl-blue, but not by Gram's method. Cultures may be made from the fecal discharges on the tenth day of the disease or later, but with difficulty, and are often negative; Cultures are now readily made from the blood and Francis W. Peabody has recently asserted that bacilli may be isolated before the agglutination reaction is positive.<sup>8</sup> E. Fränkel and M. Simmonds<sup>9</sup> early injected pure cultures of the typhoid fever bacillus into the blood of mice, rabbits, and guinea-pigs, with fatal results, which are now ascribed to toxins thus introduced. By introducing the cultures into the duodenum, Klemperer, Levy, and others caused lesions similar to those of typhoid

<sup>1</sup> "Edinburgh Med. and Surg. Jour." April, 1840.

<sup>2</sup> Jenner, "Med. Chir. Trans.," vol. xxxiii; "Edinburgh Mo. Jour. of Med. Sci.," vols. ix. and x., 1849-1851; "Med. Times," vols. xx-xxiii, November, 1849, to March, 1851.

<sup>3</sup> For an interesting and very much more complete historical sketch of the development of our knowledge of typhoid fever, see Murchison's treatise on the "Continued Fevers of Great Britain," 3d ed., London, 1884.

<sup>4</sup> A micron or micromillimeter is  $1/1000$  of a millimeter =  $1/2500$  inch.

<sup>5</sup> Sternberg, "Jour. of Am. Med. Assoc.," August 22, 1891, p. 390.

<sup>6</sup> "Medical News," vol. lxxxviii, No. 19, 1907.

<sup>7</sup> "Zeitschrift für Hygiene und Infektionskrankheiten," January, 1896.

<sup>8</sup> "Jour. Am. Med. Ass.," Sept. 19, 1908.

<sup>9</sup> Von Jaksch, "Klinische Diagnostik," 1892, S. 213.



fever, though more recently similar intestinal lesions have been produced by other bacteria, including the bacterium coli commune.

The resisting powers of the typhoid bacillus are very great. It thrives at room-temperature. The thermal death-point is given by Sternberg at 156° F. (69° C.). According to Klemperer and Levy, the bacilli remain vital for three months in distilled water, though in ordinary water the commoner and more vigorous saprophytes consume them. When buried in the upper layers of the soil, they retain their vitality for nearly six months. Cold has no effect upon them, for repeated freezing and thawing fail to kill them. They have lived upon linen for from 60 to 72 days, and on buckskin from 80 to 85 days. Sternberg has succeeded in keeping alive hermetically sealed bouillon cultures for more than one year. John S. Billings and Adelaide Ward Peckham, in some experiments in the Laboratory of Hygiene, University of Pennsylvania, dried bouillon cultures on threads and found that typhoid bacilli lived in a vacuum 207 days; in a desiccator over sulphuric acid, 203 days; in a closet, 228 days, and proved more resistant than the bacillus coli communis or staphylococcus aureus. One-tenth to 0.2 of one per cent. carbolic acid added to a culture-medium is without effect upon the growth of the bacillus; 0.5 of one per cent. strength of carbolic acid and 0.05 of one per cent. corrosive sublimate solutions are, however, fatal to it. Of all agents except high heat, sunlight seems to be among the most powerful to destroy it. The experiments of Billings and Peckham,<sup>1</sup> just alluded to, go to show that insolation for two hours destroys 98 per cent. of the germs, and in three to six hours kills all. This very important observation, made first by Janowski in 1890,<sup>2</sup> has been confirmed by Dieudonné.<sup>3</sup>

L. Brieger announced in 1885 that the pathogenic action of the typhoid bacillus was due to a specific product of the bacillus, a soluble toxin, but later studies led by R. Pfeiffer have shown that these bacteria do not yield a soluble toxin, but store up the poison in their bodies, whence it goes over in very small quantities into the fluids in which the bacilli are cultivated.

The bacillus itself most frequently enters the blood through the stomach in drinking-water or milk, in both of which it has been found during epidemics. There is reason to believe also that it may be inhaled. It has been found in water-filters by Harold C. Ernest and T. M. Prudden. It is quite well settled that the bacilli find their way into food and drink through the careless disposition of alvine discharges from typhoid fever patients, and more than likely that food may be contaminated by contagion conveyed from these discharges by the common house-fly. An oyster bed may be infected by sewage; green vegetables, by polluted water sprinkled upon them.

Whether the bacilli multiply outside the body in the water of wells or rivers to which they have obtained access is not well settled, but, judging from the large number of persons sometimes infected from those sources, it is not unreasonable to conclude that such multiplication can take place. A

<sup>1</sup> "Influences of Certain Agents in Destroying the Vitality of the Typhoid and Colon Bacillus," "Science," February 15, 1895.

<sup>2</sup> "Zur Biologie des Typhus-Bacillus." "Centralbl. f. Bakteriöl.," viii., 1890.

<sup>3</sup> "Beiträge zur Beurtheilung der Einwirkung des Lichtes auf Bacterien," "Arbeiten aus dem kaiserlichen Gesundheitsamte," Band ix., S. 405, 1894.

most noteworthy instance was the epidemic of 1885 at Plymouth, Penna., U. S. A., where 1200 persons were attacked and 130 died, all the cases starting from a single subject, whose discharges contaminated the water-supply. The epidemic (1897) at Maidstone, England, furnishes another illustration of the effect of contaminated water-supply. Within two weeks after the outbreak, about the middle of September, 509 cases were reported; by October 27, 1748 cases; November 17, 1848 cases; in all, about 1900 in a population of 35,000. *The bacilli develop rapidly in milk and in the soil.* The relatively infrequent communication of typhoid fever to physicians, nurses, and others in close communication with the disease is explained by the fact that the contagion escapes from the patient in the stools and urine, and as these are commonly promptly disposed of, the chances for the dissemination of the poison are correspondingly few. Carelessness in the disposition of these discharges, as the result of which they are allowed to dry on linen, whence the bacilli pass into the air of the room, does sometimes occasion the infection of nurses and physicians and others attending on typhoid cases. The inadvertent drinking of water from a bath used in tubbing typhoid fever cases is said to have caused the disease in a nurse. Bacilli are said to have been found even in sputum.<sup>1</sup>

**Predisposing Causes.**—Experience fails to establish definite predisposing causes of typhoid fever, but new-comers are more likely to be attacked than old residents, as early shown by the French physicians in Paris. It certainly often attacks the strong and healthy as fiercely as the feeble and delicate, while allowance must be made for the more frequent exposure of the healthy. Thus caused, typhoid fever is unlimited in its distribution by climate or civilization, but it may be complicated by disease peculiar to certain localities, pre-eminently malaria.

Typhoid fever is a disease of adolescents and adults under 30, although it may occur at any age. Less common in children, perforation has been found in a child five days old, while not a few cases have been reported in sucklings. Infection *in utero* is claimed as possible because of successful cultures of bacilli from the fetus. In the young the duration of the disease is short and the prognosis singularly favorable. It has occurred at the age of 75, 86, and even 90. More men than women have typhoid fever (71 per cent. of 444 cases collected by Reginald H. Fitz), probably because of their more frequent exposure. The assertion that the pregnant state seems to protect against typhoid fever is not substantiated by experience in Philadelphia, in evidence of which I may state that within two months there were received in my wards at the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania three pregnant women with typhoid fever.

Typhoid fever is more common in the late summer and autumn months than at any other time of the year, whence one of the names, "autumnal fever." Heat has probably to do with the ripening of the cause, but the relation of moisture to such maturing is not so well settled. It has, however, been observed that hot and dry summers are followed by more cases than hot and moist summers. Buhl and Pettenkofer have shown that

<sup>1</sup> "Jehle, Wien. klin. Wochenschrift," 1902. "Glaser, Deutsch. Med. Wochenschr.," 1902, No. 43, pages 772 and 793.

more cases succeed seasons when the ground water is low—that is, when the springs are low and the upper layers of the soil comparatively dry—than when the ground water is high and the soil is saturated with moisture to a point nearer to the surface. Under the latter condition of high ground water the germs are retained *in situ*. When the ground water is low, on the other hand, the constant circulation between the air in the loose soil and that above it conveys the germs upward, and they prevade the air accordingly. The hot and dry summer furnishes identical conditions. While it is not impossible that the germs may be transmitted through the air, and the disease acquired by inhalation, it is scarcely likely that this is a frequent occurrence, since it has been shown by Germano that in completely dried air-currents the bacillus soon dies. Liebermeister prefers to explain the relation of typhoid to the hot and dry season by the fact that at this season the quantity of solid matter in springs is relatively larger; that the poison, in other words, is more concentrated, and therefore more virulent. Special epidemics may occur at any season. Thus the epidemic of typhoid fever at Plymouth, Penna., alluded to, began April 10, and raged with greatest fury during May and June. Other epidemics illustrate the same truth.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The characteristic morbid anatomy of typhoid fever includes the changes in the *lymphatic structures* so constantly associated with the disease. These are more striking in the *solitary glands* of the ileum and their agminations known as *Peyer's patches*. The glands are enlarged by the accumulation of outwandering and proliferated leukocytes that develop to the stage of epithelioid cells, when they become necrotic and disintegrate. The acme of this process prior to disintegration is known as *medullary infiltration*, and is reached from the eighth to the tenth day of the disease. In an autopsy made on the 11th day typical medullary infiltration was found. The disintegration is either molecular or massive. The former is followed by a corresponding absorption; the latter, by a massive discharge of the dead cells into the bowel, resulting in the well-known *typhoid ulcer*. This, when it represents a single follicle, is small and circular, not more than from three to six millimeters ( $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch) in diameter; large and elliptical when an entire *Peyer's patch* is involved. Such a patch is usually opposite the mesenteric attachment, has its longest diameter parallel with the length of the bowel and its shorter transverse, thus reversing the relations of the tubercular ulcer. Much larger ulcers are sometimes formed by the union of others, especially toward the lower end of the bowel. The borders are commonly raised. The floor of the ulcer is usually the submucosa, or the muscular coat of the bowel, but it may be the peritoneum, and even this is sometimes sphacelated, appearing as an opaque white membrane that sooner or later breaks and the bowel is perforated. The discharge of its contents into the peritoneal cavity is followed by peritonitis, usually fatal. More commonly, the ulcer heals, and the patient recovers, but the normal glandular structure of the gut at the seat of the ulcer is not restored. Necropsy discovers ulcers in different stages of healing, sometimes all healed except the single fatal spot that has become the seat of perforation. The large intestine is also invaded in probably one-third of the cases, and the process may terminate here also

in perforation. Ulceration may extend to the appendix, where, too, perforation sometimes takes place.

Similar infiltration of the lymph nodules and lymph cords of the *mesenteric glands* and of the *spleen* may occur, contributing to the enlargement of these organs. In the spleen it is associated with an active hyperemia that contributes to further enlargement, generally recognizable during life. The organ may reach twice or three times its normal size—*i. e.*, 435 to 650 gm. (14 to 20 ounces). There has even been rupture of this organ. Hemorrhagic infarcts have been found in the spleen in from four to seven per cent. of cases coming to autopsy. Abscess of the spleen has been found.

*Perforation* has been noted at necropsy in 5.7 per cent. of cases—that is, 114 out of 2000 autopsies in Munich; by Osler, in 2.48 per cent. of 685 cases. Schultz found peritonitis from intestinal perforation in 1.2 per cent. of 3680 cases in Hamburg in 1886–87; Liebermeister found perforation in 1.3 per cent. of over 2000 cases at Bâle between 1865–72; Holscher, in six per cent. of 2000 cases; Murchison, 11.38 per cent. of 1721 cases; and J. Alison Scott in 2.6 per cent. In 4680 cases collected by R. H. Fitz the deaths from perforation were 6.58 per cent., which may be said to represent about the proportion actually occurring, since up to the date of his report nearly all died. It occurred in only one of 105 soldiers treated at the University Hospital in the fall of 1898. The range of percentage of perforation may, therefore, be put down at from 1.2 to 11.38 per cent.

As to the location of perforation, Hawkins found it in 61 of 72 cases in the ileum, three in the cecum, three in the appendix, and five in the colon, most of the latter being in the sigmoid flexure. In 167 cases collected by Fitz the ileum was perforated in 136, the large intestine in 20, the appendix in five, Meckel's diverticulum in four, the jejunum in two. The number of perforations is usually one, but Fitz reports out of 167 cases, two in 19, five in three, four in one, several (*sic*) in four, and 25 to 30 in two. The accident is most frequent in the third week, or close to the third week. It is more frequent in men.

The *liver*, among organs more rarely affected, shows cloudy swelling, granular and fatty degeneration of its cells, lymphatic nodular areas, and even liver abscess with pylephlebitis, and acute yellow atrophy. Abscess of the liver was found 12 times in the Munich necropsies, and acute yellow atrophy three times. Pylephlebitis has followed abscess of the mesentery and perforation of the appendix. Typhoid bacilli are often found in the gall-bladder in fatal cases; in Chiari's reports<sup>1</sup> 19 out of 22; in Simon Flexner's, seven out of 14. Perforation of the gall-bladder is sometimes met, and Keen has collected 30 cases in his book on the "Surgical Complications and Sequels of Typhoid Fever," 1898. Nine cases of *abscess of the spleen* were collected by Keen, who also reports a leukemic spleen that seems to have been caused by typhoid fever.

In the *kidneys* there may be cloudy swelling and granular degeneration of renal cells, more rarely acute nephritis, which may even be hemorrhagic; also miliary abscesses in which typhoid bacilli have been found. Diphtheritic and catarrhal inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney and catarrhal inflammation of the bladder are occasionally present.

<sup>1</sup> "Prager medicinische Wochenschrift," 1893, No. 22.

Changes in the *respiratory organs* are often found. Among the rarer of these are edema of the glottis, ulceration of the larynx, and even necrosis of the laryngeal cartilages. Hypostatic congestion of the lungs is quite common; pneumonia is more infrequent. Even gangrene of the lungs was found in 40 of the Munich cases; abscess, in 14; and hemorrhagic infarction, in 129. Pleurisy and empyema are rare events. Arthur V. Meigs<sup>1</sup> has described changes of a hemorrhagic character in the lungs, and others in the muscular and nervous systems, the essential relation of which to typhoid fever remains to be demonstrated.

In the *circulatory system* there may be thrombosis of veins, especially of the femoral, causing the not very rare symptom of milk-leg; more rarely there is thrombosis of the femoral artery, which may be preceded by embolism. Endocarditis and myocarditis may be present. The latter condition is attested by a yellow, soft, and flabby muscle seen after death.

As to the *nervous system*, notwithstanding the intensity of the nervous symptoms at times, meningitis is a rare event, though both serous and purulent forms have been met, typhoid bacilli being found *in loco* as the apparent cause; also thrombosis of cortical veins and parenchymatous changes in nerve-trunks, even when there have been no symptoms of neuritis. Abscess of the brain has also been found with the bacillus typhosus *in loco*. In the *muscular system* granular and hyaline transformation of voluntary muscle may occur, as in other fever processes.

Warfield T. Longcope<sup>2</sup> has studied the *marrow of bone in typhoid fever*. He found congestion, edema, focal necrosis and many large phagocytic cells which last he regards as typical. A striking feature was a mild general hyperplasia of all the blood-forming cells, with also some and often a very decided increase of the non-granular cells and swelling of the lymphoid follicles. There was a marked fewness of eosinophiles. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes were numerous in the uncomplicated cases; in cases complicated by acute infections they were less numerous, practically absent. The lesions were more marked the more prolonged the disease before death.

*Abscesses in the parotid gland* are a familiar lesion; more rarely, abscesses in the intermuscular tissue.

General invasion of all organs and of the blood (bacillæmia) by the typhoid bacillus are now not infrequently found.

*Typhoid Fever without Enteric Lesions.*—A few years ago typhoid fever without enteric lesions would have been considered an impossibility. This can no longer be claimed. Cases have been reported by Sidney Philips, J. W. Moore, Simon Flexner, and others, without these lesions. In doubtful cases the Widal reaction and the presence of bacilli as determined by cultures must be appealed to.

**Symptoms and Course.**—A certain *period of incubation* is necessary after the successful implantation of the bacillus before typhoid fever arises. This varies from a week to two weeks and even longer. The period of incubation is usually without symptoms, but there may be a sense of weariness and indisposition to exertion, the latter often overcome by force of will;

<sup>1</sup> "Proceedings of the Pathological Society of Philadelphia," 1890.

<sup>2</sup> Longcope, "Bulletin of the Ayer Clinical Laboratory of the Pennsylvania Hospital," No. 2, January, 1905.

also a want of appetite and a slight coating of the tongue. These symptoms, more strictly speaking, belong to the prodrome, and are in turn not sharply separated from those of the disease itself, which usually sets in very gradually and is often quite advanced before suspected, indeed, sometimes well advanced, constituting the "walking" or "ambulatory" typhoid. In *children the onset is less gradual*. There may be headache, anorexia, a furred tongue, nausea, chilliness, but only rarely a decided rigor. The disease may be ushered in by muscular *pain* in the back or legs. *Nosebleed* has always been considered characteristic, and yet I meet it less frequently than might be expected from the text-book statements. More common is *looseness* of the *bowels*. Or if not looseness an aperient acts more severely than it does in a healthy person. All this time there is slight fever, and the patient feels wretched. The fever and the discomfort increase, and finally he goes to bed. The tendency to looseness of the bowels and epistaxis, more than any other symptom of this group, justify strong suspicion of the existence of typhoid fever. Yet one or both are quite often absent. Certain epidemics are more apt to be attended by diarrhea than others. The *abdomen* soon becomes slightly distended and tympanitic, and pressure in the right iliac fossa will usually elicit *tenderness* with *gurgling*. At times there is *colicky pain* of varying severity independent of pressure; at others the *gastric* symptoms are marked and there are *nausea* and *vomiting*.

Usually about the eighth day, rarely later and sometimes a little earlier, *rose-colored spots* make their appearance on the skin of the abdomen and chest, more rarely elsewhere on the body. These call for further description. They are usually bright red in color, and are well compared to a fleabite. They are very slightly, if at all, raised above the surface and disappear on pressure, to return instantly after its removal. Their number varies greatly. Sometimes they are very numerous, oftener there are four or five to ten, again one or two, most rarely none. When numerous, they occur in successive crops, each crop lasting from two to four days. Histologically, they are circumscribed, actively hyperemic areas, the hyperemia being excited by some irritant, which may be the typhoid bacillus itself, since it has been found in the spots. Only in the most malignant cases is there any blood found outside of the vessels, and when this occurs, the spots can be made to disappear but partially on pressure. The association of roseolar spots is so intimate with the disease that they have been regarded as pathognomonic. Rose-colored spots are much more uncommon in children.

In addition to rose-colored spots, *sudamina* are often present in large numbers on the skin, especially when the disease is associated with much sweating, but their occurrence is by no means constant, and their association with other diseases in which there is perspiration is well known. More rarely, *petechiæ* and *vibices* are noted in adynamic forms of the disease. An *erythema* is quite often found on the skin of the chest and abdomen. Peliomatous patches—the *tâche bleuâtre*—sometimes are found on the skin of the thorax, abdomen, and thighs; also the *tâche cérébrale*—a red line, produced on drawing the finger-nail over the skin,—but neither have any symptomatic significance. *Herpes* is so rare that it is often spoken of as *negatively* pathognomonic. *Jaundice* is occasionally seen, and may be the result of an obstructive cholangitis excited by the bacillus.

*Enlargement of the spleen* is an almost constant clinical feature of typhoid fever. If the vertical dullness exceeds the depth of two ribs and an interspace, enlargement is present. Not only may this be recognized by percussion, but by palpation as well. Clinicians generally lay great stress on palpation, and enlargement may sometimes be detected by it when the organ eludes percussion by reason of tympany. Hermann Eichhorst advises the following method of examination: Put the patient in the right diagonal position, and lay the finger gently between the anterior ends of the 11th and 12th ribs, when the enlarged organ can almost always be felt with every deep inspiration of the patient, in spite of meteorism. At times the outline is indistinct, at others both the tip and anterior edge of the organ can be distinctly located. Strong pressure should not be exerted by the fingers, for in this way the spleen may be insensibly pressed backward into the excavation of the left hypochondrium. Enlargement can generally be detected at the end of the first week or in the first half of the second week, when the organ may reach twice or three times its normal size. *By the end of the third week it begins to diminish in size.* The enlarged spleen may also be tender. Enlargement is less frequent in cases occurring late in life. Recently, desiring to know in what proportion of cases of typhoid fever the spleen is palpable, I had the record of 1000 cases at the Pennsylvania Hospital examined and it was found that in 32.8 per cent. the organ was palpable on admission. This can only be approximate, as considerable variation was found in the observations by different resident physicians.

Early, too, in the disease the patient may have a slight *cough*, unassociated with physical signs, or at most those of a mild bronchial catarrh.

The *fever* is at once the most important and characteristic symptom, and from the temperature alone a diagnosis can be made. During the *increment* of the disease it exhibits a peculiar, tide-like evening rise and morning fall, while the temperature of each morning and evening is from one and a half to three degrees higher than that of the previous morning and evening. The patient is rarely seen at the very beginning of this first stage, but should he be, it will be found to last commonly a week. Frequently it is succeeded at the end of four or five days by the acme or *fastigium*, in which are continued the evening rise and the morning fall, but the evening and morning difference is less marked, the tidal character is no longer present, and the temperature is high throughout. The average duration of the fastigium is five to eight and ten days, being longer in severe cases and shorter in milder ones. In protracted cases the period of febrile elevation may be still longer. It is during it that we meet the maximum temperature, quite often 105° F. (40.5° C.) or a little above, more rarely 106° F. (41.1° C.). A temperature of 106° F. is not infrequently followed by recovery, but while 107° F. (41.6° C.) and 108° F. (42.2° C.) and even 109° F. (42.7° C.) are met, such cases have invariably, in my experience, terminated fatally.

The fastigium is succeeded by the third stage, or *period of decrement* or decline, in which the reverse of the initial stage is shown by an evening temperature lower than that of the previous evening, and the morning temperature lower than that of the previous morning, but with the evening

temperature still higher than that of the morning of the same day. This decline continues until the normal is reached, and from one to two weeks are consumed before that is attained. The whole is much better shown and more easily understood from a chart than from a description in words. Such a chart of the temperature uninfluenced by treatment is seen in figure 1, although the rise and fall are not always as regular as indicated. In a typical case one might safely place the first stage at four days to a week; the second, or fastigium, as seven to ten; and the third, about as long as the second, the shorter period corresponding to a mild case and the longer to a severe one. The fever does not always reach the higher temperature shown

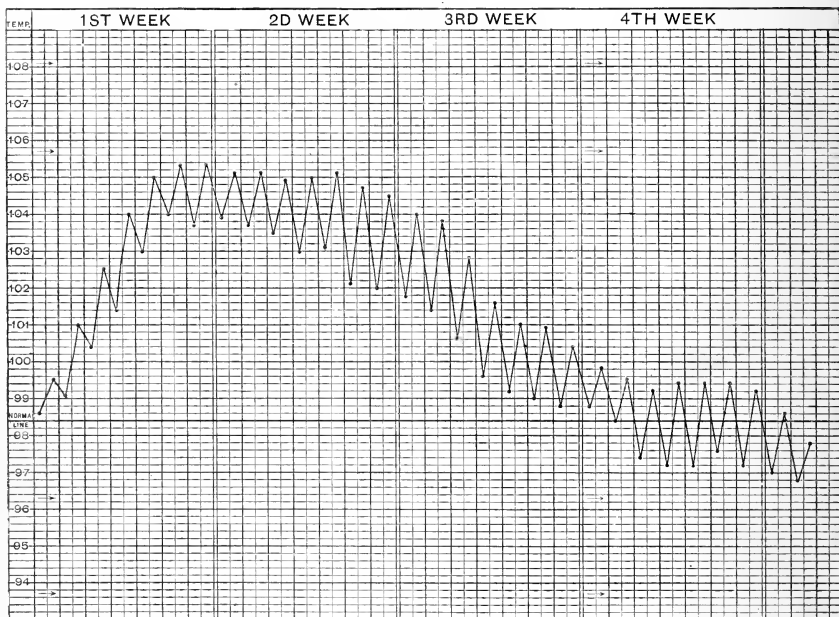


FIG. 1.—Temperature Chart of a Typical Case of Typhoid Fever Uninfluenced by Treatment.

in the chart, and sometimes the maximum never reaches 102° F. (38.9° C.). On the other hand, there is sometimes a difference of three or four degrees in the morning and evening temperature, and the latter may drop to normal. In ordinary cases the evening temperature falls to the normal in the course of the fourth week, but in severe cases the temperature keeps up during the fifth and even sixth week, these cases having almost invariably extensive ulceration with great tenderness of the abdomen and meteorism. Many of them terminate unfavorably by hemorrhage or perforation.

When the disease begins with a *chill*,—a rare event,—the temperature rises more rapidly in the beginning. Sudden falls of a decided character may occur in consequence of hemorrhage from the bowels, the nose or



from collapse after perforation of the bowels. Sudden rises are produced by indiscretion in diet and overexertion or the supervention of some acute inflammatory affection, as pneumonia, or ptomain absorption. In a few cases the temperature is not at all characteristic. Rarely there is a reversal of temperature the higher being found in the morning.

Copious *sweating* characterizes some cases of typhoid fever, though the skin is more commonly dry. Sometimes, during the reaction after a cold bath, there is perspiration. The profuse sweats first alluded to are not attended by a reduction of temperature, being sometimes present when the temperature is highest. Cases of recurring paroxysms of chill, fever, and sweat are reported, which simulate intermittent fever, and may reasonably be mistaken for it.

The *pulse* is only moderately frequent, 90 to 120 being the usual range, while a proximity to 100 is quite frequently maintained. In grave cases it becomes more frequent, 140 or more; when, if maintained, it is a rather unfavorable symptom, due to high temperature or complications. Temperature and pulse do not always increase *pari passu*. *Dicrotism* may occur with frequent pulse, but dicrotism also occurs in the early stage, when it is regarded by some as diagnostic. According to Curschmann, dicrotism is more common in typhoid fever than all the other infectious diseases taken together. During convalescence the pulse gradually resumes its normal character, and sometimes becomes abnormally slow, falling to 30 or less. I have had a case in which the pulse fell as low as 18, and continued for one day between 20 and 36.

The *breathing rate* commonly advances with the rate of the pulse, but is sometimes increased in frequency by temporary causes and rarely is disproportionately slow. In a very striking case of my own at the University Hospital the rate fell to twelve in a minute, and continued thus for an hour.

The *heart-sounds*, at first natural, grow less loud as adynamia progresses, and the first sound may even disappear in grave cases. Sometimes a soft systolic murmur develops at the apex, usually at the end of the second week. Sometimes it acquires greater intensity. It has been especially studied by M. G. Hayem,<sup>1</sup> who ascribes it not to an endocarditis, but to a relaxation of the muscle which results in imperfect apposition of the valves and a consequent regurgitation. This murmur disappears as recovery takes place, and the heart-muscle grows strong.

As the disease advances, the *tongue*, previously furred, tends to become dry and brown, clearing, however, at the edges and tip as the case improves. In severe cases, especially if the mouth is not kept clean, *stomatitis* with fissures and bleeding may occur, and sordes may collect on the teeth, while the lips become covered with black crusts, constituting the "fuliginous coating." These phenomena are almost unknown with the bath treatment. Mild grades of *pharyngitis* producing painful swallowing, sometimes usher in the attack, more particularly in certain epidemics.

The *diarrhea* of typhoid fever has been alluded to. It is said to be present in 20 to 30 per cent. of cases. Usually corresponding in severity with the extent of the local lesion, it is seldom troublesome or difficult to control, and is sometimes absent throughout. The stools have no charac-

<sup>1</sup> M. G. Hayem, "Des manifestations cardiaques de la fièvre typhoid," "Le Progrès Médical," 17 Juillet, 1875, p. 401 et seq.

teristic qualities. They may be grayish-yellow and are usually fetid. Persistent severe diarrhea points to extensive ulceration.

*Meteorism* in moderate degree is an almost constant symptom. The distention by gas is commonly ascribed to atony of the bowels. Its presence

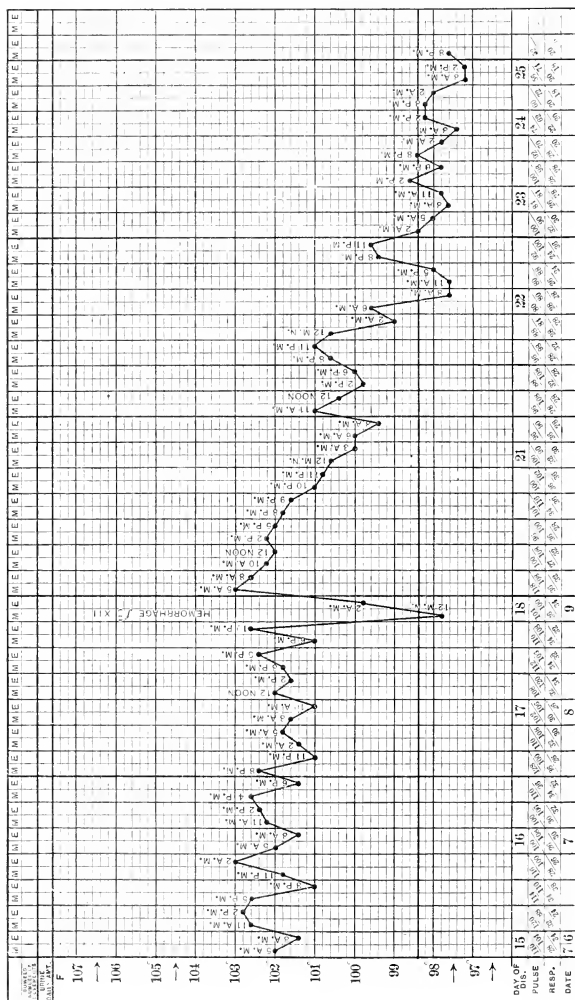


FIG. 2.—Showing Drop in Temperature Incident to Intestinal Hemorrhage.

in high degrees adds to the seriousness of the case, since it corresponds usually with the extent of bowel lesion, and soon succeeds perforation.

*Hemorrhage* from the bowels, also a consequence of intestinal ulceration and the separation of sloughs, is a serious symptom, but by no means al-

ways fatal, though large quantities of blood are sometimes discharged *per anum*. The occurrence of such hemorrhage is followed by a rapid reduction of the temperature, as shown in chart Fig. 2, and a pallor and faintness such as are common to large hemorrhages elsewhere. As stated, very profuse hemorrhages may be followed by recovery, and it is barely possible that a favorable influence may sometimes be exerted by them. Very rarely a patient will bleed to death. Hemorrhage was a cause in 11 out of 56 deaths in Osler's 685 cases. It occurred 99 times in 2000 cases in Munich, and eight times in 105 soldiers under my care after the Spanish-American war.

*Perforation* is attended by sudden acute pain in the abdomen, and symptoms of collapse. The pain is rarely circumscribed, but radiates through the abdomen; and I well remember a case in which it was so high up that I mistook it, for a time, for that of pleurisy. It occurs most frequently in the third or fourth week, but it has happened as early as the eighth day and as late as the sixth week. In Fitz's cases it occurred in the third or fourth week in 46.5 per cent.; in four cases in the first week and one in the 16th week. Perforation is frequently associated with hemorrhage, it is said that one-fifth of cases are thus associated, and the occurrence of hemorrhage may reasonably excite apprehension of perforation. (See also morbid anatomy.)

*Delirium* is less constantly present in typhoid fever than in typhus, and may be absent throughout. It may, however, be very active, requiring the patient to be carefully watched to prevent him from leaving his bed and seriously endangering his life. More than one victim has leaped from a window with fatal results under such circumstances. In certain cases, especially when the initial headache is very intense, this symptom continues and to it are added fever and delirium so extreme that meningitis is simulated, though the true form of this disease rarely occurs. Such cases illustrate the "nervous form" of the disease. A tendency to drowsiness, and even to stupor, suggested the common name "typhoid," but it is less characteristic than in typhus. Rarely *convulsion* occurs in the course of the disease, in Murchison's experience in six out of 2690 cases.<sup>1</sup>

*Muscular tremor* is a symptom in severe cases, when it would seem to indicate a muscular weakness or exhaustion, which may be an effect of high temperature or of the specific poison of the disease. Carphologia, or "picking at the bedclothes," is a symptom of which the unfavorable import has been somewhat exaggerated, probably because of the popular familiarity with Dame Quickly's interpretation in Falstaff's illness. Concurrently with these "typhoid" symptoms, the tongue reaches its maximum dryness, and may be dark and leathery in appearance, while sordes may collect on the teeth.

*Hiccough* is an infrequent, but sometimes obstinate symptom.

Apart from an initial *bronchial catarrh*, which sometimes ushers in the disease, the typhoid patient sooner or later acquires a *slight cough*, due to hypostatic congestion of the lungs, but it is easily kept within bounds by frequent changes in the position of the patient. Occasionally, the cough is quite severe, but seldom requires more active treatment than this. The

<sup>1</sup> See a paper by Thomas Clayton in Philadelphia Medical Journal, March 3, 1900.

initial bronchial catarrh, too, sometimes assumes severity, while more rarely the symptoms and signs of *pneumonia usher in the disease*.

*Changes in the Urine.*—The urine is always dark-hued and concentrated, with a correspondingly high specific gravity. Often when the fever is high the urine contains a small amount of albumin. When complicated with *nephritis*, there is more albumin, and tube-casts are present. Recent French statistics place albuminuria, regardless of its cause, at over 20 per cent. While such albuminurias are found in grave cases, they do not appear to add greatly to the seriousness of the case, and recovery is by far the more usual termination. More rarely, nephritis in a mild form may develop during convalescence. Most rarely, it may be an initial symptom of the disease, constituting a nephro-typhoid analogous to the pneumo-typhoid, when it may even mask the true disease by its severity. It is well named by the French—*fièvre typhoïde à forme rénale*. Only the Widal test, the intestinal symptoms, and the spots clear up the diagnosis. Such nephritis may rarely be hemorrhagic. The toxic properties of urine are said to be increased during typhoid fever, especially while the cold baths are being used.

The urine may contain bacilli of typhoid fever, generally associated with albumin. The following summary from Norman B. Gwyn's paper in the "Johns Hopkins Bulletin," June, 1899, condenses our present knowledge:

"1. In quite a high percentage, perhaps from 20 to 30 per cent., of all cases of typhoid fever typhoid bacilli may be present in the urine.

"2. When present, they are usually in pure culture, often so numerous as to make the freshly voided urine turbid, and may then be detected by a cover-slip examination.

"3. Appearing generally in the second and third week of illness, the organisms may persist for months or years, probably multiplying in the bladder, the urine being apparently a suitable medium for their growth.

"4. Though often showing evidences of cystitis and marked renal involvement, the urine containing bacilli has usually only the characteristics of an ordinary febrile urine; the presence of bacilli has no prognostic importance, and their disappearance or persistence, without having induced local change, is the rule.

"5. Lastly, as shown by Richardson, irrigation of the bladder with bichlorid of mercury and the internal administration of urotropin—a compound of ammonia and formaldehyde—seem to be safe methods of removing the bacilli; 30 to 60 grains of the latter quickly removing all bacilli in six cases."

More recent studies, especially by Hiss (*loc. citate*), go to show that the urine, in consequence of the more prolonged presence of the bacilli, may be a more frequent source of infection to the community at large than the feces.

The so-called *dialzo reaction* of urine, to which attention was first called by Ehrlich in 1882, is so constant in this disease as to be deservedly regarded as a symptom. It was found by John Hewetson in 136 out of 196 cases, and by Arthur R. Edwards in 128 out of 130 cases, and by Simon in 22 out of 26 cases. I have never found it absent when the test was made sufficiently early.

For making the test three solutions are necessary:

1. A five per cent. solution of hydrochloric acid saturated with sulphanilic acid. This solution should be fresh.
2. A half of one per cent. solution of sodium nitrite.
3. Ammonium hydrate.

When it is desired to make the test, 40 c.c. of (1) and 1 c.c. of (2) are mixed. The hydrochloric acid, acting on the sodium nitrite, liberates nitrous acid, which in its nascent state combines with the sulphanilic acid, producing diazo-benzine-sulphonic acid. Equal parts of this mixed solution and urine are thoroughly shaken; enough of the ammonia is then allowed to flow carefully down the side of the tube to form a colorless zone above the urine mixture. At the junction of the two fluids a dark-garnet or cherry-red ring will form if the reaction takes place, and if the tube is well shaken, a uniform red color is imparted to the entire fluid, which, when allowed to stand for some hours, shows a characteristic olive-green precipitate, the upper layer of which, as a rule, has a still darker green color. The *reaction occurs about the time of the appearance of the rash* and usually continues until the 22nd day, but it may disappear before the end of the second week. It is, as stated, symptomatic and not diagnostic, certainly not pathognomonic, as it occurs in many diseases with high fever, among which measles and miliary tuberculosis are conspicuous. It may, however, be regarded as negatively pathognomonic—that is, its absence is strongly presumptive against the presence of typhoid fever.

*Polyuria* is a rare symptom. A remarkable case was reported by James C. Wilson, at a meeting of the Section on Medicine of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia. Such excessive polyuria must be due to an irritation by bacilli of the urinary center in the medulla.

*Indicanuria* is claimed by Judson Daland<sup>1</sup> to be quite frequent in typhoid fever and is said to especially demand thorough cleansing of the oral and nasal cavities whence putrefactive substances may be carried to the stomach, as well as absorbed *ex loco*.

*Changes in the Blood.*—The state of the blood in typhoid fever early claimed attention, and even the earliest observers, beginning with Le Canu in 1837, noted a diminution of *red blood-corpuscles*. This observation has been essentially confirmed by the most recent studies with modern accurate methods, among which those by Ouskow,<sup>2</sup> by Khetaguirow,<sup>3</sup> and by W. S. Thayer<sup>4</sup> are conspicuous.

At the beginning of the fever the number of red blood-corpuscles is normal and even at the upper limit of normal, because the patients are apt to be young and strong, while in some instances the initial diarrhea or pronounced sweating may cause slight concentration of the blood. During the first two weeks the number of red corpuscles gradually falls, though but slightly. With defervescence they fall off more rapidly, reaching a minimum usually about the first week of convalescence, after which there is a gradual rise to the normal, followed again by a possible slight fall when the patient

<sup>1</sup> Daland, "American Medicine," vol. viii., 1904, p. 764.

<sup>2</sup> "The Blood as a Tissue," St. Petersburg, 1890.

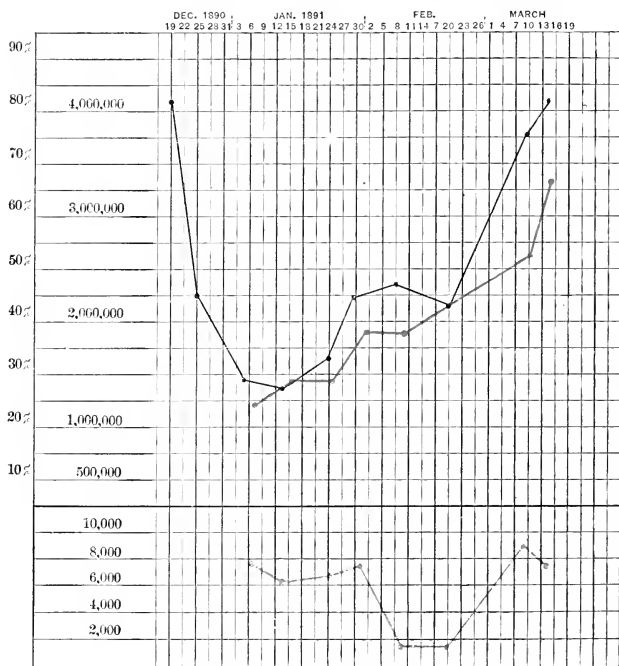
<sup>3</sup> "Pathological Changes in the Blood in Typhoid Fever," Inaug. diss., St. Petersburg, 1891.

<sup>4</sup> "Two Cases of Post-typhoid Anemia, with Remarks on the Value of Examination of the Blood," vol. iv., "Johns Hopkins Hospital Reports," 1895.

gets up. The fall in the number of red corpuscles, while relatively slight, bears usually a direct relation to the severity of the case.

The *hemoglobin* is always reduced and the reduction is relatively greater than the corpuscular loss, with an even slower return to the normal. Extreme anemia, with a blood count as low as 1,300,000 corpuscles in a cubic millimeter and hemoglobin as low as 20 per cent., has been met.

The number of *leukocytes* in a cubic millimeter, normal at the beginning, tends also to *diminish* slightly throughout the disease, reaching a minimum toward the end of defervescence, increasing again with the beginning of convalescence, and reaching the normal after several weeks. More



Black—Red Corpuscles. Red—Hemoglobin. Blue—Colorless Corpuscles.

FIG. 3.—Chart showing Anemia of Typhoid Fever.—(From Thayer's "Monograph.")

definitely the change consists in a diminution in the percentage of multinuclear or overripe elements, with a relative increase in the large mononuclear or ripe elements. The *absence of leukocytosis is regarded of real diagnostic value*, being in marked contrast with the distinct increase in the number of colorless corpuscles and overripe elements (multinuclear cells) characteristic of most other infectious processes. Typhus fever is unattended by blood changes, and while in a few cases of malignant pneumococcus infection there may be no leukocytosis, there is no *diminution* in the leukocytes, as in typhoid. The condition of the blood in malarial fever is practically the same as in typhoid fever, but the presence of the malarial parasite in the

former is distinctive. In pure miliary tuberculosis unassociated with local inflammatory processes there is also an absence of leukocytosis. It is important to remember that cold baths have the effect of producing a decided temporary increase in the proportion of leukocytes, probably rather, in consequence of an accumulation of white cells in the vessels of the surface than as the result of a true leukocytosis. More rarely, the leukocytes are increased. Cabot refers to four cases in which they reached 11,000, and in one 17,000, with no lesions other than those common to typhoid. Very interesting is the effect of suppuration on this reduction in the number of leukocytes. It is replaced by an increase as shown by counts after perforation, phlebitis, and otitis. Especial value is claimed for leukocytosis as a warning of impending perforation and peritonitis. More recently less emphasis is placed on this relation.

**Unusual Modes of Onset. Atypical Forms.**—It has been mentioned that while slight chilliness is often an initial symptom, *severe rigor* at the same stage rarely occurs. It does, however, happen, as in 13 out of 79 of Osler's cases. More frequently, chills have been observed in the course of the disease from some one of the following causes:

1. At the onset of a relapse, or even during convalescence without apparent cause.
2. As a result of treatment, especially by antipyretics internally, guaiacol externally, or of a hypodermic injection of a sterilized culture of typhoid bacilli.
3. At the onset of complications, such as pneumonia, pleurisy or thrombosis.
4. From sepsis during convalescence in severe and protracted cases. Under these circumstances chills may be frequent, severe, and of grave import.
5. From concurrent malaria.
6. From constipation, according to Herringham.

In epileptics who acquire typhoid fever the latter disease is very apt to be ushered in by an unusual number of epileptic *convulsions*, which continue frequent until the fever becomes established, then diminish, and finally cease, often not recurring until some time after recovery, causing the victim and his friends to believe that the chronic malady has disappeared. It returns, however, sooner or later. The same is true of choreic attacks. Rarely, the disease is ushered in with convulsions in children. *Convulsions* are rare but acknowledged symptoms in the course of the disease as well as at the onset. Murchison recorded 6 cases in 2960 of typhoid, of which two died. In one diseased kidney was discovered. Osler<sup>1</sup> reported eight cases of convulsions in from 1500 to 1600 of the disease. In two at the onset; in three during the course of the disease, supposed manifestations of toxemia, of which one died of perforation; two cases occurred in severe cerebral complications as thrombosis, meningitis and encephalitis both fatal. One occurred of unknown cause during convalescence. The prognosis is not considered grave. *Aphasia* was noted by S. F. Blakely, of Ora, S. C., in the case of a girl of 15. The condition continued for four weeks.

In diabetes the sugar may disappear during the fever.

<sup>1</sup>Osler, Wm., "Practitioner" (London), 1906, lxxxvi., p. 1.

Among the more unusual modes of onset should be mentioned cases beginning with severe bronchitis; those with the initial symptoms of pneumonia, including chill; those with initial symptoms of nephritis or with intense nervous symptoms, suggesting cerebrospinal meningitis. Among the latter are intense headache and photophobia, combinations rapidly passing over into active delirium, with muscular twitching and retraction of the head, constituting the *nervous* or *meningcal* form. In accordance with recent views these varieties may be considered as representing forms in which the organs especially involved are the primary and chief seats of attack by the bacillus as contrasted with the more usual intestinal form. In certain long and severe cases septic infection occurs, manifested by fever, sweats, and local abscesses in various parts of the body, including the perirectal and perinephric regions.

Among *irregular* forms is the so-called *abortive* form. This doubtful form is said to be more sudden in its onset, beginning with shivering and fever of  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $39.4^{\circ}$  C.) or higher. The rose-colored spots appear at from the second to the fifth day. The fever falls at the end of the first week or beginning of the second, commonly by crisis with a sweat, after which follows convalescence. The *hemorrhagic* is a grave variety characterized especially by cutaneous and mucous hemorrhages, and is fortunately rare. Five cases of this variety have been reported by Samohrd<sup>1</sup> and one by T. H. Evans<sup>2</sup> of Philadelphia. One of Samohrd's cases was fatal. Possibly the hemorrhagic sites are foci of invasion by bacilli, which weaken the integrity of the vessel walls.

The *mild form* is sometimes so mild as scarcely to be recognized as typhoid fever and is often called gastric fever or simple febricula. There is, however, no more important lesson for the inexperienced practitioner to learn than that some cases beginning as mere febricula may pass over into forms of great severity, and may even terminate fatally. A very rare form is the *tonsillar* typhoid, in which whitish elevations appear on the tonsils, subsequently becoming ulcers.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—The recent Spanish-American war has confirmed the possibility of the coexistence of typhoid fever and *malarial* fever, since a number of cases from among the soldiers have been reported in which not only all the necessary clinical features of typhoid fever were present, but also the Widal reaction, in which, too, the malarial organism was found in the blood. Such coexistence occurred in two of the cases under my own care in the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania. It is, however, an infrequent event. On the other hand, a mongrel disease that is the product of the two causes, as was once supposed to be the case, and known as *typhomalarial fever*, does not exist. The term should be dropped, as it is confusing and gives rise to erroneous impressions.

Persons with tuberculosis, heart disease, diabetes, epilepsy and other forms of chronic nervous disease are as liable to typhoid fever as others, while scarlet fever, diphtheria, measles, chicken-pox, rheumatism, and especially erysipelas, may befall a typhoid case. Typhoid fever in diabetic cases is especially apt to be attended with low temperature. Typhoid fever itself

<sup>1</sup> Samohrd, "Sbornik Klinicky," Tomo V, fasc. i, 1903, and abstracted in "Il Policlinico," Rome, No. 21, 1904.  
<sup>2</sup> "Medical News," Sept. 3, 1904.



predisposes to tuberculosis, and not a few patients recover from the former disease only to be attacked by the latter.

*Thrombosis* of the femoral vein, more frequently the left, resulting in *phlegmasia alba dolens*, or milk-leg, is a complication that often greatly delays convalescence. It occurs, according to Murchison, in one per cent. of all cases. It sometimes invades both legs in succession, and may extend into the iliac veins and vena cava, thence even into the right auricle, causing death from syncope. Unless the latter event occurs, however tedious the recovery, it takes place ultimately almost without exception. Very rarely there may be suppuration. Bacilli have been found in the thrombus. More or less phlebitis is always present. The question as to the primary event, whether thrombosis or phlebitis, is seemingly settled by this finding of bacilli, in favor of the former. *Arterial* as well as *venous thrombosis* may occur, and the former may start with embolism; femoral arterial obstruction is most common, resulting in gangrene of the leg and foot. *Embolic abscess* may occur in the kidney and lung.

Arterial sclerosis sometimes succeeds as a consequence of the irritative effect of the toxins. It has not been frequent in my experience. Bedsores, formerly frequent complications in protracted cases, are much less frequent with modern nursing.

*Noma*, or gangrenous stomatitis, has appeared as a complication or sequel in children. W. W. Keen records nine cases, of which five proved fatal. Gangrene in other situations occurs more rarely, as in the vulva in females and in the perineum and about the anus in both sexes. This may be due to arterial thrombosis. Perineal fistulæ may follow in these cases.

It has been mentioned that *pneumonia* may usher in the disease, and a few words may be said here of the relation of the two conditions, pneumonia and typhoid fever. The term *typhoid pneumonia* is one in common use by many who have no definite notion of its meaning, and, like the term typhomalarial, has occasioned confusion. In the first place, the case may begin as a lobar pneumonia, the intestinal symptoms appearing at the end of the first week or later, at which time also the spots may appear, establishing the diagnosis, while the usual crisis of pneumonia fails to make its appearance. Again, a pneumonia may supervene in the second or third week of a typhoid fever as a complication in which the true relation is less difficult to determine. Finally, there may be a true pneumonia, to which stupor, a dry tongue, and general adynamia may be added, without the distinctive lesions of typhoid fever. This is true typhoid pneumonia, which it may not always be easy to separate from the typhoid fever beginning with pneumonia. Both of the forms of pneumonia may be caused by the typhoid bacillus or the pneumococcus. Hypostatic congestion has been referred to. Many cases formerly thus named are really instances of catarrhal or lobular pneumonia belonging to the class of inhalation pneumonias. Such may terminate in abscess and gangrene. When *pleurisy* occurs, it has the same relations to the disease as pneumonia. It is, however, more rare, but may also be purulent. An *initial* nephritis has been mentioned on page 18.

Certain *suppurative processes* sometimes included as symptoms should be regarded rather as complications than symptoms. Of these those in the parotid gland and ear are the most serious. They are, however, less

frequent in typhoid than in typhus fever. They are most common in the parotid gland, where, however, the inflammatory process does not always terminate in suppuration, occasionally resolving itself with or without local treatment. The duct of Steno is probably the route of infection in these cases by the pus organisms that find conditions favorable to their work. The middle ear may be invaded, producing *otitis media*. Here the Eustachian tube becomes the route of infection. Sometimes abscesses are multiple. Not infrequently convalescence is delayed by numerous *boils*, the effect of which in keeping up the temperature must be remembered.

The *bladder* may be a seat of suppuration, and *pyuria* is not infrequently present. George Blumer found it in ten out of 60 cases, or nearly 17 per cent., of a series admitted to the Johns Hopkins Hospital. I met it only once in a pronounced form in a series of 41 cases, but also in isolated cases more frequently since my attention has been called to its possibility. It is probably caused by the typhoid bacillus. The inflammation may extend to the pelvis of the kidney or begin there. *Orchitis* and *epididymitis* are also occasional symptoms during convalescence. Thompson S. Westcott collected 32 cases for Keen's book.<sup>1</sup>

*Cardiac complications*, including pericarditis, endocarditis, and myocarditis, are sometimes present. The latter may be a cause of sudden death.

*Neuritis* is an occasional complication in both the local and multiple forms. Osler found it, however, in but four of 389 cases. The pain may be severe and associated with the usual tenderness of the nerve trunks. I recall one patient who made a splendid recovery under the tub-bath treatment, but had the exquisitely tender toes first described by Handford. Such cases are not very rare. The tenderness is often so great that the bed-clothing must be kept raised by a cradle. I find neuritis, too, more frequent since I have been watching for it. Even cases of optic neuritis with atrophy of the optic nerve have been reported, but it is probable that these are sequelæ of meningitis mistaken for typhoid fever. *Tetany* sometimes succeeds typhoid fever.

Two sequelæ of typhoid fever, neither of frequent occurrence, are conspicuous by their symptoms. They are *insanity* and *tubercular phthisis*. The former is often typical acute mania, requiring the utmost vigilance to prevent the patient from injuring himself and others, or from escaping from the house or jumping from a window. Although this form of insanity is often prolonged for many weeks, the prognosis is singularly favorable, and recovery, sooner or later, takes place. Tubercular phthisis, when it occurs, has its predisposing cause in the lower tone of cell life, favoring the successful implantation of the specific bacillus, and is followed by its usual consequences.

Post-typhoid *bone lesions* are surprisingly common. Sir James Paget, Murchison, W. W. Keen, Haywood, Harold C. Parsons, and others have collected many cases. They include osteitis, necrosis, and periostitis. The tibia is the favorite seat,—91 times out of 216 of Keen's collection,—next the ribs 40 times, the femur 22 times, the ulna 15, and the humerus 11. Ebermaier, in 1887, obtained from two cases of suppurative post-typhoid periostitis the bacillus of Eberth in pure culture, and since then quite a

<sup>1</sup> "Surgical Complications and Sequels of Typhoid Fever," 1898.

number of cases have been reported; whence pyogenic properties of this bacillus may be inferred. Other bacilli—viz., the staphylococcus, streptococcus, and pneumococcus—are, however, at times associated. Golgi also produced suppuration by injecting pure typhoid bacilli subcutaneously at a distance from the fractured ends of a long bone in a lower animal. The pus showed in culture only typhoid bacilli.

*Perichondritis* appears to be a frequent complication in Germany, as shown by the collections of Keen, Lüning, and Westcott—169, 13, and 14, respectively. Keen's and Lüning's lists include the same cases. The disease is certainly less common in England and America. Necrosis of the cartilages, as well as ulcers, are frequent results. *Arthritis* is an occasional complication. All of these surgical complications are easily explained since the discovery of the bacillus.

The *typhoid spine*, to which attention was called by Gibney, of New York, in 1889, is a sequel of undetermined nature. There is severe pain in the back, commonly aggravated by motion. The pain may be throughout the whole spinal region or limited to the cervical, dorsal, or lumbar portions. From the latter it may extend toward the hips. It may be a spondylitis, but is probably a pure neurosis. Allied to this condition is perhaps an obstinate periostitis of the sternum or the crest of the ilium or front of the spinal column after typhoid fever, alluded to by William Pepper in the "Text-book by American Teachers." These conditions are rare and sometimes, at least, may be coincidences.

*Cholelithiasis* is now a well-recognized sequel, Dufourt having first reported it in 19 patients who had their first attack after typhoid fever. Further interest attaches because there is every reason to believe that the bacilli in the gall-bladder may be the initial cause of the process which results in stone. Bernheim first called attention to this possibility in 1889, and is sustained by Dufourt, Milian, Hanot, Maurice H. Richardson, Mason, W. H. Welch, and W. W. Keen.

**Relapses.**—These occur readily, succeeding often upon premature relaxation of diet. The demand of the convalescent for change in food, and especially for solid food, is often well-nigh irresistible, but should be denied until the temperature has been normal for a week. With our present views as to the etiology of typhoid fever relapses cannot be thus explained; for, while such indiscretion in diet might reasonably be expected to renew intestinal lesions, it would not be expected to revive the life of the original cause, the bacillus. Accordingly, we must look elsewhere. As long ago as 1871 Hamernjk, quoted by Murchison and MacLagan,<sup>1</sup> suggested that the relapse is really a reinfection of the large intestine from the small by the passage of sloughs over healthy lymphoid follicles. Hugh Stewart<sup>2</sup> reiterated this suggestion in 1894, but Murchison had early noted that the fresh lesions are sometimes higher up in the ileum than those of the first attack. Liebermeister believed that a part of the typhoid poison remained latent somewhere in the body, awaiting some exciting cause to bring it into activity. G. Fütterer<sup>3</sup> claims to have been the first to discover

<sup>1</sup> "Edinburgh Med. Jour.," vol. xiv., part ii., p. 865, 1871.

<sup>2</sup> "Practitioner," vol. liii., p. 185, 1894.

<sup>3</sup> "Medicine," November, 1898.

the typhoid bacillus in the gall-bladder in 1888;<sup>1</sup> also that he was the first to express the opinion that relapses are caused by typhoid bacilli entering the intestines with the bile. Dupré<sup>2</sup> and Chiari<sup>3</sup> were among the first to find typhoid bacilli almost constantly present in the gall-bladder of those ill with typhoid fever, and also suggested the possible responsibility of these bacilli for relapses. They may be discharged into the small intestine without harming it after immunity is secured. Prior to this, however, the patient may suffer a relapse. Thus may be explained the occurrence of relapses after indiscretions in diet, which stimulate the discharge of bile and bacilli into the bowel, thus increasing the chances of infection. Chiari's experience adds further confirmation, since in three cases of relapse the number of bacilli in the gall-bladder was very large. B. Curshmann, in his paper on typhoid fever in Nothnagel's "Encyclopedia of Practical Medicine," says of relapses: "Undoubtedly their development is to be attributed to the re-entrance into the circulation of living typhoid bacilli which, after the primary attack, were left behind in various organs; and associated with this, more or less complete development of the local and general typhoid lesions occurs."<sup>4</sup>

It has been usual to regard as necessary to the diagnosis of relapse the presence of those symptoms, essential to the primary diagnosis—viz., the characteristic spots, a return of the tidal or step-like temperature, and, scarcely less so, the enlarged spleen, and all of these after complete defer-escence. In my experience this dare not be insisted upon. The attack is usually less severe, the duration *shorter*, and recovery the rule. Relapses are to be distinguished from *recrudescence*, which is a simple return of fever, often induced by numerous causes, including lapses in diet, too much excitement, and the like. Relapses may be multiple. Transverse markings on the finger-nails incident to multiple relapses are sometimes noted. The number of cases in which relapses occur varies greatly in the experience of different observers—from one to 18 per cent. Of 112 cases admitted to the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania from the various military camps of the country, in the fall of 1898, there was a percentage of 10.7.

Relapses are more frequent in young persons than in older ones. A little girl of 14 under my care for a time in the Pennsylvania Hospital had six relapses with febrile periods of two or more weeks and a total duration of the illness of almost a year.

**Diagnosis.**—Typhoid fever is usually easily recognized by the fairly well trained medical man, while the experienced hospital physician may even know the disease by the dull, dusky facies. At other times diagnosis may have to be delayed until the distinctive signs appear. The peculiar range of temperature is the most distinctive symptom, and from it alone the diagnosis may be made. The rose-colored spots, occurring about the eighth day, are conclusive if present, but they are occasionally absent.

<sup>1</sup> "Münchener med. Wochenschrift," No. 19, 1888.

<sup>2</sup> "Les infections biliaires," "Thèse de Paris," 1891.

<sup>3</sup> "Prager medicinische Wochenschrift," 1893, No. 22. See also Brannan, "Twentieth Century Practice of Med.," vol. xvi., pp. 678 and 679.

<sup>4</sup> The term *recrudescence* is not always similarly used. Thus Curshmann, in the paper alluded to, regards relapse and *recrudescence* as due to the same cause and calls it relapse if it succeeds upon a perfectly afebrile period, and *recrudescence* if the rise in temperature occurs during the period of involution before the declining temperature has completely returned to the normal. I prefer to retain the distinction given in the text, which is also that adopted by Osler.

Diarrhea is less constant, and in my experience nosebleed still less so, but more characteristic. Both, however, require to be weighed in association with other symptoms. No one symptom is pathognomonic.

The resemblance of typhoid fever to certain cases of *rapid consumption* has long been recognized, but the modern temperature chart has greatly diminished the difficulty of distinguishing them. Certain cases of *malarial fever*, especially the autumnal type, also very closely resemble typhoid, but here, too, the temperature diagram is not identical, while the usually easy recognition of the malarial organism completes the solution. Where the two diseases are concurrent, as is sometimes the case, the difficulties are increased.

Mention has been made of the close resemblance of the so-called nervous variety of typhoid fever to *cerebrospinal fever*, and it is sometimes so misinterpreted. As the disease progresses, however, the distinctive signs develop and the correct diagnosis is gradually made. Further, unless an epidemic of cerebrospinal meningitis prevails, the probability that this combination represents the early stage of typhoid fever is far greater than that it is cerebrospinal meningitis. The popular term, "brain fever," now passing into disuse, doubtless included many of the cases of nervous typhoid.

More misleading, even though less frequent, are the cases beginning with decided pulmonary symptoms suggesting *pneumonia* rather than typhoid fever, and unless the physician is awake to the possibilities of such a beginning and watches further developments the case may be regarded as one of pneumonia with typhoid symptoms. Doubtless some cases that are still regarded as lobar pneumonia are typhoid fever. Such a mistake might have been made in the case reported by Osler in the third edition of his "Text-book," when only the symptoms and morbid anatomy of pneumonia were found, but in which pure cultures of the typhoid bacillus were isolated from the lungs, liver, kidneys, and spleen. No lesion of the intestine and no other organisms were present.

Certain cases of *concealed suppuration* resemble typhoid fever in the symptoms produced, and may for a time mislead. But again the temperature chart, after a few days' observation, will solve the question. It is in such cases that a study of the blood is of value—the presence of leukocytosis pointing to suppuration, and its absence, to typhoid.

*Of specific aids to diagnosis* the isolation of the bacillus is attended with many difficulties except in hospitals. Though tapping the spleen is not considered justifiable, cultures from the blood and feces are becoming more easy. Some recent studies by Warren Coleman and B. H. Buxton go to show that in 75 per cent. of 604 cases bacilli have been isolated from the blood at some stage of the disease.<sup>1</sup> *The serum diagnosis, or the Widal-Gruber reaction*, which depends upon the fact that the diluted serum of a patient suffering from typhoid fever will cause actively motile typhoid bacilli to lose their motility and to become aggregated into clumps, is the best aid at hand. The active principle underlying this reaction is the presence in the blood of a substance termed *agglutinin*. In many diseases this sub-

<sup>1</sup> "Bacteriology of the Blood in Typhoid Fever." Proceedings of the New York Pathological Society, 1904, N. S. iv

stance is present, and it is found to be specific in its reaction to the causal bacterium. However, in some normal sera a non-specific agglutinin is found, which will produce the agglutination of several varieties of bacteria. The test may be said to be pathognomonic, but, because of conditions to be spoken of later, not always applicable as an aid to the immediate diagnosis of a doubtful case. Kneass and Stengel<sup>1</sup> report that in 2383 cases of typhoid fever the reaction was present in 95.5 per cent. of the cases, and that in 1365 non-typhoid cases it was absent in 98.4 per cent. of the cases. Taking these statistics, the absence of the reaction in 4.5 per cent. of the typhoid cases may be due first, to faulty clinical diagnosis, for at the present time there is reason to believe that there are infections caused by bacilli of the typhoid-coli group, the sera of which will only agglutinate these modified types, which have been termed paracolony and paratyphoid infections. Second, it may be due to the fact that in these cases the test was not applied continuously during the supposed attack of typhoid fever, since from statistics collected by Hermann Biggs, of the Health Department of New York City, the serum of typhoid patients gave the reaction during the first week in about 70 per cent.; during the second week in about 80 per cent.; and during the third and fourth weeks in about 90 per cent. of the cases. Thus in cases clinically typhoid the test should be made every two or three days during the disease before it can be said that the reaction is absent. This late reaction, of course, is of little practical value, since the diagnosis will have been made much earlier by the more usual methods. The reaction has appeared for the first time as late as the 42nd day, and in a few isolated cases has remained absent throughout the course of the disease. Indeed the reaction has been found as long as eight years after recovery.<sup>2</sup>

The presence of the reaction in 1.6 per cent. of non-typhoid cases is due either to faulty technique, *i. e.*, the dilutions were not high enough since the agglutinin found in some normal sera will agglutinate the typhoid bacilli in insufficient dilution; or to the fact that the patient may have passed through a typhoid infection some months previous, because the reaction has been found in some cases to be present many months after the recovery from the disease. It may occur as early as the third day, but is usually observed about the seventh day. It gradually becomes more marked as the disease progresses, and is commonly present in the blood of convalescents, and for months after recovery, though in some cases it disappears before the end of the disease. It is also true that the severer the infection, the more marked the reaction, and *vice versa*. Pleural and pericardial effusions, the bile, the milk, and to some extent, the urine of typhoid fever cases, as well as the blood serum, possess this agglutinative property for typhoid bacilli.

Widal, in his original communication, described the reaction as it occurred *in vitro*, as follows: "The blood or serum to be tested was added to either a young bouillon culture or to sterile bouillon which is at once inoculated with the bacillus. In the former case the reaction with the typhoid serum appears usually within two or three hours, and consists in the clarification of the previously turbid fluid and the formation of a

<sup>1</sup> Gould's "Year book," 1898.

<sup>2</sup> "Clinical and Scientific Contributions upon the Value of the Widal Reaction, based upon the Study of Two Hundred and Thirty Cases," Philadelphia Med. Jour., vol. iii., p. 778.

clumpy sediment composed of accumulated bacilli. In the latter case the tube is placed in the incubator, and within 15 hours the reaction is manifest in the growth of the bacilli in the form of a sediment at the bottom of the tube, the fluid remaining nearly or quite the same." This method, of course, is impracticable from a clinical point of view and is further defective because no allowance is made for the degree of dilution or to the time necessary for the agglutination to take place.

There are several details in the technique of this test which require attention, in order to make it of value as an aid to diagnosis. I append the method employed at the William Pepper Laboratory of Clinical Medicine, because experience has proved its reliability. A strain of typhoid bacilli is selected which by experiment is known to be easily agglutinated by sera from undoubted cases of typhoid, and which gives little or no reaction to normal sera. The stock culture of this strain of bacilli is preserved on slanted agar at room temperature, and subcultures made once a month. For the test, a sub-culture 18 to 24 hours old is used. From this culture an emulsion or mixture is made in physiological salt solution. This emulsion is examined in the hanging drop with a power of 800 to 1000 diameters, and should be entirely free from clumping, the bacteria should be actively motile, and the number of bacteria to the field should not be too great. If any clumping is present, the emulsion should be filtered through a sterile filter paper. The blood is drawn into a sterile capillary tube having an enlargement in the middle. After it is collected the ends of the tube are sealed in the flame. One drop of the clear serum is diluted in five drops of a physiological salt solution (dilution one to five). One drop of the prepared emulsion of typhoid bacilli and one drop of the diluted serum are then placed on a cover glass and examined as a hanging drop. If no agglutination takes place within ten minutes the reaction is said to be negative; but, if agglutination does take place within that time, it may or may not be positive, since normal sera may agglutinate the typhoid bacilli in the dilution one to ten. A dilution one to 50 is then made: One drop of the serum is diluted in 25 drops of a physiological salt solution (dilution one to 25). One drop of the mixture of typhoid bacilli and one drop of the diluted serum are placed on a cover glass and examined in a hanging drop; and if agglutination takes place within an hour and the control remains free of clumping, it is said to be positive, otherwise it is negative.

This method furnishes a means for accurate dilution, but is, of course, less available than the dried blood method suggested by Wyatt Johnson, of Montreal, because of the necessity of having at hand a glass capillary tube. In the dried blood method the same technique may be followed as that described above. A drop of the dried blood, which has been collected on absorbent or smooth paper, or on a piece of glass, is diluted with five drops of a physiological salt solution, making an approximate dilution of one to five. The test should then be carried out in the same manner as in the serum method.<sup>1</sup>

**Diagnosis of Perforation.**—In view of recent increased success of operation for perforation, an early recognition of this accident becomes im-

<sup>1</sup> See also a paper on the "Principles Underlying the Serum Diagnosis of Typhoid Fever and the Method of its Application," by Prof. W. H. Welch, "Jour. Am. Med. Assoc.," August 14, 1897. An interesting résumé of the development of our knowledge of the subject will also be found there.

portant, to which end a close watch should be kept for warning symptoms. Among the latter is hemorrhage from the bowels, for, while by no means always followed by perforation, it precedes this accident in a certain number of cases. Its occurrence should, at least, excite increased vigilance in looking for the signs of perforation, and particularly suggests a count of the blood with a view to discovering leukocytosis. To this end frequent counts should be made. If leukocytosis be found, rapidly increasing, there is additional evidence of impending perforation, though it is to be remembered, too, that abscess in the parotid and otitis media also produce leukocytosis. Perforation itself usually ushered in by sharp pain, tenderness, rigid abdomen, lowered temperature, frequent pulse, followed later by meteorism, vomiting, the pinched features, and cold clammy skin of collapse. If the perforation is in the appendix, the symptoms are those of perforation succeeding appendicitis. It may occur in the mildest cases, and in such especially, the appearance of localized pain and tenderness may also be regarded as a warning. Tympany is not always present, while it is often evident when there is no perforation.

In a second class of severe cases where there is delirium or stupor, abdominal distention may be the only symptom. In a few instances there are no evident signs and the perforation may be first found at autopsy. This occurs commonly in cases of unusual gravity where the event is masked by the severity of the symptoms. On the other hand the most reliable signs of perforation may be present and operation fail to discover any.

**Prognosis.**—The mortality of typhoid fever varies so much in different epidemics and under different circumstances that statistics are of doubtful value in measuring fatality. Extremes of mortality claimed are as low as one per cent., and even less by the Brand bath method as carried out on the continent of Europe, and as high as 55 in army practice during campaigns and among negroes. The average of all may be put down approximately at from ten to 30 per cent. before the Brand cold tub treatment was instituted. Prior to this, hospital treatment appeared less successful than that of private practice. Since its introduction, because of the greater ease with which that treatment can be applied in hospitals, this can hardly be said to be the case.

In private practice a decided majority get well, fully 80 per cent., with rest, liquid diet, and family nursing. With skilled nursing, judicious feeding, and symptomatic treatment, a larger proportion of recoveries takes place, say 90 per cent. In hospitals where the Brand method is correctly carried out there is an easy reduction of mortality to seven per cent. and less. In this country the results have not been quite so satisfactory as claimed on the continent of Europe. The mortality of William Osler's cases at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore, has been 7.3 per cent. My own, at the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania and at the Philadelphia Hospital has been 7.3; that of James C. Wilson and others at the German Hospital, up to January 1, 1896, 7.25 per cent.—astonishingly uniform results.<sup>1</sup> Brand's own mortality has been but one per cent. Of my own cases treated by the

<sup>1</sup> These are the figures published in my first edition. In his third edition Osler reports the mortality up to date (1898) at the Johns Hopkins Hospital 7.1 per cent.—a trifle less than that to date of his second edition. This continues to be the percentage at that hospital as reported by Thomas McCrae, "The Practitioner," January, 1904.



Brand method almost all who died perished through perforation or hemorrhage of the bowels, the remainder from exhaustion, or toxæmia. Among the soldiers under my care at the University Hospital in 1898-99 treated by the Brand method the mortality was 4.5 per cent. Of 1948 cases at the Pennsylvania Hospital in the years 1901 to 1903, inclusive, the mortality was 7.8 per cent. The Brand bath treatment is less rigidly carried out at this hospital than at the University Hospital or the German Hospital in Philadelphia. Among causes which have contributed to reduce percentage of deaths is the including of mild cases as determined by more accurate diagnosis.

Being interested in the average residence in hospital of recovered cases of typhoid fever, I had 300 histories examined at the Pennsylvania Hospital and found the average residence 33 1/2 days. Of 35 cases that died during that period the average time in hospital before death was ten days.

*Unfavorable symptoms* are persistent high temperature, above 105° F. (40.5° C.), low muttering delirium, extreme tympany, hemorrhage from the bowels, and the signs of perforation. Walking typhoid has been almost always fatal in my experience, exhaustion being apparently caused by the continued muscular effort during fever.

*Sudden death* by syncope occasionally occurs, sometimes when least expected, during convalescence, or it may happen during the acme of the fever. In either event the immediate cause is not always discoverable, evident lesions being wanting in most cases. Pulmonary thrombosis and myocarditis have been found at autopsy in these obscure cases. Sudden death is much more frequent in men than women,—114 to 26, according to Dewèvre's statistics,—a surprising and almost incredible difference.

The *prognosis in children* under 15 is especially favorable. Recovery takes place in them with few exceptions, while I have been struck with the number of fatal cases in young people from 18 to 22. Then follows a period favorable to recovery, but after 40 the mortality again increases. The dangers at this older age appear to be from complications, especially pneumonia, as the symptoms peculiar to the disease are not increased in severity.

The *prognosis in pregnant women* is grave. In the first place, the pregnant woman usually aborts in the second week. This is, however, not invariably the case, G. H. B. Terry reporting<sup>1</sup> a case of undoubted typhoid fever occurring in a woman during the fourth month of her third pregnancy. She recovered, and on April 5 following gave birth to twin girls, healthy and weighing, respectively, six and seven pounds. According to L. Brieger, the mortality was 20 per cent. of cases treated by other than the bath method. The results of the bath treatment seem to be better. I recently had under my care two pregnant women at the end of the fifth and sixth months, respectively, now recovered, who were treated throughout by cold tub-baths without accident. Under any circumstances more women die of typhoid than men—this, too, though the disease is more frequent in men than in women. Fat persons bear the disease badly. Hemorrhage and perforation seem to be in no degree diminished by the Brand bath treatment. On

<sup>1</sup> "Medical News," February 16, 1901, p. 263.

the other hand, careful investigation shows that these accidents are not more frequent, as has been alleged.

*Death* in typhoid fever may be the result of any of the following causes: exhaustion incident to prolonged illness, hemorrhage, peritonitis, shock due to perforation, intoxication by the toxin of the disease, thrombosis or complications such as pneumonia or nephritis. As already intimated, sudden death sometimes occurs inexplicably.

**Treatment.**—*Rest and Diet.*—The primary conditions of a successful treatment of typhoid fever are rest in bed and a liquid diet, of which milk is the type. No one questions the necessity of putting the typhoid fever patient absolutely at rest in bed and not permitting him to rise for any purpose until convalescence is thoroughly established. That the diet should be liquid is as little disputed, while milk is generally conceded to be the safest form. It should be given at stated intervals, say once in three hours, in doses of from 4 to 8 ounces (118.28 to 177.42 c.c.) or as circumstances determine. Very rich milk is not desirable, hence such milk should be diluted with water or carbonic acid water, Vichy, or lime-water. The stools should be closely watched for undigested fragments of casein, and when these are present the milk should be reduced in quantity or further diluted. If there is diarrhea, the milk should be boiled while this lasts, and in obstinate cases peptonized. Animal broths of mutton or of chicken, also beef-peptonoids, panopeptone or malted milk may be associated with milk when change is demanded, but they are not as convenient, while beef-tea and essences are harmful. When the stomach is very irritable, albumen water may be substituted, in the proportion of the whites of two eggs to a pint of water, to which may be added a little lemon, or whisky or brandy if stimulants are indicated. Wine whey may be associated or substituted where, for any reason, milk cannot be used. In extreme feebleness of digestion peptonized milk may be administered by the rectum, but this is rarely necessary. Not more than 4 ounces at first of any nutriment should be administered at one time by the rectum, for this organ soon becomes intolerant of large doses.

While the nourishment above described fulfills also the indications for free ingestion of liquids, with a view to favoring elimination by the kidneys and bowels, plain water should also be freely given in the intervals between nourishment, and after each feeding the mouth should be carefully cleansed by disinfectant solutions.

There can be no reasonable objection to enlarging the dietary of ordinary cases of typhoid fever by any easily assimilable albuminous saccharine or amylaceous food. It is a mere matter of convenience. Typhoid fever does not differ from other cases of fever in demanding simple and easily assimilable food. It matters not much what it is, of the kinds referred to. It may be that we have been needlessly restricted in the past. Many cases are so ill that they can with difficulty be made to take any food, and whatever they will take most easily is best. On the other hand, it is evident that in the emergencies of hemorrhage and perforation a minimum amount of nourishment should be given, and I sometimes allow such patients to go many hours without food. In this disease, as in others, we must treat the patient and not the disease. The list of articles named

by Shattuck<sup>1</sup> and embodied in the footnote includes foods that may be added to or substituted for milk.

*The Brand Bath Treatment.*—In addition to rest and liquid nourishment the treatment that my own experience and a careful study of the experience of others place easily at the head, in every case when it can be carried out, is the cold tub-bath treatment, commonly known as the Brand treatment. Our method in the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania is as follows:

Before the bath the patient is first encouraged to empty the bladder, and if sweating, he is wiped dry. He is then covered loosely with a sheet and gently lifted into the bath sufficiently filled with water at 70° F. (21° C.), provision being made to rest the head upon an air-cushion or platform. Unless very weak, he may at first step from the edge of the bed into the tub, which should be lower than the bed. During the bath he is vigorously rubbed by the nurse, and encouraged also to rub himself. A compress wrung out of ice-water or an ice-cap is kept upon his head, or water at the same temperature is poured at intervals upon it, say, three times in the course of the bath, or the head is sponged with cold water from time to time. This is important in severe cases with decided nervous symptoms. At the end of 15 minutes he is lifted on the bed, which has been previously protected with a mackintosh and blanket. The wet sheet is replaced by a dry blanket, and the patient is rubbed dry. When this is accomplished, the under blanket and mackintosh are withdrawn and he is comfortably covered.

As soon as the patient ceases to shiver after his removal from the bath, which is usually in 20 minutes, the temperature is taken with a view to determine the effect of the bath. If delayed longer he may be in a restless sleep, and to wake him for the purpose of taking his temperature is needlessly disturbing. After this the temperature is not again taken until three hours after the bath. If then it exceeds 102° F. (39° C.), the bath is repeated. If the temperature is between 101° F. (38.2° C.) and 102° F. (39° C.), it is taken again in an hour; if between 100° F. (37.8° C.) and 101° F. (38.3° C.), in two hours; if below 100° F. (37.8° C.), not until three hours, but whenever the temperature exceeds 102° F. (39° C.) the bath is given, provided three hours at least have elapsed since the previous bath. This makes more than eight baths in the 24 hours impossible.

The effect of the bath upon the temperature varies with the stage of the disease; the reduction during the first week being often less than one degree, while toward the end of the second week and in the third week a fall of two or more degrees is quite usual. Fig. 4 shows these effects very nicely. In

<sup>1</sup> The following list, by Frederick C. Shattuck ("Diet in Typhoid Fever," "Jour. Am. Med. Asso.," 1897, xxix, p. 51), includes many allowable articles:

1. Milk, hot or cold, with or without salt, diluted with lime-water, soda-water, Apollinaris, or Vichy; peptonized milk; cream and water (*i. e.*, less albumen); milk with white of egg, buttermilk, kumiss, matzoon, milk whey, milk with tea, coffee, cocoa.

2. Soups: Beef, veal, chicken, tomato, potato, oyster, mutton, pea, bean, squash; carefully strained and thickened with rice (powdered), arrowroot, flour, milk or cream, egg, barley.

3. Horlick's food, Mellin's food, malted milk, somatose.

4. Beef-juce.

5. Gruels: Strained corn-meal, crackers, flour, barley-water, toast-water, albumen-water with lemon-juice.

6. Ice-cream.

7. Eggs, soft boiled or raw, egg-nogg.

8. Finely minced lean meat; scraped beef; the soft part of raw oysters; soft crackers, with milk or broth; soft puddings, without raisins; soft toast, without crust; blanc mange, wine jelly, apple sauce, and macaroni.

I should be disinclined to allow apple sauce, minced meat, scraped beef, or even soft toast, while there is fever. Ice-cream may be given in small quantity.

addition to the lower temperature the immediate effect of the bath is to add strength to the heart and volume to the pulse. The shivering, which begins from five to ten minutes after the immersion, is not allowed to interfere with the continuance of the bath, and it very rarely happens—indeed, scarcely ever—that anything occurs to interrupt the bath. It would be wrong, however, to say that there are no conditions under which it should be discontinued and the patient at once returned to bed. Such conditions

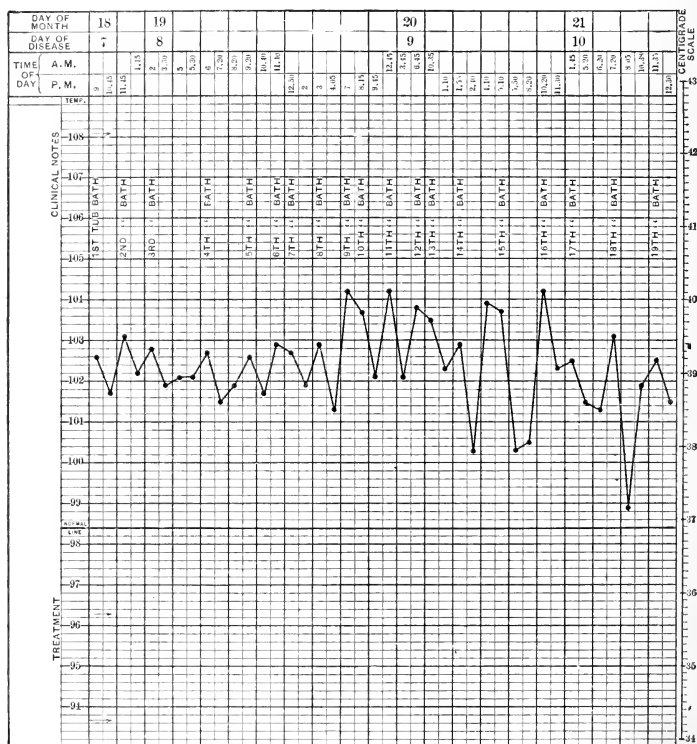


FIG. 4.—Chart Contrasting the Drop in Temperature after the Bath Early and Later in the Disease.

would be an almost absolute pulselessness with a blue, cyanosed appearance of the skin. Should this occur, hot-water bags should be applied to the feet and legs after the patient is put to bed.

The more remote effect of the bath may be said, in a word, to be milder of the symptoms in every particular. Delirium and stupor are scarcely known. The dry tongue is very much more infrequent, and diarrhea rarely demands other treatment. In the majority of cases I give no medicine, but do not hold myself bound to such course, meeting whatever symptoms seem to demand it by appropriate treatment. For a time I used to give the

patient a little whisky and water during the bath. Recently I have discontinued this, unless there seems some special reason for it. There is, however, no harm in it, and it serves to entertain and comfort him. I do not give a preliminary dose of calomel, as recommended by some, as there seems nothing gained by it.

None of the complications except hemorrhage from the bowels is allowed to interfere with the carrying out of this treatment, nor is menstruation or even pregnancy. The baths are discontinued during hemorrhage, lest the necessary movements of the body should re-excite it; but with the portable bath-tub to be described there need be no interruption even during hemorrhage, should the baths be indicated by the temperature. It is not claimed that the baths shorten the illness, they simply milder it. While it is probably true of typhoid fever, as of pneumonia, that it may abort spontaneously, we cannot cause it to abort by any means we possess.

In private practice the difficulties of the Brand treatment are greatly increased—unfortunately, sometimes are insuperable. They consist chiefly in the difficulty in arranging the bath and the strain on the attendants. By means of a portable tub devised by A. H. Burr,<sup>1</sup> of Chicago, a very large part, if not the whole, of these difficulties is removed. Burr's tub consists, first, of a large rubber sheet, with rings attached near its margins by elastic tapes; second, of a light wooden crib, with fastenings along the lower rail by which to attach the sheet. This frame folds by two movements into a compact bundle. The accessories are a siphon-shaped piece of hose and a bath thermometer. In using, the sheet is first slipped under the patient, brought up over the pillow, and tucked up alongside of the body. The frame is unfolded and placed down over the patient, resting on the mattress, and surrounding patient and pillow. The edges of the sheet are then drawn up and over the top rail of the crib down to the lower rail, and fastened by its rings. This completes a light and perfect tub, capable of holding 20 gallons of water. It can be emptied by the siphon in four minutes (Fig. 5). If the ordinary tub be used,—and in hospital service this is usually more convenient,—the same water, if it remains unsoiled by discharges, as it should, may serve for several baths.

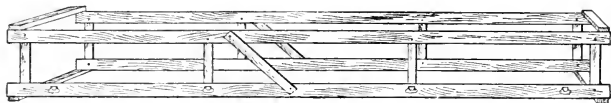
*Other Methods of Reducing Temperature.*—As contrasted with the Brand bath, other methods of securing the good effects of hydrotherapy seem trifling; yet, as it may be impossible to carry out this treatment, such methods must be considered. Sponging is one of the most usual, and if rightly carried out may be quite efficient. It should be resorted to, as is the bath, when the temperature exceeds 102° F. (39° C.), and continued for 15 minutes, or until the temperature falls. An important condition of successful sponging is often overlooked. A thin film of water should be left on the surface sponged, as it is the evaporation of this, rather than the temperature of the water, which is effectual in cooling the body. Temperatures that cannot be thus controlled can often be kept down by a partial wet-pack, which I have found very efficient: The patient's trunk is

<sup>1</sup> The Burr bath-tub is sold by E. H. Sargent & Co., 106 Wabash Avenue, Chicago, Ill. Another tub, as convenient and as easily managed, has been devised by S. Clifford Boston, West Grove, Pa., who dispenses with the framework, substituting strong iron supports, made by Jones, Leopold & Co., Southwest corner Ridge Avenue and Fairmount Avenue, Philadelphia.

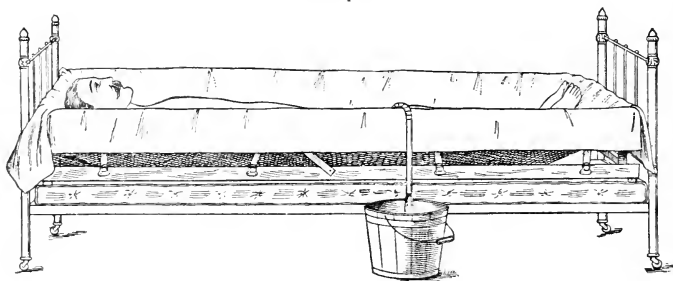
A convenient tub which may be used on the bed, known as the "Coile Bath Tub" is made by the Roco Bath Co., Knoxville, Tenn. The price advertised is \$100.

enveloped from the axilla to the thighs in a folded sheet, which is kept constantly wet, or as much so as is required to control the temperature, by the continual addition of cold water.

Antipyretics, including antipyrin, antifebrin (acetanilid), phenacetin, and others of the same class, which act by producing copious perspiration, are no substitutes for the baths, for, while they reduce temperature their effect is but temporary, and their continuous employment too depressing to the patient. Moreover, they are purely antipyretic, and lack the tonic influence to the nervous and muscular systems which characterizes the cold tub-baths. Quinin, formerly used in massive doses for its antipyretic effect, has been replaced by the more modern agents.



Frame Opened.



Bath-tub Completed, Showing Siphon for Drawing off the Water.

FIG. 5.—Burr's Portable Bath-tub.

Guaiacol, locally applied, is undoubtedly an efficient antipyretic, and has a warm advocate in Horace G. McCormick in the treatment of typhoid fever. After washing the skin, from one to ten minims are rubbed into it, and the part covered with oiled silk. The fall in temperature is prompt. Some rather alarming symptoms of collapse are, however, reported from its use, and it has failed to secure a permanent footing.

*The Expectant-symptomatic Treatment.*—Where the difficulties in the way of the Brand method are insuperable, I prefer to place the patient in bed on the diet described, combat the temperature by sponging or wet-packs, and for the rest adopt what may be termed the expectant-symptomatic method, meeting the symptoms as they arise in accordance with the following:

(a) *Indications for Alcohol and Other Stimulants.*—I prefer to reserve alcohol until called for by signs of waning strength. That it is a remedy of the greatest value I fully admit, but it is also true that mild cases may be carried to a favorable termination without it. On the other hand, I favor its liberal use when needed, giving sometimes as much as an ounce (30 c.c.)

of whisky or brandy every hour, though such doses are rarely needed. More frequently, a  $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce (15 c.c.) every four or two hours is quite sufficient, even where there is considerable adynamia. A low, muttering delirium, feeble, dicrotic pulse, and dry tongue are among the indications which imperatively demand alcohol; a high temperature does not contraindicate it, as an antipyretic effect also follows the use of large doses, and delirium is sometimes calmed by it. Other diffusible stimulants which may be used in conjunction or alternation with alcohol are the aromatic spirit of ammonia and the carbonate of ammonium, while digitalis and strychnin may tide a feeble heart over a period of weakness. From 5 to 10 minims (0.333 to 0.666 gm.) of the tincture of the former, and  $\frac{1}{30}$  to  $\frac{1}{20}$  of a grain (0.00216 to 0.00324 gm.) of the latter may be given as demanded, while their hypodermic use may be availed of. At the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania we have found hypodermic injections of camphorated oil 1 grain (0.066 gm.) to 15 minims of the oil (1 gm.) very useful in tiding over extreme adynamia. The injections may be repeated once in four hours or oftener.

Transfusion or, what is more practicable and as efficient, hypodermoclysis of normal salt solution (0.8 per cent. sodium chlorid) may be availed of in the extreme adynamia which sometimes attends protracted typhoid fever.

(b) *Treatment of Special Symptoms.*—Methods more directly adapted to control *delirium* are an ice-cap to the head, the bromids, spirit of chloroform, chloral, and Hoffmann's anodyne. With the cold-bath treatment they are rarely necessary. Occasionally meningeal symptoms are so violent that leeches may be used to the temples or behind the ears. I have seen an almost magically quieting effect thus produced. Blisters are useless.

Little difficulty is commonly experienced in controlling the *diarrhea* of typhoid fever. As stated, with the cold bath treatment very little special treatment is necessary. Simple preparations of opium, either alone or in combination with bismuth or nitrate of silver or acetate of lead, or salol, are usually sufficient. Specific action has been claimed for nitrate of silver. I have not been convinced of this, yet it is, in combination with the extract of opium,  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a grain (0.0162 gm.) of each, my favorite remedy for the diarrhea. Similar specific effect, more particularly in healing the ulcers, has been claimed for the oil of turpentine. The impression made by the teachings of the late George B. Wood on the profession of the United States as to this effect has not yet been effaced. He held that the dry, leathery tongue so often presented in this disease is the indication for its use. Whether such view was correct or not, few who have used the oil of turpentine have failed to see the coated tongue clear up under its use. Turpentine is also useful as a stimulant. It should be administered in doses of 10 minims (0.66 gm.) in mucilage of acacia every six or eight hours.

*Constipation*, especially during convalescence, is not infrequent, and should not be too hastily interfered with. If it is necessary to interfere, it should be by simple enema only. Aperients by the mouth in this stage are dangerous, and I am confident I have seen at least one life sacrificed by purgatives thus administered, having been succeeded by perforation, peritonitis, and death. On the other hand, indifference to the condition of the

bowels sometimes leads to fecal impaction, which can only be relieved by the finger. Such a state of affairs should be averted by watchful care.

*Hemorrhage* from the bowels should be treated by absolute quiet with cold to the abdomen. Food should be reduced to a minimum and should be of the blandest character, as represented by peptonized milk and liquid beef-peptonoids, panopeptons or malted milk. The administration of food may be suspended for some hours without risk. In severe cases the foot of the bed should be raised, and a hypodermic injection of  $1/8$  to  $1/4$  of a grain (0.008 to 0.016 gm.) of morphin given at once. In such cases, where prompt and decisive action is necessary, a syringeful of a filtered fluid extract of ergot may be injected hypodermically, and repeated later, if necessary, in half the dose. In mild cases, astringents such as tannic acid or gallic acid and the acetate of lead, may be given by the mouth, the former in doses of 10 to 15 grains (0.666 to 1 gm.) hourly until some hours have elapsed without a hemorrhage. The acetate of lead should be given in 1 to 3 grain (0.066 to 0.194 gm.) doses every three hours, combined with extract of opium,  $1/4$  of a grain (0.016 gm.). Turpentine is highly valued by some in the treatment of hemorrhage from the bowels. In cases of extreme weakness ether and digitalis may be given hypodermically, and normal salt solution may be injected under the skin or into a vein.

*Tympanitic distention* of the abdomen is often a distressing symptom. It is usual to treat it with turpentine in 10 minim (0.666 gm.) doses every four to six hours. The rectal tube should be cautiously used if the meteorism is great, and large quantities of gas are sometimes thus disengaged from the large intestine. The quantity of food should also be reduced to a minimum, as its fermentation and decomposition contribute to the gas.

I have recently been using with seemingly good effect a one per cent. solution of chloroform for the tympany of typhoid fever, giving 1 tablespoonful of such solution every four hours.

*Pain* induced by meteorism or otherwise may be allayed by turpentine stupes over the abdomen, though sometimes it may be necessary to reinforce the stupes by small doses of opium, or a light, warm poultice may be substituted. Sudden, sharp pain, similar to that produced by tympanitic distention of the bowel, is also caused by *peritonitis*, of which tympany is likewise a symptom, and the two often occasion many anxious moments to the physician necessarily in doubt as to whether this serious complication may occasion them. If a peritonitis is the result of extension of inflammation by continuity and not of perforation,—a possible condition,—recovery may take place. Such recovery is favored by absolute rest of the bowel, best secured by hypodermic injection of morphin,  $1/4$  grain (0.016 gm.), repeated if necessary. Even such movement as is necessitated by the use of the bed-pan is of questionable propriety. It is much better to permit the discharges to pass into a soiled sheet.

*Perforation* is the most serious accident which can happen to the typhoid fever patient, though it is claimed that recovery has taken place where peritonitis has been thus caused. Indeed, according to Murchison, 10 per cent. of all cases recover, five per cent. if general peritonitis supervene. Even this seems a large proportion, for in my experience no case of undoubted perforation has recovered. On the other hand, recent results



after operation have been so favorable as to make it imperative that the propriety of this treatment should be considered in each case. It is important to remember that early operations are those attended with largest success. In a recent and exhaustive paper ("Jour. Am. Med. Assoc.," January 20, 1900) on the "Surgical Treatment of Perforation of the Bowel in Typhoid Fever," W. W. Keen collected 158 cases and summarizes as follows:

OUT OF 158 CASES OF OPERATION FOR PERFORATION.

When Done	Total	Died	Recov- ered	Percentage of Recoveries			
Within 4 hours,.....	8	6	2	25	19.44	15	25.33
In 4 to 8 hours,.....	12	11	1	8.33			
In 8 to 12 hours,.....	16	12	4	25	30.76	29.09	
In 12 to 18 hours,.....	25	17	8	32			
In 18 to 24.....	14	10	4	28.57			
After 24 hours,.....	44	38	6	13.63			
Not given,.....	39	27	12	30.74			
Total,.....	158	121	37	23.41			

Keen also formulates the rule that *if the operation is not done within about twenty-four hours after the perforation, there is probably no hope of a recovery.* A surgeon should therefore be immediately called, and if collapse is not too profound laparotomy should be done.

For *sleeplessness* the milder soporifics usually answer; 10 to 15 grains (0.666 to 1 gm.) of sulphonal generally furnish the required rest. Chloralamid 30 grains (2 gm.), trional 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.), veronal in 5 grain doses, or chloral in 10 to 15 grains (0.666 to 1 gm.) may be used. If these remedies are insufficient, morphin must be used, 1/4 grain (0.016 gm.) being given by the mouth or half as much hypodermically, or more if necessary.

*Bed sores* can generally be averted by scrupulous attention to cleanliness, the thorough drying of the patient after washing, removing thus all traces of urine or other discharges, and by sponging the patient daily with alcohol or whisky. Above all, his position in bed should be frequently changed and all inequalities in the bed clothing should be smoothed out, while the bed should be kept clear of crumbs and other irritating particles. Should a sore appear it must be antiseptically dressed, while the part should be protected from pressure by pads and air-cushions.

For *hiccough* the more ordinary measures commonly effectual are counter-irritation by mustard, dry cupping, or blistering; the various anodyne measures, including Hoffmann's anodyne, chloroform, and the hypodermic injection of morphin. The anti-spasmodics, including sumbul, the oil of amber, and especially musk, have been useful. Cannabis indica is also recommended. In an obstinate case under my care after all measures had failed, including musk, the hypodermic injection of 1 grain (0.06 gm.) of camphor dissolved in oil, 15 minims (0.5 gm.) repeated hourly, relieved the case in six doses. A second case has been relieved in the same hospital by like treatment. In other cases I have found musk useful when all else

failed, but it is a most costly remedy and its use is thus necessarily limited. The dose is 5 to 10 grains (0.3 to 0.6 gms.).

The *cystitis* sometimes present in typhoid fever is commonly easily relieved by washing out the bladder with boric acid solution, say a dram (4 gm.) to a pint (0.5 liter) of sterilized water; or instead of this salol may be given in 5 grain (0.3 gm.) doses four or five times a day, as a urinary antiseptic. The best remedy is urotropin, which is a derivative of formaldehyd and is said to be non-toxic and non-irritating. According to Mark W. Richardson daily doses of 30 grains (2 gm.) will remove typhoid bacilli permanently from the urine in a week.

*The Management of Convalescence.*—In no disease is watchfulness during convalescence more important. The effect of indiscretion in diet in producing relapse and recrudescence has been referred to. But there are other dangers during convalescence. It is to be remembered that the complete healing of intestinal ulcers is often delayed after all other symptoms have disappeared except a slight elevation of temperature; that a deep-seated ulcer may thus remain with the thin peritoneum for its floor, rendered weaker by reason of imperfect nutrition. Such a membranous floor is known to have been torn by simply reaching over for a book and to be followed by a fatal peritonitis. These are reasons, too, for putting off the use of solid food until the temperature has maintained the normal for a considerable time, certainly a week. Then the diet should be changed most gradually, first permitting a soft-boiled egg or poached egg in the morning, and awaiting developments. If no fever follows, it may be continued daily. The next step is to allow some thoroughly softened milk toast, then a small quantity of well-boiled rice, with a suitable interval after each first trial until sure that no harmful results follow. Finally, tender meat may be allowed, and then soft vegetables one after another.

Emotional disturbance is a well-recognized cause of recrudescence, and should be carefully guarded against.

I have already referred to constipation and the importance of correcting it by enemata only.

During convalescence the *hair* is very apt to fall out, but usually returns in a natural way. It may be desirable to cut it close, though scarcely necessary to shave the head, as some recommend.

### *Special Forms of Treatment.*

**The Antiseptic Treatment.**—The antiseptic treatment of typhoid fever is based upon the idea of destroying the germs of the disease in the intestinal canal, and thus cutting off their harmful influence. This is the best that can be expected of it for it is clear that it is not possible to destroy the bacilli elsewhere in the economy—that is, in the blood, the spleen or other lymphatic tissues, or wherever they may be present. In addition to the localized effect on the specific bacilli in the intestine, this treatment claims also to arrest fermentation and check the activity of the commoner intestinal bacteria, which, it is alleged, are fanned into virulence by the presence among them of typhoid bacilli. The claims of the adherents of the method do not altogether agree, but its more moderate supporters hold only that it

renders the disease milder and diminishes its mortality, urging it more particularly in those cases where for any reason the Brand treatment cannot be carried out.

Among the remedies employed for their antiseptic effect are calomel, betanaphthol, carbolic acid, chlorin water, naphthalin, salol, and tincture of iodin. *Calomel* has long been used by various physicians in the treatment of this disease. Its popularity is partly due to the fact that it is also an excellent and safe laxative. It had the early support, in the treatment of typhoid fever, of Liebermeister who claimed that under its use the duration of the disease was shortened and its intensity lessened. His plan was to give three or four doses of 7 1 2 grains (0.5 gm.) each, *in the first 24 hours of treatment*. I have said that some of the supporters of the Brand treatment prefer to precede that treatment by such a dose of calomel. It can certainly do no harm, but I do not think that, as a rule, anything is gained by it. *Betanaphthol* is another efficient and non-toxic germicide. It is held that doses sufficient to produce an antiseptic effect are not irritating. These doses are 5 to 10 grains (0.33 gm. to 0.66 gm.) three times a day in a wafer, capsule, or tablet. It is sometimes combined with salicylate of bismuth if there be diarrhea, or salicylate of magnesium if there be constipation, as suggested by Bouchard. All the advantages of this treatment are claimed for it, including diminished abdominal pain, diminished meteorism, a clean and moist tongue, inodorous stools, rapid convalescence, and less tendency to secondary complications. The preparation betanaphthol bismuth should substitute other preparations of betanaphthalin 5 to 10 grain doses (0.3 to 0.6 gm.).

Another one of these remedies is a *compound of carbolic acid and iodin*,—1 part of the former and 2 of the latter,—given in doses of 1 to 3 drops, well diluted, three to six times a day. *Chlorin* water is also an old remedy recommended by Sir Thomas Watson and by Murchison, and recently revived in the treatment of typhoid by Burney Yeo, who claims that it cleans the tongue quickly and removes the fetor of the evacuations within 24 hours; that it reduces the temperature and shortens the attack; while the physical strength and mental clearness of the patient are maintained, together with a greater power of assimilating food and, consequently, rapid and complete convalescence. Yeo even claims a general antiseptic influence for this treatment. He adds to 12 ounces (360 c.c.) of chlorin water, 24 to 36 grains (1.584 to 2.376 c.c.) of quinin and an ounce (30 c.c.) of syrup of orange-peel, and gives an ounce (30 c.c.) every two, three, or four hours, according to the severity of the case.

*Salol* is recommended for the same antiseptic purpose; 40 to 50 grains (2.5 to 3.25 gm.) in the 24 hours, in capsules, wafers, or tablets, in doses of 5 to 10 grains (0.3 to 0.66 gm.). *Thymol* is recommended in the same doses. All these doses in my judgment are so large that I fear their harmful effect would more than equal any possible advantage.

**The Eliminative and Antiseptic Treatment.**—This treatment is intended to add to the antiseptic effect a prompt removal from the bowels of the bacilli and its toxic products. The first it is sought to accomplish on the principles previously described; the second by thorough daily evacuations of the bowels by means of purgatives, large quantities of fluids being given

at intervals to replace the liquid carried off in the discharges. This treatment is especially associated with the names of Woodbridge, of Cleveland, and Thistle, of Toronto. The former is dead and his treatment died with him.<sup>1</sup>

Thistle's method is much simpler and more easily carried out. Calomel is given daily in fractional doses, 1/2 grain (0.033 gm.) every half-hour, until three grains have been taken, followed three hours later by Epsom or Rochelle salts in 1/2 ounce (15 gm.) doses, sufficient being given to secure from three to five movements daily. To compensate for the withdrawal of so much fluid from the body as well as to eliminate the poison through the kidneys, the ingestion of large quantities of water is enjoined. For intestinal antiseptics salol is given in 5 grain doses, every three hours, with 8 ounces (236.56 c.c.) of water. Thistle is not so extravagant in his claims as Woodbridge, alleging, however, that hemorrhage, and perforation are both more infrequent. He reports in a recent paper 172 cases treated by himself and other physicians in Toronto, with five deaths—a mortality of three per cent. Of the fatal cases two died of pneumonia in early convalescence, two of intestinal hemorrhage, and one of hemorrhage from the stomach and nose with a general purpura in all parts of the body.

**Antityphoid Inoculation.**—The experiments of A. E. Wright and his co-workers seem to have shown that both the incidence and mortality of typhoid fever can be diminished by typhoid inoculation or vaccination. This is done by injecting subcutaneously dead cultures of the typhoid bacillus, sterilized at 60° to 65° C. These injections are made in convenient parts of the body with the usual antiseptic precautions, directions being furnished with the bottles of carefully prepared vaccine. Both local and constitutional symptoms supervene after injection. Local symptoms may appear as early as 15 minutes to two or three hours, and are severe inversely as the constitutional symptoms are mild. They are manifested by a red blush and more or less serous exudation at the site, followed by some lymphangitis upward toward the axilla or downward toward the groin, according as the inoculation is made above or below the middle line of the body. The consequent serous hemorrhage appears to be due to a diminished coagulability of the blood caused by the inoculation, and to prevent it Wright recommends the administration of 30 or 40 grains of calcium chlorid. The effect of alcohol, or other substance, which like alcohol diminishes the coagulability of the blood, increases the serous hemorrhage. For two or three months after inoculation a hard nodule as large as a pea may be felt at the site.

Constitutional symptoms also supervene in from 15 minutes to two or three hours, and are increased by muscular exertion after, or fasting before the operation. These symptoms include some headache and malaise in mild cases, with rigors and symptoms of collapse in severe cases, lasting five or six hours. With a view to mitigating both constitutional and local symptoms, Wright recommends two smaller injections, adjusted so as to avoid the more unpleasant effects, rather than a large one.

Roughly speaking, the incidence of typhoid fever was diminished in at

<sup>1</sup> Those who desire the details of these treatments may find them in the earlier editions of this text-book.

least one-half of the inoculated. As to mortality, in the aggregate the proportion of deaths to cases among the inoculated was rather less than half that among the uninoculated. The duration of the protection conveyed by antityphoid inoculation persists at least through the second year, probably during the third year. The applicability of this treatment in practice, in sporadic cases is another matter and practically may be said to be nil; only in the case of troops where infection has been started and in some epidemics would it seem to be available.

For a thorough exposition of the subject the student is referred to "A Short Treatise on Antityphoid Inoculation," by A. E. Wright, London, 1904.

In France Chantemesse has prepared an antityphoid serum, as contrasted with the antityphoid vaccine, which he claims to be curative and prophylactic. In a publication dated December 24, 1902,<sup>1</sup> he shows from a review of the statistics of the various hospitals of Paris, excepting that under his own direction, a combined mortality of 18 per cent. from April 1, 1901, to Oct. 1, 1904. Under the serum treatment, which had been received by 545 patients in three and a half years, and up to the time of his report, only 22 died, a mortality of four per cent. It may be mentioned in passing that the reduced mortality thus claimed is 2.7 per cent. less than that obtained by the tub-bath treatment by physicians in the United States.

In this country William Royal Stokes and John S. Fulton,<sup>2</sup> following Abel and Loeffler, produced an antityphoid serum by injecting gradually increasing doses of a 48 hour old virulent culture obtained from the Johns Hopkins Hospital Laboratory into the subcutaneous tissues of the abdomen of the hog, which was subsequently bled, the serum drawn and trikresolized. It was found that guinea-pigs given subcutaneous injections of this protective serum were rendered immune against a peritoneal injection of a virulent typhoid bacillus; more precisely, that a *subcutaneous injection* of the serum in doses of from 1/600 to 1/800 of the body weight protected guinea-pigs against four times the minimum fatal dose of intraperitoneal injection of the typhoid bacillus. The injection of 1/3000 to 1/4000 of the serum by weight into the *abdominal cavity* will protect against five times the minimum fatal dose, and a dose of 1/600 to 1/800 of the body weight will protect against seven times the minimum fatal dose of the typhoid bacillus. Thus far only 18 cases have been treated by Stokes and Fulton's serum, and although they admit that so few cases lead to no conclusion and perhaps no very reasonable inference, they are encouraged to think they have shortened the duration and intensity of the fever in most of the cases, while none were lost.<sup>3</sup> So far as I know Stokes and Fulton have not continued their studies.

**Prophylaxis.**—Very important in the management of typhoid fever is the *disinfection of the excreta*, which are the contagium bearers, through the

<sup>1</sup> "Presse Médicale," December 24, 1902. Reported to Seventh French Medical Congress. See also editorial in "Jour. Am. Med. Ass.," Dec. 17, 1904.

<sup>2</sup> "Maryland Medical Journal," August, 1902.

<sup>3</sup> In explanation of the imperfect results thus far obtained by antityphoid sera, allusion should be made to the observations of Ehrlich, Bordel and Wasserman to the effect that bacteria are destroyed during artificial immunity by the joint action of two distinct substances, one the intermediate or immune body produced in the blood when animals are immunized by the injection of non-fatal doses of various bacteria. The second is called the complement or end body, and is a sort of digestive ferment always present in the blood. It is destroyed by a temperature of 60° C. (160° F.) while the immune body is not.

careless handling of which the disease is communicated to others. The same is perhaps true of the vomited matters and also of the urine.

Among the most suitable disinfectants, on account of its cheapness, harmlessness, and effectiveness, is *chlorinated lime* or bleaching powder, also called chlorid of lime, which contains from 25 to 40 per cent. of available chlorin. A solution made in the proportion of 4 to 100 of water, containing, therefore, at least one to 1.5 per cent. of chlorin, is sufficiently strong. Some of the solution is placed in the bed pan before it is used, and the remainder, in all say a pint, is added afterwards. Thorough admixture should be made, and an hour allowed to elapse before the stool is thrown into the privy or water-closet, if disposed of thus. In the country the disinfected stool may be buried. Solution of chlorinated *soda*, or Labarraque's solution, is a more elegant but not more effective disinfectant. As it contains about two per cent. of chlorin, it is nearly equivalent, when undiluted, to the above solution of chlorinated lime. Chlorinated lime rapidly loses its chlorin, and should be kept in tight vessels.

*Carbolic acid*, in the proportion of one part of the commercial acid to ten of water, is an efficient disinfectant for this purpose. The same method as that described for chlorinated lime must be employed, and an exposure of twenty minutes to half an hour maintained. Quite as good a disinfectant for intestinal evacuations is *milk of lime* or ordinary "whitewash," composed of lime in solution and in suspension. This should be thoroughly mixed with the evacuations until the mass is distinctly alkaline, and should remain in contact for one or two hours, since it is slower in its action than chlorinated lime or carbolic acid, and much longer exposures are required to destroy the bacillus. It is particularly adapted to the disinfection of privy wells and latrines, into which it may be thrown, freshly prepared in the proportion of 1 part by weight of recently burned calcium hydrate to 8 of water, or about 12 per cent. It is not harmful to water-closet pipes in such quantities as required to disinfect the stools of a single case of typhoid fever.

*Acidulated solution of corrosive sublimate* 1 to 500 is an admirable disinfectant for stools, but is not altogether harmless to plumbing, whence it is less satisfactory when excreta are thrown into city water-closets.

*Sulphate of iron or copperas* is a good antiseptic and deodorant, but not a true disinfectant. An antiseptic prevents the growth of bacteria without necessarily killing them, while disinfectants do both. Above all, it must not be forgotten that simple *hot water* thoroughly mixed with the fecal discharges is an efficient disinfectant.

Most important in the prophylaxis of typhoid fever is *drainage*. It seems to be now definitely settled that the fever originates in every instance from the ingestion in some way of the typhoid bacillus, commonly in drinking-water or milk, or in food contaminated with it, more rarely by inhalation. Hence, it is of the greatest importance that the sources of water used in domestic economy should be protected against contamination by discharges containing the specific bacilli, which sometimes find their way into wells and other sources of water-supply.

*Nurses* should be enjoined to guard against their own infection by due attention to cleanliness after caring for the discharges of a patient and even

after tubbing, while watchful care should be taken not to carry the hands to the mouth during the bath. On the other hand, the infection is one of the easiest controlled, and the spread of typhoid fever can be effectually prevented if the precautions advised are followed. Moreover, it cannot be too strongly insisted upon that any infected water or milk may be rendered thoroughly harmless by boiling and filtration. Physicians should lose no opportunity to inculcate this truth as well as that limpidity of a water does not guarantee its innocuousness, while it may even be slightly turbid and yet harmless. Boiling is the most important treatment, far more important than filtration.

### PARATYPHOID FEVER.

**Definition.**—A form of infectious fever presenting a clinical picture identical with that usual to typhoid fever, but due to a bacillus whose characteristics are intermediate between the typhoid and colon groups, and called, therefore, the paratyphoid or paracolon bacillus.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—While ulceration may be absent, recent studies have shown its occurrence. The spleen is always found enlarged. The ulcers, when present, are less like those of typhoid and more like those of dysentery, while there is a characteristic absence of alterations of Peyer's glands and of the solitary follicles. Focal necrosis has been found in the liver. The anatomic lesions are said by Wills and Scott<sup>1</sup> to be, in a word, those of septicemia.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are those of typhoid. Differences observed are, in general, greater mildness and more favorable prognosis; greater frequency of diarrhea and more frequent termination of fever by crisis. Myositis and purulent arthritis, very rare in typhoid fever, are among the complications. The disease does not respond to the Widal test, but the serum reacts upon fresh cultures of the paracolon or paratyphoid bacillus.

**Treatment** is in no way different from that of typhoid.

### MOUNTAIN FEVER.

**SYNONYM.**—*Rocky Mountain Fever.*

**Definition.**—A form of fever met in the mountain regions of Western United States, characterized by its moderate temperature, 101° to 103° F. (38.2° to 39.3° C.), a duration of from two to four weeks, and generally mild course.

Mountain fever has come to be pretty generally acknowledged as a variety of typhoid fever, modified by the combined factors which go to make up the influence of high altitudes. Certain it is that if a careful study of the cases reported by various observers is made, the clinical picture differs no more from the typical picture of typhoid fever than the abortive forms of typhoid occurring at low altitudes. The claim of Charles Smart,<sup>2</sup> of the U. S. Army, that mountain fever is a typho-malarial fever may be mentioned only as a matter of history. Such a view implies a sepa-

<sup>1</sup> Wills and Scott, "Journal of Infectious Diseases," Jan. 2, 1904.

<sup>2</sup> "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," January, 1878.

rate infectious disease, typho-malarial fever, the possibility of which is denied at the present day. The lesions of typhoid fever in the ileum have been found in at least two of the very few fatal cases reported.<sup>1</sup> An enlarged spleen is also found. Finally, Woodruff's<sup>2</sup> studies of the serum reactions in this form of fever have furnished all necessary proof of the identity of the disease with typhoid fever.

Epistaxis occurs. So far as I am aware, however, no spots have been reported except a "doubtful *tâche rouge*" by Roland G. Curtin<sup>3</sup> in one of four cases seen by him in 1868 in the State of Wyoming. Diarrhea has been noted, but there is a tendency rather to constipation—not infrequently the case in typhoid fever. Tympanites also occurs. The other symptoms are those incident to all fevers, such as debility, headache, and frequent pulse.

Doubtless many imperfectly studied instances of other forms of disease are classed by indifferent observers as mountain fever, as in a case mentioned by Curtin.

Mountain fever is not to be confounded with *mountain sickness*, another condition incident to unusual exertion at high altitudes. In it there are dyspnea, frequent pulse, dizziness, and bleeding at the nose; also great prostration on exertion, and sometimes slight elevation of temperature.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of mountain fever, mainly symptomatic and roborant, would be, so far as any special measures are needed, that of typhoid fever.

## TYPHUS FEVER.

SYNONYMS.—*Typhus Exanthematicus*; *Petechial Fever*; *Pestilential or Putrid Fever*; *Ship Fever*; *Jail Fever*; *Camp Fever*.

**Definition.**—An acute, highly contagious fever, favored by closely crowding human beings; especially characterized by sudden onset of high fever, by a petechial eruption, typhoid symptoms, and short duration as compared with typhoid fever; terminating suddenly at the end of the second week.

**Historical.**—It is commonly conceded that the plague of Athens, so graphically described by Thucydides (B. C. 470 to 400), was the same as the typhus fever of to-day, though it has also been held identical with the Oriental or bubonic plague, which, like typhus, until recently has been regarded as growing very rare. It is also possible that what is so often mentioned in the Scriptures as pestilence may have been typhus, although this too many have been Oriental plague. The same is true of numerous epidemics which prevailed during the first fifteen hundred years of the Christian era, many of which were undoubtedly typhus, especially in Spain and Italy. Among the names were *La Pourpre* in French, *Tabardiglio* in Spanish, *Petecchie* in Italian, *Fleckfieber* in German, all of which mean "spotted." It was called pestilential, putrid, malignant, petechial, and "jail" fever in England, and also "the plague" until 1760, when the name typhus was given it by Sauvages. The history of its separation from typhoid was given under that disease.

**Etiology.**—Though of acknowledged infectious nature, no organism has as yet been isolated that can be held responsible for typhus fever,<sup>4</sup> but

<sup>1</sup> One is reported by Surgeon Hoff, U. S. Army, "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," January, 1880; the specimen from another is in the United States Army Medical Museum, Washington, D. C.

<sup>2</sup> Woodruff, C. E., "The Form of Typhoid Fever Called Mountain Fever; Widal's Test; Afebrile Cases," "Jour. Am. Med. Assoc.," 1898, vol. xxx. p. 753.

<sup>3</sup> "Rocky Mountain Fever." Reprint from the "New York Med. Jour.," January 8, 1887.

<sup>4</sup> For a summary of the observations thus far made on the "Micro-organisms in Typhus Fever," see a paper with this title by J. B. Byron and Egbert Le Fevre, in vol. ii., "Researches of the Loomis Laboratory," New York, 1892, p. 130.



several non-distinctive bacilli have been isolated from the blood and tissues of patients. Fostered by close crowding, filth, and famine, it each year becomes more infrequent as the conditions favoring it are eliminated, and there is reason to believe it will ultimately be stamped out. Thus, in 1897 there were only three cases in all the London fever hospitals. Ireland has been its home for centuries, but filthy and crowded sections and the almshouses of large cities have at different times furnished seats for its lodgment. My own experience with the disease is limited to two mild epidemics in the Philadelphia Hospital in 1866 and 1883, and another quite serious in the Camden County (New Jersey) Almshouse in the winter of 1880-81. Quite a serious epidemic prevailed in New York City in 1881-82, and a milder one in 1892-93. Sporadic cases rarely occur, but its spontaneous origin is scarcely possible, though such possibility was admitted by Murchison, whose judgment on fevers was at once time regarded as almost infallible.

Typhus fever is eminently contagious, and cases should be promptly isolated. Nurses and others in constant attendance upon typhus patients are more liable to be attacked than those who, like the physician, merely visit them daily, although perhaps no disease in the past has included among its victims so many medical men. It is not known precisely what the contagium bearer is. It may be all the exhalations and discharges from the body, but it is not especially the bowel discharges.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As to the morbid anatomy of this disease, there is really nothing distinctive. Rigor mortis is apt to be delayed. The petechial eruption remains after death, and gangrenous bed-sores may be found on the body. The most constant lesion is *moderate enlargement of the spleen*, and in this enlargement the *liver* and *kidneys* may share, and their cells be the seat of cloudy swelling due to fever heat. Indeed, all the tissues, including the heart muscle, may be granular from this cause. The splenic enlargement is mainly due to vascular engorgement, but there may also be some hyperplasia of lymph-cells. The lymph-follicles of the intestine may be enlarged from the same cause, but there is no ulceration of these or of Peyer's patches. The blood is dark and liquid. Hypostatic congestion of the lungs is very frequently found; likewise bronchial catarrh. The permanence of the eruption after death is in strong contrast with that of typhoid fever, which disappears after death.

**Symptoms.**—The *period of incubation* is usually about 12 days. It may be less. There is seldom any prodrome, the *invasion* being *sudden*, announced by a *chill* or *chills* followed by headache and great *muscular pain*, especially in the back, and by *high fever*, the temperature rapidly rising to 103°, 104°, 105°, and 106° F. (39.4°, 40°, 40.5°, 41.1° C.) without any of the tidal-wave rise characteristic of typhoid fever. The *pulse* is at first full and strong, but soon weakens and becomes frequent—120 and more. There is extreme *debility*. Almost characteristic are the *red, congested conjunctivæ*, the *dusky face*, *dull expression*, and *low, muttering delirium*, which contrasts strongly with the sometimes active delirium of typhoid. The tongue is early coated and becomes rapidly dry. The bowels are constipated.

On the third to the fifth day the *eruption* presents itself; it is of *two kinds*, the *petechial* and the *mottled*. The *petechial*, or more characteristic,

is at first not unlike that of typhoid fever, but is darker in hue and disappears less readily on pressure; a little later it is barely influenced, and still later does not respond at all to pressure. It has become hemorrhagic, petechial—the blood is outside the vessels. There may be spots exhibiting each one of these stages. This eruption is also more scattered than that of typhoid fever, appearing all over the body, while that of typhoid is limited to the chest and belly. In addition to the petechial eruption there is also a peculiar *dark mottling* of the skin, an alternation of purple blotches with others of a light hue, generally capable of being influenced by pressure, but these blotches, too, may become blood extravasations.

With the *beginning of the second week all of the symptoms deepen*; The tongue becomes dry, fissured, and leathery; sordes collect on the teeth:

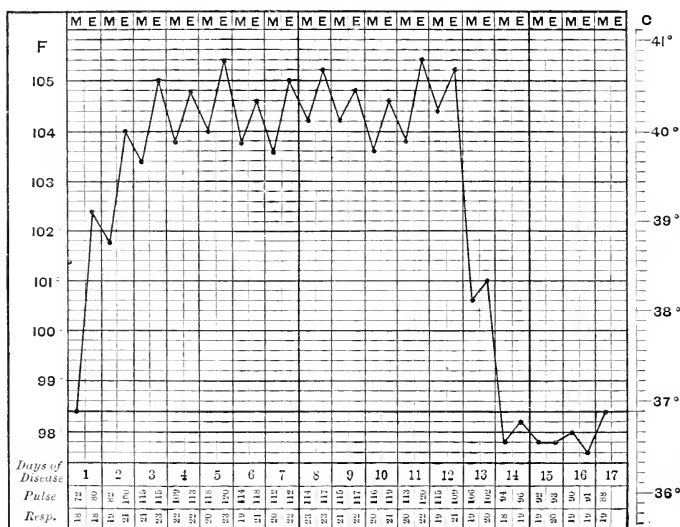


FIG. 6.—Temperature in Typhus fever ("Pepper's American Text-book of Medicine.")

stupor deepens, there are subsultus and nystagmus, *coma vigil*—the patient is unconscious, but the eyes are wide open,—and picking at the bed-clothes. At this time, too, the peculiar disagreeable odor said to be characteristic of typhus fever makes its appearance. It is variously described: by Gerhard, as pungent, ammoniacal, and offensive; by the late George B. Wood, as like the odor of badly ventilated rooms, in which a number of persons are collected; and by others, as like the odor given off by rotten straw or the urine of mice. Gerhard and Murchison both held that its degree was proportionate to the degree of contagiousness of the case. The breathing becomes more rapid, the pulse weaker, scarcely appreciable, and the patient may die of adynamia; or at the end of the second week a *crisis* occurs, he falls asleep, the temperature declines as rapidly as it rose, and often after a long

sleep the patient wakes up refreshed and with a clear head. Convalescence now progresses, and although it may be slow, relapses rarely occur.

A few symptoms require special allusion: First, the *fever*. The skin is burning hot and the temperature rises to 106° F. (41.1° C.), and even 108° F. (42.2° C.) and 109° F. (42.7° C.) toward a fatal termination. It is the *calor mordax*. There is always *hypostatic congestion of the lungs* and, along with this, a great deal of *bronchial catarrh* and *cough*. Such catarrh may pass into a broncho-pneumonia, which may terminate in gangrene of the lungs.

The *urine* is concentrated, as in all high fevers, and urea and uric acid are relatively increased. *Albuminuria* is also common, but there is not usually any organic change in the kidney beyond the cloudy swelling referred to. *Retention of urine* on account of the mental hebetude may occur, and should be guarded against by frequent examination and catheterization. *Bed-sores* are common, and there may even be gangrene of the extremities.

Instances of the ambulatory form of typhus fever are much more rare than of typhoid, but they are occasionally met.

**Diagnosis.**—How does typhus fever differ from *typhoid* fever: I have referred to the differences in the eruption in the two diseases. But the temperature of typhus fever is quite as characteristic as that of typhoid fever. In the latter disease we have the peculiar tidal-wave course described. In typhus fever, in the first place, the average maximum temperature is higher; for, while a temperature of 106° F. (42.1° C.) is not uncommon in typhus fever, 105° F. (40.5° C.) in typhoid is quite high. The temperature in typhus quickly reaches the maximum, usually from the third to the fifth day, continues with light remissions until the 12th or 14th, then there is a sudden decline. The ascent is steady and continuous, and only marked by slight morning remissions, while in typhoid fever the morning remissions are decided. The pulse, during the first three days, is usually about 100; after that it becomes more frequent and feeble, running up to 120 or higher, until the drop in temperature, when there is a corresponding fall in the rate of the pulse. It is seldom dicrotic, as in typhoid fever. Typhus fever more frequently begins with a *chill* than does typhoid; the important symptoms, including the eruption, appear earlier. In isolated cases, however, there may be difficulty in diagnosis.

Malignant measles, hemorrhagic smallpox, cerebrospinal fever, and bubonic plague are diseases for which typhus fever may be mistaken. The eruption of malignant measles is not unlike that of typhus fever, and it appears first in the face. The extreme adynamia and the typhoid symptoms are very similar. There is bronchitis in both, but the coryza and acute nasal catarrh are not found in typhus, while concurrent with the case of malignant measles are others of a milder and more typical nature. The latter fact also aids the diagnosis in variola, where, too, in the malignant form the hemorrhagic tendency is more marked and occurs early in the disease.

*Cerebro-spinal* fever has often been mistaken for typhus, and in the early stage the suddenness of onset, the eruption, and the nervous symptoms are all calculated to mislead. One has to wait but a few days, however, before

the courses of the two diseases diverge. *Bubonic plague* has been confounded with typhus, but it seems to have been a very different disease, resembling typhus only in its fatality. Bubonic plague, as described to us,—for our knowledge is from descriptions,—is characterized by the same suddenness of onset, the chill, high fever, and prostration, as is typhus fever; but the eruption appears earlier, and quickly becomes carbuncular, while the course of the disease is much shorter.

**Prognosis.**—The mortality of typhus is high, but different epidemics vary in this respect. During the epidemic at the Camden County Almshouse (1880–81) referred to, 103 of the officers and inmates were attacked. Of this number 23 died, giving a mortality of a little over 22 per cent. I might add that of the officers of the institution, seven, including an attending physician, the steward, the matron, the assistant matron, and two nurses, together with the builder of a new hospital building, were attacked, and all died. In some epidemics the mortality is even greater, reaching 50 per cent., but it is commonly put down at from 12 to 20 per cent. The disease attacks either sex at any age. One of the modes of death is by acute fatty degeneration of the heart, and the peculiar dusky complexion sometimes seen may be due to the inability of a weak fatty heart to propel the blood through the capillaries. Sudden death is not unusual. It is more than likely that with the improved nursing and hygiene of the present day the mortality of typhus would be less.

**Treatment.**—Whenever possible, typhus fever should be treated in the open air (in tents), as the safety of attendants as well as recovery of patients is favored thereby. There is no reason why hydrotherapy should not be as serviceable in typhus as in typhoid, but it is absolutely necessary that free stimulation should be associated with any treatment. We know that the greatest danger lies in the asthenia, which can be met only by stimulants. If there is one disease in which the free use of alcohol is indicated more than in another, it is typhus fever. The quantity required, of course, must be governed by the condition of the patient. In some cases it may be necessary to give 1 ounce of whiskey (30 c.c.) every hour. Quinin is also strongly indicated, as are digitalis and strychnin as heart strengtheners. When the temperature becomes high, if the cold bath be not used, sponging of the body in the way described under typhoid fever may be substituted. The same objection exists to phenacetin and antifebrin as in typhoid; that is, they dare not be relied upon as an exclusive means of reducing temperature, but they may be used as adjuvants. Other symptoms should be treated as they arise. Specific antiseptic treatment has proved to be without peculiar advantage.

After the crisis, which, as has been said, is strikingly well marked in this disease, it is simply necessary to treat symptoms as they arise. The accompanying bronchitis is treated, if it requires treatment, like any other bronchitis, but the ammonium salts are especially indicated on account of their stimulating qualities, while the aromatic spirit of ammonia is an especially convenient preparation for these purposes. Alcohol, ammonia, and camphorated oil may be given hypodermically to tide over emergencies.

The patient should be nourished as in typhoid fever—by nutritious liquids, including milk, milk punches, egg-nogg, and nutritious broths.

## RELAPSING FEVER.

SYNONYMS.—*Fbris recurrens*; *Famine Fever*; *Seven-day Fever*; *Typhus icterodes*.

**Definition.**—Relapsing fever is an acute infectious disease, characterized by two or more febrile relapses separated by periods of total remission and caused by the inoculation and multiplication of the spirochæta of Obermeier.

**Historical.**—Like typhus and typhoid fevers, relapsing fever is not a new malady for a disease corresponding very closely to it was described by Hippocrates as prevailing two thousand years ago on the island of Thasus, off the coast of Thrace. Typhus and relapsing fevers often prevailed together, and many of the older reports of typhus with relapses doubtless referred to relapsing fever. Strother in 1729, speaks of frequent relapses: also Lind, in 1763. John Rutt, however, in 1770, gave the first clear description of relapsing fever as it prevailed in Dublin in 1739, 1741, 1745, 1748. After this many epidemics of what is evidently relapsing fever were recorded until 1817. It was still regarded as a modification of typhus, even in 1817-19, and, according to Christison, "there was a very general impression that the relapsing fever could produce the common typhus." After 1819 the disease almost disappeared until 1826, when another epidemic of both typhus and relapsing fevers broke out. Then for the first time a distinction was drawn between the two fevers, especially by O'Brien, who published an account of the epidemic as it appeared in Dublin. Numerous epidemics appeared from time to time since that date in Great Britain and Ireland and on the continent of Europe, but it has been growing less as cleanliness and hygiene improved. It prevails, also, as might be expected on account of the defective sanitary conditions, in India and Eastern Europe. It made its first appearance in America in 1844 in an emigrant ship from Liverpool to Philadelphia, and was described by Meredith Clymer. It was especially studied in India by Vandyke Carter, of Bombay. In September, 1869, it again visited Philadelphia, and New York in November, and a somewhat extensive epidemic prevailed in the former city, in which I had some experience with it.

**Etiology.**—The specific cause of relapsing fever is the *spirochæta Obermeieri* formerly regarded as a bacillus of the genus spirochæta, but now regarded as probably a protozoan parasite—a trypanosome. First discovered by Obermeier in the blood of victims, it is known by his name as the *spirochæta Obermeieri*. It is a narrow spiral about 0.025 to 0.05 mm. (1/1000 to 1/500 inch) in length—that is, its length is three to six times the width of a red blood-disc. *It is found floating among the blood-discs during the fever.* In the intervals the organism is not found, but small, glistening spherules, said to be its spores, take its place. Confirmation of the contagious nature of the disease is found in the fact that it has been communicated from one human being to another by inoculation of blood, and to monkeys in the same way. It may be supposed that the organism is given off in the breath or from the skin. The operation of the cause is undoubtedly favored by overcrowding, by filth, and by destitution. Yet the disease is not confined to the poorly fed. This was especially proved in the Philadelphia epidemic of 1869, when a considerable number of fairly well-to-do persons were affected, although they always resided in crowded districts. Neither age, sex, nationality, nor season is a factor in its causation.

F. G. Novy<sup>1</sup> who has made the latest study of relapsing fever has concluded that a "plurality" of relapsing fevers is very probable. This conclusion was reached after a study of the blood from two cases of the disease,

<sup>1</sup>"Relapsing Fever and Spirochetes," F. G. Novy and R. E. Knapp "Transac Assoc. Amer. Physicians," vol. xxi., 1906.

from different sources, one from New York, and one from Bombay, and is based on certain anatomical differences in the spirillum; that of Bombay being more like that of tick fever from which it, however, differs. The spirillum of tick fever (the *spirillum Duttoni*) is composed of cells 16 microns long while the *s. Obermeieri* is but eight microns long, and the number of turns in each cell is about the same. Moreover, the width of the spiral of tick fever is two or three times that of *s. Obermeieri*, being two to 2.7 microns as compared with one micron. Clinically, however, the diseases are very similar.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no essential morbid anatomy, and such as is found corresponds with that of typhus. Most conspicuous is *enlargement of the spleen*.

**Symptoms.**—The *period of incubation* varies greatly, so that it is put down at from two to 14 days. According to Murchison, there may actually be no interval between exposure and the invasion. The latter is sudden by a *chill, fever, intense pain* in the back and limbs, with *dizziness*. This abrupt invasion is a distinctive feature, and in perhaps none of the contagious diseases is it, as a rule, so marked. Exceptionally only is there a short period of *malaise* with *loss of appetite*. On invasion the temperature rises rapidly and quickly reaches 104° F. (40° C.) The patient cannot retain his feet, and promptly takes to his bed, feeling very sick, rather than profoundly weak. There may be *nausea* and *vomiting* and even *convulsions* in the young; the pulse rises rapidly, more rapidly than in typhus, reaching 140 on the second day, and later 150 and 160. The patient may be *delirious*, but the typhoid symptoms are not usually so profound as in typhus, and the tongue remains moist. *Jaundice* appears in a certain number of cases on the third or fourth day, usually in one out of every 12 cases, occasionally as often as one in every four or five. The temperature during the paroxysm fluctuates slightly, being higher in the evening. *Sweating* and *sudamina* are often present, and occasionally *petechiæ*, but there is no characteristic eruption. Rarely, Murchison says in eight out of 600 cases, a roseolar rash appears, or there may be a *mottling* like that of typhus, which, however, always disappears on pressure, and disappears entirely in three or four days—differing in these respects from the similar eruption of typhus. *Herpes* may be present. There is occasionally *abdominal tenderness* in the epigastric or iliac region, and the *enlarged spleen* may be easily detected, but there are no active intestinal symptoms. The *liver* may be also *slightly enlarged*, extending lower than in health.

The *spirillum* is to be found in the blood and should always be looked for. It may readily be detected with a power of 500 diameters without any special preparation of the blood, care being simply taken to secure a thin film.

**Crisis.**—If the invasion of relapsing fever be sudden, its termination is no less so. It is by crisis, beginning usually with sweating. After five or six days of unabated fever sweating sets in, which soon becomes profuse, the temperature falls rapidly to normal or even subnormal, the various discomforts fade away, and in the course of a few hours the patient is apparently well. Rarely, the crisis may be ushered in by a diarrhea, an epistaxis, or the appearance of menstruation.

The crisis does not always take place at the same stage of the disease.

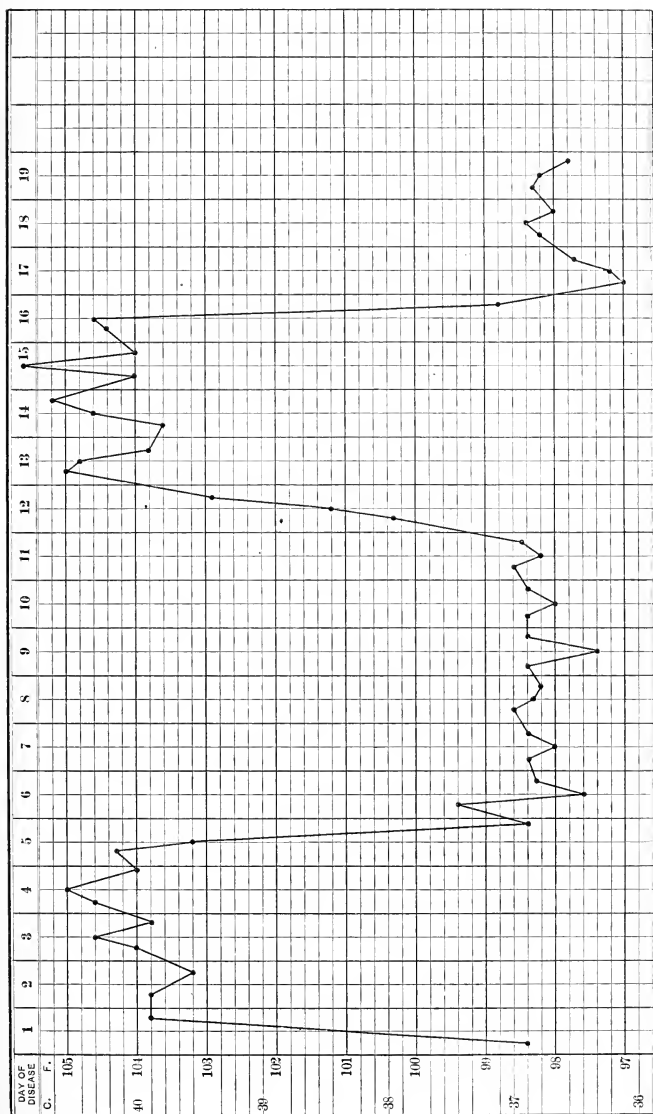


Fig. 7.—Temperature Chart of Relapsing Fever Showing Relapses.—(From Murchison on "Fevers.")

It may occur as early as the third day or not until the tenth, or even the 15th, but most commonly on the seventh. While the crisis is ordinarily followed by some relaxation and faintness, there soon ensues a rapid recovery of natural and healthful feeling. Occasionally, however, the depression is greater and a sensation as of collapse occurs, especially in delicate or elderly persons.

*Relapses.*—Again, in a week from the crisis, generally on the fourteenth day from the primary chill, another occurs, or a series of them, with fever, and the paroxysm repeats itself, to be again succeeded by a crisis at a somewhat shorter interval. There may be a third or even fourth and fifth paroxysm; more commonly they are limited to two or at most three. Each succeeding attack is shorter than the previous one. Occasionally there is no relapse, the disease terminating with the first crisis. Convalescence, usually rapid, is sometimes prolonged, and the *duration of the entire illness* may be put down at from 18 to 90 days, and the patient rarely returns to work within six weeks. One attack does not secure immunity from another.

*Complications.*—Among the complications may be mentioned bronchitis, pneumonia, nephritis and hematuria. The spleen may enlarge until it ruptures. It may attain a weight of four and one-half pounds (10 kilos), and may be the seat of infarcts. Albuminuria occurs as in other fevers characterized by high temperatures. Pregnant women usually abort in the relapse, and the child, if not still-born, survives but a few hours. Postfebrile paralysis may occur, and troublesome ophthalmia succeeds in some epidemics.

*Diagnosis.*—In its early stages relapsing fever is not unlike *typhus*. In suddenness of onset, rapid rise of temperature, habitat, and subjects, the resemblance is close. The readiness with which a patient takes his bed is characteristic of each, but in relapsing fever the adynamia is not so great as in typhus, and it is rather because of a dizziness that he cannot keep about. The crisis cuts short all doubt on this point of confusion with typhus. In the intense muscular pains, especially in the back, relapsing fever resembles *smallpox*, but the eruption in the latter disease sets doubt at rest.

*Malaria fever* may be suggested by the relapse, but the presence of an organism in the blood of each of these affections, widely different in appearance, permits the settlement of such confusion by the microscope. The prevalence of an epidemic is, of course, of great assistance in the diagnosis between relapsing fever and any of the diseases with which it may be confounded.

*Prognosis.*—The prognosis of relapsing fever is not unfavorable. The higher mortality reported in some of the earlier epidemics in Great Britain and Ireland was doubtless due to an admixture of typhus. An average for several years in a number of cities in Great Britain and Ireland, according to Murchison, has been 4.3 per cent.; in the epidemic at Bombay in 1877-78, Vandyke Carter estimated the mortality at 18.02 per cent; while in the Philadelphia epidemic the studies of William Pepper, 2d, and Edward Rhoads found it 14 per cent. I am sure that in private practice during this epidemic the mortality was not so great. There are some accidents, which have been already alluded to, that are responsible for a few deaths. Thus, the spleen has ruptured from extreme congestion. Pneumonia sometimes causes a fatal termination. It has been said that the crisis sometimes termi-



nates in collapse with its characteristic clammy coldness, pulselessness, unconsciousness, and fatal end. A fatal nephritis occasionally complicates the disease, death being preceded by uræmic convulsions. Certain cases associated with jaundice, called by Griesinger "bilious typhoid," are often fatal. Some striking cases of this kind were noted by Pepper at the Philadelphia Hospital in the epidemic of 1869-70.

**Treatment.**—The febrile paroxysm demands much the same treatment as in typhus—careful nursing, sponging or cool bathing, nutritious, easily assimilable food, and stimulation, although the latter is less important than in typhus. No drug has the power to prevent the recurrence of the relapse, although quinin is indicated, and, as in other adynamic fevers, is useful only as a roborant. It is reasonable to expect that aspirin, phenacetin, antifebrin, or antipyrin will relieve the muscular pains. Should they not suffice, morphin, hypodermically, can be relied upon.

The studies of Novy go to show that the serum treatment will probably be ultimately successful.

## MALTA FEVER.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Mediterranean Fever; Neapolitan Fever; Rock Fever; Undulant Fever.*

**Definition.**—An anomalous fever, characterized by irregular remissions and relapses, copious sweats and rheumatoid pains, and caused by a bacillus known as *micrococcus melitensis*.

**Distribution.**—The various names of Malta fever indicate its distribution on the Mediterranean littoral, outside of which it has been thought infrequent; but in 1898 J. J. Kinyoun<sup>1</sup> suggested its presence on the Southern Atlantic coast of America and the islands of the Gulf of Mexico, a suggestion confirmed by the report by J. H. Musser and Joseph Sailer of a case originating in Cuba.<sup>2</sup>

**Etiology.**—The *micrococcus melitensis*, the cause of this peculiar fever, has been studied by Bruce, whose results have been confirmed by Hughes. Its morphological and biological features have been accurately studied by H. E. Durham. It is found in large numbers in the spleen, but has not been isolated from the blood. It is as yet undetermined whether it is air-carried or water-carried. Pure cultures have been obtained, the disease has been reproduced in monkeys, and the micrococcus isolated from the infected animal. Malta fever has been regarded as a form of typhoid, of malarial typhoid, and in consequence of enlargement of the mesenteric glands, noted by Italian observers, has been called adenotyphoid. It has also been thought to be an anomalous form of malarial fever, and been ascribed to "chronic poisoning with fecal accumulation." On the other hand, it does not give the Widal typhoid fever reaction, while A. E. Wright and F. Smith have shown that the blood of Malta fever patient reacts with pure cultures of the *micrococcus melitensis*. This would seem to settle its independent nature. The disease attacks mostly the young.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Our knowledge of the morbid anatomy of Malta

<sup>1</sup>"Gaceta de Caracas," July 15, 1898, and "Philadelphia Med. Jour.," January 14, 1899, p. 63.

<sup>2</sup>"Philadelphia Med. Jour.," December 31, 1898.

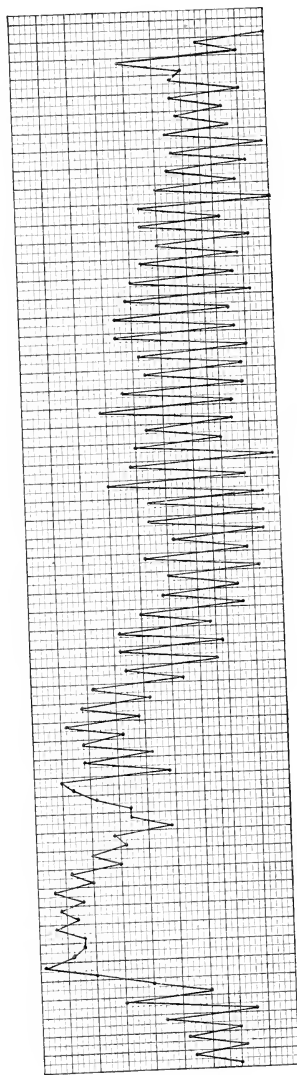
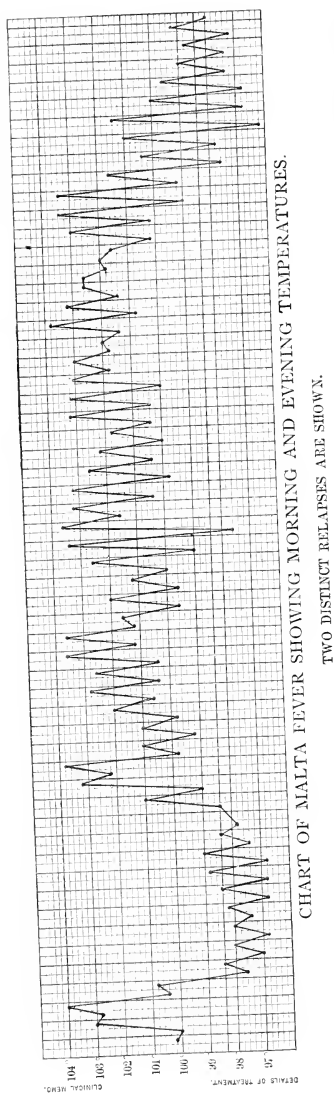


FIG. 8.—(After Musser and Sailer.)

fever is not definite. Thus, Bruce says no characteristic lesion of typhoid fever is found, while Perry says of "rock fever" that in 100 autopsies made during four years' residence in Gibraltar, the typical lesions of typhoid were present without exception. Among these is enlargement of the spleen and mesenteric glands.

**Symptoms.**—There is usually a *period of incubation* of from six to ten days. The onset is gradual, with *headache, sleeplessness, and thirst, loss of appetite, without chilliness or high fever* at first. There is no diarrhea; spots are not found. These symptoms, more or less pronounced, last from three to four weeks, when the first remission sets in, simulating convalescence. It lasts a few days only, when the first relapse appears, this time with *rigors, high fever, and often diarrhea*, and the symptoms of the first attack intensified. This relapse lasts for from five to six weeks, to be followed by another remission of from ten days to two weeks. Then follows the second relapse, when recur the symptoms of the first relapse, to which are superadded great *debility, night-sweats, pain* in the larger joints, including hips, knees, and ankles, and in the testicles—one or both—lasting three or four weeks. Then follows a third remission, which may last for a month or six weeks. Then a third relapse of shorter duration, adding to the other symptoms a heavily *coated tongue*, a high temperature, 105° F. (40.5° C.) and above in the evening, but normal in the morning, the night-sweats, and especially the rheumatic pains, being markedly severe. All the joints now seem to be involved, and motion is an agony. The fibrous tissues are also often involved in this relapse, especially the *tendo Achillis* and fibrous structures about the ankle; also the lumbar aponeuroses and sheaths of the nerves from the sacral plexus.

**Diagnosis.**—The rarity of the disease and the peculiarity of its symptoms may cause it to be overlooked for some time. The serum reaction is, however, characteristic, cultures of the specific bacillus responding to the serum of the blood of the disease as in typhoid fever.

**Prognosis.**—This is generally favorable, not more than two per cent. perishing.

**Treatment.**—This is symptomatic, being directed to the relief of the symptoms and the support of the patient, against the exhaustive effect of the disease. A case seems to have been successfully treated with Malta fever antitoxin by Fitzgerald and Ewart.<sup>1</sup>

## THE MALARIAL FEVERS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Ague; Fever and Ague; Chills and Fever; Marsh Fever; Swamp Fever; Paludal Fever; Miasmatic Fever; Intermittent, Remittent, and Pernicious Remittent Fever; Bilious Fever; Estivo-autumnal Fever.*

**Definition.**—Malarial fever is an infectious fever, of intermittent or remittent type, due to an organism known as the *plasmodium* or *hematozoön* of malaria.

A chronic cachectic condition due to the same cause is known as "chronic malaria" or "malarial cachexia." Chronic malaria has really a more definite morbid anatomy than the acute malarial fevers. The term

<sup>1</sup>"The Lancet," April 15, 1899.

"malaria"—meaning, in the Italian, bad air—was originally applied to the supposed specific cause of the fever, but it is also used to express the consequences of such cause.

**Varieties of Malarial Fever.**—The malarial fevers are *intermittent* or *remittent*. The former is characterized by paroxysms of fever, between which there are total intermissions. In the remittent form there are remissions or abatements in the fever, but not intermissions. The remittent fevers exhibit much less regularity than the intermittent fevers, even in their remissions, and in consequence of their prevalence in the later summer and fall have among other irregular types been included under the head *estivo-autumnal*. This term embraces also all the malignant types, which are rarely seen in the spring months. The term "irregular" malarial fevers is quite as distinctive and perhaps more accurate than *estivo-autumnal*.

The paroxysms of fever may come on daily at the same hour, when they are called *quotidian*; they may occur every other day, when they are known at *tertian*; or they may occur every third day,—that is, skip two days,—when they are called *quartan*. More rarely occur *quintan*, *sextan*, *septan*, and *octan* fevers, with intervals of four, five, six, and seven days, respectively. It will be noted that in naming these periods the day of the paroxysm and that of the following paroxysm are both counted. The "*double tertian*" is a fever in which paroxysms occur each day but at different hours, the hours on alternate days corresponding with each other. In these cases the alternate paroxysms may also be of different intensities. The *quotidian* is really a *double tertian*, the paroxysms occurring at the same hour or nearly the same hour each day. In like manner there may be *double quartans* and even *double quotidians*.

Although the paroxysms in true intermittent fever commonly occur at the same hour, they may happen a little earlier each day, when they are called "anticipating" or they may happen a little later when they are called "retarding." The former is apt to occur when the disease is becoming more severe, the latter when it is abating. The paroxysm varies in length in the different varieties. In the *quotidian* form it lasts from ten to 12 hours, in the *tertian* six to eight hours, and in the *quartan* four to six hours.

*Malarial cachexia* referred to in the definition, also known as chronic malaria, will be fully considered later.

**History.**—These fevers have ever been a field which seemed to promise reward to the seekers after a parasite origin. In the days of Hippocrates (B. C. 460-357) it was recognized that marshes breed malaria. John K. Mitchell,<sup>1</sup> an eminent American physician, was, however, the first to suggest, in a scientific manner, the parasitic origin of malarial fever. This was in 1840; in 1850 John K. Barnes,<sup>2</sup> of the United States Army, also called attention to such a mode of origin. In 1869 Binz, the pharmacologist, declared that the cause of malaria was an ameboid protozoön, because of the specific action of quinin on ameboid organisms. Massy, Basa, Wiener, Polk, Holden, Salisbury, and others, all suggested a fungous origin of malaria on more or less unstable foundations. It was not until 1879 that Ed. Klebs and C. Tommasi-Crudeli succeeded in isolating a germ which they called *bacillus malariae*, from the low-lying atmosphere over marshes and from the soil itself, the inoculation of which into rabbits, they alleged, produced malarial paroxysms with enlargement of the spleen and pigmentation. No permanent impression was, however, made by this announcement. The very next year, 1880, A. Laveran, a French army surgeon, discovered the *plasmodium* referred to, and announced the discovery to the Paris Academy of Medicine in 1881 and 1882. His

<sup>1</sup> "On the Cryptogamic Origin of Malaria and Epidemic Fevers," "American Journal of the Medical Sciences," Philadelphia 1849.

<sup>2</sup> "U. S. Army Reports," 1850, p. 163.

researches were made in Algiers, and in the course of the next three years he published numerous papers. His results were confirmed by Richard in 1882. E. Marchiafava and A. Celli published, in 1885, their observations on the same organism in the blood of malarial patients in Rome. These observers were the first to insist upon the ameboid property of the intracellular form. From this time our knowledge has been enormously extended by many observers, among whom may be especially mentioned Golgi (1885-92) and Canalis (1893) in Italy; Vandyke Carter (1887) and Patrick Manson (1893-96) in England; in this country A. C. Abbott, W. T. Councilman (1885), Surgeon General Sternberg and William Osler (1886), Walter James (1888), George Dock (1889-92); William Sydney Thayer and John Hewetson as authors of a masterly monograph in 1895, and James Ewing in 1900. Patrick Manson (1894-96), Surgeon Major Ronald Ross (1895-96), and Daniels (1899) in England from their India studies, Grassi, Bignami, and Bastianelli (1898-99) in Italy, and W. G. MacCullum and Eugene L. Opie in this country, have developed the mosquito theory to a positive demonstration that malaria may be conveyed from the mosquito to man, and from man to the mosquito.

**Etiology.**—The malarial fevers are to-day believed to be caused by a protozoön known as the *plasmodium malarie*, *hematozoön* or *hematomonas malarie* and *sporozoön malarie*, because of its multiplication by spores.

Hæmosporidia or parasites of the red corpuscles are not confined to man but are met in the blood of birds, fish, frogs and such mammals as monkeys, bats and cattle as well. In birds and frogs they are especially numerous and apparently harmless unless very abundant.

*To Study the Malarial Organism in Man.*—The malarial organism<sup>1</sup> is best studied as follows: Fresh preparations.

A drop of blood is taken from the finger or lobe of the ear of a case of ordinary tertian intermittent fever during the chill, or an hour or two previous, while the temperature is gradually rising. It should be placed on a sterilized cover glass which should be allowed to fall gently on a glass slide, without pressure, and carefully examined by the microscope. If the observer is fortunate he will find one or more pale, mulberry-like bodies analogous to those in FIG. 9, *A*<sub>2</sub>, *A*<sub>3</sub>, made up of from 12 to 20 segments, each with a refractive dot in its center and all massed about a clump of black pigment granules. Careful focusing will show that this body lies within a red blood-corpuscle whose delicate walls and pale substance surround it. On the same slide may be seen other similar bodies

<sup>1</sup> These organisms are readily seen with a power of 500 to 600 diameters, but are best studied when magnified 1000 times, say by an oil immersion  $1/12$  th. For more precise study take from the finger-end, or better, the lobe of the ear, thoroughly cleansed, a drop of blood and place on a sterilized cover-glass, which should then be allowed to fall gently on a glass slide, without pressure. If the study is prolonged, the edge may be sealed with paraffin, or a ring of oil. Staining may be practiced as follows:

A thin layer of blood is spread on several clean cover-slips, which are first left to dry in the air for a few minutes, and then placed in absolute alcohol to fix the blood-corpuscles and parasites. After 13 to 20 minutes the cover-slips are dried and are ready for staining, although the last stage may be deferred indefinitely.

They may be stained with saturated solution of methylene blue, which, as shown by Celli and Guarneri, is best dissolved in blood serum or ascitic fluid.

Double staining, which, if successfully performed, gives brilliant results, should be done by Ehrlich's method, as modified and improved by Romanowsky, 1890; Ziemann in 1898, and Nocht in 1899. The staining fluid is a mixture of a one per cent. solution of eosin with a saturated solution of methylene blue, which develops a third stain that colors the chromatin. The eosin stains the red discs pink, the methylene blue stains the hemosporeida blue, while the third stain colors the chromatin a violet tint.

To prepare the Nocht-Romanowsky staining fluid, Ewing directs as follows. Make first the following three solutions:

1. *Polychrome Methylene Blue Solution.*—To 1 oz. of polychrome methylene blue (Grübler) add five drops of three per cent. solution of acetic acid (U. S. P. 33 per cent.) to neutralize the undue alkalinity.

2. *Ordinary Methylene Blue Solution.*—Make a one per cent. (saturated) watery solution of methylene blue, preferably Ehrlich's rectified, or Koch's by aid of gentle heat. This solution improves with age and should be at least a week old.

3. *Eosin Solution.*—A one per cent. solution in water of Grübler's aqueous eosin.

Then to ten c. c. of water add four drops of (3), six drops of (1) and two drops of (2), mixing well.

*To Use.*—The specimens fixed by alcohol or heat are immersed for two hours specimen-side down, and will not overstay by 24 hours' immersion. They should be then washed in distilled water, dried slowly over the flame and mounted, if desired, in Canada balsam. The density of the blue may be varied to suit individual fancy, nor need the proportions be rigidly followed but most important is the accurate neutralization of the polychrome solution.

Preliminary studies may be made of the *drepanidium ranarum*, a similar parasite in the red corpuscle of the frog (Osler, Canadian "Lancet," No. 7, 1882); or on the hematozoa of birds. (See papers by W. G. MacCallum and Eugene L. Opie in "Jour. of Experimental Medicine," vol. iii. No. 1, 1898; see also Angelo Celli's admirable book on "Malaria," 2d ed., translated by John Joseph Eyre, London, 1900, where the whole subject is treated most interestingly and fully.)

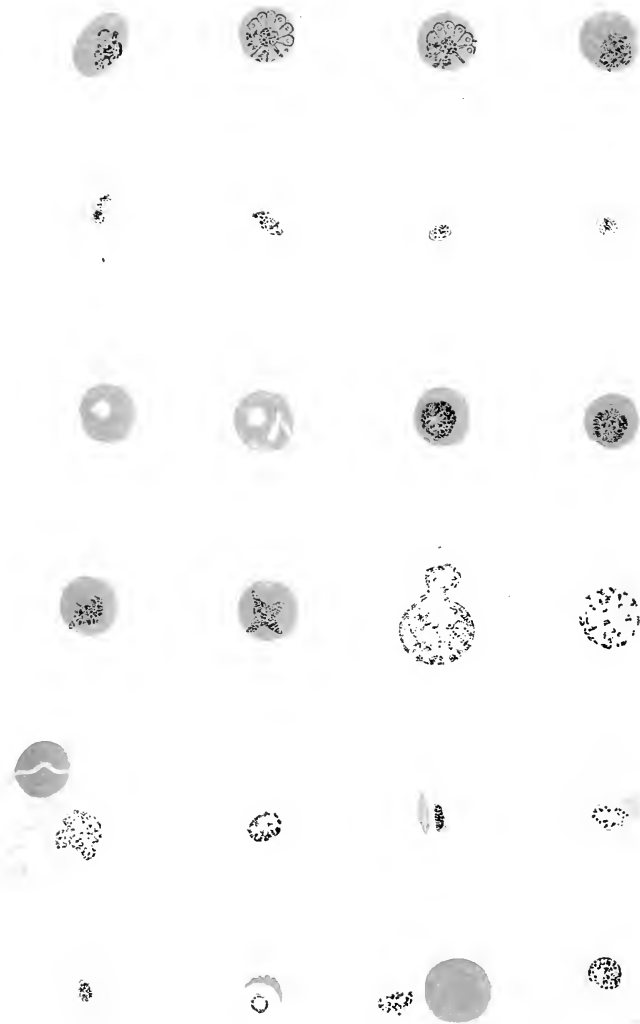


FIG. 9.—Illustrating Different Forms of the Malarial Organism with their Stages of Development.

$A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4$ . Sporulation stage.  $B_1, B_2$ . Sporules separating.  $C_1, C_2$ . Free sporules.  $D_1, D_2$ . Epicorpuscular forms.  $E_1, E_2, E_3, E_4$ . Intracorpuscular forms.  $F_1, F_2$ . The large extracorporeal body.  $G_1, G_2, G_3$ . The flagellate forms.  $H_1, H_2, H_3, H_4, H_5, H_6$ . The crescent shaped parasite and forms resulting from its evolution. Drawings in the upper part of the plate from the blood of a case in the wards of the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania, those in the lower portion selected.

( $B_1$ ,  $B_2$ ), uninclosed in the ring of hemoglobin, loosely arranged, apparently falling apart; also small, pale spherules or hyaline bodies ( $C_1$ ,  $C_2$ ) floating alone in the liquor sanguinis, apparently derived from the same source.

If the blood be taken during the chill, careful searching may also discover certain red corpuscles ( $D_1$ ,  $D_2$ ) on which are imposed minute pale spots (epicorpuscular) which exhibit ameboid movement. These also take a stain which may develop a central nucleus and lighter surrounding area, deepening in color at its periphery. Sometimes there is more than one disc-like body. A few hours later, after the chill, none of the free bodies described is visible, but within the corpuscles are seen actively moving ameboid bodies ( $E_3$ ,  $E_4$ ) of considerable size, constantly changing shape, and sending out pseudopodia into the substance of the blood-corpuscle. These intracorpuscular bodies stain with the same differentiation as the smaller disc-like bodies, but the nucleus is larger and less distinct. Many of them contain one or more dark granules in active motion.

Still later, toward the next paroxysm, the pale body fills the entire corpuscle, its ameboid movement ceases, while the pigment granules are more numerous and stationary. The nucleus can sometimes be seen in fresh specimens as a globular body as the end of a pseudopod. The pigment now tends to mass itself into clumps or radiating lines, and just before, or at the time of the chill, the picture first described, of rosettes or loosely attached and free spherules, is seen. The same cycle of successive steps is kept up from paroxysm to paroxysm. The conclusion reached by all observers is that the large intracorpuscular body (Fig. 9,  $A_1$ ) is the mature parasite ready for sporulation, and the mulberry mass presents the sporules perfectly formed, which a few seconds later become free spherical spores. These attach themselves to the red discs, penetrate them, and grow at the expense of the hemoglobin, leaving the black granular residue as excrementitious substance, which is let loose in the blood at the time of sporulation. As a consequence of this, the presence of pigment in the blood and tissues is one of the most characteristic features of malaria.

The time required to attain the perfect growth, from the free sporule to the stage of sporulation, varies in the different varieties of malarial fever. During this period certain groups, perhaps numbering myriads of corpuscles, pass through the same stages, and the final sporulation of such a group of parasites is always followed by the malarial paroxysm. This is probably due to some toxic substance developed at the time of sporulation. Thus, with the typical tertian type, sporulation takes place every other day at the same hour, the quartan type every 72 hours. If, however, two groups ripen at different hours, we have the double forms, be it double tertian or double quartan. Or two groups of tertian parasites may mature on alternate days, causing a quotidian paroxysm, though at different hours. The typical quotidian is the result of maturation of two groups of tertian organisms at the same hour on alternate days making a daily paroxysm. A paroxysm may be expected at once in the tertian form, if radiating lines appear in the organism with concentration of pigment. The cycle of existence of the estivo-autumnal type has an undetermined duration, and probably varies from 24 to 48 hours. The irregular ripening of different

groups would explain the irregularity of the estivo-autumnal forms of fever, which may begin as regular types.

Attempts are further made to differentiate the parasite of the different types of fever by its dimensions, rapidity of ameboid movement, size and number of pigment granules, number of segments in sporulation, etc. Thus the full-grown *parasite of tertian fever*, *hemameba vivax*, is about as large as a normal red blood-corpuscle, beginning its cycle of development as a much smaller hyaline ameboid body, corresponding very closely with the spores (D. Fig. 9) of the rosette-body. It acquires rapidly at the expense of the surrounding blood-disc, fine, brown pigment granules which sharply outline its "ring" shape and subsequently fill it completely. The blood-disc itself becoming gradually decolorized, grows larger and more indistinct until it disappears. The granules exhibit active movement. In the sporule stage the segments number from 15 to 20, or even more. The parasite has a cycle of 48 hours, but the segmentation is often seen between the 20th and 24th hours.

The *parasite of quartan fever*, *hemameba malariae*, is very similar, but it is smaller; its ameboid movements are slower, and the pigment granules coarser, darker, more frequently arranged about the periphery, and less active in motion. The red corpuscle embracing it, instead of becoming larger and paler, shrinks about the parasite and assumes a deeper, greenish hue. The sporulation segments are fewer, only from five to ten in number, and are arranged with great regularity about the central pigment (Fig. 9, A<sub>2</sub>). Its cycle is 72 hours.

The *parasite of the estivo-autumnal fever*, *plasmodium precox*, is still smaller, being, when fully developed, often less than half the size of a red blood-corpuscle, and the quantity of pigment is much smaller. Only the early stages of its development, represented by small hyaline bodies, often with one or two pigment granules, are found in the peripheral circulation, the later stage being seen in the blood of internal organs, such as the spleen and bone-marrow. The fewness of the pigment granules is characteristic. The corpuscles containing the parasite are also often shrunken, crenated, and brassy in color. After a week or more, larger, crescentic, ovoid and round bodies with central clumps of pigment make their appearance, and are characteristic of this form of fever. The cycle of this parasite is also about 48 hours.

The large *extracorpuseular* body (F<sub>1</sub>, F<sub>2</sub>,) which presents the same pigmentation and other features of the intracorpuseular body, is the latter escaped from the corpuscle. These are parasites which have escaped from their cells and died—degeneration forms. The event of its escape may sometimes be observed while studying blood taken about the time when most of the intracorpuseular bodies have disappeared by sporulation. Such escape, it is thought, does not take place in the living blood, since the corpuscle is not found in preparations, dried or "fixed," *immediately after the removal* of the blood from the body. It is found, however, in preparations watched with the microscope for some minutes after being taken.

The *crescent-shaped* parasite (Fig. 9, H<sub>1</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>, H<sub>3</sub>, H<sub>4</sub>, H<sub>5</sub>, H<sub>6</sub>,) is also a striking object, far less frequently met, at least in the vicinity of Philadelphia than the ordinary pigmented form. Unlike the large extracorpuseular



form already described and the flagellate form to be next described, it is apparently a constituent of living blood, and, according to the studies of Thayer and Hewetson, as well as the earlier ones of Marchiafava and Celli, appears in most of the cases of estivo-autumnal fever after a certain time, generally during the second or third week, and not in the cycle of development of tertian or quartan fevers. The crescent develops in the interior of the red corpuscle from the small hyaline forms, which gradually increase in size, lose their ameboid movement, and assume a crescentic shape, while pigment granules collect in a group at the center. The corpuscle itself gradually becomes decolorized and ultimately destroyed, though for some time a delicate line can be seen running between the horns of the crescent, a shell, as it were, of the corpuscle in which the parasite is developed. The crescents in turn change into elliptical, ovoid, and finally round forms. The crescentic and ovoid forms are incapable of sporulation, but when the round form is assumed the pigment starts into active motion, and sporulation may take place. Such sporulation may also, according to Canalis, Manson, and Ross, be by flagellation.

The *flagellate organism* ( $G_{11}$ ,  $G_{22}$ ) (*gametocyte*) may also come into view on the slide some 15 or 20 minutes after the blood is mounted, but is never seen on slides "fixed" immediately after the blood is drawn. It develops from the full-grown tertian and quartan parasites and from the round bodies with central pigment in estivo-autumnal infections. It is a very interesting object, the tentacular prolongations lashing about the central mass and agitating the surrounding corpuscles in a seemingly violent manner, throwing the latter and its own melanin particles into a state of extreme commotion. Sometimes portions of these tentacles break loose and float away in the blood plasma.

It will be noted that no quotidian parasite is described. It is not thought that a special form causing this variety of intermittent fever exists, but that the quotidian paroxysm is due as already stated to the maturation on successive days of two swarms of the tertian parasite.

*The Parasite in the Mosquito.*—Though the mosquito theory of malaria is by no means new, it was not until 1894 that Patrick Manson gave it definiteness by suggesting the mosquito might be the intermediate host for the extracorporeal forms of the parasite, of which the flagellate form is the first stage; and that the flagella, breaking off from the residual body, may penetrate the cells of some organ of the insect. He first claimed that the crescentic form of estivo-autumnal malaria and the tertian and quartan spherical forms from which develop flagella are the "extracorporeal sporulating homologues of the intracorporeal organism; that the flagellum is the extracorporeal homologue of the intracorporeal spore." Both types of sporulating plasmodium possess the same function—the propagation of the parasite,—one in the human body; the other, outside of it. Surgeon-Major Ronald Ross, whose studies were stimulated by Manson, found the flagellate form in the stomach of mosquitos that had fed on subjects suffering with estivo-autumnal fever whose blood contained large numbers of crescents, confirming Manson's observations. Again, Daniels, working in Calcutta under Ross's direction, was able to confirm all the latter's observations. Angelo Celli, while admitting that Ross partly

saw the first stages of development of the estivo-autumnal parasites in the body of a dapple-winged mosquito, holds that Grassi, Bastianelli, and Big-nami have given us all the details of its development.<sup>1</sup> To whomever be the credit, and it is probably a divided one, it is admitted that the hemi-sporidia of malaria in man as in birds has two life cycles; the one asexual in the blood of malarial subjects, the other sexual in the body of special mosquitos.

Such, at least, is the belief as to the immediate cause of malarial fever at the present day, whence it follows that inoculation is the only mode by which the infection is carried from the mosquito to man and from man back to the mosquito. Nay, more, the very genus and species of mosquito responsible have been isolated. They are the genus *anopheles*, species *claviger* and species *pictus* (dapple-winged mosquito of Ross), both conveying the estivo-autumnal form, while the former is the conveyer of tertian infection. The *A. quadrimaculatus* of this country has been shown to be identical with the *A. claviger*, the insect chiefly responsible for the spread of the disease on the continent of Europe. In addition to the *A. quadrimaculatus*, only two species of anopheles have been positively recognized in this country, viz., *A. punctipennis* and *A. crucians*. It will be remembered that the more common genera of mosquitos found in this country are the genus *culex* and genus *anopheles* of which seemingly only the latter may be the host of the parasite.

It does not follow that every anopheles is infected, as it may infest a region where malaria does not prevail or the locality may be too cold to permit the development of the organism, warmth being an essential condition.

The harmless *culex* is comparatively easily distinguished from the malaria-breeding *anopheles*, both of which are shown in the annexed figures from the description of L. O. Howard, Entomologist of the United States Department of Agriculture.

The *anopheles*, (Fig. 1, Plate 1) has wings which are more or less spotted, while *culex* (Fig. 2) has clear wings. The palpi or projections on either side of the beak in *anopheles* are very long, nearly as long as the beak; in *culex* they are very short. Moreover, when *culex* is resting on a wall it is more or less hump-backed, that is, the head and beak are not in the same plane with the body and wings, the body and wings being parallel with the wall. With the *anopheles* (Fig. 3 on left) the head and beak are practically in the same plane with the body and the body itself is usually placed at an angle with the wall and especially when resting on a horizontal wall such as the ceiling of the room its body is at a marked angle with the surface, as contrasted with *culex* (Fig. 4). This difference is well shown in the appended drawings from Howard's pamphlet.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Celli, "Malaria," 2d ed. Translated by John Joseph Eyre, London, 1900.

<sup>2</sup> A vocabulary of terms has been created to cover the requirements of our new knowledge of this subject, some of which are here appended:

*Gamete*, a sexually capable element, including *macrogamete*, the female, cell and *microgamete*, the male element (a flagellum originating from a microgametocyte, the parent male cell).

*Gametocyte*, a cell capable of developing into or producing the gametes; including the macrogametocyte or cell capable of development into the female gamete, and the microgametocyte, the cell from which arise the male elements or microgametes.

*Hyaline Body*, a nonpigmented young form of the hematozoön.

*Ring Form*, a shape any young parasite may assume, not a "kind" of organism.

*Pigment*, the transformed hemoglobin, or "melanin," appearing as brown granules in the parasite (not chromatin granules).

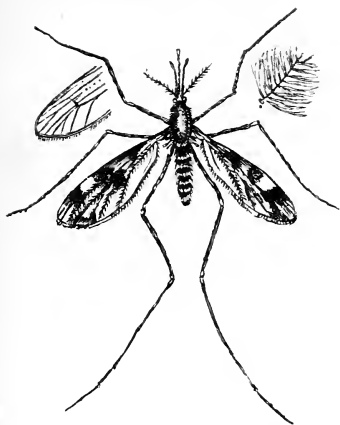


FIG. 1.—*Anopheles punctipennis*—female, with male antenna at left, and wing-top showing venation at right, enlarged.

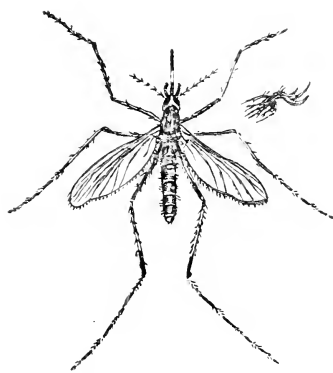


FIG. 2.—*Culex taniorhynchus*—female, showing the short palpi which distinguish *culex* from *anopheles*; toothed front tarsal claw at right, enlarged.

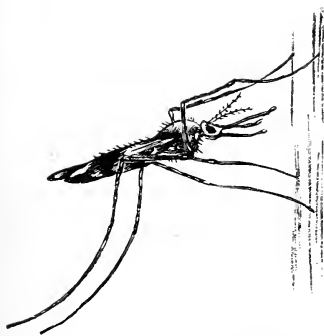


FIG. 3.—Resting position of *anopheles*, enlarged.



FIG. 4.—Resting position of *culex*, enlarged.

Made up of drawings from Dr. L. O. Howard's "Notes on the Mosquitoes of the United States." Government Printing Office, Washington, 1900.



The studies of Ross, Grassi, Bastianelli, Bignami, Stephens, Christophers and Daniels have determined the following stages in the evolution of the sporozoön in the body of the mosquito. When the anopheles has "bitten" the malarial subject and drawn into its stomach the blood containing sex-ripe forms (gametocytes), the male elements or microgametocytes send out their flagella (microgametes) which penetrate and fecundate the female forms or macrogametes. These fertilized bodies or zygotes known also as oöcysts and sporoblasts, migrate as far as the muscular coat of the mosquito's stomach and begin there a cycle of development. After 40 hours appear small round refracting bodies which contain pigment granules like those contained in the malarial parasite. These grow until they have reached a diameter of 60 to 70 microns at the end of seven or eight days and are much larger than those seen in malarial blood. At this time they exhibit a delicate striation, due to innumerable small fusiform sporoblasts or sporozoids (polynuclear multiplication of the uninuclear parasite). With the complete formation of the sporoblasts the oöcyst ruptures and the sporoblasts escape in large numbers into the general cavity of the mosquito's body and by the lacunar circulation reach the salivary glands and ducts where they accumulate also in large numbers to be discharged into the blood of the bitten victim, where they develop into young asexual parasites. The sporozoid thus developed in the oöcyst corresponds to the spore resulting from the asexual segmentation of the full-grown parasite in the blood. Either one of these fastening on a red blood-corpuscle, may develop the asexual or sexual cycle. As a rule, in the human body, in the first generations of parasites the asexual cycle is followed, the sexual form developing later. The sexual forms, sterile while in the human host, are the forms through which the life of the parasite is preserved, spreading infection through the mosquito bite.

*Favoring Causes and Geographical Distribution.*—These views are further confirmed by the conditions which favor malarial fever, and these notwithstanding exceptions, are hot climates and hot seasons plus decomposing vegetable matter, low river banks frequently covered and uncovered with water and exposed to the sun—in a word, conditions that favor the breeding of mosquitos. Wherever these conditions occur, malaria is rife. Especially are they found in the southern borders of the north temperate zone, as in Southern United States, Southern Italy, and along the lower Danube; the northern border of the south temperate zone, in the tropics, as Central America, the West Indies, Central Africa and Southern Asia. A freshly upturned soil may furnish, under a sufficiently high temperature, a minimum of 60° F. (15.6° C.), as favorable a focus almost as a marshy river bank. All

*Presegmenters*, fully grown parasites, with pigment accumulated in masses, before segmentation occurs.

*Schizogony*, the asexual multiplication, seen in the human host.

*Sporogony*, the sexual multiplication, occurring in the mosquito.

*Microzoit*, or *segment*, one of the offspring of the asexual generation, in the human blood (one of the products of segmentation).

*Sporozoit*, one of the offspring of the sexual generation, produced in the mosquito, and inoculated by it into the human host where it becomes one of the hyaline forms of parasite, and subsequently grows into the mature form.

*Schizont* or *monont*, an adult parasite capable of or engaged in asexual reproduction or schizogony.

*Gametochizont*, an adult parasite of the sexual generation.

*Copula*, the female cell or macrogamete fertilized by the male element or microgamete.

*Vermiculus* or *ookinet*, the motile stage of the copula in which it penetrates the alimentary wall of the mosquito.

*Zygote*, *oocyst*, *sporoblast*, *sporocyst*, names given to the copula in the production sporozoites upon the alimentary wall in the body cavity of the mosquito.

ages are susceptible, but children are especially liable to take the disease. More men have it than women, for evident reason. Currents of air are thought to have less influence than was formerly supposed, since the mosquitos laden with the extracorporeal forms do not as a rule come out of their hiding places when the wind blows. Water ingested cannot be a cause of malarial infection, according to modern views, nor can it be inhaled.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid anatomy of malaria includes mainly changes in the blood, the liver, and the spleen—changes that vary with the duration and intensity of the disease, to which, however, they do not always correspond.

As to *blood changes in acute malaria*: In the true intermittent fevers there is a loss, sometimes considerable, of red corpuscles after each paroxysm, which is made up during the intermission. In the estivo-autumnal form the blood losses are greater and more permanent. *The absence of leukocytosis is characteristic.* In remittent and pernicious malaria—the latter a form characterized by the intensity of the poison and severity of the symptoms—the morbid changes may not be very striking if the patient die in the first attack, but more marked after a second. The blood is described as hydremic, the serum is sometimes tinged with hemoglobin, and the corpuscles, while containing the parasite, present all stages of destruction. *In chronic malaria the blood changes* are even more marked. There is a positive secondary anemia in which, as usual, the hemoglobin is decreased rather more than the corpuscles. The leukocytes are almost invariably diminished, the polynuclear leukocytes most, while the larger mononuclear forms are relatively increased. Pigment deposits are abundant, especially in the spleen, which is enlarged and hard.

The *spleen* is enlarged, but not nearly so much as in chronic recurring forms. It is, moreover, soft and its pulp is dark from accumulated pigment in the intervacular cords. In chronic malaria, of whatever form, the *enlarged spleen* is the most characteristic morbid product. It may weigh as much as ten pounds (4.5 kilos.) and measure ten inches (25 cm.) long and four (10 cm.) to six (15 cm.) in width; its capsule is thickened, its substance firm, and the trabeculae prominent. Pigmented areas abound, due to the plugging with pigment of the intercommunicating lymphoid spaces of the pulp, and in some cases the melanosis is general. The pigment particles resulting from the disintegration of the hemoglobin in the vessels are retained in the spleen, as by a filter.

The *liver* is enlarged and dark-hued, sometimes described as bronze and sometimes slate-color. Even when not visibly altered to the naked eye, there may be no difficulty in recognizing the excess of pigment within and without the small vessels, some of which may be occluded. In fact, by the aid of a microscope, almost all the tissues may be found abnormally pigmented, even the brain, some small vessels of which may also be occluded.

In chronic malaria the *liver* is also enlarged, to a less degree, however, than the spleen. It is indurated and presents various degrees of pigmentation, which may reach a slate-gray tint. The pigment is contained in the portal canals and beneath the capsule.

The *kidneys* may be similarly pigmented, the pigment lying about the smaller blood-vessels and the Malpighian bodies, and in the cells lining the tubules. In protracted cases of malarial cachexia other tissues may be pigmented. Thus, the small vessels of the brain may be surrounded by pigment and even occluded, so that hemorrhagic infarcts may occur. Even the mucous membrane of the stomach and the peritoneum may be pigmented in extremely chronic cases. Malarial poisoning is included among the causes of chronic nephritis, but, in a considerable experience with renal diseases, I can recall but one or two cases of nephritis doubtfully traceable to this cause.

## CLINICAL VARIETIES.

The chief varieties of malarial fever admit of easy separation by their symptoms.

### INTERMITTENT FEVER.

**Definition.**—This form of malarial fever is characterized by a total remission of fever between paroxysms.

**Symptoms.**—This, the well-known fever and ague, characterized by distinct paroxysms of chill, fever, and sweat, has a distinct *period of incubation*, which may be as short as 24 hours or even less, though usually it is from a week to 14 days. Sometimes it is very much longer, and even months are said to elapse after exposure before the first paroxysm sets in. The paroxysm is usually preceded by a prodrome of uneasiness and discomfort, sometimes languor and yawning, sometimes headache, sometimes nausea, which forewarns the patient of its coming. As often as not there is no such prodrome. The paroxysm consists of the chill or cold stage, the fever, and the sweat.

The *chill* commonly begins gradually. First there is a creep, then another a little more severe, then another, each growing in severity until the teeth chatter and the body shakes violently. There is, however, great difference in the severity of the chill. It may be a barely noticeable creep or such a chill as will cause the bed and even the windows of the room to shake. At the same time the patient's lips are blue, his face is pale and pinched, and he looks very cold. Yet he has fever. Even before the chill there is a slight rise in temperature, and during it the latter may reach 105° F. (40.5 C.) and 106° F. (41.1° C.) in the axilla or mouth. A surface thermometer may show a lower temperature of the skin, but the internal heat is in strong contrast with the apparent coldness. There may be nausea or vomiting and severe headache. The pulse is small, hard and frequent. The hands are pale, cold and the nails blue. The urine is increased, light-hued, of low specific gravity, though before the chill it may be concentrated and the specific gravity high. The duration of the chill varies from a *few minutes to an hour or more*.

To the chill succeeds the *fever*. The skin is intensely hot and dry and the face flushed. There is intense thirst. The mouth is dry, the tongue

coated, the breath foul. There is no mistaking this stage any more than the first. Yet the actual temperature is but little higher than during the chill, which is well shown in the appended chart, in which it will be seen that the temperature during the chill at two successive observations was  $104.2^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  C.) and  $104.4^{\circ}$  F. ( $40.18^{\circ}$  C.); during the succeeding fever it reached at the first observation  $104.8^{\circ}$  F. ( $40.4^{\circ}$  C.), and at the second,  $105^{\circ}$  F. ( $40.45^{\circ}$  C.). The duration of this stage is from *half an hour to four or six hours*.

The *sweating stage* follows, with the appearance of drops of sweat on the face, whence it extends all over the body and is various in quantity. With it comes relief to all the symptoms. Indeed, a sense of great comfort supervenes. It may be a mere suggestion of moisture, or it may be very

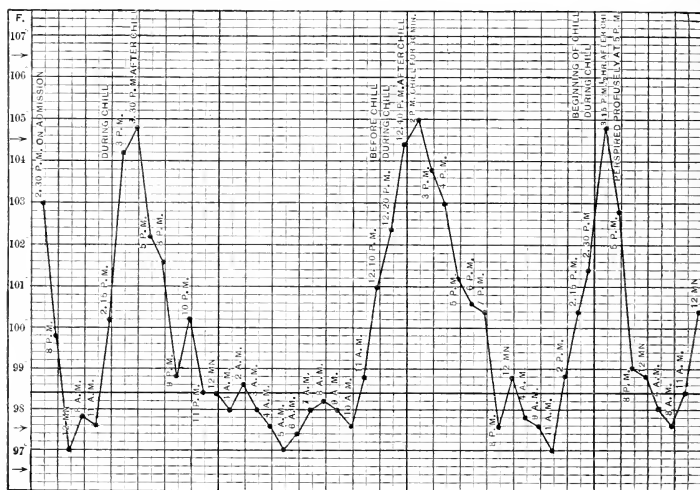


FIG. 10.—Temperature Chart in Intermittent Fever, showing Paroxysms and Intermissions.

It will be noted that the temperature has been taken during the chill, and during the fever just after the chill, and that although, as is well known the fever is very high during the chill while the patient *feels* cold, it is still a little higher during the fever just after the chill.

profuse, drenching the patient's clothing and even wetting the bed. It is commonly proportionate to the severity of the chill. During the sweat the temperature falls rapidly, but if the paroxysm is severe several hours elapse before it attains the normal. It lasts for *half an hour to two hours*, after which the patient feels comfortable and well.

It is not easy to give a satisfactory *rationale* of the three stages. The first and second are undoubtedly the direct result of the same cause—a toxin generated by the plasmodium, since the actual fever which characterizes both is irritative. The superficial coldness and sense of cold of the first stage may be the result of vasomotor spasm contracting the blood-vessels of the surface and due to an irritation of vasomotor centers by the toxin; the second stage to a derangement of the heat-regulating centers. The third



stage is probably a reactive vasomotor paralysis, with the usual leakage from the skin incident to it.

The total duration of the paroxysm is from *eight to twelve hours*, and usually between the paroxysms the patient feels perfectly well. During the paroxysm the *spleen becomes enlarged* and the malarial patient has often *herpes labialis*, a symptom which is almost pathognomonic of malarial fever. The size of the spleen subsides after the paroxysm, although with its repetition there is a disposition to permanent enlargement, resulting finally in the ague cake.

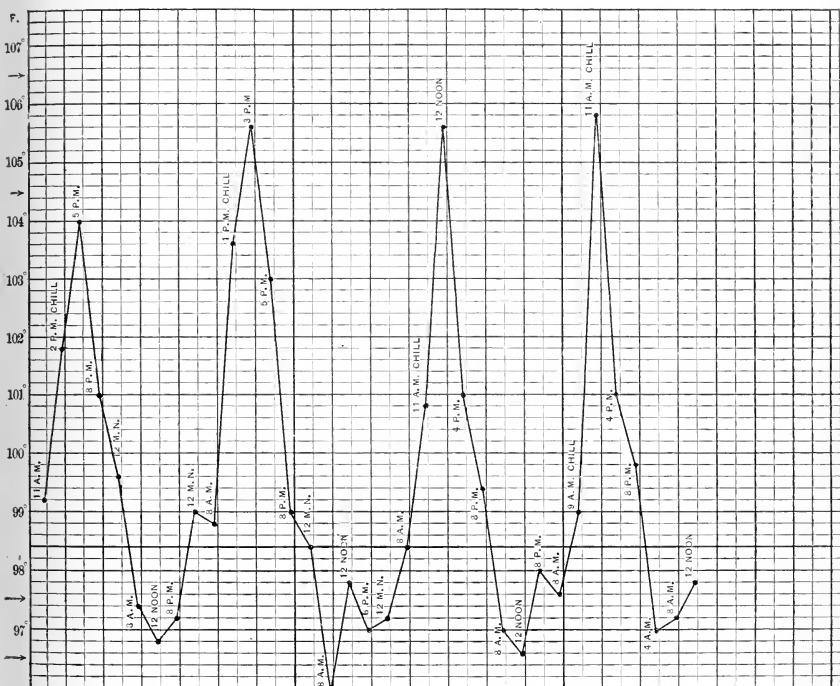


FIG. 11.—Temperature Chart in Intermittent Fever, Showing the Paroxysms and Intermissions.

The types of the paroxysm so characteristic of intermittent fever have already been referred to. The order of frequency is quotidian or double tertian, tertian, and quartan; the first being by far the most frequent.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of intermittent fever is most easy, and a typical case should be easily recognized after the second paroxysm, if not after the first. If the case be less typical and the chill omitted or so slight as to escape recognition, a certain resemblance between such a paroxysm and the *hectic fever of tubercular consumption*, with its subsequent sweat, must be admitted, and it not infrequently happens that such fevers are

declared to be malarial by the attending physician—more frequently, it is to be hoped, for the sake of comforting the patient than as a matter of accurate diagnosis.

Still more close is the resemblance of the paroxysm to the chills, fever, and sweats of *septicæmia* and *pyæmia*, while suppuration is frequent ushered in, and its progress associated with like symptoms. Other conditions calculated to produce these symptoms may generally be discovered on careful inquiry, though they may escape notice for a time. In addition to suppuration, surgical operations, catheterization, puerperal fever, the incidence of empyema, and the like, all produce chill, fever and sweat. The absence of the malarial organism may not exclude malarial fever as it can not always be found. Then, as a rule, the blood culture is at the present day an easy solution. The streptococcus being easily isolated in the septic cases, empyema and puerperal fever, etc.

The so-called nervous chill is easily distinguished, because with it there is no rise of temperature—at least nothing at all comparable to that of the malarial chill. The possible combination of malaria with other causes of chill and sweats is to be remembered. A search for the hematozoön, scarcely necessary for diagnosis in typical cases, may under such circumstances prove extremely useful.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of simple intermittent fever is always favorable. Very frequently, if the disease is not treated by medicine, it will exhaust itself in a couple of weeks and disappear, while the administration of suitable doses of quinin always puts an end to it. The worst that can happen is the conversion of the disease into chronic malaria or the malarial cachexia. This may occur when treatment is neglected, or when constant exposure to the cause operates to produce such a state notwithstanding suitable treatment.

#### REMITTENT FEVER—ESTIVO-AUTUMNAL FEVER.

**Definition.**—Remittent fever is the form of malarial fever characterized by a continued fever with paroxysmal exacerbations. It is also known as bilious fever. It has become rare at the present day in the North Atlantic States of America, and is confined mainly to the South, to Italy, the lower Danube sections in Europe, and to tropical countries. It occurs in the late summer and fall, and hence is included among the *estivo-autumnal* fevers.

**Symptoms.**—It generally begins with a *chill* after a *period of incubation* analogous to that of intermittent fever. It is more likely to be preceded by *prodromal symptoms* than is intermittent. There are malaise, intense headache, a coated tongue, and often obstinate nausea and vomiting. Vomiting of bilious matter is a conspicuous symptom. These gastric symptoms, formerly ascribed to gastritis, are probably caused by central nervous irritation due to the toxin. There may be *jaundice* resulting from obstructing cholangitis; the liver may be tender on pressure. The chill is less severe, and the other stages of the paroxysm less characteristic. The fever does not pass off, but continues with a full, bounding pulse and a temperature of 102° to 103° F. (38.9° to 39.5° C.). There are daily remissions, as in typhoid fever, but they do not follow the same rule of tidal rise.

Yet the two diseases are very similar, and often thoroughly try the diagnostic skill, even of those who are accustomed to meet bilious remittent fever. The temperature rises quite as high as in typhoid fever, and the patient is usually very ill. The two diseases occur at the same time of the year—the autumn. It is not impossible for them to be concurrent.

There is little else that is peculiar in the symptomatology of the common forms of remittent fever besides the prodrome, the malarial organism, and the peculiar paroxysmal character. In prolonged remittent fever the typhoid state is sometimes assumed, manifested by dry tongue, hebetude, stupor, and feeble, frequent pulse.

The *urine* is high-colored, with high specific gravity, depositing a copious sediment of urates, and sometimes contains biliary coloring-matter. Not infrequently it contains blood-corpuscles or hemoglobin.

**Diagnosis.**—As intimated, it is with typhoid fever that remittent fever is most likely to be confounded. Occasionally in the South there has been confusion with yellow fever. To us who study *typhoid fever* in the North it seems surprising that there should be any confusion with this disease. It is ordinarily so easy, after watching the temperature chart for a few days, to recognize typhoid fever. In the South it is, however, different, and, before the discovery of Laveran's plasmodium, the therapeutic test—administration of quinin—was frequently needed to settle the question; for remittent fever, like intermittent fever, yields to quinin. In such cases a successful search for the hematozoön will settle the question promptly. This is the variety in which we have the small, actively motile hyaline forms of organism, while the larger crescentic, ovoid bodies are to be looked for as soon as the disease has existed over a week. An unsuccessful search may still leave the matter in doubt, but if the nasal hemorrhage, the typhoid spots, the diarrhea of typhoid, and the temperature are not sufficiently characteristic, the quinin test ought to put an end to all doubt. The Widal test has come to our aid, also, of late, and if responded to affords conclusive evidence of the presence of typhoid fever. Although it may seem presumptuous for one who has not practiced in the South to say it, such study as I have been able to give to the subject impels me to say, with Osler, that all of the continued endemic fevers of the South may be resolved into typhoid or malarial fever.

The diagnostic distinction between remittent fever and *yellow fever* will be given when considering the latter disease.

**Prognosis.**—This is usually favorable when treatment can be promptly applied.

#### PERNICIOUS MALARIAL FEVER—THE CONGESTIVE CHILL.

**Definition.**—This variety of malarial fever is characterized by the extreme severity of its paroxysms.

**Occurrence.**—It still presents itself occasionally in the North, but is much rarer than it was 50 years ago. Up to a few years ago it was not uncommon to hear of the death from this cause of a prominent citizen at his country seat on the banks of the Delaware above Philadelphia. Later, the cases became confined to the servants and others out late at night or

early in the morning, and, more recently still, even such cases as these are seldom reported, although the milder forms of malaria prevail. It is still prevalent in the Southern United States, in Italy, the lower Danube, the Niger delta, and other parts of tropical Africa. Pernicious malarial fever is associated with the small plasmodium.

Two principal types present themselves—the *comatose* and the *algid*. Other adjective terms based on special features more or less characteristic, are the *hematuric*, the *bilious* and *asthmatic*. As malarial hematuria is not confined to the pernicious variety, it will receive separate consideration. The bilious type is that of the ordinary severe form of remittent fever, while asthma characterizes the comatose and algid types.

1. The *comatose* type may or may not begin with a chill, but in its more serious forms the chill is a conspicuous feature, being severe. To it succeeds the comatose state, whence the term *congestive chill* often used in the South, where the popular notion prevails that if the first paroxysm does not kill, the second will. This is an exaggerated idea of its seriousness, although it is certainly a very grave affection and often terminates fatally. A low, muttering delirium may supervene, the eyes are bloodshot, the skin is hot and dry, the temperature rising to 105° or 106° F. (40.6° or 41.1° C.). The comatose condition is probably a toxic one, and lasts until a partial elimination of the poison has taken place, usually from 12 to 24 hours later. The patient may, however, perish without return to consciousness, or consciousness may return to be followed in a short time by fatal relapse.

2. The *algid* type is characterized by gastric symptoms, extreme nausea and vomiting, which are mostly followed by collapse, for there is intense prostration, with coldness of the surface and extremities. The symptoms are, indeed, comparable to those of the collapse of cholera. There are the same small, feeble pulse, frequent, shallow breathing, cramps, vomiting, purging, husky voice, and thirst with suppressed urine, and with these the same clearness of intellect until death steps in—the last scene in the drama, in which asthenia also plays a leading rôle.

In these cases there may or may not be a chill, while the patient feels cold and the surface temperature is never high, rarely exceeding 101° F. (38.3° C.), and falling as low as 96° F. (35.6° C.). The internal temperature is, however, high.

**Diagnosis.**—Pernicious malarial fever is to be distinguished in its comatose form from *typhoid fever*, and in its algid type from *yellow fever*. The presence of the plasmodium and pigment in the blood are the distinctive features to be carefully sought.

#### IRREGULAR FORMS OF MALARIAL FEVER.

It sometimes happens that the paroxysm in intermittent fever omits one or more of its stages. Especially is this the case with the chill in which event the disease has received the characteristic name of “dumb ague.” Frequently, however, what receives the name of “dumb ague” is something altogether different. The “malarial cachexia,” for instance, is sometimes spoken of as “dumb ague.” Like malarial cachexia “dumb ague” is found among the older residents of a malarial district.

Quite often it happens that the malarial paroxysm consists of nothing but a state of *drowsiness*, which recurs at regular intervals and is very characteristic. The temperature in these cases is elevated, but not very high, 100° F. (37.8° C.) or perhaps 101° F. (38.3° C.); there may be *slight delirium*. Another irregular form is *intermittent neuralgia*, which is clearly malarial, the proof of it being the facility with which it is broken up by quinin. Usually there is no fever in this variety. The nerve commonly involved is one of the branches of the trigeminal. The intercostal nerves are also the seats of such an attack, giving rise to one of the forms of pain in the chest, but any nerve-trunk or its branches may be affected, as the sciatic or brachial.

The term *latent intermittent fever* is applied to a combination of symptoms affecting persons living in malarial districts—consisting in a weary, languid feeling, associated with want of appetite, headache, nausea, vomiting, constipation, and coated tongue. Sometimes the so-called “bilious attacks,” which exhibit the above symptoms in an aggravated form, especially the headache and vomiting, are malarial in their origin, and may be broken up with quinin. Such attacks may be called *malarial migraine*.

Irregularity of fever or chills, or both, may be caused by infection with more than one group of the same kind of parasite occurring at different times, or there may be infections of different kinds of parasite maturing at their own specified time.

#### MALARIAL HEMATURIA, OR HEMAGLOBINURIA, OR INTERMITTENT HEMATURIA—BLACKWATER FEVER.

This form of hematuria is the direct result of malarial poison. The first account of it in this country was published by George Troup Maxwell in the “Oglethorpe Medical and Surgical Journal,” Savannah, Ga., volume iii, pages 12–18, July, 1860.

*Symptoms of the Mild Form.*—While it is a very frequent symptom of the pernicious or malignant type of malarial fever, hematuria also occurs as a symptom, and, indeed, sometimes the sole symptom, of the milder varieties of malaria, such as occur in the Middle States of the United States. I have met a number of these cases. Rarely are they accompanied by a chill, and there may be no symptoms whatever except the bleeding. More frequently there is a cold feeling, the tips of the nose and of the fingers become cold, and the lips become blue, immediately after which the urine is found to be bloody. Microscopic examination of the urine will recognize in some instances blood-discs, in others no corpuscles can be found. It is a *hemoglobinuria*.<sup>1</sup> The hemorrhage occurs daily or on alternate days, more rarely at longer intervals. Sometimes it is continuous, with exacerbations at regular intervals. In all cases of unexplained hematuria the blood should be examined for the malarial organism.

<sup>1</sup> The presence of hemoglobin can be easily shown by making Teichmann's hemin crystals in the following manner: The earthy phosphates are precipitated, filtered out, and a small portion placed on a glass slide, and carefully warmed until completely dry. A minute granule of common salt is carried on the point of a knife to the dried mass and thoroughly mixed with it. Any excess of salt is then removed, the mixture is covered with a thin glass cover, a hair being interposed, and a drop or two of glacial acetic acid allowed to pass under the cover. The slide is then carefully warmed until bubbles begin to make their appearance. After cooling, hemin crystals can be seen by aid of the microscope. These, though often very small and incompletely crystallized, are easily recognizable by an amplification of 300 diameters. They are, chemically, hydrochlorate of hematin.

When a symptom of pernicious malarial fever, the condition is more apt to be hemoglobinuria than hematuria; it is more aggravated and more continuous, although still intermittent. It may also be associated with hemorrhages from the nasal and oral mucous membranes, and even from the stomach, which add much to the gravity of the case.

To the grave form of malarial hemoglobinuria the name *blackwater fever* has been given.

The organisms causing blackwater fever is usually the estivo-autumnal organism but the tertian and quartan may also cause it.

*Symptoms of the Grave Form.*—My friend William Krauss, of Memphis, has furnished me a description of the mode of onset and symptoms of malarial hemoglobinuria as it occurs in Tennessee, from which I condense the following:

After a variable period of neglected intermittent or remittent fever, especially in a subject already cachectic, there occurs suddenly a violent chill, with the usual high temperature. The face is anxious, and cyanotic, and (in from 15 minutes to 2 hours) there ensues more or less vesical tenesmus, and a small quantity of urine of a port wine to inky black hue is voided. This may occur at very short intervals during the day (the onset is usually before sundown) and in favorable cases the quantity of urine increases while the color becomes lighter. There is great shock, the pulse is 100 to 150 and very small, the breathing is embarrassed and hurried, often sighing in character. The stomach becomes irritable, and projectile vomiting sets in, the vomited matter being of a spinach-green color. In the morning of the second day a very intense icterus is first recognized. The vomiting may continue in spite of all measures looking to its control, the parasites are still in the blood and the temperature is usually high, 103°–105° F., although if the toxemia is extreme there may be great depression and the temperature may be subnormal. A hardening pulse at this stage indicates grave renal involvement and the subsequent history is that of fatal uremia. A subsidence of the restlessness indicates re-established permeability and a favorable prognosis. The triple symptoms—hemoglobinuria, vomiting and icterus—are essential for diagnosis.

As to the hemolysis, there is reason to believe it takes place in the spleen and kidneys. The excessive waste hemoglobin discharged by the spleen into the portal vein furnishes the liver with more material for bilirubin, hydrobilirubin, etc., and the irritative hyperactivity of this organ results in an excess of both internal secretion and excretion, the latter being represented by an imperfect bile, engorging the bile capillaries and causing an overflow into the lymphatics. A hemo-hepatogenous jaundice is the result. The disease is not paroxysmal and lasts about four days in favorable cases.

#### CHRONIC MALARIA AND MALARIAL CACHEXIA.

**Definition.**—This is a condition which often supervenes in cases imperfectly or ineffectually treated, or in persons living in malarial districts where there is constant exposure to the cause and consequent repeated attacks.

**Symptoms.**—The most striking symptom of this condition is *anemia* of a peculiar kind. The incident changes in the blood have been referred to on

page 62. The skin exhibits a dirty-yellow or sallow appearance, often erroneously characterized as "bilious," as though it were a form of jaundice, which it is not, although there may be sometimes slight jaundice also. Such persons have, in addition, deranged digestion. The tongue is pale, flabby, and coated, and the breath sometimes foul. The bowels are constipated. The hands and feet are cold, the circulation is generally bad, and the temperature is subnormal, though it may alternate with the feverish state. In consequence of the hydremic blood there is sometimes edema of the feet, and even general anasarca. The *spleen is enlarged*, often extending as low as the ilium.

Some very unusual symptoms are included in the symptomatology of this form of malaria—as, for example, *paraplegia* and *orchitis*. The former condition may be the result of deranged circulation in the spinal cord, but it is difficult to regard the latter as anything except a coincidence. A remarkable case of malaria with symptoms of disseminated sclerosis was reported by William G. Spiller in the "American Journal of the Medical Sciences" for December, 1900. The autopsy disclosed sclerosis of the right crossed pyramidal tract throughout the spinal cord, not intense, but unmistakable.

The *plasmodium* is found in this form of malaria also, and the *crescent* is said to be the form more or less characteristic of it. The recognition of the organism is of value in the diagnosis although the history of the case and the presence of enlarged spleen are also important aids to diagnosis, especially as the plasmodium may elude detection altogether. In leukemia there is also enlarged spleen, but the microscopic examination of the blood reveals at once in the latter disease the excess of colorless corpuscles.

**Prophylaxis of Malarial Fever.**—Much may be done to avert malarial infection. It is not considered possible for the organism to enter the system by the stomach or respiratory passages. This being established, prophylaxis must consist in measures to destroy the mosquito or escape its bite. To exterminate the adult mosquito is manifestly impossible. Yet it is not chimerical to look forward to the possibility of destroying the insect in the larval state as it exists in pools and ponds. While all the more common species of mosquito belong to the genus *culex* or genus *anopheles*, Ross has shown that up to the present only mosquitos belong to the genus *anopheles* have been found to contain malarial parasites. The larvæ of this genus live, not in artificial collections of water, but in natural ponds in rural regions. Ross believes that, if future experiments show that malaria is confined to the genus *anopheles*, the task will be much more simplified, and there would be a chance of exterminating the whole genus in a given locality. For a list of substances destructive to the mosquito and its larvæ the student is referred to the useful little book "Malaria" by Angelo Celli, 2d. ed. p. 196.

In the meantime our prophylactic measures must consist in protecting against mosquito bites by netting, and in making the blood as uncomfortable a habitat for the plasmodium as possible by charging it with quinin—*quinin prophylaxis*. To this end a few grains of quinin, say five to ten (0.333 to 0.666 gm.), should be taken daily, especially by newcomers and by all residents at times. No less efficacious is the arsenical prophylaxis as conclusively shown by experiments on the Adriatic railways reported by

Celli in his book on "Malaria." In these experiments 39 employees were treated with arsenic and 39 were not treated. Of 39 treated 36 remained immune; of 39 not treated all had fevers. One milligram ( $\frac{1}{60}$  grain) of arsenious acid in the form of gelatin tablet was administered presumably daily. It seems pretty well founded, too, that the cause of malaria is more active after nightfall. This is not inconsistent with the mosquito theory. Hence, exposure at these times should be avoided. It is also a notion with residents in malarial districts that exposure while the stomach is empty is apt to invite the poison. This is probably erroneous. Should it be true, exposure while fasting should be avoided. In this matter, as in others, it may be necessary to give up a good many of our old notions, but until the new theories are thoroughly established it may be just as well to adhere to practices justified by experience.

Further prophylactic treatment consists in measures to prevent inundations, and stagnant waters in any form.

**Treatment of the Different Forms of Malaria.**—The treatment of *intermittent fever* is preëminently by *quinin*. Not only does it promptly break up the paroxysms, but it causes also the rapid disappearance of the plasmodium which is responsible for them. The dose required varies, but 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.) are usually sufficient for an adult. Sometimes larger doses may be needed in inveterate cases. It does not matter very much how the drug is administered, but there is a best way for each case. I prefer, as a rule, to give an hourly dose of 3 to 5 grains (0.2–0.3 gram), beginning long enough before the expected paroxysm to get the quantity previously decided upon into the blood at least two hours before the chill is expected. If the dose first selected fails, the second should be made larger. It is to be remembered, however, that quinin, like other drugs, acts more efficiently after a free aperient, while constipation decidedly interferes with its prompt and efficient action. Some prefer a mercurial, as 8 to 10 grains (0.55 to 0.666 gm.) of blue mass, or 5 to 10 grains (0.33 to 0.66 gram) of calomel, but provided a free movement is secured, it does not matter much how it is accomplished. Having broken the paroxysm, it is well to continue the quinin for a few days in smaller doses, and to anticipate the seventh day subsequent to the last chill by another full dose of the drug, and to do so at intervals of seven days for some weeks. Under ordinary circumstances the freshly prepared pill of quinin made with aromatic sulphuric acid is to be preferred. This is easily soluble and is not so unpleasant to take as the solution, which is, however, more readily absorbed. The sugar-coated and gelatin-coated pills are not so certainly efficient, as they sometimes, especially with deranged digestion, pass through the bowel undissolved.

Some physicians prefer to administer quinin during the decline of the fever. This was the practice of Sydenham in giving the bark. Among modern physicians disposed to follow this method are Bacelli, A. Plehn, Maclean, Manson and other East Indian physicians; and in this country George Dock.

The treatment of the paroxysm itself is by measures calculated to combat each stage. During the chill, to satisfy the patient artificial warmth should be supplied, though it does no good and the temperature is already



a fever temperature; during the fever, if the temperature is above  $102^{\circ}$  F. ( $38.9^{\circ}$  C.), the body may be sponged to reduce the heat, and during the "sweat" the patient should be carefully dried. If there be any reason why quinin should not be exhibited, the other alkaloids of cinchona, as cinchonidin, are equally effectual in doses about one-fourth larger. No substitute for cinchona or its alkaloids has ever been suggested which has stood the test of trial.

The treatment of *remittent fever* is essentially that of intermittent fever. It is in this form that the mercurial aperient is deemed especially valuable as a preliminary by those having wide experience in its treatment. The continued nature of the fever, and the tendency to a typhoid state which often develops, demands a liquid diet, with the careful addition of stimulants.

The *pernicious forms* of malarial fever are treated by quinin, as are the other varieties of the disease. In the congestive variety advantage must be taken of the first lucid interval to push the drug in very large doses. Sixty grains or more may be necessary, and advantage may be taken of rectal or even hypodermic injections, but abscesses are almost sure to occur if the latter be used. Extreme cases, however, demand extreme remedies. Soluble salts should be used, such as the bisulphate, hydrochlorate, and hydrobromate, of which 15 grains (1 gm.), dissolved in distilled water, are a dose. Double this dose may be given. The bisulphate of quinin may also be administered hypodermically in solution with tartaric acid, 30 grains (2 gm.) of the quinin to 5 grains (0.333 gm.) of the tartaric acid. The muriate of quinin and urea may also be given hypodermically in 10, 15 or 20-grain (0.666, 1, and 1.33 gm.) doses. It is especially commended by Solomon Solis-Cohen, who advises, as soon as the diagnosis is established, and without reference to the time of paroxysm, a single injection of from 10 to 15 grains (0.66 to 1 gm.) of the salt, dissolved in a syringeful (20 to 30 minims) of boiling water. Should a paroxysm recur at the following period, a second injection is given, and should further paroxysms occur, injections are given in corresponding number; otherwise but three injections are given during the first seven days, and two injections during the second seven days. My experience in the hypodermic use of this drug has been satisfactory from the therapeutic standpoint, but I have not escaped abscesses. It may also be given by the mouth in capsules in the same doses.

Even the intravenous injection of quinin has been recommended in intractable cases, and for this purpose the soluble bimuriate is most suitable. Fifteen grains (1 gm.) with 1 grain (0.066 gm.) of sodium chlorid are dissolved in 2 drams (8 c.c.) of distilled water and injected.

Methylene blue (methylthioninæ hydrochloridum, U. S. P.) was introduced by Ehrlich and Gutmann in 1891 in the treatment of the malarial fevers; and H. C. Wood, Jr., collected 425 cases up to 1906, in 362 of which final cures were affected. It is given in 3 grains (0.1 gm.) doses every three hours in pill or capsule. Its peculiar staining qualities constitute its chief objection.

In addition to the use of quinin, prompt measures must be taken to combat all symptoms which add to the dangers of the situation—stimulants for the asthenia; artificial heat for low temperature; morphin hypodermically, to relieve the pain and allay nausea; cool sponging or bathing to reduce the temperature, and saline cathartics to relieve congestion in the comatose form.

I. L. Van Zandt of Fort Worth, Texas, recommends atrophin, hypodermically in 1/60-grain doses repeated in 20 minutes if necessary, for the symptoms of collapse so characteristic of the algid type. He associates this drug with 1/30 to 1/20 doses of strychnin similarly administered.

The treatment of the *milder varieties of hematuria* is most satisfactory. The administration of quinin in almost any way, say 3 grains (0.19 gm.) every three hours for several days, will effectually break up the paroxysms, and its use in smaller doses for some time longer will prevent a return.

Not all practitioners, even those residing in districts where it is most rife, are agreed upon the treatment of the *graver forms of malarial hematuria* as it occurs in Southern latitudes. While some do not hesitate to use quinin, in the way it is used in ordinary forms, many of the most experienced physicians in the Southern United States object to this drug, on the ground that it may even cause hemoglobinuria, a belief endorsed by such authorities as Tomaso Celli, who was the first to direct attention to it, Marchiafava, Bignami, Bastianelli, the brothers Plehn and Robert Koch abroad. I cannot better express the views of the Southern physicians referred to, than by quoting one of their number, Krauss,<sup>1</sup> already mentioned, who says:—"We are therefore forced to the conclusion that hematuria once begun, quinin has no place in its therapy." And again, "Only so long as the sporulating parasites are in the peripheral blood and there is no hematuria, is it fit to be used."

To the majority of Northern physicians who accept the dictum *malaria ergo quinin*, such a statement is a surprise, indeed seems almost incredible. It is, however, less surprising after examining the studies on the blood by the authors named, and especially by Bordet and Marchiafava and Bignami. From these it seems that malarial hemoglobinuria is brought about by a hemolytic substance or anti-alexin set free in the blood-plasma. The hemolysis may be precipitated by an unusual sporulation of plasmodia on the one hand or anti-malarial treatment on the other. In the normal blood, quinin will not cause hemoglobinuria. Moreover, it is held that a long continued action of the malarial toxin is necessary and such is the experience of our Southern physicians, who found it especially prone to occur in neglected intermittent and remittent fevers. It is especially important to note that the quinin and malarial toxin are simply the agents which liberate the hemolytic substance and are comparable to the "addiments"<sup>2</sup> of Ehrlich and Morgenroth.

The effect of quinin on susceptible subjects is due entirely to the amount of hemolytic stored up, and this varies with different individuals. Some set

<sup>1</sup> "Memphis Medical Journal," April, 1902. Page 177.

<sup>2</sup> Addiment, Ehrlich and Morgenroth's term (1899) for an active thermolabile substance (destroyed by a temperature of 56° C.) contained in normal serum and capable of liberating the immune body of Ehrlich and setting up bacteriolysis and hemolysis.

free their storage after a single dose, and subsequent doses can do no harm. Others eliminate their storage after a few days' duration of the syndrome, and in some it persists. In these, all treatment must be suspended and they must be allowed to immunize themselves. As small a dose as  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a grain (48.6 mgr.) has produced hemoglobinuria. Hemoglobinuria, being therefore a consequence of malaria and not a cause, it does not *per se* call for quinin which, on the other hand, may precipitate it.

It is evident that the treatment of the graver forms of hematuria becomes a much more complex problem if these new views be accepted. Again quoting Krauss, "So long as sporulating parasites are present in the blood and there is no hematuria, push it (quinin) to the limit. If oral administration is not practicable give the neutral chlorid in very dilute solution with an antitoxin syringe." Otherwise the use of quinin must be cautious and tentative. If the urine redden or a chill supervene the drug must be omitted. On the other hand, before hematuria has occurred quinin may be given, because "a further neglect of an already neglected malaria is more provocative of a hemoglobinuria than any amount of quinin before the attack." If well borne the dose may be increased.<sup>1</sup>

If present expectations are realised as to methylene blue, this may prove a suitable substitute for quinin in the treatment of this form of malarial fever.

Treatment is otherwise symptomatic usually eliminative and restorative. Elimination is secured by water drinking and rectal injection of normal salt solution, or if not retained, by hypodermoclysis or even intravenous injection, one object being to prevent inspissation of the blood, favored by the sharp purging and vomiting. The skin must be kept active by cautious doses of pilcarpin, by hot packs and by the use of woollen clothing. Stimulating diuretics are strongly disadvised. Vomiting may be controlled by morphin injection and cold drinks, such as champagne, carbonated waters and Appollinaris water. Strychnin may be given hypodermically.

It is in *chronic malaria* especially that *arsenic* becomes a useful remedy. Fowler's solution being the best preparation. It should be given in ascending doses. *Iron* is often advantageously associated with it, and for such a combination the solution of the chlorid of arsenic and the tincture of the chlorid of iron are especially suitable. Here, as elsewhere, I am disposed to believe that needlessly large doses of iron have been given and that the constipating effect of iron, so justly complained of, would be obviated by giving doses little in excess of what can be absorbed. For it is this excess remaining in the alimentary canal that works the mischief. Three

<sup>1</sup> I have asked Krauss to write out in further detail the treatment as he would practice it in such a case and he has furnished me with the following:

1. If the onset follows the use of quinin I would suspend the use or it until the urine has cleared up, then begin it cautiously, and if there is no hemolytic reaction, proceed (intramuscularly, of course) until it is believed that 30 grains of it is in the blood at one time. If a reaction (rigor and dark urine) follows wait a few days and begin still more cautiously.

2. If the patient has had no quinin, and the symptoms are not those of a malarial paroxysm, I would do the same.

3. If there are distinct paroxysms of fever without a quinin history, the physician may elect to take his chances with quinin, by giving four simultaneous injections in different places of 5 grains each. If, coincident with the time of absorption, a rigor occurs, its use is discontinued even though the case appear hopeless, else proceed to saturation. Time this dose so as not to meet a sporulation.

4. In comatose cases a blood examination may differentiate between active sporulation and other causes and treatment given according to rule 1.

5. During convalescence an attempt to get one good "saturation" should be made.

minims (0.333 gm.) of the tincture of the chlorid, combined with as many of the solution of the chlorid of arsenic, are a proper dose, but the arsenic should be increased until a slight puffiness of the face results. The carbonate of iron or the reduced iron sulphate may be given in doses not exceeding one grain (0.066 gm.). A modified Blaud's pill containing in addition to the carbonate of iron, arsenic in  $1/30$  grain (0.0026 gm.) doses is a very efficient and convenient remedy. The administration of iron should be kept up a long time.

*Quinin* should not be omitted in this form of malaria, but there is no advantage in giving it in large doses. It should rather be kept up a long time. *Strychnine* and *mineral acids* are also useful remedies for the gastric derangement, while constipation may be treated by an occasional mercurial purge, say a couple of grains (0.132 gm.) of blue mass, to which may be added as much compound extract of colocynth, and as much extract of hyoscyamus, or  $1/8$  grain (0.008 gm.) of extract of belladonna.

Very popular in the hands of some physicians is Warburg's Tincture, and it does seem that it succeeds where quinin alone fails. Besides quinin, it contains aloes, rhubarb, and a number of aromatics. One formula omits the aloes, so that in prescribing one should say with or without aloes. It usually proves a powerful sudorific. It is given in  $1/2$  ounce doses, repeated after two or three hours. The action is similar to that of antipyrin, phenacetin, etc.

## YELLOW FEVER.

SYNONYMS.—*Febris flava*; *Bilious Remittent Fever* (Rush); *Kendall's Fever*; *Barbadoes Distemper*; *Elodes icterodes*; *Typhus icterodes*; *Typhus tropicus*.

**Definition.**—Yellow fever is an acute infectious disease, characterized by a febrile paroxysm succeeded by a brief remission and a relapse. It is associated more or less constantly with jaundice, and tendency to hemorrhage especially into the stomach, whence the blood is vomited constituting "black vomit." Neither jaundice nor black vomit is essential to the disease.

**History.**—The birthplace of yellow fever is unknown. It appeared in Barbadoes in 1647; prevailed in Jamaica in 1671; at St. Domingo in 1691; Pernambuco, in Brazil, from 1687 to 1694; in Martinique in 1690; in Boston Harbor probably in 1692; Philadelphia and Charleston in 1692; Rocheford, France, in 1694; and Philadelphia again in 1699, when a severe epidemic prevailed. Philadelphia was again visited in 1741 and 1762; New York in 1791, and Philadelphia in 1793, during which time there reigned one of the most frightful epidemics history records, 4040 dying out of a population of 40,000. After 1793 the disease prevailed more or less every year in the United States until 1805. From 1805 to 1820 the epidemics were limited or only isolated cases occurred, until 1820, when Philadelphia was again severely attacked. After 1820 there was a period of comparative immunity, but not without cases and small epidemics in various cities of the United States, until 1853, when there raged a violent outbreak through the southern cities of the Union. It prevailed in Norfolk, Va., severely in 1856. In New Orleans alone in that year nearly 8000 died. In 1867 and 1873 there were other epidemics of moderate severity, and in 1878 another severe epidemic appeared, chiefly in Louisiana, Alabama, and Mississippi, during which nearly 1600 died. This was the last severe epidemic. In 1897 there were several local outbreaks in the Gulf States. In New Orleans alone, between September 8 and December 11, there were 1902 cases, with 288 deaths, according to the Marine Hospital Reports.

Thus, it is in a sense an American disease, and except in Spanish ports it has been limited in Europe to ports to which it has been carried. It is,

however, endemic on the west coast of Africa as well as in the West Indies until modern regulations succeeded in almost stamping it out.

**Distribution.**—John Guitéras makes three areas of infection: (1) The focal zone, in which, up to 1901, the disease was never absent, including Havana, Vera Cruz, Rio de Janeiro, and other Spanish-American ports. (2) Perifocal zone, or region of periodic epidemics, including the ports in the tropical Atlantic, in America, and Africa. (3) The zone of accidental epidemics, between the parallels of 45 degrees north and 35 degrees south latitude.

A very interesting fact in connection with yellow fever is its limitation to the sea and the seacoast, as it rarely invades interior cities or altitudes higher than 1000 feet (300 meters).

**Etiology.**—The analogy between yellow fever and the other forms of contagio-infectious disease, in its origin, spread, and conditions, renders it more than likely that it, in common with them, is the result of a specific organism. Domingos Fréire, of Brazil; Carmona, of Mexico; Gibier at Havana, and others have described organisms as possibly responsible, all of which have been rejected. In 1889 Surgeon General Sternberg, U. S. A., discovered a bacillus in the tissues of yellow fever patients, which he called bacillus X. In 1896 Sanarelli,<sup>1</sup> Director of the Institute of Experimental Medicine at Montevideo, isolated a bacillus, which he called *bacillus icterodes*. These, Sternberg says, are identical, but Walter Reed and James Carroll, after a careful study, concluded that the bacillus X belongs to the colon group, and the bacillus icterodes to the hog cholera group.<sup>2</sup>

Notwithstanding the fact that Sanarelli's bacillus has been found by a number of observers in from 33 to 50 per cent. of cases examined, conclusive evidence that it is the specific germ of yellow fever is wanting. On the other hand, the most recent studies of Reed and Carroll go to show that it is probably an ultra-microscopic organism, a member of the animal kingdom, in the blood of the infecting person.<sup>3</sup> These results are confirmed by the yellow fever commission of the Pasteur Institute. The Pasteur commission has further shown that the organism can be separated from the serum and the latter rendered innocuous by passing through the finest grade of Pasteur bougie. As to the propagation of the disease, the same observers with Aristides Agramonte, all of the United States Army Medical Department,<sup>4</sup> have placed the *mosquito theory* of the *origin of yellow fever* on so substantial a basis that it would seem that further discussion of other theories may as well be laid aside. This theory, which, it will be remembered, makes the mosquito the host of the unknown parasite of yellow fever, was first advanced by Carlos J. Finlay, of Havana, as far back as 1881,<sup>5</sup> but made little impression. The studies of Reed and his colleagues made in the island of Cuba in 1900, are most convincing. They included two divisions: First, the exposure of immunes to the bites of mosquitoes which had bitten yellow fever subjects; and second, exposure of the same to fomites by handling and sleeping in clothing saturated with the discharges

<sup>1</sup> "Annales de l'Institut Pasteur," xi, 438, 1897.

<sup>2</sup> "Journal of Experimental Medicine," vol. v, No. 3, December, 1900.

<sup>3</sup> "Etiology of Yellow Fever; A Supplemental Note." "Am. Medicine," February 22, 1902.

<sup>4</sup> "Etiology of Yellow Fever," "Philadelphia Medical Journal," October 27, 1900. "Etiology of Yellow

Fever: An Additional Note," "Journal of American Medical Association," February 16, 1901.

<sup>5</sup> "Annales de la Real Academia," vol. xviii., 1881, pp. 147-169.

of yellow fever patients. Their conclusions are as follows: 1. The mosquito—*Stegomyia fasciata*—serves as the intermediate host for the parasite of yellow fever. 2. Yellow fever is transmitted to the non-immune individual by the bite of a mosquito that has previously fed on the blood of those sick with this disease. 3. An interval of about 12 days or more after contamination appears to be necessary before the mosquito is capable of conveying the infection. 4. The bite of the mosquito at an earlier period after contamination does not appear to confer any immunity against a subsequent attack. 5. Yellow fever can also be experimentally produced by the subcutaneous injection of blood taken from the general circulation during the first and second days of this disease. 6. An attack of yellow fever produced by the bite of a mosquito confers immunity against the subsequent injection of the blood of an individual suffering from the non-experimental form of this disease. 7. The period of incubation in 13 cases of experimental yellow fever has varied from 41 hours to five days and 17 hours. 8. Yellow fever is not conveyed by fomites, and hence disinfection of articles of clothing, bedding, or merchandise supposedly contaminated by contact with those sick with the disease is unnecessary. 9. A house may be said to be infected with yellow fever only when there are present within it all contaminated mosquitoes capable of conveying the parasite of this disease. 10. The spread of yellow fever can be most effectually controlled by measures directed to the destruction of mosquitoes and the protection of the sick and well against the bites of the insects. 11. While the mode of propagation of yellow fever has now been definitely determined, the specific cause of this disease remains to be discovered.

It is evident that many of the older views, so long accepted, must be given up if this theory is adopted. On the other hand, many well-known facts are more satisfactorily explained. Among these is this, that freezing weather terminates the activity of the disease, but does not destroy it.

Yellow fever attacks all races, both sexes, and all ages except the very young. Yet it is through the young that the disease is maintained in a native population, because protection is secured by a previous attack or long residence in a locality in which it is endemic, and it is the young who, as they grow up, furnish the pabulum for fresh cases. The negro and the creole, although not immune, are comparatively so. More males are attacked than females, because of their frequent exposure. Strangers are especially liable.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Intense *yellow coloration* and *hemorrhagic extravasations* under the *skin* are present. The yellow coloration is due to a mixed hepatogenous and hematogenous jaundice. The serum of the blood is red-tinted, because of its containing dissolved hemoglobin. The *liver* is the organ which has always been regarded as exhibiting the most characteristic change. Yet this is not always so. It becomes ultimately fatty, when its color resembles the yellow of admixed coffee and milk—a *café au lait* appearance—as contrasted with the more bronzed appearance of the liver of remittent fever. Earlier in the disease the organ may be slightly enlarged from hyperemia. It may be a nutmeg liver. The liver-cells present various stages of fatty degeneration, with necrotic masses in and

between the liver-cells, described by George M. Sternberg. The *gall-bladder* is generally empty. The kidney may exhibit cloudy swelling of even acute nephritis, and pale, fatty areas may be seen at the bases of the pyramids. Various bacteria are found in the liver and kidney.

The *stomach* after death contains more or less of the 'black vomit,'

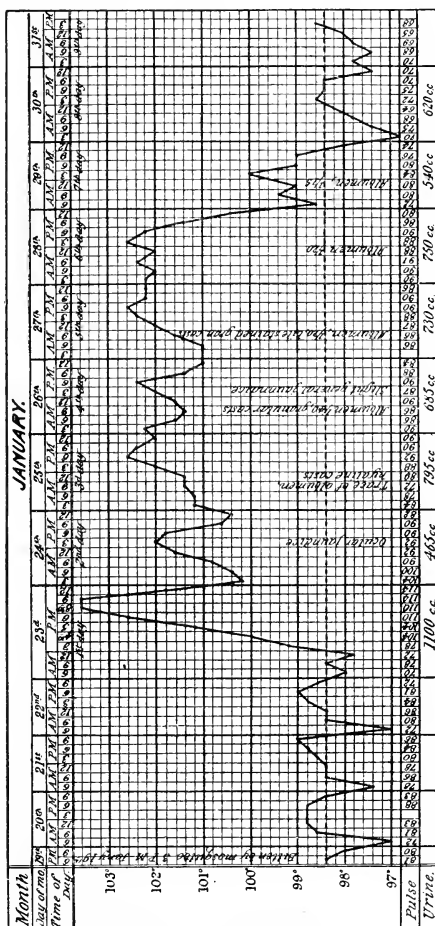


FIG. 12.—Chart of Yellow Fever—Produced by the Bite of *Culex Fasciatus*. After Reed, Carroll and Agramonte, Transactions Association of American Physicians, Vol. XVI, 1901.

which is a mixture of transuded serum and altered blood pigment. The mucous membrane of the stomach is hyperemic and more or less swollen, and there are blood extravasations.

Surgeon Eugene Wasdin,<sup>†</sup> in a paper on the postmortem findings of yellow fever, says the morbid appearances postmortem cannot be regarded as sufficiently distinctive to admit a diagnosis from them alone.

<sup>1</sup> "United States Marine Hospital Reports for the Fiscal Year 1898."

**Symptoms.**—Yellow fever has a *period of incubation* of from 24 hours to five days, very rarely exceeding the latter. It is usually three or four days. (See Reed and Carroll's conclusions.) After this follows the *stage of invasion* or *febrile stage*, with sudden onset and generally a chill, promptly followed by headache and severe pain in the back and limbs. The patient may be seized at any time, day or night. Surgeon R. D. Murray,<sup>1</sup> of the United States Marine Hospital Service, emphasizes the fact that yellow fever *usually begins at night* when the patient is relaxed, while malarial fever attacks him more frequently when at work. The fever rises rapidly to 102° F. (38.9° C.) and as high as 105° F. (40.5° C.). The pulse corresponds, until the second or third day when it begins to fall even while the fever keeps up. The skin feels hot and dry, but less pungently so than in typhus. Even on the first day the face is flushed, the eyes are injected, the lids perhaps slightly tumid, the tongue furred but moist, the throat sore, the bowels constipated, the urine is scanty and often albuminous, though albuminuria does not generally appear until the evening of the third day. So, too, at this early stage there may be slight *jaundice*, and Guitéras says this "early manifestation of jaundice is undoubtedly the most characteristic feature of the facies of yellow fever." There may be nausea from the beginning, but it is not until the second or third day that it is aggravated and the characteristic "black vomit" makes its appearance. This resembles an infusion of coffee, and deposits a sediment comparable to coffee grounds, and which consists of broken-down red corpuscles and hematin. In the worst cases the vomited matter may be tar-like in appearance and consistency. On the other hand, "black vomit" is not always present, being generally confined to the severe cases. In some, the vomited matter is watery or bilious. *This stage lasts from a few hours to two or three days.*

Then follows the *second stage*, or *stage of calm*, in which there is a decline in the fever and of the other symptoms generally. This may be the beginning of convalescence in the mild cases. But in severe cases this stage is of short duration—from a few hours to one or two days.

Then the *third stage*, or *stage of febrile reaction*, sets in, lasting one, two, or three days. The temperature now rises again, *although the pulse may continue to fall*; the nausea and vomiting return—the latter becomes again hemorrhagic and may be accompanied by abdominal pain. Black and offensive stools occur. Jaundice, if not previously present, now makes its appearance; the tongue becomes dry and brown, and there may be bleeding of the gums—indeed, from all the mucous membranes. To albuminuria may be added *hematuria*. The strength rapidly fails, the pulse grows weaker, there is nervous trembling, suppression of urine, mental wandering, convulsions or stupor, and death.

Such, however, is not always the termination, even when there has been "black vomit." The symptoms may all gradually subside and the patient recover, although the jaundice may persist for a long time. In mild cases the calm stage, as stated, may be succeeded by convalescence.

Guitéras<sup>2</sup> regards as the three characteristic symptoms of yellow

<sup>1</sup> "Marine Hospital Reports," 1899, p. 303.

<sup>2</sup> "Diagnosis of Yellow Fever," "U. S. Marine Hospital Reports for the Fiscal Year 1898."



fever: First, the *facies*, including especially early jaundice. Second, *albuminuria*, which, he says, is rarely so early in other fevers, unless of an unusually severe type. "Even in the mild cases, that do not go to bed—cases of 'walking yellow fever'—on the second, third, or fourth day of the disease albuminuria will show itself," though it may be quite transient. Third, a peculiar *slowing of the pulse*, with a steady or even rising temperature. This symptom was first pointed out by Faget, of New Orleans. It is noted more particularly on the second or third day, when the fever is still keeping up, that the pulse begins to slow, dropping as much as 20 beats, while the temperature has risen  $1\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  to  $2^{\circ}$ . On the evening of the third day there may be a temperature of  $103^{\circ}$  to  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $39.4^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$  C.), with a pulse running from 70 to 80. During defervescence the pulse may become still slower—down to 50, 48, 45, or even 30.

**Diagnosis.**—The three characteristic symptoms of Guitéras above pointed out should be borne in mind, viz., *facies*, early albuminuria, and slow pulse. As to differential diagnosis, yellow fever is most likely to be confounded with severe fever of *bilious or malarial remittent* type. Indeed, the resemblance is sometimes very close, especially when the latter is accompanied by hematuria. But the remission occurs earlier in remittent fever and the chill is of much longer duration, while the presence of Laveran's plasmodium in the blood settles the question in favor of the latter. *Acute yellow atrophy* of the liver is a disease more insidious in its approach and less febrile. The urine in acute yellow atrophy is loaded with bile.

*Relapsing fever* resembles yellow fever only in the symptoms of the relapse, but this occurs much earlier in yellow fever. The similarity of the mild forms of yellow fever to *thermic* fever has been emphasized by Guitéras.

As to *dengue*, or break-bone fever, increased importance has recently attached to the diagnosis between this disease and yellow fever because of the dispute as to whether certain cases in the epidemic of 1897 in the Southern United States—as at Galveston, for example—were cases of dengue or of yellow fever. The question is one which presents difficulties, for both jaundice and hemorrhage, including black vomit, have been in the past credited to dengue, while in the disputed cases black vomit, at least, was wanting. In favor of yellow fever were the authoritative names of Guitéras and H. A. West, of Galveston. The following table of contrasted symptoms was kindly prepared for me by H. A. West:

## YELLOW FEVER.

1. One febrile paroxysm, characterized by a steady rise and lasting usually about three days. The temperature rises rapidly, the acme is often reached within a few hours from the onset.

2. The pulse rate is characterized by abnormal slowness and want of correspondence with the temperature; while the latter is rising from three to four degrees the pulse continues to diminish in frequency.

## DENGUE.

1. Usually one febrile paroxysm, but sometimes two, a steady rise of temperature until the acme is reached; a short stadium, followed by a remission, then not infrequently a second rise. Duration four to eight days.

2. The pulse usually increases in rapidity with rise of temperature, though an abnormally slow pulse may sometimes be observed.

## YELLOW FEVER.

3. There are cutting pains through the forehead, the eyes ache, the muscles of the back, loins, thighs, and calves are sore and often ache severely, even in mild cases. The pain is muscular rather than articular.

4. There is no glandular involvement.

5. The face is turgid, not infrequently a dusky red. The upper eyelid is often swollen. The appearance is that of typhus or of measles before the eruption, with the addition of slight or well marked jaundice. The conjunctivæ are congested and shiny with a slight yellow tinge, the eyes sometimes intensely red and sensitive to light. The jaundice becomes more distinct after the first or second day, the skin showing the same combination of capillary stasis with an icteroid hue as the eyes. As the case progresses, jaundice may become intense.

6. The tongue is whitish in the center with red tip and edges, and is pointed; gums swollen and disposed to bleed. Epigastric tenderness and pain, nausea and vomiting are common; in the stage of depression black vomit is not infrequent; it is alarming and often of fatal import.

7. Eruption absent, or extremely rare and insignificant.

8. Urine scanty, albumin usually found within seventy-two hours; there may be only a trace in the evening urine. In the second stage albumin may be abundant and accompanied by all the evidences of a severe nephritis, the presence of casts, hematuria, disposition to anuria and uremia. *In every severe case nephritic complications dominate the clinical picture.*

9. Tendency to hemorrhages common, from nose, gums, bowels, uterus, kidneys, and stomach, the last often fatal.

10. Disease often fatal.

11. One attack protects from another.

12. Not protective against dengue.

## DENGUE.

3. Headache is more or less intense, pains in the limbs and back are severe and apparently involving the bones and joints. The latter are not only painful and stiffened, but in many instances swollen.

4. The lymphatic glands are enlarged with varying degrees of frequency in different epidemics.

5. The face is generally flushed, the eyelids swollen, the eyes injected and watery; there may be a slight jaundice, but this symptom is extremely suspicious of yellow fever.

6. The tongue at first is covered with a white fur; it is swollen and the edges are red, and as the case progresses the coating increases in thickness and becomes a dirty yellow. In many cases there is nausea, but vomiting is rare.

7. An eruption occurs in quite a large number of cases; it may be a simple erythema or resemble that of scarlatina, measles, lichen, or urticaria.

8. The urine, except in rare instances, is free from albumin; if present at all, it is evanescent. There is no evidence whatever that serious kidney complications belong to the pathology of dengue.

9. Hemorrhages from mucous membranes, nose, gums, intestines, uterus and kidneys not infrequent, but rarely of serious import.

10. Prognosis proverbially favorable.

11. One attack does not protect from another.

12. Not protective against yellow fever.

**Prognosis.**—Yellow fever is a grave disease, and in its severe forms one of the most fatal of the infectious diseases. The mortality ranges from 15 per cent. to 85 per cent. Among the dissipated, the worn-out, the poor, and in hospitals the mortality is higher; it is less in the colored race. "Black vomit" is not necessarily a fatal symptom. Many malignant cases terminate in a couple of days. Modern studies go to show the ravages of yellow fever will be greatly diminished in the near future, emphasized by the statement of Guiteras at the Sanitary Conference of American Republics, held in Washington, D. C., in December, 1902, to the effect that "not a case of yellow fever has originated in Cuba for 14 months."

**Treatment.**—There is no specific treatment for yellow fever, and the symptoms are to be met as they arise. The practice quite general in the Southern United States to give an initial dose of castor oil is justified. Some prefer calomel 5 to 10 grains (0.33 to 0.66 gm.); others compound cathartic pills, 1, 2, or 3 at a dose followed, if necessary, by a saline such as cold citrate of magnesia, Epson salt, or Glauber salt. The last is preferred by some who have had the longest experience. These measures are followed by efforts to cause perspiration, in which the hot foot-bath is included. Quinin is not recommended by those of wide experience for any specific effect, though it may be given for its antipyretic effect. The latter is, however, better accomplished in the early stages by the coal-tar derivatives antipyrin and acetanilid. Seven and one-half grains (0.5 gm.) may be given hourly until relief is afforded. Recent views as to the etiology of the disease would seem to justify a return to quinin for its original purpose. We may seek to stop vomiting by ice internally and externally and hypodermic injections of morphin, by cold dry champagne and cold effervescing waters. Food should be withheld for from three to five days, and then be of the simplest kind, of which a mixture of equal parts of milk and Vichy is the type. The hemorrhagic tendency may be combated by astringents, including iron. Washing out the rectum by warm water and soap enemas, carried high up in the bowel, is highly recommended by Marine Hospital Surgeon H. D. Geddings.<sup>1</sup> Two or three pints must be used. Normal salt solution may be thus used with a view to its being retained and absorbed.

The failing strength is to be supported by alcohol, strychnin, and digitalis; the high temperature reduced by sponging and cool baths. Nutrient enemas are to be relied on when vomiting is uncontrollable.

The following line of treatment laid down by Surgeon-General Sternberg appears to have been especially satisfactory in cases treated in United States, Cuba, and Brazil, with a mortality, according to Carroll, of only 7.3 per cent. In addition to sodium bicarbonate 7 1/2 grains (0.5 gm.), mercury bichlorid 1/60 grain (0.001 gm.) every hour, he advises a hot mustard foot-bath during the first 24 hours, cold sponging, cold applications to the head, protection from currents of air, sinapisms over the stomach and lumbar region, the promotion of perspiration, withholding of food during the first three days, and stimulants, in the form of iced champagne or good brandy, after the fourth day. If the stomach be irritable he advises milk and lime water, and if these do not agree, nutrient enemas. Later on he allows milk punch, ale, porter, etc.

Good judgment should be exercised in discriminating against the overuse of drugs.

Prophylaxis is more efficient than direct treatment, but modern etiology has overthrown rules formerly supposed well established and resolved it chiefly into (1) Guarding non-immunes against infection by the mosquito. (2) Screening the house of the infected person against the insect in order to prevent the spread of the disease. (3) The destruction of as many mosquitos as possible, by drainage, by covering breeding places with insecticides and larvicides. Among these may be mentioned tobacco

<sup>1</sup> "United States Marine Hospital Reports for Fiscal Year 1898."

leaves, chrysanthemum powder, the anilin dyes, and petroleum. (4) Depopulation of infected places—that is, the removal of all susceptible persons whose presence is not necessary for the care of the sick.

*Vaccination Treatment.*—Recent attempts at protective inoculation have not been followed by satisfactory results in yellow fever, though success for this treatment was claimed by W. L. de Humboldt as far back as 1854, Caromon in 1881, and Fréire in 1884. Sanarelli has used the “antiarmyric” serum of a horse inoculated with gradually increasing doses of the icteroid bacillus for 18 months. He treated eight cases subcutaneously, of whom two died. He also treated 14 cases by intravenous injection, of whom four died.<sup>1</sup>

## DENGUE.

SYNONYMS.—*Break-bone Fever; Dandy Fever.*

**Definition.**—Dengue is an epidemic, infectious, possibly contagious disease, characterized by paroxysms of extreme pain in the joints and muscles, accompanied by fever and sometimes eruptions on the skin.

**Historical.**—Dengue was recognized as a distinct disease in the latter part of the eighteenth century, first in Spain in 1764–68. It prevailed in Cairo and Java in 1779. In 1780 an epidemic prevailed in Philadelphia, which was described by Benjamin Rush under the name of bilious intermitting fever. In 1824 it prevailed in Calcutta, in 1827 and 1828 in Charleston, Savannah, and in New Orleans, U. S., and in the West Indies, and was described by the late Professor S. H. Dickson, then of Charleston. Prof. Dickson's description was based on the epidemic which prevailed in Charleston in 1828. Since then there have been numerous epidemics, for the most part south of the 32nd parallel of latitude. In 1888 it invaded Virginia. It is very prevalent in Texas and it is said that in Galveston, in 1897, 20,000 were attacked in two months. It has visited the Philippines since these Islands became our possessions, attacking natives and United States troops alike. The word dengue is probably of Spanish origin and means the same as “dandy.”

**Etiology.**—J. W. McLaughlin, of Texas, has found in the blood of a dengue patient a micrococcus, which he holds accountable for the disease, but the discovery has not been confirmed. Analogy would lead us to suspect such an organism, while experience justifies a like conclusion. Dengue spreads, as do diseases thus caused, by the routes and means of travel. It attacks both sexes and all ages, regardless of season, although warm climates are its natural habitat, and it is rather more common in summer. It is not usual to have more than one attack. No morbid anatomical changes have been found associated with the disease.

**Symptoms.**—Dengue is usually sudden in its onset, after a *period of incubation* lasting from three to five days, at the end of which there may be some *sense of discomfort*, more frequently there is not, *headache*, and even *chilliness*. Suddenly, often at night, the patient is struck with *pain* in the muscles and joints, and especially the muscles of the back and loins. The pain is searching, as though extending into the bones themselves. The small as well as the large joints are affected, and the pain is aggravated on motion. The suffering is extreme, and it may be said that the patient is literally racked with torture.

Simultaneously there are *headache* and *fever*, the former severe and the latter quite high, rising rapidly to 102°, 103°, 105° F. (38.9°, 39.4°, 40.5°

<sup>1</sup> Sanarelli, “*Annales de l'Institut Pasteur*,” vol. xii. p. 348, 1898.

C.), and even 106° or 107° F. (41.1° or 41.6° C.), reaching its maximum from the second to the fourth day, then declining, reaching the normal about the fifth day. The face is flushed, the conjunctivæ are congested, commonly less so than in yellow fever; the pulse is frequent, 100 to 120, rising and falling with the fever. *Delirium is not a marked feature, save in children.* The tongue is coated and red at the tip and edges; there are loss of appetite, slight nausea, and extreme thirst, scanty urine, and constipation; at times, however, the urine is copious and clear. Hemorrhage from the nose and gums has been noted, and both Eugene Foster and D. C. Holliday have seen black vomit similar to that of yellow fever; and in one case copious hemorrhage from the bowels, which persisted three months and terminated in death, was observed.

The paroxysm lasts three or four days, at the end of which the temperature falls, the pain subsides, and a short period of comparative comfort, though one also of great prostration, succeeds that of great suffering. It is during this remission that an erythematous rash makes its appearance on the face, neck, and shoulders, and thence over the whole body in two or three days. At the same time the lymphatic glands at the back of the head and neck, in the axillæ and groins, swell, with some return of fever. The eruption is not constant or always uniform. It lasts from a few hours to a couple of days, when it subsides with the beginning of the second febrile movement, which is milder and shorter, after which true convalescence sets in. The eruption may also reappear, though rarely.

**Diagnosis.**—On account of the joint involvement, associated, as it often is, with redness, dengue has not inexcusably been mistaken for *acute rheumatism*; but the decided remission in three days, the altogether short duration of the disease, and its epidemic character, should soon resolve all doubt. The absence of any glandular swelling or eruption in rheumatism and the more close limitation of the pain, to the joints aid in the discrimination.

After rheumatism, influenza is perhaps the next disease with which dengue may be confounded. It, too, is epidemic, and is attended often by extreme and sudden muscular pains, but the sudden intermission characteristic of dengue does not occur in influenza, nor does the eruption or glandular swelling.

The resemblance of dengue to *yellow fever* has been referred to under the latter disease, where, too, the two conditions are contrasted.

**Prognosis.**—Notwithstanding the extreme suffering, recovery is the invariable rule.

**Treatment.**—Nothing can be done to cut short the disease. The most satisfactory method to control the pain is by the hypodermic injection of morphin and atropin. One-fourth grain (0.016 gm.) of the former and 1/150 grain (0.00044 gm.) of the latter may be given, supplemented by phenacetin, aspirin and antipyrin, in doses of 10 grains (0.66 gm.) of the former and 5 grains (0.33 gm.) of the latter, every two hours, when the hypodermic injection may be repeated if relief has not been obtained. The coal-tar derivatives are also the best remedies for the fever, but they may be supplemented by sponging with cool water, or the cold bath in extreme cases. Prostration must be met by alcoholic preparations.

## CHOLERA.

SYNONYMS.—*Cholera asiatica*; *Cholera algida*; *Cholera maligna*; *Cholera infectiosa*; *Epidemic Cholera*.

**Definition.**—Cholera is an acute infectious disease caused by a toxine evolved by a pathogenic organism known as the comma bacillus or spirillum of Koch, named after its discoverer. It is characterized especially by vomiting, purging, painful cramp, and collapse.

**Historical.**—Cholera is a disease long endemic in certain localities in India, whence it has made periodical visitations to Europe, and in 1831–33 for the first time to North America. It invaded the United States in 1832 by two channels of immigration—first, from Great Britain by way of Quebec and the Great Lakes, reaching the then limits of settlement, the military posts of the upper Mississippi; second, by way of New York. In 1835–36 another visitation occurred, and in 1848 another by way of New Orleans and the Mississippi Valley, extending even to California. In 1854 a severe epidemic raged through the United States, for which immigration was also responsible. In 1865 Arabia and Egypt were severely visited in the spring, Constantinople in July, and thence all Europe. In 1866 it again appeared in Egypt, spread over all Europe, reaching the United States the same summer, during which there were quite a number of cases, some of which came under the observation of the author in the Philadelphia Hospital. An extensive outbreak prevailed in Europe in 1884, extending to Italy, Spain, and France, but it did not reach the United States.

Much more serious than any of the more recent epidemics was that of 1892, which started in March or April in the northwestern provinces of India, attacking with great violence the pilgrims at the great Hurdwar Fair, near the source of the Ganges, and extending thence through Cashmere and Afghanistan to Persia, where it arrived in May or June. Thence it crossed the Caspian Sea and spread rapidly through European Russia into Prussia, seating itself most stubbornly and savagely in Hamburg in August. Havre, Antwerp, Berlin, Vienna, and especially Budapest in Hungary, were also visited. A few cases occurred in Southampton, London, and Liverpool, and it reached New York Harbor in September, 1892. A few cases were also reported in New York City, but there was no further spread. An epidemic of cholera prevailed in 1904 in the Philippine Islands, from which in the city of Manila alone, 3866 persons perished; while in the Provinces there were 9745 deaths from Asiatic Cholera, reported by Major E. C. Carter Commissioner of Public Health during the epidemic.

**Etiology.**—It is now generally acknowledged that cholera owes its existence to the comma bacillus or spirochæta, a semispiral rod-bacillus discovered by Koch in 1884. It is thicker, but not more than half so long as the tubercle bacillus. Sometimes, by the apposition of two bacilli, an S- or a corkscrew-shape is produced. Its multiplication is favored by heat, moisture, and filth. It is easy of destruction, even by weak acids and a temperature of 140° F. (60° C.). It can produce cholera only when it is taken in by the stomach, where, however, a normal gastric juice is always able to destroy it, while weak digestion induces a vulnerability that is promptly availed of by the bacillus, which quickly passes into the intestine, where the alkaline reaction of the secretions favors its multiplication in enormous numbers. Bacilli are rarely found in vomited matters, but are numerous in the fecal discharges, and are found in the intestines after death. They may invade the follicles and intestinal wall, but some time is required for this, and such invasion does not occur in cases speedily fatal. Nor has the comma bacillus been as yet isolated from the blood.

**Medium of Infection.**—Drinking-water and contaminated food are the acknowledged media through which the bacillus is commonly introduced into the human organism, but it may be conveyed in clothing or food, on the hands, and may even enter the mouth while floating in the air. The postal

service is regarded as a means of infection. It frequently follows in the train of moving masses of human beings, such as emigrants and pilgrims, but it prefers the sea-level and lower altitudes, especially less than 1000 feet (305 meters) above the sea.

While at the present day the views of Koch as to the origin and spread of cholera are largely dominant, it should not be overlooked that an authority so high as that of Pettenkofer, of Munich, held that the germ of cholera develops in the soil-water of the earth during the heated months, and rises in the atmosphere as a miasm. He claimed that the conditions peculiarly favorable to its development are a low-ground water, associated with porosity, moisture, and a contamination with organic matter, especially sewage. A. Rubino, in his article in "Sajous' Annual," volume ii., 1899, says that both theories are in accordance with fact, and Asiatic cholera must therefore be regarded as a contagious and miasmatic disease.

As stated, anything that enfeebles digestion favors its permanent lodgment and multiplication. Hence, general ill-health, fatigue, the alcoholic habit, depression of spirits, fright, or anxiety, any one or all may be predisposing causes. All ages and sexes are liable to be infected, but young children seem most vulnerable.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The appearance of a man dead of cholera may present no peculiarity. More commonly, there is a shrunken aspect of the whole frame, the skin of the exposed and non-dependent parts is gray or ashen hued, while the dependent portions are livid. The eyes are deeply sunken, the temples hollow, the nose is pinched, and the skin clings closely to the bones beneath it. The appearances of such a body, in brief, are those of a wasted cadaver long immersed in the pickling vats of the dissecting room.

Very striking are the postmortem elevations of temperature and the phenomena of postmortem muscular contraction. The former has reached 109° F. (42.8° C.) and higher. The latter include movements of the lower jaw, rotation of the eyes, contraction of the arms and legs, sometimes startlingly life-like.

On section of the body the subcutaneous tissue is found dry, the blood in the vessels thick and dark. The condition of the stomach and bowels differs somewhat with death at different stages of the disease. If death takes place early the *stomach* is commonly, but not always, filled with a turbid liquid grayish-white in color, resembling rice water. In this the microscope may recognize columnar epithelial cells, isolated and in flakes; also the remnants of partially digested food, such as disintegrating muscular fasciculi and oil globules. The *mucous membrane* of stomach appears *congested*, and the course of the larger vessels can be readily traced in consequence of their being full of thick blood. A *papillated* appearance ascribed to enlargement of the solitary follicles is often present. The epithelium is detached in places; in others, intact.

The mucous membrane of the *small intestine* may also be much congested; the bowel is filled with rice-water fluid. On its surface lie numerous patches or flakes of detached epithelium, while the papillated appearance produced by the enlarged lymphadenoid follicles is everywhere present. The villi are largely denuded of epithelium, but in places they are intact.

If death takes place during imperfect reaction, the gastro-intestinal *mucous membrane* is still more congested and dark-red in color from hyperemia and *blood extravasation*. At such times, too, the solitary glands are conspicuous and cause also a *papillated* appearance even more striking than that in the stomach. Peyer's patches may also be swollen, and the same denudation of epithelium from the villi and elsewhere is present. The signs that suggest an inflammatory process are a slight cellular infiltration of the intestinal walls and the enlargement of the solitary follicles; also, at times, a diphtheritic exudate.

The *liver* is natural in size, but may be congested and darker hued than in health, while the cells exhibit cloudy swelling, and in places small areas of fatty change. The *spleen* is usually small, certainly not enlarged.

The condition of the *kidneys* varies with the stage at which the patient dies. If early in the disease the organ, superficially, is not much altered; it may be somewhat enlarged. The veins are slightly overfilled, but there is no marked capillary injection. There may be a few white or yellowish patches, where the epithelium is found compressed, cloudy, and fatty. The lumina of the tubes may, in places, be blocked with granular matter or well-formed casts, and there may be a few hemorrhagic foci, the changes starting from the pyramids.

If death takes place later, after reaction has set in, the kidney is enlarged. In the cortex are seen grayish-white and yellow patches, alternating with normal-hued portions. In these altered places the tubes are opaque with granular and fatty debris. Hemorrhagic infarcts may also be found in the cortical substance. The Malpighian capsules, with their included glomerular capillaries are intact.

The *heart* is normal in size, but its walls flaccid. The right cavities are commonly filled with dark, liquid blood; the left cavities, empty.

In many instances the *lungs* also present an appearance more or less characteristic, being shrunk and small, lying back in the thorax, as though collapsed. Like the other tissues, they are empty of blood except in their dependent portions, which are the seat of hypostasis. They have been compared by Parkes to fetal lungs. Sutton found the two organs to weigh but 20 ounces (600 gm.), as compared with 45 ounces (1350 gm.), when death occurred after reaction had been established—that is, after the blood had again occupied the pulmonary artery and its branches. Collapse may be interfered with by adhesions, in which event it is only partial.

Such appearances could, of course, occur in death from hemorrhage and, after all, the only distinctive condition is the presence of the rice-water fluid in the stomach and intestine, or in both, containing the "comma" bacillus and desquamated epithelium. The latter, to which the earlier descriptions attached great importance, is now generally regarded as *post-mortem* in origin. The flakes thus produced are also what the older authors described as patches of lymph.

**Symptoms.**—After a *period of incubation* ranging from 36 to 56 hours, rarely five days, the symptoms of cholera commonly present themselves gradually enough to permit of arrangement into three distinct groups or stages:

1. The stage of preliminary diarrhea.



2. The stage of collapse.

3. The stage of reaction.

The stages are by no means always recognizable, and the severity of the symptoms varies greatly, such variations being reasonably ascribed to the varying quantities or virulence of the specific poison. Mildness in a given case is no guarantee against virulence in another caused by it.

1. *The stage of preliminary diarrhea*<sup>1</sup> is characterized by moderate diarrhea, which is characteristically painless, but may be associated with colicky pains. The stools are yellow or yellowish throughout this stage, and are alkaline in reaction. Nausea and vomiting are not usual in it, and the patient may feel but slightly indisposed. There is generally a feeling of restless discomfort and depression, to which headache may contribute. The temperature remains normal. The first stage may last for a week or longer, or for a few hours only, or it may be entirely absent.

2. *In the stage of collapse* the diarrhea has become profuse. The discharges have lost their yellowish color and resemble thin gruel or rice-water. The fluid gushes out with great profuseness and apparent force. There may be griping or tenesmus, but more characteristic are the very painful muscular cramps, which usually begin in the fingers and toes and extend thence to the calves of the legs and abdominal walls. Vomiting, bilious at first, is soon added to the diarrhea. The fluid vomited soon assumes the rice-water character, and gushes from the mouth as from the bowel, in enormous quantities.

Extreme weakness and exhaustion are by this time present. The skin is blanched and shrunken, the lusterless eyes are sunken and bounded below by great circles of blue. The nose is pinched, the lips are thin, the cheeks hollow, and the countenance pallid to bluish grayness. The extremities and entire body become clammy and cold, the superficial temperature falls 5° or 6°, while that of the rectum rises to 103° and 104° F. (39° and 40° C.). There is intense thirst, the mouth is dry, speech is husky, whispering, and labored. The pulse is feeble, frequent, or absent at the wrist, and the patient appears to be dying. Even the heart-beat and sounds are almost gone, but the breathing continues. Through all this, consciousness may be maintained to the end or coma may supervene. Death commonly occurs in this stage.

On account of the scantiness of blood certain secretions cease and there is neither urine nor saliva, while power to perspire and even the lacteal secretion in nursing women, remain.

A more close examination of the rice-water vomited matters and bowel discharges reveals flakes of epithelium, mucus, and granular debris, and, with sufficiently high powers and suitable preparation, the cholera bacillus together with numerous other bacteria. Occasionally a little blood is present. The fluid is albuminous and contains the salts of the blood, among which sodium chlorid is conspicuous. Sometimes, however, there may be no vomiting or purging, whence the term *cholera sicca*. In these cases, however, the stomach and bowels are commonly found containing the characteristic fluid after death.

This second stage is generally of shorter duration, commonly a few hours only, but it may be prolonged to 12 or 24. The disease is some-

<sup>1</sup> To this stage the term *cholérine* has also been applied, but this word is now more commonly used to indicate a mild form of cholera.

times ushered in with the symptoms of this stage. It has been ascribed to the action of a toxin produced by the bacilli, which, when absorbed, produces the systemic effects of this stage, but it is likely that the flux is the principal factor in its production.

3. *The stage of reaction* is characterized by the return of warmth and color, the latter more slowly, and the re-establishment of secretions. Especially favorable is the return of the urinary secretion. Along with these changes the vomiting and purging occur at longer intervals. Such improvement is, however, often delusive. The diarrhea may return, the collapse repeat itself, and the patient die. Or there may supervene *cholera typhoid*, a state characterized by a frequent, feeble pulse, dry tongue, delirium, and sometimes an *erythematous* or *roscolar eruption* on the extremities. This may end in recovery. Or there may be superadded symptoms of *nephritis*, including uremia, coma, and death. Or there may be *inflammation*, diphtheritic or catarrhal, of the bowels.

**Diagnosis.**—In the matter of the diagnosis it is well known that, so far as symptoms are concerned, cases of cholera morbus, *cholera nostras*, or sporadic cholera, as we may prefer to name it, have occurred with symptoms absolutely identical with those of true cholera, including the fatal termination.

There is one very important *etiological difference* between cholera morbus and true cholera, which is also of great diagnostic value, and that is that almost invariably cholera morbus is traceable to a severe and irritating exciting cause, such as a meal of indigestible fruits or vegetables, or imperfectly cooked or decomposing fish or shell-fish, while cholera comes on without any such cause, or succeeds trifling derangements of digestion, which in other than cholera seasons pass away without harmful results. As a rule, too, the symptoms of cholera morbus are much more severe at first than those of true cholera, and the substances first vomited are undigested articles that have acted as exciting causes, succeeded by green, bilious matter. The discharge from the bowels is first also of a more bilious character, and above all, the mortality is much less serious; indeed, recovery is the rule. Yet these differences are not to be relied upon. (See, also, Appendix to Section on Cholera, p. 97.)

By bacteriological investigation only can a given case be identified with absolute certainty. The agglutinative reaction is the most ready method. It is similar to the Widal test for typhoid fever, and depends on agglutination of the bacilli in a culture of cholera vibrios, produced by the blood-serum of the infected case. Some hours are, however, necessary to complete such a bacteriological diagnosis. Further, such investigation can be made only by those who are expert and provided with proper facilities. Such expertness and facilities, moreover, are not found in the hands of the general practitioner, and the bacteriological investigation is, therefore, of limited application. Doubtless, should occasion demand, the authorities in the large cities, at least, will furnish the same assistance they now do in the case of diphtheria and typhoid fever.

As to the microscopic examination of the dejecta, which is more feasible for the practitioner, it may be said if the examination reveals a preponderance of curved bacilli, comma-shaped, and sometimes joined end to end, so

as to form figures somewhat resembling the letter S, and again appearing in long threads, we may feel justified in considering the case one for careful study by bacteriological methods. Although there are found in the alimentary tract other bacilli, the morphology of which is much like that of the cholera bacillus, they are not numerous. The bacillus of Prior and Finkler, found in the stools of cholera morbus, while closely resembling the true comma bacillus of Koch, is larger and thicker. More easily distinguished are the cultures. The Prior and Finkler bacillus grows more rapidly and the shape of its culture is *saccular*, while that of the cholera bacillus is *conical*. It also liquefies the gelatin much more rapidly.

How, then, shall we know a case of vomiting, serous diarrhea, severe colicky pain, followed by collapse, to be a case of cholera? In this country, where such a thing as endemic cholera is unknown, it goes without saying that any isolated case, even if fatal, cannot be one of true cholera unless there be traceable some connection with an acknowledged focus of cholera elsewhere. Second, such communication must have taken place within the period of incubation required for the development of the case, say within six days. Of course, such communication need not be a personal one. It may be by clothing, merchandise, and possibly letters.

These conditions being fulfilled, the patient suffering with the symptoms of cholera must, for the time being, be regarded as a case of the true disease, and isolated until the bacteriological investigation can be made, but the rapid occurrence of similar cases increases the probability of its being true cholera, and finally establishes its certainty. Yet local epidemics of cholera morbus do sometimes take place, severe and grave in character, due to local causes, and favored by extreme and long-continued heat. Thus it is still a question whether the epidemic of cholera that prevailed in Paris in May, June, and July, 1892, was true cholera or cholera morbus, and there seems much reason to believe it to have been the latter, notwithstanding the prevalence of true cholera elsewhere in Europe.

Symptoms similar to those of cholera arise from poisoning by corrosive sublimate, tartar emetic, arsenic, mushrooms, and ptomaines from various sources, but their symptoms are rarely confounded with those of cholera.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis, always grave, varies with the stage of the epidemic. It is well known that in the beginning a very large proportion of cases die, fully 80 per cent., but as the epidemic is prolonged the ratio of deaths to persons attacked grows less, the mortality falling to 30 per cent. or less. The habits and morals of the patient have an important influence. Intemperance and dissipation diminish greatly the powers of resistance, as do also fatigue, indigestion, fright, and fear.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of cholera is very appropriately divided into prophylactic and curative; the former, when properly carried out, being more effectual than the latter.

**Prophylaxis.**—In the first place, it early appeared that a certain degree of immunity from cholera is secured by a first attack. This was also the conclusion of a collective investigation directed by the Academy of Medicine of Paris in 1884, and by Edward O. Shakespeare from information collected by him during his residence in Spain in 1885, appointed by the United

States Government to investigate the subject. From this standpoint Ferran and others sought to secure immunity by vaccination with protective virus. Ferran injected subcutaneously into each arm of the subject, 1 c.c. of a pure culture in bouillon of the *comma* bacillus, during the epidemic of 1885, in Spain; but a French commission appointed to investigate the matter reported unfavorably, and the practice fell into disuse, although Shakespeare in his "Report on Cholera in Europe and America" was inclined to believe there were possibilities in Ferran's method which made it worthy of further trial, a belief substantially confirmed by later studies of Haffkine.

Gamaleia, Löwenthal, Brieger,<sup>1</sup> and Wassermann secured immunity in *animals*, by injection of blood serum from others treated with injections of from 0.1 to 1 c.c. of virulent cultures sterilized by heat; and G. Klemperer<sup>2</sup> also obtained results which went to show that immunity could be conferred on *man* by the same treatment; also by the subcutaneous injection of the milk of immunized goats, though the immunity is considerably less by the latter than by the former.

A. Lazarus showed (1892) that the blood of man, after recovery from an attack of cholera, has the property of protecting guinea-pigs from fatal infection when injected in very small quantities into the peritoneal cavity along with intraperitoneal injections of cholera vibrios. Issaëff, in 1894, confirmed the latter observation, but showed that the property was temporary. Lazarus regarded this effect antitoxic, R. Pfeiffer as the direct result of bacteriolytic or lysogenic action of the serum.

Pfeiffer's studies on immunity from Asiatic cholera were published in conjunction with Issaëff in 1894. He showed that the destruction of living cholera bacilli quickly takes place in the peritoneal cavity of the immunized guinea-pig, and in the peritoneal cavity of the normal pig, if at the same time a minute quantity of the serum from an immune animal is injected. This constitutes Pfeiffer's "serum reaction," and was demonstrated by him and Kolle for typhoid fever infection, and was one of the steps that lead to recognition of the importance of the agglutinating reaction of sera.

Notwithstanding the discouraging results of Ferran's method that of Haffkine, which proved successful, is essentially the same. His experimental studies at the Pasteur Institute published in 1892 evolved a method of treatment which consisted first in the preparation of an "attenuated virus," and second of a "fixed" or "exalted virus." The attenuated virus was prepared by cultivating the cholera bacillus in flasks of bouillon at 39° C. in an atmosphere constantly aerated. The virulent virus was prepared by inoculating a guinea-pig in the peritoneal cavity with cholera spirilla and exposing the exudate to the open air for several hours. This exudate was conveyed to a second guinea-pig; from this to another, and so on through numerous animals until a "virulent" or "fixed" culture was obtained, which secures anti-choleraic immunity when injected subcutaneously but with necrosis of subcutaneous tissues. This is prevented by the previous use of the attenuated virus.

<sup>1</sup> Brieger's experiments were upon guinea-pigs, which he succeeded in making immune to virulent cultures of cholera bacilli. The method consisted in making intraperitoneal injections of comma spirilla cultures prepared in watery extract of calves' thymus or in beef-bouillon.—*Deutsche med. Wochenschrift*, 1802, No. 31.

<sup>2</sup> *Berliner klin. Wochenschrift*, 1892, No. 39, S. 969; *Med. News*, Philadelphia, October 29, 1892, p. 496.

The vaccination of human beings is done in two stages. In the first .05 to .1 gram of a 24 hour agar tube of the attenuated culture, suspended in bouillon is injected under the skin. Three to eight days later the same amount of virulent or fixed virus is inoculated. Only a slight local reaction is said to follow the injection of the attenuated culture, which modifies the reaction of the second. When thus injected the microbes die and disappear, setting free a substance which acts upon the organism and confers immunity on it. The same result follows the injection of their dead bodies only. Thus he was enabled to prepare vaccine, preserved in weak solutions of carbolic acid, which remains efficacious for six months, and may be used by persons without bacteriological training.

According to Haffkine<sup>1</sup> 70,000 inoculations against cholera were made in India on 42,179 persons, without a single accident which could be ascribed to the inoculations, and he regards the results as eminently satisfactory in cases where the vaccination is properly carried out.

Notwithstanding the claims of Haffkine it is held by others that the discomforts and more serious results which ensue are a drawback to its use.

Until these processes are perfected we must be satisfied with a prophylaxis which, in point of fact, is little, if at all, less efficient in securing immunity than the most successful inoculation methods as yet suggested. By means of it cholera has been virtually kept out of England and the United States since 1873, though brought to certain ports where it has been held at quarantine. *It consists mainly in the isolation of the patient and in certain precautions against the spread of infection by sterilizing the discharges.* To this end:

1. The vomited matter and the discharges from the bowels are to be gathered in carbolic solution, 1 to 20, or chlorinated lime, 1 to 10, some of which should be in the vessels before it is used. After use, more should be added. The matter thus collected should be gently stirred and allowed to remain 20 minutes before being poured into the water-closet hopper. When the excreta can be thrown into a pit, or even, as may be done in the country, on the manure pile, milk of lime, or what is the same thing, ordinary whitewash, is a very efficient and cheap medium with which to disinfect them.

2. After vomiting, the mouth of the patient should be rinsed with a solution of hydronaphthol, 1 to 5000, care being taken that none is swallowed. After each evacuation from the bowels, the buttocks, thighs, and anus should be washed with soap and water.

3. All body and bed linen soiled with the discharges should be immediately moistened with carbolic solution, 1 to 60, and removed in a covered vessel from the apartment, placed in a wash-boiler, and boiled for half an hour in a one per cent. solution of washing soda.

4. Napkins, towels, and table linen should be placed in a similar vessel or canvas bag for removal and similarly boiled.

5. All dishes, knives, forks, spoons, etc., used by the patient should be boiled after each meal in a one per cent. solution of soda.

<sup>1</sup> See a lecture by W. M. Haffkine on "Vaccination against Cholera" in "Baumgarten's Jahresbericht." vol. xi, 1895. p. 411.

6. The remains of meals should be thrown into a vessel containing milk of lime or whitewash, and removed at the end of the day.

7. Door-knobs are liable to be soiled by the hands of one carrying out excreta, and should be carefully washed and cleaned and sterilized, lest they, in turn, communicate the infectious material to another person handling them.

8. In case of death, the body, without being washed, should be wrapped in sheets wet in a solution of bichlorid of mercury, 1 to 1000, and allowed to remain until removed for prompt burial.

#### *Special Directions to Nurses:*

1. In like manner nurses of cholera patients should not hold any direct communication with others during attendance on such cases.

2. They should, under no circumstances, take their meals in the same apartment with the patient, and before leaving the room the hands should be cleansed with soap and bichlorid solution, and such portion of the dress as is liable to be soiled should be changed. The hands should be again rinsed in bichlorid solution, 1 to 1000, after leaving the patient's room. A very convenient plan is to wear a slip or "overall" with a hood to cover the hair, which can be easily thrown aside before leaving the room. A canvas slipper or overshoe, readily removed, should also be worn in the sick-room.

3. The food of the nurse should be wholesome and plain, freshly cooked, and served hot. No uncooked vegetables should be eaten. Milk should be boiled and, if desired, cooled before using. Cold drinks should be taken moderately, if at all. Coffee and tea may be taken hot.

4. Teeth should be cleansed after each meal, as the mouth affords a peculiarly favorable nidus for decomposing matters and a favorable nidus for the multiplication of pathogenic fungi. A daily bath in warm water, with the use of soap, should be taken by each nurse.

5. Care should be observed to keep the body from being chilled by drafts or other cool exposures, and to this end woolen underclothing should be worn.

6. Courage and cheerfulness are amply justified, because it is really almost impossible to take cholera if the above precautions are carried out.

*The Treatment of the Attack.*—The indications in the management of cholera, apart from isolation of the patient and the sterilization of the discharges, are, in the *first stage*, to check the diarrhea, combat the multiplication of bacilli, and neutralize their toxic influence. In the *second stage*, to relieve the cramp and pain and check the flux.

I.—The former is to be attained by the judicious use of opiates and acids on the one hand or opiates and antiseptics on the other; for antiseptics and acids can scarcely be used together, and the physicians must decide on which of the germicides he proposes to rely. Any of the mineral acids, such as hydrochloric, nitromuriatic, and sulphuric acids in doses of 10 to 15 minims (0.66 to 1 c.c.) of the dilute acid with as much tincture of opium or a corresponding dose of paregoric or deodorized tincture of opium properly diluted, may be given every two hours. Or a lemonade of tartaric or

citric or lactic acid, 2.5 drams to 1 quart of water (9.5 gm. to a liter), may be used in conjunction with the opiate. In addition, the rectum may be washed out by the warm solution of tannic acid in water or camomile tea, to be again referred to on page 97.

It has long been the practice to prescribe in cholera, as well as cholera morbus, a mixture of stimulating aromatics, and local stimulants with opiates, and there is no doubt that in the early stages of cholera such combinations may be of value. The following is one of them:

R	Tr. opii,	}	aa	f 5 ss (2 c. c.)
	Tr. capsici,			
	Tr. zingib.,			
	Sp. menth. piper.,			
	Sp. chloroformi,			
	Sp. camphoræ,			
	Sp. vin. rect.,	q. s. ad.	f 5 ij (60 c. c.)	
	M. Sig.—Teaspoonful in hot water or black tea every fifteen minutes until relieved.			

Paregoric, in 1 dram doses (4 c. c.), similarly administered early in the disease, is often sufficient to control the symptoms.

The following is the well-known cholera mixture or diarrhea mixture of Squibb, which is given under the same circumstances:

R	Tr. opii,	}	aa	f 3 j (30 c. c.)
	Sp. camphoræ,			
	Tr. capsici,			
	Chloroformi pur,			
	Alcohol,	q. s. ad.	f 5 iij (12 c. c.)	f 3 v (150 c. c.)
	M. Sig.—Teaspoonful every hour or every two hours.			

Instead of the acid solutions, antiseptics may be given for the same purpose. Of these, salol is a favorite, and may be given in doses of 10 to 15 grains (0.66 to 1 gm.) every two or three hours, and it may be combined with subnitrate of bismuth in large doses, with wine of opium or deodorized tincture.

The greater or less usefulness of calomel in cholera, as attested by experience in so many epidemics, beginning in 1885, may be ascribed to its antiseptic qualities, although it is probably as efficient in controlling vomiting as any other drug. The plan pursued at the New Hamburg Hospital and at the Moabit Hospital in Berlin was to give an initial dose of 4 to 7 grains (0.3 to 0.5 gm.), after which  $1/3$  to  $3/4$  grain (0.02 to 0.05 gm.) was given every two hours through the first and second stages. A portion of the calomel becomes changed in the intestine to corrosive sublimate; and as corrosive-sublimate solutions have a fungus-destroying action, in a strength of 1 to 30,000, it is reasonable to suppose that the bacilli in the intestine are directly killed by the calomel.

II.—The indications in the *second stage* are to relieve the painful cramp, to continue to try to check the discharges, and to compensate for the loss of liquid by the vomiting and purging.

For the relief of cramps morphin hypodermically is to be preferred, because of the promptness of its effect and because absorption from the gastro-intestinal mucous membrane is much hindered, if not altogether prevented, in true cholera, while the vomiting is a further obstacle to the administration of medicine by the mouth. Full doses should be given,  $1/6$

to 1/4 grain (0.01 to 0.016 gm.), which may be repeated, if necessary. If circumstances compel the administration of anodynes by the mouth, chlorodyne is one of the best, and is well administered in brandy or whiskey. Such administration, too, fulfills any indication for opium to control the bowels. Some difference of opinion exists as to the propriety of checking the discharges in this stage, the chief reason assigned being that the bacilli, whose presence is directly or indirectly the cause of the flux, are thus retained. But such objection is offset by the fact that the flux itself is the greater source of danger and that, if it can be controlled, the bacilli in the bowels are comparatively harmless. Unfortunately, in the later stages, when the flux is established, nothing avails to control it, and the opiate may as well be limited to that hypodermically administered for the relief of pain. I quite agree with those who hold that, notwithstanding the opposition to it, opium will retain its place among the chief weapons against the disease.

The effect of the copious discharge is to produce the intense exhaustion referred to under symptomatology, and it is imperative to counteract this, if possible, by stimulants freely administered. Champagne, brandy, and ammonia, combined with ice and carbonated waters, are suitable. If not retained by the stomach, whiskey, ether, and the aromatic spirit of ammonia may be given hypodermically in 30 minim (2 c.c.) doses frequently repeated. The hope of benefit from these remedies is justified, if reaction once sets in.

More serious still is the drainage of liquid from the tissues, and the most serious consequences ensue from the resulting stagnation in the blood. To restore its liquidity is, therefore, of the greatest importance. Intravenous injections of watery solutions, first practiced in cholera by Latta of Leith, in 1832, suggests itself, but the difficulty and delay involved in carrying it out are against its use. More easy in practice and safer is hypodermic injections of hot saline solutions or hypodermoclysis, also enemas or enteroclysis of similar fluids, slightly astringent. They were practiced successfully by Cantani in Italy in 1892, and have been continued with various results in Europe, and in a more limited manner, with satisfactory results, at Swinburne Island in New York Harbor. The method practiced at the latter place, as described by Judson Daland, is as follows: Water at 104° F. (40° C.) previously sterilized, and containing 0.8 per cent. of sodium chlorid and one per cent. of brandy, was introduced under the skin in the midaxillary line in the region of the floating ribs, through a long hypodermic needle and cannula attached to the tube of a fountain syringe or Davidson syringe. The former is preferred, because the pressure may be neatly regulated by raising or lowering the bag. When absorption is slow, it may be facilitated by manual manipulation at the seat of the swelling that results at the point of injection. In unfavorable cases a much longer time is required to introduce this quantity, as much as four hours, whence the rate of absorption becomes of prognostic value. The operation may be repeated in two hours, or in severe cases 1 quart may be injected in each flank, repeated as soon as absorption is complete. The quantities to be used may be laid down at, for an adult, 2 pints (1 liter); an adolescent, 1 pint (0.5 liter); and an infant, 1/2 pint (0.250 liter). Other sites may be selected for injection, as the buttocks, in-



ner surface of the thighs, or below the pectoral muscle. The neighborhood of the neck should be avoided because of the possible edema of the larynx, such an accident having occurred at Swinburne Island. The benefit derived from the use of this measure under other circumstances—as, for example, succeeding large hemorrhages and uremia—together with the facility with which it can be carried out, commend it strongly. *A heaping teaspoonful of common salt to a quart of sterilized water furnishes with sufficient nearness the proportion desired.*

Whenever the discharges have been so copious as to make it reasonable that the vessels are becoming drained, hypodermoclysis is indicated, and may be repeated every two, four, or six hours as required.

Enteroclysis is made with a one or two per cent. solution of *tannic acid* at a temperature of 113° F. (45° C.). For an adult 2 quarts (2 liters) may be administered; for an adolescent, 1 quart (1 liter). It is introduced slowly, by a fountain syringe or Davidson syringe, through a rectal tube with lateral outlets but closed at the end. The tube is inserted gently by a combined rotary and pushing motion to the depth of ten inches, when the fluid is allowed to enter very slowly, consuming not less than ten minutes. The patient should, of course, be encouraged to retain the fluid, and may be aided by pressure on the anus with a napkin. Enteroclysis is useful in any moderately severe case of cholera, and may be given night and morning, more frequently in severe cases. According to Daland, experiments made at Swinburne Island in the autumn of 1892 showed conclusively that when thus introduced fluid can be made to pass through the ileocecal valve into the small intestine. In fact, several patients vomited the solution.

It is in the algid stage that this treatment is especially useful, but other means must be taken to keep up the warmth of the body. To this end the patient is immersed in the hot bath at a temperature of 38° to 42° C. (100° to 107° F.). In favorable response the warmth of the body returns, the pulse is fuller and stronger, the respiration deeper. Hot-water bottles, hot-water bags, and hot bricks may be applied alongside the body.

III.—In the *third stage*, that of reaction, indicated by the return of warmth, pulse, and heart-beat, and especially the establishment of the urinary secretion, restorative measures are continued with the addition of judicious nutriment, preferably in the shape of peptonized foods, especially peptonized milk. Great care must be exercised lest diarrhea be induced by too liberal feeding. Convalescence is necessarily very slow in serious cases, and relapses are prone to occur.

#### APPENDIX.—THE EXAMINATION FOR CHOLERA BACILLUS.

I add the method practiced for this purpose in the Bacteriological Institute at Berlin furnished by Louis Fischer.

The articles necessary are:

1. A microscope with Abbe's condenser and an oil-immersion lens of 1/12 inch focal distance.
2. A solution of fuchsin 1 gm. in 90 c. c. distilled water and 10 c. c. alcohol.
3. A few pipettes, glass rods, cover-glasses, and slides.
4. A few platinum wires melted or soldered to the ends of glass rods.
5. A few "hollow" slides.
6. Ten to 12 glass plates or glass panes, about 12 cm. long and 9 cm. wide.
7. About a dozen ordinary flat plates.
8. An alcohol lamp or gas, preferably a Bunsen burner.
9. A number of test-tubes with sterilized gelatin.

10. A number of test-tubes with sterilized nutrient bouillon.
11. A few Erlenmeyer's glasses, about one-third filled with one per cent. peptone solution—one gm. peptone, 0.5 gm. chlorid of sodium, 100 gm. distilled water.
12. Concentrated sulphuric acid.

The dejecta of the suspected patient are scattered in as thin a film as possible on a glass plate, and this is carefully examined by the aid of a platinum wire for a mucous flake ("Schleimflocke"), which is laid on the edge of the plate and isolated. From this is taken a piece the size of a pinhead by means of a platinum loop sterilized by drawing it through a Bunsen burner. The fragment is rubbed on a cover-glass until it is evenly divided; superfluous material is removed by pressing another cover-glass over it; the two are separated, and allowed to air-dry.

The glass cover is then drawn three times through the flame of the Bunsen burner in the same manner as for the examination of sputum for tubercle bacilli, and by means of a pipette a few drops of fuchsin solution are placed on it, allowed to remain one or two minutes, and then washed off in distilled water. A drop of water is put on the cover-glass, which is laid on a slide and examined with the oil-immersion system. If it be desired to preserve the specimen, after staining with fuchsin solution wash off the excess of stain with distilled water, allow it to get thoroughly air-dry, add Canada balsam, and mount.

In some of the fulminating cases where the intestinal contents are colorless or have a pale-red color, with slimy flakes or with a flour-soup mass, especially in the period of reaction, the cases running a slow course, no mucous flakes will be found but large quantities of blood. Here may be found, besides cholera bacilli, numerous other micro-organisms, while the cholera bacilli are but sparingly present. To render a diagnosis absolutely positive in such cases, "cultures" are necessary.

Cultures can be made in "hollow slides" by smearing the border with vaselin, then bringing a small drop of sterilized bouillon into this hollow groove of the slide by means of a platinum-wire loop, and inoculating the bouillon with the smallest possible particle of the suspected mucous flake. The cover-glass is carefully laid on the vaselin, which serves to render the groove air-tight, and also prevents evaporation of the drop of sterilized bouillon. The slide is then laid aside at a temperature of 20° to 22° C. (68° to 70° F.). The room can be heated, if the temperature is below this. In about 24 hours the bouillon becomes turbid, and the slide can be examined with the oil-immersion lens without disturbing the culture. The best place to examine is the border line, and even if but few cholera bacilli were originally present, they grow so rapidly that they can be easily recognized by their curved shape.

*Culture Method by Schottelius.*—Take 100 to 200 c. c. of the suspected dejecta from the intestinal contents and place them in a beaker glass containing 250 to 500 c. c. of mild alkaline meat-bouillon, and mix thoroughly; then let this mass stand 12 to 24 hours at a temperature of 30° to 40° C. (86° to 104° F.). After this time the cholera bacilli have usually increased in numbers, and are found on the upper layer of the fluid. Introduce at the upper layer a platinum loop, take out a small drop the size of a lentil seed, rub it on a cover, and allow it to dry thoroughly in the air; then stain, as previously described, with the fuchsin solution.

*Postmortem Tests.*—To examine suspected intestinal contents, open the abdominal cavity carefully and ligate at two places with stout twine a piece of the ileum well filled with fecal contents, about three to four centimeters in length, and taken from near the cecum. A double ligature should be applied at each end and the cut made between the two, so that the intestinal contents will not be spilled in the abdominal cavity. It is well also to cut out a piece of the intestine three to four centimeters in length from the upper portion of the ileum, and to lay the excised portions in ordinary water until ready for examination. The method is the same as has been described—that is, take a small piece of flocculent mucus the size of a pinhead, etc.

Gelatin stroke and stick cultures, and also potato cultures, can be made for examination. The spirilla also grow on blood-serum and agar.

Cholera bacilli require for their growth a mild alkaline nutrient medium, and are very quickly destroyed by mineral acids. They do not develop readily in ordinary water, owing to the presence of other bacteria, which destroy them; they do develop, however, very rapidly in sterilized water.

## DYSENTERY.

SYNONYM.—*Bloody flux.*

**Definition.**—The term dysentery, derived from the Greek words *δυσ* difficult and *εντερον* bowel is applied to inflammations of the large intestine, sometimes extending into the small bowel. The condition can be best con-

sidered under three heads which represent varieties or different forms of the disease. These are: 1st, catarrhal, 2d, bacillary, and 3d, amœbic dysentery.

**Historical.**—Dysentery is one of the oldest diseases known, a tolerably accurate description having been written by Eber (B. C. 1550). Hippocrates described the disease at some length in A. D. 481. It is mentioned by Herodotus (B. C. 400-425) and Galen ascribed it to a disordered condition of the body juices, especially the bile, the liver being considered its primary seat. It was not until the beginning of the seventeenth century that Morgagni found in post-mortem examination that the lesions were in the large intestine. Epidemics of dysentery prevailed in India during the seventeenth century and afterwards in the West Indies. It has continued to be a disease endemic in the tropics but epidemics occur in all latitudes even the arctic regions. They are, however, most prevalent in warm countries and in warm seasons while sporadic cases may occur at any time of the year.

Lambl<sup>1</sup> first observed ameboid cells in the discharges of dysentery as early as 1850 but Lösch<sup>2</sup> was the first to suggest in 1875 a causal relation between the cells and the disease. The claim of Lösch was confirmed by Koch<sup>3</sup> in 1883 and by Kartulis<sup>4</sup> a year later, from extensive studies on the dysenteries of Egypt. Although there has been some question as to this relation it is now generally conceded; later researches by Councilman<sup>5</sup> and Lafleur<sup>5</sup> Kruse<sup>6</sup> and Pasquale<sup>6</sup> having seemingly settled the relation.

For historical data concerning the discovery of the bacillus of bacillary dysentery, see p. 101, under Etiology.

#### CATARRHAL DYSENTERY.

**Definition.**—Catarrhal dysentery is the simplest and most common form of the disease met with in temperate climates. It is characterized by an increased mucous secretion associated with desquamation of the epithelium covering the gut, together with a variable involvement of the solitary lymphatic nodules of the large intestine and of both the solitary and agminated nodules of the small intestine.

**Etiology.**—This form occurs frequently as an accompaniment of other diseases of adults. It may attend the specific intestinal lesions in typhoid fever and tuberculosis and is commonly associated with the acute infectious exanthemata and not infrequently with diphtheria. It is the form of dysentery caused by simple irritants, of which unripe and indigestible food forms a liberal source. In children, especially during the hot summer months, but to a certain extent throughout the entire year, this form is met with. As in adults, it may be the result of the ingestion of indigestible food or other irritants, but in young and nursing children it forms a part of the so-called entero-colitis of the summer months. In the better characterized entero-colitis of children, Duval and Bassett have obtained the bacillus of Shiga from the dejections and from the mucous membrane of the intestines in fatal cases.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Changes in the affected intestine are of different grades. In the lighter forms there is merely an excessive secretion of mucus associated with desquamation of the epithelial cells, exudation of more or less serum, and the emigration of a small number of leukocytes. The mucosa is swollen and congested. In severer forms the surface of the gut is covered with mucus, streaked with blood. The mucosa is much injected,

<sup>1</sup>Lambl, quoted by Leukart. "Parasiten, Zweite Auflage, Lief." 1, s. 233.

<sup>2</sup>Lösch, "Virch. Archiv," Bd. lxx, 1875.

<sup>3</sup>Koch, "Arbeit am Kaiserl. Gesundheitsamt," 1887.

<sup>4</sup>Kartulis, "Virch. Archiv," Bd. cv, 1886.

<sup>5</sup>Councilman and Lafleur, "Johns Hopkins Reports," 1901.

<sup>6</sup>Kruse and Pasquale, "Deutsche Med. Woch.," 1893.

bleeding points or ecchymoses can be made out, and the lymphoid nodules are enlarged and prominent. Not infrequently small defects in the mucosa exist in connection with the nodules, constituting small ulcers. The latter rarely extend beyond the limits of the nodules, and pseudo-membrane never occurs in connection with them.

**Symptoms.**—Catarrhal dysentery is usually ushered in by *diarrhea*, the first stools being copious and painless. Soon, however, these are replaced by small mucous discharges streaked with blood and accompanied by crampy abdominal pains, technically known as *tormina* (twisting pains) and straining or *tenesmus*. The latter is exceedingly trying, causing a constant feeling of unsatisfied desire for stool, so that the patient is disposed to sit constantly on the closet or to go back repeatedly many times in a single hour, experiencing at the same time intense burning pain at the anus. Yet the total quantity discharged in the 24 hours is not large. From 28 to 42 ounces are a full amount.

Sometimes a *chill* is the initial symptom. The *tongue* is furred and at first moist; later it may become dry. There may be *nausea* and *vomiting*.

There is always more or less *fever*, sometimes very slight, at others decided, the temperature seldom exceeding 103° F. (39.4° C.). There are the thirst and acceleration of pulse usually attending fever, and sometimes the former is extreme. The *abdomen* may be tender, but not necessarily so. It may be tumid or flat and hard. In addition to the characteristic features of the stools already mentoned, scybala or hard fecal masses may be present at first. Later the stools are frequently green in color, from the presence of bile—*bilious dysentery*—and increase in their transit the burning feeling already mentioned. In addition to blood-corpuscles and leukocytes the microscope recognizes large round and oval epithelioid cells containing fat-drops and vacuoles; also at times the *cercomonas intestinalis*. Until recently no specific organisms were found in the simple catarrhal form of dysentery. F. C. Curtis has found the *bacillus pyocyaneus* in an epidemic of dysentery at Harlwick, N. Y. Of late Shiga's bacillus has been found in the stools.

The milder cases of catarrhal dysentery are self-limiting, terminating usually in a week, when the character of the stool changes. Other cases are more intractable and resist even judicious treatment for a long time, becoming even chronic.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of acute catarrhal dysentery is very easy. The *tormina* and *tenesmus* with the frequent blood-stained mucous stools occur in no other affection. Malignant disease of the rectum is sometimes mistaken for chronic dysentery. Examination of the rectum should be made in all prolonged cases.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is generally favorable. As intimated, many mild cases get well without treatment, and when judiciously handled unfavorable termination is rare. Favorable termination is not, however, invariable, and cases sometimes end unfavorably after a prolonged course, or they become permanently chronic and incurable. Emaciation and exhaustion are rapid, and even a mild attack rapidly reduces the strength of its victim.

## BACILLARY DYSENTERY.

**Definition.**—The form of dysentery most commonly present in temperate and tropical regions, appearing in a variety of forms. Under it are to be included: First, pseudo-membranous, croupous, or diphtheritic. Second, ulcerative. Third, chronic dysentery.

**Etiology.**—The lower part of the large intestine is most frequently the site of the lesion, but the entire large and more rarely the small gut may be affected. The difference between the acute, pseudo-membranous, and chronic forms are striking, notwithstanding which, the evidence at hand tends to connect them to one causative factor. Beginning with the researches of Shiga in Japan, in 1898, which were followed by the investigations of Flexner and Barker carried out in Manila, in 1900, and afterwards by Flexner in this country, and Kruse and others in Germany, the evidence has grown in favor of the *B. dysenteriae* (Shiga) as being the specific cause of this variety of dysentery.

The *Bacillus dysenteriae* is a well-characterized micro-organism belonging to the colon typhoid group of bacilli, which can be distinguished by its cultural and other characteristics. In morphology it differs only slightly from the typhoid bacillus, with which it has certain cultural properties in common. It grows upon ordinary culture media readily, and brings about little change in milk excepting to cause a slight alkalinity. It is slightly motile when first isolated, but quickly loses its motility on artificial cultures, but this can be restored by passage through animals experimentally. Flagella surrounding the body of the bacillus have been demonstrated by Vedder and Duval, of the University of Pennsylvania. The organism is pathogenic for a wide series of laboratory animals, and when injected into the intestine of cats, or fed to them after alkalization of the gastric juice, it is capable of setting up an inflammation of the gut from which the bacillus may be recovered. Ingested by man it rapidly sets up a severe colitis. There are two instances on record of its actions on man: The first, reported by Flexner, in which a small quantity of a culture was accidentally aspirated into the mouth by one of his assistants, the intestinal symptoms appearing within forty-eight hours; the second, reported by Strong, in which a Filipino prisoner voluntarily swallowed a portion of a culture of the bacillus, in which case the symptoms quickly developed and were of marked severity, the bacillus being recovered from the stools. The man finally recovered.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The anatomical features of bacillary dysentery vary with the form and duration of the disease. The most acute cases are those running a rapidly fatal course and involving the entire large gut and a variable length of the lower small intestine. The mucous membrane is greatly swollen, suffused with serum and blood, presenting a pulpy appearance, but without visible false membrane. These are the forms which result fatally in 48–72 hours, and which are met with in tropical countries, and sometimes in institutional and other epidemics in temperate climates.

The usual form of bacillary dysentery is the pseudo-membranous. In this the extent of the lesion varies, sometimes appearing in the rectum and sigmoid flexure, and sometimes extending throughout the large gut. The membrane, which is grayish-white in color, presents a granular surface, and

appears first upon the elevations of the mucosa corresponding to the insertion of the bands of longitudinal muscle and the transverse lines of the colic pouches. As the condition progresses in severity the intervening mucosa is covered with pseudo-membrane. The entire mucosa is injected, swollen, and covered with blood-stained mucus, beneath which bleeding points may be discerned. Upon microscopical examination the pseudo-membrane is found to consist of a fibrinous and cellular exudation which lies upon the surface and penetrates into the substance, for a variable distance, of the mucosa. The glands of *Liberkühn* undergo necrosis and become invaded by pseudo-membrane. Large numbers of micro-organisms are present in the dead tissue, and the blood-vessels of the mucosa are extensively occluded by thrombi.

A demarcating inflammation takes place at the limits of the living and necrotic tissue, causing separation of the latter, which upon exfoliation leaves behind defects which constitute the acute dysenteric ulcers. The disease may come to an end at this stage or an earlier one, and the integrity of the mucosa be restored, or the necrosis may extend more deeply and involve the depth of the mucosa and be associated with marked inflammatory changes in the submucous and muscular tunics. In these instances ulceration may extend through the mucosa and invade the submucosa, and even penetrate more deeply, and in the subsequent process of repair new tissue develops in the submucosa which leads to the permanent thickening of the intestinal wall.

It is this form of dysentery which tends to pass into the chronic disease, in which ulceration is deep and persistent, and much new tissue develops in the submucosa, in the mucosa, and even in the muscular coat. Owing to the persistence of the ulceration and possibly to the interaction of secondary micro-organisms, including the pyogenic cocci, always present in the intestinal canal of man, the ulceration extends not only more deeply, but tends also to heal slowly and imperfectly, whence arise the symptoms characterizing chronic ulcerative dysentery. That the specific organism persists throughout long periods, where these pathological conditions are present, is shown by the acute exacerbations of the disease and by the association of the chronic ulcerative with fresh pseudo-membranous inflammation met, not infrequently, at autopsy. It is during the exacerbation that the specific bacillus is to be sought in the dejecta and the blood reaction looked for. Among the consequences of the tissue production in chronic dysentery, polypoid outgrowths are met with. These consist of portions of the mucosa and submucosa, in which an overplus of new tissue is developed, and which come to project into the lumen of the gut. Partially through the action of gravity and through other causes they tend to lengthen, whence they become pedunculated outgrowths from the wall of the gut. Depressed scars, over which the mucosa is atrophied, also mark the site of healed ulcerations.

The new formation of connective tissue throughout the coats of the gut may be so extensive as to bring about, after its contracture, serious deformity and narrowing of the lumen. Inflammation sometimes extends to the peritoneal coat, whence adhesions to the neighboring parts take place. Only rarely does ulceration proceed so rapidly, or fail to be attended by connective tissue formation, as to perforate the peritoneal coat.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of bacillary dysentery are those of the simple catarrhal form greatly intensified. The *fever* is higher, the *pain* is greater, the *termina* and *tenesmus* are more severe, the *stools* are more bloody, and the *adynamia* is more profound. *Delirium* is often present, and the tongue may be dry. The abdomen is tender and swollen, and typhoid fever may be simulated. The symptoms in the secondary form are less severe than in the primary.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—The complications in this form of dysentery are more numerous. *Abscess of the liver* is one of them, and is ascribed to thrombotic extension from the seat of inflammation along the vessels of the portal system into the liver, or to emboli carried from the primary focus to the liver. *Perforation of the bowels* is not a very rare complication, having been found by Woodward, in a study of the statistics of the late Civil War in America, 11 times in 108 autopsies. This accident is followed by a peritonitis, which is usually fatal, the local symptoms of which vary with its exact seat. If in the neighborhood of the cecum, perityphlitis ensues; if lower down in the rectum, a proctitis. A peritonitis may also arise by extension of the inflammation from the mucous lining of the bowel.

The same opportunities enabled Woodward to show the undoubted association of *malaria* with dysentery, though it is likely that the "chills" referred to in older reports were sometimes septic and due to the dysentery. The same is true of the *joint swelling* described by the older authors, among whom was Sydenham. They may be a part of pyemic processes. *Paralysis*, commonly paraplegia, as a sequel, is attested by Woodward and Weir Mitchell. Pleurisy, pericarditis, endocarditis, and Bright's disease are among sequelæ reported.

**Diagnosis.**—The same diagnostic symptoms that enable us to recognize the other varieties of dysentery attend this in severe degree, but it is the occurrence of successive cases that gives the stamp by which we recognize the diphtheritic type.

**Bacteriological Diagnosis.**—Diagnosis of this form of dysentery can be established in two ways: First, by recovery of the specific organism from the stools; second, by obtaining the agglutination reaction with the blood of the patient and the specific bacilli in a manner similar to that of the Widal test in typhoid fever.

In the acute disease the specific bacilli are abundant, and can be separated without great difficulty from the dejecta. For this purpose solid contents are avoided and mucus or blood-stained mucus is selected for examination. Plate cultures upon agar-agar are made and incubated for 24 hours. The colonies which have developed at the end of this period are not chosen for further study, but are carefully marked with a blue wax pencil and the plates returned to the incubator for another 24 hours. The second crop of colonies usually contains a large proportion of the dysentery organisms, which grow more slowly than the colon bacillus in the mixture of the two organisms. Transplantations from the second crop of colonies are made into glucose agar tubes, which are incubated for a day and all gas-forming colonies excluded as being non-dysenteric. The tubes which show no gas are then further examined, and among them the specific organism will be found. (Duval.)

The agglutination test with the blood of persons ill of bacillary dysentery is easily obtained. For this purpose cultures, 24 hours old, upon agar-agar, are employed, from which suspensions are made in bouillon. In using the blood, it is preferable to employ the wet method by which the blood is obtained in capillary tubes, from which the serum can be collected. After proper dilution of the serum the tests are carried out in the usual manner. Positive reactions may be obtained in dilutions varying from 1/20 to 1/1000 in a period of from one-half to one hour, and as early as from the third to the fourth day of illness. This method is applicable to the study of all cases of dysentery, as well as the entero-colitides of children.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of this form of dysentery is the most unfavorable of all the varieties. Most cases perish, death being preceded by extreme adynamia and other symptoms of the typhoid state, including dry tongue, stupor, emaciation, and the cadaveric countenance. Consciousness is sometimes painfully persistent to the end.

#### AMEBIC DYSENTERY.

SYNONYMS.—*Amæbic Enteritis; Tropical Dysentery.*

**Definition.**—An ulcerative inflammation of the large intestine due to *amæba coli*. This form has sometimes been incorrectly termed tropical dysentery. It occurs in the tropics, but also in temperate regions, while the commonest form of the disease in the tropics would appear to be bacillary dysentery. One hundred and nineteen cases were treated in the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore, Md., from the date of its opening, May 15, 1889 to 1902, a period of nearly 13 years.<sup>1</sup>

**Etiology.**—The *amæba coli* or *dysenteriae* is now the acknowledged cause of this form of dysentery. (See historical sketch.)

The amebæ are found in the dejecta, in the intestinal ulcers, and in secondary liver abscesses complicating the disease. The organism varies from 15 to 20 microns in diameter and is actively motile when examined in the living state. It consists of two portions, an outer ectosarc and an inner endosarc. Its movements are brought about through the propulsion of the former, after which the granular inner substance flows into the pseudopodia. The ameba is phagocytic, taking up foreign substances from the intestine, etc., and especially englobing the red corpuscles. At present two varieties of amebæ are distinguished as occurring in the stools: the first non-pathogenic—*amæba coli mitis*—and the second pathogenic—*amæba coli*. The former has been found repeatedly in healthy stools, and it does not exhibit phagocytic properties for red corpuscles. In this country amebic dysentery has been found to occur as a sporadic disease, especially in the Southern States, but also in Pennsylvania, New York, and the New England States.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The intestinal lesions are usually limited to the large intestine; rarely they are found in the ileum. The characteristic lesion is ulceration, involving the mucosa and submucosa. In early ulcers a

<sup>1</sup> See Thomas B. Futcher's paper "A Study of the Cases of Amebic Dysentery," occurring at the Johns Hopkins Hospital. "Jour. Amer. Medical Assoc." Aug. 22, 1903.



small defect only is found in the mucosa; more rarely the muscular coat is invaded, and rarest of all the peritoneal coat. In the course of the ulceration the submucosa becomes infiltrated with a grayish gelatinous material, the exfoliation of which gives rise to the ulcer. In this material there are a few pus cells, but it consists chiefly of necrotic material. Amebæ may be discovered in the necrotic tissue, as well as in the adjacent portions of the mucosa and submucosa. In the immediate neighborhood of the ulcer proliferation of the connective tissue takes place which, in favorable cases, may completely restore the defect, and in chronic cases brings about permanent changes in the gut similar to those described in chronic bacillary dysentery. Pseudo-membrane is never present in uncomplicated cases, but instances of combined amebic and bacillary dysentery, in which pseudo-membrane has been present, have been described.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of amebic dysentery are similar to those of catarrhal dysentery, but much more irregular and prolonged. The onset is usually less sudden, but may be equally so. The stools are less numerous, and are apt to be more liquid and more copious. They abound in the *amæba coli*. The straining at stool is less severe and persistent, while there may be several days of relief, to be followed by the usual train of symptoms. The fever may be severe or mild. Intestinal hemorrhage should be mentioned as an occasional symptom of amebic dysentery. This symptom rarely has resulted fatally being caused usually by extensive ulcerative gangrenous processes which prevail in this disease. The subject has been exhaustively studied by Richard P. Strong, Director of the Biological Laboratory at Manila, P. I. (Journal of American Medicine, January 27, 1906.)

**Complications.**—The most common and serious complication is *abscess of the liver*, which is now believed to be due to the wandering *amæba dysenterica*, which reaches the liver through the blood-vessels. The abscess may be single or multiple. In the former case it may be of large size, involving fully half of the bulk of the liver. The multiple abscesses are smaller in size and superficial. The abscess walls are peculiar, being ragged from the presence of necrotic projections. Only occasionally, in the older abscesses, are there firm, smooth, fibrous walls. Next to the *innermost necrotic zone* is a zone of *cellular infiltration* encroaching upon and destroying the liver-cells, and external to this again a zone of *intense hyperemia*. The contents of the abscess are not pure pus. In fact, the paucity of the pus-cells here is as significant as in the inflammatory infiltration of the mucosa, indicating a similarity in the etiology. The pyoid material consists rather of fatty and granular débris and the amebæ; which are also found in the walls of the abscess. These abscesses sometimes break into the lungs, carrying the amebæ with them, which, under these circumstances, may be found in the expectoration.

In addition to the abscesses described there are found also in the liver in amebic dysentery patches of *circumscribed necrosis*, scattered through the liver as the result of the action of the amebæ.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is rendered easy by the recognition of the *amæba coli* in the stools, which should be examined by the microscope in every case of dysentery as directed under microscopical diagnosis.

**Microscopical Diagnosis.**—Detection of the specific amebæ in the stools, or of secondary liver abscesses, confirms the diagnosis of the disease. Great care should be exercised to obtain fresh material for microscopical examination, and bits of mucus, rather than fecal material, should be chosen for study. The mucus or pus is slightly pressed out, but not too firmly, under a cover-glass, and the slide slightly, but carefully, warmed up to body heat, before examination. Inasmuch as desquamated epithelial cells sometimes take on a round form and simulate amebæ, it is desirable that a definite movement be detected before passing upon the nature of the suspected cells. Living amebæ, especially those enclosing red corpuscles, are taken to indicate the nature of the pathological condition of the intestine.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is much more serious than that in the catarrhal variety. The course of the disease is always prolonged, and a fatal issue is much more frequent. It would seem that the patient must outlive the organism before he can recover, and even then recovery is delayed by the exhausted condition into which he has fallen in the struggle with his microscopic guest. When the termination is most favorable, cases of amebic dysentery last from six to 12 weeks.

**Treatment of Dysentery.**—*Catarrhal Dysentery.*—The first measure of treatment of *catarrhal dysentery* duly recognized should always be a purgative. No aperient is better than castor oil. An ounce of oil (30 c. c.), guarded by 10 to 20 drops (0.66 to 1.33 gm.) of laudanum, is the proper dose for an adult. The saline treatment, especially when there is high fever and no marked adynamia, is also efficient, working a rapid cure in many cases. Two drams (8 gm.) of sulphate of magnesium, or 1/2 ounce (16 gm.) of Rochelle salts dissolved in water, should be given every hour until copious watery purgation results.<sup>1</sup>

When this end is obtained by either remedy, an opiate may be given. Plain opium in doses of 1 grain (0.066 gm.) every three hours, or 1/2 grain (0.033 gm.) of the extract, is the favorite. Or the drug may be combined with bismuth subnitrate in 10 grain (0.66 gm.) doses, or with one of the astringents, tannic acid in 2 to 5 grain (0.132 to 0.33 gm.) doses, or the acetate of lead, 1 to 2 grain (0.066 to 0.132 gm.); or with salol. Very comforting in quieting rectal irritation is an opium suppository containing 1 to 2 grains (0.066 gm. to 0.132 gm.) of opium, or 1/2 to a grain (0.033 gm. to 0.066 gm.) of the extract.

Hope's comphor mixture is an old remedy which sometimes acts well, especially in cases disposed to become chronic. Hope's formula, originally suggested in 1826, is as follows:

R	Acidi nitrosi,	f 5	j ( 4 c. c.)
	Aquæ camphoræ,	f 5	viii (240 c. c.)
	M. et adde tr. opii,	gtt. xl	( 1.2 c. c.)

Sig.—A fourth part to be taken every three or four hours.

The Hope's camphor mixture of the shops, made with nitric acid instead of nitrous acid, should not be substituted.

<sup>1</sup> The following striking results would seem to justify the saline treatment: Day treated 60 cases of dysentery, 25 of which received ipecacuanha and opium; the remaining 35 were treated with magnesium sulphate. Under the former method of treatment the death-rate was 32 per cent. and under the latter 2.9 per cent. The recoveries occurring under the former treatment were slow and accompanied by frequent relapses; under the latter they were complete and rapid, but it was always found advisable to continue one-dram (1 gm.) doses of magnesium sulphate three times daily for a couple of days after the stools had ceased to be dysenteric.

It goes without saying that the food should be liquid and of the blandest kind: boiled milk, better still peptonized, light animal broths, and beef-juice, not beef-teas, are the type. Barley or rice may be added to such broths, and should be thoroughly cooked.

*Bacillary Dysentery.*—The first consideration in the treatment of bacillary dysentery is a *bland and non-irritating, but nourishing, diet*, one that leaves as little residue as possible. The peptonized foods, such as peptonized milk, malted milk and beef-peptonoids, in addition to beef-juice and somatose, are the types. To these, stimulants should be freely added. *Opiates* are needed to relieve the pain, and their hypodermic use is sometimes especially efficient for this purpose. When the necrotic membrane is removed, an extensive ulcerated surface remains to be healed. Such healing is favored by the restrained peristalsis that opium produces. The same purpose may be served by the use of ipecacuanha, if the effect claimed for it by the East Indian physicians is produced. Directions for its administration are given below.

On the other hand, it is uncertain whether soluble remedies intended for the direct healing of the ulcers ever reach these surfaces in an active state, when administered by the mouth. Nitrate of silver, when administered, does sometimes, however, reach the lower bowel. Bismuth, being largely insoluble when administered in large doses, undoubtedly reaches the bowel, and may produce some healing effect. More promising is the use of iodoform, which may be also expected to reach the part affected, and which is not only more healing in its action, but is also antiseptic. It may be given in a pill or capsule, in doses of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grain to 3 grains (0.0324 to 0.194 gm.).

*Amebic Dysentery.*—The same indication as to *diet* exists in the amebic as in the other forms of dysentery. It is apparently in this form, of which only isolated cases are met in temperate climates, that the *ipecacuanha* treatment of the East Indian physicians has been so successful. It is claimed to act as a muscular sedative and secretory stimulant; by its effect the former allays the exaggerated peristaltic activity so characteristic of the disease, by the latter it augments the secretion of mucus as well as stimulates the activity of the liver-cells in bile formation—a function which in dysentery is in abeyance. Great stress is laid on the mode of administration. A preliminary dose of laudanum is given, and in half an hour afterward from 20 to 60 grains (1.332 to 4 gm.) of ipecacuanha. For three hours after the first dose only a little ice should be sucked, and after that a little iced soda-water and milk administered. Beef-tea or bread or like foods are fatal to the favorable action of ipecacuanha, and to the use of such foods failures are ascribed by the advocates of the treatment. On the second day the drug is administered in reduced quantity, supplemented by salicylate of bismuth, quinin, naphthol and opium, while milk should form the staple food. Later, farinaceous foods and soups may be carefully given, but no solids should be permitted for a long time.

Warm injections of quinin, 1 to 5000, 1 to 2500, and 1 to 1000, have been employed at the Johns Hopkins Hospital with good results, the amebæ being rapidly destroyed by them. Perhaps ipecacuanha acts similarly. For the relief of pain opiates must also be administered, preferably by the rectum

in suppository or small starch-water enemas; or morphin may be given hypodermically if the stomach be sensitive.

*Serum Therapy.*—The immunizing protective effect of vaccines against the dysentery bacillus and the protective and curative effect of the anti-dysenteric sera demand allusion. Curative serum was first employed by Shiga in 1898 in the treatment of 65 cases in the hospitals in Tokio and by Rosenthal and Kruse. Shiga also practiced vaccination to some extent in Japan, making a prophylactic vaccine out of dead dysentery bacilli. The availability of sera received fresh support from experimental studies by Simon Flexner and Frederick P. Gay.<sup>1</sup>

*Dysentery vaccines* were made of dead cultures as described in Gay's paper. Guinea-pigs which received one or more subcutaneous injections of subminimal lethal doses showed a marked protection against multiple intraperitoneal lethal doses of the living organism. It is interesting to note that while protection afforded by a given vaccine against its own strain of bacillus dysenteriae was absolute, within limits, it was found that under similar conditions such protection may not be secured against other strains, suggesting the advisability of combining several strains of bacilli after their cultivation in the preparation of vaccines.

*Antidysenteric curative serum* was obtained from the horse after immunization. It was found to possess agglutinative properties for *bacillus dysenteriae*. This serum also had *protective* as well as *curative* properties against multiple fatal intraperitoneal doses in guinea-pigs. Gay concludes that this protective power may be regarded as proven beyond peradventure.

While a very considerable reduction of the mortality of dysentery has appeared to result in Japan and Russia, from 32 to 12, 9 and even four per cent., the results thus far obtained in this country have not been sufficient to justify any conclusions as to the efficiency of sera although they show it to be harmless even in the case of little children.

#### CHRONIC DYSENTERY.

Any one of the forms of dysentery described may become chronic, but bacillary dysentery is the more usual form.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—All the lesions described as occurring in the different varieties of dysentery may be present. The most common is ulceration, which is variously extensive and exhibits also efforts at healing. On the other hand, cases of chronic dysentery are met with in which there are no ulcers whatever. The coats of the bowel are thickened, especially the submucosa and the muscularis, while patches of black and slate-gray discoloration are scattered through it, the result of blood extravasation and disintegration. Puckering, pseudopolyposis, and cystic degeneration may be present as described under Morbid Anatomy of bacillary dysentery.

**Treatment.**—The patient should be put to bed on a *dict* easy of assimilation and furnishing a minimum of waste. Its quantity should be just what is needed and no more. From what has been said it may be inferred that I have little confidence in methods of treatment the object of which is to get

<sup>1</sup> "Vaccination and Serum Therapy against the Bacillus of Dysentery. An Experimental Study." By Frederick P. Gay, "University of Pennsylvania Medical Bulletin," November, 1902.

remedies to the diseased bowel by way of the mouth. *Bismuth* in large doses, *iodoform*, and even *nitrate of silver* may, however, be tried for the purpose. One-half to 1 dram (2 to 4 gm.) of bismuth should be given at a dose, so that from 12 to 15 drams (48 to 60 gm.) are administered in the course of a day. Iodoform may be given as above directed.

The *topical treatment* of chronic dysentery by way of the rectum is that on which most reliance is placed at the present day. Its object is to get remedies to the diseased part. To this end they are dissolved and their solutions are introduced into the lower bowel. *Nitrate of silver* is the favorite remedy, but alum, sulphate of zinc, sulphate of copper, and acetate of lead are also used in the same doses. Twenty to 30 grains (1.3 to 2 gm.) are dissolved in a pint ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  liter) of water, and from 3 to 6 pints (1.5 to 3 liters) are injected at one time through a long tube gently introduced well up into the bowel, but at the onset weaker solutions and smaller quantities are injected. The patient should be placed on his back with the hips elevated by a pillow, so that there may be the coöperation of gravity. I have had many opportunities to use this treatment in the wards of the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania, and confess to disappointment in the results. My cases improved to a certain point, but none got well. The treatment is sometimes painful. More may be expected from the irrigation of the colon by like solutions, through an appendiceal fistula though I have as yet had no experience with this method of topical treatment.

Very decided counterirritation to the abdomen, by iodine and even by blisters, is sometimes of decided advantage. At least these measures seem to mark the turning point in the disease.

### THE PLAGUE.<sup>1</sup>

SYNONYMS.—*The Bubonic Plague; Oriental Plague; Black Death; Black Plague; Pestis Hominis.*

**Definition.**—The plague is a febrile infectious disease, characterized by a tendency to buboes or carbuncles, in addition to the usual phenomena of the typhoid state.

**Historical.**—It has already been said that the historical plague of Athens, described by Thucydides, corresponded rather with the typhus of to-day than with the Oriental plague, which still occurs in Asia, and of which a grave epidemic prevailed in the East Indies and China, 1903, the last previous epidemic having occurred in Hong-Kong, China, in May, 1894, from which 2500 died in three months. The plague of the sixth century, Justinian era, the Justinian Plague, is believed to be the bubonic plague of to-day, as was also "the black death" of the fourteenth century, in which perished a fourth of the population, and the plague of London in 1665, which destroyed 70,000. With the improvement of hygienic conditions it has been growing rarer, until the last outbreak occurred, which has practically prevailed since September, 1896, with certain abatements and exacerbations. From that date to January 13, 1899, in the Bombay Presidency, 214,197 had the disease, and 169,240 died. This epidemic spread to Japan, Honolulu, and to Portugal. A few cases also occurred in San Francisco, U. S. A., in the first half of 1900. According to J. F. Payne, there are *five* independent endemic centers of the disease: (1) The province of Tripoli; (2) Southwestern Arabia; (3) A large section of Asia, including Mesopotamia, Persia, and Kurdistan; (4) The districts of Kumaon and Gurwhal in northwestern India; and (5) Southwestern China. Robert Koch considers there are *three* endemic main plague foci in Asia—viz., Mesopotamia, Thibet,

<sup>1</sup>For an admirable series of papers on the Plague see "British Med. Jour.," October 27, 1900; also, "Bubonic Plague," by Simon Flexner, "University of Pennsylvania Medical Bulletin," November, 1902.

and Assia, while he places the primary source of the disease in the English territory at Uganda ("Sajous' Annual," vol. v., 1900). In addition to the recent epidemic in China the region of the lower Volga and neighboring Turkey was visited as recently as 1878 and 1879.

**Etiology.**—The epidemic of 1894 gave the opportunity of isolating the specific germ of plague which was discovered by Kitasato and later by Yersin. It is a short rod with rounded ends, and resembles the bacillus of chicken cholera. It is found in the blood, glands, and other viscera, and in no other disease excepting the plague. It is comparatively easily isolated from the blood and it becomes an important aid to diagnosis in those cases where the rapidity of the disease does not permit the development of other distinctive symptoms. Obtained in pure cultures, it can produce in inoculated animals the same effects as in human beings. It obtains entrance through the respiratory and digestive tracts, but especially by way of excoriations. It occurs generally in pure culture, but may be associated with pus-forming bacteria, which enter the system with it or after it and are responsible for the suppuration. Filth is a potent predisposing cause, as the description of Aoyoma, who was a member of Kitasato's expedition and himself fell a victim, vividly portrayed. The rat is a medium of transmission from house to house, while man in his travels is the agent of transmission through long distances. Flies, fleas, ants, and other insects may transmit the disease, while almost any of the lower animals are subject to it.

Plague is a disease of hot countries and of hot seasons, but it may break out in midwinter. It attacks all ages and classes, but the poor, who live in crowded quarters and amid unfavorable hygienic surroundings, are its favorite victims. The fact that small animals such as monkeys, squirrels, rats, and mice die in great numbers during epidemics and seem, indeed, to be the first victims, suggested that the specific organism is of telluric origin. At any rate, the bacilli have been found in the soil and dust of houses inhabited by its victims. In this respect it is similar to anthrax and tetanus. Persons who live in upper stories are less frequently attacked than those who live on the ground floor. The boating population of China, which lives mostly on the water, is comparatively exempt. Body linen, bed clothing, carpets, rags, and baggage are frequent media of communication.

On the other hand, virulent as is the plague, its contagium appears to be more controllable than that of such diseases as smallpox and scarlet fever, as evidenced by the fact that with ordinary cleanly precautions few physicians, nurses, or others attendant on the sick acquire the disease, and even those employed to guard and disinfect houses commonly escape. In the epidemic in Canton, during which upward of 30,000 Chinese died, not one of 300 American and English residents was affected. It is of the greatest importance to know that a considerable interval may exist between the importation of an infection and the outbreak of an epidemic.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no morbid anatomy to the plague beyond the buboes and internal suppurating processes, which seem to be essential symptoms, the cutaneous and other hemorrhages, and the various tissue alterations that attend high fevers generally. The liver and kidneys are congested and the spleen is enlarged to two or three times its normal size.

**Varieties of the Disease.**—Four principal forms are easily separated:

(1) *Pestis minor*, abortive or larval form, which commonly appears before the outbreak of an epidemic. It is also the form which is endemic. It is characterized by moderate swelling of the lymphatics, little fever or other constitutional disturbance, and usually terminates favorably at the end of about two weeks. (2) *The bubonic form* is the more common severe epidemic form—the *malignant adenitis* of James Cantlie. Until recently all plague was called “bubonic,” but it is now known that only about 70 per cent. of cases are accompanied by glandular enlargement. (3) *The septicemic form*, also known as *toxic*, *fulminant*, or *siderans*, a severe form, in which death may occur in twenty-four hours with associated hemorrhages, but in which glandular enlargement is slight; the time between the onset and the fatal termination being too short to allow its development. Prostration is extreme. (4) *The pneumonic form*, in which no buboes appear on the surface, but the force of the disease is spent on the lungs, the sputum swarming with bacilli. The processes in the latter organs are septicemic.

**Symptoms.**—*Of the bubonic or ordinary form.*—A *period of incubation* of from two to seven days usually precedes the appearance of the *intense weakness* which is one of the earliest characteristic symptoms of the plague. A second period or period of *prodrome* may follow the incubation, though it is not common. It is short, from a few hours to a couple of days, and includes headache, prostration, marked nausea, vomiting, vertigo, and rarely lumbar pain. A chill is not usual, but there may be *chilliness*, after which the usual *fever* of the infectious diseases sets in with great severity and with its accompaniments, among which severe headache, backache, delirium, and the typhoid state are conspicuous. The *temperature* rises rapidly to 102° and 104° F. (39° and 40° C.) and even higher. The *pulse* ranges from 90 to 120, of fair volume, often dicrotic. Before the fever sets in great weakness is manifest. The patient reels like a drunkard, with weakness and vertigo. He breathes hurriedly and is anxious, restless, and depressed. The features are drawn and haggard. *Petechiæ*, *vibices*,—the plague-spots of the Bible,—*albuminuria*, *hematuria*, and even *hematemesis* may be included. Slight enlargement of the spleen is present.

Pre-eminently characteristic is the *bubo* or suppurating gland. It appears on the second or third day, if the patient live to it. It occurs in order of frequency in the glands of the groin, the armpit, the neck, or in the popliteal region. It commonly reaches the size of a walnut or egg, when it ruptures, if not opened with the lance. It may, however, subside without discharging. Suppuration is a desirable termination. It is painful and tender, as buboes commonly are. Coincident with the appearance of the bubo the fever subsides, a *profuse sweat* breaks out, and the pulse falls to 90 or 100. In addition to the bubo, *carbuncles* may also be present in the lower extremities, the buttocks, or in the neck. In some epidemics hemorrhages are common, and even the buboes may contain blood.

In the *pneumonic form* there are the usual symptoms of pneumonia, chill, high fever, severe pain in the side, dyspnea, cough, rusty sputum, and physical signs of consolidation,<sup>1</sup> and marked prostration.

In the *septicemic form* the patient is stricken by a virulent poison and the prostration is extreme. The glands are enlarged, but there are no

<sup>1</sup> For reports, see “Sajous’ Annual,” vol. v., 1900, article “Plague.”

buboes. The enlargement is slight and may only be detected at necropsy, but it is general. Hemorrhages from the nose, bowel, and kidney are most frequent in this form. Apyrexia is not uncommon, fever reaction being impossible because of the extreme depressing influence of the disease. The delirium is of the typhoid type.

**Diagnosis.**—In its fever, its intense prostration, its petechiæ and vibices of the early stages the plague resembles typhus. No other fever is characterized by such intense prostration. The bubo and the carbuncle seem to be the distinctive signs, although they are said to be sometimes absent in the milder cases of a declining epidemic, as well as in the intense *pestis siderans*. The bacillus may be isolated from the blood in suitable cultures and should be thus sought in doubtful cases. The diazo reaction of the urine is usually absent.

**Prognosis.**—The plague is said to be the most fatal of all diseases, 70 to 90 per cent. perishing, districts and towns being half depopulated, while whole families have been annihilated. Death occurs from the second to the fourth day, and if recovery take place it is delayed by the slowly healing buboes and carbuncles. These may, however, heal rapidly.

**Treatment.**—Free stimulation, nutritious food, as in the most adynamic forms of typhus and typhoid fevers together with cool baths to combat the fever, are the measures indicated. Antiseptic treatment of the buboes and abscesses should be practiced, and may shorten the duration of these plagues of the skin as compared with the older treatment. Morphin should be given to produce sleep and relieve pain. Kitasato's general directions, so often quoted, can hardly be improved. They are as follows:

"The disease prevails under faulty hygienic conditions; it is, therefore, urged that general hygienic conditions be carried out. Proper receptacles for sewage should be provided, a pure water supply afforded, and streams cleansed; all persons sick of the disease isolated; the furniture of the sick-room washed with a two per cent. carbolic solution in milk of lime; old clothes and bedding are to be steamed at 212° F. (100° C.) for at least one hour, or exposed for a few hours to sunlight. If feasible, all infected articles should be burned. The evacuations of the sick are to be mixed with milk of lime, and those who die of the disease are to be buried at a depth of three meters (about 12 feet) or, preferably, cremated. After recovery the patient is to be kept in isolation at least one month. All contact with the sick is to be avoided, and great care exercised with reference to food and drink." Instead of carbolic acid and milk of lime for the disinfection of buildings, Haffkine suggests sulphuric acid in the proportion of 1 to 200 of water.

**Serum Therapy.**—*Preventive* inoculation was introduced by Yersin, Calmette, and Borrell conjointly in 1895. Dead cultures of plague bacilli were injected subcutaneously into rabbits and guinea-pigs and found to convey a certain degree of immunity against plague. Haffkine extended this method of preventive inoculation to man. The dead bacilli, suspended in bouillon, were injected subcutaneously, first in lower animals, notably monkeys, with the result of protecting them against subsequent inoculation with virulent plague bacilli; then upon human beings in India and China. Haffkine's vaccine, or prophylactic, is a solution of toxic substances produced



during the growth of plague bacilli, and should not be spoken of as a serum as no animals are used in its preparation.

The results of these inoculations are more definitely stated in the following conclusions reached by the Indian Commission: "(1) Inoculation sensibly diminishes the incidence of plague attacks on the inoculated population, but the protection which it affords against attacks is not absolute; (2) Inoculation diminishes the death-rate among the inoculated population. This is due not only to the fact that the rate of attack is diminished, but also to the fact that the fatality of the attacks is diminished; (3) Inoculation does not appear to confer any great degree of protection within the first few days after it has been performed; (4) Inoculation confers a protection which certainly lasts for some considerable number of weeks. It is possible that the protection lasts for a number of months. The maximum duration of protection can only be determined by further observation; (5) The varying strengths of the vaccine employed have apparently had a great effect upon the results which have been obtained from inoculation. There seems to be a definite quantum of vaccinating material which gives the maximum amount of protection; and provided that this quantum can be injected in one dose, and provided also that the protection turns out to be a lasting one, reinoculation might with advantage be dispensed with." Colonel Bauner, Director of the Plague Laboratory and successor of Haffkine, devised a number of methods by which the serum could be produced in a purer state, uncontaminated by other bacteria which had been productive of serious complications.

As contrasted with preventive treatment Yersin's antipest serum<sup>2</sup> and Lustig's serum are intended for *curative* purposes, after the manner of diphtheritic antitoxin. Yersin's is not only curative but antitoxic and may be employed at any stage. It is prepared by injecting the horse, first, with dead and then with living plague cultures. The serum, to insure sterility, is heated to 140° F. (60° C.) before being sent out. Lustig's serum is prepared from the horse after injection with a substance derived from bacilli by treatment with alkali and precipitation by hydrochloric acid.

Small animals have been rescued from infection by plague germs by Yersin's serum, but in human beings the results have been less conclusive, Arnold<sup>3</sup> claiming that it reduced the mortality of cases 70 to 90 per cent., while Cremow<sup>4</sup> denies any therapeutic value. Calmette and Salimbini<sup>5</sup> claim to have shown from their observations and experiments during the plague epidemic in Oporto, Portugal, that much larger doses of the antipest serum may be used, and are sometimes demanded, than have heretofore been deemed sufficient. Their report also shows that, while the use of the Haffkine prophylactic may be attended with danger among those who have been exposed to the infection of the disease prior to inoculation, because of the addition of the toxin to any previously present, the use of a preliminary immunizing dose of antipest serum, followed by an injection of a dose of Haffkine's prophylactic, removed the element of danger and conferred an

<sup>1</sup> See Simon Flexner's paper on "Bubonic Plague, its Nature, Mode of Spread, and Clinical Manifestations," University of Pennsylvania Med. Bulletin, November, 1902.

<sup>2</sup> "Sajous' Annual," vol. v. p. 491.

<sup>3</sup> "Med. News," January 1, 1898.

<sup>4</sup> "London Lancet," May 6, 1899.

<sup>5</sup> Calmette and Salimbini, "Philadelphia Medical Journal," Feb. 10, 1900.

immunity of probably longer duration than would be produced by the exhibition of the serum alone.

Notwithstanding the seeming inconclusiveness of these observations, the Indian Commission reports that "though the method of serum therapy as applied to plague has not been crowned with a therapeutic success in any way comparable to that obtained in the treatment of diphtheria, nevertheless, the method of serum therapy is in plague, as in other infectious diseases, the only one which holds forth the prospect of success."

Walter Wyman, Supervising Surgeon-General United States Marine Hospital service, has directed that between 160 and 200 c. c. of antipest serum should be given during the first 48 hours of the disease. In severe cases, 20 to 40 c. c. of this amount should be injected into a vein. In immunizing with Yersin's serum inject 5 to 10 c. c. every 15 days. In case the Haffkine prophylactic cannot be administered on account of exposure to the disease, the mixed plan of immunization may be used. This consists of giving 5 to 10 c. c. of antipest serum, and, three days later, 1 c. c. of the Haffkine prophylactic.<sup>1</sup>

## MEASLES.

SYNONYMS.—*Rubcola*; *Morbilli*.

**Definition.**—Measles is an acute, highly contagious disease, characterized especially by a mottled eruption and nasobronchial catarrh.

**Historical.**—Measles and smallpox are first recognized in the writings of Ahrun, a Christian priest and physician of Alexandria, A. D. 610-641. It was, however, first accurately described by Rhazes, A. D. 900, and Avicenna, A. D. 980-1037. Rhazes is accredited with distinguishing it from smallpox. It continued, however, to be confused with the latter disease as late as the middle of the seventeenth century. The two were clearly separated by Withering as late as 1792. The distinction of having separated the disease from scarlet fever was awarded to Thomas Sydenham about 1655, but this separation is also said to have been made one hundred years earlier—that is, in 1563—by Forestus, of Holland. Rhazes and Avicenna described it under the name *hhasbah*. The term *rubeola* or its equivalent in Arabic is said to have been first used by the Arabian, Haly Abbas, in the latter part of the tenth century, but was replaced by the Italian word *morbilli*, meaning little disease, up to the middle of the eighteenth century, when Sauvages reapplied the name *rubeola*, which was adopted by Cullen and Willan. Within the last few years some English writers have reapplied the name *morbilli*. The disease has prevailed in Asia and Europe for centuries, and was imported into the United States with the first settlers.

**Etiology.**—Measles is in all probability due to a micro-organism, which, however, has not as yet been isolated, although micrococci, often in diplococcic arrangement, have been found in the blood and tracheal mucus by Babes and by Klebs. In other cases streptococci have been found in the blood and influenza bacilli in the blood and mucus. More recently, 1892, P. Canon and W. Pielicke<sup>2</sup> found with considerable constancy a bacillus in the blood, the expectoration, and nasal and conjunctival mucus of cases of measles. Whatever it is, it is very unerring, since the disease is more unfailingly communicated to those unprotected by previous attacks than is scarlet fever. Nor is the contagium-bearer definitely known, but it is likely to be the nasal and bronchial discharges, and probably also the tears. The contagium has been transmitted by the inoculation of morbillous blood and nasal mucus,

<sup>1</sup> "Philadelphia Medical Journal," February 10, 1900.

<sup>2</sup> "Berliner klin. Wochenschrift," vol. xxix. 377.

and it is most active when the breath is its medium. It is communicable by a third party and by fomites; though more active and unailing than the contagium of scarlet fever, it is less so than that of smallpox. It is not, however, so tenacious as the causes of these. Measles is a disease of childhood, but adults often get it, and that very severely. Repeated attacks are possible, but as other eruptive affections resemble it and diagnosis is often careless, some of the repeated attacks may be thus explained. It is milder and rarer in sucklings under six months. Further, the studies of Carr, Mayo and Edw. Graham go to show that the new-born are very slightly susceptible. Six months would appear to be the age at which susceptibility begins, although Bartsch reports a case of intrauterine infection. Finally the age during which the disease is more commonly contracted is from one to five years.

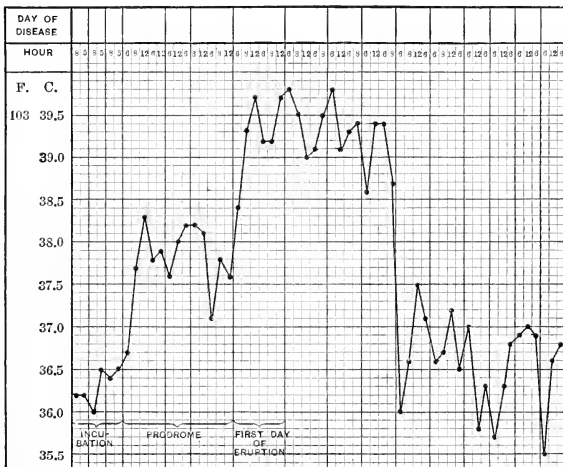


FIG. 13.—Temperature Chart of Measles.—(Eichhorst.)

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no essential morbid anatomy of measles beyond the nasal and bronchial catarrh, and the signs of these generally disappear with death. When death occurs it is usually the result of complications, and the morbid anatomy of such is present. The most frequent complication is bronchopneumonia. There may be lobar pneumonia, and among the morbid phenomena are to be included sometimes those of collapse of the lung. In rare instances of hemorrhagic or "black" measles there is the usual discoloration of hemorrhagic extravasation. Rarely also the morbid states of intestinal catarrh are found.

**Symptoms.**—The *period of incubation* of measles varies, but is commonly between seven and 14 days. Rarely it is a day or two longer. A prodrome, if present, in measles is of short duration. It may be manifested by sneezing, fretfulness, chilliness, and feverishness; or, if the child is old enough to express itself, by headache. Then comes, on the first day, the initial or prodromal fever, a peculiarity of which is a remission on the third

day. This is shown by the appended cut from Eichhorst. But very early, and even almost suddenly, *coryza*, with red and watery eyes, and photophobia present themselves, closely followed by troublesome *cough* and corresponding feverishness reaching  $103^{\circ}$  and  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $39.4^{\circ}$  and  $40^{\circ}$  C.). Much less frequently than in scarlet fever is there *vomiting*, and the tongue is apt to be furred. The cough is sometimes croupy. Convulsions very rarely usher in the disease.

On the fourth day from the onset the *eruption* makes its appearance. It appears first in the *face* in the form of papules and blotches, which coalesce more or less imperfectly, leaving sometimes islands of white skin between them. Sometimes after coalescence the eruption quite resembles that of scarlet fever. Under any circumstances the boundary between the eruption and the sound skin is uneven and crescentic. The eruption is somewhat raised above the surface, and the whole effect is to make the face appear swollen. This elevation of surface at times becomes distinctly papular and even shot-like, resembling closely the papular stage of smallpox. In fact, this appearance has quite often lead to a diagnosis of smallpox, which 12 hours later had to be withdrawn. From the face the eruption spreads to the neck, thorax, abdomen, and extremities. It is bright red, as a rule disappearing on pressure. Sometimes, however, even in mild cases, there are petechiae, and in malignant cases the extravasations are extensive. At the same time, the mouth and fauces are bright red in color, and not infrequently there is diarrhea, as though the eruption extended throughout the entire mucous tract as well as over the skin. At the maximum of the eruption there may be slight swelling of the cervical lymphatic glands. At the end of two or three days after its appearance the rash fades gradually, first from the situations in which it appeared earliest, and a fine, branny desquamation occurs, easily overlooked. The fading takes place in the order of invasion. The typical rash may be accompanied by sudamina.

In 1896 Henry Koplik<sup>1</sup> called attention to a sign that has been found of real value in the diagnosis of measles. It is the appearance, on the first day of invasion, on the buccal and labial mucous membrane, of a scattered eruption of minute *bluish-white specks* each surrounded by a bright red areola. They have been found 45 times in 52 cases and 31 times in 32 cases. They may appear four days before the characteristic rash, and rarely before the fever. The spots somewhat resemble those of thrush, from which they are distinguished by their roundish shape and their color, as contrasted with the more *yellowish* center of those of thrush. While thoroughly discrete in the beginning, later in the disease the spots may coalesce, and the characters of a discrete eruption or spotting disappear, producing an intense general redness, "which is simply dusted over with myriads of these bluish-white specks." They cannot be wiped off, but the whitish portion can be removed by forceps without causing pain or bleeding. They consist of thick layers of epithelium in a state of partial fatty degeneration. They require a good light for their demonstration. (See plate opposite.)

The other symptoms described continue until the eruption begins to fade—that is, on the fifth or sixth day, when they abate. The *cough*,

<sup>1</sup> "Archives of Pediatrics," December, 1896, and "Medical Record," April 9, 1898.

FIG. 1.



FIG. 2.



FIG. 3.



FIG. 4.



THE PATHOGNOMONIC SIGN OF MEASLES (KOPLIK'S SPOTS).

- FIG. 1.—The discrete measles spots on the buccal or labial mucous membrane, showing the isolated rose red spot, with the minute bluish-white centre, on the normally colored mucous membrane.
- FIG. 2.—Shows the partially diffuse eruption on the mucous membrane of the cheeks and lips; patches of pale pink interspersed among rose-red patches, the latter showing numerous pale bluish-white spots.
- FIG. 3.—The appearance of the buccal or labial mucous membrane when the measles spots completely coalesce and give a diffuse redness, with the myriads of bluish-white specks. The exanthema on the skin is at this time generally fully developed.
- FIG. 4.—Aphthous stomatitis apt to be mistaken for measles spots. Mucous membrane normal in hue. Minute *yellow points* are surrounded by a red area. Always discrete.

—(From "Medical News.")



often hangs on quite stubbornly, especially in scrofulous children, and sometimes even persists as the catarrhal symptom of a tuberculosis, the development of which seems peculiarly favored by the disease. Hence, the cough of measles should never be slighted, and early exposure to cold and dampness should be guarded against.

It has already been intimated that a malignant form of measles sometimes occurs, called also "black" measles, which is very serious—often, indeed, fatal. It is generally epidemic, occurs in institutions and camps, and its presence is characterized by subcutaneous extravasations of blood and hemorrhages from the mucous membranes. Hoarseness is especially found in black measles, as contrasted with black smallpox.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—These furnish most that is serious in the disease, and of them the most frequent and dangerous is catarrhal pneumonia or bronchopneumonia, the bronchitis creeping into the smaller air-tubes. The occurrence of this form of pneumonia seems to be favored by bad hygiene. Collapse of the lung is also prone to occur, caused by an accidental valve-like plug of secretion. Bronchopneumonia is recognized by the persistent and aggravated cough, the continued high temperature, and physical signs of a circumscribed pneumonia. More rarely lobar pneumonia supervenes and is recognized even more easily. In view of these possible complications, frequent physical examinations of the chest should be made.

Among the complications may be mentioned laryngitis, catarrh of the middle ear leading to suppuration and perforation of the drum, and chronic or intractable ophthalmic trouble. Ulcerative and even gangrenous stomatitis and *cancrem oris* are met under unfavorable hygienic conditions; also ulcerative vulvitis.

Nephritis, although not often a complication of measles, does, however occur, and I have met serious instances of such. Tuberculosis has long been recognized as a sequel of measles, yet it is not a very frequent one. Any of the varieties of pulmonary tuberculosis may be present. Even nervous lesions are reported, such as hemiplegia, paraplegia, neuritis, and myelitis.<sup>1</sup>

**Diagnosis.**—Measles is easy of diagnosis; but the physician must not be too precipitate. Allusion has already been made to the possibility of mistaking it for *smallpox*, on account of the similarity of the eruption in the early stage, an error which a few hours' delay would have averted. Koplik's spots should be helpful here, as they are said to appear at least twenty-four hours before the skin eruption. From *scarlet fever* there is sometimes difficulty, as there is occasionally slight sore throat and the eruption may be diffuse, while the difficulty is increased if there be glandular swelling in measles; but the catarrhal symptoms of measles are essential to it. The mildest cases are probably those that give most trouble. The distinction between measles and rubella is sometimes more difficult, but this will be considered when treating of rubella.

*Typhus fever* and measles have been confounded, and it must be admitted that in the asthenic variety of measles the eruption may resemble that of typhus fever. It will be remembered that the eruption of typhus is

<sup>1</sup> See a paper by Imogene Bassette entitled "The Paralyzes in Children which occur during and after Infectious Diseases," "Jour. Nerv. and Ment. Dis.," vol. xix., 1902.

described as "rubeoloid." Confusion is further favored by the fact that the eruption occurs at about the same time in each disease.

**Prognosis.**—The vast majority of cases of measles get well. It is only in epidemics of the malignant form, in hospitals, camps, and foundling asylums, that death occurs as a direct result of the disease. In these the mortality is sometimes very high. Epidemics among the aborigines in North and South America, in the Mauritius and Feejee Islands, and in the Confederate Army in the War of the Rebellion in America were of signal fatality. Other deaths are due to complications, especially pneumonia. Out of 24 fatal cases collected by Pott, 21 died of bronchopneumonia and pneumonia, and three of croup.

**Treatment.**—After surrounding the patient by a uniformly warm temperature, best secured in bed, the treatment of measles is mainly that of the fever and the cough. The former is sufficiently treated by the simple diaphoretics and febrifuges, such as citrate of potash and sweet spirit of niter, or tincture of aconite. The latter is efficient and tasteless. The coal tar derivatives, actanilid, antipyrin, thermol, and phenacetin may be used.

The cough calls for positive anodyne measures, of which, for children, paregoric is the best because the safest. Laudanum or deodorized tincture of opium may be used in smaller doses, but not morphin. They may be combined with the febrifuges just mentioned. It is comparatively rare that cool sponging is needed to reduce the temperature, but cold water drinking should be allowed *ad libitum*. I recently knew a case of measles to receive the cold tub-bath treatment under the impression that it was typhoid fever. The rash came out brilliantly at the proper time and the case did splendidly. Complications should be treated as they arise. Stimulants and tonics are necessary in the adynamic form. When the cough is prolonged, cod-liver oil is a valuable remedy. Watchfulness during convalescence is more important than is supposed by many, and carelessness and indifference are sometimes responsible for unfortunate results.

It occasionally happens that the eruption is "suppressed," or its appearance may be delayed. Under these circumstances the hot pack is very effectual. The child is wrapped in flannel wrung out in hot water and then enveloped in a mackintosh. Copious perspiration soon sets in, the eruption appears, and general reaction begins.

I have never seen any good reason for isolating measles as usually occurring in families. The disease is so mild in children, and so much more serious in adults, that I believe it is desirable that under ordinary circumstances all the children of a family should have it as soon as possible.

## RUBELLA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Rötheln*; *Rubcola*;<sup>1</sup> *German Measles*; *Rubcola notha*; *Epidemic Roscola*; *False Measles*; *Hybrid Measles*; *Hybrid Scarlet Fever*.

**Definition.**—Rubella is a mild, acute, contagious disease, characterized by a punctiform rash that fuses into patches less plainly crescentic than those

<sup>1</sup> It is unfortunate that the Germans have selected for their technical term for this affection the word *Rubcola*, which is the word used in English for *measles*.



of measles. There is often slight sore throat, more rarely mild catarrhal symptoms, and tridling fever. Many so-called second attacks of measles and scarlet fever are attacks of rubella.

**Historical.**—The existence of rubella as an independent and separate infectious disease was for a long time disputed, some regarding it as a variety of measles and others as a mild form of scarlet fever, although as far back as 1752 Bergen, a German physician, claimed for it a distinct individuality. A sufficient foundation for such claim was not, however, advanced until 1815, when Maton, an English physician, substantiated that, while one attack protected ordinarily against its own recurrence, it did not protect its victim either from measles or scarlet fever, while an attack of either of the latter diseases did not protect from rubella. A few held out for the original views, among whom was the eminent Hebra, but there seems to be no one at the present day who denies that it is an independent disease. The name "rubella" was first suggested by Veale in 1866.

**Etiology.**—The relation of the disease seems rather closer to measles than scarlet fever, and may be said to bear to the former the same relation as varicella to variola. Though contagious, it is much less so than measles or scarlet fever. It affects children chiefly, very rarely adults, sucklings less frequently than school children, because the latter are more exposed to contagion. Isolated cases occur, but it is apt to prove in large cities epidemic. Such epidemics are sometimes widespread. No special bacillus has as yet been isolated.

**Symptoms.**—After a *period of incubation* ranging from two to three weeks, the disease sets in, as a rule, with no distinctive prodromal symptoms prior to the eruption. There may be chilliness, moderate muscular pain, mild catarrh, and slight fever, with temperature barely reaching 100° F. (37.8° C.), for a day or two previous to the eruption. Rarely these prodromal symptoms may be prolonged to two, three or even four days.

More frequently, an indistinct macular *eruption* of a pale rose color is the first symptom noted. The papules are not elevated, and vary in size from a pinhead to a split pea, the smaller being more numerous, much smaller than the papules of measles. They may, however, fuse and form large, irregular patches, with little or no disposition to form small crescent-shaped groups like those of measles. The rash may appear as late as the second day, rarely on the third, after the indistinct symptoms of invasion mentioned.

Two types of the spread of the eruption are possible. In the one it appears almost simultaneously all over the body, reaching its maximum by the second day, after which it rapidly fades. In the second mode of invasion the rash appears first on the face, and extends rapidly thence all over the body, reaching the hands and feet last, and beginning to fade on the face and trunk before attaining its maximum on the extremities, or even before it appears there at all. Thus it has a wave-like course, reaching its maximum in twenty-four hours, when it begins to decline rapidly. It is, therefore, of shorter duration than the eruption either of measles or of scarlet fever. It may derminate in a branny desquamation, less evident even than that of measles.

The most constant symptom after the eruption is the *sore throat*. It varies in severity, but is for the most part mild, never becoming ulcerative. It is really, perhaps, the eruption in the throat. Somewhat less constant than the sore throat, though varying somewhat in different epidemics, is

*swelling of the lymphatic glands* of the neck, especially the superficial cervical, postcervical, and postauricular glands. This swelling is present during the eruptive stage and may occur even earlier. Its possible, though rarer, occurrence in measles also is to be remembered.

The remaining symptoms of rubella are not marked nor distinctive. There is little or no constitutional disturbance, and, as already mentioned, rarely any *fever* above 100° F. (37.8° C.), although 102° F. (38.9° C.) and even 103° F. (39.4° C.) have been noted. There may be slight catarrh, watering of the eyes, and running at the nose, all much less marked than in measles. There are no complications, as a rule, though albuminuria, nephritis, pneumonia, colitis, and icterus have been reported, but it would seem as though measles or scarlatina must have been mistaken for rubella in these cases.

**Diagnosis.**—Such are the symptoms of a typical case. Unfortunately, there are many deviations, some approximating *measles* and some *scarlet fever*, differing from either mainly in mildness. The absence of decided catarrhal symptoms, the earlier appearance of the eruption, its more diffuse character, and the swelling of the lymphatic glands are its chief differences from measles. The careful studies of J. P. C. Griffith<sup>1</sup> show the latter of less significance than has been usually supposed. The course of the eruption differs also, that of measles lasting longer. The absence of Koplik's sign must hereafter be helpful in distinguishing it from measles. The same mildness and absence from fever, with the more distinct mottling, distinguish it from scarlet fever. In rubella the symptoms of invasion are all very much milder than in either measles or scarlet fever, even mild cases of the latter. Most cases of supposed second attacks of measles are cases of rubella.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of rubella is invariably favorable.

**Treatment.**—Very little if any is required, except rest in bed. A simple febrifuge with potassium chlorate may be useful.

## SCARLET FEVER.

SYNONYM.—*Scarlatina*.

**Definition.**—Scarlet fever is an acute contagious disease, especially characterized by faucitis and a diffuse scarlet eruption, terminating in more or less membranous desquamation.

**Historical.**—Although it has been claimed that the pestilence of Thebes, 600 B. C., and the plague at Athens, 430 B. C., were each epidemics of scarlet fever, no accurate knowledge of this affection as a separate disease was obtainable prior to the seventeenth century, when Sydenham and his contemporaries described it in a manner which permits its easy recognition as the scarlet fever of to-day. It pervades the Old World everywhere, having been recognized in England in 1661, Scotland in 1716, Germany and Italy in 1717, Denmark in 1740, and was introduced into North America by shipping in the year 1735. It did not, however, reach South America until 1829, Iceland in 1827, and spread to Greenland as late as 1847.

**Etiology.**—The organism that causes scarlet fever has not been isolated. Streptococci have been found in the blood by many observers. Less frequently staphylococcus aureus and the influenza bacillus but the consen-

<sup>1</sup> "Differential Diagnosis of Rubella and Rubella, with Special Reference to Enlargement of the Glands of the Neck," "University Med. Magazine," June, 1892.

sus of opinion is that these are cases of secondary infection and that the special bacillus of scarlet fever has not as yet been isolated. Such secondary infection has been moreover held responsible for many serious complications attended with suppuration.<sup>1</sup>

Whatever the agency, it is the most tenacious of all the contagia, retaining its power to infect for at least a year after the occurrence of a case. It is especially difficult to dislodge from organized substances, such as bedding, clothing or straw, letters and books, and the disease has been communicated to newcomers even after an infected apartment has been thoroughly cleaned and fumigated with sulphur. Physicians have doubtless conveyed it, and the beard and hair are contagium-bearers more frequently than is supposed. Hence, physicians should not wear long beards, and nurses, before passing from one case to another, should disinfect the hair as well as the rest of the body.

While the contagium itself has never been isolated, there is every reason to believe that the bearer is the exfoliated epithelium. Hence, it is not until desquamation takes place that the disease is communicable, and the ease with which the scaly particles are disseminated through the air and the tenacity with which they adhere to textures readily explain the communicability of scarlet fever and the difficulty in destroying its cause. On the other hand, until the eruption makes its appearance the disease cannot spread. Accordingly, it is not likely to be communicated to those exposed prior to this stage. Hence, children removed from association with the disease promptly after its discovery, and kept apart, generally escape it.

The route of infection is mostly the respiratory tract, although the alimentary canal may also convey it. In confirmation of this is the fact that in a number of instances milk has been the medium of infection, the milk having been infected by exposure in an apartment occupied by patients. In one instance the disease appeared in six out of 12 families supplied from such a source. The readiness with which milk absorbs volatile substances kept in the same refrigerator compartment and retains their flavor is quite in accord with such transmission.

The disease occurs more frequently in children, because a single attack, as a rule, protects against a second. Infants, however, even under exposure, are less liable to the disease, and it would seem, too, that adults who have escaped exposure during childhood are less liable. I have never had scarlet fever, and have been exposed many times to the most virulent forms. The primary attack is not always protective; second and third attacks are reported. But here, again, careless diagnosis and defective memory are responsible for a certain number. In my own experience the disease is most common between the ages of four and seven.

According to Brandeis<sup>2</sup> children of a family are less likely to take scarlet fever when exposed to the disease in a member of that family than

<sup>1</sup> William J. Class ("Monthly Bulletin of the Chicago Dept. of Health," March, 1899) claims to have found a diplococcus which fulfills the conditions that make it reasonable to believe it is the bacterium responsible for scarlet fever. His observations are confirmed by Calvin G. Page, in a "Preliminary Report on the *Diplococcus of Scarlet Fever*" ("Journal Boston Society of Medical Sciences," March 24, 1900), by R. H. B. Gradwohl ("Philadelphia Med. Jour.," March 24, 1900, p. 683), and W. K. Jaques (*Ibid.*, March 10, 1900, p. 552). The diplococcus was found in the throat, blood, and desquamative scales in a large proportion of cases by all these observers. In a further paper in the "Philadelphia Med. Jour.," June 23, 1900, W. J. Class describes his efforts to obtain an antitoxin. The bacillus of Class is, however, not regarded by the best-trained pathologists as the cause of scarlet fever.

<sup>2</sup> "New York Medical Journal," July 27, 1907.

from some one ill of it outside of that family. According to his observations only ten per cent. of children exposed within the family acquired scarlet fever, while Holt says that about 50 per cent. of all children exposed to the disease are attacked. Koplik gives the same figures and Carr places the number as high as 56 per cent.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no morbid anatomy peculiar to scarlet fever. The eruption fades after death, unless there happen to be hemorrhagic extravasation. There may be lesion the result of ulcerative destruction in the neighborhood of the throat. The intensity of the fever sometimes produces granular fatty change in muscles, which is pronounced in the case of the heart; also cloudy swelling in the cells of the kidney and liver. Glandular swellings present at death maintain themselves afterward. The morbid anatomy of the complications and sequelæ is appropriately considered under the diseases constituting them.

**Symptoms.**—The *period of incubation* varies greatly. It is sometimes as short as 24 hours, and again as long as 12 days; more frequently, perhaps, from two to four days. At the end of this time there is usually a very short prodrome, sometimes none at all. *Vomiting*, occurring either as an initial symptom or a couple of hours later, is often present; more rarely a *convulsion*, still more rarely a *chill*. *Sore throat* is early complained of, and *high fever* is conspicuous. The fever is early, the face is flushed, and the temperature rapidly rises to 103° F. (39.4° C.), 105° F. (40.5° C.), and even 108° F. (42.2° C.), and the pulse to 110, 120, or more.

The *eruption* appears, as a rule, on the second day, and it generally happens that, if it is not present at the physician's first visit, it is sure to be found at his second. Its striking character is its uniform redness. It is like a diffuse, broadly spread blush, appearing first upon the neck and chest, and extending thence rapidly over the whole body, so that at the end of the third day it has completed its invasion. The appearance of a child covered with a frank scarlet fever eruption is very characteristic. It has been well compared with that of a boiled lobster in its bright redness. It is further characterized by the readiness with which it disappears on pressure and the promptness with which it returns after the pressure is removed. It is, however, no sooner complete than it begins to fade, and does so with great rapidity in the order of invasion. The eruption is not, however, always thus typical, and presents every degree between that described and that which is barely recognizable. It is also at times more "patchy," but never presents the crescentic or otherwise irregular edges or mottled appearance of the eruption of measles. In the lower and more malignant forms the redness is of a darker or dusky hue, and in the worst of these, petechiæ are present. Vesicles are even found with turbid contents, producing *scarlatina miliaris*. The eruption is sometimes entirely absent from the face. The thorax and inner surface of the thighs are more favorable sites. The eruption, when severe, is constantly accompanied by an itching or burning more or less intense, and there is a feeling of slight roughness at times.

The *tongue* is red at the edges and tip, furred at the center, but through the fur the papillæ stand out in distinct points, producing an appearance that is regarded as more or less characteristic. This has been called by some the *strawberry tongue*. So I did in my first edition, but further examina-

tion into the subject leads me to adopt the view that the strawberry tongue is the red and raw-looking tongue with enlarged papillæ, as originally held by the late Dr. Flint,<sup>1</sup> who wrote as follows: "In the progress of the disease the coating exfoliates, leaving the surface of the tongue reddened; and the papillæ being enlarged, the appearance is strikingly like that of a ripe strawberry." The term *raspberry tongue* is also applied to this condition. The rest of the mouth, including the roof and the palate and tonsils, is bright red, as though the eruption extended to it, as it doubtless does.

With the abatement of the eruption comes *desquamation*, and it is generally proportionate to the intensity and extent of the former. It sets in about the *tenth* day, and continues in bad cases for two or three weeks and even longer. When the eruption is slight, the little scales are scarcely noticeable, and the closest examination is necessary to discover them, while, where there is a vivid and extensive eruption, the amount of desquamation is enormous. Glove-like casts of the fingers, including the nails, are sometimes exfoliated, and the bed contains each day numerous flakes of epiderm that have come off, while many days are required for complete separation of the dead skin. Great care should be taken in gathering it up, for in the desquamation resides the contagium. On the other hand, when slight it should be carefully sought for, as it has great diagnostic value. At the same time it should not be regarded as something peculiar and confined to scarlet fever, for every dermatitis is followed by desquamation, as especially exemplified in the exfoliation that follows an attack of erysipelas on the face or irritation by iodine or mustard.

The *urine* from uncomplicated scarlet fever is like that of fever cases generally—scanty, high-colored, and precipitating uric acid and urates on cooling. The chlorids are diminished during active fever.

The blood in scarlet fever exhibits a sudden hyperleukocytosis, 18,000 to 40,000 white cells per cubic millimeter, falling gradually to the normal in from three to six weeks. There is also a moderate secondary anæmia.

The *duration* of simple uncomplicated scarlet fever ranges from three to fourteen days, according to the degree of severity. Its decline is, however, usually gradual as compared with the suddenness of onset.

Such is the general picture of scarlet fever in its simple, uncomplicated form, so characteristic that early in its history it received the name *scarlatina simplex*; owing to further combinations of symptoms, there have been added three other varieties: the anginose form, or *scarlatina anginosa*; the malignant form, or *scarlatina maligna*, and the *hemorrhagic* form.

In the *anginose* variety the throat symptoms are conspicuous and severe. In no well-developed case is there an absence of throat redness. On the other hand, there may be intense soreness with swelling of the fauces and tonsils, giving rise to extreme dysphagia. The neck may be so swollen as to fill up the depression beneath the jaw. There may be a false membrane involving the fauces, the posterior pharynx, the nasal cavities, the trachea, and the bronchi. The throat may present all the features of a severe diphtheria. Abscess and destructive ulceration may result, which may proceed even to perforation of the carotid artery, and rapid death ensue therefrom.

<sup>1</sup>For an interesting paper containing the views of various authors on this subject see "The Strawberry Tongue in Scarlet Fever," by M. H. Fussell, "University Med. Magazine," Philadelphia, May, 1897.

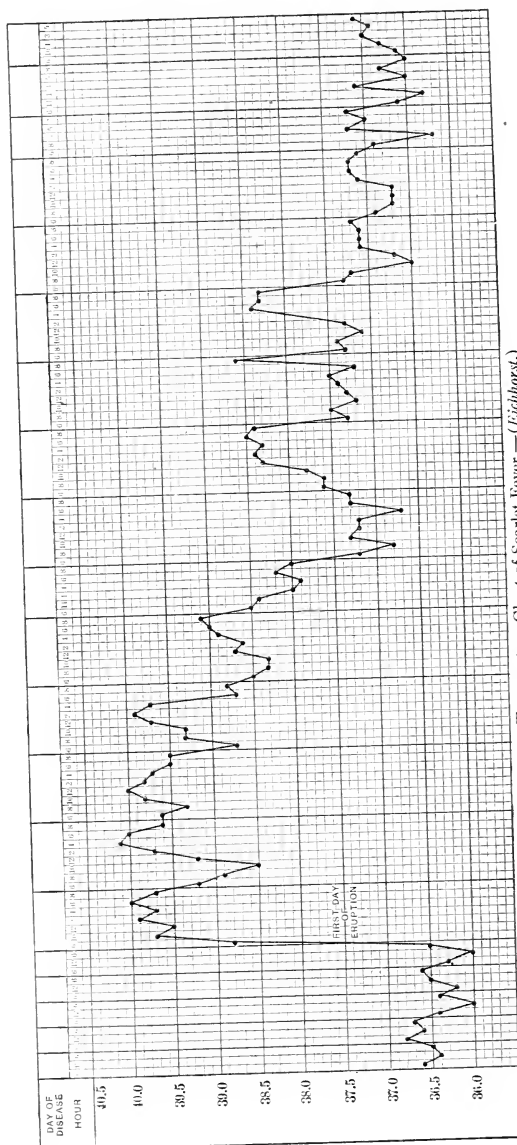


FIG. 14.—Temperature Chart of Scarlet Fever.—(Litchhorst.)

The inflammation almost certainly ascends the Eustachian tubes, producing severe ear symptoms. The false membrane is usually the result of the intensity of the inflammatory process, due to the specific cause of the disease and not to that of diphtheria, but there may be true diphtheritic membrane containing the Loeffler bacillus. Especially is this true of the cases in hospitals for infectious diseases. The *streptococcus pyogenes* is perhaps the most frequent cause of the throat inflammation. It has been found also in the skin, the blood, and the glandular organs in fatal cases. Scarlet fever has, indeed, been called a streptococcus infection. Follicular tonsillitis may also be one of the forms of sore throat.

In the *malignant* variety there is an overwhelming intensity of the cause which may result in almost immediate prostration and death of the patient, giving no time for the development of the usual symptoms, or these may be so feebly manifested that they present no distinctness. When the disease is not immediately fatal, there is intense adynamia, the heart and pulse sharing it. The breath is rapid; the capillary circulation is feeble; the skin dusky; the eruption is imperfectly developed; the temperature is very high, reaching 105° to 108° F. (40.5° to 42.2° C.); there is delirium, which may pass over into coma, and convulsions may occur. The pulse ranges from 120 to 150.

In the hemorrhagic form there are more or less extensive hemorrhagic extravasation, epistaxis, and hematuria. It attacks, for the most part, the feeble and badly nourished, and, like the previous variety, is almost invariably fatal.

Epidemics of scarlet fever vary greatly in severity. In some all the cases appear to be mild, in others all are of extreme severity. Families of children may be exterminated. Again, a mild case may give rise to one of the most intense forms.

**Complications.**—*Acute nephritis* is the most frequent complication of scarlet fever. It makes its appearance usually after desquamation is more or less complete—in the second, third, or fourth week. A slight albuminuria, which is common at the height of the fever, is not to be confounded with that of nephritis, and probably does not predispose to it, although the cells lining the tubules are at this stage in a state of cloudy swelling. The rationale of its production is not precisely understood. It used to be ascribed to cold or a draft of air upon the skin, which is young and tender after the desquamation. But when it is remembered that the mildest cases are as susceptible as the most severe, and probably more so, and that children have been found barefoot in the street with the eruption upon them, and yet have escaped Bright's disease, it must be admitted that we do not know all about it. The fact that the complication is usually more severe the earlier it appears, would go to show that the specific toxin or bacillus has something to do with it. It is true, too, that with the skin functionally dead the complemental work thrown upon the kidney increases its susceptibility to the ordinary causes of nephritis, of which cold is one. It is to be remembered also that other diseases in which the skin is seriously affected predispose to nephritis. This is pre-eminently true of burns and scalds.

However it may be brought about, the result is generally a typical example of parenchymatous or tubal nephritis, although instances of cute interstitial inflammation are also found. Every grade of severity is met,

but early recognition increases our power to control this severity. The majority of cases thus recognized get well, and I have known recovery to take place after suppression of urine has lasted for a week. The clinical picture is that of acute nephritis otherwise caused, and its consideration may be deferred until that disease is studied. This complication was formerly often overlooked, but in modern times cases are more closely watched for it. The possibility of Bright's disease without albuminuria must be borne in mind.

*Adenitis* producing a moderate degree of glandular enlargement occurs in almost all cases of scarlet fever, but in severe cases it becomes a painful and grave complication. A majority of cases subside, but some go on to extensive and destructive suppuration, of which I have known ulceration through the carotid artery a consequence.

*Arthritis* ensues in a certain number of cases, and closely resembles that of acute rheumatism. The term rheumatism is justified as much as the term gonorrheal rheumatism, and no more. Each is the result of the specific cause of the disease, and not of the cause of rheumatism. It occurs usually at defervescence, and recovery is almost invariable. Suppuration in the joint has, however, occurred.

*Otitis* is one of the most serious and permanently harmful of the complications. It is commonly considered the result of an extension of inflammation from the throat through the Eustachian tube to the middle ear, and is associated with the streptococcus. I have known it to occur after recovery was supposed to have taken place, immediately after a child had been sitting on a cold step. On the other hand, it sometimes happens quite early in the disease. Suppuration and perforation of the membrane of the tympanum are common, and more rare is destructive suppuration of the mastoid cells. As a consequence of one or both of these, it almost always leaves impaired hearing or total deafness. The facial nerve may become involved in the disease of the labyrinth, producing facial palsy, while thrombosis of the lateral sinuses may be another result of the same condition. Meningitis and death may be later consequences.

*Meningitis* may arise independently of otitis; in fact, scarlet fever is the most frequent cause of meningitis, after cerebrospinal fever, tuberculosis, and syphilis.

Various other *nervous affections* develop as rare complications. Among these may be mentioned chorea, convulsions, hemiplegia; and Osler mentions two cases of progressive paralysis of the limbs due to ascending spinal paralysis or multiple neuritis and subacute ascending paralysis as coming under his observation.

*Of thoracic complications* endocarditis and pericarditis not infrequently develop during convalescence from scarlet fever. Endocarditis is not always discovered, and a few unexplained chronic valvular defects may have originated in this way and thus be accounted for. Pericarditis is less likely to be overlooked. Malignant endocarditis is not so frequent as might be expected from the virulence and widespread character of the responsible germ. Pleurisy may also occur, and more rarely pneumonia.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of scarlet fever is easy if the symptoms are well developed, for it is the mild cases that escape detection. In the absence



of the eruption in a distinctive form, it is sometimes impossible to aver the presence of the disease. If there be a doubt as to the eruption, close watching will sometimes discover signs of desquamation in the shape of branny scales beneath the underclothing or in the stockings. In the absence of this the question must occasionally remain forever unsettled. At others the unfortunate development of a nephritis sets the matter at rest. If there has been exposure to the contagion, it is best to regard every case of sore throat as a possible case of scarlet fever, and treat it accordingly. While the throat affection of *diphtheria* closely resembles at times that of scarlet fever, where this symptom is at all conspicuous in scarlet fever the eruption is not generally wanting, or is, at least, present to such extent to permit recognition of the disease. The fact that the one or the other of the two diseases is prevailing may settle the question. It must be admitted, too, that the two affections may succeed each other, and even, perhaps, coexist, both events being, however, exceedingly rare. The diagnosis of *diphtheria* is rendered certain by obtaining a successful culture of the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus. The facilities furnished at the present day by the municipal laboratories to this end make it easy to obtain this test.

The coryza and cough in *measles* characterize the stage of invasion, while the eruption occurs later than in scarlet fever. When it does come it is very different, being at first, at least, in patches bounded by irregular and crescentic outlines, more uneven and elevated, and is conspicuous in the face, where the scarlet fever eruption is faintest. The absence of sore throat is distinctive of measles, though its occasional presence in mild degree must be admitted in the latter disease.

*Rotheln*, or rubella, has an eruption more like that of scarlet fever than is the typical measles eruption, but it is not usually followed by desquamation. There are no uncomfortable throat symptoms, and the constitutional disturbance is much less. It is also of much shorter duration. It is possible, too, that these affections may succeed each other, as is true of real measles and scarlatina.

Acute exfoliating *dermatitis* resembles scarlet fever during the eruption, but the exfoliation in the former is not like that of scarlet fever. As in erysipelas, it has more the appearance of scales and crusts before it is thrown off, and there is more apt to be a moist surface left behind, followed by a second exfoliation. There are no throat symptoms, and the tongue characteristic of scarlet fever is wanting. The eruption caused by belladonna, both on the skin and throat, resembles that of scarlet fever, but it is of short duration and without constitutional symptoms.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of scarlet fever varies greatly in different epidemics. There are epidemics of great severity, in which the mortality is large, and certain fulminating cases are beyond treatment. Yet most physicians of large experience in surveying their work will recall that the percentage of deaths in their scarlet fever cases has not been large, and that it has been greatest among the very young. The percentage of deaths is put down at from five to ten per cent. in mild epidemics, and 20 to 30 per cent. in severe ones. The mortality is greater in hospitals than in private practice. In the fulminating cases death takes place before a chance for treatment is offered; but in the next grade of cases, characterized by high temperature

and severe throat symptoms, a survival of five or six days generally means recovery, unless the supervening complications carry off the patient. Among these, nephritis and glandular swelling passing over to abscess are conspicuous, but even of those so afflicted a majority recover.

**Treatment.**—After isolation and protection in bed against changes of temperature, the treatment of scarlet fever is, in the main, a symptomatic one, associated with a vigilant nursing that will guard against complications. The patient should be isolated, if possible at the top of the house, and all communication with those of the family who have not had the disease interdicted. The temperature of the room should be uniform, while effective ventilation should be secured. The diet should be liquid as long as the fever persists, and the best of all liquids is milk, though light broths are allowed as is also an abundance of water.

If the *fever* is high, say above 103° F. (39.4° C.), cool sponging may be resorted to, but it is to be remembered that high temperature in this disease is usually of short duration and not likely, therefore, to produce the mischief it may cause in long-continued febrile diseases like typhoid fever. Very high temperature, such as 105° F. (40.5° C.), with meningeal symptoms, may require the tub-bath or cold pack, but the temperature of the tub-bath should not be so low as that used in typhoid fever. It is safer to put a patient in a bath at 90° F. (32.2° C.) and gradually reduce the temperature. The warm bath allays the itching of the skin, but this is as well accomplished by inunction with cold cream or sweet oil, and this unguent is important for another purpose as soon as desquamation takes place, to keep the scales from flying about and spreading the contagium. An ice-cap may be applied to the head if the temperature be high, and especially if there are head symptoms. While cool applications are allowable during fever, they are positively contra-indicated in its absence, as they may act in the development of complications of nephritis and otitis.

Fever is best controlled by these measures, but it is desirable to give medicines which tend to the same purpose, especially if they dispose to diuresis as well. Hence, the officinal solution of citrate of potassium or of the acetate of ammonium combined with the spirit of nitric ether, or a couple of drops of aconite with a little flavoring syrup, is useful. Constipation should be guarded against.

The *throat* symptoms require to be treated according to the degree of their severity. Iron and potassium chlorate may be added to the above mixture. If more active local measures are needed, the throat may be sprayed frequently with peroxid of hydrogen (1 to 3) or with a weak bichlorid of mercury solution (1 to 5000) or carbolic acid spray (1 to 60). The first is the best. Cold water applications, and even ice to the exterior of the throat, are very comforting to the patient. Very efficient and soothing is a bandage for the throat with pockets opposite to the tonsils, into which pieces of ice are placed and the whole covered with a dry towel; or little india-rubber ice-bags may be similarly used. In adynamic cases stimulants and restorative treatment in general are indicated. Due regard should be had to the tendency of the disease in severe forms to produce degeneration of muscle and the liability of the heart to share in this.

The proper treatment of the throat tends to save the *car*, but should the

middle ear become involved, the membrane should be watched daily, and if the tension be extreme, perforation practiced, even more than once, if needed. Too little attention has been paid to this complication, and if circumstances permit, an aural surgeon should be called in.

The *prophylaxis* against *nephritis* should be most careful. Whatever may be the immediate cause of the renal involvement, it is certain that cold often becomes its exciting cause. Hence, the patient should be scrupulously guarded against drafts, and, tedious as it may sometimes seem to mother and child, "six weeks in the room" is a precaution which will avert many a case of *nephritis*. In addition to the milk diet, which is an efficient prophylactic against *nephritis*, I am in the habit of giving a moderate dose of digitalis, say 3 to 5 minims (0.333 to 0.666 gm.), two or three times a day, to aid in maintaining a free movement of the blood through the kidney.

The treatment of complicating *nephritis* is the treatment of that affection under other circumstances, and the reader is referred to the appropriate section on it.

*Serum Treatment.*—An important addition to the treatment of scarlet fever has been made by Paul Moser<sup>1</sup> who suggested the use of antistreptococcic serum, not with a view to combating the disease itself, but the complications which are the result, not of the scarlatinous, but of the streptococcic infection. G. A. Charlton,<sup>2</sup> of Montreal, and W. R. Hubbert, of Detroit, have repeated Moser's treatment with gratifying results. Charlton says that he employed it in 15 cases, the majority of which would, in his judgment, under ordinary treatment, have terminated fatally, or, at least, have suffered from lingering and troublesome complications. There were 13 prompt recoveries and two deaths, one case having been in a dying condition, and the other complicated by pneumonia when they came under treatment. The frequency of mixed infection is shown by Moser's statement that in 99 cases of scarlet fever streptococci were obtained from blood 63 times. These observations have been amply confirmed by other bacteriologists.<sup>3</sup> The injections should be made early in the disease. The usual dose is 20 c. c., but in those cases in which the severity of the attack would seem to indicate a larger quantity, the dose may be repeated. After the injection of the serum a rapid subsidence of the pyrexia supervenes, also a corresponding decrease in the pulse rate, with improvement in its tension and rhythm. This seemingly harmless treatment demands a prompt trial for the relief of the dangers of this serious disease.

*Prophylaxis* against the spread of the disease should be rigid and is accomplished by the same measures as those against the spread of diphtheria. (See p. 142.)

#### THE "FOURTH DISEASE."

This is a name given to an eruptive disease described by Filatow-Dukes, which is said to be neither measles nor scarlet fever, nor röteln but a separate entity. The deviations from the typical form of these last named diseases are so numerous that they may easily include all that is named as

<sup>1</sup>"Ueber die Behandlung des Scharlachs mit einem Scharlachstreptococcen serum," "Wiener klinische Wochenschrift," October 9, 1902.

<sup>2</sup>"Montreal Medical Journal," October, 1902.

<sup>3</sup>For a more detailed account of these observations see "Die Bakteriologie des Blutes bei Infektionskrankheiten," von Dr. Med. Canon Jena. 1905.

characteristic of the new disease. I do not think it worth while therefore to burden the nosology with another disease no better substantiated. The physician must decide from the data at his disposal which of the recognized eruptive diseases each doubtful one most nearly approaches and classify it.

The reader who desires to look up the subject more fully is referred to an editorial in the Journal of the American Medical Association for Feb., 1907, where too, necessary references will be found.

## DIPHTHERIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Membranous Croup; Angina maligna; Angina membranacea; Cynanche contagiosa; Diphtheria faucium.*

**Definition.**—Diphtheria is an acute, contagious, inflammatory disease, caused by inoculation with the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus, and especially characterized by the formation of false membrane and by secondary constitutional infection. It may attack any mucous membrane, and even the skin, but, as usually employed, the term means diphtheritic inflammation of the oral, faucial, nasal, laryngeal, tracheal, or bronchial mucous membrane. The term *diphtheroid* is applied to such membranous inflammations as are not due to the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus.

**Historical.**—Diphtheria has prevailed endemically and epidemically since the days of Hippocrates (406 B. C.). D'Hauvantage, an East Indian physician living at the time of Pythagoras (probably 500 B. C.) described a disease bearing strong resemblance to diphtheria. The first tracheotomy is said to have been performed by Asclepiades, who lived probably more than a century before Christ. Diphtheria was recognized by Aretæus of Cappadocia (100 A. D.), who has left the oldest clear and concise description of this disease, which he called "Syriac ulcer." Galen also described the disease in the latter part of the second century. Paralysis of the soft palate was recognized as one of the consequences of diphtheria in the fourth century by Cœlius Aurelianus, and in the fifth or sixth century by Ætius. During the Middle Ages no accurate description was given, although important epidemics are recorded that no doubt were diphtheria. Ballonius, of Paris, in 1659, gives the earliest recorded reference to the pseudo-membrane of diphtheria.

The disease appeared in this country, in New England, in the seventeenth century. The earliest American literature on the subject appears to be a reference to a number of children that "died from bladders in the windpipe," found in the work of Sibley, of New England, in 1659. An admirable account by Samuel Bond was published in the "Transactions of the American Philosophical Society," at Philadelphia, in 1770. The disease was epidemic for the first time in New York city in 1771. Samuel Bard, in a paper written at that time, described it under the name of "Angina suffocativa," known in common parlance as "sore throat distemper."

We owe the name by which the disease is now generally known to Bretonneau, who applied it in a paper read before the French Academy of Medicine in 1821, wherein he declared, also, that "Angina suffocativa," "Cynanche maligna," "putrid" and other forms of sore throat were one and the same thing.<sup>1</sup>

The first distinction between catarrhal, croupous, and necrobiotic types of laryngeal diphtheria was made by Virchow in 1847.

**Etiology.**—The specific organism which by common consent at the present day is the cause of diphtheria is the so-called Klebs-Loeffler bacillus, a bacillus, non-motile, slightly bent, with rounded ends, 2.5 to 3 microns<sup>2</sup> in length, and from 0.5 to 0.8 micron in thickness. It stains readily by Loeffler's methylene alkaline blue in cover-glass preparations and in sections. Its cultures in blood-serum are small, round, grayish-white col-

<sup>1</sup> The history of diphtheria is one of the most interesting chapters in medicine, and is more fully considered in the classic paper of Abraham Jacobi in the "System of Medicine by American Authors," Philadelphia, 1885.

<sup>2</sup> A micron is a 1/1000 millimeter, or 1/25,400 inch.

onies that are characteristic. These, with the clubbed ends of the bacillus and clear spaces in its interior, giving it an appearance as if broken, suffice for its recognition. It grows on all the usual culture-media, but ceases to grow at a temperature below 68° F. (20° C.). If inoculation cultures are practiced on the lower animals, the nature of the virus is declared by the exudation, the bacilli, the swelling of adjacent lymphatic glands, and the invariably fatal results of such inoculation. The bacillus produces in its growth a potent toxic substance, or tox-albumin, the absorption of which from the seat of local infection causes the general symptoms of the disease, which are therefore due to this toxin and not to an invasion of the blood by the organism producing it. The toxin is an albuminous substance, but its composition is unknown. When injected into animals, it produces paralysis, nephritis, and albuminuria. Roux and Yersin were the first to show, in 1888, the pathogenic property of cultures that had been filtered through porcelain.

The successful implantation of the bacillus of diphtheria is, however, dependent on various circumstances. Certain temporary states of the individual doubtless favor it, while others retard it. While general weakness or feeble resisting power may be one of these conditions it is likely also that purely local states, such as uncleanness of the mouth, teeth, and fauces, as well as chronic inflammatory conditions, may act as predisposing causes. Enlarged tonsils and nasopharyngeal catarrh predispose. It has been shown that there are different degrees of virulence in the contagious organism itself. Diphtheria bacilli are readily found in the blood especially in that of the heart, less frequently in the blood of the arm veins; also in the lungs.

The bacillus of diphtheria is associated with other pathogenic bacteria, such as *streptococcus pyogenes* and *staphylococcus albus* and *aureus*, *micrococcus lancetolatus*, and *bacillus coli communis*, which are probably responsible for suppurative processes often associated, as well as for certain deep-seated inflammatory conditions and certain forms of pseudo-diphtheria, which often complicate the disease and are sometimes mistaken for it. The streptococcus is probably the most active. In fact secondary streptococcus infection is often more dangerous than the diphtheria infection.

It was formerly believed that defective drainage, and to a less extent also the upturning of soil, were conditions favoring the production of diphtheria, but such views are not sustained by modern studies. On the other hand, army statistics seem to show that foul air causes simple follicular sore throat, which in seasons of epidemics makes an excellent nidus for the growth of the diphtheria bacillus. The contagion is communicated, as a rule, through the air and not by fluids ingested, although epidemics have been traced to milk, in which the bacillus multiplies. In the vast majority of instances the source of the contagion is the throat or nose of another individual affected, whence it is propelled by acts of coughing or expectoration. Hence it happens that the physician and nurse are not infrequently infected. Perhaps in this disease, more than any other, excepting typhus, are doctors and nurses the victims of contagion. Much may, however, be done to secure protection by caution during such ministrations, as by keeping the mouth closed and carefully cleansing the hands after contact. The practice of examining throats through a plate of clear glass is a further pro-

tection against inoculation of the examiner. The contagion is less tenacious than that of scarlet fever, but is still highly so, having been found to live on blood-serum for 155 days; dried on silk threads, 172 days; and in gelatin, for 18 months. It has been found on a child's toy that had been kept in a dark place for five months and in the hair of nurses. It resides also in the healthy throats of immune persons, in simple catarrhal angina without membrane, and in simple lacunar tonsillitis; whence it is plain how the disease may arise without apparent cause in certain sporadic cases.

It is believed by some that diphtheria affects the lower animals, especially the cat, and may be transmitted from them to children. It is said, also, that such an affection attacks calves and heifers, and is from them communicable to man.

The disease is much more common in children than in adults, though no age is exempt. It is rare in very young children, and more girls are attacked than boys. Abraham Jacobi, whose experience has been very large, has seen only three cases in the newly born. Several cases in children about six months old have come under my notice. Epidemics vary in severity, and winter is the season in which the disease is most prevalent. While crowding in cities favors it, it is often widespread and virulent in the country.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid anatomy of diphtheria consists, on the one hand, in the presence of the false membrane and of the more ordinary phenomena of inflammation, most of which latter disappear after death; in the deep-seated ulcerative processes that sometimes result; and in the results of the complications and sequelæ to be considered later. The paralyzes do not furnish palpable morbid products.

Under morbid anatomy the constitution of the false membrane is suitably considered. At its first appearance it is yellowish-white, but later may assume a grayish hue. Whether superimposed on a mucous membrane or set into it as in a frame, depends much upon the character of the epithelium with which the surface is normally covered. To squamous epithelium the membrane is more deeply and thoroughly attached; to columnar epithelium, such as lines the larynx or bronchi, it is more loosely adherent; but in both situations it tends to become looser with the lapse of time.

The membrane itself is to-day considered a product of what is known as *coagulation-necrosis*, our knowledge of which is based on the studies of Wagner, Weigert, and especially of Oertel. The mechanism of its production is as follows: The diphtheritic poison, probably admixed with fibrin from the blood, infiltrates the wandered-out leukocytes and the epithelial cells of the part, especially the more superficial, causing first their death and then a hyaline transformation, and simultaneously coagulation. The resultant is a plate of *necrotic tissue* and *coagulated fibrin*. Hence the word "coagulation-necrosis." The membrane presents, also, a laminated structure, probably due to the involvement of successive layers of tissue and wandering cells. If forcibly separated, especially when recent, it is apt to leave a bleeding surface, on which new membrane is generally promptly deposited. The process proceeds from without inward, and, though usually superficial, may extend more deeply, invading lymphatic glands and adja-

cent tissue, producing foci of necrosis, which may be extensive. Blood-vessels may also be invaded, especially capillaries. Bacilli are everywhere present, but they do not directly produce the mischief. It is caused by the toxin they generate. The same results may be produced experimentally.

Inflammatory membrane of this kind is not the product of the toxin of diphtheria only. Any intense irritant is capable of producing it. Such are corrosive poisons like nitric acid and ammonia, although the necrotic product is here partly the result of the direct action of the agent itself on the tissue. Similar in its effect is the organism of scarlet fever, whatever it may be, which often produces a pseudo-membranous angina difficult to distinguish in its coarser characters from that of diphtheria, but in which is not, as a rule, found the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus. In this membrane have been found streptococci, staphylococci, and diplococci. The micrococcus of sputum-septicemia, and the *oidium albicans* may produce such false membrane. The streptococcus is probably the most frequent cause. Such false membranes may be called diphtheroid.

**Symptoms.**—The *period of incubation* varies from two days to 12, seldom exceeding one week.

According to what may be the primary or principal seat of invasion we may speak of the *pharyngeal*, *laryngeal*, and *nasal* forms of diphtheria.

In the pharyngeal variety, *fever* and *sore throat* appear simultaneously, sometimes preceded by a chill or chilliness. Both increase rapidly. There may be aching or a sense of weariness. More rarely a *convulsion* ushers in the attack. At times at the beginning, at others on the second or third day, an *erythematous eruption* more or less extensive appears on the skin and may lead to the diagnosis of scarlet fever. Usually, as soon as attention is called to the throat, white patches are found on one or both tonsils, which spread with varying rapidity. *It is this spread from the original focus by which the disease is especially characterized as something distinct from follicular tonsillitis.* Commonly, the extension is anterior, over the anterior half-arches to the uvula, and to the palate or up into the nasal passages, or both. With the invasion of the uvula and palate, commonly reached about the fourth day, the diagnosis becomes certain, even without the bacteriological examination. More serious is the extension backward into the larynx, producing croup.

The *temperature* rises to 103° or 104° F. (39.4° or 40° C.), but is not characterized by extreme or persistent elevation. The *pulse*, which ranges from 120 to 140, is never very full and strong, but tends early to smallness and weakness. *Delirium* is rarely present. *Deglutition* becomes more and more painful, and is increased by *external glandular swelling*, involving the lymphatic and salivary glands, although this swelling is not invariably present. As the *nasal passages* become involved, breathing becomes more and more obstructed, until, finally, it is possible through the mouth only. The *Eustachian tube*, *middle ear*, and even the *antra* may be invaded. So, also, there may be *diphtheritic conjunctivitis*, and even *keratitis*, and, though rarely indeed, *dermatitis*. Should there be, however, excoriations or wounds, these may be invaded by the diphtheritic pseudo-membrane. Such false membrane may, however, be due to the streptococcus, which requires a bacteriological examination for its recognition.

As intimated under the head of morbid anatomy, the *ulcerative process* may extend much more deeply, producing destruction of tissue and even gangrene, resulting, as in scarlet fever, in a fatal erosion of blood-vessels. Usually, the membrane gradually disappears from the fauces as convalescence is established, or is coughed up if deeper in the respiratory passages. At times, on the other hand, it remains on the tonsils for some days after all constitutional disturbance has disappeared.

If the inflammation and membrane formation extend downward, *laryngeal cough* and the signs of laryngeal obstruction become superadded—in a word, the symptoms of *pseudo-membranous croup* supervene. Or if the process begins in the larynx—*primary laryngeal diphtheria*—we have croup at the outset, which differs from spasmodic croup in being less sudden in its onset. The seriousness of the disease is greatly aggravated by the possibility of complete obstruction and suffocation unless averted by operative interference. Not the larynx alone, but the trachea and bronchi may be invaded by false membrane. While the onset is slower than that of pharyngeal diphtheria, the course is more rapid. To the phenomena of congestion and membrane formation with resulting obstructions are added those of spasm, which bring on at intervals the alarming paroxysms that add to the terrors of this horrible affection.

*Nasal diphtheria*, in which the nares are especially invaded by the false membrane, requires special allusion. It is more apt to succeed upon acute nasal catarrh with little secretion than on chronic catarrh. The effect of the invasion is to increase any previous discharge, which is also rendered acrid and irritating. In this form glandular swelling of the deep faucial glands at the angle of the jaw is particularly prone to occur, probably on account of the richness of this locality in lymphatics, and persists as induration, while a chronic pharyngeal and nasal catarrh may persist a long time after disappearance of the membrane. Jacobi, who also especially emphasized the diagnostic value of this peculiar glandular swelling, called attention to the fact that this form of catarrh is not only liable to be a focus of fresh attacks, but may also be a source of spread to others. Suppuration in these enlarged glands rarely occurs.

In three to five days after the onset, if the case is one of ordinary severity, the phenomena of *constitutional infection* make their appearance in the shape of extreme *adynamia*, *feebleness of pulse* and *heart-beat*, while a sense of *intense weariness* is complained of. From this time a new period of danger begins, the danger of death from heart failure. This is a distinct and separate cause from heart paralysis due to neuritis of cardiac nerves. At times in diphtheria, as in scarlet fever, the signs of constitutional poisoning appear at the outset, and the patient is struck down as by a blow, but this is less common than in scarlet fever. In such cases the temperature may not rise, and may even be subnormal. Constitutional poisoning is not so prone to take place in primary laryngeal croup as in secondary croup. This lesser tendency to constitutional poisoning together with the more gradual onset, the spasm, the slighter contagion, the shorter duration, and more serious mortality, constitute the chief clinical features of the laryngeal variety.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—The most frequent complication of diphtheria is *nephritis*, which pursues a course somewhat similar to the



nephritis of scarlet fever, but is less frequently accompanied by dropsy, and generally terminates more favorably. On the other hand, albuminuria is present in almost every severe case. There may be the other signs of nephritis—viz., blood-casts, epithelial casts, scanty and even suppressed urine. *Capillary bronchitis* and *bronchopneumonia* are serious complications, especially if the result of insufflation of the virulent membrane. *Edocarditis* and *arthritis* sometimes occur.

The most important sequel of diphtheria is *paralysis*. This is now generally regarded as the result of a *toxic neuritis*. It may come on as early as the seventh or eighth day, or as late as the second and third week, when convalescence is apparently established. It is quite as likely to follow mild cases as severer ones. It may even follow wound-diphtheria. It most frequently affects the *palate*, producing nasal speech and permitting the passage of fluids into the posterior nares and through the nose. There is simultaneous *anesthesia of the pharyngeal mucous membrane*, destroying reflex excitability. Next in frequency of involvement are the muscles of *deglutition*; more rarely, the *eye muscles*, especially those of accommodation, which is thereby rendered defective. There may be also ptosis and strabismus, or paralyzes of the distribution of the facial nerve. Still more rarely the nerves of the lower extremities are involved, producing paralysis, partial recovery from which leaves lameness that may last through life. Generally, however recovery takes place in the order of involvement, usually in two or three weeks. Sometimes there are *ataxic symptoms*, with *loss* of the tendon *reflexes*, but no involvement of sensation.

The most serious of the local palsies is that of the *heart*, due to neuritis of the cardiac nerves. In this there may be bradycardia and tachycardia but the most frequent result is the sudden cessation of the heart's action, and this tragic termination may take place during convalescence. Indeed, the event is more frequent during convalescence, and is often as late as the sixth or seventh week. At other times the phenomena of heart failure are more slow in their development. The pulse may become weak and rapid, or more rarely become slow, while the extremities become cold, the temperature falls, and there supervene in a few hours all the signs of collapse. A most striking instance of bradycardia in diphtheria was met by Baumgarten, wherein, toward the close, the pulse fell to 25, though very regular.

**Diagnosis.**—The only two conditions with which diphtheria is liable to be confounded are, first, the different forms of *diphtheroid faucitis*, including follicular tonsillitis, and, the faucitis of scarlet fever. The difficulty in deciding between the former condition and diphtheria at the outset is sometimes extremely great, and time or the bacteriological investigation may alone settle it. The primary fever, constitutional disturbance, and dysphagia are often equally as great in follicular tonsillitis due to streptococcus or some other infection. As a rule, however, the follicular exudate remains limited in extent—it does not spread, and in the second or third 24 hours is apt to drop out, leaving a clean-cut ulcer that heals rapidly, while the constitutional symptoms disappear with equal rapidity. In the form of follicular tonsillitis attended by multiple white spots on the tonsils the local resemblance to diphtheria is even greater, but the white spots remain isolated while those of diphtheria spread.

Sometimes, however, the mass of desquamated epithelium, fibrin, and fungous filaments, which make up the contents of the follicles in follicular angina extend outside of the follicles and over the surface of the tonsils. Then it becomes more difficult to decide. It does not, however, pass the boundary of the tonsils. The follicular fungi are said to stain bluish-red with an iodopotassic iodine solution. Further certainty is secured by making cultures from the membrane, a small portion being removed by the sterilized platinum loop or cotton swab, and planted in gelatinized blood-serum. In diphtheria in the course of 24 hours characteristic colonies of the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus will develop, and the microscope will confirm the diagnosis.

From *scarlet fever*, diphtheria is usually easily distinguished by the absence of eruption, although this aid is wanting in those few cases of scarlet fever in which there is no eruption, and in those of diphtheria where there is an erythematous redness. Under these circumstances the distinction becomes more difficult if the throat symptoms be similar, as they sometimes are. The prevalence of an epidemic of one or the other disease aids in the decision. Later on, the desquamation that takes place in scarlet fever, but not in diphtheria, also settles the question.

Diagnosis is sometimes delayed or the disease entirely overlooked by concealment of the membrane in localities not easily open to examination, as in the nasal chambers. Hence, in all obscure cases these should be examined. Indeed, it is not impossible that diphtheria may exist without membrane, as evidenced by prompt recovery after the use of antitoxin in certain obscure throat cases with continued adynamia and fever.

The larger cities in the United States now offer, through their health bureaus, to make bacteriological examinations for physicians in all cases of possible diphtheria. Outfits are left at stations. They consist of a box containing a tube of blood-serum and another containing a sterilized swab. The following directions are issued by the Philadelphia Board of Health:

Inoculations should be made by rubbing the cotton swab attached to the end of the wire contained in the test-tube, gently, but freely, against any visible exudate, and then drawing it over the surface of the culture-medium without breaking the surface of the latter. The swab should then be replaced in the tube from which it was taken, and both tubes be replugged and put back into the box. The box is returned as soon as possible to the station from which it was obtained, or taken directly to the laboratory. The tubes are collected every afternoon, examined the following morning, and reports mailed to the attending physician. The latter can obtain information earlier, by telephoning directly to the laboratory.

**Prognosis.**—The introduction of the serum treatment for diphtheria, which may be dated April, 1893, when the first 30 cases treated by Behring's normal serum were reported,<sup>1</sup> marks an era prior and subsequent to which the prognosis of diphtheria presents very different aspects. Even prior to 1893, while the prognosis was so unfavorable as to justify a wholesome dread of the disease the world over, many moderately severe and most mild cases

<sup>1</sup> The prior trials of immune serum in the treatment of human diphtheria, made in v. Bergmann's clinic in Berlin in 1891, and by Henoch and Huebner in Berlin in 1892, were tentative and made with weak serum and in insufficient doses.

got well. Allowing for the great variation in the percentage of fatal cases in different epidemics, and especially at different ages, the very careful and reliable studies of Professor William H. Welch,<sup>1</sup> of Johns Hopkins Hospital, make it safe to put such mortality at a minimum of 40 per cent. Where the larynx was involved, it amounted to almost 100 per cent. Of the remaining non-laryngeal cases probably one-third died. Since the introduction of the antitoxin treatment the studies of the same observer (Welch) show a reduction in mortality of between 50 and 60 per cent. As near as it may be possible to put in, the mortality since the introduction of antitoxin has been from 8 to 25 per cent. This improvement affects all classes of cases, including those operated on as well, and is attested from many sources. For example, in the report of collective investigation by the American Pediatric Society we have the following: "Formerly, 27 per cent. approximately represented the recoveries, while now 27 per cent. represents the rate of mortality" also "Formerly, only ten per cent. of laryngeal cases did not require operation, while now with antitoxin treatment 17 per cent. do not require this procedure." Finally, the most remarkable results are shown in the "Bulletin of the Department of Health," city of Chicago, for February, 1899, which reports that out of 4071 cases of *bacterially verified* diphtheria, 3705 recovered and 276 died, giving a mortality rate of but 6.77 per cent. In New York City for 1899 there were 8240 cases reported with a mortality of 1087, or 13 per cent.

During 13 months ending October, 1896, 1972 patients were treated with antitoxin at the Boston City Hospital, and of this number post-diphtheritic paralysis occurred in 5.8 per cent., which percentage is smaller than that of cases not treated with antitoxin. A fair ratio of the causes of death in 25 fatal cases prior to the use of antitoxin was given in a paper by William P. Munn<sup>2</sup> as follows: from septic intoxication eight, laryngeal stenosis seven, cardiac paralysis six, hemorrhage from the bowels one, nephritis one, unknown two; total 25. Thus the chief causes of death are adynamia, laryngeal obstruction, heart paralysis, or suffocation from paralysis of deglutition; more rarely nephritis and bronchopneumonia. Hemorrhage from an eroded blood-vessel is a possible cause of death. Morse analyzed 366 deaths occurring in 1972 consecutive cases treated since 1895 in the Boston City Hospital, and found the mortality only 18.5 per cent. Seventy of these cases died on the day of admission, and 38 on the following day; in other words, 100 were moribund on admission. The following are the causes of death: sepsis, 107; bronchopneumonia, 91; cardiac complications, 52; exhaustion, 13; tuberculosis, one; empyema, one; typhoid fever, one; moribund when admitted, 100; total, 366.

Under the use of antitoxin the average duration of an ordinary case may be put down at about five days and of a very bad case ten days. It is important to remember, however, that actively growing bacilli can be cultivated from the throat of cases treated early with antitoxin, two weeks after the membrane has disappeared.

**Treatment.**—In the management of every case of diphtheria there are two principal indications: first, to combat the toxin and thereby neutralize

<sup>1</sup> "The Treatment of Diphtheria by Antitoxin." Reprint of paper read before the Association of American Physicians, May 31, 1895, and published in the "Transactions" for that year.

<sup>2</sup> "Diphtheria: A clinical Study," "Medical News," Philadelphia, March 25, 1893.

constitutional infection; second, to co-operate with this object by suitable supporting treatment.

I. To combat the toxin and to prevent constitutional infection. This is accomplished (a) by serum therapy, that is, by antitoxin; (b) by local anti-septic measures.

(a) *Antitoxin*.—The treatment of diphtheria by antitoxin is based on the fact that animals may be made immune to diphtheria by the injection of diphtheria toxin, and that the serum from such animals is antitoxic to the toxin of diphtheria. This was shown by Behring in 1891, after some preliminary experiments had been made by Fränkel in the same year. In 1892 Behring and Wernicke employed this method successfully in immunizing sheep, and also ascertained the second important fact mentioned that blood-serum from an immune animal could be used with success in arresting diphtheritic infection in susceptible animals. To this was added the further important fact that a *smaller amount of serum is required to produce immunity than is necessary for the cure of an animal already infected. If the injection be made immediately after infection, from one and a half to twice as much is required; eight hours after, three times as much, and 24 to 36 hours after infection the dose required is eight times the immunizing dose.*

In obtaining a uniform standard of strength Behring produced first his *normal therapeutic serum*, which when injected into guinea-pigs, in the proportion of 1 to 5000 of body weight, saves the animal from the fatal effects of ten times the minimum dose of a two-day-old culture fatal to a control animal not thus treated. *One cubic centimeter of this normal serum he calls an antitoxin unit.* The serum prepared by this method he labeled three strengths: No. 1 is 60 times the strength of the normal serum; No. 2, 100 times as strong; and No. 3, 140 times as strong. Behring claims that 10 c.c. of his No. 1 serum is sufficient to arrest the progress of the disease in a child under ten years, and effect a cure if given within two or three days after the onset of the attack. This older method of Behring has been replaced by other modern methods.<sup>1</sup>

One of the objections to the serum treatment at first was the necessarily large bulk of the injection. This has, however, been reduced by increasing the strength of the serum, so that the dose now injected gives no more discomfort than a hypodermic injection of morphin. Reliable preparations are now made in this country, notably by the Mulford Company, in Philadelphia, and by Parke, Davis & Co., in Detroit, Mich., and in some cities by the official authorities under direction of the city board of health. Two strengths of serum are made by these firms, the "standard" and "concentrated" serum. The former is more bulky, 1000 units being represented by 4 c.c., while 1000 units of the concentrated are represented by 2 c.c.

*Technique of the Administration of Antitoxin*.—Antitoxin should be administered *at once* if there is a reasonable probability of the presence

<sup>1</sup> The method of the Mulford Co. is briefly as follows:

Determine by trial on a large number of guinea-pigs the smallest surely fatal dose of toxin. Take other guinea-pigs and determine the smallest fraction of a cubic centimeter of serum that will protect the guinea-pig against 100 times the fatal dose of toxin. This fraction of a cubic centimeter will then contain one unit, and there are in one cubic centimeter as many units as the fraction will go into the whole cubic centimeter. Thus if  $1/250$  of 1 c.c. is the smallest quantity that will protect, then the serum has 250 units per c.c.

of diphtheria, without waiting for the bacteriological diagnosis. Antitoxin does no harm where the disease is not diphtheria, and delay in a true case may be fatal.

Very much larger doses of antitoxin are given now than formerly. Thus the beginning dose was 1000 units for ordinary pharyngeal diphtheria. Now 3000 units are a frequent initial dose, and even more is given in bad cases, 7000 to 10000. In laryngeal diphtheria at least 5000 units should be given at the first dose. The "concentrated" form is preferred on account of its small bulk. If, for any reason, the concentrated form cannot be procured, the "standard" may be used, which is cheaper and just as efficacious, but gives more pain because of its greater bulk.

A large hypodermic syringe is used for the administration. The syringe must be made sterile by boiling for five minutes just before being used. Always test the syringe with water before filling with serum. After the administration the syringe should be washed out with clean cold water. At the present day the serum is dispensed in proper dose in a glass syringe with a needle point attached, by which the serum is injected, thus avoiding the manipulation necessary of transfer from bottle or tube to syringe. The injection is given in the back just below the scapula or in the flank or buttock, the skin being cleaned with soap and water followed by alcohol. If the smaller bulk be used, it can be injected quickly. If the larger be used, inject slowly in order to avoid injury to the underlying tissues by too rapid stretching. Immediately after the injection there is an occasional rise of temperature, which need give no concern, or an eruption may appear which is equally harmless.

In favorable cases, after 24 hours have passed, the temperature will not have risen; the pulse will be slower; the membrane will *not* have spread; the mucous membrane at the edge of the exudation will be bright red in color. There will be a feeling of diminished discomfort and revival of spirits. These are favorable signs, and a second dose need *not* be administered. A second dose is administered after 24 hours if the temperature has risen, if the membrane is spreading, and if the general condition of the patient is not so good as at the previous injection. As might be expected, improvement is more rapid in mild cases.

W. K. Sutherland reports a case of diphtheria in which 498000 units of antitoxin were used.<sup>1</sup>

*For Immunization.*—For producing immunity to those subject to infection from diphtheria, immunizing doses should be administered. These range from 500 to 1000 units, according to the age of the person to be protected. Infants and very young children are easily protected by the smaller dose. Adults, especially those in attendance upon the sick, should receive the larger dose. Persons who have been exposed and probably are already infected should receive 500 units. The throat irritation so common in those who are attending diphtheria is said to have yielded promptly to a dose of 500 units. If suspicious symptoms have appeared, not less than 1000 units should be given.

Immunization cannot be too strongly insisted upon. The protection afforded by one dose will last for at least three or four weeks, at most not

<sup>1</sup>"Medical Record," Shreveport, Louisiana, Jan., 1905.

more than eight or ten weeks; within which time, with proper means of disinfection, the source of infection should be eliminated.

Behring and others declare that the diphtheria antitoxin has no injurious effect upon animals in the largest dose in which it has been employed, and that, aside from its antitoxic powers, its properties are entirely negative, as far as human beings are concerned. This is essentially true; yet there is evidence to the contrary, notably, a fatal case reported in the "Journal of the American Medical Association," April 4, 1896, that of a healthy boy, five years old, who received an injection of Behring's fresh serum as a prophylactic and died within five minutes; also another case, in Berlin, referred to in the "Medical News," April 18, 1896, page 443. The daughter of a friend of the author died suddenly in Switzerland after receiving an injection of antitoxin.

(b) *Antiseptic Local Treatment to Prevent Constitutional Infection.*—Germicides and disinfectants are best applied, when possible, by the spraying apparatus at intervals of an hour, or, at most, every two hours. If the spraying apparatus cannot be used, as is often the case with children, a swab of cotton wool or a soft sponge may be employed. The most satisfactory solution in my hands for this purpose has been equal parts of *peroxid of hydrogen* and *Dobell's solution*. The spraying should be continued five minutes, if possible. *Bichlorid of mercury* is also a suitable solution for spraying, of strengths of 1 to 4000, or even, in extreme cases, 1 to 2000. The most efficient bichlorid solution is that with tartaric acid 1 to 500,<sup>1</sup> with which the throat may be swabbed once in six hours, or even, in severe cases, once in three. The objection to the corrosive sublimate solution is its extremely unpleasant taste. *Carbolic acid* may also be used in 2 1/2 to 3 per cent. solution, in equal parts of glycerin and water. The stronger solutions are better applied by a swab than by the spray apparatus, while with children it is often impossible to use the spray. Solutions of albumin solvents are also highly recommended by some, such as *trypsin* and *papoid*, in the strength of 30 grains to 1 ounce (2 gm. to 30 c.c.) or *lactic acid* in the same proportion. *Salicylic acid*, 1 to 300; *thymol*, 1 to 2000; *chlorin water*; *boric acid* in saturated solution; saturated solution of *iodoform* in ether or 5 per cent. suspended in equal parts of glycerin and water, are all useful local applications. Loeffler's *toluol solution* is highly praised. It is composed of menthol, 10 gm. dissolved in enough toluol to make 36 c.c.; sesquichlorid of iron, 4 c.c., and absolute alcohol, 60 c.c. Still another solution is tincture of the perchlorid of iron, 1 1/2 drams (6 gm.); glycerin and water, each 1 ounce (30 c.c.); carbolic acid, 15 to 20 minims (1 to 1.3 c.c.). Where there is laryngeal diphtheria, the patient should breathe an atmosphere saturated with the vapor of slaking lime. The comfort derived from such breathing is often very great.

While iron and the chlorate of potash have lost some of their former reputation, they are still, in my judgment, indispensable, and I always combine them with any other treatment I may care to use. As held by Jacobi, they are, at least, useful in the concurrent pharyngitis and stomatitis that

<sup>1</sup> A tablet consisting of 3.75 grains (0.25 gm.) bichlorid of mercury to 19.25 grains (1.25 gm.) of tartaric acid, dissolved in 4 ounces (120 c.c.) of water, makes a 1 to 500 solution.

invariably attend the disease. The chlorate of potash in saturated solution may be used as a simple mouth-wash. Gargling is an ineffectual method of reaching the throat, and has given place to spraying. Still it may be used with advantage by adults. Much depends upon a certain facility in using it, which may be cultivated.

Jacobi recommends that in children too young to use the gargle the local effect of the chlorate of potash be secured by frequent administration of small doses. Thus, regarding 1 1/2 to 2 drams (6 to 8 gm.) as a suitable 24 hours' quantity for an adult, 30 grains (2 gm.) for a child two or three years, and 20 grains (1.33 gm.) for a baby a year old, he prefers the whole amount to be given in 50 or 60 doses rather than 8 or 10, giving the weaker dose every hour or half-hour, or every 15 or 20 minutes, being careful to give no water immediately afterward, for obvious reasons. But I have seen the thing overdone: I have seen a little child, exhausted for want of sleep, aroused every 15 minutes for the administration of medicine, when what it wanted was sleep more than medicine.

The question as to the toxic effect of potassium chlorate has been raised. Only very large doses produce laking of the blood and nephritis and no danger need be apprehended from such doses as those prescribed above.

II. The second object includes measures which also have for their purpose, first, checking the spread of the membrane, its loosening and solution, and, second, maintaining the strength of the patient against the depressing action of the absorbed toxin. (a) The former is accomplished by the preparations of mercury. Of these, I prefer the bichlorid of mercury in doses of 1/48 grain (0.0027 gm.) to 1/12 grain (0.005 gm.) for an adult, in conjunction with tincture of the chlorid of iron and the chlorate of potassium, every two hours, taken freely diluted. The former dose makes 1/4 grain (0.0162 gm.) of the bichlorid in 24 hours, but as much as one-half (0.032 gm.) may be given in that period. These doses are given to adults, and they need not be much reduced for children. There need be little fear of poisonous effects from the bichlorid, as bowel irritation, pain, and loose movements give warning before any more serious consequences supervene. When these symptoms appear, the bichlorid should be discontinued or the dose decidedly diminished.

The calomel treatment is preferred by some. The drug is given in hourly doses of 1/6 or 1/8 grain (0.016 or 0.008 gm.) until spawn-like stools are produced. Both remedies are supposed to have the effect of loosening the membrane.

(b) Iron is also useful in supporting the strength of the patient. For this purpose quinin is indispensable in doses of 10 to 24 grains (0.65 to 1.5 gm.) in the 24 hours. Stimulating, nourishing, and easily assimilated food is necessary. Milk is to be preferred to all else, fortified with full doses of whiskey or brandy, 2 drams to 1 ounce (8 to 30 c.c.), every two hours, being required in all cases of severity, and proportional doses for children. The milk may, of course, be alternated with nutritious animal broths or beef-peptonoids. In extreme cases of difficult deglutition nutrient enemata may be useful, but nourishment by the stomach-tube, if possible, is more efficient. For enemata, peptonized milk is the most suitable. To this brandy or whiskey may be added, if needed. Rectal alimentation

has sometimes to be discontinued because the enema is made too large and is too frequently administered. Once in six hours is often enough, and 4 ounces at a time are as much as the rectum will commonly bear, although this quantity may be gradually increased. Smaller quantities should be used for children.

*Treatment Demanded by Special Indication.*—Where *laryngeal obstruction* is imminent, intubation or tracheotomy should be performed. Lives have been saved by both of these operations. Intubation may precede tracheotomy, as its use does not preclude the more serious operation at a later date, if the obstruction increases. Such cases should breathe an atmosphere charged with the vapor of slaking lime.

In the *nasal* variety of *diphtheria* special means must be employed to disinfect and cleanse the nasal passages. The solutions recommended to spray the throat may be used for such cleansing. Gentle injections into the nostril may be more efficient than the spray, precaution being taken to keep the mouth open, by which the entrance of fluid into the Eustachian tube is guarded against. The injections should be continued until the fluid has free exit either by the other nostril or through the mouth. Jacobi has seen cases where he has been compelled to bore a passage with a silver probe through a mass of membrane filling the nasal cavities, and then apply carbolic acid to remove the denser portions before injecting. He recommends that when about to bring the injection to a close, the nasal cavities should be pressed together for an instant with the fingers, as in this way the fluid is forced backward into the pharynx and swallowed or ejected through the mouth, thus washing both at the same time.

**The Treatment of Complications and Sequelæ.**—Complications are treated as the same conditions under other circumstances, and the paralysis so frequently succeeding upon diphtheria, alone requires special allusion. The prognosis is, on the whole, good, and time, under favorable circumstances, mainly effects the cure, and during this the most important measures are those that save the patient from accident. Thus if there is paralysis of the muscles of deglutition, liquid food only should be used, and it may be necessary to nourish for a time by the rectum or by means of the stomach-tube. So, too, undue exertion should be avoided. Electricity and tonics, especially strychnin, are indicated. The former is applied to wasting muscles, and may be advantageously associated with massage. Strychnin should be given in full doses, ascending gradually to 1/20 grain (0.003 gm.) three and four times a day, with appropriate reduction for children. Iron and quinin should also be given.

The electrical treatment for paralysis of the pharyngeal muscles is applied in the following manner: An electrode is placed at the back of the neck and a very small electrode is touched to the velum palati, and a rapidly interrupted faradic current of moderate strength applied. Galvanism may be similarly used. A specially constructed electrode is also applied to the throat.

**Prophylaxis Against Diphtheria.**—Most important are the precautions necessary to prevent a spread of the disease. To this end the patient should be isolated, all carpets and unnecessary furniture and hangings should be removed from the room, and all utensils used in treatment should be kept apart and separate for the patient's own use. Spoons and tongue



depressors should be kept in carbolic acid solution, or, better, thrown into water kept boiling. All bed linen and clothing removed from the patient should be boiled, being immersed in water before removal from the room. Mattresses, pillows, and woolen garments too good to be destroyed should be exposed to superheated steam in establishments provided for the purpose in the cities; or they may be disinfected at the same time with the apartment occupied by the patient. They should be opened and suspended in this apartment, of which all the doors and windows must be closed tightly and the room fumigated with formaldehyd gas, of two to four per cent. volume strength, for not less than 12 hours. Suitable lamps are provided for this purpose. If formaldehyd is not available, sulphur may be used. The sulphur, in the amount of two pounds to every ten square feet (2 kilos to every 2.5 meters) should be placed in iron pans and these supported by bricks in washtubs containing a little water. The sulphur is then ignited by glowing coals or by burning alcohol. The room should be kept closed for twenty-four hours. After this fumigation the articles of clothing should be hung out in the open air for several hours, and the doors and woodwork washed well with a solution of corrosive sublimate, 1 to 1000, while the walls should be wiped down with a similar solution.

Finally, physicians and nurses in attendance on the patient should carefully wash their hands before leaving the room, first in soap and water, and finally rinse them in corrosive sublimate solution, 1 to 1000. Nurses in constant attendance should wear an overdress of washable material, to be slipped off before leaving the room, and the physician while in the room should be similarly covered and should treat his hands as described.

As the bacillus has been found to multiply in milk, it is safer to use sterilized milk during an epidemic.

The convalescent patient should also be kept isolated until thoroughly disinfected. This is accomplished by giving first a hot water and soap bath, then washing the body of the patient with a solution of bichlorid of mercury, 1 to 2000, or two per cent. solution of carbolic acid, or, what is more agreeable, 25 to 50 per cent. alcohol. This should be done two or three days in succession. The hair should be cut or similarly washed with these solutions. The regulations of the Board of Health of Philadelphia do not permit the children of a family in which diphtheria has been present to return to school until 30 days after the Board's physician has declared the patient's recovery.

## SMALLPOX.

SYNONYM.—*Variola*.

**Definition.**—Smallpox is an acute contagious disease especially characterized by an eruption which passes through the successive stages of papule, vesicle, pustule, desiccation, and desquamation.

**Historical.**—Smallpox was first accurately described by Rhazes, an Arabian physician, in the ninth century of the Christian era, and distinguished by him from measles: but it is believed to be the same as the *pesta magna* described by Galen. (A. D. 130-200.) It prevailed also in China many centuries before the Christian era. It is known to have prevailed in the sixth century and again during the Crusades. The disease is believed to have been introduced into America by the Spaniards, having first appeared most fatally in Mexico in 1520, and in Massachu-

setts in 1633. In evidence of the virulence of the disease it may be mentioned that in Iceland in 1707, 18,000 perished out of a population of 50,000. In Mexico three and a half millions were suddenly smitten. Sydenham's classic description was made in the seventeenth century.

The immunity secured by a previous attack suggested to Lady Wortley Montagu the idea of inoculation for the purpose of protection, the practice of which was introduced in England in 1718. Long before this the Brahmins had discovered that the inoculation of smallpox produced the true disease in a milder form, so that the malady proved fatal only to 1 in 100, or under most favorable circumstances, 1 in 300. It was, moreover, practiced for centuries in China and other Asiatic countries. The effect of inoculation was, however, to spread the disease, though in a milder form, and it was not until the discovery of vaccination by Jenner in 1798, that control over the disease was obtained.

In 1706 Juncker wrote that 400,000 lives were lost yearly in Europe by smallpox. In 1803 King Frederick William of Prussia, in an edict, stated that 40,000 die annually in Prussia of the disease. As already mentioned, inoculation of smallpox was introduced into England, in 1718, by Lady Mary Wortley Montagu, the wife of the British Ambassador to Turkey; into Germany in 1721, but was not popular until 1740. The peasantry in various parts of the world, particularly in England, believed that sores on the hands of persons who milked cows affected with cowpox conferred immunity from the disease. It is said that a Dorsetshire English farmer successfully vaccinated his wife and two sons as early as 1774 from a cowpox on himself. In 1791 Plett, a Holstein schoolmaster, vaccinated three children, in one case on the finger-tips, which caused inflammation of the arm and deterred him from repeating the experiment. These three children escaped the epidemic in 1794. Edward Jenner, while a student, learned of the traditions on this subject and mentioned them to his preceptor, John Hunter. He settled the question, May 14, 1796, when he vaccinated a boy, James Phipps, with matter from a kinetock on the hand of a dairymaid, Sarah Nelmes, and on July 1st introduced into this boy pus from a smallpox pustule without effect. Two years later—June, 1798—he published "An Inquiry into the Causes and Effects of the Variolæ Vaccinæ," illustrated by four plates, and within a year or two vaccination became general over the continent of Europe.

Vaccination was introduced into the United States July 8, 1800, by Benjamin Waterhouse, Professor of Physick at Harvard University, who vaccinated his own children, and into Philadelphia by John Redman Coxe, who vaccinated his oldest child about the same time, and then tested the experiment by exposing him to the influence of smallpox. The reliance on the protective power of vaccination in America was strengthened materially by this bold act. President Jefferson was instrumental in introducing vaccination in Southern United States.

Once introduced, the practice spread rapidly, but not without some opposition, some of which prevails even at the present day, although it is as certain as any demonstrable fact that thousands of lives have been saved by vaccination, and that a thorough and continuous practice of the operation would, sooner or later, blot out smallpox from the face of the earth.

Publications in connection with the Jenner Centenary in 1898 have added greatly to the literature on vaccination, especially the centenary number of the "British Medical Journal." See the Report of the Royal Commission on Vaccination, the comprehensive article by T. D. Ackland and Copeman in "Allbutt's System," and the monograph by Cory. Also "Facts about Smallpox and Vaccination," leaflets issued by the British Medical Association ("British Medical Journal," 1898, vol. i. p. 632). See, also, Moore's "History of Smallpox," London, 1815.

It is impossible to follow the history of numerous epidemics of smallpox which have prevailed from time to time, even since the ravages of the disease have been arrested by the agency of vaccination. The latest epidemic characterized on the one hand by its widespread distribution, and its comparative mildness on the other, is that which commenced in the United States, at the close of the Spanish-American war in 1899, spread over almost every State of the Union.

Soon after the period above mentioned there appeared in the Southern States and elsewhere a disease which did not accord with the classic descriptions of smallpox, and was variously regarded as chicken-pox, smallpox, impetigo contagiosa, Cuban itch, and as an hitherto undescribed dermatosis. In many cases the mildness of the illness was such that the patient could pursue his usual occupation. As a consequence of failure to recognize the true nature of the disease, it spread widely. Thus there were reported in the United States to the Surgeon General, Public Health, and Marine Hospital Services in

YEAR	CASES	DEATHS
1898,	2,633	27
1899,	10,453	458
1900,	20,362	819
1901,	48,206	1,127
1902,	54,014	20,83
Total,	135,668	4,514

The mildness of the epidemic is shown by the fact that the mortality for this period, and enormous number of cases, was only 3.3 per cent.

In the city of Philadelphia there were in the

YEAR	CASES	DEATHS
1900,	27	0
1901,	1, 159	156
1902,	1, 342	231
1903,	1, 637	278
1904,	887	229
1905,	2	0
1906,	2	2
1907,	1	0
1908,	7	0

**Etiology.**—The contagium of smallpox, probably the most unfailing of all the contagia in its effect upon the unprotected victim, is probably an intracellular parasitic protozoön, first clearly described by Guarnieri in 1892, and named by him the *cytoryctes variolæ*. Prior to this, however, as early as 1874, these bodies included in the epithelial cells of the lesions of smallpox were described by Weigert. Renault was the first to announce their parasitic nature in 1881. The studies of Guarnieri were confirmed by Wasielewski in 1901, and more recently in 1902-03 by the exhaustive work of Councilman, Calkins, Tyzzer and their colleagues. The cytoplasmic bodies which are first found near the nucleus of the epithelial cell undergo further changes in the course of which are formed small spore-like bodies found in the skin lesions in the later stages, which Councilman regards as the final spores and the true agents of infection in smallpox. The first effect of the organism on the cell is to produce an increased nutrition and enlargement of the cell, succeeded by degenerative changes. The contagium is conveyed in the secretions and exhalations of the body and of course in the dust derived from the dried pus cells, along with which it is scattered by air transmission and becomes the agent of infection. The infection starts in the epithelial cells whence it extends in all directions developing in its spread the smallpox vesicles. So far as I know Councilman's studies, which are the most recent, have not been repeated.

The degree of mildness or severity of a case does not influence that of another caused by it, the severest cases being at times followed by the mildest, and *vice versa*. The contagium is very tenacious, and may be dormant for months in clothing or furniture hangings. No age nor sex nor race is exempt, but the number of cases in successive decades diminishes because of the immunity furnished by a previous attack. The *fetus in utero* may acquire the disease from the mother, and the child may be borne with the eruption on it. Certain individuals are invulnerable even though unprotected by vaccination, while the mortality in aboriginal races is very great. Many alleged immunes respond to a proper vaccination.

Some difference of opinion exists as to the period at which smallpox is contagious. Welsh and Schamberg, in their book on Contagious Diseases, make the following statement, which may be considered as embodying the most recent views:

"Smallpox is undoubtedly infectious in all stages characterized by symptoms. It is alleged by some that the disease is even infectious during the period of incubation, but we think there is very little reason to believe that such is the case."

"The disease is least infectious during the initial stage, and most highly so during the suppurative and early period of the desiccative stages."

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The essential morbid anatomy of smallpox is that of the eruption as represented by its various stages and modifications, including hemorrhagic infiltration. To the anatomy of the eruption is added that of the complications that may occur.

The histology of the pustule shows that it starts from a single point in the *rete mucosum*, close to the true skin, whence it extends in all directions to a varying extent. The center or older area is a focus of coagulation necrosis, and about it the reticular spaces are filled with serum, leukocytes, and fibrin filaments. In the older area, too, the most highly developed of the cytoplasmic inclusions are found and in the peripheral area the smallest and presumably youngest forms. As long as the process does not extend deeper, healing takes place without a scar. In the more severe cases the papillæ of the true skin are invaded to various depths and destroyed by the infiltration, producing a loss of tissue constituting the pit.

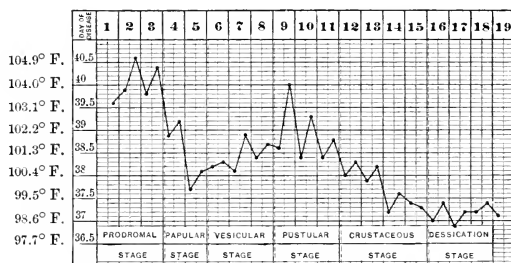


FIG. 15.—Temperature Chart of Smallpox.—(Eichhorst).

Among other morbid phenomena may be mentioned a *hardness and firmness of the spleen*. *Cloudy swelling of the secreting cells of the liver and kidney* occur, as in other fevers with high temperature. True nephritis is rarely present.

**Symptoms.**—After a *period of incubation* of from seven to 12 days, and sometimes longer, the victim is seized with *violent muscular pain*, especially in the back. Often a *chill* or *chills* usher in the disease, and in children a *convulsion* may be the initial symptom. *Intense headache* is also present. *Fever* sets in rapidly and the temperature reaches 103° to 104° F. (39.4° to 40° C.) the first day. The *pulse* is rapid, hard, and strong at this stage. *Delirium* may be present and is sometimes very violent. *Vomiting* and *diarrhea* are sometimes initial symptoms and may continue later in the disease.

About the second day the *initial rashes* make their appearance. These have been especially studied by Theodore Simon,<sup>1</sup> Knecht,<sup>2</sup> Scheby-Busch,<sup>3</sup> and William Osler,<sup>4</sup> although they are mentioned by some of the older authors, including Sydenham, Wood, Watson, Niemeyer, Trousseau, Marson, Munro, and others.

<sup>1</sup> "Das Prodromal-Exanthema der Pocken." "Arch. f. Dermatol. und Syph.," Prag., Heft iii. 1870. 346; 1871, Heft. ii, 242; Heft iii, 309; 1872, Heft iv, 541.

<sup>2</sup> "Arch. f. Dermatol. und Syph.," Heft iii, 1872, 372.

<sup>3</sup> "Arch. f. Dermatol. und Syph.," Heft iv, 1872, 506.

<sup>4</sup> "The Initial Rashes of Smallpox," "Canada Med. and Surg. Jour.," 1875.

They include a *diffuse scarlatinous rash* and a *macular or measly form*, dark red in color and occupying a variable extent of surface. Either may be associated with petechial ecchymoses. Sometimes they are general, but as a rule they are limited to the abdomen, the inner surface of the thighs, or the lateral region of the thorax and axilla. Among Osler's cases was one of a true urticarial prodrome. While it is to be remembered that the coexistence of smallpox and measles and of smallpox and scarlet fever is possible, it is more than likely that the eruptions on which the diagnosis was based were really the initial rashes of uncomplicated smallpox.

On the *fourth day* of the disease, the *distinctive eruption* makes its appearance in the shape of *small red spots*, first on the forehead and wrists, whence it extends rapidly over the face and extremities, becoming quite general in the first 24 hours. At this stage the eruption is not unlike measles, but in another 24 hours it is decidedly different. The papules have acquired shot-like hardness. With the appearance of the eruption the fever falls and the patient feels comfortable. On the *fifth or sixth day* a clear or slightly turbid *serum* makes its appearance. Coincident with this a depression is seen in the middle of each vesicle. It is *umbilicated*, and this umbilication is the most characteristic feature of the eruption. Frequently, a hair follicle passes up through the center of it. Umbilication is not usually present in the papular stage but its presence is said to be pathognomonic. By the *eighth day* the turbidity has increased until it is bright yellow and the umbilicus has disappeared. The *pustule is complete*. The maturation takes place in the same order as the eruption appeared. With the appearance of supuration the fever again returns, known as the secondary fever, and with it elevation of temperature and other signs of fever. There is a good deal of pain in the inflamed parts because of the tension. On the *tenth or 11th day* the *pustules* become *dry*, and by the *14th* are converted into *crusts*, which drop off, leaving in mild cases a simple discoloration, in severe cases a more or less deep ulcer, or, if cicatrization be complete, a simple pit. The eruption may be found on the tongue and buccal mucous membrane and even in the pharynx, larynx, and esophagus, and pustules have been found in the stomach and rectum. In the trachea and bronchi there may be ulcers; also on the cornea. Sore throat, nausea, hoarseness, vomiting, and diarrhea may be consequences. With the drying of the eruption the fever disappears.

This description is typical of the course of the eruption in the simple discrete variety. It may be variously modified. The attack may be so virulent that the patient dies before the eruption makes its appearance, or it may be arrested at any stage. Sometimes blood forms the contents of the pustule, and there may be subcutaneous infiltration of the blood in addition. Along with this there may be hemorrhage from the mucous surfaces of the nose, stomach, or bowels, or there may be hematuria.

The pustules may be so close to each other that they join, when the case is *confluent*; or they may be separate and distinct, producing the *discrete* form. The variety with bloody infiltration is called hemorrhagic. The diagnosis as to whether the confluent or discrete form is present is generally made by an examination of the face, for it is an interesting fact that nowhere are the pock-marks more abundant than upon the face.

Sydenham early called attention to the fact that in the confluent variety the eruption appears earlier (on the third day), and its early appearance, according to him, is an indication that the case will be one of that variety. All the symptoms are much more severe. There is not the abatement of fever described as occurring on the appearance of the eruption. The face, hands, and feet present an almost continuous pus-vesicle, which often bursts in places, and the pus partly drying, there results a picture which is revolting. Such pronounced morbid changes must produce wide systemic exhaustion, as is manifested on the tenth or 11th day by growing weakness of the patient, an adynamia that frequently terminates in death. When recovery takes place, the secondary fever is the more prolonged the more widespread the suppuration.

The *hemorrhagic* variety of smallpox is still more severe. Two forms of it are described: One, the *purpura variolosa*, or hemorrhagic variola, in which the hemorrhagic symptoms appear early in the shape of a hemorrhagic rash while hemorrhage takes place from the mucous surfaces, generally on the evening of the second or third day. The patient dies in from two to six days, sometimes before the eruption makes its appearance. In the second form, *variola hæmorrhagica pustulosa*, the case progresses at first like any other, and it is not until the vesicular or pustular stage that blood makes its appearance in the pocks.

VARIOLOID.—A third variety of smallpox is *varioloid*, which is variola modified by vaccination or a previous attack of smallpox. In general, varioloid is smallpox bereft of all its serious features, each symptom being milder. The initial fever is less, the eruption is less general and may abort in its development, the secondary fever is less marked, and convalescence sets in earlier. Yet it has happened that both classes of individuals referred to, those having had smallpox and those having been vaccinated, have had very severe attacks, from which, indeed, the patients have perished. Generally, the longer the interval between the attack and vaccination, the more severe the former is. Similar is the mildness which characterizes a smallpox produced by the direct inoculation of an individual from the pus of another, though the attack thus caused is more severe than that which follows vaccination.

Other names given to less important varieties are *variola sine variolis*, or variolous fever without eruption; the "crystalline pock," in which the eruption continues vesicular; and the "stone pock," "horn pock," and "wart pock," in which the vesicles dry up into horny, tuberculated or warty elevations.

Complications.—Among complications of smallpox may be mentioned laryngitis with fatal edema of the glottis, bronchopneumonia, parotitis, diarrhea, albuminuria, but rarely nephritis. Prolonged delirium, and even insanity, have supervened, while neuritis may occur during convalescence; so may arthritis. On the skin may be boils and painful acne. A troublesome and painful conjunctivitis used to be the result of indifferent care of the eyes, but it is now less common because of greater care in this respect. Corneal ulceration does, however, occur in two per cent. of cases and complete destruction of the eye has occurred in 24 hours in confluent cases, and in India is the most frequent cause of blindness. The specific

pock does not, however, invade the cornea. Myocarditis and pericarditis sometimes occur, and most rarely endocarditis.

**Diagnosis.**—With the appearance of the perfect papule all doubt in the diagnosis of smallpox generally ceases. Ignorance of the initial rashes, measly and scarlatinal, has often led to errors of diagnosis. On the other hand, the resemblance of the eruption of *measles* to smallpox has also given rise to errors the result of which has been no less serious, because in consequence cases of measles have more than once been sent to smallpox hospitals with disastrous results. Never in measles is there such severe pain in the back as in smallpox, while the early cough and coryza are found only in measles. The lesson taught is to defer a positive diagnosis, because less serious mischief can result from an error thus occasioned than as the result of an opposite course. The possibility of *relapsing fever* being taken for smallpox has been alluded to in considering the former disease. *Cerebro-spinal fever* may also be simulated by the hemorrhagic form of smallpox. *Pustular syphilids* and accidental *croton-oil eruption* have been mistaken for smallpox, as has also chicken-pox. Secondary umbilication in the croton-oil pustule from collapse of the pustule may simulate the umbilication of the smallpox pustule, but it occurs late. Mild cases have been mistaken for acne.

**Prognosis.**—Smallpox is a serious disease, and the death-rate is always relatively large. It varies, however, at different ages, in different races, and in different epidemics. The young die almost always. Thus, in the Montreal epidemic of 1885, 86 per cent. of the deaths were children under ten years. The African, American Indian and Native Mexican have perished by thousands. The range of the mortality in different epidemics is put down at 25 per cent. to 35 per cent. The recent epidemic in the United States was an especially mild one, the mortality being but 3.3 per cent. The hemorrhagic cases are always serious; those of *purpura variolosa* all die, and although some cases of *variola pustulosa hemorrhagica* get well, the majority are usually fatal on the seventh, eighth, or ninth day. The pregnant woman usually aborts, it is said in 50 per cent. of cases, and commonly perishes, but not always. The complications of pneumonia and laryngitis are serious.

From the statistics of Gregory, based upon London hospital practice, most die on the eighth day; but in private practice, according to the experience of George B. Wood, the greatest number of deaths occur between the 12th and 18th days.

**Treatment.**—It is not possible to cut short a case of smallpox. The patient should be isolated and taken to a smallpox hospital, if possible. If at home, an uppermost room should be selected, all hangings and carpet removed, and communication with the rest of the house cut off by closed doors fortified by a sheet dampened with a solution of carbolic acid, 1 to 60. Separate dishes and utensils should be provided, and nurses should hold no communication with other members of the family. All clothing removed from the patient should be put in scalding water, and sweepings should be burned. The nurse should wear an overall, to be removed on leaving the room, and her head should be covered with a close fitting cap.

The treatment must consist in combating the symptoms. Morphin, or in less severe cases phenacetin, acetanilid, or antipyrin, must be given to

control the pain in the back. Nourishing liquid food and stimulants are required in adynamic cases. The fever is treated by sudorifics including acetanilid, antipyrin, phenacetin, and thermol, and by aconite, or by cool sponging or even by cold baths, as in typhoid fever, if the temperature be high. Cool drinks should be permitted *ad libitum*. The complications must receive the treatment appropriate to them. Tracheotomy may be demanded by edema of the larynx.

*To Prevent Pitting.*—It has always been the object of the physician to find some means of preventing the disfiguring scars which so invariably remain after very severe cases. No one method is always successful. It has long been thought that the absence of light favored healing without leaving pits. For the painful ophthalmia that so often attends smallpox, darkness is certainly a comfort, but that it diminishes the pitting I much doubt. It is a comforting fact that even the deepest and ugliest pits gradually lose their distinctness as time passes, and that much of the marking disappears in the course of a few years. The surface should, however, be anointed with vaselin, cold cream, or similar substance, as they allay the burning and itching, keep the scabs moist, and prevent the contagium from spreading through the air. The odor, which is often intolerable, is perhaps best covered by adding carbolic acid to the vaselin or other unguent employed, say 10 grains (0.666 gm.) to the ounce (30 gm.); or a watery solution of carbolic acid may be made of the same strength and applied on cloths. Bichlorid of mercury, 1 to 2000, may be used in the same way. These preparations applied cold on lint are soothing and comforting. Schamberg, the assistant physician to the smallpox hospital in Philadelphia, says that, as the result of his experience in the epidemic of 1901-1902 in Philadelphia, painting with iodine seems to be more efficient in averting pitting than any other treatment. J. F. Romero claims to have used with most satisfactory results picric acid as a local measure to prevent pitting. He advises a lotion made with 2 grams (30 grains) picric acid, 15 grams (1/2 ounce) alcohol, and 185 grams (6 1/2 ounces) water. An ointment may be made instead. He suggests that the picric acid may destroy the pyogenic germs that may find their way into the pustules.

The eyes, nose, mouth, and throat should be kept clean, all crusts being carefully removed. This may be accomplished for the eyes by cold compresses frequently changed, while the nose, mouth, and throat should be cleansed with borated gargles and lotions. As soon as convalescence is established the patient should bathe daily, using carbolic soap, the bathing being kept up until the skin is perfectly smooth, because only then does the patient cease to be a source of infection.

**Special Modes of Treatment.**—As in the case of the other infectious diseases, smallpox offers encouragement to similar specific modes of treatment. The bacterium of smallpox, whatever it may be, does not seem to develop a toxic substance so virulent as that of diphtheria. The extensive inflammation and suppuration of the skin is probably the chief debilitating agency. The internal administration of antiseptics has been recommended, but seems to have furnished no results that particularly commend it. The substances tried are the usual ones—namely, sodium salicylate, salol, mercuric chlorid, carbolic acid, creasote, the sulphites, and sulphocarbolates.



Upon the same principle as the serum treatment for diphtheria, serum from vaccinated subjects both human and lower animal, and from small-pox patients in the advanced stage of the disease, has been used by Kinyoun, Lundmann, and Bécélère. Analogy would lead us to expect similar results to those obtained by antitoxin in diphtheria, but such has not been the case as yet.

Special modes of external treatment, as by baths impregnated with antiseptics, have also been used and brilliant results claimed. Galewouski<sup>1</sup> used solutions of potassium permanganate of such strengths as to make the baths a rose-red color. He claims reduction of temperature, disappearance of pustules, and speedy recovery. Talamon<sup>2</sup> recommends external application of mercuric chlorid spray to the skin, using a solution made up of

R Corrosive sublimate,  
Tartaric acid, of each, 1 gram (15 grains).  
90% alcohol, 5 c.c. (1.25 fluidrachms).  
Ether, enough to make 50. c.c. (1.33 fluidounces).  
Spray three or four times daily for a minute, being careful to protect the eyes.

The treatment is commenced on the first day of the eruption, being preceded by thorough washing of the face with soap, which is rinsed off with boric acid solution, and the skin then dried with absorbent cotton. After the spray has been used the face should be covered with a layer of 50 per cent. of glycerolate of mercuric chlorid to keep the skin antiseptic. After the fourth day the number of sprayings is gradually diminished, and after the seventh day they are discontinued, though the glycerolate dressings are kept up. Talamon also recommended in the confluent and grave forms of the disease mercuric chlorid baths lasting from three-quarters of an hour to an hour, with internal treatment including the usual supporting measures. These treatments commend themselves to reason and common sense and as being at least disinfectant and cleansing.

## VACCINE DISEASE.

SYNONYMS.—*Vaccinia; Vaccina; Cowpox; Kinepox.*

**Definition.**—*Vaccinia* is an infectious disease produced by inoculation of man with lymph from the vesicle of kinepox. It is characterized by local and general symptoms. Persons successfully vaccinated are, in the vast majority of cases, immune from smallpox. The local product of such vaccination is the vaccine vesicle, the contents of which, when again inoculated, are capable of producing the same disease with immunity in another person not previously vaccinated. It is pre-eminently characteristic of vaccine disease that it can be communicated only when introduced directly into the blood.

**Historical.**—See History of Smallpox.

**Efficiency of Vaccination.**—There can be no doubt that, if vaccination were thoroughly carried out, smallpox could be stamped out. This is, however, not done, and in point of fact, a few cases occur annually everywhere, while at intervals an epidemic of greater or less severity occurs. A false

<sup>1</sup> "Med. Press and Circular," 1890.

<sup>2</sup> "Jour. of Cutaneous and Venereal Diseases," February, 1891 "Gazette medica Lombarda," 1890.

sense of security leads to indifference about vaccination and revaccination, and thus gradually accumulate a number of susceptible persons who are liable to the disease. In Germany the nearest approach to exemption exists. In 1904, 189 cases of smallpox occurred in the German Empire of which 25 per cent. were fatal while 28 per cent. were of foreign origin. The results of organized effort are better appreciated by comparing the death-rate from the disease per 100,000 in that country compared with other countries. In the German Empire, in 1904, it was 0.04; in Switzerland, 0.12; in Holland, .22; in 70 districts and cities of Austria-Hungary, 0.176; in 77 Belgian cities and in 8 of the suburbs of Brussels, 14.11; in 71 of the largest cities of France, 6.39, and in 76 of the largest cities of England, 1.26.

**Nature of Vaccinia.**—Two views as to the true nature of vaccinia are held—the English, that it is smallpox modified by transmission through the cow; the second, or French view, that it is a separate disease distinct from smallpox. Each side claims that its own view is sustained by experiment. The former view is probably correct—that vaccinia is smallpox modified by passing through the cow.

**Etiology.**—The earlier efforts of Quist, Harold Ernst and Martin, of Boston, and of Klein and Copeman in England, to establish a bacterial origin for vaccine were not successful, nor were those of Pfeiffer and Ruffer to find the cause a psorosperm any more so. On the other hand, there is every reason to believe that the inoculating element is the same as that of smallpox—a protozoön though of diminished virulence. In all vaccine lesions studied by Guarnieri, Wasielewski, Councilman and their colleagues (and I would especially call attention to the work of Calkins and Tyzzer), whether in man, in monkeys of various species, or in the calf or rabbit, bodies essentially similar to those included in the epithelial cells in smallpox in man, and undergoing the same changes and development, were found. There was no difference in size, relative numbers, and course of development, whether the seat of vaccination was the skin, mucous membrane or cornea, the only difference being the physiological one of diminished virulence, producing vaccinia instead of variola, in accordance with which the name *cytocytes vacciniæ* instead of *cytocytes variolæ* is given it. As Councilman further says, "The results of the two processes are in all respects the same, and immunity from both smallpox and vaccinia is conferred. Neither the calf or any other of the domestic animals is susceptible to smallpox. The disease which they acquire by inoculation with smallpox virus is vaccinia."

**Lymph in Use.**—At the present time it is almost the universal practice to use animal lymph or the lymph directly from the cow, although humanized lymph, that from another person having vaccine disease, can also be successfully used. The chief reason for using animal lymph is that all danger of communicating other affections, especially syphilis, is thus avoided, although there is reason also to believe that protection is more certainly secured by animal lymph. For securing the cow-lymph numerous farms exist in this country and in Europe, where, under the most perfect sanitary precautions, inoculation is practiced on the udder of heifers, whence the lymph is gathered and distributed. In Belgium the heifers are slaughtered

after the lymph is taken, and if they are found diseased, the lymph is not used. In this country the more usual method is to allow the lymph to dry on ivory points or quills, or to collect it in capillary tubes. Before the use of animal lymph became general the crusts, or scabs, from vaccinated arms were preserved and moistened to the consistence of pus before inoculation.

**Operation.**—The operation of vaccination is variously performed. I prefer, after thorough cleansing, to scrape the skin of the arm or forearm with a lancet until the cuticle is removed and a moist surface results, due to the transuded liquor sanguinis. On this is expressed from the capillary tube the virus, or the ivory point is rubbed, slightly moistened. Prolonged friction is desirable to secure success. I am confident I have been more invariably successful since I have used capillary tubes instead of ivory points. It is a disadvantage to have the surface bleed much, as it interferes with absorption. Another method, handed down by Professor George B. Wood from his predecessors, and available only with liquid lymph, is to make three slight punctures obliquely under the cuticle and work the lymph into each. The punctures should be about a line apart and at the angles of an equilateral triangle. Very convenient instruments of various kinds are made to scratch the surface, which are especially useful when a large number of vaccinations is to be made and celerity is desirable. At the present day it is quite the fashion to inoculate on the leg, especially in the case of girls, in order to avoid an unsightly scar on the arm. In infants there is no objection to this, but I have known young girls be very seriously disabled for a time by vaccination upon the leg. Another advantage of inoculation on the leg of infants is that there is less liability to injure the affected limb in nursing or carrying. The same thing is nearly as well accomplished by vaccinating the forearm, but this makes the resulting scar needlessly conspicuous. Another favorite situation is the region of the insertion of the deltoid muscle.

**The Phenomena of Vaccination.**—Immediately succeeding the operation a slight inflammatory redness appears, which usually subsides rapidly, and sometimes has entirely passed away before the first phenomenon of the vaccine disease appears. Thus, there is a true period of incubation, after which, usually on the *third* day, but often two or three days later, a slight red elevation or papule makes its appearance. By the *fifth or sixth* day this has already become an umbilicate vesicle filled with a transparent viscid fluid, surrounded by a delicately red areola. The vesicle presents a shining silvery appearance; by the *eighth* day it becomes a lustrous silver-gray, and by the tenth day the vesicle and areola have both reached their maximum. The pock is by this time  $\frac{1}{3}$  inch in diameter (about 1 cm.), one to two lines in height, umbilicated at its center, and presenting frequently a minute brown spot or scab in the same situation. The areola is quite angry looking, often two inches (5 cm.) or more in diameter, and shows under a magnifying glass numerous minute vesicles on its surface. At this stage, too, it itches and burns to a degree which causes in adults an almost irresistible desire to scratch, while in the child it gives rise to fretfulness, peevishness and to slight fever. Even in the adult there is slight rise of temperature. On the *11th or 12th* day the disease begins to decline. The areola narrows and becomes less bright, the lymph more turbid and begins to dry. By the

end of *two weeks* the vesicle has been converted into a dry, brown scab, which generally drops off on the 21st to 25th day. A scar remains, which is very distinct at first, but gradually assumes even a whiter hue than the surrounding integument.

The course described is the typical one in a healthy vaccinated child. In other cases the amount of local irritation is much greater, with a corresponding degree of constitutional disturbance. There is often adenitis in adjacent glands. Sometimes, in ill-conditioned children, deep, unhealthy ulcers supervene that are very slow to heal, while erysipelas and gangrenous ulcerations have even occurred and been followed by death. Even tetanus has succeeded upon vaccination and it has been claimed that the bacillus of tetanus has been inoculated with the germ of vaccine resulting in the simultaneous development of tetanus, but, so far as I know, none of the claims as to this combined inoculation have been substantiated. Tetanus resulting from simultaneous inoculations should appear five to nine days after its introduction, whereas, in the cases commonly reported, three to four weeks have elapsed before tetanus developed. This seems to have been the case with the epidemic in Camden, N. J., in the fall of 1901.

Since the incubation period of vaccination is shorter than that of smallpox, the prompt vaccination of a person exposed to smallpox may protect him, or at least modify the disease.

*Vaccination Rashes.*—In certain cases, especially when vaccination is done with the liquid lymph from the cow, a general eruption of vesicles takes place, constituting *vaccinia bullosa*; associated with miliary vesicles it is called *vaccinia miliaria*. At times a roseolar eruption is associated—*roscola vaccinalis*—not unlike the roseolar eruption of syphilis. The vesicles may be filled with blood—*vaccinia hæmorrhagica*.

**Revaccination.**—Should a considerable time elapse after vaccination, a revaccination will generally be more or less successful. Usually, the entire set of phenomena is less characteristic, although it sometimes happens that the same typical course is repeated. Such successful vaccination is regarded as evidence that immunity from smallpox is no longer present, and the person, if exposed to smallpox before vaccination, would have taken it. Such an attack is almost invariably less severe, and presents the modified symptomatology known as that of varioloid. The period of exemption after vaccination varies greatly. It is often life long. More frequently, it lasts from ten to 12 years, and every person should be revaccinated at ten to 15 years, and thereafter whenever an epidemic of smallpox is raging, unless he happen to have been successfully vaccinated within a few years.

At times, even in first vaccinations, an abortive result obtains, the vesicle drying and dropping off much too early. Should this occur, the operation should be repeated.

**Possibility of Transmitting Disease by Humanized Lymph.**—It has already been said that the possibility of transmitting disease by vaccinating with humanized lymph has been a potent influence in stimulating the employment of animal lymph. Syphilis seems the only disease that can be thus transmitted, although it has been claimed also for tuberculosis. It is, nevertheless, important that every precaution should be taken against such accidents. If humanized lymph be used, as it sometimes must be, only that

from children of healthy parents, free from syphilis or tuberculosis, should be selected, and under all circumstances *lymph admixed with blood should be rejected*. Lymph should be taken from fully matured and perfect vesicles on the eighth day.

It is exceedingly important that the physician should have at hand the data of discriminating between the ulcer of vaccinosyphilis and of uncomplicated vaccination; and between secondary vaccinosyphilis, the vaccination rashes, and hereditary syphilis occurring about the time of vaccination. Such data are found in the following table compiled by C. S. Shelly from Fournier, in Fowler's "Dictionary of Medicine":

## VACCINOSYPHILIS OR VACCINO-CHANCER.

Chancre never developed before the fifteenth day after vaccination; usually not until after three to five weeks; it is still in its earlier stage twenty days after vaccination.  
 Chancre developed on the site of usually one or two only of the vaccination punctures.  
 Inflammation is slight.  
 Loss of substance superficial only.  
 Suppuration scanty or absent, scabs, or crusts.  
 Border of chancre smooth, slightly elevated, gradually merging into floor.  
 Surface of floor smooth.  
 Induration "parchment-like," and specific, not merely inflammatory.  
 Inflammatory areola very slight.  
 Gland swelling constant, indolent [syphilitic] bubo.  
 Complications rare.

## SECONDARY SYPHILITIC ERUPTION DUE TO VACCINOSYPHILIS.

Appears, at the earliest, nine or ten weeks after vaccination.  
 Requires, in every case, the pre-existence of a specific ulcer [chancre] at the site of vaccination.  
 Exhibits the character of a true specific eruption.  
 Fever often slight.  
 Lasts for a long time. Usually accompanied by specific appearances on mucous membranes.

## VACCINOSYPHILIS.

Begins with local infection chancre and indolent bubo.  
 Typical development in four stages—viz., incubation, chancre, second incubation, generalization [secondary eruption], etc.  
 Never appears earlier than the ninth or tenth week after vaccination.

## VACCINATION ULCERS.

Ulceration is present twelve to fifteen days after vaccination and is fully developed the twelfth day after vaccination.  
 Ulceration affects all the punctures, as a rule.  
 Inflammation and ulceration severe.  
 Ulcer deeply excavated.  
 Much suppuration.  
 Margin of ulcer irregular, as in "soft chancre."  
 Floor of ulcer uneven, suppurating.  
 Induration inflammatory only.  
 Areola inflammatory and erysipelatous.  
 Gland swelling often absent; if present, merely inflammatory.  
 Complications—sloughing, erysipelas, etc.—often present.

## VACCINATION RASHES.

[Including roseola vaccinalis, miliaria vaccinalis, vaccinia bullosa, vaccinia hemorrhagica; also accidental eruptions—rubeola, scarlatina, lichen, urticaria, etc.]  
 A true vaccinal rash appears between the ninth and fifteenth day after vaccination.

Absence of inoculation chancre.

Eruption does not exhibit specific characters.  
 Fever always present.  
 Evanescent.

## HEREDITARY SYPHILIS, SHOWING ITSELF ABOUT THE TIME OF VACCINATION.

No chancre; begins with general phenomena.  
 Has no typical development in connection with vaccination.

Time of development quite independent of vaccination. Is attended by the characteristic syphilitic bodily aspects. Other manifestations of hereditary syphilis may be present. The history may indicate syphilis.

Some idea of the efficiency of vaccination may be obtained from the fact that through it smallpox has been blotted from the German army. Further, it was early shown by Marson that of those who have acquired smallpox after vaccination, the disease is vastly less severe than in those who have primary smallpox. This is confirmed also by the statistics of W. M. Welch, Physician-in-charge of the Municipal Hospital of Philadelphia. From a study of 5000 cases, he showed that where there were good cicatrices, only 8 per cent. died; with fair cicatrices, 14 per cent.; with poor cicatrices, 27 per cent.; unvaccinated cases, 58 per cent.

**Treatment.**—No treatment for the vaccine vesicle is usually required beyond protection from friction and contamination by the clothing. To this end shields are furnished but I prefer to cover the sore with a piece of surgeon's gauze fastened by adhesive plaster.

### CHICKEN-POX.

SYNONYM.—*Varicella*.

**Definition.**—*Varicella* is an acute contagious disease of children, characterized by an eruption of vesicles with pearly contents and attended with little or no constitutional disturbances.

**Etiology.**—The disease is eminently contagious, but no specific causal organism has been isolated. It is almost purely a disease of childhood, occurring most frequently between the second and sixth year. It is a distinct and separate disease from smallpox, an attack bringing no exemption from that disease.

**Symptoms.**—The *period of incubation* is from 10 to 15 days. So slight is the constitutional disturbance that very commonly the appearance of the *eruption* is the first notification of the child's illness. At times there are *slight prodromal peevishness, restlessness, and feverishness*; at others there is a *slight chill* followed by *fever*. Some muscular pain may be present.

A prodromal scarlatinial rash may rarely present itself, but for the most part the *suddenness* of the *eruption* is *distinctive*. It presents itself in the shape of isolated pimples scattered over the body within the first 24 hours after constitutional disturbance. They are more prone to occur on the parts covered by clothing, as the trunk, but they may appear first on the face. In another 24 hours they are pearly pustules, as a rule, without umbilication or areola; and by the end of the third day they begin to dry up, and in another day are converted into dark-brownish crusts, which drop off, usually leaving no scar. Sometimes, however, a distinct pit is left, especially if the pock be scratched by the child, as it sometimes is, because of the irritation it excites. Occasionally, too, the pustule is distinctly umbilicated and may also have a pink areola. The pustules appear in crops, so that on the fourth day they can be seen in all stages, but at the end of a week again all have disappeared. Rarely are there more than half a dozen on the face, though they may be quite numerous and the victim well dotted over. They occur also on the scalp.

I have never seen any complications with varicella, and in most cases under my observation the disease would have been overlooked but for the

eruption. It is said, however, that *hemorrhagic pocks* sometimes occur accompanied by hemorrhage from the mucous membranes; that *nephritis* and even gangrene—*varicella gangrenosa*—have occurred, and *infantile paralysis* has developed during an attack of the disease.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis should not detain one long. The trifling constitutional disturbances, the rapid, almost sudden, development of the pustules, the absence of umbilication and of areola—all distinguish the disease from smallpox.

**Prognosis.**—This is invariably favorable, except in rare cases of *varicella gangrenosa*.

**Treatment.**—Usually none is needed save the application of a simple lotion or ointment to allay the itching. The principal need of the physician is to make the diagnosis.

I conclude the section on the eruptive diseases with the following table, somewhat modified, from T. M. Rotch, which may be helpful in diagnosis.

	Scarlet fever	Measles	Rubella	Variola	Varicella
Incubation . . .	Two to four days.	Seven to fourteen days.	Fourteen to twenty-one days.	Seven to twelve days.	Ten to fifteen days.
Prodrome . . .	Two days.	Three days.	A few hours.	Three days.	A few hours.
Efflorescence . .	Erythema.	Papules.	Papules.	Macules, papules, vesicles, pustules.	Vesicles.
Desquamation .	Lamellar.	Furfuraceous.	. .	Large crusts.	Small crusts
Complications and sequelæ . .	Kidney, ear, and heart.	Eye and lung.	. .	Larynx, lungs, eyes.	. .

## WHOOPING-COUGH.

SYNONYMS.—*Pertussis*; *Whooping-cough*.

**Definition.**—Whooping-cough is an infectious disease, characterized by spells of coughing accompanied by a long drawn inspiration producing the “whoop,” whence the disease is named.

**Historical.**—While the writings of Hippocrates (born B. C. 460), Galen (born A. D. 130) and Avicenna (born A. D. 980), contain expressions that point to the existence of a specific disease like whooping cough, it is still disputed as to whether this disease was known to the Greeks. The first published account appears to be by Baillou, in 1578. He described an epidemic occurring in Paris and spoke of it as a disease not previously known. A hundred years later, Willis wrote of *tussis puerorum convulsiva*, evidently the disease under consideration, which has since become omniprevalent.

**Etiology.**—It is interesting to note that Linnæus ascribed whooping-cough to the larvæ of insects in the nose. No specific organism has been generally agreed upon, though a number of candidates for this important rôle have been brought forward. Thus, in 1887, Afanassieff found in sputum from the disease a short bacillus, of which he has succeeded in making cultures, inoculations from which into the tracheæ of animals have produced catarrhal conditions. Letzerich also found a micrococcus in the sputum with which he claimed he was able to produce the disease in animals

by introducing the sputum into the trachea. Koplik's bacillus seems better accredited, and is apparently the same as that described by Czaplewski and Hensel, as found in mucous clumps in the sputum.<sup>1</sup> Koplik found it in 13 of 16 cases. It is facultative anaërobic, and is not stained by Gram's method except in pure culture, in which it can be separated from other bacilli found with it. It is pathogenic for mice. It is found free and in pus-cells of mucus. It is not found in sputum during the prodromal stage.

Whooping-cough attacks children of all ages not rendered immune by previous attacks, though it is most usual between the first and second dentitions; nor is it a very rare affection in adults, in whom it may become serious. It is said to be more frequent in girls. Its epidemics are more common in the spring and winter, and often precede or follow those of scarlet fever and measles. The disease is generally communicated from one child to another, and few escape who are exposed. Sporadic cases also occasionally occur. The delicate and those suffering with bronchial and nasal catarrh are more vulnerable. Some persons are immune.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no morbid anatomy peculiar to whooping-cough beyond the catarrhal inflammation. According to Myer-Huni and v. Heroff, this is most marked in the mucous membrane of the nose, larynx, and trachea down to the bifurcation, but especially on the posterior wall of the pharynx, and in the interarytenoid region—the so-called “cough region.” The morbid states found after death are those of the complications—viz., bronchitis, bronchopneumonia, and collapse of the lung. Vesicular and interstitial emphysema are sometimes present, the former from overdistention of the air-vessels, and the latter from their rupture.

**Symptoms.**—Whooping-cough has a *period of incubation* of from seven to ten days. There is no prodrome separable from the *preliminary stage*, beginning with cough which is in no way peculiar, being that of an ordinary cold with slight fever and without expectoration. There may be *coryza* and *injection of the conjunctiva*. This cough may go on for a *couple of weeks* and, if there be nothing in the history to suggest the nature of the disease, may occasion no suspicion. Toward the end of this period, however, the observing mother will have noted that the cough is gradually growing worse and becoming paroxysmal, that it occurs “in spells.” Then suddenly a “whoop” is noted and the nature of the disease is suspected.

The *paroxysmal stage* has replaced the catarrhal, and soon the diagnosis is plain. The paroxysms become more frequent and more severe. Each one begins in a succession of short expiratory coughs, which grow in intensity. All efforts lie in the direction of expiration, and all the expiratory muscles are brought into play to this end. *The chest is compressed laterally, and bulges in the sternal region.* As the result of such efforts, the face is flushed, turgid and sometimes cyanotic, the eyes are injected and bulging, the tears start, and the nose discharges. Finally, the paroxysm terminates or is interrupted by a loud, whooping inspiration—that is, it may end for the time or be immediately succeeded by another similarly concluded paroxysm. Severe paroxysms commonly terminate in an act of vomiting, which brings up considerable mucus, often accumulated before the paroxysm begins and

<sup>1</sup> For an exhaustive review of this subject with some original observations pointing to this conclusion, see a paper on “The Etiology of Pertussis,” by Joseph Walsh, in “Contributions from the William Pepper Laboratory of Clinical Medicine,” Philadelphia, 1900, p. 450.



seeming to be its exciting cause. The whoop may precede or begin the paroxysm. The number of paroxysms in the 24 hours varies greatly. They may be as often as every half-hour or only four or five times in the day. Emotion will precipitate a paroxysm, as will the inhalation of irritant matters. The little patient resists the paroxysms as long as possible, and when the inevitable comes it will run to the basin or bowl, knowing full well what is to happen. The demure method pursued by little children under these circumstances is often at once touching and amusing. I have known each one of a family of a half-dozen children to have its own cup ready for seizure at a moments notice. Rupture of a conjunctival or nasal blood-vessel sometimes occurs and occasionally an involuntary urination. An ulcer may form at the frenum of the tongue, said to be due to pressure of that part of the organ against the incisor teeth. The termination of the paroxysm is followed by temporary relief.

The paroxysmal stage, if uncomplicated, is unattended by fever, and physical examination of the chest is barren of results as compared with the severity of the cough. The percussion note is clear, clearer during inspiration. Auscultation may discover a few moist râles soon after a paroxysm; but during it, nothing. Even during the whoop the vesicular murmur may be absent, because of the slowness with which the air enters the chest.

The *length of the paroxysmal stage* is usually from *four to six weeks*, although in mild cases it may be shorter. Indeed, there are mild cases of whooping-cough in which the paroxysms are scarcely noticeable and would not be noted except for an occasional "whoop." Toward the end of this period the paroxysms become less severe and less frequent, and soon the stage of decline or convalescence is established. In the course of it the paroxysms become still milder and less frequent, and finally subside altogether. They are, however, liable to be removed for a time if the patient takes cold, and even digestive disturbances are said to have a similar effect. The other phenomena of the stage of convalescence are return of appetite, weight, and strength. The period of convalescence occupies another four weeks, so that the entire length of an ordinary attack of whooping-cough is from ten to 12 weeks, and even longer.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—The complications that attend whooping-cough are bronchitis, bronchopneumonia, collapse of the lung, pleurisy, and interstitial emphysema. The bronchopneumonia is apt to be of the insufflation kind. Collapse of the lung may succeed it. Interstitial emphysema and even pneumothorax may result from rupture of the air-vesicles, and it is apt to become general and serious. In a case of this kind under the care of my friend, Horace Williams, which terminated fatally, an abscess formed at each point at which the emphysema approached the surface. Cerebral palsy and death from subdural hemorrhage are said to have occurred in whooping-cough. Among sequelæ may be mentioned, as a rare event, tubercular consumption; also permanent changes in the shape of the chest including the so-called pigeon breast, sometimes the result of a prolonged attack of whooping-cough.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis cannot be delayed after the appearance of the whoop, and it is scarcely possible without it. Spasmodic cough may occur from other causes, but it is not whooping-cough unless there be the whoop.

**Prognosis.**—Notwithstanding the enormous number of children who have whooping-cough and get well of it, many of them without any treatment whatever, it is not so harmless a disease as many suppose. At the same time I cannot believe that the position assigned to whooping-cough by Thomas M. Dolan,<sup>1</sup> of being third among the fatal diseases of children in England, is true of this country. The chief danger is from the complication of bronchopneumonia. The younger the child, the greater the danger. As already stated, cases in which interstitial emphysema occurs from rupture of the air-vesicles may terminate fatally. The disease is more serious in the negro race—more than twice as fatal as in whites.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of whooping-cough is one of the opprobria of medicine. Notwithstanding the claims of many to the contrary, it remains a fact that we possess no means of cutting it short. We may, however, palliate the disease by diminishing both the frequency and the severity of its paroxysms. The remedies to this end are the opiates, chloral, and antispasmodics. The former two, as a rule, should be reserved for night, though in severe cases chloral in doses sufficient to secure somnolence is recommended by Willoughby.<sup>2</sup> Of the latter, the most efficient are belladonna, the bromids, and asafetida. Belladonna should be given in full doses. It is difficult to name them, and they must for the most part be arrived at by trial. We may begin with 1 minim (0.066 gm.) of the tincture every two hours to a child of six months, or  $1/12$  grain (0.0055 gm.) of the extract, and increase the dose until the characteristic redness of the skin is produced.

The bromids, preferably of sodium, should be given as often, in doses of 1 or 2 grains (0.066 to 0.132 gm.) for every year of age. I am confident, too, asafetida is useful. I use it in the shape of a freshly spread plaster, large enough so as to cover the whole of the front or back, and bandaged to keep in place. It should be renewed often. The odor is soon endured. Antipyrin has acquired some reputation and has been especially recommended by F. J. Taylor,<sup>3</sup> and Von Genser. The former says in many cases its action is little short of marvelous. He recommends beginning with a small dose, increased until a child of two years is taking 2 or 3 grains every three hours. The bromids of potassium, sodium, and ammonium may be combined with it. The same writer recommends alum to check excessive secretion in the later stages, 3 grains, every three or four hours, to a child two years old. Von Genser recommends 2 grains a day for each year of age and reports recovery in 24 days. Good results are claimed for quinin in doses of 5 grains a day for a child five years old. A preparation known as aristochin and claiming to contain 96 per cent. of a quinin base is recommended in doses of .75 to 1.5 grains (.05 to .1 gram) to children under one year and up to  $4\frac{1}{2}$  grains (.3 grams) three times a day for older children. It is said to shorten the durations of the disease.

The intervals between the paroxysms at night may be prolonged by the judicious use of paregoric, deodorized tincture of opium or codein combined with antispasmodics, including belladonna and the bromids.

The inhalation of germicidal solutions suggested by the probable germ

<sup>1</sup> "Whooping-cough." London, 1882.

<sup>2</sup> "Am. Jour. Obstetrics," June, 1898.

<sup>3</sup> "Annals of Gynecology and Pediatrics," July, 1899. See also very full paper, giving the experience of many physicians, in "Gazette Hebdom. de Med. et Chirurg.," October 22, 1896, by Le Goff. Abstracts in "New York Med. Jour.," November 14, 1896.

origin of the disease has not as yet produced any results. Carbolic acid, 5 to 1000, corrosive sublimate, 1 to 4000, and the peroxid of hydrogen diluted with two parts of Dobell's solution may be used in this way. The remedies are better used with the steam atomizer, as the steam itself has a soothing effect.

Parents should be enjoined to protect their children from undue exposure, because it is this that causes complications, and it is the complications that are dangerous. Such complications, and other symptoms which arise in the course of the disease, should be treated by appropriate remedies.

The possibilities of serum therapeutics extend to the treatment of whooping-cough, and Walsh, in the paper alluded to, refers to results obtained by him which encourage further trial.

## MUMPS.

SYNONYM.—*Epidemic Parotitis*.

**Definition.**—Mumps is an acute infectious disease characterized by inflammation of the parotid gland, sometimes of the submaxillary.

**Etiology.**—Although a *bacillus parotidis* has been described, it is generally conceded that the real contagium of mumps has not been isolated. Children and adolescents are its favorite subjects, the very young as well as adults being equally exempt. More boys are attacked than girls. The disease is more common in the spring and fall. It is more commonly epidemic, but may be sporadic. It may be associated with measles and whooping-cough. One attack protects against a second.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The swollen and hardened salivary gland is the sole morbid product. The swelling is mainly due to serious infiltration.

**Symptoms.**—From seven to 14 days intervene between exposure and the invasion, which is ushered in by *moderate fever*, rarely exceeding 101° F. (38.33° C.), although 103° and 104° F. (39.44° and 40° C.) have been noted. The first symptom is usually *pain below and in front of the ear*, but pain in swallowing may be first experienced. Simultaneously, there may be *swelling* about the ear, which extends rapidly in front of the ear and below it until the entire neck in this vicinity is involved.

The maximum swelling is reached in about 48 hours, after which the involvement of the other side begins and extends with equal rapidity. The most prominent point is in front of the ear. The swelling does not, however, subside as fast as it comes on, but persists from seven to ten days.

At the height of the disease the pain and difficulty in swallowing are extreme, the former extending often to the interior of the ear, producing earache, and the hearing may be affected. The parts are so tense and swollen as to make opening of the mouth almost impossible, mastication equally difficult. Suppuration is an exceedingly rare event. In cases of great severity delirium is sometimes present for a short time.

**Complications.**—The most frequent complication is *orchitis*, and occurring, as it commonly does, after inflammation of the salivary glands has subsided, it has been regarded as a metastasis; but this is probably not the case, since both conditions may be the result of the same cause, as originally held by Niemeyer. The swelling may affect one or both testicles, the dura-

tion being longer in the bilateral form. The organs are heavy and painful, but not so much so as in gonorrheal orchitis. The inflammation lasts for three or four days and then subsides gradually. Usually, the gland itself is involved, but occasionally there occurs acute epididymitis with acute hydrocele and edema of the scrotum. Atrophy is said to have supervened.

Inflammation of the mammary glands and of the vulva sometimes occurs in girls, and more rarely of the ovaries.

Otitis media with resulting deafness, meningitis, and facial palsy are occasional complications.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis usually presents no difficulties, and any doubt is commonly cleared up by the acuteness of the attack. Certain enlargements of the *cervical lymphatic glands* resemble contagious parotitis, and in scrofulous children the swelling in mumps is sometimes prolonged, but the physiognomy in this disease is different and distinctive. There is more swelling in front of the ear in parotitis, and in the first stage a triangular shape is produced with the apex downward, while the lobe of the ear is raised in a characteristic manner.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is favorable, no fatal cases of uncomplicated mumps being recorded.

**Treatment.**—No means of shortening the duration of the disease exists. The patient should be kept uniformly warm, and to this end the bed is desirable. It is usual to anoint the gland with some simple ointment, as cold cream, and it may be that the feeling of drawing and tension is thus relieved. No commensurate advantage results from leeching. It is thought by some that the so-called metastasis is occasioned by exposure to cold, and if this be true, there is even better reason for keeping the patient warm. Warm applications are generally better borne than cold. Cotton—wool or flannel, warmed and greased, gives a sense of comfort. Fever should be treated by appropriate remedies and other symptoms met as they arise.

**SECONDARY PAROTITIS.**—This term is applied to parotitis occurring as a complication in acute infectious diseases, typhoid fever, typhus fever, and pneumonia being the most frequent. It may be a complication of pyemia, phthisis, and carcinoma. Except in pyemia, when it is metastatic, it is probably caused by the typhoid bacillus, diplococcus or the bacteria of decomposing matters in the mouth, which reach the gland through the duct of Steno.

It is a much more serious affection than mumps, and often terminates in suppuration. Facial paralysis may result from destruction of the facial nerve, or there may be deafness from invasion of the middle ear.

The *treatment* of secondary parotitis is that of phlegmonous inflammation elsewhere.

## INFLUENZA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Catarrhal Fever; Grip; La Grippe.*

**Definition.**—Influenza is an acute infectious disease characterized by fever, by catarrhal irritation of any or all of the mucous tracts, especially the respiratory, by muscular pain, and by great prostration. It is commonly epidemic.

**Historical.**—Although influenza appears to have prevailed as early as 1173 in Italy, Germany and England, it was not until 1510 that it was recognized in its true light as an epidemic or pandemic disease. Since that date it has recurred at intervals of from four years to one hundred years. Up to 1870 more than a hundred epidemics had been described. It first appeared in the United States in 1627, in Massachusetts and Connecticut and extended thence over South America as far as Chili. Since 1889 there has been an epidemic extending almost around the world. It usually begins in the east and travels westward. The last epidemic started in Bokhara, in May, 1880, reached St. Petersburg in October, Berlin in November, London in December, and the eastern cities of the United States by the middle of December. While its rate of travel is rapid, it is not more so than travel itself. Its spread is not influenced by the direction of prevailing winds. It travels as rapidly against the wind as with it, some observers say more rapidly. A district invaded in the fall of the year is apt to be infected more or less for several months. Since the epidemic of 1889 there has been some influenza each winter in the epidemic form in many American cities.

**Etiology.**—In 1892 Pfeiffer discovered in the pus-cells of tracheal mucus an organism which he regarded as that of influenza. It is 0.8 to 1 micron long and 0.1 to 0.2 micron broad—*i. e.*, about the same width as the bacillus of mouse septicemia and half as long. It forms colonies on glycerin agar 24 hours after inoculation, visible under the microscope as clear, water-like drops. These drops do not coalesce, but remain separate. The bacilli are best stained in dilute Ziehl-Neelsen solution of carbol fuchsin or hot Loeffler methylene blue solution. Later studies tend to sustain Loeffler's claim. The bacilli are very numerous in the nasal and bronchial mucus, whence they are conveyed to others, constituting a true contagium. P. Canon<sup>1</sup> claims to have found them in the blood, in large numbers and in clumps, although he admits that his observations have not as yet been confirmed. The contagious nature of influenza is further sustained by the fact that it travels only as fast as people travel, even contrary to the direction of prevailing winds. The fact that inoculations have thus far been unsuccessful in transmitting the disease is, however, against its contagious nature. The complications and sequelæ of the disease—pneumonia, pleurisy, endocarditis—may be the result of a toxin, or the bacillus may be transmitted in the blood to the seat of secondary infection. One attack does not, however, protect against a second, and I know persons who have had an attack each winter for several winters.

**VARIETIES.**—There is much carelessness at the present day in the application of the word "grippe." Commonly, when a person is said to have "grippe" it means that he has a bad cold in the head, with more or less bronchial catarrh. This seemingly is what Leichtenstern calls endemic *influenza nostras*, pseudo-influenza, or catarrhal fever, a special disease of unknown etiology, which bears the same relation to the true influenza as *cholera nostras* to Asiatic cholera. In addition, Leichtenstern makes two other divisions—(1) *epidemic influenza vera*, caused by Pfeiffer's bacillus; (2) *endemic influenza vera*, which often develops for several years in succession after a pandemic, also due to Pfeiffer's bacillus.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The anatomical changes are those of the complications. Whatever alterations are the direct result of the disease itself for the most part promptly disappear after death.

**Symptoms.**—Influenza has a *period of incubation* of from two to three days or longer. It attacks all ages, infancy less commonly, more frequently persons from 20 to 50 years old. The mode of onset is by no means

<sup>1</sup>Canon. "Die. Bacteriologie des Blutes bei Infektionskrankheiten." Jena, 1905, p. 105.

the same. The attack may be ushered in by a *chill* or continued chilliness. Most frequently, perhaps, there are *coryza* and *sneezing*, with or without watering of the eyes. To this succeeds *cough*, to which is commonly added, very soon, copious expectoration. The cough may be paroxysmal and be attended with prostration at the end of the spell. It is often persistent, while the bronchitis may pass into *bronchopneumonia* or a *croupous pneumonia* may supervene. Less frequently, there may be *faucitis*, simple, however, and not accompanied by ulceration or white patches, but causing intense pain in deglutition. This *faucitis* is probably muscular as it is associated with external tenderness and glandular swelling. These symptoms are more or less associated with *muscular* pain elsewhere, although not invariably. At other times the attack begins with severe *pain in the back* or *back of the head*, the *chest walls*, the *extremities*, or *throughout the muscular system*. Such pain is sometimes severe and sudden. Severe *headache* may be a symptom, associated with other symptoms such as pain in the back and neck with delirium which suggests meningitis.

Another mode of onset is by an extreme and *sudden prostration*. I have known a man to step from a railroad station, apparently well, and in the course of a few hundred yards become so weak as to have to take a car to reach his home, though not distant. This prostration is apt to be prolonged even in mild cases far beyond what seems reasonable. *Mental depression* is a frequent symptom, and suicide and even manslaughter have been said to be its terminal acts.

There is always more or less *fever*. Commonly, it is slight at first, but sometimes very high, ushering in the febrile variety of the disease. I have known it to be 106.2° F. (41.2° C.) at the first observation of a patient. More frequently, it does not exceed 103° F. (39.4° C.), and it is often but slightly above normal. During convalescence the temperature may become subnormal, and in the patient alluded to there was a fall from 106° F. (41.1° C.) to 96° F. (35.6° C.) in a very short space of time. Further, the temperature chart may exhibit fantastic changes, as seen in that of the case of a medical student who made a good recovery after 28 days' illness (see Fig. 16). *Delirium* is sometimes associated with the fever, and may come on suddenly and actively. The *pulse* is usually corresponding frequent, but some cases of uncommonly slow pulse have fallen under my observation.

While pulmonary catarrh is perhaps the most frequent catarrhal manifestation, it is by no means always present, even when there are pulmonary symptoms. I recall an obstinate case of bronchial spasm without any secretion whatever. In the epidemic, especially of 1893-94, in Philadelphia and vicinity, *gastric catarrh* was frequent, producing distressing nausea with vomiting, and adding greatly to the physical weakness. Severe *vomiting* may even usher in the attack, especially in children. More rarely there is *diarrhea*. Other cases begin with nervous symptoms of which headache and delirium are conspicuous, suggesting meningitis. Herpes is sometimes present.

According as one or another set of symptoms predominates, the disease is said to belong to the respiratory, nervous, muscular or rheumatic, gastrointestinal, or febrile form of influenza.

**Complications.**—The most serious complication is *pneumonia*. It is often invited by exposure during convalescence or in the attempt of a

patient to fight out the disease without giving up. In these events it is usually ushered in by a chill and extends rapidly through the whole of one lung or both lungs. When a part of the primary attack, the pneumonia is more apt to be catarrhal and circumscribed, creeping from the bronchi into the air-vesicles, and is less serious, although it may also be fatal, especially in old persons. At other times the inflammation is confined to the minute bronchioles, and we have the physical signs of a capillary bronchitis.

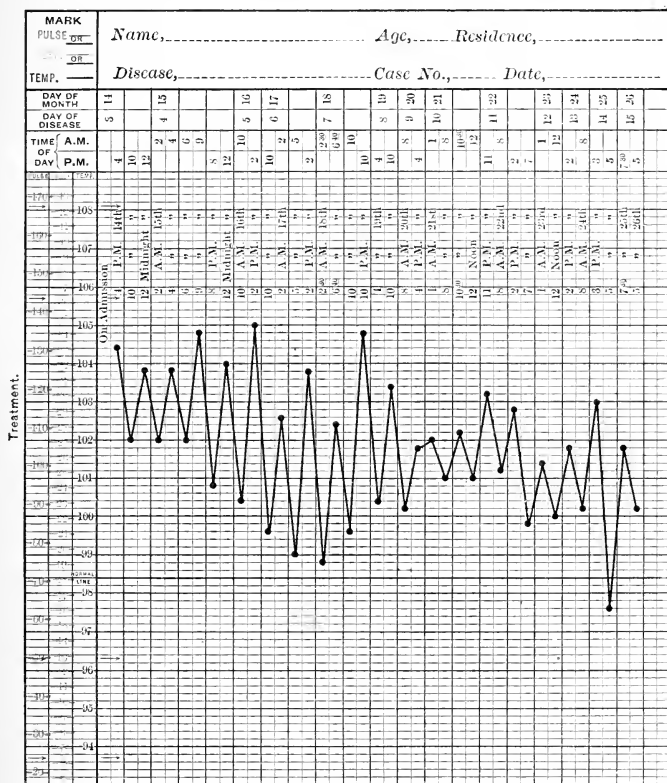


FIG. 16.—Chart of a Case of Influenza—Medical Student.

It may be associated with pleurisy. Of *cardiac* and *vascular complications* endocarditis, pericarditis, irregularity of the heart unassociated with evident endocarditis or pericarditis, may arise. Sudden heart failure is to be remembered as a possible cause of death, as I have reason to know from experience.

Of *nervous* lesions meningitis and encephalitis have been noted, even abscess of the brain; also neuritis and optic neuritis; in fact, almost every form of nervous disease, though some of the conditions must be referred to errors of diagnosis, cerebrospinal fever being probably responsible for some.

*Herpes*, when present, is probably a result of neuritis. Mention should not be omitted of *venous thrombosis*—*phlegmasia alba dolens*—as a complication of influenza, Leyden and Guttman having collected 28 cases.<sup>1</sup>

A most important fact to be remembered in this connection is the tendency of influenza to develop *latent disease into active disease*, and to make slight grades of organic affections more serious. This is particularly seen in connection with heart disease and kidney disease. A small albuminuria with no other symptoms may become, after an attack of influenza, an incurable and rapidly fatal Bright's disease.<sup>2</sup> A mild cardiac affection, scarcely noticeable by its symptoms, may become a grave illness with degeneration of muscular substance and dilatation of the cavities.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is ordinarily easy, although doubtless during an epidemic many cases are called influenza that are cases of simple bronchitis, faucial angina, or nasal catarrh. The diagnostic features in addition to the catarrhal factor are the *suddenness* of attack, fever of *short duration*, extreme disproportionate *prostration*. Muscular rheumatic pains are characteristic, but not always present. *Cerebrospinal fever* and *influenza* are sometimes confounded. The distinction will be considered when treating of the former. I have more than once thought of a case in its incipency that it was going to be one of typhoid fever, but the suddenness of onset, absence of the typical temperature of typhoid, of epistaxis, of diarrhea, together with the shorter duration of the illness, turned the scale in favor of influenza.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is generally favorable, especially if the patient goes to bed at once, or at least houses himself. Such a one is almost sure to be well in three, four, or five days. It is possible, however, for one attacked to fight through the disease without losing a day's time. But especially unfortunate is he if he fails in this attempt because of taking cold or inability to hold out longer against the debilitating effect of the disease. In the former he is apt to have pneumonia, in the latter he has to contend with extreme prostration. The prostration of the epidemic variety is something peculiar. The weakness is extreme, and the slightest effort, physical or mental, promptly convinces the patient of this. The duration of the weakness may be greatly prolonged, months being sometimes necessary to overcome it.

**Treatment.**—The treatment in the majority of cases is very simple. Rest in bed, without medicine, answers for a large number. Beyond this the treatment is mainly symptomatic, phenacetin, acetanilid, or antipyrin being generally sufficient to subdue the pains when present. Quinin is necessary in many cases to keep up the strength. In ordinary cases requiring such treatment I am in the habit of giving 5 grains (0.324 gm.) of phenacetin every four hours, alternating with 2 grains (0.120 gm.) of quinin as often, omitting the former when the pain has disappeared, but continuing the quinin. When the pains are very severe, the phenacetin may be given more frequently and even in larger doses. When headache is present caffeine should be added in doses of 1 1/2 to 3 grains (0.1 to 0.3 gm.). Larger doses of quinin may be needed. A favorite prescription at

<sup>1</sup> "Deutsche med. Wochenschrift," No. 6, 1897.

<sup>2</sup> See a paper by G. Baumgarten on "Renal Affections Following Influenza," in "Transaction of the Association of American Physicians," vol. x., 1895.



the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania is a capsule of 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  grains (0.16 gm.) each of Dover's powder, salol, and phenacetin, every two or three hours. Another prescription is phenacetin and salol, of each 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  grains (0.16 gm.), and pilocarpin,  $\frac{1}{12}$  grain (0.005 gm.). Still another is phenacetin and salicin, of each 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  grains (0.16 gm.), and powdered camphor,  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.035 gm.).

The cough may be treated with turpentine stupes and sinapisms to the chest; and when there are positive laryngeal symptoms, "Dobell's solution," sprayed into the larynx, is very soothing. It may also be sprayed into the nasal passages, or cocain may be applied locally. Internally, the officinal solution of citrate of potassium in  $\frac{1}{2}$  fluidounce (15 c.c.) doses, every two or three hours, is helpful. When the cough is disturbing, small doses of morphin or heroin may be necessary; and if secretion has set in, ammonium chlorid in 5 to 10 grain (0.324 to 0.648 gm.) doses, with 15 minims (1 gm.) of syrup of squills and 2 drams (7.4 c.c.) of compound licorice mixture are sufficient to answer the purpose. If more stimulating effect is required on the secretion, the aromatic spirit of ammonium in  $\frac{1}{2}$  dram doses (2 gm.), or carbonate of ammonium in doses of 5 to 10 grains (0.324 to 0.648 gm.) may be substituted. Opium may be given in large doses, or morphin in corresponding doses, to relieve pain, if required.

For the prostration, supporting measures are necessary, and stimulants may be called for. Whisky and milk are efficient. The entire absence of appetite and the complaint that all things taste alike are to be ignored, and the patient must be encouraged to take food, which should be made as attractive as possible. Strychnin is an admirable heart tonic, and may be given,  $\frac{1}{30}$  grain (0.00216 gm.), every six hours, increased, if necessary.

Treatment for the pneumonia, often so grave a complication, is at times extremely difficult. In a few cases "pneumonia fulminans" strikes the patient down so suddenly and violently as to make all treatment unavailing. Referring the reader for details to the section on pneumonia, it may be said that, as a rule, in the pneumonia of influenza, stimulating and restorative measures of a very positive character, rather than depressing agents, are indicated. The free use of alcohol and ammonia is especially necessary. Dry-cupping is never out of place, for it can do no harm, if no good. It may be repeated and should be followed during convalescence by a jacket of wool, to maintain warmth and a uniform temperature, but this is of doubtful propriety during the height of fever when we need measures to dissipate heat rather than retain it.

One need not wait for the physical signs of pneumonia to present themselves before beginning the treatment. Given a chill after exposure, with no other cause to explain it, a pneumonia is almost inevitable. Often-times a pneumonic focus in the center of a lung does not furnish any physical signs, while to wait until it approaches the surface causes a fatal delay in the treatment.

Other complications of influenza are treated as when they are simple diseases. Overmedication should be avoided.

## CEREBROSPINAL FEVER.

SYNONYMS.—*Epidemic Cerebrospinal Meningitis; Spotted Fever; Petechial Fever.*

**Definition.**—An infectious disease of sporadic and epidemic occurrence, microbic in origin and especially characterized by inflammation of the membranes of the brain and spinal cord.

**Historical.**—Cerebrospinal fever is a disease of modern recognition, for a long time confounded with typhus fever, and even with our present knowledge at times difficult to distinguish from it. Its distinct recognition dates back no farther than 1805, when Vieussieux, in Geneva, pointed it out as a separate disease, under the name *fièvre cérébrale ataxique*, although there can be little doubt that it existed previously. Sir John Pringall describes in his work on "Diseases of the Army," published in 1752, a hospital or jail fever that resembled cerebrospinal meningitis. In his history of "Epidemic Pestilences" Bascome speaks of a local epidemic in the autumn of 1802 at Roettingen in Franconia. Symptoms that almost conclusively point to this disease are described in the histories of the great epidemics of Europe from the thirteenth century on. It appeared in 1806 in this country as an epidemic at Medfield, Mass.; in Canada in 1807; in Virginia, Kentucky, and Ohio in 1808; in New York and Pennsylvania the year after; at Grenoble and Paris, France, in 1814; again at Metz in 1815. It disappeared on both sides of the Atlantic in 1816. It reappeared at Vesoul, France, in 1822-23, prevailing, more particularly in barracks, whence it extended to other places more or less until 1840. It prevailed in Italy from 1830 to 1845, and in Algiers from 1839 to 1847. In 1844 a short epidemic visited Gibraltar; a longer one, Denmark in 1845-48. It occurred in a mild form in Great Britain in 1846, and malignantly in Sweden in 1854; in Norway in 1859-60; in Holland briefly in 1860-61. Northern Germany was again invaded in 1863, Southern Germany in 1864, and Baden and Hesse in the same year; Austria and Russia mildly a year or two later, and in 1868 Turkey and its adjacent possessions mildly.

In the United States another visitation occurred in 1822-23 in Middletown, Conn., and in 1828 at Trumbull, Ohio; again in Middletown in 1842, since which time it has prevailed more or less in all the States, being especially severe in 1863-65 in Philadelphia and throughout the State of Pennsylvania. It has lingered in Philadelphia ever since, isolated cases being annually reported. The number of deaths in that city from 1863 to 1891 inclusive, as collected by Alfred Stillé and completed by William Pepper, was 2575. Since 1891 cases have occurred each year as follows: 1892, 22 cases; 1893, 35 cases; 1894, 18 cases; 1895, 17 cases; 1896, 7 cases; 1897, 10 cases; 1898, 24 cases; 1899, 146 cases; in 1900 29 cases; in 1901, 9 cases; 1902, 4 cases; in 1903, 28 cases; 1904, 8 cases; 1905, 167 cases; 1906, 204 cases; 1907, 389 cases; 1908, 97 cases. An epidemic prevailed in Maryland in 1892, in New York in 1893, and in Boston in 1897.

**Etiology.**—The direct cause of cerebrospinal fever is believed to be a microorganism not altogether undisputed, possibly of more than one variety. It includes a special lancet-shaped diplococcus resembling the pneumococcus, discovered by Weichselbaum in 1887, and called by him *meningococcus* or *diplococcus intracellularis meningitidis*. It lies within the polynuclear leukocyte. Weichselbaum's observations were confirmed by Heubner<sup>1</sup> in 1891, by Jaeger in 1895, and by Councilman,<sup>2</sup> Mallory, and Wright in 1898, and Osler<sup>3</sup> in 1899. In general these observers favor the view that this organism is the exciting cause of the disease. On the other hand, A. Netter takes strong exception, and says (volume xvi., "Twentieth Century Practice of Medicine," p. 191): "The pneumococcus can, without doubt, cause meningitis, and in spite of Heubner's experience, the rôle of the pneumococcus has been most surely established experimen-

<sup>1</sup> "Jahrbuch für Kinderheilkunde," 1891, and "Deutsche med. Wochenschrift," 1897.

<sup>2</sup> "Epidemic Cerebrospinal Meningitis," "Report of the State Board of Health of Massachusetts, Boston, 1898."

<sup>3</sup> Cavendish Lecture, "On the Etiology and Diagnosis of Cerebrospinal Fever," "West London Med. Jour.," 1899.

tally." He regards the meningococcus as a degenerate form of the pneumococcus. Osler<sup>1</sup> also says: "That a primary cerebrospinal meningitis may be due to the pneumococcus, is universally acknowledged." Mixed infections undoubtedly occur as attested by all observers. Other bacteria found with it are *staphylococcus pyogenes aureus*, *citrus*, and *albus*, the *streptococcus pyogenes*, the *bacillus coli communis*, and *bacillus lactis acrogenes*. While the disease may be regarded as contagious, it is not highly so, being somewhat like tuberculosis in this respect. That the infectious agent is always derived from an infected person is at least doubtful, the disease not being, as a rule, traceable to another having it, but appearing to arise rather in certain houses or localities where the necessary conditions prevail. Neisser has shown that the bacillus is transmissible by feeble atmospheric currents.

The following are the characteristic features of this bacillus: It occupies a position within the polynuclear leukocyte, whence the adjective term intracellularis. It takes the usual stains, and is decolorized by the Gram method. It forms on Loeffler's blood-serum "round, whitish, shining, viscid-looking colonies, with smooth, sharply defined outlines, which attain a diameter of 1 to 1 1/2 microns in 24 hours" (Councilman). It is found in the cerebrospinal exudate, and has been isolated from blood, pus, the joints, from pneumonic areas in the lungs, and from nasal mucus. It is isolated with comparative ease in blood cultures, while the diplococcus of pneumonia and the streptococcus may also be found in the blood of cases of cerebrospinal fever caused by them.

TABLE OF CHIEF FORMS OF ACUTE LEPTOMENINGITIS.

Primary.	1. Cerebrospinal fever	{ (a) Sporadic (b) Epidemic }	Diplococcus intracellularis.
	2. Pneumococcic M.	{ Meninges alone involved in a gen. pneumococcic infection }	Pneumococcus.
Secondary.	1. Tubercular M.	Bacillus tuberculosis.	
	2. Pneumococcic M.	{ (a) Secondary to pneumonia, endocarditis, etc. (b) Secondary to disease or injury of cranium or its fossae. }	Pneumococcus.
	3. Pyogenic	{ (a) Following local disease of cranium (or a local infec- tion elsewhere). (b) Terminal infection in va- rious chronic maladies. }	
	4. Miscellaneous acute infections.	{ In typhoid fever, influenza, diphtheria, gonorrhoea, a n- thrax, actinomycosis, and other acute diseases. }	Typhoid bacillus Influenza " Diphtheria " Gonococcus.

Predisposing causes are—cold, moisture, exposure, defective sanitation. Crowded buildings, barracks, and tenements have been favorite localities, especially in Europe. Depressing influences and the fatigue of long marches favor it. During the Civil War in America both armies suffered from the disease, but the mortality was not large. The disease is more prevalent at times in the country than in the city. It is more common in the young, attacking even infants of less than a year old. Sex and race seem to have no influence on the etiology.

<sup>1</sup> Cavendish Lecture, "On the Etiology and Diagnosis of Cerebrospinal Fever," "West London Med. Jour.," 1899.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The external appearance of the body after death is not peculiar. Most characteristic are the remnants of the eruption, petechial or herpetic, but they are not constant. The *brain* and *spinal cord* are naturally the seats to which we look for morbid changes, and we find every degree of inflammatory condition, from slight hyperemia, such as may be found in any form of infectious disease, to intense congestion with injection of the pia-arachnoid, and finally a stage in which pus and fibrinous deposits, more particularly in connection with the pia mater, are abundantly present. Higher degrees of hyperemia involve even the calvarium as well as the dura mater. The arachnoid spaces may contain serum and pus, but it is under the pia mater that we look for the inflammatory products—serous, fibrinous, or purulent, especially at the *bottom of the sulci*, in the *longitudinal* and *Sylvian fissures* and at the base over the *pons*, the *chiasm*, and *cerebellum*. To a less degree the convexity of the brain is also involved, and even the brain substance may share in the hyperemia, while actual softening has been noted. Adhesions between the pia and the cortex are common, removal of the pia carrying the substance of the cortex with it. More rarely there is an effusion into the ventricles and the choroid plexus is congested. The walls of the ventricles may be softened, and in cases of long standing there is even hydrocephalus.

The *cranial* nerves, especially the auditory and optic, may be the seat of a neuritis, or bathed in pus infiltrating the lymph-sheaths. The muscular and trophic phenomena resulting from such involvement may be permanent.

The *spinal membranes* are similarly hyperemic, even to the extent of extravasation of blood at times. The same inflammatory products are found upon them as on the meninges of the brain. They are more frequently seen on the posterior aspect of the cord, but may be general. Ounces of pus have been removed from the spinal canal. Even the central spinal canal has been found dilated and filled with pus. There may be likewise inflammation of the substance of the cord. The roots of the spinal nerves may be compressed by exudate, producing localized paralysis, or may be themselves the seat of a neuritis, whence the characteristic clonic muscular contractions often present, while the irritation of the sensory roots gives rise to more or less intense pain. Certain malignant cases are of so short duration that there is no time for morbid changes to occur. In such the results of necropsy are negative.

*Minutely examined*, the exudate consists of polynuclear leukocytes inclosed in a fibrinous mass in which also diplococci are found. The brain and cord may also be infiltrated with pus-cells. In the more chronic cases there is thickening of the meninges, with scattered yellow patches representing exudate.

As to *other organs*, there is no characteristic involvement. The *spleen* may be normal in size or, if the illness has lasted some time, it may be slightly enlarged. There may be congestion of the *liver*, *kidney*, *stomach*, and *intestines*, and even extravasation of blood. The same is true of the *lungs*, in which there may be bronchitis and pneumonia, the latter not very rarely. *Endocarditis* and *pleurisy* are sometimes found.

**Symptoms.**—Cerebrospinal fever does not present an unvarying picture

in its symptomatology, and to attempt to portray every unusual symptom would occupy undue space. Several varieties are described, viz., (1) the ordinary form, (2) the malignant form, (3) the mild form, (4) the abortive form, (5) the intermittent form, (6) the chronic form. Only the most characteristic symptoms will be given, first of the ordinary form and then of the most important modifications of it.

I. *The Ordinary Form.* No definite time of incubation is known. A *prodromal period* of short duration with headache and pain in the back or headache and vertigo may precede, but sudden onset is characteristic, often associated with a decided *chill*. *Projectile vomiting* is also a frequent early symptom. *Headache* and *pain in the back of the neck* and back promptly appear. Though usually severe, this pain is sometimes so slight as to cause the real condition to be overlooked. It is sometimes so sudden and severe as to be compared to the sting of a bee. The muscles are rigid, and pain is increased on motion.

There is *fever*, but the temperature does not usually exceed 102° F. (38.9° C.). There is nothing characteristic in the fever, and the graphic chart shows no regular evening rise and morning fall. On the other hand, it is extremely irregular. *Hyperesthesia* of the skin is a characteristic symptom. It is sometimes extreme, and as the disease increases in severity *rigidity* of the muscles of the neck and back becomes more marked. This muscular contraction may cause backward curvature of the head and even *opisthotonos*. *Clonic spasm* may also occur, though less frequent than tonic contraction. It is more common in children, in whom it may amount to convulsion and take the place of the chill. *Spasm of the muscles of the face* may occur, and of the eye-muscles, causing *strabismus*. Strabismus in any febrile case of doubtful nature should always lead to suspicion of meningitis. On the other hand, there may be *paralysis* of the face and eye-muscles, producing inequality of pupils, nystagmus, diplopia, and ptosis. More rarely there are paralysis and wasting of trunk muscles, including those of respiration. The auditory nerves may be involved, affecting the *hearing*, and intolerance of sound is a characteristic symptom, as is also photophobia due to hyperemia of the retina. On the other hand, *anesthesia* of the *cornea* is found in some cases.

*Delirium* is very frequent, occurs early in the disease, and may pass into stupor or coma. It may be maniacal considerable effort being necessary to control the patient.

It has been stated of the *temperature* in this disease that it is rarely high. In some of the earliest descriptions of the disease—and there have been most interesting ones written almost a century ago—the writers speak of the skin as being cool. This was before the days of the clinical thermometer and the accurate measurement of temperature growing out of it. High temperatures do occur, though rarely, 105° and 106° F. (40.5° and 41.1° C.) being noted, and others even higher just before death. There is, however, no constant type. The temperature chart of the intermittent form resembles somewhat that of remittent fever, while sometimes the chart resembles that of the fastigium of typhoid fever in its spike-like delineation.

The *pulse* goes hand in hand with the temperature—that is, it is not

very frequent at first, at least in adults. As the disease advances it grows more feeble and more frequent as the result of increasing debility of the patient. So, too, the *breathing rate* is not apt to be markedly influenced unless there be a lung complication.

The *urine*, as in other infectious fevers, may be scanty and albuminous; but it may also be increased because of the involvement of the nervous system. For a like reason there is sometimes glycosuria occasionally, associated, in severe cases, with Cheyne-Stokes breathing.

Another characteristic symptom is the *eruption*, although it is not present in more than one-half the cases. It is of at least two kinds—*herpetic* and *petechial*. *Herpes labialis*, although not always present, is nevertheless more frequent than in pneumonia. The herpes may be noted elsewhere than on the face—viz., on the trunk and extremities, extending exceptionally even to the ends of the fingers. The contents of the vesicles may be purulent; they may coalesce, break and dry, forming crusts. The petechial eruption is more general. It is an extravasation, and, like the similar eruption in typhus, does not disappear on pressure. The number of spots varies greatly; there may be only a few, or they may be very numerous, fully justifying one of the names of the disease—spotted fever. It will not do, however, to exclude the disease by reason of the absence of these skin symptoms. The petechial eruption seems less common in the sporadic than in the epidemic form.

*Other eruptions*, as erythema, urticaria, sudamina, rose-colored spots like those of typhoid fever, pemphigus and ecthyma, have been noted. Gangrene of the skin has occurred as the result of pressure. Some trophic influence may, however, be responsible for it.

*Arthritis* is not infrequent, varying in different epidemics, reaching nearly 20 per cent. of the severe cases in the epidemic described by S. Flexner and L. S. Barker.<sup>1</sup> The arthritis is deforming and is analogous to the arthropathies more or less common in spinal cord diseases.

Sometimes the disease sets in with *diarrhea*, though more commonly there is *constipation*. The *tongue* is less apt to be dry than in typhus, probably because the patient is less disposed to breathe through his mouth. Jaundice has been met with, and may be due to infectious inflammation of the bile-ducts.

*Leukocytosis* is a constant symptom, increase being chiefly of the multinuclear variety of white cells. Vacuolation of blood-cells has also been noted.

*Kernig's Sign*.—Kernig, of St. Petersburg, called attention to a symptom which is at times a valuable aid to diagnosis in meningitis where the spinal membranes are involved. It is tested for in the following way: The patient is propped up in bed in a sitting posture, with the thighs flexed upon the abdomen and the legs partially flexed upon the thigh—a position commonly assumed by patients with prolonged spinal meningitis. An attempt is then made to extend the leg, when it will be found to be resisted by contraction of the flexor muscles, preventing its full straightening. When the patient cannot sit up in bed, the thigh may be flexed upon the abdomen and then an attempt made to extend the leg, which

<sup>1</sup> "Am. Jour. of the Med. Sci.," 1894, vol. cvii.

again fails if meningitis be present. Friis found the sign in 53 out of 63 cases, Netter in 45 out of 50, and J. B. Herrick in 17 out of 19.<sup>1</sup>

Recent studies by J. E. Miller and Robert N. Willson go to show that not only is this sign wanting in a certain proportion of cases of meningitis, but that it may also be present in a few normal individuals and others ill of other diseases. Of the nonmeningeal cases examined by Miller (190) the sign was found in 23.6 per cent. and by Willson in 26.8 of 120 cases. The sign is apparently no measure of the degree of intensity of the disease. Netter explains it as follows: "In consequence of the inflammation of the meninges the roots of the nerves become irritable, and the flexion of the thighs upon the pelvis when the patient is in the sitting posture elongates and consequently stretches the lumbar and sacral roots, and thus increases their irritability. The attempt to extend the knee is insufficient to provoke a reflex contraction of the flexors while the patient lies on his back with the thighs extended upon the pelvis, but it does so when he assumes a sitting posture."

The Babinski or extension toe reflex may be sought, though it is inconstant and occurs in hemiplegia and other results of lesions of the motor tract.

II. *Malignant Form*.—The malignant form of cerebrospinal fever is characterized by the suddenness of its onset and severity of its cardinal symptoms,—the chill, headache, coma, collapse,—followed by early fatal termination. There is little or no fever; indeed, the temperature may be subnormal. The pulse is feeble and slow, falling to 50 or 60 a minute, increasing, however, in frequency as the disease progresses. The breathing is labored. The urine is scanty and albuminous. But for the prevalence of the epidemic such fulminating cases could not be distinguished from like attacks of other infectious diseases. Such cases may, however, occur even sporadically. They may last but a few hours. They are more frequent in the beginning of an epidemic. The malignant form of small-pox is similar, and the presence of an epidemic of one or other disease must settle the question.

III. The mild *form* presents a corresponding mildness of symptoms, and only the presence of an epidemic leads to its recognition.

IV. The *abortive form* terminates abruptly after a sharp development of characteristic symptoms.

V. The *intermittent form* is characterized by remissions and exacerbations in the fever every day or second day, without, however, the regularity of intermittent fever, for which it is sometimes mistaken. The fever resembles somewhat that of pyemia. This form is very trying, the remissions and intermissions giving rise to delusive hopes which are as often shattered.

VI. Finally, the term *chronic form* is applied to cases prolonged beyond the usual duration, in which the headache, gastric irritability, and vague neuritic pains reduce the patient to such an extremity of exhaustion and emaciation that he welcomes death as a relief to his suffering; or partial recovery may take place with crippled motion, defective senses, and severe pains, which are a source of constant discomfort. On the other hand, some

<sup>1</sup> "Am. Jour. of the Med. Sci.," July, 1899.

remarkable recoveries, even in these advanced stages, are reported, so that one should not be discouraged from continuing therapeutic effort.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—Of the complications of cerebrospinal fever, *croupous pneumonia* has already been mentioned as not infrequent as well as that it is sometimes difficult to say which disease is primary. The initial chill and herpes are characteristic of both affections, and close attention to other conditions must be given, such as the presence or absence of an epidemic, the order of appearance of the symptoms, the nervous and muscular preceding in cerebrospinal fever, and coming on later in pneumonia. *Other complications* are those which not infrequently accompany infectious diseases, including *pleurisy, endocarditis, pericarditis, polyarthritis* with possible suppuration, and others.

Of the sequelæ the most important are *blindness due to optic neuritis* and more rarely *keratitis, deafness* from disease of the labyrinth, *paralysis* more or less extensive, invading especially groups of muscles, including those of the face. There may be aphasia and defective articulation. There may be also persistent headache, shooting muscular pains, and mental weakness. Next to scarlet fever cerebrospinal meningitis is the most frequent cause of deafness. Even *chronic hydrocephalus* and *abscess of the brain* are included among sequelæ. Von Ziemssen says the former is indicated by "paroxysms of severe headache, pain in the neck and extremities, without vomiting, loss of consciousness, convulsions and involuntary discharges of feces and urine." He also says that of the deaf and dumb in the institutions of Bamberg and Nuremberg, in 1874, a majority of the pupils had become deaf from cerebrospinal meningitis.

*Nasal catarrh* may be an early symptom, and Strümpell suggests it may precede and be the starting point of the invasion. The discharge often contains the meningococcus, as in ten out of 15 cases in the Boston epidemic alluded to.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis in epidemic cases is usually easy, although it is more than probable that under such circumstances some cases are classified as cerebrospinal fever when they are really something else. During epidemics *typhus fever* is the disease with which it is most frequently confounded, especially as epidemics of typhus and cerebrospinal fever sometimes prevail simultaneously. The difficulty is greatest at the beginning of the attack, for as time passes, the diseases diverge in symptoms. Typhus fever is not characterized by the severe pain in the head and back of the neck, nor by opisthotonos, both of which may, however, be absent in cerebrospinal fever or be so slight as not to attract attention. In typhus fever the spots are more constant and numerous than in cerebrospinal fever. Herpes does not occur in typhus. The typhoid state may be equally pronounced in both, but in general it may be said to be more marked in typhus. The two diseases differ in their duration, typhus having a pretty definite duration of about two weeks, whereas cerebrospinal fever is either shorter or longer.

Among the diseases which embarrass is *muscular rheumatism*. The muscular pains are similar, but the headache in cerebrospinal fever is a point of difference. Hence, too, as the disease advances, the diagnosis becomes plainer. The joint complications not infrequently associated also



cause a resemblance to articular rheumatism, which may lead to confusion at first.

The isolated cases give most trouble. *Typhoid fever*, especially the meningeal form of typhoid, in which there is extreme headache and active delirium, sometimes simulates cerebrospinal fever in the beginning and I have known consultants to hold different views for some days. The onset of typhoid is also slow; as a rule, there is no vomiting nor severe muscular pain. With the lapse of time, however, the diagnosis may generally be made.

*Pneumonia* is another source of confusion, especially as the two diseases are sometimes associated, and it is almost impossible to say which is primary. Should it prove that the meningococcus is the sole cause of primary cerebrospinal fever, and the pneumococcus characterizes only the secondary form associated with pneumonia or one of the sporadic primary forms, the bacteriological examination will be of great assistance. The meningeal complications in pneumonia are more apt to invade the convexity, whence there arise muscular contraction and tremor, but not retraction of the head.

*Tubercular meningitis* presents some resemblance to cerebrospinal fever. While usually less sudden in its development, it is not always so. Delirium and stiffness of the neck, retraction, and even opisthotonos occur. It is, however, scarcely ever primary, and there are no skin symptoms. The termination of tubercular meningitis is invariably fatal. The presence of a focus of tuberculosis is a great aid to diagnosis. See also below the characters of the cerebrospinal fluid as obtained by Quincke's puncture.

*Influenza*, too, in one of its many forms occasionally simulates cerebrospinal fever, at times very closely. Extreme muscular pain is characteristic of both, and when influenza is associated with actual cerebrospinal meningitis, with delirium and stupor, as it sometimes is, one may be excused for being in doubt. Although both are diseases of short duration, influenza spends its fury earlier, and is thus a shorter disease unless prolonged by one of its complications.

*Quincke's lumbar puncture* may be necessary to establish a diagnosis. The operation is done with the patient lying on the right side, with knees drawn up, and the left shoulder turned forward. The needle of a large hypodermic syringe or antitoxin syringe is introduced midway between the third and fourth or the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ, below the spinous process, a little to one side of the median line, the thumb of the left hand of the operator being placed between the spinous processes as a guide. The needle should enter one centimeter from the median line on a level with the thumb, and be directed slightly upward and inward. At the depth of two centimeters in infants and four to six in adults it should enter the canal. The syringe should be unscrewed and the fluid allowed to fall, drop by drop, into a sterilized test-tube, care being taken not to allow it to run down the side of the tube. Five to 15 cubic centimeters should be withdrawn, for chemical, bacteriological, and microscopical examination. A faint trace of albumin is found in normal cerebrospinal fluid. It may be increased in cerebrospinal meningitis. A cloudy fluid is almost always present in epidemic meningitis; rarely, it may be clear, or the fluid from an upper

puncture may be clear, and from a lower turbid. In tuberculous meningitis it may be similar, but the tubercle bacillus will be found. In the fluid of the latter, lymphocytes predominate largely as contrasted with polymorpholeucocytes in the fluid of cerebrospinal fever. Blood may be present in both. Marfan's site is in the median line and is preferred by my colleague J. P. Crozer Griffith. Chipault's site is between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the sacrum.

**Prognosis.**—Cerebrospinal fever is a grave disease, but the mortality varies greatly in different epidemics, ranging from 20 to 75 per cent. according to Hirsch, while v. Ziemssen places it for mild epidemics at 30 per cent., and for severe ones at 70 per cent. The death-rate is higher for children, those under two years almost invariably perishing, while few under five survive. The old likewise succumb easily.

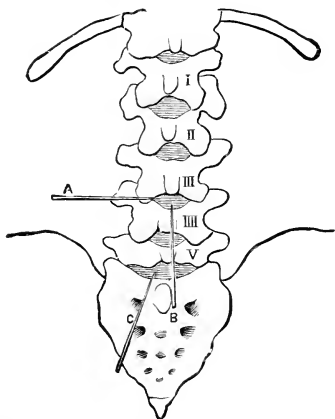


FIG. 17.—Method of Puncture for Spinal Drainage. A. Quincke's site. B. Marfan's site. C. Chipault's site.—(Chipault.)

Of few diseases is the course more variable and uncertain. From a duration of two to three days only it may be prolonged to weeks and even months, and its consequences may be permanent. Usually, however, improvement may be looked for if the patient survives five days, more than half the deaths occurring within this period. A remission of symptoms may take place on the third day, to be followed after a very short time by a relapse. This often misleads and gives the illusive hope of permanent improvement. Convalescence is characteristically slow, the symptoms yielding gradually. If the termination be fatal, the cardinal symptoms likewise gradually subside, but are replaced by growing debility and exhaustion.

Relapses are prone to occur, prolonging the case indefinitely, while a chronic or protracted form, to which reference has been made is probably due to the presence of one of the persistent or progressive lesions above referred to.

**Sporadic Cerebrospinal Fever.**—This form of cerebrospinal fever requires a separate, though brief, consideration. It has been already said

that such cases occur at intervals, and more especially at odd times succeeding the prevalence of an epidemic in a city. Osler, in his Cavendish lecture, 1899, has taken some pains to analyze the cases of cerebrospinal meningitis treated at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore, with a view to ascertaining what proportion was strictly sporadic and noncomplicating. He finds that after eliminating pneumococcic meningitis complicating pneumonia and pneumococcic meningitis due to local infection and streptococcic cases of the same class (surgical cases), there remained a few primary cases due to the pneumococcus, a few of miscellaneous meningitis—*i. e.*, caused by unidentified bacilli—and a few due to the diplococcus intracellularis. The whole question is, however, unsettled because of the confusion that has existed until more lately of the pneumococcus with the diplococcus intracellularis.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of cerebrospinal fever is *symptomatic and supporting*. Quiet and the absence of disturbing causes, such as excess of light, too much company, are absolutely essential. The food should be simple and liquid, with an abundance of water. The symptom demanding the promptest relief is pain, and for this there is no substitute for *opiates*, and of these the best preparation is *morphin*, and the best mode of administration is by hypodermic injection. Doses sufficient to accomplish their purpose should be given, say  $1/4$  grain (0.016 gm.) to  $1/2$  grain (0.032 gm.), night and morning, for an adult. The tolerance for the drug is great. It may be combined with  $1/150$  grain (0.00054 gm.) to  $1/100$  grain (0.00064 gm.) of atropin. The same preparation may be given by the mouth if the hypodermic administration is not convenient, but the *deodorized tincture of opium* may be better borne, and where the more frequent administration of opiates is necessary, as hourly or bihourly, this preparation is to be preferred because of the possible harmful effects of the too frequent use of the hypodermic syringe. The action of the drug is, of course, to be carefully watched. Phenacetin, antipyrin, salicylic acid, and this class of drugs are no substitute for opium in this painful malady. Hot baths may be employed for the same purpose.

When there are spasms or convulsions there is no remedy equal to *chloral*. If it cannot be administered by the mouth, a dram (4 gm.) dissolved in 2 ounces (60 c.c.) of water may be given to an adult, without hesitation, per rectum. In extreme cases chloroform or ether may be inhaled for the same purpose. The bromids may be used as adjuvants in mild cases, but of themselves are altogether inefficient.

*Cold* may be applied to the head for the headache and other meningeal symptoms, and is best used in the shape of an *ice-cap* or ice-bladder or Leiter's coil. Cold may also be applied to the back of the neck and spine, and according to James Barr over the splanchnic region. These measures must be discontinued when the temperature falls to normal. *Counterirritation* to the back of the neck and spine has long been employed, chiefly by blisters. At the present day it is regarded as of doubtful value. The *Paquelin cautery*, which has been of late much recommended as a substitute for the blister, can do no harm applied to the back of the neck. The inconvenience is less than is commonly supposed, and the ulcer heals rapidly. *Cupping* and *leeching* in the same localities, followed by warm fomentations,

may be useful. They relieve the pain for a time at least. General bleeding is not recommended. Free movements of the bowels must be maintained by castor oil or calomel, and the bladder watched.

*Quinin* may be given in tonic doses of 6 to 8 grains (3.8 to 5.9 gm.), but not for any specific end, while large doses are harmful, causing cerebral irritation. Measures of a very decided character to reduce the temperature are not, as a rule, needed. Simple sponging suffices for the most part. Should this be insufficient, however, tub bathing may be used as in typhoid fever.

The *nourishment* should be of the best, including animal broths and milk, and where, as is frequently the case in the early stages, they cannot be tolerated by the stomach, they may be given peptonized per rectum, not more than 4 ounces (120 c.c.) at one time. I have thus nourished for several days until the stomach became retentive a case despaired of, which ultimately recovered. Forced alimentation by the stomach-tube is recommended by Heubner. Alcohol is contraindicated in the early stages unless there be unusual adynamia. Later, when exhaustion begins to show itself, it may be used and pushed as under similar conditions in other diseases.

There are no specifics that have sustained the reputation claimed for them. The *bichlorid of mercury* and *iodid of potassium* have been most praised, and the former drug may be administered from the onset with some reasonable expectation that it may be useful in doses that need not be harmful if not beneficial. Such doses would be 1/24 grain (0.0027 gm.) every two or three hours for an adult, suitably reduced for children. Mercurial inunctions, which have been much used, are still recommended by v. Ziemssen, although he admits them to be of doubtful efficacy. Inunctions of *iodoform* ointment, ten per cent., are advised by D. R. Brower.<sup>1</sup> The iodids and mercury are indicated in the later stages when there are symptoms of exudation.

The lumbar puncture is strongly recommended by Williams, Brower, W. Cuthbertson,<sup>2</sup> and others as a curative measure; Wentworth is doubtful; Osler admits possible benefit therefrom. Temporary relief undoubtedly ensues. Laminectomy and local therapeutics, including drainage, have not furnished encouraging results at the Johns Hopkins Hospital.<sup>3</sup>

The resulting paralyses should be treated by massage and electricity, and as already suggested we should not be discouraged from persisting, as remarkable cures have been accomplished.

Recently I have used with the most satisfactory results the subaqueous treatment recommended by Goldscheider<sup>4</sup> to which my attention was called by William G. Spiller. It consists in active movements by the patient while submerged in a bath at a comfortable temperature. The movements are not passive, but active and voluntary.

*Serum Treatment.*—Simon Flexner of the Rockefeller Institute has produced an anti-serum for the treatment of cerebrospinal fever which is giving good results. It is now being tested quite generally, but its value

<sup>1</sup> "Clinical Rev.," September, 1890.

<sup>2</sup> "Chicago Med. Recorder," June, 1890.

<sup>3</sup> Osler, "Cavendish Lecture," June 1890.

<sup>4</sup> "Ueber Bewegungstherapie bei Erkrankungen des Nervensystems," Goldscheider, "Deutsche medicinische Wochenschr.," January 27, 1898.

is not yet wholly determined. It has now been used on more than 600 cases with a total mortality of about 29 per cent. Flexner is quite exacting that the serum should be used in cases due to the diplococcus intracellularis and by intraspinal injection only.

## ERYSIPELAS.

SYNONYMS.—*The Rose; St. Anthony's Fire.*

**Definition.**—An acute, contagious dermatitis associated with the usual signs of inflammation—swelling, heat, pain, redness, and a peculiar disposition to spread.

**Historical.**—Erysipelas was described by Hippocrates (B. C. 480), who had a remarkably clear conception of the disease. Its parasitic origin was first maintained by Henle (1840). Trousseau first asserted, in 1848, that an abrasion of the skin is an invariable condition of its origin. Hueter, in 1876, was especially conspicuous in claiming that the disease owes its existence to a micro-organism residing in the blood. Billroth and Klebs held similar views, but it was reserved for Koch, in 1880, to settle the question by finding the specific streptococcus in the lymph-vessels and lymph-spaces of the skin, though not in the blood. Fehleisen made the same discovery independently of Koch in 1881, isolating and cultivating the erysipelococcus and inoculating man with it. Orth had previously made experiments of the same kind on animals.

**Etiology.**—The *streptococcus erysipelatis* of Fehleisen is a minute, cleft fungus, a micrococcus in the narrow sense, three to four microns in diameter, arranged in pairs (diplococci) or chains (streptococci) of from six to 12 cells. The erysipelococcus resembles very closely the *streptococcus pyogenes* of Rosenbach—in fact, cannot be distinguished from it microscopically, while even the cultures of the two organisms resemble each other very closely. The *streptococcus pyogenes* is said by Hoffa to grow more slowly and less uniformly than that of erysipelas, and presents also a brownish discoloration in the middle of its colony. They behave very similarly when inoculated in animals. Simon asserts that the micrococcus of erysipelas is identical with that of pyemia, and this belief is now quite general. Klebs suggests that more than one organism may be concerned in the causation of erysipelas.

The organism probably operates as a local irritant producing the dermatitis. From this as a focus constitutional infection is set up, as in diphtheria, probably through the influence of a toxin generated by the micrococcus. The bacterium is found in the lymph-vessels and lymph-spaces of the periphery of the inflamed area, and not in the center, by which fact the peripheral spread of the disease is explained. It is readily found by cultures made from the blood of the veins and heart and even the urine.

The organism is transferred from one person to another by direct contact, or by the intermediation of a third person, or through the atmosphere. It cannot be said, however, that the disease is highly contagious in the absence of surgical injury, for in my early experience as a hospital interne at the Pennsylvania Hospital and later as a visiting physician in the Philadelphia Hospital, though it was the custom to keep the erysipelas cases in the ordinary medical wards, I cannot recall a single instance where the disease was communicated to another patient in the ward. It was very different, however, in the surgical wards, where the disease would spread

rapidly from one patient to another, showing the importance of the open surface as a condition of the spread. The lying-in woman is very readily inoculated, so that no physician should attend a case of labor while attending one of erysipelas. Certain kinds of wounds, as lacerated wounds and scalp wounds, are especially prone to erysipelas. Clean-cut wounds in other locations suffer less frequently. Leech-bites, vaccination punctures, the wounds of the cupping scarificator and of the subcutaneous syringe, are also favorable starting points. Chronic inflammatory processes and skin diseases may also have erysipelas engrafted upon them.

Erysipelas is prone to occur in the epidemic form, more especially in the spring<sup>1</sup> of the year in old and unclean hospitals, but such epidemics have become much rarer in the last 20 years. This is doubtless one of the results of antiseptics, now so generally practiced. The feeble, the intemperate, and those having Bright's disease or other affections weakening natural resistance are more prone to the disease. An interesting case of Bright's disease under my care in the Philadelphia Hospital had frequent attacks of facial erysipelas, always accompanied by hematuria. *Relapses* and *recurrences* of erysipelas are prone to occur, and a person once attacked by erysipelas, far from being protected, is rather predisposed to a second attack. A family predisposition to erysipelas may exist.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Like all acute inflammatory states of the skin, erysipelas fades away after death and leaves little, if anything, to be seen unless it has proceeded to the formation of blebs or abscesses. Swelling and corresponding deformity of the part, especially of the face, when extensive, may remain, but even this subsides with the lapse of time after death and may totally disappear.

Minute examination finds the cocci in the lymph-vessels and spaces at the periphery of the inflamed area, as already stated, and even in the uninflamed tissue beyond the margin.

Various complications attend erysipelas and add their morbid anatomy to that which is more essentially that of the disease. The most important of these are *pyemic abscesses* of internal viscera and *hemorrhagic infarcts* of the lung, spleen, and kidneys. The kidneys are especially apt to be congested, and the lesions of acute or subacute nephritis are sometimes found, and more rarely suppurative orchitis.

**Symptoms.**—The form of erysipelas which more particularly concerns the physician is the so-called *idiopathic erysipelas*, which arises independently of any apparent traumatic lesion, but since all erysipelas implies some lesion, however minute, the term is a misnomer. The fact remains, however, that the physician is most frequently called upon to treat the form of erysipelas in which there is no discoverable local lesion.

There is a *period of incubation* of from one to eight days, after which this variety of erysipelas begins at times with a *chill* or succession of chills

<sup>1</sup> The influence of the seasons is very well set forth by James M. Anders in a paper on "Seasonal Influences in Erysipelas, with Statistics," wherein he has shown, as the result of an analysis of 2010 cases collected from different sources, that the various seasons of the year exercise a potent influence upon the frequency of this affection. Thus, month by month the cases increase, in slightly varying ratio, from August to April, the latter month giving the greatest number, and then there is a rapid decrease from April to August, when we find the smallest number. Again, one-half of all the cases occur during the months of February, March, April and May, and 15.9 per cent. during the month of April alone. It was found that a low barometer and mean relative humidity invariably correspond with the annual period in which the greatest number of cases occur, and that the highest percentage of relative humidity corresponds with the months affording the fewest cases.

associated with a *loss of appetite* and feeling of general discomfort. At other times the chill is wanting. In either event there soon appears a *small, red, burning spot* a few lines in diameter, usually on the face, oftenest on the bridge of the nose or on the chin. It spreads rapidly, and as soon as sufficient size is attained there is a very characteristic elevation of the patch above the surrounding tissue, which can be recognized by carrying the finger across it. This is of diagnostic value. The future extension of the process is upward over the forehead and laterally toward the ears until the whole face, and more rarely also the neck, is invaded. The eyes become closed by *swelling*, the features are distorted, and the sum of changes produces an appearance not soon to be forgotten. In other parts of the body, as the arms and legs, the same process may go on, but there is not the unsightly distortion found as in the case of the face and head. In some cases the process proceeds to suppuration, and deep-seated *abscesses* form. These must result from mixed infection with other pyogenic organisms, unless indeed the organism be the same as that of suppuration. *Blebs* form, particularly on the lobes of the ears and on the eyelids, while little vesicles are always visible through a lens. From these a serum may exude and dry on the skin. As the dermatitis extends to new areas, the earlier spots dry up and desquamate. The disease seldom lasts more than four days in one spot, although it may revisit the same spot during one attack.

There may be erysipelas of the mucous membranes, which may extend to the skin, or the reverse may take place—extension from the skin to the mucous membrane.

*Fever* probably always precedes, though not noted in the beginning, and it rapidly becomes higher, reaching as high as 105° F. (40.5° C.). There is a corresponding *frequency* of pulse, associated with *headache* and sometimes *delirium*. The fever continues as long as the disease continues to spread. Often a sudden drop, a crisis, occurs on the fifth to the seventh day, followed by another rise if the disease takes a fresh start.

In more serious cases fever and delirium may be followed by *drowsiness*, *stupor* and a *coated, dry tongue*—all the symptoms, in fact, of a typhoid state. The *urine* is scanty and a febrile *albuminuria* may be present,—in fact, to a degree, may be said to be constant,<sup>1</sup>—and nephritis sometimes results, while a pre-existing nephritis may have an acute exacerbation engrafted upon it. Mention has already been made, under the head of Etiology, of *hematuria* occurring in these cases.

*Gangrene* may be associated with the deep-seated varieties, constituting gangrenous erysipelas.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—The possible complications are numerous, but in practice are really not often encountered. The most frequent is *meningitis*, the result of extension by continuity through the openings of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone or by contiguity from the scalp through emissary veins of the skull, but I have never seen such a case. William Osler, however, traced the extension from the face along the fifth nerve to the meninges, causing an acute meningitis and thrombosis of the lateral sinus.

<sup>1</sup>See paper by J. M. DaCosta on "The Internal Complications of Acute Erysipelas," "Am. Jour. of the Med. Sci.," October, 1877.

*Edema of the glottis* is the result of extension of the disease to the mucous membrane of the glottis. It is promptly fatal, unless relieved.

*Malignant ulcerative endocarditis* is also with comparative frequency secondary to erysipelas, three cases out of 23 being sequelæ of this disease. Of *cardiac complications*, pericarditis, endocarditis, and myocarditis; of *pulmonary*, bronchitis, pneumonia, and pleurisy may be mentioned as possible; also jaundice, dysentery, and hemorrhages from the nose and bowels. *Purpura* is an occasional complication. Nephritis of hemorrhagic variety has already been mentioned, and even glycosuria has been noted, possibly an accidental association. *Septic* and *pyemic complications* do, however, occur and are among the causes of death. *Suppuration in the testicle* has been referred to.

Among the sequelæ may be mentioned a *loss of hair*. *Cicatricial new formations* replace the parts destroyed by gangrene and may produce deformity by their contraction. On the other hand, hyperplastic new formations resembling elephantiasis Arabum may result. *Hyperæsthesia* and *neuralgia* of the involved areas, *anesthesia* with which atrophy of the skin may be associated, symmetrical gangrene of the fingers, and painful affections of the joints have all occurred as sequelæ.

Erysipelas may be associated with other infectious diseases, such as typhoid and typhus fevers, diphtheria, scarlet fever, and the like.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of erysipelas is usually not difficult, although many conditions are called erysipelas by the ignorant which are not of this nature. The acuteness of the disease, the rapidity of its spread, the constitutional disturbance and fever distinguish it from other conditions that superficially resemble it.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis, in the vast majority of instances, is favorable. Only in the aged, the intemperate, and those of broken health from other causes does it prove fatal, as a rule. Complications, especially meningitis and septic states, are causes of death. On the other hand, erysipelas is said to exert a favorable influence on certain acute diseases, such as acute rheumatism, choroiditis, and even morbid growths. It has even been suggested to inoculate erysipelas for the cure of such affections.

**Treatment.**—The patient should, of course, be isolated. It is more than likely that a decided majority of cases of idiopathic erysipelas would get well without any treatment whatever. In other words, the disease is *self-limiting*. As the disease is exhausting, internal *treatment* should be *restorative* and *supporting*. Quinin, iron, nutritious food, and stimulants are indicated, while the patient should be kept at rest. The *tincture of the chlorid of iron* is used throughout North America because of some supposed specific influence over the disease, and doses as large as a dram every three or four hours have been given. I have always given iron, but never in such doses, and I am doubtful whether it exerts any specific effect of the kind claimed. The natural duration of the disease is short, and the effect claimed from the iron is no prompter than that which nature brings. Ten minims (0.666 gm.) every two or three hours are a sufficient dose, and it is exceedingly doubtful whether larger quantities than this are absorbed. Where debility is marked, alcohol in some of its forms should be freely administered.



J. M. DaCosta first suggested the use of *pilocarpin* in the treatment of erysipelas, more particularly in the early stages. J. L. Salinger,<sup>1</sup> A. A. Eshner, and S. D. Barr also report favorably on the same treatment, which should, however, be employed cautiously. It is recommended that 1/6 grain (0.01 gm.) be administered hypodermically every three hours until free sweating ensues. After this the interval is increased to four or six hours.

Of late, evidence is accumulating to show that diphtheria antitoxin possesses curative properties for diseases other than diphtheria. Among these is erysipelas. In all, five cases of successful treatment have been reported by Russian physicians. Presumably it is used as in diphtheria, which see.

An infinite variety of *local measures* has been suggested to arrest the spread of the disease, all of which are useless to this end, although some of them are useful in allaying the burning. For this purpose I know nothing better than the old-fashioned mixture of lead-water and laudanum in the proportion of four parts of the liquor plumbi subacetatis dilutus, U. S. P., to two of laudanum. Or a mixture may be made of acetate of lead 1 ℥ (1.3 gm.), powdered opium 90 grains (6 gm.), and water 6 f 3 (180 c.c.). Lead-water alone is an efficient local application for this purpose; so is cold water. In the military hospitals in Philadelphia during the late Civil War a cranberry poultice was a favorite application, and it was certainly a pleasant, cooling measure, but a waste of a useful fruit. Dusting the surface with finely levigated oxid of zinc or subnitrate of bismuth also has a soothing effect. Of late, *ichthyol* has become a popular local dressing. It should be added to glycerin or collodion in the proportion of 2 drams (8 c.c.) to the ounce (30 c.c.) of glycerin or collodion.

A rational measure would be, as has been suggested by Heuter, the hypodermic injection of a 2 per cent. solution of carbolic acid, or a weak solution, say 1 to 4000, of corrosive sublimate, just beyond the edge of the advancing dermatitis, but it has never seemed to me necessary, while it is painful and annoying to the patient. There can, however, be no objection to using these antiseptics as dressings to the part.

*Serum Treatment.*—Schorer<sup>2</sup> treated 37 cases of erysipelas with streptococcic vaccine. The disease was apparently somewhat shortened, but the spread or recurrence was not prevented.

## SEPTICEMIA AND PYEMIA.

### SYNONYM.—*Bacteriemia*.

**Definition.**—Pyemia and septicemia are general febrile conditions caused by the entrance into the blood of pathogenic micro-organisms. They are distinguished from sapremia, which is the condition of local development of micro-organisms associated with the entrance of their *toxic products* into the circulation but not of the organisms themselves. Septicemia and pyemia are sometimes included under the single designation of bacteriemia. They are in man caused usually by the entrance of pyogenic organisms—*streptococcus pyogenes* and *staphylococcus pyogenes aureus* or *albus*—into the blood. In septicemia the development of the organisms

<sup>1</sup> "Therapeutic Gazette," March 15, 1894.

<sup>2</sup> Amer. Jour. Med. Soc., 1907, cxxxiv, p. 728.

is not associated with a special localization of the micro-organisms in the internal organs with the production of abscesses, whereas in pyemia the presence of secondary pus foci in different organs of the body constitutes the distinguishing feature of the condition.

**Etiology.**—While the *pus* organisms have been heretofore held responsible for the majority of intoxications of the blood by their pathogenic products or toxins, from the medical standpoint the term *septicemia* may be applied to the toxic condition produced by any of the pathogenic bacteria which invade the blood and tissues with or without a visible site of infection. The proportion of these last has of late enormously decreased, because of the antiseptics practiced by surgeons, while the medical septicemias have not much diminished.

Illustrative cases of the more usual form of septicemia are puerperal fever following retained placenta, infection by scarlet fever or erysipelas or during difficult labor involving laceration, and the poisoning by a dissecting wound. Among medical septicemias may be mentioned those arising from typhoid fever, pneumonia, diphtheria, and gonorrhea. These are all primarily local infections. The symptoms set in in from three to four hours to three or four days, more frequently within 24 hours.

The same essential cause lies at the bottom of pyemia as of septicemia, but associated with the former as important etiological factors are *thrombosis* and *embolism*. To this association Virchow first drew attention, and it is to thrombosis or embolism that the pyemic abscesses are due. Fragments of a venous thrombus due to phlebitis at the seat of putrid inflammation are broken off and carried in the circulation until a lodgment is effected. These fragments swarm with bacteria, causing intense inflammation which goes on to abscess formation, producing the metastatic or embolic abscess. Emboli may be multiple and there will be as many abscesses as lodged emboli. A frequent source of multiple abscesses is the disease, malignant or ulcerative endocarditis, itself a specific inflammation caused by some pathogenic organism floating in the blood and lodging on the heart valves, where it excites a septic valvulitis. The vegetations produced by this may be broken off and become emboli. These are carried through the arterial system to points of lodgment and constitute the arterial pyemia of Wilks. Osteomyelitis is also a cause of pyemia. The term *idiopathic pyemia* is applied to that form in which multiple abscesses coexist with the other symptoms of pyemia, but no infective focus is discoverable. It will be remembered that the noninfectious embolus produces simple hemorrhagic infarct.

The *seats of election* for abscess in pyemia in their order of frequency are as follows: The lungs, liver, spleen, kidneys, brain, and joints, the subcutaneous connective tissue, and subperitoneal connective tissue, including pelvic connective tissue. The marrow of long bones and the parts about the cavity of the middle ear are also seats.

Abscesses occur in the lungs when the septic emboli originate in osteomyelitis or in inflammatory affections of the periphery; in the liver, when they arise from septic foci in the portal area, especially in the intestines; the pelvic connective tissue, when they start in the uterus and its appendages; in the spleen, kidneys, and brain, if the emboli arise in the left heart or are so

small that they can pass from the right heart through the lungs to the left heart. Emboli may also, in rare instances, pass from the right heart to the left heart through a pabulous foramen ovale. Suppuration is not limited to the agency of streptococci and staphylococci. The *gonococcus*, the *bacillus coli communis*, the typhoid bacillus, the *bacillus lanecolatus*, and others are equally capable of producing suppuration.

**Symptoms.**—A rapidly rising *fever* is the first symptom of pyemia and septicemia, often so closely followed by a chill that its pre-existence is not suspected. The severity of the chill corresponds with the intensity of the infection and the degree of inflammation resulting from it. The temperature during the chill reaches 103° to 104° and 105° F. (39.4° to 40° and 40.5° C.) and is followed by a *sweat* and fall of temperature, after which the latter again arises to a point even higher than that first attained. Then follows another sweat and fall and thereafter a succession of intermissions, variable but quite characteristic. The rise is generally toward evening, and thus there is a certain resemblance to typhoid fever, while the rigors and sweats suggest malaria. The evening rise is by no means constant, and irregular fluctuations in the temperature are characteristic. There are other symptoms of fever—viz., *thirst*, *loss of appetite*, and *nausea*. The *strength* of the patient rapidly wanes, he soon sinks into a condition of exhaustion and semiconsciousness, from which, however, he may be aroused to take medicine and nourishment.

The various local involvements cause *localized symptoms*. Emboli in the lungs cause cough and hurried breathing, but there may be no distinctive physical signs; in the liver, they may cause tenderness and enlargement with jaundice; if in the kidney, there may be no sign or there may be albuminuria and hematuria; if in the intestines, diarrhea; if in the skin, superficial abscesses; if in the joints, swelling, tenderness, and fluctuation; if in the brain, little is added to the existing nervous symptoms. There may also be secondary abscesses of the parotid gland and pancreas, the former producing hard, painful swelling and the latter deep-seated pain in the epigastric and umbilical regions.

The *abscesses* contain the pyogenic bacteria, which are responsible for them.

**Diagnosis**—The diagnosis is not usually difficult, though sometimes the disease is overlooked and the symptoms ascribed to some other cause. Reference has always been made to its resemblance to *typhoid fever* and *malarial fever*, but the physician should not be long in doubt. A careful study of the case will show marked differences in history, while the *status præsens* exhibit only a superficial resemblance. There are no rigors followed by sweats in typhoid fever, as a rule, and the temperature chart in pyemia is much more irregular. Especially confusing are those cases of septicemia in which the blood responds to the Widal test of which I have two in my wards at this writing. The suddenness of the pyemia is characteristic, though it is by no means invariable. In *remittent fever* the chill, fever, and sweat are more regular, the prostration is not so extreme, and, above all, it is promptly cured with quinin. The plasmodium, if found, definitely settles the question as to the malarial fever, and the Widal test that of typhoid fever. There should be no confounding of pyemia with

simple intermittent fever. The complete absence of symptoms between paroxysms is in no way comparable to the evident desperate illness despite the temporary absence of fever in pyemia.

Among the causes of pyemia that have been overlooked is osteomyelitis. Gunshot injuries of bones and compound fractures, if followed by suspicious symptoms should lead to investigation. Malignant or ulcerative endocarditis is often overlooked, and not without reason, as it is so often overshadowed by other symptoms. A cardiac murmur, with irregular temperature and sweating and unusual prostration, should excite suspicion.

Gonorrhea and prostatic abscess are occasionally causes, as are also tuberculosis of the kidney and calculous pyelitis, the last two, perhaps, more frequently than the first two.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is very grave. Even when recovery takes place in comparatively mild cases, it is with shattered health. More fortunate are the rarer instances of recovery after puerperal pyemia which, when they do occur, are more apt to be complete. When calculous pyelitis and even tuberculous pyelitis are causes, operation often furnishes prompt relief more or less complete.

Not all fatal cases are promptly so. There is a form of chronic pyemia lasting for months, in which the symptoms are less distinctive and in the history of an infected wound may be the only cue to its real nature. One such case came under my observation, that of a young physician who received a dissecting wound from which the symptoms started and which terminated fatally with meningitis after many months' illness.

**Treatment of Septicemia and Pyemia.**—First *remove*, if possible, the *primary surgical focus* and *relieve secondary foci* as they appear. After that the symptoms are to be combated and the *strength supported* to the utmost. To the latter end the most nutritious and easily assimilable food, quinin in liberal doses, alcohol freely, and strychnin are the sheet anchors. To these may be added sponging to lower the temperature. To check sweating, atropin, oil of erigeron in doses of 10 to 30 minims (0.65 to 2 gm.) in a capsule or on sugar; ergot 15 to 30 minims (1 to 2 gm.); agaricin 1 to 2 grains (0.06 to 0.13 gm.); the dilute mineral acids, 15 to 30 minims (1 to 2 c.c.). Antipyretics may be used to reduce temperature, but it is better to accomplish the same thing by hydrotherapy.

Among the more favorable cases, in which operative treatment is followed by prompt and sometimes more than temporary relief, are cases of septicemia originating in vesical and prostatic disease and calculous and tuberculous pyelitis. In tuberculosis of the kidney, as tuberculosis elsewhere, especially illustrated in the peritoneum, exposure to the air seems to have a destructive influence upon the bacillus. If the source of the infection cannot be reached by surgical measures, antistreptococcic serum should be used without hesitation. Twenty to 30 cubic centimeters should be injected every six to eight hours daily until decided improvement in symptoms takes place, after which the interval between injections should be increased. Smaller doses may be injected in milder degrees of the poisoning.

Prophylaxis is much more efficient than treatment, and with modern aseptic surgery and antiseptic obstetrics septicemia and pyemia are becoming much more infrequent.

## HYDROPHOBIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Rabies; Lyssa.*

**Definition.**—Hydrophobia is an acute infectious disease of animals, communicable to man, and characterized by intense tonic spasm beginning in the larynx.

**Historical.**—The disease was known to the ancients, including the East Indians, Egyptians, and Israelites, but is not mentioned by Hippocrates (B. C. 480-357), though Democritus, living about the same time (B. C. 470-362), is said to have considered it a nervous affection allied to tetanus. Aristotle (B. C. 384-322, however, recognized it in dogs. According to Celsus, who wrote about the date of the Christian era, it was named *ὑδροφοβία* by the Greeks. The Latin poets, Virgil, Horace, and Ovid, mentioned it, as did also the historian Plutarch (about A. D. 50-106), and Galen (A. D. 130-200), while Cælius Aurelianus (fourth century A. D.) discussed it. Grüner in 1883 found that the saliva is the contagium bearer. Trouseau wrote the best description of modern times in 1850. William Youatt first described it with accuracy in the lower animals and man.<sup>1</sup> Pasteur in 1882 first showed its infectious character, and ascribed it to a toxin developed by a microorganism as yet undiscovered. The disease is rare in this country and Germany, not infrequent in England and France, and common in Russia.

**Etiology.**—All animals are subject to the disease. The dog is the most frequent victim, and it is from that it is almost invariably communicated to man. The wolf, cat, and skunk are also frequent subjects, and may communicate the disease to human beings by their bites, that of the wolf being especially virulent. In such cases, whatever the contagium may be, its bearer is conceded to be the saliva of the animal. The contagium is a fixed and not a volatile one. The researches of Pasteur go to show that it is also contained in the central nervous system, especially the spinal cord, medulla and brain. Klebs suggested that the disease is caused by a bacterium found in the salivary glands of those affected with hydrophobia. Gibier, Fol and Babès claim to have found micrococci in the brain-substance, but these claims have not been confirmed by others, though their experiments have been repeated. There can scarcely be a doubt that an organism is the medium of infection.

The *period of incubation* is extremely variable, ranging from one week to two months or longer. Even two years are said to have elapsed before symptoms set in. The average may be put down at from six weeks to two months; but by no means all persons bitten take the disease, a most important point to be remembered in estimating the efficacy of supposed curative measures. Not more than 15 per cent. of those bitten by dogs, according to Horsley, become affected. Various causes contribute to this. Thus, the saliva may be wiped off in the transit of the tooth through the clothing, and such removal of virus may reduce the danger of the second bite of the same animal, even though it be on the unprotected skin. Again, the young are more susceptible. Statistics by Watson, in America, and by Bollinger, in Germany, show more cases to have resulted from bites in the upper extremities, while, according to Horsley, wounds about the face and head are more apt to cause the disease than those on the hands, which are second in order, and after these come bites on other parts of the body. A much larger proportion of those bitten by wolves perish, from 40 to 80 per cent., according to different authorities.

<sup>1</sup>"Canine Madness," being a series of papers published in "The Veterinarian," 1828, 1829, 1830. London.

To a very important practical question, How long after a bite may the dreaded suspense of an expected outbreak last? Accurate answer seems scarcely possible. Yet, notwithstanding the fact that cases are recorded of an outbreak after an interval of two years, it may be said with confidence that if three months have elapsed, the victim may feel assured that he is safe.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid anatomy of rabies, so far as recognized, is limited to the upper spinal cord, medulla, pons, and cortex of the brain, and is revealed only by the microscope. The blood-vessels are dilated and congested, the perivascular sheaths are invaded with leukocytes, and there are even small hemorrhages. There is hyperemia of the pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and even of the mucous membrane of the stomach, which may be covered with blood-stained mucus. Often there are no discoverable changes.

During the year 1900, important discoveries in the minute morbid anatomy of rabies were announced by Van Gehuchten and Nélis. The changes were found in the peripheral ganglia of the cerebrospinal and sympathetic systems, and are especially marked in the plexiform ganglion of the pneumogastric nerve and Gasserian ganglion. In the normal state these ganglia are composed of a framework of tissue in the meshes of which lie the nerve cells, each one inclosed in a capsule made up of a single layer of endothelial cells. The rabic virus stimulates these cells to proliferation leading to the ultimate destruction of the normal ganglion cell and replacing it by a collection of round cells. The ganglion cells are sometimes only slightly altered, at others destroyed, the extent of the process varying in different animals, being most pronounced in the dog and less so in man and rabbit.

These changes are claimed to be especially valuable in diagnosis, since the examination can be completed within six hours after the death of the animal. It is important, however, that the animal should be allowed to die and not be killed prematurely. The ganglion selected for examination is by preference that of the pneumogastric nerve. The laboratory of the State Live Stock Sanitary Board of Pennsylvania was the first in this country to take up this method, under the direction of Mazyck P. Ravenel, bacteriologist to the board. Fifty-two cases were examined between May, 1900, and July, 1901, without a single failure.

**Symptoms.**—Rabies is usually divided, corresponding to the prominence of symptoms, into two varieties—*furious* or *convulsive* and "*dumb*" or *paralytic* rabies. Professor W. H. Welch, of Johns Hopkins University, suggests a third form of *mixed* rabies, representing a combination of convulsive and dumb rabies. The variety common to human beings is the furious or convulsive, though paralytic rabies also occurs in man, especially after bites on the lower extremities, and would seem to be increasing as compared with the convulsive form. So, too, in dogs furious rabies is the more usual, while in rabbits the paralytic form is more common.

It is true, also, that a sharp distinction cannot always be made between the two forms, while a stage of excitation and a stage of paralysis may be made out in the same case, and it amounts largely to this: that in the furious form, the stage of paralysis may be short or wanting, while in the paralytic form the stage of excitement may be short and may be manifested only by acceleration of breathing, elevation of temperature, and symptoms referable

to irritation of the vagus nerve. The most reliable observations go to show that there is no difference in the quality of the virus producing the two forms, but that the differences are due rather to peculiarities in the individual, the seat of inoculation, or perhaps the quantity of the virus.

The *first* or *premonitory stage* succeeds upon the period of incubation and lasts about 24 hours. The *cicatrix* of the bite, which has been for some time healed, may become painful or the seat of radiating pain, or become livid, or even break out again. The patient is *morbidly depressed* or irritable, is *feverish*, *loses appetite*, and is *sleepless*; there is *hoarseness* or huskiness of voice. A feeling of intense anxiety and a moodiness are very characteristic, his probable fate being the sole subject of contemplation. There is an increased excitability, as a result of which the banging of a door or a flash of light causes the patient to start. Fever is not marked.

The *second* or *spasmodic stage* is the true hydrophobic stage, setting in usually after the first 24 hours. It is also called the furious stage. The sum of its symptomatology depends upon an *exalted irritability* of the *muscles of the larynx*, as the result of which they contract upon the slightest irritation in their vicinity, the act of swallowing being the most frequent exciting cause. Attempt at swallowing is followed by the most *powerful contraction* associated with *dyspnea*, even when the glottis is open or tracheotomy has been performed; whence the *fear of water*, the contact of which with the throat is followed by such frightful spasm of the muscles of the larynx and elevators of the hyoid bone. Even the saliva, which is secreted in increased quantity, cannot be swallowed without exciting paroxysms. Hence it is discharged from the mouth, sometimes forcibly, giving rise to the popular idea that the patient is frothing at the mouth. A breath of air or the slamming of a door may produce a paroxysm.

The paroxysm may be associated with *maniacal excitement* in which the patient is sometimes uncontrollable, rolling his eyes, striking about with his arms, and making snapping noises with the mouth, which are compared to the biting of dogs. These noises are altogether due to uncontrollable spasmodic shutting of the mouth. On the other hand, between the paroxysms, when the mind is clear and the reason sound, there is often found a touching concern on the part of the patient lest he does some harm to those whom he loves. There is more decided *feverishness* in this stage, the temperature rising as high as 103° F. (39.4° C.), while the *pulse* is frequent and sometimes irregular. Albuminuria and glycosuria have both been found in this stage. The second stage lasts from *one* to *three* days, sometimes a little longer.

In the *third* or *paralytic stage* the patient has become exhausted. There are no more paroxysms and he is quiet. His heart gradually fails, and he dies by syncope, although he may die in a convulsion or in asphyxia. This stage usually lasts from *six* to *18 hours*. Happily, the disease is one of short duration, ranging from two to six days, notwithstanding its long period of incubation.

**Diagnosis.**—Hydrophobia most resembles *tetanus*. Yet the diseases are very different. Hydrophobia has a long period of incubation, while tetanus has a short one from three to ten days. Tetanus begins with trismus and is associated with opisthotonos. Neither of these symptoms is

present in hydrophobia. Tetanus has no laryngeal symptoms, no spasms in swallowing. The mental depression so characteristic of hydrophobia is wanting in tetanus.

More difficult is it to distinguish hydrophobia from the imaginary condition known as *pseudophobia* or *lyssophobia*, numerous cases of which have been reported, and the occurrence of which doubtless furnished the foundation for the belief by some that there is no such disease as hydrophobia, and that all cases are lyssophobia. The resemblance is often very close, especially the depression and mania, and it is even said that strong men have been so overcome by this fear that they die as a consequence. The condition, however, generally passes away. Especially is this the case when it transpires that the biting dog was not rabid. Hence, the usual practice of immediately killing the dog supposed to be rabid is not a wise one, since it makes it impossible to settle the question conclusively as to its madness. It is better to confine the animal until the possibility of recovery is settled. If the dog be killed, inoculations from the medulla should be made under the dura mater of rabbits and results awaited. If true rabies, the paralytic form of the disease will be developed in from 15 to 20 days. A much more rapid method of diagnosis is that recently announced by Van Gehuchten and Nélis, for which see Morbid Anatomy.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis once established of hydrophobia, is, unfortunately, totally unfavorable. The possibility of spontaneous recovery cannot be denied, but it is certainly exceptional. The preventive treatment is more successful. The claims of Pasteur will be considered under treatment. Youatt's success by cauterization with nitrate of silver is also there referred to. Bollinger's statistics go to show that out of 134 cases in which the bite was cauterized, 92, or 69 per cent., were attacked, while 42, or 31 per cent., died of the disease; of 66 not cauterized 83 per cent. died of the disease.

**Treatment.**—The curative treatment consists first in prompt measures to eliminate the poison. *Suction* is the promptest measure available and should be practiced, if possible, by the victim himself, as it is not without danger to a second person. An abrasion in the mouth or a carious tooth may be the medium of inoculating such person with the dreaded virus. If suction be practiced, the mouth should be promptly rinsed. It is doubtful if the cupping-glass is as efficient, even if at hand.

Next in availability is *cauterization*, which should be practiced by a *glowing hot poker* or other instrument of the kind, a galvanocautery or *Paquelin's cautery*. In the absence of such means *silver nitrate* or caustic soda should be used and thoroughly applied. Youatt considered nitrate of silver amply sufficient, having failed once only out of 400 times, and in this instance he declared that the patient died of fright. He himself was bitten seven times and in each instance used this agent. In the absence of these caustics *pure carbolic acid* may be used or corrosive sublimate, 1 to 500 or to 1000. When the symptoms once set in, palliation alone is possible. The sore should be kept open.

The *paroxysms* should be controlled by inhalations of chloroform, and averted as far as possible by full doses of opium, preferably, as a rule, morphin hypodermically. Chloral may at first suffice. As light and noise



excite paroxysms, the patient should be kept quiet and secluded, and even in a dark room with two attendants. Water and nourishment may be given by enema.

**Pasteur's Treatment by Attenuated Virus.**—This is of the nature of preventive treatment. Pasteur discovered that the virus of hydrophobia is located in the nervous system, especially in the brain, medulla, and spinal cord. He then ascertained that inoculations by virus from this source in rabbits produced a virus of such increased virulence that after 25 successive inoculations there resulted a virus that acted after a period of incubation of eight days; and after 25 additional inoculations in seven days. The virus from the medulla of rabbits, with this short period of incubation, is called "fixed" virus as contrasted with the "street" virus. Now, although the spinal cords of such animals contain the virus in a state of great intensity, Pasteur ascertained that its intensity could be greatly reduced by preserving the cords in dry air, and that it disappeared altogether in two weeks. The desiccation is practiced in sterilized glass vessels in which are placed pieces of caustic potash. If now, dogs are inoculated with an *emulsion of such medullas* of reduced virulence, say, cords preserved from 12 to 15 days, and then with the cord preserved for a shorter period—that is, with progressively stronger virus—they acquire immunity from inoculation by the fresh cord of the rabid rabbit.

Pasteur availed himself of these facts to *inoculate human subjects who had been bitten*. He used an emulsion of rabbits' cords that had been kept fourteen days, and on successive days made 12 more inoculations from cords preserved a shorter time, until those only one day old were used, after which immunity was secured. Later—that is, in 1886—Pasteur reported to the Academy of Sciences the so-called "intensive method," consisting in inoculations from cords of increasing virulence in more rapid succession, which is the method now commonly adopted in the various institutes. A careful examination of the results of this treatment by the most exact and conscientious observers, such as Victor Horsley, of London, and William H. Welch, of Johns Hopkins University, as well as the records of the numerous Pasteur institutes throughout the world, goes to show that the treatment is a powerful agent in saving life. In illustration it may be said that the treatment was commenced at the Pasteur Institute in Paris in 1886, at the end of which year the percentage of deaths was 0.94, while by the end of 1891 it had been reduced to 0.25 per cent., and for 1895 it was 0.13 per cent., or a mortality of two out of 1520 inoculations. In consequence of the difficulties in the way of carrying out the treatment it has been heretofore available only at the Pasteur institutes referred to, of which there is one in New York City, one in Baltimore, and in almost all the large cities in Europe. Cases may now be treated at home by virus sent by mail, the Pasteur Institute doing this under certain regulations.

In the New York Pasteur Institute 1608 cases were treated in the 12 years expiring January 1, 1902, of which ten died—a percentage of 0.62.

At the Pasteur Institute of Lyons 372 cases were treated from November 1, 1897, to November 1, 1899; 26 persons had been bitten on the face; 203, on the hands; 143, on other parts of the body. In 58 cases (15.5 per

cent.) the animal had been proved rabid; in 207 cases (55.6 per cent.) it was very probably rabid; in 107 cases hydrophobia was suspected. Among the 372 persons treated there was but one death (0.27 per cent.).

At the Institute of Marseilles 1460 persons were treated during the first five years of its existence. Six deaths occurred (0.40 per cent.). In 307 cases (21 per cent.) the animal inflicting the bite had been proved rabid; it was very probably so in 789 cases (54 per cent.).

At the Athens Institute 797 persons were treated from August, 1894, to the end of 1897. Two deaths were recorded (0.25 per cent.). Furthermore, the treatment failed in one case when a wolf had inflicted the bite. Among people not treated at the latter institute, 40 died of hydrophobia. In 27 cases the period of incubation was from 20 to 120 days; in two cases it was from five to six months, seven months in one case, and 12 months in another.

The following directions have been issued by Paul Gibier, the Director of the New York Pasteur Institute, for the benefit of persons bitten:

*Cauterization.*—Theoretically, the *immediate* application to all the recesses of the wound of any agent that destroys protoplasm should suffice to kill any germs lodged therein and remove all danger of a general infection. Practically, such application cannot be made, and a later cauterization not only does no good, but does harm in lending a false sense of security to the minds of the patient and of his friends.

*Treatment of the Wound.*—It is best, then, to treat the wound as one would treat any infected wound.

*When Should the Patient be Sent to the Pasteur Institute?*—At once. It is not a hypothesis, but a demonstrated fact, that every day of delay adds to the uncertainty of a favorable prognosis. It is better to be inoculated for a disease that one has contracted than to wait for a biological confirmation of infection, and then find that this delay is irremediable. The inoculation is, in itself, harmless to a noninfected person, and is also protective (like vaccination) for a period of several years.

*What Should be Done with the Dog or Other Animal?*—Whenever the animal can be confined and kept with perfect safety under observation, this should be done until he dies or recovers. As full notes as possible should be made and forwarded after the patient's departure to the Pasteur Institute, as a valuable part of his history. If keeping the animal is attended with unavoidable danger, it should be killed, the head separated from the body with an aseptic knife, and with a smaller aseptic knife a small piece of the medulla oblongata should be carefully extracted from the base of the skull. This should at once be placed in a clean, small, wide-mouthed bottle, containing a solution of equal parts of pure glycerin and water that has been sterilized by boiling. The bottle should then be sealed and forwarded to the Pasteur Institute for examination by animal inoculation, the results of which may not manifest themselves before three weeks. In addition, the stomach should be opened and examined as to the presence in it of food or of foreign bodies, and the details of this examination noted and forwarded as part of the patient's history.

*How to Reach the Pasteur Institute, New York City.*—The Institute is situated at 313 West Twenty-third Street. It is within easy access of the

Sixth and Ninth Avenue elevated roads (nearest station at 23rd Street); the Eighth Avenue electric cars pass the other end of the block, and the 23rd Street cross-town cars pass the door from the Pennsylvania and the Erie Railroad Stations (Hudson or North River).

There is a Pasteur Department of the Mercy Hospital, Pittsburg, Penna.

The Pasteur Department of the Baltimore City Hospital is at the corner of Saratoga and Calvert Streets.

*Length of Treatment.*—It is necessary in all cases for the patient to remain under treatment for 15 days. During this time two inoculations are given daily. If the case is more grave—that is, if treatment has been begun late—or if the wounds are on the head or face, from four to six inoculations are given daily.

Beyond these measures the treatment of the disease is the treatment of the symptoms.

## TETANUS.

SYNONYM.—*Lock-jaw.*

**Definition.**—Tetanus is an infectious disease characterized by paroxysms of tonic spasm, repeating themselves with increasing severity. It is a disease of human beings and lower animals.

**Etiology.**—The specific cause of tetanus is a bacillus, which was isolated by Nicolaier in 1884 and obtained in pure culture by Kitasato in 1889. It is a slender rod with rounded ends, develops at ordinary temperatures, and is found in the soil, in the alimentary canal of animals, in manure, in pus and putrefying fluids of wounds; sometimes forming threads, sometimes irregular masses. It is nonmobile, anaerobic, refusing utterly to grow in the presence of oxygen; develops spores within itself, though when studied early in pus is often sporeless. During sporulation one end becomes rounded, giving the bacillus a drum-stick like appearance.

It is one of the most invulnerable of bacilli, its spores resisting a temperature of 176° F. (80° C.), while the bacilli retain their vitality in the dried condition for months. According to G. M. Sternberg, they resist a five per cent. carbolic solution for ten hours, but will not grow after 15 hours' immersion. If five per cent. hydrochloric acid be added, they are destroyed in two hours. They are destroyed in three hours by a 1 to 1000 bichlorid solution, but when five per cent. hydrochloric acid is added the spores are destroyed in 30 minutes. Exposure to passing steam for from five to eight minutes kills the spores. The toxin, on the other hand, is rapidly destroyed by heat and light, being unable to resist a temperature above 140° to 149° F. (60° to 65° C.). In the dark in a refrigerator it can be kept indefinitely. Cultures of the tetanus bacillus in all media give off a peculiar characteristic odor—a burnt-onion smell with a suggestion of putrefaction.

The bacilli do not, however, pass into the blood, as a rule, but at the site of the wound manufacture with great rapidity a ptomain or toxin, which is absorbed by the ends of the motor nerve trunks, carried along them to the motor center where it excites the disease. This was first shown in 1890 by Kitasato, who found that the bacteria-free filtrates of bouillon cultures of the tetanus bacillus produce the same symptoms as inoculation with cul-

tures containing the bacillus, including ultimate death. Indeed, Brieger, in 1886, isolated from impure cultures three ptomains, which he called *tetanin*, *tetanotoxin*, and *spasmatoxin*. The first of these causes the characteristic symptoms of tetanus; the second, tremors, convulsions, and subsequently paralysis; and the third, intense tonic and clonic spasms. More recently, Kitasato and Weyl obtained Brieger's tetanin and tetanotoxin from pure cultures; while Brieger himself, with Fränkel and Kitasato, has succeeded in isolating from tetanus cultures a far more deadly ptomain, *toxalbumin*, which was purified by Brieger and Cohn, who have shown that it is not a pure albuminous body. Brieger has also isolated such poisons from the organs of those dead of tetanus, and Nissen has demonstrated toxin in the blood of those ill of tetanus.

The bacillus of tetanus while sometimes found in cultures from the blood, as by Hohlbeck and Hochsinger, does not develop there, but at the site of the wound where, too, the toxin is manufactured.

Further, it has been shown by Behring and Kitasato that there exists in the blood of animals immune to tetanus a substance with opposite properties, therefore called antitoxin, and by the gradual introduction of the toxin into animals these observers have been able to produce in their blood a potent antitoxic substance. Such serum is prepared by Behring and by Roux abroad, and by the Mulford Company in Philadelphia. The methods for its production is similar to that for diphtheria antitoxin, but slower. Tizzoni and Cantani have successfully prepared it in a solid form, in which, it is claimed, it can be kept indefinitely and shipped as wanted, and applied to treatment of cases of traumatic tetanus with success.

**Predisposing Causes.**—The excitation of tetanus is favored by certain conditions. *Wounds*, particularly contused and punctured wounds, especially of the hands and feet, are favorite foci, whence the term *traumatic* for such cases of tetanus, and *idiopathic* for cases not thus caused. A similar focus is the badly cared-for umbilical cord whence *tetanus neonatorum*, affecting especially the colored race. In certain parts of the West Indies it is said that more than half the deaths among negro children are due to this cause. It is probably because the contused wound affords a more favorable nidus for the growth of the bacilli rather than that there is any peculiar laceration of nerves, as formerly thought. It is more common, too, in *hot countries* and in places and seasons where there are decided alternations of heat and cold. It affects both sexes and all ages, but it is more frequent in men for obvious reasons. Children are especially susceptible.<sup>1</sup>

Idiopathic tetanus is much more rare than traumatic, and it constantly happens that close examination in cases of apparent idiopathic tetanus results in the discovery of a previous undiscovered trauma. *Exposure* to cold, especially damp cold, is one of the recognized causes of idiopathic tetanus. It can only produce a condition favorable to the lodgment and multiplication of the bacillus. Tetanus occasionally prevails in the epidemic form.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no essential morbid anatomy of tetanus. There may be congestion, extravasations, and perivascular exudates due to impediment of the movement of the blood during spasm, granular changes in cells from modified nutrition—all results rather than causes of symptoms.

<sup>1</sup> Article "Tetanus," Keating's "Cyclopedia of Diseases of Children," vol. iv. p. 913, 1890.

**Symptoms.**—A *period of incubation* of from ten to 15 days is required for the operation of the specific cause of tetanus. Occasionally only does a *chill* precede the other symptoms. There appears first usually a *stiffness in the neck and jaws* and the patient opens his mouth with difficulty, but not with pain. Then the stiffness extends to the back and abdominal muscles and to the legs, which may be fixed in extension, more usually during a paroxysm. The result is that the abdominal muscles feel like a board and the whole trunk is inflexible. If an attempt be made to flex the thighs on the abdomen the whole body comes up in a single piece; if the body is turned over, it is like turning over a wooden man. There is, in a word, *orthotonos*. Again, as in a striking case of my own, the symptoms may begin in the abdomen and by their intermittent character simulate cramp.<sup>1</sup> These symptoms are present in various degrees, less marked in the mild cases, more so in the severe ones. In severe cases the jaws become locked, in milder ones they may partly yield to forcible extension. The eyebrows may be raised and the angle of the mouth drawn up, producing the *risus sardonius*, or tetanic grin.

In the so-called *head tetanus* described by E. Rose, there may be *paralysis* of the facial muscles and difficulty of swallowing, with violent *spasm* of the *pharynx* and *esophagus*. It is associated more particularly with injuries to the fifth nerve.

These symptoms are more or less constant in various degrees. All are further increased during the paroxysm, which is excited by various sensory impressions, sometimes exceedingly trifling, as a breath of air or the contact of a dress, a footfall, or the slamming of a door. The muscles of the trunk contract more strongly, and if the patient be on his back, the body may be so bowed that only the back of the head and heels touch the bed—*opisthotonos*; or the side of the face and leg, producing *pleurosthotonos*; or the abdominal muscles may bend the body forward—*emprosthotonos*. Spasmodic closure of the jaws sometimes causes the tongue to be bitten. The paroxysm may then relax, and during its relaxation the patient will be able to walk about. In severe cases the spasm may involve also the muscles surrounding cavities, as the thorax, compressing as in a vise their contents, causing extreme pain. Indeed, *pain* is almost everywhere an accompaniment of these spasmodic contractions, and the perspiration stands out in great drops on the face and covers the body. An attempt to speak is transformed into a fit of crying. The frequency of the spasms varies greatly; they may occur every couple of hours or minutes or almost incessantly.

The temperature is generally, but slightly, if at all, elevated, rising to 101° F. (38.3° C.) and more rarely to 102° F. (38.9° C.). At times, however, it rises higher, to 105° to 106° F. (40.5° to 41.1° C.), and it is said also in fatal cases to reach 108° to 110° F. (42.2° to 43.3° C.). In a case reported by Joseph P. Tunis<sup>2</sup> it fell as low as 96.6° F. (35.5° C.), reaching a maximum of only 101° F. (38.3° C.). The pulse is generally frequent, 130 to 150, *respirations* 30 to 45. There is often *constipation*, which is a more serious symptom in severe cases, because the efforts to relieve it are apt to bring

<sup>1</sup>"Philadelphia Med. Times," vol. i., 1871, p. 418.

<sup>2</sup>"Archives of Gynecology and Pediatrics," April, 1892.

on a spasm. Among the rare events have been the rupture of muscles and spasmodic closure of the glottis, producing fatal asphyxia. Generally, death is produced by exhaustion, the mind remaining unclouded throughout.

**Diagnosis.**—Tetanus is liable to be confounded with strychnin poisoning, cerebrospinal meningitis, and hydrophobia. *Strychnin poisoning* differs from tetanus in the absence of rigidity between the paroxysms and of trismus, and in the more marked involvement of the extremities, as well as in the history of the case. In *hydrophobia* there is no trismus, and while convulsive dysphagia occurs sometimes in tetanus, it is very rare. (See also hydrophobia.) As in strychnin poisoning, too, the individual paroxysms are more distinct.

*Cerebrospinal meningitis* produces a rigidity similar to that of tetanus, but the cerebral symptoms give it its stamp, and fever is a much earlier symptom than in tetanus. The stiffness of the jaws in *parotitis* and severe *tonsillitis* is similar to that of tetanus, but there the resemblance ends.

The interesting and rare condition known as *tetany*, or intermittent tetanus, characterized by the paroxysmal tonic contraction in *groups of muscles*, more frequently in the extremities, is hardly likely to be confounded with tetanus.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of traumatic tetanus once established is exceedingly unfavorable, not less than 80 per cent. perishing, while in the so-called idiopathic form less than one-half die.

In children the prognosis is more favorable than in adults, and some very severe cases get well. The case of Joseph P. Tunis, already referred to, is a truly remarkable one of discovery in a boy of six years of age after 70 days' duration. Most cases die within the first six days, and cases living to the sixth day are very much more apt to get well. The aphorism of Hippocrates, that "such persons as are seized with tetanus die within four days, or if they pass these they recover," is frequently substantiated. On the other hand, a late onset makes a case more hopeful. Localization of the spasm to the muscles of the face, neck, and jaw is favorable to recovery, and the so-called Rose's head tetanus most commonly gets well. The cases in which there is very little elevation of temperature are more apt to do well. Convalescence is likely to be protracted even in mild cases.

**Treatment.**—Prompt local treatment is important, though it is not often thought of until the mischief is done. The wound should be excised and cauterized by the hot iron or nitrate of silver, and antiseptic dressings should be applied. The patient ought then to be secluded and surrounded by the utmost quiet. After such seclusion Gacelli recommends the subcutaneous injection of a two per cent. solution of carbolic acid every two or three hours. He claims that carbolic acid gives better results than the antitoxin by antagonizing the toxin and quieting the nervous system.

Recent studies, however, give the palm to the antitoxin treatment. To be of any value it must anticipate the symptoms of the disease, since if tetanus is fully established serum therapy, however administered, avails little. As a prophylactic it is to be confidently relied upon. To be of the greatest service it must be administered before the motor nerves have absorbed any toxin. It should, therefore, be administered as soon as possible after the

infliction of the injury and to every person who has sustained an injury in which dirt, manure or foreign substance of any kind, such as powder or fragments of fire-arms, could have entered the wound. Ten c.c. of a reliable serum should be injected early into the muscles, repeated on the third and fifth days, and on the 15th to 20th day if suppuration continue. Of Tizzoni's solid antitoxin 2.25 grams should be the first dose, and 0.6 gram afterward at about the same interval. It is also recommended to use the dried serum locally in the wound, dusting it over before the dressing is applied. Thus used, the antitoxin acts locally, but when injected it travels along the blood stream in contrast to the route of toxin. The use of antitoxin in no way precludes the employment of spinal antispasmodic remedies, such as chloral, bromids, morphin, eseriu, etc.

The further treatment of tetanus must be the treatment of the symptoms. *Morphin* is indispensable to control the pain and defer the paroxysms or diminish their severity, and anesthesia by ether or chloroform may be required during the paroxysm. The milder sedatives, like chloral, may suffice in mild cases, but they are insufficient in severe ones. *Chloral* may be used as an adjuvant in not less than 15 grain (1 gm.) doses for adults when the quantity of morphin otherwise required would be excessive. Even larger doses of chloral than those named may be given in connection with the antitoxin treatment.

Subdural injection through a trephined opening is recommended by A. E. Barker,<sup>1</sup> who injected 7.5 c.c. of antitoxin at one time, and 20 c.c. subcutaneously daily for the following four days. In addition massive doses of chloral were given. A week later the rigidity commenced to diminish, and in the course of three weeks the patient had completely recovered. The efficiency of chloral is also increased when combined with double the dose of bromid of potassium. To a less degree phenacetin, antipyrin, and antifebrin may be useful. Salicylic acid in large doses has been thought to be of value. Later studies have shown that neither the subdural nor intracerebral method of injection of antitoxin has any peculiar advantages.

The intraspinal injection of magnesium sulphate was suggested by Meltzer, the thought arising from the fact that a long, deep, lasting anesthesia with complete relaxation of the voluntary muscles and abolition of some of the less important reflex activities terminating in recovery, succeeds upon such injection in the lower animals. The same effect was produced on the human being, 25 per cent. solutions, 1 c.c. to every 20 pounds of body weight. There were some untoward effects, the most serious being slowing of respiration, relieved by washing out the spinal canal with normal salt solution. Following this treatment some excellent results have been obtained in the treatment of tetanus. Up to this writing four cases of tetanus thus treated have been reported, of which two recovered, one at the Pennsylvania Hospital by Canby Robinson. Robinson pleads for the use of the remedy. He injected 1 c.c. of the 25 per cent. solution for each 23 pounds at first injection, 1 c.c. for 20 pounds at second injection, and finally 1 c.c. for 17.5 pounds. The injections were given daily or every two or three days whenever the symptoms returned. Later three more cases were

<sup>1</sup> "Philadelphia Med. Jour.," December 8, 1900.

treated at the Pennsylvania Hospital by the magnesium solution with fatal results, although the control of the paroxysms was striking.

Reasoning from its physiological action on the nerve-centers, *calabar bean* ought to be a useful remedy, and it is commonly used in doses of  $1/4$  to  $1/2$  grain (0.0165 to 0.033 gm.) three to five times a day. *Curare* should also be useful for its sedative effect on the terminal nerves, but experience has not confirmed expectation as yet;  $1/25$  grain (0.0026 gm.) may be given hypodermically and cautiously increased. The strength of curare varies greatly. *Warm baths* are serviceable in relaxing spasm and often very comforting to the patient.

The most nourishing food in liquid form is necessary, and usually, also, stimulants are freely administered in tetanus, with a view to sustaining the patient against the exhaustion that sooner or later causes death unless the disease is arrested.

### ANTHRAX.

SYNONYMS.—*Malignant Pustule; Contagious Carbuncle; Splenic Fever; Splenic Apoplexy; Gangrene of the Spleen; Carbuncle Fever; Blood-striking; Choking Quinsy and Bloody Murrain; Wool-sorters' Disease; Rag-sorters' Disease.* In France it is known as "*Charbon*," and in Germany as "*Miltzbrand*."

**Definition.**—An acute infectious disease of animals, especially affecting cattle and sheep, but transmissible also to man; caused by the implantation and multiplication of the bacillus of anthrax.

**History.**—Anthrax was known to the ancients as a destructive disease of animals. The true poison was not, however, discovered until Pollander found it in 1855. Two years later Brauell also found it independently. Davaine, in 1863, greatly extended our knowledge of the whole subject by discovering the bacillus and inoculating many animals, including mice, rats, guinea-pigs, cows, sheep, goats, and birds, and more recently Louis Pasteur and Robert Koch, 1878–81, studied the bacillus exhaustively from the biological standpoint. It was the first microorganism recognized as the cause of an infectious disease. Mention should be made of Toussaint, who was the first to produce immunity by the use of sterilized cultures. His paper on "Immunity from Anthrax Acquired as a Result of Protective Inoculations" was published in the "Proceedings of the French Academy of Sciences," July 12, 1880. The disease is found all over the world. A number of cases occurred in Dubois, Pa., in 1897, by infection from hides imported from China.

**Etiology.**—The bacillus of anthrax, the largest of the pathogenic bacilli, is a minute cylinder five to 20 microns in length and one to 1.25 microns in breadth. It is found in enormous numbers in the blood and tissues of the animal infected with anthrax, where it multiplies rapidly by division and whence it may be obtained by cultures. In artificial cultures it grows in long threads, in the interior of which appear minute ovoid spores, which are loosed by disintegration of the bacilli, which have but a transient existence, while the spores are very tenacious of life. Their vitality may remain in abeyance for long periods of time, and revive with the return of favorable conditions of heat and moisture. Introduced into the blood of animals they develop into bacilli. The medium of their transfer to others, including human beings, is the blood, secretions, flesh, and hair from those infected. Here, as in glanders and hydrophobia, an abraded surface is necessary for



successful inoculation, although the possibility of absorption through intact mucous membrane and skin is asserted. Those most frequently infected are herdsmen, stable-hands, butchers, and wool-sorters.

It is thought that anthrax bacilli may exist elsewhere than in animals, as in marshes and on the banks of streams, whence they may be carried by freshets into pastures and so infect the grazing animals. Commonly, however, the affection spreads from other animals having the disease. Pasteur has found the bacilli in the herbage over the buried bodies of animals dead of the disease. It is primarily a disease of herbivora, from which it is transmitted to carnivora and man.

Hoffa has isolated a toxin, which he calls *anthracin*.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The body after death is cyanotic. The blood is dark and viscid, coagulating slowly; the spleen is enlarged and soft. On the skin are carbuncular and gangrenous patches, the subcutaneous tissue is infiltrated with bloody serum, the blood is uncoagulated, and all the tissues and organs are more or less infiltrated with blood. The gastrointestinal mucous membrane is edematous and ecchymotic, there are enlarged follicles and gangrenous patches infiltrated with bacilli, constituting the so-called *carbuncle of mucous membrane*. Even the nervous tissues are the seat of analogous lesions.

**Symptoms.**—Anthrax has a *period of incubation* of about seven days, after which there are several ways in which the disease shows itself, of which the chief are *external anthrax* and *internal anthrax*.

EXTERNAL ANTHRAX manifests itself as *malignant pustule* and *malignant anthrax edema*.

1. *Malignant pustule* starts most frequently on exposed surfaces of the skin—the arms, hands, or face—at the seat of inoculation. It begins as an *itching* and a *burning, smarting pain*, resembling often that from the bite of an insect. The spot becomes red and develops rapidly into a *papule*, in the center of which a *vesicle* soon appears, which is filled with clear, or at times bloody serum. The vesicle bursts, the papule enlarges and becomes indurated, surrounded by a number of small vesicles. The induration extends, while the center becomes dark and discolored. Within 36 hours a brown eschar makes its appearance and rapidly undergoes disintegration. The vicinity becomes edematous, the lymphatics inflamed, swollen, and painful.

To these local symptoms are added those of *general infection*, with its thirst, high temperature, and frequent pulse. The tongue becomes dry, the liver and spleen enlarged, the breathing rapid, and death supervenes in from three to five days.

Occasionally, recovery takes place, but it is only in mild cases, in which all the symptoms, local and general, are less severe, that the vesicles dry up into a crust or scab, and the induration dies away.

2. *Malignant anthrax edema* begins in the eyelids and passes thence to the head, hands, and arms. The skin reddens and becomes edematous, vesicles may arise, but there are no papules, although the edema may proceed to extensive gangrene. The local symptoms in this form follow rather than precede the constitutional disturbance, as is the case with the papular form, and the termination is even more invariably fatal than in the latter.

Anthrax presents an interesting contrast to hydrophobia in the absence of the anxious mental condition so characteristic of the latter.

INTERNAL ANTHRAX manifests itself as *mycosis intestinalis* or intestinal anthrax, and *pulmonary anthrax*. The latter is also called *wool-sorters' disease*.

1. *Intestinal anthrax*, or *mycosis intestinalis*, is often ushered in by chill followed by nausea, vomiting, bloody diarrhea, abdominal pain and tenderness. With these symptoms are found after death edematous and ecchymotic gastrointestinal mucous membrane, enlarged follicles and gangrenous patches. In addition to these symptoms pustules may form on the skin. It arises from the ingestion of meat infected with anthrax.

2. *Wool-sorters' disease* is a form of internal anthrax acquired by inhaling the bacilli into the lungs by those engaged in sorting wool, especially that imported from Russia and South America. It begins with chill, fever, high temperature, pain, dyspnea, bronchitis and cough, together with the physical signs of lung involvement. There are rarely premonitory symptoms and often no external lesion. It is rapidly fatal, the patient often dying in 24 hours in collapse. Other cases are more protracted, and there may be vomiting, diarrhea, delirium, and unconsciousness, while the brain may be the chief seat of involvement, the capillaries being filled with bacilli. *Rag-pickers' disease* is a special etiological variety, invading the lungs and pleura, with general infection.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of external anthrax is usually easy from the symptoms, in connection with the history of exposure to the cause. The fluid of the pustule may be examined for the bacilli, which are large and easily recognized. Cultures may be made and a mouse or guinea-pig inoculated.

Internal anthrax is more difficult of recognition and may escape it altogether unless a knowledge of the occupation of the patient suggests it.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is unfavorable; yet not all cases perish. The intestinal form and wool-sorters' disease are especially fatal, though it is said also that those who survive the latter one week recover.

**Treatment.**—Prophylaxis is exceedingly important. Animals dead of the disease should be cremated—burying is not a safe plan; their hides should not be used; infected pastures should be shut off; disinfectants should be freely used in the wake of the disease. Hides, wool, and rags should be disinfected by superheated steam. In the case of wool and rags this is quite possible, but the necessary temperature is so high that hides are damaged by it.

The curative treatment consists in a vigorous attack on the seat of the infection. *Deep crucial* incisions should be made, and to these the actual cautery, caustic potash or strong carbolic acid should be applied and the wound dressed with a strong solution of carbolic acid, 1 to 20; or powdered bichlorid of mercury diluted with calomel powder, 4 to 15 per cent., may be thrown into the bottom of the incisions. As the sublimate dissolves it deepens the cauterization. The treatment is very severe and etherization may be necessary. Cocain at least should be freely used. In the edematous form numerous free incisions should be used and treated as the cuts into the carbuncle.

With the local treatment should be associated *stimulating and restorative measures*, including alcohol, highly nutritious food, quinin, and strychnin. Five to 10 grains of ipecacuanha powder every three or four hours are recommended by Davies-Colley.

Internal anthrax must be treated by the general measures just alluded to, but is generally incurable. Free purgation is advised at the outset, with a view to removing the infecting material.

## GLANDERS AND FARCY.

SYNONYMS.—*Farcy*; *Malleus humidus*; *Wurm* (German).

**Definition.**—Glanders is an infectious disease more especially of the horse, communicable to man and certain domesticated animals but not to cows; characterized by nodular growths in the nares, when it is known as glanders, and under the skin, when it is called farcy. Among animals to which it is communicable are the lion, sheep, rabbit, guinea-pig, cat, dog, and mouse.

**Historical.**—Glanders was apparently described by Aristotle (B. C. 384–322) as occurring in the ass. It is first mentioned under the name *μάλς* and *malleus* by Apsyrtus, a veterinary surgeon under Constantine the Great (A. D. 272–337), who, however, included under this name a number of affections of a more or less similar nature, and we are indebted for our first accurate knowledge of the disease to Rayer, whose monograph appeared in 1837.

The contagious nature of glanders was recognized by Soleysal (1664), Garsault (1741), and by the two writers Lafosse (1754–72); its inoculability and fatal character were demonstrated by Abeldgaard in 1705, while its contagiousness was experimentally established by Viborg (1797). Notwithstanding these facts, its contagiousness was long contested in France, and it was not until the middle of the nineteenth century that finally it became generally acknowledged in that country, chiefly through the labors of St. Cyr. Lorin in 1812, Waldinger in 1816, and Veith in 1822, made researches on the injurious effects of the virus on man. Schelling, of Belin, was the first to give an exhaustive description, in 1821, of the disease as it occurs in man.

**Etiology.**—Glanders and farcy are the direct results of a bacillus—the *bacillus mallei*—described by Loeffler and Schütz in 1882. It is a short nonmotile bacillus not unlike that of tubercle and leprosy, but shorter than either. It is commonly seen among the cells of the growth, but has also been found in the blood. The disease is communicated by the discharge from the infected animals to an abraded skin surface or intact mucous membrane. The human victims are usually hostlers or others working among horses.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The infection presents itself in the shape of nodules ranging in size from that of a lentil to that of a fist, or it may infiltrate more diffusely. It is composed of round cells which invade the skin, mucous membrane, and muscles. Internal organs—as the lungs, liver, spleen, kidneys, and even the stomach, the nervous system, bone, and cartilage—may be invaded. The ulcers on the skin are often serpiginous, whence the name *Wurm* among Germans. A few of the cells develop into epithelioid cells, but all soon break down, leaving ulcers on mucous membrane and skin, and abscesses under the latter.

**Symptoms.**—Glanders and farcy have a *period of incubation* of from three to five days, rarely a week. There is an *acute* and *chronic* form. The

acute terminates within three weeks, while the chronic may last for months and even years.

In *acute glanders* of the nasal mucous membrane there is, first, *redness* and *swelling* at the point of inoculation with *burning* and *dryness* of the adjacent mucous membrane. *Intense pain* in the forehead from involvement of the frontal sinuses may also be present. This is promptly followed by nodule-formation and the rapid breaking down of the nodules and discharge of fetid hemorrhagic or muco-pus. The destructive process extends to the nasal septum, the mouth and pharynx, and even the larynx, lung, and other organs. The submaxillary glands swell and suppurate. From these lesions result the usual symptoms of *painful deglutition*, *cough*, and *hoarseness*, with *fetid expectoration*.

*Chronic glanders* is less easy of recognition. The symptoms are more like those of incurable coryza and sometimes of chronic laryngitis. It may be necessary to make cultures and inoculate an animal, preferably the guinea-pig, which perishes in 30 days and presents already testicles swollen and suppurating.

In *acute farcy*, after the *period of incubation*, a *feverish state* develops. At the point of infection on the skin there appears a nodular *swelling*, or an ulcer which tends to spread and discharge a fetid hemorrhagic pus. The adjacent tissue becomes red and edematous and the lymph-vessels and lymphatic glands are inflamed. Papules that become pustules may also develop in the neighborhood. Such an eruption has been mistaken for that of small-pox, but is soon replaced by open ulcers. The so-called *farcy buds* are nodular, subcutaneous enlargements along the course of the lymphatics, and may suppurate. The nose is not involved.

In *chronic farcy* the localized tumors form under the skin, especially of the extremities, and break down, but the process is more slow, and there is no special involvement of the lymphatic glands.

Further symptoms in both forms are: *chilliness*, *fever* with high temperature, *intense prostration* and depression, muscular and joint *pain* and soreness, *abscess* formation, and finally *typhoid symptoms* and death.

The *spleen* and *liver* may be enlarged, *albuminuria* may be present, and it is said even *leucin* and *tyrosin* are found in the urine.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis in the acute form is easy. It has, however, been confounded with pyemia and small-pox. Chronic glanders is to be distinguished from syphilis and tuberculosis. The history of exposure is helpful. In doubtful cases cultures should be made. Especially characteristic is that on the cooked potato, which by the third day furnishes an amber-hued film, that on the sixth to eighth day is red and turbid, surrounded with a pale-green area. Inoculation with "mallein," a product of the bacillus of glanders, comparable to the tuberculin of tuberculosis, should be made. It causes a rise of temperature in affected cases as do tuberculosis cases with tuberculin. A reaction of 3.50° F. (2° C.) in horses is regarded as positive proof of the presence of the disease; a rise of 1.85° F. (1.50° C.) is strong presumptive proof, and 1.25° F. (1° C.) suspicious.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis in the acute variety is invariably fatal; in the chronic form 50 per cent. recover.

**Treatment.**—In the cutaneous form excision and cauterization should

be practiced as early as possible, followed by antiseptic dressings. In the nasal variety sprays of carbolic acid, bichlorid of mercury and peroxid of hydrogen should be introduced into the nose and throat. "Mallein" has also been used internally as a remedy, but its value is not as yet determined.

## ACTINOMYCOSIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Big Jaw; Swelled Head; Bone Tumor.*

**Definition.**—An infectious inflammatory disease of cattle, communicable also to man, and depending for its existence on a peculiar fungus named by Hartz, a Munich botanist, *actinomyces* or ray-fungus.

**History.**—The great German surgeon, Langenbeck, was the first to discover, in 1845, that the disease, "big-jaw," previously well known in the slaughter-houses of Germany, could be communicated to man. His results were not, however, published until 1878, a year after Bollinger discovered that it was due to a fungus. Bollinger took it to Hartz, who gave it its name. The same year, 1877, James Israel, of Berlin, found the fungus in man, but did not recognize it as identical with the Hartz fungus. It was reserved for Ponfick, in 1879, to establish thoroughly the identity of the disease in man and in cattle. Belfield, of Chicago, first recognized the parasite in cattle in this country. Henry F. Formad and George A. Bodamer first studied the disease in Philadelphia, and through them I was able to examine specimens of the swelled-head from the slaughter-houses of that city.

**Etiology.**—The fungus belongs to the species *Cladothrix*, and is known as the ray fungus. As found in the pus from man and cattle affected with the disease, it appears as a small, yellowish granule from one to two millimeters ( $1/25$  to  $1/12$  inch) in diameter, detectable by the naked eye. By the microscope the granule is resolvable into conical threads, radiating from a center to which they are attached by their small ends, the other club-like ends being outward. This gives the external surface a mulberry appearance. The center is composed of a granular substance, containing numerous bodies resembling micrococci. The disease has been reproduced by inoculation of the fungus from a diseased animal, as well as by the inoculation of cultures. It is thought to arise primarily in animals in the course of their feeding on vegetable matter. This is the more reasonable, because the ray-fungus has been isolated from vegetables. A similar origin is ascribed to it in man.

The effect of the parasite is to produce granulomatous and fibromatous new formations, which ultimately become the seat of suppuration. The former, like tubercle, is composed of small round cells, epithelioid cells, and giant cells. The fibrous matter consists of proliferated connective tissue about the granulation growth, expanding and enlarging the bones until it resembles an osteosarcoma, for which it was for a time mistaken.

The tendency to suppuration is more marked in man than in cattle, where the process too is more localized. In man the disease runs its course with the formation of multiple abscesses and chronic pyemia. Such course is supposed to be due to an admixture of pyogenic organisms with the true ray-fungus. Associated with the suppurative process in man is a tendency to fatty degeneration of the cells of the granulation tissue.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—In addition to the lesions presently to be described about the jaw and head, there are found in the lungs, when the latter are

invaded, the miliary nodules alluded to, made up of groups of fungi, surrounded by granulation-tissue. Bronchopneumonic areas and abscesses large enough to be recognized by their physical signs during life may also be present. Erosion of the vertebræ, ribs, and sternum may also occur.

**Symptoms.**—The route of infection is generally the mouth, while the special seats seized upon are carious teeth, whence the *jaw* is invaded and becomes swollen. The swelling may extend thence to the face and temporal region, and even to the neck, producing *discharging sinuses* like those associated with dead bone. Alongside of these are cicatricial marks of healing. More rarely the tongue, fauces, and even the intestines (large and small), and the liver are invaded. The latter organ may also become involved metastatically. The fungus has been found in the stools first by Ransom, and pericecal abscess has been found due to it.

The *lungs* are also favorite seats of invasion by actinomycosis, and it was in these organs in man that Israel recognized the fungus which proved to be the ray-fungus also. The *symptoms* produced are *those of bronchitis*—fever, cough, and more or less fetid expectoration, in which the fungus is occasionally found. In the lungs the posterior and lateral parts are affected rather than the apices. They may be invaded simultaneously with the jaws. The course of lung actinomycosis is chronic, and resembles that of pulmonary consumption, the average duration in man being ten months.

Actinomycosis may occur in connection in the *skin* alone, and even in the *brain*, abscesses may occur containing the mycelium. Bollinger has reported a case of the primary disease in the brain of man, while Gamgee and Delpine and O. B. Keller have found it in the brain secondary to pleural invasion. The metastatic abscesses are the direct result of the transfer of a portion of the fungus.

**Diagnosis.**—*Sarcoma* of the jaw presents a macroscopic picture very like that of actinomycosis, but its course is more rapid and there is less suppuration, yet these signs are of themselves insufficient, and there recognition of the fungus may be necessary to a diagnosis.

More frequent, perhaps, than any other error is that which mistakes the disease for *pyemia*, of which, indeed, as it occurs in man, it is a chronic variety. There are the same sort of metastases in the lungs and elsewhere; in man with pus formation, in animals with or without slight suppuration.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is surgical, consisting in thorough extirpation, the opening of the abscesses and removal of the dead bone, followed by thorough drainage. Iodid of potassium in doses of 40 to 60 grains (3.66 to 4 gm.) was recommended by Thomassen in 1885, and cures are reported from its use. DaCosta also reports success with this drug.<sup>1</sup>

## FOOT-AND-MOUTH DISEASE.

SYNONYM.—*Aphthæ epizooticæ*.

**Definition.**—An acute infectious disease of lower animals, communicable to man. It affects especially cattle, sheep, swine, more rarely the goat and horse, and still more rarely of fowls, dogs, and cats. The disease in cattle

<sup>1</sup> "Proceedings of the Association of American Physicians," 1900.

spreads rapidly and entails often serious loss. It is characterized by fever and the presence of vesicles and ulcers in the mucous membrane of the mouth in the furrows and clefts about the feet, and on the teats of animals. It is communicable to man especially during epidemics.

**History.**—The early confusion of foot-and-mouth disease with anthrax and actinomycosis makes it difficult to date its first recognition. Hertwig, however, established its contagiousness as early as 1834 by experiments upon himself and two other men. The experiments consisted in the drinking of infected milk. Local and constitutional symptoms of the disease resulted.

**Etiology.**—The microbe responsible for foot-and-mouth disease has not been settled upon, though a streptococcus has been isolated from the fluid of the vesicle by Klein, and a micrococcus from milk by Cnyrim and Libberitz; the specific power of neither has as yet been determined. The contagion bearer is especially the contents of the vesicle alluded to, but milk, blood, urine and feces are also media. It is communicated to man through the ingestion of unboiled milk, butter, and cheese, or through contact with the fluid of the vesicles on the teats by milkers. It is said to be communicable even by the saliva from the affected animal.

A certain relation is belived to exist between the aphthous sore mouth of children and the foot-and-mouth disease, chiefly because it has been observed that aphthæ are apt to prevail in children at the same time with the foot-and-mouth disease in cattle.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As recovery invariably takes place, no lesions other than those to be noted under symptoms have as yet been observed.

**Symptoms.**—The disease has a *period of incubation* of from three to five days. At this time there is a *febrile movement* with *malaise* and *loss of appetite*. On the mucous membrane of the lips and tongue, and sometimes on the hard plate and pharynx, come *vesicles* containing a yellowish serum. There is a sensation of *heat* and *burning* throughout the mouth, and the *swelling* may be so great as to make speech difficult and swallowing painful. There is *copious salivation*. Almost simultaneously appear vesicles between the fingers and toes and around the nails. Vesicles have also been noted on the nipples of women. Indeed, they have been found scattered all over the body, so that the case resembles small-pox. The hands, especially may be extensively involved. Gastrointestinal symptoms are sometimes present.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is favorable in man, recovery being the rule. Very young children may perish. The suckling young of animals perish in large numbers, because of the infected milk on which they subsist.

**Treatment.**—The disease can be easily avoided by simple prophylactic measures by those in contact with animals, of which the use of boiled milk is the most important. Cleanliness of man and beast conduce to the same end.

Curative measures of a simple kind generally suffice. Mouth-washes of a saturated solution of chlorate of potassium should be frequently used. Powdered borax and alum may be directly applied. The separate ulcers or vesicles should be touched with the solid silver nitrate. The skin lesions should be washed in corrosive sublimate solution and dressed in sublimate cotton or salicylated cotton. The fever should be combated with suitable antifebrile measures.

## MILK-SICKNESS.

SYNONYMS.—*Trembles; Puking Fever; Slows.*

**Definition.**—An infectious disease prevailing in the western and south-western parts of the United States, characterized especially by trembling, vomiting, constipation, and a peculiar fetor of the breath.

**Etiology.**—A like disease called "trembles" prevails among the cattle of the infested districts, and it is supposed to be communicated to man through the milk and its products—viz., cheese and butter, and also flesh when used as food. It is more common in summer and autumn and in dry seasons. Nothing more definite is known as to its cause. Recently E. L. Mosely<sup>1</sup> has called attention to *Eupatorium ageroteides* or white snake-root as a cause of milk-sickness, communicated to animals while grazing; this he attempts to prove by experiments on animals, apparently refuted by Albert C. Crawford, of the U. S. Agricultural Dept.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Our knowledge of the morbid anatomy of milk-fever is chiefly by inference from that obtained by necropsies on cattle, those on man being few and imperfect. The lesions noted by Graff under these circumstances are as follows: Cerebral sinuses, meningeal vessels of the brain and cord distended with blood; pia mater opaque and overlaid with purulent exudate; brain soft; stomach and intestines contracted and mucous membrane injected; lungs, liver, kidneys, and spleen engorged with blood, the liver and spleen soft, the latter enlarged in some cases to twice the normal size, the blood fluid.

**Symptoms.**—There is usually a *prodrome* of two or three days, manifested by simple *uneasiness* and *discomfort*, after which the disease is usually ushered in suddenly by severe epigastric *pain*, *constipation*, *nausea*, and *vomiting*. Hence the term "puking" sickness. There is also moderate *fever* and disproportionate *thirst*. The *pulse* at first is full; later, small and rapid. There is marked *tremor* or muscular twitching on attempt at motion. The constipation is characteristic. The tongue is swollen and the breath is peculiarly foul. This is said to be diagnostic. A typhoid state may supervene, preceded by restlessness, irritability, coma, and even convulsions.

**Prognosis.**—The duration of the disease is from two to ten days or longer. The short cases are the fatal ones. When recovery takes place, convalescence may be protracted three to four weeks.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is symptomatic, and consists chiefly in combating by alcohol, aromatic spirits of ammonia, and food the tendency to weakness. Happily, the disease appears to be dying out as land is improved.

Prophylaxis may be secured by fencing off cattle affected and carefully guarding against the use of infected food and milk.

## SYPHILIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Lues venerea; The Pox.*

**Definition.**—Syphilis is a specific constitutional disease of human beings, due to inoculation by a special virus or to hereditary transmission, charac-

<sup>1</sup> Mosely, *The Cause of Trembles in Cattle, Sheep and Horses and of Milk-sickness in People*. Ohio Naturalist, vol. viii, no. 2, 1902.  
Crawford, *The Supposed Relationship of White Snake-root to Milk-sickness or Trembles*. Government Printing Office, 1908.



terized by a tendency to localized deposits of various inflammatory new formations. Under the former condition it is known as *acquired syphilis*; under the latter, as *hereditary syphilis*. It is apparently confined to the human race and to monkeys.

**Historical.**—Syphilis was first described as a separate form of venereal disease in 1494, when it prevailed as an epidemic among the troops of Charles VIII before Naples. Thence it spread over Italy into France, Germany and the rest of Europe. As this was immediately after the discovery of America it has been alleged that the disease was introduced into Europe from America, and it has also been claimed that it was introduced from Africa. In fact, we have very little definite knowledge on the subject, but there seems good reason to believe that the disease is much older than the dates given.

**Etiology.**—In common with all infectious diseases, syphilis is ascribed to the operation of a bacillus, and two or three have been selected as responsible and then abandoned.

The latest is the *Spirochæta pallida* of Schaudinn first described in 1905 and which has displaced Lustgarten's bacillus described in 1884. The spirochæta is a delicate spiral, 4 to 10 microns long, averaging 7 microns (about that of the red corpuscle of man) and in width may be of unmeasurable thinness to 1.2 micron.<sup>1</sup> It is found with striking constancy in the primary and secondary focal lesions of acquired syphilis, whether the lesions are on the surface or interior of the body. It was found in the pharyngeal secretions of a congenitally syphilitic child and in the conjunctival secretions, but rarely in the general blood stream, explaining the difficulty in producing syphilis by inoculating the blood of syphilitics. The evidence in favor of the important rôle assigned to this organism is derived from its presence in syphilitic lesions and from experiments on the anthropoid apes which are susceptible to syphilis and which is communicable from one ape to another.

Among the most recent papers upon this subject those by Flexner, Uhle and Mackinney<sup>2</sup> appear to confirm fully previous observations which go to show that the *spirochæta pallida* is the cause of syphilis.

Syphilis is one of the most highly contagious diseases. In the first place, the blood of the syphilitic is inoculable though with difficulty and capable of producing the disease. Further, the secretions of all primary and secondary lesions of the skin and mucous membranes are similarly potent. The products of the third or gummatous stage are not so regarded, although opinions are not unanimous on this point. A raw or abraded surface is a necessary condition of inoculation. The physiological secretions, such as the tears, milk, nasal and bronchial mucus, do not communicate the disease when inoculated, although they may become virulent by contamination with the poisonous secretions. Exceptions to this law are the spermatozoid of man and the ovule of woman, each of which, if derived from a syphilitic source, is capable of infecting the other.

The acquired disease has three stages—a *primary*, *secondary*, and *tertiary*. The *primary* is characterized by a primary sore associated with

<sup>1</sup> See papers by Schaudinn and Hoffmann, "Deutsche med. Wochenschrift," 1905. Numerous other papers have been written since the original of Schaudinn and Hoffmann, by Neisser, Metschnikoff and Roux. Rekzt, Noeggerath and Straehlen, Simon Flexner and others. For a good bibliography see Flexner's paper, "Medical News," 1905. No other organism has received such strong evidence in its favor, although the proof dare not as yet be considered conclusive.

<sup>2</sup> The Demonstration of Spirochæta Pallida in Lesions of Acquired Syphilis. "Journal of the American Medical Association," February 16, 1907.

glandular enlargement in the neighborhood of the seat of inoculation. The *secondary* stage furnishes lesions of the skin and mucous membranes among which sore throat is especially conspicuous. The *tertiary* is characterized by the affections of deep-seated structures, the osseous and nervous systems, the liver, spleen, kidney, and testicle; also the subcutaneous and sub-mucous tissues.

The initial sore makes its appearance within six weeks after exposure, usually in two or three weeks. The phenomena of the second stage usually show themselves within three months or from six to 12 weeks. The third stage is more difficult to define by temporal limits. It is by years rather than months, and is characterized, as stated, by the involvement of the deeper-seated organs. Hereditary syphilis, when not present at birth, makes its appearance within the first three months' after six months the child may be regarded as safe.

In the vast majority of cases, acquired syphilis comes from sexual intercourse, but it may be the result of contact in many ways, as by the lips, teeth, infected hands, and other parts of the body. Drinking-cups, utensils, and other articles used by the infected in common with others sometimes convey the infection. Physicians are not infrequently infected in midwifery practice, the initial lesion making its appearance around the nail or in the web between the first and second fingers. Wet-nurses acquire the disease from syphilitic nurslings, the chancre occurring in a fissure or abrasion of the nipple. Vaccination has in rare instances been a means of infection.

Hereditary syphilis may be transmitted through the father or mother. In the former instance it is called *sperm inheritance*; in the latter, *germ inheritance*. Syphilis may be communicated by the father while the subject of the active disease or after all signs of it have disappeared. On the other hand, a syphilitic father may beget healthy children. The question has sometimes to be decided by a physician as to whether a syphilitic, apparently recovered, may marry with safety to offspring. It will be seen from the above that an absolute answer dare not be given; but this much may be said, that the longer the interval since the primary attack the less likely is the offspring to be tainted, and it is generally acknowledged that systematic and continuous treatment may eliminate the disease altogether. An interval of not less than three years should be insisted upon between the disappearance of the last symptom and the patient's marriage. It is to be remembered also that each successive child of syphilitic parents shows less signs of the disease, until finally healthy offspring results.

A syphilitic mother may, of course, bear syphilitic children from germ infection, producing thus true hereditary syphilis; but a child may also be infected at the moment of its birth, when the syphilis is congenital but not inherited. On the other hand, a woman may bear a syphilitic child, and, though herself without signs of the disease, will not, according to Colles' law, be infected by her child should she suckle it while it has syphilitic ulcers of the lips and tongue. Yet a healthy nurse who suckles this same child or merely handles and dresses it may be infected. Such a woman is supposed to have received protective inoculation without evident signs of the disease; and we may have here an example of protection through a natural antitoxin absorbed from the syphilitic fetus by its nonsyphilitic mother.

According to Profata's law in contrast with Colles', immunity is observed in the offspring of parents one or both of whom are syphilitic. It is noted in children who themselves exhibit no sign of hereditary syphilis. There is reason to believe that such immunity may be brief. A child born of a syphilitic mother who contracted the disease during pregnancy may suckle the mother without being infected even if there be lesions on the nipple, immunity having been acquired.

A woman may be infected after conception, when the child may be born nonsyphilitic or syphilitic by placental transmission.

Of course, when both father and mother are infected, the chances of the offspring being infected are doubled.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—I. *Of Acquired Syphilis.*—At least five sets of lesions may be traced to acquired syphilis. The *first* is the initial lesion, the chancre or primary sore at the point of inoculation making its appearance two or three weeks after exposure. This constitutes primary syphilis. Beginning as a wounded or abraded spot, a vesicle or papule develops, which subsequently softens in the center and forms an ulcer with a hard, gristly base and edge, constituting the hard or indurated chancre. It is found to consist in a dense infiltration of small cells, some of which develop into large formative (epithelioid) cells and others even into giant cells, but no further differentiation takes place; for the most part the infiltration breaks down and is absorbed, a few of the cells going to form the cicatrix. In the broken-down tissue is found the spirocheta pallida. The chancre is found usually in males on some part of the penis, especially on the prepuce, and in females on the labia or vaginal part of the cervix. It may be so small as to escape notice, especially when within the urethra. The sore lasts from three or four weeks to as many months. Its peculiar induration is easily recognized by taking it up and pinching it between the fingers, though it is often not characteristic on the flat mucous membranes of the genitalia of women.

Along with the chancre there is a *second* lesion, an adenitis of the adjacent lymph glands, which may suppurate, forming a bubo, or there may be a hyperplasia of connective tissue, terminating in persistent induration of the gland. It usually appears simultaneously with the induration or soon after it is established. Buboes may be long stationary and are then said to be indolent. They may be multiple. They belong to the symptoms of primary syphilis.

The *third* lesion is the mucous patch, soft papule or *condyloma latum*, which is one of the events of the secondary stage of syphilis. It has its seat on mucous membrane or on soft, moist skin, as in the perineum, groins, between the toes, at the junction between the skin and mucous membrane at the angle of the mouth, and about the anus. It consists of an inflammatory infiltration of the epidermis and corium with small cells. A more highly differentiated infiltration of the papillæ of the mucous membrane is the acuminate condyloma, or *veneral* wart, especially common about the vulva and anus.

The *fourth* lesion is the cutaneous affection, or *syphilid*, of which there is a roseolar or macular, a papular, a pustular, a squamous, and a tubercular variety. All are characterized by a copper-colored hue, especially permanent after the other features have subsided, and a tendency to symmetrical

distribution. The *macular* or roseolar syphilid affects more particularly the abdomen, the chest, and the front of the arms, while the face is exempt. This syphilid persists a week or two. The *papular* eruption is in groups on the face and trunk. The *pustular* eruption often closely resembles that of small-pox. The *squamous* syphilid resembles other squamæ, but it is especially distinguished by its coppery hue. It involves preferably the backs of the arms and the front of the thighs—the extensor surfaces—and is, moreover, rare. The skin syphilids are symmetrical in the early stages, but in the latest stages become irregular and unilateral in their distribution.

The *fifth* or remaining set of lesions constitutes the tertiary manifestation, and involves the deeper tissues, such as the subcutaneous tissues, the osseous and the nervous systems, the liver, lung and kidney. They include especially the *tubercular* and *fibroid induration*. The first occur in single nodules or may coalesce to form a solid tubercular patch; also form serpiginous patches or segments of circles. They are confined to certain regions, as a rule, face, back, and more rarely extremities, and are usually unilateral. The most widespread is the *fibroid induration*, consisting in a development of fibroid tissue like that of chronic inflammation. The new tissue thus formed arises around the blood-vessels, and consists, at first, of a small-celled infiltration, which later is converted into fibroid tissue. It is found also in the periosteum, the sheaths of the nerve trunks, the capsules, and interstitial tissue of organs and muscles. It occupies, for the most part, small areas surrounded by normal, unaffected structures. When in the capsules of organs it sends prolongations into their interior, which partition off the organ and by their subsequent contraction give rise to irregular thickening and cicatricial puckering.

A differentiation of this fibroid change, a most characteristic lesion of syphilis, is the *gumma*, a yellowish white fibrous nodule, closely continuous by its outer layer with the connective tissue of the organ in which it is imbedded. It varies in size from that of a pin point to three to five centimeters (1 to 2 inches) in diameter. Histologically, it is with tolerable ease separated into three parts—a central or oldest part in a state of atrophic cheesy degeneration, an intermediate layer of imperfect fibrous tissue, and an external layer of vascular granulation-tissue rich in cells. It is frequently associated with the fibroid change above described. In the degenerative changes to which the gumma is subject it may produce extreme destruction of the organ in which it is imbedded.

The seats of the gummy tumor are the skin, subcutaneous and submucous tissue, muscles, fasciæ, bone, where it forms the *syphilitic node*, the connective tissue of organs, especially the liver, brain, testicle, and kidney, less commonly the lungs. When in submucous tissues, it may give rise to deep-seated ulceration and suppurative processes, leading to destruction, not only of soft tissues, but also of bone. Especially frequent and repulsive in its result is the destruction of the nasal bones with perforation of the palate. No trustworthy observations going to show that the *Spirochæta pallida* occurs in the gummy tumor have as yet been made.

Another variety of deep-seated syphilids, *syphilitic rupia*, consists primarily of large pustules, which dry and crust over with laminated scabs,

while beneath is a deep ulcer. This may subsequently heal, leaving a scar. Large pustular lesions and tubercular syphiloderms occur especially in the neighborhood of the sacrum.

Another tertiary lesion of syphilis, although probably not peculiar to it, is *syphilitic arteritis*, which consists in a cellular thickening of the vessel-walls, beginning in the intima and intruding thence on the lumen of the vessels. The outer coat is abnormally vascular and infiltrated with small cells that also invade the muscular coat. These are the phenomena of obliterative endarteritis, which have thus far been studied only in the vessels of the brain by Greenfield and Huebner.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of acquired syphilis are so largely the morbid states described under the head of morbid anatomy that most of them need only be enumerated in connection with the date of their appearance. The chancre or primary sore and the bubo, which together constitute primary syphilis, have been sufficiently described.

The secondary symptoms manifest themselves usually from the sixth to the 12th week, but may be as late as three months. *Sore throat* is one of the first symptoms, and is commonly associated with *fever*, which rarely exceeds 101° F. (38.3° C.). It may be remittent and even strikingly intermittent, and in rare instances rises much higher than 101° F. (38.3° C.), reaching 104° F. (40° C.), and even 105° F. (40.5° C.). The sore throat alluded to is associated with hyperemia of the fauces, often with intractable, gray-based ulcers, and less frequently with mucous patches and syphilitic warts. The inflammation may extend from the throat into the Eustachian tube and middle ear, producing impaired hearing. The larynx is especially liable to become the seat of ulceration, which may heal and produce marked deformity.

Then there are the syphilids named. Along with these, a very common symptom is the *falling out of the hair*, and especially from the eyebrows, giving rise to a striking change in the facial expression. An inflammatory condition at the root of the nails, *syphilitic onychia*, causes them to become brittle and distorted. Other secondary symptoms not mentioned are *iritis*, and more rarely *choroiditis* and *retinitis*. The former presents itself in from three to six months after the primary chancre, and is one of the most painful and trying of symptoms, requiring prompt and energetic treatment. Involvement of the *ear* ossicles is rare but possible, producing deafness.

*Joint affections* are sometimes associated with tertiary syphilis. These may, of course, result from the invasion of the joint ends of the bones by the gummatous syphilitic disease, to which they are subject, but there may also be direct involvement of the *serous* tissues themselves by inflammatory and gummatous processes that give rise to pain and interfere with motion. The *bone affections* of syphilis are characterized by nocturnal pains, said to be due to pressure from distended veins.

The involvement of internal *glandular* organs occurs later, ten or more years after the primary lesion, though precocious tertiary lesions of this kind have been reported much earlier. *Amyloid disease* is a very common tertiary affection, involving liver and spleen and producing some of the most striking enlargements of the former. But cirrhosis and cicatricial markings

are also common. Syphilitic lesions of the liver are of such a degree and importance as to demand separate consideration under the diseases of that organ.

An *atrophy of the follicular glands at the base of the tongue*—smooth atrophy of the base of the tongue—was early (at least as early as 1863) pointed out by Virchow as a symptom of "late syphilis" meaning thereby syphilis acquired late in life. Lewin and Heller<sup>1</sup> made a special study of it. They ascribed it to an interstitial inflammation and probably irreparable. Sixty-two percent of cases investigated were over 40 years old, more frequently found in men because primary and secondary syphilis are so infrequently sought for in women.

A *sarcocoe* involving the whole testicle is among the tertiary affections often mistaken for tuberculosis, from which it may be distinguished by the fact that the latter is accompanied by tuberculosis elsewhere, and involves the proper structure of the testicle instead of the whole organ. *Sclerosis of the spinal cord* is frequently associated with syphilitic history, and it is often ascribed to it. A special condition is an involvement of the nervous system of such importance as to require a separate section. *Gummy tumors of the brain* occur, producing pressure symptoms; a similar association is true of *arteriosclerosis* as well as the *arteritis obliterans* alluded to.

Sooner or later the syphilitic becomes *anemic* and an examination of the blood recognizes a reduction in the number of red corpuscles, in the hemoglobin and an increase in the white cells.

II. *Of Hereditary Syphilis*.—Except the primary chancre all the symptoms described as occurring in acquired syphilis may be present in the congenital form. It may be said, in a word, that visceral alterations are more prominent, especially those involving abdominal organs. It is necessary, therefore, to mention here only those that may be regarded as additional.

Among the most important of these is repeated *abortion*. It is very common to have four or five and even more abortions, while each successive one usually takes place longer after conception until finally a living child is born. Such aborted products are shriveled, the skin exfoliates, and there is often reason to believe they have been some time dead. Syphilitic children born at term have evidently been arrested in development, are shriveled and wizen-faced, and may suffer from cutaneous syphilids.

The so-called *pemphigus neonatorum*, with blebs occurring about the wrists, hands, ankles and feet, is characteristic. There is also apt to be enlarged liver and spleen. Or a child may be born apparently healthy and take on these symptoms after three or four weeks. Lesions of hereditary syphilis are reported as beginning even later than this, up to the sixth month. This is, however, unusual. *Rhinitis*, or nasal catarrh with *snuffles*, is one of the earliest symptoms, often followed by cutaneous lesions, particularly about the nates. *Fissures* about the lips and ulcerations on the mucocutaneous surface may be present, and the discharges from these are inoculable.

<sup>1</sup>Lewin & Heller, "Die glatte Atrophie der Zungenwurzel und ihr Verhältniss zur Syphilis." "Virchow's Archive," 138 p. 1894. The latest paper which also reviews the literature is by Nathaniel Bowditch Potter entitled "The Value of Virchow's Smooth Atrophy of the Base of the Tongue in the Diagnoses of Syphilis," published in the "Boston Medical and Surgical Journal," March 8, 1906.

Disease of the *epiphyseal cartilages* of long bones and of the cartilages of the ribs is a very common symptom of hereditary syphilis. The zone of the cartilage adjacent to the bone exhibits proliferated cartilage cells and prolongations over the end into the diaphysis instead of being sharply separated. There is *tendency to hemorrhage*. A *syphilitic cry*, high pitched and harsh, is described. To these may be added any of the symptoms already mentioned under acquired syphilis.

A later symptom is "notched teeth," first described by Jonathan Hutchinson as characteristic and distinctive of hereditary syphilis. The teeth affected are the permanent incisors of the upper and lower jaws. The appearances are not uniform, and are better appreciated by examining the accompanying drawings than from descriptions. Other late symptoms are *keratitis*, *iritis*, *impaired hearing* from ear affections, *periostitis*, and *splenic* and *hepatic* enlargement.

If it survive the earlier lesions or escape them, the syphilitic child remains undeveloped and stunted in its growth, and in consequence of arrest of development a singular reversal of the appearance of premature age,



FIG. 18.—The lower incisors of a girl, aged fifteen, the subject of inherited syphilis. The teeth are very short, rounded and peglike, with wide interspaces. This set shows the most typical condition ever exhibited by the lower set—(after Hutchinson).

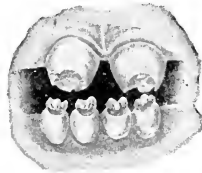


FIG. 19.—The two upper and four lower incisors (permanent) of a girl, the subject of inherited syphilis, all recently cut. The upper teeth are narrow from side to side, at their edges, and show a thin middle lobe, bounded above by a crescentic line. The lower teeth are rounded and show foliated extremities. All the teeth are small and spaces occur between the adjacent ones. In the upper ones the crescentic thin mid-lobe, and in the lower ones the foliated extremities will, before long, break away—(after Hutchinson)

described as characteristic of the syphilitic child at birth, takes place. The new-born syphilitic child looks prematurely old. A popular novelist has aptly described the appearance of the syphilitic child in the terse phrase, "a little old man with a cold in his head." The syphilitic who outlives his childhood remains, however, younger looking than he actually is, inasmuch that a young man of 20 may appear as though he were but 12, a condition to which Fournier applies the name *infantilism*. In such the forehead is prominent, the frontal bosses are marked, the bridge of the nose is depressed, its tip turned up. The head may be asymmetrical.

**Diagnosis.**—The recognition of general syphilis is not usually difficult. The symptoms described are of themselves distinctive, and if there be added the history of exposure or heredity they are unmistakable. When there is doubt the administration of specific remedies will soon clear it up. In consequence of the fever and frequently associated splenic enlargement with roseola, the second stage of syphilis has been confounded with typhoid fever.

The pustular syphilid has sometimes caused its subject to be taken to a small-pox hospital, where, however, time soon dissolves all doubt.

The so-called "Justus test" is based upon the following proposition: Mercury destroys the hemoglobin of the blood. In the nonsyphilitic subject the organism rapidly replaces the lost pigment. In the syphilitic patient, however, the percentage being reduced by the disease, the organism cannot at once restore the still further reduction caused by the use of mercury. Consequently the first examination after an inunction or injection of mercury will show a distinct fall of from 10 to 20 per cent. This reduction is in turn followed as treatment is continued by a steady rise to the normal where it remains as long as treatment is maintained.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of acquired syphilis depends wholly on the treatment. With early treatment properly conducted it is favorable; without treatment or with defective treatment the most serious consequences result, while the physical inconvenience and suffering scarcely exceed the mental misery which the knowledge of the presence of so loathsome a disease entails. In congenital syphilis treatment is less satisfactory for the severer manifestations, and it is perhaps fortunate that so many perish in infancy or early childhood. Even those most fortunate remain delicate and vulnerable to disease through life, and too often fall victims to causes which but slightly affect the healthy man and woman.

**Treatment.**—*Prophylaxis.*—Against sexual syphilis the only prophylactic measure to be relied upon is sexual purity. The duty of the physician is plain in respect to this, and the medical man who advises illicit sexual intercourse for any reason degrades his calling. Medical men should be exceedingly cautious in their necessary professional contact with all suspected of having syphilis and protect themselves against accidental infection. It is to be remembered that the secretions of all primary and secondary lesions, as well as the blood of syphilitics, may transmit the disease.

*Treatment of the Primary Sore.*—With the present view that the hard chancre, which makes its appearance after a *period of incubation* of at least two weeks, is simply the local expression of a general disease, nothing is gained by "burning it out." The indication is simply to heal the ulcer as thoroughly and as soon as possible. Fortunately, there is little difficulty in accomplishing this. A simple dressing, as lint wet with bichlorid solution 1 to 2000, or mercurial ointment smeared on adhesive plaster, with an uncovered edge so as to secure adhesion, will accomplish the healing in a short time. Iodoform, bismuth, calomel or acetanilid may be dusted over the sore.

*The Constitutional Treatment.*—This should begin at once. *Mercury* and *iodin* are the two remedies, and if properly used will eradicate the second stage and hold the third in abeyance even after it has manifested itself. *Mercury* is the remedy *par excellence* of the *second stage*; iodid of potassium of the *third*. The best method of administration for mercury is undoubtedly by *inunction*. The following is the plan to be pursued: A warm bath is taken, if possible, each day, and immediately thereafter 1 dram (4 gm.) of mercurial ointment is spread between the hands and rubbed, one day on the inside of one thigh, the next on the inside of the other; again, under the arm, on the chest, and so on until each part of the body covered by softer skin is treated, after which the same course can be re-



peated. The friction is to be kept up until the skin is thoroughly dry, half an hour being usually necessary. The part rubbed should be washed off the following day. Parts covered with hair are to be avoided, because mercurial eczema, characterized by pustules starting from the hair follicles, is more apt to be produced in these localities. During this time the patient should not smoke, and the teeth should be frequently and carefully cleansed and the mouth washed with solution of chlorate of potash with a view of averting mercurial sore mouth. Sooner or later, however, sore mouth may manifest itself by a fetid odor, swollen gums, and a sensation as though the teeth were loose, when the treatment should be suspended for a week or ten days. The daily friction should be kept up for 30 days, if possible, after which, if no symptoms are present, it may be discontinued.

The inunctions should be followed up by the use of protiodid of mercury  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.016 gm.) three times a day, or the biniodid,  $\frac{1}{16}$  grain (0.004 gm.) three times a day. The former is usually preferred because less irritating. This last addition to the treatment should be kept up indefinitely. By such means as these tertiary symptoms can be averted if the patient is but willing to continue the treatment. The great difficulty is to secure this. He tires of the monotony and the trouble involved in a faithful adherence to the directions, and symptoms sooner or later return. Should secondary symptoms recur a course of inunctions may be repeated.

In lieu of the inunction, the *hydrargyrum cum creta*, or gray powder, may be used. It is the favorite of Jonathan Hutchinson, who gives it in form of a pill, 1 grain (0.066 gm.), with 1 grain (0.066 gm.) of Dover's powder, from four to six times a day, and is commended by my colleague, Louis A. Duhring, who has used it with great success.

Again, the mercury may be administered by *fumigation*. For this the patient sits on a chair, wrapped in blankets to the chin, as in a tent. Under the chair is placed a spirit lamp and over this a tin plate on which calomel is spread. It is volatilized by the heat and deposited with the vapor on the patient's skin. The exposure should last 20 *minutes*, after which the patient should be put to bed wrapped in blankets, without washing or drying.

Most recently, mercury has been administered by direct *injection* into the muscles. One-third grain (0.0216 gm.) of bichlorid dissolved in 20 minims (1.333 c.c.) of water is injected once a week, or from 1 to 2 grains (0.066 to 0.132 gm.) of calomel in 20 minims (1.333 c.c.) of glycerin and water. The injection is made deep into the muscles, and not in the subcutaneous tissue, through silver canulæ. The points selected are the sides of the thorax and back, where abscesses are said to be less likely to occur. Great care should be taken in sterilizing instruments. The nicest attention to these points is, however, still followed at times by abscesses.

In the treatment of the *third stage the iodids* are especially useful. It is here that massive doses of iodid of potassium are indicated and often produce such magical results. The most convenient mode of administration is the saturated solution, of which 1 drop contains a grain (0.066 gm.). Starting with 10 drops, a drop may be added each day to the dose until the symptoms yield, that is, until the gummy tumors melt away. Pressure symptoms and head and bone pains are relieved. The iodid is well admin-

istered in milk. The indications for its discontinuance or reduction in the dose are the erythematous rash, coryza, and salivation and constriction about the throat due to swelling of the salivary glands.

### THE GONORRHEAL INFECTION.

Recent studies go to show that the gonorrheal infection is scarcely less harmful and widespread in its effects than syphilis. These effects, formerly limited to the primary infection, the ophthalmia and gonorrheal arthritis in men and women, have been found to be responsible for the vast majority of inflammatory pelvic troubles in women that make life a martyrdom and child-bearing an impossibility. The explanation of this appears to lie in the fact that a urethral discharge continues to be infectious long after it has lost its purulent character, and the only test of recovery from gonorrheal infection is a bacteriological one. At least such is the inevitable conclusion after reading the able and exhaustive paper on "Gonorrhea: its Dangers to Society," by Albert Neisser,<sup>1</sup> of Breslau. This is a startling statement, but should be proclaimed from the housetops if it will have any influence in preventing infected men from infecting innocent women whom they have married under the impression that they are free from disease.

These ills which have been referred to are largely surgical and do not concern us as physicians, for medical treatment is generally unavailing. One is, however, classed among medical ailments and will be here considered. It is—

#### GONORRHEAL ARTHRITIS.

**Definition.**—Gonorrheal arthritis is a septic arthritis due to the gonococcus.

**Morbid Anatomy and Pathology.**—We do not often have an opportunity to study the morbid changes in the joints in this affection, since patients never die of this disease alone. Reasonably, however, we may expect a primary hyperemia, and later the phenomena peculiar to inflammation in similar structures—viz., exudation into the joint cavity, including the out-wandered white blood-corpuscles, which are, however, rarely so numerous as to constitute pus. The periarthritic tissues, including the sheaths of tendons, are invaded by the exudate, and pus has been found in these sheaths. There may be not only change in the shape, but impairment also in the motility of the joints. They may become stiff and swollen as in chronic rheumatism.

Now as to the nature of this disease. Gonorrheal rheumatism is an affection in which symptoms identical with those of rheumatism are more or less closely associated with gonorrhea. These rheumatoid symptoms usually appear from six to ten days after the discharge is seen. They may appear, however, much later—as much as four or five months or even a year after the discharge sets in, or during a chronic gleet. A lately married woman may be infected by a husband who has gleet, indeed, as has been mentioned, after all visible objective signs of gonorrhea have disappeared from him,

<sup>1</sup> "Medical News," January 13 and 20, 1900.

though a bacterial examination may discover the gonococcus. There seems to be no relation between the severity of the symptoms and that of the original disease. The discharge, if present, generally continues with the onset of the joint symptoms, although it often abates, and may even cease altogether for a time. It may even recur with the disappearance of the rheumatic symptoms. It cannot be said that the true relation between these two very definite conditions is exactly known. The term *gonorrheal rheumatism* is very generally recognized in all languages, and some English and American physicians do not hesitate to speak of the disease as a species of rheumatism. This is certainly erroneous. It is doubtless caused by the gonococcus, which, when once present, seems to be ineradicable, though it may continue latent until conditions favorable for its activity arise. Witness its power to cause ulcerative endocarditis. These views are confirmed by modern bacteriological studies, which have found gonococci in the pus, in the tendinous sheaths, and more rarely in the nonpurulent exudate. The simple nonpurulent synovitis and arthritis may be the result of absorption of ptomaines furnished by the urethral pus.

Although the gonorrheal poison is quite sufficient to produce the arthritis *de ipso*, it frequently happens that cold co-operates as an exciting or predisposing cause.

Gerhardt found that out of 928 cases of arthritis 7.43 per cent. were gonorrheal, while Gricolle found that out of 4423 cases of gonorrhea 16 per cent. developed arthritis.

**Symptoms.**—A study of these admits a classification as made by R. P. Howard, of Montreal, into seven subdivisions:

1. The purely *arthralgic* form, *i. e.*, cases characterized by pain, but not much other evidence of local inflammation. Fever is also absent, although the condition is apt to be polyarthritic, wandering from joint to joint.

2. *Rheumatoid gonorrheal arthritis*, resembling very closely acute inflammatory rheumatism. In this division fever is added to the local symptoms of rheumatism, and polyarthritic involvement is also common. The fever, however, is less severe than would be expected from the severity of other symptoms. The maximum temperature may be 102° F. (39° C.), more frequently it is less than this.

3. *Acute gonorrheal monoarthritis*, in which one joint only is involved, with severe pain and swelling and moderate fever. It is the knee-joint that is most commonly attacked in this monoarthritic variety. Next in order follow the ankle, shoulder, elbow, and wrist; any one of these is liable to be the seat of the trouble. Suppuration is rare.

4. *Chronic gonorrheal arthritis*, without or with effusion (chronic hydroarthritis). Suppuration, though rare, does take place and pus is found in the joint cavity. In these cases, too, there is generally slight elevation of temperature.

5. The *periarthritic* variety, including cases in which the periarthritic tissues are involved, including the capsule, ligaments, tendons, and adjacent fibrous structures. The periosteum is included among these, but the joint cavity itself is not affected.

6. A variety which invades *fibrous tissue not connected with joints*, as

the plantar fascia, the sclerotic coat of the eye and iris, the pericardium and endocardium.

7. The *septicemic form*, where, in addition to the arthritis, there is general sepsis and endocarditis. In this event there are the usual signs of blood invasion, high fever with or without chills, and sweats.

**Complications.**—Isolated and even multiple cases of endocarditis associated with gonorrheal rheumatism have been reported by German and French physicians during the past. The studies of Gluzinski (1888) and R. L. MacDonnell<sup>1</sup> (1891) have settled the question in favor of a causal relation, the latter having found endocarditis present in four out of 27 cases of gonorrheal arthritis, while Gluzinski collected 31 cases. They may reasonably be attributed to the action of the microorganisms on the valves. Malignant endocarditis may be thus caused.

Pericarditis and pleurisy similarly caused may complicate the disease, as may also iritis and sclerotitis.

**Diagnosis.**—This depends chiefly on the history of infection.

**Prognosis.**—The disease is difficult to cure at times and prolonged treatment is necessary.

**Treatment.**—This is not always satisfactory. The salicylates are sometimes distinctly efficient, especially in the more acute forms. Iodid of potassium is perhaps the drug most commonly found useful, and its effect is increased when combined with the bichlorid of mercury. It must, however, be associated with rest and local treatment. The former is sometimes better accomplished by the use of splints, the latter by blisters or iodine. General roborant treatment by tonics and good food may also be necessary. The ammoniated tincture of guaiac may also be used as in chronic rheumatism.

James C. Wilson<sup>2</sup> has reported satisfactory results from large doses of the syrup of iodid of iron, as much as a fluidram (4 c.c.) four times a day, beginning with smaller doses.

## RHEUMATIC FEVER.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Acute Rheumatism; Acute Articular Rheumatism; Inflammatory Rheumatism.*

**Definition.**—An acute febrile, infectious, but noncontagious fever, characterized by arthritis, usually multiple.

**Etiology.**—While no distinctive bacterium has as yet been isolated, Hermann Sahli found in inflamed joints in which there was no suppuration a bacterium closely resembling the *staphylococcus citreus*, and Leyden a diplococcus differing from that of pneumonia. F. J. Poynton and F. A. Paine with the diplococcus isolated from rheumatic fever have obtained in rabbits results which go to show that the organism with which they experimented is able to produce lesions of rheumatic fever, namely, mitral valvulitis, pericarditis, and polyarthritis. The diplococcus experimented with was obtained from the joints, from the throat in a case of rheumatic

<sup>1</sup> "Gonorrheal Rheumatism." "Am. Jour. of the Med. Sci." January, 1891.

<sup>2</sup> "Iodid of Iron in the Treatment of Certain Forms of Infective Arthritis," "Jacobi Festschrift," 1900, p. 350.

angina, from the bladder, and after death from the morbid product of rheumatic pericarditis and endocarditis. Again, by injecting a young rabbit with the organisms from the blood and cerebrospinal fluid of the infected rabbit they also produced polyarthritis and endocarditis in the second animal. Some of the animals recovered and others perished. In addition to the symptoms mentioned, there were wasting and involuntary clonic movements like those of chorea and the animal was also very nervous. With the chorea there was valvulitis.<sup>1</sup> In another instance the *micrococcus lanceolatus* was found. In view of the fact that several organisms have been found associated with rheumatic polyarthritis it may be true, as Flexner and Barker<sup>2</sup> suggested, that acute articular rheumatism has no etiological unit, but may be brought about by the entrance into the blood of one of several different pyogenic organisms under circumstances incompatible with the development of the phenomena of a general septicemia, but which may give rise to an inflammation of one of the several serous membranes, including the synovial, as well as the meninges, pleura, pericardium, or endocardium.

Among sources of infection rarely thought of are suppurative affections of the mouth cavity, such as tonsillar abscess, follicular tonsillitis, carious teeth and the stumps of roots of teeth. The studies of Goodale,<sup>3</sup> H. C. Wood, Jr.,<sup>4</sup> Gurich,<sup>5</sup> Isaac Adler,<sup>6</sup> among others, go to show that the tonsils are the route of many general infections, of which rheumatic fever is the most common. In all cases of articular rheumatism the mouth should, therefore, be examined, and if lesions of the tonsils or adjacent parts are found, they should be treated to the extent of the removal of the tonsil if necessary.

A *predisposing cause* seems, however, to be necessary in the majority of cases, and exposure to cold is the most common, although epidemics of acute rheumatism occur quite independently of such exposure. While sudden changes in temperature, also, often afford the needed conditions, the continued action of moderate degrees of cold, especially when accompanied by moisture, is almost as frequently responsible. If to these be added a lowered vitality due to insufficient food, fatigue, overwork, or all these combined, we include the majority of predisposing causes. The winter and spring, being the seasons in which the conditions of temperature and moisture operate most strongly, are those in which the disease is most prevalent. For a like reason it is more common in the temperate zones, the extreme North as well as the extreme South being for the most part exempt. In my own experience, the late spring finds many cases due to the cold and dampness of houses where fires have been prematurely dispensed with. It is a disease especially of young adults, being rare before fifteen and after fifty; while the exposing occupations, including those of driver, servant, and laborer, favor its development.

It may be still in place, in connection with the newer etiology, to

<sup>1</sup> Communication to the Pathological Society of London, Tuesday, October 16, 1900; published in the *British Med. Jour.*, October 20, 1901.

<sup>2</sup> *Am. Jour. Med. Sci.*, 1894.

<sup>3</sup> Goodale, "Archiv für Laryngologie," vii, 1.

<sup>4</sup> Wood, "The Functions of the Tonsils," *University of Pennsylvania Medical Bulletin*, 1904.

<sup>5</sup> Gurich, "Der Gelenkrheumatismus, sein tonsillärer Ursprung und seine tonsilläre Heilung," Breslau, 1905, aus "Verhandlungen des Congresses für innere Medizin, 1905."

<sup>6</sup> Adler remarks on some General Infections through the Tonsil, "New York Medical Journal," March, 1906.

mention two of the older theories of acute rheumatism. According to the *metabolic theory*, a morbid material is developed in the economy as the result of defective assimilation. Prout early named lactic acid as the peccant material, and more recently P. W. Latham has suggested a combination of lactic acid with other substances. The *nervous theory* was suggested by the late John K. Mitchell in 1831.<sup>1</sup> According to it, the nerve-centers are affected by cold, and the local lesions are trophic in character, or defects of metabolism result from the primary nervous lesion, whence arises lactic acid, which accumulates in the blood.

Acute rheumatism is a disease simulated by other affections not infrequently called rheumatic. Thus, scarlet fever is often accompanied by a painful swelling of the joints due to the specific cause of that disease, and called *rheumatic*, when it should be spoken of as scarlatinal synovitis. The same is true of the so-called gonorrheal rheumatism, which is not a rheumatism, but a gonorrheal synovitis due to the gonococcus, and not a rheumatism accurately speaking.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is little to be added to what will be described in treating of symptoms, and to what is furnished by the complications, whose morbid anatomy will also be considered in connection with the diseases that constitute them. The synovial membrane is hyperemic and swollen, and in some cases the fluid in the joints is increased, is turbid, and contains flakes of lymph, rarely pus. There may be slight erosion of the cartilages. The fibrin of the blood is usually increased.

**Symptoms.**—While rheumatic fever is seldom ushered in by a *chill*, there is more frequently a short *prodrome* of a day or two, during which the patient feels uncomfortable or has an unpleasant aching feeling in his joints. More often, however, the *painful* arthritis, which is the first symptom to attract attention, develops rapidly, coming on in a single day or night, or seemingly in a much shorter time, making locomotion at once difficult or impossible.

The joint affection has some peculiarities. In the first place, the involvement is almost always multiple, and generally includes the larger joints, such as the knee, ankle, elbow, wrist, shoulder, and hip, although none are exempt, and the phalangeal and metacarpophalangeal articulations also suffer. The toe-joints escape most frequently. It rarely happens that a single joint is involved, but its occasional occurrence must be admitted. More rarely, if ever, does it happen that all are affected, although even the vertebral articulations are sometimes invaded. The inflammation is further characterized by a tendency to involve various joints in succession. Now it will be the elbow, then the wrist; again, the knee, and then the ankle or shoulder or hip, either on the same side or the other; but while there will be a reduction in the degree of inflammation, and correspondingly of pain in the relieved joints, the relief will not be total. On another day, again, the pain will have returned to the joint which had been temporarily relieved.

While the joint-affection always includes a synovitis, the process is by no means confined to the synovial membrane. The adjacent tissues, including the capsular and lateral ligaments, and the tendons, with their sheaths, coursing over the joint, and even muscles, are all the seat of

<sup>1</sup> "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," viii., 1831, p. 55.

involvement, contributing to the swelling and to the pain by the exudation pervading them. Comparing two hands, one of which is involved and the other not, the normal depressions between the metacarpal bones in the former may be obliterated by swelling, while they remain distinct in the latter. It is for such reasons that I prefer the name *acute rheumatism* to that of acute *articular rheumatism*, which would limit the process to the joints. Rheumatic fever is probably the best term.

Finally, mention should not be omitted of the nonarticular rheumatic fever to which Kohler<sup>1</sup> has called attention, in which there are no joint-symptoms.

The *pain* is almost always extremely severe, making all motion an agony, while jarring of the bed, or even the weight of bed clothing, may cause the patient to cry out. To diminish the tension, which aggravates the pain, the patient is disposed to lie with all the limbs semiflexed.

From the beginning there is *fever*, but being seldom high at this stage, it is not commonly the first symptom to attract attention. Later, it usually increases proportionately to the extent of joint involvement, but only in the meningeal form is it extremely high. Nor does it pursue a course at all distinctive. In one case, for example, the temperature remained at 102° F. (38.8° C.) and a fraction, night and morning and throughout the day for a number of days. More rarely it rises to 104° F. (39.9° C.). Occasionally, however, there is intense hyperpyrexia, when the temperature rises rapidly from 104° to 110° F. (39.9° C. to 44.3° C.), and even higher. With this are associated cerebral symptoms of an alarming and dangerous kind, intense headache, and delirium—symptoms otherwise rather unusual in acute rheumatism. To these are often added unconsciousness, pulselessness, and cyanosis, rapidly followed by death, unless the temperature is promptly reduced. The sudden onset of these symptoms adds to their alarming character. This combination of severe symptoms is known as the meningeal form, or *rheumatism of the brain*.

The *pulse* in rheumatic fever is rapid, often disproportionately so to the fever, probably because of the nervous demoralization caused by the acute suffering.

Next to the fever and joint-inflammation, the most distinctive symptom of acute rheumatism is the *sweating*, which is copious and usually acid in reaction, sometimes even to such an extent as to impart an acid odor to the air of the room. *Sudamina* are a frequent consequence of such profuse sweating.

*Discolorations of the skin*, varying in intensity and character, make their appearance in certain cases. There may be a simple diffuse erythema, or it may be papular or tuberculated or marginate. There may be true *urticaria*, or there may be extravasations of blood, *purpuric* patches of such extent and depth as to result in sloughing of the tissues, hemorrhages from the mucous membranes, and hematuria. In one case under my observation there ensued permanent blindness from extravasation into the retina. These cases of *peliosis rheumatica* are not acknowledged by all to be truly rheumatic, the joint-affection being declared to be of a different nature, analogous to that of scorbutus and hemophilia.

<sup>1</sup> "Zeitschrift f. klin. Med.," Bd. xix, 1891.

The *urine* is also somewhat characteristic. It is scanty, of high specific gravity, very acid in reaction, and deposits a copious sediment of pink-hued mixed urates.

Very interesting and characteristic are certain *subcutaneous nodules*, attached to tendons and fascia, which have long been observed as occasional events in connection with acute rheumatism, and have been especially studied by Barlow and Warner. They vary in size from a shot to that of a pea, and may be numerous or but few. They occur on the fingers, hands and wrists, elbows, knees, scapulæ, spines of the vertebræ, and more particularly after the acuteness has passed away. They may last a few days or for months, and are more common in children than in adults.

*Disposition to recurrence* must be mentioned as a characteristic feature of acute rheumatism. Quite rarely does a person who has had one attack escape another, and it is these successive attacks which, augmenting previous cardiac lesions, finally cripple the heart until its work is greatly hampered. The intervals between successive attacks are various—from a year to four or five years—and they are the more frequent and more liable to occur the younger the subject.

**Complications.**—Very interesting in connection with acute rheumatism is the frequent involvement of the *serous membranes* other than those of the joints, such as the pleural membranes, the endocardium, pericardium and the peritoneum. The involvement of the first simulates pleurisy and the last peritonitis, and I well remember a case of my own, a girl of eight years, in whom for days I thought I was dealing with peritonitis, when a few doses of salicylate of sodium relieved my anxiety by promptly arresting the disease. In rheumatism of the pleura the absence of physical signs aids in the diagnosis. These phenomena are easily explained with the modern views of the etiology of rheumatic fever, since we have only to suppose the infectious material circulating in the blood to lodge upon the serous membranes instead of the joint tissues.

Of the same class is a much more common complication, *cardiac disease*, including endocarditis and pericarditis, the former being by far the more frequent, and confined almost exclusively to the left heart. Again, the mitral leaflets are much more frequently attacked than the aortic. While the cardiac involvement bears some relation to the severity of the disease, the mildest cases may become complicated as well as the severest. Hence, the heart should be daily examined, and for the further reason that the approach of the disease is often exceedingly insidious. On the other hand, cardiac oppression and palpitation may occur without actual structural change, and even a functional murmur may be present in acute rheumatism, and this, too, not only at the base, but also at the apex of the heart, an unusual site for such a murmur.

The proportion of cases in which cardiac complications occur, though difficult to estimate, is not less than 25 to 33 per cent. for endocarditis, with 10 per cent. more for pericarditis, making in all 35 to 43 per cent., while some estimate even a larger proportion.<sup>1</sup> Young subjects are more vulnerable than adults, and Fagge mentions an interesting difference in the sexes

<sup>1</sup> De Lancey Rochester in a paper published in the "Jour. of the Am. Med. Assn.," December 15, 1900, says 60 per cent. for endocarditis and 10 per cent. for pericarditis.



after adult life, which is, that *pericarditis* is more frequent in men above 25 than in women of the same age, probably because at this age men work much harder than women.

The variety of endocarditis is usually the verrucose, or warty—ulceration, laceration or perforation of the valve flaps being very rare. The malignant form of endocarditis does, however, occur. While the endocardial murmurs in the endocarditis of acute rheumatism are commonly soft, the pericardial murmurs are often loud, rough, and rasping, and the vibration resulting from the friction may even be communicated to the hand laid upon the precordium. Both conditions may result in complete recovery, but the former more commonly is the beginning of a chronic valvular defect.

Acute myocarditis is a fatal, but fortunately rare, complication of rheumatic fever, occurring alone or in association with endocarditis and pericarditis. It is commonly first discovered at the autopsy, though severe epigastric or precordial pain, embarrassed respiration, and cyanosis may suggest it. It probably occurs more frequently than is reported, although the facts do not substantiate it.

Other complications of rheumatism are probably also the direct result of the poison. They include inflammation of serous membranes mentioned, bronchitis, and, more rarely, pneumonia. Convalescence from the latter is said to be slow.

The *sequelæ* directly traceable to acute rheumatism are also few. Chorea, acute nephritis, and exophthalmic goiter are among those so regarded. The nephritis is, perhaps, better considered a complication resulting from the same cause, just as are the endocarditis, pleurisy, and peritonitis. Among *sequelæ* should be included the more unusual one of chronic arthritic changes identical with those of chronic articular rheumatism and even rheumatoid arthritis.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of acute rheumatism is seldom difficult, the multiple painful involvement of the joints, the fever, and sweating seldom mean anything else; but pyemia and scarlatinal and gonorrheal arthritis must be remembered as possible events. It is the monarticular variety which demands most discrimination in its determination. Traumatic synovitis, tuberculosis or white swelling, and the so-called nervous arthropathies are to be eliminated.

It is not always easy at first visit to distinguish gout from acute rheumatism, but the most serious possible error in diagnosis is to mistake a pyemic arthritis for a rheumatic arthritis. This is not an uncommon mistake where there is no evident surgical lesion to suggest it. Osteomyelitis is said to be the most common cause of such pyemias; but other bone diseases, puerperal sepsis, and gonorrhea are also causes.

**Prognosis.**—The course of acute rheumatism is characterized by many fluctuations independent of treatment, and its duration is various. Sooner or later recovery generally takes place, although it may be with a crippled heart and a susceptibility to return. More rarely the attack passes over into a subacute condition which makes the patient a sufferer for a long time, while still more rarely true chronic rheumatism is the result. It used to be said the cure for inflammatory rheumatism is "six weeks," and though this is not true of every case, many are prolonged to quite this length.

*Subacute Rheumatism.*—This term is applied to forms in which all the symptoms are less marked and more prolonged. The fever is not so high, ranging from 99° to 101° F. (37.2° to 38.3° C.). The inflammation of joints is not so intense and the joints involved are less numerous. It exhibits the same “flying” tendency. It may also be associated with cardiac complications, especially in children. It may pass into the chronic form.

**Treatment.**—Whatever may be the drawbacks to a successful treatment of acute rheumatism—and there are many—it is certain that most of those who had to treat this disease a third of a century ago now attack it with much more confidence than they did in that day. The drug which is responsible for this feeling is salicylic acid, and very few physicians think of any other at the outset of a typical case. The introduction of salicylic acid as a remedy for acute rheumatism is commonly ascribed to Buss, of Basle, some time prior to 1876, but attention was first prominently drawn to it in the latter year by Stricker, of Traube’s clinic in Berlin.

Salicylic acid and salicylate of sodium are equally efficient, but the former has been largely superseded by the latter, because less irritating and easier of administration. Still better borne is strontium salicylate. Whichever is used, there is one necessary condition of its efficiency, and that is its constitutional impression. The aim in the administration is, of course, to relieve the patient, but this effect is seldom obtained or, if obtained, is of fleeting character, until the peculiar ringing in the ears is secured. To do this in the adult 1 1/2 to 2 drams (5.8 to 7.7 gm.) of salicylic acid and from 2 to 3 drams (7.7 to 11.6 gm.) of the sodium salicylate in the first 24 hours are required. If the salicylic acid is given, it should be in capsules or compressed pills containing 7 1/2 to 10 grains (0.49 to 0.65 gm.) every two hours, followed by a little water or milk. This drug is now rarely used.

The salicylate of sodium may be given in doses of 10 to 15 grains (0.65 to 1 gm.) in solution every three hours or oftener, if the pain be severe, until relief comes, after which it should be kept up until the toxic effect is produced, when the dose should be diminished, but the drug continued; or the interval may also be prolonged. Others would give the salicylate of sodium, 1 to 1 1/2 drams (5.8 to 7.7 gm.), in a single dose, but in my experience few stomachs will submit to such quantities. The doses laid down may be pushed more rapidly if the suffering is extreme, but it is seldom necessary. Under this treatment the pain fades away, the swelling diminishes, and the anxious expression of the patient is changed to one of comfort in from 24 to 48 hours. Those who object to the salicylate treatment do so on the ground that the relief is not permanent, and it must be admitted that relapses do occur. I am confident, however, that this is often because the remedy is discontinued too soon. As stated, the drug, while it should be cut down with the appearance of relief and toxic effect, must be continued for some time after relief is obtained.

Salicin, first used by T. J. MacLagan, appears to be about as efficient as salicylic acid, given in 20 grain (1.33 gm.) doses every two hours, in suspension or dissolved in warm water. It is much less irritating than salicylic acid, but has not superseded it on this account.

We should not, however, rely wholly upon the treatment by salicylates. Warmth is commonly a useful adjuvant, and to this end the joints and limbs should be kept surrounded by warm flannels or carded wool or cotton. The patient should, further, sleep between blankets and in a flannel gown so made that it may be easily removed, with split sleeves and split skirt, because of the extreme sensitiveness of the sufferer. The bed, if possible, should be narrow because of greater convenience in handling. The opposite plan, treatment by cold, is also recommended by some.

Sometimes the salicylates are not tolerated by the stomach, even in the smallest doses likely to be useful. They may then be given by injection as follows: The rectum is washed out with warm water, and after a short rest, 20 to 40 grains (1.3 to 2.6 gm.) or more of sodium salicylate in solution are injected well up into the bowel. This may be done once in six hours with the happiest result, as I can attest from personal experience. If larger doses are thus given, 90 to 120 grains (6 to 8 gm.) being recommended by some, it is well to guard them with a little tincture of opium.

But the salicylate treatment is not always successful, even when the drug is well borne. Then the oil of wintergreen, which contains 90 per cent. of salicylate of methyl, may be tried, in doses of 10 to 15 minims (0.6 to 1 c.c.) every two hours, in capsules or in emulsion. Or it may be alternated with the salicylate, if it be a question of tolerance of the latter, the gaultheria being usually better borne for a time by the stomach. I say for a time, because, however pleasant wintergreen is at first, its continued use is apt also to excite disgust.

Oil of gaultheria is also used locally, at times with excellent results. It may be used as an embrocation in the proportion of one part of oil of gaultheria to two parts of olive oil. More usually it is applied to the affected joint on lint, which is thoroughly moistened with the oil, wrapped about the joint, and surrounded by gutta-percha, oiled silk, or other impermeable covering to prevent evaporation. This is further prevented by bandaging the whole limb. That the salicylate of methyl is thus absorbed is seen from the fact that salicyluric acid appears in the urine a few days later, while the usual evidence of the physiological action of salicylates—viz., headache or fullness of the head with ringing in the ears—takes place. In view of the gastric disturbances which the salicylates cause in some persons, this mode of administration should not be overlooked.

The *alkaline treatment* of acute rheumatism, most relied upon before the salicylic treatment came into vogue, is a treatment which is by no means worthless. This, originally instituted by Sir A. Garrod, received an additional impulse from H. W. Fuller, who insisted upon the administration of such doses as secured and maintained an alkaline reaction of the urine. This is accomplished by sufficient doses of almost any of the alkaline salts, as potassium citrate, potassium acetate, sodium carbonate, or *liquor potassæ*. Twenty grains (1.33 gm.) every two hours of the first three are generally sufficient, or 20 minims (1.3 c.c.) of the last. The dose may then be reduced, but enough should be given to maintain the alkalinity of the urine.

Failing for any cause in the treatment with salicylic acid, the alkaline treatment, or what is called the "mixed" treatment, may be employed. By

this is meant the combined alternate use of the salicylates and alkalies. This may be tried, for example, where sufficient doses of the salicylates are not well borne by the stomach, when they may be supplemented by alkalies.

While using the alkaline treatment before the salicylates came into use, it was quite usual to combine with it the "flying" blister, one of small size—say an inch square—and to apply it now to one joint and then to another. That this practice is efficient in relieving pain there can be no doubt, while there is also reason to believe that it sometimes cuts short the inflammation in the joint treated. It is more than likely that this treatment has been too much neglected since the salicylates have become popular. In the subacute and chronic stages of the disease counterirritation by blisters or iodin is also of service.

For relief of pain, opium or its derivatives is sometimes necessary, but less frequently than formerly. Here, again, the hypodermic injection of morphin,  $1/4$  grain (0.016 gm.) is most comforting, but sometimes Dover's powder in 10 grain (0.6 gm.) doses acts most kindly. Phenacetin, aspirin, or acetanilid, may be used for milder degrees.

The treatment of the *hyperpyrexia* of acute rheumatism must be prompt and energetic, as the danger to life is imminent, the extraordinarily high temperatures thus encountered being inevitably fatal in a few hours. There is but one treatment. It is the application of cold. The bath is to be preferred, although in its absence affusions of ice-cold water and rubbing the head and body with ice may be substituted. As soon as the temperature begins to mount rapidly above  $105^{\circ}$  F. ( $40.3^{\circ}$  C.) it should be used, and if delirium or unconsciousness is associated with such temperature, its need is even more imperative. When time permits, the application of cold may be more gradual. Thus the patient may be put in the bath at  $70^{\circ}$  F. ( $21^{\circ}$  C.) and the temperature further reduced, if necessary, by the addition of ice or colder water. As stated, there seems now to be no doubt about the propriety of this treatment. Numerous cases of recovery have been reported, some even where the temperature had reached  $107^{\circ}$ ,  $108^{\circ}$ , and even  $109^{\circ}$  F. ( $41.6^{\circ}$ ,  $42.2^{\circ}$ ,  $42.7^{\circ}$  C.). With the reduction of temperature, the cerebral symptoms gradually disappear.

As the disease becomes more subacute or chronic, the necessity for more active local and tonic treatment becomes urgent. It would seem that at such a stage the pathogenic cause has exhausted itself, and the disease has become more a local one, maintained by the dyscrasic state of the blood, itself brought about by the prolonged suffering. Hence roborant treatment with iron, arsenic, cod-liver oil, wine, and nourishing food becomes necessary. Indeed, the patient with acute rheumatism should be well fed throughout. Counterirritation by iodin or by blisters should be kept up with appropriate intermissions, although the results are often slow in appearing. Massage is especially valuable, and often surprisingly soothing ultimately, even although at first somewhat painful, while by it the mobility of the joints may be gradually restored. There results sometimes in the muscles in the neighborhood of the joint, and especially in the case of the shoulder, a paretic state, which is also benefited by massage, especially when associated with electricity.

Allusion may be made to remedies now more or less obsolete which have had some reputation in the treatment of acute rheumatism. Nitrate of potassium was among the most popular of older remedies. As much as 2 drams (8 gm.) were given by Brocklesby three and four times a day. It was revived by Basham, who applied it locally to the inflamed joints. It is diuretic and diaphoretic. Guaiac is also one of the older remedies still used in chronic rheumatism, which see. The bromid of ammonium had the indorsement of J. M. DaCosta in the quantity of 1 to 1 1/2 drams (4 to 6 gm.) in 24 hours.

It should be mentioned also that no less eminent authorities than Sir Alfred Garrod and the late Austin Flint, Sr., thought acute rheumatism was self-limiting, and that it terminated about as quickly without medicines as with them.

*Diet in Rheumatic Fever.*—The diet of the patient with rheumatic fever should be simple and easily assimilable, but nourishing. While there is fever the food should be liquid, but the rule of conduct should be: feed well—do not starve.

## PNEUMONIA.

### CROUPOUS PNEUMONIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Pneumonitis; Lobar Pneumonia; Fibrinous Pneumonia; Genuine Pneumonia.*

**Definition.**—An acute infectious disease characterized by inflammation of the lungs with croupous exudate and high fever, usually terminating by crisis in from five to nine days. A bacterium especially prone to occur in pairs or chains, known as the *diplococcus pneumoniae*, *diplococcus lancetolatus*, or *micrococcus pneumoniae crouposa* (Sternberg), is found in 75 per cent. of all cases of lobar pneumonia and is commonly regarded as its cause.

**Varieties.**—The term *lobar pneumonia* is used for this form because it geneally involves at least a single lobe or the greater portion of one. The term *pneumonia of the apex* is used where one or both apices of the lung are involved. A rare form of croupous pneumonia is *double pneumonia* in which both lungs are involved, though not necessarily the whole of each lung. A *massive pneumonia* is an inflammation not only of the air-vesicles, but of the bronchi and interstitial tissue of a lobe or even of the whole lung. A *creeping* or migratory pneumonia affects successively different lobes of the lung. *Epidemic pneumonia* invades large numbers or communities. The term *larval pneumonia* is applied to a form of the disease in which but a partial development of symptoms occurs, such as a moderate chill, slight fever, and imperfect local signs. It is found more particularly in connection with epidemics or with pneumonias in crowded places, as ships, camps, and garrisons.

**Historical.**—Evidently what we now know as *croupous pneumonia* was known to the earliest medical writers, including Hippocrates (B. C. 460–357), who, with others, described it with considerable accuracy as *peripneumonia*, or *pleuritis*. Hippocrates said of it that it was a “disease quickly fatal and characterized by sputa of various colors.” Lesions and symptoms corresponding to it were described by Thucydides in his description of “The Plague of Athens,” B. C. 430. Sydenham (1670), Valsalva (1666–1723), Morgagni (1761), Boerhaave (1668–1738),

all gave good descriptions, but failed to separate it from pleurisy. Laennec (1819) was the first to sharply separate the two diseases, and made the classification into the three well-known stages, which hold to-day as then—congestion, hepatization, and resolution or suppuration. The nature of the exudate was first accurately described from the macroscopic standpoint by Rokitsky in 1841. Ziemssen (1857-58) furnished valuable data on the geographical distribution of pneumonia. Grisolle (1864) especially collected valuable statistics relating to climate, development, and comparative frequency among different races.

The infectious nature of pneumonia was first advocated by Jürgensen in 1872. The presence of a special organism in the secretions of hepatized lung, in the fibrinous exudate into the alveoli, and in the sputum was demonstrated by Friedländer in 1883, and again by Fränkel in 1886. The organism discovered by Friedländer was called by him *pneumococcus*, while Fränkel applied to his the term *diplococcus*. The two organisms are not identical.

**Etiology.**—The *diplococcus* of Fränkel, to which the name Weichselbaum has also been added, is the true pneumococcus. It occurs in pairs, sometimes in rows or beads. It is also pointed at one end, whence the term *bacillus lancolatus*, 'lancet-shaped.' Like the pneumobacillus of Friedländer, it is encapsulated when in the body, but not when cultivated out of the body. When stained by the carbol fuchsin solution the coccus is intensely red, while the capsule assumes a light reddish tint. It can also be stained by Gram's method, while the pneumococcus of Friedländer cannot. It thrives on agar and in bouillon, but not on gelatin. It is probably the same organism as that found by Sternberg in rabbits inoculated with his own saliva in 1880, but not announced until April, 1881. Pasteur had also recognized the same organism in the saliva and published several notes on the same subject, January to March, 1881. The coccus occurs, according to Netter, in 20 per cent. of *all* persons. Fränkel, Talamon, and especially Weichselbaum showed the relations of this organism to pneumonia. The latter found it in 92 per cent. of cases of croupous pneumonia. William H. Welch found it in every one of ten cases of croupous pneumonia studied at the Johns Hopkins Hospital at Baltimore. It has been found in the blood, in the spleen and kidney, in endocardial vegetations, and in the pus of cerebrospinal meningitis where there was no pneumonia, as well as in the saliva of healthy persons and in the dust on the floors of houses. Its route of entrance is probably the respiratory passages, since it has been found in the nose, larynx and Eustachian tube, and is said to persist for months and even years in the saliva of healthy persons who have had pneumonia. On the other hand, it is a very perishable organism, maintaining its virulence outside of the body for four or five days only.

The *pneumococcus* of Friedländer is a short, oval bacillus, always enclosed in a capsule, which usually contains one coccus only, rarely two or more. It is nonmotile and anaerobic—that is, grows without oxygen. When treated with the aqueous staining solutions (as carbol-fuchsin), the bacillus is stained, the capsule being only slightly colored. It cannot be stained by Gram's method. The cocci do not liquefy gelatin, and stick cultures develop into a nail-like growth with a thick head. The cocci flourish in agar and on the potato. They are found in 5 1/2 per cent. of cases of pneumonia.<sup>1</sup>

That the pneumococcus of Fränkel is not the only organism capable of producing pneumonia is, however, evident from the experiments of Fränkel

<sup>1</sup>The opinion at present appears to be that the bacillus of Friedländer is a feeble pathogenic organism, a harmless saprophyte, as a rule, but able, at times, to produce inflammatory effects.

himself, of Weichselbaum, and of Pansini and Neumann. It may be accompanied by pus organisms and others which may be responsible for complications and modifications of the ordinary pneumonic process. Streptococcus-pneumonia has come to be recognized as a variety of pneumonia having a more or less distinct clinical picture that will be again referred to.

Pneumococci have been found in cultures from the blood by many observers, but by no means uniformly in pneumonia. On the other hand, the coccus has been found in the blood in other pathological states, notably cerebrospinal meningitis. The presence of pneumococci in the blood is said to emphasize gravity of prognosis, constituting a pneumococcic septicemia.

**Nature of Pneumonia.**—Thus *caused*, pneumonia may be regarded from two standpoints. First, it may be a general disease with a local expression in the lungs, analogous to the inflammation of Peyer's patches in typhoid fever; or it may be a local disease, which, like diphtheria, infects the general economy and produces the constitutional symptoms characteristic of it. As in the case of typhoid fever, there were facts which pointed to the infectious nature of pneumonia long before the discovery of any organism that could be regarded as its specific cause. The occurrence of pneumonia in epidemic form was recognized by Laennec and Grisolle, and since their day innumerable epidemics have been described—house epidemics including those in which a number of individuals, from three to ten or more, have been attacked under the same roof, and general epidemics, invading institutions, ships, and garrisons, in which large numbers of persons are congregated. Out of a ship's crew of 815, 410 were attacked in rapid succession, and out of 720 attacked, 298 perished.

While the state of knowledge at the present day seems to demand that we consider croupous pneumonia as an infectious disease due to the action of a specific organism, we cannot ignore the operation of causes, such as dampness and cold, which until recently have seemed sufficient to account for a large number of cases. Thus an overworked man is exposed to cold for a long time, and becomes thoroughly *chilled*. A few hours later he is seized with a rigor, and 24 hours afterward the physical signs of a pneumonia have developed. The lowered vitality consequent on the exposure in each case must be regarded as a predisposing cause, preparing the system for the operation of the ever-present organism as the exciting cause. The operation of cold is further seen in the influence of the seasons, pneumonia being much commoner in the winter months. Other predisposing causes are: a previous attack, fatigue of mind or body, and debilitating conditions of all kinds, such as previous or present illness, especially a chronic complaint, such as Bright's disease. A patient of my own had four attacks and succumbed to a fifth. Heredity is also said to be a factor, and injuries of the chest have long been regarded as predisposing causes.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The lung in croupous pneumonia exhibits three distinct stages:

1. Congestion or engorgement.
2. Red hepatization.
3. Gray hepatization.

Pneumonia seeks, by preference, the lower lobes of the lungs, and the

right lung more than the left. Pneumonia of the apex, however, not infrequently occurs, more often in children than in adults.

*The Stage of Congestion.*—In this stage the lung is engorged with blood, yet permeable to air. The capillaries surrounding the air-vesicles are turgid and intrude upon the lumina of the air-vesicles. There is a small amount of transudate, in which may be found a few exfoliated alveolar cells and red blood-disks. The part of the lung invaded is redder than normal and heavier, but not nearly so heavy as in the next stage. On section, blood transudes from the cut vessels and bathes the surface.

*The Stage of Red Hepatization.*—In this the lung is dark red in color, hard, and very much heavier than in health—as much as three and four times the normal weight. A piece dropped in water rapidly falls to the bottom. The lung pits on pressure, and in consequence the marks of the ribs are often seen on it after removal. On section the aptness of the name red hepatization is at once apparent. The surface is darker in color than in the first stage, and it has the appearance of a section of liver. On passing the finger over it, innumerable little hard spots like grains of sand are felt. These are air-vesicles filled with the croupous exudate. Corresponding to this, a granular appearance is recognized by the eye, the distended air-vesicles appearing as glistening points. By scraping, little plugs of fibrin and cellular detritus mixed with serum can be removed. The lung, though thus hard, is nevertheless friable, and may be broken up by the fingers.

Histologically, the air-vesicles are found to contain a delicate reticulum, the meshes of which are filled with red blood-disks, and with alveolar cells in different stages of degeneration, including numerous granular fatty cells or compound granular cells. The vesicular walls are found infiltrated with lymphoid cells, which extend even into the interlobular tissue beyond them. Plugs of fibrin may sometimes be traced into the smaller bronchi from the air-vesicles.

The diplococcus of Fränkel and pneumococcus of Friedländer may be demonstrated in cover-glass preparations made from the exudate. They may be associated with the streptococcus and staphylococcus.

*The Stage of Gray Hepatization.*—This is also well named, the cut lung exhibiting a grayish-white coloration. It is still dense and heavy, but much moister and softer, and more friable. The granulations are less distinct, and on microscopic examination the alveoli are found filled with white blood-corpuscles, while the red corpuscles and fibrin filaments have disappeared. Sometimes all three stages are seen alongside of one another.

A stage beyond gray hepatization is sometimes spoken of as a *stage of yellow hepatization*. In this stage the lung has assumed a more yellowish appearance, it is much softer, almost liquid in consistence, and more like pus. On minute examination the air-vesicles are filled with pus-cells, the points of greatest softness constituting small abscesses as large as a pin's head and larger. The stage of gray hepatization is the stage of beginning resolution, while that of yellow hepatization represents the same stage in which the proportion of leukocytes undergoing fatty degeneration is larger.

If recovery takes place the contents of the air-vesicles liquefy, the product being partly expectorated, but probably mostly absorbed.

The *pleura adjacent* to the inflamed lung is almost always inflamed, the



most distinctive sign of this being a plastic deposit. There may also be thickening and some serious effusion.

After death from pneumonia, the *heart* is found in a pathological condition typical of the disease. The left cavities are generally found empty or nearly so, while the right are distended with firm coagula, which often extend into the branches of the pulmonary artery. The *spleen* is often enlarged. The cells lining the *renal tubes* are often found in a state of cloudy swelling; rarely there is nephritis.

**Symptoms.**—Perhaps no other disease except malarial fever is so invariably ushered in by a *chill* as is croupous pneumonia, and often a chill of great severity. It may come on at night, waking the patient out of a deep sleep. It may or may not be preceded by a day or two of *prodromal discomfort*, with *headache*, which may be very severe. Almost immediately there succeeds a high fever, in which the temperature rises rapidly to from 103° to 105° F. (39.4° to 40.5° C.). A significant *flush on each cheek* is characteristic, occasionally more marked on the affected side. The pulse is full and strong, resisting pressure, rate 100 to 120. There is *thirst*, and the *urine is scanty and high colored*, sometimes albuminous. Equally promptly ensues a *pain in the side*, which may be dull, but is often also sharp and severe, caused in the latter instance by involvement of the pleura. The *respirations* rise rapidly in frequency, and there is *cough*, at first dry and hard. It is often restrained on account of the pain it occasions. Soon there is a small amount of *mucous expectoration* from the coincident bronchitis, but usually in 24 to 48 hours after the chill the sputum exhibits distinctive characteristics. It is tenacious, light red in hue—"rusty"—and is ejected from the mouth with difficulty. At other times it is much thinner and darker, and has received the name "prune-juice" expectoration. The amount of blood and the degree of coloration vary greatly. The *respirations* are exceedingly rapid—50, 60, and even more in the minute. I have known them to be 82, and in a child they may reach 100. The appearance of a patient at this stage is very striking. The face is flushed, the eye is brilliant, the breathing is rapid, the *alae nasi* move with each breath, while a frequent short cough, held back until irresistible, increases at times the already anxious expression of the patient.

This state of affairs continues unchanged for from five to nine days, when, if recovery takes place, a sudden drop in the temperature occurs, accompanied often by free perspiration, while a state of comparative comfort succeeds to one of great distress, to be further followed oftentimes by a long and refreshing sleep. This is known as the *crisis*. It may be preceded by a fall of temperature a day or two earlier, which is again followed by a rise, whence such fall is called the *pseudo-crisis*. The accompanying temperature chart (Fig. 20), illustrates the actual crisis. The fall during crisis is sometimes as much as 7° F. (12.6° C.) in 24 hours, and the minimum is quite often slightly subnormal, whence it rises rapidly to the normal.

From this point onward convalescence is rapid, and in four or five days more the patient is seemingly well, the temperature and pulse-rate normal, the breathing natural. A muscular weakness and vulnerability, however, remain, which demand care for a time longer.



The duration of the stages may be roughly stated as 24 hours for the first, five to eight days for the second, and a few days to several weeks for the third.

*Physical Signs.*—The physical signs of a typical pneumonia are very distinctive.

The *first*, or *stage of congestion*, in which the air-vesicles are still open, is of short duration, terminating within the first 24 hours, and may therefore be overlooked. *Inspection* shows the face flushed, increased frequency of respiration, with restricted movement upon the affected side and increased excursion of motion on the sound side. The patient lies by preference on the affected side because of the greater comfort it gives him. This posture not only diminishes the pain by hindering the motion of the affected side, but also lessens the dyspnea by permitting unrestrained expansion of the side that is doing the work.

*Palpation* at first may even find vocal fremitus diminished on account of the relaxation of the air-vesicles, but it becomes decidedly increased as the latter fill up. The skin is hot and the pulse is frequent, full and strong, as a rule. *Percussion* obtains but slight, if any, impairment of resonance. In fact, tympany, or the vesiculo-tympany of Flint—Skoda's resonance—may be present in this stage as a result of the relaxation of the partially filled air-vesicles, giving resonance by immediate relaxation. In the latter part of the first stage there is, however, impairment of resonance.

*Auscultation* in the very earliest stage may find the vesicular murmur feeble, but very soon is heard the distinctive physical sign of the first stage of pneumonia, the *crepitant râle* at the end of inspiration. If there be coincident pleurisy—pleuropneumonia—the closely simulating friction sound may be added. Under such circumstances it may be difficult to distinguish these two physical signs. Over the normal part of the lung there is exaggerated vesicular breathing.

But all these physical signs, even if carefully sought for, may be wanting if the pneumonia be central and deep-seated, as is not infrequently the case. They appear as the surface is approached, or they may not be recognized at all if the disease remains central.

The *second* stage, or *stage of red hepatization* or solidification, lasting four or five days, furnishes unmistakable signs. All the signs revealed to *inspection* in the first stage are intensified in the second, and the breathing is markedly abdominal. To *palpation*, vocal fremitus is now intense, the skin is hot and dry, and the pulse continues frequent. Mensuration almost always and even inspection may recognize an enlargement of the involved side, the former to the extent of 0.5 to 2.5 cm.

*Percussion* gives absolute flatness over the solidified area, with high pitch and short duration, except in those very rare instances where the extreme consolidation throws the column of air in the trachea and bronchi into vibration, producing tympany. This explanation is perhaps the only one when tympany occurs in the upper lobe. In the lower lobe, tympany may result in the same way, from the proximity of an air-distended stomach. Over the adjacent normal areas, also, resonance is exaggerated, not so much, perhaps, in consequence of supplemental function, as from relaxation of the adjacent air-vesicles—Skoda's resonance by mediate relaxation. Even

cracked-pot sound may be produced by percussion over the solidified lung as a result of the sudden expulsion of air from a large bronchus leading to the solidified area.

*Auscultation* discerns high-pitched bronchial breathing over the solidified lung. Indeed, these are the circumstances that give the typical bronchial or tubal breathing. The air-vesicles are obliterated, and the resulting excellent conducting medium brings the tracheo-bronchial blowing to the ear. In very rare instances, when the larger bronchi are filled with exudate, there may be no bronchial breathing. The ausculted voice gives us typical bronchophony and occasionally even pectoriloquy, as well as whispering bronchophony and pectoriloquy. The heart-sounds are also heard with great distinctness over the consolidated lung, owing to the improved conduction, while the sounds of a concurrent bronchitis are similarly intensified. A lingering crepitant râle may also be heard.

The *third stage, or stage of gray hepatization* or resolution, occupies six to ten days. It repeats largely, to inspection, palpation, and auscultation, the phenomena of the first. Resonance continues impaired for a variable time, the lung sometimes clearing up in a couple of days, at others in a longer time. The normal manner of breathing gradually returns, the temperature of the skin is notably less, the crepitant râle returns, technically known as the "*crepitans redux*," and is finally replaced by the normal vesicular breathing sound, by which time the dullness has disappeared.

Croupous pneumonia may rarely terminate in *abscess* or *gangrene*; in either event the signs of the second stage continue and the temperature does not fall—in a word, the crisis does not occur. No changes in the physical signs take place as a rule, and it is rather by the general symptoms, viz., the failure to recover, the continued high temperature, the expectoration of pus, and, in the case of gangrene, the intensely disagreeable odor, that we are informed of the issue. The termination in abscess probably represents on a large scale what takes place in every instance in minute areas in the third stage of all pneumonias which terminate favorably. The occasional termination in tubercular phthisis exhibits a similar arrest of the resolving process in the second stage, and the phenomena of catarrhal or fibroid phthisis supervene.

The obscuring effect of a thickened pleura upon all these signs is to be remembered, and too much stress cannot be laid upon the fact that we may have a central deep-seated pneumonia that may give no physical signs; also that in old persons the physical signs of a pneumonia are very apt to be delayed from one to three days.

Careful differential percussion and palpation may recognize a moderate enlargement of the *spleen*.

The *heart* should be carefully watched in pneumonia. The sounds, at first loud and clear, become less so as the disease progresses and the lungs become engorged. The pulmonic second sound is particularly sharp as long as the heart is strong, and its failure is an unfavorable sign, as it means that the right ventricle is failing in power and may be yielding to distention.

**Modifications in Symptoms and Special Symptoms.**—The foregoing is the course of a typical case of pneumonia, perhaps of three-fourths of all

cases, and the symptoms mentioned suffice for a diagnosis. All of them are, however, subject to modifications.

Thus, the *chill* may be absent or imperfectly developed, in which case all the symptoms arise more gradually. The *temperature*, especially in old persons and drunkards, may not be nearly so high; in children it may be higher. The same is true of the *respirations*, which may be increased to 100 to the minute in children. *Pain* is especially absent in old persons, *cough* and *expectoration* also, so that a careful physical examination of the lungs should be made in all ailments in the old and in drunkards also, as it not infrequently happens that pneumonia is overlooked in them. The *pulse* is often feeble and rapid instead of full and strong. Nay, more, even the *physical signs may be absent in the old*, and they are especially apt to be delayed in their development. It is unsafe to say of an old person at the first visit, after a negative physical examination, that he has not pneumonia, for the physical signs may not make their appearance until the second or third day and even later. It would seem, too, that central pneumonia is more common in the old than in the young, while even an afebrile pneumonia is a possibility in the old. Even in younger persons the appearance of physical signs is sometimes delayed three or four days.

The *expectoration* varies a good deal when present, especially as to the quantity of blood. Sometimes it is bright red and quite liquid, almost like a hemorrhage. More frequently it is viscid and glutinous, simply stained with blood. The term "prune-juice expectoration" has long been associated with pneumonia, and sometimes, when it is thin and dark-hued, the comparison is an apt one. Under the microscope the sputum is found to contain blood-discs, leukocytes, and alveolar epithelium in various stages of degeneration, including numerous compound granule-cells, also ciliated epithelium. *Fibrinous bronchial coagula*, sometimes large enough to be seen by the naked eye, are also met with in the expectoration, and, after suitable staining, diplococci. Should gangrene supervene, the expectoration becomes very fetid.

The *urine* is especially characterized by a reduced amount of chlorids, which are often absent until the crisis is passed, when they reappear. It is supposed that during this period they are transferred to the exudate in the lungs. A trace of albumin is often present and it presents the other features of febrile urine.

There is sometimes *marked jaundice*. It may even be the first symptom. It may be a catarrhal or a hematogenous jaundice. The cases attended by it are rather more serious. Various explanations have been suggested. According to one, it is due to a catarrh of the bile-ducts; according to another, it is due to a reabsorption of the hemoglobin derived from disintegration of the red blood-disk of the exudate in the air-vesicles; and according to still another, it is due to a congestion of the liver. All these views are speculative. G. Mante<sup>1</sup> ascribed it to a hemolytic action of the *diplococcus lanceolatus*. His conclusions are based upon experiments going to prove that such hemolytic action takes place.

The *blood* exhibits usually a *leukocytosis*, the number of corpuscles being increased from 6000 per cubic millimeter to 19,000, or more. As

<sup>1</sup> "Centralblatt für Bakteriologie," etc., December 10, 1896, p. 849.

many as 68,000 have been found. A moderate leukocytosis is regarded as a favorable symptom. The increase is almost always in the polymorphonuclear cells. The proportion of fibrin is also increased from four to ten parts in 1000. This increase of fibrin shows itself also on the microscopic slide in the shape of filaments of fibrin. According to Hayem, the blood-plaques are increased.

*Herpes* is very common on the lip—present, it is said, in from 12 to 40 per cent. of all cases. It may occur elsewhere, as on the nose and genitals.

*Phlegmasia alba dolens*, or milk-leg, is a rare sequel. J. M. DaCosta<sup>1</sup> collected nine cases, of which three were his own. The complication occurs late and has been more frequent in the left leg, and in women. W. H. Welch, W. R. Steiner, Sears and Larrabee and D. J. Milton Miller have increased the cases reported to 48 up to 1903.<sup>2</sup> They are due to bacteria or their toxins not always from the concurrent pneumonia, but from streptococcus and other cocci.

When typhoid fever coexists with croupous pneumonia the tongue is coated, and becomes dry and leathery. Constipation is usual, but occasionally there is diarrhea, especially in epidemics. Except in typhoid cases *delirium* is not common, but may be very active in the young. In old persons it may be low and muttering. In drunkards, in whom the disease is common and very grave, especially after a debauch, the delirium may be taken for *mania a potu*, or the two may coexist. Such a patient may rise from his bed and wander out into the city or to another hospital that he prefers, having just intelligence and strength enough to accomplish this purpose, and will die after its attainment.

*Streptococcus-pneumonia* has been mentioned, with the statement that it presents some clinical features different from those of the ordinary croupous pneumonia, at least at times recognizable. I must say, however, that I confess I have never been able to recognize such pneumonia by these symptoms, since many of them are the same as those heretofore regarded as peculiar to bronchopneumonia as ordinarily caused. In the first place, it is held that the serious form of pneumonia, which often complicates influenza, is thought to be a streptococcus pneumonia. Such pneumonias, like bronchopneumonia, commonly begin obscurely, are atypical, while the local signs are slow to develop. The rusty expectoration is delayed; in like manner the crisis, which may be substituted by lysis; or death supervenes instead of crisis. The physical signs also rather resemble those of bronchopneumonia, while it is said<sup>3</sup> that the disease is more frequently found in the upper lobe, not at its apex, but in its lower part between the inferior angle of the scapula and the axilla. It may also be irregularly migratory. The sputum may be mucopurulent at the outset, and is always less conspicuously red or rusty. Like bronchopneumonia, it is also insidious in its onset, the fever is irregular, and there is often chilliness or actual rigor with sweats; in a word, septic symptoms are prominent.

**Termination.**—1. When the pneumonia *terminates favorably*, promptly after the crisis is passed, it is said to terminate by *resolution*, by which is

<sup>1</sup> "Philadelphia Med. Jour.," vol. ii., 1898, p. 510.

<sup>2</sup> See Miller's paper in "Philadelphia Medical Journal," May 16, 1903, where references to other authors will be found.

<sup>3</sup> G. Baumgarten, "Variations in the Clinical Course of Croupous Pneumonia," "International Clinics," vol. ii. Sixth Series, 1896.

meant that the inflammatory product liquefies, is absorbed or expectorated, and the lung resumes its natural state and normal physical features. The time at which these events are thoroughly established varies greatly, and if there happen to have been associated pleurisy, with resulting thickened membrane, impairment of resonance may last a long while. On the other hand, it may terminate spontaneously even earlier than the periods named for the crisis. In such event the pneumonia is said to abort. This promptly favorable termination does not always take place. Resolution may be unduly delayed and yet ultimately take place. Such cases naturally occasion anxiety, for resolution may not take place at all.

2. When the disease *terminates unfavorably*, it is usually by one of five causes, viz.:

- (a) Death from cardiac failure.
- (b) Abscess.
- (c) Gangrene of the lung.
- (d) Interstitial or fibroid pneumonia.
- (e) Tubercular phthisis.

(a) Cardiac failure may be due to overdilatation of the right heart or to toxic influence on the cardiac muscle.

(b) *Abscess of the lung* is a termination of pneumonia in about four per cent. of fatal cases. Flint, Sr., found it in four out of 133 cases recorded. When this occurs, the interstitial tissue of the lungs becomes infiltrated with pus cells, small foci of leukocytes aggregate to form larger, until a large abscess results, which may occupy a whole lobe or even a whole lung. In such cases the fever continues high, there is expectoration of pus containing elastic tissue of the lung, and the physical signs of a cavity may rarely be present. It is not impossible, however, for such a process to be arrested by a reactive inflammation, by which a tough protective layer of embryonic tissue is formed about the abscess.

(c) *Gangrene of the lung* occurs in about three per cent. of fatal cases. It is especially prone to occur where the pulmonary vessels become so engorged that the circulation is arrested, and where, as a consequence, the hemorrhagic element is conspicuous. Bronchiectatic cavities in an inflamed lobe that are swarming with putrefactive bacteria are an important predisposing cause. It is recognized by the sickening fetor, which pervades a whole ward, and which, once met, is never forgotten. The expectoration is thin and similarly fetid, and contains large quantities of elastic tissue from the lung. The lung is converted into a gray-green, fetid pulp, in which cavities with ragged walls arise, from disintegration and expectoration of lung tissue. Gangrenous portions may be surrounded by a zone of true inflammation, contrasting by its red color with the gray of the gangrene. Such sloughs have been successfully excavated by surgical treatment.

(d) In *fibroid induration or cirrhosis*, which is occasionally met with, there is also invasion of interstitial lung tissue, but instead of being infiltrated by such an excess of leukocytes as to produce pus, only as many wander out as can undergo organization and conversion into permanent tissue. Sometimes this results from the lung failing to expand after resolution and absorption of the exudate, the walls of the unexpanded alveoli

collapsing and uniting. In other cases there is partial absorption of the exudate, repeated infiltration takes place into the alveolar septa, and organization takes place in both. The fibrinous plugs may also be transformed into connective tissue. Three successive stages may be present. In the first the cirrhotic patches are gray, grayish-red, or grayish-yellow, and a small amount of turbid exudate can be here and there squeezed out of them. In the second stage, where the formation of the fibrous tissue in the alveoli or their walls has set in, the lung is dense, firm, airless, and fleshy, whence the term *carnification*. In the third stage the fibroid transformation is complete; the tissue is tough and slate-gray in color. Such induration is generally in bands and patches that merge gradually into the normal vesicular structure.

(c) *Tubercular phthisis* is another termination of pneumonia. It results from infection by the tubercle bacillus. Pneumonia of the apex terminates thus most frequently.

**Complications.**—The most frequent complication is *pleurisy*. It is probably always present to a certain extent, except in the central forms. It manifests itself in the first stage more by the characteristic severe cutting pain than by physical signs, as the friction sound characteristic of that stage is commonly obscured by the physical signs of the pneumonia. Should the stage of effusion be reached, the physical signs of the pneumonia subside. Such a pleurisy is especially apt to be followed by an *empyema* with its septic fever. In severe cases a pleurisy may surround the entire lung and bind it to the chest-wall. A pneumonia on one side and a pleurisy on the other is a possibility. That very interesting pathological state known as pleurogenic pneumonia is sometimes seen in the human being as a form of tubercular pleurisy. In it the lung becomes partitioned off by an interstitial framework starting from the pleura. It has its typical anatomical product in the pleuropneumonia of cattle. The extension takes place chiefly by way of the lymphatics.

*Endocarditis* is a comparatively frequent complication. William Osler especially called attention to this fact in his Gulstonian lectures for 1885. He ascertained that of 209 cases of malignant endocarditis 54, or over 25 per cent., occurred as complications of pneumonia. It is more prone to attack persons with old valvular disease, and to involve the left heart. There is good reason to believe that the specific lancet-shaped bacillus is responsible for this form of valvulitis as a complication of pneumonia. The endocarditis constantly escapes detection, since physical signs are sometimes absent, at others deceptive, but it may be suspected:

1. When the fever is protracted and irregular.
2. When signs of a septic condition arise, such as irregular temperature with chills and sweats.
3. When embolic pneumonia develops.
4. When a loud, rough murmur, especially a diastolic aortic murmur, develops in the course of the disease.

*Pericarditis* may also be a complication.

*Meningitis* is another complication to which Osler has called especial attention, finding it in eight per cent. of fatal cases. It usually comes on at the height of the fever, and may be confounded with delirium. It is often



associated with endocarditis, and it may be accompanied by cerebral embolism, producing hemiplegia. Neuritis is a possible complication.

Parotitis occasionally occurs, commonly in association with endocarditis. In children middle-ear disease is not an infrequent complication.

Any of the above cases may produce a postcritical fever or fever after the true crisis has occurred.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of a case of typical pneumonia is easy. The chill, the rapidly developed fever, and the physical signs are, as a rule, easily recognized. It is to be remembered, however, that the physical signs may be delayed or not appear at all in the central varieties.

*Pleurisy* is the disease from which pneumonia has most frequently to be distinguished. The resemblance between the friction sound and the crepitant râle in the first stage is often very close, while there is impaired resonance to percussion in both. Most valuable in diagnosis is vocal tactile fremitus, which is invariably increased in pneumonia and as invariably diminished in pleurisy of any variety. In the not very rare instances of pleurisy with effusion, second stage of pleurisy, attended by bronchial breathing the same sign is pathognomonic, tactile fremitus being diminished, whereas it is increased in pneumonia. It is to be remembered, however, that occasionally in children an empyema produces increased tactile fremitus. Commonly, too, in this stage of pleurisy we have a change in the line of dullness as the patient changes position, though this is not invariable. The exploring needle, if needed, may also help settle the question.

Frequent examination of the lungs should be made in alcoholism, in chronic valvular disease of the heart, in diabetes, and in Bright's disease, since all these affections are prone to become complicated with insidious forms of pneumonia.

*Typhoid fever* and pneumonia are sometimes confounded. The former is apt to become associated with hypostatic congestion of the lungs, and pneumonia with a typhoid state. The hypostasis, however, occurs late in typhoid fever; the dullness in pneumonia sets in early. A more excusable error is made in the case of *acute tuberculopneumonic phthisis*, which may begin with a chill, while the resemblance is otherwise very close, especially in physical signs. Microscopic examination of the sputum should recognize the bacilli of either disease. This should always be made where an apparent pneumonia is prolonged beyond two weeks without a crisis. In pneumonic phthisis the appearance of bacilli is generally late.

*Appendicitis* and lobar pneumonia have been sometimes confounded owing to the production of certain reflex symptoms including pain and rigidity in the appendicial region reflected through the lower intercostal nerves. Careful examination should therefor be made for the presence of right lobar pneumonia in such cases.

**Prognosis.**—Pneumonia is a treacherous and uncertain disease at any age. Young, robust men of 25, taken mildly ill with every reasonable expectation of recovery, sometimes die suddenly and unexpectedly. On the other hand, while in the old and intemperate the disease is especially dangerous, old men and women over 70 often recover completely. The intemperate are less fortunate, yet even among them some surprising recoveries are observed. The mortality ranges from 20 to 40 per cent., or

about one in four or five die. It is the most fatal of the acute infections of adults in temperate climates. Children recover often, even when desperately ill. The disease seems to be more fatal in cities than in the country, and is certainly so during epidemics, or in ships or other crowded places.

Terminations in the cases of croupous pneumonia treated at the Pennsylvania Hospital in five years prior to 1907:

1902	254 cases	53 deaths	20.8% mortality
1903	328 cases	46 deaths	14.0% mortality
1904	249 cases	48 deaths	19.2% mortality
1905	282 cases	64 deaths	22.6% mortality
1906	238 cases	25 deaths	10.5% mortality

The seriousness of an attack varies more or less with the extent of lung involved, pneumonia of a whole lung being more dangerous than that of a part, double pneumonia more than that affecting one lung, while massive pneumonias are always fatal. Meningitis is invariably fatal, but its presence must not be inferred from every violent delirium. Endocarditis is almost as fatal. Death is usually by heart failure, the right ventricle becoming stretched by the accumulated blood, and the valves and columnæ carneæ embarrassed by fibrinous coagula, which may extend from auricle to ventricle and even into the branches of the pulmonary artery. Heart failure may be caused by toxins inherent to the disease.

A rich leukocytosis of the blood indicating a corresponding phagocytic power is regarded as favorable to recovery. At any rate in cases which have taken a favorable turn a leukocytosis takes place, while in fatal infections leukocytosis and presumably phagocytosis is absent.

**Treatment.**—A fundamental principle which experience has established is that no single plan of treatment dare be recommended for pneumonia, but that each case is a law unto itself. This is more or less true of all diseases, but it is especially so of pneumonia. Undoubtedly cases occur that are best treated at the onset by general *blood-letting*, while many more do not require it, and a few may be harmed by it. Pneumonia may be a general disease and not a local one, and the lung involvement may be secondary; at the same time the patient may die from the direct effect of such local involvement, or from remediable cardiac failure.<sup>1</sup> It is the obstruction to the movement of the blood through the lungs which strains and wears out the right heart. Blood-letting lessens this congestion, and thus relieves the right heart.

What are the indications for blood-letting? There are two periods in a pneumonia where blood-letting may be of advantage: First, in the first stage and early part of the second stage, and, second, where there is engorgement of the right heart. The indications in the first period include (1) great dyspnea; (2) full, bounding pulse; and (3) sharp, pleuritic pain. The relief to all of these symptoms by bleeding is often magical. The amount of blood taken at such time should not be less than 16 ounces (480 c.c.), but not the quantity of blood so much as the relief to the symptoms should be the sign to stop the bleeding. The same results may be accom-

<sup>1</sup> For an excellent analytical examination of the statistics of pneumonia the reader is referred to a paper in the "Medical News," July 27, 1889, by Townsend and Coolidge, Jr., based on a study of the cases treated in the Massachusetts General Hospital.

plished by wet cups, provided a sufficient amount of blood be taken, and cupping has the appearance of being less formidable, although it is actually more painful and disturbing to the patient. After the removal of the cups a poultice or warm cotton jacket is comforting. If doubt is entertained as to the propriety of either of these two methods of bleeding, the affected lung should be covered with dry-cups, and after the removal of these the hot poultice or hot jacket applied. Even by this method the relief to the pain and dyspnea is often very great, but it is more likely to be temporary. Dry-cupping may, however, be repeated daily, if it affords relief. While there are cases in which the adynamia is so great as to make blood-letting in any form of doubtful propriety, there can be no possible objection to the dry-cups. Bleeding, besides relieving the symptoms referred to, is said to hasten the crisis and shorten the illness.

The indications in the second period, when the right heart is over-distended, are rapid breathing with cyanosis and laboring pulse. At this stage the removal of 10 to 16 ounces of blood is often of signal service, and I believe I have seen life saved by such a blood-letting.

These measures may also relieve the *cough*, but usually something additional is required. Until expectoration sets in, *opium* is pre-eminently the remedy, and no preparation is so good as *morphin* in doses of from 1/16 to 1/12 grain (0.004 to 0.005 gm.) for adults every two to four hours in 1/2 ounce (15 c.c.) of the solution of citrate of potassium flavored with lemon or other syrup. *Dover's powder* sometimes acts admirably. It is best given in pill form. Commonly in 2 1/2 or 5 grain doses (0.16 to 0.32 gm.). Expectorants are rarely needed at the outset, but *ammonium chlorid* in doses of 5 to 10 grains (0.32 to 0.65 gm.) in brown mixture, also combined with morphin if necessary, may meet the indications. If a still more stimulating expectorant is required, the *carbonate of ammonium* may be used in doses of 5 to 10 grains (0.32 to 0.65 gm.) frequently repeated. It is an important fact, often overlooked in prescribing diffusible stimulants, that to get a desired effect they should be frequently repeated, and it is better to give small doses often than large doses at longer intervals.

Pneumonia calls very soon, sometimes from the very outset, for *alcoholic stimulants*, which act not only on the heart, but also as antipyretics. Half an ounce or even an ounce (15 to 30 c.c.) hourly, in cases of extreme adynamia, may be necessary. The index of sufficiency or the reverse is the state of the pulse and heart. Whisky or brandy, as selected, should be given in milk, which is the most suitable nourishment. From 4 to 8 ounces (120 to 140 c.c.) of milk every two or three hours, containing the proper dose of stimulant, may be given.

*Strychnin* is an invaluable heart tonic in pneumonia, and may be given in doses of 1/30 grain (0.002 gm.) or more, every four to six hours, combined with 8 to 16 grains (0.52 to 1.04 gm.) of *quinin* in the 24 hours, as may be required.

*Digitalis* is a remedy much used in pneumonia, and it is a useful drug, but it is not always judiciously used. To whip up a flagging heart to increased effort to drive blood through a lung almost as solid as a stone is like whipping up a jaded horse to an effort beyond his strength, and is about as ineffectual. On the other hand, such a stimulus may tide over an

obstacle which is not insurmountable, but which might remain in the way unless removed. On the whole, I prefer to give digitalis only in moderately full doses, 3 to 5 minims (0.2 to 0.4 c.c.), as an adjuvant to alcohol rather than in very large doses. Occasionally in sudden adynamia very large doses, say 1 dram (3.7 c.c.), hypodermically, may turn the tide toward recovery. Aromatic spirit of *ammonia* is an important adjuvant in straits like these, and may be substituted with advantage for the carbonate.

*Inhalation* of oxygen is of undoubted advantage in relieving the dyspnea and thus comforting the patient. Whether it is curative is much more doubtful.

*High temperature* may be reduced by sponging, though the temperature itself in pneumonia cannot be regarded as dangerous *per se*. It is better accomplished by the local application of ice to be presently described.

*Should we ever blister in pneumonia?* A blister in pneumonia sometimes does much good. It is especially useful in delayed resolution, late in the disease, where the crisis has been imperfect and convalescence does not set in. It may even take the place of a local or general blood-letting, especially when these have been deferred too long or are impossible from any cause. When a blister is applied, let it be an effective one. A large blister is no more painful than a small one, and neither is it so painful as is commonly supposed. In mild cases turpentine stupes may be sufficient to relieve pain.

I am well aware that pneumonia is regarded as a self-limiting disease, reaching its crisis in from five to nine days, and that many think the only indication is to sustain the patient until the crisis is reached. In many cases this is true, but I believe that the fury of the disease may be diminished by treatment, and that a prompt bleeding at a suitable time will not only lessen the suffering, and so spare the strength of the patient, but may also hasten the crisis. In like manner life may be saved in the stage of right-sided cardiac engorgement.

The use of *veratrum viride* is warmly recommended by some instead of bleeding in the earliest stages of the disease. It diminishes the force of the heart, furnishes a diverticulum for the excess of blood, and, as my colleague, Horatio C. Wood, says, "The patient is bled into his own circulation." I have never felt comfortable in relying upon it.

The treatment of pneumonia by *ice-cold applications* has lately been gaining favor. Its most ardent supporters in this country are Simon Baruch, of New York City, and Thomas J. Mays, of Philadelphia. Further experience since the first edition of this book appeared confirms the favorable impression therein expressed, and I now apply it in all cases where there is fever. I prefer the method, recommended by Baruch, of enveloping the chest in a suitably fitted linen or muslin jacket (the ordinary cotton jacket answers well), wet in cold water at 60° F. (15.5° C.) and covered by a flannel band an inch wider and longer; directing that the jacket be removed and substituted by the dry cotton jacket whenever the temperature falls to 100° F. (37.7° C.), and renewed if the temperature rises. In this way all danger is averted. Baruch recommends a preliminary dose of 15 to 20 grains (1 to 1.33 gm.) of calomel. Appended is the temperature chart of a case admitted to the University Hospital under my care, breathing at

the rate of 58 a minute, and of whose recovery I had no expectation, but which passed to rapid convalescence after the application of the cold, wet jacket. This may have been, because the period for crisis had arrived.

Mays prefers to surround the affected area with ice contained in bags that are wrapped in towels; but they are difficult to keep in place, especially when more than one bag is required, which is the case if a large

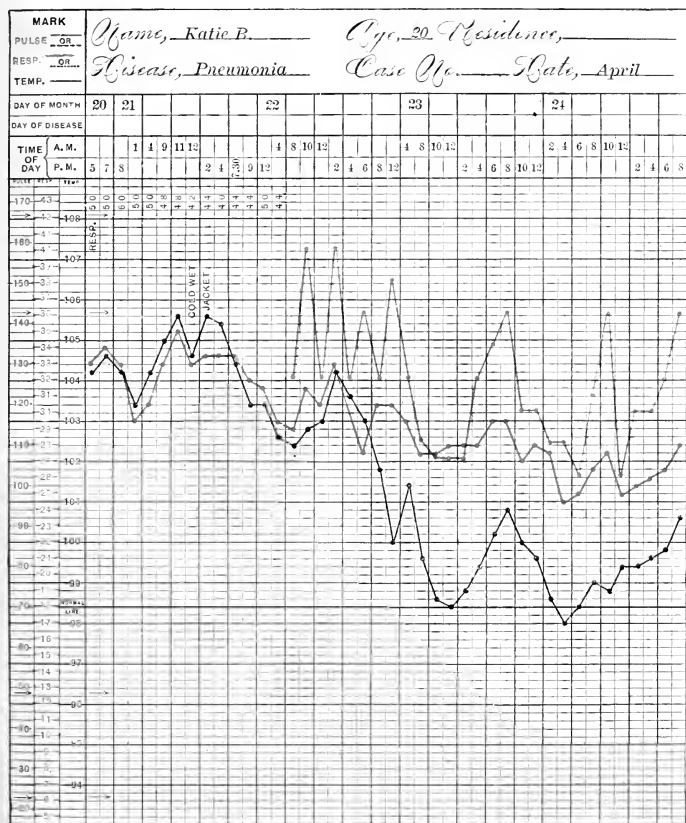


FIG. 21.—Showing Drop in Temperature in a Case of Pneumonia Succeeding the Application of the Cold, Wet Jacket.

The figures opposite RESP. in upper left portion indicate the breathing rate, which was too rapid on admission to be indicated in the usual way by the chart.

part of the lung is involved. He directs, also, that the ice be removed if the temperature falls to the normal or near it. Such fall must not be mistaken for the crisis. If induced by the ice, it is not permanent.

Of late the open air treatment for pneumonia has been practiced to some extent, having been suggested by the like treatment for tubercular consumption; but the widely different conditions to be met in the two

diseases, especially the difference in duration, scarcely makes the suggestion a reasonable one.

*Hypodermoclysis* of normal hot saline solution was used in desperate cases of pneumonia in the Philadelphia Hospital by Frederick P. Henry as early as the spring of 1889. Henry's first publication upon the subject, however, was made in January, 1900.<sup>1</sup> A few months earlier than this, Clement A. Penrose<sup>2</sup> published a paper on "Infusion of Salt Solution," etc., in pneumonia. The injection is made in the usual way, under the skin, at any stage in bad cases of pneumonia—from 1/2 pint to a pint (236 to 473 c.c.) of a .6 of one per cent. solution being injected daily or oftener. Penrose added that the treatment is more efficient when given in connection with oxygen inhalations associated with blood-letting if there is distention of the right heart as evidenced by cyanosis, flagging pulse, and sharp accentuation of the second pulmonic sound. The effect is that of a respiratory simulant, reducing the pulse and breathing rate, as well as of a diluent to the toxins in the blood. Penrose also describes a method of inhaling oxygen which appears to be very satisfactory. In place of the usual delivery nozzle, a glass funnel is substituted, held about two inches from the face by a framework resting on the bed or an adjoining table. In this way oxygen is supplied to both mouth and nostrils without interfering with the breathing. These measures certainly merit a trial in desperate cases.

The eliminative treatment has of late assumed importance because of the rôle assigned to the toxins in causing certain serious symptoms. Hence the free ingestion of liquids and measures to promote perspiration and purgation are advised. To promote perspiration Delaney Rochester<sup>3</sup> recommends placing the patient's feet in a tub of hot water on the bed protected by a rubber sheet, the whole being covered with blankets, the duration of the bath 30 to 45 minutes.

**Antitoxic Treatment.**—Creasote and creasotal, first used by I. L. Van Zandt, of Fort Worth, Texas, in January, 1894, has enthusiastic advocates on both sides of the Atlantic, abroad especially in Cassoute, of Marseilles, who suggested creasotal or carbonate of creasote because less irritating. Whichever preparation is used, it is held that the creasote is absorbed into the blood and eliminated by the lungs. I was impressed by the published reports of the results obtained from these drugs and am now using this treatment. The creasotal should be given in capsule or better in emulsion in 10 minim doses every four hours.

The salicylates have been advised on a like principle of antitoxic action.

**Serum Treatment.**—Pneumonia was one of the first diseases the treatment of which by serum engaged attention. The subject was studied by the brothers G. and F. Klemperer, who utilized for prophylactic and curative purposes the antitoxin derived from the blood of immunized animals. Immunity was obtained by subcutaneous or intravenous injection of filtered bouillon cultures of the pneumococcus, sterilized by heat or antiseptics. Such immunity was limited to six months, but the young born within this

<sup>1</sup> "Treatment of Pneumonia by Hypodermoclysis," "International Clinics," vol. iv., Ninth Series, 1900.

<sup>2</sup> "Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin," July, 1899.

<sup>3</sup> "Treatment of Pneumonia," "Med. News," Feb. 13, 1904.

period were also immune, while the serum of the blood of such animals had the power to immunize other susceptible animals. Moreover, these fluids, when introduced into the blood of animals already infected, were found capable of curing them.

It is held by these experimenters that the pneumococcus produces a poisonous albumin or pneumotoxin, which, when introduced into the blood of an animal, causes a rise of temperature and later an antitoxin, which has the power of neutralizing the poisonous albumin formed by the bacteria. During the pneumonia the pneumotoxin produced by the bacteria in the lungs is constantly being absorbed into the circulation. In natural recovery this continues until enough antidotal substance is generated in the circulation to exert its effect when the crisis occurs. The bacteria are not destroyed, nor is their ability to produce poisonous products, but these latter are neutralized by the antitoxin, the presence of which has been demonstrated in the serum of the blood of pneumonia patients after the crisis. Klemperer claims to have injected this serum into infected animals, with the effect of curing them. Finally, they injected into persons ill with pneumonia the blood serum from others convalescent from pneumonia, with a view to hastening the crisis. In six cases there was a decided reduction in temperature in from six to 12 hours after injection of from 65 to 95 minims (4 to 6 c.c.) of the serum. The pulse and respirations also fell. The serum has no effect when injected into healthy individuals.

I have used this serum in some 13 unselected cases, but have been unable to see that the course of the disease is at all influenced by it.

**Vaccine Treatment.**—Treatment by specific vaccines has been tested by Wolff in 14 cases with three deaths (27.2 per cent.). The mortality in untreated cases in the same epidemic was 40 per cent. Vaccination was followed by a rise in the opsonic index.<sup>1</sup> Five cases had crisis on the third day, three on the fourth, one on the fifth and two on the sixth. These results seem encouraging, but they are not more so than seemed the early results of the serum treatment, and further observations are needed.

## BRONCHOPNEUMONIA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Catarrhal Pneumonia; Capillary Bronchitis; Suffocative Catarrh; Lobular Pneumonia; Aspiration Pneumonia; Deglutition Pneumonia.*

**Definition.**—Bronchopneumonia is an inflammation of lobular or patchy areas of lung tissue caused by microbic or other irritants that find their way to it through a *bronchus*.

**Etiology.**—The effects of recent studies go to show that the bronchopneumonias of children are the result of the same causes as the lobar pneumonias of adults, producing however in the latter lobar consolidation and in the former lobular or patchy consolidation.<sup>2</sup> Usually bronchopneumonia

<sup>1</sup>Mark W. Richardson, "The Present Status of Serum and Vaccine Theraph." "Am. Jour. Med. Sciences," October, 1908.

<sup>2</sup>See Samuel West, "Clinical Lecture on Bronchopneumonia," to show that pneumococcal pneumonia in a child takes the lobular and not the lobar form. Reprinted for the author from the "British Med. Jour.," May 28, 1893.

succeeds a bronchitis of the terminal bronchus leading to the part. Some would consider bronchopneumonia and capillary bronchitis one and the same thing, but the latter term is the best restricted to what it actually indicates—inflammation of the smallest bronchioles. It often precedes, and is often associated with, bronchopneumonia. Parts of a lobule, a whole lobule, or scattered groups of lobules are thus affected, and may unite to form larger areas. Thus, while a bronchopneumonia is primarily lobular, we may have even a lobar bronchopneumonia if all the lobules of a lobe are simultaneously affected. *Aspiration* pneumonia is a bronchopneumonia caused by the irritation of inhaled or indrawn particles, including bacteria, among which must be included also streptococci and staphylococci, as well as pneumococci and tubercle bacilli. Tubercular bronchopneumonia is one variety of this. Syphilitic bronchopneumonia is a rare, but possible, affection.

The recognition of bronchopneumonia as a separate disease is usually credited to Barthez and Rilliet.

Simple bronchopneumonia is pre-eminently a disease of the very young and the old. In the young it occurs as an idiopathic affection, though it is also a frequent complication of the infectious fevers, measles, whooping-cough, scarlet fever, diphtheria, and small-pox. In adults, especially the old, it occurs during influenza, erysipelas, typhoid fever, and all debilitating affections, including Bright's disease and organic disease of the heart. The inhalation variety especially occurs in comatose states, however induced. William Pepper laid especial stress on vesicular emphysema as a predisposing cause. In both young and old it may succeed a simple bronchitis from cold, but it is as a complication of the infectious diseases named that it becomes during the first five years of life a very common, serious, and fatal disease, causing, it is said, more deaths among children than any other disease except infantile diarrhea. Diarrhea itself and rickets are also to be included as predisposing causes. All influences depressing to life, such as overwork, fatigue, the air of badly ventilated and crowded houses, insufficient food, and defects of hygiene act similarly. Collapse of the lung is at once a cause and a consequence of bronchopneumonia.

Another cause of bronchopneumonia more common in adults and the aged is the inhalation of fine irritant particles or the aspiration of particles of food. In comatose states from any cause the sensibility of the larynx is benumbed, and minute particles of food are permitted to pass beyond the *rima glottidis* to enter the larynx, and thence the smaller bronchial tubes, where they excite inflammation. Hence the term aspiration or deglutition pneumonia above mentioned. Glossopharyngeal palsy is often associated with deglutition pneumonia which may follow tracheotomy and cancer of the larynx and esophagus. The inflammation thus excited is sometimes so intense as to cause suppuration and even gangrene. Stone-cutting, steel-grinding, and coal-mining become causes by the irritating particles inhaled in these occupations. Francis Delafield, in the section on bronchopneumonia, in his "Studies in Pathological Anatomy," says the extension is not from the bronchus to the air-vesicles that are connected with it, but to those that surround it. Thus he says, "It is as if a red-hot needle were thrust through the lung, making a track of charred tissue around it."



He refers more particularly to the bronchopneumonia that succeeds bronchitis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid anatomy of simple bronchopneumonia is quite definite, yet somewhat complex and difficult of description. The lungs may be superficially unaltered or they may be large and heavy. The exterior, especially at the base, may be mottled because of an alternation of dark-blue or bluish-black depressed areas with projecting portions more natural in hue. The depressed areas represent collapsed lung, and can, for the most part, be reinflated. In places they are continuous, forming large patches. Where there is much of this diffuse pneumonia corresponding patches of fibrin may be seen on the pulmonary pleura.

On section the surface of the lung is dark red in color and from it project reddish-gray spots representing areas of bronchopneumonia. These may be separated by tracts of uninflamed and collapsed tissue, or may unite to form more extensive inflamed areas. A section made transverse to the lobule will be found penetrated by a central bronchiole filled with muco-pus, while if the section is parallel with the length of the bronchiole, the central alveolar passage with its alveoli may be readily recognized, being rendered distinct by the same muco-purulent contents. Around the bronchus, from  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{5}$  inch (3 to 5 mm.) or more, is an area of grayish-red consolidation elevated above the surface, usually slightly granular to the touch, but still lacking the hard, shot-like feel of croupous pneumonia. On pressure, a mixture of pus and desquamated cells may be squeezed out, which, at a later stage, becomes almost pure pus, appearing as white points in the nondepressed tissue. Surrounding the imperfectly hepatized areas and at a lower level is a smooth, dark, airless tissue, representing collapsed lung, which may be the seat of beginning inflammation. At a later stage, if the patient survive, especially in adults, the inflammatory areas may assume a darker hue, even that of gray hepatization. Still later, in the persistent forms, the areas may contain the white foci above described resembling miliary tubercles, from which they may be always distinguished by the fact that the white droplets can be squeezed out, while the tubercle remains firm. These areas may be converted into cirrhotic patches. During the progress of a bronchopneumonia the air-cells in the adjacent lobules are found dilated, and the edges of the lung and upper portions have also become emphysematous. The bronchioles themselves are also dilated in places. The uninflamed areas are generally congested.

The contents of the bronchioles and air-vesicles are pus-cells and swollen exfoliated epithelium. The walls of the bronchiole and of the air-vesicles are thickened and infiltrated with leukocytes. Rarely do they contain blood or the fibrin-network characteristic of lobar pneumonia. Occasionally, minute extravasations of blood may be found.

The phenomena in the aspiration form of bronchopneumonia are more intense in every respect than in the other forms, the infiltration of the air-vesicles with leukocytes leading sometimes to suppuration or even to gangrene.

**Symptoms.**—The initial symptoms vary with the precursory disease. In a child—and here the disease has its greatest practical interest—there

may have been measles, whooping-cough or diphtheria, in which convalescence may or may not have set in. To incipient or aggravated *cough* decided *fever* is added, a temperature of  $102^{\circ}$  F. ( $38.9^{\circ}$  C.) and higher being attained; the cough becomes more severe and painful, the *breathing becomes rapid*, and an easily visible, distressing *dyspnea* supervenes. The embarrassed breathing grows worse, the fever is higher, the *lips* and *face become cyanosed*, the short, incessant cough is ineffectual in the raising of expectoration, and the little sufferer is a picture of pitiable distress. For such a state of affairs the term *suffocative catarrh* given by the older authorities is well chosen. Happily, as the disease advances and the blood becomes charged with carbon dioxid, sensibility wanes, the suffering abates, and the cough grows less; but the frequent breathing, often 60 to 80, the lividity of the face, and the frequent pulse show that the fury of the disease is not spent, but will probably terminate only in death, which is directly due to exhaustion of the muscle of the right ventricle. At times, however, and even when least expected, a favorable turn takes place and a surprisingly rapid convalescence sets in.

In adults, as in children, the symptoms vary with the mode of origin. In the idiopathic form, which is recurrent in some old persons, there are fever, a burning spot in the cheek, and shortness of breath, but a cough less troublesome than would be expected. The physical signs rather than the symptoms determine the diagnosis. There are fine moist râles, with harsh breathing rather than bronchial breathing, and relatively clear percussion.

The symptoms in a case of deglutition pneumonia are very similar. In the inhalation pneumonia of miners, stone-cutters, and steel-grinders the symptoms are slower in their development and resemble more those of tubercular phthisis.

*Physical Signs.*—These are by no means as distinctive as those of croupous pneumonia. Though I think it best to separate capillary bronchitis from bronchopneumonia, the association is so close that, given the fine subcrepitant râles of the former, unaccompanied by impairment of resonance, we may infer that bronchopneumonia is at hand. Further signs, however, of actual involvement of the lung-substance are *moderate impairment of resonance* and *harsh breathing*, rather than true bronchial breathing, though more rarely the latter may be present, especially when the bases of the lungs are involved. Inspection may recognize retraction of the cartilages and lower sternum during inspiration, indicating defective expansion of the lung.

*Diagnosis.*—The diagnosis of bronchopneumonia is usually easy. High fever, cough, mucous expectoration, fine râles, and slight impairment of resonance, following one of the infectious diseases in a child under five years, and developing gradually, admit of but one interpretation. When a number of small foci unite to form a large area corresponding to the whole or a portion of a lobe, the physical signs are more like those of a lobar pneumonia, and the absence of expectoration in children increases the difficulty of diagnosis. Lobar pneumonia develops more suddenly and resolves more rapidly.

The similarity in the morbid anatomy of persistent bronchopneumonia

and tuberculosis has been referred to, and the clinical resemblance is even greater, so that it may be impossible to say in a child, whether it is bronchopneumonia or tuberculosis. Signs at the apices are to be sought for, and, if found, tuberculosis may be suspected; but the correct diagnosis is sometimes made only on the autopsy table.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis varies with the etiology, but bronchopneumonia is always a serious disease. From 30 to 50 per cent. of all children perish from it.

In fatal cases in children death may occur in 24 hours. When recovery takes place, the disease lasts from five to ten days, and as many more are required for complete restoration to health. More rarely a chronic interstitial pneumonia, what Delafield calls a persistent bronchopneumonia develops, which may last for months or years and finally give rise to miliary tuberculosis.

Yet, as mentioned under symptomatology, some remarkable recoveries take place. In adults it is about as serious as croupous pneumonia. The deglutition variety is almost always fatal, and is the usual cause of death in glossopharyngeal palsy. Some cases pass into tubercular consumption, even in children.

**Treatment.**—The indifference of parents and the carelessness of nurses are responsible for many cases of bronchopneumonia occurring during convalescence from measles, diphtheria, and whooping-cough which, with proper care, might have been averted. Among the causes thus responsible are exposure of children with uncovered heads at open doors and windows, insufficient clothing during sleep, overheated rooms, and drafty corridors.

Restorative measures are indicated in this disease from the outset. Nauseating expectorants are rarely demanded and often do harm by lowering the vitality of the young patient. Blood-letting, useful in some cases of croupous pneumonia, is not called for in catarrhal. Opiates to quiet the cough and relieve the pain are strongly indicated in the earlier stages of the disease and sometimes throughout it. They should be associated with diaphoretics and febrifuges, among which the solution of acetate of ammonium, the solution of citrate of potash, and sweet spirit of niter are the best. The tincture of aconite in small, but often repeated, doses is extremely valuable if the temperature is high and the pulse full and rapid.

When secretions become free and a stimulating expectorant is required, there is none better than the aromatic spirit of ammonium, which fulfills every indication and spares the stomach more than the chlorid or carbonate of ammonium. If the accumulation of mucus become troublesome, it may be dislodged by a mineral emetic, such as alum, of which the dose for a child is a heaping teaspoonful; or sulphate of zinc, in doses of 10 to 30 grains (0.65 to 2 gm.); or the syrup of ipecac, more likely to be at hand, may be used. At this stage, alcohol, in the shape of whisky or brandy, becomes an important adjuvant. It should be added to the nourishment, of which the best form is milk, although nourishing broths are also indicated. As digestion is likely to be feeble, the milk is better peptonized. Quinin, and especially strychnin as a respiratory stimulant, are useful tonics.

In the way of local treatment counterirritation by mustard and turpentine is especially useful. The former should be used in the shape of a weak plaster, one part of mustard to five or six parts of flour or flaxseed meal. If white of egg and glycerin be used to mix it instead of water, the plaster is less painful and may be kept on continuously. One of the best modes of applying turpentine is by the St. John Long liniment, which may be made by mixing thoroughly a teacupful of vinegar, a wineglass of turpentine, and one egg. This may either be rubbed thoroughly on the chest or it may be applied on flannel. It may be that the turpentine is absorbed and acts as an expectorant. Blisters are not recommended.

The poultice is a measure of treatment for catarrhal pneumonia which is variously valued. It is undoubtedly useful in children if properly employed, but great care should be taken that it does not become cold. It should be lightly made and changed often; and when changed, it should be done rapidly, a fresh hot poultice being at hand to replace the one removed. When poultices are not used, the cotton jacket should be substituted, as it insures a uniform temperature of the body. This should be further favored by maintaining a uniform room-temperature of 70° F. (24.5° C.) and averting drafts by screens.

If the temperature be very high, it may be reduced by sponging or, better, by the wet-pack at a temperature of 75° F. (25° C.). The child does not, however, die of the effects of high temperature, but rather, finally, of a failing right heart. The bath is, nevertheless, very calming to the nervous system, and should be used for this reason.

The same measures may be used with appropriate modifications in the catarrhal pneumonia of adults, and also in the variety known as deglutition pneumonia. As this last form is, however, generally the beginning of the end in some other serious condition, treatment avails little.

## CHRONIC INTERSTITIAL PNEUMONIA. .

SYNONYM.—*Cirrhosis of the Lung.*

**Definition.**—A chronic inflammatory disease consisting in a gradual invasion of a lung by fibroid tissue, with a corresponding reduction in the vesicular structure of the lung. According as it involves limited or more extensive areas it is local or diffuse.

**Etiology.**—Interstitial pneumonia is mainly a secondary affection. There are few chronic affections of the lung which do not cause a certain amount of fibroid overgrowth. Especially is this true of tubercular consumption and bronchopneumonia. A form of the latter is the so-called *pneumoconiosis*, a fibroid induration succeeding a bronchopneumonia due to the irritating effects of minute particles arising in the occupations of coal-mining, stone-cutting, steel-grinding, and iron-working in general. To the form associated with tuberculosis the term fibroid phthisis is applied, and it will receive separate consideration. The seat of a healed tuberculosis is also occupied by fibroid tissue, which may be regarded as an

example of interstitial pneumonia. Less frequently it succeeds croupous pneumonia as fibroid induration, which has been considered on page 237 and constitutes an important product in pleurogenic pneumonia mentioned on page 238. Even abscesses of the lung may excite it, while the various forms of morbid growths, as sarcoma, carcinoma, chondroma and hydatid cysts, are causes of it, and are surrounded by fibroid growths. Especially does the fibroid change occur in a lung that has been long in a state of compression, as by a pleuritic effusion. Since the majority of cases of chronic interstitial pneumonia are directly or indirectly the result of microbic agents, it has appeared to me best to retain its consideration in this section, even though some cases may be due to other causes.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—*Pathological Histology.*—In bronchopneumonia the fibrosis usually starts from the outer sheath of the bronchi, invading the alveolar walls and converting the entire lobule into grayish fibroid tissue, in which no lung structure is distinguishable. This form is frequently associated with dilated bronchus, of which the fibrosis is probably the direct cause, its contraction drawing the walls apart.

The line of demarcation between interstitial pneumonia on the one hand and tuberculosis on the other is often not very sharp. In interstitial pneumonia after croupous pneumonia a gradual organization takes place of the fibrinous plugs in the air-vesicles; the alveolar walls themselves become thickened by a new formation, at first cellular and subsequently fibrillated. Death usually occurs in these cases in one to three months after the onset of the disease. The whole of the part primarily invaded may become thus altered.

*Macroscopic Morbid Anatomy.*—The chest-walls of the side affected are often depressed, and on opening the thorax, the lung, or as much of it as is involved, is found retracted; it may be drawn back into the spinal gutter. If on the left side, the heart may be retracted with it. Commonly the two pleuræ are found united, but not always. On section the lung is hard and tough. It is gray, fibrous, and the alveolar structure has, to a varying extent, disappeared. The bronchi and the blood-vessels, however, remain, the former being often dilated, to produce the so-called bronchiectatic cavity, of which there may be a number. The pulmonary artery may be atheromatous. In the phthisical variety there may also be a cavity at the apex, and a recognition of this before death will be an aid to diagnosis. Otherwise a careful study is often necessary to distinguish the two varieties, unless the tubercle bacillus has been found.

The uninvolved lung is usually enlarged and emphysematous in proportion to the degree of contraction of the affected lung. The right ventricle, which has increased work imposed upon it in forcing the blood through the contracted lung, becomes hypertrophied and may become ultimately dilated.

**Symptoms.**—The principal symptom is *cough*, which starts with the condition causing the fibrosis and continues to the end. It varies greatly in its severity, being sometimes trifling, at others very troublesome. The *expectoration* is as variable as the cough; more copious as the cough is more troublesome. Persons thus affected have the appearance of delicate health, and are commonly regarded as phthisical, although they have often con-

siderable strength and can pursue some occupation. In nontubercular interstitial pneumonia there is less *fever* than is present as a rule in phthisis, but the recognition of the tubercle bacillus is the crucial test, for otherwise the symptoms are very similar. In both conditions there is paroxysmal cough, with copious expectoration of mucopurulent matter. The resemblance is still more close if there is bronchiectasis, when the usual emptying of the cavity by cough takes place, commonly in the morning, sometimes twice a day, and even oftener. The expectorated matter of the bronchiectatic cavities may be fetid from decomposition. There is usually less dyspnea than in true phthisis, and except where the disease is the sequel of true pneumonia, the fatal termination is longer deferred than in tuberculosis—it may be for years.

*Physical Signs.*—The chest is more or less retracted, its circumference diminished. Its movements are restricted and its topography altered. When the left lung is extensively affected, a pulsation is often seen in the second, third, and fourth interspace, very similar to what is sometimes seen to the right of the sternum, when a pleuritic effusion on the left side pushes the heart over to the right. It is probably the result of rhythmic retraction and relaxation of the interspaces corresponding to the cardiac action. In high degrees of the disease the shoulder is drawn down and the spinal column laterally curved, just as in recovery after empyemic pleurisy. The unaffected side is more prominent than in health. The tactile fremitus may be diminished or increased according as the pleural membrane is thickened or not. The same is true of vocal resonance. *Percussion* generally elicits impairment of resonance over the affected lung, though there may be high-pitched tympany and even amphoric resonance over a dilated bronchus. The lung on the sound side furnishes hyperresonance. To *auscultation* the breathing sounds may be feeble, but there may be bronchovesicular or bronchial and even amphoric breathing of the most intense kind.

There is usually sharp accentuation of the second pulmonic sound because of the forcible effort of the right ventricle to push the blood through the contracted lung; and when the right ventricle begins to yield, cardiac murmurs may develop at the tricuspid valve.

*Diagnosis.*—Chronic interstitial pneumonia is mainly to be distinguished from fibroid phthisis, which is often impossible without an examination of the sputum for bacilli. The history and duration of the case may be of assistance.

*Prognosis.*—Recovery is impossible, yet cases last many years—ten, fifteen, and even longer.

*Treatment.*—As intimated, treatment for the fibrosis is unavailing, though lung gymnastics should be practiced with a view to developing lung expansion. Intercurrent bronchitis may be helped by the usual remedies for that disease. Antispasmodics, belladonna, and hyoseyamus are often useful adjuvants to the cough medicines. Patients are generally better in summer and in a warm climate, where they should dwell, if possible. They should be fed with an abundance of rich, nutritious food, and surrounded by the most favorable hygienic conditions.

## EMBOLIC PNEUMONIA.

**Definition.**—An embolic pneumonia is a pneumonia caused by an embolus or, more rarely, by a thrombus in smaller branches of the pulmonary artery. Embolic pneumonia is either nonseptic or septic.

## EMBOLIC NONSEPTIC PNEUMONIA.

SYNONYM.—*Hemorrhagic Infarct of the Lung.*

**Etiology.**—The nonseptic hemorrhagic infarct of the lung is the result of nonseptic embolism, or thrombosis. The emboli come from the right side of the heart, where they either originate as fragments of thrombi or have entered from the systemic veins. Emboli usually lodge at the bifurcation of the branches of the pulmonary artery. The usual transudation of blood takes place in a cone-shaped area. Not every embolus is followed by an infarct. An embolus may be so large as to cause death before an infarct can be formed. Nor is every hemorrhagic infarct followed by a pneumonia. The ultimate consequences of non-infectious emboli depend on their size. A large embolus and a corresponding infarct with free extravasation of blood are liable to be followed by gangrene of the lung, which may excite intense reactive inflammation in its neighborhood, and the aspirated blood may cause pneumonia. When the lodged particle is small, the hemorrhagic infarct is small, and the transudate is a diapedesis rather than a hemorrhage. From this, true embolic pneumonia results only when there is no collateral circulation—that is, when it is supplied by an end-artery.<sup>1</sup> When hemorrhagic infarct is caused by thromboses, the thrombus is commonly preceded by pulmonary endarteritis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The infarct thus caused is conical in shape with its base toward the pleura, and varies in size from that of a cherry-stone to that of a hen's egg. The pleura over the infarct at first projects above the surrounding surface, and is at first smooth, but later is roughened by a film of lymph. The infarct when recent is dark reddish-brown in color, and on section rises also above the surrounding surface.

This transudation is the preliminary of a peculiar reactive inflammation—the embolic pneumonia under consideration. Succeeding a slight preliminary contraction there takes place an immigration of leukocytes from the contiguous vessels which accelerates the reabsorption of the blood. To the disintegration and absorption of the red blood-disks succeed a more rapid paling and contraction, until no color remains, or there may be a hardening of the pulmonary tissue, with a cicatricial-like contraction, into which the pleural membrane is drawn, producing fibroid thickening with radiated prolongations. Such hardening is partly due to a condensation of the lung and partly to an organization of the cells in the infiltrated alveoli and alveolar walls. Such remnant is slate-gray from the residue of hematin derived

<sup>1</sup> All the large branches of the pulmonary artery are end-arteries, and many of the smaller branches also. The reader is referred to W. H. Welch's article in Clifford Allbutt's *System of Medicine*, vol. vi.

from the extravasated blood, or it may be dark red, owing to hematoidin crystals throughout it. If the infarct is large, a part may break down into reddish inodorous pulp, which may be absorbed, or a part may make its way into a bronchus and may be expectorated. In the event of so large an infarct the residue of cicatricial tissue is larger. Caseation and calcification of the remains are possible results.

The embolus itself is in like manner removed, a few filaments or slight wrinkles in the walls of the vessel being the sole residue.

**Symptoms.**—There may be no symptoms, or these may be confined to a transient *pleuritic pain* in the pleura covering the embolus. With increase in size of the infarct such pain increases, and may be associated with some *shortness of breath*, due to destruction of the aerating surface. To this may be added *expectoration of blood* if the effused blood gets into the bronchus. If the infarcted area be sufficiently large, there may be dullness on percussion, increased vocal fremitus and resonance, crepitant and subcrepitant râles, bronchial breathing, and bronchophony. Further characteristics are the absence of fever and suddenness of onset and the presence of intravascular disease. It has been mentioned that the embolus may be so large, and cut off so large a supply of blood to the lung, that death will take place before an infarct can form. Jaundice has sometimes been noted, probably hematogenetic in origin, a consequence of the extensive blood destruction.

**Diagnosis.**—Embolic nonseptic pneumonia is often overlooked. The foregoing symptoms, suddenly occurring in connection with states leading to thromboses in the veins or the right heart, may be suspected to be due to nonseptic embolic pneumonia. Infarcts that form in the lung from non-infectious emboli arising in the *left* heart or arterial system must be so small as to escape detection, since the emboli themselves must be so small as to pass through capillaries into the veins, thence into the right heart, and thence to the lung.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of nonseptic embolic pneumonia is favorable unless the embolus is so large as to stop up a large vessel, producing a correspondingly large infarct. An embolus plugging one of the largest branches of the pulmonary artery is fatal before an infarct can form.

**Treatment.**—Nothing can be done actively to relieve an embolic pneumonia of this kind. A patient in whom it is suspected must, of course, be kept absolutely at rest. Counterirritation may be applied to the chest-wall over the area involved. Anodynes should be used to a degree required to relieve pain.

#### EMBOLIC SEPTIC PNEUMONIA.

SYNONYM.—*Metastatic Abscess.*

**Etiology.**—The cause of septic pneumonia or metastatic abscess of the lung is a septic embolus. Such a septic embolus may originate in a thrombus at a seat of putrid inflammation or suppuration, such as the wound of an operation or a compound fracture, or in the uterus after child-birth



The veins of such a focus are filled with thrombi, which extend into the larger branches, where they soften and break up into fragments, some of which may pass into the right heart, thence into the pulmonary artery and its branches, until one is reached small enough to resist its further transit. Such an embolus, which is probably swarming with bacteria, is an intense irritant, and inflammation sets in that invariably terminates in abscess, as contrasted with the simple indurative irritation caused by a nonseptic embolus. Thus caused, septic pneumonia is one of the anatomical features of pyemia.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Should it be our fortune to see this form of pneumonia in its first stage, the same dark-red color as that seen in the hemorrhagic infarct of nonseptic pneumonia may be noted except that the blood extravasation is more copious. Such extravasation is a further irritant, and soon an intense inflammation sets in, which may also be divided into two stages. In the first stage the alveolar spaces and the connective tissue of the alveolar and infundibular walls are infiltrated with pus-cells. The latter furnish a white-gray ground, on which may be seen, with the naked eye, delicate red lines and circles, which represent infundibula whose vessels are still pervious to blood. In the next stage abscess-formation rapidly succeeds when the hepatized area melts into a creamy pus, in which float a few fragments of elastic tissue representing broken-down alveolar walls and blood-vessels. The abscesses thus produced may be multiple, but are mostly of small size. If the abscess is subpleural, there will be suppurative pleuritis with empyema, and possibly perforation of the lung.

In case a very large vessel is obstructed and a corresponding part of lung cut off, say a fifth of a lobe, the area thus deprived of pulmonary arterial blood is rapidly filled from the veins, and a condition analogous to a hemorrhagic infarct occurs, to the border of which the inflammation is confined, where finally the necrotic mass is dissected loose.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are those of pyemia (see p. 185), of which the lung abscesses form a part. A *chill* succeeding a surgical operation, or occurring during the lying-in state, followed by *sweating* and *high fever*, are significant symptoms. Successions of these are even more conclusive.

**Treatment.**—Treatment should be supporting and stimulating. Quinin should be administered in large doses, and whisky as in a low fever. The physician should watch for an opportunity for surgical interference, although such opportunity rarely occurs.

## TUBERCULOSIS.

### I. GENERAL ETIOLOGY AND INVASION. MORBID ANATOMY.

**Definition.**—Tuberculosis is a general or local infection due to the implantation and proliferation of the tubercle bacillus discovered by Robert Koch in 1882. The action of the tubercle bacillus is peculiar in that it stimulates the cells of the body wherever it may lodge and grow, to the formation of little masses of new tissue which are called *miliary tubercles*. A miliary tubercle may, therefore, be defined as a nodule of new formation around an irritated point, the focus of which is the tubercle bacillus.

The tubercle bacillus is a short rod-bacterium three to four microns in length, equal to about  $1/3$  the diameter of a red blood-disk, and  $1/6$  to  $1/5$  as broad. When successfully stained and viewed with high power it presents at times a beaded appearance once ascribed to the presence of spores, but now, I believe, regarded as the result of unequal staining. It can be studied satisfactorily only when stained by one of the anilin dyes.<sup>1</sup>

**Etiology.**—Although the evidence in favor of the bacterial origin of tuberculosis may be regarded as conclusive, the readiness with which the bacillus lodges and grows varies greatly; indeed, the number of instances in which it fails to take root doubtless vastly exceeds that in which it does. Hence, the contagiousness of tuberculosis is slight and, although there appears to be no difficulty in transmitting the disease from one domestic animal to another, it is with extreme rarity that a case of tuberculosis in a human being can be traced to another. In an experience of 40 years, including large general hospital service, I can recall but a single instance of probable communication of the disease, and this was from a husband to

<sup>1</sup> Of the various methods of staining tubercle bacilli that by the carbolfuchsin solution of Ziehl-Neelsen, with or without Gabbet's counterstain or methyl-blue, continues to be, on the whole, the most satisfactory. By this method the bacillus takes a bright red color from the fuchsin, the mordant being carbolic acid.

The carbolfuchsin solution is made as follows:

Powdered fuchsin,	1 part
Alcohol,	10 parts
5 per cent. solution carbolic acid,	100 parts
Mix and filter.	
The older the solution the better.	

A rapid and a slow method are practiced with this staining fluid, the former being more commonly used for diagnostic purposes.

1. *The Rapid Method with Carbolfuchsin, with or without Counterstain, by Methylene Blue.*—A very small caseated clump of the sputum (care being taken that a bit of food is not taken by mistake) is selected with forceps or a platinum loop and laid on a clean cover-glass. Another cover-glass is superimposed and the two are rubbed together until the specimen is thoroughly smeared over both. They are then separated, two specimens being thus obtained. When dry, one of them is passed, sputum side up, three times over the flame of a spirit lamp or Bunsen burner, by which the albumin is coagulated and the specimen is fixed. The cover-glass is then completely covered with the staining fluid and held over the flame until the solution begins to vaporize, care being taken to keep all parts of the glass thoroughly covered. At the end of one minute it is washed in water. It is then decolorized in acidulated alcohol, 8 to 10 gtt. of HCl or 5 ggt. of HNO<sub>3</sub> to a watch crystal of alcohol, and examined. For this a  $1/12$  oil immersion lens and Abbe's condenser are best suited, but after a little experience an ordinary dry system of 350 diameters' amplification, or higher, will easily reveal the bacilli, which are stained a handsome red.

The preparation is more brilliant and its study rather less trying to the eyes if counterstained by a Gabbet's acid blue, composed of—

Methylene blue,	2 parts
25 per cent. solution sulphuric acid,	100 parts

After being washed in water the specimen is immersed for one-half to two minutes in the acid blue washed off in water, dried between folds of filter-paper, and examined in water.

2. *Slower Method with Carbolfuchsin and Counterstain by Gabbet's Acid Blue.*—This slower method is always more satisfactory, if time permits, and should alone be used for permanent preparations.

The steps are the same until the staining stage is reached, when the cover-glasses containing the specimen are placed in the carbolfuchsin solution, say at five or six o'clock in the evening, and allowed to remain until next morning. They are then washed in water, counterstained by Gabbet's acid-blue solution, washed in water, dried between folds of filter-paper, and studied in water; or, if it is desired to mount the specimen permanently, it is passed through alcohol, xylol, or oil of cloves into Canada balsam. Specimens stained in anilin colors should not be mounted in glycerin, as this gradually withdraws the stain.

When bacilli are very few, in viscid sputum, the centrifugator may be used, or Biedert's method pursued. Fifteen c.c. of the sputum are mixed with 75 to 100 c.c. (about two teaspoonfuls) of water, 4 to 8 gtt., according to the density of the fluid, of liquor potassae are added, and the whole boiled. If still very viscid, add gradually, while boiling, 4 to 6 teaspoonfuls more of water, until a thin fluid results. The mixture is allowed to stand in a conical glass for two days, when the supernatant fluid is removed and the sediment is examined as before. It is to be remembered that bacilli treated with alkalis stain slowly, and longer immersion in the staining fluid may be necessary on this account.

Randle C. Rosenberger has recently announced\* a method of demonstrating tubercle bacilli in the circulating blood in cases of tuberculosis, which if confirmed, will be one of the most valuable contributions to our knowledge of this subject since the discovery of the bacillus itself.

Rosenberger's method is as follows:

Five cc. of blood are withdrawn from a vein in the arm and immediately placed in an equal quantity of a 2% solution of sodium citrate in physiological salt solution. The mixture is well shaken and placed in the refrigerator for twenty-four hours. A quantity of the sediment is withdrawn in a pipette and smeared upon a glass slide. This is dried upon a copper plate with moderate heat and then placed in distilled water until complete laking of the blood has resulted. A delicate film remains which is dried and fixed in a Bunsen flame and then stained by the usual technique for tubercle bacilli. At least three slides should be prepared and searched for thirty minutes before a negative diagnosis is made. The pipettes, syringes, etc., should be thoroughly cleaned and sterile.

In fifty cases that he reports of the various forms of tuberculosis, tubercle bacilli were found in every one. Reference: "American Journal of Medical Sciences," February, 1909.

\*The presence of tubercle bacilli in the circulating blood in tuberculosis, by Randle C. Rosenberger, "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," vol. Lxxxvii, p. 267, February, 1909.

the wife who was his faithful nurse for years. It would seem, however, that the contagium is more active than such experience would lead one to suppose. Thus, Cornet studied the records of certain institutions whose inmates are devoted to nursing, and discovered the fact that a large proportion of these (62.8 per cent. in 25 years) died of phthisis; also that of 100 nurses 63 died of this disease. It is to be remembered, however, that the life of the Sisters in convents was formerly unwholesome from too close confinement. On the other hand, the statistics of the Brompton Hospital for Consumptives in London is decidedly against any conclusion that contact with patients peculiarly endangers the lives of doctors, nurses, or attendants. This, too, though they cover a period when no precautions were taken to destroy the bacillus.

Flick's studies also point to a greater activity of the contagium than is usually admitted. He examined all of the houses in a ward in Philadelphia where there had been deaths from consumption, and found that 33 per cent. of such houses had more than one case, that 25 per cent. of these houses had been infected prior to 1888, and that more than 33 per cent. of the deaths which occurred since 1888 took place in them. These observations accord with the results of Cornet's experiments, which demonstrated that the scraping from the walls of phthisical wards inoculated into the lower animals produced tuberculosis.

A truly remarkable experience of Reich is related by Eichhorst.<sup>1</sup> In the town of Neuenburg, containing 1300 inhabitants, the midwifery cases were about equally divided between two midwives. One of these contracted consumption. She was in the habit of blowing from her mouth into the air-passages of the new-born children, with a view to clear away the mucus. Within two years ten of the children delivered by this woman died of tubercular meningitis, while of the children delivered by the healthy midwife none showed any sign of tuberculosis.

The conditions which favor the growth and multiplication of bacilli have been carefully studied, but have been only partially determined. One of the best recognized of these,

*Heredity*, is much more influential when both parents have the disease than when one is affected. It seems to be true that the child resembling a tuberculous parent is more liable to the disease than one who resembles the healthy parent.

A second favoring condition is *scrofulosis*, or the "delicate constitution." The peculiar enlargement of the lymphatic glands, formerly known as scrofula, is now regarded as true tuberculosis of those glands. There remains, however, a condition called scrofulosis, characterized by paleness, softness, and translucency of the skin of its subject, in whom inflammations run a slow course, and tend to resolve slowly and to terminate in cheesy products. To this some, and notably Rindfleisch, applied the name scrofulosis or the tuberculous diathesis. In these the tubercle bacillus finds a favorable soil. On the other hand, there is a tradition that persons affected with tuberculosis of the lymphatic glands are less prone to tuberculosis of the lungs than others.

*Defective and insufficient food*, especially when associated with imperfect

<sup>1</sup>"Pathologie und Therapie," vol. i, p. 559.

ventilation, privation, grief, and overwork, are also conditions which favor the growth of the bacillus.

*Frequently recurring bronchial catarrh* by lowering the vitality of the mucous membrane engenders a soil favorable to the growth and multiplication of the tubercle bacillus. Any of the causes that produce such catarrh may be included among predisposing factors. Measles, whooping-cough, and typhoid fever with bronchial complications are sometimes followed by it. Occupations favor it. Particles of dust inhaled in the pursuit of various trades and avocations, as in coal-mining, stone-cutting and steel-grinding, are well known to have this effect. It is said (U. S. Census Report, 1890) that 288 potters die of consumption to 100 farmers from the same cause.

*Damp localities* favor the development of tuberculosis, and the very interesting observations of H. P. Bowditch, made a number of years ago, show that in houses thus situated case after case occurs, and whole families have been swept away. It is more than likely these results are dependent on a vulnerability engendered by the "colds" and catarrhs which such localities induce, although contagion may have to do with them.

*No race* is exempt, but the colored race is especially predisposed, as is also the American Indian when brought under the influence of civilization. Tuberculosis appears to be spreading among the Indians, even in districts in the Rocky Mountains where the disease is rare among the whites. It has been said that tuberculosis affects in the shape of the mild or severe form of pulmonary tuberculosis one-half of the whole human race, that it causes the death of one-seventh of all persons who pass away, killing one-third of those who perish between the ages of 15 and 45. The Irish race in this country is also susceptible and many die of it. On the other hand, the Russian-Polish Jews are remarkably exempt, and next to them are the native American whites. I am indebted to W. A. King, Chief Statistician of the United States Census Bureau, for the following figures as to the nationality and race of victims of this disease:

	Six years 1884-1891	Calendar year 1900.
White persons having mothers born in:		
United States,	205.1	151.8
Ireland,	645.7	526.1
Germany,	328.8	214.2
Russia and Poland,	98.2	88.5

It is said that over 6,000 die annually from tuberculosis in Pennsylvania alone; while in the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland 60,000 are said to die annually; and it is probable that at least three times this number are suffering from one form or another of the disease. In Philadelphia in 1908 there were 3518 deaths from tuberculosis of which 2065 were from pulmonary tuberculosis.

*Climates* characterized especially by frequent rapid changes of temperature favor the development of tuberculosis. Such are the temperate zones. Tuberculosis is less common in the frigid and torrid zones, but these climates are not exempt.

*Age* is doubtless a predisposing cause, the susceptible period for pul-

monary tuberculosis being between 20 and 35; for meningeal tuberculosis, between two and seven; while the lymphatic glands including the mesenteric and bronchial, are prone to involvement in the first ten years of life. The mesenteric glands are more commonly infected during the first five years of life, including the nursing period and that during which the child is nourished on milk.

The *shape of the chest* has long been regarded as influencing the development of tuberculosis, and a form of body peculiar to phthisical subjects was described by Hippocrates (B. C. 460-357); Galen (A. D. 130-200) described the same type of chest. At the present day two varieties of chests are described as phthisical, the *alar* and the *flat*. The former is narrow, shallow, and long, the angles of the scapulæ projecting like wings behind, the proper ratio between the antero-posterior and transverse diameters being, however, preserved. The ribs droop or are unduly oblique. The throat is prominent, the neck long, and the head bent forward. In the flat chest the antero-posterior diameter is disproportionately short, owing to the absence of convexity in the cartilages, which are sometimes even depressed, carrying with them the sternum and producing a form of chest which, on section, is kidney-shaped. In this form there is not the increased obliquity of the ribs characteristic of the alar chest.

*Traumatism* is also an agency of acknowledged importance in favoring the lodgment of the tubercle bacillus. This is more particularly seen in the development of tuberculosis of the joints succeeding injury. It is true, also, that contusion of the chest, without apparent laceration of the lungs or fracture of a rib, has been followed by tuberculosis.

**Mode of Invasion and Spread.**—The bacillus of tuberculosis is probably omnipresent in the atmosphere, being derived from the drying and pulverization of expectorated sputum. The entrance into the body in the vast majority of instances is by the respiratory tract. Hence the great frequency of tuberculosis in the lungs and bronchial glands, which are the first tissues open to its approach. The comparative studies of George B. Wood<sup>1</sup> go to show that the tonsillar tissue of the throat because of its anatomic construction and topographic relations is more liable to become infected by tuberculosis than any other part of the upper respiratory tract. In almost all cases of advanced pulmonary phthisis the faucial tonsils become inoculated. In about five per cent. of hypertrophied pharyngeal tonsils some form of primary tuberculosis may be found. Primary infection of the faucial tonsil is a rare condition. It is possible, however, for the bacillus to enter by the skin, causing lupus or skin tuberculosis. It enters more readily by open wounds. Through the alimentary canal we have an undoubted route of infection. This may happen in children using the milk of tuberculous cows;<sup>2</sup> in adults, from the swallowing of sputum. It is not necessary that the cow should have tuberculosis of the udder to render her milk tuberculous. This has been conclusively shown by Bollinger and confirmed by Hirschberger and Harold Ernst. The boiling of milk destroys its infective qualities. Tuberculous meat is less frequently

<sup>1</sup> The Significance of Tuberculous Deposits in the Tonsils. "Journal of the Am. Med. Assoc." Read at 55th Annual Session, 1904.

<sup>2</sup> The question as to whether human tuberculosis can be communicated by the introduction of the bacilli of bovine tuberculosis has been a matter of earnest dispute of late in which the discoverer of the bacillus has taken part. The weight of evidence appears at present to be in the affirmative.

the cause of tuberculous infection by the intestine because it is almost invariably cooked before eating, and also because striated muscular tissue is an infrequent seat of tuberculous lesions.

The tubercle bacillus having once invaded an organ produces localized tuberculosis, which may or may not become generalized in a manner to be presently described. More rarely, tuberculosis may become general from the onset without any local initial lesion being discoverable. This constitutes one of the varieties of acute tuberculosis. Once established, tuberculosis spreads by contiguity and through the lymphatic system and blood. In the former the tubercle grows by the addition of miliary tubercles at its periphery. Through the lymphatic system tuberculosis spreads to the lymphatic glands, and thence to the adjacent serous membranes. The barrier of the lymphatic glands once passed, the blood becomes the medium of a general infection. In the vast majority of cases generalization takes place from a focus of tubercle somewhere in the system, as the lungs, or a tubercular lymphatic gland, from which the bacilli start their migration.

The favorite seats of tuberculosis are the lymphatic glands, lungs, liver, kidney, spleen, intestinal canal, urogenital mucous membranes, the brain (especially its membranes and blood-vessels), bones and joints. In fact, no tissue or organ is exempt, the salivary glands and pancreas being least frequently invaded.

**Anatomy and Histology of Tubercle.**—The *miliary tubercle* is the beginning of all tubercular deposits. It is itself a compound body composed of smaller submiliary tubercles, of which from 10 to 50 unite to form a miliary tubercle. It is about the size of a millet seed, hence the name miliary. By actual measurement it ranges from one to five millimeters ( $1/25$  to  $1/5$  inch) in diameter. In its young state it is a translucent gray granulation, especially characterized by its want of vascularity. The typical submiliary tubercle is about 0.4 millimeter ( $1/60$  inch) in diameter, and contains a giant cell in its center, surrounded by a close infiltration of lymphoid cells or a higher tissue of the lymphadenoid connective-tissue type, in the meshes of which are lodged loose lymph corpuscles or larger epithelioid cells. The giant cell may be wanting, and the whole tubercle may be a mass of lymphoid cells, among which the tubercle bacilli are scattered, or the bacilli may be found in the giant cells, in the epithelioid cells, or even in the lymph cells. When isolated the miliary tubercle is found surrounded by a dense connective-tissue network, welding it firmly to the other tissues in which it is imbedded. In thin sections of an injected preparation it will be found that the blood-vessels go up to the tubercle and there terminate abruptly. To this lack of vascularity the tubercle owes its tendency to cheesy degeneration, in the course of which it assumes an opaque white color. When this happens, the center exhibits under the microscope a granular, ground-glass appearance, while macroscopically tubercle in mass assumes a yellow color.

In certain situations, especially in the lungs, the miliary tubercle forms larger foci, which gradually increase in size and constitute tubercular infiltration, the yellow or crude tubercle of Laennec (1819) and Louis as contrasted with the miliary or gray tubercle. According to these and other observers during the first 30 or 40 years of the last century, gray and

yellow tubercles were simply different forms of tubercle. Later, however, the influence of Virchow, Buhl, and Niemeyer (1857-70) caused it to be quite generally accepted that the only tubercle was the gray granulation or miliary tubercle, while yellow or crude tubercle was nothing but cheesy inflammatory matter. The subjects of this were still regarded as having phthisis, but not tuberculosis, whence the celebrated declaration of Niemeyer (1866), "The greatest danger to most phthisical patients is the development of the tubercle."<sup>1</sup>

Even before the discovery of the bacillus by Koch, in 1882—a discovery that resulted in the re-establishment of the unity of phthisis—the view began to gain ground, especially through the teachings of Buhl and Rindfleisch, that cheesy matter may be metamorphosed true tubercle, or it may have been primarily scrofulous inflammatory deposit, either of which might produce tubercle by an auto-inoculation. In the meantime, in 1865, Villemin announced the inoculability of tubercle. The discovery of the bacillus by Koch, in 1882, completed the overthrow of the duality of phthisis, the final result of which was the proposition, now generally admitted, *that all phthisis is tubercular*.

The *histogenesis* of tubercle is in no way peculiar. We have only to remember that the bacillus is an irritant. The same response occurs to it as to other irritants. The wandering leukocytes flow from the adjacent vessels and form the lymphoid cells that constitute the bulk of the tubercle. The stabile cells of the connective tissue, the endothelial and perithelial cells of the blood- and lymph-vessels, the epithelium of the serous membranes, proliferate and enlarge, forming the epithelioid cells, and, in some instances, the giant cells, in both of which bacilli may be imbedded. The bacilli seem, however, to vary inversely with the giant cells. Thus, in lupus, joint and lymphatic gland tuberculosis, giant cells are numerous and bacilli scanty, while in lung tuberculosis bacilli are numerous and giant cells scanty.

The reticulum of connective tissue, usually more or less present at the periphery of the miliary nodule, is formed just as is connective tissue in ordinary nonspecific inflammation, by the fibrillation of the protoplasm of cells and the rarefaction of the resulting matrix.

The *origin of giant cells* has been much discussed, but it seems likely that any one of the connective-tissue cells named is capable of developing into a giant cell. It may also perhaps arise from the fusion of individual cells. It contains from four to 20 nuclei, commonly arranged in the periphery of the cell.

Another form in which the tubercle presents itself is the *solitary tubercle*, which is not made up of united miliary nodules, but consists of a single large, cheesy mass varying in size from that of a pea to a human fist. It is almost invariably secondary to primary tuberculosis somewhere else, commonly in the lungs. It is made up chiefly of round cells, in which are found also tubercle bacilli. In the peripheral layers a tissue of more fibrous structure prevails, which in certain tubercles become so abundant as to give rise to the term "fibrous tubercle." In addition to caseation the solitary tubercle is subject to puriform liquefaction, forming the so-called tuberculous abscess, and also to calcification. The two processes

<sup>1</sup> Niemeyer's "Lectures on Phthisis," New Sydenham Society's Translation, 1870, p. 11.

last named may be associated in a single solitary tubercle. Sometimes it is encysted. An especially favorite seat for solitary tubercle is the brain in children, especially the cerebellum at the border between the white and gray substance. The nodules are sometimes multiple. It is found also in the spinal cord, the spleen, the liver, and the heart.

**Degeneration of Tubercle.**—Tubercle is subject to changes, of which the most frequent and characteristic is *caseation*. It is a regressive change, whereby the primarily transparent tubercular tissue is converted into an opaque yellowish substance of various degrees of consistency, resembling certain varieties of cheese, whence the name. The process is a form of coagulation necrosis, beginning in the center of the tubercle. The cells lose their outline, their nuclei are no longer demonstrable by ordinary staining methods, and a confused granular mass results. Bacilli are, however, present. At times, on section, a quasi fibrillation appears in the caseated tubercle that is not to be mistaken for a true fibrous matrix. It may be the result of compression. Caseation is not limited to tubercle. Cellular inflammatory products and even cancer-cell masses may undergo the cheesy change.

Most frequently caseation is followed by *softening*. The precise conditions necessary for this are not known, though commonly, as soon as a caseated mass reaches a certain size, it breaks down into a pyoid product which is not histologically pus, but consists of a number of fat-drops, granular débris, and shriveled, formless cells. In the broken-down material the tubercle bacilli are exceedingly numerous, much more so than in the dry caseated tubercle. From this circumstance it is held by some that the caseation and subsequent softening are the effect of the bacilli, the action of which is compared to that of bacteria of decomposition. It seems much more reasonable to ascribe these degenerative changes to defective nourishment of the new formation. This view is sustained by the fact that softening does not take place until the tubercular mass acquires a certain size, commonly a half to one centimeter (0.2 to 0.4 inch) in diameter. The more rapid the formation the earlier does softening set in.

More rarely caseated tubercle becomes infiltrated with lime salts and undergoes *calcareous* change, by which a sort of healing is accomplished. The calcareous infiltration of tubercle is more especially prone to occur in lymphatic glands, but also happens rarely in the lungs.

Finally, a tubercle—and especially the miliary tubercle—may undergo a *fibroid change*, or sclerosis. Under these circumstances the new formation is converted into fibroid tissue. A certain more limited degree of cheesy metamorphosis takes place at the same time, but the product is a firm, tough nodule. This fibroid change is more prone to occur in tuberculosis of the peritoneum.

**Secondary Inflammatory Processes.**—So much for the change in tubercle itself. It is, however, capable of exciting *retroactive inflammation* in its own neighborhood. Thus, in the lungs a catarrhal pneumonia involving adjacent acini is often produced. In other instances an overgrowth of interstitial tissue ensues. Sometimes it is excessive and results in the so-called fibroid phthisis. More frequently this form of consumption is the result of a coincident irritation by another cause, such as the irritant par-



ticles encountered in such occupations as steel-grinding, stone-cutting, and mining. Associated with tubercular processes, especially in the lungs, is constantly found true suppuration, the result of mixed infection—whence the admixture of pus in the expectoration of pulmonary consumption. It is held by some, and apparently by Koch himself, that the tubercle bacillus is also capable of exciting suppuration in the absence of other pus-producing organisms.

## II. ACUTE TUBERCULOSIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Diffuse General Tuberculosis; Acute Miliary Tuberculosis.*

**Definition.**—The simultaneous comparatively sudden irruption of miliary tubercles in different parts of the body as the result of the spread of bacilli through the blood and lymphatic systems. It is the most emphatic expression of the infectious nature of tuberculosis. The infection is in almost every instance an auto-inoculation, of which the source is a nodule of softening tubercle in some part of the body. In 300 cases of miliary tuberculosis examined by Buhl such a source was found in all but ten, while Simmonds in 100 cases found the caseating focus in every instance. The most common seat of such a nodule is the lungs, next a tubercular lymphatic gland, especially a tracheobronchial gland. After this there is less constancy, but tubercular joints, a tubercular pleurisy, tubercular peritonitis, and even a skin tuberculosis may be held responsible. Such a nodule may break directly into a vein, furnishing an instance of true embolic infection.

Acute tuberculosis occurs most frequently in young persons between 12 and 20 years of age, but adults are not exempt. Any tissue or organ may be involved, but very seldom do we find all the organs of the body affected, though it is quite common to find lesions in more than two, as, for example, the lungs, the pleura, the membranes of the brain, and the peritoneum. The first three are favorite locations.

**Clinical Varieties.**—Three principal *clinical forms* of acute tuberculosis are recognized, one presenting signs of acute general infection *without special localization*, another exhibiting, in addition, easily recognizable *pulmonary symptoms*, and the third, *cerebral and spinal symptoms*.

### I. PULMONARY FORM OF ACUTE TUBERCULOSIS.

This occurs in two forms (*a*) miliary tuberculosis, (*b*) pneumonic phthisis.

(*a*) *Miliary Tuberculosis Succeeding on Chronic Pulmonary Tuberculosis, Chronic Bronchitis, Whooping-Cough, Measles, etc.*

**Symptoms.**—This form succeeds in adults on chronic tuberculosis of the lung, on prolonged bronchitis, on whooping-cough or on measles in children. An irruption of miliary tuberculosis the result of infection takes place throughout the lung with or without bronchopneumonia. The tubercles may be scattered throughout the lung, distributed by the blood, and may

be found in the walls of the vessels, or radially arranged around the primary focus. It is this event which gave rise to Niemeyer's dictum, "The greatest danger to most phthisical patients is the development of the tubercle." To the previous cough and physical signs are added higher fever, increased cough, and extreme dyspnea associated with marked cyanosis. The last symptom is very striking.

*Physical Signs.*—The physical signs may not be altered; there may be sonorous and sibilant râles or there may be signs indicating deeper involvement of the lung, including small areas of impaired resonance, crepitant râles, and bronchial or bronchovesicular breathing (bronchopneumonic foci). On this account there may be rusty expectoration, rarely hemoptysis. The dull areas may alternate with areas of hyperresonance—hyperresonance due to relaxation (the Skodaic type)—or it may be due to localized emphysema. On the front of the chest, especially in some cases of miliary tuberculosis of the lungs, there may be unusual resonance. Occasionally this Skodaic resonance continues to the end. As the disease progresses moist râles become general all over the chest. Again there may be friction crepitation due to tubercular pleurisy.

*Diagnosis.*—The diagnosis is made by recalling the symptoms detailed. Choroidal tubercle should be looked for. Especially important are the disproportionate dyspnea and cyanosis associated with the signs of diffuse bronchitis. Leukocytosis is here present.

*Prognosis and Treatment.*—The disease is often rapidly fatal and treatment is of little avail toward cure. It must consist in efforts to make the patient comfortable, but as the diagnosis can perhaps never be made with absolute certainty the treatment to be detailed later for the cure of chronic tuberculosis should be carried out.

#### 51 *Pneumonic Phthisis—Bronchopneumonic Phthisis.*

This more unusual form of tubercular phthisis constitutes one variety of "galloping consumption," or *phthisis florida*. In it the tubercular infiltration is by a rapid peripheral invasion inciting to active inflammation. This is manifested as a bronchopneumonia, by which the air-vesicles and bronchioles are variously blocked with cheesy matter. The result is the dissemination through extensive areas of lung tissue of opaque, white foci one-fifth to one-half inch (5 to 12 mm.) in diameter. These areas are usually separated by others of a more or less congested but still crepitating tissue, contrasting strongly with the white of the tubercular bronchopneumonic foci. These bronchopneumonic foci tend to soften with varying rapidity, resulting sometimes in numerous little abscess cavities throughout the lung. At other times the bronchopneumonic foci are more widely separated or may be limited to the apices. In more rare instances the condition may succeed on croupous pneumonia, forming continuous areas which may also extend throughout a lobe or entire lung. The process is truly pneumonic; the results resemble, indeed, more a lung in the second stage of croupous pneumonia. As in it, too, the lung is heavy and airless, sinking rapidly in water. There is, however, a greater tendency to disintegration than in croupous pneumonia, and cavities form rapidly in the apices and elsewhere.

There may also be enlargement of the bronchial glands in either of these forms, but more particularly in the first—the rapid peripheral extension.

**Symptoms.**—The *bronchopneumonic* form of consumption occurs most frequently in children as a sequel to measles or whooping-cough. In such seemingly ordinary cases of bronchitis, with fever, obstinate cough, and shortness of breath, physical examination will reveal submucous and subcrepitant râles throughout the chest with or without limited areas of consolidation. Tubercle bacilli and elastic tissue appear in the sputum. The fever continues and may become hectic, with sweats. The child emaciates rapidly, and death ensues in from three to eight weeks. Other cases originate more suddenly and with less apparent cause as cases of simple bronchial catarrh, which assume the graver picture described. Such children may inherit a predisposition to phthisis.

In adults the attack begins as an ordinary cold in a person with a predisposition to tuberculosis, though apparently healthy, or run down with overwork. The cough is harassing, and soon becomes loose, expectoration mucopurulent. There are high fever and rapid wasting, and hemorrhage may set in to the surprise of everyone concerned. Then there may be a lull in the storm, but for a short time only. The symptoms, and especially the burning fever, wear out the patient. Bacilli and elastic tissue will now be found in the sputum and the diagnosis is settled. The patient may perish in three weeks. On the other hand, a reactive effort toward improvement may take place and after a time be followed again by decline and perhaps again by improvement, with the effect of prolonging the disease, but not of altering the termination. The physical signs are the same as in children, submucous and subcrepitant râles throughout the chest with or without limited areas of consolidation.

The pure *pneumonic* form succeeding what seemed to be croupous pneumonia is more an affection of adults. More rare, still, than the bronchopneumonic form, it may be also rapid in its course. It begins with a chill followed by fever, often after exposure to cold, with pain in the side, cough, dyspnea, mucous and rusty sputum, impairment of resonance, bronchial breathing, increased vocal fremitus—in fact, all the symptoms of a pneumonia of the whole or a part of a lung, which may be an upper or lower lobe. If the lower lobe, it is probably regarded as a pneumonia until the absence of the signs of resolution call attention to the fact that something unusual is going on. Later, softening and the signs of a cavity may present themselves at the apex, and bacilli and elastic tissue be found in the sputum. The case may last for three weeks or three months, or even pass over into a chronic phthisis.

**Diagnosis.**—In the bronchopneumonic form it is difficult to make the diagnosis early from simple bronchitis and bronchopneumonia. The temperature in phthisis is probably more irregular and higher. Where the disease lasts more than three weeks, the sputum should be examined carefully for bacilli. The diagnosis in the pneumonic form can never be made in the beginning, because the symptoms of the first and second stages of this form are identical with those of the first and second stages of true pneumonia, and it is only when the type of the latter disease is departed from that phthisis can be suspected. The fever in true pneumonia should

abate by the ninth day or twelfth day at latest, and if it continue after that time pneumonic phthisis should be suspected and the expectoration should be examined for bacilli.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is very unfavorable in this form of consumption, death being inevitable in from a few weeks to a few months. Rarely, patients live a year or longer.

**Treatment.**—Treatment of the acute stage is symptomatic. After the acute stage it is that of chronic phthisis.

## 2. GENERAL OR TYPHOID FORM OF ACUTE MILIARY TUBERCULOSIS.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This is the anatomy of disseminated miliary tuberculosis in the different organs and tissues of the body invaded, and so far as not already described will be given when treating of the disease in these organs.

**Symptoms.**—The general or typhoid form of acute tuberculosis has long been recognized as resembling in a startlingly close manner the symptoms of typhoid fever, and many mistakes have been made in diagnosis because of this resemblance. Since the use of the clinical thermometer in diagnosis, however, such mistakes have been less frequent.

As in typhoid fever, a *prodrome* of several days, and even weeks, of ill-defined sickness often precedes the taking to bed. *Fever*, with its heightened temperature and frequent pulse, is present, as are also the dry tongue, hebetude, and delirium of typhoid. Yet afebrile cases are reported by Reinhold and Eichhost. If differences are sought in the fever of the two diseases, it will be found that the pulse and respiration may be unduly frequent as compared with typhoid fever, but above all, the temperature will be found to differ in its course from that of typhoid fever. There is an absence of the characteristic "tidal wave" rise of temperature of typhoid. There is an evening rise and a morning fall; and an occasional inversion, with lower evening and higher morning temperature, takes place, which is held to be characteristic. The range is between 101° and 103° F. (38.3° and 39.4° C.), but may reach 104° or 105° F. (40° or 40.5° C.). The countenance is apt to be more dusky than in typhoid.

*Excessive sweating* is a symptom more characteristic of acute tuberculosis than of typhoid fever, and may result in sudamina, which also characterize the latter disease. *Herpes* is, however, often present, while it is almost a negatively pathognomonic sign of typhoid. These two symptoms—*i. e.*, sweating and herpes, together with the intermitting fever—constitute a resemblance to malarial fever. Waller and Eichhorst have found *rose-colored spots* on the abdomen and breast, but they are certainly infrequent, and they do not occur in crops as in typhoid fever. *Enlargement of the spleen* is often present and even *hemorrhage from the bowels* has been noted. Small *albuminuria* is a frequent symptom, not due, as might be expected, to a tubercular involvement of the kidney, but to the fever process.

Repeated examinations of the lungs in early stages fail to discover *physical signs* indicating disease of these organs, and thus the conclusion that there is no lung involvement is apparently confirmed. Later, however,

pulmonary symptoms may set in, also meningeal symptoms, the duration of which may lead to a suspicion that the disease is not typhoid fever.

In view of the general possibilities of acute miliary tuberculosis, there may be *pleural* or *pericardial friction* and other symptoms of pericarditis and pleurisy, as well as those of *peritonitis* and *meningitis*.

*Tuberculosis of the choroid* coat of the eye has been frequently met in acute miliary tuberculosis, more particularly in cases where there has been the widest dissemination.

Notwithstanding the difficulties that attend the investigation, the instances in which tubercle *bacilli have been found in the blood* have been so numerous that in doubtful cases it should be examined. Rutimeyer suggests that the blood be taken for this purpose from the spleen by means of a hypodermic syringe, since it has been shown that the blood of this organ may be especially rich in bacilli. On the other hand, bacilli are rarely found in the sputum in acute general tuberculosis, even if there be involvement of the lungs, because in this form of tuberculosis the tubercles are situated not in the open air-passages so much as in the interstitial tissue of the lung and in the blood-vessel walls.

**Diagnosis.**—As stated, acute miliary tuberculosis resembles especially *typhoid fever*, but a carefully kept temperature chart will soon exhibit a difference in the two diseases from this point of view. If bacilli are found in the blood and tubercles on the choroid the question is settled at once. The duration of the disease, though short, is usually longer than that of typhoid fever, and before the clinical thermometer gave us its valuable information the first suggestion that something else than typhoid fever was present came about from noting an absence of the usual defervescence. The Widal reaction in typhoid fever and its absence in tuberculosis are valuable aids in the diagnosis, although reaction occurs in acute tuberculosis in rather a surprising number of cases. Some of these cases are explained by a previous occurrence of typhoid fever in the subject.

It is well known that typhoid fever is characterized by a negative leukocytosis, that is, a diminution rather than an increase of leukocytes in the blood. Precise systematic studies of the blood in the typhoid form of acute miliary tuberculosis are wanting, but from such observations as have been made, it appears reasonable that in true, uncomplicated miliary tuberculosis, there is also wanting an increase in the colorless corpuscles of the blood over the normal. So soon, however, as there becomes associated with the tuberculosis any catarrhal or suppurative condition of the parts involved, a leukocytosis presents itself. It cannot, however, be said that leukocytosis is characteristic of true, miliary tuberculosis as contrasted with a diminished number of leukocytes characteristic of typhoid fever.

The resemblance to intermittent fever has been noted. Here, too, a close study of the temperature will soon show the difference, while a search for the hematozoon of malaria should be made. The failure of quinin to cure will settle the question against a malarial cause for the fever.

**Prognosis.**—The course is invariably toward an unfavorable issue. Scarcely ever less than four weeks in duration, it is often eight and even longer, although cases are reported to have terminated at the end of two weeks and even twelve days. Such must, however, be extremely rare.

The relative shortness of duration, nevertheless, constitutes it one of the forms of *galloping* consumption. Acute miliary tuberculosis always terminates fatally sooner or later, although delusive improvements often raise hopes that are not realized.

**Treatment.**—Treatment for acute tuberculosis can only be symptomatic. To our present knowledge a cure has never been accomplished. Antipyretics may be used in moderate doses; three to five grains of antipyrin, antifebrin, or phenacetin, the last probably the best, frequently repeated, abate the fever. Anodynes to quiet cough are also necessary. Supporting food and stimulants are indicated.

### 3. MENINGEAL FORM OF ACUTE MILIARY TUBERCULOSIS. TUBERCULOUS MENINGITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Tuberculous Leptomeningitis; Basilar Meningitis; Acute Hydrocephalus; Water on the Brain.*

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the pia mater due to an irruption of miliary tubercles on this membrane and on the blood-vessels proceeding from it, extending also at times to the corresponding membrane of the spinal cord.

**Historical.**—We are indebted to Robert Whytt for the first accurate information of this disease in his "Observation on Dropsy of the Brain," Edinburgh, 1768. In 1827 Guersant applied the term *granular meningitis* to this form of inflammation of the meninges, and in 1830 Pavoine showed the nature of the associated granules and called attention to their concurrence with tubercles in other parts of the body. In February, 1834, W. W. Gerhard, of Philadelphia, published in the "American Journal of the Medical Sciences" a paper on "Cerebral Affections of Children," based on a study of the disease made in the Children's Hospital in Paris. These studies included autopsies as well as clinical reports, and the descriptions of the lesions found in the former are so accurate that they can scarcely be improved upon. To Gerhard more than anyone else are we indebted for a proper location and classification of the disease.

**Etiology.**—I have said that the disease consists essentially in an irruption of miliary tubercles on the pia mater, with resulting inflammatory product. To this end there must be somewhere in the body a tubercular focus whence the bacilli start. Tuberculous bones and joints may furnish such a focus, but it is most frequently located in the bronchial or mesenteric glands. Such focus cannot always be found, even when present. The bare possibility of a primary tubercular meningitis may, however, be admitted, in which event the cribriform plate of the ethmoid is the most likely route of bacilli inhaled from the external atmosphere through the nose to the brain. The disease is most common in children between the second and fifth years, though it is not very rare in adults, long subjects of tuberculosis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The pia mater at the base of the brain is the most frequent seat, whence the common term *basilar meningitis*. Particularly are the neighborhood of the optic chiasm, the Sylvian fissure, the interpeduncular space and pons varolii involved. In addition to the miliary tubercles are seen turbidity of the membrane increasing to opacity, the whole smeared over with fibrin and pus. The medulla oblongata and base of the cerebellum may be covered. More rarely the inflammation may extend to the lateral and convex surfaces of the brain. Especially do we find the adventitia-sheaths of the blood-vessels invaded by the tubercles, which are

seen in the bead-like rows when the vessels are withdrawn from the substance of the brain. These vessels are better examined when spread on a dark background, with a low magnifying power. Sections of blood-vessels should be made also, because there may be tubercular infiltration of the intima, causing narrowing and obliteration of the vessel. The cerebral convolutions are softened to a slight depth by the invasion, the blood-vessels dragging a portion of the brain-substance when drawn out. Thus there is really a meningo-encephalitis.

The *lateral ventricles* contain a varying quantity of limpid or turbid fluid, a dram to several ounces, the ependyma is softened and swollen; the septum lucidum and fornix are disrupted. The convolutions may be flattened because of the pressure exerted between the dilated ventricles and unyielding cranium. More rarely there is a chronic process like that described, but slower in its course. As already mentioned, the pia mater of the cord may be involved, resulting in the same turbid picture.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of tubercular meningitis are varied and irregular in their course. At times, the beginning, at least to the superficial observer, is sudden. At others, there are many weeks of ill health with ill-defined symptoms that go to make the child unhappy, restless, and an evident sufferer. In the course of such weeks the child's appetite is poor, its tongue coated, its bowels are constipated or the reverse, and it loses weight. Such a child may have been convalescent from measles, whooping-cough, bronchitis, or other ills of childhood.

An attempt has been made with more or less success to divide the symptoms of the disease into stages, of which the first may be called *irritative*; the second, *that of subsiding irritation*; the third, *paralysis*.

1. *Irritative Stage.*—The symptoms most constant in the irritative stage are *headache*, *fever*, and *vomiting*, of which the last may be first. As has been stated, convulsions may usher in the attack, and these convulsions may intermit and be separated by periods of some length. Sometimes an accident, as a fall, may be an exciting cause, and the first vomiting may be excited by a meal of food unsuited to the child's age. The three symptoms mentioned as more constant grow in severity, especially the headache, which becomes more or less incessant and intense, so that the child is never free from it. Yet there may be a lull in the pain as the result of treatment or other cause, followed by an acute exacerbation, which probably causes the peculiar short cry known as the "hydrocephalic cry". In other cases there is constant screaming, which points to the degree of suffering. The child rarely sleeps more than a few minutes at a time, unless under the influence of powerful anodynes. There is always *fever* in this stage, though it may not be very high, 103° F. (39.4° C.) being commonly the maximum. There is more or less delirium. The *pulse* is rapid, even rapid disproportionately to the temperature, while the *breathing rate* is little altered, furnishing a symptom of some diagnostic value. Evidences of nervous irritation may occur early, more commonly late in this stage. The convulsion has been alluded to. The pupils may be contracted or irregular, there may be strabismus, or twitching of the muscles of the face from involvement of the facial nerve.

2. *Stage of Subsiding Irritation.*—In the *second stage* delirium yields to

coma, though convulsions may continue. There may be localized rigidity of the muscles of one limb or of half the body. The head may be retracted. Headache is not complained of, though the child still may occasionally cry out. The pupils are dilated or irregular, and squint is more marked from oculomotor or third-nerve irritation; the bowels are constipated; the abdomen is retracted—scaphoid. The temperature tends to be lower, but is variable. There is often a patchy redness of the skin and *tâche cérébrale* may be brought out by drawing the finger-nail across the skin.

3. *Stage of Paralysis*.—The stupor increases and may be profound. Convulsions, however, still occur. They may be localized in a group of muscles or those of one limb, or they may be unilateral. On the other hand, there may be absolute paralysis of the oculomotor nerves, and even hemiplegia. As a result of the former the pupils are dilated, the eyelids partially closed, and the eye turned upward. Hemiplegia is more apt to occur when the fissure of Sylvius is invaded, when, too, there may be aphasia. Optic neuritis is sometimes present in this stage, usually occurring late, due to invasion of the optic nerve within the skull. The facial nerve may be involved in basilar cases, producing slight facial paralysis; so may the fifth, producing anesthesia, and atrophic changes in the cornea if the Gasserian ganglion be involved. Hyperesthesia of the special senses may also be present, though this is rather a symptom of the first stage. Toward the end a typhoid state may supervene, characterized by dry tongue, muttering delirium, and involuntary discharge of urine and feces. The temperature at this stage may be subnormal, falling as low as 93° F. (33.9° C.). On the other hand, the temperature sometimes rises just before death to 106° F. (41.1° C.) or more. The entire duration of the disease is from two to three weeks. The blood examination fails to find a characteristic leukocytosis.

**Diagnosis.**—In the diagnosis we have first to recognize the presence of a meningitis, and, second, to separate the tubercular meningitis from meningitis due to other causes. The former is commonly easy, yet mistakes are often made because so many of the head symptoms are simulated by head symptoms in *dyscrasic conditions*, of which cholera infantum is a type, while retraction of the head may result from rheumatism of the muscles of the back of the neck; but optic neuritis and paralytic symptoms are confined to meningitis. The presence of tuberculosis elsewhere strengthens other signs.

The *other varieties of meningitis* that may give similar symptoms are meningitis due to internal ear disease, traumatic meningitis due to blows and injuries, syphilitic meningitis and cerebrospinal fever. In meningitis due to ear disease the history of the case should prevent a mistake. Traumatic meningitis, especially with abscess, might simulate the symptoms described, but here, too, the history of the accident would be helpful, but in absence of a knowledge of the cause there might be confusion. Syphilitic meningitis is usually chronic, involving chiefly the convexity, whence cortical symptoms, especially focal convulsions. It may, however, invade the base of the brain, when it is more apt to be limited in area and confined to one side. Basal headache and signs pointing to localization are then present. Often the history does not help us, because the patient denies the existence of the specific cause. Cerebrospinal fever furnishes sometimes



identical symptoms, and the two diseases have often been separated only by the bacteriological examination of the cerebrospinal fluid. In spinal fever retraction of the head and back is more marked and there is more pain in the trunk muscles, in a word, more symptoms of involvement of the spinal membranes. The diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis is most conclusively established if tubercles be detected in the choroid. Spinal puncture yielding the tubercle bacillus in cultures from the recovered fluid is equally valuable. Moreover the cyto-composition of this fluid in tuberculous meningitis reveals a large excess of lymph cells while that of cerebrospinal fever contains more polymorphonuclear cells.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of tuberculous meningitis well established is invariably fatal. On the other hand, the chances of error in diagnosis are so many that it is not wise to be too confident. It has happened to me more than once to have had cases in children recover where I had thought the disease present, but where the ultimate result proved the diagnosis erroneous.

**Treatment.**—Curative treatment is, therefore, futile, but for the same reason should be persevered in. The cases whose recovery has surprised me have invariably been those in which I used cod-liver oil inunctions. These should, therefore, be persisted in. In addition to this all other supporting measures possible should be used with such treatment of symptoms as will secure the least suffering to the little patient.

### III. CHRONIC TUBERCULOSIS.

#### I. PULMÓNARY TUBERCULOSIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Phthisis pulmonalis*; *Pulmonary Consumption*; *Consumption of the Lungs*.

**Definition.**—Pulmonary tuberculosis is an infectious disease due to the lodgment and proliferation of the tubercle bacillus in the lung substance. The Greek term *φθισις* is an admirable word, meaning literally wasting, which is almost, if not quite, the most characteristic symptom of the disease known technically as *phthisis pulmonalis*.

**Etiology.**—The dependence of tuberculous consumption on the tubercle bacillus and its various favoring elements has been fully considered under the head of General Tuberculosis, page 255. There are two possible routes of invasion of the lungs, one by the air-passages—inhalation tuberculosis—the other by the blood. The former is by far the most common for ordinary forms of consumption, while the latter produces usually miliary tuberculosis.

**Incipency and Spread.**—*Inhalation Tuberculosis.*—The bacillus, notwithstanding its probable detention at various points in its journey, rarely obtains a fruitful soil until it reaches the ultimate ramifications of a bronchus or its termination in the alveolar passages, infundibula, and air-vesicles. It is in the septa forming these that it locates itself by preference, multiplies and excites secondary inflammatory processes, the sum of which constitutes, the *tubercular nodule*.

A correct understanding of what is to follow may be facilitated by a review of the drawing on p. 272, showing a single lung lobule 1.5 cm. long

and 1 cm. broad, magnified ten times. The principal bronchus is seen entering the lobule and dividing into seven smaller bronchioles, and each of these into two still smaller ones. These smaller bronchioles open directly into a group of from three to five branching alveolar passages, with their infundibula beset with air-vesicles. These form the equivalent of an acinus in a racemose gland, and may be termed *lung acini*, a more constant unit of lung structure, as Rindfleisch truly says, than the lobule, at least as far as size is concerned, since as few as two of these may unite to form a lobule, or as many as 20 to 30. The figure in the text is made up of 14. In pathological processes other than tuberculosis, the lobule is the more important

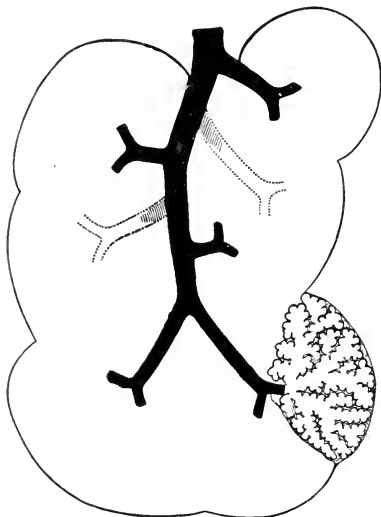


FIG. 22.—Lobule of Lung, Showing Acini and Alveolar Passages—(after Rindfleisch).

element, since each is determined by the distribution of the blood-vessels and interstitial connective tissue. Emboli, infarcts, and abscesses therefore light upon the border of the *lobules*, while the miliary tubercle is found between the bronchioles and within the *alveolar* septa, where the bacillus secures lodgment and the tubercle its growth. This favorite position may be seen by making a section across one of the smaller bronchioles after it passes into the acinus, when we will meet the circular edge of a bronchiole and an entire system of partitions between three and five alveolar passages.

Under the irritating influence of the bacillus, these septa undergo cellular infiltration, which results in their thickening and encroachment upon the lumina of the air-passages. By this process is produced a little granulation that corresponds at first in size to an acinus, and enlarged by the implication of other acini until a lobule is finally involved, producing an irregularly rounded or oval body assuming somewhat the shape of a lobule, ranging in diameter from one millimeter to six millimeters ( $1/25$  to  $1/4$  inch)

—the *tubercle granulum*. On section such a granule is found perforated by one or more minute openings or slits corresponding to the air-passages, one for each of the roundish subdivisions which make up the nodule. In vertical section the appearance is more definite, having a central stem with branches. The area is whitish-yellow in color, surrounded by a ring of hyperemic tissue. The microscope shows the periphery of the bronchiole or air-passage infiltrated with concentric layers, of which the external is made up of small lymphoid, the middle of large epithelioid cells, and within this again a third zone in which no cells are differentiable, these having lost their contour and become fused into a homogeneous mass—in a word, having become caseous. The lumen of the tube itself is plugged with cheesy matter. The blood-vessels stop short at the edge of the tubercle, as it is thoroughly avascular.

By suitable staining methods, tubercle bacilli may be demonstrated among the cells of the tubercle granule in moderate numbers at its *periphery*, but not in the cheesy center, where they do not seem to thrive until softening takes place, when they are found in great numbers.

Thus begin most cases of pulmonary phthisis as a localized tuberculosis of the smallest air-passages at the apex of one of the lungs. The apices are attacked first, because here the unfolding of the lungs, in the act of breathing, is more limited, the blood moves less freely and tends rather to stagnate—conditions which favor the retention of secretion, favor the lodgment, and encourage the growth of the bacillus.

On the other hand, the view so long entertained that the left apex is more frequently affected than the right seems to be erroneous in the light of modern studies. Thus, William Osler out of 413 cases found the right apex involved in 172; the left, in 130; both, in 111. Pension examinations furnish an opportunity for obtaining information on this subject, and my friend, Theodore G. Davis, of Bridgeton, N. J., took occasion, as examiner in a pension board, to note the cases of tubercular phthisis which passed before his board, with the following results: Out of 897 males, whose ages ranged from 45 to 71 years, 94, or about 10 1/2 per cent., had pulmonary tuberculosis, more or less pronounced. Of these, 39 were markedly worse on the right side and 29 on the left; both sides were affected in 26—proportions very like those of Osler.

From this usual starting point the disease spreads with varying rapidity to other parts of the lung. Two principal varieties, however, result, based upon the rapidity of the spread of the disease. The first includes the ordinary chronic form of consumption, or *chronic ulcerative phthisis*, and an allied slow form characterized by a special involvement of the connective tissue, known as *fibroid phthisis*; the second is *pneumonic phthisis*, one of the forms of galloping consumption, which has already been considered.

#### (a) *Chronic Ulcerative Phthisis.*

SYNONYM.—*Slow Consumption.*

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This most usual form of consumption, beginning with the tubercle granulum and associated with more or less catarrh of the apex, extends thence slowly downward. The deposit in the beginning is not

actually in the very apex, but a little below it, and usually the first point at which physical signs are found is on the middle of the clavicle or just below it. Sometimes, however, the extension is rather backward, so that the physical signs are first manifested in the supraspinous fossa, whence the importance of always insisting on the posterior examination.

From this initial focus, usually toward the anterior face of the lung, the disease extends more or less throughout the lobe, or it may pass to another lobe. If the disease be on the right side, from the upper it may extend to the middle lobe, and thence into the lower lobe about an inch below its apex, corresponding also to a point on the surface opposite the fifth dorsal spine. On the left side, the extension is directly from the upper to the lower lobe. From its previous focus the tubercular infiltrate travels centripetally along the bronchi from smaller to larger as a tuberculous peribronchitis. As E. Rindfleisch aptly expresses it: "The white berries acquire a stalk of the same nature and color. The stalks unite with each other and thus form a radiating or rudely stellate focus of larger extent." These stalks are bronchioles the walls of which are infiltrated with tubercle. Larger and larger branches become implicated with the intermediate parenchyma, but usually it does not extend beyond the cartilage-ringed bronchi of the second order, forming tubercular masses of corresponding size.

The infiltration is not limited to peribronchial tissue. It extends also inward toward the lumen of the tube, invading the submucous tissue, where it may be seen as whitish or cloudy patches on slitting up the bronchi and washing off the adherent mucopus. Thus uncovered, the mucous membrane is found also red and inflamed, contrasting strongly with the whitish patches referred to. As we penetrate deeper, these enlarge and intrude upon the lumen of the tube, while the hyperemic areas grow smaller. Such intrusion becomes finally complete invasion, associated, sooner or later, with an excoriation or rupture of the mucous membrane. This is the beginning of ulceration, which assumes an important place in facilitating subsequent destructive process, and is the foundation of the term adopted for this form of phthisis, *chronic ulcerative phthisis*.

The pathological processes referred to, and the destructive effects of which they are the cause, give to the lung in a state of chronic phthisis a varied picture that is not always found in a single case, nor, indeed, would the lesions of two or more cases always cover this picture. They include the following:

1. The *caseous tubercular masses*, formerly called crude tubercle. They embrace single or compound peribronchial foci perforated by the central bronchiole, itself plugged with cheesy matter. Thus constituted they form grayish-yellow masses from a couple of millimeters to four or five centimeters ( $1/12$  to 2 inches) in diameter. They have the composition already described. Though usually massed toward the apices of the lung, they may also be disseminated through the remainder of the organ, and around them there may also be found scattered true miliary tubercles.

2. The second anatomical feature of the phthisical lung is the *cavity*. As soon as a tuberculous area reaches a certain size, the tendency to break down is increased, though such tendency does not depend altogether on extent. The bronchial wall, weakened by the tubercular infiltration and the

ulceration referred to, is the initial invitation. The wall yields to the pressure which it formerly easily resisted—the inspiratory and expiratory strain incident to coughing—the bronchus dilates, the gap of the ulcer widens and the texture of the bronchus gradually yields. The free access of air to the already necrotic caseous matter causes it to soften, break down, and a cavity results. Small foci unite with others and thus larger cavities form, occupying the greater part of a lobe, or even a whole lung in very rare instances.

Large cavities have usually smooth walls and are lined by the so-called pyogenic membrane, into which, however, often protrude blood-vessels of large size, as thick as a crow-quill, and exhibiting also at times aneurysmal dilatations. Rarely such vessels pass directly across a cavity, and when eroded they may give rise to fatal hemorrhage toward the end of a case of chronic phthisis. On the other hand, these vessels may also become thoroughly occluded by an obliterating endarteritis. The surface of these smooth-walled cavities is constantly producing pus, while muco-pus is being added by communicating bronchi. Such cavities may be more or less completely emptied by expectoration. They are also surrounded by a consolidated lung tissue, which gives a dull percussion note and thus often prevents the tympany natural to a cavity. Small cavities have rough and ragged walls, from which there is constant breaking down, adding elastic tissue, pus, granular débris, and bacilli to the matter expectorated. There may be a number of these small cavities, and if under the pleura one may rupture into the pleural sac, producing pneumothorax.

Other cavities form by the softening of the center of a caseous area. Others still may be purely bronchiectatic, being limited by bronchial walls. It is more particularly the bronchi of medium size that are thus involved, weakened also by tubercular infiltration. The form of dilatation may be cylindrical or globular. The small tubes especially may be the seat of cylindrical dilatation.

3. *Pleurisy* is constantly associated with tubercular phthisis. It is found in four forms:

(a) As an adhesive pleurisy in the immediate neighborhood of tubercular infiltration, causing inoculation, a collateral hyperemia and inflammation of the pleura.

(b) There may be perforation from a cavity into the pleural sac, exciting a purulent pleurisy and a pyopneumothorax.

(c) A pleurisy may be lighted up by exposure to cold in a favorable focus of collateral hyperemia.

(d) Finally, the pleura may be the seat of a tubercular pleurisy, resulting in a thickened membrane, which may be limited or may encase the whole lung and cement the lobes in a continuous inseparable mass.

4. *Pulmonary concretions* are also found in the phthisical lung, usually about half as large as a pea, smooth or lobulated. They represent calcareous infiltration of alveoli<sup>1</sup> of the lung, filled with tubercular bronchopneumonia products. They are a medium of one form of healing of tuberculosis. Those retained in the lung are commonly surrounded by a ring of hyper-

<sup>1</sup> If macerated in hydrochloric acid, the lime salts can be dissolved out, and the actual elastic tissue framework of an alveolus, with its infundibula and attached air-vessels, be left.

plastic connective tissue. At times they are expectorated, being released by a sequestering suppuration into an adjacent bronchus, whence they are brought up by coughing. Sometimes a good many are coughed up. They are something different from *bronchial* calculi, which are always smooth, spherical, or elliptical, and are found in small bronchiectatic cavities.

5. Other evidences of *attempts at healing* seen in the phthisical lungs are of the nature of reactive inflammation. They may occur:

(a) In the initial stage as the result of treatment and favorable hygienic surroundings, when the initial granule is replaced by a cicatricial-like puckering of fibrous tissue or a hard cartilaginous mass of connective tissue.

(b) There may be a sequestration or encapsulation of a cheesy nodule, which may or may not undergo calcareous infiltration.

(c) Even a cavity of moderate size may heal, in which event, the cavity being cleared out, its walls unite by adhesive inflammation and thus a band of cicatricial tissue takes the place of the cavity. Larger cavities may be reduced in size by a contraction of the cicatricial tissue surrounding them, or several small cavities may be thus surrounded. Quite small cavities surrounded by connective tissue and communicating with a bronchus were called *cicatrices fistuluses* by Laennec.

6. The neighborhood of a tubercular infiltration is often the seat of a pneumonia which may be simply reactive or due to the irritative effect of the bacillus—*i. e.*, a *tubercular bronchopneumonia*. The area is hyperemic, hard, consolidated, and the air-vesicles filled with exfoliated epithelium. The latter may exhibit various stages of fatty degeneration. It may be complete when an appearance indistinguishable from that of tubercular infiltration is present. In fact, it is tubercular infiltration plus catarrhal pneumonia.

7. When a subject dies of tubercular phthisis, *other organs* should be searched for *tubercles*. Tuberculosis of the larynx is common and is not infrequently associated with destruction of the cords and epiglottis. The bronchial glands are usually involved, swollen, inflamed, or tubercular, and when tubercular may become caseous and sometimes calcareous. Other glands are also affected, such as the cervical, mediastinal, and postperitoneal. It is now recognized that the so-called “scrofula” of the neck is a tuberculosis of lymphatic glands. After the bronchial glands the organs most affected are the intestine; next, the spleen, kidneys, and brain in nearly equal proportion; then the liver and the pericardium.

8. The only remaining morbid states which may be considered as having any essential relation to tubercular consumption are the *amyloid* and *fatty infiltration*. The former is found affecting the kidneys, liver, spleen, and mucous membrane of the intestines; the latter, especially, the liver and kidney.

**Symptoms.**—The onset of tubercular consumption is by no means uniform. Notwithstanding the fact that its insidious nature is well recognized, its initial stadium is often overlooked. The victim is scarcely appreciably ill. Yet he may lose flesh and strength continuously. He may even say that he has no cough, while close questioning will ascertain that he has had a *slight hacking cough* for some time, worse in the morning. Soon the symptoms are plainer, there is *evident, wasting* an *intermittent fever*, a

bright eye, and the cough with expectoration is a conspicuous symptom. Yet during all this the patient is cheerful and denies that there is much the matter with him.

In another instance an individual is "subject to cold;" he takes cold repeatedly, and each attack, while passing away, yields more stubbornly than the previous one, and finally one comes that persists. There is *daily fever* which abates to return again, emaciation is evident, and the bright eye and burning cheeks and *night-sweats* again attest the arrival of the dread disease.

Another case may begin with *hoarseness*, due probably to tubercular laryngitis, not infrequently the initial symptom.

Again, after a stubborn attack of bronchitis in a person previously healthy a *hemorrhage of the lungs* unexpectedly makes its appearance, or such a hemorrhage may set in without previous warning, although, again, careful inquiry may find that cough has been present for some time. The patient has, perhaps, previously been overworked, or lived under unfavorable hygienic surroundings, or may possess a hereditary tendency.

In still another instance a patient may consult the physician without suspecting that he is very ill, and the signs of advanced disease of the apices will we found present, and there may be but a few more months life remaining to the unsuspecting victim.

A certain number of cases of consumption begin as *tubercular pleurisy*, which invades the lung by contiguity or by blood infection. One of the most convincing facts in favor of the infectious theory, which seemed established prior to the discovery of the bacillus, was the frequent occurrence of pleurisy as a forerunner of phthisis. It was held that the caseous product of the pleurisy furnished the infectious virus, which, entering the blood, caused tubercle formations in various parts of the body. Thus, one-third of the 90 cases of pleurisy followed up by Bowditch terminated in phthisis.

*Inveterate dyspepsia* is associated with many cases and is as often a predisposing cause as a symptom. A great loss of appetite and indisposition to take food are often symptomatic, and their presence does much to diminish the efficiency of remedies and nutriments so essential to successfully combat the disease.

*Physical Signs.*—Given the suspicion of the existence of tubercular consumption from the presence of the above symptoms, whatever others may be superadded, or whatever modification may occur in them, the diagnosis is completed by a physical examination. The physical signs, therefore, will be next studied. While it is not always easy to separate the clinical history of a case of consumption into three sets of symptoms corresponding to the three separate stages in the morbid anatomy, the physical signs corresponding with these stages are tolerably definite. They are:

1. The incipient stage, or beginning deposit.
2. Stage of complete consolidation.
3. Stage of softening and cavity formation.

1. *Inspection*, in the *incipient stage*, is as often negative as not. A slightly diminished expansion in the infraclavicular space, as compared with the opposite side, may be present, and more rarely a slight flattening of the same region. The clavicle becomes correspondingly conspicuous. The

body may continue well nourished or slightly emaciated, or the heart-beat in the normal position may be somewhat accelerated, while the respirations are likely to be more frequent than in health.

*Palpation* may recognize increased vocal fremitus in the same situation, although not always, while the physiological difference in favor of the right side is to be remembered. *Percussion* in this stage gives slightly higher pitch and impairment of resonance, which may be noted above, on, or below the clavicle. It sometimes happens that increased resonance is obtained by percussion in the earliest stage of pulmonary tuberculosis. This arises in the following way: The lung is engorged and in consequence relaxed, in which condition the air within the vesicles vibrates more freely, the result being a full clear note (Skodaic resonance).

To *auscultation* above or below the clavicle, we have the first evidence of abnormality in a prolongation of the expiratory murmur and harshness in the inspiratory sound—in a word, bronchovesicular breathing. Theoretically, this should be preceded by a diminished intensity in the inspiratory sound, owing to the interference of the newly-deposited tubercles with the entrance of air into the air-vesicles, but practically such diminished intensity is rarely encountered, and even if present is not of distinctive significance.

Increased vocal resonance is a constant accompaniment of these modifications in the normal breathing-sounds, but it, as well as the vocal fremitus, may be masked by a pleuritic thickening, and the physiological difference so often referred to must be remembered. J. M. DaCosta also called attention to the fact that in a certain number of cases, at this stage, there is a blowing sound in the subclavian or pulmonary artery, and that a murmur is sometimes present in these vessels before any other physical sign is noted. There are frequently concurrent with these signs those of a bronchitis more or less acute.

2. In the *second stage* the changes discoverable by *inspection* are more easily recognized. There is evident loss of flesh, depression of surface, and impaired range of respiratory movement. The hectic flush is intermittently present. *Palpation* may even discover an increased warmth of skin. The increased vocal fremitus is now plainly recognized unless obscured by a thickened pleural membrane. Dullness on *percussion* is positive and easily elicited.

To *auscultation* there is increased vocal resonance. The bronchial factor in the breathing now becomes conspicuous, showing itself by the harshness and relative shortening of the inspiratory element, with the decidedly prolonged and blowing expiration; also a gradual diminution of the vesicular factor, until the latter disappears entirely, when we have the typical bronchial breathing of extended areas of tubercular infiltration. This sign will now be found in the supraspinous fossa posteriorly as well as anteriorly. The conduction of the normal heart sounds to the area of infiltration, if at either apex, is a very frequent and significant sign. The high degree of vocal resonance known as bronchophony is also superadded as a valuable confirmation of the presence of complete consolidation. The auscultation signs of a concurrent bronchitis may also be present in this and in the next stage.



3. In the *third stage* the information furnished by *inspection* is still more positive. Emaciation is marked, breathing and the pulse are rapid, and the face is often flushed. There is flattening over the affected area, and the excursion of respiratory movement is still more limited. In this stage the superficial veins over the involved area may be prominent, partly from emaciation and partly from obstructed circulation. To *palpation* the vocal fremitus is still more marked, and even remains distinct over cavities, because of the consolidation around them, unless there be some obstruction to the entrance of air into the bronchus leading to the involved area. Rhonchial fremitus may be added if adventitious sounds be present. The skin is hot and dry, unless succeeding one of the sweats that characterize this stage, when it may be moist and clammy.

Dullness on *percussion* is always to be found in the third stage, but to it is often added some one of the varieties of tympanitic note—viz., pure tympany, the “cracked-pot” sound, or amphoric resonance, due to cavities.

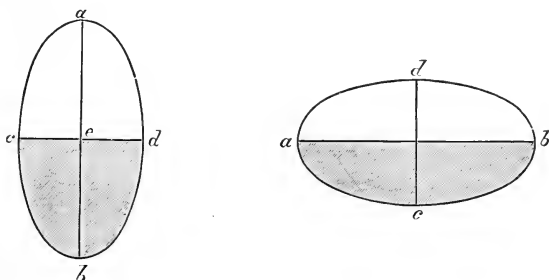


FIG. 23.—To Illustrate Gerhardt's Change of Note.

These require sufficient size and superficial situation on the part of the cavity. On the other hand, resonance may even be normal over a cavity some distance from the surface, especially if the percussion be lightly made, while the consolidated tissue which almost invariably surrounds a cavity often permits only a dull sound to be elicited. Wintrich's change of note should be sought—a change of note produced during percussion over a cavity on opening and closing the mouth, the pitch being higher when the mouth is open.

*Gerhardt's change* of note may be elicited in oval cavities. If there be such a cavity partly filled with fluid in the position shown by Fig. 23, if the patient be in upright position, it is evident that when he lies on his back a different relation of the air-containing space to percussion ensues which results in a change of note to percussion.

*Auscultation* in this stage may continue to recognize the bronchial breathing of the second, but to it are superadded first small bubbling sounds or subcrepitant râles indicating liquefaction; later, may be added the distinctive signs of a cavity. These signs are cavernous breathing, cavernous voice, pectoriloquy, either whispering or loud speaking, amphoric breathing, and amphoric voice. To these are often added the large bubbling sounds

known as gurgling, caused by the air bubbling through fluid in a cavity. Metallic *tinkling* may be added to these phenomena, caused by the bursting of bubbles in a cavity with amphoric conditions.

"Cavernous breathing," generally speaking, is any modification of the normal breathing sounds due to the air passing in and out of a cavity. When high pitched it becomes tubal or amphoric. The amphoric sound is supposed to occur in cavities with firm walls that best secure the "echoing," which is the condition of amphoric breathing and amphoric percussion. Over more yielding walls the breathing is lower pitched, and to this the term "cavernous" is especially applied.

*Special Symptoms.*—The *cough* of consumption varies greatly. It is at first very slight, and may continue so even in advanced stages. As a rule, however, it grows in severity with the progress of the disease. It is caused by the irritation of intercurrent bronchitis or bronchopneumonia or the accumulated contents of cavities. When a cavity becomes more or less filled with secretion it must be emptied, and a spell of coughing comes on and continues until the cavity is cleared but, whence the paroxysmal character so often assumed by the cough when this stage is reached.

The *expectoration* of tuberculosis varies with the stage of the disease. At first scanty, and in no way characteristic, it grows more copious and becomes puriform as the disease progresses. A more or less circular shape is finally assumed, which is somewhat distinctive, and is called "nummular," from its resemblance to a coin. The quantity of expectoration varies greatly, from  $1/2$  ounce (15 c.c.) to  $1/2$  pint (250 c.c.) in the 24 hours. It generally has a sweetish, unpleasant odor, but is rarely offensive. It is sometimes tinged with blood, and may contain Charcot's crystals (p. 286).

Minutely, the expectoration is made up chiefly of pus-corpuscles, among which may, however, be found epithelial cells from the mouth and lung alveoli, elastic tissue from the air-vesicles, more rarely from the bronchial tubes or blood-vessels, bacilli, oil drops, particles of food, generally innumerable tubercle bacilli, and at times blood-disks. The elastic tissue is most easily demonstrated by boiling the sputum in a test-tube with an excess of solution of potash or soda, the effect of which is to thin the sputum and permit the elastic tissue to fall to the bottom of the tube; whence it is easily carried by the pipet to the glass slide and recognized under the microscope by its wreath-like or circular shape, if derived from the air-vesicles. Care must be taken to eliminate fibers of elastic tissue that may be derived from food. To this end the mouth should be carefully rinsed before collecting sputum for examination, and it is further to be remembered that particles of food containing such tissue may remain in the mouth for two or three days. The elastic tissue from the bronchi occurs in the shape of elongated or reticular fibers. That from blood-vessels is similar; more rarely it is fenestrated membrane. The alveolar epithelial cells are round and oval, mononucleated, highly granular, nearly twice the diameter of a pus-corpuscle.

The *bacilli*, which are an unfailing sign of tuberculosis, are demonstrable only by special staining methods, of which that by carbol-fuchsin, with or without Gabbet's counterstain of methyl-blue (see p. 256), is recommended.

One of the most unpleasant consequences of the cough is the *vomiting* which it induces, more especially in the last stages of the disease. It is not unusual to throw up a meal immediately after it is taken. Such vomiting is probably a reflex act, excited by irritation of the pharynx in coughing. Fortunate is the patient who can immediately thereafter take another meal, since this meal is generally retained, because the accumulated mucus which caused the coughing spell is also thrown up with the food in the first act of vomiting, and the cough ceases for a while.

*Pain* is not inherent to tuberculosis—that is, the seat of a tubercular infiltration is not usually a seat of pain. Pain is, however, a frequent secondary symptom. It is most severe as the result of a concurrent pleurisy, when it is usually sharp and cutting at the site of the pleurisy. Pain also results from inveterate cough. Such pain is usually in the lower part of the chest and is mainly caused, I believe, by the jactitation to which this part of the thorax and the diaphragm are subjected in the act of coughing.

*Fever* is a symptom of all stages of pulmonary consumption. At the onset there may be fever of an irritative kind, due to deposition of the tubercle and to inflammation. This is a fever of a continued type with slight evening increments, often overlooked, until it becomes associated with hectic fever, which is a septic fever occurring during softening and cavity formation. *Hectic* fever is one of the most interesting symptoms of consumption, adding often a picturesqueness that increases the sadness of the situation. Coming on usually toward the end of the day, the maximum point is reached at no fixed hour, but generally occurs between 2 and 6 P. M., though it may be as late as 10 P. M. The minimum, usually noted between 2 A. M. and 6 A. M., may occur as late as 12 noon. Hence, frequent observations of temperature should be made during the day and night, two in 24 hours being inadequate. Once in four hours is not infrequently desirable, and where careful study is desired, once in two hours may be necessary. The chart (Fig. 24), on page 282, shows extreme range of temperature in hectic fever.

There is, however, no greater mistake than to suppose that every case of consumption must have fever throughout. It probably always has fever in the beginning—the fever of onset; but with the disease once established it frequently happens that there is no fever in any part of the 24 hours. Appended is a chart of such a case (Fig. 25).

In the course of a case of consumption it constantly happens that periods occur of various duration, from one to seven days, in which the fever is higher than usual with moderate remissions, say of one degree, and attended with increased localized pain. These are explained by the occurrence of new patches of bronchopneumonia, which may be either simple or tubercular.

The fever of hectic is generally followed by *sweating*, sometimes limited to the head or the neck. The occurrence of sweats in the night, or rather toward morning, has given rise to the term “night-sweat.” They are not, however, confined to the night, but may occur at any time, especially during sleep.

The *pulse* is always frequent in tubercular consumption, and gradually grows feebler as the disease progresses.

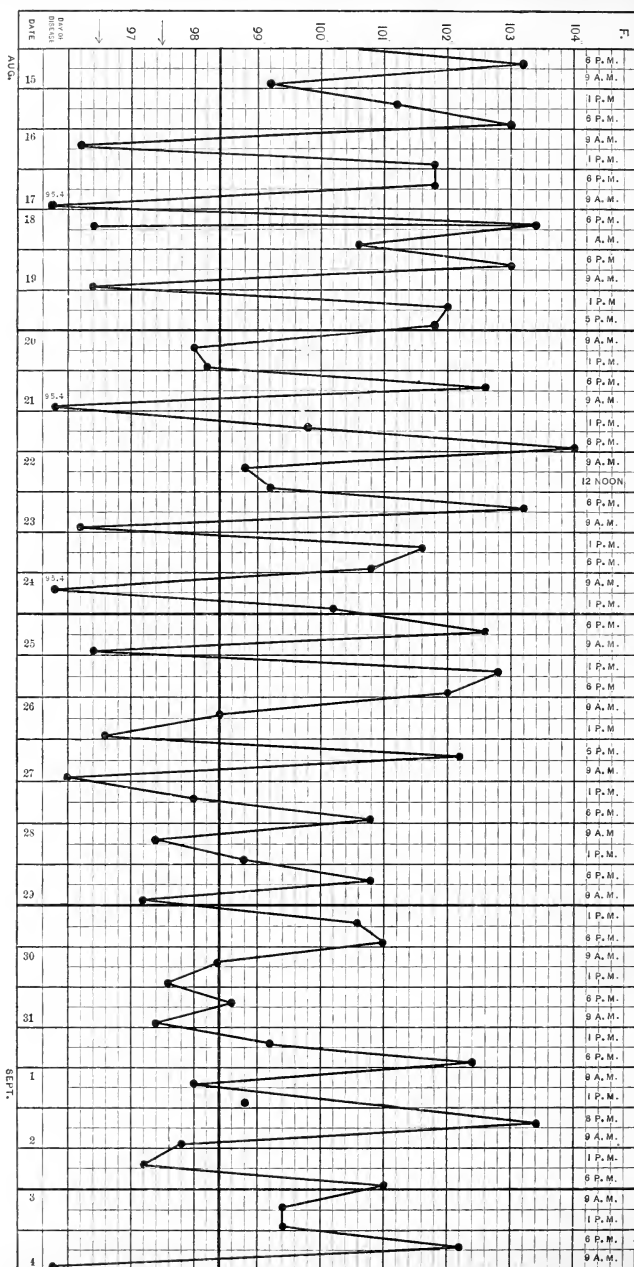


FIG. 24.—Chart Showing Extreme Range of Temperature in Tubercular Phthisis.

*Hemorrhage* from the lungs is a symptom everywhere associated with the idea of consumption. There are two periods in which it occurs—one early and one late. The early hemorrhages are usually moderate and are due to the rupture of blood-vessels weakened by tubercular infiltration. They are sometimes the very first announcement of the presence of the disease, at others they are a means of relief to a certain feeling of oppression in the chest which precedes them. Their greatest danger is production of an insuflation pneumonia by the inspiration of small particles of clot that act as irritants. When the hemorrhages are small the blood is often admixed with mucus, constituting the true hemoptysis. In such cases the blood probably comes from the mucous membrane of the bronchial tubes. The hemorrhages late in the disease are commonly large, sometimes enough

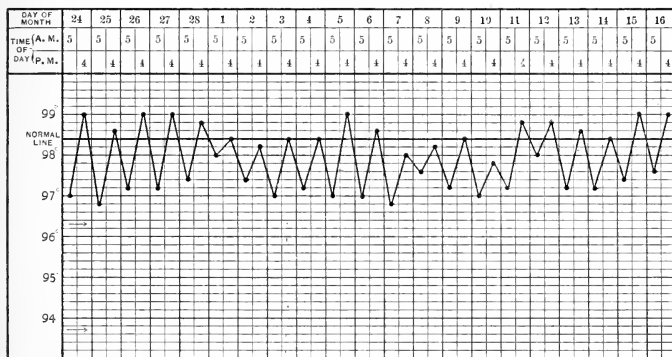


FIG. 25.—Temperature Chart of a Case of Tubercular Consumption without Fever, long under treatment at the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania.

to cause immediate death. The amount of blood lost in such a fatal case has reached four pounds (1.8 kilos). Yet enormous hemorrhages are sometimes survived. They are due to ulceration into a large blood-vessel, often one of those described as traversing the wall of a cavity or bridging it from side to side.

*Diarrhea* is a frequent symptom late in the disease. It is commonly due to tuberculosis of the bowel and is often exceedingly obstinate. Not every diarrhea, however, in tuberculosis is tubercular.

The *club-finger* was noted by Hippocrates, and has long been associated with consumption—though not peculiar to it. It is a condition found in other chronic diseases, as emphysema, chronic bronchitis, chronic cardiac disease, and aneurysm. The end of the finger is bulbous, quite like a club, and the nail curves over the end. It may involve some of the fingers only.

*Tuberculous meningitis* may be added toward the close of the disease. In it there is extension of tuberculosis to the membranes of the brain, producing symptoms such as *pain in the head*, *delirium*, *acute mania*, *vomiting*, *fever*, and finally *convulsions* and *coma*. The symptoms vary a good deal with the seat of the involvement, and have been considered in detail when

treating of tubercular meningitis. If the inflammation is in the fissure of Sylvius, there may be aphasia and even hemiplegia; if at the base, retraction of the head and palsies of the cranial nerves from pressure, also optic neuritis; if on the convexity, delirium is more decided, and there may be local convulsions with hemiplegic weakness. Ventricular effusion—acute hydrocephalus—adds little to the specialization of symptoms. There may be co-involvement of the membranes of the brain and spinal cord, producing symptoms of cerebrospinal meningitis.

The relation of pulmonary consumption to *cardiac disease* has always been an interesting one. It is commonly thought that affections of the heart and lungs are never concurrent. Occasionally such concurrence is observed, but whether such relation is any but an accidental one is doubtful. Osler reports 12 instances of endocarditis in 216 autopsies on cases of consumption. The rarity of lung tuberculosis succeeding chronic valvular heart disease must still be admitted. It has been ascribed to hypertrophy of the unstriped muscular structure about the smaller bronchioles and their acinous terminations, which keeps the alveoli evacuated of such secretions as favor the development of phthisis.

*Chronic nephritis* and *amyloid kidney* are frequent complications of chronic phthisis. From these causes *albuminuria* may result. There may be simple febrile albuminuria. Or albuminuria may be due to pus, if there is tuberculous of the bladder or kidney. Tubercle bacilli should be sought for in purulent urine.

The *liver* is often enlarged from fatty infiltration.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of chronic tubercular consumption may be difficult in the early stages, but later, when the physical signs have developed, it is easy. Even in the early stages the finding of the bacillus removes all doubt. Occasionally, however, the sputum is very scanty and difficult to get. If such an examination is not possible, or furnishes negative results, some days may elapse before a positive diagnosis is obtained. For the physical signs in the early stages cannot always be relied on, while there occur cases in which, even months after bacilli have been found in the sputum, the physical signs are confusing and inconclusive. Due regard must be paid to the fact that in health the expiratory sound below the right clavicle is longer and rougher than in a corresponding position on the opposite side, while the percussion note may also be somewhat higher pitched. The presence of fever more or less constant, the bright eye, and crimson flush in the cheek, with or without emaciation, should excite suspicion and lead to careful physical exploration and examination of the sputum, if not already made. The search of the sputum for elastic tissue is relatively less valuable, because bacilli are usually found much earlier.

In doubtful cases the tuberculin test may be made. I have found it very reliable in a number of cases, and believe it is without danger. E. L. Trudeau, of Saranac Lake, confirms this by his large experience, and says further, that tuberculosis of so moderate an extent as not to give any positive symptoms probably exists in 30 per cent. of individuals who have no reason to suspect its presence. *One milligram* of pure tuberculin is injected hypodermically, and if there be no febrile reaction in 10 to 12 hours, twice this quantity is used two or three days later, and gradually increased at

intervals until *five milligrams* have been injected at a dose. If there be no rise in temperature within ten to 12 hours the patient may be considered free from tuberculosis. The usual rise is from two to four degrees F. Tuberculin should not be used where the diagnosis can be made without it.<sup>1</sup>

*The Ophthalmo-reaction of Tuberculosis.*—Suggested by Wolff, Eisner and Vallee, it was left to Calmette<sup>2</sup> to elaborate this test of the presence of tuberculosis. It is much simpler and easy of performance than the tuberculin test. The method consists in the instillation into the eye of a simple drop of a one per cent. solution of tuberculin made by precipitating a solution of Koch's old tuberculin by alcohol. If the patient is tuberculous, there occurs in from three to 48 hours a feeling of slight discomfort. Simultaneously there begins a congestion of the palpebral and ocular conjunctive which in a few hours become decidedly red. Lacrimation follows and a fibrinous exudate resembling pus collects in the lower conjunctival sac and at the inner canthus, reaching its maximum in from six to ten hours. The conjunctivitis begins to abate in from 18 to 36 hours and completely disappears in from three to four days.

In his second paper Calmette reported 200 cases, including many varieties of medical and surgical tuberculosis. All tuberculous cases gave a positive reaction, and in some supposed nontuberculous which gave a positive reaction further examination showed tuberculosis to be present. Calmette's<sup>3</sup> conclusions have been practically confirmed by Comby, Lettule, Sicard and many others. Some recent results following the use of this test have caused it to be discredited, and it has largely fallen into disuse.

I cannot refrain from adding a word on the importance of securing the physical examination under favorable conditions early in the study of a case. Especially is this true of cases in which there is a hereditary tendency. It goes without saying, that the physical signs of incipient consumption may easily escape detection when an examination is made with the clothing on, while they would be easily recognized if the patient were stripped to the skin. Too frequently, also, an examination is deferred because of a fear that the patient will be needlessly alarmed thereby. So-called "hemorrhages from the throat" should be carefully investigated, as should also any continued hacking cough. Many of these coughs are now known to be due to tonsillar trouble, but this should not be taken for granted, and a careful examination of the throat should be associated with a physical examination of the chest. A habitually frequent pulse and rapid breathing should also excite suspicion. We should not omit either to examine the posterior part of the chest in the supraspinous fossæ, for it sometimes hap-

<sup>1</sup> Tuberculin is the concentrated glycerin extract of tubercle bacilli, and is made by evaporating a luxuriant glycerin bouillon culture of the bacillus to one-tenth of its volume. This is known as crude tuberculin, and while used as such for bovine inoculation must be greatly diluted for use upon the human subject. The crude extract is on the market, being prepared in Koch's laboratory in Berlin and by different commercial firms in this country. Ravenel, formerly of the Laboratory of the Live Stock Association of Pennsylvania, prepares from the crude article made by him a stock solution for human inoculation. One cubic centimeter of this solution contains 0.1 gram of crude tuberculin in a one per cent. solution of carbolic acid. The latter is added in order to preserve the active properties of the tuberculin and to keep the preparation sterile. At the time of using, one part of the stock solution is diluted in 20 parts of sterile water, and then one cubic centimeter (15 minims) will contain 0.005 gram or 5 milligrams. Further dilution necessary to obtain the smallest quantity desired may be made at the time of using.

<sup>2</sup> Calmette: Académie des Sciences, 17 juin, 1907, vol. cxliv, No. 24, p. 1324. "Presse Médicale," No. 49, 19 juin, 1907, pp. 388-389.

<sup>3</sup> Calmette, Breton, Painblau, and Petit (Pasteur Institute of Lille): "Presse Médicale," 13 juillet, 1907, No. 56, pp. 443-444.

pens that physical signs are here detected before they are recognizable in front.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of chronic ulcerative phthisis varies greatly with different cases. Its duration ranges in individual cases from a few months to years.

The modern treatment has been followed by great improvement in results. Not only is the disease arrested in its course in many instances, but in some cases actual cures result. Indeed, isolated instances of recovery undoubtedly happened before the modern treatment was instituted. It is difficult, indeed impossible, with the present statistical methods to ascertain the proportions of recoveries, but one can form an idea of the general situation from the number of deaths from this cause as compared with others. Thus in Philadelphia in 1882, there were 3.28 deaths from consumption per 1000 of population. In 1907, 25 years later, the rate was 2.10—a decided falling off. In 1882 there were 2809 deaths from tuberculosis of the lungs to 17,250 deaths from all other causes or 1 to 6.1. In 1907 there were 3157 deaths from tuberculosis and 24,305 deaths from other causes or 1 to 7.6. For our purpose which is simply to compare the results at an interval of 25 years Philadelphia may be taken as a type.

(b) *Fibroid Phthisis.*

**Definition.**—This term is applied to a form of pulmonary consumption in which the lung, in addition to being the seat of tuberculosis, is permeated by an overgrowth of fibroid tissue. Its course is much slower, and while it often begins as an inhalation bronchitis in those exposed to the inhalation of fine particles of dust from various sources, it may also begin as an ordinary ulcerative or catarrhal phthisis.

**Symptoms.**—Its symptoms, on the whole, are less aggravated than those of ordinary phthisis. The cough is less severe, less exhausting, though more apt to be paroxysmal, and the patient has less fever and emaciates less rapidly. He is often able to pursue some occupation. Bacilli are less numerous and are often found with greater difficulty. Expectoration is often, however, as copious, usually arising from cavities or dilated bronchi, and is more frequently fetid. It may contain fat crystals and Charcot's acicular crystals. There may also be hemorrhage. Apart from these symptoms and the presence of bacilli in the sputum, the clinical history is scarcely different from that of simple nonspecific cirrhosis of the lung, from which it is, indeed, often separated with difficulty. As in this affection there may be hypertrophy of the right ventricle, induced by the extra effort demanded of the right heart to move the blood through the fibroid lung. Fibroid phthisis is especially characterized by its prolonged course, which may extend over years.

**Physical Signs.**—The degree of retraction of the chest wall as noticed by *inspection* is greater than in the ulcerative form, more easily recognized, and not always confined to the vicinity of the apices of the lungs. The heart may be dislocated and its apex correspondingly awry, sometimes to an extreme degree. If on the left side, owing to retraction of the lung, there



may sometimes be seen a distinct cardiac pulsation in the second, third, and fourth interspaces. The intercostal spaces are often narrowed and the diaphragm may be drawn up. Modifications of vocal fremitus as revealed to *palpation* are not nearly so constant, being masked by retraction of the lung and pleuritic complications, and may be absent. There is often little or no elevation of temperature.

*Percussion* is more constant in its results, there being marked dullness and a wooden-like resistance. The hypertrophy of the right ventricle referred to may extend the normal cardiac dullness in positive degree beyond the right edge of the sternum.

*Auscultation* most frequently notes bronchial breathing and exaggerated voice sound, but both of these may be lessened in intensity by a thickened pleura. A dilated bronchus is frequently present, yielding the signs of a cavity, which may be found in the middle or even at the base of the lung.

To the signs of the fibroid state in one part of a lung are frequently added those of emphysema in the remainder or in the other lung.

**Prognosis.**—This is perhaps no better, so far as cure is concerned than for the chronic ulcerative phthisis, but, as has already been stated, the duration of the disease is much longer, and under favorable circumstances much more can be done for the patient by the same treatment.

**Treatment of Chronic Tubercular Phthisis.**—There is no disease of like importance in which treatment must for various reasons differ so much in different cases. This is owing partly to the fact that curative measures must be adapted more or less to the circumstances of the patient, and partly to the varying peculiarities of the patient himself. In the following pages I will advise first, regardless of the patient's circumstances, the treatment which experience has shown to be most efficient, then, recommend such measures as are useful or necessary under any circumstances.

The fundamental principle of a successful treatment of a case of tubercular consumption is *early diagnosis and corresponding promptness in the application of remedial measures, supported by the belief that consumption is not a hopelessly incurable disease.*<sup>1</sup>

**I. Climate Treatment.**—Immediately after its recognition, or even, if possible, when the disease is threatened, the patient with tubercular consumption should be sent to a suitable climate, provided always that other necessary conditions of a wholesome and happy life can be secured. To discuss at length the relative value of such places would occupy more space than is justified in a text-book, but the following may be laid down as truths reached by those who have specially studied the subject:<sup>2</sup>

1. Tuberculosis is relatively rare in the following localities in the order named, viz.: On certain sea-coasts, such as that of southern California, including Santa Barbara, San Diego, Coronado Beach, and somewhat further inland, Los Angeles and Pasadena; on certain islands enjoying a nearly pure ocean climate, such as the Madeiras and Canaries; in desert

<sup>1</sup> For evidence of the correctness of this dictum see an important paper by S. Edwin Solly, "Neglect of the Early Diagnosis and Treatment of Pulmonary Tuberculosis," *Med. News*, February 4, 1893.

<sup>2</sup> See S. E. Solly's article "Climate," in Hare's "System of Therapeutics," vol. 1, p. 415, Philadelphia, 1901.

places of wide extent, such as are found in the interior of continents, including the Nile Valley and Algiers; in polar regions; and, finally, it is rarest at high altitudes, in frequency diminishing with increasing altitude. The elevated plains of Colorado, Arizona, and New Mexico furnish preeminently the best conditions.

2. Animals successfully inoculated with the bacilli of tuberculosis develop the disease rapidly when confined, while those kept in the open air may escape entirely.

3. Damp, especially *cold* and *damp* soil, favors the development of tuberculosis, as do also variations in dampness when conjoined with changes in temperature.

4. Moist heat has no influence in producing the disease, but cases originating in tropical countries where the disease is prevalent progress rapidly.

5. Dryness of air is a positive advantage to the consumptive, while variability in a comparatively dry air has no prejudicial influence. Humidity apart from other factors is apparently without effect, either in causing the disease or curing it; for, although benefit has been received in a humid or sea climate, Solly considers it "probable that it is mainly due to greater purity of the air or the elimination of unsanitary conditions and hurtful occupations, as when an overworked citizen takes a sea voyage, or a Bostonian is sent into such a climate as the Isles of Shoals, or a Philadelphian to Atlantic City." Whatever the cause, the beneficial influence of a sea voyage to the consumptive is undoubted.

Where low climates are characterized by infrequency of phthisis it is by reason of dryness and uniformity of temperature, as is the case in lower Egypt and the Valley of the Nile in Central and Upper Egypt, and in the interior of Algiers as contrasted with the coast belt of that country, Java, the Gulf States of America, Mexico, Guiana, and some of the West India Islands.

That elevation is unfavorable to the development of consumption and favorable to its cure is abundantly attested, but there is some difference in opinion as to the degree of altitude at which these qualities are manifested, some placing it as low as 1500 feet, the majority at 2500 feet. The latter is probably the more correct, though there is reason to believe that different individuals as well as different stages of the disease may be differently influenced in this respect. For the most part dryness goes with altitude, so that the two conditions are commonly associated. How altitude operates independently of dryness is not easy of explanation, although it is probable that diminished atmospheric pressure is the potent factor. The method of its action is perhaps not precisely understood, but the immediate effect is increased breathing-rate and pulse-rate; next, an increase in the depth of each respiration, followed by cardiac expansion and by hypertrophy; and later, by a fall in the rate of breathing and pulse to the normal, as the depth of the respirations and the amount of blood passing through the heart at each contraction are increased.

The following classification, by G. A. Evans,<sup>1</sup> of the climates resorted to by consumptives may be found useful in making a selection of climate for a particular case:

<sup>1</sup> "Handbook of Phthisiology," New York, 1888.

1. Climate Cool and Moderately Moist, general elevation 2000 feet.—Western slope of the Appalachian chain, Adirondacks, Catskill, Alleghany, and Cumberland Mountains.

2. Climate Moderately Warm and Moderately Moist.—Western North Carolina, Ashville, elevation 2250 feet; in western South Carolina, Aiken; in Georgia, Marietta and Thomasville.

3. Climate Warm and Moist.—Florida, southern California, coast region.

4. Climate Warm and Moderately Dry, elevation about 2000 feet.—Southwestern Texas, southern California, inland.

5. Climate Cool and Moderately Dry, elevation about 1000 feet.—Minnesota, Nebraska, Dakota.

6. Climate Cool and Dry, elevation from 4000 to 7000 feet.—Montana, Wyoming, Colorado, northern New Mexico, and western Kansas. In this group are to be placed Davos and St. Moritz, in Europe.

7. Climate Warm and Dry, elevation 3000 to 5000 feet.—Southern New Mexico and southern Arizona.

A further division of resorts in accordance with altitude is into *low*, *medium*, and *elevated*. In the first of these fall naturally Florida, Georgia, and southern California; in the second, places with an elevation of from 1500 to 2500 feet, including Ashville, the Adirondack and Catskill Mountains; in the third, altitude of 5000 feet and above, including the slopes of the Rocky Mountains from Wyoming down to Arizona in this country and Davos and St. Moritz in Europe.

As to the permanence of the curative results of treatment at high altitudes, it is a common impression among the laity that persons to retain the advantages gained in such climates must remain there. Of this Solly said: "I am firmly of the belief that persons cured in elevated countries have at least as good a chance of keeping well after returning home to those cured at sea level, and owing to the decided increase in general and pulmonary vitality imparted by the climate, probably a much better one."

The usefulness of *sanitoria* for consumptives has of late been conclusively demonstrated. Late observations would seem to show that less importance attaches to location of these sanitoria than has heretofore been believed, although it is reasonable to suppose, that sanitoria at high altitudes will furnish the most satisfactory results. *The keynote of success in these is the stringent hygiene and open air life.*

**II. Hygienic Treatment.**—The following should be carried out as far as possible in every case, whether the patient is enabled to make the change of climate advised or compelled by the force of circumstances to remain at home. Secure a habitation wholesomely located, free from dampness, avoiding low ground. The apartments occupied should be those accessible to sunlight for as many hours of the day as possible. In this latitude a south and west exposure obtains this condition. Provide the best possible ventilation for day and night. Especially at night should sleeping chambers be thoroughly ventilated; as during the day the patient secures the effects of change of place, while at night he is compelled to remain in a single room. *The more nearly the air of the sleeping chamber approaches that of outdoors the more likely is the patient to improve*, and when possible the patient

should sleep out of doors. Ventilation should be secured without subjecting the patient to drafts of air. A low temperature at night may be rendered less harmful than drafts of warmer air, since its effects may be counteracted by extra covering. Of late increased importance has been attached to the breathing of cold in which it is found the bacillus does not thrive.

In addition to availing himself of a proper location and ventilation, the patient should spend as much time as possible out of doors, and except during active fever, in the practice of moderate exercise, due regard being had to its effect on the heart and breathing. No sudden or forced efforts should be made. For the most part the patient should be kept moving, although, if the weather is suitable, he may also sit for a time. Sunlight rather than shade should surround him in his outdoor life, and the temptation to sit down long for a rest in cool, shady places should be resisted.

Daily bathing of the most thorough kind should be insisted upon; it may be with cool, though not with very cold water. It should be followed by active friction, so as to maintain the skin functions at their highest point. Cold sea-bathing is not to be recommended, because the reactive power of consumptives is very feeble, and a chill of the body may be followed by permanently harmful results.

The body should be clothed in wool next the skin by day and by night, winter and summer. At night nothing is better or more convenient than a long flannel night-gown extending almost to the feet.

III. **Food.**—Food should be abundant and of the best and most nutritious kind. Eggs, meats, including especially fats, poultry, game, oysters, fish, rich animal broths prepared in the most tempting way should be provided, because the quantity taken should be as large as can be digested and assimilated. Milk and cream, cheeses, and the like are eminently suitable. Koumiss or zoolak may be substituted for milk.

At the present day eggs and milk are the favorite food for consumptives, from six to 12 eggs and two to four quarts of milk daily are advised, with as much additional food as the patient can assimilate.

What shall we say of alcohol? It is in the majority of cases an efficient adjuvant in consumption, if properly used. That it is at times abused and that the alcoholic habit is sometimes acquired does not alter the fact that it is useful. The physician should watch its use as he does that of morphin. A moderate amount with meals in the shape of whisky improves digestion and increases appetite, while combined with milk and cod-liver oil it helps the assimilation of the latter and contributes to fat production—an acknowledged advantage to the phthisical patient. He should be limited to a couple of glasses of sherry or as many tablespoonfuls of whisky at dinner, while a 1/2 ounce morning and evening with a glass of milk will be as useful as a larger amount.

The whole purpose of the measures recommended under this heading is the production by improved nutrition of a soil prejudicial to the growth of the bacillus of tuberculosis. The effect of unhealthy location, dampness, bad ventilation, darkness, deficiency in fresh air and sunlight, filth of body, chilling influences, colds, improper clothing, and insufficient food is to favor such growth.

The treatment of consumption by *suralimentation*, as suggested by

Débove, may be considered at this point. By it is meant surcharging the stomach with food through the stomach-tube. Some happy results are reported. The method, as recommended, is to wash out the stomach with cold water and then introduce a liter (1 quart) of milk, an egg, and 100 gm. (about 3 1/2 ounces) of very finely powdered meat. This is done three times a day. It is much more rational to secure a natural appetite by fresh air and outdoor life. In point of fact, larger quantities are being used in the natural way, as above stated. If, on the other hand, there be reason to believe gastric catarrh is present, an occasional washing out of the stomach may stimulate the appetite wholesomely. Or the vegetable bitters may be used for this purpose. Of these, the tincture of *nux vomica* in 20 to 30 minim (1.3 to 2 c.c.) doses before meals in cold water is one of the best. The compound infusion or tincture of *gentian* in 2 dram (8 c.c.) doses is also excellent.

**IV. Medicinal Treatment.**—As to medicines, the remedy that has undoubtedly been of more use in the treatment of consumption than any other is really a food—cod-liver oil. When cod-liver oil is well borne it should be administered to every such case of consumption. When it is not well borne, that is, when unpleasantly eructated or causing indigestion, loss of appetite, or diarrhea, it should at once be discontinued, and if a cautious attempt to return to it is met with a similar experience no further trial should be made. In my hands the best method of administration is to place in a wineglass from 2 teaspoonfuls to a tablespoonful of whisky and overlay it with the same amount of cod-liver oil. It is then "tossed" into the back part of the throat, and after a little experience this is accomplished with great facility, while nothing is tasted but a pleasant residue of whisky. The maximum dose should be a tablespoonful twice a day. The best time is immediately after breakfast and on retiring at night, although experience may determine more suitable seasons.

The various compound preparations and emulsions, consisting of cod-liver oil, other tonic substances, gums, and flavors to cover up the taste do not meet with much favor with me. At best they are but half oil, they are costly, and as a rule, in my experience, are no better borne than the pure oil. Occasionally they are better tolerated, and under such circumstances they should be administered. It should be remembered that the chief purpose of the whisky is not so much to cover the taste of the oil and to render easy its administration as to favor its assimilation and efficiency.

After cod-liver oil, more frequently in conjunction with it, I value creasote or its derivative creasotal. Creasote is not a specific for consumption, but it relieves the catarrhal symptoms and diminishes the cough and expectoration. There are various modes of administering it. One drop, as dropped from an ordinary bottle—not a dropper—equals very nearly 1/2 minim, and a minim weighs almost exactly a grain. A convenient shape is a gelatin-coated pill, of which 1/2 grain (0.03 gm.) pills and 1 grain (0.065 gm.) pills are made. Beginning with 1 grain after each meal and increasing 1/2 grain a day, a dose of 6 to 7 grains (0.39 to 0.45 gm.) three times a day is very easily attained, as a rule. I do not often exceed 5 grains (0.32 gm.) or 10 drops three times a day, lest the stomach be upset. One should seek, however, to reach at least this dose and keep it up with occasional intermis-

sions. Another excellent mode of administration is when shaken up in hot water immediately after meals, beginning with 2 drops or a minim at a dose and increasing up to 10 drops, or 5 grains (0.32 gm.). It may also be given in one of the bitter tinctures, or in any mixture with alcohol, or in emulsion, or with sherry wine. Cod-liver oil and creasote may be given conjointly—that is, the creasote may be incorporated with the oil before using.

Still better than creasote, though more expensive, is creasotal or carbonate of creasote. It has the great advantage of being unirritating and can therefore be given in larger doses. I begin with 10 minims (0.66 c.c.) and increase to 30 minims (2 c.c.) after each meal, omitting it for a time at the end of every six weeks. It is conveniently given in capsules, but on the whole it is best given in emulsion. Among those who report favorably on it is the Berlin clinician, Leyden.

Duotal or guaiacol carbonate is similar in its effect and is said to be better borne at times than creasotal. It is given in doses of 0.2 to 0.5 gram (3 to 7 1/2 grains) three times daily in capsules or wafers or dry on the tongue, followed by a mouthful of water.

I have never been able to secure happy results from the use of creasote by inhalation. It may, however, be employed in combination with chloroform and alcohol, to which tincture of conium is sometimes added to mitigate the irritating qualities of the vapor. A mixture of equal parts of each may be made and a few drops placed on the sponge of a Burney Yeo's inhaler, and inhaled as long at a time as possible; or 10 to 20 drops (0.6 to 1.3 c.c.) may be added to 7 drams (20.25 c.c.) of water and 1 dram (4 c.c.) of glycerin, and used in one of the numerous excellent forms of nebulizer now in use. Or it may be placed on the surface of steaming water, with the vapor of which it may be carried to the mouth by a suitable appliance. A little glass tube, open at both ends and filled with small pieces of pumice on which the substance to be inhaled is dropped, also serves the purpose fairly well. It is probable that the inhalation at a single sitting has not been long enough continued. The following, recommended by Clement A. Penrose,<sup>1</sup> has impressed me—creasote, oil of turpentine, each 4 drams (16 c.c.); comp. tr. benzoïn, 3 ounces (90 c.c.); 1 dram to a pint of hot water. As the patient becomes accustomed to the fumes, more of the creasote and oil of turpentine is gradually added until the mixture consists of equal parts of the three ingredients. The inhalations, to be effective, should be systematic and of from 10 to 15 minutes duration each. The above inhalation mixture may be combined with steam alone, with steam and oxygen, or with steam at home and with steam and oxygen at the office.

Iodin has long been a popular remedy employed by inhalation. A good way is to dissolve a few grains in an ounce of ether and to inhale the vapor with the mouth or nose over the vial for a few minutes at a time. The following combination may be used in the little pumice-loaded tube referred to: Compound tincture of iodin, glycerol of carbolic acid, tincture of conium, each a dram (4 c.c.); spirit of chloroform, enough to make an ounce (30 c.c.). The carbolic acid may be omitted, if desired, and other changes made. S. Solis-Cohen recommends the use of ethyliodid placed simply in an ounce vial, over which the patient places his mouth or nose and inhales for five

<sup>1</sup> "Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin," November, 1890.

minutes at a time. Or glass capsules containing 5 minims of the drug may be crushed in a cloth and then inhaled. He considers it as especially useful in ulcerative laryngitis and as assisting in the disinfection and healing of pulmonary cavities. He also regards as efficacious carbon dioxid.

Iron is indicated in all consumptive cases, and it is generally well borne, but it should be given in much smaller doses than is usual. The bane of iron is its constipating effect, which tends to counteract the good it otherwise does. In my experience the various preparations of iron do not differ materially in this respect. Such effect is less, however, if a proper dose is given, and if the remedy constipates in the dose administered, it should be reduced until no such effect results. When this is attained it should be kept up with occasional intermissions. Five or 6 drops of the tincture of the chlorid of iron thus administered and kept up for a long time go a great way toward keeping up the strength and counteracting the tendency to anemia so characteristic of consumption. Other preparations of iron are: reduced iron, carbonate of iron, which may be given in the shape of Blaud's pills, and the sulphate of iron. The vegetable salts of iron, the citrates and malates, are elegant preparations, and the same principle should be observed in their administration.

Arsenic is often useful in consumption and may be combined with iron or alternated with it. Many consider arsenic more beneficial than iron. It is not desirable to give very large doses, and 5 minims of Fowler's solution are a sufficient maximum dose. It is especially useful in small doses where there are gastric symptoms, and may be continued in moderate doses for a long time.

Strychnin is a drug that is very valuable in pulmonary consumption, more especially as a heart tonic. It should also be continued over long periods in doses of 1/30 to 1/20 grain (0.0022 to 0.0032 gm.) three or four times a day. Quinin is also at times very useful, especially when there is fever.

**V. Tuberculin Treatment of Tuberculosis.**—The late J. T. Whittaker<sup>1</sup> correctly said: "The discovery of tuberculin established the first real epoch in the treatment of tuberculosis, as it constitutes the first actual address to its cause." This is none the less true in view of the fact that the first essays with it appeared to be absolute failures.

After the first disastrous overdosage, a few persistent and courageous therapeutists—Trudeau, von Ruck, Turban and others—continued its use cautiously in smaller doses and saw good results. Gradually it has become restored to confidence and with advancing knowledge of methods of immunization and the increasing use of vaccines for various diseases, tuberculin is now gaining favor with experienced specialists throughout the world.

Since the first tuberculin was promulgated, numerous modifications have been tried with the object of eliminating the reacting substance or of combining with it immunizing and healing properties.

The old tuberculin called "O. T." or "T. O."<sup>2</sup> the filtered, unheated culture broth, "B. F."<sup>3</sup> the watery extracts of von Ruck and Maragliano, and Beraneck's tuberculin are the principal ones in use at present; while the

<sup>1</sup> "Theory and Practice of Medicine," New York, 1893, p. 158.

<sup>2</sup> Tuberculin Originale.

<sup>3</sup> Bouillon Filtré.

various emulsions, "T. R.",<sup>1</sup> "B. E."<sup>2</sup> (Koch), and tulse (v. Behring) are preparations of the pulverized bacillus substance and are properly classed as vaccines because theoretically they should confer more relative immunity than the extracts. The uncertain absorption is, however, a disadvantage in the clinical use of emulsions, though theoretically more rational.

So far as the comparative merits of various tuberculins for therapeutic use are concerned, one cannot say from statistics that they differ to any extent. Denys and Trudeau prefer the unheated bouillon filtered free from bacilli. von Ruck's watery extract has been used extensively in this country, but is expensive. von Behring's tulse is still in the experimental stage, while the Koch emulsions, T. R. and B. E., have recently come into more general use through the stimulus produced by A. E. Wright's discoveries of opsonins.

The dosage of tuberculin has always been empirical and no absolute standard for their activity has yet been established. Hence, the rules for their administration are to begin with doses so small as not to produce appreciable effect and to increase gradually while avoiding constitutional disturbances and fever reactions. Prof. Wright and his pupils by observations on the opsonic index of the sera of persons undergoing tuberculin treatment have established the importance of small doses, since prolonged negative phases were found to follow even moderately large amounts given frequently. The harmful effects of too frequent and rapid increase had previously been observed by objective or subjective symptoms of intolerance and the use of the opsonic index as a guide to tuberculin cannot at present be considered necessary or practicable, considering its rather wide range of accuracy and difficult technic.

The general scheme for tuberculin treatment as laid down by Denys is applicable to all forms of tuberculin with slight modification. This is recommended by Trudeau and begins with doses of  $1/10000$  mg. (.000,000,1 gm.) for afebrile cases, increasing by  $1/10000$  every third or fourth day until  $1/1000$  mg. is reached; then the increase by  $1/1000$  mg. until  $1/100$  mg.; then by  $1/100$  mg., etc. The intervals are lengthened on reaching doses of 10 mgs. or on the slightest evidence of intolerance, such as malaise, pains, local reaction at the site of the disease, soreness at the site of the injection, increased sputum, anorexia, loss of weight or strength with or without temperature elevation. The larger doses are best given from six to ten days apart anyway. Löwenstein and Wright find it necessary to make the latter a rule for quite small doses of the emulsions. This is in accord with the principles of experimental immunization.

When fever reactions occur all symptoms of intolerance must have been absent for at least two days before the injections are resumed, the doses must then be decreased or not increased until tolerance is reestablished. No rule for maximum dosage can be laid down, but the prognosis is better in patients who tolerate large doses without reaction. Trudeau considers from six months to a year the necessary time for a full course of treatment according to whether reactions have occurred or not.

As to dosage, Wright's method merely aims to keep the opsonic index as

<sup>1</sup>Tuberculin Reste.  
<sup>2</sup>Bacillen Emulsion.



high as possible with the same or about the same small doses, never going above  $1/400$  mg. solid substance B. E. or T. R.

The clinical method as advocated by Denys, Trudeau and others aims to produce tolerance to as large doses of tuberculin as possible by gradual progression in dosage (*i. e.*, tuberculin immunization); and, as a matter of fact, if the increase be made with sufficient care and extended over a long enough time, this can be accomplished in most cases, a dose of one c.c. T. O. or B. F. or B. E. or T. R. (liquid measure) being reached without any marked constitutional disturbance. After a full dose is reached and following an interval of three to six months a short secondary treatment is advised.

The entire gradation of solutions necessary would be—

*Filtrate*, 1 c.c. of this being the final dose:

Solution in which 1 c.c. = 100 mil.

Solution in which 1 c.c. = 10 mil.

Solution in which 1 c.c. = 1 mil.

Solution in which 1 c.c. =  $1/10$  mil.

Solution in which 1 c.c. =  $1/100$  mil.

Solution in which 1 c.c. =  $1/1000$  mil.

Solution in which 1 c.c. =  $1/10000$  mil.

For *febrile patients* begin with sol. 1 c.c. =  $1/10000$  mil.

(0.1 of this =  $1/100000$  mil.) Begin with .1 and increase .1 every three days.

For *afebrile cases* begin with sol. 1 c.c. =  $1/1000$  mil.

(0.1 of this =  $1/10000$  mil.) Begin with .1 of this and increase .1 at each injection three days apart.

When the solution 1 c.c. =  $1/10$  mil. is reached, it is better to repeat the dose occasionally.

After the solution 1 c.c. = 100 mil. is reached it is better to lengthen the intervals between injections to four days, and when injecting the pure filtrate (slightly diluted, of course, to favor absorption) to make the intervals five days to a week. The last two or three doses may be ten days apart.

At the least sign of disturbances of temperature, even  $1/2$  a degree F., either repeat the previous dose, if the disturbance has been very slight, or if marked, go back to  $1/2$  the previous dose, and increase at usual intervals until the dose which gave the reaction is given without disturbance.

Consider as approaching the limit of tolerance not only temperature rise, but the amount of local irritation at site of injection, and general condition of patient—loss of appetite, malaise, headache, restlessness at night, increased cough, etc.—all are to be considered as evidence that the limit of toleration is reached, and the last dose should be repeated or halved. If, when the dose has been reduced  $1/2$  it still produces any disturbance, go back to  $1/10$  the dose that originally produced disturbance, and increase  $2/10$  at the usual intervals until the patient passes the disturbing dose without any disturbance.

*Prolonged Reaction.*—Never inject until any reaction, however slight, has ceased for a day or two, as shown by temperature and the patient's general symptoms, as reactions, though slight, may be prolonged for several days.

Occasionally repeat the same dose, even if no constitutional effect has resulted from it, especially as you get to the higher amounts. (This prolongs the treatment which is an advantage and makes the reaction less likely to occur.)

Use  $\frac{1}{4}$  of one per cent. carbolic in normal salt solution for dilutions. Do not keep dilutions more than two weeks, especially the high dilutions, and keep in a cool place.

The selection of cases suitable for this treatment requires careful consideration of their history and present condition. Only those patients who have good nutrition and fairly localized disease without extensive ulceration or complications should be treated. The more chronic types of tuberculosis are the most likely to derive benefit from the treatment. Acutely progressing tuberculosis cannot be benefited by adding to the poisoning more of the same nature. Hence, disseminated, miliary and pneumonic types, those cases with progressing laryngeal and intestinal complications, or those with extensive nephritis, diabetes or cachectic symptoms are all unsuitable. Likewise, cases otherwise favorable should not be treated during exacerbations with fever or when complicated with influenza or other acute intercurrent diseases.

It cannot at present be stated what limitations should be placed upon tuberculin treatment in the cases complicated with chronic mixed infections. It is reasonable to say that it is not contraindicated in all such cases. Only by careful study and individualization should a decision be reached in any case. Tendency to hemoptysis of any amount is a contraindication, but the appearance of bloody sputum due to a mild local reaction is not of serious import. Very good results have been obtained in patients whose disease has become arrested by hygienic methods but who otherwise usually lapse into chronic phthisis in the course of time.<sup>1</sup>

*Antitubercular Serum Therapy.*—Notwithstanding many attempts to produce an effective antitoxic serum for tuberculosis, no satisfactory experimental or clinical results have been attained in any degree comparable to the success with diphtheria antitoxin. The existence of a true antitoxin in the serum of treated animals is in doubt, although certain antibodies have been demonstrated. The necessity for repeated injections of sera in such a protracted disease as tuberculosis involves some unpleasant consequences due to the serum itself. The occasional development of some symptoms of "serum disease" (urticaria, joint pains and even collapse), make the subcutaneous use of serum very undesirable.

The principal sera for which claims are made at present are those of Maragliano and Marmorek. Of late the latter has found favor in some quarters by rectal administration in doses of 5 to 20 c.c. It is at least unobjectionable when thus given. The dose of Maragliano's serum is from 1 to 5 c.c. subcutaneously. It is also given per os or rectum.

*Antistreptococcus or streptolytic* serum has been used to combat the supposed mixed infection from this bacterium in certain cases. Its efficiency is doubtful, but Bonney and Pottenger claim good results in some desperate cases. The rectal administration is preferable and safe.

<sup>1</sup>Trudeau, E. L.; "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," Aug., 1906; June, 1907.

*Bacterial Vaccine Therapy.*—The inoculation of sterile bacteria prepared according to A. E. Wright's methods from cultures obtained from the sputum is a recent and promising method of treatment for chronic mixed infections in pulmonary tuberculosis. Its application is too recent to warrant an opinion as to its usefulness.

**VI. Pneumotherapy.**—When for any reason the advantages of high altitude are not available, some benefit may be derived from artificial pneumotherapy, by which it is sought to modify the air breathed, more especially as to density, although such therapy may also include modifications in temperature, humidity, and chemical composition. The simplest application as applied to density is the producing of conditions by which the patient may be immersed in a compressed or rarefied air which he likewise breathes. The more usual application at the present day is, however, that of "pneumatic differentiation," by which the patient inhales air different in density from that which surrounds him.

In the differential method the object is also to facilitate inspiration or expiration, or both. Inspiration of compressed air favors inspiration, as does also expiration into compressed air. Expiration, on the other hand, is favored by inspiration of rarefied air and expiration into rarefied air. These objects are accomplished by the pneumatic cabinet, and very satisfactory results are claimed by some observers. The treatment is truly rational. But whether it be the result of inherent difficulties in the use of the apparatus or failure to accomplish what was expected, the use of it does not seem to grow in favor, and I doubt whether as many cabinets are in use to-day as ten years ago. To be efficient the apparatus should be used two or three times a day, with intervals of rest between them, and unless the patient have it at his own home or be in a hospital provided with one, it becomes almost impossible to avail himself of it.

**VII. Treatment of Special Symptoms.**—Naturally, the first of these is *cough*, and there is no symptom that requires more judgment in its management. A slight cough is often best let alone, because it is an effort to remove secretion, the retention of which may be harmful. If a cough becomes harassing, so as to keep the patient awake or otherwise wear him out, it should be controlled. This should be done, if possible, by counter-irritation. A simple capsicum plaster, or painting with iodine, or iodine with a little croton oil added, or a mustard plaster, or a turpentine stupe may answer the purpose when the cough is not too severe.

As to cough medicines, creasote and creasotal may be classed among the curative measures for this symptom, as they diminish secretion and thus relieve cough. Moderate cough is often easily controlled by simple syrupy remedies, such as syrup of wild cherry and syrup of tolu, to which some dilute hydrocyanic acid may be added, 2 to 4 minims (0.12 to 0.24 c.c.) to the dose. If these measures are not sufficient, an opiate becomes indispensable. It does not matter much what preparation is used. A teaspoonful of paregoric in the beginning is often sufficient, acting like a charm, or deodorized tincture of opium, if a stronger preparation be needed, will answer better because of its smaller bulk. For this reason, too, sooner or later, the alkaloids of opium are indicated. Codein is the best of these to start out with in doses of  $1/4$  grain (0.0165 gm.) increased. Heroin is the

most recent and is much commended. It is given in doses of  $1/20$  grain (0.0033 gm.) or more. Morphin, however, becomes ultimately the best remedy in the majority of cases. When this stage is reached the wiser course is not to order it at stated intervals, but at such times as the cough needs especially to be controlled, as at night on going to bed, or once during the night. The dose essential for the purpose named must vary, anything from  $1/24$  to  $1/4$  grain (0.00275 to 0.0165 gm.). Sometimes it may be combined with advantage with a syrupy preparation, which facilitates expectoration, and to this may be added a few drops of a mineral acid, as the aromatic sulphuric. A cough medicine of this kind, long in use in Philadelphia, is as follows:

R	Morphinæ sulph.,	gr. ss-ij	(gm. 0.033-0.066)
	Potass. cyanid.,	grs. iij	(gm. 0.2)
	Ac. sulph. aromat.,	f 5 j-ij	(c.c. 4-8)
	Syr. prun. Virginian,	q. s. ad. f 3 iij	(c.c. 95)
M. et Sig.—Teaspoonful as often as necessary to quiet cough.			

In the morning the patient should be allowed to cough for a time to get up the accumulated mucus. If he has to contend with a cavity full of pus it is better to give him a tablespoonful of whisky or a milk punch, to aid in coughing up the accumulated matter, than to give a sedative cough mixture.

The ammonium preparations, chlorid and carbonate, are rarely useful in the cough of consumptives, while their effect is to derange the stomach and destroy the appetite. Sometimes, however, where there is much loose phlegm, the use of the former for a short time may be beneficial. Under the same circumstances terebene is one of the best medicines given in doses of 5 to 10 minims (0.3 to 0.6 c.c.). It taxes the stomach, however, somewhat severely. Terpin hydrate may be substituted in doses of 3 to 6 grains (0.2 to 0.4 gm.).

The fever of consumptives rarely demands special measures. Should the temperature exceed  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $39.4^{\circ}$  C.) there is no more satisfactory or harmless measure than sponging, allowing to remain on the surface a thin film of water, the evaporation of which produces the refrigerating effect. Or 3 grains of antipyrin or acetanilid or 5 of phenacetin (0.2 to 0.33 gm.) may be given, the effect watched, and the drug repeated two or three times if necessary. The high fever of phthisis rarely lasts long and of itself does little or no harm. It is merely a symptom of a more uncontrollable septic process.

*Night-sweats* do demand special measures. By far the most reliable therapeutic agent is atropin;  $1/100$  to  $1/60$  grain (0.00066 to 0.0011 gm.) at bedtime usually suffices. It may be combined with morphin, if the latter is necessary. Sponging at bedtime with a saturated solution of alum in alcohol may be efficient when atropin fails, or sponging with simple hot water may answer.

Agaricin or agaric acid in doses of  $1/8$  to  $1/4$  grain (0.0082 to 0.0165 gm.) is a modern remedy for night-sweats. Camphoric acid, 20 to 30 grains (1.32 to 2 gm.) in a capsule at bedtime, is another remedy highly recommended. So are muscarin, 5 minims (0.3 c.c.) of a one per cent. solution, and picrotoxin,  $1/60$  grain (0.0011 gm.). An old remedy is the aromatic sulphuric acid, and it is certainly a good tonic, which, administered in doses of

10 to 20 drops (0.6 to 1.3 c.c.) before meals, may also aid in checking the sweats. Or the following lotion may be used: Balsam of Peru, 1 part; formic acid, 5 parts; chloral hydrate, 5 parts; trichloroacetic acid, 1 part; absolute alcohol, 100 parts.

*Hemorrhage* is an alarming symptom and must be treated, although it is probable that most hemorrhages stop of their own accord. The patient should be immediately put to bed at rest, with the shoulders raised. Ice, suitably encased, may be applied to the chest, or cloths wrung out in cold water. A hypodermic injection of 1/4 grain (0.016 gm.) of morphin to an adult is a useful measure to secure quiet. Indeed, I almost always begin treatment with it. If the pulse is full and bounding, 3 drops of the tincture of aconite may be given hourly until some effect is produced. Gallic acid may be given in doses of 15 grains (1 gm.) every half-hour while the hemorrhage lasts, and at longer intervals for a time after the acute hemorrhage. The domestic remedy, common salt, is probably useful by exciting reflex contraction. A teaspoonful swallowed is the dose. When the hemorrhage persists hypodermic use of ergot is recommended. The best preparation for this purpose is a good quality of fluidextract, of which 30 minims or a dram (2 to 4 c.c.) may be injected at one time, twice in the 24 hours. What is known as ergotin is probably a solid extract, of which 1 grain (0.065 gm.) is equivalent to 5 minims (0.3 c.c.) of the fluidextract.

Gelatin is as efficient in the treatment of hemorrhage of the lungs as in other hemorrhages. A common method is to administer hypodermically 100 c.c. of a two per cent. solution at a temperature 110° F. (43° C.). The gelatin is also advised by the stomach, although it would seem that the effect of digestion would tend to destroy any hemostatic properties. Good results are, notwithstanding, claimed for it. It is certainly an easier and much less painful mode of administration. I am in the habit of ordering the usual home-made gelatin as prepared for the table, in wineglass doses every two or four hours. Suprarenal extract is also recommended in doses of 5 grains of the powder every two hours. Strapping is very highly recommended by William Gilman Thompson. He directs that pads of cheese-cloth be placed in the axillæ and over the femoral veins, and buckle-straps drawn over them tight enough to prevent venous return, but not to prevent arterial flow. It is best to strap but three extremities at one time, loosening one strap every 15 minutes and reapplying it to the unstrapped limb. The compression may be maintained for an hour or two. Care should be taken not to loosen all the straps at one time.

Lawrason Brown<sup>1</sup> advises the nitrites and morphin, guiding their use by frequent observation of the blood pressure. If the patient is seen early, while bleeding, amyl nitrite is given by inhalation. If he be nervous 1/8 grain of morphin is injected hypodermically. This effect is maintained by nitroglycerin or sodium nitrite at such intervals as will keep the blood pressure between 115 and 120 mm. of mercury. This he says is easily done with sodium nitrite, of which he gives one grain only at a dose repeated often enough. He advises aconite when the symptoms are complicated with fever.

The *diarrhea* of consumption does not generally become troublesome until tuberculosis of the bowel develops. Slight degrees seem often to

<sup>1</sup> A Suggestion in the Treatment of Hæmoptysis. "Amer. Jour. Med. Sciences," Aug., 1906.

relieve the cough. When there is tuberculosis of the bowel it is exceedingly difficult to control. Sufficient doses of bismuth are on the whole the best remedy—sufficient, because at first the smaller quantities, say 10 grains (0.66 gm.), answer, while later much larger doses are necessary. Opium is, however, often necessary, and sometimes the mineral astringents, as the acetate of lead, nitrate of silver, and oxid of zinc, act well in combination with it. Tannic acid is also efficient in combination with opium, and changes must be rung on these various remedies, as any one is apt to lose its effect.

**VIII. Prophylaxis against Tuberculosis.**—Accepted views as to the nature and causation of tuberculosis have raised the question of prophylaxis into one of paramount importance. Careful analysis of accumulated evidence in favor of the communication of tuberculosis goes to show that sputum dried and disseminated with dust in the atmosphere is by far the most important medium. After this the meat and milk of tuberculous cattle, though most recent studies, already referred to on page 260, go to show that it is doubtful whether tuberculosis is ever caused by the drinking of milk. The perspiration of the affected subject must be acknowledged to be a possible medium, since inoculation of animals by it has resulted in tuberculosis, while the sweat collected after washing and the use of proper antiseptics failed to produce the result. Kissing and the use of wind instruments and pipes previously used by tubercular subjects are possible media. It is claimed of meat and milk that they infect through the alimentary canal and the form of tuberculosis resulting from them is usually glandular, especially of the adjacent mesenteric glands. In like manner the tuberculosis traced to kissing has been in the glands about the neck. The discharges from skin tuberculosis or lupus are also vehicles of infection. Mainly, however, we have to guard against sputum as an agent of infection, the other causes being comparatively easy of escape.

The first and most important measure is, therefore, the disinfection of the sputum. To this end a spit-cup should always be used when possible, and it should contain a germicide that will destroy the bacillus. The best of these germicides is corrosive sublimate, dissolved in water in the proportion of 1 to 1000 or  $1/2$  grain to the ounce (0.033 to 30 c.c.), and a small quantity of this solution should be placed in the spit-cup. In consequence of the fact that corrosive sublimate coagulates albumin, the tartaric or citric acid sublimate should be used. Next in efficiency is carbolic acid in proportion of 1 to 30, or 24 grains (1.6 gm.) to an ounce (30 c.c.) of water. A strong solution of soda or potash may be used. As often stated, sputum becomes practically active only when dried, pulverized, and carried into the air as dust. It is evident, therefore, that even water in the cup will render it harmless for the time being, while, if scalding water be substituted, its permanent destruction is secured. The first-mentioned methods are most efficient and should be practiced when possible. Such vessels should be further washed with scalding water and more germicide solution added at least once a day.

Under no circumstances should the patient be allowed to expectorate upon the floor, in cars or other public conveyances, or even, if possible to prevent it, in the street. In order to meet these necessities as well as those of other situations in the house where temporarily the use of sterilizing cups

is impossible, the handkerchief is indispensable, but it should consist either of old pieces of muslin or linen, which can be burned after use, or of porous paper to be similarly disposed of. The so-called Japanese handkerchiefs answer the purpose admirably.

Dettweiler's pocket spit-cup, invented for use in the street or elsewhere as a substitute for the handkerchief, is an admirable invention. It is made of blue glass, is flat, and holds about three fluidounces, or 90 c.c. There are two openings, one at the top and one at the bottom, both provided with metallic screw-caps. The upper and larger opening receives a polished metal funnel extending half way down into the flask, and the whole is closed tightly with a spring cover or cap. The funnel acts like a similar appliance in certain ink bottles and prevents the spilling of the contents of the flask, even if the cap be left open. The lower opening is intended to facilitate the thorough cleansing of the flask. It is said that it can be made at a cost of less than 50 cents, and can be easily kept clean. The pasteboard spit-cups, supported in a rim of steel, recommended by the New York City Health Department, intended to be burned after use, are correspondingly inexpensive and answer the purpose very well.

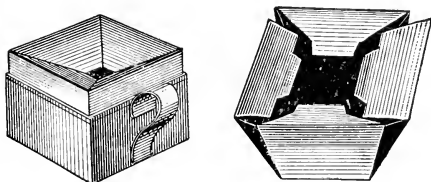


FIG. 26.—Pasteboard Spit-cup.

To the same end, diminution of the possibility of harboring dried bacilli, unwashable curtains and superfluous upholstery should be banished from the rooms occupied by tuberculous patients. There should either be no carpets, or they should be replaced by rugs that can be frequently taken up and shaken. The sleeping-car, with restricted air space *per caput*, its costly upholstery and curtains, used year after year, becomes a possible source of infection, especially in routes toward health resorts, but is less serious than it might be because of the short time that it is generally occupied by the tuberculous and healthy alike. The state-room of the ocean steamer stands a greater chance of being a medium of infection from its longer occupation.

When it is remembered how easy it is with ordinary intelligence and simple means to render completely innocuous the bacillus of tuberculosis, it becomes a question how far the surveillance of boards of health can be helpful. For the well to do who can afford to employ an intelligent physician it would seem unnecessary. For the poor it should be associated with material assistance, and carried out with great tact and consideration. For statistical purposes, at least, every case of tuberculosis should be reported by physicians to the proper authorities in order that intelligible records may be kept by which the disease may be traced and followed from its first recognition to its termination, whenever desired.

The second source of infection, the milk of the tuberculous cow, if it be a source, is avoided by boiling the milk, which is thus rendered thoroughly sterile. There are, however, objections to boiling milk. In the first place, the taste of boiled milk is not always agreeable, but of greater importance is the fact that it is constipating, especially when it is the only food, as in the case of children. Pasteurization has therefore taken the place of boiling milk. That this is possible to use even raw milk without harmful results was shown by some interesting experiments of Gebbard, who ascertained that the virulence of tuberculous milk is destroyed by dilution with the milk of other cows. Thus, milk from the udder of tuberculous cows was found to have lost its virulence when diluted in one instance 40 times, in another 50, and in a third 100 times. On the other hand, the dilution of sputum 100,000 times was found not to affect its virulence, while pure cultures do not lose virulence when diluted 400,000 times. An important practical conclusion is deduced from these experiments of Gebbard—viz., that a time-honored practice as to hand-fed babies of using only the milk from one cow is more dangerous than the mixed milk of a herd. For the chances of infection with such are much greater. Practically, the use by adults of raw milk mixed with other food cannot be regarded as dangerous, but with children fed exclusively on milk precautions should be taken to render it sterile by cooking, or if it must be used uncooked it should be the mixed milk of a number of cows. The milk of a cow known to be tuberculous should be invariably condemned and the animal slaughtered. The products of milk—that is, butter and cheese—are, of course, not amenable to the treatment to which milk can be subjected. Safety from infection from these sources can only be secured by a rigid inspection of cows, and by measures to prevent the development of tuberculosis in these animals.

Infection by tuberculous meat is still rarer. In the first place, the flesh of tuberculous animals may not itself be tuberculous, and, in the second place, the cooking to which meat is subjected must kill bacilli. On the other hand, that the communication of tuberculosis by tuberculous meat when carelessly used is possible is shown by the fact that tuberculosis has been produced in animals by the introduction of the juice of the meat of other tuberculous animals and even from tuberculous human beings. The use of raw or half-cooked meat should therefore be prohibited.

In consequence of what has been said of the experimental production of tuberculosis by the inoculation of sweat as well as the increased possibilities of getting into the mouth portions of tuberculous sputum, no one should sleep with a tuberculous patient. Dishes and utensils used by such patients should not be used by others unless first scrupulously cleaned, and this is best accomplished by thorough boiling. The patient should himself be taught to prevent his hands, face, and bedding from becoming smeared with sputum.

Precautions against autoinfection are scarcely less important than those against infection of others. It has been said that if it were not for autoinfection most cases of tuberculosis, except those within the cranium, would get well. Be this as it may, it is certain that new foci of tuberculosis are constantly being developed in the same patient, which aggravate his complaint and hasten his death. Such a focus is tuberculosis of



the intestine, which probably often has its origin in swallowed sputum. Patients should therefore be enjoined against the practice of swallowing sputum.

The close dependence of tuberculosis upon predisposition, hereditary or acquired, chiefly the former, has long been recognized. As to whether this or infection is the more important factor in the production of the disease cannot be regarded as settled. Thus, one authority, Volland, in 1892, declared that the greatest amount of good will be done by such treatment early in life as will correct any possible constitutional taint. Behrend, on the other hand, claims that our principal efforts are to be directed against the dangers of infection. Under the circumstances, a due amount of attention paid to both factors cannot be amiss.

It goes without saying that a tuberculous mother should not nurse her infant, but what should the child or adult predisposed to consumption do to avert the evil? The residence is the first consideration. If possible, the person should be reared in a country of high altitude. Such a course is much more likely to prevent tuberculosis than to cure it, if once acquired. Above all, he should avoid residence in houses situated in low, damp, and shaded localities. Bowditch's observations many years ago, already alluded to, showed conclusively that consumption is favored by these conditions. Further, such person should not reside in a house where many cases of consumption have preceded. And if it is impossible to avoid this the walls and floors should be thoroughly cleaned with the germicide solutions already mentioned. The rooms of the house should be large, airy, and well ventilated. The predisposed individual should sleep at night with windows and even doors open, due precaution being taken against drafts.

Outdoor life should be sought under all circumstances, avoiding, however, especially damp, cold exposure. Riding and driving should be practiced. Judicious athletics, such as develop all parts of the body in good proportion and especially such as secure expansion of the lungs, should be encouraged. Frequent inflation of the lungs should be practiced several times a day. Practice with dumb-bells and clubs of moderate weight is pre-eminently calculated to empty the deeper recesses of the lungs of retained mucus, and to cause the blood to move more rapidly through the more remote parts where the circulation is naturally sluggish.

The treatment of *acute* or *pneumonic phthisis* is supporting and stimulant, symptomatic and palliative. There is no advantage to be derived by taking the patient away from home. Food and stimulants are required to combat the exhausting effect of the disease and its fever. The fever itself may be lowered by sponging and the cautious use of such apyretics as phenacetin, acetanilid, and the like, because in this form of the disease it is more apt to be continuous and exhaustive in character. The cough must be controlled by opiates, and such other measures must be taken as will make the patient comfortable and mitigate the sadness with which an inevitable fatal prospect is more or less associated. If it should happen that the disease assumes an unexpected chronicity, it may fall into a class of cases in which the treatment laid down for the more chronic forms of consumption is available.

## IV. TUBERCULOSIS OF LYMPHATIC GLANDS.

SYNONYMS.—*Scrofula, or the King's Evil; Tuberculous Lymphadenitis.*

**Etiology.**—Even before the discovery of the bacillus of tuberculosis by Koch in 1882, it was generally conceded that what has been known as *scrofula*, or the King's Evil, was a true tuberculosis of lymphatic glands. The minute study of these glands showed the presence of miliary tubercles, and since Koch's announcement the bacillus has been found in them. The bacillus may be regarded as the immediate cause of the specific inflammatory process.

Tuberculous lymphadenitis is most common in children and young adults, but may occur at any age.

**Symptoms.**—The *lymphatic glands* most frequently affected are those of the *neck*, which appear in various degrees swollen and tender, in many instances suppurating and rupturing when not opened by the surgeon's knife. The cervical glands in the anterior triangle are usually the first involved, but those in the posterior cervical triangle are also frequently invaded on one or both sides, though commonly on one side more than the other. The cervical and axillary glands may be conjointly involved, forming a continuous chain behind the clavicle and pectoral muscles. The bacillus usually attacks the glands nearest its point of entrance, and presumably the cervical glands are infected by bacilli, which enter by the way of the nasal or nasopharyngeal passages. The vulnerability of these mucous membranes to the bacilli is, of course, increased by any inflammatory state present. As a rule, there is little or no constitutional sympathy in such a degree of invasion. There may, however, be slight fever.

More rarely there is involvement of *all the lymphatic glands of the body*. Such cases are sometimes met among negroes. In them are swelling, pain, and tenderness of all the visible glands, including the cervical, sub-maxillary, inguinal and axillary glands, while autopsy discloses the involvement of bronchial, mesenteric, and retroperitoneal glands. In such cases there is more or less continuous *fever*, but death is usually the result of some intercurrent disease, or of pressure upon the respiratory passages.

In addition to the visible pictures described, the bronchial glands are often involved without visible enlargement, the condition being first found at autopsy, when it may or may not be associated with lung tuberculosis. The enlargements may, however, reach such a size as to form a recognizable mediastinal tumor, which may or may not produce the signs of pressure. The bacilli which invade these glands filter through the respiratory passages.

**Tabes Mesenterica.**—When the mesenteric or retroperitoneal glands are especially involved the disease is called *tabes mesenterica*, or *abdominal scrofula*. These cases occur among children. The trunk and limbs are puny, wasted, and anemic, while their little bellies are prominent, partly because of the enlarged glands and partly from tympany, producing a striking picture. The tympanitic distention often predominates, making it difficult to feel the enlarged glands. In these cases, too, there is often *diarrhea*, with thin, offensive stools, yet the bowels are not generally the seat of tuberculosis. There may be tuberculosis of the peritoneum, which

may also give rise to an uneven, nodular, tender, and painful enlargement easily recognized by palpation. The disease prevails among poorly fed children in the slums and badly drained and ill-ventilated houses of the poor. There are fever, fretfulness, and a general aspect of abject misery. Death generally takes place through exhaustion; or some acute intercurrent disease, such as enteritis, carries off the little sufferers. More rarely adults may be affected with *tabes mesenterica*, either as a primary disease or as secondary to pulmonary tuberculosis. I well remember a case associated with peritoneal tuberculosis in which the diagnosis between this condition and carcinoma was difficult, the autopsy determining the question in favor of the former.

While tuberculous glands of the neck, and even of the axilla, tend to suppurate, the retroperitoneal and mesenteric glands more frequently caseate without suppuration, and especially characteristic is a tendency in the latter to calcify, furnishing a mode of healing of tuberculosis. The bronchial glands are also less prone to suppurate, but caseate and, at times, liquefy. The easier accessibility of the external glands to the pyrogenic organisms may explain the greater frequency of suppuration in them.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of tuberculous lymphadenitis requires its differentiation from lymphadenoma (Hodgkin's disease), lymphatic leukemia; from sarcoma and carcinoma. The affected glands in tubercular lymphadenitis are usually more tender than those in *Hodgkin's disease*, they are more closely adherent to each other and the adjacent tissues, and are, therefore, more fixed and immovable than the glands in Hodgkin's disease. Again, tuberculosis rarely invades more than one group of glands, is associated with caseation and suppuration, while the lymphadenoid growths do not suppurate. Notwithstanding this, the tubercular process is slower. Tuberculosis affects the young—those of either sex under 20—while Hodgkin's disease occurs at any age, is less frequent in the young, and is more common in males.

From *lymphatic leukemia* tuberculosis of lymph-glands is easily recognized by the absence of leukocytosis characteristic of the former.

*Sarcoma* involves groups of glands, and spreads rapidly, invading also adjacent tissues, while *carcinoma* is always secondary to primary cancer somewhere else.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis except in *tabes mesenterica* is generally favorable unless systemic infection occur, recovery being sometimes spontaneous. This is favored by suitable conditions to be mentioned under treatment. In former times "*scrofula*" was regarded as a protective against consumption. At the present day it is looked upon as a menace because of the danger of systemic infection through it, and it is said that three-fourths of the cases of acute tuberculosis owe their existence to it. Under the circumstances, we must regard cases of recovery from tubercular lymphadenitis in childhood as instances of a survival of the fittest. Certainly our present knowledge demands a prompter attempt to eradicate the local condition than was formerly practiced.

**Treatment.**—The general management of a case of tuberculosis of the lymphatic glands is similar to that of a case of tuberculosis of the lungs. The patient should be surrounded by the most favorable hygienic conditions,

have the best of food, take cod-liver oil and the iodid of iron. The local use of iodin is undoubtedly efficient at times in dispersing these glandular swellings, probably by exciting an inflammatory process destructive to the bacillus, which in a general way is similar to the reactive effect of tuberculin. At the present day tubercular lymphatic glands are not infrequently removed by the surgeon.

When suppuration has set in it is best to open an exposed abscess with the knife, because if allowed to open itself there is apt to result an unhealthy sinuous ulcer, very slow to heal, and when healed causing marked disfigurement by unsightly cicatrices. The access of air permitted by the opening seems also to be antagonistic to the life of the bacillus, for with the healing of the abscess the tubercular process stops in that particular gland. Counter-irritation by any means seems to act similarly, although iodin appears to be the most efficient irritant.

## V. TUBERCULOSIS OF THE SEROUS MEMBRANES.

General tuberculosis of the serous membranes is a rare condition, and is recognized chiefly by the signs of tuberculosis of the peritoneum and, so far as they exist, of the pleura, these being the two serous membranes of greatest extent and importance.

### *Tuberculosis of the Pleura.*

Tuberculosis of the pleura may be suspected when, along with the physical signs of tuberculosis elsewhere, there appear the signs and symptoms of a dry pleurisy. (See p. 581.) This is rendered still more likely if there be added the signs of pyothorax with fever, flatness on percussion, and the auscultatory signs of such effusion. (See Physical Signs of Pleurisy with Effusion.)

Tuberculosis of the pleura manifests itself—

1. As an acute primary inflammation characterized by a serofibrinous or purulent exudate. The onset of such an inflammation may be like that of ordinary acute pleurisy or it may be insidious in its development, like that of the latent form of pleurisy to be described under diseases of the pleura. It may immediately precede pulmonary tuberculosis, be associated with it, or succeed it.
2. As an acute pleurisy the result of extension from an adjacent tuberculous lung, and as such it may be circumscribed, adhesive, or may constitute an extensive serofibrinous or purulent pleurisy.
3. A chronic, adhesive, proliferative, tuberculous pleurisy characterized by great thickening and adhesion of the pleuræ, with tuberculous infiltration of the thickened product.

The symptoms and physical signs are in no way different from those to be described in connection with the nonspecific forms of pleurisy.

**Treatment.**—Some time often elapses before an absolute diagnosis is made, after which, if the disease is at all extensive, its treatment is mainly surgical, consisting in drainage and washing out of the pleural sac. In some instances its complete success is secured only by excision of one or more ribs.

In addition the usual restorative and hygienic measures employed in tuberculosis of the lungs should be carried out.

*Tuberculosis of the Peritoneum.*

SYNONYMS.—*Tuberculous Peritonitis; Tabes Mesenterica.*

Tuberculosis invades the peritoneum in two ways:

1. As a more or less diffuse deposit of miliary tubercles over the visceral and reflected layer, unattended by active inflammation.

2. As a tubercular peritonitis when the tubercular deposit is associated with an inflammatory proliferation more or less abundant. In a simpler variety of the latter, the *diffuse adhesive*, the peritoneal cavity is obliterated, the coils of intestine being matted together and adherent to the abdominal walls. In a second variety known as *proliferative* peritonitis, there is marked thickening of the peritoneal layer with less tendency to adhesion and obliteration of the cavity. The omentum is sometimes an inch in thickness and composed of tubercular tissue in various stages of degeneration. The mesentery is similarly infiltrated and shrunken, drawing the intestines together into a *ball-like mass* or tumor as large as a child's head. The coats of the bowel, especially the large gut, also show localized areas of similar morbid changes. Tubercular peritonitis is sometimes associated with cirrhosis of the liver, whose capsule and that of the spleen may be infiltrated to enormous thickness. There is often in this form considerable effusion, which may be serous or purulent, at times bloody.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms include those of chronic peritonitis, except that the abdomen is apt to be harder and more tender. Indeed, a *stiff and rigid abdomen* is quite characteristic of tubercular peritonitis. Later, however, is added, particularly in the upper part of the abdomen, the *tympany* so characteristic of peritonitis.

In connection with this must be taken the history of the patient, his appearance, the condition of the lungs and the presence of tuberculosis there and elsewhere, particularly in the pleura and bowel, whence extension to the peritoneum is easy by the lymphatic vessels. Four-fifths of all cases of tubercular peritonitis are said to succeed primary tuberculosis of the lungs. In children tubercular peritonitis is frequent as a part of a general miliary tuberculosis. By primary tuberculosis of the peritoneum is meant simply a tuberculosis in which no primary focus has been found elsewhere.

**Diagnosis.**—To the symptoms above described may be added, if needed for the purpose of diagnosis, the information to be derived from a test injection of Koch's tuberculin and an examination for tubercle bacillus of the fluid obtained by tapping. The rise of temperature succeeding the injection is almost infallible evidence, due antiseptic precautions being taken, of the presence of tuberculosis.

**Treatment.**—The treatment for tubercular peritonitis is the general treatment for tuberculosis, with such operative interference as may be deemed appropriate after a careful study of each case. The results of operation thus far have been quite sufficiently satisfactory to justify its repetition in suitable cases.

## VI. TUBERCULOSIS OF THE GENITO-URINARY ORGANS.

This includes tuberculosis of the kidney and its pelvis tuberculosis of the ureters and bladder, and tuberculosis of the ovaries.

*Tuberculosis of the Kidney.*

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Tuberculosis presents itself in the kidney in two forms:

1. In the shape of *miliary granulations*, which are a part of a *general tuberculosis*, giving rise to no special local symptoms; as secondary invasion confined to the kidney, or rarely as primary in the kidney.

2. As *secondary foci* of localized *tuberculosis*, which in time may fuse to form larger areas that undergo caseation and liquefaction, transforming the whole kidney at times into a sac of purulent or cheesy matter. Such tuberculosis may start in the prostate gland, bladder, ureter, or pelvis of the kidney, and may extend also into the testicle and epididymis in men and the ovary and Fallopian tubes in women.

**Symptoms.**—The first form is without special symptoms. There may be none at all or *they may simulate closely those of nephrolithiasis*. *Tenderness* to pressure should be especially sought. Those of the second, so far as the neighborhood of the kidney is concerned, are not distinctive or constant. There may be none or there may be *fullness, tenderness*, and even in extreme cases *fluctuation*. Frequently, subjective symptoms are reflected to the bladder, and they include frequent micturition, pain, and tenderness in the region of the bladder. There is also purulent urine, but commonly this differs from that of cystitis. It is more uniformly acid in reaction, and contains pus less admixed with mucus: Blood is much more frequent than in simple cystitis, and correspondingly albumin. Tube casts are very rarely found. Cheesy masses are sometimes present in the urine and with them the tubercle bacillus, which is the only pathognomonic sign. It should always be sought. The method for its recognition is the same as for the tubercle bacillus in sputum. It should not be confounded with the bacillus found by Malterstock, Travel, and Alvarez in the preputial and vulvar smegma. Hence, these parts should be carefully cleaned preliminary to the search. A negative result does not, however, exclude tuberculosis. In such event Damsch suggested inoculation with the pus from the urine into the anterior chamber of the rabbit's eye. At the end of three weeks tubercular nodules should make their appearance if the pus be tubercular. Sometimes, also, shreds composed of white fibrous and elastic tissue representing the disintegrating kidney or mucous membrane are found in the urine, but are not diagnostic, since they may be found in other varieties of destructive disease of the organ. The features of the urine described are almost characteristically intermittent—that is, the urine is sometimes almost or quite clear and again becomes purulent.

In the absence of such conclusive proof as bacilli in the urine, the presence of tubercle elsewhere, as in the lungs or nearer parts, as the testicles and prostate in men or the ovaries and Fallopian tubes in women, affords suggestive evidence. The latter may be investigated through the vagina

and rectum, while catheterization of the ureters may also be practiced in women and stenosis of the ureter due to tubercular infiltration of the pyelo-ureteral wall thus recognized. Even in men the thickened ureters may rarely be felt through the abdominal wall. In other cases where the lungs are not primarily tubercular they may be secondarily invaded. Hydronephrosis may result from complete obstruction of the ureter by tubercular infiltration.

**Treatment.**—Beyond the general restorative and palliative treatment useful in general tuberculosis there is no medical treatment of tubercular kidney. As soon as the diagnosis is made the surgeon should be called and nephrotomy done. Life is almost invariably prolonged by it, and if the operator be so fortunate as to find only a few isolated nodules on section, they may be scraped away. I have such a patient, a woman, thus operated upon ten years ago by J. William White, who remains up to the present time quite free from the return of the disease. In cases in which the whole organ is involved a persistent renal fistula must be expected, if the kidney be not removed. Exploratory operation may even be justified under circumstances that must be determined in each case.

#### *Tuberculosis of the Pelvis of the Kidney, Ureters, and Bladder.*

It is not always easy to separate tuberculosis of these parts of the urinary tract. So far as symptomatology is concerned, outside of the bacteriological examination, the symptoms of tuberculosis are those of simple inflammation. If the disease is advanced there is tenderness, but this is the case also when there is impacted stone or pyelitis from other causes. The invasion of the bladder produces symptoms like those of cystitis, including frequent micturition and purulent urine in which there may be a small amount of blood. These symptoms, again, are not peculiar to tuberculosis, and the examination for bacilli again becomes necessary. This is much easier since the centrifugating apparatus has come into use. It must be remembered, however, that the presence of the bacillus in the urine tells us no more than that there is tuberculosis of this tract. We are still as much in want of information as to whether it comes from the pelvis of the kidney, the ureter, or the bladder. Cystoscopic examination may help us to locate the disease, but as often it does not do so. In women the catheterization of the ureter, if negative in one or the other ureter, tells us that the disease is probably located in the obstructed ureter. It is very important to remember that sometimes tuberculosis, and, indeed, any form of inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, produces the same frequent desire to pass water as the same condition of the bladder, and that, too, when the bladder is entirely normal; so that we must not be too positive from the presence of this symptom that the bladder is the seat of infection, while, if there be tenderness in the kidney region and in the course of the ureter, these latter are more likely to be the seat of the disease. The diagnosis by exclusion may be of service. Thus, if we can exclude calculus and infection of the bladder and ureters by gonorrhea, or in women by the milder infection which sometimes attends child-birth, the probabilities are increased that we have to do with tuberculosis. Suspected cases of tuberculosis of these parts are rendered more probable if the patient is a subject of pulmonary

tuberculosis. Primary tuberculosis of these organs is, however, of frequent occurrence.

An important question with a bearing on operative treatment asks whether tuberculous disease of the urinary tract begins at the upper or lower end, *i. e.*, in the kidney and its pelvis or the bladder. It may begin at either end, but much more frequently at the upper, whence it is plain that removal of a tuberculous kidney may avert extension to the bladder and it is said even cure it after it has set in.

#### *Tuberculosis of the Ovaries, Fallopian Tubes, and Uterus.*

A good deal of attention has been paid of late to tuberculosis of the ovaries by Wolff, Charles B. Penrose, Kynoch, and others. The ovaries may be the seat of miliary tubercles or may contain large cheesy masses. Ovarian tuberculosis is commonly associated with tuberculosis of the Fallopian tubes. The symptoms of the former are in no way different from those of ovaritis from other causes. Fallopian salpingitis produces a hard and thick infiltration of the Fallopian tubes, which may be recognized by the usual methods of examination for the disease of these organs. The uterine ends are commonly closed, while the intervening portion may be dilated and contain mucus, pus, and cheesy material. Tubal tuberculosis is commonly double.

Tuberculosis also invades the uterus, infiltrating it by miliary tubercles, which coalesce, soften, and break down, producing metritis and ulceration, discharges from which may contain the bacilli. Uterine tuberculosis usually begins in the region of the orifices of the Fallopian tubes, and is really an extension of the disease from the tubes. It may, on the other hand, extend from below, from a tuberculosis of the vagina. The symptoms of the resulting metritis are the same as those of metritis from other causes. Tenderness and moderate enlargement may be named. Other symptoms, such as hectic fever and sweats, usually occur only when tuberculosis of these organs is a part of general tuberculosis. The disease makes its appearance more frequently during the period of greatest sexual activity, but it has been found in young children, and in them the ovaries and uterus have been found involved without participation of the Fallopian tubes. It should be mentioned also that tuberculosis may extend from these organs to the peritoneum as well as from the peritoneum to them. Wolff<sup>1</sup> especially believes tuberculosis of the ovaries is not so rare as commonly supposed, since in 17 women who died of tuberculosis he found five in which the genitalia were invaded, and in three tuberculosis of the ovaries on both sides could be demonstrated.

#### *Tuberculosis of the Testes, Prostate Gland, and Seminal Vesicles.*

Tuberculosis of the testis and prostate is not infrequent. It presents itself as cheesy infiltration, which more frequently does not liquefy. More rarely, the vesiculæ seminales are invaded. The enlarged vesiculæ seminales may be felt through the rectum. The symptoms of this form of

<sup>1</sup> "Centralblatt für Gynäkologie," No. 46, 1896.



prostatic disease are in no way different from those of other diseases of the prostate with enlargement until rupture takes place.

Tuberculosis of the testis is not such a rare affection. It is commonly secondary to that of the bladder and prostate, whence the bacilli travel along the vas deferens into the epididymis, which may be converted into a cheesy mass surrounding the testicle. With the invasion of the testicle further enlargement results with softening, ulceration, and fistulous burrowing. The walls of these fistulæ are infiltrated with tubercles. This malady is characteristically painless.

The treatment of these conditions is mainly surgical, although the general measures usual in tuberculosis elsewhere are also suitable.

## VII. TUBERCULOSIS OF THE MAMMARY GLANDS.

The mammary gland, though rarely invaded by tuberculosis, is nevertheless an occasional seat, Warden having collected 58 authentic cases in literature, nearly 90 per cent. of whom were females. Most cases developed in the third decennium. Others have found the disease more frequent during the child-bearing period. The bacilli causing the disease are probably carried by the blood from adjacent or surrounding organs. The special local product is a cheesy nodule in the gland, which softens, breaks down, and breaks through to the surface, often through the skin, with resulting fistulæ. Sharp, lancing pains radiating into the arm are said to be characteristic. The tubercular nodules may be more deep-seated and hard or soft in consistency. Adjacent axillary lymphatic glands may be invaded by the infiltration. The finding of the bacillus is, of course, the crucial evidence, although the association of fistulæ and ulcers in connection with tuberculosis elsewhere suggests this disease.

## VIII. TUBERCULOSIS OF THE HEART AND BLOOD-VESSELS.

**History.**—As far back as 1814, D. F. L. Kreysig,<sup>1</sup> in Berlin, said "Tubercular tumors of the heart walls, while met with very rarely, are very probable." In 1826 Laennec said the heart muscle is subject to tuberculosis. In 1832 Townsend, of Dublin, recorded a case wherein a large tuberculous nodule started from the left auricle and compressed the pulmonary vein. Virchow originally announced that tubercle differed from gumma in that it was not capsulated, but later Fuchs has shown that true tubercle may also become surrounded with a capsule.<sup>2</sup> It is probably more common than is supposed.

*Tuberculosis of the Heart.*—Tuberculosis of the heart presents itself in the shape of *miliary tubercles* scattered throughout the substance of the heart, more frequently in the membranes, causing *tuberculous pericarditis*. The latter may be acute or chronic, more commonly acute, caused by sudden invasion. Both are usually a part of a general tuberculosis. Very rarely is the acute form primary. Tuberculous pericarditis is followed by exudation of fibrin, and sometimes of blood and pus. It is found sometimes in old persons in whom it promptly causes death. Such pericarditis is also commonly adhesive, and is not distinguishable by physical signs and symptoms from the other forms of pericarditis.

<sup>1</sup>"Tuberculosis of the Heart Muscle," September 11, 1901.

<sup>2</sup>"Krankheiten des Herzens," Berlin, 1816. See also a paper by Raymond Crawford in the Edinburgh, n. s. vol. x, 1901, p. 244.

In cardiac tuberculosis it is supposed that the bacilli arise from long latent foci of tuberculosis of the bronchial or mediastinal lymphatic glands. The latter, on the other hand, may be secondarily invaded from the cardiac tuberculosis.

Tuberculosis also occurs in the muscular substance of the heart, or projecting immediately under the endocardium or pericardium, in nodules varying in size from a lentil to a hen's egg.

Tubercles are sometimes found on the valves of the heart.

*Tuberculosis of Blood-vessels.*—Tuberculosis may also invade the blood-vessels of a part attacked, and in tuberculosis of the lungs hemorrhages are commonly due to such invasion, which weakens the vessel and ultimately perforates it.

## LEPROSY.

SYNONYM.—*Elephantiasis Græcorum.*

**Definition.**—Leprosy is an infectious disease, due to the *bacillus lepræ*, characterized by a subcutaneous and submucous nodular infiltrate, or by similar infiltration of nerve-trunks. The former constitutes tubercular leprosy; the latter, anesthetic leprosy.

**History.**—The disease is identified with the early history of Egypt and India, and is described in the Books of Moses, who gave many data for its recognition, laws for the isolation of victims, the test of recovery, and rules to be complied with before the convalescent could mingle with his people. It prevailed in Europe in the Middle Ages, but has become almost extinct there, except in Norway and Sweden, Hungary, and Roumania. In Greece and Turkey, Palestine, Syria, Egypt, India, China, Siam, Sandwich Islands, and West Indies it is still endemic.

**Etiology.**—The bacillus of leprosy was discovered by Hansen in 1880, and subsequently clearly described by Neisser, and is especially characterized by its close resemblance to the tubercle bacillus. The bacilli are delicate rods whose length equals  $1/3$  to  $1/2$  the width of a red blood-disk. They are for the most part found in the interior of cells, rarely outside of them. Some of these cells are of large size and known as lepra cells. In the interior of these cells the bacilli often form clumps. They are exceedingly numerous in leprous tissue. They stain readily in anilin colors, but not in vesuvin, differing in this respect from tubercle bacilli, and also in that they liquefy coagulated blood serum, while tubercle bacilli do not. In the fresh condition the lepra bacilli exhibit active movement.

While the disease is contagious, its spread, even under circumstances the most favorable, is exceedingly slow, the most intimate contact, as that between parent and child, being often unattended by inoculation. Experimental inoculation was, however, successfully performed on a Hawaiian convict by Arning, as well as in rabbits by Melcher and Artmann. According to Morrow, in the majority of cases the disease spreads by sexual intercourse, but cracks and fissures in the skin also favor the lodgment of the bacillus. In certain countries, especially the tropical, its spread is more rapid. Such are India, where there are said to be 250,000 lepers, and the Sandwich Islands, where, in 1889, there were 1100 in the settlement at

Molokai. In the West Indies there are also many cases, and some remarkable morbid specimens from Trinidad were exhibited by Beaven Rake at the Pan-American Medical Congress, held in Washington, U. S. A., in September, 1893.

In this country the cases are for the most part isolated ones that enter by the seaports of the Pacific and Atlantic coasts. In Tracadie, on the Gulf of St. Lawrence, there is, however, a leper settlement, the disease having been brought from Norway in the latter part of the eighteenth century. The number of cases is being gradually reduced, there being in 1896 but 18 as compared to 40 a few years previous. This is apparently the result of segregation, which is now generally practiced where possible.

All ages and sexes are liable to this disease. Animals are not subject to it, although guinea-pigs have been successfully inoculated. A curious impression has arisen that the disease is caused by eating spoiled fish or vegetables. To this belief Jonathan Hutchinson has given the weight of his opinion. In view, however, of the acknowledged bacillary origin of the disease, this can only be considered as a predisposing cause that lowers vitality by altering nutrition.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Tubercular leprosy is characterized by its nodular outgrowths on the skin, the nodules being made up of a small-celled infiltrate, maintaining itself for a considerable time, after which it breaks down and ulcerates. The ulcers may heal, producing cicatrices. The mucous membrane is also invaded, particularly that of the eyelids, the conjunctiva, cornea, and larynx. Lymphatic glands, cartilage, liver, lungs, and spleen are also at times affected. The lepra nodes are vascular, differing in this respect from the nodules of tuberculosis.

The morbid anatomy of the anesthetic variety will be included in the anatomical changes of the skin to be described in the symptomatology of that type of the disease.

**Symptoms.**—Nothing is known of a *period of incubation*. The outbreak of the disease is apt to be preceded by an *intermittent febrile movement*, which has been mistaken for intermittent fever and which may last for one or two years. There is often an *erythematous redness* of the skin, which in places becomes pale and in others assumes a brownish tinge. From this appearance the name *macular leprosy* has been applied to certain cases which go no farther. From these spots the pigment may also disappear, leaving perfectly white anesthetic areas—*lepra alba*.

In the further development of the disease, in the *tubercular* or more usual form, an *infiltration of the skin with tubercular nodules* takes place. These remain for a long time intact, without degenerating, but sooner or later, as a rule, though often only after many years, softening and ulceration take place. Some of them, on the other hand, gradually disappear without ulceration. The number of nodules varies greatly. Some of them are pediculated, others are a simple thickening of the skin, which is conspicuous in such portions as the eyelids, nose, and ears, parts of which may disappear by ulceration. Even the cornea and conjunctiva may be the seat of nodules, and blindness may result.

The same development may take place in mucous membranes producing obstruction of the respiratory passages, including the nose and larynx.

There may also be leprous deposits in internal organs, including the liver, spleen, lungs, and lymphatic glands.

In the nervous or *anesthetic* form the peripheral nerves become infiltrated with the leprous growth and are converted into thickened cords that may even be felt under the skin. These are at first painful, but later become anesthetic. Trophic phenomena of a striking character result, producing dryness, smoothness, and tightness of the skin with a total absence of nodules. Atrophy and wasting ensue from the same cause, and toes, fingers, and even larger limbs drop off. Great vesicles also sometimes form. Subsequently are added signs of weakness and exhaustion which gradually increase until the patient succumbs.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of the tubercular form is not difficult.

The anesthetic variety resembles closely certain forms of *scleroderma*, but the trophic changes are more extensive. The resemblance of the early stage to intermittent fever has been referred to. The diagnosis may be made absolute by the detection of lepra bacilli in portions cut out for the purpose of study.

The anesthetic or nervous form of leprosy and *syringomyelia* bear a close clinical resemblance. The characteristic differences are thus pointed out by Laehr:<sup>1</sup> Leprosy is an infectious disease due to the *bacillus lepræ*, beginning with a febrile movement and primarily seated on peripheral nerves. Syringomyelia is a nonfebrile or slightly febrile developmental disease, with its seat in the upper spinal cord. In leprosy the circumscribed anesthesia, muscular atrophy, and vaso-motor-trophic disturbances of the skin, bones, and joints appear upon the face, trunk, and upper extremities and simultaneously or earlier in the lower. In syringomyelia the upper extremities are first affected, the lower very late, if at all, the face escaping, as a rule, completely. Sweating is absent in leprosy, but characteristic of syringomyelia. The wasting in leprosy involves first the muscles of distal parts of the extremities, while that of syringomyelia begins in the proximal portions. The anesthesia in leprosy includes pain sense, temperature sense, and tactile sense, while tactile sensibility is rarely involved in syringomyelia. In leprosy the anesthetic areas vary in form and extent, and, as a rule, are scattered over the entire body. In syringomyelia sensory changes show themselves on the trunk in the form of a girdle. The sensory disturbances correspond to the portions of the cord involved, while the anesthesia of leprosy depends upon local cutaneous disease and occasionally upon disease of the peripheral nerves. In leprosy, as a rule, it is possible to detect spindle-shaped thickenings of the peripheral nerves, especially of the ulnar and the peroneal, before the manifestations of neuritis are apparent. Although the symptoms of syringomyelia are similar to those of anesthetic leprosy, in the latter disease the trophic changes are more marked, the phalanges often dropping off.

**Prognosis.**—The course of the disease is almost always prolonged, and the patient may die from intercurrent disease. In some cases death results from the gradual exhaustion of the system, which is more rapid in the ulcerative forms. From the nervous form of leprosy recovery does sometimes take place, though the secondary changes resulting remain permanent.

<sup>1</sup> "Deutsche med. Wochenschrift," January 17, 1897, p. 45.

**Treatment.**—So far as known, treatment is unavailing. Segregation should be practiced whenever possible, for such a course is invariably accompanied by a falling off in the number of cases, and the continued practice of this method must ultimately result in the disease being stamped out.

Among the remedies that have been recommended are mercury and iodine by inunction. Internally are advised iodid of potassium, creasote and salicylic acid, chaulmoogra oil, and gurgun oil. The chaulmoogra has most reputation, and is regarded by Danielson after 40 years' experience with it as distinctly useful. It is used in doses of 2 drams (8 gm.) every two hours, and gurgun oil in doses of 10 minims (0.66 gm.). The latter may also be used by inunction.

## INFECTIOUS DISEASES OF DOUBTFUL NATURE.

### ACUTE FEBRILE JAUNDICE.

SYNONYMS.—*Weil's Disease; Bilious Typhoid.*

**Definition.**—An acute infectious disease, characterized by jaundice and fever, described by Weil in 1886.

**Etiology.**—The cause is as yet undetermined, but it affects males in preference to females, especially butchers, laborers, and brewers, and its subjects are from 25 to 40 years of age. Exposure to cold may be considered an exciting cause. A few cases have occurred in this country, two having been reported from the Philadelphia Hospital by J. H. Musser and John Guit  ras. Weiss considers that the symptoms and lesions most resemble the bilious typhoid described by Griesinger, while the latter has been claimed to be identical with the typhoid icterodes of Egypt.

It occurs commonly in the summer months, and nearly always in groups of cases. But for the last fact the disease might well be regarded as catarrhal jaundice.

**Symptoms.**—The illness sets in suddenly, after exposure to cold, as in a beer vault, most frequently with a *chill* and without prodrome. There is *fever*, with temperature of 102   to 104   F. (38.9   to 40   C.), *headache*, *muscular* and *joint pain*, and *epigastric pain*, which is characteristic. There is especially *tenderness* in the *calf muscles*. *Jaundice* promptly makes its appearance. The fever lasts usually from ten to 14 days, and is characterized by decided remissions. The *liver* and *spleen* are both *enlarged*; the former may be tender. Associated with the jaundice are the usual *clay-colored stools* of obstructive jaundice. Beyond the epigastric pain, which may be hepatic in origin, *gastro-intestinal* symptoms are not marked, though the tongue is coated, and there may be vomiting and diarrhea. There may be dizziness, confusion of mind, and even delirium. The *urine* contains biliary coloring-matter; sometimes albumin with casts and even blood.

After a duration of from eight to 14 days, convalescence sets in, usually slowly, and it may be prolonged.

**Diagnosis.**—The conditions with which Weil's disease might be for a time confounded are bilious remittent fever, acute yellow atrophy of the

liver, phosphorus poisoning, and catarrhal jaundice. The first would be excluded by the absence of the plasmodium of malaria, while the mildness and favorable termination would exclude the second and third. Catarrhal jaundice is distinguished by the absence of fever, and of muscular, joint, and epigastric pain, which characterize Weil's disease.

**Prognosis.**—Recovery is usual, but a few autopsies have been made, with the discovery of no definite morbid anatomy. There is cloudy swelling and even fatty degeneration of the cells of the heart, liver, kidney, stomach, and intestines.

**Treatment.**—This is symptomatic.

### MILIARY FEVER.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Febris miliaris*; *Sudor anglicus*; *Sweating Sickness*; *the Sweating Disease of Picardy*; *the English Sweat*.

**Definition.**—An infectious fever of unknown cause, characterized by profuse sweats and an eruption of miliary vesicles.

**Historical.**—The disease first appeared in London in an epidemic of extreme severity in the summer of 1486, a year characterized by very wet weather. There were other epidemics in 1517, 1518 and 1529. During the latter the disease passed on to the continent of Europe. There was not another epidemic until 1718, when there appeared "the sweating sickness" of Picardy, France, extending thence into Italy, Germany, Austria, and Belgium. Then there followed 194 epidemics up to 1879.

**Etiology.**—As to the specific cause nothing is known. It is not contagious nor inoculable, and not favored by crowding. Most epidemics occur in summer, fewest in the autumn; second in frequency is the spring; third, the winter. Moist, warm, and unchanging weather favors the disease. Contaminations of the soil, such as arise from neglected drains and collections of refuse, also contribute to its causation. More women are affected than men, and the vulnerable age seems to be between 20 and 50 years. The healthy and strong are as likely to be attacked as the weak, and the rich as well as the poor.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—No characteristic anatomical changes have been noted in miliary fever. The internal organs are generally hyperemic. The spleen is often enlarged. The most striking feature is the tendency to rapid decomposition, "beginning almost during life," as has been said. The blood is thin and dark in color.

**Symptoms.**—After an *incubation* of two or three days the patient goes to bed apparently well, and wakes up in the night dripping with *sweat*. With this is a *sense of oppression*, and even *pain*, in the precordial region, *tenderness* and pain in the epigastrium, *palpitation*, *headache*, *dizziness*, and *muscular cramps*. The *temperature* is abnormally high, the *pulse* and *respirations* are frequent; there is even *dyspnea*, sometimes very violent. The perspiration continues, saturating the bed clothing and diffusing an unpleasant odor throughout the room.

On the third or fourth day, as a result of the profuse sweating, miliary *vesicles* make their appearance, at first so minute as to be scarcely visible,

though they may be felt by passing the hand over the skin. As they become larger they are easily visible by their crystalline contents, which later become turbid and even milky. They appear first on the neck and breast, then over the back and extremities, less frequently on the abdomen and scalp. After two or three days they burst, dry up, and form crusts, which subsequently desquamate. With the appearance of the eruption the other symptoms disappear rather suddenly, but there is often noted a burning and prickling sensation of the skin. There is generally loss of appetite, sometimes nausea, seldom vomiting, scanty urine, and especially constipation.

The *duration* of the disease is usually from six to eight days, although it may be prolonged beyond this, the eruption being sometimes delayed to the seventh, tenth, and even 15th day. Relapses may occur. Sometimes the disease assumes an intermittent character.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not difficult. The prevalence of an epidemic, profuse sweating, and rash scarcely permit an error.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis has varied greatly in different epidemics, the mortality in some of the earlier reaching as much as 50 per cent., while in others none died. The average may be put down at from eight to nine per cent.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is mainly expectant and symptomatic. Simple febrifuges and acid drinks are indicated. Warm baths and sponging of the skin with warm water are soothing and comforting. The precordial distress and apnea may require anodynes, preferably subcutaneously administered. The sweating itself, if alarming, may be treated by hypodermic injections of atropin, 1/200 to 1/100 grain (0.00033 to 0.00066 gm.), p. r. n., or this drug may be given by the mouth in the same dose.

## GLANDULAR FEVER.

SYNONYM.—*Drüsen-Fieber*.

**Definition.**—An acute infectious fever of children, characterized by inflammation of the lymph glands of the neck, especially those back of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

**History.**—The disease is not a new one, as descriptions corresponding to acute adenitis of the glands affected have appeared from time to time, but the first systematic account seems to have been published by E. Pfeiffer in 1880 under the term *Drüsen-Fieber*. In 1885-87 Filatoff, of Moscow, although less completely, described the same disease. Since then it has been studied by J. Park West, of Ohio, by Samuel McC. Hamill and Albert E. Roussel, of Philadelphia, and by Donkin, Fischer and Dawson Williams, in England.

**Etiology.**—No responsible bacterium has been found. The disease may be epidemic, as was that which occurred in Bellaire, Ohio, described by West. It has been observed to prevail more commonly between the months of October and June in the winter season. The infection, whatever it may be, probably enters through the tonsils or the pharyngeal mucous membrane.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This includes the enlargement of the glands, which forms so essential a part of the disease. The enlargement may involve not only the cervical glands referred to, but the axillary, inguinal, bronchial,

and even the mesenteric. Thus, in West's report of 96 cases occurring between the ages of seven months and 13 years, in three-fourths of them the post-cervical, inguinal, and axillary glands were involved, with the mesenteric in 37 cases. The liver and spleen were also enlarged, the former in 87 and the latter in 57 cases.

**Symptoms.**—The *period of incubation* lasts from five to eight days. The disease is characterized by sudden onset of stiffness with pain on moving the head. Along with this there is fever with a temperature of  $101^{\circ}$  to  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $56^{\circ}$  to  $57^{\circ}$  C.) with sometimes nausea and vomiting. The enlargement of the glands does not make its appearance until the second or third day, and may attain a size from that of a pea to a hen's egg, but rarely goes on to suppuration. The glands are tender to the touch, but there is not usually redness of the skin. There may also be some hyperemia of the tonsils, or pharyngitis. More rarely there is invasion of the tracheal and bronchial glands which may be the occasion of cough. The swelling persists from two to three weeks, although the fever does not last nearly so long.

**Complications.**—Among these which may be named as possible are hemorrhagic nephritis, postpharyngeal abscess, and acute otitis media.

**Diagnosis.**—The disease is to be distinguished from the various forms of infectious sore throat found in scarlet fever and diphtheria which may cause a similar affection of the lymphatic glands.

**Prognosis.**—Favorable.

**Treatment.**—Active treatment is scarcely needed. The patient should be put to rest. Cold or warm applications may be made, whichever form is found more comfortable. An aperient, such as a dose of oil or calomel, may be desirable at the very beginning. West recommended small doses of the latter drug.

## IRRITATIVE FEVER.

SYNONYMS.—*Ephemeral Fever; Febricula; Gastric Fever.*

**Definition.**—A fever of short duration, depending on a variety of irritative causes.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent cause of this form of fever is probably the irritation of foods difficult of digestion, either by their inherent qualities or by reason of some temporary functional derangement of the stomach. In a word, indigestion is perhaps the most frequent cause of such a fever. This is especially the case with children, in whom the condition is often spoken of as gastric fever.

Another cause is probably exposure to cold insufficient to produce a bronchitis, tonsillitis, or other affection, too slight to be recognizable by the usual signs. Undue exposure to the sun, too, may produce it, or even fatigue. The inhalation of noxious gases is a possible cause, though somewhat discredited by modern studies;<sup>1</sup> also, the absorption from the stomach and intestine of toxic albumoses from putrid or decomposing foods—auto-intoxication by ptomains.

<sup>1</sup> Abbott, A. C., "Effects of the Gaseous Products of Decomposition on the Health," etc. "Trans. of the Assoc. of Am. Physicians," vol. x., 1895.



It is possible, too, that the germ of an infectious disease or its toxic products may enter the economy in quantity insufficient to develop the specific affection which is its usual result. Possibly the poison of rheumatism or malaria may operate in this way.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of irritative fever are those usual to fever in mild degree, *i. e.*, *moderate elevation of temperature*, rarely above 100° F. (37.7° C.) in adults, but higher in children, *frequent pulse*, *headache*, a sense of *lassitude* and *weariness*, *loss of appetite*, *nausea*, and *restlessness*; in children perhaps *delirium*. The fever is apt to terminate suddenly by crisis on the second or third day.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis resolves itself into this: where a careful search fails to reveal the action of a cause, save one of those referred to, and no symptoms develop characteristic of any of the recognized diseases, the affection is irritative fever.

**Prognosis.**—Always favorable.

**Treatment.**—Rest in bed, a simple aperient, a fever mixture consisting of solution of citrate of potash, sweet spirit of niter, solution of acetate of ammonium or aconite tincture, will suffice to break up the fever and insure recovery.

## PROTRACTED SIMPLE CONTINUED FEVER.

**Definition and Etiology.**—It seems necessary for the present to continue this term for a feverish process of a longer duration than ephemeral fever or febricula—a fever that is not typhoid, not influenza—lasting from two weeks to three months, and without definite lesions. Knowing, however, what we do know, and limited as our knowledge still is of infection, it is more than likely that some day a specific cause will be found for each of a motley group of such fevers, which will give them a definite name just as certain cases formerly thus grouped are now relegated to typhoid fever.

Some of these cases, too, may belong to the group covered by the term *cryptogenetic septicemias*, suggested in 1878 by W. v. Leube—cases of general septicemia with concealed local infection undiscoverable even at necropsy, characterized by a fever that persists for weeks. Many of these recover completely, including cases in which the natural doubt as to whether they are of malarial or tubercular origin is settled in the usual way, against malarial by the inefficiency of quinin, and against tuberculosis by reason of recovery. J. M. DaCosta well described such cases in a paper on "Protracted Simple Continued Fever."<sup>1</sup> Some of the more serious forms have been traced after death by the aid of the bacteriological examination, to the streptococcus, staphylococcus, and even pneumococcus infection. Cases of prolonged fever, succeeding pneumonia and pleurisy, which subsequently recover may well be ascribed to any of these organisms.

**Symptoms.**—It can scarcely be said of the symptomatology of the milder forms of these fevers, to which reference is here intended, that it includes more than a mild *fever*, seldom reaching 103° F. (39.4° C.), with slight morning remission and evening rise, and the usual high-colored

<sup>1</sup> "Trans. of the Assoc. of Am. Physicians," vol. xi., 1896.

urine; it may be, with mild *gastro-intestinal derangement*, such as a slightly coated tongue, but no diarrhea, no lung complication, nothing essential but the mild fever. The latter is, however, rarely high, and there is occasionally enlargement of the spleen.

These fevers admit, moreover, of a certain classification, based on locality and perhaps on modifying local cause. This would be the case with the *thermic fever* of the South, described by John Guiteras, characterized by *wakefulness*, great *nervous excitement*, and *disordered muscular function*, but without eruption or other symptoms of typhoid fever, and lasting for several weeks. This, as suggested by DaCosta, is probably also the *ardent fever* of the older writers; in its severer form, the inflammatory fever, described by Copeland. On thermic fever, Guitéras tells me he has changed his views and is forced, in the light of modern studies, to ascribe it to some unknown infectious cause. To this, he says, he has been led by two facts, first, that he finds it farther north than he originally thought it occurred—his original studies were made at Key West—and, second, its occurrence in more than one member of a family.

Such, too, may be the "Asthenic Fever" of Murchison, and the "Starvation Fever," described by DaCosta;<sup>1</sup> the "Atypical Continued Fever of Nashville," described by Cain;<sup>2</sup> "Simple Continued Fever," described by Baumgarten,<sup>3</sup> of St. Louis; the "Malta" or "Rock Fever," already described; the "Innominate Fever" of Goodhart,<sup>4</sup> who says in his paper, "There is too great a tendency to label all continued fevers by some definite name"; and the "Inexplicable Fever," of Hale White.<sup>5</sup>

**Diagnosis.**—The cases are to be distinguished, above all, from irregular and mild forms of typhoid fever, similar forms of intermittent and remittent fever, miliary tuberculosis, the fever which sometimes attends chlorosis, hysteria at times, and some other nervous disorders. DaCosta emphasizes a feverish state caused by lithemia; another in rapidly advancing spinal sclerosis, which may be recognized by other distinctive signs, usually evident when sought for. In cases where there is enlargement of the spleen the resemblance to typhoid is closer, and the diagnosis may have to remain in doubt until settled by the Widal test or by time. The tubercle bacillus should always be sought for in doubtful cases; also the plasmodium of malaria.

**Prognosis.**—This is generally favorable, except in some of the severer cases ultimately traceable to true infection. Some cases of the so-called thermic fever, reported by Guitéras, died and came to autopsy without definite lesions being discovered.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of simple continued fever of longer duration, as well as of the shorter forms, is symptomatic, and remedies for the relief of symptoms are for the most part alone indicated. With continued fever there is always a tendency to weakness, and supporting measures are indicated, including quinin, strychnin, and small doses of iron. Due attention to the bowels should be given, as the effect of constipation in keeping up fever is well known.

<sup>1</sup> "Trans. of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia," Third Series, vol. v., 1881.

<sup>2</sup> "Southern Practitioner," December, 1891.

<sup>3</sup> "Trans. of the Assoc. of Am. Physicians," vol. viii., 1893.

<sup>4</sup> "Guy's Hospital Reports," xxx., 1888.

<sup>5</sup> "Brit Med. Jour.," vol. ii., 1886, p. 1096.

## PERIODS OF INCUBATION OF THE INFECTIOUS DISEASES.

The following table from G. H. Roger on Infectious Diseases, Lea Brothers, Phila., 1903, gives the incubation periods of most of the infectious diseases based upon statistics published by Williams on behalf of a London commission, and upon his own personal observation.

## INCUBATION.

	Minimum	Maximum	Average
Anthrax .....	1 day	3 days	2 days
Bubonic plague.....	2 days	7 days	4 to 6 days
Chancre (soft).....	1 day	3 days	1 to 2 days
Cholera .....	1 day	6 days	2 to 4 days
Diphtheria .....	2 days	15 days	2 days
Erysipelas .....	3 hours	22 days	4 to 6 days
Influenza .....	1 day	5 days	3 to 4 days
Glanders .....	24 hours	3 months	3 to 5 days
Gonorrhœa.....	1 (?) to 2 days	1 to several weeks	3 to 5 days
Mumps .....	7 days	30 days	15 days
Malaria .....	99 hours	Several months	6 to 10 days
Recurrent fever.....	86 hours	8 days	5 to 6 days
Measles .....	4 days	14 days	9 days
Hydrophobia .....	13 days	18 mos. to 3 yrs. (?)	20 to 60 days
Rubella, Rubeola, Rötheln.....	5 days	21 days	18 days
Scarlatina.....	7 hours	7 weeks	2 to 5 days
Small-pox.....	7 days	15 days	12 days
Syphilis.....	10 days	50 days	20 to 30 days
Tetanus.....	2 hours	35 days	2 to 3 days
Typhoid fever.....	2 days (?)	21 days	14 days
Typhus .....	0 (?)	23 days	12 days
Vaccinia .....	2 days	7 days	3 days
Varicella.....	13 days	19 days	14 to 15 days
Whooping cough.....	2 days	8 days	8 days
Yellow fever.....	2 days	6 days	3 to 4 days

## THE OPSONIN TREATMENT OF INFECTIOUS DISEASES.

It would seem appropriate at the conclusion of a study of the infectious diseases to say as much as seems necessary, at this stage of our knowledge, of the opsonin treatment, although the whole subject is still *sub judice*. The treatment consists essentially in an inoculation of dead cultures of a specific disease germ into the blood of an animal previously infected by it. It is, in fact, a revival of the treatment suggested by Robert Koch in 1901, for the cure of tuberculosis, a revival for which we are for the most part indebted to the researches of the English bacteriologist A. E. Wright and his pupils. It is, further, an imitation of nature's own effort to throw off such diseases, and is founded on the discovery by Metschnikoff of the protective or phagocytic rôle of the leukocyte against the inroads of pathogenic bacteria which it first engulfs in its protoplasm and then destroys. This phagocytic property is dependent on the presence in the blood plasma of certain substances which by their action on bacteria make them attractive food for the phagocytes. In evidence that the substances reside in the plasma it may be mentioned that if the latter is heated to 60° C. the opsonic property is lost. The word opsonin is applied

to these substances because of the meaning of its Greek root *ὀψωρεω*, I prepare the feast. The effect of the opsonin is distinctly upon the bacterium and not on the leukocyte. The blood may contain numerous opsonins, one for each kind of bacterium.

The opsonic index is a term used to indicate the relative power of leukocytes to engulf and consume the microbes of a disease. It is low when the leukocytes possess an abnormally feeble capacity for such destruction and high when this power is high. To obtain the index, mix equal parts of washed white corpuscles, serum from the blood of a normal person and an emulsion of a given pathogenic organism, as, for example, the staphylococcus pyogenes, and incubate for 15 minutes at body temperature. Count the bacteria in a suitable number of leukocytes and obtain from these the average number in each. A second study is then made in which the blood plasma used is taken from the patient afflicted by the disease caused by the bacterium in question. If the average number in the first study with normal serum was 10 and that in the second study 5, the opsonic index of the blood of the infected person is as 5 to 10 or one-half.

The object of the treatment is to raise the opsonic index and increase the phagocytic power of the leukocyte. After each injection the opsonic index is raised for a longer or shorter time which Wright calls the positive phase. To each successive one of these there follows a short negative phase and when this is determined a new injection of bacterial bodies is required.

With the rise or positive phase the patient should improve and ultimately recover. Such cures have been claimed in the case of acne, furunculosis and abscesses, by staphylococcic vaccine; of malignant endocarditis by streptococcus vaccine; of tuberculous disease by tuberculin; and of gonorrhea by the gonococcus. The value of the treatment is as yet undetermined.

## SECTION II.

### DISEASES OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

#### DISEASES OF THE MOUTH.

##### THE COATED TONGUE.

The *natural color* of the tongue at its anterior two-thirds is a pale red, on which the *fungiform papillæ* stand out as brighter red points. The epithelium covering the *filiform papillæ*, which are much more numerous and uniformly spread over the dorsal surface of the tongue, is thicker, and they are therefore less distinctly seen. As the base is approached, a grayish color is assumed on account of the greater thickness of the epithelium. At the base are seen the *circumvallate papillæ*, arranged in two rows of red circles. In the *furred* tongue the epithelium is abundant, though it is doubtful whether it is present in increased quantity or is simply raised by hyperemic swelling of the papillæ. The "fur" is also contributed to by various forms of fungi. Too much stress should not be laid on the coated tongue. Some persons have a coated tongue and are perfectly healthy, while others have fair-looking tongues and are ailing seriously with those derangements which are commonly attended with coated tongue, especially gastrointestinal disturbances. Food such as milk, licorice and tobacco also contribute to the coating of the tongue.

The *dry*, brown color of the tongue in low fevers is due to a drying of the exfoliating epithelium, admixed sometimes with mucus or saliva. The tongue may also be coated with dried food and sometimes with dried blood, due to capillary hemorrhage, which imparts to it a black color—the *black tongue* of certain malignant fevers. It is sometimes *pale* and *anemic* in persons whose blood is poor and deficient in red blood-disks. In other cases it is enlarged and flabby, while its edges are easily indented and marked by the teeth. A *bright red* or even a raw appearance of the tongue is met with in certain fevers, particularly in the early stages, when it may also be dry and glazed. It may be coated at the beginning, but later the epithelium desquamates freely and the whole surface may be red; or the fungiform papillæ may be hyperemic, swollen, and unusually distinct, constituting the "strawberry" tongue so characteristic of scarlet fever. The raw-beef appearance of the tongue is often seen toward the close of exhausting diseases, like tubercular consumption.

##### DERANGEMENTS OF DENTITION.

The most serious accident of dentition is what is known as the reflex convulsion, which will be considered among nervous affections. Other derangements of gastrointestinal nature will be discussed under diarrhea of

infants. These are not always reflex. They may be excited by toxic qualities of the saliva, which is not only increased, but altered as well. Other abnormalities including anomalies in the order of eruption occur, and certain markings on the teeth, ascribed to stomatitis are met.

The order of natural eruption of the *milk teeth* is well shown in the accompanying diagram. The first to appear are the lower central incisors (1, 1), at the age of from four to seven months, then a few weeks later the upper central incisors (2, 2), and next the upper lateral incisors (2a, 2a). Not until the beginning of the second year come the lower lateral incisors (3, 3), and almost simultaneously the four anterior molars (4, 4, 4, 4). In the second half of the second year come the four canines (5, 5, 5, 5), including the two "eye," two "stomach" teeth; and finally the four posterior

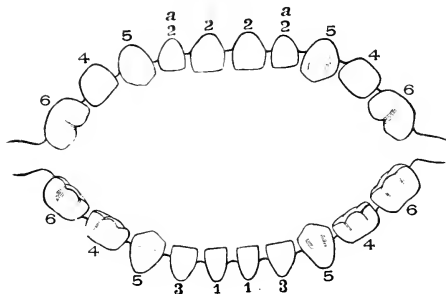


FIG. 27.—Diagram Showing Eruption of Milk Teeth.

- 1, 1. Between the fourth and seventh month, followed by a pause of three to nine weeks. 2, 2.  
 2 a 2 a. Between the eighth and tenth months; pause of six to twelve weeks. 3, 3, 4, 4.  
 4, 4. Between the twelfth and fifteenth months; pause until eighteenth month. 5, 5, 5, 5.  
 Between the eighteenth and twenty-fourth months; pause of two to three months. 6, 6, 6, 6.  
 Between the twentieth and thirtieth months—(from Louis Starr, slightly modified).

molars (6, 6, 6, 6); so that by the end of the second or beginning of the third year the first dentition is completed. The milk teeth begin to be replaced by the *permanent* set in the *fifth* or *sixth* year. Before any of the milk teeth are shed the first grinders of the second set are fully developed. Hence they are called the six-year molars. About 12 years are consumed in the cutting of the remaining teeth, but the variations of the date of appearance of each tooth are so great that it is not worth while to attempt to name the dates.

In some children (usually the rachitic, the feeble, and badly nourished) the appearance of the milk teeth is greatly delayed—the lower incisors do not appear until the 11th or 12th month; but the completion of dentition is not much delayed thereby, though under these circumstances dentition is sometimes not completed until the end of the third year. In others they appear earlier—in the third or fourth month—and occasionally children are born with them. It has always seemed to me that the first appearance of the teeth is more apt to be delayed in blondes and anticipated in brunettes.

The diet of children during dentition should be very carefully watched, as the whole gastrointestinal tract is sensitive and irritable and readily

thrown into inflammation. The mouth is tender, the saliva flows freely, and the child is disposed to bite on anything and to thrust its little fists into its mouth. The term *tooth rash* is applied to certain eczematous eruptions that sometimes appear during teething. Their relation to teething is not certainly established.

Very rarely a purulent conjunctivitis makes its appearance during the eruption of the upper canines or "eye teeth," which is ascribed to dentition and explained by contiguous extension of inflammation through the antrum of Highmore and the lachrymo-nasal duct.

Certain markings are often found on the teeth as a consequence of stomatitis. They include pittings and linear depressions, the result of defects in the development of the enamel. Extreme degrees produce a



FIG. 28.—Thin-edged and Broken Teeth, not Syphilitic, from a Woman, aged Twenty.

The notches in the upper teeth differ markedly from those shown in Fig. 29. In these they result not so much from the softness and original malformation of the teeth as from their preternatural thinness and brittleness. Near the edges of the lower set a horizontal line of notches is seen to extend—(after Hutchinson).

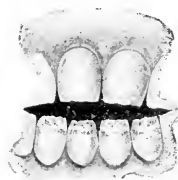


FIG. 29.—The Permanent Front Teeth of a Boy, aged Fifteen, who had Taken Much Mercury in Infancy.

The teeth are all of yellow color, somewhat pitted in their surfaces, and very thickly coated with tartar. Near the edges of the lower set a horizontal line extends similar to that in Fig. 28—(after Hutchinson).

honeycombed appearance. These, as well as the syphilitic teeth of children, have been studied by Jonathan Hutchinson, and are not to be confounded with the latter. (Figs. 28 and 29.) The "honeycombed" changes are most conspicuous in the permanent teeth, of which the first molars, according to Hutchinson, are the test teeth, though he says the incisors are almost as constantly pitted, eroded, and discolored, often showing a transverse line which crosses all the teeth at the same level. These transverse furrows are also ascribed by Magitot to infantile convulsions or other severe illness in early life.

## STOMATITIS.

### SIMPLE ACUTE CATARRHAL STOMATITIS.

**Definition and Etiology.**—A simple erythematous inflammation of the mouth, commonly caused by diffuse chemical or mechanical irritants, such as overheated food (very hot drinks), acids, alkalies, stimulating condiments (red pepper, horse-radish, and the like), by excessive smoking and use of alcohol. It occurs in adults and children from the action of such causes, independently of the state of health, but is prolonged when its sub-

jects are unhealthy and ill-nourished. Dentition is also a cause, while stomatitis may accompany also indigestion and the acute fevers.

**Symptoms.**—The mucous membrane is reddened wherever the irritation has reached, but the redness may be greater in certain situations, as on the tongue, gums, lips, and cheeks. There may be at the very beginning dryness, but it is soon followed by increased secretion and slight swelling. There is always discomfort that may amount to pain, which is increased by the introduction of food and its mastication. A corresponding slight febrile movement may be present.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of simple catarrhal stomatitis will be considered in connection with that of the other forms of stomatitis to be described.

#### HERPETIC OR APHTHOUS STOMATITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Vesicular Stomatitis; Aphtha; Canker; Follicular Stomatitis.*

**Description and Symptoms.**—Some confusion attends the use of this term. The term "aphtha" from the Greek means "an eruption." Aphthous stomatitis is sometimes confounded with thrush, but it is not commonly regarded as a parasitic disease, as is thrush, nor as a follicular disease. Others speak of it as herpetic or vesicular. J. Emmett Holt adopts this name because he agrees with Forcheimer<sup>1</sup> in regarding it as of nervous (neuritic) origin.

The little grayish-white spots which characterize it consist primarily of an exudate of fibrin and wandered-out leukocytes, which pervades the superficial layer of the mucous membrane and is at first covered by epithelium. Hence, an attempt to remove the spots by forceps is futile and followed by bleeding. They are small, round, usually not more than a few millimeters in diameter, and surrounded by a red areola of hyperemia, occurring at times in successive crops. They are most common on the cheeks and lips, especially in the gingival groove at the base of the latter. They also occur on the tip and edges of the tongue, more rarely on the dorsum. The epithelium dies and desquamates, leaving a superficial ulcer, which under favorable circumstances heals up rapidly. Under more unfavorable conditions the ulcer grows deeper and becomes more painful, constituting one of the forms of ulcerative stomatitis. Young children are especially subject to it, but it is common also in adults, especially at times of temporary physical depression, as in women during menstruation, pregnancy, and lactation.

The aphthæ are commonly associated with a variable amount of simple stomatitis, with increased secretion of saliva, a slight "heaviness" of the breath, but without fetor. There is commonly a stinging sensation, especially when brought in contact with food, and even when the tongue and lips are moved in speaking. There is often some constitutional disturbance, including fever. Relapses may occur.

A similar condition is *Riga's disease*, in which a pearly-colored membrane with induration forms on the frenum of the tongue. It occurs in

<sup>1</sup>"Archives of Pediatrics, vol. ix," p. 330.



southern Italy in unhealthy and cachectic children about the time of eruption of the *temporary* teeth, and may be epidemic.

#### THRUSH—MYCOTIC STOMATITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Parasitic Stomatitis; Soor; Miguet.*

**Definition.**—Thrush is characterized by grayish-white deposits in the buccal and pharyngeal mucous membranes, due to the development and interpenetration of the epithelium by a fungus variously known as *oidium albicans* or *saccharomyces albicans*. It is a variety of yeast fungus made up of branching filaments, at the ends of which oval cells develop. It does not grow on the normal mucous membrane. It forms minute white and yellowish spots scattered copiously over the palate, tongue, and cheeks, uniting at times to form larger areas. It may extend into the esophagus and even larynx. In severe cases the entire buccal mucous membrane may be covered. Stenoses of the esophagus have resulted from its accumulation. The little areas are commonly surrounded by an inflammatory areola, and may be scraped off, though with some difficulty, leaving the mucous membrane sometimes intact and sometimes slightly excoriated and bleeding.

Thrush is chiefly a disease of nursing children, and is favored by feeble and dyscrasic states and by the want of cleanliness, especially in the care of nursing-bottles and nipples when children are brought up on the bottle. It may be associated with any of the diseases of children or may occur independent of them. It also occurs in adults after long illness or in dyscrasic diseases like diabetes mellitus and tubercular consumption. Thrush is often unattended by other symptoms, though the mouth may be sensitive and nursing painful. There should be no difficulty in diagnosis. In thrush the spots are smaller than in aphthous stomatitis, and the microscope at once removes all doubt. The mouth is dry as contrasted with the moist mouth of aphthous sore mouth, where there is free salivation. The secretions are commonly acid.

Koplik's sign in measles is not likely to be mistaken for thrush. It is described on p. 117.

*Other Varieties of Stomatitis Due to Fungi.*—The mouth is a favorite seat for the development of fungi, because of the warmth, moisture, and organic matters constantly present. Though ordinarily harmless, in certain states of the system they may play an important rôle in producing ulcerative stomatitis, as already suggested. Especially worthy of mention are the diplococcus of Fränkel and the pneumonia bacillus of Friedländer; also the delicate, thread-like *leptothrix buccalis*, thought to exert a significant part in the production of caries.

#### ULCERATIVE STOMATITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Stomacace; Fetid Stomatitis; Putrid Sore Mouth.*

**Definition.**—This is a much more serious disease of the mucous membrane of the mouth, attended with necrosis and resulting ulceration.

**Etiology.**—Any one of the above-named diseases may become ulcerative. It may begin as an aphthous stomatitis, taking on the more serious form in the ill fed and badly cared for, or in those who are indifferent in the care of their mouths. It may begin as thrush. In other cases, an abrasion or laceration by the tooth-brush or a sharp carious tooth, may be the initial lesion. An ulcer may begin, too, in a herpetic vesicle, which, on rupturing, leaves a raw surface that may remain isolated or unite with others. It is a frequent attendant of mercurialization—*mercurial stomatitis*. The ulcer sometimes starts in the mucous follicles of the mouth. In all these cases the stomatitis is probably the result of infection by some organism; it may be the omnipresent streptococcus, staphylococcus or diplococcus, to which the sound mucous membrane in health is invulnerable, but which finds a nidus in the abrasions and conditions referred to.

**Symptoms.**—The ulcers may occur in any of the situations already named, the lips, cheeks, and, more rarely, the tongue. They vary in size, but are usually of an ashen-gray color, with red areolæ, and often exhibit a tendency to bleed.

Additional symptoms are profuse *secretion*, exquisite *pain* and *tenderness* in the ulcers and vicinity, a *fetid odor* of the breath, which sometimes pervades the apartment. The *gums* become spongy and, in extreme cases, the *teeth* are loosened. There are proportionate constitutional disturbances, *fever*, and often *swelling* of the glands at the angle of the jaw.

With reference to *mercurial stomatitis*, or mercurial ptyalism, previously mentioned, this condition is due to mercury administered as a medicine or absorbed in the course of occupations in which mercury is handled. Acquired in the former way, ptyalism, at the present day, is usually accidental rather than designed, in persons exhibiting a peculiar susceptibility. In such persons even fractional doses frequently repeated sometimes produce salivation in a day or two. The symptom first observed is usually *fetor of the breath*, unless the patient be closely watched during the administration of the drug, when tenderness may be ascertained on closing the jaws with some force. Examination will then discover a swelling of the gums about the teeth. Or a metallic taste may make its appearance as the first symptom. To these symptoms *salivation* is soon added, and becomes more or less profuse according to the severity of the poisoning. In severe cases, the entire mucous membrane of the mouth becomes swollen, as does also the tongue. In such cases, also, ulceration and loosening of the teeth take place. This form of stomatitis was not infrequent in the older treatment of syphilis, which used to fill a hospital ward with a sickening fetor at once recognizable. Actual loss of teeth was, perhaps, less common than is supposed even in those days, yet necrosis of the jaw has, in rare instances, resulted.

*Syphilitic* stomatitis is also ulcerative, and the ulcers exhibit the same gray color. But the syphilitic ulcers are found in the throat as well as on the gums and cheeks and in the angles of the mouth. They are less disposed to bleed than those of nonspecific ulcerative stomatitis and are really less angry-looking, but penetrate to greater depth.

*Parrot's ulceration* is a form of ulceration occurring in *new-born children*, consisting of small, symmetrically placed ulcers on the hard palate on

both sides of the median line. *Bednar's aphthæ*, two symmetrically placed ulcers, also occurring on the hard palate on either side of the mesial line near the velum, are similar, though not regarded as identical. This variety is thought to be traumatic in origin, at least in most cases, either the result of pressure of an artificial nipple against the hard palate, or of undue pressure in washing the mouth. Both are described as usually harmless, but in poorly cared for children may be converted into extensive and deep ulcers. Especially is this the case in the form described by Parrot, which may invade the adjacent bone.

**Diagnosis.**—*Scurvy*, though a general disease, happily rare of late, is characterized by local symptoms about the mouth, which include ulceration. There are swelling and bleeding of the gums, which rise up around the teeth. The latter become loosened and ulceration may extend even to the lips and cheeks. The tongue and fauces are not invaded by ulcers, but are subject to ecchymoses. Salivation and fetor of the breath are also symptoms, though less decided than in severe ulcerative stomatitis. On the other hand, in extreme cases deep-seated gangrenous processes are met. Along with these are, however, the general symptoms of scurvy, by which it is commonly easily recognized.

**Treatment of Different Forms of Stomatitis.**—*Prophylaxis* is exceedingly important in averting these various mouth affections. In the case of infants the mouth should be washed out with antiseptics after each nursing. Nothing is better than a saturated solution of chlorate of potash, boric acid, or sulphate of sodium, 15 grains to the ounce (1 gm. to 30 c.c.) of water. So, too, the adult should cleanse the teeth after each meal. Listerin, diluted with twice as much water, is an elegant and efficient wash. Equal parts of phenol-sodique and water are also efficient. Compounds similar to listerin and much cheaper may be made up. The following is one known as *spiritus thymol comp.* in the dispensary of the University of Pennsylvania:

R Acid. benzoic.,	gr. 64
Pulv. sodii borat.,	gr. 64
Acid. boric.,	gr. 128
Thymol,	gr. 20
Eucalyptol,	m 5
Ol. gaultheriæ,	m 5
Ol. menthæ pip.,	m 3
Ol. thymi,	m 1
Spt. vini rect.,	℥ iij
Aquæ destillat.,	q. s. ad ℥ xvj
Mix and filter, and color with fluid extract of hydrastis.	

Any of these substances may be used on the tooth-brush as a simple mouth-wash. The tincture of myrrh, a teaspoonful to 4 ounces of water, should not be forgotten, and, though less agreeable, carbolic acid may be used in the same proportion. Permanganate of potassium in the shape of Condy's fluid, a teaspoonful to a tumbler of water, is an excellent wash.

If stomatitis is established, cleanliness is no less important and may be secured by the same antiseptic measures. In addition, the mouths of children may be treated with honey and borax—the *mel boracis* of the pharmacopœia—to which alum may be added. It is questionable whether honey is a suitable vehicle for remedies in the treatment of thrush, since if the *saccharomyces* is a sugar-fermenting fungus it may decompose the

sugar of honey with irritating products. Alum itself is an admirable astringent, too much overlooked of late. A moderately strong solution may be made, 30 grains (2 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.), or the powdered alum itself may be applied to the aphthous sore mouth.

For the painful ulcers of adults there is really nothing so efficient as touching with a pointed piece of nitrate of silver. A single application will often suffice, but when healing does not follow, it may be made daily. A very good application also is a solution of equal parts of tincture of the chlorid of iron and glycerin, applied to the ulcers with a brush. Chlorate of potassium in saturated solution is also a very good mouth-wash, to 8 ounces (240 c.c.) of which  $1/2$  a fluidram to 1 dram (2 c.c. to 4 c.c.) of tincture of the chlorid of iron may be added.

General treatment should not be overlooked. Many persons who have stomatitis are much run down, and require iron, quinin, and strychnin, with nutritious food, to build them up. Attention should also be paid to the bowels.

The management of mercurial stomatitis is in no way different from that of other forms. Astringents and disinfectants are especially indicated. It goes without saying that the administration of the drug itself must cease.

#### CANCERUM ORIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Gangrenous Stomatitis; Water Cancer; Noma.*

**Definition.**—A rare disease, characterized by hard infiltration of the cheek near the angle of the mouth, succeeded by rapid gangrene proceeding outward and inward from the central focus until the cheek is perforated, and the gangrenous mass separates. It may start in the gums and produce necrosis of the jaws. It is confined to one side of the face.

**Etiology.**—A parasitic origin seems likely, but has not been proven. It occurs in girls and boys from two to five years old, affecting more of the former than of the latter. Rarely it affects adults. It is usually confined to those badly fed and surrounded by unsanitary conditions, especially when convalescent from infectious fevers, one-half of all cases having arisen during convalescence from measles, scarlet and typhoid fevers. It may, however, be primary. Damp regions seem to favor it.

**Symptoms.**—Its approach is insidious, and it is generally well advanced when discovered. In its extreme severity it may involve the bones of both jaws, the eyelids, and ears; but in its mildest form its results are limited to perforation of the cheek. The dead tissue comes away in dark, offensive shreds.

The constitutional disturbance corresponds to the degree of local involvement, there being high fever, reaching often  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  C.), with frequent pulse and rapid exhaustion. The adjacent lymphatics are swollen. Inhalation-pneumonia of corresponding virulence often succeeds, while intense irritation of the stomach and bowels follows the swallowing of the ichorous discharge.

**Diagnosis.**—Noma has rarely to be discriminated from anything else. *Malignant pustule* is less local in its invasion, furnishes the history of con-

tagion, is even more severe in its constitutional effects, and exhibits the appropriate bacillus. Very bad cases of *ulcerative stomatitis*, sometimes suggest *cancrum oris*, but the devastation is not so rapid, nor is there such a tendency to invasion of the external integument.

**Prognosis.**—This is almost invariably fatal at the end of three or four days, only the promptest and most energetic treatment occasionally saving life.

**Treatment.**—This consists in the prompt use of the glowing cautery. Paquelin's being sufficient. In its absence cauterization with strong nitric acid may be substituted. Local antiseptic treatment should be carried out in the most thorough manner, syringing with antiseptics being most efficient, while stimulating and nourishing food should be administered.

#### GLOSSITIS.

*Parenchymatous glossitis*, or inflammation of the substance of the tongue, is a rare disease, but it occurs as the result of violent injury to the organ, as by accidental biting or poisonous stings. Apparently idiopathic inflammations are probably the result of concealed causes of the kind described.

**Symptoms.**—The tongue is enormously *swollen* and *painful*, and sometimes extruded from the mouth. There is great difficulty in speech, mastication, and deglutition, and in extreme degrees these are scarcely possible. The discomfort is almost indescribable, and there may even be *obstruction to breathing*. If exposed, the tongue becomes dry and fissured. There may be suppuration. There is *fever* corresponding to the amount of local disturbance.

**Treatment.**—This consists in the constant application of ice, of frequent antiseptic cleansing of the mouth, and sometimes of scarification. Evidence of the presence of pus must be followed by the prompt use of the lancet.

*Glossitis desiccans* is a more chronic affection of the tongue, characterized by deep fissures and indentations, giving it an uneven, ragged appearance. Associated therewith are excoriations and occasionally superficial ulcers. Severe pain is caused by contact of acids and even the usual food. Its etiology is not known, but it is sometimes associated with gastrointestinal derangements.

**Treatment.**—This should be directed to the cause, if it can be discovered. Washes of chlorate of potash should be employed, and if there are ulcers, they should be touched with solid silver nitrate.

#### EPITHELIAL DESQUAMATION.

SYNONYMS.—*Geographical Tongue; Eczema of the Tongue.*

**Definition and Symptoms.**—A localized superficial hyperplasia and desquamation of the epithelium of the tongue, sometimes associated with similar spots in the cheeks and lips. The central parts tend to heal, while the periphery spreads, producing circinate patches. The patches fuse and extensive areas are formed, bounded with sinuous outlines. The appear-

ance has been compared to that of a map—*lingua geographica*. The condition is chronic, sometimes lasts years, but does not usually cause inconvenience save by the itching and burning it occasions and the apprehension of more serious disease. It is occasionally mistaken for syphilitic disease.

**Treatment.**—It is best treated by solutions of nitrate of silver, which relieves the itching. Weak solutions of iodine may be used, applied with a brush.

#### LEUKOPLAKIA BUCCALIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Ichthyosis lingualis*; *Buccal Psoriasis*; *Keratosis mucosæoris*; *Smoker's Patches*.

**Definition and Symptoms.**—A condition in which there are intense white spots on the mucous membrane of the mouth and tongue, consisting of thickened epidermis. They are also sometimes mistaken for syphilitic plaques. The spots on the sides of the tongue are often notched, giving them a scar-like appearance. Those on the inner surface of the cheek are simply flat, tabular swellings. They disappear, to be replaced by others; they rarely give rise to inconvenience. Sometimes those on the sides of the tongue become ulcerated, when they are painful if brought into contact with irritants. They have been ascribed to smoking, and, though acknowledged to be of nonsyphilitic nature, it is said they occur in those who have had syphilis. They occur in adults of both sexes. They sometimes become papillomatous, and are said to have been the starting-point of true epithelioma, as often as once in every three cases.

**Treatment.**—They are harmless and require no treatment unless ulcerated, when the usual stimulating measures for healing ulcers may be applied. Hot and irritating substances should be kept from the mouth, and smoking interdicted. Should the spots develop into papillomatous or epitheliomatous structures, they should be operated on by the surgeon.

#### MUCOUS PATCHES.

The true mucous patches or flat condylomata of syphilis are opaque, white, flat, tabular swellings on the lips, tonsils, tongue, and arches of the palate, and especially at the border-line between skin and mucous membrane. They consist of an irregular imbricated thickening of the superficial layers of the skin; the cells are swollen and the papillæ of the mucous corium hypertrophied.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of the mucous patches of syphilis is that of syphilis constitutionally, and locally by applications of nitrate of silver.

### DISEASES OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS.

#### FUNCTIONAL DERANGEMENTS.

Ptyalism, or *excessive secretion* of saliva, is a symptom of mercurial poisoning, also of poisoning by gold, copper, and iodine. Some persons

are very susceptible to iodine, so that a few grains of iodide of potassium will cause intense salivation, with pain in the salivary glands. Vegetable substances producing the same effect are jaborandi, muscarin, tobacco. Indeed, almost anything which admits of constant chewing without solution or destruction produces salivation. This is the mechanism of the various agents used in the disgusting practice of chewing gum.

Xerostomia, or *dry mouth*, is the opposite condition of arrest of salivary and buccal secretion, not due to fever—a rare condition, first described by Jonathan Hutchinson. As a consequence the tongue and mucous membrane are red, dry, and shining. It is more common in women, in whom it follows intense emotion, such as fright, or is associated with hysteria and hypochondriasis. It is probably a neurosis, the result of some cause operating on the center which controls the secretion of saliva and other buccal glands.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of ptyalism and xerostomia is that of the conditions producing them.

## INFLAMMATION OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS.

ACUTE PAROTITIS, OR PAROTID BUBO.—Apart from mumps, or specific parotitis, considered under infectious diseases, in which any or all of the salivary glands may be involved, the *parotid* is subject to inflammation from the following causes:

1. In the course of infectious diseases, especially typhoid fever, but also scarlet fever, typhus fever, pneumonia, pyemia, and secondary syphilis.
2. In connection with diseases or injury of organs in the abdomen or pelvis, including the alimentary canal, urinary tract, abdominal wall, peritoneum, pelvic cellular tissue, or genital organs—a very interesting group of cases, which have been especially studied by Stephen Paget. Sometimes simple transient irritation, such as a blow on the testis or the introduction of a pessary, may produce it.
3. In association with facial neuritis. A fatal case, apparently of such origin, has been reported by Gowers.

In (1) and (2) septic infection is doubtless the cause of the inflammation, which is often intense, going on to suppuration in more than one-half of the cases. Its possible origin through the duct of Steno was considered in treating typhoid fever. In (3) there is probably some vasomotor disturbance which is responsible.

**Treatment.**—This should consist, at first, in attempts to allay the inflammation by leeches and the application of cold, especially ice. Failing in this, fomentations should be applied, while the lancet should be used at the first indication of suppuration.

CHRONIC PAROTITIS sometimes succeeds on acute inflammation, as that of mumps; also on mercurialization or lead poisoning, syphilis, and Bright's disease. Sometimes no cause is discoverable. It may be painful or tender or painless. It may be treated by ointments reputed to promote absorption—ointments of iodine and mercury.

## LUDWIG'S ANGINA.

SYNONYMS.—*Angina Ludovici; Cellulitis of the Neck; Cynanche Gangrænosa.*

**Definition and Symptoms.**—An infectious inflammation, beginning in the submaxillary gland as a secondary inflammation in the specific fevers, including, especially, typhoid, diphtheria, and scarlet fever, but it may also be primary. It may succeed on a carious tooth. It is probably a streptococcus infection. It spreads rapidly over the floor of the mouth and anterior surface of the throat, sometimes invading the glottis by edema, and sometimes terminating in sloughing of the soft parts—*cynanche gangrænosa*. Or it may go on to abscess, pointing externally or internally. More rarely, resolution takes place.

Further symptoms are *swelling* and extreme *pain*, first in the neighborhood of the submaxillary gland, increased by chewing, swallowing, and talking. The swelling may produce compression of the larynx, with resulting dyspnea, which is suffocative if the glottis becomes involved. Constitutional infection may take place, with its grave array of symptoms and fatal termination. There may be remissions and exacerbations.

**Treatment.**—This should consist in energetic measures calculated to combat the inflammation, such as the use of ice and leeching, but very early surgical interference is likely to be called for.

## VINCENT'S ANGINA.

**Definition.**—A form of sore throat described by Professor Vincent, of Paris, as due to spirilla and fusiform bacilli. It occurs in children eight to ten years old, or at about the time of the second dentition, and in adults 18 to 20 years, or about the time when the wisdom-teeth are appearing. It is met in all races and climates and, though more common in alcoholics and tobacco users, is found also in those who are not cleanly in the care of their mouths. Bad hygiene favors it and it is inoculable. The bacillus is bobbin- or cigar-shaped and associated almost always with long wiry motile spirilla. The bacilli may reach 10 to 12 microns in length and a micron in width. They are motile, do not stain by Gram's method, but may be colored by ordinary stains, such as thionin or Ziehl's solution. The spirilla do not stain as well.

Clinically, the disease occurs in two forms: One, quite rare (two per cent.) resembles closely diphtheria, and the exudate contains bacilli without spirilla, though it may be associated with other organisms, as staphylococci and streptococci. The false membrane may be one to two centimeters in thickness, and be made up of an almost pure culture of the organisms described. There is a slight fever, the submaxillary glands are enlarged and there is pharyngeal pain. The illness lasts from four to six days.

In the second form (98 per cent. of cases) there is a "membranous ulceration" containing both organisms described. The onset is characterized by malaise, lassitude, pain in the limbs, headache and fever to 102.2 F.



(39° C.). Most frequently one tonsil only is involved. The breath is fetid and there may be salivation. There may be an eruption like that of scarlet fever.

The pure form is characterized by the absence of the Klebs-Löffler bacillus of diphtheria, but the two conditions may coexist. It is also distinct from syphilitic stomatitis, though it may be engrafted on it. It is said to be easily cured by painting with iodine twice a day, but is not amenable to antitoxin.

*Mikulicz's Disease.*—A chronic enlargement of the salivary, lacrymal and buccal glands without discoverable cause. It was first described in 1892 by Mikulicz. It may last many years, but has been known to disappear at least in part.

## DISEASES OF THE TONSILS AND PHARYNX.

### QUINSY.

SYNONYMS.—*Acute Parenchymatous Tonsillitis; Phlegmonous Tonsillitis; Tonsillar Abscess; Cynanche Tonsillaris.*

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the substance of the tonsil.

**Etiology.**—Quinsy is a disease of later youth and adults, being rarely found in children under ten years of age, and not often in adults over 40. Some persons are much disposed to tonsillitis, scarcely a season passing for them without an attack, and sometimes more than one attack. In such, almost every cold terminates in acute tonsillitis. Others, after a single attack, never have another, and others still are entirely exempt. Tonsillitis is probably always the result of infection. Exposure to wet and cold certainly often precedes it. Persons predisposed to tonsillitis are often the subject of chronically enlarged tonsils. Overdistention of the follicles with inspissated secretion may also be a cause of inflammation and suppuration.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The tonsil, more frequently on one side, sometimes on both, or on two sides in succession, becomes rapidly enlarged, red, and painful. It is at first hard and resisting and very tender to the touch, but, if suppuration takes place, it gradually softens until rupture happens or the abscess is opened by the knife. The lymphoid parenchyma of the gland becomes more and more distended with leukocytes until the entire gland, or a large part of it, is converted into a *pus* sac. When both tonsils are involved, the throat is often almost closed by the swelling.

**Symptoms.**—The superadded symptoms are *pain* and *difficulty of deglutition*, the latter causing increased pain, often agonizing. The jaws are stiff and the mouth cannot be opened above half an inch without extreme suffering. The difficulty in opening the mouth is increased by the swelling of the external glands of the neck. The pain is not confined to the interior, but extends to the neighborhood of the angle of the jaw, the front of the ear, and the floor of the mouth. The voice is greatly altered, having the characteristic nasal drawl, and the diagnosis can sometimes be made from the altered speech alone. There is increased salivation, and the saliva

dribbles from the mouth because of the pain in swallowing it, while it also often becomes fetid. Respiration may be seriously interfered with.

There is high *fever*, the temperature reaching  $104^{\circ}$  and  $105^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  to  $40.5^{\circ}$  C.), while the *pulse* is full, bounding, and frequent, 110 to 130 a minute. The *face* is *anxious* and tells the tale of suffering. From two to six days are occupied in the completion of the process, at the end of which time the abscess begins to point, usually toward the interior of the mouth, when relief is obtained by spontaneous rupture. But more fortunate is the patient who is relieved early by the lancet. Sometimes the abscess points toward the pharynx. The importance of relief at the earliest possible date is emphasized by the fact that death by suffocation has resulted from the discharge of a quinsy passing into the larynx.

**Prognosis.**—Apart from the rare accident just referred to, the prognosis is favorable, though it must be mentioned also that death from suffocation has occurred where the obstruction by double-sided quinsy was so great as to prevent respiration.

**Treatment.**—The physician who suggests a successful plan for “backing” of a quinsy will well deserve the thanks of untold sufferers. As yet such measure remains hidden. Free scarification is sometimes useful in shortening an attack, but it is painful, unreliable, and sometimes difficult to do thoroughly. If deferred until about the third day, it will often cooperate with the advancing suppuration and favor an early rupture. Other applications to the tonsils are of a doubtful efficacy, though some relief from pain may be secured by painting the surface with a ten per cent. solution of cocain. Painting with a 40 grain (2.6 gm.) solution of nitrate of silver, after thorough cleansing with a cotton swab, is recommended. Parenchymatous injections of carbolic acid are also advised by Kramer,<sup>1</sup> with a view to prevent abscess formation. The part is made completely anesthetic by cocain, a sterilized needle attached to a hypodermic syringe gently introduced into the gland, and through this are injected from 7 to 15 minims (0.5 to 1 c.c.) of a two to three per cent. solution of carbolic acid. This may be repeated once or twice a day.

Cold, so soothing in other forms of sore throat, often occasions more discomfort than relief. Then poultices and fomentations to the exterior of the throat are apt to be more soothing. And since little can be done to prevent suppuration, these measures are indicated to hasten it. The tonsil should be frequently felt with the finger, and as soon as there is evidence of suppuration, the lancet should be used. A curved bistoury, guarded with adhesive plaster almost to the end, is the best. The incision should be made from above downward, parallel to the anterior half-arch. If danger of suffocation is imminent, the tonsil must be shaved off, while extreme cases may even demand tracheotomy.

Raymond B. Houston, of Savannah, Missouri, claims that the benzoate of sodium is a specific given in simple syrup, 10 grains (0.66 gm.) every two hours for an adult. He sent me a report of 25 cases with which I was favorably impressed, but a trial in one case in my hands has proved a total failure, the knife having to be used to evacuate the abscess after the remedy had been used eight days.

<sup>1</sup> “Anales del Circulo Medico Argentino,” October 15, 1897.

## FOLLICULAR TONSILLITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Angina follicularis; Lacunar Tonsillitis.*

**Definition and Symptoms.**—A form of catarrhal inflammation of one or both tonsils, associated with whitish-yellow spots corresponding in situation with the lacunæ or follicles of the gland. The inflammation may rarely extend to the soft palate, but the white or yellow spots are the most conspicuous feature. In a day or two they drop out or may be pressed out, when they are found composed of epithelial cells, pus-corpuscles, bacteria, and débris, to which are sometimes added cholesterin plates and fat-crystals. If let alone, they may disappear rather suddenly, so that if seen one day they may be gone the next, having evidently disintegrated and dropped out spontaneously. More rarely the little follicle is converted into a small abscess.

The disease occurs in children and young adults, and is one of the affections sometimes mistaken for diphtheria, and is also called diphtheritic sore throat. It is, however, something very different. It is a much less serious disease, of shorter duration, and patients never die of it. It is, however, probably infectious in origin, caused by a germ other than the diphtheritic, perhaps the streptococcus or staphylococcus. There is often very decided fever.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of this form of tonsillitis is definite and easily carried out. In the first place, cold should be applied to the neck by cloths wrung out in cold water or by ice, which is conveniently applied in little muslin bags made to fit under the angle of the jaw and held in place by a bandage. Then iron and chlorate of potassium are, without doubt, the remedies *par excellence*, and to these may be added the bichlorid of mercury, if diphtheria is not certainly eliminated from the diagnosis. The antiseptic measures recommended for the throat in diphtheria are not necessary. The disease is an acute one and subsides rapidly without any of these applications. There is, however, a very decided drain on the strength of the patients thus affected, however short the duration of the illness. Hence, quinin and iron should be given and continued during convalescence.

## CHRONIC TONSILLITIS AND HYPERTROPHY OF THE ADENOID TISSUE OF THE PHARYNX.

SYNONYMS.—*Chronic Enlargement of the Tonsils; Chronic Nasopharyngeal Obstruction; Mouth Breathing; Aprosexia.*

**Definition.**—A chronic inflammatory enlargement of the tonsils or of the adenoid tissue of the pharynx, of the lingual tonsil, or of two or more of these structures.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent cause is repeated attacks of acute tonsillitis and of inflammatory processes associated with hyperemia of the tonsils and vicinity, including scarlet fever and diphtheria, while chronic illness, especially skin affections, bad hygienic surroundings, and insuffi-

cient and unsuitable food favor it. It is, therefore, naturally more common in children, in whom it is also sometimes congenital, but it is found usually at the ages of five to fifteen years, and rather more frequently in boys. Adenoid overgrowths of the pharynx and lingual tonsil are due to the same causes.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The enlargement of the tonsils is a true lymphoid overgrowth, usually symmetrical. The occasional presence of fibrous stroma produces a harder and smoother tissue. The lumen of the throat is variously encroached upon, sometimes almost closed. The pharyngeal adenoid overgrowths vary in extent from a slight increase in natural unevenness to the formation of actual sessile and pedunculated tumors. The same is true of the tonsillar structures at the base of the tongue, which may encroach upon the glottis.

**Symptoms.**—Simple chronic enlargement of the tonsils may give rise to no symptoms except when they are the seat of further enlargement due to acute inflammation. Then *obstructed breathing* is immediate, while it is also a permanent symptom in the more advanced forms. It is proportionally contributed to by overgrowth in any of the situations named. The result is *mouth breathing*, which is, perhaps, earlier necessitated by pharyngeal than tonsillar overgrowth, while it may be due altogether to the former, the latter being entirely absent. Tonsillar obstruction is, however, more frequent. The effects are usually first apparent at night, when the child is found to be breathing, more or less noisily, with its mouth open and head thrown back. *Disturbed rest* is an inevitable consequence, the patient often waking up with a start, again relapsing into sleep, or continuing permanently aroused because of the dyspnea, which often only gradually passes away.

As the conditions persist a *changed expression of countenance* is gradually acquired. The face becomes apathetic, staring, and vacant, an appearance chiefly produced by the constantly open mouth. To this may succeed actual mental failure and even stupidity, with sullenness and general bad temper. Further changes in expression are occasioned by contraction of the nostrils and projection of the upper jaw and lip. If the condition is still unrelieved, *deformities of the chest* make their appearance, of which the most conspicuous is the well-known *chicken breast*. In it the upper sternum projects, the manubrio-gladiolar articulation being most prominent, while the lower part is depressed, causing a groove at the gladiolo-xiphoid articulation. There is a cup-like depression of the lower costal cartilages and a horizontal circular depression (Harrison's groove) in the thorax corresponding to the attachment of the diaphragm. The ribs are separated from each other anteriorly and closely approximate posteriorly, especially in the lower thorax. Posteriorly the lower angle of the scapula projects. This is the result of the act of breathing, a study of which during sleep will recognize the retraction of the lower part of the thorax during inspiration, caused by the action of the diaphragm.

Another form of chest is the *round or barrel chest*, such as is commonly associated with chronic asthma, due to the same cause. Still another is the *funnel*, or *Trichterbrust* of the Germans, in which there is a deep central depression at the epigastrium and of which the periphery may extend upward as far as the third rib.

Other symptoms are an *altered voice*, nasal in character, in which the letters *m* and *n* are especially badly articulated, the *special senses* of smell, taste, and hearing are deranged, the breath is fetid from decaying secretion, the appetite is impaired, and with it the nutrition of the body. A gradual mental as well as physical deterioration takes place.

Among the symptoms ascribed to this condition are *habit chorea* and *stuttering*. The former will be considered in a later section. There is an almost *constant cough*, which is well termed "throat cough," since it is due to irritation of the respiratory passages by the throat outgrowths and the secretion caused by them. This secretion is generally swallowed by children, but is in part expectorated by adults by the aid of troublesome hawking and coughing, which is stimulated by a sensation as of "something in the throat" or larynx which demands clearing. The absence of discharge from the nose in both children and adults is surprisingly frequent, sometimes misleading the physician as to the true cause.

*Defective hearing* is another symptom due to obstruction of the Eustachian tube by encroachment of the adenoid growths, or by inflammations, or to retraction of the drum. *Impaired taste and smell* are due to involvement of the gustatory papillæ and the terminal distribution of the olfactory nerve. *Extreme fetor* of the breath is sometimes present, due to retention of cheesy masses in the crypts of the tonsils. These are often easily visible, are sometimes expectorated, and can usually be expressed. The odor of these masses when compressed between the fingers is indescribably disagreeable. Sometimes they are found in the tonsils of persons not otherwise affected. The very great susceptibility of the subjects of this disease to "cold" is constantly adding aggravation to the symptoms described.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not usually delayed at the present day, since the more thorough examination of the throat and nose has become common—thanks to the throat and nose specialists. Most important is it to remember that there may be no tonsillar disease, and all the symptoms may be due to advanced adenoid growths of the pharynx. Digital examination affords the most ready and accurate means of diagnosis. Especially thorough must be the examination behind the pillars of the fauces. In children this can only be done with the finger, but in adults the half-arches may be drawn forward, while the laryngeal mirror is availed of.

The "chicken breast" of mouth breathing in childhood is different from the "violin" shaped chest of the rickety child. In the latter there is a *prominence* of the *whole sternum* and a vertical flattening of the sides of the thorax, leaving a large curve behind the costo-chondral articulation and a similar one in front, in addition to the horizontal depression of the lower thorax which is common to both kinds of deformity.

**Prognosis.**—This depends upon the early discovery of the condition, before the secondary effects have established themselves. If the trouble is purely a tonsillar one, it is comparatively easily removed by shaving off the organ. If the overgrowth is pharyngeal, little can be done until children are old enough to submit to the proper treatment. This may be done by the aid of ether as early as the second year. Hypertrophied tonsils begin to atrophy of themselves after puberty, and they have generally disappeared by 30. The face and chest deformity may be outgrown if the cause be removed.

**Treatment.**—Most important are local measures whose purpose is to reduce the overgrowth or to remove it and to prevent recurrence of acute attacks. The patient should be discouraged from hawking and clearing his throat. If the tonsils manifestly encroach on the faucial lumen, they should be shaved off by the guillotine or a bistoury or galvano-cautery loop. The same treatment is demanded by the pharyngeal adenoid growths. They may be curetted and sometimes scraped off by the finger-nail. There is sometimes copious hemorrhage, but it is usually easily controlled. If not requiring this, they should receive on alternate days or every third day applications (1) of powdered alum; (2) solution of iodine of the strength of iodine 8 grains (0.5 gm.), iodide of potassium 24 grains (1.5 gm.), glycerin 1/2 ounce (15 c.c.); (3) of tincture of the chloride of iron and glycerin equal parts; (4) glycerol of tannin; (5) or silver nitrate 1 to 20. The solid stick of the latter may be used if there be evident lacunar disease, but far better is electrolysis, by which the crypt is obliterated and the gland may be gradually destroyed. Spraying the nose with antiseptic solutions twice daily is helpful in maintaining cleanliness and purity of breath. Dobell's solution may be thus used; also dilute listerin or the *spiritus thymol comp.* given on page 329. Tablets containing various proportions of the ingredients therein named are made for solution in the little cup of the spraying apparatus. Great patience and perseverance are required, for the result is but slowly attained.

The general health of the patient should be carefully looked after. Suitable woolen underclothing should be worn, and it should be graduated to temperature and exposure. Cod-liver oil, iron, quinin, and strychnin are the best roborants. It is most important that every effort should be made in the direction of so hardening the patient that he may be able to resist the effects of exposure, a task not easy to accomplish. Cold bathing of the neck and throat, indeed, of the whole body is useful, while nourishing food, physical exercise, and outdoor life, with suitable clothing, are means to this end.

#### SIMPLE CIRCULATORY DERANGEMENTS OF THE PHARYNX.

Hyperemia of the pharynx is a very common condition in smokers. It is also almost always present when there is chronic nasal catarrh. Under these circumstances the mucous membrane is constantly red, angry looking, often streaked with mucous, and is very easily thrown into a state of active inflammation.

In such obstructions to the circulation as are caused by mitral valvular disease, cirrhosis of the liver, or pressure upon the ascending vena cava by aneurysm or tumor, there is venous stasis and the venules may often be seen distended. Occasionally they burst, producing small hemorrhages which stain the mucous secretion. The same causes may produce edema of the mucous membrane of the pharynx, and especially does this occur in Bright's disease. The edema may extend thence to the uvula, which becomes greatly swollen. In aortic regurgitation the capillary pulse may be seen in the pharynx, and the internal carotid may also be seen to throb strongly.

## ACUTE CATARRHAL PHARYNGITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Sore Throat; Simple Angina.*

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the mucous membrane covering the pharynx and tonsils, sometimes extending upon the palate.

**Etiology.**—Acute pharyngitis occurs at all ages, but is more frequent in children. Exposure to cold and wet is its most frequent exciting cause. The delicate are more predisposed than the robust, and where there is the hyperemia above referred to, a trifling cause lights up an inflammation. Rheumatism and gout are also frequent causes. Pharyngitis and tonsillitis are often associated.

**Symptoms.**—The first symptom is usually *pain* on swallowing, which is associated at first with a *dryness* and *soreness*, producing a desire to “clear the throat.” To this is soon added a *full feeling*, and then pain independent of swallowing. The inflammation may extend into the Eustachian tube, producing partial *deafness*, or into the larynx, producing *hoarseness*. There is a varying degree of constitutional disturbance, and sometimes the *fever* is quite high.

On examining the throat it will be found red and congested, sometimes plainly swollen, especially over the tonsils. There is often considerable mucous secretion. The various forms of ulcer of the tonsils described under tonsillitis may be associated with the pharyngitis, increasing the constitutional disturbance and local discomfort.

**Treatment.**—Many simple sore throats pass away without treatment. Astringent washes and gargles are indicated, but the patient should be warmly housed and even in mild cases had better go to bed. Twenty-four hours in bed is by far the best medicine for an ordinary cold. A gargle of alum or tincture of the chlorid of iron in the proportion of a teaspoonful of either to a full tumbler of water may be used, while applications of a mixture of equal parts of the iron tincture and glycerin may be applied to the throat two or three times a day. Solution of nitrate of silver, 20 grains (1.3 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.), may be similarly applied, also the glycerol of tannin.

In severe cases cold cloths wrung out in ice water and applied to the outside of the throat, the clothing being protected by the interposition of a dry towel, make an excellent measure; or the little ice bags referred to in the treatment of acute tonsillitis may be applied to the throat, with a dry towel outside of them. Occasionally counterirritation by mustard is more satisfactory, as every throat does not bear cold equally well.

The fever should be met in the usual way by aconite, sweet spirit of niter, citrate of potash, phenacetin or acetanilid while chlorate of potash and chlorid of iron should also be administered internally. The bichlorid of mercury may be added under the same circumstances as in diphtheroid tonsillitis. There is no advantage in giving large doses of iron. They are not absorbed and the excess remaining in the alimentary canal, locks up the secretions and causes irritation. From 2 to 10 minims (0.12 to 0.6 gm.) every two hours are quite sufficient. The bowels should be kept open, and the treatment may be advantageously commenced with a saline aper-

ent, such as calcined magnesia, the solution of the citrate of magnesium, Hunyadi or any natural aperient water.

Where the disease is traceable to rheumatism or gout, suitable treatment for these diseases should be instituted. The salicylates are the best remedies for both, but guaiacum has some reputation, the tincture or ammoniated tincture being the best preparation, given in doses of 5 to 60 drops (0.35 to 4 gm.).

### CHRONIC CATARRHAL PHARYNGITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Clergyman's Sore Throat; Granular Pharyngitis; Chronic Angina; Chronic Follicular Pharyngitis.*

**Definition.**—Chronic pharyngitis, when not associated with ulceration, presents much the same appearance as chronic hyperemia, plus the addition of a granular appearance due to enlargement of lymphatic glandules, with which the pharynx is studded.

**Etiology.**—The disease is rather one of adults than children. Its causes are repeated attacks of acute pharyngitis and excessive smoking and alcohol drinking. Chronic nasal catarrh with its irritating discharges trickling down the fauces is a frequent cause, as is also nasal obstruction and disease of the third or Luschka's tonsil. It also occurs in those who use their voices largely, as hucksters, public speakers, and singers, while the inhalation of dust and irritating gases is also held responsible.

**Treatment.**—This is very much more unsatisfactory than in the acute type. It is most important to treat the causes or remove them. Post-nasal catarrh is responsible for so many cases that the postnasal region should at once be investigated and its diseases treated. Smoking and the use of alcohol, if responsible, should at once be discontinued. The same local measures useful in the acute disease may be employed in the chronic, but they are less promising as to results. The little granules, which are apparently a source of irritation as well as a result, can be removed only by the galvanocautery needle. Other measures to this end are unsatisfactory and insufficient. The general health of the patient should be carefully looked after, and occupations tending to keep up the irritation should be discontinued.

### ULCERATION OF THE PHARYNX.

The ordinary form of chronic pharyngitis rarely produces ulceration. Syphilis, tuberculosis, diphtheria, inflammation, and lowered nutrition, such as is found after the infectious diseases, like typhoid fever and scarlet fever, are frequent causes of sluggish ulcers indisposed to heal. The chief symptom of these various varieties of ulceration is pain, increased during deglutition, with more or less copious mucous secretion, which often adheres firmly to the pharynx.

**Diagnosis.**—It is not always easy to distinguish the different forms of ulceration. The *syphilitic ulcer* is least painful, in fact often painless, and is commonly situated in the posterior wall of the pharynx. It occurs both



as a secondary and tertiary symptom. As a secondary symptom it is superficial and associated with mucous patches, while as a tertiary it forms the cavity left by a softened, gummy tumor, and is correspondingly deep. It is associated with the history of syphilis.

The *tubercular ulcer* is more painful—indeed, the most painful of all. It is irregular, not very deep, has a grayish base, and is also seated in the posterior wall of the pharynx, considerable areas of which may be involved, producing an uneven, worm-eaten appearance. It is associated with tuberculosis elsewhere. The *indolent ulcers* of lowered nutrition are also often insidious and occasion few active symptoms. After the separation of the membrane in diphtheritic pharyngitis there are sometimes left ulcers more or less extensive, which are slow to heal.

**Treatment.**—This consists locally in the application of stimuli and antiseptics, the former represented by nitrate of silver and the latter by thymol and its class, together with general treatment appropriate to the condition, such as tonics of which iron and quinin are the types.

#### PHLEGMONOUS PHARYNGITIS.

**Definition.**—This term is applied to any suppurating inflammation involving the pharynx, however induced, except postpharyngeal abscess, which is a separate condition. It may be a part of the process which constitutes suppurating tonsillitis or quinsy, extending to the adjacent pharyngeal structures. It may include the acute infectious phlegmon of the pharynx described by Senator, in which, along with swelling of the external neck, the pharyngeal mucous membrane is swollen and injected, and becomes rapidly the seat of suppuration. It may include similar conditions induced by injury, the inhalation of scalding liquids, or the swallowing of corrosive poisons. Or it may be the result of pharyngeal erysipelas or of the lodgment of foreign bodies.

**Symptoms.**—These are correspondingly intense. There is *painful swelling*, interfering not only with deglutition, but also with respiration. There is high *fever* and rapid *exhaustion*. It may terminate in *gangrene* of the part or gangrenous pharyngitis.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is locally antiphlogistic, including cold by ice or otherwise, scarification and liberation of pus at the earliest possible moment, together with restorative and stimulating internal measures. If gangrene results, cauterization and antiseptic applications must be added. The aid of the surgeon should be early sought.

#### POSTPHARYNGEAL ABSCESS.

**Definition.**—A phlegmonous inflammation behind the proper pharyngeal tissue, subperiosteal in some instances, arising in suppurative inflammation of the postpharyngeal lymphatic glands or caries of the cervical vertebræ. It is a disease of children and adults, more frequently of the former, often a sequel of one of the pharyngeal conditions already considered, favored by bad hygiene and depraved constitutional states, hereditary or acquired.

**Symptoms.**—Its symptoms are intense *pain*, *swelling*, and interference with deglutition and respiration, with more or less early appearance of a *tumor* in the posterior wall of the pharynx, which can generally be recognized by the finger before it can be seen—a fact which emphasizes the importance of frequent examination of the throat by the finger in diseases of these parts. There is also *stiffness of the neck*, sometimes *nasal voice* or even hoarseness, suggesting croup and edema of the glottis, but there is never absolute loss of the voice, as in the latter, while croup and edema are not associated with painful deglutition.

**Treatment.**—This consists of incision of the abscess as soon as discovered. It should be made in the median line and the head should be brought forward to avoid the entrance of pus into the larynx. Anodynes are necessary to overcome the intense pain, but it is to be remembered that they may so mask the symptoms as to permit destructive inroads of the disease before it is discovered.

## DISEASES OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

### EXPLORATION OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

This is a manipulation so frequently necessary that its description is demanded at the outset.

The esophageal bougie is made of flexible whalebone, on the end of which is firmly fixed an olive-shaped piece of ivory or hard rubber. The ends are made of different sizes. The ordinary stomach-tube may also be used for the same purpose, and is the safest instrument at the first exploration.

In introducing the bougie, or tube, the patient should sit on a low chair with his head thrown back. The index-finger of the left hand is then introduced well back into the pharynx, along the median line. The bougie, or tube, is then passed along the side of the finger to a posterior wall of the pharynx and then down into the gullet. Usually a slight resistance is encountered at the level of the cricoid cartilage, but it is easily overcome, and after this the descent is easy. Caution should, however, always be exercised, as the bougie has a few times been pushed through an ulcer of the esophagus into the pleural cavity or lung, while I have also known ulceration to be produced by its repeated use in simple nervous spasmodic obstruction.

### ESOPHAGITIS.

**ACUTE ESOPHAGITIS.**—An acute inflammation of the esophagus is practically limited to inflammation induced by the swallowing of very hot, or corrosive liquids, like strong acids and alkalis, or by the lodgment of foreign bodies. It is true, diphtheritic inflammation sometimes extends from the pharynx downward, and the esophagus has also been invaded by a vesicle of small-pox, but these conditions are not likely to be differentiated from the primary disease. Mycotic esophagitis, producing stenosis of the esophagus in sucklings, has been alluded to as a possibility on page 327.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Appearances vary with the cause. In addition to the usual redness, sloughing and disintegration of the tissue may result.

Milder degrees of inflammation produce less conspicuous alteration. A granular appearance may succeed desquamation of the epithelium. Diphtheritic false membrane presents the same characters here as elsewhere.

**Symptoms.**—These are chiefly *pain* beneath the sternum, increased by swallowing, which in extreme degrees of inflammation becomes agonizing and, indeed, renders swallowing impossible. Copious mucous secretion is sometimes present, which may be raised or regurgitated to the fauces and expectorated or passed into the stomach. Milder grades of inflammation may be without symptoms, intermediate grades present corresponding symptoms. If healing results after destructive inflammation, the cicatricial tissue behaves as it does elsewhere contracting and distorting the parts, oftentimes with resulting stenosis.

**Treatment.**—Little can be done to aid healing. For the most part, therefore, it must be given over to nature. If deglutition is possible, demulcents may be used, while the swallowing of pieces of ice sometimes gives comfort. When deglutition is impossible, the patient must be fed with nutritious enemata. The treatment of resulting stenosis is that of stricture of the esophagus, which see.

**CHRONIC CATARRHAL ESOPHAGITIS.**—This affection is sometimes favored by valvular heart diseases, cirrhosis of the liver, or other cause of venous obstruction. The resulting affection is a catarrhal inflammation associated with mucus secretion. A hemorrhoidal state of the veins may be thus caused, which may proceed to rupture, with fatal termination.

## PEPTIC ULCER OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

**Definition.**—An ulcer usually in the lower part of the esophagus, due to the direct solvent action of the gastric juice, favored by certain predisposing causes.

**History.**—An ulcer resembling peptic ulcer was described by Albers in 1839 and since then by Flowers, Reeves, Rokitsansky and others. Zenker and Birch-Hirschfeld denied the existence of an ulcer thus caused, ascribing it to carcinoma or perforation in a traction diverticulum. In 1879 Quincke established its peptic nature and since then a number of observers have reported cases.<sup>1</sup> Up to the date of Tileston's paper referred to, 44 cases had been collected, a larger number than was supposed possible.

**Etiology.**—It may occur at any time of life between infancy and old age, but is most frequent in middle life and in men, it having been found in this sex in 28 out of 30 cases. It was found alone and complicating other conditions as ulcer of the stomach and duodenum. Directly caused by the solvent action of the gastric juice, it is favored by some, associated condition always present though not always ascertainable. One of these is insufficiency of the cardiac orifice of the stomach permitting regurgitation. Other associated conditions are repeated vomiting and disease of the various abdominal organs, including peritonitis, nephritis, chronic gastritis, but especially ulcer of the stomach and duodenum; also dilation of the stomach, which is often responsible for insufficiency of the cardiac orifice.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The ulcer varies in size from a pin-head to a pea and may be single or multiple. Always in the lower part of the esophagus, it

<sup>1</sup> The reader is referred to an exhaustive paper on this subject by Wilder Tileston, entitled "Peptic Ulcer of the Esophagus," published in the "American Journal of the Medical Sciences," August, 1906.

is found most frequently in the posterolateral portion. Perforation has taken place into the pleural cavity, the pericardium and the omental cavity. Scars have been found representing healed ulcers.

**Symptoms.**—The lesion is sometimes found at autopsy when previously unsuspected, and again the symptoms of perforation have been the first indication of it, but pain, tenderness, dysphagia, vomiting and hematemesis are natural consequences. The pain is usually at the xyphoid cartilage with tenderness in the adjoining epigastrium. There is no tenderness in the back corresponding to that of ulcer of the stomach. The dysphagia is characterized by pain and difficulty at the end of the act of swallowing. It may be intermittent. Hematemesis is usually the result of erosion of an artery. It is characterized further by the absence of nausea as contrasted with the vomiting of blood due to ulcer. Perforation is not an infrequent result having been found in six out of 14 cases. More rarely it is associated with evidence of stenosis of the pylorus with consequent dilatation of the stomach, itself the cause of the insufficiency referred to as favoring peptic ulcer.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis in general is covered by the symptomatology above narrated. Differentially peptic ulcer of the esophagus is distinguished from gastric ulcer by the presence of dysphagia, while the pain follows more closely the act of deglutition than in ulcer of the stomach, and the pain and tenderness due to the latter are generally lower down. In ulcer of the esophagus the tenderness is substernal. Gastric ulcer at the cardiac orifice has symptoms more like those of ulcer of the esophagus.

It is well known that some of the most serious hemorrhages in cirrhosis of the liver arise from varicose ulcers of the esophagus. Such ulcers are characterized by the absence of previous pain and dysphagia, while they are also associated with cirrhosis of the liver with which peptic ulcer is not, as a rule.

Stenosis of the esophagus may succeed upon ulcer and must be distinguished from stenoses due to pressure from without, such as that by mediastinal tumors, abscesses, and aortic aneurysm, when the presence of the symptoms of these diseases must come to our rescue. Intermittent dysphagia is a rare characteristic of aneurysm and of the other causes of stenosis; carcinoma is more insidious and is associated with cachexia, but its duration is shorter. The blood in hemorrhage from cancer is scanty and mixed with particles of food and mucus while the pain is more constant. The favorite seat of cancer is opposite the bifurcation of the trachea, while ulcer is rarely so high. Enlarged adjacent glands are also present in cancer.

Stenosis by corrosive poisons is readily determined by the history. Tuberculous and syphilitic ulcers are characterized by their indolence and comparatively painless character. The various diverticula due to obstruction by these causes may generally be determined by the sound.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of peptic ulcer is unfavorable as far as cure is concerned, while the difficulty in diagnosis increases the uncertainty.

**Treatment.**—Treatment is the same as that of gastric ulcer, liquid, cool and demulcent foods being indicated. In extreme cases rectal feeding

must substitute all other forms of nourishment. As to drugs, silver and bismuth are given as for ulcer of the stomach. Direct applications may in the future be possible with the esophagoscope. Stenosis must be treated in the usual way.

### CANCER OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

**Description.**—This is usually a hard epithelial tumor, most frequent in the middle third of the esophagus, though it may involve the cardiac orifice of the stomach, and more rarely other portions. E. Rindfleisch, especially, describes a softer and more superficial form, which invades larger areas in a diffuse way. It is rather more frequent in men, and appears first as zonular infiltration of the mucous membrane, which ulcerates. The resulting ulcer may also extend around the tube, acquiring a width of two or three inches (5 to 6 cm.). The primary and usually permanent result, unless ulceration does away with it, is a stenosis of the esophagus, followed by dilatation of the tube, with hypertrophy of the walls above the stenosis.

**Symptoms.**—*Difficult and painful deglutition* is usually the first symptom of stenosis, though *pain*, independent of deglutition, may precede. *Swallowing* becomes more and more difficult, and ultimately, even liquids may be regurgitated. *Regurgitation* of food may not be immediate, and the date of its appearance is usually dependent on the seat of the obstruction and extent of dilatation above it. A discharge of *blood* and *mucus* may attend an effort to introduce the bougie. Death commonly takes place from exhaustion or actual starvation. But before this happens there may be a rupture into the larynx or a bronchus, producing death by suffocation, by gangrene, or by an inhalation pneumonia. There may be ulceration into the aorta or one of its large branches, causing fatal hemorrhage; into the pericardium, producing fatal pericarditis. Ulceration into the mediastinum or erosion of the cervical vertebræ sometimes occurs, with more delayed fatal ending. Emphysema is a sign of rupture into the lung. The adjacent lymphatic glands of the neck are sometimes invaded. Rarely the disease is latent throughout its entire course.

**Diagnosis.**—This may have to be delayed a short time, but is soon clear. The continued obstruction, the emaciation, and the weakness soon distinguish the case from one of spasmodic stenosis. Compression by adjacent growths should be remembered as a source of obstruction, aneurysm being perhaps the most frequent cause of this kind; but aneurysm may generally be recognized by its other signs.

**Prognosis.**—This is always ultimately fatal.

**Treatment.**—Treatment can only be made to prolong life. The bougie should not be used after the diagnosis of cancer is established, because of the danger of causing perforation. So long as liquid food can pass the obstruction it should be used; after this, nutritious enemata in the manner recommended under cancer of the stomach. Esophagostomy or gastrostomy may be presented for the patient's consideration. The former promises nothing, but life may be prolonged by the latter.

## SPASM OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

SYNONYMS.—*Esophagismus*; *Cardio-spasm*.

This is not an unusual affection in hysterical women, and even in male hypochondriacs. These are generally past middle life. It also occurs in hydrophobia, chorea, and epilepsy. Spasm in the neighborhood of the cardiac end of the stomach is spoken of as cardio-spasm of the esophagus. The spasm is commonly excited by an effort to swallow solid food, and rarely even liquids act similarly. A possible result of spasm is a dilatation, as shown in a case of my own, to be again referred to.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is readily made by the bougie, which, though it may be stayed for a minute at the seat of spasm, ultimately passes it without the application of force. It is also associated with other symptoms of hypochondriasis, while extreme pain, the gradual emaciation, weakness, and ultimate cachexia of cancer are absent. Errors of diagnosis have, however, been made, and death has even occurred when autopsy disclosed no lesion to explain it.

**Treatment.**—This is that of the hypochondriacal state and the frequent use of the bougie, of which the moral effect is also good. One introduction has sometimes been sufficient. On the other hand, I have known the repeated passage of a bougie to have produced ulceration, whence the caution already enjoined in the use of the instrument.

## STRICTURE OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

**Etiology.**—Stricture may be produced by any of the conditions just considered, carcinoma, contraction of scar tissue after esophagitis, whether traumatic or syphilitic, or by spasm. Other causes are pressure by external tumors, such as aneurysm, enlarged lymphatic glands or mediastinal tumors. Then there is congenital narrowing, and finally polypoid tumors projecting from the mucous membrane. If the stenosis be cicatricial, the precise cause is to be determined by the history of the case and its situation by the esophageal bougie.

**Symptoms.**—These are those of obstruction, described under cancer and spasm, with or without the painful element; to which may be added those of dilatation of the esophagus, to be next considered.

**Treatment.**—This is altogether by the careful use of the bougie. Dilatation of the cicatricial stenosis is often quite successful. The largest bougie should be first introduced very gently, without force, really as a sound, *as far as the obstruction only*. Then smaller sizes should be tried until one is found which will pass, and from this point, again, larger sizes should be successively employed. At each sitting the bougie originally passed with ease should be started with and followed more rapidly by the larger sizes, as the physician becomes familiar with his patient's case.

In congenital cases less is to be expected, while obstruction by external growths, unless they be removable, is practically irremediable, and grows gradually worse. Even cicatricial stenosis may be such that the smallest bougie cannot pass, in which event nourishment by the rectum alone remains, unless gastrostomy be decided on.

## DILATATION OF THE ESOPHAGUS.

Dilatation of the esophagus may involve the whole circumference of tube, when it is known as *diffuse* or *total*; or it may affect only one spot, when it is circumscribed, or constitutes a *diverticulum*.

*Diffuse Dilatation*.—In every case of organic stenosis of the esophagus, from whatever cause, there is sooner or later dilatation above it, delayed at first by hypertrophy of the muscular coat, which is thus enabled to force the food through the narrowing. Sooner or later this coat becomes paralyzed, the wall yields to the pressure of accumulated food, and dilatation follows. The resulting sac is usually spindle-shaped, but may be cylindrical, and is naturally larger the lower the seat of obstruction.

But dilatation occurs without previous organic stenosis. Repeated spasm is a cause, and dilatation from cardio-spasm has come to be a well-recognized condition. It may be that it is preceded at times by some traumatic cause which weakens the wall of the tube. The fact remains that such dilatations occur.

*Diverticula*.—Diverticula or circumscribed pouches in the walls of the esophagus are of two varieties. They have been especially studied by Zenker, who has divided them into *pressure* or *propulsion* diverticula and *traction* diverticula according to their mode of origin.

*Traction* diverticula are the more frequent, yet clinically are of less interest because often not recognized until their subjects are on the necropsy table. They are small, scarcely ever exceeding a centimeter (0.4 in.) in diameter, and relatively frequent in children. They are ascribed to some traction effect exerted on the wall of the esophagus. This may be, as Rokitsansky and Zenker suggested, due to the contraction of a tissue which has formed adhesions to the esophagus. Such a tissue is afforded by the bronchial glands, which become inflamed, caseate, and contract, and as they are situated at the bifurcation of the trachea, the more frequent occurrence of traction diverticula at this situation in the *anterior* wall of the gullet is thus explained. Such diverticula may be multiple.

*Pressure* diverticula are much rarer. They occur almost always in men rarely in children. They are found most frequently at the junction of the pharynx and esophagus, on a level with the cricoid cartilage, where the muscular wall, formed chiefly by the inferior constrictor of the pharynx, is weakest, and are caused by pressure from within. This may be exerted by the bolus of food itself, especially if it be habitually large, as in rapid eaters, while its operation may be further facilitated by some traumatic injury to this part of the throat, such as may be caused by the lodgment of a bone.

The sac is found to be bounded by mucous membrane and thickened submucous coat, the muscular coat giving way to let the mucous coat pass through it, as in a hernia. It is found invariably in the *posterior* wall, and hangs in front of the spinal column. One such, reported by Joseph McFarland and John M. Swan was 5 centimeters long and 3 wide.<sup>1</sup>

*Symptoms*.—In cases of *diffuse* dilatation originating in stenosis, apart from the inference that where there is stenosis there must ultimately

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "Medicine," May, 1903.

be dilatation, the first symptom to attract attention is the *feeling* on the part of the patient that his *food does not enter the stomach*, but lodges higher up, though the quantity swallowed is evidently more than would be held by an esophagus of ordinary caliber; usually, sooner or later, follows the *regurgitation*, or gulping up of this accumulation. The same symptoms are said to attend dilatation without stenosis. The latter event can only be explained on the supposition that, in consequence of the paralyzed state of the muscular wall of the esophagus, there is no force to push the food down, while the gradual widening of the tube affords support for its lodgment, which is further favored if the enlargement takes the shape of sacculations or a pocket.

Traction diverticulum rarely causes symptoms. Those arising from pressure diverticulum are first those of *dysphagia*, as the diverticulum grows larger, and the food lodges more and more; *regurgitation*, though the sac is rarely thoroughly emptied, and the retained food sometimes undergoes decomposition, giving rise to fetid breath. The difficulties increase until after a while it is almost impossible to get food into the stomach, though extraordinary efforts are made by the patient to do so, with greater or less success. Complete closure results when the diverticulum becomes so large as to flex upon the gullet and compress it.

The sound should be used in the study of all forms of the disease. By its means the situation of the stenosis can be ascertained. Should it pass readily into the stomach, there is no stenosis, but there may still be a diverticulum, for at one sitting the sound may pass the opening into the sac, while at another it may enter it and resist further attempts to complete the transit. Zenker and v. Leube have devised a diverticulum-sound bent at an angle, so as to facilitate its entrance into the diverticulum, advantage being taken of the fact that we know about where these diverticula are most frequently found—that is, opposite the cricoid cartilage for pressure diverticula, and bifurcation of the trachea for traction diverticula.

With the prolongation of the condition the proper nourishment of the patient becomes more and more difficult; he emaciates, grows weaker, and ultimately perishes from exhaustion unless carried off by some other disease.

The following case, recently under my care, illustrates the symptoms of a dilatation due to cardiospasm: C. G. was an actor, 33 years old when he came under observation. When only 12 years of age, while eating his supper, his food suddenly regurgitated and he had to leave the table. Returning, another effort was followed by the same result. The next morning his breakfast came up in the same manner. After a time he discovered that by rapidly drinking a large amount of liquid after each meal he could, by a great effort, cause most of the food to enter the stomach. This had to be done at every meal by some indescribable effort, which was painful and exhausting. Furthermore, it was rarely completely successful, some food being always regurgitated, commonly later in the day. Since 12 years of age this regurgitation has continued, and he loses, on the whole, about one-third of the food ingested, while at times his efforts to get it down are totally unsuccessful, in which event the full amount is regurgitated. Further, the difficulty of successfully getting food into the stomach is gradually increasing.





The stomach of a normal, healthy boy, fourteen years of age, in the standing posture, containing one pint of a bismuth mixture, radiographed and selected as a *normal stomach* by Dr. George E. Pfahler. The lower dark square occupies the position of the umbilicus, the upper the ensiform cartilage.



In this case there would appear to be a certain degree of stenosis, for while a part of the food can be forced to enter the stomach, and small sounds can be passed into that organ, larger ones cannot be made to enter. Yet from the suddenness of its occurrence and the early age of the patient, the stenosis, if one is present, has not arisen from the usual causes. Can there be a diverticulum? If so, it is lower than pressure diverticula and larger than traction diverticula usually are.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of diffuse dilatation and diverticula is essentially the same. It consists, first, in measures to maintain the nutrition of the patient. Generally he is able to ingest a certain amount of food by his own efforts, of which those detailed in the case of my own patient are an illustration. After this the stomach-tube becomes the most ready way. This, too, he should be taught to use himself. Rectal alimentation may help somewhat, but is alone inadequate for any length of time, while the inconvenience of any and all of these procedures renders the patient anxious for more complete relief.

Complete relief may be accomplished by operation, by which diverticula have been successfully removed. The difficulties in the way of operation are, however, great. The operative treatment of dilatations due to stenoses resolves itself into that of the stenoses themselves. In both forms gastrostomy may be the ultimate measure that promises relief for a time.

## DISEASES OF THE STOMACH AND INTESTINES.

### DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIC.

The very great value that modern medicine has discovered in a proper technic for the diagnosis of diseases of the stomach makes its preliminary consideration indispensable to their sufficient and exact study. It is conveniently divided into the external and internal examinations.

#### EXTERNAL EXAMINATION.

This embraces inspection, palpation, percussion, and succussion or splashing. Because of the difficulty of separating the external examination of the stomach from that of the intestines they are usually considered jointly.

The most important point to be remembered in the medical anatomy of the stomach is that a very small part of it lies to the right of the median line, not more than one-fourth, the remainder occupying the upper left third of the abdominal cavity. The *cardiac orifice* is fixed behind the sternal attachment of the sixth or seventh cartilage on the *left* side, while the *pylorus*, more movable, lies to the *right* and above the umbilicus as determined by X-ray examinations, instead of between the tip of the sternum and the conjoined seventh and eighth cartilages, and under the left lobe of the liver as formerly taught. The seats of both orifices—the cardiac and pyloric—and the outline of the stomach vary somewhat with the degree of distention, but when the stomach is moderately distended the highest part of the fundus is in the fifth interspace, at the mammillary line,

and the lowest part of the organ in the median line, three to five cm. (1 to 2 inches) above the umbilicus in men and four to seven cm. (1.5 to 3 inches) in women.

The information given by *inspection* may be of no value whatever, or may possess considerable import. Commonly, the stomach and bowels are the seat of a moderate distention with gas—just enough to make precise information by this method unattainable. This is especially the case in little children and in men past 50. In very thin subjects the stomach may be recognized in outline, and exaggerated contractions may even be seen in it and in the intestines. Morbid growths in the stomach may sometimes be recognized by inspection. So may many uneven growths of the liver in thin persons, while the end of a distended gall-bladder may, in rare instances, project at the edge of the thorax, near the end of the cartilage of the tenth rib on the right side. Epigastric pulsation is sometimes strikingly conspicuous. Enlargement of the superficial epigastric and abdominal veins is always to be looked for. More frequently there is a circumscribed distention recognized in the region of the stomach, or the entire abdomen may be distended, a symptom which may be due to atony, or, among others, points to some obstruction in the lower part of the bowels. In other instances the opposite state of undue flaccidity is observed—the belly flattening out laterally as the patient lies on his back, or falling forward when he stands up. The latter condition occurs especially in persons who have been corpulent and have grown thin, and in women who have borne many children. The patient may also be examined in the knee-elbow position, which will permit movable tumors to fall forward and facilitate their recognition by inspection as well as by palpation.

*Palpation* furnishes at times more definite information than inspection. It should be practiced by laying the hand flat upon the abdomen and depressing the ends of the fingers as the hand is moved about, rather than by “poking” with the fingers of the extended hand obliquely placed. The abdominal walls, too, should be relaxed by semi-flexing the thighs on the abdomen and the legs upon the thighs. Thus we learn of the consistency and situation of various organs and abnormal growths, whether they are smooth or uneven, whether there is tenderness or tenseness, softness or hardness. In so doing, the degree of pressure must vary. Some pains are relieved by pressure, others aggravated. The former are more apt to be due to neuralgia or colic, the latter to be inflammatory. Our knowledge of the precise situations of morbid growths is often aided by changing the position of the patient. A tumor of the pyloric orifice of the stomach, which is more apt to be felt toward the median line, above the umbilicus, is also characterized by its greater mobility, as well as change of location with varying degrees of distention of the stomach. Such a tumor may be subject to a peculiar rotary motion.

*Percussion* of the gastro-intestinal region is practiced with the patient on his back in a relaxed position, like that described for palpation. A pleximeter is here conveniently used, and auscultatory percussion may be practiced with advantage. The phonendoscope may also be used to determine the outlines of these organs during scraping or rubbing. The stomach and intestines approach the surface in health in such a way as to

make their limitation quite possible by percussion. They require, also, delicacy in discriminating shades of sound, more particularly as to pitch. The quality met with in percussing these organs is, for the most part, tympanitic, and it is chiefly variations in the pitch which are to be discriminated. The same organ may exhibit different degrees of pitch under different conditions. Thus, the stomach, when moderately distended with gas, gives a low-pitched tympanitic sound when percussed; when more fully distended, it gives a higher pitch; when distended to a maximum, it may give a dull sound, because all vibration is stopped. Given the stomach and intestine in an equal degree of tension, the stomach will respond to percussion with a lower-pitched tympany than the intestine because it is a larger cavity. This is sometimes spoken of as less tympanitic. Sometimes the stomach percussion note is ringing, amphoric, echoing. By means of these differences, when present, we may distinguish one hollow organ from another. Again, the presence of liquids or solids in the stomach influences the percussion note.

The hollow viscera *en masse* can be mapped out by determining the boundaries of the solid viscera around them. But we want to do more than this: we want to separate one hollow organ from another—the stomach from the small intestine, the small intestine from the large. For this the patient must be recumbent. As stated, the stomach tympany is ordinarily lower pitched than the bowel tympany. Bearing this in mind, we can generally determine the stomach boundaries when the organ is moderately distended with gas. The upper limit of stomach tympany, recognizable by percussion, corresponds with the lower edge of the left lobe of the liver. To the left of the apex of the heart, the stomach tympany is mixed with the resonance of the lung. At this point, about the fifth rib, is the cardiac end of the stomach. Percussing downward and a little backward from this point, we are generally able to find a difference of note—a higher pitch, a purer tympany, belonging to the transverse colon. Keeping close to this line and following it anteriorly, we find it crosses the left edge of the thorax at about the cartilaginous attachment of the tenth rib, the median line just above the umbilicus, and passes thence upward to the junction of the right lobe of the liver with the edge of the thorax. It is the line of the greater curvature of the stomach.

Traube's *half-moon space* is a term applied to the area bounded above by the lower border of the left lung, approximately determined by the upper edge of the sixth rib as far as the axillary line; on the right by liver dullness, on the left by splenic dullness; and below by the costal arch, yielding a tympanic note when the stomach is empty and distended, but a flat note to percussion when the stomach is full or there is pleural effusion on the left side. Leichtenstern has applied the name *pulmono-hepatic angle* to the point of junction between the lower edge of the left lobe of the liver and the lower border of the left lung. The tip of this angle is behind the sixth rib, just below the apex seat, and is bisected by the pleural space, which is filled by the lung only during deep inspiration. The stomach fills in this angle, and it is an area pretty constantly maintained. The outline of the stomach may be made more distinct by having the patient drink a glass of water just before the examination; or, as originally suggested by Frerichs,

by taking in rapid succession the two portions of a Seidlitz powder—tartaric acid and sodium bicarbonate—or a glass of soda-water.

A better method of outlining the stomach is to inflate it with air, as suggested by Runeberg, by means of the double bulb of a spray apparatus. This should be done, if possible, in connection with the use of the tube for some other purpose, as removing the stomach contents after a test-meal. The possibility of air passing through the pylorus is to be remembered, but, commonly, if any excess is introduced it passes out alongside of the tube. This is not the case with carbonic-acid gas, which excites rather a spasmodic contraction of the cardiac orifice. Both gas and water may distend the stomach beyond the limits described, but the normal limit of the lower curvature may be put above the umbilicus, although it cannot be said to be abnormally low when at the umbilicus, an event not unusual after 50 years of age. As already mentioned, the greater curvature is not quite so low in women as in men, and in working women not so low as in those of leisure. When the lower curvature is below the umbilicus, the stomach may be said to be dilated. It is always desirable, if possible, to examine the stomach with the patient standing as well as lying. In this position, especially, the pyloric end of the stomach assumed the situation described on p. 351 in contrast, too, with its position when exposed on the autopsy table after death (in health), when the diaphragm and lungs appear to rise and to be followed by the stomach.

As stated, the percussion note of the large intestine is higher pitched and more purely tympanitic than that usual to the stomach. When containing feces it is rendered duller, and in consequence of this fact there is often less resonance in the left iliac fossa than in the right, although feces may also accumulate in the latter, and an impaction in the head of the colon may give positive dullness. The colon may also be artificially distended *per rectum* with air, if desired, for examination.

The percussion note of the small intestine is usually still higher pitched than that of the large, and by this it may be distinguished from that bowel, if not filled with solid matter or liquid. The differences in percussion note referred to are not always equally well marked, and it is not always possible in consequence, to demark the organs. Especially difficult is it at times thus to distinguish the transverse colon, when distended with gas, from the stomach above it. If the stomach be filled with water, a dull note is brought out on percussion, which contrasts strongly with the tympanitic note of the gas-distended colon.

Whether determined by inspection, palpation, or percussion, a stomach the greater curvature of which reaches the umbilicus or below is abnormally dilated, while certain dilated stomachs go far below the umbilicus. The vertical diameter of the normal stomach, from the highest to the lowest points of tympany, as determined by Wagner, was 11 to 14 cm. (4.4 to 5.6 inches) in men, and about 10 cm. (four inches) in women. The width of the zone was 21 cm. (8.4 inches) and 18 cm. (7.2 inches). Other measurements are somewhat different, so that some latitude must be allowed.

*Auscultation* has a less useful application to diagnosis of diseases of the stomach. It is confined to the so-called *deglutition murmurs*, of which there are two. They are best heard with the stethoscope to the left of the

spinal column, behind, in the neighborhood of the ninth or tenth rib; in front, to the left of the xiphoid. One is heard at the beginning of swallowing, when the food is transmitted from the pharynx into the esophagus, and is termed by Ewald the *primary* deglutition sound. It is heard all along the esophagus, and has no significance. It is a hissing sound, as if produced by fluid squirted directly into the stethoscope (Spritzgeräusch). Six or seven seconds later, corresponding with the contraction of the lower segment of the esophagus, may be heard the *second* deglutition sound, consisting of a series of tones rapidly following one another, either gurgling, clucking, sprinkling, or splashing (Pressgeräusch). It is said to denote a relaxation of the cardia and the direct passage of food into the stomach. It is quite constant, and is usually absent when there is obstruction of the cardiac orifice.

It is the absence of the deglutition murmurs rather than their presence on which diagnostic value depends; that is, they are apt to be wanting in obstructive disease of the cardiac orifice, although too much stress must not be laid upon such absence, since they are not always present in health, and repeated observation is required before conclusions dare be drawn.

By auscultation of the abdomen we recognize the peristaltic "clie" the presence of which informs us that peristalsis is going on.

*Gastroscopy* and *Gastrodiaphany* have not as yet been sufficiently perfected to be available in diagnosis of stomach affections. On the other hand, quite successful demonstrations of the position of the stomach is obtainable by the X-ray after filling the stomach with an emulsion of bismuth, using about 12 ounces containing one dram to the ounce.

The investigation of the large intestine by percussion is sometimes aided by distending the bowel with gas or air *per rectum* in one of the various ways suggested for the stomach, the bowel being previously evacuated by an enema. The large bowel may also be explored for a considerable distance from its anal end by specula.

#### CHEMICAL EXAMINATION OF GASTRIC CONTENTS.

For removing the gastric contents for examination the stomach-tube or catheter is used. That usually employed is a thoroughly soft, flexible, red rubber tube, open at the inner end, or, if closed at the end, provided with lateral openings, like a Nélaton's soft catheter. The latter is advised because it has happened with the open-end tube that a portion of sound gastric mucous membrane has been aspirated into it. The tube should be about 95 cm. (about 3 feet) long. From the fundus of the stomach to the incisor teeth is 60 to 65 cm. (about 2 feet), and the tube is usually marked at this point, thus enabling one to judge whether it has entered the fundus. Sufficient lubrication is secured by moistening it with water. It is carried into the back part of the pharynx in the manner described for the sound (p. 344), when the patient is directed to swallow. At the end of the act of deglutition the tube is pushed gently downward, and the patient again directed to swallow. This is kept up until the tube enters the stomach. A long tube permits the stomach to be emptied by siphonage *after a little pressure on the abdomen* has been exerted by the hand to start the motion of the contents. This is safer than aspiration by a pump, as sometimes practiced.

For analysis of the gastric contents the *test-meal* commonly employed is the *test breakfast* of Ewald and Boas, consisting of an ordinary roll weighing about 35 gm. (9 drams) and 300 c.c. (10 fl. oz.) of water or weak tea without milk and sugar. At the end of one hour after the meal is ingested the stomach is emptied by expression and siphonage, as described. There should be 20 to 40 c.c. It has happened to me to fail to secure anything after such a test-meal from the rapid disappearance of the products of digestion. In such event two rolls may be taken at the next meal and the liquid increased to 400 c.c. (13 fl. oz.). It is first examined by the microscope for blood or other abnormal morphological constituents, and then filtered, being previously well shaken.

The Leube-Riegel *test dinner* may be used. It consists of beef-soup, 400 c.c. (13.3 oz.); beefsteak, 200 gm. (6.6 oz.); bread, 50 gm. (1.6 oz.), and water 200 c.c. (6.6 fl. oz.). This should be removed for testing at the end of four hours.

**Acids of Digestion.**—In healthful conditions, in 10 or 15 minutes after food ingestion the gastric contents are acid, the acidity depending on free acids or acid salts, the latter including chiefly acid phosphates of sodium and potassium introduced in various amounts with food. At this stage the free acid recognized is lactic, which is either introduced with food or is formed in the lactic acid fermentation out of carbohydrates, especially sugar. Up to 30 to 45 minutes the lactic acid predominates, while the tests for hydrochloric acid may be negative. Then comes a stage in which traces of HCl can be demonstrated, coexisting with, it may be, lactic acid. Finally, the lactic acid disappears altogether, and at the end of an hour HCl only should be present. HCl is present from the beginning, but its recognition is interfered with, partly because the first secreted immediately combines with bases until these are neutralized. Free HCl gradually increases in amount until at the acme of digestion it reaches 0.15 to 0.2 per cent. after a light meal, and 0.2 to 0.3 per cent. after an abundant meal.

The *reaction* of the removed contents may be determined by blue litmus but Congo-red paper or tropæolin paper<sup>2</sup> may be used, the Congo-red being turned blue and tropæolin brown. These reactions point only to *free acids* being uninfluenced by acids when combined with bases. Nor can Congo-red or tropæolin be relied upon to differentiate between mineral acids and organic acids.

*To Test Qualitatively for Free Hydrochloric Acid Only.*—For this Günzburg's phloroglucin vanillin or Boas's resorcin test is used. Günzburg's reagent consists of *phloroglucin* two grams (30 grains), *vanillin* one gram (15 grains), *alcohol* 30 c.c. (f3j). The solution is pale yellow, and has a decided odor of vanilla. On exposure to light it assumes a dark golden-yellow. It must, therefore, either be kept in dark-hued bottles or freshly

<sup>1</sup> Such a roll, containing about 7 per cent. of nitrogen, 5 per cent. fat and 4 per cent. sugar, 52.5 per cent. of nonnitrogenous extractive substances and 1 per cent. of ash, includes, therefore, the usual elements of a mixed diet.

<sup>2</sup> These papers are made by dipping strips of filtering-paper into watery or alcoholic solutions of the anilin dyes, Congo-red or tropæolin oo (l'orange Poirier), allowing to dry, and preserving for use. The paper is, however, less delicate than the solution.

The Congo-red strikes a beautifully sky-blue reaction with a solution containing but 0.02 per 1000 of HCl; a purplish, but not distinctly different, reaction with lactic acid. *Acid salts produce no change.* The tropæolin solution is dark yellowish red and a solution of free acid, 0.025 to 1000, changes it to a deep dark brown. It is slightly less delicate, therefore, than the Congo-red. *Acid salts, as acid sodium phosphate, make it straw-yellow.* In all of these tests it is necessary to use an excess of the fluid to be tested. This is accomplished by placing five or ten drops of the reagent in a test-glass or porcelain capsule and adding one or two c.c. of the filtered contents.



made as required. A drop or two of the reagent is placed on a porcelain plate or capsule with an equal quantity of the gastric filtrate, and a gentle heat applied, not to boil, but simply to evaporate. If free HCl is present, very soon a beautiful rose-red tinge appears at the edge of the mixture, or red stripes will be observed. Blowing at the edge will favor the appearance of red stripes. This test is unmistakable, and surpasses all others in delicacy, being available when HCl is present in the proportion of 1 to 20,000 or 0.05 per mille. The reaction is not simulated by albuminates nor interfered with by salts present in the normal proportion, nor by organic acids.

Boas's test for free HCl is based upon the fact that resorcin strikes a similar reaction with hydrochloric acid. The solution consists of:

Resublimed resorcin,	5 parts (gr. lxxv)
White sugar,	3 parts (gr. xlv)
Dilute alcohol,	100 parts (i 3 iiiss)

Three to five drops of the reagent are poured into a porcelain dish and an equal quantity of stomach contents added. Heat is applied as in Günz-burg's test, and a *rose-red* color appears at the edge of the drop. It is said also to detect 0.05 per mille of HCl.

*To Estimate Free HCl and the Total Acidity, Including Free and Combined Acids and Acid Salts by Töpfer's Method.*—The total acidity of gastric contents includes free acids, viz., hydrochloric, lactic, and sometimes other organic acids; combined acids, consisting of acid phosphates; and loosely combined acids; in the shape of HCl-albumins, HCl-albumoses, and peptones. The reaction of the filtered fluid being determined by litmus-paper, the free HCl and total acidity are then determined by titration. A Mohr's buret is filled with a decinormal solution of caustic soda.<sup>1</sup> Ten c.c. of the filtered solution are placed in a beaker and three drops of an alcoholic solution of dimethyl-amido-azo-benzol added as an indicator. The solution is then slowly dropped from the buret until the red color disappears. Multiply result by 10 = amount free HCl. Add to same solution 3 drops alcoholic solution phenolphthalein as indicator. Titrate with decinormal solution until permanently red. The total number of cubic centimeters added measures the total acidity when multiplied by 10. As a rule, the total acidity of the gastric contents, an hour after an Ewald test breakfast, requires 4 to 6 c.c. of the decinormal solution to neutralize it. Figures above and below this are therefore abnormal. Normal free HCl usually requires 2 to 3 c.c. to neutralize. The actual percentage is determined by multiplying the number of c.c. used by .00365 and again by 10, since .00365 represents the amount of HCl in grams, required to neutralize 1 c.c. of decinormal soda solution. Thus  $4 \times .00365 \times 10 = .146$  per cent.; and  $6 \times .00365 \times 10 = .219$  per cent.

By this method it will be seen the total acidity and free HCl can be determined at one titration. But as dimethyl-amido-azo-benzol reacts to free organic acids much as it does to free HCl, it is safer to determine whether or not we are dealing with considerable amounts of HCl before we use dimethyl as an indicator. If HCl is present in large amounts it is

<sup>1</sup> Decinormal solution of soda  $\frac{N}{10}$  NaHO = 4 gm. NaHO dissolved in 1000 c.c. distilled water. Each cubic centimeter of this solution exactly neutralizes 0.00365 gm. HCl.

safe to assume that the organic acids are present in small quantity only, under which circumstances dimethyl is a safe indicator for free HCl.

*To Determine the Loosely Combined HCl.*—It may be that there is no evidence of the presence of free acids, inorganic or organic, and yet the gastric contents will redden litmus. Such acidity is due to loosely combined acids. These are decomposed by calcic and sodic carbonate, and are therefore included in the estimation of total acidity, but do not respond to the test for free acids. The acid thus combined is commonly HCl, forming HCl-albuminates, HCl-albumoses, and peptones. While organic acids may be similarly combined, they are insignificant in amount and may be ignored. These loosely combined acids are also destroyed by combustion. When free HCl is present, the estimation of the loosely combined HCl is an easy matter. We have simply to estimate the total acidity and the free HCl, and the difference is the loosely combined HCl.

The estimation of loosely combined HCl is made by the Sjoquist-Ewald method as follows: Mix 10 c.c. of filtered gastric contents with .5 gm. (half a saltspoonful) barium carbonate in a capsule. Evaporate to dryness and fuse by a red heat only. Dissolve ash in 50 to 75 c.c. of boiling water and filter. When cool add 5 to 10 c.c. of a saturated solution of sodium carbonate. If no precipitate is formed it shows the absence of barium chlorid and that no combined HCl is present.

*Determination of Organic Acids.*—These include lactic acid, acetic acid, and the true fatty acids, especially butyric. Acetic acid and fatty acids are not formed during normal digestion, and, if present, as they sometimes are, they are either introduced with food or are produced in a fermentation of the carbohydrates set up by bacteria introduced with the saliva.

The physiological presence of *lactic acid* during what may be termed the first stage of digestion, heretofore regarded as physiological, is now called in question, especially by Boas. Boas, because of his recent discovery that all bakers' bread contains lactic acid, substitutes for the ordinary test-meal a thin gruel made of a tablespoonful of oatmeal flour to a quart of water and seasoned with salt. With this meal he maintains that lactic acid is never found in the stomach *unless cancer is present*. The matter, however, is still *sub judice*, though the following careful data, gathered from the experiments of Ellenburger<sup>1</sup> and Ewald, on the subject indicate that there is a primary evolution of lactic acid:

Kinds of food	Number of observations	Number of times lactic acid was found	Number of times lactic acid was absent after taking food	Time (in minutes) after taking food at which lactic acid was found	Free HCl, when first appeared
Mixed diet...	31	26	5	10-100	After 120 minutes.
Bread.....	31	13	18	10-30	After 30 minutes.
White of egg.	15	1	14	75	Seldom before 60 minutes.
Scraped meat.	23	17	6	10-100	Seldom after 120 minutes.

<sup>1</sup>Boas, "Deutsche med. Wochenschrift," 1893, pp. 913-940; Ellenburger and Hoffmeister, "Du Bois Reymond's Archiv f. Physiologie," 1890, p. 280; Ewald and Boas, "Virchow's Archiv," 101, pp. 325, 375.

*Uffelmann's Test.*—Lactic acid is recognized by its effect upon a very dilute, almost colorless, solution of neutral ferric chlorid, which is converted into a canary-yellow color by its action. This is Uffelmann's test. It is rendered more certain if the solution is made by adding carbolic acid to the iron solution until it assumes an amethyst-blue color. To 10 c.c. (2  $\frac{1}{2}$  fluidrams) of two to five per cent. solution of carbolic acid the iron solution may be added until the proper tint is attained. A few drops of even a 0.05 per mille solution of lactic acid (1 to 20,000) will change the blue to the distinctive yellow color.

There are, however, sources of error. The lactates cause the same reaction, but this matters not, because we desire to recognize the lactic acid, whether in combination or not. The reaction, however, takes place with alcohol, sugar, and certain salts, especially phosphates, which are often found in gastric contents.

The color produced by phosphates is not identical, but if the filtrate operated with has a yellow tinge the resulting color may approximate it very closely. Under these circumstances the lactic acid must be extracted with ether. Two to five c.c. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  fluidrams) of the stomach contents are thoroughly shaken with three or four times the amount of ether. The ether is allowed to rise to the top, which it does rapidly, and is then poured off into a glass beaker. More ether is added and the washing repeated until about one fluid ounce (30 c.c.) of ether has been used. The ether is then evaporated by placing the beaker, with its contents, in a vessel of hot water. The residue is redissolved in a few drops of water and *one* or *two* drops of Uffelmann's reagent allowed to fall from a pipet into the solution. Too much of the solution may mask the reaction.

The *fatty* acids, especially *butyric*, strike a tawny yellow color with a reddish tinge with Uffelmann's chlorid of iron solution, but 0.5 per 1000 or 1 to 2000 is required before the reaction occurs.

*Strauss' Method.*—A special apparatus with stopcock is filled with filtered gastric contents to the mark 5 c.c., then ether added to the 25 c.c. Shake thoroughly and allow the liquids to separate, then draw off by the stopcock until the 5 c.c. mark is reached, then add distilled water to 25 c.c. mark, and treat the mixture with two drops of the official tincture of ferric chlorid diluted in the proportion of one to ten. On shaking the water will take on an intensely green color if more than promille of lactic acid is present, while a pale green is assumed in the presents of from 0.5 to 1 promille. The tincture of iron should be kept in a dark colored dropping bottle of about 50 c.c. capacity. Large amounts only of lactic acid which are alone of diagnostic value are shown by the apparatus. Small amounts such as are introduced by an Ewald's test breakfast or due to lactic acid fermentation in the mouth are not shown so that confusion as to the presence of acid is avoided. The test may be made in a test-tube by measuring the required quantities and separating by decantation.

Fatty acids may also be detected by heating to the boiling-point a few cubic centimeters of the gastric filtrate in a test-tube over the mouth of which a strip of moistened neutral or blue litmus-paper is placed. On this the vaporized acid will produce the usual change.

The oily particles of pure *fat* may be recognized floating in the gastric

contents or in the aqueous solution of the residue after evaporating the ethereal extract. Butyric acid may also be separated, in the form of drops, by adding small pieces of calcium chlorid.

*Acetic acid* is easily recognized by its odor, but it may also be detected by neutralizing with sodium carbonate the watery residue after the removal of the ethereal extract, and then adding neutral ferric chlorid solution. A striking blood-red color appears, also produced by formic acid, but this is never a constituent of gastric contents.

*Alcohol*, which is sometimes formed in the stomach in intense yeast fermentation, may be detected by Lieben's iodoform test applied to the distillate of the stomach contents, as follows: To a portion of the distillate add a small quantity of liquor potassæ, then a few drops of a solution of iodine and iodid of potassium (1, 2, 50). If alcohol be present, a yellowish precipitate of iodoform takes place slowly, which may also be recognized by its odor. The same precipitate occurs with acetone, but rapidly.

**Examination of Products of Albumin Digestion.**—The term *proteolysis* is applied to albumin digestion, in which, if complete, all proteid food-stuffs are converted into soluble and diffusible peptone. It takes place partly in the stomach through the agency of pepsin-hydrochloric acid, but probably even to a greater extent in the small intestine, by the action of trypsin, the pancreatic digestive ferment. In this process the first step is the production of certain substances intermediate between albumin and peptone. Those which are of chief importance in the study of gastric digestion are syntonin or acid albumin and the so-called proteoses<sup>1</sup> or albumoses. In the ordinary process of digestion, with a normal gastric juice, some or all of these substances should be at some time present. So far as they are the products of gastric digestion, they may be studied by the aid of a test-meal and removal of the gastric contents, as already described.

*To Estimate the Activity of Proteolysis, or Albumin Digestion.*—By Ewald's method, coagulated white of egg is cut into thin slices and out of these small disks are cut by a cork-borer or similar instrument. These may be prepared in quantity and kept for use in glycerin, which should, however, be washed off before using. An equal quantity of the filtered gastric fluid is placed in four small test-tubes and one or more disks of albumin put into each. To the first nothing else is added; to the second, enough hydrochloric acid to make a solution of about<sup>2</sup> 0.3 to 0.5 per cent. This is accomplished by adding two drops of hydrochloric acid to 90 minims (5 c.c.) of stomach contents. To the third is added a definite quantity of pepsin, about 3 to 7 1/2 grains (0.2 to 0.5 gm.); to the fourth, both hydrochloric acid and pepsin.

The test-tubes are placed in an incubator at about 100° F. (37.8° C.) and from time to time examined with a view to learning how far the liquefaction of the disks of albumin has proceeded. The rate of this will inform us whether digestion would have occurred without the addition of anything, or whether acid or pepsin or both were necessary. We will learn, also, whether by adding more hydrochloric acid we have made the acidity excessive.

<sup>1</sup>The so-called propeptone or hemialbumose is a mixture of proteoses.

<sup>2</sup>The difference between the strength of the acetic acid of the German pharmacopeia (25 per cent. of the anhydrous acid), intended by Ewald, and that of the U. S. P. (32 per cent.) is not sufficient to necessitate a change of proportion.

It must be remembered, however, that after the peptone has reached a certain percentage its further production is retarded, or even suspended, so that there may be an apparently slow reaction with even a very active gastric juice. Ewald correctly reminds us that all laboratory attempts to imitate digestion are defective in the important respect that with our test-tubes and flasks we can neither imitate absorption on the one hand, nor, on the other, allow for the onward movement of the gastric contents, two important functions by which the stomach strives to maintain a fairly uniform degree of concentration of its contents.

*The Action of Rennet, or Lab-ferment, the Milk-coagulating Element of the Natural Gastric Juice.*—The simplest method of estimating the action of rennet is that of Leo. To 10 c.c. (3.6 fluidrams) of raw milk are added two to five drops of stomach contents. Raw milk is used because it coagulates ten times more rapidly than boiled milk, while neutralization is unnecessary because of the relatively small quantity of gastric juice used. The mixture is placed in the warm chamber at 100° F. (37.8° C.), and coagulation should take place in from *one minute to several hours*. The characteristic coagulating of rennet is a *cake of casein* floating in clear serum, while acids produce lumpy and flaky masses.

The rennet-ferment, or enzyme, does not exist primarily as such, but as a rennet-zymogen or pro-enzyme, which itself has no action on milk, but is converted into rennet by the action of any acid, as hydrochloric, or of warm chlorid of calcium. This may be shown as follows: If the spontaneous coagulation action of gastric juice or milk be destroyed by neutralization by an alkaline carbonate, this property may be restored by digesting with dilute hydrochloric acid, or by the addition of a five per cent. solution of calcium chlorid. While fasting, and at the beginning of digestion, zymogen only is present in the stomach, but, later, both it and the ferment are found. An acid reaction for the curdling action of rennet is not absolutely necessary. As pepsin the proteid dissolving ferment and rennet usually accompany each other the presence of one may be inferred from the presence of the other.

*Sahli's Desmoid Reaction.*—This test is intended to determine the sufficiency of gastric digestion without the use of the stomach-tube. It consists in the use of capsules or pills containing some substance which is readily absorbed and as promptly excreted in the urine or saliva. Such substances are methylene blue, salicylic acid and iodoform. Sahli directs as follows:

Methylene blue 0.05 gm. or iodoform .1 gm. is mixed with licorice extract enough to make a pill 3 to 4 mm. in diameter. A piece of rubber dam .2 mm. thick and 4 cm. square, dusted with talcum powder to prevent the edges from adhering, is twisted about the pill enclosing it thoroughly, but avoiding too much tension on the rubber. The twisted pedicle is wound about by a piece of raw catgut size 00, previously soaked in cold water until it becomes pliable. Three turns of the catgut are made about the pedicle each beyond the other, and it is tied in a square knot. The edges of the pedicle are cut close but kept from becoming adherent. The capsule should then be put in water to make sure it is water-tight and sinks readily.

The patient is instructed to swallow the capsule immediately after

a full meal, being cautioned against biting or injuring it. The urine and saliva are collected at intervals and the time noted at which the indicator appears. In the case of methylene blue, it usually imparts to the urine a greenish-blue color, but it may be secreted as a chromogen whence the green is obtained by boiling 10 c.c. of the urine with 1 to 2 c.c. of glacial acetic acid. If iodoform be used as the indicator a little chloroform is added to a few centimeters of the saliva or urine, then 1 c.c. of diluted sulphuric acid and .5 c.c. of a one per cent. solution sodium nitrite, and shaken. If iodoform be present the chloroform takes on a rose color.

Salicylic acid is recognized by adding a solution of perchlorid of iron, filtering off the precipitated phosphates and adding more perchlorid which then strikes a violet color if salicylic acid be present.

When the capsule is taken at midday dinner the reaction is considered positive by Sahli when the indicator appears in the urine on the same day or in the first urine voided on the following morning, that is, in 19 or 20 hours. A positive reaction thus shown means that the gastric juice contains sufficient free HCl and pepsin to digest the catgut and liberate the indicator which was then absorbed and excreted. Methylene blue is preferred as the indicator because of its more ready absorption, and the more constant results which attend its use. It is important to follow the same conditions as when these are altered the time limit changes. As already mentioned, Sahli placed the time limit at 20 hours, but W. H. Corey is a series of experiments in which he sought to follow Sahli's method, concludes that 16 hours is a safer limit and regards a reaction after 16 hours delayed.

Two important sources of error must be kept in mind, viz., first that the elimination of methylene blue is delayed in advanced cardiac and renal disease, and second in enteritis, the latter because its absorption takes place not from the stomach but from the small intestine.

The test dinner is preferred to the Ewald's test breakfast because the latter does not stimulate the mucosa sufficiently to bring out the HCl. Hence after the latter, HCl is often absent while it is generally present in the test dinner removed three hours after ingestion.

Experiment *in vitro* has shown that solutions of lactic acid and pepsin will also digest catgut, but much more slowly than HCl and pepsin. This is what might be expected and a delayed reaction demands the consideration of the presence of lactic acid to the exclusion or reduction of HCl.

In conclusion, the reaction, measuring as it does, the digestive sufficiency of the gastric juice, becomes a test for both hydrochloric acid and pepsin, much less annoying to the patient than the test-meal and according to Corey and others who have systematically tested it, is reliable as a control in those cases where the analysis of the test-breakfast shows an absence of free HCl and enzymes, and so separates the mild from the severe cases. It is not a test for stases or motility.

**Digestion of Starch and Sugar.**—It is well known that during digestion starch is converted into grape-sugar, and cane-sugar is converted into *invert* sugar—a mixture of cane- and grape-sugar. This action, commenced in the mouth by the ptyalin of saliva, is continued to a less degree in the stomach so long as the acidity is slight (0.01 per cent. for HCl, 0.1 or 0.2 per cent. for lactic, 0.4 per cent. for butyric), and is finished in the small

intestine by the trypsin (amylolypsin) of the pancreatic juice. As in albumin digestion, there are intermediate substances between albumin and peptone, so between starch and grape-sugar there are similar intermediate products. The order is as follows:

1. Starch. 2. Dextrins (Erythro-dextrin, Achroö-dextrin). 3. Maltose.
4. Dextrose, or grape-sugar.

Starch is recognized by the deep blue color struck with iodine or Lugol's solution (iodine 1, iodide of potassium 2, distilled water 200), and the reaction grows less vivid as the starch is converted. Of the dextrins, erythro-dextrin strikes not a blue, but a purple color, while solutions of achroö-dextrin, maltose and grape-sugar take on only the yellow color of the iodine solution. Where a mixture of these substances occurs, the first few drops of the iodine solution produce no color at all, or only a transitory one, being taken up by the dextrose and maltose, while the addition of more iodine strikes the purple of erythro-dextrin or the blue of starch.

If, therefore, amylaceous transformation has progressed normally in the mouth and stomach, so much starch should be changed into achroö-dextrin, maltose, or dextrose that the addition of small quantities of Lugol's solution does not strike the characteristic color. If, however, the blue or purple reactions appear, conversion has not been sufficiently rapid into maltose, the principal product of gastric conversion, the change into dextrose being completed in the small intestine. This may be due either to a deficiency of ptyalin or too rapid production of acid in the stomach. From such event we might also infer a hyperacidity of the gastric juice.

**To Determine the Rate of Absorption from the Stomach.**—Penzoldt's and Faber's method is that generally followed. A capsule containing iodide of potassium, 0.1 gm. (1 1-2 grains), is swallowed, being first carefully wiped to remove any adherent particles. The appearance of the iodide in the saliva indicates that absorption has taken place from the stomach. To determine this, starch paper is first prepared by moistening with starch paste and drying. Then, after the salt is swallowed, a piece of the paper is moistened every five minutes with the saliva, and the moistened spot touched with fuming nitric acid. As soon as the iodine appears in the saliva the characteristic blue reaction is struck.

When absorption is normal, this reaction usually takes place in *ten or fifteen minutes*, but when absorption is abnormally delayed, the reaction is also delayed half an hour or more, or it may not occur at all.

**To Test the Motor Function of the Stomach.**—Several methods are practiced. In v. Leube's method the gastric contents are withdrawn six to seven hours after the ingestion of a large meal, or two and a half hours after an Ewald's breakfast. There should be no solid residue. The more suitable meal for this purpose is the larger one given on page 356.

In a second method, suggested by Ewald and Sievers, salol is administered, and the products of its lysis are sought for in the urine. This, though not without drawbacks, is preferred. Salol is composed of phenol and salicylic acid, into which it is broken up by the action of the pancreatic juice, but not by the acid gastric contents. Salicyluric acid, a product of decomposition of salicylic acid, appears in the urine 40 to 60, or at most 75, *minutes* after taking 15 grains (one gm.) of salol when gastric peri-

stalsis is normal. Salicyluric acid is readily detected in the urine by the violet color produced on the addition of neutral ferric chlorid solution. The method employed is to place a drop of urine on a piece of filter-paper and bring in contact with this a drop of a ten per cent. ferric chlorid solution. The edge of the drop will strike a violet color in the presence of a mere trace of salicyluric acid. Decomposition of salol may be delayed by extreme acidity of the gastric contents as discharged into the duodenum. Practically this is not a serious drawback, tolerably constant results being obtained. To meet it, however, Huber suggested that the outside limit of excretion of salicyluric acid be determined—that is the point noted when salicyluric acid fails to appear in the urine after the ingestion of 15 grains (1 gm.) of salol. This should occur at the end of 24 to 30 hours. If, therefore, it continue after this, peristalsis must be slow.

#### OCCULT HEMORRHAGE FROM THE DIGESTIVE TRACT.

By occult or invisible hemorrhages from the digestive tract is meant those in which the amount of blood is so small that it does not visibly alter the appearance of the stools or gastric contents, and in which the corpuscles are so altered by digestion that they cannot be recognized under the microscope.

The blood can be detected by a number of tests, which are made upon a glacial acetic acid and etherial extract of the stool. The most reliable tests are the guaiac-peroxid reaction, the alcin-turpentine reaction (*"American Journal of the Medical Sciences,"* January 1906), and the benzoidin reaction (*"Progressive Medicine,"* December, 1906).

Red meats and beef juice in the diet will give a reaction for blood in the stools. Iron given by the mouth will not do so.

In the diagnosis of ulcers of the stomach and bowel, whether malignant or otherwise, all other sources of bleeding must be eliminated; such as hemorrhoids, menstruation, ulcers in the rectum, varicose veins in the esophagus in cirrhosis of the liver, swallowed blood from any cause, animal-blood in the food, and blood from the irritation produced by the stomach-tube.

The symptom is of especial value: 1. In distinguishing between benign and malignant diseases of the stomach and bowel. A continued negative test is much against cancer. 2. In detecting latent gastric or duodenal ulcer. Here the stools must be examined routinely for a week or more, as such ulcers bleed but rarely. 3. In distinguishing between gastric neuroses with pain and hyperacidity and anemia, and gastric ulcer. A continued negative result almost certainly excludes ulcer.

The presence or absence of blood is also a useful indication of the progress of treatment in gastric ulcer, and of the rapidity with which the diet may be increased.

As a rule, the bleeding in ulcer is intermittent, while in cancer it is much more constant. It may be very difficult to determine in certain cases from what portion of the digestive tract the bleeding comes. However, unless the source is very evident and unimportant, the presence of blood is always a danger signal and its origin should be thoroughly investigated.



## ACUTE CATARRHAL GASTRITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Acute Gastric Catarrh; Acute Dyspepsia; Gastric Fever.*

**Definition.**—Acute inflammation of the stomach, of moderate intensity, due to simple nonspecific irritation or to irritation from the products of decomposing and fermenting foods.

**Etiology.**—This form of inflammation occurs at all ages, and is often due to the irritant effect of indigestible food or food in a state of incipient decay and fermentation. Simply overloading the stomach, even though the food be wholesome, may be a sufficient cause. The introduction of large quantities of strong alcoholic drinks, as often happens in a debauch, is one of the most common causes of acute gastritis of the simple variety. The susceptibility of different individuals and of different families to the foregoing causes of irritation varies greatly.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—A more or less uniform coating of the stomach with mucus is the most constant feature of simple acute gastritis, and justifies for it the name, gastric catarrh. The removal of this mucous coating reveals a hyperemic redness, which in the highest degrees may be associated with punctiform hemorrhages and hemorrhagic erosions. The mucous membrane is swollen and edematous, and minute examination recognizes numerous mucous-laden cylinder cells, which have been extruded from the mucus-glands everywhere present, while even the peptic gland cells are cloudy and granular.

**Symptoms.**—These are a natural sequence of the morbid state. A *want of appetite* and *loathing of food*, *nausea*, more rarely *pain*—these are the more constant subjective symptoms. To them may be added an *unpleasant taste* in the mouth, sometimes bitter, sometimes metallic, a *pasty* sensation of *dryness*, and even *thirst*, a sense of *fullness in the head* rather than headache, and *dizziness*, and often extreme *mental depression*.

Objective symptoms are *epigastric distention*, more rarely *tenderness*, a *coated tongue*, *dryness* of the *lips*, rarely *herpes*, a *heavy breath*, acid or bitter *eructations*, sometimes a scanty secretion, at others an excess of saliva, finally *retching* and *vomiting* with greater or less relief. The *bowels* are constipated, though sometimes there is diarrhea. *Jaundice* is occasionally present, and indicates that the inflammation extends into the duodenum and produces obstruction of the common bile-duct. There may be slight *fever*, sometimes decided, with a temperature of 101° F. (38.3° C.), or slightly more, and a corresponding pulse. On the other hand, the pulse is not infrequently slowed below the normal, being inhibited by the gastric irritation. The *urine* is "feverish," scanty, and high colored, with a corresponding specific gravity and a tendency to deposit urates. Most cases are without febrile symptoms. Indeed, v. Leube says that in a few instances only is fever the result of acute gastric catarrh, and that when the two are associated, the gastric catarrh is rather the result of some acute febrile process, as, for example, one of the infectious fevers. It has occasionally happened that gastritis has been ushered in with a *chill*.

**Gastric Contents.**—The vomited matter and gastric contents removed after a test-meal are deficient in hydrochloric acid, but contain an excess

of mucus, lactic and fatty acids, and more than the normal residue of undigested food. Digestion is prolonged, the stomach-washings exhibiting a considerable amount of undigested food seven hours after the ingestion of a test-meal. Indeed, it often happens that in from 12 to 24 hours after the beginning of such an attack large quantities of undigested food are vomited in much the same condition in which they are swallowed.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not usually difficult, except in the case of the febrile form. In this form, especially when the disease has been ushered in with a chill, it is sometimes difficult to decide between it and some one of the infectious fevers, but a few days' waiting will soon remove the doubt by the appearance in the latter of eruptions or other distinctive symptoms. The presence of a cause sufficient to excite gastric inflammation will add to the probability of the presence of acute catarrhal gastritis.

**Prognosis.**—This is invariably favorable in cases of true simple gastritis.

**Treatment.**—Many mild cases recover spontaneously, if let alone and if all food is withdrawn for 24 hours. The symptoms gradually subside and the patient recovers. In a few cases where there is evidently retained food, an *emetic* will give relief; in all, a brisk *saline purge* is helpful. A bottle of cold solution of citrate of magnesium in divided doses, say a fourth every half hour, is one of the most agreeable and efficient aperients to relieve the congestion and the symptoms. Or some one of the *natural aperient waters*, such as Hunyadi Janos or Friedrichshalle, Apenta, Rubaniat, Veronica, or Carlsbad, may be substituted. If there be great sensitiveness of the stomach, small doses of calomel, frequently repeated, say  $\frac{1}{6}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.011 to 0.016 gm.) every hour, may be substituted, or 7  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 10 grains (0.5 to 0.666 gm.) may be given in one dose. In either event a saline should be given sooner or later, as in this way is secured copious depletion of the upper alimentary canal. The *alkaline mineral waters*, represented by the Vichy, Vals, and Contrexville waters in France, but which have unfortunately no equivalent in any of the natural mineral waters of this country, are admirable adjuvants, since they aid in clearing the stomach of mucous secretion and in producing osmosis. The saline mineral waters represented by the well-known Saratoga waters of this country are also efficient, more especially by their aperient qualities.

## CHRONIC CATARRHAL GASTRITIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Chronic Gastric Catarrh; Chronic Catarrhal Dyspepsia.*

**Definition.**—A condition of chronic hyperemia, associated with excessive mucus secretion and deranged gastric juice formation, with ultimate structural changes in the mucosa.

ACHYLIA GASTRICA is a term applied to a condition in which there is absence of the essential elements of the gastric secretions, viz., free or combined HCl and the ferments pepsinogen and reninazyme. It is a condition more or less associated with chronic gastric catarrh, atrophy and carcinoma, but it may also occur independently of any of these conditions. I deem it unnecessary, therefore, to give the subject further separate consideration.

**Etiology.**—Any cause which will produce continuous moderate irritation of the mucous membrane of the stomach is capable of producing chronic catarrhal gastritis. The immoderate use of alcohol is probably the most frequent of these causes, but constant overeating is also a common cause, especially rapid eating.

Very frequently, too, chronic gastritis is secondary to primary disease elsewhere, and especially mitral disease of the heart and interstitial hepatitis. Both of these affections cause a passive congestion of the stomach, which ultimately produces the lesions characteristic of chronic gastritis. Thrombosis of the portal vein acts similarly. Chronic pulmonary disease, and even diseases of the pleura impeding the circulation in the lungs, produce similar effects through stasis. A predisposition exists in certain families to chronic gastric catarrh.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The fundamental condition is a hyperemic swelling of the gastric mucosa. This is favored by the superficial situation of the venous plexus about the mouths of the gastric glands as contrasted with the deep-seated position of the arterial network around their bases, by the thinness and compressibility of the venous walls, and by the sluggishness of circulation necessitated by the peculiar secretory function of the stomach. The hyperemic surface is, however, more or less obscured by a tough yellowish-white covering, made up of mucus and emigrant pus-cells. The changes are more marked at the pyloric end.

These may constitute the sum of changes, but in more chronic cases minute examination reveals a varying degree of hyperplasia of the connective tissue, and even of the mucous glands, which exhibit in places an atypical branching, like the fingers of a glove. The tubules are distended by secretion in some places, and in others stenosed by the contraction of the overgrown connective tissue surrounding them. The hyperplastic process may result in *plication* of the mucous membrane, such as is natural at the pyloric end, and lead finally to the *mammillated stomach* by atrophy and contraction of certain portions, and to more pronounced swelling of the remaining parts. An ultimate result is sometimes the rare condition known as *polyposis ventriculi*. Atrophy of the mucous membrane may be extensive, and even almost total.

**Symptoms.**—These naturally result from the morbid state. The mucous membrane is bathed with *mucus*. The *gastric juice* is *imperfect* in quality and quantity. Especially is the hydrochloric acid deficient. Digestion is therefore imperfect, the residue of ingested food undergoes fermentation and decomposition, generating lactic, acetic, butyric acids and alcohol. Peristalsis is delayed because of the absence of its natural stimulus and thence follows a further retention of food in the stomach. The natural consequence of such morbid changes is *loss of appetite* and even *disgust for food*, an unpleasant *taste*, a *pasty sensation in the mouth*, a *coated tongue*, and *discomfort after taking food*, including *nausea*, often *vomiting*, sometimes immediately, sometimes an hour or two after taking food. The vomitus consists of undigested food, usually mixed with a large amount of mucus. Its reaction may be neutral or acid, sometimes even acridly so, but the acidity is not due to hydrochloric acid, which is diminished, but to the organic acids generated in fermentation.

To these symptoms may be added *headache*, or a dull, unpleasant feeling in the head, *vertigo*, *disturbed sleep*, *depression of spirits*, a sense of weariness and disgust with life. Very disagreeable is the *distention* and sense of fullness in the epigastrium, causing even *pain*, which adds further to existing discomforts. There may be *tenderness*, but it is diffuse, and not circumscribed. There is usually *constipation*, while the urine may be scanty. Reflected symptoms are *palpitation*; *frequent, slow, or irregular pulse*; shortness of breath. There is no fever. *Cough*—the so-called “stomach cough”—is sometimes present, but more frequently what is called by the patient stomach cough is the cough of tubercular phthisis, which the sanguine patient easily convinces himself is due to stomach derangement.

*Gastric Contents.*—Analysis of the gastric contents, withdrawn after a test-meal, shows a deficiency of pepsin as well as of hydrochloric acid, while the other tests described discover retarded peristalsis and delayed absorption. Occasionally there is a little blood present, and frequently fungi, especially yeast-spores and *sarcinae ventriculi*.

Should the disease progress to total atrophy, the gastric contents, after a test-meal, may even be devoid of mucus as well as of free and combined hydrochloric acid, of pepsin, and epithelium, and may be made up mainly of undigested food, with bacteria and a few round cells. Repeated examinations of stomach contents, after a test-meal, may be necessary before a sufficient knowledge of its features can be arrived at.

**Diagnosis.**—With the symptoms detailed, and the altered state of the secretory, absorptive, and motor functions of the stomach ascertained, there is usually no difficulty in diagnosing chronic gastric catarrh. It is to be remembered, however, that chronic gastric catarrh may accompany ulcer and carcinoma of the stomach, in which the otherwise distinctive symptoms of the former are obscured, while with the exception of tumor and occasional coffee-grounds vomit the symptoms of carcinoma may not differ from those of chronic gastric catarrh, hydrochloric acid and pepsin being deficient in both. Dilatation of the stomach is also accompanied with symptoms of gastric catarrh, including even the clinical characters of the gastric juice, and careful examination must always be made for the physical signs of dilatation.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis and treatment will depend upon the etiology. If the chronic gastric catarrh is a result of chronic cardiac or hepatic disease, it is curable only so far as these affections are curable, and is relieved as these are relieved. Careful physical examination is always necessary in each case, that obscure cases may be recognized.

Chronic gastric catarrh not the result of organic heart, pulmonary or liver disease, and which has not already resulted in atrophy of the mucous membrane, may be cured by careful and persevering treatment. If there be extensive atrophy of the gastric mucous membrane, a proper assimilation of food becomes impossible, and the symptoms of anemia are ultimately added. Their close resemblance to those of pernicious anemia has been pointed out, while an essential cause of pernicious anemia has been held to be gastric atrophy, in evidence of which a case of William Osler and Frederick P. Henry is often quoted.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of chronic gastric catarrh caused by chronic

liver or heart disease is largely that of these affections, but the treatment useful in the ordinary primary forms of the disease may be with advantage associated with that of the more chronic affection.

A successful treatment of catarrhal dyspepsia requires considerable patience, but if the diagnosis be correctly made and the cause removed, the patient may be promised a cure in time. Of primary importance is the *elimination of the cause*, whether it be alcohol or injudicious eating. Simple, wholesome, and properly cooked food, thoroughly masticated and slowly taken, should be the rule of every life, and the simple forms of the disease may sometimes be cured by the return to such a habit, especially if a proper action of the bowels is also habitually secured.

It is not easy to select a *diet* which will suit every case, and after the injunction that articles evidently difficult of digestion, such as pastry, oils, and fats, are to be excluded, it is often sufficient, and even necessary, to leave the choice of special articles to the patient, with the direction to discard what his experience teaches is harmful. Often, however, the patient cannot be trusted to do this, while the moral effect of specific directions is good, but even then our bill of fare must often be tentative.

The measures by which the *regular habit of bowel movement* is brought about must vary with circumstances, but when it is remembered that we have to deal with a congested mucous membrane, it is plain why the salines which deplete the upper alimentary canal are so efficient, especially when associated with mercurials. Among these are the numerous natural aperient waters, such as Friedrichshalle, Hunyadi Janos, Apenta, Carlsbad waters, and our own Saratoga and Bedford waters, all of which are said, in common parlance, to act upon the liver, though, in fact, they simply deplete the alimentary canal. The useful effects of these waters is so often availed of to remove the uncomfortable effect of a debauch in eating that their use is abused. No remedies are, however, so useful when needed, and the fact that almost any of them can be taken before breakfast, securing an effect after that meal, makes them doubly convenient. A fit substitute for the water, especially when traveling, is the Carlsbad Sprudel Salt, obtained by evaporating the Carlsbad water. Carlsbad salt, of which the dose is usually a teaspoonful, is best taken in a glass of hot water. An artificial Carlsbad salt may be made as follows: Sodium sulphate, 50 parts; sodium bicarbonate, 6; sodium chlorid, 3. The dose is a teaspoonful dissolved in a half a glass to a glass of water. The natural waters are, however, to be preferred, if they can be obtained.

The occasional associated treatment by *mercurials*, especially blue mass, in doses of 3 to 10 grains (0.2 to 0.66 gm.) the evening previous, sometimes adds to the efficiency of the salines. Calomel may be substituted in doses of 5 to 10 grains (0.33 to 0.66 gm.), with as much sodium carbonate. If there be nausea, calomel may be given in smaller doses, say  $\frac{1}{10}$  to  $\frac{1}{5}$  grain (0.0011 to 0.0132 gm.) hourly. *Podophyllin* may be substituted for the mercurials or added to them in doses of  $\frac{1}{10}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.006 to 0.06 gm.). *Cascara sagrada* is one of the most valuable of aperients. The best preparations are the solid and fluid extracts. The former may be given in 2 to 5 grain doses (0.132 gm.) in a pill after dinner and after supper. The fluid extract, in 15 or 20 minim (1 to 1.3 gm.) doses, can be

given in the same manner, but the dose of each must be modified to suit the requirements of individual cases. In lieu of the saline aperients before breakfast, a glass of hot water alone, slowly sipped while dressing, is often useful and tends to relieve the morning sickness that sometimes attends chronic gastric catarrh. It probably liquefies the mucus and washes it away into the duodenum.

As to medicines intended to aid indigestion, the most efficient is *hydrochloric acid*, which may sometimes be replaced by nitromuriatic acid. It seems now definitely settled that hydrochloric is the acid to which the gastric juice owes its efficiency, and as well settled that it is diminished in chronic gastric catarrh. Another very important rôle is, however, assigned to hydrochloric acid, viz., an antiseptic effect, in checking the multiplication of pathogenic bacteria—bacteria of fermentation and decomposition—which are continually introduced with the food into the stomach. A third rôle performed by hydrochloric acid is the conversion of the granular pepsinogen in the protoplasm of the peptic cells into the enzyme, pepsin. Its scantiness therefore, not only impairs the activity of the gastric juice, but also favors the acetic and lactic acid fermentations, the products of which keep up irritation. On the other hand, *pepsin* is seldom abnormally scanty, because so little is required for its purpose. As it does no harm, however, it may with propriety be administered with hydrochloric acid. The latter has, heretofore, been administered in too small doses.<sup>1</sup> Not less than 15 minims (1 gm.) of the dilute acid should be given, and from 30 to 60 minims (2 to 4 gm.) are sometimes required. It should be given, further diluted, 15 minutes after a meal, through a glass tube carried back into the fauces, not merely to save the teeth, but also to avoid the unpleasant taste. The pepsin should be given in solution with the hydrochloric acid in doses of 5 to 10 grains (0.33 to 0.66 gm.). The wine of pepsin has always been a favorite preparation with me, notwithstanding the small proportion of pepsin contained in it. I have been in the habit of combining it with nitromuriatic acid rather than with hydrochloric, and not infrequently adding 1/30 grain (0.002 gm.) of strychnin to each dose of 1/2 ounce (15 c.c.) or 2 fluidrams (7.5 c.c.) of the wine.

*Trypsin* or *pancreatin* is also much used. It is commonly prescribed in the tablet form, 5 grains (0.33 gm.) at a dose, sometimes keratin coated, that it may not be dissolved until it passes into the small intestine, where alone in the presence of an alkali it is capable of acting.

It is usual also to employ the *bitter tonics* in the treatment of this form of dyspepsia, including gentian, quassia, columbo, angostura, cardamom, and nux vomica. They are supposed to stimulate the secretion of gastric juice, and should be taken immediately before meals or with food. A moderate amount of alcohol in the shape of a little whisky with water during meals or a glass of dry sherry is often serviceable, but care should be taken in the use of alcohol lest a habit be contracted. The persons to whom it is advised should be well selected, and it should not be recommended to the young. *Stimulating condiments*, such as red pepper and mustard, often give temporary relief, but they ultimately aggravate the local congestion and should

<sup>1</sup> Since 4.5 liters (9 pints) of 0.2 per cent. solution of HCl are required to saturate 100 gm. (about 3 oz.) of dry fibrin, and this amount of acid utilized in combining with the albumin leaves none apparent as free HCl, it is plain why the small doses often prescribed are insufficient.

be forbidden. *Common salt*, on the other hand, is a rational adjuvant, furnishing chlorin for the formation of hydrochloric acid.

*Nitrate of silver* is also a useful drug in cases of chronic gastric catarrh, in doses of  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0165 gm.) 15 minutes to half an hour before meals, dissolved in a quarter of a glass of water. I have never found *bismuth* of much use in this form of dyspepsia. In fact, its tendency to produce constipation is a contraindication to its use. Where there is acidity it may be useful, as may also be sodium bicarbonate and mint, but it is better, if possible, to strike at the root of the evil by preventing the fermentations which produce the flatulence and acid. *Beta naphthol* in 3 grain (0.2 gm.) doses after meals is also an efficient remedy where there is fermentation and gaseous distention.

In obstinate cases the *milk treatment* may be resorted to with advantage, and should be carried out with skimmed milk or whole milk diluted with water or Vichy. The efficiency of the milk treatment is largely due to the fact that the quantity of food taken is greatly reduced. Not more than 2 ounces should be given at first, every two hours, the quantity increased only as the hunger of the patient demands more. There will be at first a loss of weight, but this is again recovered with the increase in quantity. Having secured a tolerance for milk, of which from 3 to 5 pints (1  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  liters) are required in 24 hours, the interval may be prolonged and the other articles of food cautiously added—a little bread and butter, an egg, a chop, or a small piece of steak, broiled. Gradually the simpler vegetables, such as rice and potatoes, may be added, then weak tea and coffee cautiously, the effect of each article being carefully watched. If flatulence is caused by the farinacea and sugars, they should be withdrawn. *Hot bread* and *fats* will rarely ever be *permissible* to such patients. The same may be said of *ice-cream* and *iced water* with meals, though a moderate amount may be permitted between meals, especially of iced water. Ripe *fruits*, on the other hand, are very desirable foods and should be allowed tentatively.

In bad cases of chronic gastric catarrh *lavage* is one of the most useful measures. Not only does it wash away the coating of mucus which is at once a hindrance to the secretion of the gastric juice and a cause of nauseous discomfort to the patient, but it also stimulates glandular activity. It should be done in the morning before breakfast, with the stomach-tube already described, with funnel attachment. Simple water as hot as can be borne, may suffice, or if there be much mucus, a two per cent. solution of sodium bicarbonate or Carlsbad salt, or a one per cent. solution of sodium chlorid may be used. If antiseptic fluids are indicated, a two per cent. solution of resorcin may be substituted, or a one per cent. solution of salicylic acid. Nitrate of silver may also be used in lavage. The late D. D. Stewart recommended a solution of 15 grains to a pint (1 gram to the liter). The stomach must be previously cleansed and the silver also finally washed out by lavage, using salt solution.

The stomach-tube having been introduced, as directed on page 344, the tepid water or solution employed is run in slowly and removed by siphonage, the outer end of the tube being lowered for the latter purpose. This process is repeated until the stomach is thoroughly washed out. Auto-

lavage is easily practiced by the patient himself by means of the apparatus illustrated in the text. Lavage should be practiced before a meal or it may be conveniently done at bedtime, after which the night's rest may be improved and the stomach will be ready for breakfast the next day.

It is in these cases, too, that a course at Carlsbad is very efficient, and remarkable cures are reported. Here, too, the restricted dietary and depletion of the upper alimentary canal by the natural mineral waters are



FIG. 30.—Leube-Rosenthal Arrangement for Auto-lavage

the beneficial agents. Similar courses are carried out at Kissingen, Wiesbaden, and Ems, but, unfortunately, we have no such places in America. Saratoga fulfills the conditions so far as an aperient water is concerned, but the majority of persons who go to Saratoga continue eating and drinking as at home. Finally, the habitual use between meals of the alkaline mineral waters alluded to—viz., Vichy, Vals, and Contrexville—is undoubtedly useful, relieving and averting gastric catarrh.

### PHLEGMONOUS OR SUPPURATIVE GASTRITIS.

**Definition.**—A rare form of gastritis, in which there is diffuse purulent infiltration of the submucosa, but sometimes also circumscribed abscess, causing a possibly detectable tumor in the gastric region, a tumor which disappears if the abscess ruptures.

**Etiology.**—Phlegmonous gastritis is a result of infectious processes, among which have been puerperal fever and other forms of pyemia. It has been found associated with peritonitis and trauma. In more cases a cause is not discoverable. It has been met more frequently in men than in women.



**Symptoms and Diagnosis.**—Epigastric pain and tenderness, general abdominal pain and tympany, vomiting, diarrhea, fever, delirium, dry tongue, small, frequent pulse, coma, collapse, and death—symptoms that closely resemble those of peritonitis, with which, as has been said, it is sometimes associated—are those met in phlegmonous gastritis. The vomited matter very rarely contains pus. It is plain, therefore, that these symptoms, associated with an infectious process, can only give rise to suspicion that the disease is present, since the same symptoms may be caused by peritonitis. Even the vomiting of pus is not diagnostic, because pus may arise from other sources between the mouth and stomach. The presence of a tumor which subsides after vomiting of pus furnishes better ground for suspicion, though vomited pus may also come from an abscess in the vicinity of the stomach which has ruptured into that organ.

**Treatment.**—This can only be symptomatic, as nothing can be done to avert a termination which is invariably fatal.

## TRAUMATIC AND TOXIC GASTRITIS.

**Definition.**—An inflammation of the stomach caused by the ingestion of corrosive poisons, such as the strong mineral or organic acids, caustic alkalies, phosphorus, arsenic, corrosive sublimate, and the like.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The appearance differs a good deal, according to the degree of irritation. In extreme degrees, such as are produced by the strongest acids and alkalies, the mucous membrane is disintegrated, shreddy, and may be converted into a black eschar, the borders of which are lighted up with intense inflammation. In milder forms, such as are produced by phosphorus, arsenic, and strong alcohol, there are cloudy swelling and fatty degeneration of the gastric gland cells and vessel-walls, producing ulceration and hemorrhagic extravasation. The fury of the irritation is expended on the fundus, as the part first reached, and its ravages become less extensive as the pylorus is approached.

**Symptoms.**—These also vary with the degree of irritation, but there are always *intense burning pain, tenderness on pressure, thirst, and vomiting of blood* and even of fragments of mucous membrane. To these are added, in severe cases, *small, frequent pulse, cold sweat, and collapse*. These latter symptoms point to peritonitis, a very frequent complication, the direct result of the deep-seated action of the irritant. If the patient does not perish promptly, *symptoms indicating blood dyscrasia* supervene, including albuminuria, hematuria, jaundice, subcutaneous blood extravasations, and the like. When recovery takes place or death is long delayed, varying areas of mucous membrane may be replaced by *cicatricial tissue*, and there may be subsequent contraction and distortion.

**Diagnosis.**—This is based on a knowledge that the patient has swallowed a corrosive poison. In the absence of this knowledge the odor of the breath may suggest the cause, and evidences of corrosive action in the mouth and pharynx often disclose unfailling signs.

**Prognosis.**—This varies with the degree of lesion. The gastritis caused by the powerful corrosive poisons is always fatal. The lesser degrees may be followed by recovery.

**Treatment.**—This consists, first, in the use of chemical opposites, as vinegar and other weak acids for alkalies and alkalies for acids. The antidotes called for by special substances are freshly prepared ferric hydrate<sup>1</sup> for arsenic, lime-water for oxalic acid, cold water and ice after the specific action of the poison has been counteracted, and ice externally to the abdominal walls. These should be followed by the free use of diluents and demulcents, of which the various mucilages and milk are examples. (See concluding section of book on the Treatment of Poisons.)

*Diphtheritic Gastritis.*—This occurs sometimes as an extension from faucial or laryngeal diphtheria, but more frequently it is secondary to typhus or typhoid fever, small-pox, scarlet fever, pneumonia, and sometimes primarily in weak children. There is no way to recognize such condition during life.

*Mycotic Gastritis.*—It is very doubtful how far fungi can cause inflammation of the stomach. The bacteria which flourish in the mouth are destroyed by the acid gastric juice, while the fungi that thrive in acid fluids, such as the yeast fungus, the penicilium, and the sarcina, are probably accidental results of the retention of the gastric contents beyond the natural time and are not harmful. The possibility of their producing noxious results cannot, however, be denied. Ulceration has even been ascribed to them. On the other hand, the larvæ of certain insects must also be acknowledged as possible causes of inflammation.

## NERVOUS DYSPEPSIA.

SYNONYM.—*Gastric Neurasthenia.*

**Definition.**—A form of dyspepsia due to nervous influence, in which, notwithstanding the presence of a train of annoying symptoms, the act of digestion is completely accomplished within the normal time of seven hours, and seven hours after an ordinary dinner the stomach is free from residue.

**Etiology.**—The nervous temperament and feminine gender predispose to nervous dyspepsia. Any cause that develops an overexcitability of the nervous system may become a factor of nervous dyspepsia. It is this form to which the neurasthenic and overworked, and also women with pelvic trouble, are especially prone.

**Symptoms.**—It must be admitted that the only constant feature of nervous dyspepsia is the etiological one, yet we may find symptoms to aid a diagnosis apart from the cause.

*Pyrosis*, accompanied by *loud, noisy cructations*, is quite characteristic, while *noisy rumbling of the bowels* is often heard, caused by hyperperistalsis. Borborygmi and gurgling set up usually very soon after eating, so loud as to be heard at a distance, and thus to become often a mortification to the patient, while this very emotion reacts to increase it. The movement extends to the lower bowels. The associated discomfort varies greatly and is sometimes extreme. Peristalsis may be reversed, and in extreme cases it is said that enemas and even fecal matter have been discharged *per orcm*.

<sup>1</sup>Prepared by precipitating solution of persulphate of iron by ammonia.

On the other hand, *vomiting is rare*. There is also often palpitation of the heart, with other nervous symptoms. *Constipation* is sometimes present. The nervous dyspeptic is less disposed to be anxious about himself or to dwell on his ills than is he with catarrhal dyspepsia, but may also be restless, sleepless, and depressed in spirits. As in catarrhal dyspepsia there may be *loss of appetite*, an *unpleasant taste* in his mouth, *nausea*, *dizziness*, *headache*—pressure on the head. So, too, a *sense of discomfort* in contrast to sharp pain; also distention during digestion, but in nervous dyspepsia, if the interest of the patient is strongly excited by external matters, as, for example, pleasant society or even business interest, he may for the time forget it. *Gastralgia* may, however, be associated, especially the form attended by hyperacidity.

Wilhelm v. Leube, who has given the subject of nervous dyspepsia much attention, makes three clinical varieties:

1. Those in which the hydrochloric acid is present in normal amounts, which he says may be regarded as a fundamental type.
2. Those in which the HCl is diminished.
3. Those in which the HCl is in excess.

In each of these cases the digestion is complete at the end of the normal time, except that sometimes it may be delayed for starches in the third type of hyperacidity. Thus, while nervous dyspepsia is chiefly a sensory neurosis, it is to a less degree secretory and also, to a degree, motor, as evidenced by the occasionally associated hyperperistalsis.

**Diagnosis.**—The frequent dependence of nervous dyspepsia on other conditions requires a broad etiological study. Thus, as v. Leube suggests, we have first to settle the question as to whether it is an independent affection or a part of a neurasthenia. The urine should be studied, because the phenomena of nervous dyspepsia are sometimes a manifestation of uremic intoxication of a mild degree in contracted kidney. The spleen should also be explored, because the malady is sometimes a result of malaria. In still other cases it is a symptom of chlorosis or hysteria. In all these cases the nervous dyspepsia is the effect of the operation of the disease on the nervous system, and again in other cases it is the result of sympathy with sexual diseases, especially in women with disease of the uterus and ovaries.

Again, we have to distinguish it from *ulcer of the stomach*, which the hyperacid form resembles, but from which it differs in that the pain is relieved by pressure and sometimes by taking food, both of which acts increase the pain in ulcer. The occurrence of hemorrhage from the stomach, of course, under these circumstances points definitely to ulcer. Nervous dyspepsia may, however, continue as a sequel of both healed ulcer and gastric catarrh, since their effect is a neurasthenic one. Finally, it is to be distinguished from the form of *catarrhal dyspepsia* with similar symptoms by the delayed completion of the digestive act characteristic of the latter, as well as the etiological factor, which is the most important criterion.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of nervous dyspepsia varies with the cause, but it is desirable also to determine by chemical examination the state of secretion, whether normal, hyperacid, or of diminished acidity. The treatment of all three forms is, however, largely a moral one, since nervous influence may be at once a cause of increased or diminished HCl secretion,

but this is especially true of the type attended with normal secretion. The patient must be assured that there is no organic disease and be compelled to desist from self-study. Along with this, his general muscular and nervous tone must be improved. He must be encouraged to take food and not to avoid it, and the moral effect of a systematic arrangement of diet is good. The neurotonics, strychnin, gentian, nux vomica, taken with meals are helpful, but too much medicine is harmful. Occasionally the nervous sedatives, including the bromids and valerian, are of service.

When there is scanty secretion of HCl this acid must be given according to the rules already laid down, 15 to 30 minims (1 to 2 gm.) of the dilute hydrochloric acid 15 minutes to half an hour after a meal. On the other hand, if there is excessive HCl, alkalies must be prescribed as directed in the section on Hyperchlorhydria.

*Atonic Dyspepsia—Simple Atony of the Stomach.*—Atonic dyspepsia is a variety of dyspepsia, especially common in persons of nervous temperament, which scarcely deserves separate description; but as the term is frequently employed, some attempt should be made to direct its correct application. If used, it should be applied to cases in which delayed gastro-intestinal activity or muscular atony, with *stasis of the gastric contents*, is the characteristic feature. As such it may be a variety of catarrhal dyspepsia or of dilated stomach. In such cases a considerable portion of a test-meal may be withdrawn at the end of seven hours. It is probably associated with more or less deficient secretory activity, though not always. Under these circumstances, too, there is apt to be flatulent distention of the abdomen, whence the terms *flatulent dyspepsia* and *intestinal dyspepsia*. A further natural consequence of such delayed mobility is *constipation*.

True gastric atony is also characterized by other symptoms which are not commonly included under those of atonic dyspepsia. Such condition undoubtedly plays a part in dilatation of the stomach, an important morbid state to be separately considered. Such atony, also, involving the cardiac orifice, favors eructation and regurgitation from the stomach, an extreme degree of which is the rare condition of rumination, or *mercismus*, in which the patient regurgitates the swallowed food, oftentimes voluntarily, and chews it again like ruminants. Such a power of regurgitation had the late Brown-Séquard. It is sometimes hereditary, and may be taught to others.

## HYPERCHLORHYDRIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Nervous Hypersecretion of Hydrochloric Acid; Hyperpepsia.*

**Definition.**—Hyperchlorhydria, or hypersecretion of hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, is a symptom of different morbid conditions of the stomach, notably ulcer and nervous dyspepsia. In a certain number of cases, however, being the chief symptom and apparently independent of any stimulus like the presence of food, it may be studied as an independent neurosis. The term *hyperpepsia*, suggested by Hayem, is not correct, since this state is not characterized by excess of the digestive ferment, but of the chlorin element, especially hydrochloric acid. In normal digestion the

total acidity as represented by free and combined HCl may be put down at 1.5 to 2 parts per 1000, requiring 4 to 6 c.c. decinormal solution for neutralization, while in hyperchlorhydria it may reach 3 and 4 parts in 1000, requiring 8 to 10 c.c. decinormal solution to neutralize.

Eliminating the hyperchlorhydria included under nervous dyspepsia and ulcer of the stomach, there remain two varieties:

1. Simple paroxysmal hyperchlorhydria, lasting for an hour or several days.
2. Continuous chronic hypersecretion, which takes place spontaneously during fasting, or, even though excited by food stimulus, continues after the latter has ceased to act. The latter variety is also called Reichmann's disease, after him who first described it.

**Etiology.**—Both forms of hyperchlorhydria are most frequent in neurasthenics and emotional persons, but occur also in connection with other neuropathies, such as migraine, chlorosis, and tabes. The simple form may also be associated with ulcer of the stomach, and more rarely with cancer and gastritis.

**Symptoms.**—In *paroxysmal hyperchlorhydria* there are *pain and epigastric discomfort, cructations, heartburn, thirst, nausea, and even vomiting, headache, and constipation*. The attacks may last for an hour, or may extend over several days, terminating in vomiting; or by remedial measures, such as drinking large quantities of water, which dilutes the acids, or by saturation with albuminous food, with which it enters into combination. The *urine, because of much ingestion of albuminous food, is apt to be highly charged with urea*.

In the *continuous form* the same symptoms are present, but without intermission. The pain is even more severe, and is especially prone to come on at night; there is a *capricious appetite*, which is often excessive. Where the appetite remains, pain may occur several hours after taking food. The *vomiting* is often copious, gaseous, may contain remnants of undigested starchy food, and is of *intensely acid reaction*. It is likely to take place several hours after a meal, also at night. The *urine is scanty* and there is *constipation*. The patients gradually emaciate and become anemic, even though they may take a good deal of food.

A very frequent consequence of continuous hyperchlorhydria is *dilatation of the stomach*, as originally pointed out by Riegel, the distinctive symptoms of which may ultimately be added. The dilatation may be caused by spasmodic contraction of the pylorus, due to the irritation of the hyperacid gastric juice, or to the accumulation of fluid and undigested food in connection with a *nervo-motor atony* of the muscular coat of the stomach. As the dilatation increases there may ensue atrophy of the glandular structure of the stomach, and while the hypersecretion persists the hyperchlorhydria gradually diminishes and may disappear. In such event there may be an excess of fixed chlorids in the gastric juice secreted by the mucous membrane, which is, however, incapable of elaborating hydrochloric acid. *Gastritis* is also a result of hyperchlorhydria and contributes further to the symptoms, especially to pain.

**Diagnosis.**—A positive diagnosis of hyperchlorhydria can only be made through analysis of the gastric contents. This is done in the sixth

hour after a test dinner, with a view to discovering the presence of an excess of hydrochloric acid. The same symptoms may, indeed, be caused by organic acids, while the hydrochloric acid is in normal amount. If the stomach is washed out in the evening and the next morning, no food being ingested in the meantime, the contents are expressed and found to be hyperchlorhydric, the condition is one of continuous hyperchlorhydria. Microscopic examination of the gastric contents may also aid in the diagnosis. Such examinations made one to one and a half hours after a test breakfast or three to four hours after a test dinner, will often reveal a large number of unaltered starch-corpuscles, instead of only a few as in normal digestion, while the so-called snail-like cells are often found in this condition, as originally shown by Jaworski. They are also, however, found in patients with normal secretion.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of simple hyperchlorhydria is favorable; that of the continuous form is grave, the disease being incurable after a certain stage has been reached. It becomes, therefore, important to treat the simple form promptly and intelligently before it passes over into the continuous form.

**Treatment.**—The indications for treatment in hyperchlorhydria are evident. Their measure should, however, be based upon the estimation of the acidity of the gastric contents. They are (1) to neutralize the excessive acid secretion, and (2) to restrain its formation.

The first indication is met in two ways:

- (a) By saturating the acid by nitrogenous food.
- (b) By the administration of alkalies.

(a) The former is fulfilled by the use of *meat and milk diet*. It has, however, its limits, because when the tendency to acid secretion exists, it is often maintained even after that present is combined with any albuminous food that may be in the stomach. Hence it is that the pain is felt some hours after a meal when the albumen is digested. (b) Since there is a limitation to the ingestion of meat its use must be supplemented by *antacids*, which further neutralize the effect of the acid. The alkali most frequently employed for this purpose is sodium bicarbonate, though calcined magnesia is in some respects better because of its greater saturating power. Prepared chalk was far more efficient than any other alkali in one case under my care. An idea of the amount of hydrochloric acid secreted may be obtained from the fact that probably a half liter (about a pint) of gastric juice is secreted in an hour, 4 or 5 liters (8.4 to 10.5 pints) in three hours, and should such gastric juice contain 3 parts of HCl in 1000, a proportion often exceeded in hyperchlorhydria, there would be some 12 to 15 gm. (180 to 225 grains) of the HCl to neutralize. Since 1 gm. of hydrochloric acid requires 1.48 gm. *sodium carbonate*, 20 to 25 gm. (300 to 375 grains) would be required to neutralize the whole amount of acid—a large quantity. The sodium carbonate should be administered some time after meals, just before the time the pains are expected. It should be dissolved in water or milk, or put in capsules or cachets. The doses should be sufficient to counteract the acidity—i. e., 10 to 20 grains (0.66 to 1.3 gm.) or more. The quantity of carbonic acid evolved sometimes distends the stomach uncomfortably. Smaller doses of *calcined magnesia* suffice, and it is surprising that its use is

not more general. It has the disadvantage of being insoluble in water, but not only are smaller doses sufficient, but there is also absence of carbonic acid evolution. It is indicated especially where there is constipation.

Other alkalies may be used, such as the potassium salts, and the official *liquor potassæ* in 15 to 30 drops (0.8 to 1.7 c.c.) in milk may be used with benefit. The *benzoate of sodium* may be prescribed in 10 grain (0.66 gm.) doses where antiseptics is required or fermentation is present. *Lime-water* is also useful, but large doses are required, as its neutralizing power is small. One-half ounce to an ounce (15 to 30 c.c.) or more should be given. Lime dissolves more largely in saccharine solution than in pure water, and larger doses may thus be given in smaller bulk. Dilute alkaline mineral waters, such as Vichy, Vals or Contrexville, may be used during a meal. Lavage with nitrate of silver solution may also be used as directed on p. 371.

(2) Constitutional treatment should be directed to the cause, if it can be ascertained, neurosis by nervines, chlorosis by iron and arsenic. Of course, it is better, if possible, to prevent the excessive secretion of the juice. For this purpose *sodium sulphate* has been recommended, more particularly in the shape of Carlsbad water. Or the sodium sulphate may be dissolved in Vichy, say 45 to 90 grains (3 to 6 gm.) in a glass. It is given in the morning before breakfast, or, if necessary, may be given before the other meals.

**Diet.**—While the medicinal treatment of hyperchlorhydria is in most cases indispensable, the diet is equally important. It has already been said that theoretically a meat and milk diet is indicated, because meat and milk consume in their digestion the excess of HCl. On the other hand, the starchy foods are but imperfectly digested. Imbibing the acid secretion, they swell up, but do not dissolve, while they favor, on the other hand, irritating acid fermentation. Some object to meat diet because of its overstimulating effect on the acid secretion, and recommend vegetables instead. This is, however, fallacious, and experience sustains the verdict in favor of meat and a minimum of starchy foods. It should be finely cut and well masticated, while meat powder may be substituted. Milk should be the drink, though the alkaline mineral waters may be taken at meals. In extreme cases a pure meat diet, the meat raw or nearly so, finely minced and spread on bread, may be necessary. A meal may consist of about 3 1/2 ounces (100 gm.) of raw meat, a couple of thin slices of stale bread or zwieback, a little butter, and a glass of plain water or weak alkaline water, such as Vals or Vichy. Or an exclusive milk diet may be tried, in which event the milk should be well alkalized or peptonized. To these are added, as the case improves, raw meat, meat powder or meat juice and eggs, and later still starchy foods may be tentatively given, associated with diastasic malt. Where acid secretions and undigested residue of food remain in the stomach long after the ingestion of food, the organ should be washed out. This may be done two or three times a week, or even daily. Washing out may indeed be used to relieve the acute symptoms.

In these cases overstimulation of the stomach, induced especially by alcohol, or by pepper, mustard, and other condiments, should be avoided. In like manner coarse food of any kind is contraindicated. On this account constipation is sometimes best treated by enemas, in order to avoid the administration of irritating medicines by the stomach.

Of *medicines* other than those intended to meet the symptoms, arsenic, in the shape of Fowler's solution, is sometimes efficient. Long courses of it should be practiced, but large doses are not often allowable because of the irritation excited by them. Silver nitrate may also be employed in doses of 1.4 grain (0.0165 gm.), in which dose it is sometimes sedative when given on an empty stomach.

The rest cure as originally suggested by S. Weir Mitchell often is a most efficient aid to the successful treatment of hyperchlorhydria.

It not infrequently happens that gastric analyses fail to find any excess of HCl notwithstanding other symptoms point to hyperchlorhydria. In such an event it may be supposed that a previous condition of hyperesthesia of the gastric mucous membrane. The treatment would be the same.

### GASTRALGIA.

**Definition.**—A term applied to recurring attacks of gastric pain of great severity without discoverable organic lesion or deranged function.

**Etiology.**—The disease is confined almost exclusively to women, but does occur occasionally in stalwart men. It is more frequent in weak, anemic women, and those subject to menstrual derangement, in brunettes rather than in blondes. It is especially frequent and severe about the menopause, but does not cease with it. When associated with excessive secretion of gastric juice, or hyperchlorhydria, gastric pain does not come into the category of gastralgia. It is usually independent of exciting cause, such as the taking of food, but it may be induced by food.

**Symptoms.**—The attack may come on suddenly or with gradually increasing severity first in the neighborhood of the ensiform cartilage, whence it radiates into the back and around the lower ribs. It is a *boring, burning pain* of extreme severity, sometimes causing fainting and collapse, relieved by pressure, such as is produced by boring the fist into the epigastrium or pressing it against some hard substance. On the other hand, it is sometimes excited by pressure. Its most striking feature, after its agonizing severity, is its *intermittent, paroxysmal* character, whence it has been held to be malarial in origin. The pain is usually the sole symptom, but it may be associated with *nausea* and *vomiting* or with nervous symptoms, such as *globus hystericus* and *unnatural hunger*. The attack, after a variable duration of from a few minutes to an hour or more, may subside gradually or suddenly without other symptoms, though sometimes with vomiting and eructations, at others with the discharge of a large quantity of pale urine. One case under my care almost always began with a chill, more or less typical, and it is certain that there was no malaria. The interval between the attacks varies greatly. It may be a week or it may be months.

**Diagnosis.**—Essential gastralgia is to be differentiated from intercostal neuralgia and the so-called symptomatic gastralgia due to ulcer, rarely cancer, from the gastric crises of tabes, and from biliary and intestinal colic; also from the pain of peritoneal adhesions succeeding operation.

In *intercostal neuralgia* the pain is not so severe and the paroxysms are of longer duration, while careful examination will discover its focus in an intercostal situation as compared with an epigastric. In *ulcer of the stomach*



there is not that total intermission or longer interval of total intermission characteristic of gastralgia, while the general health of the patient with ulcer is commonly more seriously affected. This is, however, not always so, as gastric ulcer may be associated with robustness of appearance. In gastric ulcer pressure increases the pain, while in gastralgia it tends to relieve it. *Carcinoma*, as contrasted with gastralgia, always visibly affects the general health. Careful examination will generally discover a different seat of the pain in *biliary colic*, while the almost invariable presence of jaundice settles the question. In a well-established case of *tabes* there need be no difficulty in diagnosis, but in cases where the diagnosis is not well established there may be much doubt. The history of attacks in comparatively early life and thence throughout life point to gastralgia. *Abdominal colic* has a different focus and is more apt to be associated with gaseous distention. Peritoneal adhesions should always be suspected when the pain succeeds abdominal section. Very rarely the pain of appendicitis may resemble that of gastralgia.

**Prognosis.**—True gastralgia never destroys life, but the attacks may continue to recur at intervals throughout it.

**Treatment.**—The severest attacks of gastralgia can only be relieved by the use of *morphin*, which is best given hypodermically in the smallest doses which will suffice. Exceeding care must, however, be exercised to avoid a morphin habit. In milder cases chloroform may answer the purpose, or a combination long prescribed in the clinics of the University of Pennsylvania and deservedly popular is, equal parts of chloroform, compound tincture of cardamom, aromatic spirit of ammonia, and brandy, of which a teaspoonful may be given every half-hour or 15 minutes until relief comes. If needed, a few drops of deodorized tincture of opium may be added to each dose to increase the anodyne effect.

Anemia should be treated with iron and arsenic, and a change of scene is often beneficial, while sea-bathing is a form of hygiene which is sometimes especially useful. The bowels should receive careful attention. If neurasthenia or hysteria be present, the rest cure, associated with massage, as described under the appropriate section, is often an efficient cure. Gastralgia may be benefited by lavage with nitrate of silver solution as directed on p. 371.

## ANOREXIA NERVOSA.

This term is applied to a condition in which absolute loss of appetite is the chief and characteristic symptom. Associated with this are, naturally, great debility, shortness of breath, dizziness, constipation, and sometimes headache; rarely, also, vomiting; sooner or later, emaciation. In women, in whom the symptoms usually occur, there is cessation of the catamenia. The name was suggested by Sir William Gull.

**Prognosis.**—This is favorable, cases being rarely, if ever, fatal.

**Treatment.**—The usual tonic measures are likely to fail to excite appetite in these cases, and nourishment must often be given either by the rectum or by forced feeding. The latter is done as follows: A short rubber tube, long enough to reach just below the cricoid cartilage, is introduced as directed on page 344. A bottle or funnel should be attached, and from this

liquid nourishment is slowly introduced. This may be milk, plain or peptonized, broths or eggs, Murdoch's or Mellin's food. Estimating that 3 1/2 ounces (100 gm.) of albumin, 5 ounces (150 gm.) of fat, and 10 ounces (300 gm.) of carbohydrates are a sufficient amount per diem, Wiessner recommends 1 quart (1 liter) of milk, 2 ounces (60 gm.) of butter, 6 eggs, and 3 1/2 ounces (100 gm.) of sugar to be mixed and warmed while stirring. One-third of this amount is introduced three times daily. The food is usually easily digested, for it is not the digestion which is at fault, but the appetite, and the patient, encouraged by the result of forced feeding, is stimulated to eat for herself.

### NERVOUS VOMITING.

A form of vomiting resulting from direct or reflex irritation of the centers presiding over vomiting, and independent of anatomical lesion in the stomach. Like nervous dyspepsia, it is probably an expression of a general irritable condition of the gastric nerves—a manifestation of a general neurasthenia. It has been suggested that the exciting cause is some irritating leukomain of unknown nature.

**Etiology.**—Its subjects for the most part are hysterical and neurasthenic women, more often of dark complexion; but it is also the result of disease of the brain and its membranes and of the medulla and spinal cord, such as tabes dorsalis, when it may take the place of other symptoms of gastric crisis. It is apt to be associated with diseases of the kidneys, liver, uterus, and other distant organs. While more usual in adults, it may also occur in children. Pure nervous vomiting is especially seen in neurotic families in which there is a tendency to nervous disease, including insanity and epilepsy. On the other hand, the absence of the hysterical temperament is often conspicuous. It affects rather the upper classes.

**Symptoms.**—Especially characteristic of nervous vomiting are the *absence of nausea*, the *suddenness* of the act of vomiting, and the absence of the straining. More rarely there is nausea. The *appetite* is good and the vomiting generally follows a meal, but it may also occur at irregular intervals. In the absence of organic nervous disease the patient may be well nourished. There may also be *constipation*, *headache*, *dizziness*, *epigastric pulsation*, and gnawing sensation in the stomach. Intense *acidity of the vomited matter* may be present. To this condition Rosenbach has applied the term *nervous gastroxynsis*. In one of his cases the HCl reached four per cent. In the typical form, however, the vomitus is not abnormally acid, and in this respect it differs from acid dyspepsia and Reichmann's disease. The duration of the vomiting varies. It may be a single act or it may last for 24 hours.

**Diagnosis.**—This is based, in the first place, on the exclusion of those organic diseases of the stomach which cause vomiting, and, in the second place, on the presence of any one of the affections named as possible causes.

**Prognosis.**—Except when associated with organic nervous disease, this is ultimately favorable. George M. Garland<sup>1</sup> reported a fatal case of apparently pure nervous vomiting. At autopsy the mucous membrane of the stomach was found thin, and reddened on its inner surface with minute

<sup>1</sup> Garland, G. M., "Trans. of the Assoc. of Am. Physicians," vol. iv., 1889.

hemorrhagic points. There was slight interstitial nephritis too insignificant to have any effect, and the gastric changes were probably secondary, so that the case may be regarded as purely neurotic.

**Treatment.**—When vomiting is the result of disease of the nervous system the fundamental treatment must be that of the disease itself. Temporary relief may be afforded such cases by measures which make a profound nervous impression. Such, preeminently, is the *blister* to the epigastrium. The suddenness and irregularity of the vomiting make it almost impossible to provide against a given event. So that *ice*, internal or external, *sinapisms*, *dry cupping*, and similar measures efficient in continuous vomiting or in vomiting preceded by nausea are scarcely available. When, however, circumstances permit their employment, they should be used.

*Nerve sedatives*, including the bromids and valerian, may be used, but hypodermic injections of *morphin* are often necessary, and are usually very efficient. When practiced by the physician only, they become a safe measure. *Rectal alimentation* should be employed when the vomiting is obstinate, and has apparently saved life in many instances. When there is nervous gastroxynsis, lavage with warm water may be used with advantage, as recommended by Rosenbach. The headache, etc., apt to be associated with this form is at once relieved.

## GASTRIC AND DUODENAL ULCERS.

SYNONYMS.—*Ulcus ventriculi pepticum*; *Peptic Ulcer*; *Simple or Round Ulcer*.

**Etiology.**—There is probably more than one mode of origin of gastric ulcer. It may have its origin in *mechanical injury* associated with *feeble nutrition*, which permits the gastric juice to digest out the mucous membrane to various depths, resulting in the formation of an ulcer. Such mechanical injury may be due to pressure exerted in the course of one's occupation, such as shoemaking, washing, tailoring, and the like, in which pursuits the costal cartilages are pressed against the stomach. The second of these conditions—for it is likely that neither would be alone sufficient to produce the lesion—is produced by such states as *anemia*, *chlorosis*, *heart disease*, *Bright's disease*, and the like. *Overdistention* of the stomach, it is claimed, may be a predisposing cause by interfering with its proper nutrition and thus favoring the action of the gastric juice.

*Thrombosis* and *embolism* have been held responsible for a certain number of cases of ulcer since Virchow called attention to such causes. Embolism of the gastric blood-vessels is extremely rare, but thrombosis is a not infrequent result of obstinate vomiting, as is also punctiform hemorrhage. The stasis of circulation thus resulting affords favorable foci for the solvent action of the gastric juice, and certainly no theory explains so satisfactorily the crater shape of many gastric ulcers. Böttcher ascribes ulcer of the stomach to *micrococci*, numbers of which have been found by him in the margins of gastric ulcers. The well-known clinical fact that the gastric juice in ulcer of the stomach exhibits intense acidity, while traumatic ulcers of the stomach produced under ordinary circumstances tend to heal promptly has led to the suggestion that undue *acidity* plays an important rôle in the

causation of ulcer. The same causes operate to produce the duodenal ulcer. Increased acidity is not, however, always associated with gastric ulcer.

The statements of authors as to the frequency of ulcer of the stomach vary greatly. Thus, Ewald says five per cent. of Germans have ulcer. Truly, the disease is not nearly so common in America. Yet the discovery at autopsies of unexpected ulceration goes to show that it may be more frequent than is supposed. Fiedler found ulcer or its scar in 20 per cent. of autopsies in women and 1.5 per cent. in men. It is evident, therefore, that women are much more frequent victims than men. While both the very young and the very old are commonly exempt, the period being between 17 and 25, gastric ulcer has been found in infants and in adults as old as 60. In women gastric ulcer usually occurs between the ages of 20 and 30; in men, between 30 and 40.

*Duodenal ulcer*, on the other hand, is more common in males, in the proportion of 178 to 41, in the combined statistics of Kraus, Chvostek, Lebert, Trier, and William Osler. The last-named observer found it once in a boy of 12. Its association with extensive *superficial burns* and *tuberculosis* should be mentioned. It is commonly situated within 1 1/2 inches of the pylorus, though Schwartz reports a case where perforation was found on a level with or a little below the ampulla of Vater, permitting a free escape of bile into the peritoneal cavity.<sup>1</sup> This condition is much more apt to be confounded with other surgical lesions of the abdomen, and especially appendicitis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Gastric ulcer must be distinguished from post-mortem softening or digestion, which is found after death in stomachs in which gastric juice happens to be present at the moment of death. In this there may be erosion of the superficial mucosa, but nothing comparable to ulcer. The seat of postmortem softening is more commonly the fundus and posterior surface, where the gastric juice naturally collects.

The typical gastric ulcer is circular in outline, often with sloping, clean-cut sides, furnishing a crater or truncated cone shape, with the broad end looking toward the cavity of the stomach, a shape corresponding to that of an infarcted area due to embolism or thrombosis. The term "punched out" has long been applied to characterize the appearance of a gastric ulcer. The sides are not always, however, smooth, being sometimes uneven or "terraced." Very rarely ulcer may be multiple. It is far more frequent on the posterior wall of the stomach near the lesser curvature. W. H. Welch's extensive studies of hospital records furnish the total of 783 cases, of which 288 or 37 per cent. were in the lesser curvature, 225 or 29 per cent. on the posterior wall, 95 or 12 per cent. at the pylorus, 69 or 9 per cent. on the anterior wall, 50 or 6.75 per cent. at the cardia, 29 or 4 per cent. at the fundus, and 27 in the greater curvature. The lesser curvature and posterior wall are, therefore, the more frequent seats. This is the result also of Langerhans' studies, though Ewald and Nolte, from a very much smaller number of cases, conclude that more ulcers are found at the greater curvature and pylorus. The duodenal ulcer is found just outside the pylorus, but may occur as low down as the biliary papule. It presents the same appearance as the characteristic gastric ulcer.

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by Robert F. Weir in an admirable paper on "Perforating Duodenal Ulcers," in "The Medical News," May 5, 1900, p. 690.

The floor of the ulcer is usually the muscular coat, but it may be the serous coat, which is sometimes perforated so that the floor may be formed by an adjacent organ to which the stomach has been glued by adhesive inflammation. The ulcer is usually small, not larger than a pea, but it may be 10 or even 15 cm. (4 to 6 inches) in diameter, covering the whole lesser curvature and part of the anterior and posterior walls. Ulcers may heal, leaving a cicatrix, which, if large, causes contraction and deformity, distorting the organ even to an hour-glass shape and producing stenosis of the pylorus. It is not unusual to find healed ulcers at autopsies. *Or the ulcer may perforate*, causing fatal peritonitis when in the anterior wall; or, if apposed to neighboring organs, these may be burrowed into. Thus the pericardium, the mediastinum and left ventricle, the spleen, the head of the pancreas, the left lobe of the liver, the gall-bladder, the omental tissues, the pleura, and even the lungs have been invaded, while fistulous communications have been formed with the duodenum, the colon, and even the external air in the neighborhood of the umbilicus. Perforation of the posterior wall opens the lesser peritoneal cavity, and may perforate the pleura, producing subphrenic pyopneumothorax.

It is not unusual to see at the bottom of an ulcer an eroded blood-vessel from which there has been a fatal hemorrhage. The vessels invaded may be the gastric artery of the lesser curvature, or the splenic artery in the posterior wall; or, in the case of a duodenal ulcer, the pancreatico-duodenal artery; or it may be the hepatic artery, and even the portal vein. Small aneurysms have been found in the floor of an ulcer.

Gastric ulcer may be multiple, it is said, as often as once in every five cases. Osler records a case in which there were five ulcers and refers to a case, reported by Berthold, in which there were 34.

**Symptoms.**—The milder, less distinctive symptoms of indigestion, viz., a sense of fullness in the epigastrium, acid eructations, loss of appetite and the like may be present in gastric ulcer but the most prominent symptoms are *pain, tenderness, vomiting, hemorrhage*, and sometimes a tumor, but none of these is invariably present. They require to be separately considered.

*Pain*, with tenderness, is the most constant symptom. It is characteristic of the pain of ulcer of the stomach that it occurs almost immediately after taking food, especially after cold or hot and indigestible food; but it may also occur in an empty stomach—that is, several hours after a meal, when all food has disappeared. The latter pain is, however, of a different kind, being of a gnawing character, and is even temporarily relieved by taking food. The pain typical of ulcer—coming on in from ten minutes to half an hour after eating—is perhaps due not so much to the presence of the food as to the irritant effect of the acid gastric juice called out to digest it. It varies greatly in severity and location. The epigastrium near the xiphoid is a favorite site, less often a point behind the shoulders, from which it radiates in all directions. A change of position also sometimes increases it, especially turning to the right side, probably due to the irritation of the ulcer by the moving gastric contents. The paroxysms are sometimes of indescribable severity, requiring the hypodermic use of morphin to relieve them, though they may also be relieved at times by a full dose of sodium bicarbonate, the effect of which also explains their immediate causation. Commonly increased by pressure, the pain is sometimes relieved

by it, and the patient will bend over, pressing his fist into the epigastrium or lean over the back of a chair to secure relief. It may be excited by spasm or by overdistention by gas.

*Tenderness on pressure* is a characteristic symptom, apart from the paroxysms of pain; and in order to guard against it, the patient may wear the waistband low. Boas has devised an instrument by which circumscribed pressure may be conveniently induced and diagnosis facilitated. It is, however, necessary to exercise care in such pressure, as perforation may be produced. *The tender point is more frequently an inch or two above the umbilicus.* In cases of ulcer of long standing palpation may recognize a tumor, the result of inflammatory thickening in the vicinity, and I well remember a case where, in consequence of the distinctness of the tumor, I diagnosed with some confidence a cancer of the pylorus, and a few days later the patient died of a hemorrhage from the stomach. An autopsy revealed extraordinary thickening of the pylorus, penetrated to a great depth by an ulcer, at the bottom of which lay a little perforated artery, the source of the fatal hemorrhage.

*Vomiting* is not so frequent a symptom. When present, it occurs usually soon after the ingestion of food, about the same time as the pain. It often includes acid acid matters.

*Hemorrhage*—hematemesis—is a most valuable sign of gastric ulcer. Given a copious hemorrhage of pure red blood from the stomach, with the symptoms described, or even no other symptoms, it can scarcely be due to any other cause; since although cancer gives rise to hemorrhage, the blood is mixed with mucus; it is usually less copious, while a cancer with hemorrhage rarely fails to furnish also the other symptoms of cancer. In a few instances in ulcer the hemorrhage is small, when, of course, the diagnosis becomes more difficult. When the hemorrhage is large, blood quite black is found also in the stools. Indeed, sometimes the presence of blood in the stools is the first intimation of gastric hemorrhage. Especially is this the case when the ulcer is duodenal. A very remarkable case of this kind came under my care in a nurse at the Philadelphia Hospital. When I first saw her, her appearance and condition suggested hemorrhage from somewhere. She was extremely weak, and her lips were bloodless. Her skin was as white as marble. Yet no sign of hemorrhage appeared at the time of examination. Three hours later she had a copious hemorrhage from the stomach, and further examination elicited the fact that *her stools had contained blood for two days.* Hemorrhages from ulcer are also often recurrent, and result at times in intense anemia of the subject. They are not rarely fatal, more frequently syncopal, bringing their subjects to the verge of the grave, from which there are often also surprising recoveries. A hematemesis of ten pounds (4 1/2 kilos) is said to have been followed by recovery. Vicarious hemorrhage in menstruating women is to be remembered as a possible event, but the hemorrhage is not usually copious, and its association with amenorrhea aids in clearing up doubt. Hemorrhage occurs in more than half the cases, at least in hospital practice, since the severest cases come to hospitals. In private practice the proportion is smaller.

In this place it may be appropriate to mention what has been called *parenchymatous* hemorrhage, in which there has been fatal hematemesis in

which no ulcer has been found at necropsy. It is more than likely that some of these cases may have been cases in which the ulcer eluded examination, but others are too well authenticated to be thus explained. Blood is not always easily demonstrable in the gastric contents and the test for occult blood should be carefully made in doubtful cases. Its presence in gastric ulcer as contrasted with its absence in gastric neuroses in young girls, with anemia, pain and hyperacidity.

Perforation is a rare accident in ulcer of the stomach. It is variously stated at from 6 to 18 per cent. of all cases. Its characteristic symptoms are sudden and violent pain, extreme tenderness, rigid contraction of the abdominal muscles, profound shock, shallow breathing, and absence of the normal hepatic dullness—in a word, the symptoms of peritonitis, followed by those of shock. Perforation is much more frequent when the ulcer is in the anterior wall. Thus, in 13 cases reported by A. B. Mitchell to the "British Medical Journal," March 10, 1890, all were in the anterior wall.

Persons with gastric ulcer lose in weight and become gradually *anemic*, quite independent of hemorrhage, as is evidenced by a blood count. This may be due to the fact that they refrain from taking food because they fear its consequences. From the combined effect of this and actual loss of blood results at times an anemia which is only second to that of pernicious anemia. The hemoglobin is correspondingly reduced.

The urine is not infrequently albuminous, and when there is large secretion of hydrochloric acid it may become alkaline. Acetone and diacetic acid may be found in it, and this subject has attracted a good deal of attention of late.<sup>1</sup>

Diacetic acid has been noted when food by the mouth has been withdrawn, no matter whether the patient has been starved or fed by the rectum, average date of appearance being the second and third day. It disappears after mouth-feeding is recommenced, also after transfusion of sodium bicarbonate solution, 4 pints containing 90 grains (3 grams). It is more apt to appear in women.

*Chemical examination* of the *stomach-contents* after a test-meal almost invariably shows an increase of HCl, in fact the symptoms are, at least in part, those of hyperchlorhydria. Exceptionally hyperacidity is absent, possibly due to associated chronic, gastric catarrh.

Finally, it is to be remembered of gastric ulcer that it is often *latent* throughout, quite without symptoms during life, and recognized for the first time at necropsy, when, also, as already stated, healed ulcers are sometimes found.

**Course and Termination.**—The course of ulcer is usually slow, sometimes very protracted. One case, which had lasted 20 years, confirmed by autopsy, came under my treatment. A few cases are acute and rapidly fatal. The symptoms of gastric ulcer quite frequently disappear, and after a time, even considerable time, recur giving rise to the so-called recurrent forms.

*Hour-glass* contraction is one of the terminations of gastric ulcer when a large ulcer in the middle belt of the stomach has healed. It is best

<sup>1</sup> Rolleston and Tebbs, Diacetic Reactions in the Urine with Especial Reference to Gastric Ulcer. "British Med. Jour.," July 10, 1904.

recognized by the Roentgen ray, the stomach being previously partially filled with a mixture of bismuth and water introduced after a meal. But its existence may be suspected in the presence of the following signs named by Moynihan: 1. In washing out the stomach a part of the fluid may be lost. 2. If the stomach is washed clean a sudden reappearance of gastric contents may take place. 3. When the stomach has apparently been emptied a splashing sound may be elicited by palpation of the pyloric end (paradoxical dilatation). 4. After distending the stomach a change in the situation of the distention tumor may be seen. 5. A gushing, bubbling or sizzling sound heard on dilations by  $\text{CO}_2$  may be heard at a point distant from the pylorus. 6. In some cases when both parts are dilated, two tumors separated by a notch or sulcus may be seen and felt.

**Diagnosis.**—In some cases this is easy; in others, difficult or impossible. If hemorrhage of the kind described is present in connection with the other symptoms named, it affords conclusive evidence of ulcer, but in its absence there must often remain doubt. Aside from hemorrhage the most characteristic symptom is pain, and only in gastralgia and tabes dorsalis do such pains occur. Remission of symptoms frequently occurs.

In *gastralgia*, as in ulcer, hydrochloric acid may be increased, and the question often becomes a most difficult one to settle. In gastralgia, however, the general health of the patient is less severely affected, there is less chlorosis or menstrual derangement, and the pain has a less definite relation to taking food—indeed, is often relieved by food—while in ulcer the symptoms of dyspepsia are more constant. There are longer intervals between the attacks in gastralgia. Above all, in ulcer there is tenderness on pressure between the attacks of pain, a symptom absent from gastralgia, while pressure always relieves the pain of the latter. Indeed, in gastralgia dyspeptic symptoms between the attacks are generally absent. If palpation recognizes a hardening, there is further reason to believe the case is one of ulcer. We may look for assistance from the standpoint of etiology. Given the causes of ulcer, especially valvular heart disease with possible embolism, the vomiting which produces thrombosis, or the occupations which favor gastric ulcer, their import should be recognized. Gastralgia occurs in neurotic individuals—those subject to hysteria and uterine disease. Von Leube has called attention to an electrical test between gastralgia and ulcer—viz., if during digestion an electrical current, especially with the anode as a testing-pole, be applied, and the pain disappears completely, it is indicative of gastralgia; if, however, it does not cease, it may be either gastralgia or ulcer. Only the positive effect, the sudden cessation of pain on the application of the current, is of diagnostic value.

In *tabes* the gastric crises are almost identical with the severe gastralgic attacks of ulcer. But in tabes the appearance of good health is preserved, while it is not long before the distinctive symptoms of the disease show themselves, if they are not already present—viz., lightning pains, ocular symptoms, and absence of knee-jerks. In tabes the extreme acidity of the gastric contents characteristic of ulcer is wanting in most instances.

In rare cases *intercostal neuritis* may be mistaken for ulcer, if there be pain in the epigastrium associated with accidental dyspeptic symptoms. But in this affection painful points will also be found in the course of the



intercostal nerves, while, if a large fold of the abdominal wall be raised, tender points will be found in it.

From *cancer* of the stomach ulcer sometimes is distinguished with difficulty in the absence of the more distinctive symptoms of the former disease. Heretofore much reliance has been placed on the absence or extreme diminution of free hydrochloric acid in cancer, as contrasted with its excess in ulcer. It has, however, happened that the association of chronic catarrhal gastritis with ulcer has caused a relative diminution of HCl. The researches of Boas have, if confirmed, added a very much more reliable diagnostic sign in the invariable presence of lactic acid in cancer and its constant absence in ulcer, and, indeed, under all circumstances in which it has not been introduced from without. Other facts to be weighed in the balance as to the existence of cancer are a palpable tumor, the greater age of the patient, with rare exceptions over 30, the extreme emaciation and cachectic appearance, and the intermittent vomiting of large quantities of accumulated ingesta, sometimes of blood mixed with mucus, or blood presenting the "coffee-grounds" character as contrasted with the bright clear blood of ulcer.

Rarely is *duodenal* ulcer distinguished before death from gastric ulcer, though Burwinkel claims that by a careful study of the symptoms he has been able to diagnose five cases of duodenal ulcer in the last five years. The former may be suspected when pain is in the right hypochondriac region two or four hours after eating; also, if the blood be discharged by the bowel rather than vomited. Vomiting is less frequent than in gastric ulcer, and does not afford relief, as in the former. Jaundice is more frequent in duodenal ulcer. Jaundice is, however, more constantly, though not invariably, associated with biliary colic, which has also been mistaken for ulcer. In biliary colic the liver may be enlarged and tender and the gall-bladder distended, while the vomiting, which attends it as well as ulcer, is much less acid in reaction.

Attempts to locate the ulcer still more precisely have generally proved fruitless. Even when a single painful, unchanging, circumscribed spot has been noted, the apparent seat so rarely coincides with the actual seat that little encouragement is afforded further attempt. When pain immediately succeeds deglutition, especially of solids and hot and cold liquids, there is some reason to believe that the ulcer is in the neighborhood of the cardia, but it is by no means conclusive.

**Prognosis.**—Not only the disappearance of symptoms, but also the discovery of numerous healed ulcers at autopsies of patients dying from other causes, attest the fact that recoveries are not infrequent. Death is caused, as a rule, by hemorrhage or perforation, the latter followed by fatal peritonitis. At least six per cent. of all cases terminate in perforation, which, previous to the institution of operative treatment, was followed by death in the vast majority of cases in a few hours. The proportion of death in all cases is estimated by W. H. Welch and A. B. Mitchell at 15 per cent.;<sup>1</sup> by Heydenreich at from 25 to 30 per cent.;<sup>2</sup> by v. Leube at 10 per cent. Pariser<sup>3</sup> has collected 14 well-authenticated cases of acute gastric perforation, followed by recovery, without operation. In most of these it was distinctly

<sup>1</sup> "British Med. Jour.," March 10, 1900, p. 569.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 564; quoted by Mayo-Robson from "Semaine Medicale," February 2, 1898.

<sup>3</sup> Pariser, "Deutsch. med. Wochenschr.," 1895, p. 468.

stated that no food had been taken for some hours (three hours to three days), and the recovery in all such cases, according to this writer, depends upon the empty condition of the stomach. He is able to add a 15th case which occurred in his own practice.

**Treatment.**—The indications for treatment are evident, and are, in the main, easily fulfilled. It is easily divisible into, *first*, that for the cure of the ulcer and, *second*, that for the arrest of hemorrhage.

I. As to the first indication: It is plain, in the first place, that *food* which taxes the secretory or motor functions of the stomach is harmful, and that recovery will be still more likely to occur if the stomach can be placed at total rest, a condition easily met by rectal alimentation. It is clear, too, that absolute rest of body further fulfills such conditions. This is, however, not necessary unless hemorrhage supervene. It goes without saying that all solid food should be disallowed. The typical nourishment in my experience is peptonized milk, which should be given at stated intervals, the quantity adopted to the urgency of the symptoms, say 2 ounces (60 c.c.) every two hours, though even this amount may have to be reduced in serious cases, to be increased as danger subsides and the appetite of the patient demands it. Beef peptonoids and egg-albumen may be substituted for milk, or they may be conjoined with it.

The acidity which is characteristic of the secretion in gastric ulcer has sometimes to be met, and for this purpose full doses of sodium carbonate or bismuth subnitrate, 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.), may be given. Bismuth subnitrate is highly valued by some as a direct healing agent for ulcer. When aperients are needed, as is sometimes the case, the Carlsbad salt becomes suitable, because of its alkalinity and its adaptation to the catarrhal state often associated with ulcer. A teaspoonful may be given in the morning dissolved in a glass of warm water, or a tablespoonful may be added to a pint of warm water and taken in divided portions during the day. Small doses of magnesium sulphate may be substituted, though, as a rule, the bowels should be regulated by enemas rather than by purgatives.

Lavage, which is of such signal service in chronic gastric catarrh, is hardly safe in ulcer on account of the danger of producing perforation; but in some cases, when vomiting has been obstinate, lavage has been found beneficial. To arrest the vomiting, it is safer to rely on rectal alimentation, though the usual remedies may be tried, including blisters to the epigastrium.

Medicines are not to be decried in ulcer of the stomach. *Silver nitrate* maintains the reputation it has so long enjoyed. One quarter of a grain (0.016 gm.) three times a day or  $\frac{1}{6}$  of a grain (0.011 gm.) four times are the usual doses, given on an empty stomach. Of late I have been giving it by preference in solution in about 2 ounces (60 c.c.) of water. Four times a day is not too often. If there is pain, the extract of *opium* should be combined in pill in the same or larger doses, but should be dispensed with as soon as not needed. The extract of *belladonna* in small doses may be substituted as the opium is withdrawn. Its anodyne effect is perhaps slight, but it has a good effect upon the bowels. Local measures may be employed to relieve the pain, such as warm poultices and other hot fomentations to the epigastrium; and when more potent measures are needed, morphin may be used hypodermically.

II. During hemorrhage rectal alimentation should be relied upon. For this purpose peptonized milk is also the best nutrient. Great care should be exercised in the use of enemas not to exhaust the toleration of the bowel. To this end they should be given at first tentatively, never oftener than once in eight hours, and should not exceed at first at most six ounces. This quantity if well borne may be increased to eight ounces. The various meat peptones, bouillon or beef juice may be substituted for or alternated with peptonized milk; or an egg may be beaten up with milk, though such addition is not often necessary. A nutrient injection which has given great satisfaction at the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania consists of four ounces of milk (130 c.c.), to which are added two eggs, a pinch of salt and 3 drops of laudanum, the whole being predigested with pancreatin. The enema should be given through a long rectal tube, the patient having the hips elevated and the position maintained for an hour after the injection. In this way patients may be nourished for weeks with peptonized food, but it is rarely necessary to continue the rectal alimentation for more than a week or ten days. As the hemorrhage and vomiting cease the stomach may be tested, first with small amounts of peptonoids, gradually increased; and for a time the two methods may be pursued jointly, feeding by the mouth being increased, while that by the rectum is gradually withdrawn. Plain milk and beef-juice may be substituted for peptonized milk, and various thin gruels made with flour may be used as a change is demanded.

The hemorrhage requires also to be met by remedies. For the present all astringent remedies have given place to suprarenal extract or its active principle adrenalin, of which 10 drops of a solution 1 to 1000 are a dose, repeated. Gelatin is a modern remedy of which the value is exaggerated. It may, however, be used, especially as it serves also the purposes of a food. Two to 3 ounces may be given every six hours. Among the older remedies tannic acid is one of the best—in 15 grain (1 gm.) doses, every 15 minutes, until the bleeding ceases. In the absence of this drug alum may be given, dissolving a teaspoonful in a glass of water, of which one-fourth should be given at short intervals. Pieces of ice may also be swallowed. After the attack is controlled the persulphate of iron, in doses of  $1/4$  to  $1/2$  grain (0.0165 to 0.033 gm.), in a pill three or four times a day, may be used to prevent recurrence. Recently Tripiér has called attention to copious enemas of hot water for gastric hemorrhage, repeated twice daily, at a temperature of  $112^{\circ}$  to  $120^{\circ}$  F. ( $44.4^{\circ}$  to  $48.8^{\circ}$  C.), conjointly with small doses of hot water by the stomach.

The systematic rest cure as suggested by S. Weir Mitchell is a very suitable treatment for gastric ulcer, especially where the patient has been badly nourished.

The resulting chlorosis or anemia may be treated with *iron* and *arsenic*. Of the former, the neutral preparations are to be preferred; of the latter, Fowler's solution, because of the easy regulation of the dose. Large doses of iron should not be given, since the excess of such doses remains unabsorbed, astringing and irritating the alimentary canal. The tincture of the chlorid, so valuable usually, is especially contraindicated, because it increases the acidity of the gastric juice and thus favors the solution of the gastric wall.

*The Lenhartz Treatment of Gastric Ulcer.* This treatment, to which

especial attention has been called in this country by Samuel W. Lambert,<sup>1</sup> has for its object first to furnish nourishment and improve the patients' general condition; to continue to nourish them by feeding by the stomach; to use foods rich in albumen, in small amounts at short intervals, of one hour for the first ten days from 7 A. M. to 9 P. M., and insisting on slow eating, best accomplished by feeding in teaspoonful amounts; to insist on a three or four weeks' rest cure in bed. Other medical procedures are allowed if indicated; for example, an ice-bag to the epigastrium and bismuth subnitrate internally for hemorrhage; enterocolysis for the effects of hemorrhage, and iron and arsenic for the anemia. The course of treatment covers two weeks' time and includes the following articles of diet: fresh milk, iced; whole raw egg beaten up and iced. Both the milk and the egg are prepared in a covered glass surrounded with cracked ice; the feeding spoon is also kept iced. Changes suggested by Lambert are mixing of the eggs and milk and feeding the mixtures instead of hourly alteration; the addition of granulated sugar after the third day.

The following table from Lenhartz, modified by Lambert, gives the details and the method of feeding:

LENHARTZ TREATMENT OF GASTRIC ULCER.

Day	Eggs	Milk	Sugar	Scraped beef
1	2 drams each dose, total, 2 eggs.	4 drams each dose, total, 6 ounces.		
2	3 drams per dose, total, 3 eggs.	6 drams per dose, total, 10 ounces.		
3	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz. per dose, total, 4 eggs.	1 ounce per dose, total 13 ounces.	20 grams added to eggs.	
4	5 drams per dose, total, 5 eggs.	$1\frac{1}{2}$ ounces per dose, total 1 pint.	20 grams added to eggs.	
5	6 drams per dose, total, 6 eggs.	14 drams per dose, total 19 ounces.	30 grams.	
6	7 drams per dose, total, 7 eggs.	2 ounces per dose, total, 22 ounces.	40 grams.	36 grams in 3 doses.
7	4 drams per dose, total, 4 eggs, also, 1 soft boiled egg every 4 hours, total, 4 eggs.	2 ounces per dose, total, 25 ounces.	40 grams.	70 grams with boiled rice 100 grams in 3 doses.
8	4 drams per dose, total, 4 eggs, also, 1 soft boiled egg every 4 hours, total, 4 eggs.	$2\frac{1}{2}$ ounces per dose, total 28 ounces.	40 grams.	Beef same.
9	4 drams per dose, total, 4 eggs, also, 1 soft boiled egg every 4 hours, total, 4 eggs.	3 ounces per dose, total 1 quart.		Beef same. Rice 200 grams, Zwie- back 40 grams in two portions.
10	4 drams per dose, total, 4 eggs, also, 1 soft boiled egg every 4 hours, total, 4 eggs.	Add cooked chopped chicken 50 grams, also butter 20 grams.	40 grams.	Beef same. Rice 200 grams, Zwie- back 40 grams in two portions.

11 to 14. Interval of feeding made 2 hours. Milk given in 6 oz. = doses with  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of raw egg. Butter increased to 40 grams and various additions made as detailed above.

<sup>1</sup>The Lenhartz Treatment of Gastric Ulcer. "Am. Jour. of the Medical Sciences," January, 1908, p. 18.

**Operative Treatment of Gastric Ulcer.**—This has become an important measure of curative treatment, not only after perforation, but also for the cure of nonperforating ulcer causing recurrent hemorrhage. Operation for nonperforating gastric ulcer is recommended by modern surgeons in serious cases, and cases are considered serious where there is either very copious single hemorrhage or recurring hemorrhage. Thus, Dieulafoy advises operation after the first hemorrhage if as much as half a liter (500 c.c.) of blood is lost and if the bleeding is repeated in 24 hours. W. L. Rodman<sup>1</sup> says that "as soon as the bleeding from a second serious hemorrhage ceases and the patient has rallied from the shock and is in good condition," some operation should be performed. Rodman tabulates 63 operations for acute and chronic hemorrhage with 20 deaths, or a mortality of 32.6 per cent.

It is scarcely possible for recovery to take place after perforation without operation, but after operation at the present day at least 50 per cent. recover. The first successful operation was by Kriege, in Germany, in 1892. Up to 1894 results were far from satisfactory, when, of 85 cases collected by Mikulicz, only one recovered. On the other hand, out of 125 cases collected by Goffe up to the end of 1897, 63, or 50 per cent., recovered. Hence, operation should be borne in mind as a treatment for which we should always be in readiness.<sup>2</sup>

## CANCER OF THE STOMACH.

SYNONYMS.—*Carcinoma ventriculi*; *Gastric Cancer*.

**Etiology.**—Little definite is known of the etiology of cancer. Heredity is an acknowledged factor, though it is less potent than is commonly supposed. W. H. Welch<sup>3</sup> was able to trace cancer, or at least a family history of cancer, in 242 out of 1744 cases, or 14 per cent. Dieulafoy found such a family history in 16 per cent. and Musser in 8 per cent. of cases of gastric cancer. There is some evidence to show that abuse of the stomach by eating and drinking may be influential in causing the disease, though it is not conclusive. The same has been claimed for the depressing emotions. There is better reason to believe that ulcer is a predisposing cause, since autopsies have disclosed cancer developing in the floor of ulcers and in cicatrices. Mention should be made of the fact that a parasitic origin of cancer is claimed by some, but the subject is altogether too unsettled to justify more than reference in a text-book.

Gastric cancer is a disease of mature life, three-fourths of all cases occurring between the 40th and 70th year. One of my patients was 32 when he first consulted me, and died just one year later. Adolf Struempell has seen cases between 22 and 25. George Dock<sup>4</sup> reports three cases occurring in his own practice, where the patients were 20, 21, and 24 years of age, confirmed by autopsy, and Marc Mathieu published in 1884 a monograph, "*Du cancer précoce de l'estomac*." The disease is slightly more frequent in men than in women.

<sup>1</sup>Oration on Surgery delivered at the Fifty-first Annual Meeting of the American Medical Association, Atlantic City, June 4-8, 1900.

<sup>2</sup>See also Dr. Weir's article, referred to, on "Perforating Duodenal Ulcers," "Medical News," May 5, 1900.

<sup>3</sup>"System of Medicine by American Authors," vol. ii., Philadelphia, 1886.

<sup>4</sup>"Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," vol. xii., 1897.

**Pathology and Morbid Anatomy.**—After the uterus, the stomach is the organ most frequently attacked by cancer, a little more than one-fifth of all cases of *primary* cancer being found in this organ—according to Welch, 21.4 per cent., from an analysis of the very large number of 30,000 cases. It is far more common in the pyloric end and on the lesser curvature, 1300 cases collected by Welch being distributed as follows: pyloric region, 791; lesser curvature, 148; cardia, 104; posterior wall, 68; whole or greater part of the stomach, 61; multiple, 45; greater curvature, 34; anterior wall, 30; fundus, 19. Every variety of cancer is found in the stomach, in the following order of frequency:

1. Cylinder-celled epithelioma, most frequent at the pylorus.
2. Medullary or soft cancer, most frequent in the smaller curvature.
3. Scirrhus, at the pylorus and in the smaller curvature, causing, especially, stenosis of the pyloric orifice.
4. Colloid, diffuse infiltration with a tendency to spread to the peritoneum and adjacent organs.
5. Melanotic.
6. Squamous epithelioma, near the cardia.

All the forms start from the gland cells of the mucous membrane.

The medullary variety is prone to ulcerate and to form extensive fungoid ulcerated surfaces, from which there may or may not be hemorrhage. It may be associated with scirrhus. While nodular outgrowths are usual, the cancerous tissue may infiltrate the walls, producing diffuse thickening.

Secondary cancer of the stomach is an occasional event: in 17 out of 37 cases, according to Welch, secondary to primary cancer of the breast. I have met one case succeeding epithelioma of the lip. Much more frequently primary cancer of the stomach is a cause of secondary cancer elsewhere, most often in the adjacent lymphatic glands, which were the secondary foci in 551 out of 1574 cases collected by Welch; the liver was involved secondarily 475 times; the peritoneum, omentum, and intestine, 357; pancreas, 122; pleura and lung, 98; spleen, 26; brain and meninges, 9; other localities, 92; among the latter is to be included adjacent integument, especially about the navel.

Marked changes in the size, shape, and position of the organ occur as a result. Most common is dilatation, sometimes due to pyloric obstruction. Medullary cancer, on the other hand, is apt to produce a reduction in the size of the stomach and its cavity. A reduction in size may attend obstruction at the cardiac orifice, because of disuse of the organ, while the esophagus itself may be dilated. The same effect may be produced by cancerous infiltration of the stomach walls, by which the capacity of the organ is greatly reduced—in one instance, a case of Livingstone's, to 12 ounces. Further reference will be made to extraordinary dislocation of parts of the organ in treating of symptoms. Adhesions may also form between the stomach and adjacent organs, and between it and the anterior abdominal wall. Peritonitis may occur; also perforation into an adjacent organ, as the transverse colon, and even the small intestine.

**Symptoms.**—The initial symptoms in almost every form of cancer of the stomach are those of indigestion, including *anorexia*, *cructations*, *vomiting*, *constipation*, *discomfort*, and *pain*, more rarely *acidity*. These are

present for a variable time before a more serious condition is suspected. Occasionally paroxysmal pain in the epigastrium is the only symptom. Increase in the severity of symptoms despite the use of remedies, progressive *debility*, *emaciation*, and *cachexia* invite closer examination, which may or may not result in the discovery of a *tumor*. Before a tumor is recognized there is often tenderness, which follows sooner or later, if it does not precede tumor. Cachexia and wasting may also be present a long time before the tumor is discovered.

A *chemical examination* of the *gastric contents* after a test-meal may disclose the absence of free and combined hydrochloric acid or a minimum of it. The persistent presence of lactic acid in decided quantity, to which, as well as to the absence of hydrochloric acid, attention was originally called by von der Velden, is held by Boas to be confirmatory. As to hydrochloric acid, it must be remembered that it is also diminished in gastric catarrh, in atrophy of the mucous membrane, in amyloid degeneration, and even in nervous dyspepsia at times, while in rare instances it happens that hydrochloric acid is increased in cancer. The motor as well as the secretory

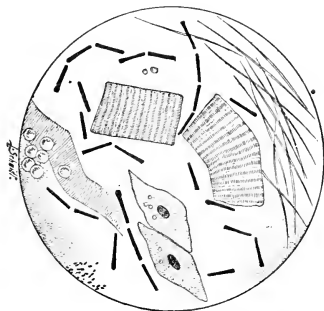


FIG. 31.—Oppler-Boas Bacillus, from Contents of a Carcinomatous Stomach—(Hemmeter).

and absorbing functions will be found impaired, undigested food being found long after the seven hours' limit. Such motor delay characterizes more particularly the pyloric situation of cancer, with its resulting obstruction.

The Oppler-Boas bacillus was first described by Oppler in 1895, as an unusually long and thread-like bacillus, nonmotile, found in the contents of carcinomatous stomachs.<sup>1</sup> The bacilli lie either end to end, in long thread-like chains, or at right angles to one another. They stain readily with anilin dyes. They prefer a medium containing lactic acid; indeed, Kauffmann ascribes to the bacillus the power of forming lactic acid from various kinds of sugar. Hydrochloric acid in any large proportion causes it to disappear. Schlesinger and Kauffmann declare the presence of large numbers of the bacilli in association with pyloric stenosis to be an indication of carcinoma, and their absence, associated with the absence of lactic acid, to be evidence against carcinoma. Riegel does not consider the organism pathognomonic

<sup>1</sup> Boas, "Specielle Diagnostik und Therapie der Magenkrankheiten." Oppler, "Deutsche medicinische Wochenschrift," 1895, No. 5.

of carcinoma, but very important in its diagnosis. Stockton says it is often present in carcinoma, and has not been found in other diseases of the stomach. The Oppler-Boas bacillus and sarcinæ do not coexist for any length of time in carcinomatous stomachs. The sarcina thrives in the presence of hydrochloric acid, and disappears with it, being replaced by the Oppler-Boas bacillus and lactic acid. Even when introduced into the stomach in cases of obstruction due to carcinoma, the sarcinæ disappeared in twenty-four hours, the Oppler-Boas bacillus seeming to replace them.

In evidence of the value of the Oppler-Boas bacillus in diagnosis of gastric carcinoma it may be said that Kauffmann<sup>1</sup> found it in 19 out of 20 cases, and in the one in which it was absent there was no lactic acid. John C. Henimeter informs me that he found the bacillus in 52 out of 55 cases, that he regards it "an important diagnostic sign in carcinoma of the stomach, within limitations, and though it is by no means pathognomonic." He has found it in a case of benign pyloric stenosis, and also in such cases when HCl was still present. Ullman, of Buffalo, N. Y., found it in all of ten cases.

At a later stage periodic vomiting of large quantities of fluid containing the ingesta of hours and even days previous is a characteristic symptom, and a dilated stomach may now be easily demonstrated. The vomitus may also contain blood, and that peculiar mixture of blood and gastric juice which is called "coffee-grounds" vomit. If, owing to their disintegration, the microscope does not recognize blood disks, Teichmann's hemin crystals may be easily prepared as directed on page 69, footnote. Occult blood may also be found in the stools and gastric contents. The vomited matter is sometimes very foul-smelling, as are also at times the eructations. Vomiting is by no means an invariable symptom, though even when there is no vomiting, nausea is commonly present. The absence of vomiting generally means that the cancer is not at the pylorus. It may be at the middle belt, at the fundus, or at the cardiac end. When at the latter point, there is almost always difficult and painful deglutition.

By this time the patient is emaciated, anemic, *cachectic*, with a peculiar yellowish, sallow, swollen appearance, and now a tumor is commonly easily recognized by palpation. Very interesting is the varying situation of the tumor, as well as at times its great mobility. The tumor of pyloric cancer is commonly found near the normal situation of the pylorus, in the neighborhood of the umbilicus, a little to the right or left. At other times the weight of the tumor drags it out of the normal position, and it may be found lower down, toward the symphysis pubis. The tumor itself may be fixed in the position it assumes, or it may be freely movable. Its location is usually uninfluenced by breathing, and in this respect it contrasts with tumors of the liver and spleen. It rarely gives a positive dull note on percussion—rather a muffled note. In a certain number of cases no tumor can be detected throughout the whole course of the disease, it is said in 20 per cent. Especially is this the case when the disease is toward the cardiac end. A rotary motion is sometimes characteristic of the tumor.

Toward the end of life *edema of the legs and ankles* often appears, and an intensity of cachexia, which simulates pernicious anemia—in fact, even

<sup>1</sup> Kauffmann and Schlesinger, "Wiener klinische Rundschau," 1895, No. 5.



furnishes the blood changes characteristic of this affection—with extreme weakness and death. The *urine* is often scanty, and may give a decided reaction for indican. In a few cases a *febrile movement* makes its appearance with *chills* and *sweating* at intervals, probably due to intercurrent inflammation. To these symptoms are often added those of *secondary cancer*, especially of the liver, including enlargement of this organ and jaundice. The signs of secondary cancer elsewhere than in the liver should be sought. The duration of cases of gastric cancer is from one to two years; it may be less, especially, if the cancer is ingrafted on a preexisting ulcer. Slow development is said to be characteristic of cases in younger persons.

**Diagnosis.**—This is generally easy if time and opportunity be allowed for the study of a given case. *Ulcer* is perhaps the disease which furnishes most difficulty, especially as cancer may succeed it. On the other hand, the earliest symptoms of gastric cancer are also those of *gastric catarrh*, which in many cases is mistaken for cancer. The pain and the peculiar intermittent vomiting are the first distinctive signs, and while coffee-grounds vomit may occur whenever moderate quantities of blood are poured into the stomach and mixed with gastric juice, the causes other than cancer are rare. The copious hemorrhage of ulcer gives bright red blood. Bloody vomiting is by no means always present in cancer. To the symptoms described are soon added the emaciation and cachexia, and the palpable tumor more evident after the stomach has been emptied out by vomiting or washing. In the meantime, however, the gastric contents will have been examined, and furnish their quota of information, not pathognomonic, but contributory. Very rarely does it happen that in the vomitus or washings of the stomach we obtain particles of morbid growth whose examination will disclose the structure of cancer.

There is not usually much difficulty in fixing the location of the tumor supposed to be in the stomach. If there is doubt, it may be eliminated in part or altogether by filling the stomach with liquid and noting the effect upon the tumor.

In one instance I mistook *cancer of the gall-bladder* for cancer of the stomach, though I scarcely think it would happen again. The chief reason was because the tumor due to cancer of the gall-bladder was in the situation where the tumor of the pylorus might reasonably be expected to have been. There was jaundice with tenderness in the hepatic region, there were no signs of dilatation of the stomach, and the mistake was scarcely excusable. There is usually less interference with digestion in cancer of the gall-bladder, no mobility of the tumor, and often suppuration with incident fever.

The distinction of gastric from pancreatic cancer demands some consideration. The tumor may be in the same position, but in a large proportion of cases of cancer of the pancreas there is jaundice. The tumor of a pancreatic cancer is often inaccessible. In the latter there are also symptoms of indigestion, like those of gastric cancer, but there is often also diarrhea, and frequently the liquid stools contain oil. Such diarrhea may be checked for a time by ordinary remedies, but in a few days the liquid discharges seem to burst through a barrier which held them temporarily in check. The pancreatic tumor, if felt, is also more immovable.

*Tumors of the liver and spleen* are continuous with these organs, while

the gastric tumor is generally easily distinguished from them by palpation or by an intervening tympanic area. A *cancer of the transverse colon* may occupy much the same position in the abdomen as one of the stomach, and be also quite movable. The filling of the colon and stomach with water or air may also be availed of in diagnosis. As the growth in the intestine increases, obstruction may result and the tumor increase by the accumulation of fecal matter behind the stenosed portion. A rare complication, increasing the difficulty in diagnosis, is adhesion between the bowel and stomach, restricting motion and possibly causing perforation, through which fecal matter may enter the stomach. Still more difficult, nay, even impossible, in most instances, is the distinction between *duodenal* and gastric cancer. The absence of hydrochloric acid would point to gastric cancer, though such absence, being due to atrophy of the gastric tubules caused by dilatation, may also occur in obstructive duodenal cancer. The acid might also be neutralized by regurgitated bile, regurgitation being favored by the stenosis of the gut. The presence of jaundice would point to duodenal cancer.

Gastric tumors may be confused with *omental tumors*, which may also cause dyspeptic symptoms. But the omental tumor is usually a more nodular, uneven tumor, and is sooner or later associated with peritoneal effusion.

Moreover, every tumor of the stomach is not a cancerous tumor, although most of them are. I have already mentioned my experience with a thickened pylorus associated with gastric ulcer. Such a circumscribed thickening and induration are always possible. We may have the same pyloric stenosis and secondary dilatation. Similar *noncancerous thickening* may even occur without ulcer. Other forms of morbid growths, such as fibroma, sarcoma, and the like, are too rare to demand notice from the clinical standpoint.

Finally, the gastric tumor is not always demonstrable, and may not be throughout the whole course of its existence. It is said to be absent in about 20 per cent. of cases. Then the diagnosis must be made from the symptoms, especially the rapid wasting and cachexia, which are rarely simulated, even in ulcer. The age of the patient, generally past 40, the deficiency in HCl, and the presence of lactic acid must be allowed due weight. The cachexia of *pernicious anemia* resembles very closely that of cancer of the stomach, and, in the absence of appreciable tumor in the latter, may occasion difficulty. But a study of the blood will in most cases clear up a doubt. The number of red blood-cells in cancer of the stomach is rarely below 2,000,000 while in pernicious anemia it is often below 1,000,000 per cubic millimeter. This difference exists even while the cancerous subject exhibits more emaciation and weakness than that of pernicious anemia. As F. P. Henry well puts it: "In cancer of the stomach the reduction in the number of red corpuscles does not keep pace with cachexia; in anemia the cachexia does not keep pace with the destruction of red corpuscles." Cancer of the stomach may be latent throughout.

**Prognosis.**—This is inevitably fatal, but something may be done toward prolonging life by the proper cleansing out of the stomach, the selection and regulation of food, and measures to aid its digestion. The operation of gastrostomy should be considered, as it sometimes prolongs life.

**Treatment.**—Since the cure of cancer of the stomach is impossible, treatment must be directed toward prolonging the patient's life. I am quite sure that a great deal more can be done than is commonly thought possible. The limit of life of the victim of established gastric cancer does not exceed two years.

The stomach has no purpose other than the preparation of the food for absorption. It is not a vital organ in the sense that the heart and the lungs are vital organs. It is important so far as it prepares the food, but if the food can be prepared for absorption outside of the body, its importance is diminished. So it is if we introduce artificially digested food by the rectum. Or we may use both of these methods. We can, by the use of prepared food, diminish the labor of the stomach, and by using the rectum we can, while doing so, relieve the stomach of all labor. This is rendered easier at the present day by the use of peptonized foods of various kinds. The food may be peptonized at home, or the peptonized products of manufacturers may be substituted. First in order of simplicity is peptonized milk. Three to 5 grains (0.2 to 0.3 gm.) of the extract of pancreas with about 15 grains (1 gm.) of sodium carbonate are added to a pint of milk, and the mixture placed at a temperature of 100° F. (37.8° C.). In one hour all the casein will be peptonized. A curd is first produced, which subsequently undergoes solution. If peptonizing is complete, the addition of rennet will not produce coagulation. Milk thus prepared makes little demand upon the stomach for digestion, and it can be introduced advantageously by the rectum. Peptonized milk has a slightly bitter taste, and unless this bitterness is present, its digestion is unaccomplished. The digestion will take place at a lower temperature than 100° F. (37.8° C.), but it takes longer.<sup>1</sup>

Beef may be peptonized for rectal alimentation as follows: Take half a pound of beef with the fat removed and a quarter of a pound of fresh pancreas. The pancreas is finely chopped and afterward bruised in a mortar with tepid water at a temperature of 100° F. (37.8° C.). It is then placed in a saucepan, and a raw egg is beaten up and intimately mixed with the meat, previously chopped into small pieces. The product is next allowed to stand at a temperature of 100° F. (37.8° C.) for two hours. It is then strained, after which it is ready for use. This amount suffices for two daily injections. The preparation decomposes very quickly, so that it has to be made fresh every day and kept very cold. I have been surprised at what I have accomplished by this method, which is essentially one recommended by Mayer, of Lyons. In a case where nothing could pass the pylorus, under the use of daily nutritious enemas there occurred each morning an evacuation from the bowel as natural as when the patient was living on a mixed diet and digesting it properly.

The enterprise of the manufacturing chemists and pharmacists has resulted in the preparation of a number of beef peptonoids and extracts which may be substituted, but I never feel quite so sure of them as of the

<sup>1</sup> The following method of peptonizing milk, slightly modified from that usually recommended, has been found most satisfactory after numerous trials by patients: Take one pint of skimmed milk, to which add one gill of water. Heat to 140° F. (60° C.)—a temperature at which the finger can be immersed for half a minute. After taking from the fire stir in three grains (0.2 gm.) of powdered pancreatin and 15 grains (1 gm.) of carbonate of sodium. Place in a covered kettle or jug and roll up in a cosy (an ordinary gossamer waterproof coat answers admirably well), near a stove or register to keep warm. Let it remain thus for an hour and a half. It then resembles slightly thickened milk, but there is no curd. Pour it into a covered pitcher, and set aside to cool in the open air. Thus prepared, it has the slightest perceptible tinge of bitterness, and is very palatable.

product made at home, troublesome as its preparation is, because it seems impossible to learn the nourishment equivalent of the manufacturers' product.

However careful the preparation of food, when taken into the stomach in these cases, only a part is used up, and there accumulates gradually a quantity of unabsorbed material which does not pass the pylorus, and to this a copious mucous secretion is added. Hence, occasionally, once a day or every other day, it is desirable to wash out the stomach with water as hot as can be borne, or alkaline waters, as described in the treatment of gastric catarrh. The free use of hydrochloric acid as a medicine also aids not only in the solution of the food ingested, but prevents the fermentations, which contribute irritating acids to the gastric contents and cause further mischief and discomfort.

### DILATATION OF THE STOMACH.

SYNONYM.—*Gastrectasia*.

**Definition.**—A permanent increase in the volume and capacity of the stomach, the result (1) of nervo-muscular atony or (2) of pyloric obstruction. It is to be distinguished from temporary distention and simple large stomach.

**Etiology.**—(1) The nervo-muscular atony causing dilatation may be the result of habitual overdistention, especially by food of defective quality, resulting in stasis and fermentation; of excessive drinking, as in beer-drinking by employees of breweries; of chronic gastritis; of diseases producing general nervo-muscular atony, such as disease of the spinal cord, pulmonary consumption, anemia, chlorosis, acute fevers, affections of the heart, liver, and kidneys, and other diseases of like import. (2) Mechanical or obstructive dilatation is most frequently due to obstruction by cancer at the pylorus or in the duodenum, to cicatricial contraction, or to hypertrophic thickening. Such obstruction may also be due to pressure from without, as by cicatricial adhesion or tumor of an external organ or a floating right kidney. It is most frequent in middle-aged persons, but may occur even in children. Tight lacing, by producing dislocation of the stomach and obstruction to the onward movement of its contents, may also be a cause of dilatation.

*Acute dilatation of the stomach* is a possible, but rare, condition. It may succeed the rapid ingestion of enormous quantities of food and drink. Extreme paralytic dilatation may result, as in two cases described by Hilton Fagge, of which one proved fatal.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—In addition to the increase of volume the coats of the stomach may be thinned and the glandular structure more or less atrophied. The average normal stomach of an adult holds about 1 1/2 liters (three pints), while the abnormally dilated organ may attain a capacity of three or four liters (six or eight pints), and even more. Where the dilatation is mechanical, there is added the lesion which is responsible for the obstruction.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms arising from dilatation are a *sense of fullness in the epigastrium*, *cruciations*, *flatulence*, and *vomiting*, often of enormous quantities. The *appetite* is sometimes poor, at others quite good.

and the patient is hungry and thirsty. The *vomited matters* are largely water, but include also remnants of food and every variety of fungus—viz., bacteria, sarcinæ, yeast fungi, etc. Their reaction usually exhibits *lessened acidity*, because of diminished hydrochloric acid secretion, but it may be normal or even abnormally acid. Such abnormal acidity is the result of fermentations producing lactic, butyric, and acetic acids. Various gases are thus produced, including carbonic acid and hydrogen. The latter may also arise from decomposition of albuminoid substances, whence too arises sulphuretted hydrogen. These fermentations are favored by the absence of HCl, the importance of which in preventing fermentation has been referred to, and by a stasis of the contents in the stomach; for not only is absorption delayed, but the transit of gastric contents into the intestine is also hindered. Indeed, in some cases the stomach is never emptied unless by the tube. Nay, more; it would seem that at times it contains more liquid than was ingested—a possible condition, since the endosmosis of crystalloids (viz., sugar, dextrin, alcohol, and peptones) is attended with the exosmosis of water. From such causes, too, occur *torpor of the bowel*, *scantiness of urine*, and *dryness of the skin*.

*Anemia*, *emaciation*, and *debility* sooner or later succeed, and in fatal cases death is commonly preceded by a *drowsiness*, which may be due to the absorption of toxic substances arising in the decompositions going on in the stomach. Dilatation of the stomach is also one of the acknowledged causes of *tetany*, as first pointed out by Kussmaul. The cramps, though often quite severe, are of short duration. They occur chiefly in the muscles of the hands, arms, and legs. von Leube suggests that this tetany may be due to a “drying out” of the nerves and muscles, but it may also be the result of autointoxication. *Unconsciousness may precede death*.

**Physical Signs.**—These may be elicited by inspection, palpation, and percussion. *Inspection* does not always afford information, but in emaciated cases the greater curvature of the distended organ may be recognized as low as the navel and below, instead of from 1.2 to 2.8 inches above it (3 to 7 cm.). When the stomach is very low, even the smaller curvature may be recognized about two inches (5 cm.) below the ensiform cartilage, uncovering the pancreas. In obstruction of the pylorus the peristalsis from left to right may even be recognized stopping short at the pylorus, where the tumor-like thickening may sometimes be seen. In rare instances a reverse peristalsis, from right to left, takes place.

*Palpation* may confirm inspection, recognizing the contour of the stomach by its peculiar consistence, which has been compared to that of an air-cushion, but affords little additional information unless there be a tumor at the pylorus which may be felt. Peristalsis, if present, may also be felt, and may be stimulated by filipping the abdominal walls with the fingers, by which also a splashing sound may be produced in the water-laden dilated stomach down as low as the greater curvature. This is to be distinguished from a similar splashing which may be obtained in the normal stomach and adjacent colon, the latter being less constant and less intense.

If a stiff *sound* is used, its end may be felt through the abdominal walls, while the unusual extent to which it may be carried before meeting resistance will attract attention.

*Percussion* affords the most valuable evidence as to the presence of a dilated stomach, and in the majority of instances such evidence is conclusive. Auscultatory percussion is especially satisfactory in determining the outlines of the stomach, and the phonendoscope may be used with advantage. Percussion should be made in the standing position, if possible, from above downward, beginning at the edge of the ribs in the neighborhood of the right parasternal line. The note is tympanitic until the upper curvature is reached, when it is substituted by dullness due to the liquid contents, to be succeeded again by tympany of the bowel when the lower border of the stomach is passed. If the patient lies on his back, the dullness disappears and is replaced by tympany. If there is no liquid in the stomach, a change in the pitch of the tympanitic note will indicate the transition from the stomach to the intestine. Further information can be gained by means of the tube, by which the stomach can be emptied and refilled with water and its borders determined by percussion. This is more satisfactory than filling the stomach with carbonic acid gas or air, and even such procedure is not always necessary. If the larger curvature be found by percussion at the navel or below, the stomach is certainly dilated.

No reliable evidence of dilatation is furnished by auscultation.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually readily made by attention to the symptoms and physical signs described. Dilated stomach has, however, been mistaken for an ovarian cyst, and abdominal section has been made for its relief.

The question whether the dilatation is dynamic or mechanical—that is, whether it is the result of nerve-atony or obstruction by a tumor at the pylorus—can generally be decided by recognition of a tumor at this orifice. Vomiting is also more severe and frequent, and the peristaltic unrest is more active in the latter condition.

Dilatation differs from falling, or gastropptosis, though descent and dilatation are often present in the same organ. Different also is enteroptosis, or visceroptosis, which will be considered later.

**Prognosis.**—When associated with malignant disease at the pylorus, recovery is, of course, impossible, as, indeed, it is in dynamic dilatation, but in the latter case much relief may be afforded to the symptoms.

**Treatment.**—The most important part of the treatment is *washing out the stomach*, after the method detailed on page 371. This may be done daily, but sometimes it is sufficient to do it on alternate days, occasionally even twice daily. When practiced once a day, it is usually best done on retiring at night, as the stomach is thus freed for the night of irritating material which, if retained, disturbs rest and aggravates the local condition. The patient soon learns the most suitable time for lavage, and when it is often necessary, he should be taught to perform it.

Of drugs, *hydrochloric acid* is the most likely to be useful, not only because of its importance as a digestive agent, but also as a preventer of fermentation. To this, *pepsin* becomes a useful adjuvant, because it is scantily formed in the dilated stomach. *Nitro-muriatic acid* may sometimes be substituted with advantage, especially when a stimulating effect is desired on the liver. It should be freshly prepared, and from three to five drops of a pure acid should be given to an adult at a dose. *Strychnin* is a drug which has much to recommend it from the theoretical standpoint as

a muscular tonic, and has the further advantage of easy absorption. It should be administered in full doses from a small beginning, 1/30 grain (0.002 gm.) three times a day, increased to 1/20 grain (0.003 gm.) and even more. Extract of *nux vomica* may be substituted, but it is less easily absorbed. Tincture of *nux vomica* is better. It may be given in gradually increasing doses until 30 drops, or 15 minims, are given three times a day.

In addition to the hydrochloric acid as an antiferment, other remedies for this purpose are *charcoal* and *creasote*. The power possessed by charcoal of absorbing gases cannot be utilized, because it possesses this property only in the dry state. Yet it does relieve flatulence and is antiseptic. Such antiseptics may be extended to the intestine. Doses of charcoal of 5 to 10 grains (0.33 to 0.66 gm.) and even more may be given conveniently in concols.

Creasote is a useful antiseptic, and may be given in pill form, in doses of 1/2 grain to a grain (0.03 to 0.06 gm.), or it may be given in sherry wine, whisky, brandy, or tincture of gentian. The following one per cent. solution of creasote is a modification, by George Herschell, of Bouchard's well-known formula:

R	Creasoti,	10
	Tr. gentianæ,	20
	Vin. xerici,	800
	Sp. vini gallici,	170
	M. et Sig. One hundred minims contain one minim or	
	one grain of creasote.	

When the condition is part of the morbid anatomy of cancer of the stomach, only palliation may be expected.

**Dietetic Treatment.**—Most important is the selection of food in these cases. Solids should be almost totally prohibited, while the typical nourishment is the various kinds of artificially digested food, such as peptonized milk and beef peptonoids. Of the latter, the dry form of beef powder is suitable, because it absorbs some of the excessive liquid sometimes present in the stomach. Beef-juice and rare beef scraped are also easily assimilated, while fatty, and especially starchy, foods are to be used sparingly, if at all.

## VISCEROPTOSIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Splanchnoptosis; Enteroptosis; Gastroptosis; Glénard's Disease.*

**Definition.**—A condition in which, as a consequence of relaxation of the ligaments of the abdominal viscera, especially those of the stomach, large intestine, kidneys, spleen, and liver, these organs fall below their normal position. The organs more decidedly involved are the pyloric end of the stomach and the transverse colon, especially the right half, and the hepatic flexure.

**Etiology.**—A satisfactory explanation of the phenomena of visceroptosis has not as yet been offered, though several, more or less applicable, have been suggested. First, there are certain predisposing or favoring conditions, among which are debilitating and emaciating diseases or loss of elasticity of the abdominal muscles due to repeated pregnancies, to gastro-intestinal auto-intoxication, to exhausting hemorrhages, or to damage to abdominal

muscles by pressure of clothing. The loss of fat in emaciation, however caused, undoubtedly favors visceroptosis.

Glénard, whose name is so closely identified with the subject that the affection is called Glénard's disease, holds that a descent of the right or hepatic flexure of the colon followed by dislocation of the transverse colon is the primary disturbance in enteroptosis. The hepato-colic ligament, which is the name he applies to the portion of the mesocolon that approaches the right flexure of the colon, he says is naturally very weak, and can be loosened and stretched by the weight of the transverse colon, particularly when this is loaded with feces. When the hepatic flexure of the colon has sunk, the right half of the transverse colon also descends stretching the gastro-colic ligament which is attached to the pyloric end of the stomach. At this point the colon becomes kinked, causing stagnation of its contents, followed by dilatation of the colon in front of the constriction. Beyond this it contracts, and, according to Glénard, can be felt as a tense cord. As their ligaments become loosened, the remaining abdominal viscera follow the descent of the transverse colon, the stomach being drawn down by traction on the gastro-colic ligament, the liver and kidney following. Ewald confirms Glénard except that what Glénard regards as the contracted portion of the colon beyond the constriction, and calls "*corde colique transverse*," Ewald believes to be the pancreas. He denies also that simple kinking of the colon, uncomplicated by peritoneal adhesions or by stenosing neoplasms, can cause stagnation of feces. Without assigning a distinct cause, Ewald emphasizes the fact that long-standing dyspepsias and bodily overexertion may create altered relations of pressure and tension, and thus lead to the condition. Landau especially emphasizes relaxation of the abdominal walls as the primary cause, though cases are reported in which there is no such relaxation. Recent studies are disposed to call into play a congenital factor the action of which may be intensified by any of the various causes named. In late fetal life and early extrauterine life the position of the abdominal viscera is quite like that characteristic of the disease. This is especially shown by Joseph Rosengart, although Henle and other earlier anatomists described these positions of the viscera in young children. Kussmaul<sup>1</sup> and Leichtenstern are among those who regard the vertical position of the stomach and colon in adults as a congenital anomaly. The influence of adhesions in producing displacements of the abdominal viscera must not be overlooked, but these are not included in the condition being described.

Visceroptosis is far more frequent in women than in men, 306 out of 404 cases collected by Glénard being women, tight lacing and pregnancy being regarded as the chief causes of this difference in the two sexes. While it is true that the majority of cases met in practice are true visceroptoses, yet it must be admitted that there are instances in which one organ only—as, for example, the stomach, the kidneys, the spleen, or the liver—may be dislocated in the manner referred to.

**Symptoms.**—First of all it must be stated that such a state of affairs as that described may exist without producing any symptoms. The symptoms which are characteristic are, in a word, those of nervous dyspepsia,

<sup>1</sup> "Zeitschrift für diätetische und physikalische Therapie," Bd., i, 1898, S. 220.



including derangement of appetite, and especially anorexia, more rarely false sensation of hunger, a sense of fullness in the epigastrium, noisy belching, various bad tastes, and dryness of the mouth. To the fullness in the epigastrium may be added various sorts of pain—shooting, burning, etc.—after eating. There may be constipation or an opposite condition of diarrhea. Hard, scybalous masses may be removed by purgatives or enemas, also mucus in varying amounts, including casts like those in membranous enteritis. The lower portion of the abdomen is distended, and sometimes, in persons with thin-walled abdomens, the dislocated viscera may be recognized by their outlines. Especially is this true if they be dilated with air or gas. By palpation or percussion, displacements may be recognized with more or less ease. The transition from stomach to colon can often be recognized by change of note on percussion, while the kidneys, spleen, and liver may be recognized by palpation. Among nervous symptoms may be named general weakness, depression of spirits, headache and fullness of the head, vertigo, cold feet and hands. There may be palpation of the heart and disturbed sleep or insomnia. As the result of all this disturbance the patient may become so emaciated as to suggest malignant disease. Chlorosis is often present, and by Meinert is regarded as a constant symptom of the disease; indeed, he holds that gastropnoia is the chief cause of chlorosis in women.

**Treatment.**—When there are no symptoms produced by this unusual state of affairs, of course no treatment is indicated. When the symptoms are due to displacement, it is evident that mechanical measures or operation are alone likely to be useful in restoring the organs to their normal situation. The former includes trusses, pads, and springs, which must be adapted to each case after a study by the instrument-maker with the aid of the physician. In the absence of more elaborate appliances a simple broad bandage may be of service in relieving the symptom. Various degrees of success have been attained by these measures. It is reasonable to suppose that permanent relief can alone be obtained by operation. Treves early reported a case of complete cure by laparotomy and stitching the stomach. At the present day operation especially for gastropnoia is not infrequent and is commonly successful. My colleagues John G. Clark and Alfred C. Wood have each devised an operation.

In a stomach thus dislocated there are apt to be atony and sluggish peristalsis, which may result in the accumulation of undigested matters, which are better removed by lavage. Other measures useful in dilated stomach may also be expected to be useful as well as those indicated for nervous dyspepsia.

## DISEASES OF THE INTESTINES.

### SIMPLE ACUTE CATARRHAL ENTERITIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Acute Intestinal Catarrh; Acute Diarrhea; Acute Ileocolitis.*

**Definition.**—The term employed is applied to a diffuse inflammation which generally pervades more or less of the small intestine and the upper part of the large bowel. More circumscribed inflammation are described, and doubtless sometimes occur, but it is not easy to localize them.

**Etiology.**—The usual causes of simple intestinal catarrh are overeating and excessive drinking, or the swallowing of acid or mineral substances of an irritating character. Impurities in drinking-water and in the summer and autumn, unripe fruit are frequent causes. The toxic products of fermented and decomposed food (*leukomains*) are also causes. These sometimes arise inexplicably from substances commonly harmless, such as milk or preparations thereof. Cream-puffs, and even ice-cream, are among these. Irritating minerals are corrosive sublimate and arsenic. Although hot weather favors intestinal catarrhs, especially in infants and older children, they are not so much the direct result of the heat as of its effect in weakening the resisting powers of the child and favoring the decompositions and fermentations referred to. The effect of heat on the nervous system of the very young may reasonably be regarded as a factor in increasing irritability of the gastrointestinal tract or in so diminishing its functional power as to render the ingesta irritating. Cold, or rather a chilling of the body by a fall in temperature, is often followed by enteritis.

Secretion altered in quantity or quality has already been mentioned as a cause of simple noninfectious intestinal inflammation. Much spoken of, but of inferred, rather than of demonstrated, import, is excessive biliary secretion, producing what is known as bilious diarrhea. When such diarrhea is associated with a burning sensation at the anus and with the recognized presence of bile in the stools, the term may be justified, but it is to be remembered that an acid reaction of the alvine dejecta produces a similar sensation. A scanty supply of bile to the intestine, by depriving the gut of the important antiseptic property of this secretion, may also favor the fermentations and decompositions mentioned.

Hyperemia, however induced, favors catarrhal enteritis. Such is the hyperemia secondary to hepatic and cardiac disease, and to inflammation, whether traumatic or infectious, in adjacent tissues, whence it extends by contiguity. Such is the inflammation occasioned by peritonitis, by intestinal obstruction, and the like. Cachectic and anemic states, such as are secondary to cancer, to Addison's disease, and to the last stages of Bright's disease and of tuberculosis, are also favoring causes. Enteritis is also a symptom of certain infectious diseases through their specific poisons, which act directly on the mucous membrans, as in the case of cholera, dysentery, and typhoid fever.

Apart from the effect of nervous influence already mentioned, this cannot be said to cause simple enteritis. It is not unusual for fright and other causes of nervous excitement to produce diarrhea; but this is not the result of an enteritis, but of an increased peristalsis and disturbed vasomotor regulations, and is properly called nervous diarrhea.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid changes of simple intestinal catarrh are variously distinct. A hyperemia is naturally to be expected, and in the more decided cases may be manifested by a diffuse redness and injection. It is not often, however, that these are demonstrable. A layer of mucus covering the mucous membrane of the bowel more or less interruptedly is more frequently present. Nor is swelling often evident. At times the solitary follicles are unnaturally distinct, surrounded by a hyperemic circle. Such enlargements, commonly as distinct as a pin's head, may be as large as

a pea, and, becoming filled with pus, form little abscesses, which may rupture, leaving an ulcer. They may extend to Peyer's patches. More rarely chronic ulceration results.

**Symptoms.**—*Diarrhea* is the most constant symptom of enteritis, involving the part of the intestinal tract named in the definition. The resulting stools consist of, first, ordinary fecal contents of the small and large intestine, often offensive; but, as they continue, they become more and more watery, almost colorless. There may be but two or three, or there may be 20 or more. They contain more or less mucus, and are often frothy and associated with flatus. With diminished consistence the odor may grow less obnoxious, until totally absent. At other times it is persistently offensive. Minute examination recognizes in these discharges columnar epithelium variously altered, enlarged, granular, and fragmentary, with nuclei obscured or absent, also various nonpathogenic bacilli and cocci, including the *bacterium coli commune*, yeast fungus, crystals of triple phosphate, oxalate of lime, cholesterin, and undissolved food matters. The reaction of the discharge may be neutral or acid.

Next to diarrhea is *pain*, usually colicky, varying greatly in degree; often, indeed, in the milder forms, absent. There is rarely *tenderness*, but palpation may elicit gurgling and the signs of gaseous distention. *Thirst* and *oliguria* are natural consequences of the free discharge of water. There is usually little *fever*, the rise of temperature rarely exceeding one or two degrees, and the higher grades suggest tubercular inflammation of the bowel. The *appetite*, at first little altered, ultimately fails. Very rarely do the ordinary diarrheas in children and adults terminate in collapse.

It is reasonable to expect modification of the foregoing symptoms as the result of localized inflammation, as contrasted with those of the more diffuse form just described. Thus, the presence of *jaundice* suggests the probability that the *duodenum* is especially involved. In such cases the urine may also be jaundiced, and there may be added other symptoms commonly associated with jaundice. In the absence of this symptom there is no sign that points to the duodenum as the special seat of the inflammation. On the other hand, jaundice is by no means always present, even if the duodenum is involved. Duodenitis is often associated with acute gastritis, spreading from the stomach—*gastroduodenitis*. Inflammation limited to the duodenum is unattended with diarrhea.

An acute catarrhal inflammation of the *jejunum* and *ileum*, unassociated with inflammation of the large bowel, would be unattended with diarrhea, the slight acceleration of peristalsis incident to such an event being unlikely to produce this symptom. In this respect, therefore, it will differ. On the other hand, distention of the abdomen, colicky pain, borborygmi, discharge of flatus, and fever continue. Nothnagel has called attention to the presence, in jejunitis and ileitis, of little lumps of mucus from the inflamed small intestine in intimate admixture with the contents of the large bowel, often, however, requiring the microscope for its recognition. Even if this be true, as v. Leube has pointed out, the symptom is scarcely available in diagnosis. Whence it is plain that a recognition of inflammation of this part of the intestinal tract is by no means an easy matter. It is probably also a rare condition.

Quite different is it when there is also involvement of the whole of the large intestine—*ilocolitis*. When this is the case, while the lower down the inflammation, the purer the mucus and the more there is of tenesmus, the mucus remains separate and unmixed with the fecal matter, which may contain undigested particles of food, such as muscular fibers, starch, and fat corpuscles. A diarrhea in which these undigested portions of food are visible to the naked eye is known as *lienteric*. Gmelin's nitric acid test for the biliary coloring-matters ceases in health at the sigmoid flexure, so that if this reaction is obtainable in the liquid discharges, it implies that the excessive peristalsis has affected also the large bowel, by which the bile is carried through with abnormal rapidity. The green stools of children, and more rarely of adults, also indicate a large quantity of bile. Simple feverish states, however, may have the effect also of interfering with the proper digestion of food matters, which may appear in the discharges in consequence. Some information—not, however, too much to be relied upon—may be derived from the seat of tenderness and colicky pains. When these are in the middle or inferior part of the abdomen, they point to the small intestine; when in the upper and lateral parts, to the large.

**Diagnosis.**—This diagnosis of acute intestinal catarrh is ordinarily easy, by attention to the symptoms previously detailed, including those more or less peculiar to the more circumscribed localities referred to. From *typhoid fever* acute enteritis is usually easily distinguished by its short duration, minor fever, and the absence of the characteristic course the fever takes in the infectious disease, and absence of the spots which so invariably make their appearance on the eighth day in typhoid. The Widal test in the latter disease also aids the diagnosis.

During *cholera* epidemics mild cases of this disease are not recognizable symptomatically from the severer colliquative forms of diarrhea. Under these circumstances, bacteriological examination should be made. The importance of a correct diagnosis will be appreciated when it is remembered that indifference in the treatment of simple diarrhea may not seriously affect the result, while such treatment of a case of cholera, however mild, may result disastrously.

**Prognosis.**—This is always favorable with prompt and judicious treatment, recovery taking place in from one to three days, as a rule, rarely longer.

**Treatment.**—Many cases of acute catarrhal enteritis recover under rest and restricted diet, the degree of which necessarily depends on the severity of the case. The simple withdrawal of all food, the substitution of plain milk, or, in severe cases, of boiled milk, for the usual food, generally suffices. A few grains of bismuth subnitrate every two or three hours, fortified with  $\frac{1}{8}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.0082, 0.015, 0.033 gm.) of opium, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce (15.5 gm.) of chalk mixture with a fluidram (4 c.c.) more or less of paregoric may be added. Salol in doses of 3 to 5 grains is an admirable adjuvant to bismuth through its antiseptic properties.

No attempt should, however, be made to lock up the bowel until all irritating matters are removed, and it is often desirable to give an aperient, castor oil being the best, though the unpleasantness of the dose often precludes this valuable remedy. In such event the solution of the citrate of

magnesium, Rochelle salts, or Hunyadi water may be substituted. When there is much pain, larger doses of opium may be necessary, especially if hot fomentations, mustard plasters, or turpentine stupes fail to produce the desired effect. When there is elevation of temperature, no better means than the local application of ice can be found to relieve pain. Astringents are rarely necessary, but in the absence of other measures may be used. Tannic or gallic acid in 5 grain doses (0.33 gm.) may be given separately or combined with opium.

The various chlorodynes form convenient remedies when there is pain. The dose varies from 20 to 30 minims (1 to 2 gm.). In severe cases, especially when there is nausea, a hypodermic injection of morphin,  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0082 to 0.015 gm.), may be given. For the nausea counterirritation by mustard plasters should be used, pieces of ice swallowed entire, while too much water should be disallowed. Champagne and cold carbonated waters may be used for this purpose. The latter may be combined with milk, while the old reliable remedy of equal parts of milk and lime-water should not be forgotten.

## CHRONIC CATARRHAL ENTERITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Chronic Enterocolitis; Ulcerative Colitis; Mucous Colitis; Chronic Diarrhea.*

**Definition.**—A chronic inflammation of more or less of the large and small intestine, with or without ulceration.

**Etiology.**—Chronic enteritis may remain after repeated attacks of the acute form, or it may arise *de novo*, however induced, favored by whatever occasions passive congestion. Such favoring causes are diseases of the liver or heart, feeble and anemic states, and the defective nutrition consequent thereon. Chronic exhausting diseases, such as tuberculosis and Bright's disease, may act in this way also. Dysentery is a frequent cause of chronic intestinal catarrh, a remnant of the acute process.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The primary condition is that of acute catarrh, and in many cases the morbid changes do not exceed those of acute catarrh, being simply permanent, or later more pronounced. In others, still more decided changes are found, chiefly in the lower part of the ileum and colon. These are mainly ulcerative, but include also discolorations due to hyperemia, blood extravasation and pigmentation succeeding it, thickening of the coats of the bowel, and contraction of partly healed ulcers. There may be stenosis or the opposite condition of dilatation. Such ulceration is distinct from that of tuberculosis, typhoid fever, and syphilis. It may be follicular, as often seen in the diarrheal affections of children, more rarely in adults, or there may be large ulcers or large areas of ulceration. The remnant of mucous membrane is often pigmented and slate-colored, and a pseudo-polyposis sometimes results from contraction. In the small intestine the pigment is apt to be deposited on the ends of the villi and in rings around the solitary follicles, or in their centers, producing the "shaven-beard appearance." The surface of the bowel is more or less covered with mucous and

purulent secretion incident to the inflammation. Still another sort of ulceration, from the etiological standpoint, is found at the bottom of saccules of the large intestine in which scybala or hard fecal masses have lain a long time. Ulceration, too, may result, though rarely, from encroachment from without by various kinds of disease of the peritoneum, including cancer, tuberculosis, and the like. Atrophy of the mucous membrane of the bowel is also one of the results of chronic enteritis, not usually recognizable before death.

There may even be atrophy not only of the mucous membrane, with destruction of the glands, but also of all the coats of the small and large intestines.

**Symptoms.**—These are not uniform. While there is often more or less *diarrhea*, this may be absent, or substituted by *constipation*, while constipation and diarrhea frequently alternate. More characteristic of the stools is the large amount of *mucous matter* contained in them. This may be present in the shape of “sago”-like masses or “mucous” granules, yellow or brownish-yellow, bile-stained also from the small intestine. Bile-stained mucus is present only when there is abnormally rapid peristalsis of the large bowel, which causes the mucus to pass rapidly beyond the sigmoid before the bile is decomposed. Ulceration may cause the presence of blood in the stools.

**MUCOUS COLITIS.**—A variety of chronic colitis known as *mucous colitis* or membranous enteritis is characterized by the discharge of large masses of mucus, forming at times complete casts of the bowel. It is more frequent in women, this sex including 80 per cent. of recorded cases, according to W. A. Edwards. It may occur also in children. Its subjects are usually women of the nervous type. It is commonly associated with constipation. At intervals, however, occur attacks of abdominal pain and tenderness, sometimes accompanied by tenesmus and followed by discharges of the mucoid matter referred to. Such attacks may be excited by mental emotion of various kinds. The mucoid material itself seems to be the direct result of an increased activity of the mucous glands, which, with the mucous membrane, are, however, commonly intact after the separation of the large mucous casts. Minute examination recognizes more or less numerous cells, round and columnar, entangled in the mucus, sometimes also cholesterin plates and triple phosphate crystals.

Throughout the numerous attacks nutrition is commonly well maintained, and the woman subject appears plump and well nourished. At other times there are gradual emaciation and ultimate death.

**Diagnosis.**—This is always easy, except as to the determination of the portion of the bowel involved or the presence of ulceration. Differences in the character of the mucus, as previously noted, (p. 407) will aid in the diagnosis, while the constant or intermittent presence of blood and pus or fragments of tissue in the stools point to the ulcerative condition. Ulceration is sometimes found postmortem where no symptoms were present before death. In the rectum, and, indeed, as high as the sigmoid flexure, ulcer may be recognized by specular examination. Deep-seated ulceration may cause circumscribed peritonitis or may produce abscess. The presence of scybala, surrounded with mucus, points to

inflammation of the rectum or colon as far up as its transverse portion. It is not possible to diagnose the presence of atrophy of either bowel.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis in all forms of chronic intestinal catarrh is grave so far as recovery is concerned, and treatment avails little in many cases. The disease, however, extends over months, and even years, before the patient succumbs, and recovery is sometimes complete, quite independent of treatment.

**Treatment.**—As in the case of acute catarrhal enteritis, rest is an important condition of success in the treatment of this disease. Next, we must select a diet with a minimum of waste, so that there may be as little irritating residue as possible. Milk, beef juice and the albuminous type of foods are the chief of these. Still less irritating are they if partly digested before being taken into the stomach. Thus, milk may be peptonized, and meat also, and the beef peptonoids of the manufacturers may be employed. It is difficult to ascertain the relative nourishing power of these peptonoids as compared with solid meat. This, then, should be a fundamental principle of treatment—to furnish a diet with a minimum of waste.

When it is remembered that chronic intestinal catarrh is seated mainly in the large intestine, it is manifest that to reach it with remedies administered in the ordinary way is difficult, and that it is more than likely that such remedies are absorbed or decomposed before they arrive at the seat of the disease. It is barely possible that after prolonged administration certain drugs, as nitrate of silver, will ultimately reach the seat of ulceration and stimulate it to heal. Prolonged use must, therefore, be pursued with any remedies thus administered. Nitrate of silver and the sulphate of copper are the two which possess most reputation. The doses are  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0155 gm.) of each three times a day, or a smaller quantity more frequently. The acetate of lead may be substituted in doses of 2 grains (0.132 gm.). The latter is more astringent, but is less likely to excite healing. All these remedies are commonly combined with opium in suitable doses. Subnitrate of bismuth in large doses,  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 dram (2 to 4 gm.), is strongly recommended by some. It undoubtedly diminishes the discharges, but how far it is curative is uncertain.

The natural astringent waters, such as the Rockbridge alum and other alum waters in this country, have earned some reputation in the treatment of chronic intestinal catarrh, but improvement under their use is always more marked at the springs themselves, showing that some effect must be ascribed to the change of scene and air and to the salubrious climate of the locality.

Should these measures fail, and there is evident involvement of the colon, irrigation of the bowel may be practiced. This is done by means of a fountain syringe, or a funnel in connection with a tube, which is carried high up into the bowel, the patient being placed on his back with a pillow under his hips. The fluids used are solutions of nitrate of silver, sulphate of zinc, and boric acid. At first warm water, say at 100° F. (37.7° C.), should be run in very slowly to the amount of two to three pints (1 to 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  liters). Then solutions of any of the foregoing substances, of silver nitrate and zinc sulphate, strength of 3 to 4  $\frac{1}{2}$  parts to 1000 or 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 grains to the oz. (0.1 gm. to 0.13 gm. to 30 c.c.); beginning with the weaker solutions.

Salicylic acid may be used in two per cent. solution, boric acid in one per cent. solution, or a one per cent. solution of salicylic and boric acids combined. A one per cent. solution of tannic acid is also recommended, as well as of corrosive sublimate, but the latter is exceedingly irritating and the strength of the solutions should not exceed, at first, 1:15,000, which may be increased, if well borne. The nitrate of silver has, on the whole, the best reputation. A preliminary anodyne enema of 30 minims (1 gm.) of laudanum may be given, if needed, or a suppository of extract of opium, say one grain (0.066 gm.). Great care must be taken to allow the solutions to pass in slowly, the hips being elevated by a pad or pillow. To be effectual, the treatment must be patiently prolonged, especially the dietetic part, and not weeks, but months, of patient perseverance insisted upon. It has been suggested that these irrigations should be made in intractable cases through the appendix whose opened tip has been sewed to the abdominal wall. (Weir's operation of appendicostomy.)

Mention should be made of the opposite treatment of chronic mucous colitis by a coarse diet containing a large proportion of indigestible residue, especially cellulose derived from bread made from flour containing a large proportion of husks (Graham bread); all varieties of leguminous vegetables, peas, beans, etc., with their husks, vegetables containing much cellulose, fruits with small seeds and thick skins, like currants, gooseberries and grapes, together with large quantities of fat, especially butter and bacon; also weak saline mineral waters, of which Saratoga water is the type in this country and Kissingen, Homburg, and Racocsky abroad. This diet is recommended by von Leube, von Noorden, Boas, Einhorn, Westphallen, and Hemmeter. Some, however, especially v. Noorden would make the change suddenly, others gradually.

The effect is claimed to be to give the stools after two to four days a normal consistence and normal appearance. No purgatives are required. It is claimed that the results of this treatment are much more satisfactory than the older light diet composed of easily digested foods, such as milk foods, broths, white bread, and the like. Von Noorden calls it the "dietetic exercise treatment of the intestine" as contrasted with the older "protective rest treatment."

## CHOLERA MORBUS.

SYNONYMS.—*Cholera nostras*, *Sporadic Cholera*.

**Definition.**—An acute gastrointestinal catarrh, characterized by profuse vomiting, purging, and painful cramp.

**Etiology.**—The intensity of the symptoms and their similarity to those of true cholera justify a suspicion that a specific organism is responsible for *cholera nostras* as well as for true cholera. No single bacillus has, however, been settled upon, although the bacillus known as the Finkler and Prior bacillus, which closely resembles "the comma" bacillus of true cholera, is found in the discharges with considerable constancy. The disease may result from toxins generated by a variety of bacilli, but until more definite proof is brought forward, cholera morbus must be regarded as a severe form of catarrhal enteritis associated with gastritis due to some poison generated by the noxious substances causing it. Such are indigestible and decom-



posed articles of food, unripe fruit, and particularly mixtures of fish, salads and fruit. Especially frequent are these attacks in the hot weather of July and August, though cold and dampness are also regarded as predisposing causes. So are fatigue and a debilitated state of the system. Young adults and persons in the prime of life are more frequently victims than either the very old or very young.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This is in no way different from that of catarrhal enteritis, and visible alterations are not always apparent. The same shrunken, ashen appearance of the skin characteristic of cholera may be found in fatal cases of cholera morbus.

**Symptoms.**—The victim of cholera morbus is commonly seized suddenly, often at night, with *severe cramp, vomiting, and purging*. The first vomitus is the food last ingested, but this is rapidly succeeded by bilious matter, and still later by almost pure water. The same may be said of the bowel discharges, which follow each other in rapid succession—in fact, become at times almost continuous. They present ultimately all the physical characters of the rice-water discharges of true cholera.

The *pain* is at first confined to the abdomen, the paroxysms succeeding each attack of vomiting. Later it extends to the muscles elsewhere, especially those of the calves of the legs.

Corresponding to the loss of water is *thirst*, often intense. The patient is *restless and anxious*. Collapse may supervene, and the *skin become cold, clammy, and ashen-hued, the eyes deeply sunken, the pulse frequent and feeble*. There is not often fever, though the internal temperature is higher than that of the surface. The mind remains clear, even in the event of a fatal termination, almost to the end, when it may become clouded.

**Diagnosis.**—This was fully considered when treating of cholera, to the section on which the student is referred. The symptoms caused by over-doses of arsenic, antimony, and the poisonous mushroom are similar.

**Prognosis.**—This is usually favorable, the gravest cases recovering, as a rule. A single night commonly measures the duration of an attack. Fatal cases, however, occur, the very old and the very young being most often victims. Prompt treatment is of the utmost importance, as it will usually cut short an attack which will otherwise last from 24 to 36 hours and be succeeded by a slow convalescence.

**Treatment.**—Opium is almost indispensable to the successful treatment of an attack of cholera morbus. The happiest method of exhibition is by the hypodermic needle, more especially because everything given by the mouth is apt to be promptly rejected. For an adult less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0165 gm.) of morphin is hardly to be thought of. On the other hand, such a dose will often act magically. It should be associated with diffuse counterirritation over the abdomen by mustard, while the hot bath may be added, if the symptoms do not yield.

In the absence of the hypodermic needle, remedies must be given by the mouth. The association with morphin of the hot aromatics, such as ginger and cloves, seems to aid its retention. Hence the efficiency of the various forms of "cholera drops," the formula for some of which are given under cholera. Chlorodyne is an admirable remedy. Unfortunately, the preparations by different pharmacists are not of uniform strengths. On the

other hand, the doses are commonly indicated on the labels, and it is safe to say they may be usually doubled without harm to the patient.

The nausea may be controlled by ice, by cold carbonated waters, by pieces of ice swallowed whole, or by champagne. The latter is particularly appropriate when stimulants are needed, as constantly happens. When there is a tendency to collapse, whisky and ether may be injected under the skin, while enteroclysis and hypodermoclysis may be needed for the same reasons as in true cholera—the restoration of the water lost from the system.

### DIARRHEAS OF CHILDREN.

The importance of these, and some specialization in their symptomatology, demand a separate consideration. Three forms, more or less distinct, are recognizable—viz., acute dyspeptic enteritis, cholera infantum, and acute enterocolitis.

#### ACUTE DYSPEPTIC ENTERITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Acute Dyspeptic Diarrhea.*

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the small intestine due to diet unsuited to the infant.

**Etiology.**—The errors in diet referred to do not necessarily consist in unnatural foods substituted for the mother's milk. The latter itself may be altered in quality by emotional causes, by improper food, and by improper hygiene; or the child may be too liberally supplied by overfrequent nursing. Milk itself may be infectious by the presence of streptococcus and tuberculosis infection derived from suppurating and tubercular udders. More often, however, acute dyspeptic enteritis is the result of ingestion of unnatural food, either of substances palpably unsuitable, carelessly allowed, or surreptitiously taken, or of substitutes necessarily employed for mother's milk when she is unable to nurse her infant.

"Bottle food," the most carefully selected, is unnatural, and is probably the most frequent cause of dyspeptic diarrhea in children otherwise well cared for. Two factors in this are active: first, the relatively greater indigestibility of the foods thus applied; and, second, the bacteria and their toxic products which develop in it before or after ingestion. Normally, the feces of infants contain but few species of bacteria, of which the most important are the *bacterium aerogenes* and the *bacterium coli commune*. The former seems to be an exclusive product of a milk diet, depending upon the milk-sugar for its nourishment, and is found in the upper bowel, where it excites fermentation in milk. The habitat of the *bacterium coli commune* is the lower part of the small intestine and the colon, where it is probably also an agent of fermentation. In infantile diarrhea the number of species of bacteria is greatly increased, but no one or more species has as yet been shown to possess a specific causal effect.

There are also predisposing influences which facilitate the action of the essential causes. These are, especially, dentition and the extreme heat of summer. The effect of the former is learned in the experience of every mother, while the extraordinary frequency of infantile diarrhea in summer attests the latter. It is evident, too, that constitutional weakness and bad

hygiene must also cooperate to diminish the resisting power of infants to other causes. Hence it is that the children of the delicate, the poor, and the unclean suffer most.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This seldom exceeds the stage of catarrhal swelling, already described when treating of the enteritis of adults.

**Symptoms.**—No symptoms may precede the diarrhea, but usually there is in the beginning *restlessness*, with slight *fever*, which seldom becomes high. Such restlessness may be due to *nausea* or to colicky *pain*. The nausea may go on to *vomiting* or not, but *purging* soon occurs. Sudden onset is characteristic. The stools are at first copious and offensive, often yeasty and sour, and generally contain particles of coagulated milk or other undigested food, such as unripe fruit, if the child is old enough to eat it. At first infrequent, they become more numerous, more scanty, acquire sometimes a green color and sometimes contain mucus, rarely blood. In other words, the condition passes over into enterocolitis. There may be but three or four stools or there may be 20 or more in the 24 hours.

In other cases fever is more decided, and the temperature may rise rapidly to 104° F. (40° C.); there are great *thirst* and *scanty urine*. Even when there is no fever, *emaciation* is rapid, and the child falls away amazingly in a few days.

**Diagnosis.**—The sudden onset and the character of the stools are distinctive and scarcely mistakable. The small amount of mucus distinguishes them from those of ileo-colitis, and the absence of serous discharge from those of cholera infantum.

**Prognosis.**—This, among the better classes, is commonly favorable, but among the weak, puny, and half starved children of the poor large numbers perish, especially in hot weather. The disease may pass over into the much more serious affection of entero-colitis.

**Treatment.**—The principles of treatment are similar to those of enteritis in adults. A primary purge is commonly indicated. Calcined magnesia is very suitable, though castor oil is here also useful. After the purge, bismuth subnitrate or prepared chalk, in doses of 2 1/2 grains (0.165 gm.) for a child a year old, with 1/2 grain (0.033 gm.) of salol as an intestinal antiseptic, may be given every two or three hours. If there is pain, 1/24 to 1/12 grain (0.0027 to 0.0054 gm.) of opium may be added each time or every other dose, as may be demanded by circumstances. An attempt should first be made to relieve pain by gentle counterirritation, as by weak mustard plasters or a plaster of mixed spices, wet in whisky or alcohol, and known as a "spice plaster," and worn continuously. Deodorized tincture of opium or paregoric may be substituted for the whisky. Astringents are seldom necessary in children's diarrhea, but the compound tincture of kino, which contains a little opium, is an efficient remedy, which probably owes much of its efficacy to the latter. Chalk mixture, to which a few drops of paregoric may be added, is an efficient remedy. The pure antiseptic treatment has never commended itself to me, and I am inclined to think that more harm than good has been done by such remedies as resorcin, naphthalin, and the like, which are often irritating.

The regulation of diet is of the utmost importance. It is better to give the child nothing except a little cold water or barley water than unsuitable food, while any food that is given should be very much diluted, and should

be scanty rather than overabundant. Too much food is often given. Nothing is better than peptonized milk, if the mother's milk or that of a wet-nurse be unobtainable. Plain fresh cow's milk well diluted may do as well. *In fact, all milk foods should be diluted with Vichy water, lime-water, or plain water, to which a little brandy may be added.* As long as casein appears in the stools the milk requires further dilution, or the casein may be removed altogether and the whey only allowed. Animal broths, however dilute, are not advised, though occasionally beef juice is well borne when milk has not been, especially in children two or more years old. Albumen water, made by mixing the albumen of one or two eggs with 1 pint ( $\frac{1}{2}$  liter) of sterilized water, is much more suitable. As the child improves and stronger food is indicated "modified" milk of such strength as is indicated by the age of the child should be supplied.

The hygienic surroundings of the child are important. Frequent bathing; light, cool dressing in warm weather; and fresh air at all times are indispensable. The patient should be removed from city air to the country or seaside, when possible; and when this is not possible, frequent excursions should be made to the country or on an adjacent river. It is not desirable to keep the child on the lap any more than is necessary.

#### ACUTE ENTERO-COLITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Acute Ileocolitis; Follicular Enteritis; Follicular Dysentery.*

**Definition.**—An inflammation more severe than dyspeptic enteritis, chiefly of the ileum and colon, affecting especially the lymph follicles.

**Etiology.**—Enterocolitis is also a disease of the hot months and of teething. It is met, however, in the cooler seasons. It is produced by the same causes as dyspeptic diarrhea. It is more frequent between the ages of six and 18 months—second summer—and is not infrequent in the third and fourth years. It may be a termination of dyspeptic diarrhea or of cholera infantum.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid changes are more positive than in acute dyspeptic diarrhea, and are found chiefly in the ileum and colon. In the first stage the mucous membrane is congested and swollen, while the solitary follicles and Peyer's patches are more distinct. The epithelium is exfoliated in places. As the disease continues into the second stage, say after the first week, the enlarged follicles and Peyer's patches become ulcerated. The changes may end here or may become more extensive, constituting the third stage, the ulcers enlarging and deepening to the muscular coat, with the separation of a slough. Or there may be a diffuse infiltration of the bowel with small cells, producing a decided thickening of the same, with more or less obliteration of its distinctive structure. The process may be so intense as to cause coagulation-necrosis—false membrane.

**Symptoms.**—The disease may begin as a *dyspeptic diarrhea*, also as a *cholera infantum*. It is much more serious than dyspeptic diarrhea, as evidenced by the higher fever, which rises rapidly to  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  C.), but still remains lower than in cholera infantum. *Vomiting* is less common than in dyspeptic diarrhea or cholera infantum. There are decided abdominal *pain* and a *tense, swollen belly*. The fecal discharges, which are at first painless, are small in quantity and contain much mucus and even a little blood.

They vary in frequency from 15 to 30 in the 24 hours, and occur more frequently during the day. The disease may abate at this stage and convalescence be established, though recovery remains slow. Or the symptoms may increase in severity, the fever persist, and the stools be *painful* and *small*, consisting mainly of mucus and blood. Commonly odorless, they may also be extremely fetid. The *urine* is scanty, of high specific gravity, and deposits mixed urates. The child wastes almost to a skeleton, the skin becomes loose and flabby, and the "old man" appearance is assumed. Such a case may last five or six weeks, terminating fatally, yet may, on the other hand, get well. A few fatal cases are much more rapid in their course, being ushered in with convulsions and ending in from 48 hours to five or six days. Relapses after convalescence are not uncommon, and should be guarded against.

**Diagnosis.**—Acute entero-colitis is characterized by a greater severity than *dyspeptic diarrhea*, by the high fever, the large amount of mucus in the stools, the greater pain, and the more rapid prostration. From *cholera infantum* it differs in its lower hyperpyrexia, and in the absence of vomiting, of colliquative diarrhea, and of collapse.

**Prognosis.**—This is more unfavorable than in acute dyspeptic diarrhea; more favorable than in cholera infantum. Recovery is not infrequent after a lengthy illness of four to six weeks, while the severe dysenteric form is apt to be early fatal. Much depends upon the promptness with which treatment is instituted and the ability of the parents to carry it out, and upon the previous vigor of the child, its hygiene, and its food.

**Treatment.**—The general hygienic and dietetic treatment of acute entero-colitis is similar to that of acute dyspeptic diarrhea; the medicinal treatment is somewhat different. Anodynes are more imperatively demanded, because there is greater suffering, and depletion may be needed in the beginning by salines, though good judgment is required, because the child's strength must be husbanded. Otherwise, drugs are not of much use, though bismuth, in full doses, may be given with advantage.

The colon may be flushed with a one per cent. cold salt solution, or cold water or pieces of ice may be introduced into the rectum, which may also be used for medication, more particularly by opium. I do not think the large rectal enemas recommended in the chronic colitis of adults are to be advised for children. If used, they should be very weak. Solutions of nitrate of silver, 1 grain to the ounce (0.066 gm. to 30 c.c.), and tannic acid, 5 grains to the ounce (0.33 gm. to 30 c.c.), are suitable. The mouth should be often examined and, when necessary, the coming teeth scarified, not once only, but as often as necessary.

#### CHOLERA INFANTUM.

**Definition.**—A variety of acute catarrhal enteritis of intense severity, corresponding in symptoms and course to cholera morbus in the adult, but much more serious in termination.

**Etiology.**—The same reasons that lead us to expect a specific cause of cholera morbus would suggest one also for cholera infantum. None has, however, been found. It may reasonably be ascribed to toxins generated in the decomposition and fermentation of foods, since some error of diet is almost always the apparent exciting cause. There are also predisposing

causes, of which hot weather, dentition, or both, bad hygiene, the previous presence of dyspeptic diarrhea or entero-colitis, are instances. It is less frequent than either of the last-named affections, including only a small proportion of the summer complaints of children—according to Holt not more than two or three per cent.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is little, if any, deviation from the normal appearance in the affected bowel.

**Symptoms.**—These consist in copious *serous stools*, at first containing some offensive fecal matter, later a few particles of greenish matter; but ultimately they are almost aqueous, being ejected also with great force. They contain numerous bacteria, but no constant organism has been found. There is *crampy pain*, and the *limbs are drawn up or rigidly extended*. There is decided *fever*, more than in either of the two other forms, the temperature reaching 105° F. (40.5° C.); the *pulse* is frequent and feeble, while *restlessness* is a characteristic symptom. The temperature should be taken in the rectum, as that of the axilla may be misleading. Indeed, the skin sometimes feels cool when the internal temperature is high. There is intense *thirst*, and the child eagerly drinks water. The purging may come on suddenly or may succeed dyspeptic diarrhea or ileo-colitis. Simultaneously there is severe and obstinate *vomiting*, including bile at first; but later the vomited matter is also serous. The *tongue is coated* in the beginning, but later becomes dry and red. The child rapidly loses strength and as rapidly emaciates. The restlessness is succeeded by *apathy* and *indifference*, and the condition passes into collapse. The eyes become sunken, the fontanels depressed, the skin gray or ashen and closely applied to the frame, producing an appearance which, once seen, is rarely forgotten. Or the more severe symptoms may subside, and a condition of *torpor* or *semi-consciousness* may supervene. The head is retracted, and there may be *convulsions*; the breathing is interrupted and of the Cheyne-Stokes type; the pupils are irregular; there is clutching of the fingers—in a word, the “hydrecephaloid” state, so called by Marshall Hall, is present. These “brain symptoms” have often misled the inexperienced, but they are not associated with changes in the brain or in its meninges. They may be due to the toxins developed in the intestine by bacteria.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not difficult. The serous vomiting and purging, rapid emaciation and prostration, and the hyperpyrexia are significant, while the nervous symptoms described as succeeding them confirm the nature of the disease.

**Prognosis.**—Unless the last-described symptoms supervene, the course is rapid to a fatal termination by collapse in from a few to 24 or 48 hours. If the hydrecephaloid state is added, the disease may be prolonged a few days more. Recovery is not impossible, and begins with abatement of the more serious symptoms within the first 24 hours, followed by tedious convalescence. Or there may be a delusive improvement, followed by a return of the choleraic symptoms, or the disease may pass into entero-colitis.

**Treatment.**—All that has been said about food in dyspeptic diarrhea and entero-colitis applies here, but the opportunity for its application cannot, indeed, be availed of unless convalescence sets in. The symptoms must be met with the greatest promptness by the same measures described in the treatment of adults, but adapted to the age of the child. Here, too,

opiates are indispensable. Even morphin may be used hypodermically with great caution. One-hundredth of a grain (0.00066 gm.) is about the proper dose for a child a year old, and it may be associated with  $1/500$  grain (0.0001032 gm.) of atropin. This may be repeated in an hour if the symptoms do not subside, at a longer interval if they do. Laudanum or deodorized tincture of opium may be substituted and administered by the rectum in doses of from 2 to 4 drops (0.133 to 0.264 gm.) in 2 drams of starch-water. Minute doses of Dover's powder, say  $1/10$  grain (0.006 gm.), may be given in combination with bismuth in doses of 2 grains (0.12 gm.). For the diarrhea that may continue after abatement of the acute symptoms preparations of silver, preferably the oxid, are sometimes of value. They may be combined with opium, the dose of the silver being  $1/12$  grain (0.0056 gm.), of the opium  $1/24$  to  $1/12$  grain (0.00275 gm. to 0.0056 gm.).

The hyperpyrexia must be combated by hydrotherapy—the bath at 80° F., rapidly reduced to 70° F. (26.6° to 21.1° C.); or, if this cannot be done, the child should be wrapped in sheets wrung out in cold water. Sponging is a feeble substitute. Hyperpyrexia is one of the dangers.

Stimulants are indicated, but the difficulty is to secure their retention. Brandy is the best form of stimulant, though iced champagne may be given in small doses often repeated, while the prompt rejection of liquids should not discourage their readministration. Irrigation of the large bowel may be added, using a flexible catheter, which is introduced six or eight inches (2.3 to 2.7 cm.). A pint (0.5 liter) will suffice for a child six months old, and a quart (1 liter) for one of two years. The water may be tepid, or cold if the temperature is high. The one per cent. salt solution may be administered by enteroclysis, and even by hypodermoclysis in extreme cases of collapse. The hot bath should be substituted for the cold in collapse, and strychnin may be administered hypodermically in doses of  $1/100$  grain (0.00066 gm.) to a child one year old.

Should convalescence set in or entero-colitis supervene, great caution in the giving of food should be observed. Only peptonized milk should be used, substituted occasionally by raw beef juice, increased, if well borne, a teaspoonful at a time; or dilute egg-albumen may be tried if these are not retained.

#### THE CELIAC AFFECTION IN CHILDREN.

SYNONYMS.—*Diarrhæa alba*; *Diarrhæa chylosa*.

**Definition.**—A form of intestinal catarrh of children one to five years old, of insidious onset, and characterized by copious, offensive, loose, frothy stools, resembling oatmeal gruel in color and consistence. It was first described by Gee.

**Etiology.**—This is unknown. Ulceration of the intestine has been found, but there is no distinctive morbid anatomy.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms, in addition to those named, are progressive *wasting* and *weakness*. There is *no fever*. The abdomen is distended as by flatus, but is inelastic and doughy.

**Prognosis.**—It is commonly fatal. It has been likened to the *hill diarrhea* of the tropics, which affects adults.

**Treatment.**—This can only be symptomatic.

#### PSEUDOMEMBRANOUS ENTERITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Croupous Enteritis*; *Diphtheritic Enteritis*.

**Definition.**—A rare variety of intense inflammation affecting either bowel, and characterized by the formation of false membrane.

**Etiology.**—Pseudomembranous enteritis occurs in connection with such infectious diseases as pyemia, pneumonia, scarlet fever, and even typhoid fever; also from the toxic effect of mineral poisons, such as lead, mercury, and arsenic, and during the cachexias which develop toward the close of cancer, Bright's disease, cirrhosis of the liver, and the like, as a terminal infection.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The false membrane present varies in extent and depth. It may be limited so as simply to tip the villi and valvulæ conniventes or other folds with a grayish-yellow film, or the coagulation-necrosis may infiltrate a greater depth in flake-like patches, or it may invade the follicles and solitary glands, which may suppurate. To the false membrane is commonly added a hyperemic basis. The deep-seated diphtheritic inflammation found in diphtheritic dysentery is elsewhere described.

**Symptoms.**—These may be so slight as to be unnoticeable. At other times there are *diarrhea* and *abdominal pain*, but nothing distinctive.

**Treatment.**—This is symptomatic, and that of the attending and causing disease.

### PHLEGMONOUS ENTERITIS.

This is a rare disease, consisting in a diffuse suppurative infiltration of the submucosa, analogous to phlegmonous inflammation of the stomach. It has been found after intussusception and strangulated hernia, and may cause symptoms of peritonitis by invasion of this coat of the bowel, but there are no symptoms by which it can be recognized before death. It has been met in the duodenum.

### HEMORRHAGIC INFARCT OF THE BOWEL.

**Definition.**—Hemorrhagic extravasation in the wall of the small intestine, due to embolism or thrombosis of one or other of the mesenteric arteries.

**Etiology.**—A warty vegetation from coexisting valvular heart disease may become the embolus, or the latter may arise from the clot in an aneurysm of the aorta.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There are congestion, infiltration, and swelling of the jejunum and ileum, and the superior mesenteric artery will generally be found plugged with a clot, which may be preceded by an embolus. The mesentery may also be the seat of congestion and infiltration.

**Symptoms.**—There may be sudden *nausea*, *vomiting*, *faintness*, *abdominal tympany*, and *pain*. There may be symptoms of *obstruction*, or *diarrhea* with *blood-stained stools*.

**Diagnosis.**—The condition is so rare that infarction is not apt to be thought of. But should there be valvular heart disease or aneurysm, the sudden occurrence of the symptoms mentioned might suggest this cause.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—The prognosis is invariably fatal in severe cases, and though the occlusion of a small vessel may be followed by recovery, there is no treatment which will avail further than to abate the symptoms.

### ULCERATION OF THE BOWEL.

**What is Meant.**—Apart from ulceration symptomatic of typhoid fever, dysentery, tuberculosis, and chronic enteritis, we are not often called upon



to recognize this lesion, while its presence is often unattended with any symptoms whatever. The ulceration of typhoid fever, dysentery, and follicular enteritis requires no further reference; nor the peptic duodenal ulcer which was considered in connection with gastric ulcer; nor tubercular ulceration secondary to tuberculosis elsewhere, which may be said to be probable whenever such tuberculosis becomes associated with obstinate diarrhea, uncontrollable or only partly controllable by medicines. Such probability may be confirmed or not by the finding of bacilli in the fecal discharges, to which end cultures should also be made. At the same time it is to be remembered that bacilli found may have been swallowed with sputum, a source more likely if the patient is known to swallow sputum habitually.

**PRIMARY TUBERCULAR ULCER.**—Occasionally tubercular ulcers occur primarily or without preceding symptoms of tuberculosis elsewhere, especially in children. They are seldom, if ever, below the ileum and appendix vermiformis, yet they do occur in the rectum. There is no way of discovering them during life.

In the first place, such ulceration is hardly suggested unless there is some discharge from the rectum of the nature of diarrhea, or pus, with or without hemorrhage. Given, however, such symptoms, with tenderness in the region of the ileum, decided fever, pronounced emaciation, and a tubercular history, the feces should be examined for tubercle bacilli, the finding of which would be conclusive in the absence of the possibility of their being swallowed. On the other hand, their absence would not exclude tuberculosis. The sago-like clumps of mucus, formerly considered pathognomonic of tubercular ulceration; are no longer so regarded, since they are found in cases where autopsy has established the absence of any ulceration whatever. The presence of enlarged mesenteric glands palpable through the abdominal walls would be a further confirmation. Especially justified would be the suspicion if to the diarrhea the symptoms of circumscribed peritonitis—viz., tenderness, impaired percussion resonance, and perhaps slight fever—are added, or if there are the symptoms of general peritonitis.

A rare, but acknowledged, seat of the tubercular ulcer is the appendix vermiformis, a rupture of which might cause any one of the varieties of perityphlitis and peritonitis due to perforation in appendicular disease, including postperitoneal abscess invading the neighborhood of the kidney and producing one of the forms of perinephric abscess. A similar termination may follow perforation of any form of ulcer of the bowel suitably situated, as in the posterior wall of the ascending and transverse parts of the duodenum, and ascending and descending colon. The presence of tubercular ulcer is not incompatible with cicatrization, which may even produce stenosis of the bowel. Tubercular ulcer of the rectum may be recognized by specular examination.

**SYPHILITIC ULCER.**—Syphilitic ulceration is confined almost entirely to the rectum, and is not very common here. Its possible presence in the colon and ileum is simply to be remembered, as its diagnosis is out of the question. The suspicion of its occurrence in the rectum is justified under circumstances of rectal discharge of blood and pus not due to carcinoma. Syphilitic ulcers arise as primary sores and papules or from breaking down of

gummy tumors. They are characterized by their serpiginous outline, an indisposition to heal, and the presence of condylomata about the anus—usually the broad, but rarely also the pointed variety.

EMBOLIC ULCER is another possible variety of intestinal ulcer, though it is not recognizable before autopsy. Embolism and consequent ulcer may happen when valvular heart disease exists or septic pyemia, and it is possible that a branch of an intestinal artery may become the seat of lodgment of an embolus from the heart or from some septic focus, and be followed by necrosis and solution of the area supplied by it.

**Treatment.**—In addition to the general treatment of tuberculosis, the diarrhea occasioned by the ulceration should be treated by the usual remedies, among which should be included nitrate of silver and sulphate of copper with opium.

The patient with syphilitic ulceration should receive the specific treatment of syphilis, while the ulcer, if accessible, should be treated by local applications of silver nitrate in solid stick.

## APPENDICITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Typhlitis; Perityphlitis; Paratyphlitis.*

**Definition.**—An inflammation of the vermiform appendix, catarrhal, ulcerative, or interstitial, commonly extending to the peritoneum adjacent to it, producing:

1. A local adhesive peritonitis limited to the region of the appendix associated with an exudate of plastic material which may be absorbed or become organized periappendicitis.

2. Circumscribed suppuration or abscess—paraappendicitis, or perityphlitic abscess.

3. General septic peritonitis.

Perforation and gangrene are often intermediate incidents.

Catarrhal appendicitis may not extend beyond the mucous coat of the appendix in which event the peritoneal coat may be intact at operation.

The word appendicitis, which is now by almost unanimous consent applied to the disease under consideration, did not secure the application without a struggle. The term typhlitis, so long employed, was adopted because it was thought that the disease began in the cecum, or typhlon. Modern studies go to show that true appendicitis almost never begins in the cecum, but that in essentially all cases the appendix is the root of the evil. Inflammation and perforation of the cecum are, however, possible events, though they are not clinically separable from appendicitis. It also often happens that one of the earliest symptoms by which appendicitis is recognized is that of inflammation of the peritoneum covering the appendix and adjacent cecum; but the existence of very positive disease of the mucous membrane of the appendix has been demonstrated over and over again when the peritoneum has not been invaded. It is, therefore, likely that the process begins in the appendicular mucous membrane each time. The term appendicular peritonitis, or periappendicitis, is a good one for the inflammation of the peritoneal covering of the appendix, while para-

appendicitis or perityphlitis is equally suitable for the more extensive peritonitis about the cecum, and the term perityphlitic abscess indicates well that a similar inflammation has gone on to pus formation.

**Historical.**—None of the facts bearing on the nature of appendicitis is of very old date, while the correct notion of its nature may be said to have been quite recently established. The first recorded case of perforation of the vermiform appendix appears to have been by Mestivier, in 1759, caused by a large pin in the appendix; another was reported by J. Parkinson, an English physician, in 1812; another by Wegeler, in 1813. In 1824 Louyer-Villermay reported a case of fatal peritonitis which he ascribed to perforation of the appendix. In 1827 Melier reported four cases—three of perforative appendicitis and one of relapsing appendicitis. Melier even suggested the possibility of curing the patient by operation, providing the diagnosis could be sufficiently established. Other isolated cases of fatal inflammation of the appendix were published from time to time, but the first systematic article was prepared by Husson and Dance in 1827, at the suggestion of Dupuytren, and the views promulgated by them were apparently those of the great surgeon himself, since they are the same as those he published six years later (1833) in his "Lectures on Clinical Surgery." He treats of irritation and inflammation of the mucous membrane of the cecum, extending thence to the retrocecal tissue and thence rarely to the peritoneum. The appendix is totally ignored. In 1830 Goldbeck, at the suggestion of Puchelt, of Heidelberg, wrote his graduation thesis, "On a Peculiar Inflammatory Tumor of the Right Iliac Region." He adopted the views of the French authors and called the disease perityphlitis. He also recorded a case of perforation of the appendix with resulting peritonitis. He says, moreover, that in fatal cases of perityphlitis the appendix has been found intact.

In 1831 J. M. Ferrall published a paper, said to have been written several years earlier, on "Phlegmonous Tumors in the Right Iliac Region," in which the cecum is also held to be the primary seat of the phlegmon, which is described as extending thence to the connective tissue behind it, the peritoneum being accorded a minor rôle.

In 1834 James Copland, in his "Dictionary of Practical Medicine," describes what is now known as perityphlitis under the title "Inflammation of the Cecum." He, moreover, recognized the appendix as a possible primary seat of disease excited by foreign bodies in it and terminating in gangrene—a great advance over the views of Dupuytren. John Burne came still nearer the truth in 1837 and again in 1830. Though he wrote on "Inflammation of the Cecum," even in his first paper he speaks of "ulceration of the appendix" set up by foreign bodies, such as raisin seeds, cherry stones, and concretions, of possible perforation resulting in general peritonitis or local peritonitis, with abscess. In his second paper he goes further, and states his belief that all Dupuytren's cases were due to disease of the appendix. He introduced the term *typhlo-enteritis*.

In 1838 J. F. H. Albers retrograded a little. Publishing a paper on inflammation of the cecum and introducing the term *typhlitis*, which he divides into acute, chronic, and stercoral typhlitis with perityphlitis, he distinguished the latter affection from typhlitis, with which he says Puchelt and others confounded it. But while recognizing the possibility of disease starting in the appendix and going on even to perforation he regarded the phlegmon of the right iliac fossa as more frequently due to disease of the cecum. In the next year Grisolle, appreciating correctly the rôle played by perforation of the appendix in causing the iliac phlegmon and abscess, opposed the teaching of Albers and claimed that inflammation of the cecum would not cause the grave effects ascribed to it, since dysenteric and other well-recognized forms of ulceration of the same structure show no tendency to extend into the neighboring connective tissue. Grisolle, however, as though under the thrall of Dupuytren and the French school, still assigned an important rôle to the cecum.

From this time, however, and, indeed, from the date of Burne's paper in 1837 to the present, appendicitis has been an acknowledged disease; but it has seemed almost impossible, even to this day, to shake off the idea of typhlitis as a responsible factor in the phenomena of appendicitis. Louyer-Villermay in 1840 reported some cases of rapidly fatal inflammation and gangrene of the appendix. In 1843 A. Voltz published a retrospective paper entitled "Ulceration and Perforation of the Appendix" occasioned by foreign bodies. He concluded that the appendix was the organ at fault in all cases previously published, and apparently for the first time the cecum and retrocecal tissues were ignored.

Simple catarrh of the appendix was first recognized by Rokitansky in 1843 in his classic work on "Pathological Anatomy." He ascribes it to the irritation of fecal matter and to concretions, and contrasts it with the more intense processes of gangrene and perforation. Such inflammation, he says, may become chronic or go on to ulceration. He also refers to the benign effect of inflammatory adhesions in protecting against general peritonitis in the event of subsequent perforation. He still admitted the existence of catarrhal inflammation of the cecum, ulceration

and perforation of the latter, with inflammation of the postcecal tissue as a consequence. So G. Lewis in 1856 ascribed the less serious consequences—including, however, suppuration—to typhlitis, while the violent and fatal cases, he said, began with appendicitis, induced always by concretions. In 1858 C. Wister attached further importance to the part of the appendix in producing the symptoms in question. In this year, too, Oppolzer suggested the name *paratyphlitis* for that form of iliac phlegmon which was extraperitoneal; *i. e.*, between the iliac fascia and bone.

Samuel Wilks was one of those who appreciated the rôle of the appendix. Thus in the treatise of Wilks and Moxon on "Pathological Anatomy" in 1875, he says, referring to the terms cecitis, typhlitis, and perityphlitis: "It is not clear, however, that any one particular form of disease is intended by those who make use of these expressions. The cases to which these names are given frequently occur clinically and recover; but when disease in the same region, with similar characters, proves fatal, we find usually some prior morbid process in the appendix rather than in the cecum itself." Also, "the suddenness of the attack of cecitis and the local peritonitis following, even in the large number of cases which recover, all point to the appendix as being the most frequent cause." But he says also "Inflammations of the cecum itself do occur, and apparently are sometimes caused by continuous lodgment of hard feces in this part of the intestines. Such inflammations, by ulcerating the mucous membrane, lead to perforation and local peritonitis, forming fecal abscesses which may discharge inward, but we believe that this is comparatively rare." Wilks' most recent views are perhaps best expressed by C. Hilton Fagge, who, in his "Practice of Medicine," edition of 1886, says: "Wilks has repeatedly expressed to me the opinion that in both 'typhlitis and perityphlitis' the disease begins in the appendix, and that variations in the intensity of the morbid process are the real cause of the supposed distinction between them. And so far as I can learn, all the evidence which morbid anatomy affords points strongly in that direction."

C. With, of Copenhagen, was apparently the first to deny pointedly, in 1880, that peritonitis ever originates in typhlitis. In 1883 William Pepper described the "relapsing" form of appendicitis. Reginald H. Fitz, in a timely and exhaustive paper read before the Association of American Physicians in 1886, admitted, as an extreme rarity, a primary perforating inflammation of the cecum with which appendicitis may be confounded. In a second paper in 1888 he concluded, essentially, that the conditions described as typhlitis, perityphlitis, paratyphlitis, appendicular peritonitis, and perityphlitic abscess are varieties of one and the same affection—*appendicitis*.

The text-books published prior to 1892 treat very generally typhlitis as an important factor in producing the ultimate phenomena of what is now known as appendicitis, unless we except that of Fagge, already quoted, who, while he uses the word typhlitis, evidently means by it disease of the appendix. Ziegler, in his "Pathological Anatomy" (1885), also uses the word typhlitis for appendicitis. William Osler, in his edition of 1892, says that the terms "perityphlitis and paratyphlitis should be altogether discarded, as the cases are, with rare exceptions, due to disease of the vermiform appendix;" and says also of "typhlitis, or inflammation of the cecum," that it is "a doubtful and uncertain malady, the pathology of which is not known, but which, clinically, is still recognized by authors." In his edition of 1898 he says "the 'iliac phlegmon' was thought to be due to disease of the cecum—*typhlitis*—and of the peritoneum covering it—*perityphlitis*; but we know now that with rare exceptions the cecum itself is not affected, and even the condition formerly described as stercoral typhlitis is in reality appendicitis." William Pepper, in the "Text-book of Medicine by American Teachers" (1894), treats of typhlitis as an affection very much less common than formerly supposed, because "the majority of cases of acute disease in the right iliac fossa are in reality appendicitis."

Six special treatises of great value have been published in English: "The Pathology of the Vermiform Appendix," by T. N. Kelynack, of Manchester, England, in 1893; "Appendicitis and Perityphlitis," by C. Talamon, and translated from the French by Richard J. H. Berry, of Edinburgh, in 1893; "Appendicitis," by George R. Fowler, of New York, in 1894; "Diseases of the Vermiform Appendix," by Herbert P. Hawkins, of London, in 1895; "A Treatise on Appendicitis," by John B. Deaver, of Philadelphia, in 1896, and another by Howard A. Kelly in 1905. Hawkins summarizes the situation in the following proposition, to the confirmation of which American surgery has largely contributed: "In fact, it will be generally allowed that a perforating ulcer of the cecum, though it does certainly occur, is of so rare an occurrence that it may be disregarded"; also, "There is ample evidence that appendicular disease is, at any rate, of frequent occurrence; and this frequency, moreover, is sufficiently frequent to justify us in regarding the appendix as the sole cause of all cases of perityphlitis, mild or severe."

As a turning point in the history of appendicitis may be mentioned the suggestion of early operation by Willard Parker in 1867. Grisolle had made the same suggestion 30 years earlier, and doubtless, as stated by B. Farquhar Curtis,<sup>1</sup> many

<sup>1</sup>"Twentieth Century Practice of Medicine," 1896, vol. viii., p. 434.

such abscesses about to point had been incised, but Parker first suggested this as a systematic treatment. In 1881 Kraussold advocated early operation and was apparently the first in Germany to do so, but made no reference to Parker. In 1882 Noyes reported 100 cases treated by Parker's method of which 90 had been done in the United States. In 1887 R. F. Weir, of New York, strongly urged the early operation, without waiting for adhesions between the pus sac about the appendix and the abdominal wall, and even, if necessary, to open the general peritoneal cavity in order to reach the pus. At the end of 1887 Sands recorded the first successful case of deliberate laparotomy for general peritonitis from ordinary perforation of the appendix, a prior case by Hall in 1886 being rather an accidental one. In 1888 Treves reported a series of cases of operation for chronic appendicitis of the relapsing type. In 1889 Charles McBurney advocated even earlier operation and removal of the appendix before perforation. In addition to Parker, Sands, Weir, and McBurney, Bull, of New York, Murphy and Nicholas Senn, of Chicago, Maurice H. Richardson, of Boston, and John B. Deaver, W. W. Keen, and Thomas G. Morton, of Philadelphia, were important coadjutors in placing the operation for appendicitis on its present plane. In 1898 Porrier announced his dictum, "Acute appendicitis in all varieties and degrees should be operated as soon as possible." In 1899 Richardson and Greenough definitely recognized the value of the leukocyte count in appendicitis; Deaver took his stand insisting on operation in acute cases. In the same year A. O. J. Kelly, in a study of 460 cases prior to January 1, 1899, investigated predisposing factors, causes, etc.; Edebohls advocated inversion of entire appendix; Weir suggested pulling over the rectus muscle to enlarge McBurney's incision, and Willy Meyer suggested his "hockey-stick incision." In 1901 H. C. Low, of Boston, made a careful study of the bacteriology of appendicitis and announced the preponderance of *B. coli communis*. In 1902 Weir, advised appendicostomy. In 1903 Ochsner advocated his line of treatment the object of which is to secure peristaltic rest by washing out the stomach and withdrawal of food. In 1904 Macewen published an important monograph on the functions of the cecum and appendix, and Van Walenburg one on experimental appendicitis. In 1904 McCosh published an important paper on infection in children. In this year work on carcinoma and tumors of the appendix began. Murphy advised the treatment of desperate cases before and after operations by the stillicidium-plan of rectal injection. The same year Treves wrote on vicissitudes and results after appendectomy. In 1905 Howard A. Kelly's great work on appendicitis was published, and Hain's investigation on the bacteriology of appendicitis. In 1905, too, Rovsing's sign in appendicitis was announced. Ribbert treated of involution of the appendix, and H. D. Rolleston, Jones and McWilliams on carcinoma of the appendix.

**Pathology and Morbid Anatomy.**—The etiology of appendicitis will be more easily understood if its morbid anatomy is first considered. Modern studies establish the existence of three degrees or stages of appendicitis:

1. Catarrhal appendicitis.
2. Ulcerative appendicitis.
3. Interstitial or parietal appendicitis.

1. *Catarrhal Appendicitis.*—Our knowledge of this is based upon the systematic, minute study of cases which come to autopsy from other causes as well as from operation. In the first or acute stage there is a shedding of the epithelium of the mucous membrane, with detachment, partial destruction, and extrusion of the follicles of Lieberkühn, and some cellular infiltration of the retiform tissue at their base. The lumen of the appendix contains mucus, leukocytes, exfoliated cells, and casts more or less perfect, of the crypts, with granular débris from the same sources. In the second stage the basement membrane is broken and dislocated, and retiform tissue more closely infiltrated with leukocytes, and the internal surface ragged and uneven. In the third or still more advanced degree the mucous membrane is thickened by infiltration with cells. *The most important fact as to catarrhal appendicitis is that all three stages offer vulnerable foci for the attacks of pathogenic bacteria, and starting-points of an infectious peritonitis.* On the other hand, by the union of the opposing surfaces, *obliteration of the lumen* of the tube may take place, by which it is rendered immune against

further attacks. A natural cure has, in a word, been affected. The obliteration may be partial, producing stricture, beyond which a cystic distention of the tube in the end nearest the cecum is not infrequent.

2. *Ulcerative Appendicitis*.—In this stage the mucous membrane and submucous tissue are destroyed to various depths, while it may even culminate in perforation. It is often associated with a concretion or a foreign body. The latter is now acknowledged to be much more rare than was formerly supposed. The error was a natural one, owing to the close resemblance of fecal concretions to seeds, grains of wheat, cherry stones, and even date stones, as the result of a gradual molding of shape and loss of water. The concretions are sometimes also the seat of a deposit of lime salts. They may be multiple and may be in the appendix a long time without producing harmful effect, the patient dying of other causes. The same is true of foreign bodies, which do, of course, occur and include the objects already mentioned. A remarkable case was one occurring in my own practice in which after death from heart disease there was found at the autopsy in the appendix a wire nail 5 cm. long and 2 mm. thick. Fecal concretions are found in from 35 to 50 per cent. of cases; foreign bodies in a much smaller number—say 7 to 12 per cent.

3. *Interstitial or Parietal Appendicitis*.—This stage may succeed upon either of the two stages just described, but occasionally it may arise *de novo* by infection along the lymphatics. In the former event it starts in the abraded or ulcerated surface described; in the latter, in the substance of the appendix wall. It is commonly associated with necrosis or gangrene of the wall, but may prove fatal before the necrosis sets in. The appearances vary greatly. They may be limited to a mere point, scarcely visible, and between this and sphacelation of the entire organ there is every intermediate degree. The gangrenous organ is usually enlarged and distorted. The virulence of the appendicular peritonitis is, however, just as great when there is no necrosis. The peritonitis which ensues on perforation of the appendix is virulent, resulting from the invasion of the peritoneum by myriads of bacteria in the fecal matter set free at the time of rupture of the bowel.

The *minute changes* in interstitial appendicitis are as varied as the macroscopic, but Hawkins' summary of three more distinctive stages or degrees may be accepted as nearly correct. The cases which succeed on the catarrhal or ulcerative form are, of course, characterized by the loss of tissue corresponding to the extent of the disease. To these succeed destructive necrotic processes in the deeper structures of the wall. In the first stage of the latter the inflammation is characterized by necrosis of the muscular coats; in the second by suppuration in them; and in the third by their infiltration with leukocytes and inflammatory exudation. The first is, by far, the most common. In all three bacteria are found in the mucous and muscular coats, and all three are followed alike by virulent peritonitis.

The appendix may also be the seat—indeed, is not a very infrequent seat—of *tubercular ulceration*, followed, too, by perforation. I have seen a remarkable specimen of this kind in which no symptoms were present before death. So, too, a *typhoid ulcer* may form in the appendix and perforate, with the formation of a tumor mass in the right iliac region. *Follicular abscess* may exist and occasion the usual symptoms of appendicitis. Actino-

mycosis has also occurred in the appendix, with the formation of retrocecal abscess and metastatic abscess of the liver.

Superadded to these conditions is often a *localized or general peritonitis*, the development of which, in the majority of cases, constitutes the attack of appendicitis. In lesser degrees of the localized peritonitis the adhesions which form are limited to the appendix and adjacent serous tissues, limiting the inflammation and acting as a barrier against general peritoneal infection. In higher degrees the inflammation attacks as well the tissues more remote from the appendix (paraappendicitis), and forms the iliac phlegmon or tumor. This occupies the right iliac fossa and is variously constituted. It may consist of serous and cellular exudation, which mats together coils of small intestine and cecum, or there may be a massive accumulation of cells and liquid exudate, constituting abscess. Even the latter, as well as the more solid exudate, may be absorbed. On the other hand, the appendicular or perityphlitic abscess may rupture into the peritoneum, not infrequently producing fatal general peritonitis. The amount of pus varies. There may be a dram or two (4 to 8 c.c.), or a pint (a half liter) or more. More commonly there are from two to four ounces (60 to 120 c.c.). The pus is usually thin and very fetid; at times it is thick, yellow, and odorless. It may be mixed with fecal matter. The pus may have escaped into the bowel, bladder, or vagina, or externally at some point in the abdominal wall—as the navel or groin, as in a case of my own—or through the obturator foramen into the hip or thigh. The iliac muscle may be destroyed and the ilium bared. The abscess, usually in the iliac region, may be in the lumbar region, or perinephric, in the true pelvis, or under the liver. These very diverse sites are commonly determined by erratic situations of the appendix. There may be secondary abscesses of the liver by pylephlebitis or portal embolism. These may have all the terminations possible to hepatic abscess.

If general peritonitis supervene, there are added the usual anatomical appearances incident to this condition—flakes of lymph scattered over the intestines, binding the latter together, with pus-cells in varying numbers in the flakes.

**Etiology.**—*Exciting Causes.*—All three stages of appendicitis described are probably due to the invasion of microorganisms, while the foreign bodies, concretions, and other agencies to be mentioned are to be regarded as predisposing causes, furnishing the conditions favorable to the operation of the pathogenic bacteria.

A word as to the nature of the organisms which are responsible for the virulent forms at least. The *bacillus coli communis* is a bacterium whose natural habitat is the colon of healthy individuals; cultures of which from the normal colon prove harmless when injected. Yet cultures of this same bacillus taken from cases of virulent appendicitis produce also corresponding virulence; whence it may be inferred that in some way virulence is engendered in an otherwise harmless bacillus. There is good reason to believe that pathogenic bacilli may pass from the intestine to the peritoneum through the lymph spaces in an intestinal wall, as well as through a perforation. Thus, many cases of so-called idiopathic peritonitis, or peritonitis in which macroscopic examination reveals no evident lesion, may still be due to the

bacteria of appendicitis. This has been actually demonstrated in some cases, and it is not unlikely that it will be found true of all such cases thoroughly studied.

While in most instances the *bacillus coli communis* has been found in pure cultures, pyogenic bacteria have been found associated with it. The most important of these is the *streptococcus pyogenes*; after this the *staphylococcus pyogenes aureus* and the *proteus vulgaris*; so that the existence of more than one possibly infecting species may be admitted. The bacilli of typhoid fever and influenza are possible infective agents causing appendicitis. In a recent paper entitled "Has Influenza been a Causative Factor in the Increase of Appendicitis," Philip Marvel has collated the views of numerous observers on this subject and collected the evidence in its favor, to which the reader is referred.<sup>1</sup> The same is true of the infectious agent of rheumatic fever, and although I have never met a case of appendicitis traceable to rheumatic fever it is quite as reasonable to believe that an infectious appendicitis may be thus caused as an infectious endocarditis and pericarditis.

*Predisposing Causes.*—The most important predisposing cause of appendicitis is the appendix itself. An organ without function, and therefore undeveloped and feebly nourished, is correspondingly feebly resistant to all disease. Its anatomy is such that the entrance of irritating matters is easier than their exit, while inflammatory products are not easily evacuated. As predisposing causes, too, must be considered certain influences which formerly were regarded as exciting causes, such as overeating, especially of unwholesome and indigestible food, acute indigestion from any cause, in addition to the foreign bodies and concretions already mentioned. It cannot be said that the precise mode of operation of such cause is certainly known. It may be that a hyperemia or deranged circulation thus induced produces a condition favorable to the action of incessantly present bacteria. Similar is the effect of fatigue, cold, and traumatic causes, such as blows and contusions.

Appendicitis is a disease of children and young adults. From 50 to 55 per cent. of cases occur under the age of 20, 30 per cent. between 20 and 30, 15 per cent. under 15. What bearing the fact that the appendix is longer in children and young adults has upon this can only be surmised. Nearly 80 per cent. of all cases occur in males. It has been suggested that this is because the lumen of the appendix is larger in males, and therefore more liable to receive fecal or foreign matters. Attacks have occurred, however, in the first year of life and as late as the 76th. More cases occur in summer than in winter. Occupation has no effect in exciting it, but after a first attack recurring attacks of appendicitis are more frequently in men who do heavy work, such as porters and carriers, or men who stand on their feet long each day.

*Symptoms.*—Simple catarrhal appendicitis is often unattended by any symptoms whatever. Indeed, I cannot see how it can cause any recognizable symptoms excepting pain and tenderness. Many cases of ulcerative appendicitis before the peritoneum is reached in the invasion are characterized by a like absence of distinctive symptoms. Other symptoms

<sup>1</sup> "Journal of the American Medical Association," July 30, 1904.



more or less mild and vague are on this account overlooked. The interstitial variety, including, as it does, a simultaneous involvement of all the tissues, gives rise promptly to serious symptoms. In point of fact, as already stated, appendicitis is known to be present, perhaps in a majority of cases, by the symptoms of the resulting peritonitis, local or general. Though in most instances the first attack is a mild one, yet no one knows at the onset whether this is going to be the case or not. Furthermore, it is often impossible to say when suppuration has taken place. The supervention of general peritonitis is, however, usually attended by unmistakable signs.

The first symptom is invariably pain—*sudden pain*. Its location at first is not constant: it may be anywhere in the abdomen. Most frequently, perhaps, it is in the neighborhood of the umbilicus. At other times it is in the epigastrium; at others, diffuse. It is intermittent, or at least remittent. Usually, within the first 24 hours, it settles itself in the right iliac region, where it remains. It may then be mild or severe; more frequently it is moderately severe. Even at this stage—end of 24 hours—its location is not always in the right iliac fossa. It has even settled in the *left* iliac fossa, under the liver, or beneath the spleen, anomalous situations for the appendix. This pain is increased by coughing or taking a long breath, or by turning over on the side.<sup>1</sup>

As constant as pain is *tenderness* in the right iliac region, or if the appendix happens to be placed in one of the unusual situations named, it will be in that situation. Rather strong pressure may at times be necessary to elicit it, but usually moderate pressure suffices. Its extent varies. It may occupy the whole lower quadrant of the abdomen, or may extend up to the costal margin and around into the flank, but the seat of maximum tenderness is oftenest a point known as McBurney's—a point at the intersection of a line drawn from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium to the umbilicus and another along the right edge of the rectus muscle. It is from one and one-half to two inches from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium. The patient almost invariably assumes the *dorsal decubitus*, often with the right leg drawn up, because of the relief thus afforded.

*Rovsing's*<sup>2</sup> *Sign* in acute appendicitis, may be helpful in differentiating acute appendicitis from acute lesions of other organs in the lower part of the abdomen, for instance, salpingitis. Pressure over the descending colon at a point opposite the cecum will give pain in the appendix region if the case is appendicitis, but will not give pain there if the case is any other lesion. This referred pain on pressure over the descending colon is accentuated if the hand is run upward along the course of the descending colon toward the course of the transverse colon. He attributes the referred pain to probable back pressure of gas in the colon itself, although he is not very certain of this. He says it hardly ever fails as a sign. Its recognition may relieve the surgeon from the necessity of excessive palpation over the diseased appendix and perhaps causing more mischief.

The third cardinal symptom, if the patient comes under notice suffi-

<sup>1</sup> An admirable paper in explanation of the anomalous seats of pain, entitled, "The Nature of the Symptoms of Appendicitis," by James MacKenzie, will be found in the "British Medical Journal" of July 11, 1904.

<sup>2</sup> Rovsing, "Zentralb. f. Chir.," 1907, vol. ii., No. 43, page 1257.

ciently early, is *rigidity of the right rectus abdominis muscle* and other muscles overlying the focus of inflammation. This may be associated with a slight distention of the entire abdomen. In explanation of the tenseness it may be said that the rectus and other abdominal muscles receive their nerve supply from the seven lower intercostal nerves, while the superior mesenteric plexus gets its splanchnic branches from the same nerves. This primary tenseness, after two or three days, may be substituted by a *tumor*. The latter varies in size and shape, but is more commonly oval and about as large as a hen's egg, with its longer axis parallel with the upper part of Poupart's ligament. It may be much larger, occupying also the whole lower left quadrant and extending upward and backward into the flank, while its shape may be quadrilateral or triangular. It varies in consistence. Its composition has been described in considering the morbid anatomy of the disease.

There is usually *impairment of resonance* to percussion over such a tumor, though less than might at first be expected. This is because we are really percussing over hollow organs, though matted together by exudation. At times, however, there is a duller note, while at others, it may be natural. In the latter event the tumor is small. Indeed, tumor may be altogether absent, but this can never be said of tenderness.

*Vomiting* is a symptom more or less frequent. It is commonly regarded as reflex and is variously severe. The matter vomited is first the gastric contents, with the evacuation of which the vomiting usually ceases, though it may recur in the event of perforation or rupture of the abscess. If the symptom is more prolonged, the vomited matter becomes greenish. Many so-called "bilious attacks" of past times have really been attacks of appendicitis.

*Constipation* is present in a decided majority of cases from the beginning of the attack. It is due to paralysis of the bowel, and may be so obstinate as to simulate obstruction of the bowel, being even attended at times with stercoraceous vomiting. Indeed, appendicitis has often been confounded with obstruction. On the other hand, there may be diarrhea, recurring with each successive attack. There is loss of appetite. The *tongue* at first may be natural, but later becomes more or less coated, and in advanced stages dry.

There is always *fever* at the outset, the temperature  $102^{\circ}$ ,  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $38.9^{\circ}$ ,  $39.4^{\circ}$  C.), and even  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  C.), rarely higher, after which it gradually falls, reaching the normal in from five to seven days in favorable cases, which terminate in resolution. The pulse-rate corresponds with the degree of fever, but its force and volume vary with the patient's strength. Should suppuration take place, the temperature continues with but slight fall, or may even rise higher (Fig. 32). *Suppuration may, however, be unattended with fever.*

A sudden fall of temperature does not always mean the establishment of convalescence. Not very rarely the event has a widely different meaning. It means that, instead of convalescence, perforation has taken place. It is extremely important that this fact should be realized. More than once have I known the physician to have been misled by it. The temperature chart on page 432 (Fig. 33) illustrates such a case. Another even more

unusual explanation of sudden fall of temperature is the rupture of a small abscess into the bowel. Finally, too much stress cannot be laid upon the fact that there may be gangrenous appendicitis in the presence of normal temperature.

Leukocytosis is present in a large number of cases, the white cells often amounting to 16,000 to 20,000. It is an unfavorable symptom. On the

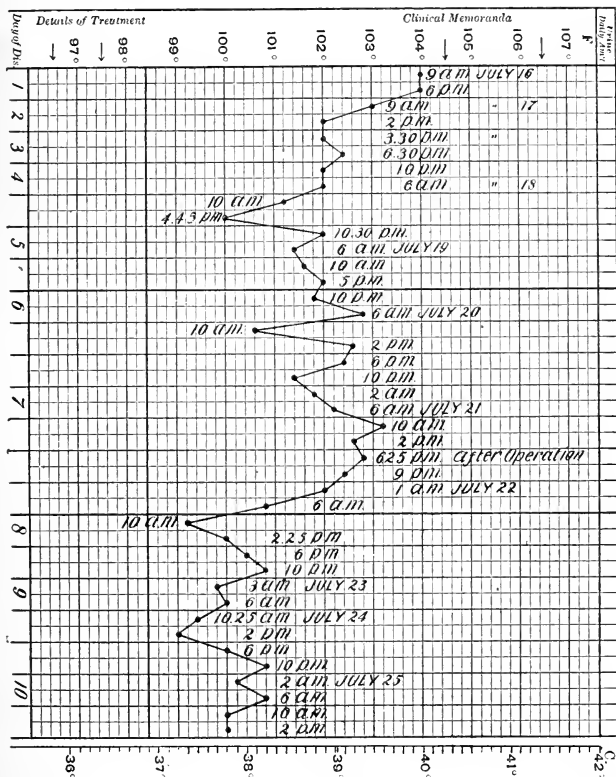


FIG. 32.—Temperature Chart Showing Temperature Maintained by Abscess after Partial Decline.

The patient was first seen by Dr. C. F. M. Leidy at 9 A. M. on July 16, the first day of the disease, when the temperature was 104 F. (40 J. C.). It continued the same at 1 P. M. the same day. It then began to fall, and by 2 P. M. the next day reached 102 F. (38 J. C.). By 4.45 P. M. of the fourth day it had fallen as low as 100 F. (37.7 J. C.), after which it rose and fluctuated to about 102 F. (38.9 J. C.), again rose, reaching 103.2 F. (39.5 J. C.) at 10 A. M. on the seventh day, when the patient was operated on by the late Professor John Ashurst, M. D., and an abscess evacuated, after which the case proceeded to convalescence.

other hand, the absence of leukocytosis, like the absence of fever, should not inspire overconfidence, as a lowering blood count is sometimes evidence that nature has given up the struggle.

The urine is scanty, as is usual in fever, and quite frequently contains an abnormal quantity of indican. It is rarely albuminous, unless there be



suppuration, but the most valuable sign is the *presence of extreme tenderness over the focus of inflammation*. Yet I have known a case in which a physician and three competent surgeons agreed on the presence of an abscess where the ultimate course of the disease showed there was no abscess. Continued high temperature is significant, though it may be wanting. Fully formed abscess has been found as early as the third day. More commonly six to eight days elapse before a diminished tenderness and slight decline of swelling point to this formation. Appendicitis allowed to go on to suppuration—*i. e.*, not relieved by operation—usually terminates by rupture of the abscess into the peritoneum, followed by general peritonitis and death. The event is variously delayed by the extent and toughness of the protective adhesions which may have formed about the abscess. A few abscesses rupture into the bowel, thus saving the patient's life. Two or three cases in a hundred are thus saved. The fecal fistula incident in this termination usually closes eventually, though not always. In rare instances the abscess, especially if deeply situated in the pelvis, ruptures into the bladder. The termination in these cases is less favorable, 50 per cent. being fatal. A few also break through the groin, and are followed by recovery. Lumbar abscess and perinephric abscess must be mentioned as possible terminations, also infiltration of the abdominal walls and tissues of the thigh, pyelephlebitis, and hepatic abscess.

General peritonitis may also ensue after perforation of the appendix. The symptoms of the resulting general peritonitis are those characteristic of this disease when suddenly induced by other causes, *viz.* :

1. Diffuse pain, as contrasted with pain localized in the right iliac region—pain of extreme severity.
2. Generally distended and tender abdomen.
3. Moderate fever, succeeded by normal or subnormal temperature, already alluded to as often misleading the physician.
4. Rapid and feeble pulse.
5. Dry and coated tongue.
6. The phenomena of collapse—*i. e.*, cold, clammy skin, feeble pulse, anxious expression, death.

**Complications and Sequelæ.**—The most important complication is obstruction of the bowels, by which is not meant the obstinate constipation so often met as an early symptom of appendicitis, but a true obstruction, the direct consequence of constriction by adhesions developed in the course of the peritonitis. It is one of the causes of death, as determined by autopsy, while operation frequently discloses conditions which could easily have produced obstruction.

Another complication is hepatic abscess from pyelephlebitis, due to thrombosis and even embolism of branches of the portal vein; another is phlebitis of the right iliac vein causing milk-leg. In abscess of the liver it has happened that the diaphragm has been perforated, producing empyema and pyopericardium. Pyemic abscesses elsewhere in the system, including the brain and lungs, have also been found in rare instances. Fecal, vesical, and umbilical fistulæ have been referred to. Fatal hemorrhage has also resulted from necrosis of the walls of the iliac vessels. Appendicitis may occur in a hernial sac.

*Recurring and Relapsing Appendicitis.*—*Chronic Appendicitis.*—These terms are applied to cases of appendicitis which recur after a first attack. The terms are sometimes used interchangeably, but, strictly speaking, cases are *recurring* which repeat themselves at considerable intervals, as some months or a year or more; *relapsing*, when the attacks are very close—at intervals, say, of one or two weeks, so as to make them almost continuous. In the former, to which attention was first called by William Pepper in 1883, it is reasonable to believe that the patient has recovered in the interval or there exists a cystic appendix as an exciting cause. In the relapsing form it seems likely that there has not been complete recovery in the interval. Certain it is that one attack predisposes to another, so that, in at least 23 per cent. of cases observed, according to Hawkins, and 44 per cent. according to Fitz, it is found that there have been previous attacks. The symptoms of a recurrent attack are the same as those of a primary one. In many cases the interval between the attacks is passed in comparative comfort; in others, there is no small amount of pain or discomfort in the situation of the appendix. The term chronic appendicitis may also be applied to such cases.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of many cases of appendicitis is easy, and becomes more so as experience grows. A certain number of cases must be carefully weighed, and in a few diagnosis is extremely difficult. *Sudden pain*, becoming localized, *tenderness*, and *rigidity* in the right iliac region are three symptoms, which, if present, point almost unmistakably to appendicitis. A “lump” or tumor in the vicinity of McBurney’s point is less frequently present, though it is found in many cases, and greatly aids the diagnosis. The cases difficult of diagnosis are those in which these symptoms are vague or are in unusual situations. But, in truth, they are less often absent than has been supposed. More frequently they are not looked for, because there is very little to draw attention to them. A rule should, therefore, be made to search for them carefully in any persons subject to gastro-intestinal attacks, however induced and however manifested. It is certain that some cases of so-called catarrhal enteritis are really cases of appendicitis.

*Differential Diagnosis.*—*Intestinal obstruction* is a condition with which appendicitis has sometimes been confounded. The special symptoms of the various causes of obstruction, whether those of fecal impaction, of strangulation by bands or twists, by intussusception, or by tumor or foreign body, should be recalled. Especially characteristic of obstruction is the absence of fever, unless the patient lives long enough to permit peritonitis to set up. In appendicitis there is almost always fever at the outset though it may abate later. The pain in obstruction is more intermittent at first, and though, like that of appendicitis, it may be anywhere in the abdomen, it is not likely to localize itself in the right iliac region. The constipation is more complete in obstruction, and even the passage of flatus is usually absent. The vomiting, also, is more severe and persistent, and is more likely to be stercoraceous. There is more general distention of the abdomen, and limited tenderness is less easily differentiated. *Intussusception* occurs more frequently in children younger than those subject to appendicitis, and is often attended with bloody discharges, which seldom occur in appendicitis,

while a tumor may often be felt on examination *per rectum*. *Strangulation* by bands or twists is more common in adults. *Malignant growths* causing obstruction are usually in the left iliac region, although cancer of the cecum is to be remembered as a disease of the right. Its slower development distinguishes it from appendicitis. (See, also, Obstruction of the Bowels.)

*Typhoid fever* may be confounded with appendicitis, and I have more than once been startled in the course of typhoid fever by the thought that I might be dealing with an appendicitis, especially when there have been tympany and prolonged tenderness in the right iliac region; but one has, as a rule, only to recall the mode of beginning of the illness, the gradual development of the fever, its greater intensity and peculiar diurnal variation, the spots at the eighth day, to say nothing of the Widal test, to be reassured in the majority of instances. I recall one case of typhoid fever terminating in perforation in which was simulated very closely even the iliac tumor of appendicitis. I may add that I do not think the typical spots in typhoid fever are ever closely approached by anything similar in appendicitis, though the event of suppuration is said to be sometimes indicated by an eruption. On the other hand, there is nothing to prevent typhoid fever and appendicitis from accidentally coinciding.

*Diaphragmatic pleurisy* and especially pneumonia in children have been ushered in with symptoms identical with those of appendicitis, viz., abdominal pain, constipation, nausea and vomiting. Careful examination of the thorax for the physical signs of these affections may avert an unnecessary operation.

A question which one would naturally expect to give rise to difficulty is that differentiating between appendicitis and the *pelvic affections of women* when on the right side, such as a suppurating ovarian cyst around a Fallopian tube, or a pyosalpinx. There can be no doubt that before our present accurate knowledge of appendicitis was acquired, numerous mistakes of diagnosis were made.<sup>1</sup> Many symptoms are identical, but usually the location of the original pain in the appendicitis is not in the pelvic cavity or in close proximity of the uterus, even though it be not at McBurney's point or the right iliac fossa. The appendiceal abscess itself is usually limited to the neighborhood of the normal appendix and cannot be recognized *per vaginam*, while the pelvic abscess can. Should the appendix rupture, as it rarely does, into the vagina, the pus may be recognized by its stercoraceous odor. It should be remembered that appendicitis and pregnancy may be associated. The onset of suppurating ovarian cyst is much more gradual, and the pain more constant and duller. Pyosalpinx is in more intimate relation with the uterus, while the history differs from that of appendicitis.

Many cases of acute appendicitis were formerly mistaken for *bilious colic* and *acute indigestion*, but these are unaccompanied by tumor or tenderness, while the vomiting is more persistent and the vomited matter differs. Gastro-enteritis may cause mistake. Persistent fever is more characteristic of gastro-enteritis. There is pain and tenderness but no rigidity or tumor. *Enterocolitis* occasions colicky pains, but there is no hardness or localization, while there is diarrhea with mucous stools. It will be remembered, however,

<sup>1</sup>For evidence of this, see an excellent paper by the late Paul F. Munde entitled, "Perityphlitis and Appendicitis in their Relations to Obstetrics and Gynecology," published in "Medical News," May 15, 1897.

that these symptoms sometimes attend appendicitis, and it should be remembered, too, that gastro-enteritis may be a favoring cause of infection of the appendix, indeed may be an actual cause, the result of an afferent wave of bacterial invasion from an irritated intestinal tract as suggested by Arthur J. Patek.<sup>1</sup>

*Plomain poisoning* or food infection may closely simulate the symptoms of appendicitis, by abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting. The patient will, however, have taken food of the kind known to produce such illness, namely, lobster, sausage, ham, canned meats, cream puffs, old ice-cream and the like.

In *hepatic colic* the pain is higher up, in the region of the gall-bladder, while jaundice is almost invariably present, and sometimes there is pain under the left shoulder; there is no fever. In *nephritic colic* the pain extends from the lumbar region into the groin and testicle. A *floating kidney* with twisted ureter is movable, as contrasted with the iliac tumor of appendicitis; there is sometimes flattening of the corresponding lumbar region, while sudden relief of symptoms, which characterizes the untwist, is altogether peculiar. The presence of blood in the urine under these circumstances is confirmative of renal origin. In *pyonephrosis* there is tenderness in the region of the kidney, as well as pus in the urine. *Perinephric abscess* occasions tenderness in the lumbar region while the pain radiates into the groin, as in nephritic colic. It is to be remembered that perinephric abscess may be occasioned by suppurating perityphlitis, when the position of the appendix is posterior to the cecum.

*Appendicular colic*, or neuralgia of the right iliac fossa, is a vague condition of pain in this region, which has been ascribed to peristaltic contraction of the appendix, constituting an effort to expel fecal pellets, but of which no proof is afforded, operation in several cases failing to discover anything abnormal.

I think it sufficient for the physician to diagnose the existence of appendicitis without attempting to point out the particular variety of appendicitis, and while I do not deny the possibility of such diagnosis by some, I have known such serious errors to have been made by those claiming such ability that I do not place much confidence in their claims.

Mention should be made of carcinoma of the cecum or appendix as presenting identical symptoms with appendicitis. It has occurred to me to make the diagnosis of appendicitis where operation showed the presence of cancer of the cecum.<sup>2</sup>

**Prognosis.**—It is a difficult matter to consider fairly the prognosis of appendicitis, or rather of the periappendicitis growing out of disease of the appendix. For if we separate the cases which do not go on to suppuration, recovery is apparently the rule. Thus out of 190 cases collected by Hawkins, none died. Again, of cases treated by section and drainage after suppuration has set in, fully 25 per cent. die; while if general peritonitis supervene, 75 per cent. die. Of cases operated on in the interval between attacks, scarcely one per cent. die.

On the other hand, it is impossible to say of any case, however mild,

<sup>1</sup> "American Medicine," April 1, 1902.

<sup>2</sup> See also a paper on "Primary Cancer of the Tip of the Appendix," by J. Riddle Goffe, "Medical Record," July 6, 1901.



that if left alone it will not terminate in suppuration, while a large number of cases still perish because of imperfect diagnosis and delayed operation. Again, when the difficulties of an accurate diagnosis in the mildest cases are considered, it is not unreasonable to conclude that many cases of supposed recovery without operation were really not cases of appendicitis.

**Treatment.**—As soon as the diagnosis of appendicitis is established—indeed, pending its settlement—a competent surgeon should be associated with the physician, for the reason that in the majority of cases operative treatment is sooner or later demanded, while the hour for such treatment is best settled by daily conference. The course of cases of appendicitis is often very delusive, and the surgeon who operates frequently is likely to have seen more cases than the physician. *The diagnosis being thoroughly established*, operative treatment should be deferred only long enough to determine whether symptoms will subside under rest. If they do not subside, operate at once. If they subside in a degree without disappearing, also operate. If they subside completely in 24 to 48 hours, and the *attack is a first one*, operation may be deferred until recurrence; but it is safer to operate at once, or after subsidence of acute symptoms, as may seem best.

It must be admitted that it is not always easy to lay down a rule as to when operation is demanded, for it is not only that we must know when to operate to save life, but also that we must know when not to operate in cases so severe that operation will be futile; it is due the operation that it should be saved the opprobrium of such futility. Certain it is, too, that in cases in which operation is of no avail death will be hastened by it, the depressing effect of etherization cooperating to hasten the fatal end. Much difficulty is, however, removed when we decide to operate *without undue haste* as soon as the diagnosis is established in all cases, except when operation will evidently be futile. I say without undue haste, for in many cases it is plain that a few days' delay, if the patient is kept at rest, will make no difference in the result; while, if the inflammation is subsiding, a stage is being reached in which operation is even less dangerous, because the united experience of surgeons goes to show that the mortality of operations between attacks is practically *nil*, while that immediately succeeding diagnosis in ordinary cases is nearly so. There can be no doubt, moreover, that excision of the appendix *after* a first attack is a safer procedure than *during* a first or any attack. Even when suppuration has set in it may be safe to delay operation for a day or two while the patient is held quiescent.

At one time high leukocytosis was regarded as a strong indication for operation, but at the present day surgeons are less influenced by it, although it is true that a large and rapidly produced leukocytosis emphasizes the indication for operation.

When, on the other hand, shall operation be omitted because it must inevitably be followed by a fatal result. In all cases in which there are diffuse septic peritonitis, rapid pulse, leaky skin, constant vomiting, and constipation, operation is generally futile. In such cases saline purgatives and stimulants, diffusible and cardiac, are indicated, and rarely, though rarely indeed, recoveries have taken place.

Whatever preparation is deemed necessary for operation, when decided on, must be directed by the surgeon.

*Medical Treatment.*—Cases must occur, however, in which, from various causes, medical treatment is necessary. Operation may be declined even if urgently advised, while rarely a preparative medicinal treatment may be necessary previous to operation.

First of all, *absolute rest* in bed must be insisted upon as the first essential condition of abatement of the inflammation. Many a fatal case would have been saved had this injunction been carried out.

Next, *relief of pain* is demanded. For this purpose opium should be avoided, except in extreme cases. Only when relief cannot be secured by the ice-bag, by hot fomentations, or by mild counterirritants, as mustard or turpentine, may a minimum dose of morphin,  $1/12$  or  $1/8$  of a grain (0.005 or 0.008 gm.), be given hypodermically. The objection to opium is well founded, on the ground that it masks the presence of important symptoms which should be open to observation. In cases where operation is from any cause out of the question, counterirritation by repeated blistering may be practiced, and excellent results were reported under the older treatment before operation became common. Of other remedies for the relief of pain, ice is to be preferred to all others, especially if there is fever. Only after the temperature has been reduced to the normal cold may be harmful, and moist or dry heat may be better borne.

The question of the propriety of giving an aperient is a nice one, and must depend, for the most part, on the circumstances and the good judgment of those in attendance. The result may be very happy or mischievous. Cases may be so advanced or severe that a purgative may cause perforation or rupture of an abscess, but in ordinary cases or in those of moderate severity an aperient may be useful to clear up a diagnosis, while it relieves pressure, depletes the blood-vessels, and diminishes the danger of peritonitis. On the other hand, purgatives should not be aggressive and drastics should not be used. The best aperient is castor oil, followed, if necessary, by salines, and of these Rochelle salts or the solution of citrate of magnesium is recommended. If the stomach is sensitive, calomel in divided doses, triturated with sugar of milk, is the best drug. When there is reason to believe that suppuration has set in, no purgative should be given, and, as a rule, operation should be prompt toward evacuating the pus and removing the appendix at the same time. In severe cases even enemas should be avoided, as tending to favor perforation and rupture.

Nourishment should be purely liquid, and of liquid, milk is the best, though animal broths are not contraindicated. It should not be an object to force food; indeed, only the minimum sufficient should be permitted.

## INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION.<sup>1</sup>

**Definition.**—The words intestinal obstruction explain themselves. Obstruction to the descent of fecal matter is the fundamental idea, but the absence of alvine discharges is not essential. For in the course of our studies it will be found that in intussusception, for example, frequent loose

<sup>1</sup> Reginald H. Fitz's able paper in the "Transactions of the Congress of American Physicians and Surgeons," 1899, Leichtenstern's article in Ziemssen's "Cyclopædia of Practical Medicine," and Frederick Treves' book on "Intestinal Obstruction," 1884, are important modern papers to which I am indebted for much of the matter in this section.

bowel movements occur, and that in fecal obstruction they may be present throughout the whole course of the disease, while in other forms of obstruction they are not infrequent at the beginning. Intestinal obstruction is further divided into *acute* and *chronic*, according to the rate of development of its symptoms, the same causes at times producing acute, and at others chronic forms.

*Acute obstruction* is produced by strangulation, intussusception, foreign bodies, twists and knots, strictures, and morbid growths.

*Chronic obstruction* is produced also by strictures, morbid growths, and fecal impaction. Intussusception may sometimes cause chronic obstruction.

# I. OBSTRUCTION BY INTERNAL STRANGULATION.

SYNONYMS.—*Constriction of the Bowel; Hernia within the Abdomen.*

**Definition.**—By internal strangulation is meant stricture of the bowel by inflammatory bands or adhesions, by vitelline remains, omental or mesenteric slits, adherent appendix, and the like.

**Occurrence.**—This is probably the most frequent cause of acute intestinal obstruction, though intussusception closely approaches it in frequency. Thus, Reginald H. Fitz, in America, found it in 35 per cent. of 295 cases of obstruction, as against 32 per cent. of intussusception; Duchaussoy, in France, in 54 per cent. of 347 cases, as against 39 per cent. of intussusception; while Leichtenstern, in Germany, found it in 35 per cent. of 1134 cases, as against 39 per cent. of intussusception; and Brinton, in England, found it in 33 per cent. of 481 cases, as contrasted with 54 per cent. of intussusception. The percentages of Leichtenstern, Brinton, and Fitz are astonishingly close, and cannot therefore be far astray.

**Etiology.**—The causes of strangulation have been carefully worked out by Fitz in his 101 cases, collected from reports since 1880. Of these in 84 the strangulation was caused by *bands and cords*, of which 63 were simple inflammatory bands or adhesions and 21 were vitelline remains, represented by Meckel's diverticulum,<sup>1</sup> or by the persistent remains of vitelline blood-vessels. Meckel's diverticulum is usually attached by these remains to some part of the abdominal wall near the navel or to the mesentery, or it may be adherent because of peritonitis. The persistent vitelline vessels may themselves be the strangulating cord in the absence of Meckel's diverticulum. Of the remaining strangulations six were due to *adherent appendix*, six to *mesenteric* and *omental slits*, three to *peritoneal pouches* and openings, one to adherent Fallopian tube, and one to pedunculated tumor. To these must be added *diaphragmatic hernia*. This was the cause of strangulation in ten per cent. of Leichtenstern's cases, but Fitz found none reported between 1880 and 1888. I reported two cases of diaphragmatic hernia in 1893,<sup>2</sup> both of some standing, the immediate cause of death being acute strangulation.

<sup>1</sup> Meckel's diverticulum, a remnant of the omphalo-mesenteric duct, through which, in the early embryo, the intestine communicates with the yolk-sac, is a finger-like projection from the ileum, usually within 18 inches of the ileo-cecal valve. The length of this tube is on an average three inches, while it has attained at times a length of ten inches.

<sup>2</sup> "Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," 1893.

The seat of the strangulation is in the small bowel in a decided majority of cases—nearly 90 per cent. In 83 per cent. the strangulated part lay in the lower abdomen, and in 67 per cent. in the right iliac fossa. Seventy per cent. of cases occur in males, and at least 40 per cent. between the ages of 15 and 20, the causes in these being inflammatory adhesions twice as often as vitelline remains. Strangulation in early youth is relatively uncommon, and when it does occur, it is usually caused by vitelline remains.

## II. INTUSSUSCEPTION—INVAGINATION.

**Definition.**—In this condition one part of the bowel has slipped into another, always from above downward, and may readily be illustrated by slipping one part of a coat sleeve into another.

The external or receiving portion, known as the *intussuscipiens*, has its mucous surface in contact with the mucous surface of the middle or intermediate portion, whose peritoneal surface is in contact with the peritoneal surface of the internal or returning portion, while the two mucous surfaces of

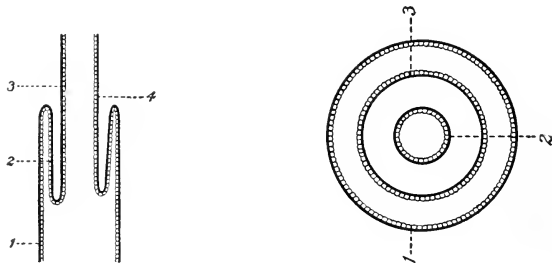


FIG. 34.—Vertical and Transverse Sections of an Intussusception.  
1, the Sheath, or Intussuscipiens; 2, the Entering, or inner layer; 3, the Returning or middle layer.

the returning portion are apposed. The internal and middle part are called the *intussusceptum*. The resultant is a cylindrical tumor which varies from half an inch to a foot or more in length.

The annexed diagram gives a very good idea of the different parts of the tumor. Intussusceptions may occur in any part of the bowel from the duodenum to the rectum, and are named in accordance with the part of the bowel involved: viz., in the order of frequency, *enteric*, of the small intestine into itself; *ileo-cecal*, of the ileum and cecum into the colon, carrying the ileo-cecal valve with it; *ileo-colic*, of the small intestine into the colon through the ileo-cecal valve; *colic*, of the colon within itself in any portion of its course, most frequent of the descending colon into the sigmoid flexure; *rectal*, of the rectum into itself; and *colico-rectal*, of the colon into the rectum. According to Leichtenstern, 52 per cent. are ileo-cecal and ileo-colic, 30 per cent. are enteric, and 18 per cent. rectal and colico-rectal.

It will be remembered that intussusception is almost, if not quite, as frequent a cause of obstruction as strangulation, under which the percentages were given.

**Etiology.**—Diarrhea and habitual constipation are probable exciting causes, having preceded in 13 and 12 cases respectively out of 51. Other possible causes are so infrequent as to be unworthy of mention. Experiments with faradism would seem to show, however, that spasm plays a more important rôle than relaxation.

As to sex, two-thirds are found in males and one-third in females. It is especially an accident of the young, occurring in 34 per cent. under one year and 56 per cent. under ten years.

Intussusception of the dying should be mentioned in passing, as a form of intussusception which often takes place a short time before death, more frequently in children, and is probably caused by certain irregular peristaltic movements toward the end of life. It produces no symptoms during life.

### III. TWISTS AND KNOTS—VOLVULUS.

The majority of cases are axial twists—*i. e.*, the bowel is twisted on its mesenteric axis—this being the case in 40 out of Fitz's 42 cases, two only being knots. Eighty-seven per cent. of cases occur in the large intestine, the remainder in the small intestine, one-half are in the neighborhood of the sigmoid flexure, and nearly one-third in the ileo-cecal and cecal region.

It is more frequent in males in the proportion of two to one. Most cases occur between the ages of 30 and 40.

### IV. OBSTRUCTION BY ABNORMAL CONTENTS OR FOREIGN BODIES.

The majority of these are *gall-stones*—23 cases out of 44 of obstruction by foreign bodies collected by R. H. Fitz; 19 were fecal impactions and two enteroliths. Obstruction by gall-stones appears to be three times as common in females as in males. They enter the bowel usually by ulcerating through the gall-bladder, commonly into the small intestine, more rarely into the colon.

The seat of obstruction by gall-stones is most frequently the ileo-cecal region; after this, lodgments are in the small intestine, with diminishing frequency as we ascend. The ages are pretty uniformly distributed from eight to eighty. One of the enteroliths was made up of shellac, found in a man who had been in the habit of drinking alcoholic solution of shellac. Usually, enteroliths are made up of triple phosphate of lime and magnesia, about a nucleus which may be a mass of hair or other foreign body. Courvoisier collected 131 cases, in 70 of which the stone was spontaneously passed *per anum*. Some were very large. Six were found in diverticula or in the appendix. A coil of lumbricoid worms has caused obstruction, as has the accumulation of certain medicines, such as magnesia and bismuth.

In a few instances obstruction is caused by substances introduced by the mouth, but the objects thus introduced, as pennies, buttons, pins, fruit-stones, and the like, are, as a rule, promptly expelled with the stools. In the George B. Wood Museum of the University of Pennsylvania is a plaster cast showing obstruction of the intestine toward its cecal end by plum-stones, followed by inflammation and abscess.

## V. STRICTURES AND MORBID GROWTHS.

A comparatively small number of obstructions occur from these causes. They are always found in adults, four-fifths after the age of 40, and are apparently twice as common in women as in men. By far the largest number is met in the large intestine and lower abdomen, the majority being in the left iliac fossa.

Strictures may be (1) Congenital, illustrated by imperforate anus and defective union between the pylorus and duodenum.

(2) Cicatricial, from healed ulcers. Tubercular ulcers in their healing have produced decided and fatal obstruction, especially in the rectum. Syphilis is also thought to produce stricture in the same locality.

Of morbid growths, the most frequent is the cylinder-celled epithelioma, which may form a ring in the vicinity of the sigmoid flexure, where colloid cancer is also met. Any of the varieties of benign tumors may produce obstruction, while inflammatory processes external to the bowel, especially in the pelvis, may cause obstruction by pressure from without.

## VI. FECAL OBSTRUCTION.

SYNONYM.—*Ileus paralyticus vel nervosus*.

**Occurrence.**—Fecal obstruction occurred 19 times in Fitz's 44 cases of obstruction by foreign bodies. It is more frequent in females and in adults, especially in the aged. It occurs more frequently in the large intestine, and in the lower part rather than the upper. The fecal tumors found in appendicitis are now regarded as the result of the inflamed appendix, rather than as the cause of the cecal inflammation.

*Ileus paralyticus* may affect both the small and large intestines, but is more common in the latter, especially in the cecum, where the pressure is concentrated from above and below. A local peritonitis may also be developed about the paralyzed and distended intestine. Mention is made under Chronic Constipation of the enormous masses of fecal matter thus accumulated. The wall of the intestine above the accumulation may also be hypertrophied because of the propulsive efforts of the muscular coat.

**Etiology of Fecal Impaction.**—Fecal impaction is favored by constipation and its causes, although a tendency to fecal obstruction is sometimes congenital. Nervous influence is not to be ignored; the tendency to constipation is seen in the chronic insane, in the hysterical and hypochondriacal, and in affections of the spinal cord. Chronic enteritis and chronic peritonitis favor it; so may anatomical peculiarities of the colon. These causes weaken the muscular coat which moves the contents of the bowel onward, resulting ultimately in an absolute paralysis of a segment of the bowel, arrest of motion of contents, and finally obstruction. The plug of fecal matter grows harder and larger, and compresses and stenoses the adjacent bowel, resisting any further onward movement, and increasing the impediment to the restoration of a natural condition, culminating, finally, in stretching of the muscular fibers and paralysis. The so-called "stercoral ulcer" of the cecum, on which the older writers laid much stress, and which

was ascribed partly to gangrene, due to pressure, and partly to the irritating effect of impacted fecal matter, is to-day regarded as extremely rare.

**Symptoms of Obstruction.**—As most of the important symptoms are common to the different causes of obstruction, I will first consider them from the general standpoint, emphasizing any special relation which a given symptom may bear to a special cause. In addition to the usual absence of bowel movement there is:

First, *abdominal pain*. This is the most constant of all symptoms, being present in a decided majority of cases of obstruction from whatever cause. The pain is one of the earliest symptoms in every form of acute obstruction. It is usually sudden and very severe, and may be intermittent or constant with exacerbations. It may occur in any part of the abdomen, regardless of cause, though most frequent in the neighborhood of the umbilicus, so that its location is of no diagnostic value.

*Nausea and vomiting* are almost as frequent. The vomitus at the onset consists of the food last taken, but soon becomes bilious, yellow, and finally fecal. Vomiting is relatively infrequent in strangulation and intussusception, while it is relatively frequent in volvulus, stricture, and tumor. The vomitus is especially apt to become fecal when caused by strangulation—usually from the third to the fifth day.

*Tympany* is next in frequency. It is a symptom of later occurrence than pain and vomiting, presenting itself usually from the second to the sixth day. It varies greatly in degree, increasing as a rule with the duration of the obstruction and being sometimes enormous. It is of least importance in obstruction by intussusception, and most marked in volvulus. It is sometimes, but not always, accompanied by tenderness.

*Inability to pass flatus* is as constant as the absence of bowel movement.

*Tenesmus* is a frequent symptom when there is obstruction in the large bowel, as in 15 per cent. of cases of volvulus and 55 per cent. of acute intussusception. *Fecal vomiting* succeeds in some cases.

*Tumor*, under which are included circumscribed visible intestinal coils as well as swelling characterized by absolute dullness, is a rare symptom except in intussusception, when it is characteristic, having been present in 69 per cent. of Fitz's cases, more particularly when in the large intestine, where it is also sometimes associated with a relaxed sphincter. The tumor of intussusception is more frequently found in the left iliac region in the descending part of the large bowel, because the invagination extends in that direction and often does not form an appreciable tumor till that part of the bowel is reached. Tumor occurs sometimes in obstruction by foreign bodies. In strictures, morbid growths, and invagination it may be recognized by rectal examination. Tumors with dullness on percussion are not seen in twist, though visible coils are sometimes present.

*Fever* is infrequent—in fact, its absence is rather characteristic, especially in the beginning. Records of elevated temperature are, however, found in from 22 to 28 per cent. of all cases, the maximum record being 102° F. (38.9° C.).

*Hiccough* is an occasional symptom, and appears to be more frequent in volvulus. *Jaundice* is often found in obstruction by gall-stones.

The *urine* has been irregularly studied in acute obstruction. It is not infrequently spoken of as scanty and containing an increased amount of indican, especially in obstruction in the small intestine, not, it is said, of the large. Albumin is rarely present. It is to be remembered that peritonitis causes an increased indican reaction.

*Tumultuous peristalsis* is not infrequent above the seat of obstruction.

*Bloody stools* and *tenesmus* may be present when there is intussusception. They are important in the diagnosis, the former occurring in three-fifths of the cases, the latter in two-fifths. They may occur early or late. Blood-stained stools also occur in connection with cancer of the lower bowel.

Local *peritonitis* is caused by *volvulus* and *obstructing gall-stones*, caused, in the latter case, rather by the destructive results incident to the passage of the stone into the bowel from the common duct.

*Collapse* is the terminal symptom in fatal cases, due to the profound impression on the nervous system, and presents the lowered temperature, leaking skin, and feeble pulse characteristic of collapse from other causes. Cases are reported in which operation during collapse was followed by recovery.

The same train of symptoms may succeed *stricture* and *tumors*, to be followed at times by partial relief, which is again succeeded by similar symptoms leading to ultimate total obstruction and death. Such symptoms will, of course, be associated with the anemic dyscrasia and emaciation which belong to the causing diseases, and which more frequently lead to death without obstruction than with it. Meteorism in the right inguinal region is said to be more or less characteristic of obstruction by Meckel's diverticulum.

In *chronic obstruction* due to fecal impaction, more rarely to stricture, cancerous disease, or foreign bodies, these symptoms are less marked and succeed each other more slowly. In *fecal impaction*, what appears to be simple constipation at first is succeeded by permanent retention, which may last for weeks without causing inconvenience. Examination *per rectum* will often disclose this tube filled with hard fecal matter which may be cleaned out with the finger or a spoon-handle. There may even be *diarrhea*, due to irritation of the bowel above the impaction, when the catarrhal secretion may channel out the mass and carry a portion with it. Gradually, however, the impaction becomes impregnable to all remedies, natural and artificial, the abdomen *swells*, there are *fullness* and *weight* within, and *pain* in the genitals or thigh from pressure on the sacrolumbar nerves; the *appetite* fails, the *tongue* is coated, and the *breath offensive*; sometimes a condition of *lethargy* and *indifference* supervenes along with *great weakness*, and the patient dies of exhaustion. At any time, on the other hand, may follow with suddenness the train of symptoms already described—pain, tympany, nausea and vomiting, ultimately of fecal matter, with collapse and death.

In many cases of impaction sooner or later, a *fecal tumor* presents itself—a tumor formed by the mass of retained feces, chiefly in the right iliac fossa, the region of the cecum, corresponding to the outer half of Poupart's ligament. It is sometimes hard, at others soft and yielding, and sometimes tender and painful, probably because of a mild local peritonitis. In the ascending colon the tumor is soft, and in the hepatic flexure it may give rise



to the notion of an enlarged liver. It may move in the more loosely attached parts of the colon, and may drag the transverse colon down toward the pubis. In the descending colon and sigmoid flexure it is usually harder, and may be subdivided into scybala. It is, of course, easier of detection in persons with thin abdominal walls, and may be obscured by flatulent distention. When recognized, it is of great diagnostic value. Such tumors have been mistaken for tumors of the stomach, liver, spleen and kidneys, and for pregnancy.

**Diagnosis.**—The importance of early and correct diagnosis is intensified at the present day by the fact that operative interference promises by far the best results, while to be effectual it must be early. The diagnosis has three principal objects: first, the existence of *obstruction per se*; second, its *seat*, and third, its *cause*. The first is by far the most important, as operation is indicated in one variety or situation almost as much as in another.

First, as to the *presence of obstruction* in general, the absence of bowel movements, the presence of abdominal pain and tympany are suggestive symptoms. The absence of auscultatory sign of peristalsis—the peristaltic click—is regarded as undoubted evidence of obstruction in one way or another; it may however, be paralytic. As to differential diagnosis, it has happened that a case of intense *enteritis* has presented all the symptoms of obstruction. Fever is commonly present in such enteritis, while it is absent in chronic obstruction, at least at first. Such a cause of error is, however, rare.

*Acute poisoning* associated with vomiting, such as is caused by poisonous mushrooms, biliary, renal, and intestinal colic, the pain caused by twisting of the ureter in a movable kidney, all present symptoms more or less like those of obstruction; but the combination of signs necessary to the picture of obstruction is still wanting.

Much more common is the mistaking of *appendicitis* for obstruction. In this there are pain, vomiting, and constipation, as well as tumor in the neighborhood of the cecum, but the differentiation between these two conditions was considered when treating of acute appendicitis. *Peritonitis* itself presents symptoms common to it and obstruction, including abdominal pain, distention, constipation, and collapse, with increase of indican. But the presence of fever, the absence of tumor and of fecal vomiting, point to peritonitis.

The symptoms of *hernia* are also those of intestinal obstruction, and in all cases careful search should be made for a concealed hernia. Such herniæ have been found in the external ring and in the obturator foramen at autopsy by William Osler, who has also met a case of acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis presenting the symptoms of acute obstruction.

Second, as to the *seat of obstruction*. This is more difficult to determine. Unfortunately, the situation of the pain gives little information, since it is almost always in the vicinity of the navel, wherever the actual seat of obstruction may be. In other cases the pain is diffuse. Rarely, it may be at the seat of obstruction. Though fecal vomiting is much more frequent in obstruction of the small intestine than of the large, it still occurs in one-eighth of all cases of the latter.

When a tumor is present, it gives valuable information, being com-

monly at the seat of obstruction. Active peristalsis limited to one part of the bowel indicates that the obstruction is below it.

Having excluded hernia by a careful examination for a seat of strangulation, examination *per rectum* should be made, also *per vaginam*. By either method a tumor may sometimes be recognized. Especially is this true of a tumor caused by intussusception. A stricture may also be detected by digital examination of the rectum, as may obstruction by foreign bodies.

On the other hand, the rectum may be totally empty of feces and continue so, whence it is probable that the obstruction is in the small intestine or high up in the large. The position and size of the uterus and ovaries may also be ascertained by rectal examination. The rectum can be more thoroughly explored by suitable specula in the knee-elbow position, but rectal exploration by the entire hand has not been followed by the results anticipated. The hard rectal tube has produced perforation, while the flexible tube so coils itself up as to be valueless in diagnosis. Sometimes, if the distended intestine is filled with hard fecal matter, it can be felt as an uneven mass in the course of the bowel.

Moderate distention in the upper part of the abdomen, with flatness below and in the sides, rapid collapse and oliguria, point to obstruction in the duodenum and jejunum. Such distention is temporarily diminished by vomiting, but is uninfluenced by fecal discharges secured by enemas. Nor is the vomiting always fecal in duodenal and jejunal obstruction; when the obstruction is in the ileum and cecum the distention is more central, the region of the colon being flatter until covered in by the extending tympany, and the vomiting is more likely to be fecal.

When obstruction is seated in the colon tympanitic distention is greatest, yet the difference between it and that of obstruction in the ileum is not so great as to possess much diagnostic value. If in the lower colon, there may be tenesmus and discharge of blood and mucus. Measuring the capacity of the large bowel by air, gas, or water has been recommended as an aid to diagnosis. Reliable observation goes to show that these substances may be made to pass the ileo-cecal valve. Water recommends itself so far above the others that it alone will be considered. Moreover, the difficulty in passing water through the ileo-cecal valve is so great that it is practically applicable only in case of the large intestine. The capacity of the large intestine of adults is about six quarts, or about 12 liters. That of infants appears to be widely different in children of the same age. Thus, in measurements by Muir, the capacity of the colon of a boy five months old was found to be but ten ounces (300 c.c.), while, in a girl of seven months, it was 30 ounces (900 c.c.). If the method is employed at all for diagnosis, it should be early, before the nutrition of the bowel has suffered, since rupture has taken place under light pressure. The patient, etherized, should be inverted or placed on his right side, and precaution taken to keep the fluid from returning. Close pressure of the buttocks generally suffices. The fluid is most conveniently introduced by the fountain syringe, by which pressure can be varied, but the reservoir should not be more than 2 1/2 feet (0.75 m.) above the body of the child. Various difficulties, more or less well founded, are suggested, such as resistance by voluntary muscles during life, valve-like obstruction, which permits ascent

of fluid, but not descent, and unequal dilatation. However, the method should not be overlooked, and it is more than likely that much will be learned from future opportunity. Thus, since a case of obstruction at the sigmoid flexure, cited by Treves, permitted the injection of three pints of fluid (1.4 liters), it is evident that only in the event of the injection of a larger amount can the gut be considered open at this point. Treves claims, too, that the entrance of fluid in the cecum may be recognized by auscultation. Under favorable circumstances—as, for example, with empty colon, a trained ear, and skillful technic—this seems quite possible.

Third, the presence of obstruction being recognized, the *nature of the obstructing cause* may sometimes be determined with a degree of probability. First to be considered is the relative frequency of the different morbid states. Adopting Fitz's figures, strangulation and intussusception together make up 70 per cent. of *all* cases, the two being nearly equal. After that come volvulus with 15 per cent., gall-stones with eight per cent., and stricture or tumor six per cent.—that is, the twists about equal obstruction from gall-stones and tumor and stricture together.

Again, if the obstruction be found in the *large intestine*, it is more likely to be intussusception, twist, or stricture and tumor, since of the obstructions in the large bowel 51 per cent. are intussusception, 30 per cent. twists, and 12 per cent. stricture and tumor. If in the *small intestine*, it is most likely strangulation or gall-stone obstruction, since 72 per cent. of obstructions in the small intestine are strangulations and 14 per cent. gall-stones, leaving eight per cent. only for intussusception, five per cent. for twists, and one per cent. for stricture and tumor. If the attack has been preceded by one of jaundice or by other liver symptoms, as hepatic colic, it is almost certain to be gall-stone, especially if the patient be over 50 years old.

If the patient is under 30, particularly if a child, it is more likely to be *intussusception* than twist, while if there are palpable abdominal tumor, bloody stools, and rectal tenesmus, the case is almost sure to be intussusception, rendered still more likely if the rectum has a large capacity for water, since intussusception is found near the cecum in 75 per cent., while twist is found near the sigmoid flexure in 50 per cent. Of all forms, intussusception presents the clearest clinical picture and is most easily recognized.

*Twist, cancer, and stricture* are more apt to be below the sigmoid, and the last two may sometimes be felt by the finger. In point of fact, twist in the large bowel is not often recognized. It is a disease of the adult, rarely occurring under 40; vomiting is less early and less severe than in strangulation by bands. Pain is often severe in twist. Some degree of local peritonitis almost invariably results, causing rigidity of the abdomen, while meteorism appears early and is extreme, the distended intestine often displacing the solid viscera.

If there is a history of previous peritonitis, *strangulation* becomes more likely, since such inflammation precedes in 68 per cent., while there is also a history of previous attacks in 12 per cent. The pain in strangulation is early, sudden, and severe, and the same may be said of vomiting. It becomes stercoraceous in 60 per cent., while the vomiting affords no relief. There is little or no distention unless peritonitis supervene. There is great

prostration, and no tenesmus or discharge of blood. The average duration is about five days. The presence of *diaphragmatic hernia* as a cause of internal strangulation must not be overlooked; it is almost always the result of severe injuries. The half of the thorax containing the viscera is distended and tympanitic on percussion, while breathing movement is restricted, the breath-sounds are feeble, the vocal fremitus and vocal resonance diminished or absent—signs shared with pneumothorax. The pitch and intensity of the percussion note vary also with the degree of distention and the position of the viscera invading the thorax, while there may be metallic tinkling of fluid in the intestine, due to peristalsis.

*Obstruction by Meckel's diverticulum* is said to be indicated by meteorism in the right inguinal region.

*Fecal obstruction* is recognized by the symptoms already described under chronic obstruction, and such recognition is not very difficult, especially if the fecal tumor is found. Sometimes, however, on account of its insidiousness, fecal obstruction is overlooked when presenting only the more chronic symptoms, and the patient dies of supposedly unknown cause when accurate and careful study would have led to its discovery.

**Prognosis.**—In fecal tumors alone, of all the causes of obstruction considered, is the prognosis favorable if the condition is recognized sufficiently early, while a considerable latitude of duration may also be allowed.

**Treatment.**—In the case of intussusception and fecal impaction alone is it worth while to consider anything but operative treatment.

*Treatment of Intussusception.*—It is usual to attempt to reduce an intussusception by inflation or irrigation. The latter is preferable in the colic variety, because pressure can be more accurately graduated, but it is considered of little or no value in the enteric form. For the latter, the late Nicholas Senn considered that better results may be obtained by inflation with a gas-like hydrogen, which he finds passes through the ileo-cecal valve under a much lower pressure than a fluid. On the other hand, D'Arcy Power recommends that the abdomen be opened at once when this condition is suspected. If irrigation is decided upon, the fluid—salt solution at 100° F. (37.8° C.)—is best allowed to pass into the large intestine slowly by its own weight through a long tube carried high up, the reservoir being raised not more than 2 1/2 feet (0.75 meter) above the etherized patient. A higher level than this for the reservoir may result in rupture of the bowel, while the bowel may also kink if the fluid be allowed to enter too rapidly. Some place the patient head downward over the back of an inverted chair, suitably covered with a bolster and quilts. Others hold that inversion is unnecessary. The nozzle should be closely fitted to the anus, accomplished by simply compressing the buttocks. One hand should be kept flat on the abdomen, while variations of pressure should be avoided. It is said that in this way water may not only be passed from the colon through the ileo-cecal valve into the small intestine, but also through the pylorus into the stomach, thence into the esophagus, and out at the mouth. If success is not attained in 48 hours, it is not likely to follow, and laparotomy should be done. The extent or size of the intussusception furnishes no reason against the use of the treatment. It has been found effectual in 33 out of 44 cases of suspected or probable intussusception collected by Fitz, and therefore merits a

trial. Unfortunately, there is always a tendency to recurrence after the reduction of an intussusception by this method. Should the recurrence persist, laparotomy should be done without much delay, especially in view of the fact that the operation is so much better borne early in the disease, before the strength of the patient is exhausted. Rarely should more than 48 hours be allowed to elapse without operative interference in cases of acute obstruction from any cause except fecal impaction.

What else may be done early and without risk to the patient? Above all, give *no aperients*. To relieve the excessive vomiting after the simpler remedies have been tried, the *stomach* may be *washed out* as suggested by Kussmaul and described on page 372. This is at once a harmless measure and may be efficient for the purpose intended. It may be done three or four times a day. It may be expected to be of service in the vomiting of any variety of obstruction. *Opium* may be administered hypodermically to allay the intense pain, and may also relieve the vomiting. Or it may be given with a view to cure, which there is reason to believe it has accomplished in cases of intussusception and even strangulation. *Opium* may, on the other hand, be harmful, by obscuring diagnosis and producing an appearance of relief, while the local condition of the bowel is really growing worse.

The *nourishment* of the cases demands careful thought. It is irrational to continue the administration of nutriment by the mouth when it is rapidly rejected. If the obstruction is in the small bowel the rectum should be the only route employed, while ice should be administered freely by the mouth. On the other hand, when the obstruction is in the colon, when tenesmus and diarrhea are symptoms, and when vomiting is a less prominent symptom, small amounts of liquid nourishment may be introduced by the mouth.

*Treatment of Fecal Tumor.*—The situation is altered when a diagnosis of fecal tumor has been correctly made. Here nothing is so efficient as *repeated large injections* of warm water, high up and retained for from 10 to 15 minutes if the patient can retain them, as he should be encouraged to do. Good results are sometimes obtained from the coincident use of small doses of calomel,  $1/8$  to  $1/5$  grain (0.008 to 0.013 gm.), given hourly. If the fecal impaction is low enough down in the rectum, in most cases the finger or some mechanical appliance, as a spoon-handle, can be used to loosen it.

It is in this form, too, that *electricity*, *massage*, and *metallic mercury*, as used by the older practitioners, are sometimes useful. Electricity is variously used, but the most efficient application is the recto-abdominal, in which one electrode of a faradic machine is placed in the rectum, the other over the abdomen. The use of metallic mercury has been revived by M. Matignon in fecal impaction with apparently good results, the dose being 1.5 to 9 ounces (50 to 280 gm.). It probably acts by insinuating itself in a state of minute subdivision through the fecal tumor and between it and the bowel, loosening and breaking up the mass so as to restore the natural passage. It is of no use when there is strangulation, intussusception, or volvulus.

*In stenosis of the gut*, inflammatory or otherwise, the treatment recommended for fecal impaction may oftentimes be used, with the effect of remov-

ing the obstruction so far as due to the delay of fecal matter at the narrowed point. Sooner or later operative interference becomes necessary.

*Twist, strangulation by bands and obstruction by gall-stones* can only be relieved by operation, and a surgeon should be associated in the treatment from the outset.

For treatment of *cancer of the bowel* see section on that affection.

## CONSTIPATION.

SYNONYM.—*Costiveness*.

**Definition.**—Unnatural retardation or delay in the natural evacuation of the bowels.

Though there may be some exceptions, an evacuation of the bowels once in 24 hours seems to be nature's law in the case of the adult human being, and any prolongation of this interval may be said to constitute costiveness. A popular application of the term is also, however, to a condition in which, though there may not be infrequency of stools, the dejecta are dryer and harder than natural and are discharged with more or less difficulty and pain. The physician should appreciate this, otherwise misunderstanding may arise as to the exact meaning of the patient. Constipation is also something different from retention due to obstruction by various causes. The interval between bowel movements in constipation varies greatly, ranging between a couple of days and weeks. Many constipated persons have no dejections unless aperient medicine is taken.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There are no morbid changes characteristic of constipation. Dilatation of the colon in various degrees is present, sometimes enormous, as shown in Fig. 35, and there may be found the remnants of inflammatory or other local lesions which may be responsible for the obstruction. The large accumulations of fecal matter found in these cases are known as *coprostasis*.

**Etiology.**—The immediate causes of constipation are:

1. Atony of the colon, whence results a slow peristalsis. Perhaps the most common cause of atony is a habit, engendered through indifference or necessity, of disregarding nature's call for relief. Repeated disregard of such call results sooner or later in disappearance of inclination. Sedentary habits cooperate to produce such disinclination. Atony may also be the result of disease of the bowel and of general disease causing debility, such as anemia, chlorosis, and protracted illness, like typhoid fever.

2. A deficiency of the natural stimuli to peristalsis afforded by various secretions, especially the bile.

3. A loss of muscular power in the abdominal walls from overdistention or obesity.

4. Improper food. The foods which most stimulate peristalsis are vegetables, especially those with an insoluble residue, such as is afforded by the outer coatings of grain. Foods of an opposite kind are represented by milk and the farinacea.

5. Finally, stricture and displaced organs—such as the uterus—tumors, and foreign bodies impinging on the bowel and delaying the descent of the feces, become causes.

Among consequences of fecal impaction are hemorrhoids, which result from pressure on the hemorrhoidal veins.

**Treatment.**—Every case of constipation should be carefully studied with a view to determining its cause, and if such cause is found, it should, of course, be removed when possible. If such cause is not found, the first injunction in the management of constipation is the observance of *regularity in going to stool* at a fixed hour of the day, whether inclination prompts or not. The usual hour for this purpose is immediately after breakfast, though it matters not much when it is, so that it is regularly observed. Especially harmful is it to disregard any inclination which may appear at this time, or, indeed, at any time. Next is the use of *food* of the kind referred to under the head of etiology, such as fresh green vegetables of all kinds and succulent fruits.

Of breads, the so-called "brown" or bran bread, or gluten bread, is to be preferred. With such food should be conjoined massage of the abdomen or compression, either by the patient himself or by another. A very excellent daily practice is to flex the body forward and as far as possible backward, a number of times while in the standing position. This has the effect of compressing the bowels and stimulating peristalsis, and is one of the most useful aids. It should be practiced once or twice a day: if once, in the morning on rising; if twice, at bedtime also. Rising to a sitting posture while lying on the back with the feet fixed is another exercise helpful in the correction of constipation; so is twisting of the body while standing. Daily exercise, including horseback riding, golf, and tennis, has an important influence in correcting constipation. I have known dancing also to be serviceable. The free use of plain water is sometimes sufficient to overcome the milder cases. Thus, a glass of water may be taken before breakfast and another at bedtime.

Last of all should aperients be employed. Unfortunately, these are often necessary. The simplest and least irritating should be employed. A simple tonic pill composed of  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.022 to 0.033 gm.) of the extract of *nux vomica* and  $\frac{1}{12}$  to  $\frac{1}{8}$  grain (0.005 to 0.008 gm.) of the extract of *belladonna*, three times a day, and kept up for some time in connection with the dietetic measures alluded to, is often sufficient.

But of actual aperients, the natural mineral waters are deserving favorites, especially Friedrichshalle, Apenta, Hunyadi János, and Carlsbad, and, when less active waters are required, the American Saratoga waters. The Saratoga waters are saline waters which present quite a range of proportion in their constituents, chiefly sodium chlorid, at the various springs. The waters of the Bedford Springs, of Bedford, Pa., are also very efficient, stimulating, as does the Saratoga water, the secretion of bile. The doses of all of these waters vary so much with circumstances that it is impossible to indicate them with definiteness. The minimum dose of the foreign aperient waters mentioned is 2 fluidounces (60 c.c.), increased to 8 fluidounces (240 c.c.). Less than the latter quantity of the American waters is seldom used at a dose.

Of drugs, *cascara sagrada* has become deservedly popular. The best preparation is the fluid extract, as its dose can be readily regulated. From 10 to 30 minims (0.6 to 2 c.c.) may be given after the evening meal, and if

this should prove insufficient, the same dose after the midday meal is to be preferred before increasing the evening dose. The solid extract is, however, also efficient, and a grain or 2 (0.066 to 0.13 gm.) more may be added to the laxative pill already mentioned, or, if a more active aperient is desired, as many grains of extract of colocynth may be substituted.

An old favorite, a pill composed of extracts of aloes, nux vomica, and belladonna, in varying proportions, to be taken at bedtime, has been largely substituted of late by another made by the manufacturers and pharmacists, of aloin  $\frac{1}{5}$  grain (0.013 gm.), strychnin  $\frac{1}{60}$  grain (0.0011 gm.), and belladonna  $\frac{1}{8}$  grain (0.008 gm.), of which one or two are a dose. To such a pill podophyllin, in doses of  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.0165 to 0.033 gm.), may be added with advantage, or blue mass in doses of  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain to 2 grains (0.033 to 0.132 gm.), or rhubarb 1 to 2 grains (0.066 to 0.013). The belladonna may be substituted by the extract of hyoscyamus, of which 1 to 2 grains (0.066 to 0.132 gm.) may be given. The compound licorice powder in which senna and sulphur are the active ingredients is a favorite aperient with some, but is bulky, and has a tendency to cause griping. The dose is a dram (3.8 gm.) or more. Phenolphthalein in doses of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to  $7\frac{1}{2}$  grains (0.1 to .5 gm.) in powder or tablet form is a good aperient.

A glycerin suppository or  $\frac{1}{2}$  dram (2 c.c.) of glycerin injected has become a favorite means of securing an evacuation. It should be remembered as a possible remedy, but it acts by irritating the lower bowel and soon loses its effect. The enema of plain water, 1 to 2 pints (500 to 1000 c.c.), though less convenient, is to be preferred, and some persons use it regularly. None of these measures is curative. They simply empty the bowel at the time, and systematic effort should be made to reduce them gradually, while the hygienic treatment is kept up. Among the more unusual remedies recommended for chronic constipation is creasote, one drop daily, increasing one drop a day until the result is obtained.

It sometimes happens that an impacted fecal mass becomes channeled, and fecal matter may descend from above through it, and thus lead to the belief that normal passages are being secured. The physician should not be slow to explore the rectum with the finger, and by means of it or the handle of a spoon clear out the mass. This is often absolutely necessary before an evacuation can be secured.

*Treatment of the Constipation of Infants.*—I prefer to overcome this, when possible, by simple small enemas repeated until an effect is produced, and carried out at a fixed hour each day, preferably in the evening. The child is best held on the mother's lap, properly protected by a mackintosh and a small quantity, say 2 ounces (60 c.c.), of tepid water is thrown into the rectum. If it returns unchanged, after a few minutes' delay, another syringeful is thrown in, and, if necessary, another. Ultimately, a fecal discharge is usually thus obtained. I lay stress also on the regularity of this performance. It may be necessary to add a little soap to the hot water. Sometimes slight titillation of the anus by twisted pieces of paper answers every purpose. At the same time, the belly of the child should be massaged by the mother. Small suppositories of soap or of glycerin may be used if the measures mentioned are inefficient. For simple constipation in infants it is preferable to administer nothing by the mouth if it can be dispensed with.



*Dilatation of the Colon.*—This is one of the consequences of chronic constipation, though it may also occur as an acute condition, the result of sudden obstruction, as by a twist in the meso-colon. It may involve the



FIG. 35.—Giant Congenital Dilatation of Human Colon.

The more distended end is the sigmoid flexure. The narrow part taking exit from it is part of the rectum, which was normal. The narrow distal end of the preparation represents the head of the colon with the string attached to a fragment of the small intestines. The arched part of the specimen represents a normal human colon photographed simultaneously for comparison of dimensions. Both were dried preparations.

whole colon, but the vicinity of the sigmoid flexure is its usual seat. Two classes of cases of idiopathic dilatation are met—first, that of adult males, generally over 50 years of age; second, that of children in whom abdominal symptoms have been present more or less since birth. In the former it is

thought that the overloaded sigmoid hanging into the pelvis and bent on itself becomes occluded and responsible for dilatation. The form met in children is usually congenital and involves the lower portion of the colon, which is also hypertrophied. The congenital form becomes the direct cause of chronic constipation or coprostasis, which in turn increases the dilatation. Such is a remarkable specimen in the museum of the University of Pennsylvania, secured by the late Henry F. Formad<sup>1</sup> in the course of his work as coroner's physician. Two and a half pailsful of feces, weighing 40 pounds (20 kilograms), were removed at autopsy.

**Symptoms.**—They are the same as those of obstinate constipation extending over weeks, in addition to enormous *distention* and *tympany* of the abdomen. Physical examination in extreme cases recognizes dislocation of the adjacent abdominal and thoracic viscera, especially the liver, spleen, heart, and lungs.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is that of the resulting constipation, which, in cases of this kind, is by enemas carried high up into the bowel, together with remedies which simulate secretion into the upper bowel, of which calomel is one of the best. It should be given in doses of not less than  $1/4$  grain (0.016 gm.) hourly, until an effect is produced in association with that of the enemas. Dilatation probably results, at times, from the gradual accumulation of fecal matter, while frequent small discharges are being obtained which do not clear out the bowel. Hence the rectum should unhesitatingly be explored by the finger in doubtful cases. Complete evacuation of the bowels is sometimes extremely difficult, but if the exact state of affairs is appreciated, perseverance will ultimately conquer. Operation with excision of large portions of the bowel has been done with excellent results.

## NEUROSES OR NERVOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE BOWEL.

The bowel, like the stomach, is subject to deranged nervous functions. It is manifested in:

- I. Increased or diminished contractility of the muscular coat.
- II. Increased or diminished sensibility of the bowel.
- III. Increased or diminished secretory function.

### I. *Derangements of Motion.*

1. *Increased motor activity*, producing *nervous diarrhea* occurs in adults and children, the result of increased peristalsis due to pure nervous influence. It implies a hyperexcitability of the nerves regulating peristalsis, causing them to respond to stimuli to which they are otherwise indifferent, such stimuli including the simple mechanical and chemical irritation of the natural intestinal contents. Hence we find nervous diarrhea in nervous, hysterical, and neurasthenic persons. In these persons, too, psychical influences, such as fright, depression, and even joy, cause diarrhea. The attacks of diarrhea which occur in tabetic persons have a similar origin through central nervous influence. Still more does such an excitability

<sup>1</sup> "Transactions of the Pathological Society of Philadelphia," vol. xvi., 1891-93, p. 23. Formad gives in his paper a summary of other cases reported.

of the nervous system respond to unnatural irritation, such as that of teething in infants, producing diarrhea, which may be quite independent of irritating food, though the latter may cooperate.

There is no morbid change, and the bowel movements are generally watery and without blood or mucous. They vary greatly in frequency—from two to 20 or more daily—occur suddenly, and disappear often as suddenly as they come. They may last for several days.

2. *Decreased motor activity* producing *constipation*, the result of altered nervous influence, is even more common than diarrhea.

In this condition, strictly speaking, the nerves of the muscular coat have lost their impressibility to stimuli ordinarily sufficient to excite the automatic action which result in bowel movements, and peristalsis is at a standstill. Associated with such condition is often an atony of the muscular coat itself which permits gaseous overdistention and tympany.

3. *Nervous cramp*, or excessive contraction of the intestinal muscles, is so intimately associated with pain that it will be considered in connection with deranged sensibility.

## II. *Derangements of Sensibility.*

1. *Enteralgia*.—Sensory neuroses of the bowel are mostly in the direction of increased irritation of sensory nerves. These are derived from the splanchnics, which contain the sensory as well as the inhibitory and vasomotor nerves to the bowel. Such irritation implies increased irritability of these nerves. The pain thus induced, unassociated with organic lesion, is known as *enteralgia* or *neuralgia* of the bowels.

Associated with exaggerated contraction of the muscular coat it is known as *colic*, though the terms *enteralgia* and *colic* are also interchangeably used. Characteristic of *enteralgia* are its suddenness of occurrence and, to a less degree, the suddenness of its cessation. It is often associated with crampy contraction of the abdominal walls, when the pain is augmented.

**Etiology of Enteralgia.**—Among the causes which excite pain are such foreign bodies as indigestible articles of food, intestinal worms, fecal masses, overdistention with gases, and the like. The effect of the latter is attested by the relief which attends the discharge of gas. The operation of reflex causes must also be admitted. Such may be teething. The *enteralgia* associated with certain nervous diseases, such as occurs in the painful enteric crises of locomotor ataxia, is the best illustration of such a neurosis. Such is, possibly, gouty *enteralgia*, or the *enteralgia* succeeding an attack of gout. Lead colic may be thus classified. The hysterical and hypochondriacal and the anemic are subject to colic through increased sensitiveness of nerves.

**Diagnosis.**—The pain existing in *enteralgia* is not peculiar in its distributions. *Enteralgia* is to be distinguished from *enteric pain due to organic disease*, such as the inflammation and ulceration associated with enteritis, typhoid fever, peritonitis, appendicitis, and intestinal obstruction. The diagnosis is usually not difficult. There is, first of all, the absence of fever; second, the history of the ingestion of irritating foods, or some one of the causes named. Very important is the point that

colicky pain is relieved by pressure, while pressure increases pain in all of the affections named.

The diagnosis from *appendicitis* has been considered in treating of the latter. *Rheumatism* of the abdominal muscles sometimes resembles enteralgia very closely. In this, however, there is commonly exquisite tenderness not relieved by pressure while the pain is superficial and more continuous. Nervous *dermalgia*, or hyperesthesia of the abdominal wall, has similar features and is common in hysterical women. Sometimes this is associated with hysterical colic, but even here, while the skin itself is sensitive, deep-seated pressure does not bring out increased pain.

*Biliary colic* and *nephritic colic* also resemble enteralgia, and may at first be mistaken for it, but careful examination should soon discover the points peculiar to each, such as localized tenderness and jaundice in the former and the course of the pain into the groin and testicles and thigh in the latter. *Uterine colic* may also be confounded, but the pain is distinctly localized in the region of the uterus and is apt to be associated with menstruation or to precede it.

2. *Neuralgia of the Rectum*.—Some special symptoms characterize the sensory neuroses of the rectum which demand separate allusion. The nerves of the hemorrhoidal plexus are those concerned. An uncomfortable aching sensation in the lower bowel and lower abdomen, extending at times to the sacrum, perineum, and genitalia, is the principal symptom. With this is associated an irresistible desire to go to stool, which is, however, fruitless.

As a reflex sensory neurosis of the rectal nerves may be considered a peculiar sensation of exhaustion and disposition to faint after a movement of the bowels, complained of by some persons. Wilhelm v. Leube also calls attention to an "intestinal vertigo," excited during the passage of feces through the anus, and capable of being excited, too, by introducing the finger into the rectum.

The sensory neuroses of the rectum are more common in nervous women and in the subjects of hemorrhoids, while tabetic patients are apt to suffer from the same symptoms.

3. *Diminished Sensibility*.—This is manifested for the most part only in delayed peristalsis. It has been said that constipation is one of its most constant results. In the case of the rectum, it is well known how, in health, we are informed of a desire to go to stool. Paralysis of these nerves results in anesthesia, which is followed by the absence of this desire. The effect must be an accumulation of feces in the rectum, which may still be evacuated if volition and the motor nerve route are intact, but which demands artificial removal if these are in abeyance. It is a constant symptom in those affections of the spinal cord associated with paralysis. To higher degrees is added the loss of the limited reflex control, and if there be also loss of the voluntary control over the sphincter ani, an involuntary stillicidium of liquid contents of the bowel results, though the solids go on accumulating unless artificially removed. Thus is explained the constipation of the hysterical and neurasthenic.

The constipation associated with the passive congestion of heart and liver disease is the result of a similar lethargy of the nerves distributed to

the muscular coat of the bowel. Here, too, we may infer an exhaustion of nervous excitability by oversimulation, if, as is suggested, normal peristalsis is excited by the stimulus of the carbonic acid of the venous blood, as well as by the food present in the intestinal tube. On the other hand, a food may be too bland and unirritating to excite the normal peristalsis. Hence it is that constipation attends the use of milk and the farinacea.

The effect of paralysis of the voluntary muscles controlling the external *sphincter ani* results in inability to retain the fecal contents, whence involuntary evacuations take place, a frequent symptom in disease of the brain. Under such circumstances the control of the bowels is given over altogether to the reflex nervous center in the spinal cord, and man is reduced to the condition of the infant and the lower animals, in which defecation is a purely reflex act. Oversensitiveness or overstimulation of the sphincter would result in a spasmodic and painful contraction, which is, however, a very rare and anomalous condition.

III. *Secretion Neuroses*.—It is difficult to separate the consideration of the *secretion neuroses* of the bowel from that of the sensory and motor neuroses. Yet it is well known that secretion into the bowel may be influenced quite independently of peristaltic motion, perhaps through the vaso-motor nerves. Thus, while it is more than likely that the saline aperients produce their effect in response to the physical laws of osmosis, the secretion into the bowel which follows the hypodermic injection of pilocarpin cannot be explained upon any other ground than that of vasomotor nervous influence. Mention has already been made of the responsibility of the nervous system in producing the mucous discharges and casts referred to in discussing chronic enteritis.

**Treatment of Neuroses of the Bowel.**—This follows easily upon a correct diagnosis, which is indispensable. The primary point of attack is that of the nervous condition at fault. The removal of the causes of irritation should be coincident with measures directed to the relief of pain. If irritating ingesta are present, an emetic should be given. In children the gums should often be examined, and lanced when swollen and tender. If there is constipation, the bowels should be opened. If there is hysteria, a nervous sedative is indicated. In enteralgia the promptest means of relief is a hypodermic injection of morphin of  $1/4$  grain (0.0165 gm.) to an adult. Less may suffice, but if the pain is extreme, it is not worth while to temporize with smaller doses. On the other hand, it is not safe to give more at a single injection. Should this dose be ineffectual, associated with the local measures to be described, it may be repeated in half an hour. The combination of atropin  $1/150$  grain (0.00044 gm.), with the morphin will increase its efficiency.

Of local measures, massage is probably the most efficient for constipation and enteralgia. It has been mentioned that relief of the pain by pressure is characteristic of enteralgia. Especially happy results may, therefore, be expected from massage, an expectation that is realized in practice. Counterirritation to the abdomen by mustard or turpentine stupes may be used as an adjuvant to treatment in lieu of massage.

In milder forms of enteralgia, aromatics and carminatives, alone or in combination with morphin, have always had a justified reputation. Some

of these have been mentioned in considering the treatment of cholera and cholera morbus. An especially elegant and efficient preparation is—

℞ Spiritus ammon. aromat. Tinct. card. comp. Spiritus chloroformi Spiritus vin. gall. M. et Sig.—Teaspoonful every half-hour or fifteen minutes, in cracked ice or hot water until relieved.	}	aa.....5 ij (8 c.c.)
---	---	----------------------

Its efficiency is increased by adding a few drops of deodorized tincture of opium to each dose.

## CARCINOMA OF THE BOWEL.

All parts of the bowel are subject to *carcinoma*, which occurs in growing frequency as the gut is descended. Thus, of all cases of bowel cancer, barely 5 per cent. are found in the small intestine, 15 per cent. in the cecum and colon, while 80 per cent. are met in the rectum.

In the small intestine, in the neighborhood of the orifice of bile-duct, we meet most frequently the cylinder-celled epithelioma or adenocarcinoma.

In the *large intestine* there is:

1. Cylinder-celled epithelioma, the most common form of cancer, in the cecum and sigmoid flexure.

2. Colloid cancer

3. Scirrhus

4. Soft cancer

5. Squamous epithelioma just above the anus

6. Sarcoma, including the melanotic variety

} in the rectum.

*Benign* tumors of the bowel, which may present symptoms similar to those of malignant tumors or no symptoms at all, include mucous polypi and fibromata, more rarely lipoma, myoma, angioma, and lymphoma.

**Symptoms.**—There are no symptoms distinctive of cancer of the bowel. The most constant local effect is more or less obstruction of the bowel, and we have already seen in our study of obstruction how far it is contributed to by cancer. There are, however, other symptoms which, added to those of obstruction, aid in the diagnosis. Particularly is this true in the case of the rectum.

The symptoms of obstruction met with in cancer of the bowel, already considered in treating of obstruction, include, especially, *constipation, pain, tumor, anorexia, nausea*, and, more rarely, *vomiting*. The added symptoms are *cachexia* and *altered fecal discharges*, which may include pus, blood, occult blood and, in few instances, fragments of cancerous tissue. Of the symptoms of obstruction named, *tumor* alone demands further consideration, being the most important of all the symptoms of cancer. In fact, without it a certain diagnosis is scarcely possible. On the other hand, given a case of obstruction, the presence of tumor points more to cancer than to any other cause except intussusception and fecal impaction. As contrasted with intussusception, the tumor of cancer is of long duration and found in adults; as with impaction, it is tender and movable, usually harder and more irregular. While the tumor may give a dull note to light percussion,

to a hard stroke it is tympanitic. It may pulsate also if it lie over one of the large blood-vessels. Fecal tumors never do this. The difficulty of distinguishing from a fecal tumor is increased when a fecal mass is added to the cancerous tumor, but some of it may be cleared up by the use of purgatives and injections.

*Cachexia*, added to other signs of chronic obstruction, points to cancer. *Change in the shape of the formed feces*, especially a band-like flattening, is much spoken of. It may be produced by any cause which protrudes into the lumen of the large bowel, characterizes rather disease of the lower part, and, to be of value in diagnosis, it must be constant. The more or less constant presence of sanious pus, particularly of fetid character, is important evidence in favor of cancer.

**Diagnosis.**—1. *Diagnosis of the Part of Bowel Involved.*—As to the part of the bowel involved, once assured that the tumor is of the bowel, some indication of its more exact location may be obtained by noting its position, which, if in the right upper abdominal region, suggests the duodenum; in the vicinity of the umbilicus, the transverse colon; in the right iliac fossa, the cecum, and in the left, the sigmoid flexure. It should be remembered, however, that serious dislocation of the tumor from its natural site may occur as the result of inflammatory adhesions formed while the tumor is temporarily in a position remote from its natural site. Often, too, a cancer of the sigmoid flexure gives no indication of its presence to abdominal examination. Distention of the bowel with water or gas and the application of the principles laid down from this standpoint, when treating of obstruction, may be availed of in settling this question (see p. 448). Allusion has been made to the presence of jaundice as characteristic of duodenal cancer; also to the retained natural acidity of the gastric contents removed after a test-meal as compared with gastric cancer. Cancer of the rectum can generally be reached by the finger or some by the aid of the speculum.

2. Carcinoma of the duodenum is not easily distinguished from *tumor of the pylorus*; indeed, it is sometimes impossible to separate them. Both are movable tumors. With pyloric tumor are associated symptoms of obstruction and dilatation of the stomach. More rarely cancer of the duodenum has the same effect. The presence of jaundice points to cancer of the duodenum, as does also the continued natural acidity of the gastric contents removed after a test-meal, but neither of these symptoms is pathognomonic of duodenal cancer. In cancer of the stomach dyspeptic symptoms occur earlier and are more serious. Carcinoma of the duodenum may terminate suddenly by fatal hemorrhage. Cancer of the head of the *pancreas* also produces jaundice, but the tumor arising from it is fixed and immovable, and much more deep-seated than tumors of any portion of the bowel, being behind the pylorus and the transverse colon, between the right sternal border and parasternal line.

With the other abdominal tumors intestinal cancer is not likely to be confounded. The *floating kidney* is movable, but when sufficiently so to be compared in this respect with a cancerous tumor, is more movable, and may be generally returned to its natural seat. The kidney shape may not infrequently be recognized. Compression of the kidney often produces a peculiar sickening pain. The presence of nervous symptoms is especially

characteristic of floating kidney, but there is no cachexia. A *movable spleen* is even less likely to be confounded, for similar reasons. It is, moreover, less sensitive. A *laced-off lobe of the liver*, often quite movable, can generally be traced to its normal attachment.

An actual *tumor of the kidney*, being behind the peritoneum, pushes the bowel and the ascending or descending colon before it, and must attain considerable size before it shows itself to the usual examination from the front. Such tumor very rarely compresses the bowel so as to produce symptoms of obstruction. The same may be said of tumors of postperitoneal lymphatic glands. An *ovarian tumor* is characterized by its deep-seated origin, its ascending development, and its relation to the uterus, as determined by joint vaginal and abdominal examination.

A *circumscribed peritoneal exudate* might be mistaken for a cancer of the bowel, but the history of its development, its flat percussion note, and the presence of some temperature, which characterizes it, are wanting in cancer of the bowel.

Cancer of the bowel is not likely to be mistaken for *appendicitis*, the acuteness of symptoms marking the grave form of the latter, while the absence of serious constitutional and cachectic symptoms is characteristic of the more chronic form of appendicitis.

*Chronic inflammatory thickening* of the bowel may, however, be a serious stumbling-block. Especially apt to occur about the sigmoid flexure, it produces also obstructive symptoms, and careful and prolonged study may be necessary to the making of a correct diagnosis. Cachexia remains absent in simple inflammatory stenosis for a longer time at least than cancer.

*Cancer of the rectum* exhibits a somewhat special train of symptoms. The rectum is subject to the same forms of cancer as the pylorus, and in somewhat the same order of frequency, the columnar-celled epithelioma being most common.

The early symptoms of cancer of the rectum are those of *irritation*, including *pain*, *tencismus*, the *discharge of mucus and blood*, and, probably, most cases of carcinoma of the rectum are mistaken at first for dysentery. In the cases of colloid cancer, the colloid material may be discharged from the bowel and reasonably mistaken for mucus. Fortunate is the clinician if it occurs to him to make an early examination of the rectum by the finger; for generally the disease can be felt, either as an ulcerated mass infiltrating the wall of the bowel, thus intruding upon the lumen, or as one or more nodular growths under the mucous membrane and adherent to it. If ulceration has occurred, bloody and mucoid matter, characterized by extreme and persistent fetor, is apt to adhere to the finger. Von Leube especially calls attention to hemorrhoids as a symptom of cancer of the rectum, and says they are seldom absent, because of the resistance opposed to the return of the venous blood. He claims he has discovered rectal cancer in examination suggested by hemorrhoids when no other symptoms were present. So, too, the presence of secondary cancer of the liver should suggest examination of the rectum, since marked instances of the former have been found associated with cancer of the rectum, otherwise latent.

Almost all morbid growths affecting the rectum are cancerous. Polypi, mucous and fibromatous, occasionally found in children, produce dysenteric



symptoms, including bloody discharges, while they may project from the rectum during stool. Lipomata and other histioid tumors have been found at autopsy without having caused symptoms.

**Prognosis and Treatment of Cancer of the Bowel.**—The prognosis of cancer of the bowel is always unfavorable. Occasionally operative procedures have prolonged the life of the patient at the expense of an artificial anus in the lumbar or abdominal region, while resection has even been made with some degree of success. Especially happy have been the results in some cases of exsection of the rectum.

The propriety of operation should, therefore, always be considered. Should it be decided against, the patient must be nourished by easily assimilable foods, such as peptonoids and peptonized milk, by the mouth or bowel, as circumstances may determine. A regular and sufficient evacuation of the bowels should be carefully looked after, lest impaction add its inconveniences to the others present.

## HEMORRHOIDS.

SYNONYM.—*Piles*.

This troublesome affection lies on the border-line between medicine and surgery, and is, therefore, as appropriately considered from the standpoint of the physician as from that of the surgeon.

**Definition.**—A hemorrhoid is a mass of varicose or dilated and sacculated veins at the anus and lower rectum, the usual situation being almost always the muco-cutaneous surface which joins these two structures. From this edge one or more piles may protrude externally or internally, constituting *external* or *internal* piles, the former protruding outside the gut, the latter within the sphincter.

Piles are called "open" or "bleeding" as they give rise to hemorrhage, and "blind" when they do not bleed.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The external pile constitutes a little circumscribed tumor. Commonly there is more than one of these, whence the common use of the plural, "piles," or "hemorrhoids." They may be so numerous as to form a more or less complete circle around the anus. Within the sphincter the individual or tumor-like shape is more usually maintained, and the pile may be more elongated. The color varies from dark red to purple, the surface is smooth or lobulated, and the consistence is variously soft, hard, or elastic, corresponding to the degree of vascular turgescence.

On section the pile is found to be a mass of loculi filled with blood and separated by areolar tissue. These cells are produced by the sacculated and dilated veins referred to. After lasting for some time the structure becomes altered. The walls of the veins are thickened, the intervening connective tissue becomes firmer, and the whole pile grows harder, and appears more or less shriveled.

**Etiology.**—Piles are favored by the anatomical structure and relations of the seat at which they occur, more particularly the arrangement of the so-called hemorrhoidal plexus of the lower rectum. In health the plexus forms a rich, tortuous network lying between the muscular layer and the

muco-cutaneous surface, and is subject to pressure by masses of fecal matter accumulated in the rectum and by straining at stool. The blood from the hemorrhoidal veins is discharged partly into the portal system and partly into the general venous system: the former through the superior hemorrhoidal and the inferior mesenteric veins, and the latter by the middle hemorrhoidal and the internal iliac veins. The plexus is therefore between the portal and general venous systems, but more closely connected with the former. Hence obstructions to either the portal circulation or cardiac circulation, however induced, tend to engorge these veins, and become a predisposing or even sufficient cause of piles.

After the predisposing causes described, the most common cause of hemorrhoids is constipation and the accumulation of large quantities of fecal matter in the rectum. Hence it is that persons whose bowels do not act daily are very apt to be troubled with piles, and as women suffer much in this way, it is they who are most frequently victims. On the other hand, women suffer less than they would but for the relief afforded to congestions in this neighborhood by their monthly flow, so that it is not until after the menopause that they become most liable. Hence it is that hemorrhoids are more common in men up to the age of from 45 to 50, and that after this age more cases occur among women. The diseases in the abdominal cavity peculiar to women often produce hemorrhoids through the pressure they exert on, and the resistance they present to, the return of the blood from the hemorrhoidal plexus. Such are uterine enlargements and fibroid tumors of the uterus, ovarian tumors—in a word, any morbid growths which may invade the pelvic organs and become large enough to exert pressure. The pregnant uterus is another frequent cause of hemorrhoids in women, and thus hemorrhoids sometimes become one of the most distressing complications of the puerperal state.

**Symptoms.**—*External Hemorrhoids.*—The first evidence usually afforded of the presence of a hemorrhoid is a tender, painful lump, about as large as a pea, which makes its appearance just outside the *sphincter ani*, sometimes quite suddenly, more frequently requiring two or three days to attain its full development. This little tumor may pass away in the course of two or three days without treatment, or it may grow to larger size. If it disappears, it may never reappear, but more frequently it recurs—it may be not for months. In other cases the recurrence becomes more frequent, the condition lasts longer, and the inconvenience is correspondingly greater, especially during and succeeding defecation. The size of these tumors also varies, although they begin generally as described. The tendency is to enlargement with each recurrence, until they form a mass which more or less fills the anal region. The degree of hardness and pain also varies. Often the pain is excruciating and throbbing, and the patient will frequently compare the condition to that of a boil. In such cases it is impossible to sit because of the pain, and defecation is torture. If partially relieved, the swelling may diminish, and with it the pain and tenderness, leaving a fleshy mass smaller than the original pile, which may be permanent unless removed by operation. This fleshy mass may at any time become engorged again into a painful swelling, with the characteristics already described. More rarely, instead of the shriveling, suppuration may take place, and the pile is thus

cured after weeks of suffering; or the circulation may be so interfered with that the hemorrhoid becomes sphacelated and ulcerates off.

In addition to the local symptoms named, there may be a sense of heat and fullness and itching about the anus. Occasionally, hemorrhoids bleed freely, affording relief to the suffering, and do no harm, if the bleeding is moderate. At times the bleeding recurs, constituting "bleeding piles."

*Internal Hemorrhoids.*—When the pile is entirely within the sphincter ani, it is called "internal." The sensation produced by piles in this situation varies also with their size, the rectum being sometimes quite filled with them, causing a sense of fullness and an inclination to expel the mass, like that excited by the presence of feces in the rectum. Along with this there is often considerable secretion of mucus. The same anal sensations previously described as characteristic of external piles may be present, and, in addition, a dull, aching pain, extending beyond the anal region to that of the sacrum and sacro-iliac juncture. These hemorrhoids are also subject to bleeding, which will sometimes relieve them, and from them especially arise copious hemorrhages, producing at times great prostration.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of hemorrhoids is usually most easy. It is very common for the laity, however, to mistake a variety of conditions, including simple pruritus, eczema with and without pruritus, prolapsus ani, polypus of the rectum, condylomata about the anus, and even *fistulæ in ano*, for hemorrhoids, and absurd mistakes are sometimes made simply because the physician, from unfounded delicacy or other cause, does not make an ocular examination. The distinction from *prolapsus ani* may be briefly referred to. In prolapsus there is a smooth, symmetrical, complete annular protuberance, more prominent than hemorrhoids and, as a rule, less painful. It is also usually more easily reduced. The *polypus* is recognized by its pedunculated attachment, and the condyloma by its wart-like appearance and its light color as compared with the red of hemorrhoids.

**Prognosis.**—This is usually favorable, particularly if treatment be instituted early, and it is most frequently in consequence of neglect of treatment that the tumors go on from bad to worse, and that operation is ultimately required for their successful cure. Reference has been made to the free hemorrhage which sometimes occurs, even causing the patient to faint from loss of blood; yet, I never knew death to result.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of hemorrhoids is easily divisible into the prophylactic and the curative.

*Prophylactic* treatment consists in correcting constipation, in maintaining local cleanliness, and in combating predisposing causes as constituted by diseases of the heart and liver, or by pelvic tumors, including uterine enlargement. Constipation should be corrected by its treatment as recommended under that section. Advantage should be taken of the daily bath to wash the anal region thoroughly with water and soap. All irritating particles are thus removed, and any tendency to hyperemia is kept subdued. Constipation being the immediate cause of the vast majority of cases of hemorrhoids, every effort should be made to secure free and easy movements of the bowels daily. Fortunately, the same treatment which relieves the constipation tends also to relieve the portal engorgement so often the cause of the hemorrhoids. Hence, mercurial purges are especially indicated, and

among these blue mass is the best. It may be combined with compound extract of colocynth, from 2 to 5 grains (0.132 to 0.33 gm.) of each, with  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0165 gm.) of extract of belladonna, and may be given nightly in the smaller dose, and two or three times a week, if the larger, followed by a saline in the morning, until the acute stage is passed. Senna, sulphur, and cream of tartar or compound jalap powder have long been favorite remedies. They may be given in various combinations. An excellent aperient to be used in this way is equal parts of precipitated sulphur and bitartrate of potassium, made into an electuary with syrup, of which mixture two teaspoonfuls may be taken nightly. Another combination is powdered jalap and bitartrate of potassium, each half an ounce; confection of senna an ounce, made into an electuary with simple syrup or syrup of orange, of which half a teaspoonful may be given nightly or two or three times a day, as found necessary. The natural aperient waters—Apenta water, Hunyadi water, Rubinat water, Carlsbad water, the Saratoga waters, and others of this class—may be substituted or added in the morning on an empty stomach.

*Curative* treatment consists largely in the application of astringent ointments, of which equal parts of ointment of galls and ointment of belladonna is the favorite. Simultaneously with the application of this the pile should be patiently reduced and returned within the sphincter, the ointment being used in the manipulation, as well as subsequently applied and properly retained by dressing. In certain cases in which the inflammation is very decided nothing can be accomplished until cold applications, such as ice-water or ice itself, are made to the part and retained there. Satisfactory results from this treatment are greatly favored by the patient going to bed; indeed, it is scarcely possible to carry it out otherwise, and some such treatment as this is sometimes necessary to force the patient to bed. The application of cold is often efficiently made by a stream of water played upon the part for 15 minutes or more, using a bidet or rubber hose attachment to a spigot. If the inflammation has been reduced and the astringent ointment is insufficient, I have frequently obtained good results by applications of Monsel's solution of persulphate of iron, applied with a brush, once or twice daily. By this means, used conjointly with the astringent ointment, I have seen large and painful hemorrhoids dwindle away in the course of a few days. In all instances where these applications are made to external hemorrhoids suitable measures should be used to protect the linen from soiling. Too much stress cannot be laid upon the return of the hemorrhoid within the anus and pressing or "seaming" it down with the finger each time it comes out.

D. W. Samways recommends the application of collodion to external hemorrhoids. The hardening of the collodion supports the pile and stimulates it to contraction. It is directed to be dropped on a few fibers of cotton wool which are spread over the pile each morning after defecation.

The medical treatment of *internal hemorrhoids* is not essentially different from that for external hemorrhoids. The suffering in this form is not usually so great, though hemorrhage appears to be more frequent from this kind of pile than from the external form.

Failing by the above described efforts to cure, recourse must be had to operation, which will carry us into the field of surgery, to the text-books on which the reader is referred for suitable operative methods.

## DISEASES OF THE LIVER.

ABNORMALITIES IN THE SHAPE AND POSITION OF  
THE LIVER.

**Altered Shape.**—The only abnormality in the shape of the liver requiring special mention is the “laced-off” or “corset” liver. In this the right lobe is divided by a transverse furrow, more or less deep, into two nearly equal parts. In extreme cases the connecting furrow is a mere fibrous band, and the liver can be folded on itself; in others it contains more or less liver parenchyma. It is usually caused by the pressure of a tight waist-band or corset, and accordingly is more frequent in women, but it is met also in men.

It seldom gives rise to any symptoms, but sometimes leads to confusion in diagnosis, being especially frequently mistaken for a movable kidney or an abdominal tumor, for the inferior portion may extend as low as the crest of the ilium. This confusion is increased if, as occasionally happens, a loop of intestine lies in the furrow and gives a tympanitic note on percussion; whence the inference that the lower portion is a separate organ. Skillful palpation is a valuable means for determining the true nature of such a condition. The edge of the liver should be followed around from the epigastrium into the right lumbar and iliac regions. If the continuity with the supposed tumor is uninterrupted, the latter must be a portion of liver laced off. It is not unlikely that such a condition may occasion symptoms of dragging and weight, with the nervous strain frequently incident to them, like that which is so characteristic of floating kidney. The corset-liver is said to be one of the favoring causes of cholelithiasis, by reason of its interference with the natural onward movement of the bile.

**Abnormality of Position.**—The liver in cases of transposed viscera is found on the left side. More frequently it is simply turned downward or upward, anteverted or retroverted as it may be on its transverse axis, chiefly as a consequence of tight lacing in women. It may be pushed upward above its normal site by ascitic fluid or abdominal tumors, and downward by pleuritic effusion on the right side or by emphysema of the right lung.

The *floating liver* is by far the most interesting of these conditions. When it occurs, the natural site of the liver is vacant, especially when the patient is in the upright position, occupied usually by hollow viscera, or, in rare instances, by morbid growths. The condition of such movableness is a long suspensory ligament and a coronary ligament so stretched as to form a sort of mesohepar, which permits the liver to fall out of its normal position. It occurs usually in women past middle life, with loose abdominal walls, and is favored by tight lacing. It has been met with in men. It is sometimes responsible for the condition known as the pendent belly. It is a rare condition.

The organ itself is usually easily recognized as a large, hard, but movable tumor, below its normal place, and having also the shape and size of the liver, while the normal site is tympanitic on percussion or occupied by organs which do not give the same outline on percussion. The suspen-

sory ligament may also be felt. The organ may generally be restored to its normal position when the patient is recumbent.

The same dragging symptoms mentioned as characteristic of the constricted liver, with the usual contingent of nervous symptoms which succeed upon it and the movable kidney, may be present here.

**Treatment.**—The treatment for both of these conditions—the constricted and the displaced liver—must consist in some instrumental means by which the organ or constricted portion can be held in position.

### Diseases of the Bile Passages and Gall Bladder.

#### JAUNDICE OR ICTERUS.

**JAUNDICE.**—Jaundice is not a disease, but a symptom, consisting in a yellowish discoloration of the skin and other tissues by coloring-matters derived, in some cases, directly from the bile, and in others directly from the blood. The shades of coloring range from a very pale, scarcely appreciable, yellow to a brown-olive hue. It is a symptom present in so many different diseases of the liver, and so associated with other symptoms more or less constant that its separate consideration is justified.

As intimated, its immediate cause is a deposit of pigment in the skin, which, in the majority of cases, is reabsorbed bile pigment. In other instances the pigment represents the coloring-matter from disintegrated red blood disks, disintegration so rapid that the liver, spleen, and kidneys, all combined, are unable to eliminate the hematin. It has also been claimed that jaundice may be due to suppressed secretion, the result of extensive destruction of liver cells, but this has been rendered very unlikely by the experiments of Stein, who found that jaundice did not occur when the entire blood-supply of the pigeon's liver was cut off. The jaundice due to bile absorption has received the name *hepatogenous* jaundice, because of its purer hepatic origin; the second form is called *hematogenous*, because disintegrated blood is its direct source.

Reabsorption of bile takes place when there is obstruction to its onward movement, such as results, for example, from impaction of a gall-stone in the hepatic duct or common bile-duct; from closure of the duodenal end of the common bile-duct by inflamed and swollen intestinal mucous membrane; from complete or partial obliteration of the duct by adhesive inflammation; and from pressure from without by morbid growths. These growths may be enlarged glands in the fissure of the liver, or tumor in the gall-bladder, in the liver itself, in the pancreas, and in the stomach, and especially cancer of the pylorus and duodenum. More rarely tumors of the kidney or omentum, abdominal aneurysm of the celiac axis or aorta, or enlargement of the uterus may occasion obstruction. So may fecal accumulation. The morbid states in the liver which may produce jaundice are cancer, abscess, hydatid cysts, and cicatrices, all of which will be referred to again. It is reasonable to suppose that the bile is absorbed from the overdistended biliary vessels by the adjacent capillary vessels of either portal or hepatic vein system facilitated by pressure. Reduced pressure in the blood-vessels of the liver,

as contrasted with that in the biliary vessels and ducts, also favors reabsorption of bile from the latter. Such explanation is speculative, but thus have been explained those interesting cases of jaundice brought about by emotion. Those who have read the charming story of "Put Yourself in His Place," by Charles Reade, will recall the case of Henry Little, whose attack of jaundice is described with the skill of an expert physician.

It should be mentioned, also, that the hematogenous form of jaundice has recently been denied by Stadelmann, who holds that all jaundice is hepatogenous in origin, and that the needed condition of obstruction is secured in the so-called hematogenous form by a plugging of the smaller bile-ducts by viscid bile or catarrhal secretion, or by compression of these ducts by swollen adjacent liver cells, or by leukocytic infiltration of the interstitial tissue. I do not as yet feel justified in discarding the heretofore accepted classification.

1. *Of Hepatogenous or Obstructive Jaundice.*—This is the usual form of jaundice. All ages are subject to it. In addition to the discoloration described there is often an annoying *itching of the skin*, due to irritation of the deposited bile pigment. Further evidence of the irritation thus caused is seen in occasional *eruptions*, such as urticaria, lichen, and even furuncles. A *bright yellow discoloration of the sclerotic coat of the eye* is as constant as the staining of the skin, while the mucous membranes are often similarly tinged.

After the skin, the *urine* exhibits the most conspicuous alteration, even in mild cases. Indeed, "bilious urine" is sometimes the first symptom. The color may be slightly yellow or deep brown, like that of porter. The presence of bile pigment in the urine is readily shown by Gmelin's nitrous acid test, though ordinary nitric acid answers nearly as well. A few drops of the urine and half as many of the acid are placed on a porcelain plate and gradually allowed to approach and fuse, when a brilliant play of colors appears, in which green, yellow, red, and violet are most easily recognized. The reaction is due to the oxidation of the bilirubin by the acid. The demonstration of the biliary acids by Pettenkoffer's test with cane-sugar and sulphuric acid is impossible unless the bile acids be first separated by a tedious process. One of the most reliable ways of recognizing bile in the urine is by the stained cellular elements which it contains. Under no other circumstances are the bright yellow-stained cells found, and they are even met with when the quantity of coloring-matter is insufficient to react by Gmelin's test. In a few cases the bilirubin reaction is not obtainable, when the urine contains in increased amount its normal coloring-matters, urobilin or hydrobilirubin—*i. e.*, reduced bilirubin.

Of the *remaining secretions*, the perspiration is often stained, the milk rarely, the tears, saliva, and mucus not at all. There is sometimes a bitter taste in the mouth, showing an elimination of some constituent of the bile by the buccal glands, probably the salivary.

On the other hand, the *feces* are devoid of biliary coloring-matter, and their pale-gray or pipe-clay color has long been significant of the absence of bile. For the same reason the bowels are usually constipated and the discharges pasty, ill-smelling, and acid. Occasionally there is *diarrhea*, which may be caused by irritating effect of the feces disposed to rapid

decomposition, because of the absence of their natural antiseptic ingredient. For the same reason, too, the absorption of fats is hindered. There may be other signs of gastrointestinal derangement, such as *loss of appetite, nausea, fetid breath, and fullness in the epigastrium* after eating. *Gastro-intestinal hemorrhages* have been noticed in grave cases. In cases of long standing there may be *albuminuria* as well, with bile-stained tube casts.

Very characteristic of simple obstructive jaundice is a *slow pulse*, which may be as infrequent as 50, 40, or 30. It must be due to some stimulating effect on the inhibitory action of the pneumogastric nerve. The breathing rate, on the other hand, is normal.

The chief subjective symptom of jaundice is *depression of spirits*, which may even amount to melancholia. *Irritability* is also prominent. *Headache and vertigo* are frequent. *Vision* is variously affected: to some, objects appear yellow; some see better by obscure light—nyctalopia; to others, the approach of darkness is associated with more than usually difficult vision—hemeralopia. Grave nervous symptoms, rarely manifested, are *sudden coma, acute delirium, and convulsions*. These usually supervene in cases of long standing, and are attended by *fever, rapid pulse, and dry tongue*—the symptoms, in a word, of the typhoid state. The term cholcemia is applied to the sum of these symptoms, and the condition is regarded as due to the presence in the blood of the constituents of bile, of which cholesterin is the most important; whence also the name cholesteremia.

The *liver* is more or less altered, in accordance with the disease which may be present in it and responsible for the jaundice. These changes will be considered in treating of the diseases in which jaundice is a conspicuous symptom. It may also be bile-stained, as are other internal organs, especially the kidneys.

The *duration* of this form of jaundice depends upon the disease which is responsible for it, and it may be a few days or many months. In chronic cases remission and exacerbations occur, but the longer the duration, the more likely is there to be some organic change in the liver.

2. *Of Hematogenous Jaundice*.—The symptoms of this form are those of the diseases which are responsible for the hemolysis—viz., acute yellow atrophy, phosphorus-poisoning, yellow fever, bilious fever, typhoid, typhus, and relapsing fevers, pyemia, pernicious anemia, snake poison, chloroform, and other poisons. In all of these there is some toxic agent working destruction of the blood. It should be added that in this form of jaundice the *stools are not clay-colored*. The urine also is less bile-stained, though the true urinary pigments, notably urobilin, are often very much increased.

*Recognition of Jaundice*.—One of the most frequent errors of the inexperienced, and a constant one of the laity, is to mistake for jaundice a dirty yellowish discoloration of the skin, known as sallowness, which is symptomatic of general ill health, especially of uterine disease in women and of malarial poisoning. It is probably an anemia and may be distinguished from jaundice by the fact that it is not associated with staining of the conjunctiva and secretions. It is, moreover, not a yellow, but a dirty brown. One needs only to have his attention aroused to avoid error.

Much more closely does the discoloration of the skin in *Addison's disease* resemble that of some cases of jaundice. In the former there is no



discoloration of the sclerotic coat nor of the urine, while the feces remain natural. In Addison's disease the exposed portion of the body and its flexures are more deeply stained.

The purpose of diagnosis includes the discovery of the cause and seat of obstruction. In the first place, most cases of acute jaundice are due to catarrhal inflammation of the common bile-duct. If associated with fever, it may be assumed that the smaller ducts are involved. After this, obstruction by gall-stones causes many cases; then follow hypertrophic cirrhosis and the various malignant diseases of the liver, hydatid disease, abscess, pressure by enlarged glands in the fissure of the liver, and others mentioned on page 466.

#### ICTERUS NEONATORUM.

SYNONYM.—*Jaundice of the New-born.*

Jaundice occurs in new-born children in a simple and *harmless* form, with symptoms comparable to obstructive jaundice, and in a *grave* form comparable to hematogenous jaundice. The first is probably a form of obstructive jaundice due to like causes especially congestion of the liver, though it has been assigned a hematogenous origin. It is much the more frequent, and disappears in from a few days to several weeks.

A patulous ductus venosus has been suggested as an avenue through which the portal blood which contains bile enters the circulation.

The grave form, usually fatal, has been found associated with absence of the hepatic duct or common duct, with congenital syphilitic hepatitis, and with septic phlebitis of the umbilical vein.

**Treatment.**—The simple form of jaundice of new-born infants demands no treatment. In the graver forms treatment is of no avail unless the condition be traceable to syphilis, when it demands the treatment of that disease in its tertiary form.

#### DUODENO-CHOLANGITIS OR SIMPLE CATARRHAL JAUNDICE.

SYNONYM.—*Inflammation of the Common Bile-duct.*

**Definition.**—The term catarrhal jaundice is applied to jaundice due to any inflammation of the common duct not the result of impacted gall-stone.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent cause of such inflammation is the extension of a gastro-duodenitis into the common duct. To the same cause is ascribed the jaundice sometimes occurring with passive congestion of the liver due to mitral valvular heart disease, also that found in association with the infectious diseases, especially pneumonia, or with mental emotion. Catarrhal jaundice may also be epidemic. The jaundice in hypertrophic cirrhosis is probably likewise due to cholangitis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Opportunities of studying postmortem conditions after catarrhal jaundice are not often afforded, but when they occur, the

duodenal end of the duct—the *pars intestinalis*—has been mostly involved. In it the mucous membrane is swollen, while its orifice and the diverticulum of Vater may be filled with mucus. The inflammation may extend up into the cystic duct, and even higher, into the hepatic duct and branches. Suppuration does not take place in this form of cholangitis.

**Symptoms.**—Excepting the jaundice, there may be no symptoms. There is no pain, but there may be *tenderness*, due to gastro-intestinal derangement rather than to the hepatic state, though this may cause it, while such derangement may also lead to *general malaise, loss of appetite, coated tongue, fetid breath, nausea, vomiting*, a sense of *fullness, constipation*, or irregular action of the bowels. There may be also slight *fever*, particularly if the smaller biliary passages are involved. If the gall-bladder is distended and can be felt at the edge of the liver, there is probably obstruction of the common duct, and if there are pain and tenderness, the obstructive agent is probably a gall-stone. The paler the feces, the more complete must be the obstruction, and the more likely it is to be in the common duct, for, with obstruction of the cystic duct, there may still be a discharge of bile into the intestine; also with obstruction of the hepatic duct until the gall-bladder is empty, which, however, soon happens. Obstruction of the hepatic duct is unassociated with distention of the gall-bladder, while there will be jaundice. Obstruction of the cystic duct may still be associated with distention of the gall-bladder, either through transudation or pus-formation, but there may be no jaundice, and the feces may remain colored. If the jaundice is chronic or permanent, we must look for some organic change in the liver or external permanent cause of obstruction outside of its condition. In the hematogenous form the jaundice is usually so plainly secondary to other symptoms that there is little difficulty in recognizing its cause.

**Diagnosis.**—The presence of jaundice without pain or other symptoms points almost invariably to catarrhal jaundice. The same diagnosis is justified by the presence of the symptoms of gastro-intestinal catarrh, of associated mitral disease, or of any of the infectious diseases.

**Prognosis.**—Unless associated with infectious diseases or with hypertrophic cirrhosis, the prognosis of catarrhal jaundice is favorable. In the diseases referred to the danger is not from the jaundice, but from the diseases with which it is associated.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of catarrhal jaundice resolves itself into two parts: first, that for the catarrhal state; second, that demanded by the absence of bile in the small intestine.

For the catarrhal inflammation, either of the duodenum adjacent to the duct or of the duct itself, local depletion is indicated. This is accomplished by the use of saline aperients and the natural mineral waters which act similarly—*i. e.*, produce watery stools. Of the former, Rochelle salts, Epsom salts, or the solution of the citrate of magnesium are representative; while the Saratoga, Apenta, Hunyadi János, Friedrichshalle, or Rubinat and Carlsbad waters represent the latter. These should be taken daily in aperient doses. In this country the Saratoga mineral waters, particularly those of the Hathorn Spring, are especially valuable, and no better course can be pursued by those who can afford it than to spend some weeks at

Saratoga. The Bedford Springs waters, near Bedford, Pa., are also useful, but not nearly so efficient as the Saratoga waters. Of foreign waters, those of Carlsbad are especially valuable, and in Europe these springs may be resorted to. Their use may also be associated between meals with that of the alkaline mineral waters, of which those of Vichy and Vals are the type. These waters are largely employed in this country, and may be availed of at home. There is no indication for the use of calomel, which is so often prescribed, as it is not reasonable to believe the secretion of the bile can be so stimulated by it as to force onward any obstruction, whether by calculus or swollen mucous membrane, until the latter is depleted. After the flow into the intestine is resumed, calomel may be given to stimulate it further. Podophyllin and colocynth may be used for the same purpose. Sodium salicylate has also a reputation to this end. Irrigation of the large bowel with cold water has been recommended as a means of stimulating the descent of the stone.

The second indication should be met by the use of such food as does not require the bile to facilitate its digestion or absorption or to prevent its decomposition. Fats and oils should, therefore, be avoided; hence skimmed milk, animal broths, and egg-albumen, with an abundance of liquids, are indicated. The liquids may be some one or more of the mineral waters previously named, or, in their absence, plain water. Warm bathing is especially indicated, as it causes elimination by the skin and relieves the itching. Lotions of carbolic acids and glycerin are also useful for the same purpose.

## CHOLELITHIASIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Hepatic calculus, Biliary calculus.*

**Etiology.**—Since the great bulk of the gall-stone is cholesterin, an evident condition of its formation is a precipitation of this chief constituent of the bile. The thicker the bile, the more likely it is to throw down sediment. Moreover, recent studies, especially by Naunyn, have shown that micro-organisms play an important part in the production of gall-stones, primarily by exciting a catarrhal inflammation which modifies the chemical composition of the bile and favors the precipitation of cholesterin and of lime salts, in combination with epithelial debris and bacteria. The typhoid fever bacillus is an especially frequent cause of inflammation of the gall-bladder. Naunyn also showed that cholesterin and lime salts are a secretion of the mucous membrane of the gall-bladder and bile-ducts that this is especially active when the mucosa is in a state of inflammation. If, as is supposed, the cholates of sodium hold cholesterin in solution, it is plain that their decomposition or destruction may cause precipitation, which may also be further favored by micro-organisms.

**Occurrence.**—Gall-stones have been met in infants and in the new-born, but practically are found in adults only, while their tendency to form appear to increase from the age of 30 upward. Most patients who consult us for

the effects of gall-stones are over 40 and under 50. Cholelithiasis is also very much more frequent in women than in men; according to Naumyn, four times as frequent, and especially so in women who have borne children or have had abdominal tumors. He says that 90 per cent. of women who have gall-stones have borne children; also that 25 per cent. of all women who die have calculi in the gall-bladder.

Lack of exercise, sedentary habits, and tight lacing are held partly responsible for this, and with some reason, since all of these conditions are calculated to impede the movement of bile. Cholelithiasis has been found associated with the habit of free eating of starchy and saccharine foods and in stout persons; yet I recall striking cases among the lean also. The movable liver and the movable right kidney are likewise said to pre-

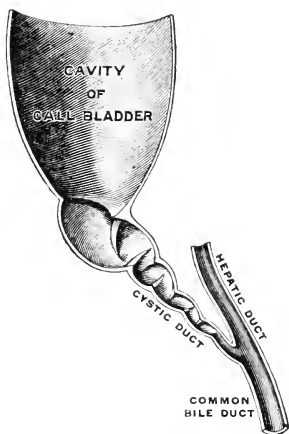


FIG. 36.—The Cystic Duct in Section, with Part of the Gall-bladder and Hepatic and Common Bile-duct.—(*Testut*).

dispose to cholelithiasis. Constipation and a tendency to depression of spirits are apt to be associated, probably as effects rather than causes.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The gall-stone itself is a brown object, nearly spherical, oval or faceted, and even polygonal in shape, usually the size of a pea, or as small as a millet-seed, producing in aggregation "gall sand." The faceted shape is produced by close packing of a large number of stones in a gall-bladder, as frequently happens. More rarely the stone is irregular—mulberry-shaped. In addition to cholesterin, which makes up from 70 to 80 per cent. of most stones, they contain varying small amounts of bile pigment, calcic carbonate, and organic matter. A few are made up almost entirely of bilirubin and lime. On section, the stone exhibits either a concentric or homogeneous appearance, with or without a nucleus of bile pigment or organic matter, and very rarely of some foreign body. The cholesterin stones are almost completely soluble in etherized alcohol, whence beautiful crystals of cholesterin may be obtained after evaporation.

In addition to their enormous accumulation in the gall-bladder, where they may be counted sometimes by hundreds, they are found anywhere in the biliary tract between the duodenal end of the common duct and the ultimate ramification of the bile vessels. Outside of the gall-bladder the cystic duct and the common duct are naturally the situations in which lodgment most frequently occurs. If in the common duct, it is usually at the orifice of the papilla in the diverticulum of Vater, and from the duodenal side the stone feels as though it were directly under the mucous membrane. Two or even more stones may be found in the duct. The common duct under these circumstances may attain a diameter of an inch (2.5 cm.) or more. Permanent obstruction of the cystic duct causes dilatation of the gall-bladder—*hydrops vesicæ felleæ*. Such dilatation may be enormous, filling the entire abdominal cavity, and has been mistaken for ovarian tumor; usually it is more moderate, but the contents frequently amount to a pint (500 c.c.) or more. The contents are a colorless, viscid, or watery fluid, more or less albuminous, and neutral or alkaline in reaction; the greater the dilatation, the more aqueous and unlike bile do its contents become. In any situation the stone may produce ulceration and even suppuration, with perforation into the peritoneal cavity or adjacent organs, the duodenum, stomach, transverse colon, right renal pelvis, ureter, through the diaphragm into a bronchus, and into the abdominal wall.

The various situations in which gall-stones are lodged may be easily learned from the accompanying Figure 36.

#### ACUTE IMPACTION.

##### SYNONYM.—*Biliary Colic*.

**Symptoms.**—The characteristic symptom of impacted gall-stones is *biliary colic*, but biliary colic is by no means always present in every case of cholelithiasis. The gall-bladder is often found full of calculi without the suggestion of a symptom. Small stones even pass into the duodenum without producing symptoms. Commonly, however, they lodge while in this transit, and give rise to attacks of *pain* which are known as biliary colic. This pain is usually sudden, very severe, often excruciating, and the patient writhes in agony and sometimes faints in consequence. It is usually referred to the epigastrium, whence it radiates in all directions over the abdomen and at times into the right shoulder and arm. As a rule, however, it is localized on the right side, under the liver. It is a sharp and cutting pain. There is always *tenderness* in this region, which varies in degree. It is sometimes associated with a more or less rigid state of the abdominal muscles of that side. The duration of the pain is that of the lodgment of the stone, and it may be from a few hours to weeks, ceasing rather suddenly when the stone is discharged into the bowel. There may, however, be remissions. *Nausea* and *vomiting* are almost invariable symptoms of biliary colic. They often bring temporary relief through the resulting relaxation. *Fever* is soon added to the pain, while a *chill* is not infrequent. The temperature is usually 102° F. to 103° F. (38.8° C. to 39.5° C.). It may be intermittent, but such intermis-

sion is more apt to be associated with prolonged obstruction, constituting with a chill a part of the symptoms of so-called *hepatic fever*, to be next considered. Gall-stone crepitus may sometimes be detected when the gall-bladder is packed with calculi.

If the attack last long enough, *jaundice* almost always supervenes, whence we infer, too, that the stone is likely to be in the common duct, having probably started in the cystic duct. Three or four days may elapse between the beginning of obstruction and the supervention of jaundice, the degree of which increases with the completeness and duration of obstruction. The entrance of the stone into the common duct may be attended by one of the remissions alluded to, though the jaundice grows even deeper on account of the more thorough obstruction to the descent of the bile.

David Riesman has called attention to a cardiac systolic murmur sometimes developed in the course of an attack of biliary colic. He ascribes it to a dilatation of the heart and relative insufficiency of the mitral valve, caused by pain, anemia or cachexia.

The liver is sometimes slightly enlarged, as determined by percussion. A rare symptom is *collapse* with fatal syncope, due to perforation at the seat of lodgment, with consequent *peritonitis* and *shock*.

**Diagnosis.**—This is commonly easy. While the pain may be more or less diffuse, it is for the most part localized in the right lower thoracic and upper abdominal regions, and the tenderness is always there, while, if jaundice and biliary urine are present, all doubt is removed. *Nephritic colic* and biliary colic are confounded with surprising and unjustified frequency. In the former condition the pain starts in the lumbar region and radiates downward into the groin, the testicle, and the inside of the thigh. Such error is fortified by the fact that bilious urine is too often confounded with bloody urine. It should be necessary only to mention this to guard against error.

Cholelithiasis has been mistaken for acute pleurisy in the vicinity of the gall-bladder and the reverse mistake has been made. The friction râle of pleurisy should preclude an error, but the friction râle may not be present at the particular stage.

Our growing knowledge of *appendicitis* has led to the discovery that the pain characteristic of this disease is sometimes localized in the right hypochondrium, where, indeed, the appendix has been found at operation. Jaundice and bile-stained urine do not, however, attend appendicitis. *Gastralgia* has been confounded with biliary colic, but attention to the symptoms described when treating that affection should prevent mistake. The term hepatic neuralgia has been applied to an apparently causeless pain, sometimes felt in the neighborhood of the liver, but it is less severe than biliary colic and unaccompanied by any of the other symptoms. This is allied to *pseudo-biliary colic* which is to be remembered as a possible event in nervous women. Both are characterized by the absence of jaundice.

It is very important, immediately after an attack of supposed biliary colic, to *search for a stone* in the fecal discharges. For this purpose the mass should be placed on a sieve, and water passed over it until all soluble parts are run out. Such examination should be kept up for several days after the attack, for the stone is not always passed immediately.

**Prognosis.**—The termination of an ordinary attack of biliary colic is, in

the vast majority of instances, favorable. It is only in the rare cases, where perforation takes place, that a fatal ending follows. Surgery of the gall-bladder has come to be an important division of surgery, and many lives have been saved by operations before and after perforation. The surgeon should, therefore, be promptly sent for. More frequently the escape of the stone is long delayed, producing the symptoms of chronic impaction, to be next described.

#### CHRONIC IMPACTED GALL-STONE.

**Symptoms.**—These vary somewhat with the seat of the impaction and its duration. From this standpoint they may be divided into certain groups:

##### 1. *Symptoms Due to Chronic Calculous Obstruction of the Cystic Duct.*—

In addition to more or less of the symptoms detailed under acute impaction, the immediate result of such obstruction is dilatation of the gall-bladder, or *hydrops vesicæ felleæ*, already referred to. Contrary to what might be expected, dilatation is more frequently caused by obstruction of the cystic, than of the common duct. The source of the accumulation is not, however, the bile, which, as might be expected, cannot get into the gall-bladder through the obstructed duct any more than it can get out of it. It is the products of inflammation of the mucosa, added to the bile previously present, which cause the dilatation. The occasional enormous dilatation has more than once been mistaken for ovarian disease, an error the more excusable when we remember that *jaundice is often absent*. More frequently the dilatation is moderate, and can be felt below the edge of the liver as a round or ovoid elastic tumor, in which fluctuation may sometimes be obtained.

##### 2. *Symptoms Due to Chronic Calculous Obstruction of the Common Duct.*—If the common duct is obstructed, dilatation of the gall-bladder is generally absent, and if it does occur, the dilatation is moderate; whereas in obstruction of this duct by new growth the gall-bladder forms a palpable tumor, although not invariably. This is Courvoisier's law. Such obstruction is commonly associated with cholangitis, catarrhal or suppurative.

(a) *In simple chronic catarrhal cholangitis* the common duct is dilated; at times also the branches of the hepatic duct extending into the liver. This condition has been especially studied by Charcot and Murchison abroad and William Osler in this country. It may be intermittent or remittent. Very interesting among the causes of intermittent obstruction is the movable or ball-valve stone in the diverticulum of Vater.

Chronic catarrhal cholangitis, in addition to the persistent jaundice and paroxysmal pain, is characterized by *ague-like attacks*, consisting of chills, fever, and sweats. These occur at surprisingly regular intervals, resembling in this respect the quotidian, tertian, and quartan spells of intermittent fever, with which the condition has been confounded. They may occur for weeks at a time and then remit. Pain is commonly associated with the ague-like spells, but is not always present. The chills may be extremely severe, the sweats also, and the fever correspondingly high, the temperature sometimes reaching 105° F. (40.5° C.). The *jaundice* usually

deepens after an attack. There may be *nausea* and *vomiting*. The duration may be indefinite from a few months to years, and the patient may yet recover; or he may perish, although the exhaustion is extremely slow and the effect on the general health barely appreciable from week to week. The fever is probably irritative, although it has been ascribed to the omnipresent organism—*bacterium coli commune*. There is sometimes slight enlargement of the liver, appreciable to physical examination, and in long-protracted cases some fibroid induration may be expected to take place. The stools are sometimes bile-stained, at others not. There is occasionally enlargement of the spleen.

The following are Naunyn's distinguishing signs of stone in the *common duct*: "(1) The continuous or occasional presence of bile in the feces; (2) distinct variations in the intensity of the jaundice; (3) normal size or only slight enlargement of the liver; (4) absence of distention of the gall-bladder; (5) enlargement of the spleen; (6) absence of ascites; (7) presence of febrile disturbance, and (8) duration of the jaundice for more than a year."

Osler<sup>1</sup> has formulated the following symptom-group for the ball-valve stone commonly found in the diverticulum of Vater, but occasionally also in the common duct itself: "(a) Ague-like paroxysms, chills, fever, and sweating—the *hepatic intermittent fever* of Charcot; (b) jaundice of varying intensity, which persists for months or even years, and deepens after each paroxysm; (c) at the time of the paroxysm, pains in the region of the liver, with gastric disturbance. These symptoms may continue intermittently for three or four years without the development of suppurative cholangitis. An important diagnostic sign of obstruction of the common duct by stone is the absence of dilatation of the gall-bladder—Courvoisier's rule. It would appear somewhat unaccountable that obstruction by other causes is more frequently followed by dilatation of the gall-bladder than obstruction by calculus. Thus, Ecklin found that of 172 cases of obstruction of the common duct by calculus, the gall-bladder was contracted in 110, normal in 34, and dilated in 28. Of 139 cases of occlusion of the common duct from other causes the gall-bladder was contracted in 9, normal in 9, and dilated in 121.

(b) *Suppurative cholangitis* is marked symptomatically by a fever which is more of the septic type, with remissions rather than intermissions. The jaundice is less marked, the liver is tender and enlarged, the duration of the disease shorter, and termination fatal. The inflammation involves more or less the ducts of the liver, whence it may extend into the liver substance or gall-bladder, causing abscess of the liver and empyema of the gall-bladder.

*Other Remote Results of Gall-stone Impaction.*—Rarer terminations of impacted gall-stones are the various forms and situations of biliary fistulæ, mentioned when treating of the morbid anatomy. Some more detailed reference to these fistulæ should be made. Much has been added to our knowledge of the subject by the industry of Prof. L. G. Courvoisier, of Basle.<sup>2</sup> Courvoisier collected 499 cases of ulcerative perforation of the biliary passages of which 70 occurred directly into the peritoneum, while in 49 cases there was encapsulated abscess, and in three there was retro-peri-

<sup>1</sup> See paper by Osler on "Fever of Hepatic Origin, Particularly Intermittent Pyrexias Associated with Gall-stone." "Johns Hopkins Hospital Reports," vol. ii., No. 1, 1890.

<sup>2</sup> Casuistisch-Statistische Beiträge zur Pathologie und Chirurgie der Gallenwege, Leipzig, 1890.



toneal perforation. Between the biliary passages themselves were eight cases: this perforation was found directly from the gall-bladder into the substance of the liver (four cases); into the hepatic duct (two cases), into a diverticulum of the common duct (one case), or between the intestinal and hepatic parts of the common duct (one case). Perforation between the biliary passages and portal vein was found in five cases, if the celebrated case of Ignatius Loyola, about which Courvoisier expresses some doubt, be included. Openings between the biliary passages and gastro-intestinal canal are not uncommon (137 cases); most frequently between the bile passages and duodenum, of which there were 83 cases, of which 73 were between the gall-bladder and the duodenum, while ten were between the common duct and duodenum. From the biliary passages into the stomach there were 13 perforations; into the jejunum one, ileum one, colon 39. As might be expected, perforation takes place most frequently from the intestinal part of the duct, the stone first lodging in the diverticulum of Vater. Perforation into the urinary passages was found in seven cases and into the pleura and lungs in 24 cases. To these last J. E. Graham<sup>1</sup> added ten cases of broncho-biliary fistula. Finally, there may be fistulous communication between the biliary passages and the external integument, Courvoisier having collected 196 cases, in 49 of which the communication was in the right hypochondrium, 36 at the border of the ribs, 49 at the navel or in its vicinity, 17 in the right meso-gastrium, ten in the right iliac region, and six in the epigastrium. Very interesting in this connection is the fact that out of 169 cases in which the sex was noted, 126 were women and 43 men. Among other remote results are septic cholecystitis, associated with high fever, intense prostration, and death from fatal peritonitis; empyema of the gall-bladder, already alluded to as a result of suppurative cholangitis; the latter is commonly associated with gall-stones. Calcification of the gall-bladder is a frequent termination of purulent inflammation. It is present in two forms: first, as a simple incrustation of the mucosa with lime salts, and, second, as a true infiltration of the whole thickness of the wall.

Atrophy of the gall-bladder is not infrequent and may succeed on *hydrops vesicæ felleæ*. I have seen many gall-bladders which did not hold more than a dram (4 c.c.) or two of bile, and sometimes there is a mere remnant left in the shape of a fibroid mass; at other times the shrunken bladder closely embraces a gall-stone of large size. Gall-stones are occasionally found in diverticula of the gall-bladder. Suppurative phlebitis and abscess of the liver may also be due to gall-stone, causing a puriform thrombus in an adjacent branch of the portal vein.

In other instances the gall-stone is of such size as to obstruct the bowel when discharged into it, although it may have passed through the natural channel, as evidenced by dilatation of the common duct. But for the most part such discharge is by ulceration into the intestinal tract. This subject has been sufficiently considered when treating of obstruction of the bowels.

**Diagnosis and Prognosis.**—There may be some difficulty at first in the diagnosis of hepatic fever, but the persistent jaundice, the ague-like paroxysms of chills, fever, sweats, and pain are a combination of symptoms be-

<sup>1</sup> Transactions of the Association of American Physicians, vol. xii., 1897.

longing to no other condition. A *cancer of the gall-bladder*, which will form a tumor in the same locality, is much more tender; it is harder and more uneven, and jaundice is invariably associated with it, while the patient is much more seriously ill and declines more rapidly. There should be no confusion with a *movable kidney*, which furnishes a different physical condition. An aspirator needle may be used to confirm the diagnosis. The suppurative form is characterized by the more continuous fever and the more serious aspect of the septic state, its shorter course, and its ultimate fatal termination. The catarrhal form is less serious and quite often terminates favorably.

**Treatment of Impacted Gall-stone and its Complications.**—The first indication is the relief of pain. This is best accomplished by the hypodermic injection of morphin, the action of which is favored by combination with atropin. Scarcely less than  $1/4$  grain (0.0165 gm.) with  $1/150$  grain (0.0005 gm.) of atropin suffices, and this must often be repeated. The use of anodynes must be kept up as long as needed. The atropin favors the relaxation needed to release the calculus. The severest cases may require the inhalation of a few drops of chloroform pending the action of the morphin.

Whether anything else can be done toward releasing the stone is not established. The nausea and vomiting, which are so often symptoms, sometimes relieve the pain by the relaxation they produce, such relaxation being at times sufficient to favor the onward movement of the stone. Anesthesia by ether or chloroform may act similarly, and the inhalation above suggested while waiting for the morphin to act favors such relaxation. Hot baths or fomentations applied to the region of the liver may also be similarly effective.

Some solvent for the stone is constantly inquired after. Ether and turpentine are recommended. Durande's remedy consists of turpentine 1 part, ether 4 parts; dose, 15 drops three times a day. It is useless. Sweet oil has a disputed reputation. It is said to favor the expulsion of the stone and has some warm advocates. Others regard the small masses resembling gall-stones discharged during its use to aggregation of fecal matter.

The free use of alkaline mineral waters does seem to favor the dislodgment of the stone, especially if the authorities at Carlsbad are to be relied on, who claim the discharge of immense numbers of biliary calculi under the use of Carlsbad water. Certainly no harm can attend its use, and when within the power of the patient to get it, it may be freely taken. The same is claimed by the physicians at Vichy for the Vichy waters—true alkaline waters. In this country, however, the Saratoga waters may be used instead. These waters are saline and not alkaline waters, but they seem to fulfill much the same indications. Those containing the largest proportion of alkaline carbonate are to be preferred. The waters of Vals—also true alkaline waters—are recommended for the same purpose.

To relieve the itching caused by the deposit of pigment in the skin, which is sometimes very annoying in chronic cases, the hot pack on alternate days or even every day is serviceable. A very efficient local application for this purpose is a mixture of  $7\ 1/2$  minims (0.5 gm.) of carbolic acid, 2

fluidrams (8 c.c.) of glycerin, and 6 fluidrams (24 c.c.) of water. It should be applied with a sponge and allowed to dry on the skin.

Surgical procedures have of late been availed of even with a view to exploration, and if done by competent surgeons with due antiseptic precautions, cannot be regarded as more dangerous than most abdominal sections. The curative measure first suggested by Marion Sims consists in removing the impacted stone and emptying the gall-bladder of others. At the present day the gall-bladder itself is often successfully removed. Under operative procedure is included aspiration of the dilated gall-bladder, which is justified in the event of a positive diagnosis, though it has been followed by a fatal result. A carefully conducted exploratory *section* is little more dangerous, but, on the other hand, should not be done until the case has assumed some chronicity. Nothing is gained at the present day by exploratory *puncture*, but it is interesting to know that it was done by the elder William Pepper in 1857, and by Roberts Bartholow in 1878.

The *preventive treatment* is important, and although an attack of biliary colic very commonly does not take place until a number of stones have accumulated in the gall-bladder, so that the descent of one is apt to be followed by that of another, prophylaxis should still be availed of. To this end diet is important. The patient should eat sparingly of hydrocarbons and carbohydrates, omitting every form of fat, alcohol, sugar, and starch. Meat, cheese, and gluters, on the other hand, are allowable.

The alkaline and saline mineral waters are more especially indicated between the attacks than during them, and their more or less continued use is advisable, especially in the morning, when their efficiency is also increased by their being taken hot. The sodium salts have considerable reputation for their efficiency in preventing the concentration of bile and formation of gall-stones, having been long ago recommended by Prout. The phosphate is the modern favorite, in dram doses in the morning, or more frequently, but the sulphate is more constant and more potent in its results, and little, if any, more unpleasant. The sodium salicylate has a similar reputation, and may be used when no effect on the bowels is desired. By either of the former or by the aperient mineral waters a daily action of the bowels should be secured, while a proper hygiene of the body, in which daily exercise, bathing, and friction play a conspicuous part, is to be constantly maintained.

I have been in the habit of placing my patients, between attacks, on the succinate of sodium, in doses of 5 grains (0.32 gm.) three times a day, and it has so happened that I have seldom met a recurrence in one of these cases, although many of them passed out of my observation and may have had attacks without my knowledge.

## ACUTE INFECTIOUS CHOLECYSTITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Acute inflammation of the gall-bladder.*

**Definition.**—Inflammation of the gall-bladder due to infection by pathogenic bacteria.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent predisposing condition which leads to infection of the gall-bladder is probably biliary calculus, the stone being

lodged either in the gall-bladder or some one of the biliary ducts, the vulnerability of the mucous membrane of the gall-bladder being thus increased. But any obstructive cause, such as inflammatory adhesion, or even inflammatory swelling of the mucous membrane of the cystic duct, may be such cause—facilitating bacterial infection. Adhesive inflammation between the gall-bladder and intestines, however induced, is a rare cause, the process extending inward through the peritoneum. Lithiasis is not, however, necessary to produce infection. Pathogenic bacilli may act independently of predisposing cause. Indeed, gall-stones themselves are a result of bacterial invasion. The infecting bacterium may be any one of the pathogenic bacteria infesting the small intestine, but recent observations have shown the bacillus of typhoid fever and the colon bacillus to be probably the most frequent, although the pneumococcus, staphylococcus, and streptococcus have also been found to be the infecting agents.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This varies with the virulence of the inflammation. In the severer cases there is distention of the gall-bladder with mucus, muco-pus, or pus; at times the contents may be hemorrhagic. Perforation and gangrene have been the first indications of the presence of the disease. There may be adhesions between the gall-bladder and colon or omentum.

**Symptoms.**—The most invariable symptom is *pain*, which is commonly sudden and sometimes paroxysmal. It is situated to the right of the median line at the border of the thorax; is attended by *fever*, sometimes preceded by *chills* and followed by sweats. So many abdominal conditions, however, cause pain that it alone is not distinctive. A *chill* is often the first symptom. *Tenderness*, less circumscribed than might be expected, is invariably present. *Jaundice* is not a frequent symptom, never unless the infection involves the hepatic duct or common duct. *Vomiting*, on the other hand, is very common and often severe. It, too, may be paroxysmal. Certain cases are fulminating, and it may be impossible to get the surgeon soon enough to avert perforation and a fatal termination. On the other hand, many mild cases occur, like one seen with Thomas Potter, of Germantown, succeeding a relapse of typhoid fever after a normal temperature had been maintained for several days. After recovery from this relapse, there occurred suddenly a chill, sharp pain in the region of the gall-bladder, and rise of temperature. These symptoms subsided in four or five days, to be followed by another attack in which, instead of a chill, there was simply chilliness with pain and fever less marked; again, after a couple of days, a return of pain with sudden rise of temperature but no chill, again disappearing in a few days. *The distended gall-bladder may sometimes be felt.* The pulse is sometimes very slow, as in a case reported by Frederick A. Packard, where the rate fell to 48, and another seen with Markley, of Camden, N. J., in which it fell to 40. It is seldom over 100. In Packard's case there was no fever, in that of Markley the temperature rose to 103° F. (39.4° C.).

Symptoms may arise from *adhesions* with adjacent organs, chiefly pain, but sometimes also a dragging sensation. These are commonly part of a chronic condition. *Constipation* is also a symptom to be expected. In fact, some cases have been treated for obstruction of the bowel, for appendicitis, and more rarely for pancreatitis.

**Diagnosis.**—Since attention has been directed to the subject, the diagnosis in many cases has become easy. In others it still remains difficult or impossible. Given a case of typhoid fever in which, especially during convalescence, a chill, fever, and sweat make their appearance and there is pain in the region of the gall-bladder, we may infer reasonably the presence of cholecystitis. The same inference may be made if these symptoms occur in a case of chronic cholelithiasis. The presence of an actual tumor at the seat of the gall-bladder is even more confirmatory, but in my experience it is not often easy to recognize a distended gall-bladder through the abdominal wall unless it be of considerable size. Circumscribed tenderness is more frequent. The severity of the attack cannot always be inferred from the early symptoms, but as there are a good many mild cases, a diagnosis of cholecystitis need not necessarily cause alarm. It should be remembered that jaundice is not a frequent symptom, indeed, it is a rare symptom.

As to differential diagnosis, the conditions with which it has been confounded are *appendicitis*, especially when the appendix happens to be under the liver, as it not very rarely is, *pancreatitis*, *localized peritonitis*, *pyonephrosis* and *inflammatory thickening* about the pyloric orifice of the stomach and the duodenum. In the absence of the predisposing conditions referred to, these lesions are sometimes difficult to differentiate. Disease of the head of the pancreas is much more frequently associated with jaundice than is cholecystitis. If a tumor is present in pancreatitis, it is fixed and immovable. It is not usually movable in cholecystitis. An exploratory operation should not be long delayed as perforation of the gall-bladder may precipitate a fatal issue. In cases like three narrated by Maurice H. Richardson,<sup>7</sup> in none of which was there history suggesting gall-stones and where the symptoms, including pain, vomiting, fever, and tenderness over the appendix, were so suggestive that an incision was made in that quarter, a diagnosis of cholecystitis is impossible. It is difficult to see how anything but appendicitis could be expected in such cases.

**Prognosis.**—This depends, of course, upon the severity of the case and the promptness of operative interference. There appear to be a good many mild cases which seemingly do not go beyond catarrhal inflammation.

**Treatment.**—There is really no medical treatment except the symptomatic, and the patient recovers through inherent tendencies, or his life is saved by operation and drainage. In gangrenous cases even operation fails to save some, but all cases demanding operation have the chances of recovery increased by promptness. Richardson says that acute cholecystitis demands interference even more strongly than appendicitis. Counterirritation by mustard or hot fomentations may be applied to the region of the gall-bladder to relieve pain. Nausea and vomiting are among the most difficult symptoms to relieve. It is a reflected nausea like that of appendicitis. Local applications of ice, or at times the opposite treatment by heat, pieces of ice swallowed, champagne, cold effervescing waters may all be tried. The blister applied to relieve pain may also check the nausea and vomiting. Calomel in hourly doses of 1/10 gr. (.0066 gm.) to 1/5 gr. (.0132 gm.), applied dry on the tongue, should be given in connection with other remedies.

<sup>7</sup> "Acute Inflammation of the Gall-bladder," "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," June, 1898.

## CANCER OF THE GALL-BLADDER.

**Etiology and Morbid Anatomy.**—Though rare, this affection has excited much interest and has been thoroughly studied, with widely different results in some points. Thus, John H. Musser, in a study of 100 cases, found it three times as frequent in women as in men, while Courvoisier, in a study of an equal number, found it five times as frequent among men.

It is usually primary, when it commonly begins in the fundus. At other times it occurs by contiguous invasion, either from the liver or adjacent abdominal organs. Cancer may also extend from the gall-bladder to adjacent parts. The primary form is associated in at least 87 per cent. of all cases with biliary calculi, and there has been much discussion as to which is primary, the gall-stone or the cancer. Zenker and others regard the cancer as secondary, starting in the ulcerative and cicatricial tissue caused by the stones, as is thought to be the case in some instances of cancer of the stomach. This, too, may account for the greater frequency of the disease in women, if such is the case, since women are much more commonly the subjects of gall-stone. Formerly I was inclined to believe that the gall-stones are only a possible exciting cause of the cancer. From recent experience, however, I am convinced that gall-stones are often the exciting cause, though I will not deny that they may be secondary also.

A more or less hard, solid, irregular, and fixed mass is the form assumed by the cancer.

**Symptoms.**—*Jaundice* is absent so long as the disease is limited to the gall-bladder, but as soon as the biliary duct or the common duct is involved it ensues, so that jaundice is present in 69 per cent., gradually increasing in intensity. There is great *tenderness*, with *pain*; *vomiting*, sometimes of blood, *bloody stools*, and *dropsy*, at times succeeded by the *cancerous cachexia*. But none of these is distinctive, being found in cancer of the pylorus, duodenum, and transverse colon. The presence of a hard, uneven, and tender tumor in the neighborhood of the gall-bladder, and which moves with the liver in respiration, confirms the suspicion. This has, in fact, been found in about 69 per cent. If the disease is seated in the cystic duct, the enlargement of the gall-bladder is comparable to that due to obstruction in that duct from other causes, and may be marked.

**Diagnosis.**—This is sometimes difficult. Pain and tenderness are more marked than in most other affections of the liver, except cholecystitis. Fever and rigors are exceptional and point rather to infectious disease of the gall-bladder or ducts.

**Treatment.**—The treatment can only be palliative.

## CARCINOMA OF THE BILIARY PASSAGES.

Cancer of the bile-ducts may be primary or secondary. In either event the first symptom is usually *jaundice*, which grows deeper and deeper until the skin may assume an almost bronze-like hue. A *cachexia* rapidly develops. There are pain and tenderness and moderate enlargement of the gall-bladder. Enlargement of the gall-bladder is characteristic of cancer

of the common bile-duct as contrasted with obstruction of the common duct by gall-stones, according to Courvoisier's law. Moreover the jaundice keeps progressively increasing and never grows better, while in calculous obstruction it is not very deep or progressive. The disease often escapes recognition until an autopsy reveals it. Cancer may invade the bile-ducts from the gall-bladder and possibly from primary or secondary cancers in the parenchyma of the organ.

The relation of the morbid growth to gall-stones in its vicinity is governed by the same laws as that between gall-stones and cancer of the gall-bladder. The discussion need not, therefore, to be repeated here.

#### STENOSIS OF THE BILIARY DUCTS.

*Stenosis*, or more or less incomplete occlusion of the common duct, may be due to inflammatory adhesion or to compression from without. Sometimes it follows the ulceration attending the passage of a gall-stone. External pressure may be produced by morbid growths and other causes alluded to on p. 466. Notably, cancer of the pancreas is one.

*Cicatricial contraction* the result of perihepatitis, syphilitic disease, perforating duodenal ulcer, and cholelithiasis should also be mentioned as a cause of external compression of biliary passages, to be recognized, if at all, by aid of the associated symptoms of the disease causing it. In the first there may be a peritoneal friction in the neighborhood of the liver, audible and palpable.

#### PARASITES.

*Parasites* may enter the larger biliary passages and produce obstruction. Such are echinococci which may enter the ducts primarily in the larval state and develop there the *hydatid* cyst with resulting obstruction; or, as is more frequent, the sac perforates or compresses a duct in the course of its growth. The other symptoms of echinococcus disease are added to those of obstruction thus produced, or the cysts may appear in the stools, vomited matter, or expectoration. Cases are reported in which the *distoma hepaticum* has been found lodged in the hepatic duct, and *round worms* in the common and hepatic ducts. A remarkable specimen, containing a number of lumbricoids lodged in these ducts, is in the Wistar and Horner Museum of the University of Pennsylvania. The symptoms of these last conditions would be undistinguishable from hepatic obstruction from other causes.

#### DISEASES OF THE BLOOD-VESSELS OF THE LIVER.

##### HYPEREMIA.

##### *Passive Hyperemia—Red Atrophy.*

The hyperemia of the liver which is of chief clinical importance is passive hyperemia.

**Etiology.**—It is always due to obstruction to the movement of the blood toward or through the heart. Valvular heart disease is the most

frequent cause, though diseases of the lungs, such as emphysema or cirrhosis, intrathoracic growths, diseases of the pleura, compression of the vena cava, or other cause resisting the movement of the blood through the organ are all competent to produce passive hyperemia of the liver.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The appearances of the organ after death are determined by the duration of the congestion. If it has been of short duration, the liver rapidly assumes its natural size and appearance after death. Even in long-continued passive congestion the liver after death becomes very much smaller than during life, by reason of the emptying of the blood-vessels which rapidly succeeds death. In other respects, however, after prolonged hyperemia it presents decided changes. It is dark in color, and the vessels still contain an excess of blood, but the *intralobular vein*—i. e., the central vein of each lobule—and its adjacent capillaries contain most blood, contrasting strongly with the peripheral or *interlobular vessel* and its adjacent capillaries. There is thus produced in one way that alternation of dark and light tint which constitutes the *nutmeg liver* and which is particularly conspicuous on section. It becomes even more marked at a later stage, when the organ, in its ultimate atrophy, becomes reduced in size, constituting the so-called *red* or *cyanotic atrophy* of the liver—the atrophied nutmeg liver—the histology of which exhibits a destruction of the cells and capillaries in the center of each lobule and a deposit of dark pigment in their places. In the liver thus atrophied the blood-vessels also share in the destruction, and short cuts are established between the branches of the portal vein and hepatic vein, while the latter may also become dilated. The exterior of the liver is smooth, and the organ differs in this respect from the cirrhotic liver, though there is sometimes a slight overgrowth of the interlobular connective tissue.

**Symptoms.**—The liver at first is *enlarged* and *tender*—sometimes very much enlarged and exquisitely tender. The lower border, as determined by percussion, may be as low as the umbilicus and even lower. It may be the seat of expansile *pulsation*, due to regurgitation of blood into it from the right heart. This pulsation is to be distinguished from a motion communicated to the liver by the action of the heart. In the true pulsation the whole liver seems to dilate, and does dilate as the blood flows back into it, as contrasted with the downward movement communicated by the heart. Very characteristic of this enlargement is the changing size of the organ *pari passu* with the degree of congestion, whether spontaneous or the result of treatment.

*Ascites* is also a symptom. It does not occur, however, until a marked degree of passive hyperemia or *secondary* contraction is attained. The ascites is partly the result of the general stagnation always present, and partly of the congestion of the portal system due to the backing of the blood of the hepatic vein into it. *Jaundice* is another rather rare symptom. It is due to the compression exerted on the fine interlobular gall-ducts by the overdistended interlobular capillaries, thus producing an obstructive jaundice.

*Scanty urine* of *high specific gravity* is also a symptom, while *hyperemia with enlargement of the spleen* and *hyperemia* of the *mucous membrane of the stomach* are constant, as a result of the same cause.



**Treatment.**—The treatment of passive hyperemia is the treatment of the condition causing it. Most frequently the cause is heart disease, and when the latter is amenable to digitalis or other heart tonics, the passive hyperemia disappears with the restoration of compensation. Simultaneously the urine is increased, and the general dropsy, ascites, and hydrothorax disappear. Such treatment is aided also by depletion from the portal side by purgatives. Blue mass is the type of these, but colocynth, elaterium, and compound jalap powder, or the simple salts, are also efficient. It sometimes happens that the general dropsy in these cases is dispersed by treatment, but the ascites remains, in which event we must suppose the simple passive congestion to be combined with some degree of atrophy, when the dropsy is more likely to remain. Treatment should now be supplemented by hydragogue cathartics, or, still better by tapping, followed by dry diet and the hydragogues. A dram (4 gm.) or more of compound jalap powder may be given each morning fasting, or elaterium, 1, 6 grain (0.01 gm.) every three hours, until the bowels are moved.

It was suggested by George Harley to deplete the liver under these circumstances, and it has been put into practice by East Indian physicians, it is said, with good results.

#### *Active Hyperemia.*

**Definition.**—This is a much less important condition than passive hyperemia, and, indeed, is rarely recognized. A physiological hyperemia of the liver takes place after each meal, which may be exaggerated and even continuous in those who overeat and overdrink habitually. Such hyperemia may lead to structural change, consisting ultimately in interstitial growth. Like this, also, is the hyperemia which is associated with diabetes mellitus, and which is the associated condition of many glycosurias, whether experimental or the result of disease affecting the diabetic center. Such is a vicarious hyperemia said to take place during suppressed menstruation and after cutting off a hemorrhoidal flux.

Active hyperemia does not, however, present any symptoms referable to it, unless it be that the dull ache and full feeling sometimes felt in the right hypochondrium be caused by such condition.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of fluxion to the liver must consist of measures which tend to diminish this, mainly the substitution of a scanty for an overabundant diet, simple and easily-digested foods, dilute milk, and thin broths, and the avoidance of fats, alcohol, and sugar.

#### THROMBOSIS AND EMBOLISM.

The portal vein is the seat of thrombosis and of inflammation, constituting pylethrombosis and pylephlebitis. The hepatic artery also becomes rarely the seat of aneurysms.

#### *Pylethrombosis.*

Thrombosis takes place in the smaller branches of the *portal vein*, which are constantly being obliterated in the course of cirrhosis of the liver.

Larger branches are sometimes invaded by cancer, or a gall-stone may be admitted into one of them by ulceration, or the lodgment of a parasite may be the focus about which a coagulum may form, while thrombosis may also be favored by the pressure incident to the encroachment of a neighboring tumor. Rarely a thrombus may extend into the portal vein from one of its branches in the intestine or mesentery.

**Symptoms.**—These include those to be detailed when treating of cirrhosis—viz., ascites, hyperemia in the parts behind the obstructed vessel, with this difference, that the symptoms appear more or less suddenly and severely. It is mainly by the suddenness and intensity of the symptoms that we are led to suspect thrombosis, especially if it be associated with any of the previously-named conditions capable of producing it. In such an event the symptoms would come about in the course of a few days, instead of weeks and months. A *caput medusæ* thus rapidly produced would mean that the thrombus had formed, not in the portal vein itself, but more peripherally, causing the para-umbilical veins to be filled from the peripheral branches. These come off the portal vein in the suspensory ligament, and pass out to the neighborhood of the navel by two branches communicating with the epigastric and internal mammary vein.

When pylethrombosis occurs, it sometimes happens that a complete collateral circulation is established, the thrombus undergoing the usual changes, while the portal vein may be ultimately converted into a fibrous cord. Osler reports such a case, in which compensation finally failed, and the usual symptoms, including hematemesis, supervened, and the patient died.

### *Pylephlebitis.*

Mild grades of pylephlebitis probably succeed the thrombosis referred to, but they are of no consequence unless the thrombus is septic. Hemorrhagic infarct does not usually succeed the lodgment of an embolus in a branch of the portal vein, because of the free anastomosis of its branches with those of the hepatic artery, by which the lobular capillaries are supplied. It does, however, sometimes occur. Here again the results are not serious, so long as the embolus is not septic. Much more serious is suppurative phlebitis, the result of septic embolism, or septic thrombosis arising from an inflammatory focus somewhere in the portal area, as in the case of the bowel, dysentery or in the territory of the umbilical vein of the new-born child. Pylephlebitis is one of the causes of abscess of the liver. It is associated with the usual signs of septic infection—viz., *chills*, *remittent fever*, and *sweats*, while the symptoms which point to the liver are *pain* in that neighborhood, *jaundice* in most cases, and the signs of *portal vein obstruction* more or less pronounced. Suppurative peritonitis is also sometimes added. Such phlebitis does not always proceed to the degree of abscess formation before death supervenes. The symptoms of abscess will be considered, when treating of that subject, when, too, attention will be called to the diagnosis between it and suppurative phlebitis, so far as it can be made out.

*Other Changes in the Hepatic Artery and Vein.*

The *artery* is sometimes dilated in cirrhosis of the liver; it may be the seat of endarteritis and sclerosis. Aneurysm of the artery is a rare condition. The symptom is a pulsating tumor, which may be the seat of a murmur. In the cases reported there have been hematemesis, bloody stools, jaundice from compression of the biliary ducts, and pain in the neighborhood of the liver due to compression of adjacent nerves.

The hepatic *vein* is subject to dilatation, alluded to in treating of passive hyperemia; to stenosis, and to thrombosis extending backward from the right auricle.

## FATTY LIVER.

**Definition.**—The term fatty liver is applied to a condition in which the cells of the liver are more or less completely converted into fat. This is accomplished, however, by two distinct processes. In one there is an infiltration of the liver cells with fat drops, which simply push aside the protoplasm and cause its ultimate disappearance by interfering with its nutrition. In the other there is a disintegration or metamorphosis of the protoplasm of the cell into various products, of which one is oil. In the former, fatty infiltration, the cell maintains its integrity, being simply filled with the fat drops; in the latter the cell disintegrates and leaves a residue of which fat is the chief representative. It should be mentioned that some use the term “fatty liver” as synonymous with “fatty metamorphosis.”

## FATTY INFILTRATION.

**Etiology.**—Abnormal fatty infiltration occurs in two ways:

1. In case of overingestion of fat-producing substances, resulting in obesity, of which it is a part, and as the result of which the liver becomes a storehouse for fat. Excessive consumption of alcohol is attended by fatty infiltration, because more carbohydrate is introduced than can be burned up. It is, therefore, stored in the liver cells.

2. In a series of cachectic states, in which oxidation is interfered with and the fat which is ingested is not oxidized, but accumulates in the liver. Such a condition is pulmonary tuberculosis, which is the most common cause of fat-infiltrated liver, except alcoholism.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The liver of fatty infiltration is uniformly large, soft, and smooth. Its appearance varies somewhat at different stages. Since the infiltration begins at the periphery of the lobule, we have, in the first stage, a simple distinctness of the line of demarcation between the adjacent acini. In the second stage this has become more marked, contrasting strongly with the darker color of the center of the lobule, and producing one form of *nutmeg* liver—as contrasted with the liver of red atrophy, already described in treating of passive congestion. In the third stage the entire acinus is infiltrated, and the whole organ assumes a uniform yellow or brownish-yellow appearance, from complete fatty infiltration of the cells. The organ is also anemic. In this last stage it is that we have the macro-

scopic changes complete—the softness, the broadened edges, and increase in size, with, however, a decided reduction in specific gravity, so that the whole organ floats when placed in water.

**Symptoms.**—Outside the physical condition, determined by palpation and percussion, and the causing disease or state, there are no distinctive symptoms. There is no jaundice, and the bile-forming function of the liver seems little interfered with, though the stools are pale. There is no obstruction to the portal circulation, and, therefore, no abdominal dropsy. Percussion recognizes *enlargement of the liver*, which is, however, moderate compared with that of amyloid liver and cancer, extending, as it does, but a short distance below the normal site, where its edge can be felt even through abdominal walls of some thickness. There is no enlargement of the spleen.

**Diagnosis.**—It becomes necessary to differentiate the enlarged fatty liver from the amyloid liver, which is harder and larger and associated with enlarged spleen and albuminuria. With the hyperemic enlargement of the first stage of cirrhosis it is not likely to be confounded. Such enlargement would be trifling, accompanied by tenderness, and sooner or later succeeded by contraction, while the fatty liver continues to enlarge. From the enlargement due to the cloudy swelling characteristic of the infectious diseases, typhoid and typhus, it is distinguished by the absence of fever and other symptoms of these diseases.

**Prognosis.**—This depends upon that of the causing disease. The liver of fatty infiltration can be completely restored to its natural condition with the removal of the cause.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is that of the disease causing it.

#### FATTY METAMORPHOSIS.

**Definition.**—This is a much more serious condition, in which the cell protoplasm is directly converted into fat, or rather, perhaps, into a number of products of which fat is one, while the cell undergoes disintegration. It is the effect of some poison, which has its type in phosphorus-poisoning and in the cause, whatever it may be, of acute yellow atrophy of the liver.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The liver, instead of enlarging, undergoes rapid reduction in size, or at least, if there is enlargement, it is of such short duration that it is never recognized. The appearance and condition of the liver, to be described under acute yellow atrophy, are those of the liver which is the seat of rapidly progressing fatty metamorphosis.

**Symptoms.**—They are those of the diseases causing it, and will be described under Acute Yellow Atrophy.

The **prognosis** is fatal and **treatment** is unavailing.

#### THE AMYLOID LIVER.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Lardaceous Liver; Waxy Liver; Albuminoid Liver.*

**Definition.**—In the amyloid liver there is an infiltration, in various degrees, of all the tissues of the organ by the so-called amyloid substance.

The blood-vessel walls are the first affected, and by preference those of the intermediate area of the lobule—*i. e.*, that supplied by the hepatic artery, then the central or hepatic vein zone, and finally the peripheral or portal zone. The infiltration begins in the smaller arteries, then invades the cells and capillaries, and in extreme cases pervades all the liver tissue, including connective tissue.

**Etiology.**—The most usual cause of amyloid liver is prolonged suppuration, especially in connection with tubercular disease of the bones. Hence it is found in children who have had hip disease. For the same reason it is found associated, though less frequently than might be expected, with prolonged tuberculosis of the lungs. Syphilis is one of the recognized causes, whence it may arise as a tertiary manifestation or as the result of bone disease incident to it. Rickets likewise produces some cases, and it is also associated, though rarely, with leukemia, the cancerous cachexia and the infectious diseases.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The liver is much enlarged, reaching sometimes enormous dimensions, scarcely exceeded by the largest cancers. Its appearance is waxy or bacony, especially in thin sections. This appearance is partly due to the anemic state of the blood-vessels, whose lumen is encroached upon by the infiltrated walls. The amyloid parts strike a mahogany-red color with weak solutions of iodine. In addition to the change in size and translucency, the amyloid liver is hard and smooth, its border usually, though not always, rounded, and its fissure exaggerated. In certain syphilitic forms its surface is beset with nodules. Instead of being general, the amyloid change is sometimes circumscribed, when it may be associated with red atrophy. It is occasionally combined with fatty infiltration.

**Symptoms.**—Beyond the *enlargement*, which is usually manifest, the organ extending sometimes as low as the umbilicus, and, in addition to the symptoms of its causing state, there are none peculiar to the amyloid liver. There is no pain, unless it be the result of an associated syphilitic hepatitis, but there may be a *dragging sensation*, induced by the weight of the organ. There is no jaundice, though the stools may be light-hued, because the secretion of bile is diminished. There is no ascites, except in extreme cases, when it is a consequence of the general hydremia, and not of obstruction in the portal circulation. It is usually associated with *amyloid spleen*, which is enlarged, and with the *amyloid kidney*, which secretes albuminous urine.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually easy. The large, smooth, hard organ, the history of the presence of the causing disease, the absence of jaundice and of dropsy, the association of enlarged spleen and albuminuria, admit of scarcely any other interpretation. It is to be remembered, however, that amyloid spleen is not invariably present, and, when present, may be overshadowed and compressed by the large liver. The enlarged liver of leukemia, the result of white-cell infiltration, is not likely to be confounded, because the other symptoms of this affection are so evident. The nodular amyloid liver, due to syphilis, must be remembered as a possibility, and will be referred to again in considering the diagnosis of cancer of the liver.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—They are those of the causing disease. I have never seen an amyloid liver reduced to the normal size, yet the absence of symptoms growing out of moderate degrees of it makes practical recovery not impossible.

## THE CIRRHOSES OF THE LIVER.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Chronic Interstitial Hepatitis; Gin Liver, Granular Liver; Hob-nail Liver.*

**Definition.**—Cirrhosis of the liver is a disease characterized by an overgrowth of connective tissue with more or less destruction of the parenchyma of the organ, commonly attended by a harder consistence, sometimes by a reduction of size, at others by enlargement, and at others by no changes in size. Too much stress has, perhaps, been laid in the past on shrinking of the organ as a necessary feature of the disease.

**Etiology and Pathology.**—Alcoholism is the commonly recognized cause of cirrhosis of the liver, though by no means all alcoholics, even the most confirmed, have cirrhosis. Indeed, a large number of drunkards, watched to their death and examined with special reference to this subject, have been found to have normal livers at the autopsy. Hence, some experienced observers, notably Francis E. Anstie and, later, Henry F. Formad, were disposed to deny that the abuse of alcohol ever produces cirrhosis. Even W. H. Dickinson's observations, which were made with the definite purpose of settling the question, were not so conclusive as might have been expected. Thus, he noted in 149 autopsies upon persons connected with the liquor traffic, 22, or only 14.75 per cent., had cirrhosis; while out of 149 otherwise engaged, 8, or 5 1/2 per cent., were thus effected. On the other hand, the studies of R. Palmer Howard,<sup>1</sup> of Montreal, noted below, seem to reaffirm the long acknowledged dictum. The large fatty liver is probably as frequent a consequence of alcoholism as is cirrhosis.

Long continued malarial intoxication and congenital syphilis are considered causes of cirrhosis. Syphilis produces, however, quite a special form of interstitial hepatitis. In his able study of that very interesting class of cases, cirrhosis in children, Howard found 11 per cent. due to syphilis, chiefly hereditary, while alcohol was still responsible in 15.8 per cent., even in children. Passive congestion due to heart disease or pulmonary obstruction causes some cases, but red atrophy is the more usual form associated with valvular heart disease. This cause I consider more frequent than is commonly supposed. Other causes mentioned are stimulating diet and irritation of the gall-ducts by such agencies as obstructing calculus. Finally, a certain number of cases of cirrhosis are altogether inexplicable.

It has heretofore been thought that most of the causes act through the blood of the portal vein, irritating the connective tissue of Glisson's capsule, which accompanies everywhere the branches of that vessel, causing first a hyperemia, and then a hyperplasia of connective tissue cells. Thus, the first stage of the disease would be one of enlargement, accompanied

<sup>1</sup> R. Palmer Howard, "Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," vol. ii., 1887.

often by tenderness. Subsequently, it was supposed, this embryonic connective tissue undergoes organization and contraction, gradually compressing the cells within its grasp and ultimately destroying immense numbers of them; that the reduction in size so often present goes *pari passu* with a hardening of the organ, which is also a conspicuous feature of advanced degrees of the disease. But while cases are met with representing both ends, so to speak, of the process, the initial stage of enlargement and tenderness, and the terminal one of smallness and hardness, few can attest that they have had the opportunity of tracing the one stage into the other in the same patient, though the celebrated Richard Bright, as far back as 1827, claimed to have traced cirrhosis from the incipient enlargement to the smallness of the later stage. I myself have seen reduction of size succeed on enlargement, but I have never seen the contracted small liver result.

Much more reasonable appears Weigert's conclusion, based on experiment, that the death of the cells is primary and the overgrowth of connective tissue secondary. Acknowledging that the majority of causes which produce the disease, such as alcohol, for example, operate through the portal circulation, it is only reasonable that the cells whose business it is to eliminate the poison should receive the first sting and perish in consequence, and that their place should be supplied by a reactive overgrowth of connective tissue, as Weigert has shown. We may also admit a reactive contracting effect of the new connective tissue on remaining cells, producing thus the death of a greater number.

J. G. Adami's studies "On the Bactericidal Functions of the Liver and the Etiology of Progressive Hepatic Cirrhosis"<sup>1</sup> tend to support this view. In all the cells of the liver in most instances Adami finds a few dead bacteria, but in certain cases of cirrhosis, of which he had examined more than 20 livers, he found large numbers of a living bacillus which he regards as one of the many varieties of colon bacillus.

But poisons do not enter the liver by the portal vein alone. Irritants may enter by the systemic circulation (the hepatic artery), and passively by the hepatic vein and bile-ducts when obstruction occurs in either of these sets of vessels. Cirrhosis of the liver may result from any one of these four anatomical sources, and it may be that each one of these may place a more or less special stamp on the form originating from it, at least at the beginning of the process.

Though occurring in children, cirrhosis of the liver is still a comparatively uncommon disease among them, being rarely met before the age of 35. It is also a disease of men, rather than of women.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—At least two well-defined varieties of interstitial hepatitis are met, known as atrophic and hypertrophic cirrhosis.

(a) *Of Atrophic Cirrhosis, Portal Cirrhosis; Laennec's Cirrhosis.*—In addition to the hardness and reduced size of the liver, which may fall from its normal weight of four or five pounds (1.8 to 2.2 kilograms) to two pounds (0.9 kilogram) or less, the surface of the organ is rough and uneven. In the formation of these inequalities circlets of parenchyma are replaced by connective tissue, within which the parenchyma remains intact and appears raised. Ac-

<sup>1</sup> Read before the British Med. Assoc. at its meeting in Edinburgh, and published in the "British Medical Jour.," October 22, 1898.

cording as the elevations vary in size the liver is described as a *granular* liver, a *hobnailed* liver, or a *lobular* liver. If the cells are fatty, as is sometimes the case, they are yellow; at other times they are natural in hue; at others, paler. It was on the color of these nodules that Laennec based the name of *cirrhosis*, from the Greek *κίρρος*, reddish-yellow, or tawny. In some instances the cirrhotic liver is quite *smooth*, showing a uniform distribution of the connective tissue through the parenchyma of the organ, appreciable only in thin sections examined by the microscope. As the process extends it involves branches of the portal vein itself in its destruction, and even bile-ducts are obliterated. Amyloid and fatty infiltration may be associated with cirrhosis. Indeed, the atrophic liver is very commonly associated with fatty infiltration, which enlarges the liver to a degree which may overbalance the contraction. The new connective tissue, on the other hand, is richly supplied with blood-vessels from the hepatic artery, and Rindfleisch has suggested that the bile is secreted from this blood, rather than that of the portal vein. \*

(b) *Of Hypertrophic Cirrhosis*—*Hanot's Cirrhosis, Elephantiasis of the Liver*.—The French clinicians, headed by Requin (1846) and Hanot (1875), have studied this form most thoroughly. The subjects are young, more frequently males. The liver is enlarged, and it is not unlikely that what has been characterized as the first stage of atrophic cirrhosis has sometimes been represented by this form of disease. An important difference between the two forms is that, while in both there is an overgrowth of connective tissue, in hypertrophic cirrhosis the newly-formed tissue exhibits little disposition to contraction. The liver is therefor smooth. Nor is there any compression of the branches of the portal vein. On the other hand, there is obstruction of the biliary channels, producing the jaundice which is so characteristic a symptom, whence the French investigators would have the disease begin as an inflammation of these passages—a cholangitis—and call it "*cirrhose hypertrophique avec ictère*." It is claimed also by Hanot that there is a new formation of biliary capillaries. That this form of cirrhosis is really cholangitis seems to me quite reasonable. Others hold that this absence of contraction in the connective tissue is exaggerated; that while it is much less marked than in atrophic cirrhosis, it does occur sooner or later if the patient lives long enough. It is said to be further characteristic of the development of connective tissue in hypertrophic cirrhosis that it is more active *within* the lobules. However this may be, the liver, thus enlarged, may weigh from eight to ten pounds (3.6 to 4.5 kilograms). Its color is greenish-yellow or green. It is less frequently due to alcohol and its cause is often undiscoverable.

*Biliary Cirrhosis*.—This term is used by some as synonymous with hypertrophic cirrhosis; but the French clinicians also describe a liver of increased size, in which the enlargement is ascribed to an overgrowth of interstitial connective tissue, an overgrowth which replaces gaps in the parenchyma destroyed through the toxic effect of bile retained in the ducts. This is followed by a deposit of pigment granules in the interlobular connective tissue and within the acini themselves. It is, therefore, "secondary" to obstruction of the gall-ducts by any prolonged cause, as a gall-stone, tumor, or the like. In such case the liver is larger and harder. This reason-



ing seems to be sustained by experiment, since ligation of the common bile-duct in animals has been followed by such cirrhosis. I cannot, however, see any essential difference in hypertrophic cirrhosis and biliary cirrhosis.

The spleen is found enlarged in most cases of cirrhosis of the liver of any variety which come to autopsy.

**Symptoms.**—(a) *Of Atrophic Cirrhosis.*—It must be admitted that cirrhosis of the liver sometimes fails to give rise to any symptoms. Clinicians have recently sought with increased effort for symptoms caused by cirrhosis of the liver in its early stages. None are distinctive, but given an enlarged liver otherwise inexplicable in an alcoholic subject, the presence of chronic gastric catarrh manifested by anorexia, nausea and sense of distention; a tendency to gastro-intestinal hemorrhage, recurring slight jaundice, high colored urine and growing anemia, a strong suspicion of the presence of a first stage is justified. The same symptoms continue as the result of more advanced degrees. The gastric catarrh is the consequence of chronic passive hyperemia, due to obstructed movement of the portal blood. As a result of the hyperemia the mucous membrane of the stomach is more or less constantly covered with mucus, which excites nausea and interferes with secretion of gastric juice. A similar condition exists in the small intestine, causing *constipation*, which is increased by the deficient biliary secretion. This is further shown by the paleness of the stools. The well-known comforting effect of the early morning "dram" upon the inebriate may be due to some action of the alcohol upon this mucus. The disease is usually afebrile. Occasionally there is slight fever with temperature of 100° to 102° F. (37.7° to 38.8° C.).

The remaining symptoms are also mainly the result of the ligature-like effect of the connective tissue on the portal vessels. *Nasal hemorrhage*, often very obstinate, is one of these. So are *gastric* and *intestinal* and, more rarely, *esophageal hemorrhages*, these hemorrhages being often enormous and alarming, but really beneficial, by removing the gastro-intestinal congestion. I have, however, had two cases of fatal hemorrhage thus caused. Either one of these forms of hemorrhage may be the very first symptom to attract attention. Uterine flooding also sometimes occurs, and even hematuria. Similarly caused is the *abdominal dropsy*, which is often enormous. Four gallons (15 liters) and more are not infrequently removed at one tapping, and sometimes the fluid, from its weight, bursts through the feeble barrier at the abdominal ring, distending the tunica vaginalis. The navel is often pushed out by the enormous distention.

The surface of the upper abdomen and lower thorax, anteriorly, is marked by *overdistended veins*. This is directly due to the backing of the blood into these veins, rendered possible by the anastomotic communication between the portal and caval circulations. Such anastomosis between the rudimentary veins in the round ligament (branches of the portal vein) and the epigastric and mammary veins leads to enlargement of the superficial branches of these veins, and in extreme cases to the formation of a *caput medusæ* about the navel. Communication between the superior hemorrhoidal vein (a branch of the portal vein) and the middle and inferior hemorrhoidal, and through them with the hypogastric veins and vena cava, produces *hemorrhoids*, a characteristic symptom of cirrhosis.

Anastomosis between the superior gastric vein (a branch of the portal) and the inferior esophageal, whose blood goes to the cava through the azygos and hemi-azygos, causes a varicose condition of the veins of the lower end of the esophagus which has resulted in fatal hemorrhage. The overfilling of the esophageal and azygos veins may also obstruct the movement of the blood through the intercostal and pleural vessels of the right side, causing rightsided hydrothorax. These dilatations, which have been characterized as "attempts at compensation," are to be distinguished from the more diffuse dilatation of the abdominal veins seen in the flanks, which are due to the pressure on the cava by extreme abdominal dropsy, preventing the return of the blood of the lower extremities by the cava and causing the effort to return through the more superficial vessels. *Edema of the legs* may occur but is much more uncommon than abdominal dropsy, and, when present, depends upon the further pressure exercised by the enormous accumulation of fluid in the abdominal sac upon the returning blood of the lower extremities.

*Jaundice* is a symptom in atrophic cirrhosis, though the constricting effect of the interstitial tissue upon the gall-ducts would lead us to expect it to be more frequent. It may be because comparatively little bile is secreted. Fagge<sup>1</sup> reports 34 cases of jaundice out of 130 examined in the postmortem room of Guy's Hospital, rather more than might be expected. *A sallowness of complexion* is also sometimes present, while a *ruddiness of face* is not uncommon.

Physical examination by palpation and percussion discovers a *diminished* area of *hepatic dullness* in atrophic cirrhosis. On the other hand, *splenic dullness* is often *enlarged*, the latter because of resisted return of blood from the spleen through the liver, though the spleen may be enlarged simultaneously through other causes. According to Frerichs, the spleen is enlarged in about one-half of the cases; some even say in three-fourths. In alcoholic cirrhosis especially enlarged spleen is considered evidence of an advanced stage of the disease. It is often impossible to outline either liver or spleen because of the extreme abdominal distention, and tapping must first be resorted to before physical exploration is satisfactory.

The *urine* in atrophic cirrhosis of the liver is generally scanty, of high specific gravity, highly colored, and often loaded with urates, which subside on standing, forming a bulky sediment. The proportion of urea is often diminished, a natural result of the deranged function of the liver, to which modern physiology assigns an important rôle in urea formation. The urine also contains at times bile pigment, but less frequently than in hypertrophic cirrhosis. *Blood* is also sometimes found in the urine.

In atrophic cirrhosis the *feces* are often wanting in bile and consequently are gray or the color of pipe clay.

*Drowsiness* and *coma* and even *delirium* are sometimes terminal symptoms, especially in cases where there is jaundice, but also where there is ascites without jaundice. They have been ascribed to cholesteremia.

(b) *Symptoms of Hypertrophic Cirrhosis*.—The symptoms which distinguish this form from the atrophic variety are:

1. The jaundice, which begins with the first vague symptoms of the dis-

<sup>1</sup> "Practice of Medicine," 1886, vol. ii., p. 306.

ease and gradually deepens as the disease progresses. The explanations suggested of this feature of the disease, as contrasted with its absence in atrophic cirrhosis, cannot be said to be altogether satisfactory. It is simply true that in some way there is produced obstruction in the biliary vessels, perhaps by a cholangitis.

2. The absence of hyperemia of the stomach and bowels, of hemorrhoids, enlargement of the spleen, and preeminently of ascites; or the presence at least of only mild degrees of these symptoms.

3. The presence of tenderness in the liver, in addition to its evident enlargement and smoothness.

4. Certain differences in the urine in the two forms.

It is a well recognized fact that when there is jaundice the urine is also jaundiced. In *atrophic* cirrhosis jaundice is more infrequent, and when present, say in about one-fourth the cases, it is very slight. The same is true to a less degree of the urine, for while the latter is scanty and highly colored, it less frequently contains bile pigment. In *hypertrophic* cirrhosis, on the other hand, bile-stained urine is more common. Blood is never found in the urine of hypertrophic cirrhosis, while in atrophic cirrhosis it sometimes is in advanced stages, as is also albumin. In atrophic cirrhosis the urea is diminished; in hypertrophic, it is normal in quantity. In hypertrophic cirrhosis the feces are sometimes devoid of bile; at others bile is present.

Rosenstein has made a study of the blood in hypertrophic cirrhosis, and has found the red corpuscles diminished one-half and the leukocytes relatively increased. He also found it associated in certain cases with the hemorrhagic diathesis. Alcohol is said to be even a more important factor in causing hypertrophic than atrophic cirrhosis.

The course of hypertrophic cirrhosis is usually more rapid than that of the atrophic. It may be put down at one or two years, yet in some cases it is shorter. Osler mentions a case which proved fatal in ten days; another in three weeks. It may be questioned whether these very short cases were not cases of acute yellow atrophy. All cases terminate more or less acutely. Delirium sets in, the tongue becomes dry, the pulse rapid, and the temperature rises from 102° to 104° F. (38.9° to 40° C.).

**Diagnosis.**—(a) *Of Atrophic Cirrhosis.*—The diagnosis of cirrhosis of the liver is not usually difficult. If one is satisfied that there is a reduction in the size of the organ, and there are associated with this no symptoms of acute disease and no history of starvation, we may infer scarcely anything else but cirrhosis; and if to this is added ascites, without dropsy elsewhere, the diagnosis is absolute.

*Tubercular peritonitis*, with its liquid effusion, has been mistaken for cirrhosis, and the wasting which attends advanced stages of the former affection closely resembles that in the latter, but the abdominal tenderness in peritonitis is characteristic, there is fever, and the effusion is never very large. The tuberculin test should be applied in all doubtful cases.

(b) *Of Hypertrophic Cirrhosis.*—Hypertrophic cirrhosis is to be distinguished from cancer of the liver, amyloid liver, multilocular echinococcus disease, and the liver of obstructive jaundice. In *cancer* there is no splenic enlargement, ascites is more frequent, the liver is more uneven, and the

patient is older, while in hypertrophic cirrhosis we may have the history of alcoholism.

In *amyloid* liver there is also splenic enlargement, but there is no pain, no jaundice, and we have the etiological history peculiar to amyloid disease.

*Multilocular hydatid disease* in the liver may present almost identical symptoms, including jaundice and splenic tumor, but in addition there are the nodules on its surface which soften with time.

The liver which is associated with *chronic biliary obstruction* and secondary cirrhosis, while somewhat enlarged, is not nearly so much so as in hypertrophic cirrhosis. Hepatic colic has been present at some time in the course of the disease. The liver is also hard, and the condition is accompanied by marked jaundice and other evidence of hepatic obstruction. Its course, while slow, is more rapid as a rule than that of hypertrophic cirrhosis, while the liver also after a time diminishes in size.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of cirrhosis of the liver is unfavorable if restoration of the normal organ be the object. A liver once the seat of interstitial hepatitis can probably never resume its normal histology. Yet the liver has a good deal of elasticity of function, and if the cause of the condition, supposing it to be alcoholism, is removed and the contraction be not too far advanced, the patient may be restored to comparative health. Generally, however, the course of cirrhosis is from bad to worse, although it may be a slow course, and the patient finally dies of exhaustion and cholemia.

It only rarely happens that death is caused by the copious hemorrhages from the stomach and bowels which sometimes occur. I have already referred to two cases in my practice. On the other hand, they frequently relieve the portal congestion, thus giving to the patient a new lease of life. He may live many years in comparative comfort.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of cirrhosis of the liver resolves itself into two parts—first, the relief of the symptoms, and, second, the restoration of the organ to its normal state.

Toward the relief of symptoms the removal of the cause is indispensable. The alcoholic must stop drinking. This, after some temporary inconvenience, of itself brings alleviation. But the effect of gastric congestion remains in part, and sufficiently to cause want of appetite, nausea, unpleasant taste in the mouth, and a general disgust of one's self and everyone else. The mucous membrane of the stomach is swollen, and probably bathed with mucus. The latter can be removed by free drinking of alkaline mineral waters before meals, such as those of Vichy, Vals, and Carlsbad, the effect of all of which is increased when hot. Here, too, as in gastric catarrh—it is really gastric catarrh we are treating—the hot-water treatment is often highly useful by ridding the stomach of mucus. A tumblerful, as hot as it can be borne, is taken slowly before breakfast, or before each meal. Its effect is often highly beneficial. I know no additional explanation of its action unless it be that it may likewise stimulate the secretion of gastric juice. Lavage also relieves this condition and its consequent symptoms.

The congestion which is responsible for this secretion must be removed. This is best done by the saline and mercurial purgatives. Five to 10 grains of blue mass at bedtime, followed by a dose of sulphate of magnesium in the morning or of Hunyadi or Friedrichshalle water, will deplete the engorged

veins and relieve the symptoms for the time being. The mineral waters of Saratoga, in this country, some of which are also purgative, are very useful for the same purpose. A course at Saratoga is greatly appreciated by the confirmed free drinker, and he is always better for some time after it. The hot saline and sulphur waters at Greenwood, Colo., are similar in their effects.

Finally, foods which make the least demand upon the stomach are to be used. Fatty matters are especially contraindicated. In advanced stages milk and Vichy, peptonized milk, and beef peptonoids may be assimilated when other foods cannot be managed by the feeble digestion, but even these are absorbed with difficulty as long as the mucous membrane of the bowels is much congested.

The abdominal effusion is combated by the purgatives alluded to, and diuretics may be added; of these the acetate of potassium seems more efficient than the bicarbonates and citrates where dropsy is due to hepatic derangements. Perhaps this is because in large doses it has also some laxative effect. Theobromin is often an efficient diuretic in these cases, especially when the heart is in good condition. When the abdominal effusion becomes large, it must be removed by tapping, although the reaccumulation may be very rapid and it may have to be repeated many times. Recently operation has been suggested for permanent cure of abdominal effusion due to this cause. It consists, in a word, in the production of vascular adhesions between the parietal peritoneum of the abdominal walls and the omentum, providing a short cut for part of the blood which must otherwise pass through the liver.

Can anything be done to remove the growth of the connective tissue and promote the redevelopment of the destroyed parenchyma? Presumably, if the former could be accomplished, the latter may take place, for there is evidence to show that the liver structure may be reproduced. Theoretically, iodid of potassium is a remedy which should melt away the overgrown connective tissue. Practically, it is extremely doubtful whether it does. I have never seen such effect, nor can I point to any reliable observations that affirm it. There may be, however, and to such an end it is right to use the drug in small doses, which, to produce any effect, should be long continued. It is also a diuretic. There is reason to believe that the iodid is more efficient when taken freely diluted and on an empty stomach than in larger doses after meals. Thus administered, 3 to 10 grains (0.2 to 0.66 gm.) may be regarded as a sufficient dose.

## SUPPURATIVE HEPATITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Abscess of the Liver.*

**Etiology.**—The vast majority of abscesses of the liver, some would say all of them, are traceable to causes which, in one way or another, are associated with microbic origin. Even traumatic abscess, which it is admitted may occur, is ascribed to an associated infectious agent, although the possibility of abscess excited by simple chemical, as contrasted with bacterial cause should at least be mentioned. Most abscesses of the liver arise by infection from the portal area. These are *thrombotic*, *embolic*, or *amebic*. The

*thrombotic* are caused by infectious thrombus, which, starting in the venules of an area drained by the portal vein, extends thence to the branches of the portal vein in the liver, where it gives rise to a suppurative pyelephlebitis. Such an area is the colon when the seat of dysentery, the rectum by its hemorrhoidal veins, or the neck of the bladder. More frequently a *fragment* of such *thrombus* lodges in a branch of the portal vein and starts an abscess, constituting the embolic origin. Or the *ameba coli*, which is the cause of amebic dysentery, is transferred from its primary seat in the intestine into the liver. A similar mode of origin of abscess in the new-born infant is by an umbilical phlebitis.

Abscesses of the liver may also be caused by infectious emboli arising in the *left heart*, the *pulmonic* or *systemic circulation*, reaching the liver *via* the hepatic artery. These emboli mostly originate in the lungs or left heart, but may arise beyond, the condition being that they are small enough to pass through the capillaries of the pulmonary artery. Such would be the abscess caused by injuries to the scalp or the bones of the skull, or from seats of osteomyelitis elsewhere, all of which are acknowledged to be rare causes of abscess of the liver. Septic emboli, producing abscess of the liver, may arise from the left heart in cases of ulcerative endocarditis. These are among the rare causes of abscess of the liver. Even a noninfectious embolus may excite an abscess if brought into association with pyogenic organisms entering the liver in another way. Such organisms may enter the liver through the common duct from the alimentary canal. This is probably the route of the organism causing suppurative cholangitis, and of that causing the abscess often associated with hydatid cyst of the liver. Finally, regurgitant embolism of the hepatic vein is a possible cause of hepatic abscess. In the vast majority of cases, however, abscess of the liver is preceded by dysentery, whence arises an infectious thrombus, an embolus, or an *ameba coli*.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The right lobe of the liver in its thickest part is the most frequent seat of abscess—in two-thirds of all cases. The abscess varies in size from that of a mere point to that of a child's head, the whole right lobe being sometimes converted into one abscess cavity. It may be single or multiple. Rarely, the abscesses intercommunicate. The liver is, of course, correspondingly enlarged. Notwithstanding this, the external appearance of the organ may not be changed. On the other hand, if the abscess is near the surface, there may be a prominence under which fluctuation may be recognized, or the liver may become adherent to the abdominal wall or adjacent viscera. The abscess cavity, if of any size, is usually ragged, and not sharply defined from the surrounding hyperemic liver tissue. Such hyperemia may involve two or three rows of acini. In chronic cases, however, there may be a tolerably firm pyogenic membrane.

The contents of the abscess may be pus, or a puriform fluid consisting of the granular débris of cells, oil drops, a few leukocytes, cholesterin and other fat crystals, and numerous crystals of bilirubin. The *ameba coli* has been found among the contents of the abscess, but recognizable liver cells are rarely found. Occasionally the pus may become inspissated, caseous, or even calcified or encysted. Should the abscess accompany hydatid disease, echinococcus hooklets may be found. The contents of such abscesses is generally a true pus. Any form of abscess may perforate the diaphragm and

lung, producing interstitial emphysema; or the pus with echinococcus hooklets may be expectorated; or the abscess may burrow into the peritoneum, setting up fatal peritonitis, or into the pericardium, causing fatal pericarditis; into any adjacent hollow organs or into the abdominal wall, discharging externally by fistulous openings.

The thrombotic and embolic forms of abscess always begin as a phlebitis, which rapidly invades the adjacent tissue. Contrary to what is usual in embolism elsewhere, the lodgment of an embolus in the liver is not followed by hemorrhagic infarct.

**Symptoms.**—There may be latent liver abscess, even when the abscess is of considerable size, though such latency is a very rare event. Abscess of the liver is generally associated with *pain* in the hepatic region, with *fever*, very often with *chills*, *sweats*, and sometimes with *jaundice*. The pain is almost invariably accompanied with *tenderness*. It may be deep or superficial, and in the latter event it may be sharp and cutting, because involving the peritoneum. The characteristic *shoulder pain* of hepatic disease may also be present.

Fever is, perhaps, the most invariable symptom, and in no other affection of the liver does it rise so high. Indeed, except acute yellow atrophy and the so-called hepatic fever, there are no other diseases of the liver associated with fever. In the former it is of comparatively short duration, and in the latter it is moderate. The temperature reached in abscess is very high— $104^{\circ}$  to  $105^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  to  $40.5^{\circ}$  C.)—and may be preceded by chills of corresponding severity, while the fever, in turn, is succeeded by sweats, profuse and exhausting. *Jaundice* is not usually present, but may be, when it varies in degree. When perforation takes place into the pleural sac, it is likely also to perforate the lung, when there succeeds an anchovy-sauce-like expectoration of purulent matter quite characteristic. In this the *ameba coli* may be present.

*Physical examination* easily recognizes an enlargement of the organ upward in the mammary and midaxillary regions rather than downward, as is usual with other diseases of the liver. Yet the liver is by no means always enlarged, even if there be multiple abscesses. The enlargement is due not merely to the presence of pus, but is also contributed to by the hyperemia, and the swelling of cells. The lung being thus encroached upon, the movement of the liver consequent on respiration is less marked than in health. The hepatic region is at first unyielding to palpation, but ultimately fluctuation may be recognized, while a *doughy* or *edematous* condition of the *abdominal wall* is sometimes present and quite characteristic.

**Diagnosis.**—This may be difficult at first, but as time passes doubts clear up. *Intermittent fever* very naturally is first thought of in many instances, but it will not be long before this disease can be eliminated. There is no enlargement of the spleen, no history of malarial exposure, no malarial organism is found in the blood, and, above all, antiperiodic therapeutics, so efficient in malarial disease, fails of its purpose. In the absence of malaria and in the presence of the causes usually responsible for abscess of the liver there is little else left to mistake for it. A *pleuritic effusion* on the right side gives dullness on percussion in the same locality, but along with this are the diminished fremitus and diminished vocal resonance character-

istic of fluid in the pleural sac, while there may also be the bronchial breathing brought on by compressed lung. A *suppurating echinococcus* cyst may give rise to similar symptoms, but in view of its rarity in this country, is scarcely likely to be recognized until aspiration discovers the elements characteristic of it. The needle should be tried early if abscess be suspected, yet it is evident that in so large an organ an abscess of moderate size may easily elude it.

*Hepatic intermittent fever*, due to chronically impacted calculus, resembles abscess by its fever, chills, and sweats, and by tenderness over the liver, but the history of hepatic colic is present, jaundice is more marked and obstinate, and the condition is evidently not so serious.

**Prognosis.**—This is generally unfavorable. Even in cases where the abscess happens to point to the surface and is properly opened, death usually supervenes after long and tedious illness, say in six weeks to three months, and, where surgical interference is not possible, death is even more speedy. Cases do, however, recover, not so much by the aid of the physician as through nature's irresistible tendency. It is said that with surgical interference 30 per cent. recover, and where this is impossible 20 per cent. still survive, but this has not been my experience. The hydatid abscess is more likely to terminate favorably if opened than is the infectious abscess.

**Treatment.**—This is palliative and supporting, except in those cases where surgical interference is possible. The usual measures to relieve pain, nourishing and easily assimilable food, quinin, iron, and stimulants are indicated.

## PERIHEPATITIS.

**Definition.**—An inflammation of the peritoneal covering of the liver.

**Etiology.**—Perihepatitis occurs in a circumscribed area—(1) as the result of extension by continuity from some one of the various diseases of the liver, such as abscess or hydatid cyst; (2) as a part of a general peritonitis, and (3) rarely by the spread of a pleurisy through the diaphragm; (4) it may also be caused by direct violence, as by a blow; (5) it may be the result of a perforating ulcer of the stomach, duodenum or gall-bladder.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—In the more acute forms there is a fibrinous or puriform product with more or less adhesion. These adhesions may lace off areas between the liver and the diaphragm which may be filled with pus, sometimes large quantities, constituting *subphrenic abscess*, or if there be perforation of the diaphragm, *subphrenic pyopneumothorax*, more common over the right lobe. In the more chronic form the capsule of the liver is thickened, especially near the portal fissure, and adhesions may take place with adjacent organs, as the diaphragm, stomach, colon, or abdominal wall. The organ may be shrunken and lobulated, and the portal or hepatic vein and bile-ducts may be stenosed. The capsule of the liver is often found thickened at autopsies when no symptoms were present during life to indicate it.

**Symptoms.**—The *pain* and *tenderness* which, naturally, are attached to this condition, while often exceedingly severe, like those of peritonitis from



other cause, are not distinctive of it. Nor is the *jaundice* resulting from compression of the bile-ducts; nor the symptoms of portal *engorgement* due to compression of the portal vein by the inflammatory products. Physical examination sometimes gives more definite results. Thus, a *friction rub* may sometimes be heard in the mammillary line from the seventh rib downward, and in the axillary line from the ninth rib downward; also sometimes in the epigastrium. It is, however, of short duration. If there is a purulent collection, fever is likely to be present, while the right hypochondrium may be distended and the intercostal spaces motionless. The dullness on percussion may extend as high as the angle of the scapula, and all the signs of a pleuritic effusion may be present. On the other hand, the lower border of the liver may be much lowered—as far down as the navel.

The course of perihepatitis may be acute, or it may be much prolonged, when all the symptoms of chronic suppurative processes are added—fever, high temperature, sweats, fistulous communications with other organs, including the lungs, intestines, and abdominal wall.

**Diagnosis.**—This lies chiefly between that form of the condition under consideration, attended with pus accumulation between the liver and diaphragm, and an *empyema* or *pneumothorax*. The physical signs and later symptoms are very similar, and it is chiefly in the initial symptoms that the two conditions differ, the one beginning with cough and pleuritic pain associated with cardiac displacement; the other with symptoms more abdominal in situation. The liver in pleuritic effusion and empyema is never so much pushed down as in the hepatic disease. Aspiration may also be availed of in diagnosis. The trocar is to be introduced in the mid-axillary line in the seventh or eighth interspace. It was pointed out by Pfuhl that in subphrenic abscess the spurting occurs with inspiration or as the diaphragm moves downward, and in empyema with expiration as the diaphragm moves upward. The atrophic results of perihepatitis are rarely recognized before death.

**Prognosis.**—This is grave in the severer forms terminating in suppuration. A protracted illness, with gradual exhaustion of the patient's strength, is prone to occur, which skillful surgical measures may nevertheless turn to recovery. Milder attacks terminate favorably in a few days.

**Treatment.**—Treatment in the early stage must consist of measures to relieve pain, local and general. Counterirritation by cupping operates to check the disease and also shorten the attack. Sinapisms and fomentations contribute in a less degree to the same end. If suppuration occur, the counsel and aid of a surgeon should be early sought, as it is by his efforts that a cure becomes possible.

**GLISSONIAN CIRRHOSIS.**—This is a term applied to a form of perihepatitis in which the capsule is thickened, assuming a semicartilaginous appearance. It is associated with reduction in size and some degree of interstitial overgrowth and distortion. The capsule may attain a thickness of from  $\frac{4}{10}$  to  $\frac{6}{10}$  of an inch (1 to 1.5 cm.).

## ACUTE YELLOW ATROPHY OF THE LIVER

SYNONYMS.—*Icterus gravis*; *Acute Parenchymatous Hepatitis*, *Malignant Jaundice*.

**Definition.**—A rapidly destructive disease of the liver, resulting in fatty degeneration and atrophy of the organ, associated with toxic symptoms and death.

**Etiology.**—This remarkable and fortunately rare disease is probably due to the action of some virulent poison, autogenetic perhaps, but whose nature is as yet undiscovered. Pregnancy is one of the conditions acknowledged to produce it, and more cases occur among women than men. It occurs in the second half of pregnancy. It has occurred in the course of the infectious diseases, and the usual microbic origin has been held responsible for it, as have been alcoholism and mental excitement. Bacteria have been found in the organ after death. Autodigestive processes have been suggested. Beyond this we know nothing of its cause.

**Pathology and Morbid Anatomy.**—The destructive process in the liver is almost identical with that of phosphorus-poisoning, and consists essentially in a very rapid destruction of the liver cells. Opinions are divided as to whether this is the result of an acute inflammatory process, or whether the cells are destroyed by some solvent or digestive action. Frerichs and Demme held the view that it is an acute parenchymatous inflammation, of which the chief seat is the peripheral zone of the lobule, whose swelling causes obstruction in the biliary capillaries and the reabsorption of bile. Hanot and von Dusch consider retention of bile the starting-point, and that the liver cells are dissolved by this retained bile. Munk regarded all cases as the result of phosphorus-poisoning.

The liver at necropsy is found very much reduced in size, often to half and even quarter its normal volume. This may take place in three or four days, and even less. A stage of primary enlargement is said to be sometimes present, but is never seen at autopsy. The organ is flattened, flabby, and can be folded over on itself, and the usual lobular markings are either very indistinct or altogether absent. The capsule is loose and wrinkled, and the organ is of a dirty yellow color.

On section, the surface is either uniformly yellow or it exhibits an alternation of yellow and red. The yellow appears, for the most part, in islets, which are surrounded by the red. The yellow represents an earlier stage of the disease. It is soft and spongy, and rises cushion-like above the surface. The red is tougher, more leathery, and sinks below the level of the cut surface. When the organ is uniformly yellow, this later stage, represented by the red, has not been reached before death.

Histologically, the *yellow areas* exhibit softening and apparent solution of the cell network, very few liver cells remaining which retain their own contour. Instead are found disintegrating cells with fat drops of all sizes, the cells being in places still united by their connecting substance so as to maintain the original network. Sometimes crystals of bilirubin, leucin, and tyrosin are met with. The *red areas* consist of a loose connective tissue

whose meshes contain fat drops and biliary coloring-matter, representing the softened liver parenchyma bereft of its cells. In places there may be seen a slight degree of cell infiltration of the interstitial tissue, in others irregular branching bands and apparently blind-ending tubes of cells resembling biliary epithelium. These, Waldeyer says, are the result of an attempt at repair. The atrophy usually takes place more rapidly in the left lobe.

The skin and organs are generally intensely bile-stained. There may be small extravasations of blood in various parts. The spleen is enlarged and hyperplastic, the renal epithelium and heart muscles are fatty, while the serous cavities contain more than the normal amount of fluid.

**Symptoms.**—There are no symptoms distinctive of the beginning of acute yellow atrophy. For several days there may be signs of gastrointestinal catarrh, promptly followed by jaundice. The former include *headache, malaise, loss of appetite, nausea, vomiting, eructations,* and *epigastric discomfort*. Then there suddenly supervene serious symptoms—*delirium, abdominal pain, convulsions*, local or general *drowsiness*, and *coma*. Sometimes the symptoms of this stage are delayed—in extreme cases as long as three weeks.

The *liver rapidly diminishes in size*. Three or four days may see its disappearance to percussion and palpation, favored by further obscuration by distended air-holding viscera. W. von Leube calls attention to a symptom elicited by palpation which he thinks may be of diagnostic value—a more or less permanent “*pitting*” to pressure in the *epigastric region*. He ascribes this to an impression made upon the relaxed liver, to which the abdominal wall fits itself. The *spleen*, on the other hand, is enlarged, the *jaundice* is intense, the *vomiting* obstinate, while there may be *epistaxis, hematemesis, hematuria, menorrhagia*, and hemorrhagic extravasations, while the stools are devoid of bile. The pregnant woman aborts. There is little fever, and in the worst stage there is but moderate rise of temperature—rarely above 101° F. (38.2° C.). The pulse, at first infrequent, increases toward the end to 120 or more.

The *changes in the urine* are very characteristic and have been thoroughly studied. It is deeply bile-stained, is concentrated, the specific gravity often reaching 1030. It is slightly albuminous, and may contain the bile acids, bile-stained fatty casts, and bile-stained renal epithelium. The quantity of urea is diminished, even totally absent. The characteristic feature is the presence of *leucin spheres* and *tyrosin needles* in most cases. These crystals may appear without treatment of the urine or they may come down after slight concentration. In addition are found also aromatic oxyacids, especially oxymandelic acid, all representing products of albumin disintegration.

**Diagnosis.**—The symptoms of acute yellow atrophy in the first stage do not admit of a diagnosis. This is the more true because there is no symptom, even atrophy, which may not be wanting. Thus, cases have perished from hemorrhage before the disease was recognized or before jaundice appeared in the rapidly terminating cases. In the second stage, on the other hand, the symptoms are so distinctive that it seems almost impossible for one familiar with them to fail to recognize them. It is, however, so rare a disease in this country that the opportunity does not often present itself; hence it is sometimes overlooked because not sus-

pected, the more excusably because grave nervous symptoms may occur even in catarrhal jaundice and in the infectious diseases—as, for example, in pneumonia, where jaundice is sometimes a symptom, *Acute phosphorus-poisoning* so closely resembles acute yellow atrophy that the diagnosis depends largely upon the possible recognition of the cause. There are, however, some differences. The reduction in size of the liver is not so rapid, the nervous symptoms are not so grave, and leucin and tyrosin are not usually found in the urine of phosphorus-poisoning. *Hypertrophic cirrhosis* also sometimes resembles acute yellow atrophy clinically, but the enlarged liver is the distinctive feature of the former.

**Prognosis.**—This is so unfavorable that recovery may be said to imply an error of diagnosis.

**Treatment.**—There is no curative treatment. Symptoms should be relieved by the usual palliatives. Headache should be relieved by phenacetin and acetanilid, rather than morphin. An ice-bag may give great relief.

### MORBID GROWTHS OF THE LIVER.

The only morbid growths of the liver which are of clinical importance are *cancer* and *sarcoma*. An *angioma* is an interesting new formation of small size, which presents no recognizable symptoms before death. It is composed of vascular tissue and is distinctly capsulated. The large sizes may be as big as a walnut, more rarely still larger. Some pathologists describe an *adenoma*, which others class among the cancers as a trabecular variety. *Myoma* is another form of histioid tumor rarely found in the liver. *Cysts*, represented by the dilatation cyst and the hydatid cyst, are of occasional occurrence.

### CARCINOMA OF THE LIVER.

**Etiology.**—Cancer of the liver is a comparatively common disease; of internal organs, next in frequency to that of the uterus and stomach. It is, moreover, in the vast majority of cases secondary—in full three-fourths of cases, and of these two-thirds are secondary to primary cancer of the portal area, one-third to primary cancer elsewhere. The stomach is, naturally, the most frequent primary focus. Cancer of the liver is most common in male adults between the 40th and 60th year, yet it does occur occasionally in children.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There are two chief forms in which cancer of the liver presents itself—the *nodular* and the *massive*. Rare forms are radiating, colloid, and cancer with cirrhosis.

1. In the *nodular form* nodules of various sizes are scattered throughout the organ. The nodules vary in diameter from one-fifth of an inch to two inches (0.5 cm. to 5 cm.) or more. They are usually opaque, white, or yellowish-white, and may be very numerous. The superficial nodules project above the surface, and may even be felt through the abdominal wall in the emaciated subject, giving rise to the oft-described “bosselated” feel. These superficial nodules are often umbilicated, because of the disintegration

and absorption of the older central cells, leaving a residue of connective tissue and partially obliterated blood-vessels. The umbilication is confined to the superficial nodules, which also received the name of Farre's tubercles. This variety of nodular cancer may be both primary and secondary. The nodules usually reach a large size in the secondary, and are apt to be more numerous.

2. The *massive form*, in which there is one large cancerous mass, greatly increasing the bulk of the organ. It is grayish-white in color, and may reach four or six inches (10 or 15 cm.) in diameter. This form is primary.

3. The *radiating form*, usually pigmented, in which the nodules may also be multiple, but smaller and less numerous than in the nodular form. It is a form of secondary cancer.

4. A *colloid form*, rare and only secondary.

5. A rare form is *cancer with cirrhosis*, in which the liver is but slightly enlarged, weighing 4.5 to 6.5 pounds (*circa* 2 or 3 kilograms), and presents a greenish yellow appearance, studded over with *small white nodules* not unlike those of the hob-nail liver, the same appearing in large numbers when the organ is cut.

All varieties of cancer are subject to *degeneration*, but the secondary forms more rapidly. The change is a fatty metamorphosis of the cells, associated sometimes with rupture of blood vessels and large extravasations of blood, which may even burst into the peritoneum and gall bladder. There may be occasional *suppuration* around the nodule.

As to the histological origin of cancer, the primary forms start in the liver cells; they are true epitheliomata, the capillary network forming the primary stroma, to which an independent growth of stroma is subsequently added. The secondary forms are embolic in origin, chiefly through the branches of the portal vein, but possibly by the hepatic artery, with or without intermediate involvement of the lung, the first new cancer cell being an infected cell of the capillary wall, whence the parenchymal liver cells are in turn affected. The stamp of the pigmented radiating cancer is, perhaps, thus derived, and illustrates this mode of invasion. The secondary forms repeat the type of the primary varieties. The cells are mainly epithelioid, but may be polygonal and even cylindrical. They exhibit various grades of fatty degeneration.

The liver is variously enlarged by these different forms of cancer, the maximum product being the largest produced by any disease of the liver (see Fig. 37).

**SARCOMA.**—Of the remaining morbid growths of the liver, sarcoma alone demands a few words. It is almost invariably secondary, very few cases of primary sarcoma of the liver having ever been found. Secondary sarcoma of the liver includes melanosarcoma, lymphosarcoma, and myxosarcoma. The melanosarcoma is the most frequent and interesting. It is always secondary and usually multiple, though a diffusely infiltrated variety exists, giving the liver on section a granitic appearance. Melanotic sarcoma of the orbit often precedes it, and it is sometimes a part of a general melanotic distribution over the body, including the skin. *Sarcoma of the liver is said to be never associated with ascites.*

**Symptoms.**—Very rarely cancer of the liver may be latent, except as to a vague ill health explained by the findings of the autopsy. In most instances such ill health grows worse more or less rapidly, and examination of the liver discovers *enlargement*, to which may or may not be added recognizable *nodules*. The enlargement may extend beyond the umbilicus, but it is not usually so great, and in some cases there is none whatever. To inspection the enlargement is first seen in the upper zone of the abdomen, and produces a change of configuration which involves commonly the whole upper abdomen. Rarely, the nodules may be seen. The *superficial veins* are enlarged.

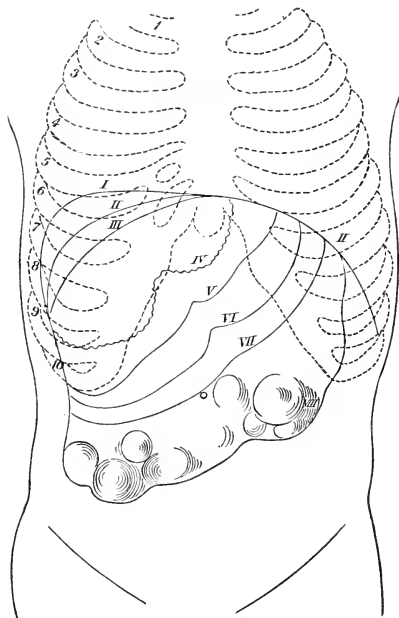


FIG 37.—Showing Appropriate Enlargement of the Liver Corresponding to the Different Diseases Described in the Text—(after Rindfleisch).

- I. Position of the diaphragm to the maximum enlargement (carcinoma and in abscess). II, III. Normal situation of the diaphragm. II, III. Relative dullness. IV. Border of the liver in cirrhosis V. Border in health. VI. Lower border of the fatty liver. VII. Of the amyloid liver. VIII. Of cancer, leukemia, and adenoma.

The other signs of ill health alluded to, apart from those of a primary cancer elsewhere, are *loss of appetite*, *nausea*, a *sense of epigastric fullness*, *pain* in the epigastric or hypochondriac region or in both simultaneously. The pain may be lancinating and extend to the right shoulder. To this *tenderness* is sooner or later added. Indeed, perhaps tenderness precedes. *Emaciation* may have preceded the more striking degree of these symptoms and increase rapidly, while the characteristic *cachexia* develops *pari passu*. An examination of the blood shows a *reduction of hemoglobin and corpuscles*, and as the blood becomes thin *edema* develops. In some cases there is

fever, especially toward the end, with a temperature of  $100^{\circ}$  to  $102^{\circ}$  F. ( $37.8^{\circ}$  to  $38.9^{\circ}$  C.), more or less intermittent, but rarely associated with rigors.

Obstructive *jaundice* is a frequent symptom in *carcinoma hepatis*—it may be said in fully half the cases. It is due to compression of the smaller biliary passages, and does not usually reach a high degree. Nor are the feces usually devoid of bile. If the latter event occurs, and the jaundice is intense, it means that some of the larger ducts are obstructed, while involvement of the gall-bladder or the portal lymphatics may be suspected. *Jaundiced urine* is about as constant as jaundice itself. The presence of melanin is said to point especially to the presence of the pigmented varieties of cancer. Albuminuria is, on the other hand, unusual.

*Ascites* is a rather infrequent symptom, and can only occur when the portal vein or branches become involved either by compression or invasion. Should, however, a bloody fluid be obtained by tapping, and a tumor of the liver be present, the indications are that the tumor is cancer. *Enlargement of the spleen is rarely present* in cancer of the liver.

The duration of the disease ranges from *three to 15 months*.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not always easy, even if there is enlargement. It is simplified if the nodules can be felt, or if there is recognized primary cancer elsewhere.

The smooth, enlarged liver of cancer is distinguished from that of the more benignant conditions of fatty liver and amyloid liver by the absence in these two of grave symptoms and of jaundice. The *fatty liver* is softer than the liver of cancer, the *amyloid* is harder, more often smoother, while its rounded border can sometimes be felt. It is also accompanied by enlarged spleen. In *abscess* of the liver the organ may be soft or doughy in consistence, and the same may be true of the abdominal walls over it. There are also the causes of abscess of the liver, and among symptoms the characteristic chills, high fever, and sweats.

Multiple *echinococcus cysts* may furnish similar local signs, even the "bosselated" feel, but hydatid disease is rare in temperate climes; the nodules are softer, the disease is of longer duration, and is less rapidly followed by wasting. Enlargement of the spleen is quite common in hydatid disease, present, it is said, in nine-tenths of all cases. Jaundice is even more frequent in this disease than in cancer—in four-fifths, as contrasted with a little more than one-half. Aspiration may aid in the solution. Of other affections attended by uneven surface of the liver the *amyloid organ beset with gummy nodules* offers difficulties, but the lesser gravity, the longer duration, and, especially, the syphilitic history solve the question. Cancer, as a rule, is not associated with enlarged spleen, but the rapid enlargement of the liver in amyloid disease sometimes obscures the enlarged spleen and even interferes with its development.

Doubt sometimes arises in the presence of *certain stubborn forms of jaundice* as to whether cancer may not be the cause, especially as in some of these there is rapid loss of weight. If there is enlargement of the liver, the solution is less difficult, because in simple jaundice there is no enlargement; but in its absence time alone can settle the question; for stubborn as these rare cases of jaundice are, they are less so than cancer,

while even if they are not followed by ultimate recovery, their course is much longer than that of cancer. Should ascites arise, the question is settled in favor of cancer. It may sometimes be difficult to decide between cancer and *hypertrophic cirrhosis*, which also furnishes an enlarged, hard, more rarely nodular liver, with jaundice. Carcinoma occurs in persons over 40 years of age, hypertrophic cirrhosis in those younger. Carcinoma produces cachexia, hypertrophic cirrhosis does not. Carcinoma produces marked tenderness, hypertrophic cirrhosis but slight. A possible cause in either case must be sought, primary cancer elsewhere pointing to cancer, and the alcoholic habit to cirrhosis, to which also the enlarged spleen and the absence of cachexia point. A family history of cancer, if present, adds weight to other signs of cancer of the liver.

There is no special reason why cancer of the liver should be distinguished from *sarcoma* or *adenoma*, as the clinical significance of the various conditions is about the same. But if, along with a primary sarcoma elsewhere, as in the orbit, there appears enlargement of the liver, then the inference is reasonable that a secondary sarcoma is there established. Melanosarcoma is more likely to invade other organs, as the lungs, kidneys, spleen, and even the skin.

There is no sign by which secondary cancer can be distinguished from primary, except by the presence of primary cancer elsewhere, notably in the stomach, breast, large intestine, uterus and appendages, and the presumption based on the fact that the majority of all cases of cancer of the liver are secondary. Careful search should, however, be made for cancer in all organs in which primary cancer is likely to occur. The gastric secretion should be investigated chemically, the rectum explored by the finger and speculum, the uterus by the finger, speculum, and sound. Such investigation is further useful in the settlement of the diagnosis of cancer of the liver, for a doubtful case becomes confirmed if a primary focus can be found.

**Prognosis.**—This disease is invariably fatal—usually in from three to 15 months.

**Treatment.**—This must consist in attempts to relieve the discomfort and prolong the life of the patient.

## SYPHILIS OF THE LIVER.

**Definition.**—Syphilis of the liver includes several morbid conditions due to this specific poison, which are best considered under a single title.

**Etiology.**—Syphilis of the liver may be the result of acquired or inherited syphilis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—1. The product in the liver of *inherited* syphilis is always a cellular infiltrate, which may be diffuse or localized. (1) The diffuse infiltrate produces an enlargement and hardening of the organ, which gives place to a reduction in size and unevenness due to contraction of the newly-formed connective tissue. (2) The circumscribed product, more rare as the result of inherited syphilis, is the gummy tumor. The gummy tumor is rather a product of acquired syphilis, but rarely also it is found in connection with hereditary syphilis.



2. The changes in the liver due to *acquired* syphilis are regarded as one of its tertiary manifestations, and do not show themselves until some time after the primary infection—it may not be for several years. They are represented by an interstitial hepatitis, by the syphilitic gumma or syphiloma, by amyloid disease, and occasionally by endarteritis. (1) Diffuse interstitial hepatitis does not differ essentially from the more usual forms of nonspecific cirrhosis. The ultimate product is sometimes very irregular, and the lobules preserve a palpable distinctness. (2) The gumma is the most characteristic lesion of tertiary syphilis. It is a nodular growth, which may be as small as a pea or smaller, or as large as an orange—from  $1\frac{1}{5}$  to four inches (five millimeters to ten centimeters) in diameter. A favorite seat is the convexity of the organ near the suspensory ligament; another, on the under surface in the connective tissue embracing the portal vessels; while it is also found in the substance of the organ. The tendency is to cheesy change in the center of the nodule, and to contraction, which distorts the liver and reduces its size, with the formation of cicatricial markings and furrows. These cicatrix-like puckerings and fibrous bands are found also on section of the syphilitic liver. (3) Amyloid disease has been considered. (4) So has syphilitic gumma. (5) Endarteritis sometimes invades the smaller, and even the larger, branches of the hepatic artery and portal vein.

**Symptoms.**—Syphilitic changes in the liver are often first discovered at autopsy. When symptoms are produced during life, they are commonly those due to portal obstruction, as already detailed in treating ordinary cirrhosis. *Jaundice* may be thus caused. It is not a frequent symptom, yet it was early made a matter of record. Thus, Paracelsus (1493–1541) is said to have noted the complication of syphilis with jaundice, which could not be cured until the venereal disorder was overcome. Portal (1813) also speaks of jaundice as one of the evils following syphilis, curable only by the use of mercury. Ricord (1851) noted two cases of jaundice complicated by syphilis; but Gubler (1854) first pointed out that jaundice commonly comes on at the beginning of the secondary stage, and also treated of the relations of jaundice to the general infective process. He collected seven cases in which jaundice followed syphilitic infection. It accompanied a syphilitic exanthem, and was also preceded by *digestive disorders, loss of appetite, nausea, diarrhea, bitter taste in the mouth, and pain in the epigastrium*. I have had under my care one case precisely fulfilling these conditions pointed out by Gubler. The jaundice may be slight, moderate, or severe. It rapidly attains its maximum intensity, lasting a variable time, seldom more than a fortnight. Though the explanation may not be immediately easy, Gubler gives sufficient reasons for justifying a relation of cause and effect. It is possible that the poison may act like certain other poisons which produce grave icterus, as phosphorus. On the other hand, it is quite as likely that it may arise from a duodenal and biliary catarrh, the result of the general disturbance, especially as it is so often associated with other symptoms of this condition—viz., loss of appetite and nausea. Or it may be the result of biliary obstruction by the contracting processes of the syphilitic liver as already stated.

*Enlargement of the spleen* is an associated symptom when there is

amyloid disease, to which ascites may also be added. Sometimes the larger nodules of gummy growth can be felt through the abdominal walls, when the diagnosis must be made between syphilis of the liver and carcinoma, a differentiation greatly aided by the history of the case.

**Diagnosis.**—This depends most largely upon the history of the case, which must be carefully sought. Nor should the physician be satisfied with a negative history, in view of the fact that it is so common for syphilitic subjects to deny infection, even though they know it is to their interest to tell the truth. Careful examination should, therefore, be made for secondary symptoms, such as glandular enlargement or cicatrices and markings left by syphilids.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—Patients should be subjected to the usual syphilitic treatment by iodid of potassium and bichlorid of mercury as soon as the diagnosis is established, and even when it is doubtful. For while early treatment may be efficient in preventing new growths, it is less certain that when present they can be removed by antisiphilitic treatment.

## PARASITES OF THE LIVER.

### ECHINOCOCCUS DISEASE, OR HYDATID CYST OF THE LIVER.

**Etiology and Pathogenesis.**—The most important and interesting of the parasitic diseases of the liver is the echinococcus or hydatid cyst, caused by the embryo or larva of the *taenia echinococcus*, a minute tape-worm, consisting of three or four links, and about  $1/5$  inch (four to five mm.) long. Its natural habitat is the upper part of the intestine of the dog, the wolf and jackal. The worm is not often found in this country. This rarity may, however, be more apparent than real, as the parasites are so minute (see Fig. 38) as to be easily overlooked, appearing as minute, thread-like bodies, adhering to the villi of the intestine, while hydatid disease, though not very common, is still, nevertheless, more so than would be expected from the seeming rarity of this worm. There are few hospital physicians of much experience who have not met one or more cases, commonly in foreigners. In Australia and Iceland, where the intercourse between men and dogs is more intimate, hydated disease is comparatively frequent. In the latter country 28 per cent. of all dogs are said to be infected; in Copenhagen, four per cent.; in Zurich, 3.9 per cent.; in Lyons, 7.1 per cent.; in Berlin, one per cent.; and in Leipzig, none, as far as investigated.

The ovum of this tape-worm, entering the human intestine with food or drink, has its shell dissolved off by the digestive fluids; the larva is liberated, and bores its way by its stilettos and hooklets into a branch of the portal vein, through which it is carried to the liver. Lodging there, the hooklets disappear, and the embryo becomes a small cyst, called the *proscotex*, possessed of two layers—an external cuticle of laminated structure, the ectocyst, and an internal parenchymatous or germinal layer, the endocyst. Within the cyst is a clear fluid. Surrounding the cyst is gradually developed a capsule of connective tissue, due to reactive inflammation.

At the earliest stage at which these bladders or resting embryos have been with certainty observed—by Leuckart in the pig four weeks after feed-

ing with ripe proglottides—they form solid, spherical bodies, 25/100 to 35/100 of a millimeter in diameter, and are called *proscolices*. At this stage they resemble a mammalian egg, and are subsequently differentiated into the bladders.

*Development from Proscolix*.—When from 15 to 20 millimeters in diameter this proscolix, or bladder-worm, proceeds to development of numerous heads or scolices. It may give rise, first, to a single head, arising from the germinal layer producing a *cysticercus*; second, to many heads, each of which is termed a *cenurus*; third, to numerous heads produced, not directly from the germinal layer, but indirectly from special delicate sacs called *brood capsules*, which arise as minute elevations from the cells of the germinal layer. In these elevations a small spheroidal cavity appears, gradually increases in size, and becomes lined internally with a delicate cuticular membrane, outside of which is a layer of cellular structure. Thus, the wall of the brood capsule consists of two layers like those of the mother bladder, but inverted as to relative position, as if the brood capsule were an invagination of the mother bladder. These brood capsules exhibit active movements.<sup>1</sup> From the internal wall of the brood capsule arises the head, first as a discoidal thickening, growing into an externally situated club-shaped process, perforated longitudinally by a tube-like continuation of the cavity. While an external protrusion of the brood capsule, it may be temporarily inverted. At the distal end of this protrusion, furthest from the point of attachment, the suckers and hooks of the head or scolex are formed. The hooklets appear as a thick fringe of prickles, all of which, except the foremost rows, subsequently drop off. Thus, in different stages of development, heads to the number of 10, 15 or 20 may live within one capsule, and in large bladders the included capsules may number thousands. From these, should they reach the intestine of a suitable host, the proglottides of the strobile, or sexual worm, are formed by lengthening and transverse segmentation. The period of development from the scolex condition to that of the adult worm varies from four to eight weeks.

In the liver the hydatid bladder thus described consists of a single sac, which may attain an enormous size, bearing on its surface brood capsules containing scolices in varying number and stages of development. This is the form of cyst known as *echinococcus veterinorum*, because common in the domestic animals, though frequently also found in man.<sup>2</sup>

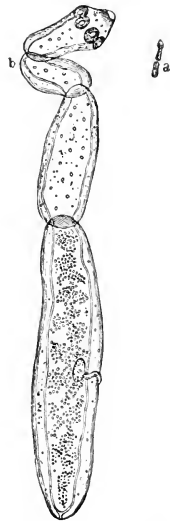


FIG. 38.—*Tania Echinococcus*, from the Dog—(after Heller). At a, natural size; at b, magnified.

<sup>1</sup> They are easily ruptured and may escape observation altogether, whence it has been inferred that connection between the heads and brood capsules is temporary, and that, after separation, the living scolices float free in the fluid of the mother bladder. According to Leuckart, however, all parts of the echinococcus—mother bladder, brood capsules, and heads—are throughout life in direct continuity with one another. According to Verco and Stirling, it may be that the scolices are also formed directly from the germinal membrane, in evidence of which they state that they have examined a specimen which shows four heads sprouting directly from the germinal membrane of an exogenously developed daughter cyst.

<sup>2</sup> J. C. Verco and E. C. Stirling in Allbutt's "System of Medicine," vol. ii., 1897, p. 1110.

*Development by Daughter Cysts.*—In another method of development secondary and completely separated bladders may be formed, either inside or outside the primary or mother cyst, constituting daughter cysts. The former, or endogenous type, is that usually met in man.—*echinococcus hydatidosus* of Leuckart, *echinococcus endogenus* of Kuhn—and arises either by vesicular transformation of the scolices of the brood capsules, or by infoldings of the parenchymal layer. The daughter cysts thus formed and lying within the parent cyst, with which they correspond in structure and behavior, also give rise to brood capsules and scolices. These daughter bladders may also bud endogenously and exogenously, and produce a third or fourth generation within or without themselves, the whole brood being contained within the mother bladder.

The exogenous type—*echinococcus exogenus* of Kuhn—is less common in man, but is frequently met in domestic animals, especially the pig. In this form the secondary bladders arise from small granular masses in the deeper layer of the cuticle of the mother cyst, probably ultimately derived from the parenchymal layer. They assume a special cuticular covering, and their central parts clear up and liquefy. As the centripetal formation

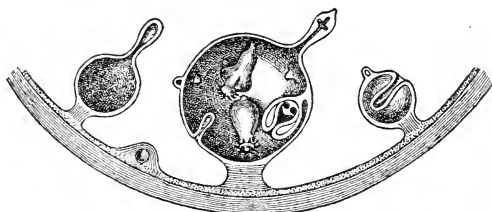


FIG. 39.—Section through an *Echinococcus* Cyst with Brood Capsules—(from Braun, after Wax Model).

of new layers in the cuticle of the mother bladder goes on, with rupture of the outer layers, the new formations make their way externally as separate sacs, and undergo subsequent development outside of the mother bladder, usually close to it, though at times, as in hydatids of bone, the individuals of the resulting broods may lie at some distance from one another and from their common parent. It is to a special variety of this latter that Virchow has given the name *echinococcus multilocularis*, wherein the cysts, becoming surrounded and joined together by thick capsules of connective tissue, form a hard tumor composed of vesicles the size of a pea, often resembling, *en masse*, colloid cancer. In the spaces are found remnants of the echinococcus cyst, at times hooklets or scolices, by the discovery of which their true nature is determined. At other times they are barren. Most cases of this form of disease have been met in Bavaria and Switzerland, but one case being reported in this country—by Delafield and Prudden, in their "Pathological Anatomy," third edition, page 372. The subject was, however, a German, who had been in the country five years.

The *fluid contents* of the young cyst are clear and limpid, have a specific gravity of 1005 to 1009, are nonalbuminous, but contain a small quantity of chlorid of sodium, occasionally a trace of sugar, succinic acid, or hema-

toidin. Scolices and hooklets are almost always present, and are of great diagnostic value.

The hydatid cyst ranges in size from that of a pin's head to a child's head. It grows very slowly, and may be in the liver for many years—some say as many as 20. Ultimately it dies, the walls contract, their contents become inspissated and walls themselves calcified. Sometimes they suppurate, the cysts forming large abscesses; or they may rupture in various directions with corresponding mischief, including sudden death from collapse. The bile passages and inferior cava have been seats of rupture.

**Symptoms.**—Small cysts may occasion no symptoms, being often unexpectedly found at necropsy, and under any circumstances the failure of health is very gradual at first. As cysts become large they produce a *sense of weight or dragging* in the region of the liver, and other symptoms, depending on their size and situation; *jaundice*, if they cause obstruction of the biliary passages; *dyspnea* and *cardiac disturbance*, if they encroach on the lungs or heart; *pyemic symptoms*—that is, fever, sweat, and sometimes chills, with rapid exhaustion—if they suppurate. The liver may become very much enlarged, demonstrable by inspection, palpation, and percussion. If there is a single superficial cyst, either in the right or left lobe, it may be felt as an elastic or even fluctuating tumor; or there may be the distinct feel of a nodular growth over the liver. If posterior in the right lobe, it may encroach on the inferior part of the lung and pleural space, causing dullness on percussion posteriorly and postero-laterally, and other signs of pleuritic effusion. *Hydatid thrill* or *fremitus* is always to be sought for. It may be found, if the cyst is superficial, by placing one hand over the tumor and tapping lightly with the fingers of the other. The result is a vibrating or trembling movement felt for a short time. It is not often obtainable, and is possible only with superficial cysts. It has been ascribed by Briancon to the collision of the daughter cysts.

If rupture occurs, other symptoms are added. The pleural cavity is often invaded, or the lungs, as evidenced by the expectoration of cysts and hooklets; the bile passages, by the production of jaundice or increased jaundice; and the subsequent appearance of hooklets and cysts in the fecal discharges. Rupture into the stomach is manifested by vomiting of hooklets and cysts; into the vena cava, by embarrassment of right cardiac action and pulmonary thrombosis from lodgment of cysts; into the pericardium, by fatal pericarditis; into the peritoneum, by fatal peritonitis; and into the abdominal wall, by outward discharge.

**Diagnosis.**—The differential diagnosis depends on the recognition of hydatid fremitus or on some of the pathognomonic features just mentioned, and the history of the case in connection with the slowness of development of the symptoms. The resemblance to *cancer* is sometimes very close, in consequence of the presence of nodular swellings over the liver, and to *syphilis of the liver* for the same reason. In cancer the health fails very much more rapidly, but in syphilis scarcely more so, and the history must here again come to our assistance. When suppuration takes place, we have the symptoms of *abscess* of the liver. The recognition of sugar in the fluid obtained by tapping is presumptive evidence of its hydatid nature.

**Prognosis.**—When the disease develops sufficiently to manifest symptoms, the chance of spontaneous recovery is very slight. It is possible when external rupture takes place, but this should be anticipated by operative interference, which is often successful.

**Treatment.**—No medicinal treatment avails, while spontaneous cure is not infrequent, by reason of the death of the parasite before the development of the disease to a recognizable degree. A surgeon should be consulted as soon as the diagnosis is made. A preliminary tapping is justified under strict antiseptic precautions, and, in fact, has been succeeded by permanent recovery. Australian surgeons have had the largest experience, and it appears to justify the bolder course of incision and evacuation of the cysts rather than the more conservative method of first securing adhesion of the sac to the abdominal walls and then laying open the cyst and evacuating the contents. The former practice of injecting the sac with iodine has also been discontinued. Should suppuration take place, the treatment becomes that of abscess of the liver.

#### OTHER PARASITES OF THE LIVER.

The remaining parasites of the liver are of pathological rather than of clinical interest.

The arthropoda are represented by the *pentastomes*, of which the *pentastomum denticulatum*—larval form of the *pentastomum* or *linguatula tenioides*—has been found in the liver. The adult worm is lancet-shaped and marked with numerous rings. The female is from three to five inches (8 to 13 cm.) long, the male little less than one inch (1.8 to 2.5 cm.). The adult worm has been found in the nostril of man.

The *cystercus cellulosa* and *psorosperma* are rare parasites. Of the latter, the *coccidium oviforme*, which is very common in the liver of the rabbit, produces whitish nodules, as in other organs, ranging in size from that of a pin to that of a split pea, and even larger. They may produce fever of an intermittent type, diarrhea, nausea, and tenderness over the liver or other organ invaded with enlargement. (See also Parasites at end of volume.)

In examining a case of suspected hepatic disease the following questions should be raised with a view to eliciting important facts which bear upon the diagnosis: First, whether there has been or is syphilis; second, suppurative disease or rickets; third, alcoholism; fourth, enlargement of the spleen; fifth, elevation of temperature; sixth, jaundice; seventh, what has been the duration of the symptoms?

#### DISEASES OF THE PANCREAS.

Almost the only diseases of the pancreas which possess much clinical interest are cancer and pancreatitis. Reginald H. Fitz has invested the subject of pancreatitis with increased interest by his masterly Middleton Goldsmith lecture, and more are now recognized antemortem than previous to its publication. The remaining diseases are, however, of great pathological interest.

## ACUTE PANCREATITIS.

**Definition.**—Acute pancreatitis is an acute inflammation, affecting primarily the fibrous and fatty interstitial tissue of the organ. It is a rare affection. Fitz divides it into hemorrhagic, suppurative and gangrenous, but as suppuration and gangrene are terminations rather than initial features, and hemorrhage is at least a very frequent primary etiological feature, I prefer to treat the subject under the single heading of *acute pancreatitis*.

**Etiology.**—It may begin with hemorrhage, which may be traumatic. Most subjects are between 26 and 70 years old. The majority are men. A few are alcoholics. James M. Anders<sup>1</sup> collected 40 cases of pancreatic hemorrhage, in 34 of whom the sex was given. Twenty-five of these were males and nine females. The ages of 30 were stated, of whom 13, or 43.3 per cent., were over 45. Many had been previously subject to gastric and gastro-intestinal derangements, often inflammatory. The causative gastro-duodenitis extends probably from the bowel to the pancreatic duct. Pathogenic organisms play an undoubted rôle.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This varies with the stages or varieties, which, as seen at necropsy, are *hemorrhagic*, *gangrenous*, and *suppurative*. In the *hemorrhagic* stage the pancreas is enlarged throughout or at its head, and is infiltrated with blood, which imparts its color in different shades and may invade the pancreatic duct. The hemorrhagic foci may alternate with white spots of *fat-necrosis*. The hemorrhage may extend into the peripancreatic tissue or the mesentery, mesocolon, omentum, and beyond to the brim of the pelvis. On minute examination round cells and red blood disks are found in the ducts and acini. Many lobules are in a state of coagulation-necrosis, while bacteria are present in large numbers.

If the patient survive the first few days—say the fourth day—the condition passes on either to *gangrene* or *suppuration*. If to *gangrene*, the tip or the entire gland may be converted into an offensive, dark, slate-colored mass, which softens and becomes shreddy. Gangrene may set in almost simultaneously with hemorrhage. The organ may become completely sequestered in the smaller omental cavity, attached only by a few shreds. The adjacent parts exhibit the appearance of peritonitis, with dirty, purulent extravasate. Disseminated fat-necrosis may be present. The spleen may be enlarged and its veins thrombosed, as may be also the portal vein.

In the *suppurative* termination the organ is enlarged, and contains numerous small abscesses, intervening parts being hyperemic. There may be peritonitis of adjacent areas of the peritoneum. There may be diffuse suppuration or small abscesses disseminated throughout the organ. In the chronic form there may be a solitary abscess as large as a hen's egg, with cheesy contents. The lesser omental cavity and peripancreatic tissue may be invaded; rarely, also, the liver. Fat-necrosis in this form is a rare condition, while thrombosis of the splenic and portal veins may still occur.

**Symptoms.**—The disease begins suddenly with *abdominal pain*, sometimes succeeding attacks of indigestion. It is severe and in the upper left quadrant of the abdomen and in the course of the pancreas, but it may ex-

<sup>1</sup> "Pancreatic Hemorrhage," *Journal of the American Med. Assoc.*, "December 2, 1899.

tend throughout the abdomen. It is ascribed to stretching of the celiac plexus of nerves. There is also tenderness. The pain is usually followed by *vomiting*, rarely by nausea alone. The vomited matter may be bilious or black. The upper abdomen becomes swollen and tympanitic, or the *tympany* may be general. The *temperature* is *subnormal* or slightly *elevated*. Death occurs usually within three days, but may be delayed a week. If the patient lives longer, the case becomes one of gangrenous, or suppurative pancreatitis. Recovery may occur, though rarely.

If the gangrenous termination succeeds, *chills*, *fever*, abdominal *swelling*, *tympanites*, *tenderness*, *jaundice*, collapse, and death ensue.

If suppuration occurs, life may be prolonged for three or four weeks, and there may be added *high temperature* and *irregular chills*, with exacerbations and remissions and signs of deep-seated peritonitis in the epigastric region.

**Diagnosis.**—This is based upon the foregoing symptoms and their suddenness, especially the *circumscribed tympany*. The disease is to be differentiated from the effects of *irritant poison*, *perforation of the stomach* or *biliary tract*, and *acute intestinal obstruction*. The history eliminates corrosive poison. Perforation of the stomach is preceded by symptoms of ulcer, and of the biliary passages by symptoms of gall-stones. There is no tenderness localized in the region of the pancreas in intestinal obstruction, which is rare in the upper part of the small intestine. Obstruction in the large intestine must be eliminated by measures calculated to determine the patulousness of the bowel. Laparotomy has been done for intestinal obstruction, and pancreatitis was found.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—The former is almost always unfavorable. If recovery takes place, it is accidental rather than the result of treatment, which, in the main, can only be palliative, and such as is demanded by peritonitis. Surgical treatment may be called for, and has been followed by recovery. Drainage should be practiced.

**CHRONIC PANCREATITIS.**—This consists of an interstitial overgrowth, by which the organ is hardened and slightly enlarged. The secreting structure is compressed and degenerated. It has frequently been found in diabetes. There may be pigmentary deposits, and pancreatic calculi may be found in the ducts.

## CANCER OF THE PANCREAS.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Though a rare disease, it is not infrequently correctly diagnosed. It is usually primary and situated in the head of the organ. It is commonly scirrhus, but it may also be colloid. It may arise by contiguity from cancer of the stomach or intestines. It occurs in those past middle life. It is especially apt to invade adjacent parts and more distant ones by metastasis, especially the liver and lymph glands.

**Symptoms.**—These are not distinctive. The most valuable symptom is *jaundice*, which occurs when the head of the organ is involved. It is caused by obstruction of the common bile-duct. A *fixed tumor* may be felt in the pancreatic region, and if it be associated with jaundice, the pancreas may be justly suspected to be its seat. If we add to these symptoms *fatty* or



*greasy stools*, the suspicion is fortified. There are symptoms of *indigestion* and a *dull pain* in the epigastrium, but these are not distinctive. *Emaciation* and *loss of strength* proceed irresistibly. As the former advances the *aortic pulse* is transmitted with great distinctness through the transverse colon and pancreas. There may be *ascites* and *diabetes mellitus*.

**Diagnosis.**—Cancer of the pancreas must be differentiated from cancer of the pylorus, of the transverse colon, of the glands in the hilus of the liver, and from aortic aneurysm. In case of *cancer of the pylorus* there should not be much difficulty, for the pyloric tumor is movable in a decided majority of cases, and the pancreatic is fixed; the pyloric cancer is rarely associated with jaundice, the pancreatic is almost always so; pyloric cancer produces dilatation of the stomach, pancreatic cancer does not.

*Cancer of the transverse colon* is rare. It is also more movable than pancreatic cancer, and sooner or later obstruction of the bowel results. *Cancer in the hepatic fissure* is difficult to distinguish, but it is higher up and more superficial. The tumor is also tender. It is accompanied by jaundice and by this symptom resembles cancer of the pancreas.

The pulsation communicated to the pancreas is very different from the expansile dilatation of *aneurysm*. Fatty stools are of great assistance in diagnosis, but they are by no means always present.

*Sarcoma* is a possible tumor of the pancreas, but it is not distinguishable from cancer. Tuberculosis and syphiloma may occur and present similar difficulties.

The **prognosis** of cancer is unfavorable, and the **treatment** only symptomatic.

## CYSTS OF THE PANCREAS.

**Definition.**—These are retention cysts, due to closure of Wirsung's duct by concretions or cicatricial contraction. They may become very large, and may even occupy the entire abdominal cavity. They may be slow or rapid in development.

**Symptoms.**—In none of the 53 cases thus far collected—35 by W. W. Johnston and 18 by N. Senn—was there fatty diarrhea, a condition regarded as symptomatic of suspended function of the pancreas. On the other hand, the *stools* may be *clay-colored* and *putrescent*, probably because there is a simultaneous obstruction to the descent of bile. A resulting *tumor* presents itself usually in the left part of the epigastrium, between the costal cartilages and the median line. More rarely it is in the neighborhood of the navel. It is globular, resisting, and inelastic, changes its position slightly with the movements of the diaphragm, and possesses some lateral motion.

The differentiation of such a tumor, in the absence of more definite symptoms, cannot be said to be easy, yet the diagnosis was made in seven out of Senn's 18 cases. Aspiration should be made. The fluid is usually brown or chocolate-colored, but sometimes it is transparent. It presents some of the characteristics of pancreatic fluid, emulsifying fats and converting starch into sugar.

**Treatment.**—After exploratory aspirations the treatment is surgical.

## PANCREATIC CALCULI.

**History.**—The first case of pancreatic lithiasis reported, so far as I know, was in 1788 by Thomas Cawley. There was diabetes, and at necropsy the pancreas was found stuffed with calculi. In 1882 I made a necropsy on a case of diabetes with diarrhea, in which many calculi were found in the pancreas. In 1883 George W. Johnston reported 35 cases collected from the literature. Minnich reported a case of colic after which calculi composed of calcic carbonate and phosphate were found in the stools; Lichtheim made the diagnosis of pancreatic calculus in a case of severe colic, diabetes, and fatty diarrhea, confirmed by autopsy. Out of 1500 autopsies made at the Johns Hopkins Hospital up to 1901, only two cases of pancreatic calculus were found.

**Etiology.**—Pancreatic calculi can only be regarded as a precipitation from an inspissated pancreatic juice determined by some unknown cause.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The calculi, commonly about as large as a pea, are contained in the pancreatic duct and its branches. They are usually numerous. They may be smooth, round, faceted, or irregular and rough of surface. They are composed of carbonate and phosphate of lime.

**Symptoms.**—Pancreatic calculi are often unattended by symptoms, but deep-seated colicky pain may be present. The difficulty in distinguishing this from the pain of biliary colic is increased by the fact that jaundice may be associated with either. Theoretically, the pain of pancreatic colic should be more deep-seated, more central, and more to the left. Practically, this is not often found to be the case. If fatty diarrhea and diabetes are associated with the colic, pancreatic calculus may be inferred. Rarely stones are passed by the bowel, and if such stones are found to be made up of phosphate and carbonate of lime, they probably come from the pancreas.

**Treatment** is mainly palliative by morphin or other anodynes. Eichhorst has recommended hypodermic injections of pilocarpin to stimulate the pancreatic secretion.

## THE CAMMIDGE REACTION IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF PANCREATIC DISEASE.

The difficulty which surrounds the diagnosis of pancreatic disease renders extremely valuable any aids to diagnosis which can be brought to bear upon it. One of these aids is the Cammidge reaction, and although its value is still disputed and its technic somewhat troublesome, I think it right to insert it in this place that it may be availed of and its value determined by those who are qualified to do so.

The following are the steps of the test as most recently proposed by Cammidge—his “improved method”—from the paper of Edward H. Goodman on “The value of the Cammidge reaction in the diagnosis of pancreatic disease.”<sup>1</sup>

A portion of the twenty-four hours' urine or a portion of the mixed night and morning specimens is examined for albumin and sugar. If albumin is present, it is removed by boiling with the addition of a few drops of acetic acid, cooled and filtered. The removal of the sugar will be spoken of later. To 40 c.c. of the filtered, albumin-free, acid urine are added 2 c.c. of concentrated hydrochloric acid, and the mixture gently boiled on the sand-bath for ten minutes following the first evidence of ebullition. A

<sup>1</sup> *Annals of Surgery* for February, 1909.

small flask, with a funnel as a condenser, is used for the purpose. After ten minutes' boiling the flask is removed from the sand-bath, cooled in a stream of running water, and the contents made up to 40 c.c. with distilled water; 8 gm. of lead carbonate are then added to neutralize the excess of acid, and after standing a few minutes the flask is again cooled in running water, and the contents filtered through a moistened, close-grained filter-paper.<sup>1</sup>

At this stage of the procedure, if sugar has been found on qualitative analysis, a portion of yeast is added to the clear filtrate, and the flask placed in the incubator overnight. The next morning the solution is filtered and the test is continued.

The acid filtrate is thoroughly shaken with 8 gm. of tribasic lead acetate, and the precipitate removed by repeated filtration through a well-moistened, close-grained filter-paper. To get rid of the excess of lead, 4 gm. of powdered sodium sulphate are added, the mixture heated on a wire gauze to the boiling point, cooled in running water to as low a temperature as possible, and the precipitate removed by careful filtration. Ten c.c. of the filtrate are put in a small flask, made to 17 c.c. with distilled water, and to this are added 0.8 gm. of phenylhydrazinhydrochloride, 2 gm. sodium acetate, and 1 c.c. of 50 per cent. acetic acid. The flask is then fitted with a funnel condenser and gently boiled on the sand-bath for ten minutes, at the expiration of which time it is filtered hot through a filter-paper moistened with hot water. The filtrate, if necessary, is made up to 15 c.c. with hot distilled water, and the whole well stirred with a glass rod.

In well-marked cases of pancreatic inflammation a light yellow, flocculent precipitate should appear in a few hours, but in less characteristic cases it may be necessary to leave the preparation overnight before a deposit occurs. Under the microscope the precipitate is seen to consist of long, light yellow, flexible, hair-like crystals arranged in delicatetheaves, which, when irrigated with 33 per cent. sulphuric acid, melt away and disappear in ten to fifteen seconds after the acid first touches them. The preparation must always be examined microscopically, as a small deposit may be easily overlooked with the naked eye, and it is also difficult to determine the exact nature of a slight precipitate by macroscopical investigation alone.

The nature of the phenylhydrazin precipitate is unknown. Cammidge believes that it is a pentose, derived by hydrolysis, and not preformed. He says, "We are not in a position to make any definite statements with regard to the nature of the mother-substance from which the sugar is derived, but our earlier experiments proved that it was not the so-called animal gum of the urine, and the fact that a positive reaction has not so far been obtained by the 'improved method' with the urine, from any but pancreatic cases, suggests that it is probably a body resulting from change in the pancreas, and possibly derived directly from that organ. The relatively large proportion of pentose-yielding material in the pancreas (2.48 per cent.) . . . points to the pancreas as the most likely source. It cannot be denied, however, that the disintegration of other tissue may also at times influence the urine in this respect, and it has also to be remembered that the ingestion of large amounts of pentose-containing food-materials

<sup>1</sup>Dr. Goodman has found the most satisfactory paper to be Schleicher & Schüll, 589 Blue Ribbon.

may also cause small quantities of pentose to be excreted in the urine. Therefore while we maintain that a positive reaction by the 'improved method' of performing the so-called 'pancreatic reaction' is strongly suggestive of inflammatory disease of the pancreas, we are not prepared to contend that it is pathognomonic of pancreatitis."

Cambridge has made 250 consecutive examinations, of which 125 were negative. The negative reactions were observed in 50 normal cases, 92 miscellaneous cases concerning which no further information is given, 10 cases of gall-stone in common duct, 11 cases of gall-stones in gall-bladder, both conditions unassociated with pancreatitis, and 12 cases of cancer of the pancreas. Two cases of acute pancreatitis gave a positive reaction. There were no negative findings in cases of chronic pancreatitis *sui generis* or of pancreatitis accompanied by gall-stones.

The "improved method" or "C" reaction has been applied by a number of clinicians, and while it is found to respond in numerous cases nonpancreatic and has failed in some pancreatic cases, its association, on the whole, with pancreatic disease as compared with other disease is sufficiently frequent to be presumptive evidence of the presence of such disease.

Watson, Schroeder and Goodman are among those who regard the test as an aid in the diagnosis of pancreatic disease, especially when taken in connection with the clinical history and a careful study of the feces.

Dr. Goodman with Dr. Speese,<sup>1</sup> has applied the test in experimental pancreatitis and infers that a mechanical obstruction of the duct is productive of a positive Cambridge reaction. While not regarding the results of their experiments conclusive, they believe them to be very suggestive.

## DISEASES OF THE PERITONEUM.

### ASCITES.

SYNONYM.—*Hydroperitoneum*.

**Definition.**—Any freely movable collection of fluid in the abdominal cavity sufficiently copious to be recognizable by the physical signs present.

**Etiology.**—Ascites is a symptom of any one of a number of diseases causing venous engorgement of the vessels draining the peritoneum, but a symptom of such importance as to demand separate consideration. Its causes are *in situ* and remote. The most frequent local cause is obstruction to the portal circulation, commonly by some disease of the liver, especially hepatic cirrhosis. Any growth or inflammatory new formation in the gastrohepatic omentum or hepatic fissure exerting pressure on the portal vein may have the same effect. Abdominal tumors outside of the liver large enough to exert the requisite pressure may also produce ascites. Such are enlarged spleen and tumor of the ovary and even of the uterus. Chronic inflammation of the peritoneum, whether tubercular, cancerous, or simple, especially when the cancer and tuberculosis involve the omentum, is also a cause. More rarely cirrhosis and emphysema of the lungs and chronic pleurisy cause it.

<sup>1</sup>Goodman and Speese, "The Cambridge Reaction in Experimental Pancreatitis." "Amer. Jour. Med. Sciences," Jan., 1909.

Remote causes include, first of all, valvular heart disease, the general obstruction due to which causes ascites as a part of a general anasarca, the peritoneal cavity being the last invaded. Rarely, it is the only dropsical symptom of heart disease, in which event there must be associated some intermediate obstructing state of the liver. Bright's disease is also a cause of abdominal dropsy, in which disease, too, the peritoneum is, as a rule, last invaded. More rarely it occurs as a consequence of intense cachectic states, such as the gravest forms of anemia.

**Symptoms.**—Some 14 to 20 pints (7 to 10 liters) are required before the physical signs to be described are developed. The abdominal cavity thus occupied is more or less distended, pendent when the patient is upright and widened when the patient is on his back, the flanks dropping down and outward. The fluid also flows from one side to the other when the patient turns on his side. If the distention is excessive, "*silver lines*," such as extend across the abdomen in pregnancy, make their appearance, and the umbilicus is obliterated or protuberant. The superficial veins—branches of the epigastric—are distended and distinctly visible due to pressure by the fluid on the vena cava, such pressure obstructing the return of blood from the lower extremities. Sometimes these superficial veins from below are seen to join those of the mammary from above. Such distention, however, is often contributed to by coincident portal obstruction (see p. 492). There may also be edema of the lower extremities. There is no caput medusæ about the navel unless the portal circulation is also obstructed.

As intimated in the definition, the physical examination affords the most reliable evidence. To palpation there is the succussion wave, which is elicited by placing the palm of one hand on the side of the abdomen and tapping with the fingers on the opposite side. A false succussion wave is sometimes produced by this procedure in persons with fat, flabby belly-walls, but error may be avoided by having an assistant place the edge of his hand vertically on the median line while the tapping is done, as in this way the false wave, which travels around through the abdominal wall, is obliterated. It is always difficult, and sometimes impossible, to palpate solid organs when the abdomen is distended with fluid. Such palpation is, however, facilitated by a modification of the ordinary method—viz., first applying lightly only the ends of the fingers, then suddenly depressing them, and so displacing the fluid that the solid organ can be felt.

Percussion elicits absolute dullness over the fluid, while over the bowels, which are floated upward, a tympanitic note is produced, which changes with the position of the patient. If there is considerable effusion and the patient lies on his back, there is a small oval area of tympany in the middle of the abdomen. If a small amount of fluid is present, the flanks only are filled in this position, and there is a large superficial area of tympany in front, which will be substituted by dullness if he be placed in the knee-elbow position.

The statement that in ascites there is dullness in the flanks must be taken with some allowance, for it sometimes happens that a tympanitic note may be produced by percussion far back in the flank behind the mid-axillary line, because in this situation lie the ascending and the descending colon,

with the posterior aspect uncovered by peritoneum and therefore inaccessible to the fluid.

**Differential Diagnosis.**—The morbid condition which the physician is most frequently called upon to distinguish from ascites is probably the *ovarian cyst*. The ovarian cyst, especially when large, furnishes some points of resemblance, yet there are striking differences. It begins in one side and rises up from the pelvis toward the center of the abdomen, which soon becomes the most prominent portion, while the dropsical effusion spreads out into both flanks. The ovarian cyst distends one side more than the other at first, and continues to do this even when large and fully developed. It produces no obliteration or projection of the naval, as does abdominal dropsy. Palpation also recognizes fluctuation in the ovarian cyst, but it is usually less distinct and more circumscribed, while in ascites the wave passes all the way across the abdomen. To percussion, the latter condition affords a central tympany and dullness in the flanks, while in ovarian cyst the flanks are resonant because the bowels are pushed into them. This is at least true of one flank, even if the other is completely occupied by a large tumor. If

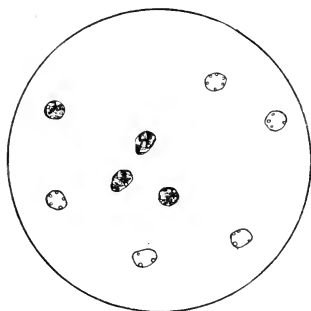


FIG. 40.—So-called "Ovarian Cells."

there is tympany in the upper abdomen, with an ovarian tumor, it is bounded below by a convex line, while in ascites its lower border is concave.

A change of position has less influence on the dullness in ovarian tumor than in ascites. Vaginal examination affords some information. In ascites the vaginal vault is obliterated, the uterus prolapsed, but freely movable, while in ovarian tumor the vagina is less encroached upon, the uterus being sometimes drawn up and less movable.

The characters of the contained fluid are, as a rule, widely different. The fluid of a simple ascites is usually transparent, has a low specific gravity, commonly below 1012, and contains a small quantity only of albumin and a few leukocytes. The ovarian fluid is usually dark and grumous in appearance, highly albuminous, with a specific gravity of 1020 or more, and reveals to microscopic examination numerous *granular fatty cells* (compound granule cells), cholesterol plates, and small, *pale granular cells*. These last are round or slightly oval, about the size of a white blood-corpuscle, and are by

some regarded as pathognomonic of ovarian cyst contents, and therefore called "ovarian cells." They are found in pleuritic fluids, pus, and even ascitic fluids, but they are much less numerous in these. The cell is probably a degenerated endothelial cell from the peritoneum. The presence of these cells in large numbers is certainly a help to the identification of ovarian fluids.

In rare instances the fluid of ascites is milk-white. This occurs when from any cause there is leaking of chyle into the peritoneal cavity—*ascites chylosus*. In the effusion associated with morbid growths, such as cancer and tuberculosis, the fluid is also sometimes white in color, from the presence of an unusual number of fatty degenerated cells from these sources or from the peritoneal endothelium.

The *overdistended bladder* has been more than once punctured by mistake for ascitic fluid, but this accident can never occur if the patient is directed to empty his bladder or the catheter is used before tapping.

*Hydronephrosis* has been confounded with ascites, and this is less excusable than the confounding of hydronephrosis and ovarian cyst. In advanced hydronephrosis the fluid may be almost identical with that of ascites, but its mode of development is from one side and exceedingly slow, while there are pain and tenderness in the region of the kidney. W. von Leube relates a case in which he mistook an enormously dilated stomach filled with fluid for ascites, and points out how easily the mistake could have been avoided by the previous use of a stomach-tube.

A *cyst of the omentum* is a rare condition, but should be remembered as a possible one to be distinguished from ascites.

*Chronic peritonitis* is also attended by effusion, which is, however, more limited than in ascites, and the change in the area of dullness on change of position is less complete because of the peritoneal adhesions, which interfere with the ready movement of the fluid. In tubercular peritonitis, where there is less limitation by adhesions, there is also tenderness. The withdrawn fluid is more highly albuminous and of higher specific gravity than the ascitic fluid.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of ascites is that of the causing disease. Paracentesis is often necessary to relieve the discomfort of the patient. The fluid may accumulate with rapidity and the tapping require to be repeated quite frequently, but it is not true, as commonly supposed by the laity, that a first tapping necessitates a second *per se*. When frequent tapping is necessary, it is sometimes better to keep the orifice open and allow the fluid to drain away continuously, rigid antiseptic precautions being taken. Under these circumstances the patient sometimes improves rapidly, as he is relieved from the exhausting effect of the pressure and weight of the large amount of liquid and of the constant dread of repeated tapings.

## ACUTE PERITONITIS.

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the peritoneal membrane.

**Etiology.**—1. *Of Primary Peritonitis.*—Primary peritonitis, or that form which originates independently of inflammation of adjacent structures, is

spoken of as idiopathic in origin. It is a disease of such rarity that its existence may reasonably be questioned, and there are those who deny its occurrence *in toto*. Its reputed cause is exposure to cold.

2. *Of Secondary Peritonitis*.—By this is meant an inflammation the result of invasion of the peritoneum from a primary focus of disease somewhere in the vicinity, or traumatic agencies, like blows or punctures involving the peritoneum. Formerly, operations involving the peritoneum were fruitful causes of peritonitis, but since aseptic surgery has become general, such operations are done with an immunity previously undreamed of. There are two chief foci whence such inflammation originates. One of these is the digestive tract; the other, the genito-urinary system, more particularly of women. Inflammation may also invade the peritoneum from the liver, gall-bladder, spleen, or perinephritic region, or from Pott's disease or psoas abscess. Perforation of the stomach in ulcer or cancer, of the intestine in typhoid fever, appendicitis and dysentery, are the commonest causes originating in the gastro-intestinal tract. The second focus is purulent inflammation of the Fallopian tubes and the genito-urinary tract. Endometritis and metritis may be the starting-point of such inflammation, which may extend up the Fallopian tube, or there may be parametritis with suppuration, the abscess arising from which may rupture into the peritoneal cavity. All of the different forms of secondary peritonitis are infectious, and caused either by organisms responsible for the primary disease or by such as are set free with the gastric or intestinal contents by perforation. The organisms found under these circumstances are the *streptococcus pyogenes*, the *staphylococcus pyogenes aureus* or *albus*, and the *bacterium coli commune*, the latter especially after perforation of the appendix, also the *tubercle bacillus*. The *ameba coli* has been found in the peritoneal fluid in amebic dysentery. Peritonitis may also occur from infection from more distant foci of suppuration, when it is also called pyemic peritonitis.

Finally, peritonitis not infrequently becomes a complication of pleurisy, articular rheumatism, and nephritis by a process not thoroughly determined. The first is probably the result of extension by continuity, since the two cavities communicate by the lymph-vessels of the diaphragm. The poison of rheumatism, whatever it is, may be the cause of the peritonitis, while the retained excreta which accumulate in the blood in Bright's disease may act similarly.

**Morbid Anatomy**.—This varies somewhat with the extent of the peritonitis and the duration of the attack. First, there may be a "general" or "diffuse" peritonitis, or it may be "circumscribed." In general peritonitis the peritoneal surface of the intestinal coils is hyperemic and covered more or less continuously with flakes of yellow lymph made up of fibrin and leukocytes. This is especially abundant in the sulci between the coils, while it also covers the convexity. In an earlier stage, before the exudate appears, the surface of the peritoneum is dull and rough, owing to a desquamation of the epithelium. In the flanks is found a variable amount of fluid, which may be serous, sero-fibrinous, or purulent, which, increasing, produces an appreciable ascites. In prolonged cases organization and vascularization from the capillaries of the peritoneum take place, the solid contingent being formed from the epithelium or wandering cells, resulting in



adhesions between the coils of intestine and adjacent organs. These are at first soft and easily ruptured, but later becomes firm bands. These latter are, however, more common in the circumscribed form.

In circumscribed peritonitis limited areas of lymph formation occur and adhesions are more pronounced. Copious fibrinous exudate is less frequent, though sometimes quite large circumscribed collections of pus occur, laced off from the remainder of the peritoneal cavity by organized tissue. Such abscesses sometimes rupture into the general peritoneal cavity, producing general inflammation, collapse, and death.

**Symptoms.**—1. *Of an Acute General Peritonitis.*—The most decided symptom is *pain*, usually of extreme severity, which is commensurate in extent with that of the inflammation. There is also extreme *tenderness*, which is similarly limited. So great is this that any tension on the abdominal walls excites pain; hence the legs are drawn up to relieve this, and we have the well-known position almost characteristic of general peritonitis—dorsal decubitus, with the thighs flexed on the abdomen. Any motion such as straining, even the act of breathing and the emptying of the bladder, increases pain. From the nature of the causes this pain is usually sudden in occurrence, succeeding, as it does, on perforation, on abscess rupture, and the like. Sometimes, indeed, it is the first intimation of any illness whatever. *Abdominal distention* is a third characteristic symptom of peritonitis, ascribed to a paralysis of the muscular coat of the bowel, and continues throughout the attack. Rarely, however, the abdomen is flat, hard, and board-like. As rarely, too, pain is altogether absent.

Among the symptoms which may usher in the attack is *vomiting*. It is regarded as reflex in origin, excited by the inflammation of the peritoneum. The effort is sometimes ineffectual, and sometimes a perforation of the stomach permits the more ready discharge of its contents into the abdominal cavity. The vomitus consists of what happens to be in the stomach at the time, or of mucus and, if the symptom is prolonged, of green, bilious matter. The primary vomiting is followed by abatement or exacerbation.

The symptoms which are associated with these or succeed upon them vary with the nature of the cause and extent of the disease. In fulminating cases due to perforation of the bowel, as in typhoid and appendicitis, they are the symptoms of *collapse*—viz., *extreme weakness, cold, clammy skin, frequent, small, and feeble pulse*. The pulse exceeds 120 and often reaches 160 and even more. The breathing-rate is from 30 to 40. The temperature is slightly raised, remains about normal, or may be subnormal. Rarely, it is high—104° to 105° F. (40° to 40.6° C.)—though the skin may feel cool and clammy. The expression is characteristic—Hippocratic. The eyes are sunken, the cheeks and temples are collapsed, and the nose is pinched. The urine is scanty and contains indican.

If the patient survive, the *physical signs* of effusion make their appearance. There is dullness on percussion, first in the flanks, whence it ascends as the fluid increases. If sufficiently abundant, the dullness becomes general and fluctuation may be recognized. Palpation and percussion both occasion pain. A change of position from the back to the side causes a change in the position of the fluid, and corresponding alterations in the physical signs. In severe cases the diaphragm is raised, the apex of the

heart dislocated, and the liver dullness may be obliterated in the mammillary line by combined effusion and extreme tympany. Similar obliteration may happen to the splenic dullness. Both may be restored by turning the patient on his side. Such obliteration is, however, far more characteristic in what is known as *pneumo-peritonitis*, a form of peritonitis caused by perforation from an air-containing organ into the peritoneal cavity, and of intense severity, excited by the pathogenic bacteria thus admitted. Acute pain, rapidly developing collapse, scarcely appreciable pulse, icy coldness of the skin, and great distention of the abdomen are the symptoms. The air, of course, occupies the highest part of the abdominal cavity, covering the liver and spleen, causing the obliteration referred to. The distinctive point in the diagnosis between pneumo-peritonitis and the extreme degrees of the ordinary form is the fact that in the former hepatic dullness is absent even in the midaxillary line when the patient is on his left side, whereas, in simple peritonitis, hepatic dullness may be elicited when the patient is in this position, though it may not be if he is on his back.

Throughout all, the intellect is clear, and while there is often a total lack of realization of the inevitable and usually dreaded end, it is as often thoroughly appreciated by the patient and is viewed with a calmness which increases the awe which always attaches to the presence of the shadow of death. Rarely, in the course of his experience, is the physician called upon to witness a more painful scene. Toward the very end, however, a somnolence commonly supervenes which obscures the expiring moment, or a slight delirium the visions of which may be interpreted by surrounding friends as the first glimpses into another world.

The course of such a case is steadily downward, reaching its end in from two to six days.

2. *Of Acute Circumscribed Peritonitis.*—The symptoms include those of the general form in a very much milder degree. The pain is less severe and more circumscribed, the tenderness proportionate, while neither is sharply defined. Vomiting may also usher in the attack, and may be similarly modified. There may likewise be the signs of collapse, and the patient is often very weak. There is, however, more decided and constant fever though remittent, as in septic fever generally, and the cases run a longer course, ending not rarely in recovery, but more frequently in death from exhaustion.

As already mentioned, circumscribed abscesses are more frequently recognized by fluctuation, and may even point toward the surface, though they are as liable to rupture into the general peritoneal cavity, producing there the symptoms and more usual fatal termination of general peritonitis. This serious termination, at the present day, is often prevented by the timely interference of the surgeon. As varieties of such abscess may be mentioned the perinephric abscess, the pelvic abscess, the subdiaphragmatic abscess, arising from perforation of the stomach or colon or disease of the liver or spleen, and the periappendicial abscess. The results of circumscribed peritonitis in children are sometimes seen in the shape of a painful, fluctuating tumor in the groin. Circumscribed peritonitis is also more or less associated with the symptoms of the disease which causes it.

**Diagnosis.**—That of general peritonitis is seldom difficult, especially in

the fulminating variety. Some days may, however, elapse before the question is settled, for sometimes the symptoms are closely simulated by those of other conditions. Particularly is this the case with extreme tympany and tenderness which are sometimes associated with *typhoid fever*, especially when there is deep-seated ulceration. It not rarely happens that on these symptoms is based the diagnosis of a peritonitis, which is not found at necropsy. *Enterocolitis* may give rise to similar symptoms. On the other hand, it has happened that grave and fatal peritonitis has eluded detection, having been found for the first time at autopsy.

*Hysterical peritonitis* is a term applied to a condition met with in women, when every symptom of acute peritonitis is simulated, even collapse itself. It is needless to say that patients do not die of this disease, and that time settles the question ultimately, and when there is recurrence, as is often the case, a second attack is not likely to mislead.

*Acute hemorrhagic peritonitis* should be mentioned as a variety, the symptoms of which sometimes are the same as those of the ordinary form.

*Circumscribed peritonitis* is more frequently difficult of detection, and its diagnosis often requires a knowledge of the presence of the causative disease to suggest it. Fluctuation is only available in diagnosis when there is superficial abscess. The exploring needle may, however, at times be availed of.

**Prognosis.**—This, in general peritonitis, is almost invariably fatal, only the mildest cases offering the possibility of recovery. Modern surgery has many times saved life even in peritonitis which succeeds perforation in typhoid fever, gastric ulcer, and perforated gall-bladder. The duration of most cases is from two to six days.

Localized peritonitis is a more promising malady. A few cases get well by spontaneous discharge of resulting abscesses, more with the assistance of the surgeon, and some neglected cases doubtless perish when timely aid from this source would have saved life.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of general peritonitis succeeding perforation consists for the most part of measures calculated to relieve the patient's sufferings while awaiting the end. If the opportune moment can be seized, a laparotomy may be performed, for life has been saved frequently; but no rule can be laid down which will aid in the selection of such a moment. Local measures looking toward cure, such as blisters and other counter-irritating agencies are useless. To relieve pain, the hot poultice or ice-bag may be used in turn. Sometimes one gives more relief, sometimes the other. After this, opium may be administered in the minimum degree necessary to relieve pain. I see no advantage in the use of opium for any other purpose, unless it be also to allay vomiting. It has no effect in limiting the spread of the inflammation. When doubt as to diagnosis exists—as to whether there is true peritonitis or painful distention of the bowel—turpentine may be administered with full doses of strychnin, say  $1/30$  to  $1/20$  grain (0.002 to 0.003 gm.), while turpentine may be applied locally. Iced turpentine stupes are often exceptionally grateful. Turpentine enemata under these circumstances are of doubtful utility, in fact, may do more harm than good, and should be discouraged.

Special symptoms, such as nausea, faintness, and exhaustion, require

the treatment usually appropriate to control them. For the first, ice by the mouth or locally, small doses of champagne, and counterirritation are useful. For failing strength, stimulants, local heat, hypodermic injections of ether, digitalis, brandy, and strychnin are available, but I do not approve of the practice, so often pursued by young hospital physicians, of indiscriminately plying these measures when they must evidently be unavailing.

The treatment of circumscribed peritonitis permits the use of local measures not admissible in the general form. Counterirritation by blisters, and especially blood-letting by leeches, is sometimes of signal service in relieving symptoms and may even effect a cure if the primary causing disease is removed. The surgeon and the gynecologist should be early summoned, as it is more frequently through their assistance that a cure is accomplished.

### CHRONIC PERITONITIS.

**Etiology.**—By far the largest majority of cases of chronic peritonitis are tubercular in origin. Some cases are caused by cancer and other morbid growths in the abdomen, while there are also others of simpler origin. Thus originating, we have both a *circumscribed* adhesive peritonitis and a *diffuse* form of the same disease. See also Section on Tuberculosis of the Peritoneum, p. 307.

### CHRONIC ADHESIVE PERITONITIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Chronic Adhesive Sclerosive Peritonitis; Chronic Circumscribed Peritonitis.*

This occurs between adjacent organs, such as the spleen and diaphragm, liver and diaphragm, stomach and liver, and organs in similar relation, as the result of chronic disease in one or the other. The spaces about the gall-bladder, the flexures of the bowels, posterior peritoneum and the omentum may be sites. These adhesive connections are not always close, but sometimes consist of bands of considerable length, such as have already been referred to as occasional causes of obstruction of the bowel.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The primary result is a thickening of the peritoneum with subsequent contraction and adhesion. The condition may begin as a subperitoneal fibroid infiltration.

**Symptoms.**—Constipation or symptoms of obstruction of the bowel are often the first evidence of the existence of such adhesive bands. Other symptoms are a sense of *restriction in the motion* of organs involved, with pain when such motion occurs; also *colicky pains*, and pains resulting from traction exerted in peristalsis. Other vague symptoms occur which go to make the patient uncomfortable, but are not distinctive. Should a peritoneal friction, however, be felt, more conclusive evidence is thus furnished. Should suppuration attend chronic inflammation, more distinctive symptoms also arise. In addition to the pain and tenderness a *hectic fever* may be present, which may guide to a correct conclusion with or without the aid of the exploring needle or eventual rupture into one of the hollow abdominal organs.

## DIFFUSE CHRONIC PERITONITIS

This may succeed upon acute diffuse inflammation of mild degree, which is followed by an abatement in all the symptoms. It may occur in connection with chronic cardiac disease including pericarditis or hepatic disease where there has been long-continued venous stasis; or it may succeed the punctures of numerousappings and, most rarely, chronic intestinal disease.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The peritoneum is thickened. The intestinal coils may be cemented to one another and to neighboring organs. The liver and spleen are sometimes covered by thick, tough, gristly capsules. The omentum and mesentery may be thickened and shrunken. There may be thickened nodules, not tubercular. There is in these cases rarely considerable effusion. A hemorrhagic form, suggesting hemorrhagic pachymeningitis, was described by Virchow. It is more commonly situated in the pelvis and characterized by bloody effusion.

**Symptoms.**—These exhibit for the most part a diminished degree of those characteristics of acute peritonitis, to which may be added *tumor-like swellings and thickenings* and swelling difficult to interpret. Other vague symptoms are engendered by them as the result of contraction and pressure, including *pain, edema, albuminuria, irregularity of the bowel action*, and sometimes *feverishness*. There is little that is characteristic unless it be the occasional presence of recognizable effusion. The very slow forms attended with extensive effusion are not separable from ascites, the result of hepatic disease, although there are differences in the effusion. In peritonitis the effusion is more turbid, contains abundant albumin, and has a specific gravity rather higher than the fluid of an ascites: 1018 as compared with 1012.

A chronic peritonitis not unusual in children from two to ten years old is described by Strümpell and others. It is associated with decided ascites, debility, and other symptoms of ill health more or less marked, while recovery is the usual termination. Such a cause for the ascites should not be assigned without careful search for others, especially disease of the liver.

**Treatment.**—The treatment must be determined by circumstances. It is chiefly palliative, unless operative interference promises more.

## MULTIPLE SEROSITIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Multiple hyaloserositis; Zuckergussleber (Iced Liver); Hyperplastic perihepatitis; Pericarditic pseudocirrhosis of the liver; Indurative mediastinopericarditis; Polyorrhomenitis.*

**Definition.**—An inflammatory affection invading extensive areas of serous membrane, beginning in the pericardium, the pleura, or peritoneum and further characterized by ascites and more rarely by edema of the extremities.

**Etiology.**—No special pathogenic organism has been found associated with the disease, but as suggested by Nicholls,<sup>1</sup> some germ of relatively

<sup>1</sup> Nicholls: Studies from the Royal Victoria Hospital, vol. i., No. 3, April, 1902.

low virulence with a penchant for serous membrane is likely to be the cause of the proliferative inflammation. Such a bacillus may be the pneumococcus, the bacillus of typhoid fever, the bacillus coli and the bacillus tuberculosis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid anatomy of the process varies with the seat of the membrane first invaded and the organs covered or embraced by it. Thus where perihepatitis is primary the primary perihepatitis of Nicholls, ascites appears early and is prone to recur after tapping. The liver itself is large, smooth, subsequently contracted and the Glisson's capsule may take on the appearance of "icing" which has given rise to one of the names of the affection. After this, the pleura is usually invaded, and finally the pericardium. In the cases where pericarditis (primary pericarditis of Nicholls) is primary, an adhesive pericarditis sets in which may be obliterative, and even invade the entire mediastinum. Occasionally only there is a little pericardial effusion. From the pericardium the inflammation extends to the pleura and finally the peritoneum and capsule of the liver. Pleuritic adhesions may be marked as the result of the pleurisy. The spleen is sometimes enclosed in the "icing" capsule, so striking in the case of the liver.

**Symptoms.**—These also vary with the seat of beginning. In the pericardial variety, the symptoms and physical signs, more, or less pronounced of pericarditis, usher in the disease. It is in this form that edema of the extremities and face appears early as the result of cardiac weakness, but may disappear later and be replaced by ascites. Previous to the latter, however, the signs of pleurisy on one or both sides have probably appeared. In the perihepatitic form, enlarged liver, often palpable, with subsequent contraction and ascites, is first noted, followed by symptoms of pleurisy with or without effusion.

Fullness of the abdomen, oppression and dragging weight are also symptoms depending upon the abdominal contingent of the disease. Pulsation of the liver may be present and distinguish the associated disease of this organ from cirrhosis of the liver.

**Diagnosis.**—The chief cause of errors in diagnosis and of late diagnosis is the latency of the affection and the slowness of its development. But this very slowness in association with the signs and symptoms named should be a valuable aid to diagnosis. Emphasis should be laid on the fact that this disease is something different from cirrhosis of the liver which is also associated with ascites but not with pericarditis and pleurisy.

**Prognosis.**—Slowness of development and gradually failing physical strength, with ultimate death from exhaustion are characteristic, but occasional interruptions in the progress of the disease, during which the patient may even resume work for a time, should be added as a feature.

**Treatment.**—There is no treatment except that of the symptoms, including especially effort to build up the strength of the patient.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>This disease is exhaustively discussed in a valuable paper "On Multiple Serositis," read before the College of Physicians of Philadelphia by A. O. J. Kelly, in March, 1902, and published in the Transactions of the College for that year; also in the "American Journal of Medical Sciences," Jan., 1903, page 116. Other papers on the same subject are by:

Curschmann, "Zur differential Diagnostik der mit Ascites verbundenen Erkrankungen der Leber und der Pfortadersystem." "Deutsche medicinische Wochenschrift," 1884, vol. x., p. 564.  
Harris, "Indurative Mediastino-pericarditis." "Medical Chronicle," 1895, vol. ii., pp. 1, 87, 178, 250.  
Nicholls, "Studies from the Royal Victoria Hospital," vol. i., No. 3, April, 1902.

## CANCER OF THE PERITONEUM.

Primary cancer of the peritoneum is an event of extreme rarity. Its occurrence as a true epithelial cancer must, however, be admitted. Colloid cancer also occurs as a diffuse and extensive growth, relatively firm, and without fluctuation. More frequently peritoneal cancer is secondary to cancer of the stomach, bowel, pancreas, uterus, or other organ; most frequently, perhaps, as an extension by contiguity, though also by metastasis. It occurs in the shape of *small* or *large nodules* scattered over the peritoneum. The former constitutes what is known as *miliary carcinoma*. The larger nodules are found in the omentum, in Douglas' culdesac, around the navel and elsewhere, while the retroperitoneal glands may be simultaneously involved.

**Symptoms.**—These are those of chronic peritonitis, including effusion, with the added cachexia, and a diagnosis must be based on these, the antecedent history, and the possible presence of cancer elsewhere. The investigation must include the uterus and the rectum. The physical resemblance of the miliary form to tuberculosis is very marked, and in primary carcinoma the distinction is difficult. Palpation may recognize friction in both. In both the effusion may be bloody, but is more apt to be so in cancer than in tuberculosis. The test injection of tuberculin should be availed of. The cancerous patient is past middle life, the tubercular younger, tubercular peritonitis being especially frequent in children.

## HYDATED DISEASE.

The possible presence of *echinococci* in the peritoneum is to be remembered. The local symptoms may resemble those of cancer very closely. The presence of hydatid tumors elsewhere, as in the liver, of course suggests the true nature of the simulating disease.

Pick, "Ueber chronischer, unter dem Bilde der Lebercirrhose verlaufende Pericarditis" (pericarditische Pseudolebercirrhose). "Zeitschrift für klinische Medicin," 1896, vol. xxix., p. 385.

Siebert, "Ueber die Zuckergussleber (Curschmann) und die pericarditische Pseudolebercirrhose" (Pick). "Virchow's Archiv für path. Anatomie," 1898, vol. cliii., p. 251.

Howard Fussell and Henry D. Jump, A Case of Probable Multiple Serositis.

"Transactions of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia," vol. xxv., p. 55, 1903.

Kelly's paper also contains a large number of references to which the interested reader is referred.

### SECTION III.

#### DISEASES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

##### DISEASES OF THE NOSE.

The first in the natural order of this system are the nasal passages. These are subject to but few medical diseases. They are explored from the front by nasal specula or dilators. The nares are investigated posteriorly by the rhinoscope, which is another name for a very small laryngeal mirror. The mirror is, however, introduced differently. The position of the patient in relation to the observer and source of illumination is much the same, but the head of the former is not raised, and the tongue is best held down by the tongue depressor or the forefinger. The warmed mirror is introduced with the reflecting surface upward, and is passed backward over the tongue behind the uvula until it lies against the posterior wall of the pharynx. It is then directed upward and forward, and upon it will be found the nasal image and that of the vault of the pharynx (see Fig. 41).

##### ACUTE RHINITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Coryza*.

**Definition.**—Simple acute inflammation of the nasal passages.

**Etiology.**—Exposure to cold is the most frequent cause of simple acute rhinitis. In many victims there is a tendency to recurring attacks. The exudative forms, including simple fibrinous rhinitis and nasal diphtheria, are, of course, of an infectious nature.

**Symptoms.**—The well-known uncomfortable full feeling which all have experienced under the name of “cold in the head,” is a frequent event. There may be previous sneezing. The fullness is due to swelling of the mucous membrane, the result of inflammation, and is sooner or later followed by a discharge which, at first watery, may or may not become mucopurulent. With it comes relief of the most uncomfortable symptom, the nasal obstruction. This is most serious in nursing children, in whom it renders sucking often very difficult. There may be slight fever, but the constitutional disturbance is seldom decided, and the elevation of temperature is correspondingly trifling, rarely exceeding a degree. There is sometimes dullness in hearing and perverted sense of taste and smell. The nasal mucous membrane may be involved in diphtheria, constituting diphtheritic rhinitis.

**Treatment.**—When this condition is associated with inflammation of the adjacent mucous membrane of the respiratory passages and of the throat, its treatment is that of the concurrent affection. A promptly acting saline aperient, such as citrate of magnesium or Epsom salts, may



with advantage precede other treatment. An ordinary cold in the head may sometimes be cut short by a full dose of quinin, if given early enough. When the discomfort is sufficient to require treatment, I have had excellent results from the inhalation of a solution of iodine in ether, 2 or 5 grains to the ounce. The discomfort is partially due to the dryness, and this is overcome by the application of any simple ointment, as liquid albolene, cold cream or vaselin, applied by means of a brush or the end of the finger. The same result is better accomplished by the oil spray, for which liquid paraffin

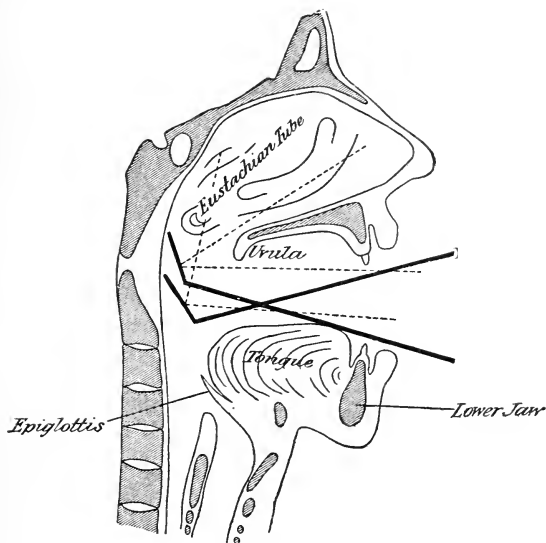


FIG. 41.—Illustrating Technique of Rhinoscopic Examination—(after Sahli).

may be used. Such applications to the adjacent parts are also useful when the discharge is irritating. In infants it is not unusual to apply the grease to the exterior of the nose, and it may be that some good effect is thus produced. Dobell's solution may also be sprayed into the nose, and when dry discharges accumulate, they should be washed out by gentle injections of tepid salt water. Dobell's solution is composed of sodium borate 1 dram (4 gm.), sodium bicarbonate 1 dram (4 gm.), glycerite of carbolic acid (U. S. P.) 2 drams (8 gm.), and water 1 pint (0.5 liter).

## CHRONIC NASAL CATARRH.

SYNONYMS.—*Chronic Rhinitis; Ozena.*

**Definition.**—Chronic inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane, associated with increased secretion and loss of the sense of smell.

**Etiology.**—Chronic catarrh of the nasal passages may be the result of acute inflammation frequently recurring, but more commonly it arises from

special causes. Only a small number of the cases of rhinitis so common in the so-called scrofulous are the result of tuberculosis of the mucous membrane of the nose, but tuberculosis of the nasal passages does occur, and must be recognized as a cause of chronic nasal catarrh. A more frequent cause is syphilis. It must be admitted, however, that these very persons known as "scrofulous"—that is, persons with fair, soft, and translucent skin, in whom inflammations run a slow course—are more subject to the disease, and that it arises in them either spontaneously or is excited by the more ordinary causes, such as recurring "colds." In consequence of the offensive odor frequently associated with one form of chronic nasal catarrh—the atrophic—it has been termed *ozena*.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Two broad divisions of chronic nasal catarrh are made from the anatomical standpoint—the hypertrophic and the trophic. In the *hypertrophic* there is a thickening of the mucous membrane, while in the *atrophic*, a thinning or atrophy is present. In the hypertrophic catarrh, the membrane is red, swollen, and spongy. The cavernous tissue over the turbinated bones shares in the process, and the nasal cavities may be encroached upon from all sides. The protrusion becomes more marked as the disease progresses, and to it is added a greater or less hypersecretion of mucus.

In the *atrophic* or fetid form, the nasal mucous membrane is thinned, the cavities are enlarged, and within them are found the thick, yellowish-green crusts which, in decomposing, give rise to the characteristic offensive odor of this form of rhinitis. The atrophic process involves all the tissues, from the epithelium down to and including the underlying bone. The accessory sinuses connected with the nose—the frontal, ethmoidal, and maxillary—may all become implicated in this disease by extension from the nasal chambers, and may become the seats of chronic purulent inflammation.

**Symptoms.**—The two principal forms of nasal catarrh have certain symptoms in common. In both there is more or less *marked obstruction to nasal respiration*. In the hypertrophic form, however, this is due to actual narrowing of the nasal chambers by the overgrowth of the contained structures, while in the atrophic form it is due to the choking of the passages by the large masses of inspissated mucus and mucopus. There is generally some slight impairment of the *sense of smell* in the hypertrophic form, while in the atrophic it is more often completely abolished. Both forms are usually accompanied by *disturbances of secretion* in the nasopharynx, and these lead to those noisy efforts at clearing the throat termed "hawking." The *ozena*, or fetid odor, is symptomatic only of the atrophic variety. No odor is produced by simple hypertrophic catarrh.

Hypertrophic nasal catarrh is apparently much more common in the United States of America than in Europe—indeed, the observations of the specialists go to show that almost every person is more or less the subject of these hypertrophic processes, of which, in many instances, he is quite ignorant until examination has shown their presence.

**Treatment.**—The proper local treatment of chronic nasal catarrh, which is by far the most important, demands such special measures as in the main can only be carried out by accomplished specialists. This treatment, therefore, so far as can be taken up in this book, can only be palliative,

or, if curative, limited to the early stage of the disease. In all forms of chronic catarrh the most important measures to be employed by the physician, as distinguished from the specialist, are those which have for their purpose the most thorough cleanliness of the affected regions. The simplest means for accomplishing this purpose is sniffing from the palm of the hand simple salt solution of the strength of a teaspoonful of sodium chlorid to a pint (0.5 liter) of water, or some one of the substitutes named below.

This method, however, accomplishes the purpose but feebly, and the same solution can be effectually introduced by the irrigator or nasal douche. There has been much difference of opinion among specialists as to the efficiency and safety of the douche. Doubtless, harmful results have succeeded its careless use, among which are said to have been inflammation of the middle ear and meningitis. Carl Seiler early claimed, as did the late Dr. Elsberg, of New York, that these may be avoided by the observance of proper precautions. According to Seiler, the best irrigator is a tin vessel holding a pint (0.5 liter) and provided with an opening in its bottom, to which a rubber tube may be attached, furnished at the end by a nozzle made of glass, rubber, or wood which fits into the nostril. The vessel is filled with fluid, warmed to a temperature slightly above blood-heat, and the douche should be so placed upon a table or mantel that it does not stand more than an inch above the eyebrows of the patient. If higher, too great pressure may result, and the fluid be forced into the frontal sinuses, causing the frontal headache, or into the Eustachian tube, causing otitis media. The nozzle is introduced into one nostril, and the head being inclined forward the water runs up in that side of the nose until it reaches the velum palati, when it passes around into the other side and through it, bathing the mucous membrane and washing out the mucus or loosening it so that it may be forced out by gentle blowing. It is important that the liquid used should be of the same temperature as the blood, and of the strength which is secured by the proportion named. The plain salt solution may be substituted by alkaline solutions, such as solutions of sodium bicarbonate and borate, of the strength of 1 dram (4 gm.) of either to the pint (0.5 liter), or 1/2 dram (2 gm.) of each combined. The douche sometimes fails of its purpose when the nasal passages are obstructed by deviation of the septum or bony hypertrophies. It should first be used carefully, therefore, under the direction of the physician, who will desist when he finds obstruction. It remains then to use the hand, as directed, or the nasal spray apparatus.

Whatever the dangers of the douche, they do not extend to the spray. As ordinarily used, it is, however, much less efficient. We may use with it varying proportions of "listerine"<sup>1</sup> and water, say from 1 to 4 up to equal parts; also an alkaline solution composed of listerine 1 part, water 4 parts, and 1/2 dram (2 gm.) each of sodium bicarbonate and sodium borate to the pint of this mixture. When large quantities are required to wash out the nasal cavities, the postnasal syringe may be used instead of the nasal douche. Listerine is disinfectant and deodorizing, but salicylic acid and carbolic acid may be added to solutions for these purposes. A plug of borated or salicylated cotton may be used for a like purpose.

<sup>1</sup>For a formula for a solution similar to listerine, spt. thymol comp., see p. 329.

Recently, J. Müller, of Vienna and Carlsbad, has availed himself of the pressure of condensed carbonic acid for producing the spray. He finds that a pressure equivalent to one and a half atmospheres is quite sufficient where a pressure of seven atmospheres by atmospheric air is necessary. Müller, when at Carlsbad, uses the water of the Sprudel Spring at blood-heat, and when at Vienna, an artificial Sprudel water. These sprays are played into each nostril 10 to 15 minutes at a time, and for a like period into the fauces. This treatment is most searching, and yet harmless, as I can attest from a thorough personal examination.

General treatment, although not so important as the local, is still of great value, and the health of the patient should be carefully looked after. In view of the fact that atrophic rhinitis is very apt to occur in scrofulous persons, cod-liver oil is a tonic always indicated, and should be given for a long time, intermitting occasionally to avoid derangement of the stomach. It should be associated with iron, and even with arsenic. Other tonics should be given as indicated, and the best food should be prescribed, including an abundance of meat, eggs, and cream. Wholesome ventilation should be secured for the indoor life, while as much time should be spent in the open air as possible. The air indoors is especially apt to be contaminated by the breathing of the patient with atrophic rhinitis, and on this account good ventilation is imperative. If syphilis is present, it should receive appropriate treatment at once.

### HAY FEVER.

SYNONYMS.—*Catarrhus æstivus*; *Hay Asthma*; *Autumnal Catarrh*; *Rose Cold*; *Pollen Catarrh*; *Vasomotor Coryza*.

**Definition.**—A catarrhal affection of the upper air-passages, associated with asthmatic dyspnea, occurring in the spring, late summer or autumn, ascribed to the pollen of plants and grasses as exciting causes.

**Historical.**—Hay fever was first described by Bostock, an English physician, in 1810, the description being based upon his own experience. He ascribed it to heat. Elliotson, in 1839, appears to have been the first to suggest pollen as its exciting cause. Blakely's observations in his own case (1873) confirmed this view, which is now generally held. Phœbus' classic work was published in Germany in 1862. The first elaborate work by an American was that of Wyman, of Cambridge. George M. Beard, of New York, in 1876, called attention to the neurotic factor. In 1877 Elias Marsh, of New Jersey, read a paper in which he added further evidence to the pollen theory. Voltolini, of Breslau, was the first to point out an anatomical cause—a nasal polyp, the removal of which was followed by the cure of the case. Since then numerous observers have added evidence in this direction, including Hack, in Germany, and Harrison Allen, Charles E. Sajous, William H. Daly, John O. Roe, and John N. Mackenzie in this country. In 1903, Prof. Dunbar, of Hamburg, Germany, demonstrated that the pollen of certain grasses and plants are the existing cause.

**Etiology.**—In a large proportion of cases, hay fever has as its fundamental condition an anatomical change in the nasal passages, such as hypertrophy of the mucous membrane, a polypoid growth, a deflection of the septum, or a lowered position of the inferior turbinated bones so that they rest upon the floor of the nose. These conditions are not always demonstrable, but they, or some allied source of reflex irritation, produce an irrita-

bility. This may be increased by a neurotic constitution, though the latter may not manifest itself until after the attacks have become habitual, so that at times, at least, it is more likely that the neurosis is a result, rather than a cause of the disease. A third necessary etiological factor is an irritant. This irritant, whatever it is, originates usually in the spring or the late summer. In the spring, it has been regarded as due to a pollen coexistent with the fragrance of roses; hence the term, "rose cold" or "June cold." In August and September the pollen of flowering plants is commonly regarded as the exciting cause, and in certain early instances this seems to have been conclusively demonstrated, as by Blakely in his own case. These suppositions have been shown by the studies of Dunbar to be facts. He has *proven* that it is caused by the pollen of certain grasses and plants. Thus far there have been isolated about 25 grasses and seven plants whose pollen is active. The pollen of rye is one of these, and in this country the pollen of rag weed and golden rod are conspicuous in the fall of the year. Almost infinitesimal quantities .000025 of a milligram of an albuminous substance isolated from pollen is capable of producing the required conjunctival irritation in susceptible persons. On the other hand, the pollen of roses, linden flowers and other plants reputed to cause hay fever are without effect.

Changes of temperature may excite attacks and in warm countries, as in the Southern United States, it may prevail the year round. Emotional causes, imaginary odors, and the like may cause it. Heredity is an important factor in its causation, successive generations being attacked with astonishing regularity.

Localities variously favor it. Generally, cities furnish more cases than the country, and low countries more than elevated ones, yet certain seaside places are absolute cures for many cases. Such a place is Long Beach, N. J., where is located Beach Haven, a seaside resort, 50 miles from Philadelphia, which has long been a resort for the victims of hay fever. The disease is more common in the United States than in Europe, and in the United States than elsewhere in America. It is more common in men than in women, there being three cases of the former to every two of the latter.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no morbid anatomy other than that referred to in the remarks on the etiology of the disease.

**Symptoms.**—The onset of hay fever may be quite sudden, coming on with remarkable regularity often on the same day of the month each year. At other times it is more gradual in its onset. It frequently begins with *sneezing*, and, indeed, may consist entirely of inveterate sneezing. At other times there are *asthmatic attacks* of great severity, closely resembling those of bronchial asthma, constituting the "asthmatic type" of the disease. Again, there may be *obstinate cough*, with or without expectoration; or there may be an alternation of the two symptoms, but generally there is more or less persistent *shortness of breath*. There is also often great *depression of spirits*, and victims have even been impelled to suicide. The eyes are suffused with redness, and there may be conjunctivitis.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis furnishes no difficulty. The season of the year and the periodical recurrence of the cough and asthma combine to make the recognition easy.

**Prognosis.**—Patients seldom die of hay asthma, yet I have known cases which seemed to be almost dying when they reached the haven which afforded them relief.

**Treatment.**—The complete *cure* of an individual attack is seldom accomplished except by removal from the district in which the patient resides. The White Mountains and the Adirondack Mountains are favorite resorts in the eastern part of the United States, and Bethlehem, N. H., is the Mecca of American hay-fever victims, though other places in the same neighborhood are equally exempt. The Catskills and Alleghanies are less celebrated. Certain seaside resorts have also a deserved reputation; Beach Haven, N. J., has already been mentioned; Fire Island, on the Atlantic Coast outside of New York Bay; the Isles of Shoals, Nantucket, and Mount Desert, on the New England coast, are others. Sometimes a sea voyage will abort a threatened attack, and some persons are quite exempt while at sea.

A few cases have been totally cured by operations on the nasal cavities, such as correcting deviations, and the removal of hypertrophic processes by the knife or actual cautery, but the confident expectation which followed some of the earlier of these operations has not been realized.

*Home treatment*, at best, has been uncertain and but partially successful, and, as is always the case with a malady so difficult to cure, the number of remedies is legion.

For the present, treatment by Dunbar's antitoxin or "pollantin" holds the palm, but its true value has not been determined. My friend Alexander W. MacCoy has shown that a different serum is required in this country for the successful treatment of the hay fever in the spring from that required for autumnal catarrh. Both a liquid serum and a dry powder are prepared and are applied to the nasal or conjunctival mucous membrane two or three times a day, while the prophylactic treatment is far more satisfactory than the curative. Doors and windows should be kept closed at night during the hay-fever season.

Irrigation of the nasal passages by the nasal douche or spray with simple salt solution or weak solutions of quinin, 1 grain (0.065 gm.) to the ounce (15 c.c.), has been used, with varying results. Helmholtz was the first to suggest quinin solution, and thought it efficient. The oil spray is another efficient measure of this kind. A strong solution of cocain—four to ten per cent.—applied with a brush affords temporary relief, but the effect soon wears away, and there is danger of forming the cocain habit. Subnitrate of bismuth and boric acid, 1/2 dram (2 gm.) to the ounce (15 gm.) of vaselin of simple ointment, will sometimes allay the itching. Solution of suprarenal extract will be considered later. Boric acid, 10 grains (0.65 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.) of water, may be used for the conjunctivitis.

It is usual to give the quinin internally also, in dose of 10 to 15 grains (0.65 to 1 gm.) a day. Iodid of potassium and belladonna, so efficient in bronchial asthma, are of little use in hay asthma, but I have known them to be of service. The iodid is better given in small doses, frequently repeated, as 3 grains (0.2 gm.) every two hours. Fowler's solution has some reputation. Morphin is undoubtedly a useful palliative, but its employment is to be deferred until other measures fail. From 1/8 to 1/2 grain (0.008 to 0.03 gm.) may be required, and the smaller doses should be tried first. Chloral is also

of undoubted use as a palliative, and is much safer than morphin, with which it may be combined. It renders smaller doses of the anodyne more efficient, and may be given in combination with  $1/24$  to  $1/12$  grain (0.0027 to 0.0055 gm.) of morphin at short intervals. Suprarenal extract has acquired considerable reputation in the treatment of hay fever. S. Solis Cohen and Beamon Douglass were among the first to report favorably on its effect. It acts by reducing turgescence of the turbinated tissue. It is used externally and internally. For local applications a fresh solution is made by shaking the dried extract with water, and after allowing it to stand for an hour or two the clear solution is removed from the top and the precipitate discarded. In the shape of a spray the solution may be used every two hours until the symptoms have subsided, repeating the treatment on the appearance of obstruction, coryza, and sneezing. Adrenalin solution, strength 1 to 1000, is of late the usual preparation, applied with a brush; or a mixture of the same solution of adrenalin with equal parts of four per cent. solution of cocain may be used. Internally suprarenal extract may be given in the tablet form or in a capsule. Five to 10 grains are administered, day and night, every two hours until an examination of the nasal membrane shows that the vaso-motor paralysis is under control, or until giddiness or palpitation is noticed. After this improvement the same dose may be given every three hours, then every six hours, and finally, only twice daily, which is continued during the hay-fever season. If the dose is too rapidly diminished and the symptoms reappear, one tablet should again be given every two hours until the symptoms are controlled. Adrenalin solution is also administered internally in doses of 10 minims (0.3 c.c.) of the 1 to 1000 solution. Mild cases may be comparatively comfortable during the season when the extract is used in this way. If the pure dried extract is used 1 to 3 grains may be given in a capsule.

## DISEASES OF THE LARYNX.

**Examination of the Larynx.**—For the proper investigation of the morbid states of the larynx the laryngoscopic mirror has become almost as indispensable as the stethoscope in the study of diseases of the chest. Only under the most favorable circumstances, when direct sunlight is available, may it be used with natural light. In such event, the head-mirror, intended to direct the light upon the throat and laryngoscope, should be plane. Artificial light is far more convenient, and for its management a concave mirror is required. The light may be directed upon the throat by means of a condensing lens, but the mirror is not only more convenient, but also less costly. The patient should sit in front of the examiner, whose eyes should be on a level with the mouth of the former, at a distance of about one foot. The convenience of a head-rest and a stool which can be raised or lowered to suit the stature of the patient is at once apparent. The light should be placed on the right of the patient's head, and a little behind it, at about the level of the ear. The head-mirror is then adjusted upon the middle of the examiner's forehead, no attention being paid to the central perforation. The patient's head should be slightly raised and the

light reflected into the open mouth, of which a general survey should first be made. The patient's tongue is held down by a tongue depressor, or drawn out with the aid of a napkin, and may be held by the patient himself. The larynx is thus drawn up at the same time. The mirror, slightly warmed and tested upon the back of the hand, is then carried carefully over the tongue, between it and the palate, without touching either, or gagging will inevitably result, especially at the first examination. The uvula is gently pushed up by the mirror, and the handle carried to one side, and raised or lowered until the larynx comes into view. Practice is, of course, necessary

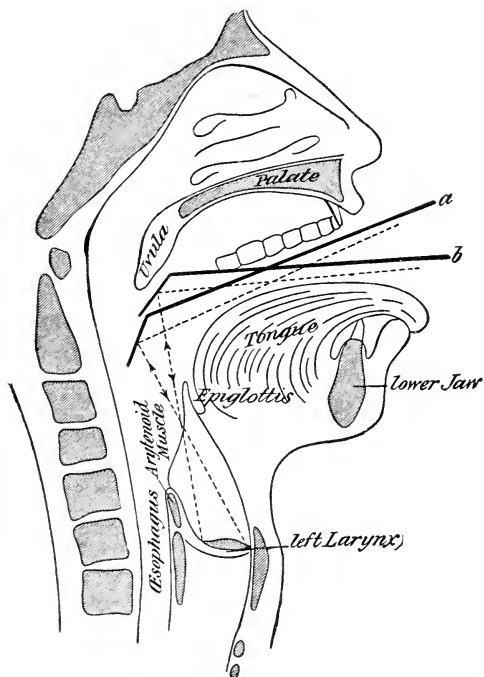


FIG. 42.—Illustrating Technique of Laryngoscopic Examination—(after Sahli).

to secure success. The patient is requested to say "Ah," in order that the epiglottis may be made to rise and the vocal cords approach each other.

As stated, much practice is required on the part of both patient and physician to enable the latter to avail himself of the mirror in the most satisfactory manner. Some persons can barely allow the mouth to be approached, while others are not at all sensitive. The mirror should be at once withdrawn on the occurrence of gagging, and gradually its presence will be endured. Various devices have been suggested for the improvement of the illumination in the use of the laryngoscope, and they include



the electric light, but for these the reader is referred to books especially devoted to the subject.

The best shape for the laryngeal mirror is, on the whole, circular, but special conditions may demand the oval form. Figure 42 shows the image at rest and during phonation.

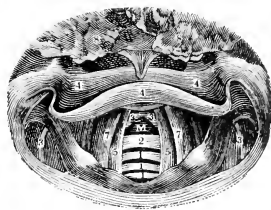


FIG. 43.—Natural Size of Image of the Vocal Apparatus.

1, 1, 1. Rings of the windpipe. 2. Cricoid cartilage. 3, 3, 3, 3. Thyroid cartilage. 4, 4, 4. Epiglottis. 5, 5. Vocal cords. 7, 7. Ventricular bands or false vocal cords. 8, 8. Back part of the tongue. M. Cricothyroid membrane.

## LOCAL MEASURES EMPLOYED IN THE TREATMENT OF LARYNGEAL DISEASE.

Applications to the larynx may be made in four different ways:

1. By inhalation.
2. By lozenge or troche.
3. By insufflation.
4. Direct application.

The general practitioner must, in the main, confine himself to the first three, and much may be accomplished by them, particularly by the judicious use of the atomizer. Cases are rare in which the direct application of medicated substance to the larynx is necessary, and requiring as they do the simultaneous skillful use of the laryngeal mirror, they are for the most part relegated to the specialist.

*Inhalations* are further divided into three:

- (a) Nebulæ, or atomized fluid—sprays.
- (b) Steam or vapor.
- (c) Volatile substances.

1. A great variety of apparatus is employed for spraying medicated solutions into the larynx, and undoubtedly the most efficient is the compressed-air machine with spraying tubes, but the cheaper forms of atomizers are also useful. Many excellent machines are to be had, but rubber tubes are to be preferred where chemically active solutions are to be used. A double hand-ball secures a more continuous stream of spray than a single one. The spray should be thrown into the wide-open mouth, and advantage taken of inspiration to draw it into the larynx, and a very little practice will teach the patient how to accomplish this. Astringents are the favorite medicaments, of which alum and tannin are the most usual—of alum a three per cent. solution, 15 grains (1 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.) of water; of tannin, a 1 to 2 per cent. solution, 5 to 10 grains (0.32 to 0.65 gm.) to

the ounce (30 c.c.). Other substances are sulphate of zinc, 15 grains (1 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.); chlorate of potash, 15 grains (1 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.); sulphate of iron and ammonia, 12 to 1 dram (2 to 4 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.). Before any of these solutions are used, however, the larynx should be cleansed from mucus by an alkaline spray, say Dobell's solution, or dilute listerine alkalized.

Steam inhalation may consist of hot steam alone, or the vapor may be charged with a volatile substance. The efficiency of the former in acute laryngitis has already been referred to, and it is in acute disease that it is chiefly used. Benzoin, benzoic acid, and, for chronic conditions, cubeb and benzoate of ammonium are among the substances added. A teaspoonful of the compound tincture of benzoin may be added to a pint of water at 140° F. (60° C.), and placed in any one of the numerous inhalers, of which, however, none is better than an ordinary teapot. Volatile substances like nitrate of amyl are commonly inhaled for spasmodic bronchial disorders, to the treatment of which further allusion will be made.

2. The *lozenge* or *troche* is a favorite medium for medicating the larynx, and is often useful. Few have failed to realize the effect of a stimulating lozenge in clearing the throat, or the soothing effect of one of the anodyne or demulcent kind. An infinite variety is made, and the properties sought are stimulating, astringent, or anodyne, or a combination of two or more of these. Among the first is the lozenge of benzoic acid, the strength of 1/2 grain (0.03 gm.) to each lozenge; the cubeb lozenge contains from 1 to 2 grains (0.065 to 0.13 gm.) each; the ammonium chlorid lozenge contains 3 to 5 grains (0.2 to 0.32 gm.); the potassium chlorate lozenge contains 5 grains (0.32 gm.). The astringent lozenge is made up of tannic acid 1 grain (0.065 gm.), catechu 2 grains (0.13 gm.), kino 2 grains (0.13 gm.), gallic acid 2 grains (0.13 gm.). Sedative lozenges contain opium in very small quantities, say 1/20 to 1/10 grain (0.002 to 0.006 gm.) in each, or of morphin 1/30 to 1/15 grain (0.002 to 0.004 gm.), lactucarium extract 1 grain (0.065 gm.), althea 1 grain (0.065 gm.). The selection of a suitable adjuvant in the preparation of lozenges is best left to the apothecary. Three to five lozenges a day at various intervals are allowed to dissolve in the mouth.

3. The treatment of the larynx by *insufflation* is sometimes very useful. The difficulty in the preparation of the powder is such that it may be irritating from a failure to secure sufficient subdivision of its constituents. The powder is applied by means of an instrument known as the insufflator. Starch is the basis of most of this class of remedies. Among the astringent powders are tannic acid and powdered starch, equal parts; alum and powdered starch, equal parts. Sedative powders contain of acetate of morphin 2, 5, 8, and 10 grains (0.13, 0.32, 0.52, 0.65 gm.) to 1/2 ounce (15 gm.) of iodoform. Pure iodoform is also used; 3 drams each (12 gm.) of iodoform and subnitrate of bismuth with 1/2 ounce (15 gm.) powdered starch; also borate of sodium 3 drams (12 gm.), powdered starch 1/2 ounce (15 gm.). Anesthesin is similarly used for local anodyne purposes.

4. The *direct application* is usually made by means of a brush, sponge, or cotton wad. The favorite remedy is the solution of nitrate of silver of the strength of from 10 to 15 grains (0.65 to 1 gm.) to the ounce (30

c.c.), the weaker solutions being first used, as they are often quite effectual. The application should only be made after considerable experience, and always with the aid of the laryngeal mirror, which, indeed, should be used whenever possible in making applications of any kind. Local treatment with nitrate of silver should be used every three or four days, the larynx being previously cleansed with a weak alkaline spray. Ten per cent. solution of resorcin in glycerin is a good application.

The selection of these various forms of medication in chronic laryngitis must be based on the requirements of the case, but the order in which they generally prove most useful seems to be about as follows, subject, however, to frequent variation:

1. Inhalation of medicated spray.
2. Inhalation of stimulating vapor, especially when there is much secretion.
3. Topical applications by the cotton wad.
4. Insufflation of powders.

Topical applications with the brush are likely to be made much earlier by the specialist than by the general practitioner.

The frequent association of chronic laryngitis with nose and throat conditions renders associated treatment necessary in these cases. In such, the method of spraying devised by J. Müller and described on p. 536 is an efficient aid.

## ACUTE CATARRHAL LARYNGITIS.

**Etiology.**—The most common cause of catarrhal laryngitis is cold, but predisposition plays a most important part. Such predisposition may be the result of previous attacks of laryngitis, or it may be brought about by constant use of the organ in speaking and singing; whence it is common with persons thus engaged. In these occupations the larynx is hyperemic from overuse, and this hyperemia is ever ready to be fanned into active inflammation. Exposure to cold is constantly at hand to furnish the exciting cause. Laryngitis is also brought about by the inhalation of irritating vapors or gases, while intemperate smoking and the use of strong alcoholic drinks are also causes of the hyperemia so readily converted into an inflammation. Catarrhal laryngitis is frequently associated with catarrh of the adjacent parts, as of the nose and pharynx, trachea, and bronchi.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—It is characteristic of the mucous membrane of the larynx, and, indeed, of the trachea and larger bronchi below it, that it loses, postmortem, the anatomical characters of the inflammatory process as they appear during life. It is only by the image in the laryngeal mirror, therefore, that we can obtain an idea of these appearances as they present themselves during active inflammation. The picture thus obtained by the laryngeal mirror is one of intense redness, with swelling. These changes involve the true and false vocal cords and the trachea below, as well as the epiglottis above. The latter appears in strong contrast to the yellowish-pink of health. Even greater is the contrast between the appearance of the vocal cords and the pearly white of health. If secretion has set in, streaks of

mucus may be seen in places. Excessive swelling of these parts is known as edema of the glottis, but it is not frequent in simple acute laryngitis and will be described separately.

**Symptoms.**—The most constant symptoms of acute laryngitis are *hoarseness* and *cough*, which vary with the degree of the swelling and hyperemia, and which also give rise to a sense as of something present in the larynx and a constant desire to clear the throat. In high degrees of inflammation there may be *aphonia*. To these there is sometimes added *pain during deglutition*; with higher degree of inflammation there is a feeling of *constriction* or *oppression*. The cough is more or less *husky* and often stridulous. It is further characterized by its *dryness* and sometimes the act is *painful*. Both these features disappear with the establishment of secretion. There is generally a *slight febrile movement*, seldom very high. All of these symptoms are aggravated as the disease becomes more severe, culminating in the intense distress and impending suffocation accompanying *edema* of the glottis.

**Treatment.**—The patient should be kept in a uniformly warm, moist air, while special *inhalations* of such air are extremely useful both in giving him comfort and in abating the inflammation. They require no complicated apparatus. A piece of rubber tubing may be attached to the spout of a teapot or kettle, or the steam may be collected by an ordinary funnel and carried thence to the mouth. For obvious reasons, care should be taken that the funnel be not allowed to become too hot. Special appliances in the shape of a steam atomizer, more costly and scarcely more useful, may be used instead of the simple measures. *Cold applications* may be made to the outside of the throat. More rarely counterirritation by mustard may answer better. The irritative cough may require to be relieved by *anodynes*, which may consist of small doses of opium or some one of its preparations or derivatives. *Expectorants* are of doubtful value, and certainly are not nearly so useful as the simple measures which have been mentioned.

#### SPASMODIC CATARRHAL LARYNGITIS OR FALSE CROUP.

**Definition and Symptoms.**—What is known as spasmodic croup in children of from one to five years is acute catarrhal laryngitis, to which is added a *spasm of the glottis*, producing the hard, stridulous breathing, with *croupy cough* characteristic of this affection, which, once heard, is never forgotten. It is produced by the same causes. To the croupy cough are added *extreme restlessness* and an *anxious expression*. The attacks generally come on suddenly at night, the child waking from a sound sleep, although warning is often given by some disturbance of respiration while the child still sleeps. There is little fever. The next day the child may appear almost or quite well, or there may be a slight croupy cough, yet there may occur another attack on the following night and even the third, while in very severe cases the recurrences continue for a week.

**Diagnosis.**—The only condition with which spasmodic croup can be confounded is diphtheritic croup, and then only if no membrane is visible in the latter. The throat should always be examined; the nose as well. In

diphtheria, suddenness of onset seldom occurs, and the child is much sicker previous to the croup. There is high fever and the anxiety of expression is much greater. In doubtful cases a bacteriological examination should be made.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis in all forms of acute laryngitis is generally favorable, and death is very rare from spasmodic croup. Carelessness may, however, prolong an attack.

**Treatment.**—The favorite measure to break the paroxysm of croup in children is an emetic. The simplest of emetics is ipecacuanha, which may be given in the shape of the wine or syrup in the dose of  $\frac{1}{2}$  dram to a dram (2 to 4 c. c.) every few minutes until vomiting is produced. The mineral emetics are more prompt, but more depressing in their action. An excellent remedy for the purpose is powdered alum with molasses or honey, which may be given in teaspoonful doses, repeated every 10 or 15 minutes until vomiting is produced, but it is not often necessary to give a second dose. While waiting for the action of the emetic the little patient may be put into a hot bath—temperature  $98^{\circ}$  to  $112^{\circ}$  F. ( $36.7^{\circ}$  to  $44.4^{\circ}$  C.)—and some mustard may be added. The temperature is kept up by the addition of hot water, as required. The majority of attacks of spasmodic croup may be broken up in this way without further treatment. Between the paroxysms the child should receive small doses of syrup or wine of ipecac, say 5 to 10 minims (0.33 to 0.66 c.c.), until nausea is produced, or small doses of powder of ipecac conveniently in the shape of triturates containing  $\frac{1}{20}$  grain (0.003 gm.) every two hours, for an infant a year old. An opiate is particularly useful at bedtime, and by means of it a child may often be tided through a night without an attack.

Just as early as possible in the treatment an aperient should be given, than which none is better than castor oil, but calomel is also an admirable remedy for children, given in doses of from 1 to 3 grains (0.06 to 0.2 gm.). When there is fever, aconite and sweet spirits of niter in appropriate doses should be given. Special pains should be taken to maintain a uniform temperature and avoid drafts, especially when the child is perspiring freely, and it is on this account that bed is the safest place.

Counterirritation by weak mustard plasters is an adjunct to treatment which should never be omitted, while gentle permanent irritation is very useful. It may be secured by any of the rubber-spread plasters now sold, known as porous plasters or caprine plasters. In severe cases, ice to the exterior of the throat, or cloths wrung out of iced water should be used, especially when there is much fever.

Parents are naturally anxious to secure some treatment by which the recurrence of attacks is prevented. It is to be remembered that a gradually increasing immunity comes with added years. Certainly no medicine can produce immunity. It is possible, however, to do something by care and judicious outdoor life, by which is secured a "hardening" or protection against the more usual causes of laryngitis. As an instance of neglect of ordinary care may be mentioned the practice so common, especially among the poorer classes, of allowing children with their heads uncovered to be at an open doorway or open window in the cooler seasons of the year. Often a mother will be seen standing with her infant thus exposed

in her arms. Such exposure is very apt to be followed by an attack of croup the same night. Children are also often too warmly clad while in the house, so that their bodies are constantly moist with perspiration. In this condition a current of air, even when not very cold, will often produce spasmodic laryngitis. Children who are housed are much more susceptible to croup than those who spend a portion of each day in the open air.

### SIMPLE CHRONIC CATARRHAL LARYNGITIS.

**Etiology.**—The causes of nonspecific chronic catarrhal laryngitis are chiefly those which have been already mentioned as producing the predisposition to acute laryngitis—that is, the constant use of the voice in speaking and singing, excessive smoking, and the use of strong alcoholic drinks. Laryngitis occasioned by smoking and whisky drinking is often accompanied by chronic granular pharyngitis. So, too, frequently recurring attacks of acute catarrhal laryngitis independent of predisposing cause, and the long-continued inhalation of slightly irritating substances are to be included among the causes of chronic inflammation.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid anatomy of simple chronic catarrhal laryngitis is commonly not widely different from that of the acute form. There are the same redness and swelling, but the former is less vivid. The chronic hoarseness which is so constantly associated with it is due to a permanent thickening of the parts concerned in the production of the voice. Ulceration is not common, although there may be superficial erosions. The follicular glands are often distended, and, if the inflammation is long kept up, a hyperplasia of the squamous epithelium may result in a moderate villous outgrowth on the cords. Nodular swellings on the vocal cords are also a recognized, but rare condition, known as *chorditis tuberosa* or *pachydermia laryngis*. Relaxation of one or both cords is often present, and maintains the voice symptoms as long as it continues.

**Symptoms.**—The most prominent symptom of chronic laryngitis is *hoarseness*, which is found in every degree from a simple roughness of the voice to almost entire loss of it. There are also more or less *pain* and *discomfort*, but these are not ordinarily conspicuous symptoms, except when an attempt is made to use the voice. There is a decided disposition to *cough*, with a view of getting rid of some foreign substance which seems to be in the larynx. The cough also varies in degree. It may be a mere hack, or it may be scraping or ringing. It is also variously effectual in bringing up a secretion of mucus and mucopus, scanty for the most part.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of chronic catarrhal laryngitis is not encouraging for total recovery, largely, perhaps, because it is so difficult to induce the patient to comply with the conditions essential to his cure. Could this entire cooperation be secured, sometimes withheld through no fault of his own, it is not unlikely that better results would follow treatment.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of chronic catarrhal laryngitis requires, first, the removal of its causes, whatever they may be. The public speaker cannot expect to be cured of his malady while he continues the use of his

voice, nor can the singer, or he who works among irritating vapors, nor the *bon vivant* who will not give up his alcohol. Next to the removal of the cause comes the use of local measures because internal medication is not promising. Of course, the patient's general condition must be looked after and his strength maintained, but *local treatment is the most important.*

## TUBERCULOUS LARYNGITIS.

**Etiology.**—The occurrence of primary tuberculous laryngitis, long denied, has come to be generally conceded as possible, though rare. With the accepted view of the etiology of tuberculous phthisis, tuberculous laryngitis of the primary kind ought to be of frequent occurrence, for if the tubercle bacillus reaches the respiratory passages from without, the first point of attack would naturally be the larynx. The fact that such is not the case can only be explained on the ground that the bacillus fails to find in the mucous membrane of the larynx conditions as favorable for its growth and multiplication as it finds in the deeper portions of the lung. Since tuberculosis of the larynx is commonly secondary to the same affection of the lungs, the bacillus probably invades the larynx from the expectoration inoculation being favored by the greater or less friction between the vocal cords. Tuberculous laryngitis occurs as a complication of 20 to 25 per cent. of all cases of pulmonary tuberculosis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—To the essential morbid anatomy of tuberculous laryngitis is always added that of simple catarrhal laryngitis. The latter has been described. The first stage of miliary tuberculosis without ulceration is sometimes recognized by the laryngoscope, appearing sometimes as pearly granulations in the mucous membrane, more frequently as a less distinctive, close, small-celled infiltrate. The tuberculous ulcer is more easily discovered, yet it possesses no one anatomical character by which it can be infallibly recognized. Nor are all the ulcers in the larynx associated with tuberculosis of the lungs necessarily tuberculous. The larynx is more vulnerable to the ordinary causes of simple laryngitis under these circumstances, while the constant coughing and gagging in consumption may of themselves cause laryngitis. The true tuberculous ulcer results from the caseation and disintegration of the miliary tubercle. The ulcer thus produced by the fusion of adjacent miliary tubercles is at one stage more or less characteristic by its racemose or sinuous edge, resembling in this respect the conglomerate tuberculous ulcer elsewhere. Its favorite seat is the posterior part of the larynx, i. e., the posterior part of the vocal cords, the interarytenoid fold and the laryngeal surface of the arytenoid cartilages. The epiglottis is less commonly invaded, and the ventricular bands more seldom. In the case of the epiglottis there is swelling, succeeded by ulceration.

**Symptoms.**—The early symptoms of tuberculous laryngitis differ in no way from those of simple catarrhal laryngitis, and it is the intractability of the disease which often gives the first intimation of its tuberculous nature. The stage of simple *hoarseness* with which it is always ushered in varies also in duration, but sooner or later it is succeeded by the *aphonia* and the *pain-*

*ful whispering voice* which are so characteristic of ulceration of the vocal cords or the other parts intimately concerned in the production of the voice. Sooner or later, too, *painful deglutition* sets in as a result of the extension of the ulcerative process to the more exposed portions of the larynx. The pain on deglutition is often agonizing, and is due to the fact that during the act the constrictor muscles of the pharynx squeeze the sensitive epiglottis and arytenoids. Inanition and emaciation characteristic of the latter stages of the disease now rapidly increase, and death is often a welcome relief to the sufferer.

**Diagnosis.**—Just suspicion attaches to an obstinate laryngitis associated with acknowledged tuberculosis of the lung. With obstruction of the larynx the auscultatory signs of tuberculosis are sometimes wanting, so that we must depend on the percussion sounds entirely. As has been intimated, the distinctive features of the ulceration are scarcely sufficiently well marked to enable us to recognize the tuberculous ulcer by the laryngoscope, and to distinguish it either from the *ulceration of syphilis* or that of certain stages of *malignant disease*. To distinguish it from the former, tuberculosis elsewhere and the history of the case may help to a conclusion, while in case of further doubt, the tuberculin test or the therapeutic test by iodids and mercurials may be used. Syphilitic laryngitis, even when it is ulcerative, quickly yields to these remedies, as a rule, while the tuberculous condition is quite unaffected by them. With the healing of the former comes also the tendency to contraction so characteristic of all cicatrization, and especially of that of syphilitic ulcers. It is also to be remembered that syphilitic ulceration and tuberculous ulceration are sometimes associated. The involvement of the tongue in the infiltrating and ulcerating process is more characteristic of tuberculosis.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of tuberculous laryngitis is unfavorable at best. It is true that of late years the reported cures of laryngeal tuberculosis have become much more numerous, but these still bear a very small proportion to the cases that progress from bad to worse, in spite of the most skilled treatment. It is to be expected that primary tuberculous laryngitis is much more easily curable than the form secondary to consumption of the lungs. Severe pain and signs of stenosis of the larynx are unfavorable symptoms.

**Treatment.**—All measures which have been mentioned as useful in the treatment of chronic catarrhal laryngitis are also more or less so in tuberculous disease, with, however, less complete and less permanent results. Marvelous effects have been reported as following the use of lactic acid, while iodoform and even alkaline inhalations are also said to have healed tuberculous ulcers. We hear much less of lactic acid of late. Two noteworthy cases illustrative of its efficiency are reported by Percy Kidd in "The Clinical Journal" (London), July 31, 1895. It requires the skill of the specialist for its application. All local treatment must be, of course, associated with that of general tuberculosis of the lungs. The painful deglutition, which is at once so characteristic and so distressing, has been relieved by the use of cocain applied directly to the larynx by the brush or by the spraying apparatus. The latter is the more convenient, because it can be used by the patient himself. For this purpose a two per cent. solution is



suitable. A stronger—10 or 20 per cent.—may be necessary, but this must be applied with a brush by a second person. They should be used some minutes before the taking of food, as deglutition is rendered less painful for the time being by their successful application. Solutions of morphin may be sprayed for the same purpose, or the morphin, either pure or mixed with powder or starch, may be insufflated upon the painful larynx. Iodoform is used for the same purpose in the same manner. When the pain is persistent and frequent applications are necessary, I have found none more satisfactory than the official solution of morphin sprayed into the larynx. Food may be introduced by Wolfenden's method, placing the patient on his back with the head lower than the body.

## SYPHILITIC LARYNGITIS.

**Etiology and Morbid Anatomy.**—It is not necessary to dwell on the etiology of syphilitic laryngitis, as there is but one cause—the virus of syphilis. Syphilitic laryngitis may be either secondary or tertiary, and may occur at any time in the course of the disease subsequent to the second or third month following infection. Like tuberculous laryngitis, the morbid anatomy of the syphilitic form is associated with that of simple catarrhal laryngitis of the chronic kind. Excessive mucous and muco-purulent secretions cover the surface of the epiglottis and the vocal cords, while the ulcer of syphilitic laryngitis is usually more distinctive in its characters than is that of tuberculous laryngitis. The milder forms of syphilitic laryngitis are not accompanied by ulceration and are in no way peculiar, from the anatomical standpoint. The most distinctive anatomical manifestation of syphilis in the larynx is the mucous patch, like that on mucous membranes elsewhere. It is found on the epiglottis, in the laryngeal wall, and on the epiglottidean folds; rarely, on the vocal cords. The patches are rarely replaced by ulceration. The breaking down of the syphilitic gumma gives rise to another form of syphilitic ulcer, often of greater depth. The ulcer may come to a standstill at any stage, and cicatrization take place with deformity and permanent change of voice. In addition, necrosis of the laryngeal cartilages is not infrequent, portions of these being at times expectorated. Among the results of cicatrization are stenosis, resulting sometimes in complete obstruction, necessitating even tracheotomy for their relief.

**Symptoms.**—These are essentially the same as in tuberculous laryngitis, hoarseness, cough, aphonia, pain in deglutition.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of syphilitic laryngitis is justified in the absence of tuberculosis elsewhere, especially when the history of primary syphilis is present.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of this form of laryngitis is rather more favorable than that of tuberculous disease, especially if the diagnosis be made early. The effect of contraction after healing is, however, often serious in producing stenosis, or, at least, a permanent impairment of the voice.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of syphilitic laryngitis is the treatment for

the general affection plus the topical treatment. The latter includes the use of measures to free the larynx of mucus and muco-pus, these being followed by applications of strong solutions of nitrate of silver to the ulcers, or even the solid stick. An insufflation of iodoform, in combination with bismuth and a little morphin, is an excellent addition to the treatment.

### EDEMA OF THE GLOTTIS.

**Definition.**—By edema of the glottis is meant edema of those parts which immediately surround that opening.

**Symptoms.**—Its consideration has been deferred to this place because it so commonly results from the other conditions which have just been described, or accompanies them. Thus, it may occur in connection with acute laryngitis, though rarely, and occasionally with the tuberculous and syphilitic form of chronic laryngitis. It not infrequently, also, is a complication of general diseases attended with dropsy, especially Bright's disease, more rarely typhoid fever, small-pox, and even diseases of the heart. In any of the latter conditions it may come on quite suddenly. The more precise situation is the submucous tissue of the aryteno-epiglottic folds or of the ventricular bands. The edema may also involve the epiglottis. It occurs most frequently in middle life, but it also happens in the young.

An additional symptom of this condition is a feeling of *intense oppression* or *suffocation*. The *breathing is stridulous*, and the efforts of the patient to obtain air may bring into play all the extraordinary muscles of respiration, the whole expression being in extreme cases one of great anguish.

**Treatment.**—For the mild degrees of edema of the glottis the prompt application of a blister to the larynx is often sufficient to relieve the symptoms. Another remedy of some value in the milder cases is a direct spray, frequently repeated, of a solution of alum, 20 grains (1.3 gm.) to the fluid-ounce (30 c.c.). In the treatment of the severer cases, cold plays an important rôle. Ice should be constantly kept in the mouth, as well as applied externally by means of ice-bags. If obtainable, the Leiter coil may be used. When danger is imminent, and time is too limited to wait for the tardy action of blisters, a half dozen or more leeches may be applied over the region of the larynx. These failing to afford relief, scarification of the edematous tissues is to be promptly performed, and, as *dernier ressorts*, either intubation or tracheotomy.

The hypodermic administration of pilocarpin has been remarkably successful in some cases, and particularly when the symptoms are of a sthenic nature this should never be omitted. One-quarter of a grain (0.0165 gm.) is the proper dose thus administered.

### PARALYSIS OF THE LARYNGEAL MUSCLES.

To understand these clearly it is necessary to remember—

1. That there are eight intrinsic muscles of the larynx, three of which are connected with the epiglottis and five are muscles of the vocal cords.

The muscles of the epiglottis are the thyro-epiglottic and the superior and inferior aryteno-epiglottic. The muscles of vocal cords are the crico-thyroid, the posterior and lateral crico-arytenoid, the arytenoid and the thyro-arytenoid muscles.

2. That the epiglottis is depressed by the thyro-epiglottic and the aryteno-epiglottic muscles. The aryteno-epiglottic superior constricts the superior aperture of the larynx when it is drawn upward during deglutition and the opening closed by the epiglottis. The aryteno-epiglottic inferior, together with fibers of the thyro-arytenoids, compress the *sacculus laryngis*. The epiglottis is raised by the genio-hyo-glossus, the genio-hyoid, and the mylo-hyoid muscles.

3. That the separation of the vocal cords or opening of the glottis is accomplished by the posterior crico-arytenoid muscles alone, while its closure is effected by the lateral crico-arytenoids, the arytenoid muscle, and the thyro-arytenoids. The crico-thyroids, acting in conjunction with the arytenoid, become tensors of the vocal cords, producing the different degrees of tension necessary to delicate modulations of the voice in speaking or singing, while, at the same time, narrowing the opening of the glottis.

The right and left inferior or recurrent laryngeal nerves supply all the intrinsic muscles of the larynx on their respective sides except the crico-thyroid, which derives its motor innervation from the superior laryngeal nerve.

This is the generally accepted view of the motor nerve-supply to the larynx, although it has been shown to be subject to occasional variations. It is to be remembered that the motor fibers of these nerves are originally derived from the spinal accessory nerve by branches to the vagus before the latter leaves the cranial cavity. Consequently, motor paralysis may be due to: (1) Degenerative changes in the spinal accessory nuclei in the floor of the fourth ventricle; or (2) pressure on or destruction of the spinal accessory fibers before they join the vagus; or (3) degeneration, injury, or pressure suffered by the vagus trunk or its superior and inferior branches; or (4) the paralysis may be myopathic.

As effects of one or more of these causes we may find the following conditions:

1. *Paralysis of the thyro-epiglottic and aryteno-epiglottic muscles*, resulting in a rigidly upright position of the epiglottis, and the opening of the superior aperture of the larynx.

2. *Paralysis of the crico-thyroid*, enfeebling the voice and lessening the ability to produce the higher tones. Examination by the laryngoscope discloses imperfect approximation of the cords, a lack of visible vibration in them, and, at times, if the paralysis be unilateral, a higher position of the unaffected cord.

3. *Laryngoplegia or total paralysis of a vocal cord*. This is usually the result of pressure upon the recurrent nerve trunk. If the paralysis is unilateral, the symptoms are not at all striking. Respiration is not affected; the voice, perhaps, is slightly modified and easily fatigued, but it is far from being wholly suppressed. Inspection by the mirror shows affected cord in what is called the "cadaveric" position, one that is midway between abduction and adduction. On phonation, the sound cord is seen to pass beyond

the median line and approximate itself more or less closely to the other. The corresponding arytenoid cartilage is also drawn in front of that of the affected side, and the glottis is thus given an oblique position (see Fig. 44).

In bilateral recurrent laryngeal paralysis both cords are in the cadaveric position, and remain so both during respiration and upon attempted phonation.

4. *Paralysis of the abductors of the glottis, the posterior crico-arytenoid muscles.* Unilateral abductor paralysis due to pressure upon the recurrent



FIG. 44.—Cadaveric Position of the Left Vocal Cord, Midway between Adduction and Abduction in Paralysis of the Crico-arytenoid Muscle due to lesion of the left Recurrent Laryngeal Nerve at the moment of Inspiration—(after von wiemssen).

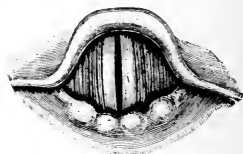


FIG. 45.—Complete Both-sided Abductor Paralysis of the Posterior Crico-arytenoid Muscles (the Openers of the Larynx) at the Moment of Inspiration—(after von wiemssen).

nerve is not uncommon. The affected cord remains in the middle line in consequence of the unopposed action of the adductor muscle. Phonation is not interfered with, and dyspnea occurs only in case of severe exertion, so that this affection is, doubtless, often overlooked.

Bilateral abductor paralysis is rare, and is generally dependent upon central degenerative change. The cords are found in the middle line with but a very narrow chink between them, and respiration is consequently noisy and much embarrassed. Slight exertion or emotional disturbance



FIG. 46.—Paralysis of the Internal Thyro-arytenoid Muscles (Tensors of the Vocal Cords) in Acute Laryngitis. Position of the vocal cords during phonation.

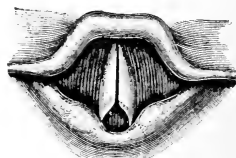


FIG. 47.—Paralysis of the Transverse and Oblique Arytenoid Muscles (the Respiratory Closers of the Glottis)—(after von wiemssen). Position in laryngitis of the vocal cords during phonation, the respiratory glottis remaining open.

may provoke alarming dyspnea, and at times prompt tracheotomy becomes necessary (Fig. 45.)

5. *Paralysis of the thyro-arytenoid muscles*, whose office is to relax and approximate the vocal cords. This is usually bilateral and is quite common. It may be caused by voice strain, by exposure to cold, or it may accompany catarrhal laryngitis. Approximation of the cords is incomplete, an elliptical space remaining between them which leads to hoarseness and feebleness of the voice. The laryngoscopic appearance is seen in Fig. 46.

6. *Paralysis of the arytenoid muscle.* This may occur alone, the usual causes being cold, catarrhal laryngitis, or hysteria. A triangular gap is found between the vocal processes in attempted phonation, and the voice is very feeble or wholly extinct (Fig. 47).

7. *Combined paralysis of the arytenoid and thyro-arytenoid muscles.* In this condition the mirror discovers a narrow, hour-glass opening between the cords, caused by the suspended activity of these muscles, while the lateral crico-arytenoids bring the tips of the vocal processes together (Fig. 47).

**Etiology.**—The causes producing paralysis of these muscles are largely

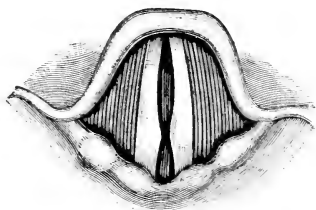


FIG. 48.—Bilateral Paralysis of the Thyro-arytenoids Combined with paresis of the Arytenoid.

pressure by morbid growths within and without the larynx, among the latter being conspicuously aneurysm of the arch of the aorta and mediastinal tumors. Laryngitis and hysteria are also frequent causes.

**Treatment.**—The first effort of treatment in all these conditions should be directed to the removal of their causes. Unless this be possible, the prognosis is necessarily unfavorable. Catarrhal processes must be cured. The asthenia following diphtheria is to be overcome by general tonics and nerve invigorants. Electricity is frequently of great value, the galvanic or faradic currents being selected as each case may require. Hysterical paralyses are best treated by electricity, chiefly for the moral effect. Brilliant results often succeed this treatment, but relapses frequently occur.

## DISEASES OF THE TRACHEA AND BRONCHIAL TUBES.

### ACUTE BRONCHITIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Acute Bronchial Catarrh; Acute Tracheobronchitis.*

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the tracheal and bronchial mucous membrane. It is essentially a symmetrical disease, the bronchial tree in both lungs being more or less uniformly invaded.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent cause of acute bronchitis is the action of cold in chilling the body. It often succeeds an ordinary coryza or cold in the head or a laryngitis, the inflammation extending from the upper air-passages downward. It is naturally more prevalent in the winter than in the summer. It is usually a symptom of influenza, whether epidemic or sporadic. Invariably too, it accompanies measles, of which it is the most

annoying symptom. More rarely it is caused by irritating fumes. A microbic origin of acute bronchitis is possible in certain cases, but such origin cannot supplant the more usual causes mentioned.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The mucous membrane of the trachea and large bronchi is congested and more or less covered with a tough mucus, rich in cells, the hyperemia being especially marked about the glands whence comes the secretion. Decided *cellular* infiltration of the mucosa does not occur in ordinary cases, because of the almost tendinous basement membrane which intervenes between the blood-vessels and the mucosa.

**Symptoms.**—*Cough* is the most constant and conspicuous symptom. At the beginning it is hard and dry, without expectoration; sometimes it is painful. As the disease advances it gradually becomes looser. In the milder degrees there is no shortness of breath, but in the severe there is a varying degree of *dyspnea* with a sense of *oppression* or *constriction in the front of the chest*, caused by stenosis of the bronchial lumina, due to the swelling of the mucous membrane and the presence of secretion. *Fever* in mild degree is commonly present, but the temperature rarely exceeds  $101^{\circ}\text{F}$ . ( $38.3^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). If it does, there is reason to suspect a more deep-seated involvement of the smallest or capillary tubules, whence the name capillary bronchitis, referred to in considering bronchopneumonia. This extension is particularly apt to take place in children and old persons, in whom the physician should always be on the lookout for it. With the access of fever the *pulse* is correspondingly accelerated. *Rarely*, a *chill* may usher in the disease.

The scanty *expectoration* of acute bronchitis is at first glairy or mucoid, and later mucopurulent. With the appearance of the latter the cellular element, composed of pus-cells and desquamated epithelium, becomes more abundant. With the abatement of the disease the pus-cells become again less numerous and finally disappear.

**Physical Signs.**—There may be absolutely no physical signs—inspection, palpation, percussion, and auscultation being alike negative. In other cases *inspection* may recognize increased frequency of breathing, and possibly increased rate of the cardiac apex-beat if there be fever. *Palpation* may appreciate a rhonchal fremitus if there be sufficient narrowing of the breathing tubes. It may be found anywhere on either side, and is usually transient. *Percussion* continues invariably clear so long as the bronchitis is uncomplicated. *Auscultation* furnishes the most distinctive and constant physical sign, the presence of dry râles, the sonorous and sibilant, which may invade either or both lungs, and may also be transient, coming and going. To these may be added harshness of breathing sounds. When resolution sets in, bubbling râles may take the place of the sonorous and sibilant, in consequence of the presence of liquid secretion. For physical signs of capillary bronchitis see Bronchopneumonia.

**Diagnosis.**—This is generally easy. The presence of the dry râles and a clear percussion note belong to no other condition than acute bronchitis and bronchial asthma, but to the latter are added the signs of spasmodic contraction of the bronchi, notably the panting breathing. The same clearness of percussion note continues with the appearance of moist râles, unless there be the complication of capillary bronchitis or pneumonia.

**Prognosis.**—Very often the symptoms subside without treatment in the course of two or three days. The cough becomes loose, expectoration is easy, fever and other unpleasant symptoms disappear, and in a week the patient is well. Suitable treatment may hasten such an issue. In other instances, especially in persons who are weak and debilitated, no such speedy termination takes place, but even in many of these after a long interval the patient recovers. More rarely, particularly in the very young and old, the inflammation travels down into the smallest tubes, producing the capillary bronchitis alluded to. In other instances still, especially after several attacks, and in the old particularly, chronic bronchitis may supervene with the symptoms and physical signs which will be described when considering it.

**Treatment.**—The best treatment for a case of ordinary acute bronchitis is "the bed." Twenty-four to 48 hours in a warm bed will go farther to cure such a case promptly than all the cough medicines ever prescribed. Such a course is not, however, always possible, and the physician is often expected to cure acute bronchitis while the patient is on his feet and even attending to business. The patient should, however, be put to bed if possible. Next to rest in bed is counterirritation. Turpentine and mustard are the best agents. A turpentine stupe or weak mustard-plaster applied to the front of the chest will aid greatly in allaying cough and relieving the sense of oppression.

Cough medicines are, of course, expected, and are useful. In the ordinary simple bronchitis, especially when there is moderate fever, there are few remedies more efficient than the simple solution of citrate of potash of the United States Pharmacopeia, in doses of 1/2 ounce (15 c.c.) every two hours. It may be desirable to add a few drops of wine of ipecac or wine of antimony to each dose to increase the relaxing effect, while, if the fever is decided, 1 or 2 minims (0.06 or 0.12 c.c.) of the tincture of aconite will aid in breaking it. A diaphoretic effect is further encouraged by adding 30 minims (2 c. c.) of the spirit of nitrous ether. By such measures the cough is usually loosened in 24 hours, the dry râles are substituted by moist ones, and convalescence progresses. If there is decided oppression, it may be relieved by inhaling the steam from a hot saturated solution of chlorid of ammonium, or the compound tincture of benzoin floated on hot water, while in children an emetic dose of ipecac may produce the desired relaxation.

The cough may, however, be so constant as to harass the patient and keep him awake in spite of the measures suggested. In this event an opiate is necessary, and a small quantity of morphin or heroin, say 1/16 to 1/12 grain (0.004 to 0.0055 gm.) for an adult, may be added to the combination previously recommended. It is, perhaps, on the whole better to administer the opium separately, and of all the preparations, Dover's powder is probably the best. Indeed, Dover's powder alone is one of the best medicines in acute cough in doses of 2 1/2 grains (0.16 gm.) every two hours, preferably in a pill or capsule; or if it be at night and a prompt effect be desired, 5 (0.32 gm.) or even 10 grains (0.65 gm.) in one dose will often act like a charm. Codein is a good preparation of opium, and has the advantage of disturbing the system less than some others. It may be given in doses of 1/4 to 1/2 grain (0.016 to 0.032 gm.) as often as necessary to quiet cough.

Heroin is a popular modern remedy of this class, given in doses of  $\frac{1}{20}$  to  $\frac{1}{12}$  of a grain (0.003 to 0.0055 gm.).

Should convalescence be slow and expectoration prolonged, the ammonium chlorid in 5 to 10 grain (0.32 to 0.65 gm.) doses with syrup or tincture of squills may be substituted for the sedative mixture, and quinin and restorative measures added to the treatment. If the cough is paroxysmal, the preparations of belladonna may be given, and are often efficient in controlling the paroxysms where opium is contraindicated or deemed unnecessary. So, too, when secretion is copious and cannot be expectorated, belladonna tends to diminish it, and may be given with expectation of relief. Copious secretion in children may be removed by an emetic. To this end alum and honey may be given or syrup of ipecacuanha in teaspoonful doses. All such measures are, however, depressing and may be succeeded by recurrence of secretion, and should be used only when necessary.

## CHRONIC BRONCHITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Chronic Bronchial Catarrh.*

**Definition.**—A chronic inflammation of the mucous lining of the large and medium-sized bronchial tubes, commonly symmetrical.

**Etiology.**—Uncomplicated and primary chronic bronchitis usually develops gradually, representing the accumulating remnants of frequently recurring "colds," each of which leaves something behind it until the chronic condition is established. A bronchitis that is associated with or consequent upon another disease may continue and become chronic after the disease has disappeared. This may happen with measles or influenza, or even, rarely, pneumonia.

Chronic bronchitis constantly attends other affections as a consequence. The most common of these causes is tubercular consumption, but it is also the result of diseases which favor congestion of the air-tubes by reason of the obstruction to the circulation which they cause, such as cardiac valvular disease. Especially is this true of mitral valve disease and Bright's disease.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The bronchial mucous membrane is bathed with a dirty gray secretion derived from the mucous glands, which are sometimes hypertrophied. The darker color is due to inhaled "blacks," exfoliated degenerated cells, and sometimes to decomposed blood. On scraping this mucus away, there may be little or no change of appearance; at other times there may be a decided hyperemia. In places the mucous membrane may be thickened by cellular infiltration; at others it may be thinned, producing sometimes a lattice-like appearance, because of the prominence of the bands of elastic tissue which resist the atrophic process. In old cases there is often dilatation, which may be saccular, fusiform, or cylindrical, and sometimes cavernous dilatations are present, usually about the center of the lung. It is in the latter more particularly that the mucous membrane is found thinned and the mucous glands atrophied; at others, ulcerated. In other old cases there are ulceration and necrosis of the cartilaginous rings.

**Symptoms and Course.**—The chief symptom of chronic bronchitis is



*cough*, which is troublesome in various degrees, and is apt to be worse at night or in the morning. Frequently it is paroxysmal, the spells terminating in free expectoration of the secretion which has excited the coughing.

Chronic bronchitis is commonly attended with *free expectoration*, either in the manner just described or more uniformly distributed through the day. The expectorated matter is usually mucopurulent or purulent, the color deepening to yellow as the proportion of pus corpuscles increases, and becoming darker in hue with the admixture of dead epithelium and decomposed blood. The quantity is sometimes very large, amounting to 1 1/2 liter (a pint) or more in the 24 hours. As the quantity increases, however, the consistence diminishes, and it may be thin and watery. To such copious expectoration the name of *bronchorrhœa* is applied, giving the name to one of three varieties of chronic bronchitis. It is probably the *asthma humidum* of the older authors, the *catarrhe pituiteux* of Laennec.

More commonly the expectoration is purulent, containing greenish-yellow masses which are coughed up easily. The bronchi are usually more or less dilated in these cases. The more copious secretion of bronchorrhœa usually separates, on standing, into two portions—a superficial seromucous portion, which may be frothy, and a lower thick portion made up more largely of pus-cells. In addition to such pus-cells the microscope discovers squamous epithelium from the mouth, columnar cells from the deeper air-passages, bacteria, and sometimes a few blood-corpuscles, as well as the delicate whetstone-shaped crystals known as Charot's crystals.

*Respiration* is accelerated in various degrees, but except in the rare forms to be described and on exertion, dyspnea is never so marked as even in mild cases of tubercular consumption. The *absence of fever* is characteristic as contrasted with tuberculous consumption, that chronic bronchitis so often resembles in other respects. Sometimes there is slight elevation of temperature, rarely exceeding 100° F. (37.8° C.). Again after chronic bronchitis has existed for a long time in the old, especially when secretion continues copious while expectoration becomes difficult, there sometimes supervenes a condition of *low fever*, probably septic, from absorption of putrid matters, and unless expectoration can be reestablished, the patient sinks and the fatal end is not very remote.

The appetite and digestion commonly remain quite good, and the patient maintains his weight for a long time. After a while, however, these may fail, especially if there is much expectoration, and then the patient loses weight. On the other hand, some subjects of chronic bronchial catarrh remain quite corpulent and well nourished throughout a long illness, and, except for the cough, the amount of disturbance is often remarkably slight. There is no pain, except sometimes about the attachment of the diaphragm in the lower thorax caused by the harassing cough.

In a second variety the cough is "dry," without expectoration except small, tough, tenacious masses of mucoid matter. These are raised after paroxysms of coughing, often of great severity. This dry variety—the *catarrhe sec* of Laennec—is commonly associated with emphysema, and is a very troublesome form.

A third variety of chronic bronchitis is well called *putrid* or *fetid* bronchitis, in which the secretions decompose in the air-passages and acquire

a sweetish, sickening, and disgusting odor, which may pervade an entire apartment and make the patient a nuisance to himself and others. The decomposition is due to the bacteria of decomposition, the action of which is doubtless favored by retention of secretion in dilated bronchi and phthisical cavities, and in a decided majority of cases it succeeds an ordinary chronic bronchitis. It also sometimes follows an empyema which perforates into the lung. At times it is said to be primary. The expectoration is copious and correspondingly thin. It is also separates into layers: an upper one of frothy, mucopurulent matter in which occur separate masses, and a lower of thicker, greasy, purulent matter. In the latter the naked eye often recognizes dirty gray masses about as large as a pea, known as Dittrich's plugs, which on microscopic examination are found to contain pus, bacteria, and detritus of uncertain origin, together with delicate acicular fat crystals. Among other fungi are found also leptothrix filaments, which must not be mistaken for elastic tissue.

The chief additional symptoms are *fever*—it may be septic—with increase of cough and pain in the side. There is also sometimes a *chill*. These symptoms may again abate and those of the more usual form of chronic bronchitis prevail, subject to exacerbation and improvement. The effect of the fetid form, as might be expected, is more severe on the constitution, and there are loss of appetite, indigestion, and failing health. The fingers may be clubbed, as in phthisis. Secondary purulent meningitis and abscess have appeared from the transfer of pus germs. The physical signs do not differ from those of chronic bronchitis and bronchiectasis, to be described.

*Physical Signs.*—Physical signs of a decided character more constantly attend chronic bronchitis than acute. They present, however, no unchanging picture. There may be nothing apparent to inspection, or the frequently associated complication of emphysema of the lungs may be the cause of a diminished excursion of respiratory motion, and the roundness or barrel shape of the chest characteristic of that disease may be seen. Such emphysema may give diminution of the normal tactile fremitus and to percussion a hyperresonance. In the vicinity of a superficial dilated bronchus filled with secretion there may be impairment of resonance. The resonance is, however, restored after copious expectoration, or the percussion signs of a cavity may be substituted, though in the middle or lower part of a lung instead of the apex, as in consumption. Vesiculo-tympanitic or even tympanitic resonance may be present from relaxation of lung tissue, especially in the lower posterior part of the lungs.

Auscultation may also be negative, but much more frequently recognizes an alternation or combination of harsh and feeble breathing, sonorous and sibilant râles, with moist râles of all sizes, variously modified by different distances from the ear and varying consistence of the secretion. The moist râle is the most constant sign of chronic bronchitis.

*Diagnosis.*—This is not usually difficult, for while the symptoms, including coarser appearance of the sputum, sometimes closely resemble those of tubercular consumption, the physical signs do not, except when a dilated bronchus presents the same signs as a cavity. Such a dilatation is, however, found in the middle of the lung, and furnishes its signs in the neighborhood

of the angle of the scapula, rather than at the apex. The absence of fever and especially of tubercle bacilli from the sputum after careful examination is presumptive evidence of the absence of tuberculous consumption, but above all, the tuberculin test will settle the question.

**Prognosis.**—This is unfavorable as to recovery, but favorable as to termination. The patient rarely dies of the direct effect of the disease, being generally carried off by some intercurrent affection, often croupous pneumonia. In the old, however, a condition described on page 558 may intervene, or a bronchopneumonia may supervene and terminate fatally. On the other hand, many patients the subject of chronic bronchitis live for years in comparative comfort, getting almost well in the summer and relapsing in the winter.

**Treatment.**—If it were possible to remove every person with simple chronic bronchitis uncomplicated by heart or kidney disease to a warm *climate*, they would probably get well. Certainly is this true of the earlier stages. Much may, however, be done at home to prevent the exacerbations due to cold, each of which adds a little to the previous chronic condition, by care in avoiding exposure. This consists mainly in dressing warmly and remaining indoors in bad weather. Heretical as it may seem, my experience teaches me that old persons can better bear a little "bad air" than "cold air" and it is wiser to submit to a little "closeness" than to encounter very cold air for the sake of "ventilation"; it is, of course, better to have both, if possible. It is especially important that the old should be warmly clad with wool next the skin, and precautions against cold feet should be especially secured. When bronchitis complicates other diseases, as heart disease and kidney disease, the treatment of these is important.

In the way of medicine, much can be done by the *stimulating expectorants*. The terebinthines are the best, and of these one of the best is terebene. Five to 10 minims (0.3 to 0.6 c.c.) in a capsule every three hours is a proper dose. Terpene hydrate another derivative of turpentine, may be given in doses of 2 to 6 grains (.13 to .40 gm.) in pill as often, or it may be given in mixture with enough alcohol to dissolve it. Turpentine itself is a good remedy, in doses of from 10 to 20 minims (0.6 to 1.3 c.c.). Creasote is an admirable remedy in chronic bronchitis; 1 grain or minim (0.06 c.c.) or 2 minims (0.12 c.c.) three times a day, increased gradually to 5 grains (0.3 c.c.), or even more than three times a day, will after a while diminish the secretion and the cough. Creasotal, or the carbonate of creasote, is a much more pleasant remedy, and may be given in doses of 10 minims (0.6 c.c.), which may be increased. Syrup of tar is a similar remedy often very efficient. It may be combined with syrup of wild cherry, 2 parts of the former to 1 of the latter, and given in teaspoonful doses every three or four hours. Sandalwood oil or balsam of tolu or Peru may be given. The compound tincture of benzoin is another old but good remedy. The oil of eucalyptus is another remedy of the same class in 5 minim doses in a capsule with an equal quantity of oil of sweet almonds. Yerba santa, in the shape of the syrup or fluid extract, is a similar and very agreeable remedy. Other stimulating expectorants, like the carbonate of ammonium or the aromatic spirit of ammonium, are often useful, but they lose their effect after a time. The carbonate of ammonium, to be useful,

must be given often—5 to 10 grains (0.32 to 0.65 gm.) every two hours. The ammonium chlorid is indicated where less of a stimulating effect is necessary—5 to 15 grains (0.32 to 1 gm.) four times a day in combination with the syrup of squill in 15 minim (1 c.c.) doses, both in the compound licorice mixture. In some cases the iodid of potassium is very useful, especially when secretion is scanty. It should be kept up for some time. Among the more recent drugs recommended for chronic bronchitis is *hydrastis canadensis* in doses of 20 to 30 minims (1.25 to 1.85 c.c.) of the fluid extract four times daily. It is advised when there is mucopurulent expectoration, of which it changes the character and reduces the consistency with diminution of cough.

*Inhalations* of medicated vapors are sometimes useful. The compound tincture of benzoin may be thus used, or the oil of eucalyptus, also turpentine. They may be placed on the surface of boiling-hot water, the vapor from which will carry the medicated preparation with it, and may be conducted to the air-passages through a cone of paper placed over the vessel containing the medicament. These vapors are more efficient than atomized fluids. Simple steam or vapor from a two per cent. solution of common salt or of sodium bicarbonate may be used. If there is fetor, carbolic acid may be used in the atomizer, a two per cent. solution, or thymol one part in 1000.

*Alkalinity* is an essential condition of easy secretion from the air-passages, so that both inhalations and internal remedies should fulfill this condition. Hence, simple liquor potassæ, U. S. P., in 15 to 20 minim (1 c.c. to 1.25 c.c.) doses in milk is a good remedy. To this end the free use of alkaline mineral waters, as those of Vals, Vichy, and Ems, is useful.

Digitalis and strychnin are excellent medicines, especially the latter. Both stimulate the cardiac action and aid in pumping the blood through the lungs with increased force, thus causing relief to the congested mucous surfaces. Strychnin in ascending doses may be given with advantage.

As to *health resorts* suitable for cases of chronic bronchitis, those with a dry climate, not too cold, should be selected for cases with copious secretion, such as southern Georgia and the Carolinas or New Mexico in this country, or for stronger persons the cooler climate of Colorado. For cases of dry bronchitis the warmer moist climates of Florida are very suitable. In this, as in all other diseases, the factor of complete bodily and mental rest enters largely into the cure.

Chronic bronchial catarrhs always improve in summer, and it is generally sufficient if the patient be directed to leave the hot and noisome city and spend his summers either in the mountains or at the seaside, where the air is pure and bracing.

Of foreign resorts, those of southern Europe, especially Italy, the western Riviera, San Remo, Mentone, and Cannes, are suitable, while still better, if they can be availed of, are Egypt, Algiers, and the island of Madeira.

## BRONCHIECTASIS, OR BRONCHIAL DILATATION.

**Historical.**—Laennec (1819) was the first to describe anatomically bronchial dilatation, and his admirable account remains at the present day the standard description of the condition. It should be mentioned, however, that Laennec himself tells how his attention was first called to it by Cayol, at that time a student, but afterward a professor of medicine, who was "astonished at finding a diseased state of the lung which up to that time had remained undescribed." This, according to Laennec, was in 1808. Laennec attributed the formation of bronchiectatic cavities to mechanical cause—viz., the pressure of bronchial secretion. Andral (1823) called into play disturbances of nutrition, and Reynaud (1835) the respiratory act.

**Etiology.**—The most common cause of bronchiectasis is chronic bronchitis, either simple or tubercular, the effect of the inflammation being to weaken the bronchial walls so that they yield to the inspiratory and expiratory strain to which they are subjected in the act of coughing. It is, therefore, often associated with emphysema. The same cause contributes to the bronchial dilatation following bronchopneumonia, measles, and whooping-cough in children. Accumulated secretion is also a factor, as seen in the dilated bronchi which succeed obstruction of a bronchial tube by a foreign body, or compression by aneurysm or mediastinal tumor. The traction associated with fibroid induration is also a cause of bronchial dilatation; hence we find it in association with interstitial pneumonia and sometimes in chronic pleurisy. Finally, bronchial dilatation is rarely a congenital defect, in which event it is also commonly unilateral and general—*bronchiectasis universalis* of Grawitz.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Bronchial dilatation is cylindrical and sacculated. The terms explain themselves. Both forms may occur in the same lung.

In the *cylindrical* form, which is the more common, dilated tubes of nearly equal caliber may run through the substance of the lung, from the root to the pleural surface, producing an appearance not unlike the fingers of a glove. More frequently the smaller tubes only are affected, dilatation being recognized at autopsy by the inequality of lumen, rather than by *antemortem* physical signs. It may, however, be suspected in any case of chronic bronchitis with copious expectoration.

The *saccular* bronchiectases are spherical or oval dilatations, into which the tube merges gradually or suddenly. They may attain a diameter of from two to three inches (5 to 8 cm.), more or less. The lung tissue around a saccular dilatation is rarely normal. Commonly, the dilatations, single or multiple, are surrounded by indurated and contracted lung tissue, the traction of which on the bronchial wall produces the dilatation. Adhesion of the lung to the costal pleura also contributes, and large subpleural cysts are at times thus formed by the contracting tissue. The cavities thus produced are commonly at the base of the lung, while in chronic phthisis they are found at the apex. Cylindrical and saccular dilatation may also be associated under these circumstances: In universal bronchiectasis the entire bronchial tree is converted into a series of sacs communicating one with the other. Many cavities in pulmonary consumption are primarily bronchiectatic cavities.

In all forms there is decided change in the bronchial wall, the principal feature of which is atrophy. This atrophy not only attacks the mucous

coat, but also the muscular, and sometimes the elastic tissue and cartilage, reducing the wall to a thin, smooth membrane, lined with pavement epithelium, instead of the usual cylindrical form. At times overgrowth, involving particularly the connective tissue, takes place, forming lattice-like projections on the inner surface of the tube already referred to in treating of chronic bronchitis. At other times ulcerative processes develop, perforating the bronchus and invading the lung parenchyma, converting the bronchiectasis into an ulcerating cavity.

**Symptoms.**—These, in addition to those of the disease with which the bronchiectasis is associated, are the peculiar *sputum* and *paroxysmal cough*. The sputum furnishes the most distinctive feature, from which alone the diagnosis can sometimes be made. It is mucopurulent, of a dirty yellowish-green color and unpleasant, stale, and sweetish odor, though not exactly fetid, as in fetid bronchitis. It is often raised in mouthfuls—another characteristic. It also separates into layers, usually three, as in chronic bronchitis, of which the upper is frothy and thin, the middle mucoid, and the lowest made up of pus and epithelium in various stages of fatty degeneration, acicular fat crystals, and sometimes red blood disks and hematoidin crystals sufficient to color it. Elastic tissue of the lung is not usually present; nor are tubercle bacilli, unless there is associated tuberculosis with ulceration of the bronchial walls.

The cough is paroxysmal, because it is not usually excited until the sac, which is often insensitive, becomes full enough to irritate the healthy mucous membrane, when cough is at once excited and continues until the cavity is empty. The paroxysms are usually in the morning, when they may be excited by a change in position. After their termination there is commonly a long period of rest until the sac is again filled. The more paroxysmal the cough and copious the expectoration in chronic bronchitis, the more likely is there to be a dilated bronchus. Very characteristic is the *absence of fever*.

**Physical Signs.**—When distinctively present, they are those of a cavity in the lung, readily recognizable when near enough to the surface. They include tympanitic percussion note, bronchial and even amphoric breathing, bronchophony or pectoriloquy if the cavity is empty. If it contains liquid, gurgling may be heard and the percussion note is dull. To palpation there is usually increased vocal fremitus, caused by surrounding consolidation. All signs vary according as the cavity is filled or emptied of secretion. A restricted breathing excursion may also be present, uninfluenced by the state of the cavity, whether full or empty.

**Diagnosis.**—A bronchiectatic cavity is usually distinguished from a *phthisical cavity* by the absence of tubercle bacilli and elastic tissue from the sputum of the former, the situation of the cavity in the center instead of at the apex of the lung, the history of its development, the absence of cachexia and fever. Hypertrophy of the right ventricle is more frequent in bronchiectasis, but may also be present in fibroid phthisis with or without bronchiectasis.

A *circumscribed empyema* which has ruptured into the lung is much more sudden in its development than bronchiectasis, while the history of a previous pleurisy is superadded. A coincident external perforation of an empyema would clear up all doubt. A true *abscess* of the lung which has

found its way into a bronchus has also a different history of origin, succeeding, as it usually does, a pneumonia, a massive hemorrhage, or traumatic cause. The same is true of gangrene of the lung, which is, however, disclosed by the extreme fetor of the breath and expectoration.

**Treatment.**—This includes that of chronic and fetid bronchitis, to which may be added, under favorable circumstances, the injection of sacs and their drainage. It is to be remembered, however, that physical signs are sometimes misleading, and that what seems to be the clearest evidence as to the exact site of a sac is not always to be relied upon. I well remember a case of my own in which there seemed to be the most conclusive evidence of the presence of a dilated bronchus below the angle of the left scapula—evidence satisfactory not merely to myself, but also to my colleagues William Pepper and J. William White. At my request, White opened the thorax by exsecting parts of two ribs, when, to our astonishment, no cavity could be found by the cautious use of exploring needles. Prompt closure of the wound was followed by healing, and the patient lived for eight months.

The cure of well-established bronchiectasis is impossible, except, perhaps, in young persons. Something may be done to prolong life and make the patient more comfortable and less disagreeable to others. To this end we must aim at the evacuation and disinfection of the offensive purulent secretion, and as far as possible the obliteration of cavities. For the first of these, the inhalation of crude creasote vapor was recommended, first by Arnold Chaplin, and indorsed by Theodore Dyke Acland in an exhaustive paper on this subject. The method is as follows: The patient is placed in a small air-tight room with cotton pads over the eyes and ears, the nostrils stuffed with cotton-wool. A teaspoonful of creasote is then poured upon water in a suitable vessel and vaporized over a spirit lamp. The fumes are at first very irritating and provoke violent coughing, which causes the offensive material to be entirely expelled. The treatment should at first be kept up for 10 to 15 minutes only every other day. As the patient becomes accustomed to it, the exposure may be lengthened to an hour daily. A simpler method, though not so effectual, is to have the patient inhale through an inverted funnel the fumes of creasote laid upon hot water. Intralaryngeal injections of oily and antiseptic substances have been employed, with doubtful results. The difficulties in the way of operation are shown in the first paragraph on treatment.

## BRONCHIAL ASTHMA.

**Definition.**—Bronchial or spasmodic asthma is a paroxysmal asthma or a panting for breath, which is the direct result of a contraction of bronchial tubes.

**Etiology.**—There is some diversity of opinion as to the etiology of bronchial asthma. This much, however, is admitted, that in some way there is produced a narrowing of the smaller bronchi.

Various explanations of the narrowing are suggested. Some allege a simple swelling of the mucous membrane to be a cause. Such swelling is

variously spoken of as "fluctionary" (Traube), "vasomotor turgescence" (Weber), "diffuse hyperemic swelling," or "exudative" inflammatory swelling (Curschmann). On the whole, the older view of Trousseau, that the narrowing is due to a spasmodic contraction of the muscular coat, seems the most likely one, and has recently received the support of Biermer. Mention should be made of the theory of Wintrich and Bamberger that asthma consists in a tonic spasm of the diaphragm, a theory which Riegel has further developed by ascribing the spasm to a superexcitation of the phrenic nerve, resulting in a partially inhibited excursion of the diaphragm.

Accepting Trousseau's view of a primary spasmodic contraction of the bronchi, it becomes necessarily a reflex act, the causes of which are various. It implies, first, a hyperexcitability of the reflex center. Hence bronchial asthma is not infrequent in neurotic persons, and has even been classed as a functional nervous disease with neuralgia and epilepsy, with which it is said to alternate at times. Such hyperexcitability is sometimes inherited, so that bronchial asthma often runs in families. Presupposing such excitability, numerous peripheral causes may supervene, the most frequent of which is bronchitis. It very often happens that an asthmatic subject has an attack of asthma, brought on by "taking cold," the incident bronchitis being the exciting event.

Comparatively modern studies have demonstrated the association of some affections of the throat and nasal passages with bronchial asthma, and that their removal has resulted in its cure. Among these have been enlarged tonsils, chronic catarrh, nasal polypi, and the like. Other causes in susceptible persons are impressions of certain odors, pleasant and unpleasant, notably that of flowers or plants in early summer, whence the term "rose" asthma and hay asthma, both of which are allied affections. A change of air, as from town to country, or the reverse, or from mountain to lowland, acts similarly. Causes more remote than those of the nasal passages, such as gastric derangement, intestinal worms, uterine disease, may be admitted. Purely emotional causes, as fright and emotion, may also act. The frequency of bronchial asthma in children has already been mentioned. It is more common in the male sex.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Whatever may be the morbid state of the tubular structure of the lung during an attack of asthma, there are no postmortem appearances which are distinctive of it. In the first place, the chance is seldom offered at the opportune moment, and I know of no report of a necropsy made on a person dying during an attack of asthma. In the case of the asthmatic dying at other times, there may be found the morbid states peculiar to chronic bronchitis and emphysema, but nothing more.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of an attack of spasmodic asthma are unmistakable. The typical asthmatic is apparently in good health between the attacks, and often is so up to the time of the attack, which then comes on suddenly, often at night. At other times there is a prodromal stage, a feeling of thoracic discomfort, or "*lightness*" in the chest, or an anxious, nervous, restless feeling, the import of which is well understood by the victim.

The attack consists of a long-drawn-out inspiratory act, in which it is evident the air cannot get into the lung fast enough to meet the demands



of the *besoin de respirer*. The auxiliary muscles of respiration, the sternocleidomastoid, and the scaleni, do their best to enlarge the thorax, but that is not the difficulty. It is the contracted tubes which resist the entrance of the air. Even more marked are the effort and the duration of expiration; hence the dyspnea is spoken of as an expiratory dyspnea. The abdominal muscles are the auxiliaries here, and they contract strongly and assume a board-like hardness. The air is heard to whistle as it enters and passes out of the chest. The patient sits in an upright position, or leans slightly forward, and often astride of a chair grasps the back with his hands, for it is by fixing the shoulders that he can bring the extraordinary muscles of respiration into play. His face is anxious, pale, or it may be cyanotic, and few more distressing pictures are seen. Notwithstanding his efforts, they fail of their purpose and comparatively little air enters the lungs. With all these efforts, the *breathing is not accelerated*—at least accelerated to any

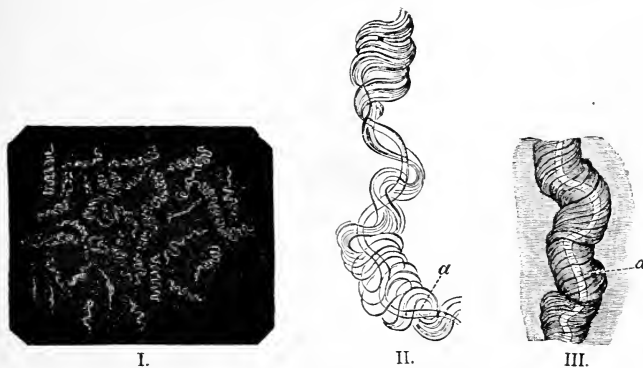


FIG. 49.—Curschmann's Spirals—(after Curschmann).  
I, Natural size; II and III, enlarged; a, a, central thread.

marked degree—while in a few instances the breathing-rate is diminished. The *temperature* is normal or subnormal, and the pulse is accelerated and small.

The attacks last for a variable period, rarely less than an hour, and unless broken up, sometimes several hours. They may *terminate as suddenly* as they began, sometimes with a spell of coughing. On the other hand, *cough is not a marked symptom*, and in brief paroxysms of asthma may be altogether wanting. In severe ones, however, it is present, accompanied by a tough and scanty expectoration, containing rounded masses of matter, either yellowish or grayish translucent—the “perles” of Laennec. On minute examination, these are found to be made up of the so-called Curschmann's spirals, together with numerous swollen and fatty degenerated pus-cells and cells shed by the bronchial mucous membrane and alveoli. The spirals have long been recognized, but were first studied by Ungar and Curschmann. Two shapes are found. The first appears to be made up of *mucin* spirally arranged, entangling pus-cells and alveolar epithelium. A second form consists of a tightly wound spiral of mucin fibrils, containing in

its center another bright, clear filament. The spirals are believed by Curschmann to be formed in the finer bronchioles, and to be a product of bronchiolitis. Their spiral form is unexplained. The sputum also sometimes contains *crystals of calcium oxalate* and *calcium phosphate*. The yellow masses contain, in addition to the cells named, various numbers of acicular crystals, which were first found by Leyden in the sputum of asthmatic patients, and therefore called Leyden's crystals. They are identical with the so-called Charcot's crystals, found in leukemic spleen, bone-marrow, and semen.

In the *blood* of cases of bronchial asthma an increase of eosinophiles is noted at about the time of the paroxysm, amounting from 10 to 53.6 per cent., according to J. S. Billings, Jr. This fact is of value in diagnosis as such leukocytosis is said not to occur in renal and cardiac asthma. In like manner, eosinophilic, leukocytes and granules are found in the *sputum* of asthmatic attacks. The latter are often attached to the Curschmann's spirals.

In addition to the cases of typical asthma in patients perfectly comfortable between attacks, and for which the foregoing description is intended, patients with chronic bronchitis and emphysema are subject to attacks which may be called symptomatic asthma. The symptoms are, however, similar and need not be repeated. It is to be remembered, too, that emphysema is caused by asthma, as well as that chronic bronchitis and emphysema may cause asthma.

*Physical Signs.*—These are also characteristic. *Inspection* notes the most labored effort in breathing, yet the chest moves but slightly. It is in a state of permanent inflation. The spaces above and below the clavicle and above the sternum, the intercostal spaces, and the pit of the stomach are drawn in from the same cause—that is, the thoracic cavity not being filled from within, the external atmospheric pressure forces the yielding portions inward. Rhonchal fremitus is recognized by *palpation*, while vocal fremitus, obscured by the rhoncus, is further diminished by a frequently associated emphysema. *Percussion* is negative in uncomplicated asthma, but if asthma is associated with emphysema, it may produce abnormal resonance. *Auscultation* discovers the most striking and easiest recognized of the physical signs. All over the chest are heard sonorous and sibilant râles, inspiratory and expiratory, the latter longer and more marked. In fact, for the most part, they do not require the ear to be placed close to the chest. They may be heard at a distance. The vesicular murmur, on the other hand, is inaudible. Later in the attack, as secretion increases, the râles become moist. It is to be remembered that chronic bronchitis, emphysema, and asthma may also complicate one another and render correspondingly complex the physical signs.

*Diagnosis.*—This can usually be made at a glance. *Spasm of the glottis* and *paralysis of the abductors of the glottis* produce similar efforts at breathing, but the dyspnea is inspiratory and unattended by the lung sounds characteristic of asthma, while the history will be found different. *Hysterical dyspnea* furnishes no physical signs, while in *cardiac asthma* also the breathing sounds are normal, or there is crepitation. (See also Cardiac Asthma.)

**Prognosis.**—Bronchial asthma, though a distressing disease, is not a fatal one. Very often the attacks grow more infrequent and milder as the patient grows older, and they may disappear altogether, while in some cases they increase in severity and frequency with age. In other cases a cure is effected by discovering and removing the cause.

**Treatment.**—The first object in the treatment of asthma is to *relieve* the *paroxysm*. This is best accomplished by a hypodermic injection of morphin,  $1/4$  grain (0.0165 gm.), with  $1/150$  grain (0.00044 gm.) of atropin, which may be repeated in an hour if ineffectual. If morphin is not at hand, nitrite of amyl may be inhaled from a handkerchief on which a few drops have been placed, or a pearl may be broken, if one of these be at hand. In the absence of amyl nitrite, chloroform or ether may be similarly used. After the paroxysm is broken, every effort should be made to *discover* a *cause* for the recurring attacks. The nose may be responsible, and should be carefully examined for any one of the causes referred to. Possible peripheral irritation, whether by error of diet, gastric derangement, uterine or other distant reflex cause, should be sought and corrected. These are not always easily found, but sometimes they are. Bronchitis, when present also requires treatment by the usual remedies.

It is needless to say that when special external causes, such as odors or exhalations, or undiscoverable peculiarities of location are responsible, they should be eliminated. With all our efforts, however, the cause remains in perhaps a decided majority of cases undiscovered. But even under these circumstances we have in the iodid of *potassium* and *belladonna* two drugs which possess undoubted power to relieve bronchial asthma and even to avert attacks. A certain measure of relief is almost always secured by these drugs, and in many cases the effect is magical. From 5 to 10 grains (0.33 to 0.65 gm.) of the iodid, and 3 to 7 minims (0.2 to 0.5 c.c.) of the tincture of belladonna should be given every three hours until relief is permanent. I have found a combination of tincture of belladonna, tincture of hyoscyamus, tincture of cannabis indica and deodorized tincture of opium, equal parts, given in 20 drops doses every two hours, signally efficient in cases of asthma. The hypodermic injection of a combination of hyoscin and atropin,  $1/200$  of the former and  $1/300$  of the latter, has been found useful in the wards of the University Hospital.

Lobelia, formerly much used instead of belladonna, has fallen into disuse, probably on account of its disagreeable nauseous effect. The *fumes* of burning *paper impregnated with nitrate of potash and stramonium* are also useful adjuvants, and cigarettes and pastiles made out of such paper are constantly employed for their effect. These substances form the basis of most of the advertised remedies for asthma.

The *diet* of asthmatics should be exceedingly simple, as indiscretions in it are often the exciting causes of attacks. No fixed rules for climatic treatment can be laid down, as conditions favorable to different cases are exceedingly capricious. On the whole, high, dry *climates* are most suitable for pure asthmatics—*i. e.*, those cases uncomplicated with emphysema—though moist, warm climates, such as those of Florida and Madeira and the Canary Islands, are also serviceable, especially when there are catarrhal symptoms; or southern California, where the climate is also warm and

equable, but drier. When there is emphysema, high altitudes are not well borne. Cold and moist climates are harmful. Oxygen breathing is often helpful, as is also inhalation of compressed air in the pneumatic cabinet.

### PLASTIC OR FIBRINOUS BRONCHITIS.

**Definition.**—This is a rare form of inflammation of a part of the bronchial tree, commonly chronic, but occasionally acute, in which a fibrinous mold of the bronchus and its branches is formed and expelled. It does not include those instances which occur in croup or diphtheria as an extension downward, or in pneumonia by centripetal extension.

**Etiology.**—No definite cause for this bronchitis is known, though it is frequently associated with tuberculosis—in 10 out of 21 cases studied by Model. It occurs at all ages, and though more common between 10 and 30, has occurred at 72. It has happened in more than one member of a family. It is found more commonly in males and in the spring months. Other associations named are probably accidental, as with skin diseases. In the chronic form, which consists in recurring attacks extending over many years, the same part of the bronchial tree is apparently attacked each time.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As primarily expectorated, the exudate is a round mass mixed with blood and mucus. This mass, sometimes, quite large, may be unrolled, when it is found to be a true cast, of dendritic shape and hollow interior, of the trunk and branches. The latter may even terminate in bulbous ends corresponding to the infundibula of the lung. The mold is true fibrillated fibrin, in which are embedded numerous leukocytes. It is whitish or yellowish-gray in color, and concentrically laminated. In the latter feature it differs from the branching clots, which occasionally form in a bronchus and branches after hemorrhage into the lungs. These are solid and homogeneous. A fine specimen of one of these is in the pathological museum of the University of Pennsylvania. The true fibrinous casts are usually 1 to 2 inches (3.75 to 5 cm.) long, but may be five or six inches (12.5 to 15 cm.) long. The tubes whence the casts come are not superficially changed, but on minute examination have been found bereft of epithelium. The submucous tissue may be swollen and infiltrated with serum. Charcot's crystals and Curschmann's spirals have occasionally been found.

**Symptoms.**—These are those of an ordinary bronchitis of severe form. There are aggravated *cough* and *dyspnea*. Sometimes this is preceded by a stage in which there is, for a variable time, prolonged, bronchial *catarrh* of ordinary severity. At times the attack is ushered in by *rigor*, and there are *high fever*, *pain* in the side, and *soreness*. There is *slight expectoration* until the cast is loosened and expelled. The cough preceding the expulsion does not usually last more than a few hours, though it does sometimes continue for days. With the expulsion of the cast comes prompt relief for the time being. It is sometimes followed by slight *hemoptysis*, which may also rarely precede the expulsion. The expectoration of a single cast does not, however, terminate the attack. After 24 to 48 hours the cough and dyspnea return, and another cast is expelled. This may be kept up for several days, after which the attacks cease to recur. Smaller pieces may be expelled.

The attacks may occur but once in a lifetime, or they may be repeated at intervals for years.

**Physical Signs.**—These are usually those of bronchitis. There is no dullness or percussion, unless it be from consolidation due to collapse of the lung. There may be, according to Walshe, circumscribed pneumonia with crepitant râle and rusty sputum. The effort at breathing is labored, and if there is obstruction of a large tubule, there may be retraction of the lower ribs during inspiration. The cast then begins to be loosened, and moist râles make their appearance.

**Diagnosis.**—The rarity of the disease is so great that in the absence of distinctive physical signs the true condition is rarely suspected. In recurring attacks the true nature of so severe an attack of bronchitis may be suspected.

**Prognosis.**—This is usually favorable, although the symptoms are often alarming. N. S. Davis has reported two fatal cases of the acute form.

**Treatment.**—The disease, so long as its true nature is undetermined, is treated as an ordinary bronchitis. If its true nature is suspected, the vapor from alkaline solutions should be inhaled, or these should be sprayed into the larynx. Lime-water is one of those commonly employed. Alkaline solutions may be of the strength of 30 grains (2 gm.) of sodium bicarbonate to the fluidounce (30 c.c.) of water. Jaborandi or its active principle, pilocarpin, may be tried. Emetics should also be employed when the breathing is much embarrassed. They sometimes have the effect of discharging the cast. Iodid of potassium is recommended, and should certainly be used when the attack is protracted.

## DISEASES OF THE LUNGS.

### EMPHYSEMA OF THE LUNGS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Alveolar Ectasia; Increase of Volume of the Lung.*

**Definition.**—There are *three* applications of the term emphysema, and they have very different significations. In the *first* place, there is *interlobular* or *interstitial* emphysema, in which, in consequence of rupture of air vesicles deep in the lung structure, the air escapes into the interlobular tissue and may collect there like rows of beads outlining the lobules, while under the pleura larger vesicles may form. This form occurs after wounds of the lung, and in severe and persistent whooping-cough, and in cough of bronchial asthma, in both of which the expiratory strain is very great. It is also termed acute emphysema. It is not, however, demonstrable clinically, except in those cases in which it takes place at the root of the lung and the air travels along the trachea until it reaches the subcutaneous tissue of the neck and chest-walls. It gives rise to a peculiar crepitation to the touch. A similar condition of the subcutaneous tissue may be due to infiltration of the tissues, with gas arising from decomposition. It is found in the neighborhood of wounds which take on an unhealthy action, and where decomposition leads to the generation of gas. This form of emphysema is, of course, more circumscribed than that due to a wound of the lung.

The *second* form, *vesicular emphysema*, is an overdistention followed by atrophy of air vesicles, either symmetrical, involving both lungs, or localized. It occurs in certain portions of a lung adjacent to another which cannot, from some cause, expand fully in inspiration. Such are portions of the lung adjoining tuberculous areas, or areas of collapsed lung, or adjacent to parts whose expansion is prevented by pleuritic adhesions. It is particularly the anterior parts of the lung that are the seat of localized emphysema in the latter case. When such complemental dilatation is impossible, as is often the case in extensive pleuritic adhesions, the chest-wall must sink in to occupy the space. Perhaps all emphysema is more or less localized, but in general or symmetrical emphysema very much larger areas of both lungs are involved. The distended air vesicles are useless, while many of them are also atrophied. The former is also called hypertrophic, but *pseudo-hypertrophic* would be a much more suitable term, because there is no true hypertrophic enlargement.

The term "compensatory" is also applied to localized emphysema, but this term should not be applied unless the dilatation is truly compensatory—that is, is the result of an effort on the part of a lung or portion of it to supplement the office of another more or less useless part, when the condition is really developmental, and not degenerate.

A *third* form of emphysema of the lungs is known as *atrophic emphysema*; it is called also by Sir William Jenner *small-lunged emphysema*. In it the whole lung and thorax may be reduced in size, and even the respiratory muscles may be atrophied. It is a disease of old persons, and is to be regarded as an involution process. There is a true atrophy of air vesicles, and bulke of various sizes are formed by the wasting of intermediate vesicles.

The section is limited to the consideration of

#### VESICULAR EMPHYSEMA—PSEUDOHYPERTROPHIC EMPHYSEMA.

**Etiology.**—By far the larger number of cases of emphysema are the result of chronic bronchitis. This bronchitis may begin in childhood. It may begin as whooping-cough, from which the child has not completely recovered, or succeeding which it has been subject to constantly recurring attacks of acute bronchitis. It is scarcely likely, if the lung-tissue preserved its proper integrity, that even under the forced inspiratory strain of coughing the air vesicles would undergo the dilatation and destruction characteristic of emphysema. With chronic bronchitis there is sooner or later an impairment in the nutrition of the air vesicles, which makes them more yielding and more likely to give way under the strain. Blowing on wind instruments and glassblowing, as well as occupations requiring muscular strain and the lifting of heavy weights, are assigned as causes. Bronchial asthma is another cause. In all these cases both inspiration and expiration cooperate to produce the strain, but it is probable that expiration is the more potent factor. The severe cough of chronic bronchitis begins with a deep inspiration which, while harmless to a healthy air vesicle, may overdistend a weak one. Then follow closure of the glottis and a forcible contraction of the muscles of expiration—abdominal muscles. The

latter compress especially the lower part of the lung, and as the air cannot escape, it is forced into the peripheral parts, overdistending the air vesicles there. Again, the expiratory muscles compress the bronchioles more than the air vesicles, impede the exit of air from the latter, and thus overstrain them. So, also, in horn-blowing and muscular strain we have the effect of deep inspiration, and especially the increased pressure during expiration, with the glottis closed. We may admit also a valve-like effect of certain plugs of mucus, which permit the entrance of air during inspiration, but do not allow its exit. Thus, the vesicles become filled with air which cannot get out. Since the air is forced in the direction of least resistance, it is the air vesicles in the apices and edges of the lungs which dilate first. This is probably one way in which expiratory strain acts in producing dilatation. The valve-like action may also be in the opposite direction, permitting the air to get out of the vesicles, but preventing it from getting into them, and thus finally a portion of the lung becomes collapsed. The inspired air must go somewhere else, and produces what may be called a collateral dilatation.

I believe also that much public speaking and perhaps singing may lead to emphysema, especially as the speaker grows older, because the lung is held inflated a longer time than in ordinary speaking.

The vesicles thus overdistended finally lose their elasticity, like an overdistended india-rubber air balloon, which, after repeated distentions, loses its power to recoil. Succeeding the overdilatation comes atrophy of the vesicles, and with this the blood-vessels surrounding them are destroyed. Although under these circumstances the lung occupies more space, its blood-aerating power is diminished. The circulation is cut down to the larger trunks, and the blood takes a short cut, as it were, from the pulmonary arteries to the pulmonary veins. The aeration of the blood is thus rendered difficult or impossible, accounting in part for the dyspnea.

There is also reason to believe that heredity plays a decided rôle in the causation of emphysema, and that congenital defect often takes the place of acquired nutritive retrogression. This was first shown by the late James Jackson, of Boston, who found that in 18 out of 28 cases one or both parents were affected. Accordingly, too, emphysema is surprisingly common in children, and in adults may often be traced back to childhood.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The emphysematous chest is often highly characteristic, in that the anteroposterior diameter is greatly increased, making the two diameters nearly or quite equal, producing the "barrel shape." On opening the thorax in an adult the cartilages are found calcified, and on raising the sternum the greater volume of the lungs at once shows itself. They are in a state of permanent inspiration, meeting by their edges in the mediastinal space and almost or entirely covering the pericardium. Nor do they collapse when removed from the chest.

The individual air vesicles are not only dilated, but large numbers of them are atrophied, producing bullæ of various sizes, from the walls of which extend inward partition which are the remnants of vesicles, so that the large vesicle has been aptly compared to a frog's lung with its semipartitions. The pleura is pale and the lungs are especially so, partly from atrophy of the pulmonary capillaries which accompanies the destruction of the vesicles, associated with diminution in the natural pigment. The lung

surface pits readily on pressure. The distention and destruction are not limited to the periphery of the lungs, but are also found in the center and toward the root, where large bullæ, two to three inches (5 to 8 cm.) in diameter, may be found.

The bronchi exhibit the changes already described under Chronic Bronchitis and Bronchiectasis. An important anatomical change, not usually demonstrable before death because of the voluminous lungs, is *hypertrophy of the right ventricle of the heart*, due to the extra effort required to drive the blood through the diminished vascular area in the lungs. In the later stages the hypertrophy has given way to dilatation, and there may be relative insufficiency of the tricuspid valve with dilatation also of the right auricle. In a few cases there is hypertrophy of the whole heart. There is sometimes, also, atheroma of the pulmonary artery and of the other blood-vessels, or there may be associated pulmonary tuberculosis of the fibroid variety, as well as Bright's disease.

**Symptoms.**—The typical emphysematous subject may often be recognized by his peculiar *round-shouldered stoop* and *barrel-shaped chest*. Rarely, this form of emphysema is an acute or comparatively rapid development, succeeding whooping-cough; but the approach of the disease is mostly gradual, the first symptom to develop and remain constant being *shortness of breath*, which is partly due to the fact that the air in the vesicles does not undergo the usual interchange. In health the intercostal muscles, the diaphragm, and auxiliary muscles of respiration enlarge the thoracic box, and the lungs expand to fill it partly by their own resiliency, but chiefly to fill the vacuum, producing the act of inspiration, while the air is expelled in expiration partly by the recoil of the elastic tissue and partly by the pressure of the contracting thorax. This natural resiliency is absent in a large degree, while the thoracic box also remains in a state of "rigid dilatation." The lung is always filled with air, but it is air charged with carbonic acid and does not change. As a consequence the patient makes increased efforts to draw the air into the lungs, but as the air vesicles are already filled, these efforts are ineffectual. The *dyspnea*, which is but slight at first and is brought about only by exertion, soon becomes decided and constant. The *pulse-rate* is also accelerated, but the temperature is usually normal. *Cyanosis* is a characteristic symptom in established cases, owing to the universal presence of unaerated blood.

Aside from these symptoms are mainly those of the associated bronchitis—viz., *cough*, *expectoration*, and sometimes *oppression*—while variations in these add to or abate his discomfort. With failure of the right heart come venous engorgement, dropsy, and effusions into the serous sacs. Tuberculosis of the fibroid type sometimes develops.

**Physical Signs.**—The physical signs are not always distinctive. *Inspection* reveals a rounded chest, with increased circumference and wide intercostal spaces in the hypochondriac regions, but narrow above. The epigastric angle is obtuse. The result is the well-known "barrel-shaped" chest. More rarely the emphysema may be so circumscribed as to produce local bulging, by preference over the upper lobe of the right and lower lobe of the left lung. Expansion of the chest-wall is diminished, while the scaleni and sterno-cleido-mastoid muscles stand out distinctly. The chest does not



expand, but is raised up by these muscles, which are hypertrophied; the apex-beat is not visible, but may be felt displaced downward and to the right, and is often difficult to find, because covered up by the enlarged lung. The breathing is rapid. There may be retraction of the lower intercostal spaces and the upper abdomen instead of swelling out during inspiration, because of failure of the diaphragm to descend. Vocal fremitus is diminished, while the natural resiliency of the chest-walls is substituted by increased resistance.

*Percussion* produces resonance exaggerated in various degrees, sometimes amounting almost to tympany, the result of the overdistention of the air vesicles, whose elasticity is spent. To *auscultation* vocal resonance is decreased because of the diminished vibration in the air columns. Feeble crackling is sometimes heard. Strumpell says the vesicular murmur is at times exaggerated and "shuffling," at others "rougher and more indefinite." Roughness and exaggeration seem impossible in true emphysematous areas. They may be present in adjacent supplementally acting areas. If bronchitis is present, its sounds are associated, and often obscure all else. The pulmonary second sound at the second left interspace is accentuated on account of the hypertrophy of the right ventricle, but the heart-sounds are usually obscured by the extra covering of the lung. With dilatation of the right ventricle, which sooner or later succeeds, the increased accentuation disappears.

Interlobular emphysema, in which the connective tissue between the lobules is infiltrated with air as the result of rupture of air vesicles due to violent acts of coughing or by wounds of the lung, affords no physical signs, indeed rarely any symptoms. The shape of the chest in such cases is not altered. Suddenness of onset is characteristic of this form of emphysema, and it is apt to be associated with a similar infiltration of the tissues of the neck, which gives rise to a very distinctive crepitation on palpation.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not usually difficult, at least in true symmetrical emphysema. In *pneumothorax* there is some simulation of the symptoms of emphysema. There is the same shortness of breath, and there is some resemblance in the physical signs. There is bulging of the chest, which is, however, more marked on one side than on the other. On the other hand, it is rather rare to have a uniform symmetrical emphysema, and we may have here also a greater prominence of one side than of the other. Thus, the parts of the chest more likely to be affected with emphysema are the upper part of the right lung and the lower part of the left. Also in the matter of percussion, both emphysema and pneumothorax give hyperresonance. Pneumothorax, however, gives more marked tympany than emphysema. It has always seemed to me that the clearness of resonance found in emphysema has been exaggerated in the text-books. The hyperresonance, although often marked, is not always so. The unyielding chest-walls modify it. The hyperresonance of pneumothorax is a real tympany, comparable to that obtained over the distended abdomen. In both, the thickness of the chest-walls exerts a modifying effect. Metallic tinkling is a distinctive sign of pneumothorax, caused by the dropping of fluid from the perforated lung into the air-resounding pleural sac. In the lower portion of the chest with pneumothorax there is always effusion, which gives flatness

on percussion, and a line of separation between tympany and flatness is demonstrable. Pneumothorax is sudden in its occurrence, whereas emphysema develops gradually. It is, however, not impossible for the two affections to be combined.

There is still another condition with which emphysema may be confounded, though it is of rare occurrence; I refer to *diaphragmatic hernia*, in which tympanitic resonance is a striking symptom. I had under my observation for a long time a very singular case, in which there had been a sudden development of symptoms. The condition came on suddenly, while the patient, a man, was engaged in a scrimmage or wrestle. He was seized with a sudden sharp pain in his left side, and a day or two later began to have a peculiar puffing respiration. With this there was extraordinary clearness on percussion over the region of the left lung. He was examined repeatedly by myself and others, but no one thought of the true cause—none suspected diaphragmatic hernia. Acute emphysema was thought of. The autopsy showed that almost one-half of the abdominal viscera was in the pleural cavity, and that the lung was pushed into the upper portion of the chest, occupying a space about the size of the fist. This man presented the bulging, the shortness of breath, and the hyperresonance peculiar to emphysema.

The *Skodaic hyperresonance*—resonance above a pleural effusion—also resembles that of emphysema, but attention to the history and physical signs other than resonance will discover the true cause of the resonance.

**Prognosis.**—This, except in cases of acute emphysema, which heals spontaneously, is unfavorable as to cure. The course is, however, always a chronic one, and much may be done for the comfort of the patient. No classes of cases are so benefited by admission into hospitals as members of the laboring class afflicted with emphysema.

**Treatment.**—It is impossible, so far as we know, to restore destroyed lung texture. If a number of air vesicles have been converted into one sac or bladder-like cavity, there are no means by which these vesicles can be restored. At the same time, when the patient is young, there is some hope of cure if the structural loss is not too great. Effort must be directed mainly to averting those conditions which complicate and increase the emphysema. As I have said, chronic bronchitis is its most frequent cause, and, therefore, we must try to relieve this condition by every means in our power. As the general health is often impaired, it is as important that this should be reestablished as that the bronchitis should be relieved. The blood is to be restored to a proper composition by tonic remedies, like cod-liver oil and iron, and the very best food that the patient can procure. To the cod-liver oil and iron should be added strychnin in full doses,  $\frac{1}{30}$  to  $\frac{1}{12}$  grain (0.0022 to 0.0055 gm.), while arsenic is an admirable tonic either in the shape of Fowler's solution, 5 drops at a dose for an adult, or of arsenious acid,  $\frac{1}{30}$  grain (0.0022 gm.).

While the bronchitis is treated by the usual remedies, it is of the utmost importance that the stomach should be kept in good condition, and that digestion should not be interfered with, while more than ordinary care is required in the selection of remedies for the bronchitis. A very useful measure in these cases is counterirritation, which in no way interferes with digestion. This may be applied in various ways; blisters, iodin, and mus-

tard may be used. A mustard plaster can be so prepared that it may be worn continuously without discomfort—taking mustard and flour in the proportion of one to five, and using equal parts of the white of egg and glycerin with which to mix it instead of water.

Strychnin is an admirable remedy, not only as a tonic, but it may also be regarded as an expectorant, and secretions in the lungs are often disposed of by its use. It has also the effect of improving the nutrition of the muscular tissue of the walls of the bronchi, as it has of improving the muscular tissue in general. Full doses should be given—not less than  $1/30$  grain (0.0022 gm.), three times a day, increased gradually to  $1/12$  grain (0.0055 gm.) This is to be kept up for a long time.

Bronchial asthma is one of the most serious and frequent complications, and often overshadows all else. There is no more efficient means of breaking up such an attack than the hypodermic injection of  $1/4$  grain (0.0165 gm.) of morphin with  $1/150$  grain (0.00055 gm.) of atropin. This will usually relieve the paroxysm almost immediately. If relief is not complete, the injection may be repeated and renewed every six hours. The various inhalations employed for asthma may be used, such as the smoke of burning stramonium or tobacco, ether, chloroform, and amyl nitrite. Of course, in connection with the attacks of asthma the other remedies of service in relaxing spasm, such as belladonna and iodid of potassium, may be given. Tincture of belladonna in doses of 5 to 10 minims (0.31 to 0.62 c.c.) combined with 10 grains (0.66 gm.) of iodid of potassium will break up so much of this condition as is due to spasmodic contraction of the tubules.

To relieve the constant dyspnea, the treatment suggested some years ago by Waldenburg is one the usefulness of which is only limited by its relative difficulty in application and the costliness of the necessary apparatus. It consists in the inspiration of compressed air and the expiration into rarefied air. It is evident that if compressed air can be introduced into the vesicles, the aeration of the blood will be more perfect, and that if the patient breathe into rarefied air, the residual air, which it is so difficult to get rid of, will be more effectually sucked out. The compressed-air chamber has a similar purpose.

Expiration may also be aided by compression of the chest, intermittently applied so as to coincide with natural breathing. This must usually be practiced by a nurse or an attendant, but Strümpell describes in his text-book a simple contrivance devised by a patient of his own for self-treatment. It consists of two boards fastened behind and allowed to project forward on each side in front, so that the patient himself, taking hold of the projecting ends, can compress his own chest with each act of expiration.

## TUMORS OF THE LUNG.

The lungs are subject to morbid growths classified as tumors, though, owing to their situation, they rarely present the macroscopic, tumor-like qualities.

They include carcinoma, and many of the histioid tumors.

**Etiology and Morbid Anatomy.**—*Carcinoma* occurs rarely as a primary

growth, but is not infrequent as a secondary new formation. Primary cancer presents itself usually in the shape of a white or yellowish nodule two to four inches (5 to 10 cm.) in diameter. It is found in the upper lobe of one lung, posteriorly and externally; more seldom in other parts. It probably originates in the alveolar epithelium, and causes secondary infiltration of the bronchial glands and pleura. It may be represented by any of the three principal forms, scirrhus, encephaloid, or epithelioma, also by the colloid and melanotic. It occasions a reactive pneumonia in the lung tissue about it, and often furnishes the physical signs of this affection.

There also occurs in the lung a primary *peribronchial* cancer, disseminated in nodules throughout the lung along the bronchi, smaller nodules on the smaller bronchi, and larger, irregular masses on the larger, varying in size from that of a pea to a walnut. It produces also infiltration of the lymph glands at the root of the lung. *Sarcoma* is also a rare form of primary tumor of the lung.

More frequently both carcinoma and sarcoma are found in the shape of secondary nodules invading both lungs. From three to 20 opaque white nodules,  $1/2$  inch (1.25 cm.), more or less, in diameter, are found irregularly scattered through each lung. Every variety of primary cancer may be thus represented secondarily in the lung. Its origin is probably embolic, and it may be secondary to cancer elsewhere, most frequently in the breast.

As elsewhere, these growths generally present themselves after middle life, primary cancer affecting either sex about equally, while secondary is more common in women, consistently with the more frequent occurrence of cancer elsewhere in women.

The histioid tumors are represented by a subpleural enchondroma, occurring, rarely, primarily as large as a walnut; more frequently, secondary to occurrence elsewhere, when it may attain a large size. Other histioid tumors are myxoma, adenosarcoma, dermoid cysts, fibromata, osteomata, and gummy tumors.

**Symptoms.**—Carcinoma and sarcoma may both be latent, or at most produce such vague symptoms that it does not occur to physician or patient to locate them. There may, however, be *pain, oppression, cough, expectoration*, and superficial signs of *vascular obstruction*, such as lividity of the face and swelling of the upper extremities. The encroachment of the larger cancerous masses upon the pleural cavity may be marked. Pressure on the trachea and bronchi may occur and occasion great *dyspnea*, while the heart may be dislocated. The pneumogastric and recurrent laryngeal nerves are sometimes involved, occasioning the various forms of paralysis of the vocal cords and aphonia. The reactive pneumonia referred to may present the physical signs distinctive of this disease, and it is probably thus that the prune-juice expectoration, thought to be quite characteristic of cancer of the lung—10 times out of 18, as elaborated by Stokes many years ago—originates. This complication, too, may occasion the fever which is sometimes present.

The external lymphatic glands, as those in the neighborhood of the clavicle, may be involved and exhibit enlargement.

Sooner or later, if the patient lives long enough—that is, if his life is

not destroyed by some encroachment on the breathing or vascular function—he emaciates, and becomes cachectic and debilitated. The more usual duration of the disease is from six to eight months, but death is liable to occur suddenly from the causes named.

*Physical Signs.*—These, of course, are indefinite, and it is probably their indefinite and irregular manifestation, with the symptoms named, which will suggest the nature of their cause. Physical signs of pneumonia and pleurisy, either alone or combined, may be present, the voice and breathing sounds and percussion note being affected accordingly.

*Diagnosis.*—Secondary cancer, where primary cancer is present elsewhere, is suggested whenever any of the symptoms named occur in a pronounced degree and are sufficiently long continued. In the case of primary growths, the diagnosis must longer remain doubtful, and we must study and await the development of the more distinctive symptoms.

The nonmalignant tumors present no signs by which they can be distinguished from the malignant, except that their course is less rapid and they develop no cachexia.

*Treatment.*—This consists only in measures calculated to relieve symptoms and to make the patient comfortable.

## DISEASES OF THE PLEURA.

### ACUTE PLEURISY.

*Definition.*—Acute inflammation of the serous investment of the lung or of its reflection on the ribs and diaphragm.

*Etiology.*—I still believe that pleurisy may be caused by simple chilling of the body during exposure to cold. Doubtless more cases are tubercular than was formerly supposed, but it does not seem likely that the many cases, exhibiting the physical signs of pleurisy, from which recovery is apparently complete, can originate in this way. Moreover, it is true that many cases of tuberculosis supposed to have succeeded upon pleurisy have really been primary tubercular pleurisy. These views seem to be sustained by the following conclusions of a very important paper by Richard C. Cabot<sup>1</sup> which may be said to embody the most recent expression of our knowledge:

1. Eighty per cent. of the cases of uncomplicated serous pleurisy are in good health after five years or more.
2. Ninety per cent. are apparently in full health at the end of from two to five years.
3. Fifteen per cent. of the cases have sooner or later developed demonstrable tuberculosis of lung or bone, but in only three per cent. has this tuberculosis manifested itself within two years of the date of pleural effusion.
4. The type of tuberculosis which occurred in these cases was, as a rule, mild and of slow course. Death did not occur until five years or more after the pleurisy in one-half of the 23 cases which developed obvious tuberculosis. Six of the 23 are still alive, despite the tuberculosis, after periods of ten, nine, six, four, two, and one year.
5. Nevertheless, a very rapid form of tuberculosis may develop many

<sup>1</sup> "Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," vol. xvii., 1902, p. 156.

years after the pleurisy—nine years and 16 years, respectively, in two cases of this series—so that the patient is never safe from the possibility of death from tuberculosis merely because his pleurisy lies ten or 15 years behind him.

6. A study of the clinical records of the whole group of patients under consideration shows that among those who have remained in perfect health for five years or more, only 25 per cent. had any family history or past history of tuberculosis, while of those who have become tuberculous 67 per-cent. had tuberculosis in their immediate family or in their own past history. A careful history, therefore, is of great importance in the prognosis of pleural effusion. On the other hand, the physical signs during the course and convalescence of the pleurisy were not markedly different in the group of cases in which tuberculosis later developed from the signs in those who have remained well.

7. Recurrence of the pleurisy itself in patients who have recovered from the original attack occurred in only five cases, or three per cent. of this series. Reaccumulation of the fluid immediately after tapping is rare, occurring in only two cases, or 1.3 per cent.

8. Among the 14 patients who, after recovering from the pleurisy, died of some other disease not one developed any disease which could reasonably be considered a result of the pleurisy—the causes of death were alcoholism, hepatic cancer, dysentery, pulmonary embolism, mitral stenosis, aortic regurgitation, chronic nephritis (3), cerebral hemorrhage, measles, pneumonia (3).

9. Finally, no attempt was made to discover what percentage of this whole group of cases is due to tuberculosis. So far as the statistics go the cases may be all of tuberculous origin.

What these figures do tend to prove is that whether pleurisy means tuberculosis or not, the outlook is bright, provided no family history of tuberculosis clouds it. If pleurisy means tuberculosis, it is a very mild form of tuberculosis and one from which recovery is usually complete under proper treatment.

These paragraphs are in strong contrast with the following by Silvio von Ruck:<sup>1</sup>

1. The pleural cavities are readily accessible to bacterial invasion.
2. The great majority of pleurisies with effusion which occur in otherwise healthy individuals are due to infection with tubercle bacillus. This is proved by autopsy findings, by methods of exact diagnosis, and by the subsequent clinical histories of the majority of persons who have been the subjects of such attacks.
3. There is ample evidence to indicate that the so-called idiopathic, dry pleurisies are likewise usually tuberculous.
4. The subjective symptoms of inflammation of the pleural apices often simulate those of myalgia or rheumatism.
5. In every case of pleurisy, or of persistent pain in the chest or shoulder, which cannot be satisfactorily ascribed to other causes, tuberculosis should

<sup>1</sup>Von Ruck, S.: The Relation of Pleurisy to Tuberculosis. "New York Medical Journal," and "Philadelphia Med. Journal," September, 1905.

be suspected and a careful physical examination should be instituted to determine, if possible, the existence of a tuberculous process in the lungs, or elsewhere.

6. Even if physical examination in such cases prove negative, the patient should be regarded as tuberculous until the contrary is proved, and should at least be kept under prolonged observation and reexamined from time to time.

7. The tuberculin test may be relied upon to confirm or exclude the tuberculous nature of pleurisy in case of doubt.

8. The application of these principles will often lead to an earlier recognition of tuberculous disease of the lungs, especially, and to the institution of treatment at a period which will in many cases secure to the patient most important advantages in his prospects for recovery.

I have already expressed my concurrence with the more encouraging views as expressed in Cabot's conclusions.

In addition to tuberculosis as a primary cause of pleurisy we must mention rheumatism and chronic Bright's disease as predisposing causes, at least. It should be said, also, of the latter that a certain proportion of them have been relegated to the tuberculous pleurisies. The pleurisies which go to make up the sum of the phenomena of pyemia are of undoubted microbic origin. If rheumatism be microbic, then, too, the pleurisies which occur secondary to it must, of course, be referred to the same category. In addition to these instances of primary and secondary pleurisy must be mentioned those which are the result of extension of inflammation by continuity and contiguity, as from the adjacent lung to the pleura over it or from the diaphragm to the pleura above it; also pleurisies of traumatic origin.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid anatomy of pleurisy will be best understood by supposing every pleurisy to begin, as it probably does, with a dry stage, a *pleuritis sicca*, whatever may be its subsequent course. Thus considered, the earliest stage of all pleurisies has a hyperemic basis, succeeded immediately by a roughness of surface due to loosening and detachment of the epithelium, a roughness increased by the addition of fresh inflammatory lymph composed of transuded fibrin and wandered-out leukocytes from the subpleural blood-vessels. Further progress of such pleurisy is—

*First, toward resolution*, in the course of which the product described liquefies and is reabsorbed.

*Second, toward primary organization and adhesion*, in which vascularization and fibrillation take place and two surfaces of the pleura are more or less permanently glued together over an area corresponding to that of inflammation. This is the probable explanation of the little patches of adhesion so frequently found at autopsies, some of which may have formed without the consciousness or discomfort of the patient, while others have succeeded upon a "stitch" in the side which has been passed by as of little consequence. Other instances of this primary adhesive inflammation are found between the opposed surfaces of pleural membrane covering tuberculous deposits in the lung, or limited pneumonic areas, or morbid growths, such as gummy tumors, cancers, and sarcomata.

*Third*, toward *serous accumulation* constituting *exudative pleurisy*, in which varying quantities of fluid are transuded into the pleural cavity. In this usually clear, straw-colored exudate may be suspended shreds of the yellowish plastic lymph already described, which accumulates also most abundantly where the movement of the pleural surfaces is least, as in the chinks and corners of the pleural cavity. This effusion also, in a large number of cases, is absorbed, allowing the pleural surfaces to approach each other and again unite by what is known as secondary adhesive inflammation, organization taking place as before, producing either continuous fusion or bands of new tissue attaching different parts of the pleural surface. The question as to how the process of exudation is stopped is an interesting one, which cannot be satisfactorily answered, though it is probable that pressure of accumulated fluid and contraction incident to organization, as well as cessation of the cause, may be a part.

The ordinary serous fluid which commonly fills the sac in serofibrinous pleurisy is a highly albuminous liquid, sometimes coagulating spontaneously, in which may be found a few leukocytes, exfoliated endothelial cells, shreds of fibrin, and sometimes a few red blood disks. Modifications are those in which the red blood-corpuscles are much more numerous, producing a bloody fluid, or in which leukocytes are variously numerous, short of a number sufficient to justify the term *pus*. Urea, uric acid, and sugar are sometimes found in pleural exudates. The quantity of fluid ranges from half a liter to four liters (1 pint to 4 quarts).

*Fourth*, toward *pus-formation*, in which either primarily, from the outset, or secondarily—that is, some time after the process has commenced—the microbes of suppuration become active, and produce a purulent product or an empyema. The onset of this wandering out of numberless colorless cells is often announced by a *chill*. Even such an accumulation of *pus* may in rare instances disappear without surgical interference, permitting the approximation and union of the two pleural surfaces. The pleural surfaces thus apposed are, however, comparable to an ulcer, and the union and repair take place by formation of cicatricial tissue. This is subject to the contraction usual to such tissue, dragging not only the heart and lungs out of place, but also in extreme cases the ribs and vertebræ, producing slight lateral curvature of the spine.

Various displacements of adjacent organs are caused by the liquid effusion. In the right-sided pleurisies the liver is depressed. A very striking case came under my notice, in which the liver was pushed so far forward and downward as to produce the appearance of an abdominal tumor to the left of the epigastrium. In left-sided pleurisies the heart may be displaced so far that the apex will be to the right of the sternum. The displacements from traction after organization are difficult to describe, but the heart may be dragged so that its apex is much higher than is normal or further to the right, while the parts of lung adherent are drawn in various directions, with the production, at times, of bronchiectatic cavities. If the patient die while large liquid effusions are present, the lung is also found compressed into the back part of the pleural sac.

**Symptoms.**—The initial symptom of pleurisy is usually *pain*—at first in the side. It may, however, be preceded by a *chill*, and at times there



may be a short *prodrome of discomfort* in no way peculiar. The pain in bad cases is of the severest kind, and among the pains most difficult to relieve. It is sharp and cutting in character, aggravated by breathing, so that the patient takes the shortest breath possible, and the breathing is made up of short, hurried gasps. Cough likewise causes agonizing pain, and it is accordingly restrained. Nor is the pain in these cases always confined to the chest, but may shoot down into the abdomen and back. The latter probably implies that the diaphragmatic pleura is involved. *Fever* is also a constant symptom, but is not, as a rule, so high as in pneumonia. At the beginning the temperature may be  $102^{\circ}$  or  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $38.9^{\circ}$  or  $39.4^{\circ}$  C.), but as a rule it subsides early, even though the other symptoms abate but partially, and under any circumstances it falls much lower after a week or ten days unless there is purulent exudate, when the fever assumes a hectic type. The *cough* is peculiar enough to require special mention. It is a short cough, attended with little expectoration, and is a much less conspicuous feature than in pneumonia. Its characteristic shortness is due to the pain caused by the act of coughing, on account of which the act is cut short. The *decubitus* of pleurisy is quite constantly on the affected side, in order that the unaffected side may be free to expand. The patient also has less pain when he lies on the affected side, because the range of its motion is restricted. This pertains to pleurisies associated with copious effusions, as well as dry pleurisies.

While the majority of pleurisies begin in this way, a certain number also begin insidiously. For days and even weeks the patient, while feeling uncomfortable and doubtless feverish and slightly dyspneic, continues his occupation, and even when the physician is called, scarcely mentions symptoms which suggest an examination of the thorax. Such pleurisies are known as *latent pleurisies*. They are latent only to superficial observation. Closer investigation promptly reveals the physical signs of a pleural effusion.

It has already been mentioned that purulent pleurisies may be primary or secondary. In any event, they are most frequently tubercular, and an examination of the pus from such a pleurisy not infrequently discovers the tubercle bacillus in it.

*Physical Signs.*—Acute pleurisy is also resolvable clinically into three stages, each of which is characterized by physical signs more or less distinctive. They include a dry stage, a stage of effusion, and a stage of resolution or absorption.

The *first or dry stage* is characterized anatomically by the presence of the so-called lymph or exudate on the pleural surfaces. During this is revealed to inspection a restrained expansion of the affected side, often thrown into jerks or catches because of pain suffered in a continuous inspiration. The expansion on the opposite side is full and unhampered. The patient lies on the affected side. Palpation may recognize a fremitus corresponding to the friction of the two pleural surfaces. Percussion in this stage is negative, except that it may cause pain, but auscultation recognizes the friction sound, which will be further characterized in treating diagnosis. It may be at a single spot in the inframammary or infraaxillary space, and hence be overlooked. At other times it may be noted over a considerable

area. According as the inflammatory process stops here with resolution or continues into the second or stage of effusion, there may or may not be other signs.

The signs of the *second stage* vary with the amount of liquid in the sac; with a small amount the lungs are slightly floated up, and there may be no signs, unless it be a vesiculotympany above the line of the fluid, a Skodaic resonance by mediate relaxation of the air vesicles. The effusion, however, rarely remains so triling, but commonly rises to the midchest. In the upright position of the patient inspection recognizes in a spare person shallowness and perhaps obliteration of the lower intercostal spaces. The motion of the chest-wall is lessened both in the vertical and transverse directions.

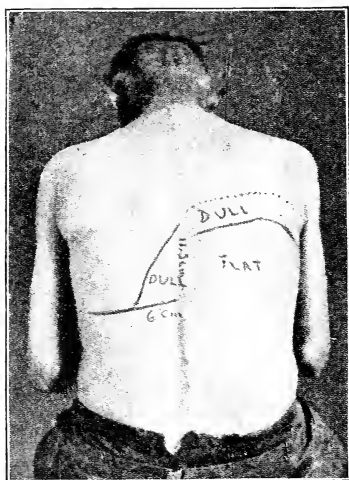
To palpation vocal fremitus is diminished over the area of effusion, but may be increased in the lung above it. To percussion there is absolute flatness over the area of effusion, but the line of demarcation is not everywhere at the same level, being higher behind than in front. Calvin Ellis first called attention to an S-like curve in the line of demarcation which is said to be diagnostic. Very important in the diagnosis is the fact that the fluid changes its level when the position of the patient is changed, and correspondingly the line of dullness is altered. There is also an abnormal sense of resistance to the finger in percussing over the area of effusion. Above the effusion, especially anteriorly, there is again Skodaic resonance by mediate relaxation, and even rarely a "cracked-pot" sound. Tympany may also be due to the proximity of a distended stomach. Measurement discovers that the circumference of the affected side is a centimeter (0.4 in.) or more greater than that of the other side.

To auscultation the breathing sounds are inaudible or very feeble, as compared to the corresponding portion of the opposite side, but vocal resonance, though diminished, is still distinctly heard where the collection of fluid is moderate. Baccelli called attention to the fact that the whispered voice is transmitted through a serous but not through a purulent exudate. He advises direct auscultation in the antero-lateral region of the chest. Above the line of dullness there is occasionally a friction sound, and close to the root of the lung bronchial breathing may be heard. This is, however, more apt to be the case when the effusion is larger and the lung is further compressed. Egophony is also sometimes heard over a thin layer of effusion.

When the effusion is larger, filling up two-thirds or three-fourths of the pleural sac, the effects described are increased, while new ones are added. Inspection notes that respiratory movement is still more hampered, that the intercostal spaces are widened and even bulging, while fluctuation may sometimes be recognized through them. The heart is displaced by the accumulated fluid, and if the fluid be in the left sac, the apex is often found far over to the right of the median line, and if in the right, the apex may be pushed further to the left. The heart sounds are not, however, altered. On the opposite side the breathing movements are supplementally increased. There is complete absence of vocal fremitus on the affected side.

Percussion is absolutely flat all over the effusion, and Skodaic resonance is now not obtainable, because the lung is too thoroughly compressed up into the apex of the sac. Resistance to pressure is marked.





Grocco's Sign. Paravertebral Triangle of Dullness on the Left.  
(After Thayer and Fabyan.)

(Face p. 583.)

*Paravertebral Triangle of Dullness in Pleural Effusion (Grocco's Sign)*—

In 1902 Grocco described a triangular area of paravertebral dullness on the side opposite a pleural effusion, as shown in the adjacent figure. It is caused by an intrusion of the pleuritic effusion across the vertebral column pushing the movable mediastinal contents, viz., the aorta, esophagus and azygos vein before it.

The presence and significance of this sign is variously estimated, but a study of the literature and of hospital cases under my care have satisfied me that it is present in most cases and should be sought for. It is not found, as a rule, in the paravertebral gutter opposite pneumonic consolidation or when there is empyema on the affected side. The strongest proof of its relation to pleural effusions is its disappearance after the fluid is removed from the affected side by tapping. It is sometimes influenced by changes of position. Thayer gives the following method of determining the triangle:

After determining by percussion the boundaries of the supposed effusion, the lower limit of pulmonary resonance on the opposite should be marked out. One should then percuss downward directly over the spine, marking the spot at which relative dullness begins. This will be found to correspond approximately with the beginning of relative dullness on the side of the effusion or is a little higher than the limit of flatness. Then percuss downward along lines parallel with the spine and inward along lines parallel to the lower limit of pulmonary resonance. Thus one can mark out usually the mesial and inferior angle on the healthy side a triangle of dullness. The vertical side of the right-angled triangle corresponding to the line of the spinous processes reaches a point somewhat higher than the upper limit of flatness on the affected side; the base from the mesial line outward on the unaffected side ranges according to the extent of the effusion to 2 cm. to 7 cm. (.8 in. to 2.8 in.).

The third side of the dullness corresponds with a line joining the extremities of these two lines. Thayer<sup>1</sup> and Rauchfus noted that this line sometimes showed a slight outward convexity.

On auscultation bronchial breathing may be heard at the upper posterior portion of the lung, because the large tubes are still pervious to air, and the compressed lung intensifies the sound. Sometimes bronchial breathing is heard in more peripheral parts of the chest, probably conducted hither along a band of adhesion or along a rib. Elsewhere there is absence of breath-sounds. Vocal resonance and whispering voice are alike absent, or the former is very feeble. In certain situations, too, high up, where there is but a thin film between the chest-wall and the lung, there may be egophony, but this is more likely to be present as the fluid is being absorbed.

In the *third stage*, if resolution takes place with a gradual retrocession of the fluid and the reexpansion of the lung, we have a return to normal physical signs. There may be, too, a *friction redux*. A considerable time is, however, required for absorption, and it is often many days before the normal breathing sounds are heard with their usual intensity or the natural fremitus is felt. Often, on the other hand, resolution is not complete, and the two surfaces become glued together, constituting a *plastic pleurisy*, and

<sup>1</sup>For a thorough discussion of this sign based on a story of the literature and of 32 cases, see a paper by Thayer and Marshall Fabyan "Paravertebral Triangle of Dullness in Pleural Effusion," Amer. Jour. Med. Sc., vol. cxxxiii, p. 14, 1907.

the feebly-heard breathing sounds and diminished fremitus and vocal resonance remain more or less permanent (chronic pleurisy). There then remain the symptoms and sequelæ of a chronic pleurisy. In cases of purulent pleurisy, if recovery takes place it is always by adhesion of the apposed surfaces. (See Chronic Pleurisy.)

In connection with the heart, *pleuropericardial friction* may be heard if the pleura covering the portion of the lung adjacent to the pericardium is involved. The apex-beat may not be discoverable if it is so dislocated as to be covered by the sternum, and it often happens that the heart must be located by its signs.

**Varieties of Acute Pleurisy.**—*Tubercular pleurisy* is a pleurisy due to the invasion of the pleura by the tubercle bacillus, and has been considered when treating of tuberculosis.

*Diaphragmatic pleurisy* is a painful form of pleurisy, in which the pleural covering of the diaphragm is involved, either alone or along with the remaining pleura. It is usually dry, plastic, but may also be exudative, with a serofibrinous or purulent product. The pain is low down in the thorax in the zone of the diaphragm, and is often aggravated by deglutition as well as by breathing. Because of the pain in breathing, the diaphragm is fixed and the patient breathes by the upper thorax. Of diagnostic value is the fact that the pain may be increased by pressure at the insertion of the diaphragm at the *tenth rib*.

*Hemorrhagic pleurisy*, characterized by bloody effusion, is found in asthenic states, however induced, in tubercular pleurisy, in which event the hemorrhage occurs from the young blood-vessels, and in cancerous pleurisy; also sometimes in persons otherwise healthy. It is, of course, not to be confounded with blood-stained serum, caused by wounding a blood-vessel in the act of tapping or with a hematothorax from rupture of an aneurysm.

*Encysted or circumscribed pleurisy* is a form of purulent pleurisy in which adhesions form so as to produce loculi, or spaces which are filled with pus. They are quite difficult to recognize during life—in fact, they are commonly found when exploring the chest with the needle. More rarely they are revealed to physical examination, dull percussion areas being found in alternation with clear areas. Such physical signs should suggest the use of the needle to clear up the diagnosis. These collections sometimes pulsate and become *pulsating pleurisy*s. Pulsating pleurisy is almost invariably on the left side and receive in some way the impulse of the heart, which in turn is communicated to the eye or hand of the observer. The possible confounding of these with aneurysm will be again referred to.

In *interlobular pleurisy* the apposed surfaces of two lobes of the lung are agglutinated, and sometimes a sac of pus is pent up between them, forming a variety of encysted pleurisy. Such an abscess may break into a bronchus. It is not usually recognized before autopsy.

**Diagnosis.**—The certain diagnosis of pleurisy depends almost entirely upon the physical signs, for, however severe the other symptoms, there is nothing in them by which the disease can be surely recognized. In the majority of cases of pleurisy the diagnosis is made easy by the aid of these signs. It is true there is a certain resemblance between pleurisy and *pneu-*

*monia* in the first stage of each, and in that stage a diagnosis is often difficult, especially when the physical signs are not distinct. The resemblance of the friction sound to the crepitant râle is well recognized. The usual distinctive features are the superficial situation and the intermittent character of the friction sound, its presence during expiration as well as inspiration, and if confined to one of these acts, rather to expiration, while the crepitant râle is heard only during inspiration. The friction sound is also usually rougher and more circumscribed, while it may sometimes be heard better with the stethoscope. Pain is very apt to be elicited in pleurisy if the stethoscope is pressed hard upon the chest. As the pleurisy becomes dry and adhesions form, the friction sound resembles more closely that of creaking leather.

In the second stage of pleurisy, too, furnishing as it does a dullness on percussion like that of the same stage of pneumonia, and frequently bronchial breathing, we have also a resemblance in the physical signs. But it is true of the bronchial breathing of pleurisy that it is commonly best heard at the upper border of the dullness and least where the dullness is most marked; whereas, in pneumonia the bronchial breathing is most intense where the consolidation is greatest. *Above all, in pleurisy with effusion there are diminished vocal fremitus and diminished vocal resonance; in pneumonia, increased vocal fremitus and increased vocal resonance.* Rarely when there is *purulent* effusion in children there is increased vocal fremitus. There is commonly, further, in pleurisy with effusion, a change of level of the dullness with a change of the position of the patient, which is not the case in pneumonia. The egophonic voice is also often here present in pleurisy; whereas we have only bronchophony in pneumonia. Finally, in the differential diagnosis between acute pleurisy and pneumonia, the trifling cough and absence of expectoration in the former are valuable signs, though it must not be forgotten that in old persons there is sometimes very little cough in pneumonia. The tuberculin and Calmette's tests should not be overlooked in doubtful cases.

As to further differential diagnosis, pleurisy in the dry stage has been mistaken for *muscular rheumatism, intercostal neuralgia, periostitis, and caries of the ribs*, and even *gastralgia and ulcer of the stomach*. The absence of fever in the first two, the circumscribed situation of disease of the ribs, and the associated history of *gastralgia and ulcer of the stomach*, serve to differentiate them.

The confusion of *mediastinal tumors* arising from the pleura itself with pleurisy is a natural error, especially since such tumors in their turn produce pleurisy. In pleurisy, the physical signs are commonly limited to one side, while in mediastinal tumor the fremitus is less diminished, the dullness extends upward, is more irregular, and more circumscribed; while symptoms of compression of nerves and vessels, and of encroachment on the esophagus sooner or later make their appearance. Repeated exploratory punctures may be necessary to settle the diagnosis, which, after all, may require some time.

The impulse of a *pulsating empyema* sometimes very strongly suggests an aneurysm, but the empyema furnishes no murmurs or pressure symptoms while the location is usually different from that of aneurysm.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of acute pleurisy depends largely upon its

cause. The simple pleurisy which are the result of cold always get well, and recovery is the termination in most cases even when there is large effusion, if the exudate remains serous. It has already been said that a purulent pleurisy is, in the vast majority of instances, tubercular. We have learned, however, that a tubercular pleurisy is not necessarily fatal, and it is more than likely that some of the cases of healed empyema with which we are familiar are instances of such recovery. Others are cured by the introduction of drainage-tubes and exsection of ribs, but often the patient slowly succumbs to the exhausting effect of the illness or to tuberculosis of the lungs. Not a very rare event is the spontaneous rupture of such a pleurisy outward, an event better anticipated by paracentesis. Very stubborn, too, are the somewhat rarer cases in which perforation takes place from the pleural sac into the lungs, adding the symptoms of a pneumothorax to those of the pleurisy. Yet even these sometimes heal spontaneously.

Though not a frequent event, sudden death, when least expected, is sufficiently so to make it important that one should be on his guard for it. It is not alone when the chest is full, or during a tapping, that it occurs, but it may happen several days after a large part of an effusion has been removed. Pulmonary thrombosis is probably the most frequent cause. A case of my own terminated thus, when convalescence was thought to be established, and the patient expressed himself better than on any day during his illness. At the necropsy, a white "chicken-fat" clot was found in the right ventricle, extending as a red clot into the pulmonary artery. The chest was partly filled with serofibrinous fluid. Edema of the opposite lung and degeneration of the heart muscle are probably causes, suggested by Wiel. Obstruction to the circulation by dislocation of the heart or twisting of the great vessels has also been suggested as a cause.

**Treatment.**—Many simple pleurisy doubtless get well of themselves, with, perhaps, more or less adhesion of the lung, which may be the cause of certain unexplained restrictions in expanding the chest. For very severe cases of pleurisy, local blood-letting is the promptest measure of relief, and there is no condition in which so delightful an effect comes to the suffering patient gasping for breath and racked with pain. I am confident, too, that the duration of many pleurisy would be shortened by such a treatment. In its absence, the next best measure is the application of a blister, which seems to suspend the process, as well also as to relieve the pain in the less severe cases. Succeeding the blister, a cotton jacket or a poultice should be applied, for a time at least. Anodynes—morphin hypodermically is the best—are often necessary to relieve the pain, and must sometimes be repeated, while I have even known repetition to be inefficient and unsatisfactory, when a blood-letting produced prompt relief.

Even where the effusion is considerable, it often passes away without any very active measures. The blister aids in its absorption, however, and the iodid of potassium may be used in cooperation—5 to 10 grains (0.32 to 0.65 gm.) every six hours. If there is much delay, however, in the absorption of fluid, *paracentesis thoracis* should be practiced as soon as the fever has subsided. It is an operation every physician should be ready to do without calling on the surgeon. I prefer for it the line of the angle of the scapula between the eighth and ninth ribs, and, while it is true that the



chest-wall is a little thicker here, and sometimes perforation is not immediately easy, it is a point freer from danger to adjacent organs than the side where the chest-walls are really thinner. The point for tapping preferred by others is the sixth or seventh interspace in the midaxillary line. The interspaces are made wider and the operation easier if the arm of the side to be operated is carried over to grasp the opposite shoulder. The needle should be introduced close to the upper margin of the rib, so as to avoid wounding the intercostal artery. Local anesthesia should be obtained by the application of ice and salt, or by chlorid of ethyl. It is particularly in the insidious forms of pleurisy that the tapping to the chest becomes necessary, because they seem to be as slow to disappear as they are slow to make their presence known. A further indication for paracentesis is aggravated dyspnea. The operation is usually well borne, though sometimes faintness results. It is, therefore, well to fortify the patient in advance with an ounce of whisky, and if faintness results, to desist. Sudden death during the operation has happened in rare instances. On the other hand, sudden death has occurred more frequently in cases of full pleura without operation. When this accident occurs, it is more than likely that the heart was previously damaged.

Repeated tapings are sometimes necessary. In such event James Barr, of Liverpool, recommends the injection of one dram of the 1:1000 solution of adrenalin chlorid into the pleural sac after tapping and also after tapping the abdomen in cirrhosis of the liver.

Empyemas almost never get well after a simple tapping. The pus reaccumulates, and the symptoms and physical signs are renewed. Free opening should be made without delay, and a good large drainage-tube passed into the chest through an upper and out through a lower opening in the chest-wall. The drainage-tube is often very much too small. In the event of failure of the drainage-tube to effect a cure, which at best requires weeks, exsection of a part of one or two ribs is sometimes practiced with better results. A cure means thorough union of the pulmonary and costal pleuræ, and complete obliteration of the pleural sac.

## CHRONIC PLEURISY.

**Definition and Pathogeny.**—Under the term chronic pleurisy are included several morbid states, the result of inflammatory processes of longer duration than a few weeks. These include both *exudative* and *dry* or *plastic* pleurisies.

1. *Exudative pleurisies*, characterized by liquid product, include—

(a) The condition already spoken of as *latent pleurisy* associated with effusion.

(b) *Suppurative pleurisies*, all of which, though they may originate acutely, are of long duration, and may therefore be appropriately classified as chronic.

2. *Plastic pleurisies*, characterized by a dry product. These originate in two ways: First, they are plastic from the beginning—that is, the so-called lymph first deposited becomes permanently organized as a more or

less thick layer uniting the pleural surfaces. Such primary adhesions are more usual in circumscribed areas of pleural surface. Second, the same result follows when the surfaces separated by the more copious seropurulent transudate reapproach each other as the latter is absorbed, producing secondary adhesions. Third, we have a most distinctive product of chronic pleurisy in the cicatricial tissue, which succeeds the healing of the extensive suppurative surfaces forming the walls of an empyema and which also closely cements the lung to the costal pleura.

Mention should also be made of the form of chronic pleurisy resulting in a thick, pleural and sub-pleural deposit slowly formed, tuberculous in origin, which grows from the pleura into the interlobular tissue of the lung, dividing it or dissecting it in extreme cases into distinct areas, well shown upon section, which has given rise to the name *pneumonia disseicans*, or pleurogenous pneumonia. This form of pneumonia has its type in the pleuropneumonia of cattle. I have met one striking instance of this form of chronic pleurisy of tuberculous origin in man. Any one of these varieties of chronic pleurisy may originate as a tuberculous pleurisy, and probably most of them are of this kind.

The morbid product of chronic pleurisy requires no further description than has just been given, and in the description of the morbid anatomy of acute pleurisy, which necessarily included to some extent that of its frequent termination in the chronic form. The adhesion between the lungs and the ribs is variously close and the product variously thick, insomuch that while usually the two surfaces are easily dragged apart, sometimes it is impossible to do this without lacerating the lung. Attention may again, however, be called to the displacement of viscera, the retraction of the chest-wall, and curvature of the spinal column, which sometimes take place as a consequence of the extreme contraction of the plastic product of chronic pleurisy in its most aggravated form—that with empyema.

**Treatment.**—It need only be added to what has already been said in the treatment of acute pleurisy that, in chronic pleurisy especially, chest gymnastics, consisting in systematic inspiratory efforts and massage of the thoracic walls, must be availed of. Operative procedures must be considered in conjunction with the surgeon. Mild local measures, such as counter-irritation by iodine and counterirritating ointments, may be useful to relieve pain, which sometimes annoys the subjects of chronic pleurisy. Nothing more can be accomplished by active counterirritation by blisters.

## HYDROTHORAX AND HEMATO-THORAX.

**Definition.**—The term hydrothorax is applied to any accumulation of clear serum in the pleural sacs, not due to inflammation of the pleura.

**Etiology.**—It is the result mainly of resistance to the free circulation of the blood through the vascular basis of the pleural membrane. It occurs as a part of general dropsy, however caused, but Bright's disease or valvular heart disease are the most frequent causes. Hence the chest should be frequently examined in these diseases, as hydrothorax may be the first symptom of dropsy. Hydrothorax is usually bilateral in both renal and

heart affections. In a careful study of this subject by J. Dutton Steele,<sup>1</sup> based upon a large number of autopsies with cardiac hydrothorax, in about 83 per cent. of cases the effusion was bilateral, and in 17 per cent. unilateral. Of the bilateral, 70 per cent. were unequal in distribution, and of these, three-fourths were greater on the right side. Of the 13 unilateral cases, ten were right-sided and three left-sided. The usual explanation of this preference of pleural effusion to the right side in cardiac hydrothorax is that more frequently pressure is exerted by a dilated right auricle upon the root of the right lung, interfering with the return circulation from the pleural sacs. Left unilateral effusion occurs as the result of pressure upon the root of the left lung and left superior intercostal vein. Unequal bilateral pleural effusions must, therefore, be due to unequal pressure on the roots of the two lungs. The serous fluid in hydrothorax is characterized by the small amount of albumin as compared with that exuded in pleurisy.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are those of pleuritic effusion, both as to subjective symptoms and physical signs. Crepitant râles are sometimes heard in the lung above the effusion, due to its retraction and to partial atelectasis.

**Treatment.**—This is considered under that of the diseases causing the hydrothorax.

*Hemato-thorax* is a term applied to any accumulation of blood in the thorax, however caused. It may be due to the wounding of vessels, malignant disease, or aneurysmal rupture. The symptoms and physical signs and treatment are those of pleural effusion.

## PNEUMOTHORAX.

SYNONYMS.—*Hydropneumothorax; Pyopneumothorax.*

**Definition.**—Pneumothorax means air in the thorax, but the term is limited to the condition in which there is air in a pleural sac. It is almost always accompanied by a liquid inflammatory exudate, usually purulent or seropurulent, whence the terms pyopneumothorax and seropneumothorax. The effects of pneumothorax are compression of the lung, almost always dislocation of the heart toward the opposite side, and in some instances displacement of the liver and spleen. Pneumothorax is almost without exception one-sided, though it is not impossible for it to be double.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent cause is perforation of the pleura over a phthisical cavity or a hemorrhagic infarct, or over a septic bronchopneumonic focus, or gangrene of the lung. Other causes are perforating wounds of the lung, perforation of the diaphragm due to malignant disease in the abdomen, especially cancer of the stomach or colon, or of the esophagus. Perforation into the lung from the pleural side may occur in empyema. Rupture of the lung due to straining has caused it. The opening may be valvular, so as to admit air intermittently.

**Symptoms.**—*Sudden pain* and *increased dyspnea* usually usher in a perforation causing pneumothorax, though the effect may be more gradual.

<sup>1</sup> "Distribution and Etiology of Cardiac Hydrothorax," "University Medical Magazine," vol. ix., 1897, p. 563.

Sometimes the symptoms are more severe, constituting those of *collapse*—*faintness*, *frequent pulse*, and *lowered temperature*. Later, at least slight fever, corresponding acceleration of pulse and breathing rate, continue while the condition lasts. Pneumothoraces have also been found postmortem when unsuspected before death, having occurred without producing symptoms. The patient may be orthopneic, or may lie upon the affected side, for the same reason as in pleurisy. Pleurisy is a frequent, but not invariable, consequence, and superadds its own symptoms, most palpably effusion.

*Physical Signs*.—These are the most distinctive symptoms. *Inspection* recognizes commonly a bulging half-chest, with the intercostal spaces obliterated or prominent, as compared with the opposite side. The breathing is frequent and short. *Palpation* recognizes absent or very indistinct vocal fremitus, the lungs being no longer in contact with the chest-wall, which is also in a state of tension interfering with vibration. The *percussion* note is resonant, often ringing and amphoric over the upper part of the side—that containing air—while over the area below, containing the fluid, there is absolute dullness. On the other hand, there may be dullness over the air-containing space, instead of tympany, on account of the extreme high tension checking all vibration. We may also meet here that interesting modification of tympany known as Biemer's change of note, based upon the fact that with a given tension the larger an air-containing cavity, the lower the pitch of the percussion note. If the patient with pyopneumothorax sits, or especially stands, in the upright position, the pleural air-containing space is enlarged, because the weight of the fluid pushes the diaphragm downward, whereas in the horizontal-position the fluid flows into the gutter between the ribs and spinal column, the diaphragm rises, the cavity becomes smaller, and the pitch of the percussion note is raised. There is also the usual change of level of the dullness corresponding with change of position, as in pleurisy with effusion.

*Auscultation* recognizes feeble or absent vesicular murmur in the situation where it is present in health, while amphoric breathing may be substituted—bronchial breathing of a metallic character. Ringing amphoric bronchophony is also heard when the patient speaks. An interesting auscultation sign is the so-called "metallic tinkling," a sound ascribed to the dropping of liquid from the seat of perforation into the fluid below. Here also is produced in its typical expression the "coin-clinking" sound conveyed to the ear of the auscultator listening at the back of the chest, while a coin placed upon the chest in front is tapped by another coin. This is a sign usually limited to pneumothorax, though it may also be produced over bronchiectatic cavities. Here, too, may be produced the well-known Hippocratic succussion sound by shaking the body of the patient, the splashing being intensified in the air-distended cavity.

*Diagnosis*.—Almost the only condition with which pneumothorax may be confounded is *diaphragmatic hernia*, the physical signs of which very closely resemble those of pneumothorax. The causes of diaphragmatic hernia are usually severe traumatic agencies, such as compression between cars or under masses of earth, yet occasionally more trifling causes produce it, as in the case referred to on page 574. If such a condition be suspected,

all doubt may be settled by passing a stomach-tube or sound, which will disclose the exact position of the viscera. A *distended stomach* itself is named as a source of confusion with pneumothorax, and it is true that succussion and metallic tinkling can be elicited in it in great perfection. The absence of distention of the thorax itself, the limitation of the physical signs to the neighborhood of the stomach, their association with movements of the stomach quite independently of breathing, point to the proper source. Pneumothorax is scarcely likely to be confounded with large *tubercular cavities*, for while the latter furnish amphoric signs over them, vocal fremitus is increased, or at least remains distinct, while with pneumothorax vocal fremitus is diminished or absent. Further, there is at least no prominence over cavities, while there is often depression, and succussion signs cannot be elicited. Finally, cavities are circumscribed. *Bronchiectatic cavities* furnish signs behind and below the scapula, and therefore more in the situation of those of pneumothorax, but there is dullness instead of tympany, no bulging, and vocal fremitus probably remains distinct, while there is often pectoriloquy, never present in pneumothorax.

**Treatment.**—This is mainly symptomatic. Sudden pain and extreme dyspnea must be treated by morphin, preferably subcutaneously; embarrassing accumulation of fluid by thoracentesis and draining of the sac, and in extreme cases the air may be liberated in a similar manner. Often pneumothorax gives surprisingly little inconvenience, and it is by no means impossible for spontaneous healing to take place. Potain suggested replacing the air and fluid by sterilized air, but such air would soon be substituted by impure air. Operative interference has been carried out with more or less success.<sup>1</sup>

## MORBID GROWTHS OF THE PLEURA.

These are rare and will be considered to some extent in treating mediastinal disease. The pleura is subject to *carcinoma* and to *sarcoma*, the clinical phenomena of which are identical. Most cases of carcinoma of the pleura arise by contiguous growth from primary cancer of the lung. Secondary cancer of the pleura occasionally arises by metastasis from the mammary gland or lungs.

*Sarcoma* occurs as a primary growth in the shape of the so-called endothelial carcinoma of Wagner, which starts from the endothelial cells of the lymphatics and connective tissue. It also gives rise to secondary deposits in the lungs, lymphatic glands, the liver, and muscles.

The **symptoms** of any one of these forms of growth are those of chronic pleurisy, varying in intensity with the extent of the growth, single secondary nodules often giving rise to no symptoms, while the diffuse forms, spreading from the lungs, cause all the symptoms described as belonging to chronic pleurisy, the lung symptoms being relatively insignificant. In the meantime the true nature of the disease may long remain

<sup>1</sup>See a paper on the "Operative Treatment of Pneumothorax," by Samuel West, "British Medical Journal," November 27, 1897, p. 1568.

unknown, its real nature being determined with the development of cachexia toward the end, the decline of strength, and probably secondary deposits in discoverable localities. The bloody character of the effusion is a sign pointing to malignant disease of the sarcomatous or carcinomatous type.

The **prognosis** is altogether unfavorable, and **treatment** is palliative only.

There are also sometimes found in connection with the pleura *chondroma* and *lipoma*, while *calcification* sometimes takes place in chronic inflammatory products.

*Echinococcus* or *hydatid disease* is occasionally found in the pleural cavity. Of this, the first clinical symptom is hydrothorax, the fluid from which is nonalbuminous, differing in this respect from that of pleurisy and to a less degree from that of ordinary hydrothorax. The only unmistakable evidence of hydatid disease is the presence of hooklets and fragments of the hydatid cysts in the aspirated fluid. Here, also, the product may be purulent.

### MEDIASTINAL DISEASE.

**Definition.**—Under mediastinal disease are included all anatomically morbid conditions situated in the mediastinal space, except diseases of the heart, aorta, trachea, and esophagus. By far the greater number of these are tumors, but simple lymphadenitis, abscess, and hemorrhage are also included.

**Anatomical.**—In consequence of the difficulty attending the conception of the mediastinum and its contents, I precede the consideration of mediastinal disease by a brief anatomical description of the mediastinum and its spaces.

The mediastinum is bounded in front by the sternum, posteriorly by the vertebral column from the lower edge of the fourth dorsal vertebra downward, and laterally by the two pleuræ. Clinicians are in the habit of subdividing this space into the *anterior*, *middle*, and *posterior* mediastinum or mediastinal spaces.

The *superior* mediastinum is that portion of the interpleural space above the upper level of the pericardium, between the manubrium sterni in front and the upper dorsal vertebræ behind, and bounded below by a plane passing from the junction of the manubrium with the body of the sternum backward to the lower border of the fourth dorsal vertebra. It contains the origins of the sternohyoid and sternothyroid muscles, and the lower end of the longus colli; the transverse portion of the arch of the aorta; the innominate, the left carotid, and left subclavian arteries; the superior vena cava and the innominate veins, and the left superior intercostal vein; the pneumogastric, cardiac, phrenic, and left recurrent laryngeal nerves; the trachea, esophagus, and thoracic duct, and the remains of the *thymus gland* with lymphatics.

The *anterior space* of the lower or clinical mediastinum is bounded in front by the sternum, posteriorly by the pericardium, and laterally by

the pleuræ. It is wider below than above, and is narrowest in the middle, since at this point the two pleural edges approach each other, while in some instances they are actually in contact. The anterior mediastinum contains the origins of the triangularis sterni muscles; the internal mammary vessels of the left side; a quantity of loose areolar tissue; a few

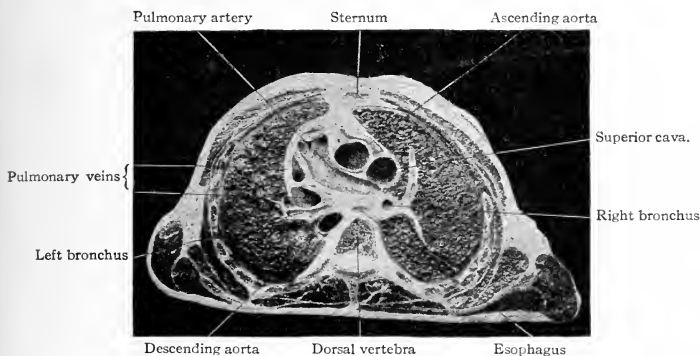


FIG. 50.—Section through Frozen Thorax at Second Interspace in Front, Looking from above downward, Showing Mediastinal Space.

lymphatic glands, with lymphatics from the upper surface of the liver and two or three lymphatic glands called anterior mediastinal glands.

The *middle space* contains the heart in its pericardial sac, the ascending aorta, the superior vena cava, the pulmonary artery and veins, the phrenic

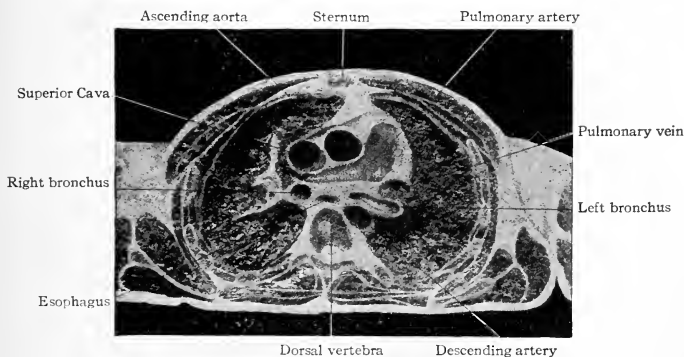


FIG. 51.—Section through Frozen Thorax at Second Interspace in Front, Looking from below upward, Showing Mediastinal Spaces.

nerves, the bifurcation of the trachea, and the roots of the lungs, with numerous lymphatic glands. It is broader than the anterior or posterior mediastinal space.

The *posterior space* is triangular in form, and is bounded behind by the vertebral column. Its anterior boundary is the pericardial sac and

the roots of the lungs; its lateral walls, the phleurae. It contains the descending portion of the arch and the descending thoracic aorta; the greater and less azygos veins, the thoracic duct, the pneumogastric and splanchnic nerves, the esophagus, and some lymphatics.

### MEDIASTINAL TUMORS.

**Historical.**—The celebrated English physician and acute observer, Thomas Willis (1621–75), seems to have been the first to have made an observation on mediastinal disease. H. Boerhaave recorded a steatoma of the anterior mediastinum in 1742. Joseph Lieutaud (1703–80) described several cases. Boole published others in 1812, and J. G. C. F. M. Lobstein gave the first text-book description in 1835, after which cases multiplied, although the number which came under the notice of any single observer was always few. F. Strauscheed analyzed 112 cases in 1887, and Hobart A. Hare collected 520 cases in his Fothergillian Essay in 1880. Out of 7566 autopsies at the Marine Hospital at Cronstadt, 158 subjects were found to have tumors of the mediastinum said to be malignant. A study of mediastinal disease by the late William Pepper and Alfred Stengel, published in the Transactions of the Association of American Physicians in 1895, is noteworthy.

**Pathology and Morbid Anatomy.**—The varieties of growth consist mainly of sarcoma, including lymphosarcoma, carcinoma, simple lymph adenoid tumors; more rarely cysts, dermoid and hydatid, fibroma, lipoma, gumma, and chondroma; also the teratoma myomatoides of Virchow. Sarcoma and carcinoma and lymphadenoid tumors make up the larger number. Most observers have found more carcinomata than sarcomata, but in the light of the fact that many tumors formerly described as cancerous are at the present day acknowledged to be sarcomata, it is more than likely that the latter have always predominated. Hilton Fagge and Douglas Powell were the first to announce this, and William Pepper and Alfred Stengel, in their monograph published in 1895, came to the same conclusion.

The majority of tumors in the anterior mediastinum start from the remnant of the thymus gland and are lymphosarcomata. The lymphatic structures in the anterior mediastinum furnish a few. In the middle mediastinum the lymphatic glands are the principal starting-points of the relatively frequent lymphosarcomata. The carcinomata are usually primary, but secondary carcinoma is not infrequent. The breasts, lungs, and stomach are among the primary seats named. The secondary cancers do not usually attain a large size. Cancer may extend from the abdomen to the lymphatic glands of the chest by vascular embolism, by direct spread of the disease to the under surface of the diaphragm, through which it may penetrate along the lymphatics into the chest and glands, or by embolism through the thoracic duct to the chest and then by retrograde embolism to the mediastinal glands.

The pleura is also a frequent starting-point of mediastinal growths. Among these are the so-called endotheliomata of Wagner and Schulz, starting in the endothelium of lymphatic vessels and sometimes the surface endothelium. They are sarcomata or carcinomata according as the endothelium is counted mesoblastic or endodermic in origin. The cases of primary cancer of the pleura are probably endothelioma. Fibrous, fatty, and calcareous tumors of the pleura are of rare occurrence. The



lungs also contribute tumors to this locality—carcinoma, primary and secondary, and sarcoma, primary and secondary. Of the primary tumors, carcinoma is the more common, but primary sarcoma of the lymphatic glands surrounding the bronchi and within the lungs near the root is not very rare. The clinical symptoms are the same as when the glands around the bronchi outside of the mediastinum are affected. The cancers may start from the surface epithelium of the bronchi, from the mucous glands, or from the alveolar epithelium of the lung. Finally, from the esophagus, also, start cancerous tumors invading the mediastinum, usually small, though not always. From these the posterior mediastinum and lungs may also be invaded.

**Symptoms.**—Mediastinal tumors may be *latent*. Their symptoms when present are, in a word, those of *pressure*. Such pressure may involve the lungs, the trachea, the bronchi, the esophagus, the heart, the vessels, and the nerves of this locality. They include symptoms, subjective and objective, of the usual kind, and also physical signs. It will be remembered that the symptoms of aneurysm are also largely those of pressure, and it is chiefly from aneurysm that mediastinal tumor is to be distinguished often a matter of some difficulty. The division by Pepper and Stengel into three groups affords the most convenient mode of studying these symptoms. These groups are:

1. Those in which the anterior mediastinum is the seat of the growth.
2. Those involving the middle and posterior spaces.
3. Those in which the pleura or superficial portion of the lung is involved.

1. *Intrathoracic Tumors Situated in the Anterior Mediastinum, and in which the physical signs are easily observed.*—The symptoms are mainly those arising from pressure exerted on the venous trunks, the superior vena cava, and the right and left innominate veins. The yielding walls of these vessels as contrasted with the firmer adjacent arteries easily suffer compression, and may even be penetrated by the growths which may proliferate within them, sometimes causing occlusion by thrombosis. The consequence is *distention* of the *veins* of the *upper part of the body*—the head, neck, and upper chest, sometimes the arms. Coldness, lividity, edema, and clubbing of the ends of the fingers result, while the superficial venous channels may be dilated and tortuous.

From pressure on the arteries may result *inequality* of the *radical pulses*. Of the nerves, the inferior laryngeal is especially liable to compression, with resulting *hoarseness* and *aphonia*. The sympathetic is also sometimes compressed, with consequent *inequality of pupils*, the pneumogastric being less frequently involved than when the tumor occupies a more posterior situation. As the tumor enlarges and the air-passages are intruded upon, dyspnea makes its appearance. *Dyspnea* is usually of the inspiratory kind. *Pericarditis* and *pleurisy*, with pain, hydro-pericardium, and pleural effusion may be present. With the prolongation of the disease the patient wastes, but it is said that *cachexia* is *less apt* to develop than in malignant growths of the posterior mediastinum. *Pain* is not always present—indeed, it is said to be *less marked* than in aneurysm.

*Physical Signs of Growths in the Anterior Mediastinum.*—To *inspect*—

tion the sternum is frequently pushed forward, and in a few instances eroded. Vocal fremitus may be either increased or diminished. *Percussion* elicits abnormal dullness, characterized by more or less irregular shape. Pulsation may occur, but is rare, while the sharp diastolic shock of aneurysm is wanting. If the tumor extends upward sufficiently, it may be felt in the suprasternal notch. *Auscultation* over the area of dullness may be negative, but sometimes the breath-sounds and heart-sounds are well transmitted, while a distinct systolic bruit may be produced by pressure on the aorta or the pulmonary artery. Eustice Smith's sign may be elicited. It is a murmur heard over the upper part of the sternum when the head is bent far backward, caused by pressure of enlarged bronchial glands on the aorta. Secondary enlargement in the cervical lymphatic glands sometimes makes its appearance.

*Intrathoracic Tumors in the Middle and Posterior Portions of the Spaces around the Bronchi, Esophagus, Aorta, and Nerves*, and in which the symptoms predominate over the physical signs.—The first effect is likely to be pressure on the trachea and bronchi. Hence dyspnea is an important and early symptom of tumors in this situation, and the inspiratory effort is extreme. Pressure here is also exerted upon the vena cava ascendens, whence result edema of the *abdominal walls* and *lower extremities*. The effect of pressure on the arteries is not serious. From pressure on the vagus nerve arises *peculiar cough*, paroxysmal and whooping. Sometimes it is loud and ringing, at other times constant and hacking. This cough is said to be due to the joint involvement of one vagus and the pulmonary plexus; whereas experimentally two pneumogastrics are required to be cut to produce it. The explanation is in the involvement of the pulmonary plexus. Mucopurulent and even *blood-stained sputa* may attend the cough. The latter is sometimes a sign of perforation of the bronchial wall. *Dysphagia* from pressure on the esophagus is a symptom in this group, sometimes, indeed, the only one. It is not, however, invariably present. Vomiting, cardiac palpitation with irregularity, and syncope, when present, are also ascribed to the pneumogastric involvement. *Pressure upon the azygos veins* may cause edema of the upper part of the abdomen and serous effusion in the chest, while pleural effusions are also due to complicating inflammations or neoplasms of the pleura. *Fever* may be a symptom of tumor of the posterior mediastinum. It is usually moderate but is sometimes high and irregular, followed by sweating. On the other hand, there may be lowered temperature, as in tumor of the anterior mediastinum from impeded circulation.

*Cachexia* is much more frequent with this group of symptoms, as might be expected from the greater severity and disturbing effect of the disease, including, as it does, destructive process involving bone and lung structure, as well as severe and deep-seated pain.

*Physical Signs of Growth in the Middle and Posterior Mediastinal Space*.—It is evident that in this group the physical signs play a secondary rôle, and except as a result of modified breathing by pressure and impairment of resonance to percussion, have little significance.

3. *Tumors Originating in the Pleura and Lung*, and in which the symptoms and physical signs are of equal prominence. The former is the

more frequent starting-point, but the underlying lung is usually soon invaded and may be more frequently the actual starting-point than is commonly supposed. Naturally, the *symptoms first produced are those of pleurisy*, and the disease is generally so regarded at first, being characterized by the comparatively sudden onset, sharp pain, cough, embarrassed breathing, and pleuritic effusion. Instead of abating ultimately, as is the course in pleurisy, these symptoms grow worse, especially the pain, which extends along the intercostal nerves and their distribution and to the neck and arms. The cough also persists, while the expectoration may become bloody and include sometimes cells from the morbid growth.

Paracentesis, too, is successful, and often furnishes in the peculiarity of its product valuable aid in the diagnosis, because, instead of being clear or nearly so, it is apt to be bloody or slightly chyliform from the presence of fatty matter. This fatty character has been found where there were cancer and sarcoma. The diagnostic importance of certain large, swollen cells of endothelial nature, which seem to become detached and transformed only in case of pleuritic disease of malignant character, is insisted upon by Fraenkel. To the information gained from the fluid obtained by tapping are added also unusual resistance to the trocar and imperfect relief to the dyspnea. Rapid emaciation, anemia, and cachexia complete the picture, while all doubt is removed if secondary growths make their appearance in the lungs, as not infrequently happens.

*Physical Signs of Mediastinal Growths Originating in the Pleura and Lung.*—These are those caused by pleurisy, pleuritic effusion and consolidation of the lung.

**Diagnosis.**—In view of the similarity of symptoms to *aneurysm*, the history of the case in mediastinal disease becomes of the utmost importance, but shortness of breath, the bulging of the thorax, irregular outline of percussion dullness, the feebleness of breathing sounds, the dislocation of the heart and sometimes of the abdominal organs, the symptoms of venous engorgement, which are usually more marked in mediastinal disease, the more rapid course, and secondary metastatic deposits are strong points in favor of the latter as contrasted with aneurysm. Laryngoscopic examination with a view to discovering any constriction of the trachea from pressure by the tumor may be availed of. The subjects of mediastinal disease are usually younger than those of aneurysm. Bony erosion and pain are less frequent. Constitutional disturbance and emaciation are more marked. Diastolic shock is never present in mediastinal disease, while pulsation, if present, is not expansile.

Confusion with *pleurisy* and *pericarditis* is a natural error when the symptoms involving the pleura and pericardium are recalled, and here the slower development of the symptoms associated with those of compression of the various mediastinal tissues and absence of tendency to improve should lead to suspicion of the true nature of the disease.

The nature of the tumor may even be suspected from certain features. Thus, rapid growth, metastatic deposits in the glands of the neck and apices of the lungs, cachexia, tumors and in other situations point to malignancy. Especially may sarcoma be suspected if the subject be a youthful one. Abscess may be suspected if there is a history of injury,

caries, or pyemia, or if there is abscess of the lung or empyema attended by the supervention of pressure symptoms. Hemorrhage may be suspected also when there is trauma and the symptoms develop very rapidly.

**Treatment.**—There is no treatment for mediastinal disease, except such as may suggest itself for the palliation of symptoms.

*Mediastinal Abscess.*—Separate mention should be made of mediastinal abscess, since it is relatively not a very rare disease. Out of Hare's 520 cases of disease of the mediastinum 115 were abscesses, as contrasted with 134 cases of cancer and 98 of sarcoma, 21 cases of lymphoma, 7 of fibroma, 11 of dermoid cyst, 8 of hydatid cyst, with isolated cases of gumma, chondroma, and lipoma.

The abscesses were found in the majority of instances in males, most often in the anterior mediastinum, and most could be traced to traumatic causes. Other causes were tuberculosis, the eruptive fevers, and erysipelas. A few cases of mediastinal abscess also originate in the bronchial and tracheal lymphatic glands, as tubercular lymphadenitis. In 54 cases the abscess was acute.

Of **symptoms**, *substernal pain*, sometimes throbbing, was the most conspicuous. To this was added *fever* in acute cases; sometimes *chills* and *sweats*. Erosion of the sternum and burrowing along a rib into the abdomen were noted, also rupture into the trachea and esophagus. In chronic abscess the pus may become inspissated—cheesy. Suppurative lymphadenitis has been known to terminate thus, previous symptoms having been masked by the lung affection. Rarely are we able to detect fluctuation at the edge of the sternum and in the suprasternal notch, where there may be pulsation. Only as the abscess becomes large enough to encroach upon the air-passages does it cause dyspnea.

The *physical signs* are not distinctive. They are essentially those described in the general description of mediastinal disease. Fever, throbbing pain, fluctuation, and the history of trauma are symptoms which, if added, aid the diagnosis.

As to **treatment**, given a correct diagnosis, operative interference is justified, and likely to afford relief if the pus is reached.

*Simple Lymphadenitis.*—This probably occurs to a degree, in all inflammatory affections of the bronchi and of the lungs, but is rarely recognizable. The glands are mostly in the posterior mediastinum, and their enlargement may be appreciable to percussion in the upper interscapular region behind, though lymphatic enlargement may contribute also to dullness in the region of the manubrium. Tuberculosis may affect these glands.

## SECTION IV.

### DISEASES OF THE HEART AND BLOOD-VESSELS.

#### GENERAL SYMPTOMATOLOGY OF CARDIAC DISEASE.

**1. Shortness of Breath, Cardiac Asthma.**—Dyspnea or shortness of breath is commonly the first symptom of cardiac disease. At first it is very slight, being felt only on exertion. As the disease advances it is induced by slighter effort, and finally it is more or less permanent. The higher degrees are commonly characterized as *cardiac asthma*. It differs essentially from bronchial or spasmodic asthma:

1. In that there is no spasmodic contraction of the bronchial tubes.
2. In that the essential morbid change is an overfilling of the pulmonary capillaries which, intruding on the lumen of the air vesicles, interferes with the access of air to the blood, causing an *ἄσθμα*, or panting, an effort by frequent and deep breathing to accomplish aeration. The overfilling of the pulmonary capillaries is commonly caused by a backing of blood from the left heart into the lungs, because of valvular insufficiency, or it may be caused by a weak right heart.

The same results follow in the so-called *paretic* cardiac asthma due to dilatation and weakness of the left ventricle. This is a common condition of the senile heart in consequence of its imperfect nourishment, and is especially prone to occur when a feeble heart is forced to overcome an unusual resistance. Such is the increased arterial tension due to arteriosclerosis and chronic renal disease, both of which are often associated with shortness of breath. In both the blood does not pass from the arteries into the veins as freely as it ought. So long as the heart is well nourished it hypertrophies in these conditions and overcomes the resistance, but as soon as its nutrition fails, it slowly undergoes dilatation, the blood is backed into the lungs, and the asthma occurs.

In cardiac asthma as contrasted with bronchial asthma there is an absence of the wheezing râles which characterize the latter and obscure the vesicular element of the breathing sound, at first unaltered in cardiac asthma. Later, if edema of the lungs occur, there may be small, moist râles crepitant or subcrepitant, and still later, if the air vesicles fill up, bronchial breathing with an impairment of resonance. In bronchial asthma if there happen to be, as indeed there often is, associated emphysema, there is hyperresonance. Under these circumstances the normal areas of cardiac and hepatic dullness are diminished. Bronchial asthma is an asthma of expiration, as spasm of the larynx furnishes an asthma of inspiration. In the former the lungs are overdistended with air and the difficulty lies in getting them emptied. Hence expiration is four or five times longer than inspiration. Yet it is ineffectual. In cardiac asthma there is no obstruction to inspiration or expiration and both share in the overeffort to accom-

plish the perfect aeration of the blood. The air vesicles do not receive enough air to aerate the blood because the latter is in excess. Cardiac asthma and bronchial asthma are sometimes associated.

2. **Palpitation.**—The second symptom characteristic of heart disease and commonly concurrent with shortness of breath is palpitation. By palpitation is meant undue frequency of the heart's action, with or without irregularity. It succeeds very early upon shortness of breath, or is coincident with it, and is more common in mitral disease than in aortic disease. It varies greatly in degree, being at times scarcely noticeable by the patient, and at others exceedingly distressing. The rate attained by the heart under these circumstances is sometimes as great as 200 in a minute, more frequently 120 to 150.

3. **Slow-pulse.**—Unnaturally slow action of the heart as a symptom of organic heart disease is not infrequent. The number of heart-beats is reduced to 40, 20, or even less. It is more frequently associated with degenerative, fatty or fibroid disease of the muscular substance of the heart and of the coronary arteries, and is distinct from nervous bradycardia, to be separately considered. Such diseased state of the muscle, often due to sclerosis of the coronaries, may interfere with prompt contractile response to the stimulus of the endocardial blood on the ventricles.

Slow pulse may also be caused by resistance (sclerosis and high tension) in the peripheral vessels, to overcome which the diastole is prolonged and the pulse thus slowed. In other cases there is deranged innervation.

4. **Pain.**—Pain is not so frequent in heart disease as is palpitation or dyspnea. It is of two kinds—a dull, aching pain and a sharp pain of great severity, radiating through the heart and down the arms, especially the left arm. Sometimes the patient complains of a sensation as if the heart was being compressed, or grasped in a vise. This pain is associated with an anxious expression and feeling, including a sense of impending death, which is characteristic of the severer forms of angina pectoris. Pain of this kind is apt to be associated with disease of the muscular substance of the heart, of its blood-vessels, and of the aortic valves. Pain is less common in mitral-valve disease, and when present is more likely to be of a dull, aching character.

5. **Dropsy.**—Dropsy is another symptom of heart disease. It does not occur with every form, being for the most part absent in disease of the aortic valves and most common in mitral disease. Not every case of mitral disease is associated with dropsy, but it occurs sooner or later in the vast majority of cases. It is sometimes the earliest symptom noticed, and makes its appearance first almost invariably in the lower extremities. It is the direct consequence of backing of the blood into the venous side of the circulation, and is due to the transudation or filtration of its watery element. The serum is, as it were, strained out. When unchecked, the swelling extends from the feet to the legs, thighs, the trunk, abdominal walls, and, last of all, serous cavities and especially the peritoneal cavity, producing ascites. The pleural sacs may, in rare instances, be the first seats of transudation in heart disease. (See remarks on Hydrothorax, page 589.) These simple transudates are usually free of albumin, as contrasted with inflammatory exudates.

**6. Hypertrophy and Dilatation of the Heart.**—These conditions will be frequently mentioned in the following pages and will be considered at greater length on pp. 647, 650, at present briefly, that a correct application of the terms may be learned. By hypertrophy is meant enlargement of the heart associated with physiological thickening of the muscular wall with or without enlargement of the cavities. When the cardiac cavity remains unchanged in size the hypertrophy is called *simple*; when there is enlargement of the cavity it is called *eccentric* hypertrophy or hypertrophy with dilatation, though I prefer to retain the term dilatation for states in which there is degeneration of the muscular substance. At one time the name concentric hypertrophy was applied to a condition in which there was thickening of the muscle with reduction in the size of the cavity, but it has been found that this supposed concentric hypertrophy was really a postmortem change, and does not exist during life. Even simple hypertrophy is more infrequent in the postmortem room than is supposed.

When the left or right ventricle alone is affected, the hypertrophy may be simple or eccentric; when there is general hypertrophy, it is always eccentric. All true hypertrophies are numerical—that is, there is an actual increase in the number of muscular fasciculi, due partly to a fission of previously existing fibers and partly to a new formation of fibers.

The word dilatation is applied to conditions in which the cavities are enlarged without corresponding thickening of the walls. Usually there is attenuation of the walls. The latter is the typical condition. Dilatation implies degeneration, for it is through intermediate degeneration that the muscular fasciculi waste and ultimately disappear, producing thinning.

Hypertrophy more frequently affects the left ventricle, dilatation the left and right ventricle, but the whole heart may be involved by one or the other condition.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The hypertrophied and dilated heart is altered in its weight, dimensions, and shape. The adult heart weighs in health, in the male 50 to 60 years old, about 335 grams (11.8 ounces); in the female, 295 grams (10.44 ounces). The average thickness of the wall of the left ventricle in health is from  $\frac{5}{8}$  to  $\frac{2}{3}$  inch (1.6 to 1.7 cm.); of the right ventricle,  $\frac{1}{6}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (0.4 to 0.6 cm.); of the left auricle,  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3 mm.); the right auricle,  $\frac{1}{12}$  inch (2 mm.).

Hearts exceeding these weights and measurements are, therefore, hypertrophied. Measurements should be made before rigor mortis sets in or after it has passed away. Relaxations may be favored by soaking the heart in water. Commonly, the hypertrophied heart does not exceed 25 ounces (750 gm.), though hearts weighing 48 and 53 ounces (144 to 1590 gm.) have been found.

The shape of the heart varies; in left ventricular hypertrophy it is elongated to the left and lies more horizontally, while the conical shape is less marked; when both ventricles are hypertrophied, the heart is round. In mitral stenosis with hypertrophy of the left auricle and right ventricle it is also quadrate, the right ventricle occupying the chief bulk of the organ, while the left ventricle recedes behind it.

## DISEASES OF THE PERICARDIUM.

## ACUTE PERICARDITIS.

**Definition.**—An inflammation of the serous covering of the heart and of its reflection on the inner surface of the pericardial sac.

**Etiology.**—By far the larger number of cases of pericarditis are due to some toxic substance in the blood, such as is developed in the infectious diseases, or to some excrementitious matters which accumulate in the blood because of deficient elimination. Pathogenic organisms may be the direct cause in certain cases. Other cases arise *per contiguum*, a few cases are traumatic, and those that cannot be accounted for are called idiopathic. Acute articular rheumatism or its cause is by far the most frequent etiological factor, from 30 to 70 per cent. of all cases being ascribed to it. The greater the severity, of the primary disease, the more likely is it that the complication, pericarditis, will occur; yet it arises also in the mildest cases, and has sometimes even preceded the rheumatic attack. It may be that certain seeming idiopathic cases are due to the toxin of rheumatism spending itself on the pericardium instead of on the joints. Other infectious diseases causing it are pyemia, scarlet fever, typhoid fever, diphtheria, and even measles. Bright's disease is one of the best recognized causes of pericarditis though not a very frequent one and it may be the toxic matters which accumulate in the blood in this disease which are responsible for it. Such dyscrasic states of the blood as are represented by scurvy and purpura hæmorrhagica may cause it. Tuberculosis of the pericardium is a common cause of pericarditis. Tubercular pericarditis may be part of a general tuberculosis or a secondary infection from the lungs.

Diseases of adjacent organs which cause pericarditis are chronic valvular disease, pleuropneumonia, pleurisy, especially tubercular pleurisy, morbid growths in the vicinity, ulcerative disease of the esophagus, disease of the bronchial glands and bronchi, disease of the vertebræ, ruptured aneurysm, abscess of the heart, or invasion of the pericardium by suppuration through the diaphragm.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The appearances vary with the stage of the disease. Ordinary acute pericarditis is met with in one of three stages. The *first stage* is represented by hyperemia and its consequences. The initial events are hyperemia followed by roughness due first to loosening and detachment of the epithelium, and further increased by deposits of fresh inflammatory lymph. This lymph is spread at first in yellow flakes over the surface of the pericardium.

From this point onward morbid appearances vary with the mode of termination. This may be by resolution, when the products described undergo fatty degeneration and are absorbed, restoring the normal state. Or there may be organization and union between the visceral and reflected pericardium (primary adhesive inflammation).

Frequently there supervenes the *second stage*, in which the liquid transudate increases, separating the two surfaces of the pericardium and distending the sac. This transudate is a clear, straw-colored fluid in which



may be found floating flakes of lymph above described. The quantity of fluid varies greatly, amounting sometimes to a liter (2 pints) or more. In favorable cases it, too, is reabsorbed, and the two pericardial surfaces are reapposed with or without union of the apposing surfaces. Sometimes this union is complete and firm, so that the two surfaces are separated with difficulty, or it may be partial, by bands of varying length.

The term *third stage* is usually applied to the phenomena succeeding the transudation described. They include organization or suppuration. The former may be adhesive in various degrees or villous. The latter occurs when, union being prevented by the constant motion to which the two surfaces are subjected, organization takes place without attachment of the opposing surfaces, and a peculiar villous product results, characterized by numerous projections, uniform in size and shape, resembling closely the papillæ on a sheep's tongue. These papillæ, composed of vascular connective tissue, originate in the usual way by an outgrowth and vascularization of the connective tissue of the serous membrane, and not by organization of the exuded lymph, as was formerly supposed. This lymph undergoes fatty degeneration and absorption.

The more unfavorable cases terminate in suppuration, which may also be primary or secondary. In the former instances there is at once a rapid outwandering of leukocytes and the formation of a purulent fluid in the pericardium—pyo-pericardium. In the secondary form the clear, serous transudate is substituted by pus, an event which is usually ushered in by a chill and is followed by hectic fever. The cause of the suppuration in either case is the access of the usual pus organisms, the streptococcus and the staphylococcus. The contents of the pericardium may become cheesy, especially if the inflammation is tubercular.

**Symptoms.**—Clinically, as well as anatomically, we seek to separate the stages, first of roughening, second of effusion, and third of absorption or organization, chiefly by aid of the physical signs.

Pericarditis is sometimes ushered in by a *chill*. More frequently a sharp *pain* in the region of the heart initiates the attack, previous to which there may, however, have been a sense of *discomfort* or *distress* about the organ, which may, indeed, be the only subjective symptom. The pain and discomfort may be referred to the epigastrium. To these symptoms may be added *dyspnea* or orthopnea. There is also *fever*, which is not very high—temperature 102° F. (39.9° C.)—unless there be previous disease with fever, when the pericardial complication adds an increment. The *pulse* is frequent and the patient restless and uncomfortable. There is often *tenderness* over the region of the heart, which may be brought out by percussion or pressure with the stethoscope. The *position* assumed by the patient varies; sometimes he may prefer to lie on the affected side, at other times on his back or on the right side, or he may prefer to sit up. Finally, there may be no subjective symptoms added to those of the primary disease, in which case the pericarditis must be discovered only by the physical examination, or it may escape detection altogether until the necropsy reveals it.

As the effusion distends the pericardium and encroaches on the lung, the difficulty in breathing increases, dyspnea becomes more marked, the action of the heart more disturbed, frequent, and irregular. When large it

may press upon the left lung producing changes in the percussion note which will be discussed when considering the physical signs of the disease.

Still larger effusions produce *dysphagia* in consequence of encroachment on the esophagus. *Aphonia* may occur from pressure on the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The pressure of the full sac on the aorta may produce the *pulsus paradoxus* of Griesinger and Kussmaul, in which the pulse beat is weakened and accelerated during inspiration. (Fig. 52.)

A certain degree of *prominence of the epigastrium* may result from the encroachment of distended pericardium, while the excursion of *breathing movement* may be noticeably greater on the right side.

*Physical Signs.*—In the *first stage* there may be pain in response to pressure, but the physical sign characteristic of the stage is the friction sound. It may be associated with an impulse stronger than natural. The friction sound is of the greatest importance in diagnosis. It is a superficial to-and-fro sound heard directly under the ear, commonly loud and rasping, never blowing, sometimes creaking. *It is loudest over the middle of the heart.* It is not conducted as are the murmurs at the valves in the direction of the

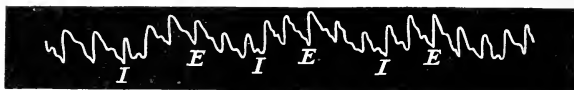


FIG. 52.—Pulsus Paradoxus.

Influence of Respiration upon the sphygmogram (after Riegel); I, During inspiration; E, During expiration.

blood current. It is often influenced by changes of position or by breathing. The rub may sometimes be felt by the hand placed over the heart. In the first stage, at least, it lasts a short time—a day or two at most and sometimes only a few hours—and disappears with the filling of the pericardium by effusion. It may sometimes be brought out or intensified by pressure with the stethoscope.

The *second stage*, or that of effusion, exhibits usually, but not always, signs discoverable to *inspection* or *palpation*, or to both. They depend on the amount of effusion. If large, the precordium may be bulging, the inter-spaces obliterated, and the impulse undulating, tumultuous, and indistinct. As the effusion increases the heart is pushed further and further away from the chest-wall and assumes a more horizontal position, while the impulse, feebler and feebler to vision and touch, may disappear altogether. The friction sound so characteristic of the first stage is found high up and becomes less marked, but, according to George Balfour, never disappears. The site of the apex beat is raised toward the left. *Percussion* furnishes the most striking change. The area of dullness is enlarged—peculiarly enlarged. It becomes rudely triangular or truncated pyramidal with the apex toward the inner end of the left clavicle and the base as low as the seventh rib, and extending in extreme cases from nipple to nipple, even pushing the diaphragm and liver downward. The absence of resonance in the fifth intercostal space, to the right of the sternum, is known as Rotch's

sign in pericarditis, and has been assigned considerable value in the early diagnosis of pericardial effusion.

It is not impossible, however, that a similar dullness may be caused by a circumscribed pleuritic effusion or even great enlargement of the heart. The cardiohepatic angle as determined by percussion, normally an acute or a right angle, may become *obtuse*.

*Auscultation* confirms palpation. The conditions of the friction sound are removed more or less by separation of the opposed pericardial surfaces. Yet the sound does not always disappear. The heart-sounds are indistinct and best heard at the top of the sternum. Sometimes there is a basic systolic murmur.

The *third stage* represents a return to the normal state of affairs, which may come about with the intermediation of a *friction redux* or not; or adhesions may form between the heart and the sac, embarrassing its movements permanently, and producing retraction of the chest-wall with systole. On the other hand, necropsy has often revealed close adhesions between the

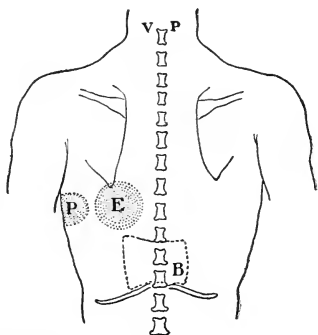


FIG. 53.—E, Ewart's posterior pericardial patch. P, Pins' sign. B, Broadbent's sign within dotted lines.—(After Ewart modified.)

heart and the pericardium which were not suspected during life. Permanent roughening, represented by the "sheep's tongue" surface or other roughening or adhesions, may produce permanent friction sound, and the pericarditis is chronic.

*Secondary Physical Signs in the Lungs.*—The enlarged distended pericardium protruding upward toward the left clavicle may produce there Skodaic resonance to percussion in the adjacent lung by indirect relaxation, or it may compress the lung producing dull percussion. More frequently the lower lobe is encroached upon, sometimes completely emptied of air, whence the percussion note over the lung in the lower axilla and about the angle of the scapula may be Skodaic or even dull if the lung is completely emptied of air. Correspondingly the breathing sounds may be feeble, broncho-vesicular and rarely bronchial, and there may be egophomy. These sounds are not to be confounded with those due to a possible associated pleuritic effusion which gives diminished or absent tactile fremitus as contrasted with increased fremitus of the compressed lung. Attention

was called to these symptoms as far back as 1857 by Bamberger<sup>1</sup> whence they are known as Bamberger's sign, though the names of Ewart and Sansom have also become associated with his. The normal state of the lung may be in part restored by changing the position of the patient, causing him to lean forward, to lie on his right side, or assume the knee-elbow position. To this attention was especially called by Pins.

Ewart has also called attention to an area of dullness below the ninth rib, on the left side between the spine and a line drawn through the posterior edge of the scapula, and to a less degree to the right of the spine. In this area known as "Ewart's posterior pericardial patch of dullness" the respiratory sounds are also absent and the voice sounds are feeble. He ascribes this sign to an altered dorsal relation of the liver due to pressure of the pericardial effusion. Ewart has also called attention to what he calls the "first rib sign," also recognized by palpation. The upper edge of the first rib may be followed round by the finger tip because the clavicle is apparently raised above its normal position by the effusion which must of course be large.

*Physical Signs of Chronic Adhesive Pericarditis or Adherent Pericardium.*—These differ materially. They are most easily studied in children, in whom the condition is especially apt to occur after rheumatism. Their study is further facilitated by dividing the condition into two groups:

1. *Simple adhesion of the pericardial and epicardial layers.* These are the cases more frequently overlooked, sometimes giving rise to no symptoms and first found at necropsy. There may, however, be friction and creaking sounds with indistinct apex beat on the one hand, or retraction of the chest-wall below described.

2. *Adherent pericardium, with chronic mediastinitis and fusion of the outer layer of the pericardium with the pleura and to the chest-walls,* a serious form, leading to marked hypertrophy and dilatation, especially in children. To *inspection* and *palpation* the precordium is bulging, the impulse is more diffuse, extending sometimes from the third to the sixth interspace, and from the right parasternal line to outside the left nipple. The *apex* may be *displaced* in various degrees from its natural site; it may be to the right of its normal position and above it or down toward the epigastrium. It is sometimes multiple, or spreads in a wave-like manner over the area named. At other times the systole is associated with a *tugging retraction of the chest-wall*, which is especially evident in thin persons and is regarded by some as the most valuable sign of adhesion of the pericardium. It is most frequently noted between the seventh and eighth ribs in the left parasternal line. This may be followed by a rapid rebound of the chest-wall, known as the *diastolic shock*. It may be associated with a coincident collapse—the *diastolic collapse of the cervical veins*, due to a sudden emptying of these vessels consequent on the expansion of the chest-wall, a sign first described by Friedreich.

Broadbent's diaphragm sign has attracted much attention—a systolic tug which is communicated through the adherent diaphragm to its points of attachment, especially on the left side behind, between the eleventh and twelfth ribs. It is distinct and apart from the tugging in the left para-

<sup>1</sup> "Lehrbuch der Krankheiten des Herzens," von H. Bamberger, Wien, 1857.

sternal line, between the seventh and eighth ribs, to which attention had been previously called. Furthermore, owing to the attachment of the pericardium to the central tendon of the diaphragm this muscle does not descend with inspiration, and consequently the usually visible movement of the epigastrium during this act does not take place.<sup>1</sup>

It is in adhesive pericarditis, too, that we sometimes have the *pulsus paradoxus*, referred to on page 604. First, Griesinger, and later Kussmaul, called attention to it as a constant symptom of cicatricial mediastinitis, due to the dragging of the cicatricial tissue on the great vessels during inspiration. It happens, too, when the great vessels, already compressed by the exudate, are further encroached upon by the expanding lung, making the pulse smaller and more frequent. This is more frequently demonstrable by the sphygmograph, but in extreme cases may be appreciated by the finger. It is not a pathognomonic sign of either event, but if associated with an inspiratory distention of the cervical veins, it points strongly to adhesive pericarditis.

To *percussion* there is usually a large increase in the normal area of cardiac dullness, commonly upward and to the left, sometimes as high as the first interspace. Often the pericardium is adherent to the adjacent pleura, in which event the area of cardiac dullness is not influenced by deep breathing, a sign pointed out by C. J. B. Williams as of great value in diagnosis.

*Auscultation* may be entirely negative, or there may be a modification of the usual friction sound which closely resembles the creaking of leather. A galloping or fetal rhythm may be present, or there may be a loud systolic murmur at the apex, which has often given rise to the erroneous diagnosis of mitral valve disease, being due to relative insufficiency. Endocardial disease may, however, coexist, especially in children. A presystolic murmur is sometimes heard.

The possible association of chronic adhesive pericarditis and mediastinitis with proliferating peritonitis, perihepatitis, and splenitis should be remembered. Rarely ascitis may be one of the early signs of this condition and lead to the mistaken diagnosis of cirrhosis of the liver.<sup>2</sup>

**Diagnosis.**—In all cases of acute articular rheumatism the heart should be frequently examined, because pericarditis often supervenes with feebly pronounced subjective symptoms. At the outset the distinction is to be made between pericarditis and *acute endocarditis*, which as frequently succeeds on rheumatism with subjective symptoms no more distinctive. There is usually not much difficulty in acute cases. The to-and-fro rhythm, heard directly under the ear, usually most distinct over the center of the heart, and the absence of sounds transmitted in accordance with the laws of trans-

<sup>1</sup> Some doubt has lately been thrown on the value of Broadbent's sign by the observations of A. W. Tallant who found as the result of the examination of 130 cases "retractions in the left back are much more common than is generally supposed, although it is probable that they would be noted more frequently if always looked for during the routine physical examination. Systolic retraction of a marked degree, similar to and often identical with that described by Broadbent is found in many cases of cardiac hypertrophy in which there is no other reason to suspect pericardial adhesions. Systolic retraction more often involving the interspaces only may be seen in the left back in thin individuals, especially if there is marked emaciation. The reason for many of these retractions seems to be as follows: Since the pericardium is, even under normal conditions, adherent to the central tendon of the diaphragm it is conceivable that with each systole there is a slight pull on the diaphragm. Ordinarily this is not marked enough to be transmitted to the points of attachment to the chest-wall, but if the heart is hypertrophied or acting very vigorously the pull may be visible, while in a thin individual it would be more easily perceived."

<sup>2</sup> See a paper by A. O. J. Kelly on "Multiple Serositis, the Association of Chronic Obliterative Pericarditis with Ascites, etc.," "Amer. Jour. Med. Sciences," vol. cxxv., 1903, p. 116.

mission of the valvular abnormal sounds, are distinctive features of the cardiac friction. If, however, one of the to-and-fro elements is wanting, the difficulty is greater and errors do occur. Close study must be made as to transmission. It is further characteristic of the friction sound that it is increased in loudness by pressing the chest-wall with the stethoscope, while this is not the case in endocardial murmurs. Such pressure is, however, often painful to the patient. In *chronic valvular defects* there are changes in the size and position of the heart which are not present in the first stage of acute pericarditis. When both acute endocarditis and pericarditis are present, the difficulty is greatly increased and one or the other condition is likely to be overlooked.

The "pleuropericardial" friction sound or "extrapericardial" friction sound is to be distinguished from pericardial friction sound. It is a sound similar in rhythm to the pericardial sound, but the primary condition of its causation is a pleuritis involving the opposed surface of the mediastino-costal sinus of the left side. It is more commonly heard, therefore, over the left border of the heart. It is the combined product of the respiratory and cardiac action, being usually louder during expiration. It generally ceases during a deep inspiration, because at this time the cardiac action cannot produce the required rubbing. On the other hand, this is sometimes the very condition under which the friction sound is loudest. Simply holding the breath may also stop it, though not necessarily, because the heart motion produces it. This influence of the breathing one way or the other is, however, of importance in diagnosis, while other symptoms must also be taken into consideration. Thus, if it be a pleurisy, the pleural friction sound is probably heard elsewhere, and there are the other symptoms of a pleurisy present, while those of a pericarditis are absent. Unlike the true pericardial friction sound the pleuropericardial friction sound is uninfluenced by bending the body forward, but is heard with equal distinctness with the body in any position. Difficulties again increase when it is associated, as it sometimes is in a pleuropneumonia, with endocarditis. It also occurs in tubercular phthisis, where it is sometimes associated with a systolic click due to the simultaneous expulsion of a bubble of air from a portion of softened lung.

For diagnosis between pericarditis with effusion and dilatation of the heart see page 652. It is in this differential diagnosis particularly that Rotch's sign and the difference as determined by percussion of the cardiohepatic angle become valuable. It must be remembered, however, that Rotch's sign is not always present, even when there is considerable effusion. The possibility of a circumscribed pleuritic effusion must also not be overlooked. Bamberger's sign—Skodaic resonance and dullness in the lower axilla and region of the angle of the left scapula—should be sought; also Ewart's posterior pericardial patch.

**Prognosis.**—The course of pericarditis varies with different cases. In an ordinary uncomplicated case passing to recovery, the duration is one to three weeks, even when there is considerable effusion, which is often absorbed with surprising rapidity. In other cases, especially in cachectic subjects, the duration is longer. Relapses occur. When adhesion results, convalescence is greatly prolonged, and in many cases the heart is perma-

nently crippled. On the other hand, extensive adhesions are sometimes found at necropsy where no lesion was suspected. The pyo-pericardial cases are usually fatal.

**Treatment.**—Prompt treatment is of the greatest importance in pericarditis. Rest is an absolutely essential condition. As soon as the diagnosis is made, a blister is of the greatest value. There is no other disease in which I am so satisfied of the efficiency of a blister. It should be at least three inches (7.5 cm.) square. I am confident that it helps to prevent effusion and also to promote the absorption of effusion. Along with this, measures to relieve pain are indicated. Nothing is so satisfactory as moderate doses of morphin administered hypodermically, associated with atropin in the proportion of 1 150 grain (0.00044 gm.) of the latter to 1 4 grain (0.0165 gm.) of the former. Cold applications to the pericardium by Leiter's coil or the ice-bag are sometimes useful. At other times hot applications are more comforting.

Digitalis in moderate doses is usually indicated to steady the heart at its work, without, however, stimulating it too forcibly. For the same reason alcohol and ammonia, especially the aromatic spirit of ammonia, are indicated. Strychnin is a valuable heart tonic. Liquid food, including milk and broths, should be adhered to until convalescence is established. Eggs may, however, be early allowed.

If the effusion is very large, tapping the pericardium may be necessary to relieve the patient, although practically the relief which first follows a successful operation is rarely followed by complete recovery. The aid of the surgeon should be secured if possible, but if not, puncture may be made in the fourth interspace, an inch (2.5 cm.) to the left of the edge of the sternum. If made in the fifth interspace, the puncture should be made a little further out—say 1 1/2 inches (3.5 cm.) A safe point which may be used in large effusions is the left xiphocostal angle, at which the needle should be pushed upward and backward. Still another site is the left fifth interspace between the apex impulse and the outer margin of dullness. When the pericardial fluid is pus, a simple tapping is insufficient. Free incision should be made, and free drainage should be established with aseptic precautions. John B. Roberts<sup>1</sup> collected 35 cases of suppurative pericarditis treated by incision, of which 15 recovered and 20 died. It is not impossible that if operation were done earlier, better results would follow.

The treatment of chronic adhesive pericarditis is mainly symptomatic, and directed to building up the strength of the patient.

## OTHER PERICARDIAL AFFECTIONS.

Other affections of the pericardium are hydropericardium, hemopericardium, pneumopericardium, and tuberculous pericarditis, rarely morbid growths.

**HYDROPERICARDIUM.**—This term is applied to a large accumulation of serous fluid in the pericardium. In health the pericardium is simply lubricated by this fluid. It occurs sometimes as a part of a general dropsy,

<sup>1</sup>"American Journal of the Medical Sciences," December, 1897.

most frequently cardiac dropsy, more rarely in renal dropsy. The accumulation is seldom large in these cases. It is not common, but is sufficiently so to demand frequent examination of the heart, as it is often overlooked. Its signs are the same as those of the inflammatory effusion.

HEMOPERICARDIUM, or blood in the pericardium, occurs only as a result of rupture of an aneurysm in the first part of the aorta into the pericardial sac, from rupture of the heart itself or a wound of the heart. It is rapidly followed by shock and death. The physical signs are those of effusion. It may also be caused by tuberculosis of the pericardium. Cancer of the pericardium may be associated with blood effusion.

PNEUMOPERICARDIUM is a rare condition in which gas is present in the pericardial sac. It is analogous to the much more common one of pneumothorax. As in pneumothorax, the presence of air implies also the presence of liquid and that, usually, pus. It is produced by similar causes, such as perforation into an air-containing space like the lungs or esophagus. Such perforation is usually traumatic. Decomposition of pericardial exudate or morbid growth, it is said, may also produce it.

**Symptoms.**—Its symptoms are pain and pericardial embarrassment, but the physical signs are most distinctive, especially those of auscultation. To inspection there is prominence of the precordium, with indistinctness or obliteration of apex-beat, restored by the patient's bending forward. Percussion furnishes dullness over the lower portion of the cardiac area and tympany above it, the position of both being altered by change in position of the body. To auscultation the heart-sounds assume a striking metallic character, being audible even at a distance from the body. A similar metallic character is given even to a friction sound, if it is present, as it often is.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of this condition requires differentiation from the effect of an *air-dilated stomach* on the heart-sounds, or rarely of a *phthisical cavity* or *pneumothorax*. All doubt in the case of the stomach is removed by filling it with water. The associated symptoms of the other conditions make a mistake unlikely.

**Treatment** is scarcely available, except in case of external injury, when operation may be of service.

TUBERCULOUS PERICARDITIS presents nothing peculiar in its symptoms or signs as already described.

MORBID GROWTHS OF THE PERICARDIUM are rarely diagnosticated before death.

## DISEASES OF THE ENDOCARDIUM.

### ACUTE ENDOCARDITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Valvulitis*.

**Definition.**—Endocarditis in both its acute and chronic forms is an inflammation for the most part confined to the valves; for such inflammation, therefore, *valvulitis* is a more correct term. The lining of the cavity of the heart is, however, sometimes affected in acute endocarditis, especially



in the more severe cases, when it is known as *mural endocarditis*. It is usually in the apex of the left ventricle that such inflammation occurs.

**Etiology.**—All cases of acute endocarditis unless traumatic, must in the light of modern studies be regarded as infectious—that is, as due to a specific poison commonly associated with some disease which is regarded as the cause of the endocarditis. Acute rheumatism is the best recognized and most frequent of these. Upon this follow closely the infectious fevers, with their various specific organisms or their toxic products. In the disease which is acknowledged to be the most common cause—acute articular rheumatism—no definite causing organism has as yet been found.

There is, however, a great difference in the severity of different cases of acute endocarditis, and the disease is easily separable into two classes, from one of which recovery almost always takes place up to a certain point, leaving often a degree of valvular defect known as chronic endocarditis, while the other is invariably fatal. The first, or milder, of these classes was for a time ascribed to some specific nonorganized agency, even after the more severe and fatal form was recognized as infectious, whence arose the terms simple endocarditis on the one hand, and infectious, ulcerative, malignant, or mycotic on the other.

In attempting to explain why at one time the simple form and at another the virulent form of endocarditis arises, it may be stated that the toxins generated by the less virulent bacteria may pave the way for the operation of the virulent streptococcus and staphylococcus pyogenes, the pneumococcus, the gonococcus, and other organisms which are found in the morbid products of malignant endocarditis. It is not unreasonable to suppose that the former produce the simple form of endocarditis, while the cooperation of the septic bacteria named is necessary to produce the malignant variety. On the other hand, it may be not so much the specific organism as the constitutional or local peculiarities of the individual on whom the disease is engrafted—the nature of the soil, as it were.

#### THE MILD OR SIMPLE FORM OF ACUTE ENDOCARDITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Warty or Verrucose Endocarditis*.

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the endocardium, infectious in nature, characterized by its relative mildness and tendency to more or less complete recovery.

**Etiology**—Almost any one of the recognized infectious diseases may become a cause of simple endocarditis. Acute articular rheumatism is, however, the most frequent cause, 20 per cent. of all cases being ascribed to it. After this comes chorea. Indeed, William Osler, who has made the subject a special study, says: There is no disease in which, at necropsy, acute endocarditis has been so frequently found. Vegetations were found on the valves in 62 out of 73 fatal cases of chorea collected by him. This fact has suggested even a microbic origin of chorea, which is sustained by other features in the history of the disease, but not by actual demonstration. In the absence of such demonstration, chorea must be regarded in

the light of a predisposing cause. Scarlet fever, pneumonia, tuberculosis, and peliosis rheumatica are not infrequent predisposing causes; less frequently are tonsillitis, diphtheria, erysipelas, smallpox, and typhoid fever. Endocarditis also supervenes as a complication of Bright's disease. Even in these cases bacteria are found in the vegetations. Cachectic states, such as are caused by tuberculosis and cancer, also seem to favor the development of acute endocarditis. Finally, chronic valvulitis is a predisposing condition to simple acute endocarditis as well as to the malignant form, being often complicated by acute attacks, whence the term "recurring" endocarditis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The left side of the heart is more frequently involved, and in this the mitral leaflets first, in at least half of all cases; next the aortic cusps; then, in the right heart, the tricuspid valve, and finally the pulmonary valve. In embryonic life, in which acute endocarditis also occurs, the right side of the heart and the tricuspid valve are most frequently affected, accounting thus for certain congenital valvular defects.

The type of the morbid change on the valves in simple endocarditis is so constantly a product warty or fungous in appearance that the term *warty* or *verrucose* endocarditis is often applied to this form. On the auricular surface of the mitral, and the ventricular surface of the aortic valves, at the line of their contact during closure—*i. e.*,  $1/25$  to  $1/12$  inch (1 to 2 mm.) back of the valve edge—granular and warty excrescences make their appearance. These rise  $1/12$  to  $1/8$  inch (2 to 3 mm.) above the surface and extend a variable extent along the valve. They soon become capped with fibrin, often abundantly, and thus a vegetation is formed. The vegetation begins in a proliferation of the cells of the adventitia and of the connective tissue of the external laminae of the endocardium. Thus formed, it is a friable product, liable to be broken off at any time and carried into the general circulation to a point of lodgment, where it plays the rôle of an embolus. In point of fact, this accident does not often happen in the simple acute endocarditis succeeding febrile diseases. It occurs more frequently in the acute endocarditis engrafted on chronic valvular disease, and in the malignant form. More frequently the vegetation undergoes organization and contraction, and the valve is restored partially to its natural condition, leaving a simple sclerotic thickening, which is especially prone to become the starting-point of new processes. Unless there has been previous valvular disease, there is no enlargement of the heart in acute endocarditis.

**Symptoms.**—These are often masked by those of the previous disease, and sometimes overlooked, the autopsy first disclosing the lesion. There is frequently noticed, however, greater or less *embarrassment of breathing*, orthopnea being not infrequent; the *pulse* is much more rapid and may be *irregular*, the patient is restless, the countenance dusky, while the *temperature* is a degree or two higher than normal. Altogether, it is plain that he is sicker. Yet there is rarely actual pain, as in pericarditis.

**Physical Signs.**—As already stated, in the first attack of endocarditis there is no notable enlargement of the cardiac area as determined by percussion or inspection of the seat of apex-beat. *Auscultation* may recognize a murmur, of which the situation varies with the valve involved. If

the mitral, a murmur is heard in this area, usually systolic, soft, and blowing, at times quite harsh. Very rarely is there a presystolic murmur, though its more frequent occurrence might be expected from the nature and situation of the lesions described. When the lesion is at the aortic orifice, the murmur is heard in the aortic area at the second interspace at the right edge of the sternum. It is usually also systolic, but may be diastolic. But not every aortic murmur heard in acute endocarditis is due to a valvular lesion, as the condition of the blood predisposes to a hemic murmur. Basic murmurs also occur in the pulmonary area to the left of the sternum, which are functional in nature—the bellows murmur.

Nor is a systolic murmur in the mitral area always due to organic change in the valves because the state of the muscle predisposes to imperfect closure of the auriculoventricular orifice. Mitral regurgitation may also occur in rheumatism and in other acute febrile diseases from myocardial changes, as the result of which the basal part of the cardiac muscle is enfeebled and unable to do its part of the work of closing the mitral orifice, and the valve leaflets are insufficient to complete it. Some of the cases of murmur which disappear with recovery may belong to this category. The same excrescences which form on the valve leaflets may also attach to the papillary muscles and *chordæ tendinæ* as well. It is characteristic of endocardial murmurs to come and go.

**Diagnosis.**—This is based almost entirely on the physical signs, as no one of the symptoms is pathognomonic. Nor are the murmurs always to be relied upon, for the reasons assigned.

The distinction of the endocardial from the pericardial murmur was considered in treating of *pericarditis*. The more superficial situation of the latter over the body of the heart, its to-and-fro rhythm, not connected with the heart-sounds, its failure to follow the usual laws of conduction, and the fact that it is made more pronounced by pressure—all serve to distinguish it. A. E. Sansom calls attention to a possible source of error in a pericardial roughening at or about the apex, especially in children, which causes a systolic apical murmur. This should be remembered as a possible, but rare, occurrence.

**Prognosis.**—The subject of the simple form of acute endocarditis rarely dies, but he is likely to recover with a damaged heart—in other words, chronic valvular disease results. This is not, however, always the case, for complete recovery is not impossible. On the other hand, some of the instances of complete recovery after mitral regurgitant murmur belong doubtless to the category described of insufficiency due to myocardial defect without mitral lesion. It should not be concluded, however, that because a murmur has disappeared the patient has certainly recovered, since a murmur due to myocarditis may be succeeded by another true valvular murmur. Finally, one acute attack from which recovery has taken place is liable to be succeeded by another and another, so that, sooner or later, chronic valvular defects are produced.

**Treatment.**—The keynote of the proper treatment of simple acute endocarditis is absolute quiet. It is not often that much else is required. A blister is not of the signal service here that it is in pericarditis, while ice applied over the heart often is. Digitalis is not indicated unless there

is irregularity, when the dose should be moderate—only enough to steady the heart. Dyspnea is best treated by sufficient doses of opium or morphin, which should not be put off too long. The diet should be easily assimilable and liquid until convalescence is established.

#### THE SEVERE OR MALIGNANT FORM OF ACUTE ENDOCARDITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Ulcerative, Infectious, Mycotic, or Diphtheritic Endocarditis.*

**Definition.**—Malignant endocarditis is a severe form of acute infectious fever due to inoculation of the blood by a bacillus or its toxic products, and characterized locally by a specific valvulitis. It is called primary when not engrafted on some other infectious disease.

**Historical.**—It was recognized as a separate form of disease in 1851 by Senhouse Kirkes, and further studied by Charcot and Velpéau, in France, Virchow, in Germany, and recently in this country by William Osler, who made it the subject of his Gulstonian Lectures before the Royal College of Physicians, England, in 1885. Its mycotic nature was not suspected until after Koch discovered the bacillus of tuberculosis, in 1882.

**Etiology.**—Malignant endocarditis shares with the simple form an infectious origin. No satisfactory explanation has, however, been furnished of its more malignant nature. It has been suggested and the suggestion is sustained by the experiments of Wyssokowitch, Ribbert, Orth, and others, that a state of the blood due to toxins of bacteria may constitute the simple form, and that this state may afford conditions favorable for the operation of the more virulent bacteria found associated with malignant form. It is extremely doubtful whether there can be a primary malignant endocarditis without the intervention of some one of the diseases which usually precede it. The presence of chronic valvular defects affords the most important predisposing cause favoring the action of the causes of the acute malignant form. Goodhart found it in 61 out of 69 cases, and Osler in 54 out of 209. The latter also found it 11 times at 100 autopsies of fatal cases of pneumonia. Of the infectious diseases associated with the malignant form of endocarditis, pneumonia is the most frequent. The disease occurs also in association with gonorrhea, rheumatism peliosis rheumatica, pleurisy, puerperal fever, bone necrosis, and septicemia from any cause. More rarely it has been found in connection with meningitis, smallpox, diphtheria, scarlet fever, tuberculosis, and dysentery. Most frequently, perhaps, the microorganism is the lancet-shaped bacillus of pneumonia; after this, pus organisms, the streptococcus and staphylococcus. They may be found in the blood during life.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As to the acute cardiac lesions associated, we find, either alone or in addition to the old sclerosis, three sets—*vegetative, ulcerative, and suppurative*. The vegetative is for the most part made up of closely-packed spherical micrococci, more or less commingled with small fibrin masses. The vegetations vary in size from that of a pin's head to that of a pea, and are reddish-yellow in color. The seat of this vegetation becomes rapidly necrotic, and breaks down into an ulcer which may perforate the valve, with or without previous protrusion—the so-called *valvular*

*aneurysm.* More rarely minute foci of pus are found in the deeper tissues of the valve leaflets. The invasion is, however, not always confined to the valves, but may extend to the mural endocardium. Of the valves, the mitral is most frequently involved; next, the aortic; next, mitral and aortic jointly; next, the lining of the heart-wall; next, the tricuspid; and last, the pulmonary valve. In a few instances the right heart alone is invaded, according to Sicard, is more often attacked than the left. Other morbid changes include the lesions of the concurrent affection and the phenomena of embolism due to lodgment of fragments of the vegetation. The result of the latter when complete is a metastatic abscess, though the earlier stages of red infarction may also be present.

The spleen, kidney, skin, and even the cerebral cortex may be seats of embolism. In addition to these, we may also have embolism and hemorrhagic infarct occurring in the lungs from emboli starting in the right heart, as contrasted with those originating in the left heart which lodge in the systemic circulation. The number of embolisms varies greatly in these cases. They may be altogether absent, while they may be counted by hundreds, in which event they are, of course, very small. The spleen is enlarged even when not the seat of embolism, as in other infectious diseases.

**Symptoms.**—Given a pneumonia, pleurisy, the puerperal process, or any one of the diseases named, with the supervention of *chills*, followed by *fever* and *sweats*, this form of heart disease should be immediately thought of and the organ carefully examined for the auscultatory signs of endocarditis. In the primary form, however, should this exist, we have not even the presence of one of the diseases named to suggest the occurrence of ulcerative endocarditis. In this form, particularly, the resemblance to intermittent fever seems at first close, but a careful study of the temperature chart from day to day, and, above all, utter failure of the antiperiodic remedy to produce any effect, will in a short time show that the malarial disease is not present. Doubtless, often the malady under consideration has been mistaken for intermittent fever, and not without reason, for many a case of irregular quotidian and tertian fever presents similar symptoms; but the regular, almost rhythmical, rise and fall of temperature, as exhibited in the chart of an intermittent fever, is wanting. Indeed, I think there is no disease in which extreme irregularity in temperature reaches that of the one under consideration, as a careful study of the appended temperature chart from a case of my own in the University Hospital will show. Note that the maximum is reached at any time of day or night. Yet the temperature is not always so high, nor is the extreme range always so great as here indicated. The absence of the *plasmodium malarie* serves however to distinguish it from malarial disease.

It always greatly aids the diagnosis when to chills and fever are added other symptoms suggesting *embolism*, which so frequently occurs. The occurrence of a hemiplegia, pain in the region of the spleen, with increased dullness on percussion, pain in the region of the kidney with hematuria, or a *sudden blotch in the skin*, of the kind described, is of inestimable value. Unfortunately for diagnosis, these symptoms are not often present. Rarer symptoms of similar origin are *impaired vision* from retinal hemorrhage,



The symptoms added are rigor, irregular fever, sweats, and exhaustion. Yet these are only the symptoms characteristic of pyemia. In fact, it is a pyemia; and the term *arterial pyemia*, suggested by Wilks, is a good one, because the pyemic abscesses result from emboli, starting in the left heart and lodging in arteries. The endocarditis constitutes the distinctive feature of the disease. The resemblance to intermittent fever here exists also, and a quotidian or double tertian type may be simulated. It is in this form especially that leukocytosis occurs, determined by a blood-count.

The symptoms of the *typhoid* type are even more characteristic. We meet here, too, the same prostration, irregular temperature, and sweating; rigor is less frequent, and the onset is more gradual. There are delirium, drowsiness, often diarrhea, with distention of the abdomen and tenderness in the right iliac region, to which a rash may also be added, which, though not identical with that of typhoid fever, is, nevertheless, similar to it. The tongue is dry and brown, and sordes collects about the teeth. The temperature is remittent, like that of typhoid, reaching  $103^{\circ}$  to  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $39.4^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$  C.) and even higher. Here again the heart symptoms may be overlooked.

Still another group is the *cerebral*, in which the symptoms simulate meningitis, basilar or cerebrospinal, with acute delirium as the distinctive feature.

*Physical Signs.*—If there is anything peculiar about the physical signs, it is their want of definiteness. When murmurs are present, it is often difficult to locate or time them precisely. They often vary from day to day. They may occur at both base and apex, and with reason, for both sets of valves may be and often are involved. The superaddition of pericarditis adds a further source of confusion in the friction sound superadded. If chronic valvular disease exists, its signs are also present, including those of hypertrophy.

*Complications.*—As to complications, these are mainly the original cardiac disease or the diseases the specific organisms of which most frequently cause the virulent inflammation. Pericarditis and pleurisy are frequent complications in the strict sense of the term; there may also be meningitis. Acute nephritis, the result of sepsis and quite independent of embolism, may be present, with its characteristic symptoms, albuminuria, blood casts, and free blood-corpuscles. Gastro-intestinal derangements not of embolic origin are sometimes conspicuous. Diarrhea may be especially troublesome.

*Diagnosis.*—This is not always easy at first. A few days' study of the temperature, with its extreme fluctuations, the rigors, and the supervening sweats, should at once lead to suspicion, and these, if continued, point only to this disease. If one would always remember the possibility of the occurrence of malignant endocarditis in connection with the diseases named, it would be less frequently overlooked. The fever is a septic one in all cases, the heart symptoms adding the peculiarity. In true *typhoid fever* there is always splenic enlargement and often parotitis, so that the presence of these symptoms naturally suggests that disease, and an erroneous diagnosis is not inexcusable. It is said that splenic enlargement is not so marked as in typhoid fever, and that there is commonly more tenderness in ulcerative endocarditis. This may be true in some cases, and not in others.

At the present day the Widal test should, of course, be made in all doubtful cases of fever and may afford important assistance in diagnosis. The same is true of blood cultures since the micro-organisms causing the disease may generally be found during life.

*Rheumatic fever* often more closely resembles malignant endocarditis, with its high, irregular fever, and copious sweats, while confusion is further contributed to by the fact that endocarditis is one of the most frequent complications of rheumatism, the malignant form being, however, more infrequent than the simple. But recurring rigors are not usual in rheumatism. The joint symptoms of rheumatism are conspicuous at an early stage of the disease; there is no enlargement of the spleen, nor symptom ascribable to embolism, unless secondary to endocarditis. The essential identity of ordinary *pyemia* and malignant endocarditis has been mentioned, and only the endocarditis and its consequences distinguish the disease from ordinary septic fever.

It must not be forgotten that the simple and severe forms are not separated by any sharp line.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is always unfavorable, though ulcerative endocarditis may be prolonged for many weeks and even months. Usually, however, five or six weeks measure its course, while some cases are of shorter duration. Eberth reports a case fatal in two days.

**Treatment.**—Treatment heretofore has availed little. There seems reason to believe antistreptococcus serum may be of service, and several cases of cure are reported. Twenty c.c. may be injected daily. It seems quite harmless. The patient should be kept at rest. Remedies should be restorative and supporting—quinin, stimulants, digitalis. Nourishing food is indicated. The high temperature may be treated by sponging or by an ice-cap, or by Leiter's coils applied to the thorax or abdomen; but high temperature is seldom of so long duration as to require special treatment.

## CHRONIC VALVULAR DEFECTS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Chronic Endocarditis; Chronic Valvular Disease.*

**Definition.**—Permanent alterations in the structures about the cardiac orifices, producing incompetency, narrowing, or other deviations from the normal.

**Etiology.**—The majority of chronic valvular defects are the consequence of endocarditis, acute or chronic. It may be that the very first attack of acute inflammation has left the valve leaflets in so sclerotic a condition that they readily become the seat of the subsequent changes which constitute the chronic disease, or it may be that several attacks are necessary before a permanent effect is produced. On the other hand, we must acknowledge, too, a chronic valvulitis, in which valvular defect is brought about gradually without the intervention of acute inflammation. This process is analogous to chronic endarteritis, consisting in hyperplasia with fatty (atheromatous) and calcareous degeneration of the new tissue. In fact, a chronic endarteritis may spread from the aorta to the aortic valves.



These slowly induced inflammations are variously caused. The rheumatic poison may cause them, as it does the acute forms. Alcoholic indulgence and intemperate eating, whether by the direct irritation of the substances taken into the blood or through the poison of gout engendered by them, are frequent causes. Another cause is prolonged muscular strain, producing overtension of the valve leaflets. This operates in laborers who do much heavy lifting, and sometimes in athletes. Especially potent is it when, as is often the case, hard muscular work is associated with overeating and drinking. To these, syphilis also often contributes a factor in some unknown way. Under all of these latter circumstances it is the aortic cusps which suffer most.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The anatomical condition of the defective valves is made up of five separate factors, each of which may enter more or less into the lesion. This is true both of the auriculo-ventricular and semi-lunar valves. These conditions are:

(1) Thickening. (2) Retraction. (3) Adhesion. (4) Atheroma, either alone or associated with calcification. (5) Calcification.

1. *Thickening* is the immediate result of an overgrowth of connective tissue. The slighter degrees are seen along the bases of the aortic cusps and at the line of contact in closure of the mitral leaflets. Such degrees do not necessarily impair the function of the valves. More advanced stages produce a distinct thickening and sclerosis of the whole of each aortic cusp and mitral leaflet.

2. *Retraction* or curling is the result of shrinkage of this hyperplastic tissue. The three aortic cusps are often reefed back and fixed, although the very edge of the valve may still remain movable. In the case of the mitral valve, the tendinous attachments of the papillary muscles often contract and draw the valves into the left ventricle, producing a permanent funnel-like extension analogous to that which takes place in physiological closure of the mitral orifice.

3. *Adhesions* unite the valve leaflets, increasing their fixedness and rigidity, interfering with complete opening and closure. The right and posterior aortic cusps are most frequently united. Most serious is the effect of union of the mitral leaflets, which sometimes results in a reduction of the orifice to a mere slit or buttonhole-like opening—the buttonhole mitral orifice.

4. *Atheroma*, or fatty degeneration, is also often found in the shape of yellow spots on the surface of the valves and at the marginal attachments of the aortic cusp, without producing insufficiency.

5. *Calcification* or limy infiltration of the valves thus united may succeed in various degrees, producing in extreme cases firm, bony rings which further diminish the mobility of the valves. In less degrees there are splinter-like projections into the substance of the valve which also interfere with complete closure and opening; at other times there may be simple marginal deposits which impede the function of the valves only slightly or not at all.

Still another form of lesion found at necropsy is *rupture of a leaflet*, the result of strain. This is perhaps not possible with a sound valve, while one weakened by the morbid states described may give way. The physiological

result is insufficiency, while the lumen of the orifice during systole is not encroached upon. Such an accident is not infrequent in acute ulcerative endocarditis in consequence of erosion and partial destruction of the valve.

Insufficiency of the aortic orifice at the time of life at which it is most common—say middle age—is favored by a gradual widening of this orifice from  $\frac{4}{5}$  inch (20 mm.) at birth to a possible  $2\frac{4}{5}$  inches (70 mm.) at 80 years.

*Congenital defects* are relatively common in the right side of the heart, which is the subject also of inflammation during intra-uterine life. The changes resulting from the latter are of the nature of fusions. Such defects also occur on the left side; most rarely in the mitral valve.

The term relative insufficiency is applied when a valve is insufficient or incompetent because of dilatation of the ventricular cavities or vessels which it guards. (See below.)

#### MITRAL INSUFFICIENCY OR INCOMPETENCY.

**Occurrence and Mechanism.**—This is the most frequent of the uncombined forms of valvular disease. The valve leaks. The blood flows backward during systole from the left ventricle to the left auricle. The distended auricle, first attempting to resist the backward flow, hypertrophies but eventually dilates, and the blood is crowded backward into the lungs, which become engorged. The right ventricle, in its efforts to push the blood through the engorged lungs, hypertrophies, and the pulmonary factor of the second sound becomes louder and sharply accentuated. The compensating effect of the hypertrophied right ventricle for a time arrests the mischief. At this stage, perhaps, begins the hypertrophy of the left ventricle, which in all cases of mitral insufficiency presents itself sooner or later, although at first the double outlet for the blood from the ventricle would seem to demand less strength of the left ventricle. The right ventricle, however, in its hypertrophied state, delivers more blood through the lungs to the left ventricle, which demands more power to drive it on, hypertrophy results, and thus compensation is for a time longer maintained. Sooner or later the right ventricle dilates, the tricuspid valve becomes insufficient, the blood regurgitates into the right auricle and thence into the great veins of the neck. The valves of these ultimately yield, the jugular vein dilates with each systole of the right ventricle producing the so-called jugular pulse and the general venous system is engorged.

Incompetency of the cardiac valves is often brought about by dilatation of the ventricles and the great vessels leading from the heart, the valve leaflets themselves remaining intact. Such *relative insufficiency* affects most frequently the auriculo-ventricular valves, and, as a consequence, the latter are not "sufficient" to stretch across their respective orifices and close them. Less commonly the semilunar valves are similarly deficient; more frequently the aortic in dilatation of the aorta; and more rarely also the pulmonary valve when that vessel is dilated. It should be said of auriculo-ventricular insufficiency of this kind that it is found more frequently in the autopsy-room than recognized clinically, for it does not always cause a murmur.

**Etiology.**—Endocarditis, acute or chronic, is the most frequent initial cause of mitral insufficiency.

**Symptoms.**—Often there are no symptoms, because for a considerable length of time compensation keeps pace with the development of the disease unless the latter be sudden, as by rupture of a valve leaflet. The first thing noticeable is usually *shortness of breath* on exertion, the so-called *cardiac asthma*. With this is soon associated *palpitation*, or “beating” of the heart, which increases and abates *pari passu* with the dyspnea. Next is *irregularity of the heart's action*. This is the beginning of waning compensation, of which the immediate result is congestion of the lungs. Dyspnea is now permanent. Thence the engorgement extends to the right ventricle and venous side of the circulation, the pressure in the arteries being proportionately less. The lung engorgement invites frequent attacks of bronchitis, excites *cough* and increases dyspnea. *Orthopnea* is frequent at this stage, and the patient can only rest sitting in a chair. There is sometimes *blood-stained expectoration*, in which may be found alveolar epithelium dotted with pigment granules.

Along with this, or before it, the *liver becomes congested*, enlarged, and tender; the mucous membrane of the stomach also becomes congested, causing *nausea* and *indigestion*. The hepatic enlargement is sometimes very great, and I have known it to be mistaken for cancer of the organ. The liver is often the seat of pulsation, and as often a jugular pulse is seen. Both signs are pathognomonic of mitral regurgitation. Later, this enlarged liver may return to its normal state or contract still further, constituting the so-called *red atrophy*. In advanced stages the *kidneys also become passively congested*, the urine is scanty and its specific gravity high, while there are copious deposits of urates. It contains a small quantity of albumin and there may be hyaline tube-casts, rarely even a few blood-disks. As a secondary result of hepatic engorgement only there may also be enlargement of the spleen.

Concurrent, or succeeding on failing compensation, comes *edema* or *dropsy*, the direct result of venous engorgement and the filtration of the liquid elements of the blood into the subcutaneous connective tissue of the body—first of the feet and legs, then of the trunk, face, and upper extremities, and, finally, into the pleural and peritoneal cavities, causing various degrees of inconvenience. Effusion into the pleural sacs may occur before there is any tendency to dropsy elsewhere. Allusion has been made to the studies of J. Dutton Steele on this subject on page 589.

*Nose-bleed* is a symptom sometimes seen in this disease. It is a natural result of the venous congestion. Among the later and rarer symptoms in children especially, is *clubbing of the finger-ends*.

**Physical Signs.**—*Inspection* discovers increased frequency of breathing movements. The impulse is to the left of its normal position in the fifth interspace, or perhaps a little lower down. It may be in the line of the nipple or even beyond it, more forcible and diffuse than in health. The outward dislocation of the apex is due to the enlargement of the two ventricles. In thin persons an auricular impulse may be seen to the left of the pulmonic area in the *second interspace*, and may be presystolic and active for the auricle—that is, produced when the auricle contracts; or systolic and passive for the

auricle—that is, caused by a filling of the auricle by regurgitation from the ventricle during the latter's systole. In young persons a bulging precordium may be looked for in the second and third interspaces to the left of the sternum; also to the left of the lower part of the sternum from hypertrophy of the right ventricle. In advanced stages there is a jugular pulse, which is also pathognomonic of tricuspid regurgitation. The jugular pulse must be distinguished from the *false* jugular pulse which occurs when the venous system becomes replete with blood from any cause like overexertion. It is commonly more superficial. It is presystolic in time, while the jugular pulse is systolic. Moreover, the false jugular pulse is obliterated by pressure on the vein above the clavicle, while the true jugular remains distinct below the point of pressure.

On *palpation* the apex-beat is found more forcible than normal, at least while compensation is maintained, and there may be a pulsation near the ensiform cartilage, caused by the *systole of the enlarged right ventricle*. As compensation wanes the impulse becomes weaker and irregular. Sometimes an intermittent *systolic thrill* is felt in the *fourth interspace* in the left mammillary line. Very rarely is there a systolic thrill at the apex.

The *radial pulse* in the early stage is comparatively unaltered. Later, it becomes frequent and irregular in volume. Appended (Fig. 55) is a sphygmogram of the pulse in advanced mitral insufficiency. It is of the type of the *pulsus parvus irregularis*.



FIG. 55.—Tracing of Pulse of Mitral Insufficiency.

*Percussion* generally finds enlargement of both the relative and absolute areas of dullness, upward in the direction of the left auricle, downward to the left and also to the right, the right border of the heart extending at times beyond the right border of the sternum. The impaired resonance thus produced rather by the right auricle than by the ventricle which in its enlargement pushes the auricle to the right.

*Auscultation* recognizes a systolic murmur in the mitral area, conducted with various degrees of loudness into the left axilla and under the angle of the scapula. This direction of its conduction is the distinctive feature of this murmur. It is usually soft, but occasionally rough, more rarely musical. Richard C. Cabot says that musical murmurs are heard more frequently at the mitral valve in regurgitation than at any other valve. A fading mitral systolic murmur generally means further failing compensation, and when compensation is completely gone it is substituted by incomplete valvular sounds, great irregularity, gallop rhythm, labored breathing, and all the signs of pulmonary congestion. The mitral systolic murmur is also sometimes heard distinctly to the left of the pulmonic cartilage, and rarely over the entire precordium. Not always loud enough to be easily heard, it may be brought out by exertion on the part of the patient.

The second sound of the heart is heard sharply accentuated at the pulmonary area until the tricuspid valve fails, when the accentuation fades

away. The aortic second sound is less strong, corresponding with the smaller degree of hypertrophy of the left ventricle.

*Differential Diagnosis.*—The murmur of mitral regurgitation is not usually difficult of recognition through the features which have been described. A functional murmur is rarely heard at the apex. Should it happen that it is, it will not be conducted as is the organic mitral systolic murmur, and it is not heard behind and below the angle of the scapula. Aortic roughening produces a murmur heard at the same time as the mitral systolic, and may also be propagated to the apex, but the position of greatest intensity is the second interspace to the right of the sternum and the murmur is transmitted loudly into the great vessels of the neck, which is never the case with the mitral systolic murmur. The tricuspid systolic murmur occurs at the same time, but its point of greatest intensity is at the ensiform cartilage; it is not commonly a loud murmur and is more apt to be obscured by the mitral regurgitant murmur than it is likely to obscure the latter.

### MITRAL STENOSIS.

**Occurrence and Mechanism.**—This lesion occurs as an uncombined or simple form of valvular disease in young persons, especially women, but is more commonly combined with mitral insufficiency. Seventy-six per cent. of all cases are said to occur in the female sex. In the simple form the orifice is stenosed, and the blood is restrained from passing freely into the left ventricle. It is backed into the left auricle, the lungs, right ventricle, and general venous circulation, but the left ventricle is not hypertrophied in simple mitral obstruction because no extra muscular demand is made on it, while hypertrophy of the left auricle is one of its most characteristic signs. Theoretically, the left ventricle should even atrophy from diminished function. Practically this does not occur, but the absence of the enlargement is of great diagnostic value. Excellent compensation is often maintained in mitral stenosis for many years.

The enlargement and dilatation of the left auricle is in rare instances enormous, especially in the form known as horizontal dilatation which has been especially studied by Owen, Fenton and Ewart.<sup>1</sup> The enlargement with corresponding dullness to percussion extends both to the left and right of the sternum and the auricle has been tapped under the impression that it was a circumscribed collection of fluid in the pleural sac.

Pure stenosis without regurgitation is possible if the mitral valve leaflets are fused without retraction, so as to form the funnel-shaped opening already described. In these cases a postmortem demonstration of insufficiency by means of the hydrostatic test is scarcely possible. Less frequently the mitral orifice viewed from above is a mere slit—Corrigan's buttonhole contraction—straight or slightly crescentic, in a smooth septum formed by fusion and contraction of the valve leaflets and tendinous cords. In some cases calcareous infiltration is added, and in a few rare instances

<sup>1</sup> Owen and Fenton, "A Case of Extreme Dilatation of the Left Auricle of the Heart," "Clinical Society's Transactions," vol. xxxiv., 1901, p. 183.

Ewart and Owen, "A Case Illustrating some of the Clinical Features of Horizontal Dilatation of the Left Auricle," "Ibid.," Vol. xxxiv., 1902, p. 142.

Owen, "Horizontal Dilatation of the Left Auricle," "Ibid.," p. 147.

uratic deposits are found. The ratio of buttonhole mitral stenosis to the funnel-shaped orifice varies with different observers—1 to 10 by A. E. Sansom, 1 to 13 by Hayden, 1 to 46 by Hilton Fagge.

**Etiology.**—Most frequently mitral stenosis is the result of endocarditis, acute or chronic, but it may in rare cases be congenital. In these cases, of which a number have been collected by Bedford Fenwick, the stenosis is secondary to narrowing of the tricuspid orifice, thus explained:—a small quantity only of blood being allowed to pass into the right ventricle and lungs, a diminished supply is sent to the left heart, whence both its cavities and orifices are reduced in size. Attention has been called by Teissier to the possible origin of mitral stenosis in tuberculosis and Robert H. Babcock has reported some cases which tend to confirm this view.<sup>1</sup> *No functional disorder can cause mitral stenosis.*

**Symptoms.**—These, often delayed by compensation, as in mitral insufficiency, are the same as in that lesion. In consequence of this similarity of symptoms the diagnosis of mitral stenosis is based largely on the physical signs. As in mitral insufficiency, in long cases and especially in children, clubbing of the finger-ends may be present.

**Physical Signs.**—Mitral stenosis may exist for many years without giving rise to physical signs. *Inspection* consistently with what would be expected in absence of hypertrophy of the left ventricle, recognizes little or no displacement of the apex in pure stenosis. If there is any, it is due to the hypertrophy of the right ventricle which pushes the apex toward the left rather than downward and to the left. Nor is the true apex-beat increased in force, though there may be strong epigastric pulsation because of hypertrophy of the right ventricle, and in persons with thin chest-walls there may be an impulse in the *third and fourth interspaces*, to the left of the sternum, due to this hypertrophy. A left auricular impulse, presystolic, may be noted in the second interspace to the left of the sternum, for the same reason as in mitral regurgitation. A *jugular pulse* may also be present if there is tricuspid regurgitation. A bulging precordium is possible only from great enlargement of the right ventricle and is not often seen. In children the lower sternum and fifth and sixth left costal cartilages may be prominent from this cause. There may be prominence of the right upper quadrant of the abdomen from enlargement of the liver.

**Palpation** discerns that the apex-beat is without undue force, but it may be diffuse, and an impulse may be felt in the epigastrium, the situation of the apex of the right ventricle. The most marked feature recognized by palpation is the *presystolic thrill* at the apex, differing in this respect from the rare systolic thrill of mitral insufficiency. It is usually best felt in the fourth or fifth interspace, within the nipple-line. It is similar in rhythm to the presystolic murmur, but may be present without it. It is often absent. It is pathognomonic of mitral stenosis. Palpation may recognize tenderness in the region of the liver.

In moderate degrees of stenosis the *pulse* is not altered; in high degrees it is small, from want of blood and left ventricular power. Irregularity, like that of mitral regurgitation, is characteristic of advanced stages. Two tracings from cases of mitral stenosis are introduced in the text.

<sup>1</sup>Diseases of Heart and Arterial System, 1903, p. 252.

*Percussion* recognizes cardiac enlargement in the direction of the left auricle and right ventricle, but not of the left ventricle in pure mitral stenosis.

*Auscultation* does not find a murmur in every case of mitral stenosis because of the feebleness of the auricular contraction, especially toward the end of life, when compensation has failed and there is not the force of contraction sufficient to throw the blood stream into audible vibration. Most characteristic is the abruptly terminating *presystolic* murmur, confined for the most part to the mitral area to the inner side of the apex-beat, though it may be conveyed upward, and it is even heard posteriorly, though rarely. It is true that the presystolic murmur is heard in atypical situations, especially in the axilla and below the angle of the scapula, more frequently than has commonly been supposed.<sup>1</sup>

The *presystolic murmur* of mitral stenosis is a diastolic murmur occurring at the end of diastole of the ventricle, because it is at this time that the auricular systole takes place, giving the propulsive force necessary to produce the audible vibration. It is a loud, rough, vibratory murmur terminating suddenly with the first sound, sharp and ringing and coincident with the presystolic thrill. The murmur terminates with the impulse, and as the two are not always easily separable, the former is commonly more readily distinguished by its qualities than by its time. It is often followed by a "thumping" first sound, which, in consequence of this character, is sometimes mistaken for a second sound. As the disease advances the murmur may occupy the entire period of diastole. In such cases there is sometimes a short pause between the beginning or diastolic part and the terminal or presystolic part of the murmur. In the last stage the murmur may disappear altogether, leaving only the snapping first sound.

*Differential Diagnosis.*—The murmur of mitral stenosis ought not to be confounded with the murmur of aortic regurgitation, for the latter is

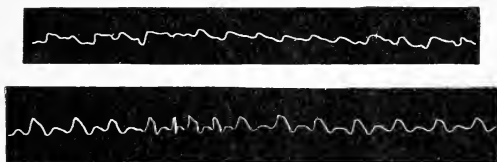


FIG. 56.—Tracing of Pulse in Mitral Stenosis.

heard loudest in a different situation, but moreover there is enormous hypertrophy of the left ventricle, which is wanting in mitral stenosis. The time of tricuspid stenosis is identical with that of mitral stenosis, but it is heard in a different part of the precordium—in the epigastrium. Tricuspid stenosis is, however, a very rare lesion. Much more reasonably might the murmur of mitral stenosis be confounded with the so-called *Flint murmur*. This murmur is heard at the apex, at the same site as the presystolic, and may be similar in quality. It occurs in high degrees of dilatation of the ventricle, and is due to the fact, according to the late Austin Flint, Sr., that in such dilatation the mitral leaflets cannot, during diastole, be kept back

<sup>1</sup> See an excellent well illustrated paper on this subject by J. P. C. Griffith in the "Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," 1895.

against the ventricular wall, but remain in the blood current, throwing the latter into audible vibration. It may be said of the Flint murmur that it is never as intense as the mitral presystolic murmur. Otherwise the acoustic qualities are similar. The snapping first sound and systolic shock are also apt to be modified or absent. Accentuation of the pulmonic second sound is wanting in marked aortic insufficiency, and the other signs of aortic regurgitation are most helpful to a diagnosis.

A rumbling sound succeeding a pericarditis in children, referred to especially by Broadbent and Rosenbach, has occasioned error, but this, too, is said to be unaccompanied by accentuation of the first sound at the apex. It is a transient murmur often followed by recovery.

These sources of error are well illustrated by the observations of Phear,<sup>1</sup> who investigated 46 cases of presystolic murmur in which no mitral lesion was found at autopsy. In 17 of these there was aortic regurgitation; in 20 there was adherent pericardium; in nine nothing more than dilatation of the left ventricle was found. In none was the snapping first sound, so common in mitral stenosis, recorded during life.

Not infrequently the presystolic murmur is associated with a mitral systolic or regurgitant murmur, usually soft and not very loud, though sometimes it is distinct and is well transmitted into the axilla.

The *pulse* is small, as would be expected from the small volume of blood ejected from the ventricle, but may be quite regular, as seen in the sphygmograms. More frequently it is irregular. Sometimes there is a rhythmical failure of an alternate heart-beat to reach the wrist, while the sphygmogram will show a small rise between two higher ones constituting the *pulsus bigeminus*.

On account of the difficulties mentioned, while the presystolic murmur is a valuable sign of mitral stenosis, it should not be alone relied upon for diagnosis, but should be taken in connection with other signs. Tricuspid stenosis may be associated with mitral stenosis or insufficiency, or both. With the loss of compensation the presystolic murmur disappears together with the thrill, and there remains only the sharp, ringing first sound.

*Accentuation of the second sound* is marked, but confined to the pulmonary area, because there is no hypertrophy of the left ventricle. The *second sound* may also be *duplicated*, because of the want of synchronism in the closure of the aortic and the pulmonary valves. A. E. Sanson regards this reduplication as only a seeming one of the second sound. He regards it rather as the normal second sound followed by another sound due to a sudden tension of the mitral valve itself. He also says it occurs in at least one-third of all cases of mitral stenosis, and is rare in other cardiac conditions. The accentuation of the pulmonary second sound also disappears with the enfeebling of the contraction of the right ventricle.

In slight degrees of mitral stenosis the second sound is heard at the apex, but as the lesion becomes more serious it becomes fainter and eventually inaudible in this situation, though markedly accentuated in the pulmonic area.

The physical signs of mitral stenosis are more changeable and fleeting than those of any other valvular disease of the heart.

<sup>1</sup> "Lancet," September 21, 1895.



Sansom lays great stress on the evidence of the cardiograph in the diagnosis of mitral stenosis, which enables one to judge of the relative length of systole and diastole. In stenosis the diastole may be greatly prolonged, or the diastolic intervals vary greatly in duration. In mitral regurgitation, on the other hand, a short interval only separates the systoles.

*Complications.*—Patients with mitral stenosis are subject to attacks of recurring valvulitis, with consequent embolism in different parts of the body. Embolism is a frequent complication of mitral stenosis. Pulmonary tuberculosis, quite infrequently associated with valvular heart disease, is found more often in association with mitral stenosis than any other form.

#### MITRAL INSUFFICIENCY AND STENOSIS.

**Occurrence.**—More common than mitral stenosis as an uncombined lesion is stenosis associated with insufficiency, in which case we have the double mitral murmur of mitral insufficiency and mitral stenosis, sometimes with difficulty divisible into its two parts. Extreme irregularity of rhythm and pulse, with frequency and smallness of the latter, conspicuous thrill, marked right-sided hypertrophy, and sharply accentuated pulmonic sound are characteristic of advanced stages. The presence of hypertrophy of the left ventricle points to associated mitral insufficiency and stenosis. When this combined lesion exists, mitral insufficiency is said to usually precede.

#### AORTIC INSUFFICIENCY OR INCOMPETENCY.

**Occurrence and Mechanism.**—By aortic insufficiency is meant an inability of the aortic valve to close the orifice of the aorta. This is the most serious and irremediable of the valvular diseases of the heart commonly met. Next in frequency to mitral incompetency, much more frequent than aortic stenosis, with which it more often coexists, it is a disease of men rather than women, commonly adults at or before middle life. It includes 30 to 50 per cent. of all cases of chronic valvular disease. The width of the aortic orifice increases from birth to old age, while the valve cusps tend to shrivel, so that conditions favorable to incompetency coexist. It is more frequently associated with arterial sclerosis and less frequently the result of rheumatic endocarditis, though it may be thus caused. It is the lesion most frequently followed by sudden death.

When it exists, the aortic valves are incompetent to close the aortic orifice, either on account of the large size of the latter or of disease of the valve segments, and the blood flows backward into the left ventricle during diastole. The ventricle, seeking to restore the balance, redoubles its energy and hypertrophies. The blood is thus driven into the aorta with great force, swelling the arteries to an extreme fullness, which, however, falls promptly away, because of the backward flow into the ventricle at the same time with the forward movement into arteries and capillaries. This sudden falling away of the pulse, from extreme distention to collapse, is very characteristic

of this form of valvular disease, and is called the "trip-hammer" or "water-hammer" pulse, also Corrigan pulse. To the careful observer it may even be visible in the exposed arteries, such as the carotid, temporal, and radial, while the aortic beat, ordinarily beyond reach in the suprasternal notch, may be felt in this situation.

The abrupt jerking impulse with sudden recoil is easily recognized by the finger on the pulse, which, however, fails to find the pulse as strong and hard as would be expected from its appearance. On the other hand, it is soft and receding. It is commonly regular. A tracing of this pulse is seen in Fig. 57. It is the typical *pulsus celer et altus*. A frequent and irregular pulse is much more serious in aortic valve disease than in mitral disease. *Sclerotic changes in the arterial walls* are not uncommonly associated with aortic incompetency.

The product of this defect is the largest heart met in morbid anatomy, the left auricle and right ventricle often sharing in the enlargement. From its size the heart is called the *bovine heart*. It may weigh as much as 35 ounces (1050 gm.), and even 50 ounces (1500 gm.) or more. The cavities

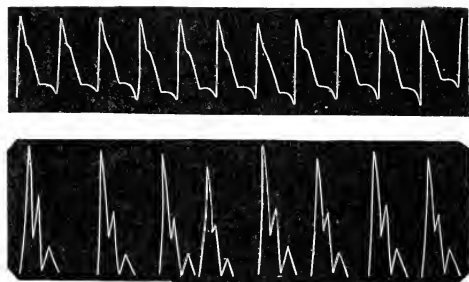


FIG. 57.—Tracings of Pulse of Aortic Regurgitation.

are enlarged and the walls are thickened, so that it furnishes an instance of eccentric hypertrophy. There may be ultimate dilatation of the arch of the aorta from the constant pounding of the blood against it in systole, while the carotids may be seen throbbing in the throat.

The gradual enlargement of the ventricle may ultimately cause the mitral valve to yield. Compensation is still maintained for a time by hypertrophy of the left auricle, which also yields after a time, becoming dilated and allowing the blood to engorge the lung. Hypertrophy of the right ventricle then comes to the rescue for a time. Sooner or later it, too, yields, dilates, the tricuspid valve weakens, and finally gives way, allowing the blood to flow back into the venous side of the circulation, producing engorgement of the liver, stomach, kidneys, general dropsy—the train of symptoms described under mitral regurgitation.

**Etiology.**—Causes of insufficiency in addition to those considered under the general etiology of valvular disease are congenital malformations, including fusion of two leaflets, commonly those behind which the coronary arteries come off. Such fused leaflets are especially prone to valvulitis and its

consequences. Aortic insufficiency is quite often caused by dilatation and aneurysm of the ascending aorta, giving rise to *relative* insufficiency.

**Symptoms.**—Like all other forms of valvular heart disease, aortic incompetency may be compensated for a long time, and elude detection for a corresponding time. Indeed, full compensation is said by some to be most usual in this form of valvular disease. Both *dropsy* and *dyspnea* are characteristically *absent* until compensation ceases, which is never the case until the mitral valve begins to yield. Then, however, both appear and may be very distressing. An especially frequent symptom is *dizziness* with *faintness*, particularly on rising quickly. Palpitation ensues on slight exertion, and this effect is in marked contrast to the comfort of the patient when quiet, when the pulse may be slow and breathing regular. In advanced cases, on the other hand, the patient complains of a constant “*beating*” or pulsation all over the body, especially in the head, which is exceedingly unpleasant. The patient is very apt to be *troubled in his sleep* and to dream, probably because of disturbed circulation in the brain. Even permanent mental symptoms may result from this cause, including *insanity* and *suicidal tendency*. Lesser degrees are *irritability* and *peevishness*, though these are not confined to this form of heart disease. *Precordial pain*, present also in stenosis, is frequent in this form of valvular disease. It may be a dull ache with a sense of constriction of the chest, or sharp and radiating down the arms, particularly the left, as in angina pectoris, which condition itself is also common. With the yielding of the mitral valve and loss of compensation come the symptoms of mitral disease already described.

As previously stated, this is the form of valvular disease in which *sudden death* is most frequent. It has overtaken many a victim in the course of his daily vocation and without warning, though it is most apt to be induced by some slight overexertion or mental excitement. The cause of such sudden death is probably interruption of the circulation in the coronary arteries. This may be brought about in one of two ways. These arteries in common with others, are especially disposed to endarteritis with resulting sclerosis and atheroma, a condition which constantly invites thrombosis and obstruction to the circulation; or it may be due to defective circulation in these vessels, caused by the aortic regurgitation, for even if the blood enters the coronary arteries during systole, it must still receive in health some further supply in the recoil of the blood on the closed semilunar valves, which cannot take place when the valves are incompetent. On this variety of valvular disease, too, supervenes not infrequently acute infectious endocarditis of the grave type, with the train of symptoms and the sequelæ described. Embolism in various organs is also a complication.

**Physical Signs.**—*Inspection* often discerns the prominent left precordium, with the apex-beat lowered and to the left, and the visible pulsation far beyond the normal situation of the apex, all confirmed by *palpation*. Palpation also recognizes at times a *diastolic thrill* over the base, in the carotids and subclavians, and sometimes in the aorta at the suprasternal notch. This is, however, much rarer in aortic regurgitation than the systolic thrill in stenosis. The Corrigan pulse may also be felt, but is much more strikingly manifested in the sphygmogram. A *capillary pulse* is also sometimes demonstrable in the skin and mucous membrane. This may be observed by

drawing a pencil lightly across the skin of the cheek or forehead; and on the mucous membrane of the everted lower lip by pressing a glass microscope-slide against it. It may often be well studied around the lunula of the finger-nail. Pulsation in the retinal arteries may be recognized by the ophthalmoscope. Pulsation may even be seen in the uvula as originally pointed out by F. Müller in 1889, by Schlesinger<sup>1</sup> the next year and recently by David Riesman.<sup>2</sup>

*Percussion* discloses increased dullness to the left and downward, and also, sometimes in advanced cases, upward to the left of the sternum, owing to hypertrophy of the left auricle, as well as to the enlargement of the ventricle upward.

*Auscultation* recognizes a diastolic murmur, long, loud, and blowing in quality, usually harsher than the aortic obstructive murmur, though it is also often soft and faintly heard. It may or may not replace the second sound of the heart. It is commonly well heard in the aortic area, but its seat of maximum intensity may be either in this area, in the third interspace to the left of the sternum, or at the midsternum between these two points. The murmur is naturally transmitted downward toward the ensiform cartilage along the left edge of the sternum. It is sometimes also well conducted toward the apex which is in the direction of the regurgitating column, but it is not conducted in the direction of the great vessels of the neck, at least with any loudness. In aortic incompetency also occurs the Flint murmur, described under mitral stenosis. This murmur is additional to the distinctive diastolic murmur being produced at the mitral orifice (see p. 625). *The aortic regurgitant murmur is probably the most widely conducted of all cardiac murmurs.*

*Differential Diagnosis.*—The aortic diastolic murmur is distinguished from the pulmonic diastolic murmur by its wide conduction, the large hypertrophy of the left ventricle, the Corrigan pulse, and the capillary pulse. The tricuspid presystolic murmur is a diastolic murmur, heard in the same situations but it is a rare murmur and is unaccompanied by hypertrophy of the left ventricle. More important sources of error are a few diastolic murmurs without lesions of the aortic or pulmonary valves due to relative insufficiency, to hemic conditions or cardiorespiratory murmurs.<sup>3</sup>

*Auscultation of the vessels* furnishes interesting information in aortic insufficiency. It is well known that if the stethoscope be placed with slight pressure over the carotid artery of a healthy person, two sounds are usually audible, corresponding to the expansion and contraction of the artery. Of these the latter is simply the second aortic sound heard in the carotid. It is probable also that the first arterial sound corresponding with the arterial expansion is produced by vibrations of the arterial wall induced by the blood driven into it from the ventricle. The second arterial sound is greatly diminished in intensity or even absent in aortic incompetency, since the valve remains open. The aortic diastolic murmur is sometimes faintly heard in the carotid. In aortic regurgitation there is *Traube's double sound*, in the distant arteries, especially the femoral and popliteal. The

<sup>1</sup> "Wiener klin. Wochenschrift," October 4, 1900.

<sup>2</sup> "American Medicine," June 15, 1901.

<sup>3</sup> See a paper by Richard C. Cabot and Edwin A. Locke on "The Occurrence of Diastolic Murmurs without Lesions of the Aortic or Pulmonary Valves." "Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin," vol. xiv., May, 1903.

sounds are such that the two follow each other closely, so that the first seems preparatory to the second, or they are separated by a longer interval, like the two sounds of the heart. The first is a sharp systolic (pistol-shot) sound and is ascribed to a sudden filling of the unusually empty artery, and is probably an exaggeration of the sound heard in health, as above described. Traube explained the first of his sounds in this way, while he ascribed the second to a sudden relaxation of this tension. Friedreich pointed out that a similar double sound could be heard in the femoral vein in tricuspid insufficiency, which he ascribed to tension of the valves of the vein. It is claimed that the double sound is heard in other diseases of the heart, especially mitral stenosis, and even in aneurysm, but it is acknowledged to be most frequent in aortic incompetency.

Finally, there is *Duroziez's sign*, a murmur produced by pressure with the stethoscope upon the femoral artery, sometimes heard in aortic insufficiency. Duroziez's sign will be more easily understood when it is remembered that a murmur may be produced by pressure with the stethoscope on any artery of the caliber of the carotid—a murmur during the expansion or diastole of the artery. During the collapse or systole of the artery, on the other hand, no murmur can be thus produced in health. In aortic regurgitation, however, it is different, a double murmur may be produced and it is the second murmur which is essential to Duroziez's sign. It is said that this sign dies out as compensation fails. T. Clifford Allbutt does not consider Duroziez's sign peculiar to aortic regurgitation, though Vierordt says it is. A right degree of pressure, to be determined by practice, is necessary, and the artery on which it is obtained is usually the femoral.

The gravity of aortic regurgitation is measured by the degree of hypertrophy of the left ventricle, by the irregularity of its action, a symptom which appears only in advanced stages of regurgitation, the extent of collapse of the artery in diastole, the degree in which the diastolic murmur replaces the second sound as heard at the aortic orifice. Irregularity of cardiac action is a much more serious symptom in aortic regurgitation than in mitral disease. Diminution in the loudness of the diastolic murmur has been regarded as a serious sign, but this, I think, has been exaggerated, as the loudness of the murmur varies greatly, quite independently of the extent of the lesion.

#### AORTIC STENOSIS AND ROUGHENING.

**Occurrence and Mechanism.**—By aortic stenosis is meant a narrowing of the aortic orifice. Pure and uncomplicated aortic stenosis is probably the rarest of the valvular lesions. Writers have been led into error because the presence of an aortic systolic murmur has been interpreted as meaning stenosis, where it has been produced by simple roughening of the valves or of the vessel beyond them. Richard C. Cabot says that out of 250 autopsies made at the Massachusetts General Hospital, there was not one of uncomplicated aortic stenosis. Indeed it is difficult to conceive an aortic stenosis unaccompanied by insufficiency, although it is easy to conceive of insufficiency without stenosis. Stenosis is said to be relative when there is a

normal orifice while the aorta is dilated beyond it. It occurs in older persons, and the older the person, the more likely are there to be calcareous deposits causing it. It may be congenital. When uncombined with insufficiency, it is the least dangerous of the various forms of valvular disease. The narrowed orifice prevents the free discharge of blood from the left ventricle into the aorta. The ventricle attempts to overcome this, and its walls hypertrophy in proportion to the degree of resistance, and often for a long time compensate for the obstruction—until dilatation occurs, when the danger really begins. The hypertrophy thus induced, usually of the simple form, is only second in degree to that produced by incompetency.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of aortic stenosis may be long deferred, so long as compensation is maintained, and when they do occur, they are usually those of a deficient supply of blood to the brain and heart itself—viz., *dizziness* and *fainting*. Succeeding exertion there is apt to be a *sense of constriction or oppression* and even *pain* in the precordium, which may develop into the severe pain of a true angina pectoris.

**Physical Signs.**—*Inspection* and *palpation* recognize usually a forcible impulse outside of its normal site, and at varying distances, in accordance



FIG. 58.—Pulse-tracing of Aortic Stenosis.—Anaortic Curve.

with the degree of hypertrophy. Some describe the apex-beat as without force and indistinct. Broadbent says it is "a well-defined and deliberate push of no great violence." Palpation often recognizes a *thrill* of great intensity with each beat of the heart, more marked when dilated hypertrophy is established. A bulging of the precordium may also be present, though less often than in incompetency.

The pulse is the *pulsus parvus et tardus*, slow in reaching its maximum volume, which is small. It is frequent, but regular, contrasting in the latter respect with the pulse of mitral disease. It is sometimes infrequent, *pulsus rarus*. Fig. 58 is a sphygmogram of the pulse in aortic stenosis.

**Percussion** elicits dullness downward and laterally toward the left, since, as a rule, the enlargement is confined to the left ventricle. There may, however, be slight enlargement upward to the left of the sternum if hypertrophy of the left auricle is added.

**Auscultation** discloses a systolic basic murmur, loudest at the aortic area—second interspace at the right of the sternum—conducted distinctly into the carotids, and even sometimes along the course of the aorta, behind and to the left of the vertebral column, into the popliteals and dorsal arteries of the feet. It is not, however, confined to the aortic area, but may be heard over the entire precordium. It is usually rough, at least until compensation fails, but may be soft and musical. It may be heard even at a distance from the chest. It is made louder by exercise. The *aortic factor* of the *second sound* is *very feeble*, or not at all heard, if the constriction be quite marked, because of the feeble recoil, the necessary result of the small amount of blood in the aorta. The first sound is normal, somewhat

louder and more prolonged than natural, because of its powerful contraction of the left ventricle.

*Roughness of the aorta, dilatation and narrowing of the vessel*, however caused, may also produce a systolic murmur; so may roughness within the ventricle in the course of the outgoing column of blood. But these causes have a less positive effect upon the substance of the heart—that is, do not produce as marked hypertrophy of the left ventricle. Nor do these causes interfere with the production of a normal second sound, except, perhaps, dilatation, which in that event is accompanied by an aortic regurgitant murmur. From this it follows that the important point to remember in diagnosis is that an aortic systolic murmur by no means always indicates aortic stenosis. So, also, anemic or hemic murmurs, which are always systolic and for the most part basic, may simulate aortic systolic murmurs, but these occur in young, delicate persons of both sexes, are often intermittent and without other effect on the muscular heart, while they are also unaccompanied by thrill. There may be roughness, too, in the pulmonary artery, which can be localized to the left of the sternum.

As already mentioned, stenosis of the aortic orifice is very apt to be associated with insufficiency, the same rigidity and adhesion which prevent complete patulousness of the orifice preventing also complete closure.

*Differential Diagnosis.*—The signs which distinguish aortic *stenosis* from aortic *roughening* are not many. In aortic stenosis the pulse is small as contrasted with that of simple roughening or dilatation of the aorta. A systolic thrill is more characteristic of aortic stenosis. It may be felt at the base and apex, and rarely at the apex alone. From the last may be inferred that the cusp nearest the mitral leaflets is involved.

#### AORTIC STENOSIS AND INSUFFICIENCY.

**Occurrence.**—This double lesion is a comparatively frequent one; indeed, it is commonly regarded as the next in frequency after mitral insufficiency, and therefore more frequent than either aortic insufficiency or aortic stenosis alone. It occasions a double basic murmur, systolic and diastolic, and is also a grave condition, giving rise to the same dangers as aortic regurgitation, and the same enormous hypertrophy of the left ventricle.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of this condition requires special mention, because it not infrequently happens that it is mistaken for *aneurysm of the arch of the aorta*, which is associated with a similar double murmur of which the systolic element is due to the roughness of the aorta and aneurysmal walls, and of which the diastolic is a sign of relative insufficiency due to dilatation of the aorta. The distinctive differences between the two conditions will be given in treating aneurysm of the arch of the aorta.

#### TRICUSPID INSUFFICIENCY OR INCOMPETENCY.

**Occurrence and Mechanism.**—Tricuspid regurgitation as a primary condition is extremely rare, and, when present, is probably the result of an endocarditis which during fetal life is more prone to attack the right than

the left side. Endocarditis involving the tricuspid valve may, however, also occur in children—according to Byrom Bramwell,<sup>1</sup> more commonly than has been supposed. Infectious or ulcerative endocarditis also affects the tricuspid valve—according to Osler, in 19 out of 238 cases. More frequently tricuspid regurgitation is the result of a *relative insufficiency*, one of the terminal events of mitral disease, the tricuspid orifice yielding with the dilatation of the right ventricle, which takes place sooner or later, consequent upon the resistance to the movement of the blood through the engorged lungs. It is also one of the possible sequelæ of emphysema of the lungs and long-standing fibroid phthisis or chronic bronchitis, succeeding, too, a primary hypertrophy of the right ventricle, due to these causes.

Thus, out of 405 autopsies at Guy's Hospital in which evidence of tricuspid regurgitation was found, 271, or two-thirds, succeeded on mitral disease, 68 were due to myocardial degeneration, 55 to pulmonary disease, viz., bronchitis, emphysema, and cirrhosis of the lung. The effects of venous obstruction growing out of tricuspid insufficiency have been detailed on page 621.

Tricuspid insufficiency succeeding upon mitral insufficiency is not always accompanied by an audible murmur. It is evident that every case of mitral regurgitation associated with dropsy must be attended with tricuspid regurgitation. Very few of the cases above referred to had been diagnosed during life, and in all of them the valve was itself healthy, but insufficient to close the dilated orifice.

**Symptoms.**—These are those described when treating of mitral disease after the stage of tricuspid regurgitation has been reached, dropsy more or less general, engorgement of the stomach, liver, and kidneys, an enlarged, tender, pulsating liver, and a jugular pulse. The last two symptoms are regarded as pathognomonic.

Jugular pulse is often more forcible in the right than in the left jugular. There is also cyanosis, dyspnea, and pulmonary edema. The jugular pulse is systolic in time, and does not appear until the valves situated at the opening of the internal jugulars into the innominate veins yield. These give way first on the right side, because the course of the right innominate is straighter and communication is more direct. So long as the valve above the bulbus jugularis is closed, the pulse is confined to the bulb, but with the yielding of this valve the pulse becomes general throughout the vein. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish a true jugular pulse from the "physiological" or "false" jugular pulse, which may sometimes be seen in health and whenever the venous system is overfull. Pressure on the vein above the valves will cause the false pulse to disappear while the true pulse, coming from the right ventricle, will remain. The physiological or false jugular pulse alternates with the ventricular systole is presystolic—a negative pulse—while the true jugular coincides with the systole of the ventricles.

**Physical Signs.**—In primary tricuspid disease with regurgitation, *inspection* and *palpation* reveal an apex-beat diffused toward the ensiform cartilage and the epigastrium. *Percussion* detects enlargement toward the right edge of the sternum, due to hypertrophy of the right ventricle, which occurs for the same reason as hypertrophy of the left ventricle in mitral

<sup>1</sup>"Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.," April, 1886, p. 419.



insufficiency. It is not, however, that the right ventricle protrudes to the right as much as that it pushes the right auricle over to the right.

To *auscultation* the systolic murmur thus engendered is almost invariably feeble, and is heard almost solely in the tricuspid area, just above and to the left of the ensiform cartilage. Occasionally only is the second pulmonary sound accentuated. There should be no confounding of this murmur with that of aortic regurgitation conducted toward the same situation, but different in time, nor with that of mitral regurgitation heard at no great distance, for the reasons already given. To these must be added a difference in quality and pitch between the tricuspid and the mitral murmur, not always, however, manifest.

### TRICUSPID STENOSIS.

**Occurrence.**—Tricuspid stenosis is a rarer condition, but it may be an acquired one in association with left-sided heart disease as the result of rheumatic endocarditis, and of unknown causes. Ninety per cent. of cases are associated with mitral stenosis. It is much more frequent in women, fully 80 per cent. of all cases being in them. As in endocarditis of the left side, there are thickening, adhesion, narrowing.

A presystolic tricuspid murmur pointing to stenosis, in a case observed by Gardner, was found due to a growth from the endocardium of the right auricle, so placed as to fall over the tricuspid orifice in the manner of a ball valve. Fred. C. Shattuck has met one instance of tricuspid stenosis with mitral stenosis and regurgitation, along with adherent pericardium, hepatic cirrhosis, and slightly granular kidney, as determined by autopsy. In this case there was a presystolic tricuspid murmur observed for three years before death.

**Physical Signs.**—Simple uncomplicated tricuspid stenosis would be recognized by the presence of a presystolic murmur and thrill, best heard in the tricuspid area, unaccompanied by hypertrophy of the right ventricle. When associated with left-sided heart disease, the diagnosis is seldom made, because the murmur is masked by the coincident mitral *presystolic murmur*. In a very few cases only is it confined to this valve. Frequently there is no murmur. *Percussion* shows dullness to the right of the sternum, if there is dilatation of the auricle, which does not always occur.

Congenital stenosis of the tricuspid orifice occurs, but is usually associated with defects of other valves, which early cause death.

**Other symptoms** are cyanosis of the face and lips and, in the later stages, extreme and obstinate dropsy.

### PULMONARY INSUFFICIENCY OR INCOMPETENCY.

**Occurrence.**—Simple pulmonary regurgitation is rarely seen. It may, however, exist as a congenital defect (fusion of two segments), and the pulmonary valve has been found involved in ulcerative valvulitis.

**Physical Signs.**—It is easy from what has gone before to deduce the physical signs which are to be expected—a diastolic murmur heard in the

pulmonic area, hypertrophy of the right ventricle, later jugular pulse, venous congestion, and cyanosis. The diastolic murmur may be confounded with that of aortic insufficiency, but the latter is accompanied with hypertrophy of the left ventricle, with Corrigan pulse and capillary pulse. A few cases are related in which a diastolic murmur has been found associated with defects in the pulmonary valves—in one, warty, which might have been the result of infectious endocarditis. All others are congenital. Among them is aneurysmal dilatation. Such was the case reported to the Pathological Society of Philadelphia by Edward T. Bruen (see "Transactions" for 1883).

#### PULMONARY STENOSIS.

**Occurrence.**—The great majority of systolic murmurs heard at the pulmonary orifice are functional. Pulmonary stenosis, though very rare, may, however, exist, in which case it is far more likely to be *congenital from arrested development*, although *intrauterine endocarditis* may also cause it. So, also, may infectious endocarditis, and in rare instances, atheroma. I well remember a case of malignant endocarditis with a pulmonary systolic murmur in which I was led from a correct diagnosis, because I thought that such murmurs are so invariably functional that it was scarcely worth while to consider the probability of an organic lesion. The autopsy disclosed a valvulitis of the pulmonary valve. Since then I have met other cases. The valve leaflets are apt to be fused. When the lesion is congenital, it is commonly associated with patency of the foramen of Botal or foramen ovale, together with imperfect ventricular septum and tricuspid stenosis.

**Physical Signs.**—Pulmonary stenosis should furnish a systolic murmur in the pulmonary area, to the left of the sternum. The murmur may even be heard behind, between the shoulders, and it may be rough. It is accompanied by hypertrophy of the right ventricle. There may be a basic thrill, as in aortic obstruction, but the pulse is uninfluenced. Compensation may be set up by means of a patulous foramen ovale, an open ductus arteriosus, or interventricular communication. The invariable presence of cyanosis due to venous obstruction and of attacks of dyspnea complete the picture and aid greatly in the diagnosis. Anemic murmurs at the same time and place are unaccompanied by cyanosis.

Walshe has described a case of death from thrombosis of the pulmonary artery in which he heard a pulmonary systolic murmur before the end came.

#### CONGENITAL DEFECTS.

Congenital defects in the cardiac valves and orifices deserve a passing notice. They may be the result of endocarditis during fetal life or of arrest of development. Their most frequent seat is the right heart, and the most frequent form is *stenosis of the pulmonary orifice*, the effects and signs of which have already been considered. Another is a permanently *patulous foramen ovale*; or there may be a *defect of the septum of the ventricles*, or a communication between the aorta and pulmonary artery—a *persistent ductus arteriosus*—or *between the aorta and the vena cava or aorta and right auricle*. All of these intercommunications produce murmurs difficult to

separate, and it is, after all, by attention to the general condition that the defect is recognized. The patient is a child of arrested development, more or less permanently cyanosed, with continued embarrassed breathing—all of these are conditions which point to the congenital defect. If there be added to these a persistent loud murmur at the base of the heart without other signs or symptoms of valvular disease, this may be due to congenital defect.

In addition to these, there are a large number of defects of development which are rather pathological curiosities than of clinical interest. Among these may be mentioned *acardia*, or absence of heart, met in the monstrosity thus named; *double heart*, sometimes present in high degrees of fetal defect; *dextrocardia*, in which the heart is on the right side, alone or with other viscera. In *ectopia cordis*, or dislocation, which is associated with fission of the chest wall and of the abdomen, the heart may be in the cervical, pectoral, or abdominal regions. Then there are anomalies of the cardiac septa, of which the patulous foramen ovale is the most frequent, various in degree. Next is a small defect in the upper part of the septum, between the ventricles, in what is known as the "undefended" space, or just anterior to it. A *bicuspid* condition of the semilunar valves, from fusion of cusps, is often met—most frequently of the aorta. The combined valve is more liable to sclerotic change. Finally, there is fenestration of the semilunar cusps.

**Relative Frequency of Valvular Defects.**—The order of frequency of the various valvular defects is not entirely agreed upon. As to one, however, there seems to be universal concurrence, and that is that mitral regurgitation is the most frequent. After this, however, statistics differ. Thus, of the older authors, W. H. Walshe presents the following order of frequency for the single or simple murmurs:

1. Mitral incompetency. 2. Aortic stenosis. 3. Aortic incompetency.  
4. Mitral stenosis. 5. Tricuspid incompetency. 6. Pulmonary stenosis.  
7. Tricuspid stenosis. 8. Pulmonary incompetency. Presumably, this list is based upon necropsy records.

This order, in the light of modern studies, must be corrected, except as to mitral incompetency. Frederick J. Smith, analyzing the registers and postmortem records of the London hospitals for eleven years—1877-87—and taking the fatal cases only, arrived at the following order:

- |                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Mitral incompetency.    |                                   |
| 2. Mitral stenosis.        |                                   |
| 3. Aortic incompetency.    | } Of practically equal frequency. |
| 4. Aortic stenosis.        |                                   |
| 5. Tricuspid stenosis.     |                                   |
| To these we may add:       |                                   |
| 6. Tricuspid incompetency. |                                   |
| 7. Pulmonary stenosis.     |                                   |
| 8. Pulmonary incompetency. |                                   |

It is evident that the older observers mistook the aortic systolic murmur for mean aortic stenosis, when roughening only of some kind was present.

Out of 705 cases, Smith found 26, or 3.38 per cent., of mitral stenosis, and 25, or 3.25 per cent., of aortic regurgitation; so it cannot be said there is any practical difference in the relative frequency of these two lesions. Von Leube says that, after mitral incompetency, aortic incompetency is the most frequent, and this is my experience. Smith's statistics, being recent and based, as they are, upon the examination of registers and autopsy records, are probably nearly correct, but these two lesions approximate in frequency. Such are to be distinguished from those based on observation at the bedside, regardless of autopsy. Such observation certainly fails to detect all cases of mitral stenosis.

Of "double" *murmurs* heard at one orifice, those of mitral stenosis and insufficiency are more numerous than aortic stenosis and insufficiency, women being the most frequent subjects. It should be mentioned, however, that George S. Middleton, in a clinical study of 150 cases of chronic valvular disease at the out-patient department of the Royal Glasgow Infirmary, found a much larger number—22 per cent.—of the double aortic lesions, as against Smith's four per cent.; also, that Walshe makes the double aortic lesion the second in frequency of all valvular diseases. I am inclined to agree with the latter statement.

**Associated or Combined Valvular Lesions.**—These terms are applied when two valves are diseased at the same time—a very frequent occurrence.<sup>1</sup> The valves which are most frequently jointly affected are, of course, the aortic and mitral, then the mitral and tricuspid, then the aortic, mitral, and tricuspid. Aortic disease of either kind is more frequently associated with mitral incompetency than mitral stenosis, because the former is, sooner or later, a result of the aortic disease, while mitral stenosis arises by a separate process. The very careful analysis by Frederick J. Smith referred to furnishes the following order, which is not far from correct:

1. Aortic incompetency and stenosis; mitral incompetency.
  2. Aortic stenosis or roughening and mitral incompetency.
  3. Aortic incompetency and mitral incompetency.
- There is less than one per cent. difference in the frequency of 2 and 3.
4. Aortic incompetency and stenosis, with mitral stenosis and incompetency.
  5. Mitral incompetency and tricuspid incompetency.
  6. Aortic incompetency and stenosis, with mitral incompetency, tricuspid incompetency.

Too much reliance must not be placed on the order of combined murmurs, as after 1 the arrangement is not altogether what would be expected from a consideration of the natural sequence. From my own experience I should place combined aortic incompetency and stenosis well up in the list, probably second. In children, it is said, the most frequent combination is aortic incompetency and mitral incompetency. One would expect this to be the case with adults also.

<sup>1</sup>Sansom has suggested that the term "combined" be retained for two murmurs at one orifice, commonly known as "double" murmurs—an unfortunate suggestion, as it will be sure to give rise to confusion, while the term double is easily understood.

The diagnosis of these combinations is based upon the quality and situation of the murmurs and their conduction.

**Prognosis of Chronic Valvular Disease.**—Possible positive statements as to the prognosis in chronic valvular disease are few, so uncertain is it and so many circumstances influence it. Undoubtedly, valvular disease often exists where the subject is totally free from symptoms, and therefore quite unconscious of it. Yet such subject is not free from danger. On the other hand, 15, 20, 30, and even 40 years pass over such cases without inconvenience, compensation being easily maintained. Such cases are usually of mitral incompetency or stenosis, or both. Much depends upon the life led by the patient—whether one of ease and quiet, associated with proper food and clothing and without dissipation. Even when such disease occasions symptoms, the same measures may hold them in abeyance for a long time, and occasional judicious medication may raise the patient from a serious condition to one of comfort. It is astonishing with what little disturbance women with these affections sometimes bear children. Of the lesions at the mitral orifice, incompetency is usually most easily compensated, then combined stenosis and incompetency, and finally stenosis only; but even the last exists at times without subjective symptoms in persons who have worked hard. After all, the prospect of life must be judged from the symptoms in each case. The compensation which is obtained by extreme hypertrophy and apex displacement is tottering. An additional danger in mitral disease, especially mitral stenosis, is that of embolism. Recurring attacks of rheumatism not only increase the latter danger, but augment the valvular defect. The supervention of dropsy and dyspnea indicate failing compensation, and though they may be overcome, it is with increasing difficulty at each recurrence.

Aortic incompetency is a much graver condition. It is this valvular disease in which sudden death overtakes the patient. Yet it, too, may be compensated for years. Much here depends upon the state of the arteries, the danger being increased when associated with sclerosis or atheroma, for these conditions are likely to effect the root of the aorta and the valves, and especially the coronary arteries. Any obstruction in these, as already stated, may be the cause of sudden death. Angina pectoris indicates a diseased condition of the coronary arteries, which may at any time be followed by complete obstruction and similar death. Overdistention, such as takes place during exertion, may be too much for a fatty heart already dilated, and becomes also a cause of sudden death.

The most unfavorable of all forms of cardiac valvular disease is tricuspid regurgitation, which occasions obstinate dropsy and dyspnea.

Chronic valvular disease is regarded as much more serious in young children, say those under ten years of age; this, in spite of the fact that many conditions favorable to compensation are present, such as integrity of heart muscle and vascular supply. Notwithstanding this, the valve lesion is apt to increase. On the other hand, there is a popular notion, which I think is not unfounded, that a child may outgrow a heart disease under favorable circumstances, such as abundance of good food and protection against exposure and overwork. This may be true, but it is more likely that compensation is established with the growth and development of the organ.

That the apparent event does sometimes occur, I can attest. Congenital defects in the heart are apt to destroy the lives of children in the first few years of their existence.

Finally, almost any serious illness, especially when involving the lung, increases the danger to the life of the subject of cardiac disease, while mitral disease, and especially mitral stenosis, invites pulmonary congestion and inflammations.

**Treatment of Chronic Valvular Diseases of the Heart.**—1. *Prophylaxis.* There can be no doubt that the number of cases of chronic valvular disease may be decreased by a careful treatment of the diseases which excite them or favor their occurrence, especially acute rheumatism. The student is referred to a valuable monograph by R. Caton, on "The Prevention of Valvular Disease of the Heart."<sup>1</sup> This author emphasizes especially (1) the importance of rest and a minimum of exertion of all kinds for the rheumatic patient; (2) stimulation of the trophic centers by small blisters in the neighborhood of the affected joints, in front of the chest between the clavicle and the nipple on both sides, and in the axilla, with a view to stimulating vasomotor nerves; (3) treatment by absorbents, including the iodid of sodium and mercury. The rest and quiet should be prolonged long after the symptoms of pain and fever have subsided, and a second attack of rheumatism should especially be guarded against, as an apparently cured endocarditis is sure to be followed by another attack. Temperance and the avoidance of excesses of all kinds which tend to load the blood with toxic substances constitute a prophylaxis of no small importance.

2. *Remedial Measures.*—Since there are certain points in the treatment of disease of the cardiac valves which are the same for the different orifices, I shall consider first such measures as are thus common, referring more especially to mitral and aortic disease.

In the first place, it is well known that there exist chronic valvular defects at either of these orifices which give rise to no symptoms whatever and are often accidentally discovered. From the standpoint generally conceded, that such defects themselves are irremediable, it is clear that, in the absence of symptoms, medicinal treatment is quite unnecessary. On the other hand, it is a happy circumstance when the subjects of such lesions are made aware of their presence, because they are enabled so to regulate their mode of life as to prevent harmful consequences, either symptomatically or organically. Such persons should avoid overexercise and excitement. Running or even walking rapidly, hurriedly ascending stairs, extremes of passion of all kinds, and especially of anger, should be avoided, as should also exposure and irregular living. In a higher grade of involvement of either orifice, the same treatment is demanded in a more imperative manner, since its omission results in a loss of compensation, manifested by dyspnea, palpitation, and precordial distress.

In a still more advanced degree of interference with normal functions the treatment becomes different with the seat of the lesion. Let us first consider lesions of the mitral valve, and first the most common of all forms—*mitral regurgitation*. We have seen that the blood flows back into the left auricle during systole of the ventricle, at a time when all communication

<sup>1</sup> London, C. J. Clay & Sons, 1900.

between these cavities should be cut off and the movement of the blood should be forward only. Averted for a time by hypertrophy of the left auricle, engorgement of the lungs ultimately results, with defective aeration of blood, and consequent shortness of breath. This effect is at first counteracted by the increased effort of the *right* ventricle, whence its hypertrophy, with sharp accentuation of the pulmonic second sound.

So long as compensation is thus maintained there is probably no sign of embarrassed breathing, no irregularity, no precordial oppression or digestive derangement; but as soon as compensation begins to fail, in consequence of a suspension of the conditions which cooperate to help it, or of a slight yielding of the heart muscle, assistance is demanded. The heart tonics, of which digitalis is the type, are the agents preeminent for this purpose. That they operate by directly increasing the force of the right ventricle and left auricle, and thus contribute to the compensation, can scarcely be doubted; but that they help also to make the closure of the mitral orifice more complete by forcibly increasing the contraction of the left ventricle seems also reasonably sure, since the experiments of Ludwig and Hesse have made it so plain that this can occur. They have shown that the mechanism for closing the mitral orifice does not reside in the valve alone, but that the surrounding muscles of the ventricle have an active share, not only in floating up the valve curtains, but in reducing also the size of the opening which these valve curtains have to close. This is, of course, less applicable in chronic valvular conditions where there is stiffness from calcareous change, than where regurgitation results from simple feebleness of muscle in anemia and after the infectious fevers.

The effect required of this class of drugs varies with the degree of obstruction to be overcome, and the doses vary accordingly. Very often the heart requires but a little steadying to enable it to accomplish the desired end, and moderate doses—such as 5 minims (0.3 c.c.) of the tincture of digitalis once in six or eight hours—suffice. On the other hand, it is a mistake to give too small a dose, and too great timidity often results in failure. Doses of from 10 to 15 minims (0.6 to 1 c.c.) of the tincture of digitalis every four hours, and corresponding doses of the other preparations, are often necessary and sometimes produce magical effects. The irregular and halting pulse becomes regular, the dropped beat is again taken up, the dusky lips become pink, the scanty urine is increased, the shortness of breath disappears, and calmness and quiet succeed distress and restlessness. As soon, however, as the desired effect is produced, the dose should be lowered. Digitalis is a remedy always better intermitted to obtain its best effects, and a remedy, too, which, having once excited nausea, is thereafter badly borne.

The same principles apply to the management of the still more serious engorgements of the venous system which succeed upon tricuspid insufficiency, and produce dropsies and serous effusions. This engorgement is also relieved by the use of purgatives, and as the portal area, including the liver itself and the stomach, is especially involved, mercurial purgatives are especially indicated. From 5 to 10 grains (0.32 to 0.65 gm.) of blue mass at bedtime, followed by a saline in the morning, relieve the congestion, and with it the nausea and indisposition to take food attending it.

Such remedies may be resorted to occasionally. Sometimes the continued use of small doses for a long time—say  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 grain (0.03 to 0.065 gm.) of blue mass three times a day—is more efficient. It is generally recognized that digitalis produces, also contraction of the arterioles, and that through this, in connection with the forcible systole, the arterial pressure is increased. This effect is desirable and useful in the early stages of mitral regurgitation, before tricuspid regurgitation and dropsy have set in. Later in the disease, however, when dropsy has set in, this effect militates against the diuretic action which is so much needed. The manner in which this may be overcome will be described later.

As to the relative value of the different preparations of digitalis: While testimony is generally favorable to the infusion as the most efficient remedy, yet, on account of convenience and accessibility, the tincture is most frequently used. I am inclined to believe that the greater apparent efficiency of the infusion is partly due to the fact that it is generally given in larger doses. Thus, a tablespoonful, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce (15 c.c.), is not an infrequent dose of the infusion, while 10 minims (0.6 c.c.), or 20 drops, of the tincture and 1 grain (0.066 gm.) of the powder are not often exceeded. When it is remembered that  $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce (15 c.c.) of the infusion, as made by the United States Pharmacopeia, represents nearly 3 grains (0.19 gm.) of the powder, or 20 minims (1.2 c.c.) of the tincture, one may understand why it is more efficient. It is true, however, that the infusion is sometimes better borne by the stomach than equivalent doses of the tincture. It may be that the cinnamon water with which it is made has this effect. The preparations of digitalis thus far mentioned are more or less uncertain. An excellent preparation is the fluid extract which is a constant preparation. Each minim representing 1 grain of the drug, and hence the proper dose is easily determined. It may be used hypodermically. Better for hypodermic use is digitalone, a nonirritating watery solution comparable to the digitalin of Schmiedeberg and the digitalin germanic to which is added chloretone as a local anodyne and antiseptic. The dose hypodermically is 8 to 15 minims (.5 to 1 c.c.), internally 15 to 30 minims. (1 to 2 c.c.) increased if necessary.

Of remedies which may be substituted for digitalis, strophanthus should be first mentioned. It was at one time thought that strophanthus might have all the effects of digitalis on the left ventricle without the contracting effect on the arterioles. This is not strictly true, but it is conceded that its effect in this respect is less pronounced than that of digitalis. The dose is the same. It is better borne by the stomach, as a rule, than digitalis.

Caffein is an admirable heart tonic in mitral regurgitation. I do not give less than 3 grains of the citrate (0.2 gm.) at a dose, every four to six hours. When caffein has been given in full doses for some time, it may produce mental symptoms quite characteristic, consisting in hallucinations not unlike those of delirium tremens, the patient imagining there are persons, animals, and other objects about him, and he is sometimes

<sup>1</sup>It is, moreover, to be remembered that of the four active principles of digitalis, viz., digitalein, digitolin, digitoxin and digitonin, digitonin is present in larger quantity, in the infusion. Now, digitonin does not have the contracting effect on blood-vessels of the other three principles, has indeed rather the opposite effect. Hence when a cardiac tonic effect is desired the tincture should be used, and when a diuretic effect, the infusion.



difficult to control. These symptoms, however, cease immediately when the drug is discontinued. Another effect of caffeine which sometimes interferes with its usefulness is insomnia.

Sparteine sulphate is another heart tonic from which I have had results, especially when a diuretic effect is desired. The dose should never be less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.016 gm.), increased to a grain (0.032 gm.), four, five, and six times a day. I am sure many have been disappointed in sparteine because they have given too small a dose. Broom itself, in the shape of an infusion or "tea," is a popular and efficient remedy, less well borne by the stomach than its active principle, sparteine. Sparteine and broom are more commonly used as diuretics, and will be again referred to in the treatment of the dropsy of Bright's disease.

In the rarer disease simple *mitral stenosis*, compensation is even easier and longer maintained by nature's own resources than in mitral regurgitation. Here, for evident reasons, there is no tendency to dilatation or hypertrophy of the left ventricle. On the other hand, hypertrophy of the left auricle becomes a conspicuous condition, succeeded by hypertrophy of the right ventricle, for the same reason as in mitral regurgitation. Especially easy is it to maintain compensation if the narrowing is not too great and if there is a well-preserved left auricle and a strong right ventricle. If, however, the mitral narrowing is extreme, it is plain that the pulmonary engorgement will become greater if we increase the force of the right ventricle. Much more cautious must we be, therefore, in the use of digitalis. Much more important under these circumstances is relief to the pulmonary congestion, which in turn will relieve the right heart tension. Blood-letting is the most direct method of accomplishing this, and in severe cases associated with great dyspnea and cyanosis it may be practiced. Purgation may be substituted. Aconite is sometimes of advantage in these cases, in small doses, say 1 or 2 minims (0.06 to 0.12 c.c.) every two hours or every hour watching its effect. It is possible that it is through a somewhat similar action that *convallaria majalis*—a remedy in which most observers have been disappointed—has been found useful by Sansom<sup>1</sup> in mitral stenosis, and also by French physicians. By these observers it has been found diuretic, increasing the 24 hours' urine to 85 and even to 115 ounces (2550 to 3450 c.c.), reducing the pulse rate, regulating irregularity, and improving the breathing, even when accompanied by tricuspid regurgitation. The doses given are from 10 to 20 minims (0.6 to 1.2 c.c.) of the tincture three times a day, and it may with advantage be associated with caffeine. The French physicians give the extract in doses of from 1 gram to 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  grams a day—i. e., 15 to 20 grains. *Veratrum viride* may be used under the same circumstances in 10 minim. (0.6 c.c.) doses<sup>2</sup> More effectual than either of these remedies to relieve pulmonary congestion is purging, sometimes blood-letting, and repeated small bleedings are sometimes of great advantage in this form of chronic valvular disease. It has seemed to me, too, that the irregularity of heart's action, so characteristic of mitral disease, is sometimes better controlled by nitroglycerin than by digitalis in 1/100 gr.

<sup>1</sup> "The Treatment of Some of the Forms of Valvular Disease of the Heart," Lettsomian Lectures, second edition, with corrections, London, 1886.

<sup>2</sup> The tincture of *veratrum viride* is considerably reduced in strength in the new U. S. Pharmacopœia of 1900.

doses every two hours with prolongation of the interval as the symptom disappears, although this seems paradoxical.

The principles governing the treatment of combined mitral regurgitation and stenosis are similar to those governing the treatment of the simple conditions.

And what shall be the treatment of *pure aortic disease*? It will be remembered that both the aortic obstruction and regurgitation give rise to hypertrophy of the left ventricle, and that this is compensatory in purpose. For a time this is quite sufficient to ward off any unpleasant symptoms, and for a still longer time when associated with a quiet life, the absence of excitement, of exposure, and privation. High degrees of hypertrophy are accompanied with a powerful systolic impulse, a symptom which is of itself often a source of great discomfort. Shall we, then, give heart tonics which increase the force of this thumping blow? Certainly not. Shall we give aconite or veratrum viride, which slow the heart and diminish the force of its stroke? Yes, at times these remedies are very useful. Whenever, as the result of overexertion or undue excitement or gastric derangement, the heart is turbulently overactive, and even irregular in its rhythm, then I have often seen aconite in small doses—say 2 minims (0.12 c.c.), or 4 drops, repeated every half hour or hour under close observation—act happily, especially when combined with bromid of potassium, say 15 grains (1 gm.). The tincture of veratrum viride may be given in 10 minim (0.6 c.c.) doses. As soon, however, as this period is past, the aconite should be omitted. Even in mitral regurgitation I have seen aconite act most happily under these circumstances.

We want also in this condition remedies which will help to maintain the integrity of the heart muscle. Such are strychnin, iron in small doses, arsenic, and nutritious, easily assimilable food. Especially useful are well-ventilated living- and sleeping-rooms, wholesome outdoor life, with moderate, deliberate muscular exercise. Like all other muscles, the heart is strengthened by judicious exercise. In the light of this fact even the mountain-climbing advocated by Oertel is not so irrational and dangerous as it seems at first thought. Very cautious and gradually increased exercise is doubtless intended. On the other hand, so much judgment is required in the application of this treatment that it is perhaps better honored in the breach than in the observance.

Such measures as those described tend to ward off the next stage, for sooner or later the integrity of the muscle of the ventricle yields, dilatation is added to hypertrophy, the auriculo-ventricular orifice enlarges, and we have mitral regurgitation. Then the treatment becomes that for mitral disease.

The treatment for aortic regurgitation and of aortic stenosis with regurgitation is similar to that of aortic stenosis.

*Treatment of Dyspnea.*—As the dyspnea is primarily the result of deficient blood aeration in the congested lungs, the same remedies which force the blood through these organs, and thus relieve the congestion, tend also to relieve the dyspnea, and often do so. When the dyspnea persists, it is frequently caused by effusions into the pleural cavity, which are most promptly and successfully removed by tapping, although a blister may also

answer the purpose. Repeated tapping may be necessary. Dyspnea not thus relieved demands an opiate, and of opiates under these circumstances, morphin is the best. One-fourth of a grain (0.0165 gm.) at bedtime, by the mouth or hypodermically, gives unspeakable comfort. Hoffmann's anodyne, given in fluidram doses (3.5 c.c.), will sometimes relieve the milder degrees, and should perhaps be tried first, as it is always desirable to put off the use of morphin as long as possible. Paraldehyd may be substituted for Hoffmann's anodyne in the same doses. Chloralamid is even a better remedy in 30 grain (2 gm.) doses. Sulphonal may be tried in full doses of 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.). Trional in the same doses is a similar drug. So is veronal in somewhat smaller doses, 7 to 10 grains (0.462 to 0.66 gm.). None of these is an anodyne. They are simple hypnotics, and cannot be expected to take the place of morphin, though they may be tried at first. All the coal-tar products are more soluble in hot liquids, of which milk is a typical form. Inhalations of oxygen should not be forgotten as sometimes giving signal relief in dyspnea.

*Treatment of Dropsy.*—In like manner the measures that relieve the congestion and dyspnea tend also to relieve the dropsy, but special means are also necessary. Here it is that full doses of digitalis are especially indicated, and at closer intervals. It is to be remembered, too, that the infusion is a better diuretic than the tincture.

But these measures are often insufficient. They may be materially aided by restricting the ingestion of liquids. With the tissues water-logged and secretion insufficient, it is plain that copious liquid ingestion only increases the difficulty. I am speaking now of cases in which there is general dropsy which resists the ordinary treatment. The principle of the Matthew Hay method is correct, but in practice it is limited, because, with an already congested stomach, solids cannot be digested without an admixture of liquid, and further embarrassment results from the effort to dissolve them and from the presence of undigested residue. Therefore it is sometimes better to omit solid food altogether and reduce the liquid to a minimum that will sustain life—not more than three ounces every two hours, and that only during the waking hours. To this may be added the use of purgatives. While diuretics sometimes fail us, we can always secure an effect from purgatives. A daily morning dose of Epsom salts or Rochelle salts or compound jalap powder is given. Elaterium or its active principle elaterin must not be forgotten. The latter is less apt to produce nausea. Its dose is  $\frac{1}{40}$  to  $\frac{1}{10}$  grain (0.00165 to 0.0066 gm.), while that of elaterium is  $\frac{1}{10}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  gr. (0.0066 to 0.033 gm.). Then, when action of the bowels begins, full doses of digitalis, caffein, or spartein, associated with nitroglycerin, are almost sure to be followed by copious diuresis; and when diuresis starts up in these cases, it is astonishing what quantities of urine are passed. The association of nitroglycerin with digitalis at this stage may be helpful. The object of nitroglycerin is to dilate the arterioles and allow the blood to move freely through them;  $\frac{1}{100}$  to  $\frac{1}{50}$  grain (0.00065 to 0.0013 gm.) may be given as often as the digitalis and simultaneously. One need not be afraid of this drug. I have given this dose every two hours for 24 hours or more at a time. Elimination by the bowels and kidneys being simultaneously stimulated, the sucking up of

the interstitial fluid is greatly favored and often rapidly brought about. If these measures be associated with paracentesis of the chest, which may be required, the diuresis set up is often enormous, while the swelling rapidly declines. As diuresis is established or hunger sets in the quantity of milk allowed may be increased, and when the dropsy has entirely disappeared, a cautious return to solid food may be permitted.

A time-honored remedy in the treatment of cardiac dropsy which should not be overlooked is the combination of calomel, squills, and digitalis, in doses of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.03 gm.) of the first and 1 grain (0.065 gm.) of the second and third every three or four hours; this is sometimes most happy in its results. Still another remedy often very efficient in this form of dropsy is theobromin. It is obtained from cacao, and is chemically closely allied to caffeine, the latter being trimethyl-xanthin, while theobromin is dimethyl-xanthin. Like caffeine, theobromin is a renal diuretic as well as a heart tonic. The dose I have found most satisfactory is 30 grains (2 gm.) in the 24 hours, conveniently divided into doses of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  grains (.5 gm.) every six hours. Larger doses may be given. On the other hand, diuretin, which is supposed to contain 50 per cent. of soluble theobromin in combination with salicylate of sodium, I have found of uncertain value as a diuretic. Still it is to be remembered and care must be taken to secure a clear solution. Turbidity is a sign of deterioration of the drug. It may be given in doses of 10 grains (0.66 gm.) every three hours and produces increased diuresis in 48 hours if effectual. A better diuretic of the same class is aceto-theocin (double salt of acetate of sodium and dimethyl-xanthin sodium). It may be given in doses of 4 to 8 grains (10.25 to 0.5 gm.) three to four times daily in capsule or solution.

In many cases there comes a time when the measures above described become inoperative. Diuretics will not act and purgatives are insufficient. Then it is that incisions in the anasarca legs or Southey's tubes inserted in the legs for draining off the liquid effusion are sometimes very efficient. I generally prefer the incision, an inch long and one behind the inner malleolus of each leg. Enormous quantities of fluid are thus drained off after which diuretics again become active, and I have seen many a case rescued from the grave for a time at least. It is most important that antiseptic dressings should be employed to protect the incisions against infection.

*Treatment of Irregularity of Heart Action and Palpitation.*—For these symptoms, in addition to the cardiac tonics mentioned, belladonna is also a useful remedy. It may be combined with digitalis. A good belladonna plaster placed over the palpitating heart is one of the most efficient agents in subduing it. Nitroglycerin as already mentioned is often very useful to the same end— $1/100$  grain (0.00065 gm.), rapidly increased to  $1/50$  grain (0.0013 gm.), every four hours or oftener. It may also be combined with digitalis, as previously directed. Cardiac pain is also sometimes relieved by the same remedies. For this, however, hypodermic injections of morphia are sometimes necessary while palpitation may require the same drug.

For further treatment of dropsy see section on Bright's disease. See also treatment of cardiac dilatation by the Schott treatment and Nauheim baths.

## DISEASES OF THE MYOCARDIUM.

The heart is subject to alterations in its muscular substance independent of valvular defect. Hypertrophy, dilatation, fatty infiltration, and fatty metamorphosis or true fatty degeneration, and atrophy are the most important. Myositis, abscess, and aneurysm of the walls of the heart are such rare conditions that they need only be mentioned in passing, especially as there is no way to recognize them before death.

## HYPERTROPHY AND DILATATION.

**Definition.**—Hypertrophy and dilatation have been sufficiently defined and described under general symptomology of heart diseases, p. 601. It remains only to consider a few details in cause and symptoms.

## HYPERTROPHY OF THE HEART.

**Etiology.**—Hypertrophy implies an overgrowth of muscular tissue, and is naturally the result of extra work, increased effort to overcome increased resistance, whatever its cause.

The term *idiopathic* hypertrophy is applied to such hypertrophy unassociated with abnormality in the valves and no cause external to the heart exciting it to overaction. Such are nervous influences and toxic conditions of the blood. Hypertrophy without valvular disease involves the left ventricle more frequently, but may involve both cavities, and even the right ventricle alone, as when there is pulmonary obstruction as in emphysema.

The resistance needed to excite increased action may be from within or from without, or due to nervous influence. Resistance from within is occasioned by obstruction to the outflow of blood from the heart, or to increased intravascular pressure. Such obstruction is offered in the case of the *left ventricle* by aortic stenosis, congenital narrowing, aortic insufficiency, and mitral insufficiency. Increased intravascular pressure is caused by endarteritis and resulting sclerotic changes in the vessel-walls and by aneurysm; by strong contraction stimulated by the irritation of toxic substances in the blood, such as accumulate in Bright's disease, or as the result of overeating or excessive drinking, especially of large quantities of beer; finally, by excessive physical exertion. All these are, therefore, causes of hypertrophy of the left ventricle.

External obstruction to the contraction of the left ventricle is found in pericardial adhesions and myocarditis. Such hypertrophy is always eccentric. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle from nervous influence is seen in exophthalmic goiter and allied conditions, and in long-continued palpitation. Constant mental excitement is a possible cause.

In the case of the *right ventricle*, internal resistance is produced by pulmonary congestion due to mitral regurgitation or to mitral stenosis, to

narrowing of the same vessel or branches, such as occurs in pulmonary emphysema. Valvular lesions of the right side of the heart produce hypertrophy of the right ventricle, just as those of the left cause it. The greater infrequency of these lesions and their occasional origin *in utero* are to be remembered. Pericardial adhesions also constitute a cause of external resistance to contraction of the right ventricle.

*Auricular hypertrophy* is always eccentric—that is, while the walls are thickened, the cavities are also dilated. Hypertrophy of the left auricle is usually caused by stenosis of the mitral orifice, and to a less degree is a result also of regurgitation of the blood in incompetency of the mitral valve. Hypertrophy of the right auricle might also be expected as a consequence of regurgitation of blood from the right ventricle to the right auricle, but the resistance to the further backward flow into the veins is so much less than in the left side disease, hypertrophy is correspondingly less frequent. In like manner, even if stenosis of the tricuspid orifice is present, the same conditions prevent any marked degree of hypertrophy of the right auricle.

In all cases of hypertrophy due to disease of the valves it is likely that a certain amount of distention of the heart cavity by blood precedes the muscular overgrowth.

**Symptoms.**—Hypertrophy, being a process of compensation, is not at first attended by any symptoms. It is the result of a generous conservative effort of nature, by means of which symptoms are averted. But unlike the hypertrophy of the muscles of the blacksmith's arm, it tends ultimately to degeneration, and thus becomes the initial link in a chain of evil which is well stated by J. G. Adami:<sup>1</sup> "In the first place, it leads to an increased nutrition of the walls of the *arteries*; increased nutrition leads to increased connective-tissue growth of the walls; increased fibrous tissue of the walls leads to contraction and increased rigidity of those walls; the increased rigidity leads to increased resistance to the passage of the blood current. The increased resistance requires increased propulsive power on the part of the ventricular muscle—that is to say, increased work; the increased work of the heart leads to overgrowth and hypertrophy (myocarditis), and with this, heightened blood pressure and further increased nutrition of the walls, and now, at last, the stage is reached, this vicious circle continuing, in which either the vessel walls give way or the heart." From this standpoint increased blood pressure alone is sufficient to explain in some cases the anatomical changes—*i. e.*, the arterial sclerosis, atheroma, and fibroid thickening so constantly seen in valves and heart-walls without calling on chronic inflammation or specific agency. Certain it is that the two conditions react on each other, and it is more than likely that the former (increased blood pressure) may produce the latter (chronic inflammation) *de novo*, and many otherwise unexplained facts are rendered clear.

With degeneration we begin to have symptoms which are at first intermittent, brought about only by some temporary cause which excites the heart, such as exercise, mental emotion, fatigue, mental or physical, tobacco, or alcohol. There is a feeling of vague discomfort about the heart, seldom amounting to pain, sometimes increased when the patient lies on the left side. To this may be added palpitation, a consciousness of the beating

<sup>1</sup>"Notes upon Cardiac Hypertrophy," "Montreal Medical Journal," May, 1895.

of the arteries in the head, dizziness, headache, ringing in the ears, flushes or flashes of light, and a tendency to hemorrhage of the nose. So long as the integrity of the heart muscle is maintained the blood pressure is increased and reaches 160 to 200 or more mm.; as the heart begins to degenerate the blood pressure rapidly falls.

**Physical Signs.**—While symptoms other than physical signs may be wanting, the latter are present from the beginning, increasing with the duration of the hypertrophy. These have been for the most part considered when treating of valvular diseases. I will simply emphasize *accentuation of the aortic second* sound in hypertrophy of the left ventricle and of the *pulmonic second* in hypertrophy of the right ventricle.

**Diagnosis.**—In view of the fact that hypertrophy is a part of the morbid anatomy of chronic valvular defect, we need concern ourselves only with the so-called idiopathic hypertrophy. A resemblance to *hypertrophy* may arise from pericardial effusion, circumscribed pleuritic effusion, aneurysm, or mediastinal tumor in the neighborhood of a normal heart, the latter especially if it push the heart forward. A normal heart may appear enlarged to percussion when it is uncovered by a lung retracted from any cause, as cirrhosis of that organ. Simple *palpitation* of the heart may be mistaken for hypertrophy.

In all cases the situation of the maximum intensity of the apex-beat is a valuable criterion, because, although its position may be changed in pleuritic effusion and pericardial effusion, it is in the opposite direction from that in hypertrophy, while the impulse is feeble instead of being strong. Aneurysm and mediastinal tumor will certainly furnish some of the signs peculiar to them, and thus permit a distinction. Simple palpitation is without the percussion signs of enlargement of the heart. Under none of the circumstances named will its situation be altered.

Hypertrophy may be obscured if the heart is overlapped by an emphysematous lung. This is partly the case in hypertrophy of the right ventricle, which is often associated with emphysema of the lungs. In such cases the pulse does not help, but rather tends to mislead, because it is small in hypertrophy of the right ventricle.

**Prognosis.**—When associated with valvular disease, the prognosis is that of the disease itself, against which hypertrophy is, for a time, a protection, counterbalancing the growing defect of the valve until the nutrition of the heart begins to be impaired and dilatation replaces hypertrophy with loss of compensation. The latter may be sudden, though it may be delayed for a time by treatment. While such malnutrition may be of local origin—that is, resident in the heart muscle itself—it may be due to general causes also, as general illness, hardship and exposure, overexertion, fatiguing occupation, insufficient food, and the like. When it is the result of endarteritis and aneurysm, the termination comes with the rupture of the vessel or of the aneurysm.

In the so-called idiopathic forms due to toxic substances in the blood danger does not threaten until sclerotic changes are established in the blood-vessel walls.

**Treatment.**—This embraces that of the causal conditions and of measures to reduce overaction.

## DILATATION OF THE HEART.

SYNONYM.—*Fatty Degeneration of the Heart.*

**Definition.**—This has already been defined on page 601, so far as the state of the chambers is concerned. Dilated heart is of two kinds: first, acute dilatation; and, second, chronic dilatation, or dilatation accompanied by fatty degeneration. Of the latter, two varieties exist: (1) That succeeding valvular disease; (2) that succeeding hypertrophy due to muscular effort, especially when associated with alcoholic intemperance and other forms of dissipation. Acute dilatation may be unassociated with structural change, except as to mechanical arrangement of the muscular elements. Cloudy swelling may be present. The latter may be associated with fatty change.

**Etiology.**—Chronic dilatation is the last stage in a valvular disease the result of failing nutrition. The conditions under which this manifests itself have been described. Acute dilatation is the result of prolonged muscular effort, such as occurs in rowing, running, and mountain-climbing. Moderate degrees of distention occur with any decided muscular effort. The more marked degrees capable of mischievous consequences are the result of prolonged severe muscular exertion. The effect of moderate, well-regulated exercise on the heart, known as training, by which endurance is developed, is to produce eccentric hypertrophy, or hypertrophy with dilatation, which is not dilatation in the sense under consideration—enlargement of the cavity with thinning of the walls. The right heart is the seat of such dilatation. In overexertion the harmful effect of excessive acute strain is averted for a time by the safety-valve action of the tricuspid valve, permitting a regurgitation of blood into the right auricle. Dilatation has exceeded its physiological limit when the cavity is no longer able to empty itself of blood. While moderate degrees of acute dilatation may be recovered from, either rapidly or slowly, dilatation may be carried to degrees at which recovery is impossible and deaths results. Such results have followed rowing and mountain-climbing.

The so-called *irritable heart*, to which attention was first called by J. M. Da Costa in a graphic description based on a study of the cases of soldiers in the American Civil War, is an example of an abnormally dilated heart, a heart in which compensation has failed. Another example of the idiopathic hypertrophy already referred to is seen in those persons who, through hard work, acquire muscular strength and at the same time, thorough alcoholic indulgence, become obese. Such as the drivers of beer-wagons and workers in breweries where an unlimited amount of beer is allowed—as much as 20 liters (as many quarts) a day. After a while, in these hearts compensation is lost and the symptoms of dilated heart follow. Sudden dilatation may happen to hearts whose muscular substance is degenerated, though seemingly hypertrophied, as in chronic Bright's disease, where overexertion often brings on dilatation. In a few instances in malignant forms of the infectious diseases, such as scarlet fever and diphtheria, the nutrition of the heart may be so rapidly impaired by the



toxic agency which causes the disease that dilatation occurs with very little or no undue intravascular pressure. All these belong to the second category, that of chronic or slow dilatation.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of "heart strain" are sudden *pain* in the region of the heart or epigastrium, *faintness*, *shortness of breath*, and *rapid, feeble action of the heart*. If it be not immediately fatal, the symptoms may pass off, but are renewed on the slightest exertion. In the acute cases described as due to the toxic causes of infectious disease, sudden death may be the only symptom. In some cases it may be preceded or not by very brief precordial distress. Less serious degrees may be associated with *faintness* or *palpitation* on exertion, *extreme feebleness* of the heart's action, and *dyspnea*. It is rather characteristic for these symptoms to pass away when the patient is at rest, to be renewed on the slightest exertion.

Symptoms growing out of dilatation of the heart, going also to make up the sum of those constituting chronic valvular disease with failure of compensation, are *general venous congestion*, *dropsy*, *feeble, frequent, and irregular radial pulse*—rarely, on the other hand, a *slow pulse*. Frequent and irregular pulse may be due to impaired pneumogastric inhibition the result of anemia of the brain, slow pulse to scanty nutrition and a loss of the natural irritability of heart muscle. To anemia especially affecting the medulla oblongata may be ascribed Cheyne-Stokes breathing, also a symptom of the terminal stage of the disease. To it may be ascribed, too, symptoms simulating apoplexy, which characterize the slower dying in some of these cases. Palpitation, angina pectoris, and dyspnea—cardiac asthma, with syncopal attacks, coldness, and slow pulse (30 to 40)—are all symptoms more or less associated with dilatation of the heart. It is further characteristic of these symptoms of dilatation that they are often not transient or amenable to treatment by the usual heart tonics, of which digitalis is the type.

In some instances, especially in the dilated heart of pernicious anemia, there may be a full, strong, and regular pulse, but in the majority of cases the blood pressure is lowered.

High-colored, scanty urine of high specific gravity, sometimes containing hyaline casts and blood-disks, also result from cardiac dilatation.

**Physical Signs.**—When the termination is not immediate, physical signs may be recognized. To *inspection*, the impulse, if visible, may be diffused over a wide area, but is feeble and fluttering, a point of greatest intensity or an apex-beat being often wanting. At times it is found higher up and to the left of its normal position. If the right heart is chiefly involved, the beat as far as caused by the left apex, is completely wanting, while an impulse may be felt below or to the right of the ensiform cartilage, as well as a wavy impulse in the fourth, fifth, and sixth interspaces to the left of the sternum. A pulsation may be seen in the second left interspace, which, while sometimes presystolic, is commonly systolic. In the latter event it may be a further expansion of an already dilated auricle by blood regurgitating during systole of the left ventricle; or if presystolic, it may be the pulse of auricular systole. Such at least are possible explanations. The fact that at autopsies, even in extreme dilatation, the left auricle is found so far back from the thoracic wall as to be scarcely able to beat against the

second interspace, does not preclude the possibility of this during life. In dilatation of the *right* auricle, on the other hand, there is sometimes seen an impulse in the third interspace on the right side which is clearly systolic and due to regurgitation from the right ventricle during its systole. The pulsating symptoms described in this paragraph are commonly seen in persons only with thin chest-walls.

To *percussion* there should be increased dullness to the right and downward toward the epigastrium or to the left beyond the normal line, though these boundaries may be obscured by an emphysematous lung. The results of *auscultation* are greatly influenced by complications. If cardiac murmurs are present, they may obscure all else. On the other hand, previous murmurs may disappear. The typical sounds are found in the dilatation following idiopathic hypertrophy. The impulse is feebly heard as well as felt; the first sound is feeble but pure—that is, shorter and more like the second, lacking, as it does, the muscular element. It may be scarcely audible, even in the absence of murmurs. It is sometimes reduplicated because of asynchrony in the action in the two halves of the heart. Sometimes there is a loud systolic murmur at the apex, due to relative insufficiency of the mitral valve, the true nature of which becomes apparent only in the event of its disappearance. The second pulmonic sound may remain sharp if there is dilatation only of the left ventricle and there is compensatory hypertrophy of the right; feeble if the right ventricle is involved. Finally, there is intermittent and irregular action; at times the characteristic *gallop rhythm*<sup>1</sup> which is almost pathognomonic of dilatation, is present. The pulse is very rapid and feeble.

**Diagnosis.**—An acknowledged difficult matter at times is the distinction of *pericarditis with effusion* from the dilated heart. Whether inspection furnishes any information, depends mainly upon the stoutness or leanness of the patient. In the stout person nothing is recognizable in either condition. In the thin-chested the impulse is visible and wave-like in dilatation; it is not visible, or barely so, in pericardial effusion. The same is true of palpation, except that, if the patient leans forward, the impulse may be felt in pericarditis.

*Percussion* affords the most valuable information. If it brings out the well-known triangular shape of dullness, with the apex toward the inner end of the left clavicle, and the base in the fifth or sixth interspace, especially in the absence of a cardiac impulse, there must be *pericardial effusion*. Percussion of the dilated heart elicits a quadrangular shape or triangular with the apex downward. To *auscultation*, while the heart-sounds have lost their characteristic sharpness, they still contrast with the distant and muffled sounds in pericardial effusion. Especially if there is left any of the original hypertrophy, the second sound will retain some of its sharpness, while, if there happens to have been valvular disease, the murmurs remain to help us.

Bamberger's sign, described on p. 606, must be sought for in evidence of pericardial effusion. There may be encroachment on the lung in dilatation, but it is very much less in dilatation than in pericarditis with effusion

<sup>1</sup> For explanation of gallop rhythm see Barth and Roger, "Traité Pratique d'Auscultation," Thirteenth Edition, Paris, 1888, p. 332.

This encroachment in the case of dilatation does not give rise to Skodaic resonance in the axilla. While there is shortness of breath in both, it is less pronounced in dilatation and more influenced by exertion, being less while the patient is quiet.

**Prognosis.**—This is ultimately fatal in chronic dilatation; in fact, the stage of dilatation is the stage in which remedies become unavailing. At the same time, marvelous results sometimes follow treatment. I have seen general anasarca with effusions in the serous cavities disappear when least expected, so that one is never justified in giving an unqualifiedly unfavorable prognosis. In acute dilatation the prognosis depends upon the degree of the stretching and degenerating. If they are extreme, death follows instantly. If not followed by immediate death slow improvement and ultimate recovery are possible.

**Treatment.**—This is essentially that of valvular heart disease. Rest is even more important, while the heart tonics are, of course, indicated. Strychnin is an important remedy, and in dangerous stages may be given hypodermically in  $1/30$  grain (0.0022 gm.) doses every three or four hours or oftener for a short time. Digitalis in  $7\frac{1}{2}$  minims (0.5 c.c.) or Merck's German digitalin, in doses of  $1/10$  to  $1/2$  grain (0.0066 to 0.033 gm.), may be given under like circumstances. Suitable nutritious food and, if the patient survives the primary danger, well-regulated exercise, are indicated. A timely blood-letting may save life if the signs of engorgement of the right ventricle are present—intense dyspnea, lividity. Nitroglycerin is indicated for its vaso dilator effect.

It is in this condition that the Schott or Nauheim treatment is especially useful. It consists in the use of the carbonated saline baths at Bad Nauheim, associated with special exercises called "resistance" movements, originated by the brothers Schott. Fortunately, artificial baths may be substituted for the natural baths, or the treatment would have limited application. Ignoring for the present the rationale of the action of these baths, their therapeutic efficacy is undoubted. The waters at Nauheim have a temperature ranging from  $82^{\circ}$  F. ( $27^{\circ}$  C.) to  $95^{\circ}$  F. ( $35^{\circ}$  C.). Their important constituents are chlorid of sodium and chlorid of calcium.

The baths may be imitated at home by dissolving chlorid of sodium and chlorid of calcium in water, to which carbonic acid is added by decomposing bicarbonate of sodium by hydrochloric acid. K. N. B. Camac has calculated the required quantities of salt to each 40 gallons of water for six different strengths of the baths. In the baths I recommend I have adopted the proportions of sodium chlorid and calcium chlorid calculated by Camac, but have slightly modified the proportions of carbonic-acid-forming constituents, making three strengths of the latter, after the method recommended by Bezley Thorne, of London:

Bath No. 1: Sodium chlorid, 4 pounds; calcium chlorid, 6 ounces.

Bath No. 2: Sodium chlorid, 5 pounds; calcium chlorid, 8 ounces.

Bath No. 3: Sodium chlorid, 6 pounds; calcium chlorid, 10 ounces.

Bath No. 4: Sodium chlorid, 7 pounds; calcium chlorid, 10 ounces; sodium bicarbonate,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pound; HCl (25 per cent.), 12 ounces.

Bath No. 5: Sodium chlorid, 9 pounds; calcium chlorid, 11 ounces; sodium bicarbonate, 1 pound; HCl,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pounds.

Bath No. 6: Sodium chlorid, 10 pounds; calcium chlorid, 12 ounces; sodium bicarbonate, 2 pounds; HCl, 3 pounds.

The alkali should always be slightly in excess, unless a porcelain or paper tub is used.

In preparing the bath, the salts, including the right proportion of bicarbonate of sodium, are dissolved in the water which should have a temperature of 95° F. (35° C.) gradually reduced at successive baths to 82° F. (27° C.). A course consists of from 15 to 20 baths. The bottle containing the hydrochloric acid is inverted and lowered until its mouth is below the surface, when the stopper is withdrawn and the bottle moved about so as to diffuse the acid as uniformly as possible through the water. In this way the bath is made ready in a few minutes. The carbonic acid is the most unsatisfactory feature of the artificial bath, since it is rapidly dissipated, and produces only feebly the effect of the acid in the natural baths. Hence the patient should be promptly put into the bath after the HCl is added, lest the CO<sub>2</sub> is lost before he can get the effect of it. My plan has been to give the baths on alternate days, using the weaker until its effects are exhausted, then passing on to Nos. 3 and 4 in the same manner. Nos. 5 and 6 are not often called for.<sup>1</sup>

As already stated, the baths are most efficient in cardiac disease, but they are also useful in renal affections. Their immediate effect is a diminished pulse-rate, intensified heart-sounds, diminished breathing-rate, while the dilated heart is reduced in size—under favorable circumstances to almost its natural limits. The effect is also to increase the action of the kidneys and that of the skin. These effects are apparent in a free flow of urine, which may continue for days and weeks. Metabolic changes are accelerated and improved; the deep-seated organs, especially the liver and pelvic viscera, are relieved of congestion; while the heart, relieved of its burden, and contracting strongly, derives from its improved coronary circulation material for the repair of weakened and damaged tissue.

Theodore Schott<sup>2</sup> has shown that an increase of hemoglobin in the blood succeeds upon the systematic use of Nauheim baths.

The exercises are not usually commenced until some very positive effect of the baths is secured, when they are associated with the baths or substituted after the latter are discontinued. The effects of these gymnastics are described as identical with those of the baths. The extremities become warm, the breathing is deepened, the sense of oppression is relieved, the pulse becomes slower, the dilated heart area reduced. Even the liver, which is so often enlarged in heart disease as a result of passive congestion, is said to be reduced in size.

The following condensed statement of the Schott movements is from Sir T. Lauder Brunton's "Lectures on the Action of Medicines," London, Macmillan and Co., 1898.

"I. The arms are to be raised slowly outward from the side until they are on a level with the shoulder. After a pause they should be slowly lowered.

"II. The body should be inclined sideways as much as possible toward the right, and then to the left.

<sup>1</sup> I have had constructed for use at the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania an apparatus for introducing carbonic acid into the water of the bath, after a device suggested by Dr. Smitheman, when a student of medicine.

<sup>2</sup> "On some Hemoglobin Investigation." Reprint from the "British Medical Journal," 1904.

"III. One leg should be extended as far as possible sideways from the body, the patient steadying himself by holding on to a chair. The leg is then dropped back. The same movements are repeated by the other leg.

"IV. The arms are raised in front of the body to a level with the shoulder, and then put down.

"V. The hands are rested on the hips, and the body is bent forward as far as possible, and then raised to the upright position.

"VI. One leg is raised with the knees straight, forward as far as possible, then brought back. The movement is repeated with the other leg.

"VII. With the hands on the hips, the body is twisted round as far as possible to the right, and then again to the left.

"VIII. With the hands resting on a chair, and the back stiff and straight, each leg is raised as far as possible backward, first one and then the other.

"IX. The arms are extended and the fists supinated. The arms are then extended outward, next inward at the height of the body.

"X. Each knee is first raised as far as possible to the body, and then the leg is extended.

"XI. This movement is the same as IX, but with the fists pronated.

"XII. Each leg is bent backward from the knee and then straightened.

"XIII. Each arm is bent and straightened from the elbow.

"XIV. The arms are brought from the sides forward and upward, then downward and back as far as they will go, the elbows and the hands being straight.

"XV. The arms are put at a level with the shoulder, and then bent from the elbow inward and again extended.

"XVI. With the arms in front at the level of the shoulder and the hands stretched, the arms are opened out sideways and then brought together.

"XVII. The arms are bent from the elbow outward and extended.

"The movements should be slow and regular, each one being gently resisted by the nurse or attendant or by the patient himself, putting into action the muscles opposing the movement.

"There should be a pause of half a minute between each movement of the same class and a pause of one or two minutes between movements of an entirely different kind, as I and II."

#### ATROPHY OF THE HEART—BROWN ATROPHY.

**Definition.**—Atrophy of the heart is the opposite state to hypertrophy—viz., a reduction in the muscular substance, with a corresponding reduction in the size of the cavities. It is associated with pigmentation, hence the term brown atrophy. It is limited clinically, being confined to the subjects of wasting diseases, like phthisis pulmonalis and carcinoma. It is the special result of senile marasmus. It is occasionally associated with chronic valvular disease. The muscular fasciculi undergo molecular death, the organ wastes, and is symmetrically reduced. It is dark red-brown in color and firm in consistence. By the microscope is recognized a peculiar ar-

range of pigment granules about the nuclei and between the primitive fibrillæ. The source of the pigment is not precisely known. It may be the coloring matter of the muscle, or directly derived from the blood.

The **diagnosis** of such condition can only be based on a diminution in the normal area of cardiac percussion dullness associated with feeble pulse, and the long-continued presence of the causal disease. Reduced area of cardiac dullness must be unassociated with emphysema of the lungs or other causes which may diminish cardiac dullness by covering up the heart.

The **treatment** is that of the causal disease.

## DEGENERATIONS OF THE CARDIAC MUSCLE.

The heart muscle is subject to parenchymatous degeneration, to fatty degeneration, to fatty infiltration (yellow atrophy), to amyloid degeneration, to the hyaline transformation of Zenker, to calcareous degeneration, and to the changes known as brown atrophy described above and yellow atrophy.

**PARENCHYMATOUS OR ALBUMINOID DEGENERATION (CLOUDY SWELLING).**—This is a change in which the sarcofibrillar substance is converted into granular matter of albuminoid composition, which produces also more or less indistinctness in the striated appearance of the fasciculi. The albuminoid composition of the product is attested by its solubility in acetic acid, and its insolubility in ether. The general effect is one of softening and flaccidity.

It is ascribed to some toxic agency, and occurs most frequently in the infectious fevers—typhoid fever, scarlet fever, diphtheria, and the like. It was at one time considered a consequence of high temperature, but this view is no longer held. It is believed also to be, at times, at least, the first stage of fatty degeneration, or to precede fatty degeneration. It is certainly at times associated with it. Cloudy swelling may disappear and the muscle resume its natural histology.

**FATTY DEGENERATION OR FATTY METAMORPHOSIS.**—In this change, also sometimes known as *yellow atrophy*, the sarcofibrillar substance of the muscular fasciculi is directly converted into globular fat, as contrasted with the condition of fatty infiltration, in which the fat is deposited between the fasciculi. The little fat drops—and they are very minute, as a rule—are seen in rows parallel to the fibrillæ of the fasciculus, and all transverse striation has disappeared. As intimated, the cause of such degeneration is an interference with the proper nutrition of the heart muscle.

It may be *general*, when it has its most frequent expression in the dilated heart which succeeds upon hypertrophy, involving the walls of one or more cavities. It is also a result of the impaired nutrition of old age, of the grave infectious diseases, and of cachectic states generally—such, for example, as pernicious anemia. In the infective diseases and cachexias it may be associated with parenchymatous degeneration or succeed upon it. It is also a result of the action of certain poisons, as phosphorus and arsenic, the effects of which may extend to other muscular organs. Under these

circumstances, the heart is generally enlarged (dilated), flabby, and relaxed, of a light yellow or yellowish-brown color, and very friable, permitting the finger to be easily poked through it. The papillary muscles and the trabeculæ in the left ventricle may be the seat of circumscribed fatty degeneration, and be dotted and streaked with yellow, fatty matter. Unlike parenchymatous degeneration, fatty degeneration, when once established, is considered irremediable.

Fatty degeneration of the heart may also be *circumscribed* in small foci variously distributed. Thus, it may be confined to the superficial or sub-pericardial layers, when it is especially the result of pericarditis. Or there may be numerous pinhead-sized foci in the subendocardial layer in cases of extreme dilatation.

Finally, there may be a single focus in the substance of the left ventricle or the septum, due to total obstruction of one of the branches of the coronary artery, usually the anterior, by a thrombus or embolus. The product is an area of fatty degeneration known also as *anemic necrosis*, or *white infarct*. In the early stage the infarction is brownish-yellow or hemorrhagic. Minutely examined, the muscular fasciculi are without nuclei, and later they break up into a cheesy detritus. The infarct is not always thus made of fatty débris, but may present a hyaline appearance. It may be the seat of rupture, and thus cause hemorrhage into pericardium, and immediate death.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of fatty degeneration, so far as recognizable, is that of dilatation, slight degrees and circumscribed fatty degeneration being unrecognizable, while considerable areas of partial degeneration may also exist without exhibiting symptoms. In fact, the presence of some dilatation of the cardiac cavities seems to be necessary to the production of symptoms—the feeble pulse, palpitation, and dyspnea being symptoms of the dilatation, rather than the fatty degeneration.

**Prognosis.**—This is grave. It is impossible to restore the degenerated muscular substance to its natural structure. With degeneration established death is liable to occur suddenly, and remedies which avail with an integral organ are useless here.

**Treatment.**—This embraces that of cardiac dilatation. Acute attacks should be met by stimulants, of which alcohol, aromatic spirit of ammonia, and digitalis are the type. Strychnin is also indicated, and may be used hypodermically.

**FATTY INFILTRATION OR FATTY OVERGROWTH.**—Strictly speaking, this condition is not a degeneration of the heart muscle, though it leads ultimately to fatty metamorphosis. It is the *cor adiposum* of the older authors, and differs from fatty metamorphosis in that the fat is infiltrated *between* the muscular fasciculi. In the true *cor adiposum*, the fat extends deep into the substance of the muscle, sometimes as far as the endocardium. It covers also the outside of the heart, at times so completely that the true muscular structure is invisible. This infiltration sooner or later interferes with the proper nutrition of the muscular substance, a true fatty degeneration results, with its symptoms, so far as any are manifested, and becomes ultimately also a cause of death.

The fatty infiltrated heart is commonly a part of general obesity, and occurs, therefore, at a time of life when this is usual—that is, between the ages of 40 and 70 years—and is more than twice as frequent in men as in women.

The condition is inferred from the presence of extreme obesity associated with signs of cardiac weakness.

The **treatment** is that of obesity.

AMYLOID INFILTRATION invades the heart as it does other organs, attacking the blood-vessels and intermuscular connective tissue. *Zenker's hyaline transformation* attacks, on the other hand, the muscular fasciculi, causing them to appear swollen and transparent, and the striæ to be indistinct or absent.

CALCAREOUS INFILTRATION is a rare condition, in which the muscular fasciculi are infiltrated with lime salts.

## MYOCARDITIS.

### CHRONIC MYOCARDITIS OR FIBROMYOCARDITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Fibroid Degeneration of the Myocardium; Fibroid Heart; Fibrous Myocarditis; Interstitial Myocarditis; Indurated Degeneration; Myodegeneration; Sclerosis of the Coronary Arteries.*

**Definition.**—A chronic disease of the cardiac muscle in which there is more or less substitution of the normal substance by fibroid or cicatricial tissue, either localized in patches or diffused throughout the organ.

**Etiology and Pathology.**—The condition is not, strictly speaking, inflammatory, the patches representing transformed areas of anemic necrosis, due to obstructive disease of the coronary arteries and branches. The disease in the coronary arteries is endarteritis, resulting in arterio-sclerosis. Through a diminished blood-supply, it causes degeneration of the muscular fasciculi, and their substitution by fibrous tissue. Only in the event of such diminished supply do the changes occur. Hence it is that arterio-sclerosis of the coronary arteries is not always followed by fibroid change. The causes of arterio-sclerosis of the coronary arteries are those of endarteritis elsewhere. They include all the causes which produce idiopathic hypertrophy (p. 647). The tendency to arterio-sclerosis is often hereditary. It is a disease also which seldom occurs prior to middle life, though sometimes seen surprisingly early. It might be said that it is natural to old age—one of its evolutionary terminations. In pure, uncomplicated cases of myocarditis the valves are normal, while the muscle, on examination, is found dotted with *white, shining areas* present in varying numbers. Minutely examined, these are found made up of pure or partly fibroid tissue, the muscular substance being correspondingly destroyed. They are seated for the most part in the *left ventricle toward the apex* and in the *anterior wall*, though they may be found elsewhere. They may often be seen from the endocardial or pericardial



surface as *cicatricial-like depressions*. Sometimes there is a single large patch known as a *fibroid patch*. The papillary muscles may exhibit the same fibroid change. Another cause of fibrosis is pericarditis which produces small and larger areas of degeneration in the shape of the milk-white fibroid patch on the surface of the heart and extending more or less into its substance. Mural endocarditis may produce similar patches on the inner surface of the heart.

The fibroid change may also be associated with valvular disease, the mechanical impediment to the movement of blood in this condition being the cause of a chronic venous congestion, which results in a fibroid infiltration; or the valvulitis may give rise to embolism of the coronary arteries or branches, thus cutting off nutrition. From the cardiac thrombosis which sometimes results there may arise cerebral, renal, and pulmonary embolism. Long-standing emphysema of the lungs results in similar congestion; so does obstruction of the pulmonary artery from any cause.

A further result of the fibroid change is dilatation of a part or of the whole of one of the heart cavities, producing in the former instance what is known as *cardiac aneurysm*. Fibrosis may also be associated with hypertrophy without valvular disease, though the recognition of such combination before death must be a matter of inference, based on the presence of arterio-sclerosis elsewhere and of the causes of such hypertrophy.

Recently the term myocarditis has been extended to include fatty as well as fibroid change since the same symptoms may result from both.

**Symptoms.**—Slight degrees of fibroid change occasion no symptoms, while autopsies even disclose advanced stages of indurative myocarditis which were not suspected. In consequence of the frequent association, too, of endocarditis and pericarditis, the symptoms of these diseases are often combined and mask the distinctive symptoms of the fibroid change. Unmasked, the symptoms are, in a word, those of dilatation of the heart, including *dyspnea*, often so severe that the patient cannot lie down. With this may be associated *Cheyne-Stokes* breathing, commonly occurring during sleep. There may be *palpitation*, with *small, frequent, and irregular pulse*, or the pulse may be persistently *slow*. There is *precordial oppression*, with *attacks of faintness*, and, finally, *venous stasis* with *cyanosis, general edema, congestion of the liver, stomach, and kidneys, feeble digestion, scanty urine, and albuminuria*. These symptoms may set in gradually or suddenly. On such a heart, digitalis and other heart tonics are often without effect. *Angina pectoris* is also a symptom of indurative myocarditis, though it also occurs in other cardiac diseases, especially aortic stenosis. It will be described when treating of neuroses of the heart.

A very interesting train of nervous symptoms may arise, due to changed local distribution of blood in the brain, partly due to feeble cardiac action and partly to stenosis of the basilar vessels. They may include brief unconsciousness and various degrees of paralysis and anesthesia resembling the symptoms of cerebral embolism; also modified breathing rhythm including *Cheyne-Stokes* breathing.

A peculiar sallow, or lead hued complexion may develop as the disease progresses.

**Physical Signs.**—Physical examination recognizes a *feeble impulse* which

may be displaced to the left, often scarcely appreciable, and, on percussion, enlargement of the cardiac area. The first sound lacks its muscular element, and is more like the second—more purely valvular, and therefore short. Both sounds maintain for a time considerable distinctness, but ultimately grow feeble. Occasionally there may be a mitral murmur, which may be functional and transitory or permanent. Such murmur is explained by the experiments of Ludwig and Hesse, already alluded to, and more recently confirmed by Krehl. These go to show that a certain integrity of the muscles about the mitral orifice or of the papillary muscles is necessary to a complete closure of the latter. Such integrity is impaired by myocarditis, and the resulting murmur increases the difficulty of diagnosis. The murmur is systolic, soft, low pitched, heard at the fourth rib. There is, however, usually absence of accentuation of the pulmonic second sound characteristic of mitral regurgitation, though this may also be relatively present if the right ventricle happen to be less severely involved than the left. There may be systolic shock greater than would be expected from the feebleness of the cardiac impulse. The second sound is also sometimes reduplicated, or there may be gallop rhythm sometimes early. The mitral murmur in the fibroid heart is more variable and more subject to intermissions than that of mitral regurgitation. The sudden addition of a mitral systolic murmur in a fibroid heart previously without murmur may also indicate a lacerated valve.

**Diagnosis.**—This is often difficult, requiring the opportunity of prolonged study of the case. For the most part, we are compelled to rely on the absence of the symptoms and signs of valvular disease, and the presence of the symptoms of dilatation, the evidences of arterio-sclerosis elsewhere, a persistently slow pulse, angina pectoris, the history of syphilis and of other causes, together with the age of the patient. When the fibroid condition is associated with murmurs, the diagnosis is still more difficult, and must, indeed, be a matter of probability, if even suggested, so much more likely are the signs to be interpreted as those of valvular disease, with which, however, the myocarditis may be associated. The presence of radial sclerosis is strongly confirmatory, but not essential.

**Prognosis.**—This is grave, or, to say the least, uncertain. Associated as it is with sclerosis and narrowing of the coronary arteries or branches, complete obstruction is liable to occur at any time, producing sudden death. On the other hand, the patient may live for many years with the heart the seat of considerable fibroid change.

**Treatment.**—This must mainly consist in treating the causes, and in a proper hygienic management. Habits of overeating and excessive drinking should be overcome. The avoidance of overexertion, associated with just sufficient exercise to develop the heart healthfully, should be observed. Outdoor life and a proper hygiene of the skin and body by bathing and massage are important.

Drugs which will remove the diseased condition of the coronary arteries and fibroid overgrowth probably do not exist. Still, the reputation of iodid of potassium as a remover of fibroid overgrowth and for the cure of syphilitic disease should be availed of. The iodid is also serviceable in producing vascular dilatation and facilitating the movement of the blood.

For the symptoms of stasis and heart weakness, of dyspnea and of angina pectoris, the treatment is the same as that for these conditions under other circumstances. The judicious use of digitalis is indicated, and may accomplish much. Nitroglycerin may be associated with advantage or used alone.

#### ACUTE SUPPURATIVE MYOCARDITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Abscess of the Heart.*

This is a rare condition. It is always metastatic or pyemic in origin, in association with puerperal fever, malignant endocarditis, or other septic processes. It may occur in the septum, as well as the outer ventricular walls.

As such it is not recognizable before death, and is commonly discovered at autopsies. It may, however, rupture into the heart cavities, causing other metastatic abscesses, or into the pericardium, causing septic pericarditis and early fatal termination.

#### ANEURYSM OF THE HEART.

This is a term given to two conditions:

1. A saccular projection from the ventricular surface of a sigmoid or cuspid leaflet, where the valve is weakened by ulceration through one of the lamellæ, the intravascular or intracardiac pressure furnishing the distending force. It is much more common in the aortic segments. The sacculus may ultimately perforate, causing laceration of the valve.

2. Projection outward of a circumscribed portion of the muscular wall, which has been weakened by the fibroid patch or by an injury to the wall. Here, naturally, the left ventricle, too, suffers, and near the apex in more than half the cases. The resulting pullulation varies in size from  $\frac{2}{5}$  inch (1 cm.) or less to dimensions equal to those of the heart itself. The aneurysm may be sacculated or partitioned and even multiple.

There are no symptoms by which the condition may be recognized with any degree of probability. It may also terminate fatally by rupture into the pericardium.

#### RUPTURE OF THE HEART.

Rupture of the normally integral heart muscle does not occur. It is only when weakened by disease that such an event is possible. Fatty metamorphosis furnishes the most frequent predisposing condition, in 77 out of 100 cases collected by Quain. The softening due to obstruction of a branch of the coronary artery, as already described on page 658, and known as *massive softening*, is the most frequent cause of heart rupture, but the fibroid change, abscess, or ulceration are all conditions which at times precede rupture. Morbid growths in the heart-wall, such as gummy tumor,

cysts, and carcinoma, are also possible causes. Segmentation and fragmentation of the muscle has been observed but this condition is by some considered as of doubtful occurrence.

These preliminary conditions presupposed, any unusual strain, physical or mental, is sufficient to produce rupture, though this is not always necessary, especially in the case of the white infarct, where the degeneration is so great as to admit rupture with the ordinary pressure. It is naturally an event of the second and third half-centuries of life. It has occurred among the insane when perfectly quiet.

The anterior portion of the left ventricular-wall near the septum is the favorite seat. Rupture is rarely recognized before death, which usually follows in the course of a few hours.

The symptoms are precordial pain, a sense of oppression, dyspnea, pallor, pulselessness, and collapse. There may be enlargement of the cardiac area of dullness, owing to filling up of the pericardial sac, associated with feeble or absent apex-beat.

## NEUROSES OF THE HEART.

### NERVOUS PALPITATION.

**Definition.**—By this is meant an unnaturally frequent, regular, or irregular beating of the heart, of which the patient is uncomfortably conscious, but which is unattended by any physical evidence of organic disease of the organ. This does not mean that there may not be functional or accidental murmurs, because these are especially prone to be present in the different varieties of anemia which are commonly associated with palpitation. *Such murmurs are always, however, systolic, a diastolic murmur always indicating organic disease.* Palpitation, or uncomfortable heart beating, also occurs in connection with organic disease, but this is not nervous palpitation.

**Etiology.**—There are numerous causes of palpitation. In the first place, it is much more frequent in women than in men. Again, it is prone to occur at the time of puberty in girls, and at the menstrual period and climacteric in women. Anemia is at once a predisposing and an exciting cause; indigestion is a very frequent causal agent. Mental emotion, including fright, anxiety, and grief, diseases of the uterus and stomach, the exhaustion of protracted illness, sexual excesses, overwork, the abuse of alcohol, tobacco, tea, and coffee, are all active etiological elements. The "irritable heart" described by Da Costa, based on observations made on soldiers in the late Civil War in America, has for its most striking symptoms palpitation; yet this dare not be called nervous palpitation, as dilatation of the heart was probably here present. Overwork and excitement were its chief causes, abetted by exhaustion from illness.

**Symptoms.**—The "beating" referred to is, of course, the chief symptom. It varies greatly, however, in degree and duration. At times there is a mere fluttering, lasting for a few minutes. At other times the pulse-rate may reach 160 or more and be scarcely countable. When the character last

described is attained, and continues for a variable time of hours to days, but finally ceasing, the term *paroxysmal tachycardia* is applied. The rapid heart-action is sometimes associated with a sense of *weakness* or "*goneness*" in the epigastrium, and sometimes with *nausea*. The face is usually pale, but is sometimes flushed. The physical signs usually add nothing to the undue beating noted on auscultation, though, as already mentioned, there may be functional murmurs systolic in time at the base of the heart, more rarely at the apex. The normal heart-sounds may be somewhat sharper and clearer, or they may be more blurred.

**Diagnosis.**—The only two conditions with which nervous palpitation may be confounded are *myocarditis* and *fatty degeneration of the heart and dilatation*, the symptoms of which, it will be remembered, are similar. The nervous affection is, however, a less serious one, characterized by intermissions during which the heart is quiet. Its subjects are also of the anemic nervous type, whose history greatly aids the diagnosis, and they are commonly younger.

**Treatment.**—This is by rest, nerve sedatives, and a suitable moral treatment of encouraging words and a confident manner. A few drops of tincture of digitalis, with a few more grains of sodium bromid, repeated every hour, may be useful. When the patient is weak and anemic, he should be built up and strengthened by iron, quinin, and strychnin.

## TACHYCARDIA AND BRADYCARDIA.

*Paroxysmal Tachycardia.*—This term is applied to conditions of the heart in which, without evident cause, there appears paroxysmally an inordinate increase in the number of heart-beats of which also the patient is conscious. The number of beats may reach 200 or more a minute. The paroxysm may last for a few minutes only, or for hours. The intervals between two attacks vary greatly, and their recurrence may extend over many years. It is a nonfebrile condition.

James Barr, of Liverpool, believes that paroxysmal tachycardia may be due to distention of the right heart associated with a relatively high blood pressure in the arteries and veins. Under these conditions only a small volume of blood is thrown into the pulmonary artery resulting in an accumulation of blood in the right ventricle. The life of the patient is kept up with the heart beating at 200 to 300 times in a minute, by a relatively high arterial pressure, by which the coronary circulation is maintained. As soon as this fails the patient dies. This higher arterial pressure which seems at first unlikely in view of the small amount of blood admitted to the arteries, is maintained by peripheral resistance, itself due to the small amount of blood discharged from the systemic arterioles. A sound cardiac musculature is therefore necessary, without which the arterial resistance necessary could not be kept up.

*Bradycardia; Brachycardia; Slow Heart.*—The term bradycardia is applied to unnatural slowness of pulse. It is to be remembered, however, that some healthy persons naturally have a slow pulse, as others have one whose rate is more rapid than the typical 72. A rate of from 50 to 60 in

health is not unusual. Of abnormally infrequent rates, cases with 20 beats are reported, some even at 12, 9, and 7. These instances of extremely slow rate are apt to be associated with fibroid heart, and there can be no doubt that the nervous condition is often confounded with the organic one.

In the study of an apparently slow pulse, care must be taken that the actual count is based on a corresponding heart-rate, for it sometimes happens that in consequence of the weakness of an alternate systole the heart-beat does not reach the wrist.

**Explanation of Tachycardia and Bradycardia.**—The rationale of the production of tachycardia and bradycardia has excited much discussion and cannot be said to be settled. The heart's action is accelerated by stimulating the accelerator branch of the sympathetic or by paralysis of the inhibitory root of the vagus, and slowed by excitation of the vagus center, directly or reflexly. Direct stimulation of the latter is caused by pressure on its root, which may be exerted through the cerebrospinal fluid, which in turn may be excited by brain tumor, hemorrhage, and meningitis of the dura or pia. Such irritation may be caused by toxic constituents of the blood, as in uremia. Diminished contractility of the heart muscle would also produce bradycardia.

Increased arterial pressure—such, for example, as occurs in *acute* nephritis—may produce cerebral vagus irritation. On the other hand, such slowing is not maintained if the arterial tension be kept up, seen in *chronic* Bright's disease and arterial sclerosis. Under such circumstances the excitability of the pneumogastric center may be said to be exhausted. Deficient nourishment to the heart substance, such as is caused by atheroma and obstruction of the coronary artery, leads also to a slow pulse. Reflexly, the pneumogastric may be stimulated by diseases of the abdominal organs—as, for example, the stomach, bowels, and peritoneum. The effect of disease of the muscular substance of the heart in reducing its rate has often been mentioned in the foregoing section. On the other hand, poisons and high temperature increase the pulse-rate. In this way the infectious diseases may produce acceleration. Other poisons slow the pulse, possibly by acting on the nerve endings in the heart. Such are the salts of the biliary acids and the uremic poison, whatever it may be.

It is well known that in the course of acute infectious diseases, especially typhoid fever, slowing of the pulse occurs at times very strikingly. This is not uncommon in the beginning of convalescence. It has been observed also in typhus fever, in croupous pneumonia, erysipelas, diphtheria and measles. I have met it as slow as 18 in typhoid fever. In explanation of this phenomenon one may suppose a lesion of the cardiac ganglia by the toxic substances circulating with the blood, or a consequent weakness of the heart muscle due to the long continued fever.<sup>1</sup>

His and Romberg, in their studies on the innervation of the heart, were led to believe that the cardiac ganglia are sensory in function and that they share the increased sensitiveness of the entire nervous system, variously caused, and thence reflexly may excite the violent cardiac action of tachycardia. Not unlike this is the explanation of H. C. Wood, who suggests that

<sup>1</sup> See a very full paper "Ueber Bradycardie," by F. Grob, "Deutsches Archiv für klinische Medicin," vol. xxii., 1888, p. 574.

the paroxysms of tachycardia are due to "discharging lesions" affecting the centers of the accelerator nerves. In some one of these views, perhaps, must be sought the required explanation. On the other hand, anesthesia of the cardiac ganglia, however, induced, would be expected to have the opposite effect of a bradycardia. By recalling these facts many of the cases of bradycardia may be explained.

**Summary of conditions in which Bradycardia Occurs.**—Bradycardia occurs in a variety of conditions, which have been carefully collected by Riegel. They include the following:

1. Convalescence from acute fevers, such as typhoid, pneumonia, diphtheria, acute rheumatism, and the like.
2. Diseases of the digestive apparatus, especially dyspepsia, but also ulcer and cancer of the stomach.
3. Rarely in diseases of the respiratory system.
4. Diseases of the circulatory system, more frequently those involving the muscular structure of the heart and associated with deficient nutritive supply, especially conditions succeeding obstruction to the coronary artery.
5. In acute nephritis.
6. From the action of toxic agents, including the uremic poison, lead, alcohol, coffee, and digitalis.
7. Certain diseases of the nervous system, including apoplexy, brain tumors, especially those involving the medulla and cervical cord. (To these may be added epilepsy and catalepsy.—*Author.*)
8. Finally, affections of the skin and sexual organs.

## IRREGULAR PULSE.

SYNONYM.—*Arrhythmia*.

### Description of the Different Varieties, Peculiarities, and Explanation.—

The simplest form of irregular pulse is the *intermittent pulse* in which there is an occasional drop or intermission in the beat, while the pulse in the intervals is perfectly regular. This may occur once only in 20 or more beats, and from this rate the intermissions may increase until they happen once in six or four beats, or it may be every second or third beat; or the pulse may be altogether irregular—*arrhythmical*. A striking feature of even the simplest form of intermittent pulse or heart is that the omitted beat is commonly recognized by the patient himself, and often it becomes a matter of intense annoyance to him. Here, again, it is quite important to decide whether the dropped beat at the wrist is the consequence of an omitted systole recognized by absence of the first sound in the auscultated heart, or whether it is a simple weak systole which does not send the pulse to the radial artery at the wrist. The former is called true intermission, the latter false. The true intermission is more apt to be noticed by the patient.

It may be constant, occur at regular intervals, or only occasionally. In the latter event it may be associated with some such disturbing cause as dyspepsia, especially flatulence. It follows the use of tea, coffee, or tobacco, and is rather frequently associated with chronic gout. It follows also

mental shock, and is especially prone to occur in nervous, hysterical persons. The intermittent pulse thus occurring is vaguely ascribed to nervous influence, and nothing more definite can at present be confidently suggested for its causation. It may be due to some influence of the causes named on the cardiac ganglia of the sympathetic nerve. It is probably at times directly due to organic changes in the heart muscle, especially in fatty degeneration, in which event it is a more serious symptom. It is characteristic of the more purely functional variety of intermittent pulse that it may be removed by exercise or excitement, while it often disappears during pyrexia. On the other hand, the effect of exertion on the intermittent pulse of fatty heart is to increase the intermission or convert it into an irregularity.

The *irregular pulse* is indicated by its name. It is associated with a corresponding degree of irregularity of the *heart's* action, the highest degree of which is known as *delirium cordis*. Irregularity may be constant or occasional, and be produced by the same causes as intermission. More frequently it is associated with muscular or valvular disease. Such irregularity is a distinctive symptom of mitral insufficiency, and to a less degree of mitral stenosis.

The *pulsus bigeminus* and *trigeminus* are also common in mitral disease, more especially mitral stenosis. In these, two and three beats follow each other in rapid succession, followed by a longer interval. In the *pulsus paradoxus* of Kussmaul, the beats during inspiration are more frequent, but less full than during expiration. The explanation of irregular pulse is not the same for all varieties, and it must be admitted that there are difficulties in explaining some of these. It will be remembered that cardiac rhythm is inherent in the cardiac muscle, but that the nervous system exercises an important controlling influence which has been briefly considered when treating of tachycardia and bradycardia. It would appear that most of the irregularities above enumerated are the result of physical causes operating to interfere with the normal rhythm. Thus the irregularity of the pulse so frequently associated with mitral insufficiency may be ascribed not to a modification of the normal nervous regulation, but to variations in pressure caused by traction of the lungs during the inspiratory act on the cavities of the heart as suggested by W. H. Broadbent. This is favored by the thin, flabby, and feebly resisting walls of a dilated auricle, incapable of resisting variations of external pressure. In mitral stenosis, though the auricle is dilated, the narrow auriculo-ventricular orifice prevents the disturbing effect of the varying pressure of the respiratory movements. In mitral stenosis the imperfect pulsations may also be due at times to feeble contractions of the ventricle, these being in turn due to insufficient stimulus of the ventricle by the small quantity of blood injected into it from the auricle. The smallness of the beat is further intensified by the small quantity of blood sent into the aorta and branches from the ventricle.

The *pulsus bigeminus* and *pulsus trigeminus* may be similarly accounted for. The *pulsus paradoxus* has been already explained when treating of pericarditis with effusion and chronic adhesive pericarditis.

The *dicrotic pulse* is a double beat, and is found in every normal sphygmogram. It is the effect of the elastic recoil of the overdistended aorta on the contained blood immediately succeeding the closure of the aortic valve,



and is shown at *f* in the catacrotic or descending portion of the normal sphygmogram appended. It is preceded by the aortic notch *e*; this by the tidal wave *d* and the percussion wave *b*, the apex of the curve. Only when exaggerated is it felt by the fingers. It may occur abnormally wherever there is a forcible systole and unobstructed arterioles, especially in aortic regurgitation, and although here the incompetent aortic valves do not furnish the required resistance, this is furnished by the full ventricle behind them, so that while the dicrotic factor may be delayed, it is marked when it occurs.

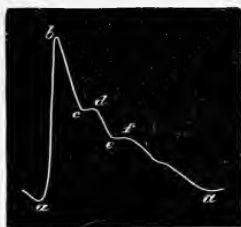


FIG. 59.—Showing Normal Pulse-tracing.

This is seen in the sphygmogram on page 628. It occurs also in anemia after venesection, the necessary atony of the arterial system being thus produced; after the administration of amyl nitrite and nitroglycerin; also in uncompensated mitral regurgitation, when the emptiness of the arterial system is produced in a different way—that is, by diminishing the amount of blood which enters the aorta with each systole. It is well shown in the appended drawing from Broadbent. (Fig. 60.)

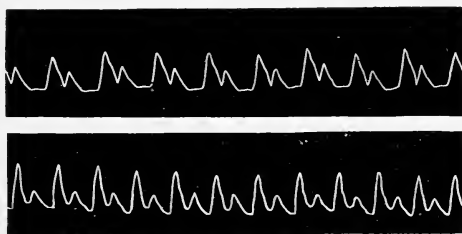


FIG. 60.—Dicrotism (Broadbent).

Another variety of double beat is the *pulsus bisferiens*, most frequently noticed in aortic stenosis, but also in senile degeneration of the arteries. This resembles the dicrotic pulse, though quite different in its etiology. In it, the second beat is a reinforcement near its close of a prolonged systole. Under these circumstances the dicrotic wave may be small or absent. (Fig. 61.)

Mention should be made of the *anacrotic pulse* though this is not appreciable to the finger. It is similar to the *pulsus bisferiens*. An anacrotic pulse-wave is one in which a more or less marked notch occurs in the ascending limb, as in Fig. 62. It is the pulse of high arterial tension, and

occurs when the arteries are rigid and do not expand promptly to receive the contents of the ventricle during systole. The walls yield slowly, the pressure is prolonged, broadens the top of the sphygmogram, and throws the highest part of the tracing toward the end of the systole and nearer the dicrotic wave, which is usually ill developed. So, too, the percussion wave is practically abolished and the tidal wave forms the apex of the curve. The pulse of prolonged arterial tension is produced by anything which resists the motion of the blood through the capillaries and arterioles, and such causes

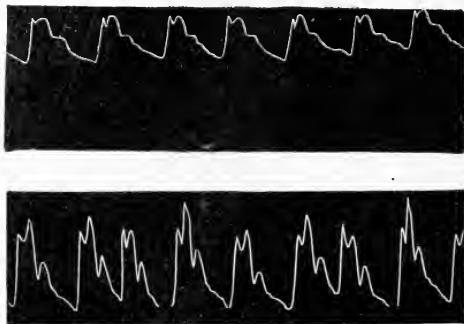


FIG. 61.—Pulsus Bisferiens (*Broadbent*).

are numerous. Chronic renal disease, especially interstitial nephritis, is one of them; so are gout, lead-poisoning, constipation, atheroma, or calcification of the arterial walls. The anacrotic pulse is also produced in aortic stenosis, where it is of diagnostic value.

Other modifications of the cardiac rhythm are the *gallop rhythm* and *embryocardia*. The former consists of three sounds, and is so called because it resembles the footfall of a horse in canter. It occurs especially in the hypertrophy which accompanies interstitial nephritis with arterio-sclerosis, and in fatty dilated heart. It is variously ascribed to an (1) abnormal



FIG. 62.—Anacrotic Pulse Curves—Pulse of High Arterial Tension. (*Landois and Sterling*).

“clacking,” produced by the contraction of a hypertrophied auricle, preceding the ventricular shock (*Charcelay*); (2) to a presystolic impulse which immediately precedes the precordial shock; (3) to the contraction of a hypertrophied auricle and powerful tension of the ventricular wall produced by the rushing of the column of blood into the ventricles in connection with the elastic resistance due to the muscular tonicity of the hypertrophied wall (*Potain*); (4) *Cuffer and Barbillion* suggest, in explanation

of the variety occurring in the feeble myocardium of ataxic fevers and dilatation, that the ventricular contraction and consequently the first sound is broken into two parts succeeding the precordial shock.<sup>1</sup> *Embryocardia*, first described by Stokes, is a condition in which the first sound is shortened, and therefore more like the second, the resultant being a sound similar to that of the fetal heart. It occurs especially in the latter stages of dilated heart, in which the muscular element of the first sound has become lost because of weakness and the sound is purely valvular.

TREATMENT OF PALPITATION, TACHYCARDIA, AND ARRHYTHMIA.—It is of the greatest importance that the cause of nervous *palpitation* should be ascertained, for with its removal recovery may be expected. Indigestion, distant causes of reflex irritation, such as uterine and ovarian disease in women, anemia, chlorosis, and the like should be carefully sought and eliminated by a proper treatment. During an attack the strictest quiet should be enjoined, and the patient should be kept in the recumbent posture. It is much more important that this should be done than that heart tonics or heart sedatives should be administered. Yet at this time it may be helpful to give small doses of digitalis, frequently repeated, say 3 to 5 minims (0.18 to 0.3 c.c.), or 5 to 10 drops, every hour, combined with the bromids in 10 to 15 grain (0.66 to 1 gm.) doses, or aconite and veratrum viride in 1 minim (0.06 c.c.) doses as often. When the palpitation is prolonged, a belladonna plaster may be applied to the heart, or cold may be applied over the cardiac region.

The treatment of an attack of *tachycardia* is similar. Every conceivable remedy has been tried by those subject to these attacks and their advisers, with results apparently satisfactory at one time and totally disappointing at another. In one remarkable case, a dear medical friend of my own, a glass of ice-water rapidly drunk almost always stopped a paroxysm. I have seen this effect in his case follow in a few minutes. This remedy he hit upon after 50 years' trial of everything he could think of.

Barr, consistently with his theory of tachycardia, recommends the free use of amyl nitrite, and nitroglycerin to lessen peripheral resistance and equalize the amount of blood in the two sides of the heart. He also encourages the patient to take long, deep breaths so as to aspirate the blood from the right side of the heart into the lungs, and thus give a better supply to the left ventricle. He suggests that counterirritation might call into play the reflex cardiac contraction of Abrams. If, after the preceding measures have been carried out, the hyperdistended right ventricle does not properly contract, then the addition of digitalis and strychnin is required, aided by a good, brisk purgative to clear the portal circulation. The diet should be as dry as possible, to avoid the addition of fluid to the over-repleted veins and right side of the heart.

*Bradycardia* is perhaps best left alone, unless some evident, easily removable cause be found.

As to treatment between attacks, the continuous use of strychnin may be expected to be useful. It may be combined with iron and quinin in moderate doses if there is anemia. A very elegant and convenient prepara-

<sup>1</sup>For an elaboration of these and further explanations see Barth and Roger, "Traité Pratique d'Auscultation," thirteenth edition, Paris, 1898.

tion is the elixir of iron, quinin, and strychnin of the U. S. P. On the other hand, strychnin sometimes causes nervousness. The dose must be regulated to avoid this. The tincture of nux vomica has been commended as especially suitable in these cases, given in ascending doses until 30 minims (2 c.c.) or more are reached. Outdoor life and exercise, mild gymnastics, walking, riding, cycling if not too violent, and mountain-climbing, all contribute to improve the general health and strengthen the heart at the same time. Cold bathing is one of the best measures for the same purpose, either at home or at the seaside.

The same principles of treatment apply to *intermittent heart and arrhythmia*. When these are the result of organic cardiac disease, their treatment is that of the disease. In the treatment of the simple slow pulse any cause of pneumogastric irritation should be sought for and removed, such as dyspeptic states, torpor of the liver, poisoning with retained bile salts, and the like. In the absence, however, of positive knowledge of the presence of such cause, the condition is best left alone, as treatment under such circumstances may do more harm than good.

Cardiac arrhythmia may be present without serious or indeed any interference with the essential function of the organ. Too much stress therefore should not be laid on such irregularity in the absence of other evidence of organic disease.

### HEART BLOCK. STOKES-ADAMS SYNDROME.

**Definition.**—A condition characterized by permanent slow pulse, becoming paroxysmally slower, associated at times with dizziness, dyspnea and syncopal, apoplectic or epileptic seizures.

**History.**—The syndrome constituting the Stokes-Adams disease was first described by Robert Adams,<sup>1</sup> of Dublin, in 1827; in 1846 William Stokes<sup>2</sup> described two cases, enlarging upon the symptoms. Other English physicians continued its study, while in Germany His, Hoffman and Jaquet<sup>3</sup> have published noteworthy papers. In France, Charcot and Huchard have studied the disease, the former ascribing it to lesions in the medulla, the latter to arterial sclerosis, especially of the coronary artery. Lately, in America, Prentiss, Edes, Osler, Erlanger, Stengel and Thomas Ashton have studied and reported cases.

**Etiology.**—This disease has heretofore been ascribed to some myocardial change, either fatty or fibroid; to injury or disease of the pneumogastric nerve or medulla oblongata; of the cardiac plexus and to sclerosis of the coronary arteries. Recent experimental studies by Joseph Erlanger go to show that the syndrome is due to disease, probably fatty degeneration, of the auriculoventricular bundle of His, a small muscle 18 mm. long, 2.5 mm. broad and 1.5 mm. thick, connecting the auricles with the ventricles. Through this muscle pass the auriculoventricular impulses which, starting in the auricles, pass over into the ventricles, causing the latter to contract. Both auricles and ventricles have their own automatic rhythmicity, but the auricles contract much more rapidly than the ventricles. If the muscle of His is destroyed in the dog the impulses are cut off or blocked and the

<sup>1</sup> Adams, Dublin Hospital Reports, vol. IV., 1827.

<sup>2</sup> Stokes, "Some observations on cases of permanently slow pulse," "Dublin Quarterly Journal," 1846.

<sup>3</sup> Jaquet, "Deutsches Archiv. für Klin. Med.," Bd. lxxii.

ventricles assume their own slow rate of beating. Erlanger has contrived an instrument by which he can gradually compress the muscle and produce various stages of the condition, thus one ventricular silence to 2, to 3, to 4 auricular beats. Complete blocks cut all impulses off from auricles to the ventricles, leaving the latter at its own inherent rate of 23 to 28 beats to the minute in man. Thus may be explained the slow pulse of the Stokes-Adams syndrome in the presence of some degenerative change in the muscle. It was also observed by Erlanger, while compressing the auriculoventricular bundle in the dog, that the ventricle alone stopped beating for a time—as long as 20 seconds. This it was thought explained the syncopal attacks of the Stokes-Adams disease.

The conclusions as drawn from Erlanger's experiments have been confirmed by studies of a case of Stokes-Adams disease in the wards of my colleague Alfred Stengel at the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania. Adams' case was 68 years of age; Stokes' were 56 and 68; whence it was thought that the disease was confined to persons well on in years, but more recent studies have found cases anywhere between 30 and 70, although it is of course more frequent in the aged.

**Symptoms.**—The first of these is *slow pulse*, habitually slow and regular, although it may be irregular. It becomes much slower during the paroxysms, falling to 40, 30, 20, and even 10 and 5. At times between the notable beats there is nothing noticeable, even with the stethoscope applied to the heart. At others it is said there are numerous auricular and feeble tones not accompanied by a perceptible impulse. These have been regarded by some as auricular contractions and by others as ventricular contractions, but the recent observations by Erlanger would seem to show they are primary auricular contractions, which are blocked off by disease of the muscle of His. In addition to this may be noted also between the strong beats, feeble pulsations in the right internal jugular vein just below the clavicle described by Stokes. These are synchronous with the above noted cardiac sounds. Babcock regards the feeble tones as feeble ventricular contractions and says he cannot conceive of auricular systoles being powerful enough to cause preceptible though imperfect apex beat. It is further characteristic of the slow heart beats that they cannot be accelerated by any of the causes which usually accelerate the heart's action, as walking or exertion of any kind.

*Vertigo* is the most constant symptom, being present in a greater or less degree in all cases and independent of position. It has been ascribed to cerebral anemia.

Another symptom generally but not always present is a momentary *syncope* lasting a few seconds or a minute, and ushered in by an *ashen pallor* to be replaced by a sudden rush of blood to the head, with flushing of the face and feeling of distention of the brain and subsequent headache. During this time no pulse is appreciable. The patient may not be aware of what is transpiring or may revive with a consciousness of having fainted. *Mild epileptiform convulsions* may appear during the syncope, amounting to a mere twitch of the mouth, though they may extend also to the extremities, arm or leg. Biting of the tongue has occurred with involuntary evacuation of urine. *Disturbance of breathing is much less common*; it

is said to be of the Cheyne-Stokes type. The syndrome occurs at varying intervals, but rarely daily or more than once a day. *Cardiac murmurs* due to aortic obstruction and relative insufficiency of both mitral and tricuspid valves are rarely present.

**Diagnosis.**—This depends upon the presence of a sufficient number of the distinctive symptoms, since if unaccompanied by vertigo and an increase in an already slow pulse, it may be due to other causes. In common with all cardiac muscular derangements this syndrome usually occurs in those past middle life but they may occur under 40 when they have been mistaken for mild epileptiform attacks, typical *petit mal*.

The **prognosis** is grave, the cases generally terminating fatally.

**Treatment.**—This is mainly symptomatic. Gastrointestinal derangements should be corrected. Stimulating measures in general are suggested, such as brandy, camphor and injections of ether. Hypodermic injections of morphin and inhalations of nitrite of amyl and oxygen may be useful. One of Stokes' patients found relief by supporting himself on his hands and knees and allowing the head to hang low.

### ANGINA PECTORIS, OR STENOCARDIA.

**Definition.**—An affection of the heart characterized by intense paroxysmal pain, at first usually substernal, extending thence down the arms, especially the left, and up into the neck. It is a symptom rather than a disease, as it is commonly associated with some recognizable organic change in the heart or great vessels, though not always the same change. Often, however, such change cannot be found, and it may be that in rare instances it is a purely functional state.

**Etiology.**—The immediate cause of angina pectoris is deficient cardiac nutrition, however induced. It may be on account of obstructive disease of the coronary arteries, aortic stenosis or insufficiency, pressure by a tumor or other cause, dilatation or enlargement of the heart beyond the capacity of the coronary arteries to nourish, or any cause which produces cardiac ischemia. Adhesive pericarditis may act in this way. It may be that the excessive use of tobacco, which has been accredited with the direct effect of causing angina, may operate thus. The exciting cause of the attack is usually some overexertion or mental emotion calling for some additional effort from an already crippled ischemic heart. These events are more apt to produce this effect after a meal because a full stomach encroaches on the heart. The taking of food alone, even in moderate amount, may excite an attack. Still more, excessive eating and indigestion, however caused, become exciting causes.

It must be admitted that all explanations of the pain are purely speculative, for though total obstruction of the coronary arteries experimentally produced is followed by death, pain has not been found an associated symptom. On the other hand, the pain which succeeds the obstruction of an artery, leading to gangrene of a part, as the leg, is precisely analogous to the anginous pain which succeeds obstruction of the coronary arteries, while the results of experimental closure of these arteries have their parallel in recog-

nized cases of *angina sine dolore*. Again, neuralgic pain of the ordinary kind occurs in a nerve which is badly nourished. May one not explain the pain of angina in the same way, since a defective nutrition is the one acknowledged condition of angina? Mention should be made of the view recently announced by Clifford Allbutt<sup>1</sup> that the agonizing pain and dread characteristic of angina pectoris may be produced by an acute aortitis.

Angina pectoris is a disease of adults, and of men rather than women, and though it may happen in early life, 80 per cent. of all cases occur after the 40th year.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Atheroma of the coronary arteries is the most constant anatomical change found associated with angina pectoris. It is well known, also, that experimental obstruction of these arteries results fatally, though such death is not attended by the pain of angina. On the other hand, many cases of advanced sclerosis of the coronary arteries occur without angina. In these it must be concluded that the nutrition of the heart has not seriously suffered. The other associated conditions named in considering the etiology must also be regarded as a part of the morbid anatomy. A fair estimate of the frequency of such associations may be obtained from W. H. Walshe's statement that in every one of 24 cases he examined during life distinct signs of changes in the heart, the aorta or in both coexisted. The testimony of G. W. Balfour and P. W. Latham is similar. Acute aortitis has been found. (See Clifford Allbutt's paper previously mentioned.)

**Symptoms.**—The cardinal symptom is agonizing *pain*—pain beginning beneath the sternum in the the region of the heart, extending up into the neck, sometimes the jaws, and down the arms, especially the left following the distribution of the ulnar nerve. Associated with this are *shortness of breath*, *precordial oppression*, and a *sense of impending dissolution*. The pulse is often strikingly natural, though it is also at times unnaturally small, frequent, and irregular. The pain is often associated with a *numbness or tingling in the fingers or over the cardiac region*. There are usually *extreme pallor* and an *agony of expression* which are not soon forgotten. The *skin is pale or ashen gray*, and often the *perspiration* stands out in huge beads. This ashen-gray color of the skin is not confined to the period of the paroxysm. It is, in my experience, quite a characteristic symptom, and when associated with atheromatous arteries, is of diagnostic value. The duration of the paroxysm varies from a few seconds to a half hour. At the end of this time, or earlier, the patient either passes out of the attack or dies in it. The paroxysms occur at widely different intervals, sometimes once in a few months, sometimes oftener, and sometimes at intervals of a year or more. Neither are they always so painful as described, and it is more than likely that the slighter attacks of cardiac pain associated with aortic stenosis and sometimes with aneurysm are of the same nature.

**Diagnosis.**—The only condition with which true angina pectoris is liable to be confounded is the hysterical form known as *pseudo-angina*. It is not often, however, that practical difficulty occurs in separating the two conditions. The hysterical form is more common in younger women, in

<sup>1</sup> "Angina Pectoris," by Clifford Allbutt, M. D., "Philadelphia Med. Jour.," vol. v., June 30, 1890, p. 1464.

nervous and hysterical persons, than the true form, and is associated with other nervous symptoms. In all instances careful examination should be made of the vascular system with a view to detecting alterations in it, such as arterial sclerosis and enlargement of the heart. These will generally be found in some one of their modes of manifestation in true angina. In false angina, as in other manifestations of hysteria, there is something indescribable which will guide the experienced physician aright. In cases of doubt the patient should have the benefit of it.

*Intercostal neuralgia* in the neighborhood of the heart resembles the pain of angina somewhat. It is, however, more circumscribed. It does not radiate into the neck and arms, and the heart and blood-vessels are normal. The pain is not so severe, and the anxious expression of the face is wanting.

**Prognosis.**—True angina is a very grave condition because, although fully three-fourths of all persons attacked recover from the first paroxysm, sooner or later a fatal ending may be expected, and no one knows what attack is going to be the last. In some instances paroxysms recur at intervals of considerable length throughout a lifetime, while in others the first proves fatal. G. W. Balfour mentions the case of an old gentleman who had a final fatal attack after an interval of ten years, in which he had enjoyed excellent health. Many instances of death in the first paroxysms are reported.

**Treatment.**—Treatment naturally resolves itself into that of the paroxysm and that for prevention or cure. For the first, morphin is the most efficient remedy, and if at hand, should be used hypodermically in not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.016 gm.) doses for an adult, combined with atropin. Nitrite of amyl has come to be an acknowledged remedy, first suggested by Sir Lauder Brunton. A few drops may be placed upon a handkerchief or on cotton and inhaled, or, more conveniently, pearls of glass filled with the nitrite are crushed in a handkerchief. The pearls recommend themselves further because they can be conveniently carried, and it is desirable that persons subject to angina pectoris should always have the drug at hand. Chloroform may also be used instead of nitrite of amyl, if more convenient. Nitroglycerin is used for the same purpose in doses of  $\frac{1}{100}$  to  $\frac{1}{50}$  grain (0.00065 to 0.0013 gm.) at short intervals, say 15 minutes. Counter-irritation should be simultaneously applied. The ordinary mustard plaster is a most convenient and efficient measure for the purpose.

Prophylaxis is exceedingly important, and is best accomplished by avoiding the exciting causes commonly responsible for the paroxysms—overexertion, overeating, and mental excitement. The patient subject to angina should never hurry or get into a passion or become excited in any way. The use of all indigestible articles of food should be carefully avoided. Nitroglycerin is sometimes efficient as a prophylactic as well as for the paroxysm in the same doses once in four hours or oftener. The alcoholic solution, of such strength that 1 minim represents  $\frac{1}{100}$  grain (0.0006 gm.), is the best preparation. Nitrite of sodium may be used in from 3 to 5 grain (0.1944 to 0.32 gm.) doses. Other remedies recommended with a view to averting the attack are arsenic, nitrate of silver, the bromids, and especially iodid of potassium, the long-continued use of full doses of which



has apparently sufficed to prevent recurrence. Its effect in this disease is comparable to that produced by it in aneurysm and arterio-sclerosis. As heart tonics, arsenic and strychnin in doses of  $1/50$  to  $1/25$  grain (0.0012 to 0.024 gm.) should be given. While sudden exertion and overexertion are to be avoided, carefully graduated exercise is to be recommended, for like all organs, the heart is strengthened and invigorated by exercise properly regulated. When moderate exertion, if borne at all, brings on an attack, even this should be avoided.

Could we correct the faulty nutrition of the heart we could hope for a cure, and though this may be impossible, we may do that which promotes it. Angina pectoris is one of the conditions in which the Nauheim hot bath may be expected to be beneficial. So it might, so far as the hot baths are used, but the cold bath in any form is harmful.

The treatment of *hysterical* or *pseudo-angina* is that of hysteria under other circumstances.

## DISEASES OF THE BLOOD-VESSELS.

### ARTERIO-SCLEROSIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Angio-sclerosis*; *Endarteritis chronica deformans*; *Atheroma of the Blood-vessels*; *Arterio-capillary Fibrosis*.

**Definition.**—An inflammatory thickening of the walls of blood-vessels, chiefly of arteries, beginning in the intima, but extending also to the media and adventitia, associated also, more or less, with degenerative changes.

*Endarteritis obliterans* is an inflammation of the endarterium which, partly by its immediate product and partly by thrombosis and the organization of the resulting clot, produces complete obliteration of the artery with resulting gangrene.

**Etiology.**—There is a tendency to atheroma in the arteries of the old, as an evolution process quite independent of exciting causes. This tendency also varies greatly in different families, being very strong in some and absent in others. Men are more frequent subjects than women. There are, many exciting causes, among which are especially overeating and drinking, with consequent accumulation of irritating matters in the blood, syphilis, the gouty poison, and lead. Chronic Bright's disease and diabetes mellitus are especially frequently succeeded by it; more rarely acute articular rheumatism. In the latter the rheumatic poison, whatever that may be, is probably the responsible agent, and in Bright's disease it may be retained excrementitious matter. In diabetes it is the sugar in the blood. Two classes of cases may, however, be associated with Bright's disease, in one of which the arterio sclerosis is general and primary, causing interstitial nephritis, and in the other it is secondary, the result of Bright's disease. One set of observers regard all cases of interstitial nephritis as secondary. Among these Sir William Gull and Henry D. Sutton, of England, and Arthur V. Meigs, of Philadelphia, have been conspicuous by their writings. Still another cause of arterio-sclerosis is increased arterial tension due to

prolonged muscular exertion. The toxins in the blood of the various acute infectious diseases may also cause endarteritis and sclerosis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The aorta is the most frequent and conspicuous seat of the changes ascribed to chronic endarteritis, but the carotids, subclavians, brachials, radials, and ulnars, the iliacs, femorals, and especially the arteries of the brain and coronary arteries of the heart, are frequently involved. The arteries to viscera, like the stomach and liver, are rarely affected, while the pulmonary arteries take an intermediate place. On the other hand, the latter are sometimes invaded to the exclusion of the aorta. Whatever invites high tension in the lesser circulation tends to produce sclerosis in these vessels. The portal vein may also be invaded.

Appearances differ in arteries of different sizes. Those in arteries of moderate size are best studied in the superficial vessels. They are tortuous, stand out conspicuously, and feel hard to the finger, under which they may be made to roll. These features are often recognizable in the temporals and less plainly in the radials. The smaller arteries and veins with transparent walls, especially in the brain, exhibit to the naked eye white patches which are the seat of the atheroma. On slitting them open, the inner surface of these and other arteries will be found to have lost its natural smoothness, to be rough and uneven, while the lumen is more or less encroached upon.

Minutely examined, the appearances vary with the stage. The first stage is that of cellular infiltration, represented by the translucent yellowish areas of intima thickened to three or four times its natural thickness. Later these young cells are in part converted into connective tissue, causing the primary hardness of the vessel-walls. In the second stage the cells of the connective tissue and the surface cells of the intima undergo fatty degeneration, and the intercellular substance liquefies. In the third stage, which is not reached in the smaller arteries, or, indeed, usually in those below the aorta, there occurs a further liquefaction with the formation of the so-called atheromatous abscess, whose contents are not pus, but the well-known atherom-pulp, representing the débris of fattily degenerated cells, including fat drops and cholesterin crystals. Alongside of the atheromatous patches appear also plates or scales of calcareous infiltration of the intima, produced by a deposit of lime salts in the intercellular substance of the deeper layers. The atheromatous abscess sometimes undermines the intima, forming sinuous cavities, and after evacuation there results the atheromatous ulcer. Both the limy plates and ulcers furnish inequalities which favor thrombosis. In the later stages of the more diffuse form of arterio-sclerosis, especially studied by Councilman, the media or muscular coat and the adventitia are also invaded, the former mainly by atrophic changes, alongside of which, at times, is a homogeneous hyaline infiltration. In this form the capillary walls are also thickened, especially those of the glomeruli of the kidneys, in some of which the vessels become obliterated.

A *calcareous* infiltration of the *muscular* coat without previous inflammation may be found in old age in arteries like the radial, crural, and temporal. Still another primary degeneration is the *fatty crossin* of Virchow, extending through the intima and media as a transverse fissure thought to be the starting-point at times of dissecting aneurysm.

The effect of these changes is to produce rigidity and narrowing of the

vessel, a loss of the propulsive power residing in the elastic coat, a slowing of the current, and increased intravascular resistance. These events tax the compensating power of the left ventricle, which therefore hypertrophies. This hypertrophy keeps up so long as its nutrition is maintained.

But another effect of obstructed circulation is defective local nutrition, some of the consequences of which have already been considered in the study of the fibroid heart. Similar interstitial overgrowth and contraction may be met in the kidney and have been referred to. Localized softening of the brain also succeeds upon atheroma, though this event is usually preceded by thrombotic obstruction favored by the sclerosis. A more frequent accident to the brain is rupture of one of these atheromatous vessels, succeeded by the symptoms of apoplexy and hemiplegia. Such rupture may be preceded by an aneurysmal dilatation. Finally, aneurysm of the larger vessels has for its almost indispensable condition, except in traumatic cases, atheroma of the dilated vessel. Both events—the primary atheroma and the subsequent dilatation—are favored by the increased intravascular pressure.

**Symptoms.**—Superficial vessels in a state of atheroma are easily detected as for example in the temples, by their *dilated, tortuous* outline in which pulsation is sometimes apparent; in other situations, as at the wrist, antebraclial and popliteal spaces, they may be recognized more or less by the touch. Distinction should be made between simple increase of tension and thickening of vessel-walls, though the two are constantly associated. The vessel in both instances is hard and requires some force to compress it, and between beats it is still full and can be rolled under the finger, but the artery with the thickened wall, if firmly enough compressed to obliterate the blood current, can still be felt beyond the seat of compression. In many instances, on the other hand, the changes escape detection until a fatal apoplexy gives notice of their presence. In most of these cases, however, if attention had been directed to the patient, the previously described condition of the arteries would probably have been recognized, while a certain degree of hypertrophy of the left ventricle would also, perhaps, have been detected. It does not follow, however, that the absence of atheroma in one place implies its absence in another, since fatal rupture of an artery in the brain has occurred when there has been no sign of sclerosis in the radials. It should not be forgotten that prolonged hypertrophy and the increased tension incident to it may produce atheroma, or the two may be the result of the same cause—as, for example, contracted kidney.

*Cardiac hypertrophy* is not always demonstrable to percussion, as the enlarged heart may be covered by an emphysematous lung, also often present in the aged, in whom atheroma is most prone to occur. On the other hand, the usual sharp accentuation of the aortic second sound is present if the hypertrophy has not given way to dilatation or fibroid induration. Cardiac murmurs do not occur unless the atheroma invades the valves to produce insufficiency, stenosis, or roughening of the aortic orifice or aorta near the orifice. This is not so very rare in old persons, apart from the relative insufficiency due to aortic dilatation.

For the reasons mentioned, the pulse is prolonged, hard, and tense—the *pulsus tardus* (Fig. 63)—while its sphygmogram is very characteristic: a slow,

oblique ascent, a broad top; a slow descent and absence of the dicrotic rise, which in the normal state depends on an elasticity absent in the diseased vessel. Owing to the same slow transmission of the pulse-wave the pulse is sometimes retarded at the wrist, while the rate is also slow. At other times it is frequent and irregular, especially toward the end of life when the heart begins to fail. On the other hand as measured by the sphygmometer the blood pressure is commonly low, 140 to 160 m.m., or less.

The *arcus senilis* is often an associate of arterio-sclerosis, and strongly confirmatory of its presence.

One of the most annoying consequences of atheroma of the blood-vessels of the brain is *dizziness* or vertigo, and this symptom, when present in the aged, is very apt to be caused by it.

The consequences of atheroma of vessels of the lower extremities include *muscular weakness*, *stiffness*, and a *tottering* gait. In extreme cases gangrene of the lower extremities may result from obstruction to their arteries due to thrombosis invited by the atheroma. Such termination is not very rare in contracted kidney.

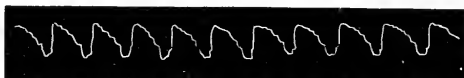


FIG. 63.—Sphygmogram of an Atheromatous Vessel—The Pulsus Tardus.

With the supervention of cardiac dilatation and heart failure there appear paralysis, precordial oppression on slight exertion, dyspnea, edema, pulmonary congestion, scanty urine, aggravated vertigo, angina pectoris—in a word, all the symptoms of chronic heart disease. Finally, other symptoms are those of the morbid states it causes—*i. e.*, apoplexy, contracted or senile kidney, atheroma of the coronary artery and its consequences.

**Treatment.**—Treatment is mainly the removal of conditions causing it, such as too free living, gout, lead-poisoning, and syphilis; together with rest and quiet, the avoidance of excitement, also aperients to lower the arterial tension, a slight increase of which is often the last straw required to produce an apoplexy. The iodid of potassium has received general endorsement, though from different points of view. Thus Vierordt gave the iodids on the assumption that they promote resolution of the sclerotic product; Huchard and Balfour on the ground that they dilate the arterioles and thus lower the blood pressure.

More recent studies by Boehm, Prévost, Corin, Stockman, James Burnet and Rolleston, go to show that the iodids do not reduce blood pressure, yet they admit that the drug is useful in arterio-sclerosis. Burnet claims that a further effect of the iodids is to increase elimination, thus removing certain irritant constituents of the blood.

As such, it ought to be useful in arterial sclerosis and probably is. Moderate doses should be continued a long time. In conjunction with this the usual cardiac tonics should be employed with a view to promoting a proper circulation of the blood.

## ANEURYSM.

**Definition.**—An aneurysm is a more or less circumscribed dilatation of a blood-vessel. Aneurysm is known as true or false. A *true* aneurysm is one in which, at the outset, all three coats of the blood-vessel share in the dilatation, though one or two may disappear later in the course of its growth. A *false* aneurysm, on the other hand, starts at the outset with a laceration of one of the coats.

1. True aneurysm may be saccular, fusiform or spindle-shaped, cylindrical and cirroid. The “cirroid” or varicose aneurysm is one in which a blood-vessel of medium size and its branches are irregularly dilated and contorted like a varicose vein, whence the name “varix,” a dilated vein. The “invaginating” aneurysm is a rare form of cylindrical aneurysm, in which the cylindrical sac overlaps at either or both ends the main trunk of the artery involved. Saccular and fusiform aneurysms are the more frequent. The “neck” of an aneurysm is a constricted portion by which a saccular aneurysm is attached to the main trunk.

2. False aneurysm includes two varieties, traumatic and dissecting.

(a) Traumatic aneurysm. In traumatic aneurysm the initial event is some injury from without to one or more of the coats of the vessels, as the result of which the resistance to intravascular pressure is diminished and a protrusion of the intima through the yielding media takes place, the latter being the most passive of all the coats. The simplest illustration of this form of aneurysm is the antebrachial aneurysm caused by accidental wounding of the brachial artery in venesection of the median vein. The blood pushes out the intima and antebrachial fascia and forms a sac communicating with the artery through the wound.

A second form of traumatic aneurysm is the aneurysmal varix or anastomotic aneurysm, in which the blood from the wounded artery passes directly into the adjacent vein through the wound made at the same time, causing a dilatation of the vein. This is resisted by the valves, which, however, give way to the extent of two, three, and even more pairs before the current is successfully resisted.

(b) Dissecting aneurysm. This involves the aorta, in which, in consequence of a perforation through the intima and media, the blood dissects between them and the adventitia. The initial slit is found most frequently in the inner and posterior portion, about one inch (2.5 cm.) above the semi-lunar valves. The blood may dissect from this point around the arch of the aorta, even as low as the diaphragm, before it returns to the lumen of the vessel. Even the visceral pericardium has been thus separated by an aneurysm which projects into the pericardium, rupturing finally into the pericardial sac.

**Etiology.**—The aneurysm most frequently encountered by the physician is the saccular and fusiform form. Its most frequent essential cause is endarteritis and its consequences, including the more acute stage of cellular infiltration, as well as atheroma. The coats thus weakened yield to the intravascular pressure. The intima is capable of a considerable degree of expansion without rupture, while the media is entirely passive

and yields very soon to the distending force. The adventitia alone seeks to guard the sac against rupture by reactive overgrowth. The causes of endarteritis, already discussed, such as syphilis, alcohol, and other toxic substances variously introduced into the blood, are responsible for the more usual forms of arterio-sclerosis which furnish the initial lesion of aneurysm. But weakening of the coats is caused also in the smaller vessels by emboli, after the lodgment of which the proximal part of the vessel often becomes dilated. Such embolus may excite an endarteritis, or may occasion direct violence to the vessel-walls if it be hard or sharp, as is often the case with a fragment of a calcified valve. Muscular compression exerted by muscles in certain situations may also produce it. Such may be the origin of popliteal aneurysms so frequent in footmen, who maintain a rigidly erect position. Finally, disturbances of innervation are considered capable of causing dilatation, and to such influence are ascribed the varicose aneurysms of the arteries of the scalp, of the temporal, and of the popliteal.

Aneurysm is a disease of men rather than women. It is rarely seen until after the 40th year of life.

#### ANEURYSM OF THE THORACIC AORTA.

Thoracic aneurysm occurs in the arch of the aorta, in its ascending, transverse and descending portions, and in the thoracic aorta below the arch. Such aneurysm may but slightly exceed the normal caliber of the vessel, or it may be six inches (12 cm.) or more in diameter.

The greater frequency of aneurysm in the male sex and during early middle life is recognized. To the preexisting conditions of atheroma there may be added the effect of extreme exertion in lifting, or muscular strain of any kind, the effect of which is always to increase intravascular pressure. Partly because they are points of least resistance, and partly because they are in the line of successive impingement of the whirling blood stream, there are certain points of selection in the aorta which are quite constant seats for beginning aneurysm. These are shown in the appended illustration, Fig. 64.

The first point (1) of election is the beginning of the aorta directly behind the trunk of the pulmonary artery. Aneurysm originating there may produce early hypertrophy of the right ventricle because of the resistance to the outward flow of the blood through this vessel, a basic murmur in the pulmonary area, relative insufficiency of the tricuspid valve and venous pulse, with a possible ultimate perforation into the pericardium or pulmonary artery. The second point (2) is the favorite seat of aneurysm of the ascending limb of the arch, behind the sternum, at the manubrio-gladiolar junction, at which place it often bores its way through the sternum as a sacculated aneurysm, which may finally burst through the external integument. The third seat (3) is at the convexity of the arch toward the apex of the right lung. The pleural cavity at this point is soon obliterated by adhesive inflammation, through which the aneurysm bores its way, rupturing into the bronchioles of the apex of the lung, producing fatal hemoptysis. The fourth (4) is between the innominate and left

carotid at the apex of the arch in front of the trachea. It may perforate into the trachea before attaining very large size. The fifth position (5) is posterior in the descending limb of the arch, between the left subclavian and the isthmus of the aorta to the left of the vertebral column. The aneurysm here is more commonly a cylindrical dilatation. It may also rupture into the larynx. The remaining aneurysms of the aorta all point more or less toward the vertebræ, but the greater resistance to their formation in that direction favors lateral development. Ultimately they rupture with hemorrhage into the pleural or abdominal cavity. As much as seven pounds (3.17 kilos.) of blood have been found in the pleural cavity after a fatal hemorrhage. Aneurysms of the thoracic aorta lying close upon the

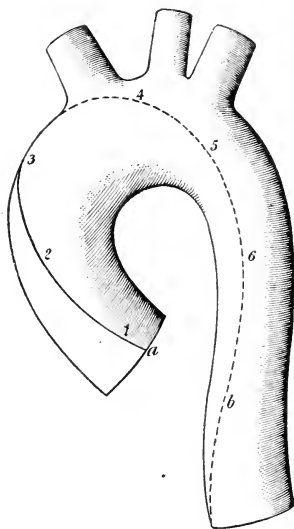


FIG. 64.—Showing Sites of Election for Aneurysms in the Aorta—(after Rindfleisch).

a, b. Line of impingement of the whirling blood current—the continuous line is supposed to be on the anterior surface of the aorta, the dotted line on the posterior.

diaphragm may bore their way between the trunk muscles behind, attaining often large size without perforation.

**Symptoms of Thoracic Aneurysm.**—Apart from the physical signs, the most important of the symptoms due to thoracic aneurysm are the result of pressure of the growing aneurysm, hence they are called *pressure symptoms*.

The first of these is *pain*, which may be sharp and acute when nerves are directly involved, or dull and boring when the result of pressure on bone. In the latter case, too, it is localized; in the former it may extend all over the chest and down the arms, simulating angina pectoris. It may be unilateral. It may occur in aneurysm of any part of the arch, but is more frequent in that of the ascending limb.

*Shortness of breath*, especially on exertion, is a frequent symptom. It may be due to pressure of the aneurysm on the trachea, or on a bronchus, especially the left. Dyspnea may be increased on changing position. *Dysphagia* from pressure of the tumor on the esophagus is a frequent symptom, especially in aneurysm of the descending aorta, anywhere in the thorax. Such pressure may be strikingly demonstrated by Schnell's<sup>1</sup> method of introducing into the esophagus a stomach-tube, of which the lower end is closed, attaching to the outer end a glass tube, and filling the whole with water, and watching the rise and fall of the water in the glass tube, corresponding to the pulsation. Dysphagia is sometimes associated with *broncho-esophageal fistula*.

*Cough and alterations in the voice* are important symptoms. The latter include hoarseness, aphonia, and stridor. Some of these symptoms may be produced by direct pressure on the trachea itself, others by pressure upon the left recurrent laryngeal nerve. A stridulous voice, unaccompanied by dysphagia or aphonia, was early pointed out by Thomas Jolliffe Tufnell as indicating that the pressure is on the right side of the trachea and does not affect the esophagus or recurrent laryngeal nerve. Cough may be caused by tracheal pressure or by a resulting tracheo-bronchitis with copious thin or mucous expectoration, sometimes bloody. The cough is often brassy in character.

On the other hand, hoarseness, aphonia and various degrees of paralysis of the vocal cord are due to paralysis of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, commonly the left, which passes around the arch of the aorta and is, therefore, more likely to be involved than the right. The paralytic phenomena may be present without other laryngeal symptoms, hence any alteration of voice in a person exhibiting palpitation or dyspnea calls for a laryngoscopic examination. When paralysis is total on the left side, such examination may show little alteration in the position of the vocal cords in *ordinary* breathing, or the left may be a little nearer the median line. On *deep inspiration* the right vocal cord is well abducted, the left remaining quiescent in the so-called cadaveric position, midway between that of inspiration and phonation. The attempt at *phonation* is more or less abortive. During it, the right vocal cord may go to the median line, leaving a small opening between it and the motionless left cord, or it may even cross the line to its paralyzed neighbor.

Partial recurrent paralysis results if only the twigs distributed to the *abductor* muscle—*i. e.*, the posterior cricoarytenoid—are involved in the pressure. There ensues gradually a permanent shortening or "paralytic contracture" of the antagonistic adductors of the same side, and the affected cord is drawn by this into a position of constant phonation—that is, to the median line. The result is that the voice may be entirely natural, the paralyzed cord being in the position of adduction, while its tension is mainly regulated by the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve, the sensory nerve of the larynx which is uninfluenced in aortic aneurysm.<sup>2</sup> In these cases quiet breathing is also unimpeded.

These phenomena imply, of course, a destructive lesion of the nerve,

<sup>1</sup> Ferdinand Schnell "Der Diagnose des Aneurysma der Aorta descendens," "Münch. med. Woch.," xxxvi., pp. 526 and 609, 1889.

<sup>2</sup>For the muscles involved see Diseases of the Larynx.



the result of pressure, which may be preceded by a primary neuritis. Such neuritis and resulting irritation of the entire pneumogastric may account for certain attacks of extreme *dyspnea* sometimes experienced by subjects of aortic aneurysm. Associated with the neural degeneration is also found *atrophy* of the left posterior cricoarytenoid or abductor muscle while the adductors, the lateral cricoarytenoids and the arytenoid remain nearly intact. Constant dyspnea is more likely to be due to direct compression of the trachea.

Other *nerves* may also be *compressed*, especially the intercostal, vagus, and sympathetic. By compression of the intercostal nerves, pain may be caused; of the vagus, vomiting; and of the sympathetic, inequality of the pupils and unilateral sweating. I remember well a very stubborn case of seeming intercostal neuralgia in my own practice which turned out to be caused by aneurysm of the descending aorta, confirmed by autopsy.

Then, there is the *tracheal tugging* of aneurysm first described by Surgeon-Major Oliver, and further studied by Ross and McDonnell, in Canada.<sup>1</sup> It is generally indorsed by English clinicians as a valuable sign, while Fränkel, from the German side, confirms the importance of this symptom.<sup>2</sup> This is a dragging downward of the larynx with each systole of the heart. In Ewart's method the patient sits with his mouth closed, his head well bent backward, steadied against the chest of the examiner, standing behind him. The trachea is drawn up gently by inserting the ends of the fingers under the edge of the cricoid cartilage, when with each impulse the larynx is felt to be pulled downward. Oliver directs, with the patient in the upright position, the mouth closed, and chin elevated, grasping the cricoid cartilage between the fingers and the thumb pressing it steadily upward, when, if aneurysm exists, the pulsation of the aorta will be distinctly felt. It is said that it may be the sole sign of aneurysm, and a sign, also, that the position of the aneurysm is such as to involve the posterior aspect of the arch—4 in Fig. 64. It should be a distinct tug downward, as light degrees of tracheal tugging are found in healthy persons. Cardarelli's sign of *lateral* movement of the larynx is similar, with an obvious difference. It is said never to be present in aneurysm of the innominate.

J. N. Hall called attention<sup>3</sup> to a sign of aneurysm not previously described, which he calls *tracheal shock*, consisting in a distinct sharp impulse, diastolic in time, transmitted through the aneurysm *to the trachea just after the tracheal tug*, when the latter is present.

*Alteration in the pulse* in distal arteries is also a sign of considerable diagnostic value. The pulse-beat may be simply delayed as compared with the heart-beat. This is the natural result of the intervening sac which may receive temporarily a considerable amount of the blood required to produce the pulse wave. Or the pulse in one radial may be smaller than that in the other. It is chiefly when the aneurysm involves the origin of blood-vessels leading to the radials, as the innominate on the right and the carotid or subclavian on the left. If the right radial pulse is enfeebled or delayed, the aneurysm will be on the right, involving the origin of the

<sup>1</sup>"London Lancet," 1891.

<sup>2</sup>"Centralbl. f. innere Med.," August 5, 1899.

<sup>3</sup>"Tracheal diastolic Shock in the Diagnosis of Aortic Aneurysm," "Amer. Journ. of the Medical Sciences," vol. cxix., 1900, p. 10.

innominate; if the left radial is influenced, the aneurysm is probably in the neighborhood of the left subclavian. Great care should be taken in the examination, and it should be made from the center to the periphery—that is, the carotids, the subclavians, the brachials, and the radials should be successively examined, as recommended by Sansom. These effects are variously produced. Thus, the aneurysm may narrow or distort the orifice of the blood-vessel by traction on it; or there may be atheromatous change in the branch vessel analogous to that in the aorta itself, which may cause narrowing of the orifice, while the possibility of this, in the absence of aneurysm, is also to be remembered; or the aneurysmal sac may act as the elastic air-chamber in a pump, diminishing thus the pulsatile force in the vessel and branches beyond. It is particularly in the arteries of the lower extremities, by aneurysm of the descending thoracic and abdominal aorta, that this air-chamber effect is seen, and the pulse, even in the abdominal aorta and its branches, has been thus obliterated by a large thoracic aneurysm. *Capillary pulse* is occasionally present, and is probably favored by the recoil of the blood into the aneurysmal sac.

*Pressure of the aneurysm on a bronchus* may lead to retention of secretion and fetid bronchitis and bronchiectasis, and favor the inoculation of tubercular phthisis, thus accounting for the frequent association of tuberculosis of the lungs and aneurysm.

*Spitting of blood* is an occasional symptom, which may be the forerunner of larger and more dangerous hemorrhage.

Still rarer is pressure on the thoracic duct, causing emaciation. Though this symptom is more frequently due to mediastinal tumor.

*Physical Signs.*—*Inspection* does not always discover changes, but if the sac grows outwardly, sooner or later a swelling makes its appearance, to the right of the sternum if in the ascending limb, possibly raising a rib or the end of the clavicle; above and behind the sternum if in the transverse portion, raising the manubrium or boring its way through it; and to the left of the sternum if in the descending limb of the arch. As the tumor protrudes, the skin becomes smooth, shining, and tense over it, and may become gangrenous previous to rupture. Such a tumor may pulsate or not. The aneurysm is, as it were, a rudimental heart, dilating in all directions with every jet of blood that is shot into it, and contracting on the withdrawal of the intravascular pressure so long as any elasticity remains. Should this property be lost, either as the result of calcification or the lining of the sac with successive layers of coagulum, such dilatation becomes impossible, and pulsation does not occur. The pulsation is, however, of great importance to the diagnosis. When present, it is synchronous with the systole of the ventricles. The heart itself is sometimes displaced downward, as seen from the lowering of the apex sometimes as low as the sixth interspace and outside the mammillary line. Less frequent is hypertrophy of the left ventricle, and when present, not so extreme as in aortic valve disease.

If the aneurysmal tumor press upon the great veins of the neck, there may be venous engorgement and edema on one side of the neck or both, according as the innominate vein of one side only is compressed or the descending cava itself. The aneurysm may rarely rupture into the descend-

ing cava, resulting in a form of varicose aneurysm, producing, in addition to the ordinary signs of aneurysm, sudden distention of the veins in the upper half of the body, edema of the face, hands, and arms, cyanosis, systolic venous pulse, and purring thrill.

*Palpation* also recognizes the impulse of the aneurysm if it is visible, and sometimes when it is not visible. This beating is peculiar, being *expansile*, and differs thus from the rising of a tumor over a pulsating blood-vessel. Sometimes there is a double beat, the second and weaker being the usual recoil following closure of the aortic valves. A *thrill* is also often felt, a vibration in the walls of the sac caused by the whirl of the blood in it. It is by no means, however, invariable, and it may come and go. Very great *tenderness* is sometimes present over the seat of the protruding aneurysm. Palpation may also recognize the "diastolic shock," or recoil blow of the aneurysm on the closed aortic valve, if this be competent—to be again referred to.

*Percussion* over the swelling of an aneurysm invariably elicits impaired resonance, varying greatly in degree and extent. On the other hand, the adjacent lung may be compressed, producing an area of dullness beyond the tumor itself. The dullness is usually in the right upper intercostal spaces, especially if the aneurysm is in the ascending limb of the arch. Aneurysms in the transverse portion produce dullness in the middle line under the manubrium and toward the left of the sternum, while aneurysms of the descending part may produce dullness in the left interscapular and scapular regions posteriorly. Sometimes the impairment of resonance precedes the pulsation, though such dullness is of uncertain significance.

*Auscultation* is no exception, as compared with the other modes of physical investigation, as to the inconstancy of its information, sometimes furnishing the most distinctive signs, while at other times it is totally negative.

The murmur or bruit heard over an aneurysm varies. Sometimes but one murmur is produced—systolic, corresponding with the first sound over the ventricles, but more intense; more rarely it is diastolic only. Not infrequently there is a combined or double murmur, both systolic and diastolic, the first intense and prolonged, the second fainter and shorter. It varies greatly, being sometimes rough, sometimes soft, and sometimes musical. The murmur is not infrequently absent. The mechanism of these sounds is not settled. The systolic is the most easily explained. There can be little doubt that it is produced by the inequalities which meet the entrance of the blood into the sac. The diastolic murmur, when the aneurysm is at the beginning of the aorta, will probably be an aortic regurgitant murmur, due to relative insufficiency of the aortic valve. When the aneurysm is distant from the aortic orifice, the diastolic murmur may be due to the recoil of the distended sac, propelling the blood through the outlet with additional force, or the whirling of the blood through the sac. Rarely in these distant situations there is a diastolic murmur only, probably thus caused.

A much more constant symptom is an accentuated aortic second sound, which is, in fact, rarely absent in aneurysm of the arch where the aortic valves are intact and which constitutes the so-called *diastolic shock*. It is an exaggeration of the second sound, recognizable by the ear and due to

the elastic recoil of the aneurysmal sac. "It is the shock of the second sound that is heard and the recoil is felt." It is not always present, and requires a sound aortic valve to produce it in its most marked degree. Sir Douglas Powell holds that it is best studied with the wooden stethoscope, and that the binaural fails to observe it. Ernest Sansom considers it best investigated by the ear direct, with only a slight intervening chest covering. It may be accompanied by or replaced by the diastolic murmur referred to. It is rarely, if ever, present with mediastinal growths, even when they perforate the sternum and produce pulsation.

Occasionally a peculiar *whiffing interruption of the breath-sounds* may be heard by the stethoscope or ear placed near the open mouth, due to the expansile pulsation of the aneurysm. Similarly caused is *Drummond's sign*, produced by having the patient take a full inspiration and allowing the air to pass out slowly through one nostril, the other being compressed by the finger, while the clinician listens with the stethoscope over the manubrium. *Perez's sign* is a creaking sound heard when auscultating over the sternum when the patient raises and lowers the arm. It is caused by traction on adhesions, which may have formed in the anterior mediastinum in cases of aneurysm of the first and second parts of the aorta. *Glasgow's sign* is a systolic thud audible by the stethoscope in the brachial or similar large artery like that heard in aortic regurgitation. *Scheele's sign* is a momentary disappearance of the systolic murmur, accompanied by severe pain, produced by pressing over the crural arteries of the two sides. It is an experiment not altogether without danger, as death occurred in one instance on practicing it. Enlargement of the tumor mass may also arise by the pressure on the crurals.<sup>1</sup>

But any one or all of these signs may be wanting. Particularly is this the case where the aneurysm occurs just after the aorta has left the heart. The most valuable is the pulsation distinct and separate from that of the heart, or, as graphically put by Da Costa, "what is more essential is to find two points of pulsation in the chest—two hearts, apparently each with its own distinct beat, its own distinct sounds."<sup>2</sup>

The X-ray has been brought to bear on the diagnosis of aneurysm, and commonly a distinct demonstration of the tumor can be made, both by the fluoroscope and skiagraphy, but it is scarcely available to the practicing physician, because of the costliness of the apparatus.

Is it possible to determine the portion of the aorta involved by aneurysm? Yes, with a certain degree of probability:

In aneurysm of the ASCENDING AORTA there is more apt to be pain like that of angina pectoris, dyspnea, dullness to the *right* of the manubrium sterni from the second intercostal space upward, pulsation in the same region, displacement of the heart downward and to the left, delayed pulse in the peripheral arteries as contrasted with the heart's impulse, compression symptoms involving the sympathetic and the area of the superior cava, pressure upon the pulmonary artery producing a pulmonic systolic murmur, with hypertrophy and dilatation of the right ventricle if the aneurysm compress the pulmonary artery.

<sup>1</sup> "Beitrag zur Casuistik und Symptomatologie des Aorten Aneurismen," "Berl. klin. Wochenschr.," xv, 1878.

<sup>2</sup> Da Costa, "Medical Diagnosis," eighth ed., 1895, p. 507.

Aneurysm of the TRANSVERSE PART OF THE ARCH furnishes more particularly pulsation in the *fossa jugularis*; tracheal tug; dullness on percussion over the manubrium and to its *left* in the first intercostal space; narrowing of the orifices of the innominate, the left carotid, or left subclavian, and resulting inequality of the pulse in the head and arm; pressure on the *left* innominate vein, with resulting congestion and edema of the *left* half of the neck and head. It is when in this situation that aneurysm compresses the left recurrent laryngeal nerve and causes paralysis of the left vocal cord, presses on the trachea, with resulting stridor and cough, and on the left bronchus, producing inspiratory dyspnea.

In aneurysm of the DESCENDING LIMB OF THE ARCH OF THE AORTA<sup>1</sup> we look for the pulsation behind to the left of the vertebral column opposite the angle of the scapula or below. The bruit is faint or absent. In the *thoracic aorta below the arch*, in consequence of the air-chamber effect, we may find smallness of the crural pulse as contrasted with the radial, and symptoms of pressure upon the left lower azygos or hemiazygos vein—*i. e.*, edema of the upper part of the abdomen and pleuritic effusion; also pressure on the esophagus and left bronchus. The intercostal nerves may be compressed, producing intense pain in the course of their distribution, the vertebral column may also be eroded, the spinal canal opened, and the cord compressed, with resulting paraplegia. If the aneurysm project forward, which is rarely the case, it may press upon and displace the heart, causing palpitation, or it may also compress the esophagus, causing painful deglutition. It sometimes ulcerates and breaks into the esophagus. Obscure symptoms of this variety of aneurysm may exist for a long time before a tumor shows itself posteriorly between the shoulders, which is unmistakable at this late stage.

Aneurysm of the ABDOMINAL AORTA furnishes a pulsating tumor to the left of the vertebral column, to the left and above the umbilicus. The bifurcation of the aorta takes place on the fourth lumbar vertebra, which point corresponds to the umbilicus. Sometimes a thrill may be felt and a systolic murmur heard, rarely a double murmur. Here, too, the smallness of the crural pulses, as contrasted with the heart's impulse and the radial pulse, may be observed, while in some cases the crural pulses disappear altogether. The symptoms vary somewhat, according as the aneurysm grows backward or toward the front. In backward pressure pain is also a striking symptom, and may be of two kinds, a fixed and constant pain in the back, caused by the pressure of the tumor on the solar plexus and splanchnic nerves, or a sharp lancinating pain radiating along the branches of the compressed lumbar nerves, whence pain in the loins, testes, hypogastrium, and in the lower limbs, usually on the left side. If the sac grows anteriorly, gastrointestinal symptoms may be present, such as vomiting, gastralgia, diarrhea, and even symptoms of obstruction of the bowel. Pain is also present, but is more likely to be fixed in the loins, epigastrium, or some part of the abdomen.

Erosion of the spine is much rarer in abdominal aneurysm than in

<sup>1</sup> The *descending part of the arch* of the aorta is somewhat arbitrarily terminated by anatomists at the lower end of the fifth dorsal vertebra, below which it is called the *descending thoracic aorta*, which terminates at the opening of the diaphragm in front of the last dorsal vertebra, below which it is the abdominal aorta. The symptoms of aneurysm of the descending part of the arch and the descending thoracic aorta do not differ widely.

thoracic. In emaciated persons the abdominal aorta sometimes pulsates so plainly that one is strongly reminded of aneurysm, and I have myself been misled by such pulsation, but under these circumstances there is absence of the systolic murmur and of the alterations in the pulse of the arteries of the lower extremity, and none of the pain described. Indeed, evident abdominal pulsation occurs far more frequently without aneurysm than with it.

ANEURYSM OF THE BRANCHES OF THE ABDOMINAL AORTA.—Of these, aneurysm of the *celiac axis* is most often mentioned and diagnosed, though not always correctly. The symptoms may be said to be a pulsating epigastric tumor, associated with pain in the same neighborhood, and often with vomiting. The pain and vomiting may precede the pulsation and tumor by some months. These aneurysms are sometimes traumatic, and have been referred to railroad accidents in which sudden and powerful compression has been exerted upon the abdomen. As intimated, their diagnosis is not always easy. Two illustrative cases have come to my knowledge. In one, an aneurysm diagnosed as being of the celiac axis was at the autopsy proved to be in the abdominal aorta. In another case of supposed aneurysm the celiac axis was excluded, and the necropsy disclosed an aneurysm of that vessel.

Aneurysm of the SPLENIC ARTERY is sometimes met. Ten cases were collected by Lebert out of 39 involving various branches of the abdominal aorta. Osler reports, in his book, one in a patient aged 30. The aneurysm was as large as a cocoanut, and was found at autopsy between the stomach above and the transverse colon below. The sac contained densely laminated fibrin and had perforated the colon. The symptoms were a deep-seated tumor in the left hypochondriac region, with dullness, which merged into that of the spleen. There was no pulsation, but a bruit was *thought* once to have been heard. The symptoms were vomiting, epigastric pain, occasional hematemesis, and, finally, hemorrhage from the bowels.

Aneurysm of the HEPATIC ARTERY is a rare lesion, some ten or twelve cases having been recorded. These aneurysms are not usually large, while the liver has been found greatly enlarged.

Aneurysms of the SUPERIOR MESENTERIC ARTERY have been found at necropsies.

Aneurysms of the RENAL ARTERY are more numerous. They are generally small, but may terminate in rupture and retroperitoneal hemorrhage.

Aneurysm of the INNOMINATE is especially indicated by its murmur, thrill, and impulse in the vicinity of the inner end of the right clavicle, which is sometimes raised by the resulting tumor; also by the comparative absence of signs of pressure on the larynx or esophagus. The differences in the right radial pulse alluded to are especially present here. Compression of the right subclavian and right carotid diminishes the force of the beat of the innominate aneurysm, but is without effect in aortic aneurysm. Nor are there percussion signs of enlargement of the aorta.

If the SUBCLAVIAN is involved, the signs are further outward, on the outer side of the sterno-cleido-mastoid, while in aneurysm of the innominate they are found on the inner or tracheal side. To those named may be

added symptoms of pressure upon the subclavian vein, producing swelling of the arm and neck; upon the right recurrent laryngeal, producing defective speech and dyspnea; on the sympathetic, producing contraction of the pupil, and on the brachial plexus of nerves, pain. Especially would these signs point to aneurysm of the subclavian if the pulse of the carotids is uninfluenced while the right or left radial pulse is influenced.

The very rare condition of aneurysm of the PULMONARY ARTERY may produce a swelling, with the other local symptoms described, to the left of the sternum, in the second interspace. A murmur is less constant and is not conducted into the vessels of the neck, while the superficial pressure signs are more conspicuous. There is lividity of the face, with dropsy, and the dyspnea is naturally very great. There is no cough or voice alteration. It is to be remembered, however, that the swelling of an aneurysm of the arch of the aorta *may* extend to the left of the sternum. Such an aortic aneurysm may break into the pulmonary artery.

An aneurysm of the HEART is not recognizable, though it may be suspected if there is bulging succeeding signs of fibroid disease of the organ.

**Differential Diagnosis of Aneurysm of the Arch.**—Further diagnosis distinguishes aneurysm of the aorta mainly from *mediastinal tumor*. There may be the same percussion signs, though percussion dullness is usually more irregular in mediastinal tumor. There is often similar pain; there may also be pulsation, but instead of the expansile pulsation extending in all directions, it is more upheaving. Murmurs are not usual in the mediastinal tumor. The ringing, or accentuated second sound—diastolic shock—which may be present in aneurysm when the aortic valves are intact, or substituted by the diastolic murmur when the valves are incompetent, is absent in mediastinal tumor. Tracheal tugging does not occur in mediastinal tumor, nor do differences in the pulse or changes in the voice. The state of the blood-vessels usually associated with aneurysm must be ascertained. Fever is often present in mediastinal tumor; very rarely in aneurysm. A differential diagnosis is often impossible, and experts have held opposite opinions on the same case. Should the patient develop a cachectic state and secondary glandular enlargements appear, presumption is in favor of mediastinal disease.

Allusion was made on p. 682 to Schnell's sign produced by the compression exerted by the expansile pulsation of an adjacent aneurysm of the descending aorta on a rubber sound introduced into the esophagus. A like effect may be caused by a mediastinal tumor pressing the aorta against the esophagus. But the murmur of the rushing blood in the suddenly dilated aorta is said to be quite different from that produced in the suddenly narrowed aorta. This difference may be recognized by a microphone brought in connection with the esophageal sound and thus a differential diagnosis between the two conditions facilitated.<sup>1</sup>

The resemblance of some of the symptoms of aneurysm of the ascending aorta to some of those of *aortic incompetency* is very close. The same pulsating aorta, the same double basic murmur with impaired resonance at the right of the sternum, may be present. I have seen a case diagnosed as aortic regurgitation with stenosis, in which the autopsy disclosed perfect

<sup>1</sup>"Münchener medicinische Wochenschrift," No. 35, Aug. 27, 1889.

semilunar valves with, however, aneurysm and relative insufficiency, which caused the diastolic murmur. In aneurysm there is less hypertrophy of the heart than in aortic valvular disease. The age of the patient, if under 40, especially the history of heart disease in early life, the history of rheumatism, and the absence of the causes of atheromatous vessels, point to valvular disease. Though there may be pulsation at the root of the neck in both, in aortic incompetency the same strong pulse-beat extends to the wrists. Traube's double sound in the femorals and popliteals, though possibly otherwise caused, is still more frequently associated with aortic incompetency than any other lesion. Simple dilatation may, indeed, be present in aortic incompetency, but the pressure signs are wanting.

A *pulsating empyema* on either side of the upper sternum sometimes closely resembles a pulsating aneurysm, and the illusion is more complete because the pulsation is expansile. I well remember a case in which the pulsation to the left of the sternum was so like that of an aneurysm that I hesitated to use the exploring needle. Pulsating empyemas are generally further to the left of the sternum than aneurysmal pulsation. Other signs of aneurysm are also wanting, unless it be tenderness, which may be present. A rare condition is a *narrowing of the aorta* below the remains of the ductus arteriosus at the junction of the arch with the thoracic aorta, which produces small delayed pulse in the femorals, a thrill and murmur over the upper part of the sternum, but the extraordinary enlargement of the collateral vessels, especially the mammary and epigastric arteries, should set the question at rest.

How shall the symptoms, which also so much resemble those of a *laryngitis*, be recognized as due to aneurysm instead of the latter affection in the absence of the physical signs of aneurysm?

In acute laryngitis we have often the cause—exposure to cold—to help us, though in the chronic form we have not. In laryngitis there is usually more huskiness and less stridor in the voice, nor is the cough so brassy, or the voice so uniformly changed; it is more likely to alternate with normal voice. In aneurysm the voice grows progressively weak until aphonia results. The dyspnea in aneurysm is more often attended with wheezing, and is sometimes relieved for a time by coughing. Stokes called attention to the fact that in aneurysm the stridor of the voice seems to come from the notch of the sternum, rather than from the larynx itself. In aneurysm the breathing sounds are more likely to differ in the two lungs. Then we have the laryngoscopic picture. There is no swelling of the cords in aneurysm, while there may be the paralytic phenomena detailed. Finally, in laryngitis there may be fever.

**Prognosis.**—Aneurysm is not infrequently found at necropsy without having been suspected. In other cases the fatal termination is the first notification of its presence. When an aneurysm of the aorta is so developed as to exhibit its usual signs plainly, it is sooner or later fatal in some one of the modes already described. To foretell in which of the directions pointed out perforation will occur depends upon the accuracy with which diagnosis of its position can be made, and such diagnosis is at best a matter of probability. Only in cases in which aneurysm slowly erodes the anterior wall of the chest is there a gradual termination. Then there are sometimes



repeated small hemorrhages, which gradually reduce the strength of the patient, who finally dies of exhaustion or of an ultimately fatal large hemorrhage. Perforation into the vena cava, pulmonary artery, and right side of the heart is a rare termination. The course of the disease may, however, be prolonged many months, and if treatment is instituted early, it may contribute to such prolongation. When death does not occur from sudden hemorrhage, the symptoms may assume the type of chronic heart disease, for which, indeed, the condition is sometimes mistaken by the untrained observer. With failing heart come dyspnea, palpitation, dropsy, and death.

**Treatment.**—We seek in the treatment of aneurysm to *diminish intravascular pressure* and *restore the integrity of the vessel*. The former may be accomplished in a degree by placing the patient under conditions which will avert the causes of such increased intravascular pressure, which is constantly cooperating with the disease of the artery to produce further dilatation and ultimate rupture of the blood-vessel. This is, of course, best accomplished by absolute rest. It is plain the less frequently the heart beats and throws the weight of its blood against the weak blood-vessel, the longer will that blood-vessel last, while it is known to every student that the heart beats less frequently in the sitting than in the standing posture, and less in the recumbent than in the sitting position. On the other hand, it is evident that absolute rest is an impossibility. Yet it may be approximated in various degrees. It is impossible also to restore the integrity of the vessel, but to this end also measures are suggested which have for their immediate purpose coagulation of the blood in the vessel and obliteration of the sac. That this sometimes occurs numerous autopsies also attest.

The method which has met most favor is that now known as Tufnell's treatment, though Valsalva originally suggested a restricted diet and practiced frequent venesections. Bellingham advised starvation without bleeding. It was, however, revived by the late T. Jolliffe Tufnell and modified by G. W. Balfour who added the iodid of potassium. Tufnell's treatment consists in absolute mental and physical rest in the recumbent position, together with a moderate dry diet. The object of this is to diminish the blood-pressure and volume of blood, to increase the proportion of fibrin in the latter, and to promote its coagulation. The diet is as follows:

For breakfast, two ounces of bread and butter and two ounces of milk; for dinner, two or three ounces of meat and three or four ounces of milk or claret; for supper, two ounces of bread and two ounces of milk. Thus it is hoped to diminish the blood volume and reduce the pressure within the sac, to render the blood more fibrinous and to favor coagulation. The proper dose of the iodid of potassium is 5 to 20 grains (0.33 to 1.3 gm.) three times a day. It is supposed to act by increasing secretions, thus thickening the blood. To its efficiency in this direction I may add my testimony. Balfour also claims that it lowers the blood pressure by promoting the flow of blood through the arterioles. Boehm, Prévost, Corin, Stockman, James Burnet and Rolleston deny that the iodids lower blood-pressure, though they admit that the drug is useful. It may be expected, also, that cases of syphilitic origin will be those especially benefited, but it is said that experience does not confirm such expectation. Occasional small bleedings amounting to a few ounces are said to contribute to a favorable

result including relief of pain. Evidences of improvement are reduction in the size of the tumor, diminished force of pulsation, and relief of pain. The Tufnell treatment should be kept up for several months, or as long as the patient will submit to it. It is said to be useful more particularly in saccular aneurysm communicating by a small orifice with the aorta. It is doubtful whether it is worth while to subject a patient with large aneurysm communicating with the aorta by a large orifice to the inconvenience of such a treatment, and whether it may not be better to advise him to live a life as quiet as possible and to await the inevitable, while we relieve symptoms as they arise, and remember especially that iodid of potassium is often one of the best remedies for pain.

Another remedy said to favor coagulation of blood in an aneurysm is chlorid of calcium of which 10 grains (0.66 gm.) may be given four times a day. Acupuncture as a means of securing coagulation and contraction of the clot was suggested by Velpeau. It consists in placing an iron wire or needle into the aneurysm with the hope that the blood will coagulate on it. Filling the aneurysm with *horseshair* or *fine wire* has been suggested for the same purpose. The wire is introduced through a hypodermic needle. Galvano-puncture, suggested by Loretta, furnishes perhaps the most satisfactory results. Two needles are introduced into the sac, and a mild current of electricity is passed through them. In this way a combined electrolytic and mechanical effect is obtained. The introduction of astringent substances, as solution of acetate of lead or persulphate of iron, into the aneurysm may be mentioned only to be discouraged, since the danger of producing embolism far exceeds the chance of benefit. Ligation of the carotid or subclavian, or both, has also been done for aneurysm of the aorta with satisfactory results. It is, however, a formidable operation.

The latest method of inducing coagulation for the cure of aneurysm is by the subcutaneous injection of gelatin, suggested by Lancereaux.<sup>1</sup> Two hundred and fifty cubic centimeters of a solution of 2 grams of gelatin in 100 grams of saline solution are injected under the skin of the thigh. This is renewed at varying intervals from every two to 15 days. It has been claimed that, as a rule, 10, 15, or 20 injections produce complete cure. They act by increasing the coagulability of the blood. Recently, Professor Shoycesco, of Bucharest, reported<sup>2</sup> six cases treated in this way with good results in five cases. On the other hand, Osler treated ten cases at Johns Hopkins Hospital without a single cure.

No other internal treatment for aneurysm other than that suggested—by iodid of potassium—has ever been of any use. As a part of the medicinal treatment of thoracic aneurysm it should be added that where there is violent action of the heart, *cardiac sedatives* are sometimes indicated to allay this, in addition, of course, to the enjoined rest. Among these sedatives we include aconite and veratrum viride in extreme cases, also cold to the seat of the swelling and to the cardiac region.

The treatment of *peripheral aneurysm*, as of the popliteal and femoral, is usually relegated to the surgeon, who will treat it by ligation or compression. The *injection of ergotin* in the vicinity of the aneurysm, as suggested by Langenbeck, may be tried. From two to five grains (0.132 to 0.33 gm.)

<sup>1</sup> "The Lancet," October 22, 1899.

<sup>2</sup> "Journal de Médecine Interne," July 1, 1899.

of the aqueous extract dissolved in water or glycerin are injected every two days. Tufnell's method is also applied to peripheral aneurysm, for which indeed, it was originally recommended.

The treatment of peripheral aneurysm by *compression* has long been an acknowledged method for the purpose, and though looked upon as a surgical procedure, is as medical as it is surgical. The method adopted which has been most successful is digital compression, which is exerted by relays of students or others available for the purpose. The effect is that in the course of 48 hours coagulation has taken place and the aneurysm is cured. Failing in these measures, ligation is practiced in case of the smaller arteries, but all details of this operation belong to the province of surgery.

## SECTION V.

### DISEASES OF THE BLOOD AND BLOOD-MAKING ORGANS.

#### DISEASES OF THE BLOOD.

##### THE MINUTE STRUCTURE OF THE BLOOD.

An accurate knowledge of the histology of the blood has become so important to an intelligent study of its diseases that a brief statement of its minute constitution seems justified. It is more especially since the practice of staining blood preparations has come into use that our present more intimate knowledge has been acquired.

The *red blood disk* needs these aids least, but it is nevertheless a more interesting object thus studied. Thus, when stained with a solution of orange G, contained in the Ehrlich triple stain, it assumes a beautiful yellow or pale-orange color. With Wright's modification of Leishman's stain the hemoglobin becomes pink or yellow, according to amount of discoloration by water.<sup>1</sup> By means of these stains the expert observer may even measure a diminution in the amount of hemoglobin, indicated by a diminished intensity of the central coloring. Only in high degrees of loss of hemoglobin do the edges of the cell become paler. Eosin solutions stain the red disk a brilliant red. (See F in plate opposite p. 712.) The average number of red disks in a cubic millimeter in the male is 5,000,000, in the adult female 4,500,000; previous to menstruation, the number is somewhat larger.

The *blood-plaques*, though a constituent of normal blood, are not rendered visible by Ehrlich's stain. With Wright's stain they are colored dark purple or red and Wright claims they may be so stained as to be recognizable in sections of fixed tissues and organs. They are small bodies generally

<sup>1</sup>The student is referred to works on diagnosis for technical methods, but it may not be amiss to add directions for making and using Ehrlich's triple stain. The formula is as follows:

Saturated aqueous solution orange G, . . . . .	120-135 c.c.
Saturated aqueous solution acid fuchsin, . . . . .	80-105 c.c.
Saturated aqueous solution methyl-green, . . . . .	125 c.c.

Add—	
Water, . . . . .	300 c.c.
Absolute alcohol, . . . . .	200 c.c.
Glycerin, . . . . .	100 c.c.

Or the colors previously mixed, constituting the Ehrlich-Biondi or Ehrlich-Biondi-Heidenheim powder, may be used as follows:

Ehrlich-Biondi powder, . . . . .	1.70 gm.
Acid fuchsin, . . . . .	0.05 gm.
Absolute alcohol, . . . . .	2.00 c.c.
Distilled water, . . . . .	18.00 c.c.

*To Stain.*—After cleansing the finger thoroughly with soap and water and alcohol, it is pricked with a clean needle and a clean cover-slip touched to the blood as it flows from the puncture. Drop this cover-slip on another, draw the two apart and dry in the air. At any time within a few days fix by heating at 230° F. (110° C.) for ten minutes, or by placing in absolute alcohol or alcohol and ether. Then place for four minutes in the Ehrlich tricolor mixture. Dry and mount.

Ehrlich's method has been largely superseded by Wright's modification of Leishman's stain. It is done as follows:

1. Drop on the blood film with a medicine dropper as much of the stain as it will hold without spilling and leave it there one minute, the object being chiefly to fix the film.
2. Add to the fluid on the cover-glass or slide sufficient water, drop by drop, to make visible a greenish metallic scum on the surface. For a 7/8 in. square cover-glass 6 to 8 drops are usually needed. Let the stain thus diluted remain for about two minutes on the film.
3. Wash the film by running water and let stand in water for one or two minutes more or until the thinner portions of the film are yellowish pink. Water washes out part of the blue dye and differentiates the stain.
4. Dry cautiously with blotting- or filter-paper and mount in balsam. The whole process should not consume more than five minutes. This stain also answers well for malarial parasites and basophilic granules of red cells and all the purposes of a blood stain.

circular in outline, of variable diameter, but usually smaller than a red blood-cell. A striking feature is the presence in the center of each plate of an aggregation of more or less closely packed granules forming at times a sharply defined opaque homogenous mass suggesting a nucleus. Wright holds that they are detached portions of the cytoplasm of those giant cells of the bone-marrow and spleen named megakaryocytes to distinguish them from the multinuclear giant cells of the marrow, the so-called osteoclasts or polykaryocytes. They are readily demonstrated unstained by placing a drop of fresh blood at the edge of a cover-glass laid on a slide, whence the blood is drawn in by capillary attraction.

*Fibrin* is not stainable, but its delicate threads may be seen after a time in specimens prepared as directed.

It is the study of the *colorless corpuscle* which is most facilitated by the staining process. By it are differentiated first the different varieties of white cells. They include the following:

1. *The Small Lymphocyte* (C, plate opposite p. 712).—This consists of a greenish blue nucleus as stained by the acid fuchsin of Ehrlich's triple solution. With Wright's it assumes a deep purplish blue. It is about as large as a red disk, surrounded by a thin, slightly stained, scarcely visible or even invisible ring of protoplasm. The small lymphocyte is from 5 to 10 micromillimeters in diameter.

2. *The Large Lymphocyte or Large Mononuclear Cell* (B, plate, Fig. 1).—This presents the same characters as the small lymphocyte, but is larger and paler. Both nucleus and protoplasm have increased in size, but the former more than the latter. The protoplasm continues free of granules, as a rule, but fine and pale granules may be brought out by intense basic stain like methylene-blue. Between the small and large lymphocyte are intermediate forms. These cells have a common origin and represent different stages of development. It was formerly erroneously supposed that the large mononuclear cell arose from the spleen and the small one from the lymph glands. The large lymphocyte may have a diameter of 13 to 15 micromillimeters. Both large and small cells sometimes show a disposition to division of the nucleus.

3. *Transitional Leukocytes* (B. Plate, Fig. 2, at right).—These differ from the large mononuclear cells only in the fact that the nucleus is indented or horseshoe-shaped, and are a still more mature cell than the large lymphocyte. Its protoplasm is like that of the large mononuclear leukocyte, but neutrophilic. The protoplasm of the three varieties described is therefore quite similar.

4. *Polymorphonuclear or Polynuclear Cells*.—These include three subdivisions:

- (a) *Polymorphonuclear Neutrophiles* (B, plate opposite p. 705).—These are regarded as matured leukocytes. They make up the majority of the white cells of the blood and of pus. They are large, possessed of an irregular nucleus, often bent or twisted into fantastic shapes, which stain a light blue in Ehrlich's tricolor fluid. With Wright's stain the nucleus takes an intense navy-blue color. Different parts of the nucleus are variously distinct, according to the distance of such parts from the surface, and thus the impression of a polynuclear cell is often produced, though a multiple



The total mean number of leukocytes in health is about 8000 per cubic millimeter.

*Cell Forms Rarely or not at all Found in Normal Blood.*—(a) *Myelocytes.*—The *myelocyte* of Ehrlich, or *marrow cell*; Cornil's "*cellules medullaires*" (A, Fig. 1, plate opposite p. 705).—Certain large leukocytes twice or three times as large as a red blood-disk and corresponding in all respects to the large granular cells of the bone-marrow are thus named. They are the variety of leukocyte most numerous in the bone-marrow, in which lymphocytes, polymorphonuclear cells, as well as eosinophiles, are also found. Their protoplasmic granules are commonly neutrophilic, but occasionally eosinophilic. They are recognizable only by the Ehrlich staining methods. The nucleus stains pale in the Ehrlich-Biondi stain, is large, single, at times smooth, at others irregular, and sometimes showing a tendency to degeneration. Smaller cells exhibiting all the characteristic features of true myelocytes are sometimes met associated with the large variety. Myelocytes resemble the large lymphocytes, differing, however, in the presence of granules. They differ also from the polymorphonuclear cells only in the shape of the nucleus. They may be an intermediate stage between the large lymphocytes and polymorphonuclear cells. Their granules are usually exactly like those of the latter, although at times these granules are also eosinophilic.<sup>1</sup> Rarely if at all found in normal blood, these cells are numerous in certain varieties of leukemia and occur also in pernicious anemia and in some infectious diseases. There is every reason to believe they are the cells originally described by Cornil as "*cellules medullaires*."

Degenerate forms of leukocytes are found in leukemia and occasionally in other conditions.

The commonest forms of degenerated leukocytes are thus described by Cabot.

1. "A homogeneously stained mass looking like a washed-out, structureless nucleus that has lost its protoplasm and become ragged at the edges (karyolysis).

2. "The same intensely stained.

3. "Vacuolization of the nucleus or of the protoplasm.

All these forms of degeneration affect chiefly the lymphocytes and large mononuclear forms. In the granular leukocytes we see all stages of breaking up; the granules are scattered about the field and the nucleus is pale, structureless, and deformed."

(b) *Nucleated Red Corpuscles* (D, plate opposite p. 712).—These are red cells possessed of a nucleus. They are usually divided into three classes: (a) *Normoblasts*, about the size of a normal red corpuscle; (b) *megalo-blasts*, large and irregular cells; (c) *microblasts*, very small cells, smaller than a normal corpuscle. These cells are variously regarded as regenerate and degenerate. The *normoblast*, representing an immature red corpuscle, is found normally in the bone-marrow, or "nursery" of red cells whence it may pass out prematurely before it has expelled its nucleus. Its nucleus stains deep blue, almost black with the Ehrlich-Biondi fluid. The nucleus is sometimes nearly or wholly separated into two parts. The cell is

<sup>1</sup> There is always a wide variation in the staining affinities of different granules, some assuming a much deeper color than others.

found in severe anemias, occasionally in large numbers. The *megaloblast* is very large, with a large nucleus, staining pale green or a robin's-egg blue with Ehrlich-Biondi fluid, and some shade of blue with Wright's stain while the protoplasm often stains abnormally (polychromatophilia). It is found nowhere in the normal adult body, but it does occur in *fetal* marrow and in grave forms of anemia along with the normoblast. Ehrlich regarded it as degenerate, and the normoblast regenerate. The *microblast* is still smaller than the normoblast. It is variously regarded as degenerate and as a younger normoblast. Its nucleus is like that of the normoblast. It is found in the blood in anemias. Irregular or atypical forms are also met. The smaller forms of nucleated cells appear in the earlier stages of anemia, the megaloblasts and irregular forms in the more advanced stages.

Muller's<sup>1</sup> "*blood dust*" (hemoconien) is the latest discovered constituent of normal and pathological blood. It consists of small, round colorless granules resembling the smallest fat drops, about  $\frac{1}{4}$  to one micromillimeter in diameter, highly refracting and characterized by molecular movement. According to Stokes and Weyforth<sup>2</sup> they may be the extruded granules of neutrophilic and eosinophilic leukocytes.

### THE ANEMIAS.

Broadly defined, anemia means "bad blood." It is further subdivided into *local* and *general*. The former is known also as *ischemia*. Its special consideration requires but brief treatment in a text-book of medicine. It is illustrated by the pallor of the fainting person, and by that interesting disease known as Raynaud's disease, which will be considered with diseases of the nervous system.

By *general anemia* is meant any state of the blood in which there is a diminution of its total bulk, its red corpuscles, its hemoglobin—any one or all of these. The first is the condition which ensues from a large hemorrhage of any kind, as from the rupturing of an aneurysm, erosion of a blood-vessel, such as sometimes happens in ulcer of the stomach or in tuberculosis of the lung, or from a blood-vessel wounded in any way. In all instances, however, where the hemorrhage is not fatal the original bulk of the blood is rapidly restored by the absorption of water and salts from the tissues, while the hemoglobin and albumin remain deficient until they can be restored by suitable nourishment. Practically, therefore, anemias resolve themselves for study into conditions in which there is a reduction in the amount of hemoglobin through a diminution in the total number of red corpuscles or in the proportion of coloring-matter in each corpuscle, or both.

Anemias are further divided into *primary* or *essential*, and *secondary* anemias. The former, strictly speaking, should include only those which are the direct result of a defect in the blood-making apparatus, while secondary anemias are those due to loss of blood, or some one of its important constituents, or from a defective supply of blood-making material. Richard C. Cabot defines primary anemia as an anemia "in which the causal factors

<sup>1</sup>"Centralblatt f. allg. Path.," viii., 1896.

<sup>2</sup>"Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin," December, 1897.



are entirely unknown or are insufficient to cause so severe a disease." That such a definition has some foundation will appear from the facts to be adduced as our study proceeds.

Among primary anemias are commonly included chlorosis, pernicious anemia, leukocythemia, lymphatic anemia or Hodgkin's disease, and splenic anemia. It is not conceded by all observers that pernicious anemia is the result of a defect in blood-making. In fact, each year adds more evidence to show that the conclusion of Quinke and William Hunter that it is a hemolysis, or disintegration of the red blood-corpuscles in the circulation or certain parts of it, especially in the liver, is the correct one. Particularly noteworthy are the studies of J. P. C. Griffith and C. W. Burr,<sup>1</sup> favoring such view. As the chain of evidence is not, however, complete, I shall for the present consider it among the essential anemias.

The secondary anemias are numerous, including those due to hemorrhage and other drains of various kinds on the economy, inadequate food, and defects in the digestive apparatus; also those due to the action of poisons on the blood—the toxanemias, including lead-poisoning and uremia.

## SECONDARY OR SYMPTOMATIC ANEMIA—SIMPLE ANEMIA

This form of anemia is the direct result of trauma, accidental hemorrhage, chronic disease, or toxic agents. I may again refer to the fact mentioned in the preliminary remarks on the anemias, that reasons are being found to show that some, at least, of the so-called essential anemias may be due to agencies tending to destroy the corpuscles, rather than to disease of the blood-making apparatus. The secondary anemias include:

1. *Anemias Due to Hemorrhage, however caused.*—Traumatic hemorrhage, post-partum hemorrhage, lung hemorrhage, and gastric and intestinal hemorrhages comprise most of these; ruptured aneurysms, purpura, and the bleeding habit furnish others. Parasites invading the intestinal canal may be causes of hemorrhage and consequent anemia. So may parasites elsewhere, as the *distoma hæmatobium* in the kidney.

In nonfatal hemorrhages from these causes the immediate loss of blood in bulk is rapidly made up by the absorption of water from the gastrointestinal tract, but a long time is required, even under favorable circumstances, before the corpuscles and hemoglobin are restored. At other times regeneration is quite rapid, restoration being complete in ten days. The hemoglobin is always rather more reduced than the corpuscles, but both increase for a time *pari passu*, as shown in the appended chart. The albuminous constituents are more rapidly restored.

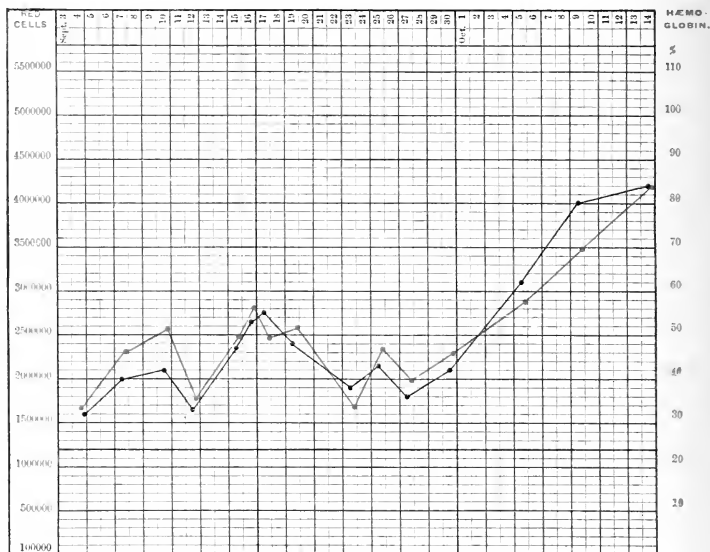
2. *Anemias Due to the Drain of Chronic Disease.*—Such are chronic Bright's disease, suppurative processes, cancer, or prolonged lactation, or chronic diarrhea. In this group belong the anemias of acute malaria, in which the corpuscle is directly consumed by the plasmodium.

3. *Anemia from Inanition.*—This results from starvation, which may be the practical consequence of diseases which interfere with the successful ingestion and assimilation of food, such as obstruction of the esophagus

<sup>1</sup> "Pathology of Pernicious Anemia," "Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," vol. vi., 1891.

by cancer or otherwise, or chronic and prolonged dyspepsia. Carcinoma of the stomach may also be included in this group. The last two groups (2 and 3) overlap.

4. *Toxic Anemias*.—Finally, there remain the toxic anemias. These are the result of the presence in the blood of such substances as lead, acquired by painters or workers in lead-paint factories, type-setters, and type-founders; also arsenic from dress fabrics, wallpaper, and furniture coverings; mercury, and certain disease poisons, among which that of chronic malaria is the most conspicuous. The same is true of other infec-



cases. Yet a total reliance dare not be placed on it, for it sometimes happens that the skin and even the lips are pale, and yet no anemia is found when the blood is examined. On the other hand, the skin and lips may have a good color, and yet anemia be actually present. Weakness, faintness, vertigo and palpitation are also symptoms.

In addition to these are the blood changes, which vary with the degree of anemia. Both corpuscles and hemoglobin are reduced, not always *pari passu*, the hemoglobin commonly in somewhat larger proportion. The disproportionate lowering of the hemoglobin is explained by a more than natural paleness of the red corpuscles. Their average size is reduced, while there is also a moderate poikilocytosis. Nucleated red corpuscles also make their appearance soon after a hemorrhage. The normoblasts and microblasts are the prevailing forms. They exhibit, after staining with hematoxylin, a deep-blue nucleus, while free nuclei are occasionally found. Microcytes, megalocytes, and poikilocytes are present in advanced cases.

The colorless corpuscles are moderately increased, such increase being represented by the multinuclear neutrophiles, while the small mononuclear lymphocytes are diminished. The leukocytosis gradually disappears with the return of the blood to its normal state. The presence of leukocytes as well as of the nucleated red corpuscles is evidence of regenerative activity. The proportion of the different varieties is nearly normal. In severe cases the lymphocytes may be in excess and the polymorphous leukocytes be reduced. Myelocytes are exceptionally present.

**Diagnosis.**—In addition to the blood changes more or less common to all of these causes of anemia, the same general symptoms of pallor, lassitude, debility, and faintness which characterize the essential anemias are also present in less degree.

While a feature of simple anemia is the nearly coequal reduction of the hemoglobin and corpuscles this is not true of all forms. Thus in lead-poisoning, as a rule, the hemoglobin is reduced in larger proportion than the red cells, resembling in this respect chlorotic anemia. Lead-poisoning is further characterized by a higher grade of leukocytosis than the other forms of symptomatic anemia. The history of the case in the presence of one of the causes named is of itself sufficient to determine the diagnosis in many cases. The simple anemias are not always, however, sudden or rapid in their occurrence, and a study of the blood is often necessary to clear up a doubtful case.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of simple anemia is eminently satisfactory. The administration of nourishing food with rest is followed by a very rapid coequal rise in the hemoglobin and corpuscles, as is beautifully shown in the foregoing chart (Fig. 65) made from one of my cases in the Philadelphia Hospital. And when to the treatment by nourishing food we add the use of iron, there is nothing more to be desired. Full doses of iron are well borne in these cases, and we have the choice of almost any of the preparations, including Bland's pills of the carbonate, reduced iron, tincture of the chlorid, Basham's mixture, and the vegetable salts. Though full doses are here indicated, it is still unnecessary to give the massive doses recommended by some, as they are not absorbed and produce constipation. The rapidity of the cure in some of these is surprising.

## THE PRIMARY OR ESSENTIAL ANEMIAS.

These include chlorosis, *for the present* pernicious anemia, leukocythemia, lymphatic anemia, or Hodgkin's disease, or pseudoleukemia, and splenic anemia.

## I. CHLOROSIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Morbus virginicus; Green Sickness; Chloremia; Chloranemia.*

**Definition.**—An essential anemia most frequently met in young women, characterized by a very marked relative reduction in the hemoglobin of the blood.

**Etiology.**—As stated in the definition, it is a disease of women, and especially of young women. Yet its occurrence is not impossible in men having the habits and occupations of women, among whom Hermann Eichhorst especially instances tailors. Moreover, while it is especially a disease of young women from about the age of puberty to 24 years, it is also possible in those who are older, as well as those who are younger. In the former it is known as *chlorosis tarda*, and as such is met in women between 30 and 40. Rather more frequent is its occurrence in children who have not reached the age of puberty. Niemeyer held that girls who menstruated at 13 or 14, in whom there was, as yet, no development of pubes or breasts, most invariably become chlorotic. The disease occurs the world over, and is apt to be recurrent in the same individual. It is more common in blondes than in brunettes, in the weak and delicate, rather than the strong and vigorous. Yet this general truth is not without exception.

Among predisposing causes are overwork, especially in closely confined and ill-ventilated rooms, insufficient nourishment, exhausting drains, such as prolonged lactation and profuse menstruation. Menstrual derangement is, however, also a consequence as well as a cause. Sustained or repeated emotion, especially such as arise from sexual excitement and masturbation, is a cause. Homesickness and grief are included among causes.

The frequent association of constipation with chlorosis led Sir Andrew Clark to suggest that it might really be a copremia, or poisoned blood due to absorption from the large bowel of poisons of the nature of ptomains and leukomains. Such poisons may readily interfere with the proper development of the hemoglobin of the blood-disk, without in a great degree causing its destruction. Similar is the hypothesis of Bunge that intestinal putrefaction due to imperfect stomach digestion is the cause of chlorosis, through sulphur generated in fermentations interfering with the digestion and assimilation of iron. These views explain what seems to me a closer relation between chlorosis and pernicious anemia than has commonly been admitted, a relation consistent with the newer etiology of pernicious anemia, as well as with features in its clinical course, and with the results of treatment, to which attention will be called when considering the latter affection.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Other than the changes in the blood, to be considered under symptoms, there is no essential morbid anatomy in chlorosis.

Many years ago Virchow pointed out an imperfect development of the circulatory apparatus as more or less characteristic—that the heart was small, the right ventricle sometimes dilated, the aorta and its larger branches were poorly developed and thin-walled. Such a condition, when present, is probably an accidental coincidence. There is no enlargement of the spleen or lymphatic glands. Imperfect development of the uterus and other genitalia has been noticed. The rarity of fatal termination in chlorosis may limit our knowledge of the morbid anatomy, uncertain at best.

**Symptoms.**—Of these, the *blood changes* may be regarded as fundamental, though not absolutely constant. They consist in a decided reduction in the hemoglobin, with a moderate reduction in the size and number of the red corpuscles—microcytosis and oligocythemia. Thus, the hemoglobin value of each red disk is diminished. The usual range may be put at from 3,500,000 to little less than normal. Thus, Thayer, in 63 consecutive cases in Osler's clinic, found the average 4,096,544, or over 80 per cent., and Lembeck found the maximum in one of 15 cases to be but 3,600,000. In a few instances, however, in cases of acknowledged chlorosis, there has been found a more decided reduction in the erythrocytes. One has been reported in which they were reduced as low as 1,190,000 in a cubic millimeter.

The hemoglobin, on the other hand, is much reduced, the average of Thayer's cases referred to being 42.3 per cent., which may be regarded as a fair average. This disproportionate fall in the hemoglobin, while not invariable, remains, however, a tolerably constant feature, producing sometimes a recognizable diminished intensity of color when the blood is seen *en masse*. Along with the lowering of hemoglobin the iron of the blood falls, as would be expected, since it is a constituent of the hemoglobin.

An increase of alkalescence, announced by Graeber<sup>1</sup> as a constant symptom, has not been found by Kraus<sup>2</sup> in his more exact methods of testing. Increased coagulability of the blood has been observed.

As to remaining changes, the red corpuscles may be *undersized*. This may be said to be a more or less characteristic change and with the diminished coloring-matter may be the only change. The red disks are sometimes appreciably paler than in health. They may be larger than in health (megalocytes). They may be altered in shape, constituting a small degree of poikilocytosis, a term suggested by Quincke. A very *slight* degree of *leukocytosis* may be rarely present, an average of 8467 in Thayer's counts, as contrasted with a mean normal of 6000 in the cubic millimeter, while the *blood plaques* in severe cases may also be increased. *Nucleated red corpuscles* are sometimes met, especially in the later stages, represented by the smaller forms (microblasts) which sometimes appear in crops. In this stage the corpuscles may assume irregular shapes. Myelocytes have rarely been met.

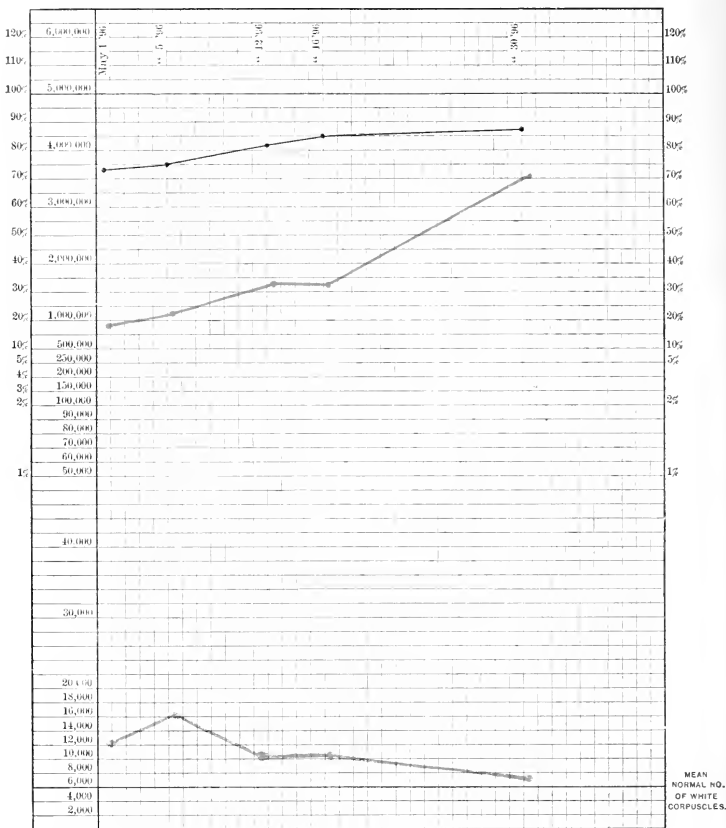
While the blood alterations in chlorosis are scarcely distinctive enough to be considered diagnostic, the *other symptoms* help greatly to the formation of a correct conclusion. The patient is almost invariably a girl, generally between 16 and 20, who, although she may have been over-worked, does not seem badly nourished; certainly she is not emaciated.

<sup>1</sup>"Zur. klin. Diagnostik d. Blutkrankheiten," Leipsic, 1888.

<sup>2</sup>"Zeitschrift f. Heilkunde," Bd. ii.

There is often derangement of menstruation, and sometimes the girl is hysterical.

Most striking, though not invariable, is a peculiar pallor, often exhibiting a yellowish-green tinge, extending to the lips, and especially the mucous membranes, and which is responsible for one of the names of the affection—*green sickness*. The patient is extremely weak, especially on



Red Corpuscles—Black.

Hemoglobin—Red.

Colorless Corpuscles—Blue.

FIG. 66.—Blood in Chlorosis.

exertion, and short of breath. She is subject to vertigo, palpitation of the heart, and even irregularity of the heart's action. Physical examination will sometimes discover functional cardiac murmurs; also a systolic murmur at the apex, ascribed by Balfour to a relative insufficiency of the mitral valve due to dilatation of the left ventricle. Rarely, a compensatory hypertrophy of the left ventricle has been noticed, but never actual valvular

disease. Sometimes a *bruit de diable*, or humming-top murmur, may be heard over the right jugular. Epigastric pain is also a symptom at times. It must not be forgotten that a chlorosis late in life, or *chlorosis tarda*, does sometimes occur. Fever is not rarely present. On the other hand, the hands and feet are often cold.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is based chiefly upon the age and sex of the patient, the peculiar greenish-yellow color, the paleness of the lips, and the decidedly diminished hemoglobin, unaccompanied, as a rule, with a proportionate reduction in the number of erythrocytes. The same lost normal ratio between the hemoglobin and the corpuscles is also a characteristic of *lead-poisoning*, which has, however, superadded its own characteristic symptoms, and is almost restricted to adult males.

The epigastric pain mentioned as occurring in chlorosis resembles that more common in *ulcer of the stomach*. The anemia which so constantly attends ulcer of the stomach, often in a high degree, is, however, different from that of chlorosis, there being a corresponding decline in the number of the erythrocytes and their coloring-matter. At least, the reduction is not so widely disproportionate as in chlorosis. Subacidity of the gastric juice is not as common in chlorosis as was at one time supposed, nor is there motor deficiency. This aid to diagnosis is therefore wanting.

A not infrequent error of diagnosis in connection with chlorosis is the mistaking of it for a "decline," a *pulmonary consumption*, which it resembles in the pallor, the feebleness, and shortness of breath of the patient. The absence of emaciation, of cough, and of the physical signs of consumption exclude that disease. On the other hand, evidences of tuberculosis should always be sought where the symptoms of chlorosis prevail. Latent *cancer* is also sometimes responsible for similar symptoms.

Most frequently chlorosis is confounded with *secondary anemia*, and with reason. Close observation will recognize in chlorosis the yellowish tinge of the skin and mucous membranes, while the sclerotic coat remains white or bluish. The most constant difference is in the reduction of hemoglobin, which is disproportionately large in chlorosis. Leukocytosis is less frequent in chlorosis; so are nucleated red cells. In advanced degrees of chlorosis the blood approaches nearer that of *pernicious anemia*, in which, however, the blood coagulates more slowly. The question whether a chlorosis will be transformed into that more serious variety of anemia known as pernicious anemia has been raised. This seems not impossible. If the view of Sir Andrew Clark be accepted, that chlorosis may result from the absorption of poisonous substances from the larger bowel, and if pernicious anemia be due to the absorption of more intense poisons from the small intestine, the difference is only one of degree. Both are characterized by defects in the cellular constituents of the blood. In the one, chlorosis, the coloring-matter is chiefly wanting, although associated with this is usually found a small degree of morphological defect. In pernicious anemia both cell-shapes and coloring-matter are defective. In both diseases the oxygen-carrying office of the blood is interfered with, and thus important vital processes are embarrassed, the total suspension of which must be fatal.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is nearly always favorable when the disease is recognized and the proper treatment instituted. There are few results

more satisfactory in therapeutics than those of a properly treated case of chlorosis. Time is, however, necessary, and too rapid a cure must not be promised, several months and even longer being sometimes required.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is preeminently by iron, and it matters not very much what preparation is used. The tincture of the chlorid well diluted is probably the most easily assimilable, but the carbonate, in the shape of Blaud's pill, made by a double decomposition between the carbonate of potassium and the sulphate of iron, maintains its popularity, 1 to 5 grains (0.06 to 0.2 gm.) being given at a dose three times a day. Much larger doses are sometimes given, as much as 45 grains (3 gms.) a day. I repeat that iron is given in too large doses in the majority of cases for which it is prescribed. Most of it is unabsorbed, and therefore wasted. Nay, worse, that which is unabsorbed locks up the intestinal secretions by its astringency, produces headache, and makes the patient otherwise uncomfortable. But chlorosis is one of the few diseases in which large doses of iron are well borne. The reason is plain. It is the iron-holding constituent of the blood which is wanting, and the iron is needed to replace it. The blood is, as it were, hungry for it. Reduced iron or one of the vegetable salts of iron may be given. Next to iron comes arsenic. The efficiency of iron is greatly aided by union with arsenic, which should be given in increasing doses, but short of toxic effect.

Hydrochloric acid in full doses, originally suggested by Zander on the ground of supposed deficiency of this acid in the digestive fluid in chlorosis, is useful also in promoting the solubility of iron, as well as for its tonic and antiseptic properties.

But to give these drugs alone is not sufficient. *Rest* in bed, at first continuous, is imperative to secure a rapid result, and this must be associated with an abundance of good food. Daily massage, except during menstruation, is also a useful adjuvant. There is no condition in which the so-called "rest cure" is more efficient than in chlorosis. With a return of color to the lips, or, better, with the growing increase in the hemoglobin as measured by the hemoglobinometer, the patient should be permitted to be out of bed at first from a half-hour to an hour only, but this should be gradually increased until she is up most of the day. For a long time, however, fatigue should be avoided. To those who can afford it, a residence at the seaside materially aids convalescence. Indeed, I know of no condition so rapidly improved at the proper time by sea air as chlorosis. To the poor, a well-regulated hospital treatment is a boon for which there is scarcely a substitute.

## II. PROGRESSIVE PERNICIOUS ANEMIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Idiopathic Anemia; Pernicious Anemia.*

A second variety of essential anemia is *pernicious* or idiopathic anemia, originally described by Addison in 1855 in his celebrated paper on "Diseases of the Suprarenal Capsules." Interest in the subject was revived by Biermer in 1868, and since then it has been thoroughly studied anatomically and clinically. It is, however, still the least understood of all the anemias.



**Definition.**—Pernicious anemia is an anemia in which the red corpuscles and hemoglobin are both reduced, the former in larger proportion, so that the hemoglobin appears in relative excess.

*Aplastic anemia* is a grave form of pernicious anemia characterized by a rapidly fatal course, and an "aplastic" bone-marrow, by which is meant a bone marrow lacking development, and which is pale yellow instead of dark red as in pernicious anemia.<sup>1</sup>

**Etiology.**—The etiology of pernicious anemia is very obscure. Evidence is accumulating in favor of a toxic hemolytic origin, the toxins being the result of some one of the associated conditions. Pregnancy seems to be in some way responsible for a certain number of cases. Such a condition, associated with the puerperal state and with functional disease of the uterus, was first described by Walter Channing<sup>2</sup> in 1842. The symptoms described by him are evidently those of pernicious anemia, though he called the condition simply "anemia." A. Gusserow<sup>3</sup> published, in 1871, a

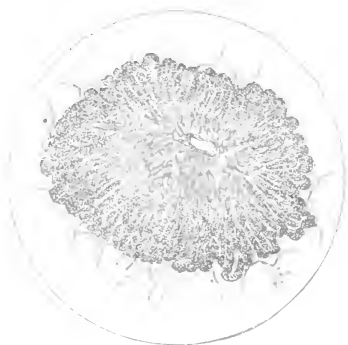


FIG. 67.—Liver Lobules in a Case of Pernicious Anemia, Showing Distribution of Iron Pigment—(after Griffith and Burr).

number of cases in pregnant women. It has also followed lactation. Other causes are cited, such as atrophy of the stomach, early noted by Flint and Fenwick, profound and long-continued gastrointestinal disease, and intestinal parasites, especially the *anchylostomum duodenale* and *bothriocephalus latus*, which undoubtedly produce symptoms clinically indistinguishable from the general anemia which Addison characterized as "occurring without any discoverable cause whatever—cases in which there had been no previous loss of blood, no exhausting diarrhea, no chlorosis, no purpura, no renal, splenic, miasmatic, glandular, strumous, or malignant disease." I have already expressed my partiality toward the view of Quincke and others, who ascribe the state of the blood to a hemolysis, in proof of which they point to the enormous accumulation of iron in the liver noted by Quincke in 1876 and confirmed by Rosenstein in 1877. To these, William Hunter added a pathological increase of the urobilin in the urine.

<sup>1</sup> For an admirable paper by R. S. Lavenson on "The Nature of Aplastic Anemia and its Relations to Other Anemias," see "American Jour. of Med. Sciences," Jan., 1907.

<sup>2</sup> "New England Quarterly Jour. of Medicine and Surgery," Boston, 1842-43.

<sup>3</sup> "Ueber hochgradigste Anämie bei Schwangerer," "Archiv für Gynäkologie," Berlin, 1871.

In a noteworthy paper, Griffith and Burr take the same view.<sup>1</sup> Figs. 67 and 68 are from Griffith and Burr's paper, and show the deposit of iron in the liver cells demonstrated by ferrocyamid of potassium. Such a hemolysis is most satisfactorily explained on the supposition of absorption from the intestine or elsewhere of poisonous products engendered under any of the circumstances named. Among these may be included the products of imperfect digestion, such as may be expected to arise when there is atrophy of the gastric tubules.

The disease is widespread, and not rare in this country. It affects mostly those past middle age, but children also have it, and Griffith mentions ten cases occurring under 12. It is more frequent in males.

**Symptoms.**—The approach of pernicious anemia is most insidious, beginning with a gradual *progressive weakness*. What is first interpreted



FIG. 68.—Cells from Liver in Pernicious Anemia, More Highly Magnified, Showing Position of the Iron Pigment within them—(after Griffith and Burr).

as a causeless weariness or languor grows slowly into an extreme debility, with faintness on the slightest exertion, and thence into a state of thorough muscular weakness, which ultimately prostrates the patient, and he is too weak to rise from bed. To this succeeds a state of mental hebetude and bodily torpor. *Yet there is no emaciation.* The body bulk is well preserved. The skin acquires gradually a *lemon-yellow* hue, and sometimes an actual jaundice, whence the disease has been mistaken for the slower form of yellow atrophy of the liver, a mistake not altogether unsustained by other symptoms. In fact, the jaundice is similarly caused. It is probably a hemato-genous jaundice, a matter of blood disintegration, although it has also been ascribed to defective cell action on the part of the liver. The mucous membranes, on the other hand, are blanched, as may be noticed in the lips, gums, and mouth.

<sup>1</sup>*Loc. cit.*

*Cardiovascular symptoms* are especially conspicuous in progressive pernicious anemia. Heemic murmurs, visibly pulsating and throbbing arteries, even pulsating veins, have been noticed. The large, but soft, jerky pulse, resembling that of aortic regurgitation, was mentioned by Addison. The capillary pulse is also frequently seen, and hemorrhages, cutaneous and retinal, occur.

*Digestive derangements* form an important part of the symptomatology of pernicious anemia. Indisposition to take food or, rather, a disgust for food, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea are often troublesome symptoms. Sore mouth and sore tongue are often present. *Hydrochloric acid* is constantly deficient in gastric digestion (achylia gastrica). *Moderate* elevation of *temperature*, irregular and intermittent, is also noticed, while *nervous symptoms*, including numbness, languor, and even paralysis, are some-

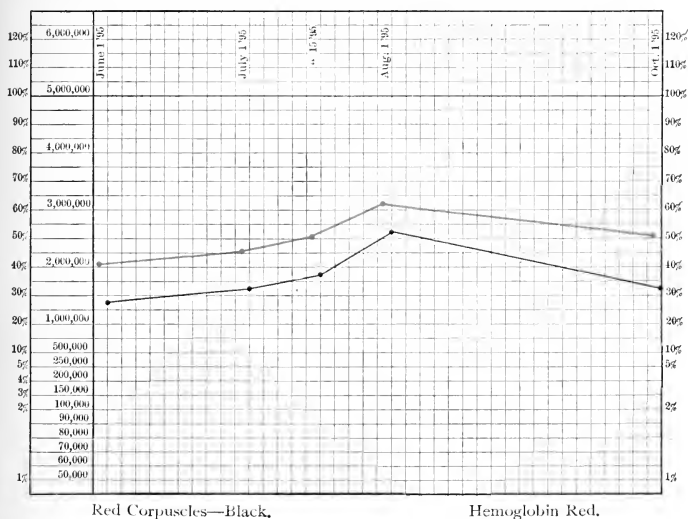


FIG. 69.—Blood in Pernicious Anemia.

times present. Paresthesia is especially emphasized as an early symptom, even the earliest.

The *urine* exhibits no constant changes, being sometimes pale and sometimes dark-hued. The dark color is ascribed by Mott and Hunter to an excess of urobilin.

*Blood Changes.*—The changes in the blood are more distinctive than in chlorosis, although it is true also that there is no single constant characteristic feature. It may be pale and watery. The most constant feature is a very decided oligocythemia, without a corresponding reduction in the hemoglobin, *in toto*, is much reduced. Rarely it has been found increased. Quincke found as few as 143,000 corpuscles in a cubic millimeter of blood, while it is not uncommon to find less than half a million. Frederick P. Henry found 315,000 a few hours before death,

and Laache 360,000. In a case under my own care at the Philadelphia Hospital, in 1898, the red disks fell to 437,000, and the hemoglobin to nine per cent., death taking place two days after the count was made. The inevitable conclusion from the average of cases observed is that either the hemoglobin value of each corpuscle must be increased, or there is a hemoglobinemia, which has its seat in the plasma. This latter view Silbermann has adopted, because he has been able to produce, by the administration of blood-corpuscle-dissolving substance, as pyrogallol, to animals, a complex of symptoms like those of pernicious anemia. If pernicious anemia be a hemolysis, as seems likely, rather than a defective hematogenesis, we would expect such a hemoglobinemia to result.

The changes in the red cells point preeminently to degeneration of these bodies. Among these changes is an *increase in the size of the red corpuscles*. They become *megalocytes*, from ten to fifteen micromillimeters in diameter, as compared with a normal of from 6.5 to 9.4. The majority may be so enlarged. They are often also ovoid in form. Their abundant presence marks severity in the disease, but they are not essential to diagnosis. On the other hand, there are also *microcytes*—cells smaller than normal—and *poikilocytes*—corpuscles characterized by great irregularity in shape. While these irregular shapes were first demonstrated in connection with pernicious anemia, and although they are more or less characteristic, cases of the disease have been described by Grainger Stewart, Lepine, Hermann Müller, and others, in which poikilocytosis was altogether absent. Neither megalocytosis, microcytosis, nor poikilocytosis is therefore a pathognomonic feature. *Polychromatophilia*.—A condition in which the erythrocytes stain irregularly and unevenly is always present and accompanies the enlargement of the cell. Basic granulation or granular degeneration of the red cell, a variety of polychromatophilia, is very frequent.

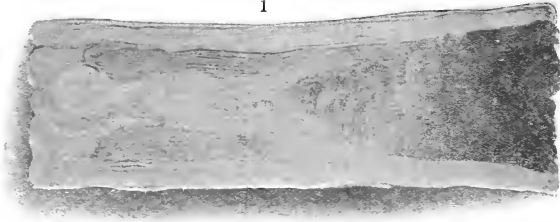
*Nucleated red corpuscles* are a constant constituent of the blood of pernicious anemia, and have also been regarded by their discoverer, Ehrlich, as almost pathognomonic. Two kinds are found—first, the small, normal-sized corpuscle with its deeply stained nucleus (normoblasts), and certain large forms with pale nuclei (megaloblasts). They are not confined to this disease. Blood plaques are either absent or very scanty. Karyokinesis is rarely found in these larger cells, but when present in connection with the other changes it is regarded by some as almost pathognomonic. *Leukocytes* are usually slightly diminished in number due to a decrease in the polymorphonuclear leukocytes, while there is a tendency to an increase of the mononuclear white cells, as compared with health. F. P. Henry<sup>1</sup> has called attention to a fact which condenses the peculiarities of the blood changes, by saying that in this disease the red corpuscles "approach those of the lower animals in many, if not all, of their chief characteristics—namely, in their number, their size, their shape, and the amount of hemoglobin they carry."

There are also sometimes found in the blood numerous minute highly colored spherical bodies, called *Eichhorst's corpuscles*. Eichhorst regarded them as pathognomonic, but they, too, are sometimes absent. When present they contribute to the hemoglobin in the blood, but as they are not

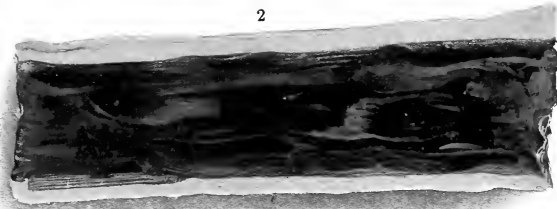
<sup>1</sup> "Anemia," Philadelphia, 1887.



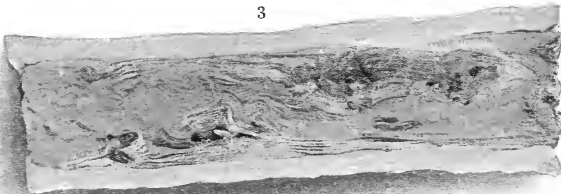
1



2



3



4



BONE MARROWS.—1. Normal. 2. Typical progressive pernicious anemia. 3. Scattered areas of megaloblastic degeneration in progressive pernicious anemia. 4. Aplastic anemia —(From Lvenson's paper on *Aplastic Anemia* *Transac. Assoc. American Physicians*, vol. xxi, 1906.)

(To face page 711)

included in the blood-count, they get no credit for their effect. The relative excess of the hemoglobin may, in a measure, be thus accounted for.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Various tissues have been studied in the effort to find a morbid anatomy for pernicious anemia. In the absence of lymphatic involvement or enlargement of the spleen, except sometimes in small degree, the *marrow of bones* has claimed close study. H. C. Wood described the red condition of the marrow of long bones in 1871. It was further studied in this country by William Pepper<sup>1</sup> and myself,<sup>2</sup> and abroad especially by Cohnheim.<sup>3</sup>

Although the appearances described by these observers are not identical, they are sufficiently constant to justify their association as more than accidental. *Summed up*, they amount to this: Marrow dark red; consistence less soft; fat vesicles absent; specific lymphoid cells increased, including marrow cells of various sizes, containing one or more nuclei; numerous nucleated red corpuscles present, especially the larger forms, the giganto-blasts of Ehrlich. These studies were made before the days of differential staining and counting. More recent studies add neutrophiles and eosinophiles. These appearances are now commonly interpreted as due to an effort of the blood-making apparatus to reproduce the disintegrated erythrocytes. They are not, however, constant, as the marrow is sometimes pale or yellow. It is a compensatory process, an irregular attempt at regeneration as contrasted with "aplastic."

The appended illustrations from Lavenson's paper shows well the contrast between normal and diseased bone-marrow.

The deposition of *iron in the liver cells* has already been alluded to. It is found in the outer and middle zones of the lobules, and may be so distributed as to outline the bile capillaries. It is regarded by Hunter as characteristic. I have myself examined the preparations of Griffith and Burr, and they are striking and seem unmistakable. The liver itself is often fatty and is sometimes enlarged. The iron is, in like manner, sometimes increased in the kidney, and spleen, and these organs are not otherwise essentially changed, though the spleen has been found reduced in size.

The *heart muscle* is fatty, while the other muscles are unusually red. Other *morbid changes* are described, but they cannot be regarded as essential. Such are changes in the ganglion cells of the sympathetic, and sclerosis of the posterior columns of the cord, first studied by Lichtheim.<sup>4</sup> Softening of the upper part of the lumbar cord has also been reported by Sir Dyce Duckworth.<sup>5</sup> While the associated changes in the posterior columns are so constant that they cannot be regarded as accidental, experimental studies by Burr and Griffith intended to determine this relation to pernicious anemia resulted in nothing definite. Complete atrophy of the secreting tubules of the *stomach* has been described by Fenwick, and by William Osler and F. P. Henry in one case studied jointly by them.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of pernicious anemia may be uncertain at

<sup>1</sup> "Progressive Pernicious Anemia," "American Journal of the Medical Sciences," October, 1895.

<sup>2</sup> "Die Betheligung des Knochenmarkes bei pernicioser Anæmie," "Virchow's Archiv," 1877, lxxi, 118-126.

<sup>3</sup> "Virchow's Archiv," October, 1876.

<sup>4</sup> "Congress für innere Medicin," 1887.

<sup>5</sup> "British Medical Journal," November 10, 1900.

first, but the true nature of the disease soon declares itself. The intense anemia, extreme weakness, digestive derangements, and cardiovascular symptoms, in connection with blood-count of 1,000,000 or below, with a relative increase, or at least no proportionate diminution, in the hemoglobin, and an admixture of megalocytes, microcytes, and poikilocytes, point to a condition scarcely mistakable. It may be said, moreover, that almost never in the case of a pernicious anemia do the number of corpuscles fail to fall below 1,000,000. The large forms of nucleated red corpuscles have been regarded as characteristic, but are also found in leukemia (see also diagnosis of Cancer of the Stomach, p. 398).

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is to-day regarded as less unfavorable than it was a few years ago, since recent experience has developed the fact that temporary improvement is not uncommon, and it is said that recovery sometimes takes place. Still, Addison's original prognosis, of a termination sooner or later fatal, is seldom astray.

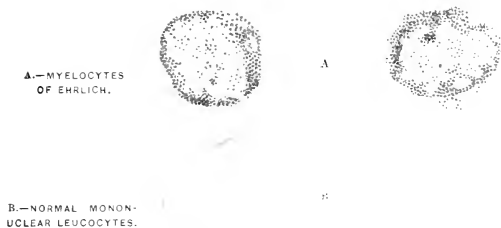
**Treatment.**—Treatment of this form of anemia is, moreover, not fruitless. The same measures which are almost a specific for chlorosis are not without effect in pernicious anemia. Accordingly, arsenic, to a less degree iron, good food, and favorable hygienic surroundings, are to be adopted. The arsenic treatment has been followed by results which justify the words "temporary cure," and it is said that permanent cure has followed. Such temporary cures have covered a period of three years. The best preparation appears to be Fowler's solution, in gradually increasing doses, until 20 and even 30 minims (1.3 to 2 c.c.) are reached, and this three times a day. It should be continued for a long time, for weeks or months, with intermissions of a few days if unpleasant results appear, to be again resumed. Arsenic is not a specific for pernicious anemia, but the results of its use are often surprisingly gratifying. Cakodylate of sodium has been recommended as less irritating than other preparations of arsenic, being suitable also for hypodermic use. The dose is  $\frac{1}{2}$  a grain (0.033 gm.), three times a day. Atoxyl is still another preparation of arsenic given in doses of  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.022 to 0.033 gm.) hypodermically every other day. Inhalation of oxygen has also been recommended, as advised in leukemia. The relation between chlorosis and pernicious anemia, already referred to, is sustained by therapeutic results. Certain cases of chlorosis very closely resemble pernicious anemia, especially when not arrested by treatment. The arsenic, administered as directed, is wonderfully well borne, nausea and vomiting being rare. Rest in bed is indispensable, but should be supplemented with massage, if possible. Food should be in easily assimilable shape, such as beef-juice, beef-peptonoids, and peptonized milk. Pernicious anemia is one of the diseases in which much was expected from the use of *bone-marrow*, originally suggested by Thomas R. Fraser.<sup>1</sup> Fraser used 3 ounces (90 gm.) daily of beef-marrow, in addition to iron and arsenic, with apparent cure. At the present day the glycerids are used in doses of  $\frac{1}{2}$  an ounce (15 c.c.), three times a day. I have had some experience with it, but my results have not been very encouraging. Salol has been suggested as an intesti-

<sup>1</sup>"British Medical Journal," June 2, 1894.



PLATE V.

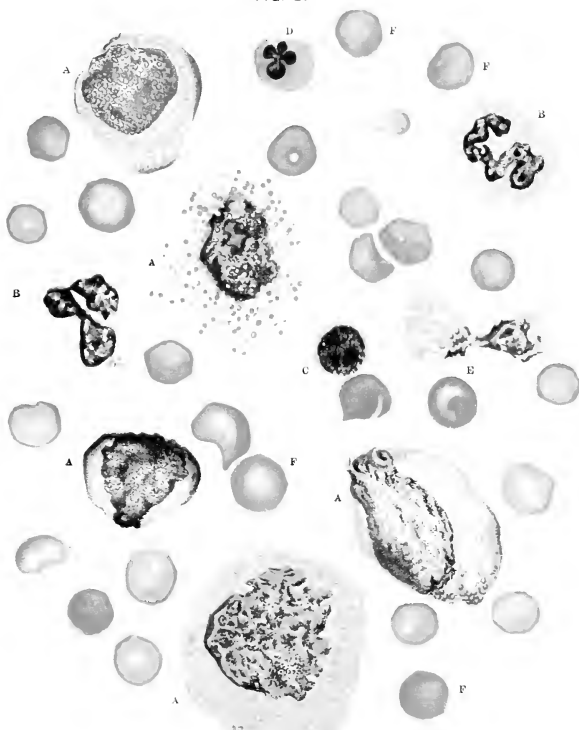
FIG. 1.



1100  
1

FIG. 1.—STAINED WITH METHYL-GREEN—ORANGE G—ACID-FUCHSIN, NUCLEI GREEN, NEUTROPHILIC GRANULATIONS PURPLE.

FIG. 2.



1500  
1

FIG. 2.—STAINED WITH EOSIN-HAEMOTOXYLIN. A.—MYELOCYTES OF EHRLICH. B.—POLYNUCLEAR LEUCOCYTES. C.—LYMPHOCYTE. D.—NUCLEATED RED CORPUSCLE. E.—DEGENERATED NUCLEUS. F.—RED CORPUSCLES.

PLATE EXHIBITING STAINED CORPUSCLES FROM THE BLOOD OF A CASE OF LEUKAEMIA.



nal antiseptic, from the standpoint that the disease may be due to toxins absorbed from that canal. From the same point of view lavage of the large bowel through an opening into the cecum has been tried using peroxid of hydrogen and solutions of permanganate of potash. Recently, too, William Hunter has suggested the use of antistreptococcus serum to counteract possible general infection.

Transfusion of blood and of milk, which seemed at one time to give promise of favorable results, has been discontinued. At the present day, hypodermoclysis would probably answer the same purpose, and is much easier done.

### III. LEUKEMIA.

**Definition.**—A disease characterized by an enormous increase in the colorless corpuscles of the blood, by hyperplastic changes in the spleen, in the lymphatic glands, or bone-marrow, any one or more of these.

Pure splenic leukemias scarcely exist; pure lymphatic varieties are not very rare. Myelogenous leukemias were long denied, but their occasional occurrence is now admitted. Mixed splenic and medullary leukemias are the most common—called *lieno-medullary* or *lieno-myelogenic*.

The disease has been called *leukocythemia* as well as *leukemia*, the former of these words meaning white-cell blood, the latter simply white blood. From the etymological and histological standpoint, *leukocythemia*, suggested by Hughes Bennett, is the more accurate term, but Virchow's term, *leukemia*, has become the one in common use.

**Historical.**—The history of the development of our knowledge of leukemia possesses unusual interest. The older observers spoke of a purulent blood ascribed to an inflammation of this tissue, while Piorry and Rokitansky spoke of a hematitis as the cause of a literal pyemia. Craigie undoubtedly saw a case of the disease in Edinburg in 1841. He did not, however, publish the case until John Hughes-Bennett published his on October 1, 1845, in the "Edinburgh Monthly Journal of Medicine." Both Craigie and Bennett noted enlargement of the spleen. Rudolph Virchow published his case in Froriep's "*Notizen*" in the second or third week of November, 1845. The matter of priority between Bennett and Virchow has given rise to much discussion. There can be no doubt that Bennett's case was published first; also that he declared it unconnected with inflammation of any of the tissues, and especially unconnected with phlebitis, and that he attributed the condition to the development of white corpuscles in the blood. Craigie, on the other hand, ascribed it to the absorption of pus from an inflammatory lesion either in the mesenteric veins or the spleen. Virchow confirmed all the observations made by Bennett and published new cases, especially one of great importance, in which there was *enlargement of the lymphatic glands without enlargement of the spleen*. Virchow also said the blood changes consisted essentially in an increase of the colorless cells of the blood, and that these cells originated in the lymphatic glands. He also suggested the name *leukemia*, while Bennett did not suggest that of *leukocythemia* until 1851 in a series of papers, and again in 1852 in a separate work. It appears to me that Bennett is clearly entitled to priority, and was the first to interpret the condition as an increase in the colorless corpuscles of the blood, though he speaks of it as *pus*. Virchow's added point was ascribing the formation of the cells to the lymphatic glands.

Vogel first recognized a case during life in 1849. Virchow described two forms of the disease in his "Cellular Pathology," in one of which the smaller forms of leukocytes predominated and in which there was marked involvement of the lymph glands. In the second the larger white blood cells predominated, and there was marked enlargement of the spleen; hence he inferred that the lymphatic glands were at fault when the smaller cells predominated, and the spleen when larger cells prevailed. Varieties thus characterized do exist, but we dare not draw conclusions as to the organs involved as sharply as Virchow did. Large cells predominate in the *lieno-myelogenic* form, while small cells characterize the lymphatic variety. Inter-

mediate varieties, however, interfere with sharp distinctions. It was many years later that Neumann described a case in which the *bone-marrow* was markedly altered. Pure splenic forms scarcely exist, but a few myelogenic cases have been described. The pure *lymphatic form* does occur, but even this is rare. Most common is the mixed *lieno-myelogenous*. Seven cases of acute leukemia, in which more than the usual number of myelocytes were present, were published by Frank Billings, of Chicago, in 1903, under the title of acute myelogenous leukemia.

The extremely rapid course of certain cases of leukemia justifies its division into an *acute* and *chronic* form. Ebstein was the first to call attention to the acute forms reporting a fatal case in which the whole duration of the disease, including a prodromal stage, was but six weeks. Similar cases are reported by others.<sup>1</sup> Fraenkel collected all the cases to 1895, including ten of his own. M. H. Fussell<sup>2</sup> and A. E. Taylor collected 56 cases. Mina<sup>3</sup> in 1901, 69 cases. The duration of the chronic form may extend over years. Leukemic women have been repeatedly pregnant and have borne children at term.

Fraenkel concluded that all cases of acute leukemia are lymphatic in which the increase of white cells consists chiefly or almost exclusively of large or small lymphocytes. This statement has been apparently refuted by the authors just named to which must be added Frank Billings in the paper above mentioned (see history).

*Leukanemia* is a term applied by von Leube to a condition of combined leukemia and severe anemia. The disease lasts for from a few days to three months. It may begin suddenly with fever and severe tonsillitis to which are added weakness, hemorrhage, extreme pallor and rapid decline. There is often general glandular enlargement including the liver and spleen. The reduction of hemoglobin and erythrocytes with increase of lymphocytes usually the large form are conspicuous. The red cells may be as low as 1,500,000. The color index is high.

**Etiology.**—Nothing definite is known of the cause of leukemia. It occurs in all countries, in both sexes, and at all ages, although it is more common in middle life and in males. Cases have occurred in the eighth week and 70th year. It is sometimes hereditary, but leukemic women have borne nonleukemic children. It has succeeded upon exhausting illness. Malaria has been assigned as a cause, and certainly its association with this disease has been seemingly more than accidental. To a less degree this is true of syphilis. Pregnancy is said to favor it. It is said to have followed a blow or injury, and to have been found in the lower animals.

The idea of the infectious origin of leukemia, advanced by Klebs and supported by observations of Osterwold, Roux, Byrom Bramwell, Pawlowsky, Kelsch, Vaillard, and others, seems well founded, but no single microorganism has been found associated. A case has, however, been reported where an attendant on a case of leukemia contracted the disease and died. The frequent association of leukemia with stomatitis and intestinal ulceration was pointed out by Hunterberger.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Leukemia has a definite morbid anatomy, consisting in alterations in the blood and in the hemogenic apparatus, including the spleen, the lymphatic glands, and the marrow of bones, and

<sup>1</sup>"Wiener klin. Wochenschrift," 1894.

<sup>2</sup>"American Medicine", March 5, 1904.

<sup>3</sup>"Wiener med. Rundschau", 1901, Nos. 37 and 38.

it is called, accordingly, splenic, lymphatic, myelogenic, while combined or mixed forms are indicated by suitable compound terms, such as lienomyelogenous. Most leukemias are mixed.

In the first place, the *spleen* is almost always enlarged. It may be adherent to the abdominal walls, the diaphragm, stomach, or other viscera. The splenic changes exhibit three stages in their development. In the first, the spleen is simply hyperemic, soft, and swollen, sometimes even ruptured. The Malpighian bodies share in the hyperemia, and may be slightly enlarged, but are overshadowed by the swollen pulp. In the second stage, hyperplastic changes make their appearance in the Malpighian bodies, and as these grow the pulp is intruded upon. They may reach such size as to be recognized by the naked eye as spherical gray nodules one to three lines in diameter, or they may be elongated or forked following the course of the blood-vessels. The third stage furnishes the granitic spleen, in which white dots are separated by dark streaks representing the destroyed pulp, pigmented by the disintegrated blood. The spleen is now hard, and is cut with resistance. Its size may be enormous, and the organ may weigh from two to 18 pounds (1 to 9 kilos.). It does not attain as large size in acute leukemia as in chronic, being palpable in but 65 per cent. of cases.

The *lymphatic enlargement* is a true hyperplasia. Not only do the glands enlarge, but new foci of lymphatic tissue appear in various organs, as the liver and kidneys. These are regarded by some as simple extravasations of leukemic blood from the capillaries. All the more prominent groups may share in the enlargement—the cervical, axillary, inguinal, and perineal glands. The individual glands remain, however, soft. The lymphatic follicles in the tonsils and in the tongue, pharynx, and mouth may enlarge. This is also occasionally the case with the solitary glands of the intestine and the agminated glands of Peyer.

The *marrow changes* may be described, in a word, as reversion to the embryonal type of medullary tissue. The fat of the adult marrow has disappeared, and a mass of lymph cells mingled with nucleated red corpuscles in all stages of development takes its place. The marrow is often *pyoid*. The lymph cells include numerous large mononuclear cells, many in the act of division, also multinuclear leukocytes. There are also numerous marrow-cells or myelocytes and eosinophiles, like those found in the blood.

The *liver* is often enlarged, and, according to von Jaksch,<sup>1</sup> *pari passu* with the spleen, and it has this further peculiarity, that its edges are rounded, while in what he describes as *pseudoleukemia infantum* the edges are sharp, and the enlargement does not go hand in hand with that of the spleen. The liver is also at times infiltrated with leukemic patches and nodules, not unlike miliary tubercles. The same is occasionally true of the kidney.

The thymus gland has been found enlarged in some cases of acute lymphatic leukemia, and even the skin, stomach, and gastrosplenic omentum have been the seat of growths, presumably lymphatic. In fact, there is no situation in which such growths may not make their appearance.

<sup>1</sup>See cases reported by J. Chalmers Camerson and Saenger, *Sajous*, "Annual" for 1891, E.

The possibility of their being blood extravasations, white in consequence of the large proportion of white cells, is always to be remembered.

The lungs and heart alone seem free from encroachment by the lymphatic tissue. The heart may, however, be dislocated by a large spleen.

The alterations in the *blood* constitute really a part of the morbid anatomy of leukemia, but are commonly treated under the head of symp-

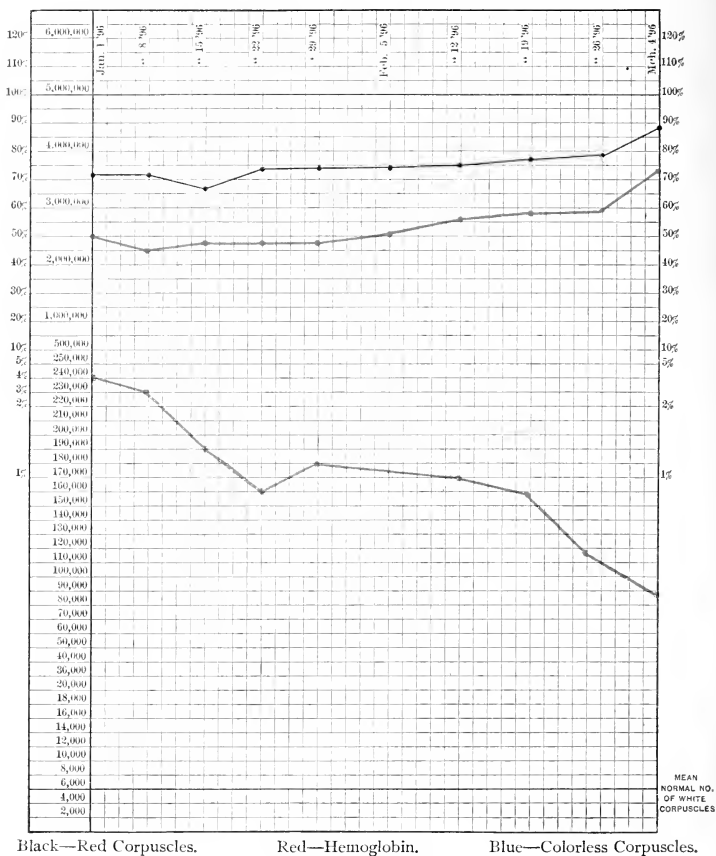


FIG. 70.—The Blood in Leukemia.

tomatology, where I, too, will consider them. An increase in the mass of the blood may, however, here be mentioned. The heart and vessels are commonly found gorged with blood, usually coagulated, sometimes whitish or yellow in color.

**Symptoms.**—The early symptoms of leukemia are precisely those of the other anemias, viz.: *Insidious onset, pallor, rapid breathing amounting*

to *dyspnea* on exertion, *weakness* and *faintness*, *headache*, *indigestion*, and *loss of appetite*. The last two symptoms may precede all others. *Emaciation* is ultimately added. *Moderate fever*, with rapid pulse, is also present in the majority of cases, the temperature sometimes reaching  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $39.4^{\circ}$  C.). Headache, more or less continuous, is a symptom. Enlargement of lymphatic glands or spleen or both are generally easily recognized. In a case recently under my care the first intimation of the presence of a *large spleen* was an attack of circumscribed *peritonitis*, favored, doubtless, by the presence of the splenic tumor and ascribed to exposure to cool air while perspiring. *Hemorrhages* from the nose and stomach are common, and dropsical swelling appears toward the close. *Nasal hemorrhages* are sometimes fatal. Thomas Oliver reported a case terminating fatally by sudden postperitoneal hemorrhage.<sup>1</sup> *Hematemesis* may be an early and almost initiatory fatal symptom. *Purpura hemorrhagica* sometimes presents itself as a manifestation of the same tendency, as may also cerebral hemorrhage, producing coma. *Priapism* is an occasional symptom; it is sometimes persistent, and in a case of Edes was the first symptom noticed.

The *urine* often contains a small quantity of albumin, is highly colored and scanty, and deposits a copious sediment of uric acid.

*Blood Changes*.—The blood exhibits a most marked and diagnostic change consisting in an *enormous leukocytosis*. The mean number in normal blood is about 8000 colorless corpuscles to the cubic millimeter, which, with the red disk at 4,500,000, makes the proportion 1 to 580; or with these at 5,000,000, to 1 to 625. There is a physiological leukocytosis which, after a full meal, may reach 1 to 150, and even 1 to 100, while there are pathological leukocytoses which quite equal those of many true leukemias. In leukemia, however, there may be 1 to 50, to 25, to 10, to 3, to 2, or the leukocytes may equal, and in rare cases even exceed, the red disks. The maximum proportion of colorless corpuscles impresses decidedly the color of the blood *en masse*, making it pink, or even the color of chocolate and milk, while aggregations of leukocytes may produce white streaks, and well justify the belief of the older pathologists that there was pus in the blood—a suppuration of the blood, as they called it.

There is also a reduction in the total number of blood-cells, including white and colored, the quantity in a cubic millimeter being sometimes reduced to between 2,000,000 and 3,000,000. This reduction may be even more positive, as in a case reported by Suchannek,<sup>2</sup> in which there were 301,600 red disks and 306,100 colorless corpuscles.

Numerous *nucleated red disks* are present, especially in the myeloid blood. Cabot says "the striking point is the presence of very numerous nucleated red cells even in the absence of any signs of anemia. With over 4,000,000 well-formed and well-colored red cells we may have hundreds of erythroblasts in every cover-glass. They are as numerous in this form of leukemia (myeloid) as in the worst forms of pernicious anemia, even though the patient be feeling very well." The hemoglobin falls below

<sup>1</sup>Sajous' "Annual" for 1890, vol. i., E, p. 12.

<sup>2</sup>Sajous' "Annual" for 1891, vol. ii., E, p. 18.

the normal proportion, so that the value of each disk is lowered. There is occasional poikilocytosis. The blood-plaques may be slightly increased. The beautiful plate opposite page 712 was made from the blood of a patient in the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania. (See also Diagnosis.)

An early discovery in the study of leukemia was that of certain transparent octahedral crystals, known as Charcot's crystals, which form in blood which has been kept for some time on slides. Neumann referred these crystals to the bone-marrow, but they are commonly conceded to be the same as those sometimes found in the expectoration and in feces and in seminal fluid. There is reason to believe they are decomposition products, and that they hold no essential relation to leukemia.

That the alkalinity of the blood is sometimes diminished is true; that it is ever replaced by acidity is not true, as was at one time held. Its specific gravity is lowered to 1030 to 1050. Leukemic blood coagulates slowly, a feature which has been ascribed to the presence of albumoses.

*Chloroma*, formerly known as "green cancer" and regarded as belonging to the sarcomas, is a tumor-like hyperplasia of the parent cells of the leukocytes, primarily in the red marrow of bones, and secondary in the periosteum. It is now classed among the leukemias because it is the result of a leukoblastic hyperplasia resulting in the formation of atypical leukocytes or leukocytes corresponding to some one of the normal types. In certain cases the hyperplasia of the parent cells is such that the new forms do not get into the blood stream in such numbers as to give a picture of a leukemia. Chloroma differs from other forms of leukemia in its marked neoplastic type and in the green infiltrations and metastases. As a consequence of the diminution of red cell-formation and replacement of the erythrocytes by the hyperplastic white-cell product, the bone-marrow is paler in color and there results an intense anemia—an anemia of deficient hematopoiesis and not one of excessive hemolysis.

The blood picture is not, however, uniform. The etiology is unknown as is also the green color.<sup>1</sup> An infectious origin has been suggested.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of leukemia requires the aid of the microscope, but with it it becomes easy. (See Blood Changes.) A refinement of diagnosis, thus aided, attempts with partial success to separate the different varieties, which are known as simple or complex, according as one or more of the cytogenous organs are implicated. Most leukemias are, however, mixed. In his monograph Hermann Rieder says that, so far as he knows, *pure splenic* and *pure myelogenous* forms have never been observed, while the *pure lymphatic* form does occur.<sup>2</sup> As above shown, the occurrence of myelogenous leukemia can no longer be denied, several cases having been reported. On the other hand, Ehrlich prefers to call the most common form the splenomedullary, "myelogenous," because he thinks the spleen is purely passive.

<sup>1</sup>See an exhaustive paper, "Chloroma with Leukemia," by George Dock and Alfred Scott Warthin "Trans. Assoc. American Physicians," vol. xix., 1904.

<sup>2</sup>"Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Leukocytosis," von Hermann Rieder, 1892, S. 36. Recall Virchow's announcement in "Cellular Pathology," in 1849, alluded to on p. 644, last paragraph.



## I. White cells in lieno-medullary leukemia.

	Average.	Normal.
Lymphocytes, small and large,	10.6 p.c.	24 to 38
Polymorphonuclear (neutrophilic),	46	62 to 70
Myelocytes (neutrophilic),	20 to 60	none
Eosinophiles,	4	.5 to 4
Coarse granular basophilic or mast cells,	1 to 10	.25 to .5
Nucleated red disks,	numerous	none
Poikilocytes,	numerous	none

## II. Lymphatic leukemia.

Lymphocytes (all forms).	90	20 to 30
--------------------------	----	----------

I. For the present I shall retain the term *splénomedullary* or lieno-myelogenous for the most usual form. The spleen is very large, and the leukocytosis is intense, the ratio of white to red corpuscles being one to three, one to two, or one to one. The *lymphocytes*, while actually increased, are *relatively diminished*—that is, instead of representing 20 to 30 per cent. of all the leukocytes, they represent a smaller proportion, an average of 10.6 per cent. The *polymorphonuclear cells* are increased as to absolute number, but the percentage is also reduced, particularly toward the close, to an average of 46 per cent., normal being 62 to 70 per cent. *Eosinophiles* are increased, but not their percentage, and they are not now assigned any distinctive significance, because so numerous in other conditions. But the most characteristic feature of this variety is the presence of the large *neutrophilic myelocytes*, and the more of these, the more likely is it that the leukemia is myelogenous. These cells are not present in normal blood. In leukemia the percentage rises, sometimes as high as 60 per cent. and often above 20, with an average of 35 per cent. *Basophilic leukocytes*, including "mast" cells, are much more numerous than in normal blood.

The red corpuscles are those characteristic of anemic blood, and nucleated cells are numerous.

II. Pure *lymphatic leukemia* is less frequently met, probably less than 15 per cent. of all the cases. The external lymphatic glands are most involved. The leukocytosis is not nearly so marked, the colorless cells scarcely ever exceeding one in ten, often only one in 40. The lymphocytes predominate, equaling 90 per cent., including all forms, large, small and mixed. Myelocytes are infrequent. In a case reported by Uthemann, 93 per cent. of all the leukocytes were lymphocytes, as compared with 15 to 30 per cent. in normal blood; in one of Osler's, 98 per cent. Even in the combined form lymphatic involvement is found. The superficial groups of glands are usually involved, but never to the same degree as in Hodgkin's disease.

Caution should be observed, too, in basing the presence of leukemia solely on a *leukocytosis*, as some remarkable instances of this condition have been reported wherein leukemia did not supervene. Thus, von Jaksch, in his studies of the anemia of children, found such proportions as one white to 12 red corpuscles, one to 17, and one to 20; and in the case

of an adult, one to eight, and still no leukemia followed.<sup>1</sup> Eighty thousand white corpuscles in a cubic millimeter are not unusual in leukocytosis, while 170,000 have been produced experimentally in the dog. The association of lymphatic or splenic or myelogenous change with the leukocytosis is therefore essential to a diagnosis. Nay, more, we must look to the proportions of the varieties of leukocytes. It will be remembered that in the most frequent form of leukemia at least, myelocytes predominate over lymphocytes and polymorphonuclear cells. But in most cases of nonleukemic leukocytosis the adult polymorphonuclear cells are in relative as well as actual excess—90 per cent. being made up of this form in leukocytosis. Rieder is also inclined to regard the cases of so-called acute leukemia as really acute inflammatory leukocytoses rather than leukemia.

Allusion has already been made to an anemia described by von Jaksch as *anæmia infantum pseudoleukæmia*, further studied by Loos and Luzet, which is not to be confounded with leukemia. Its essential feature is an enormous falling off in the red cells of the blood, often as low as 820,000. The proportion of leukocytes is always increased, but never to the same degree as in leukemia, nor is it so rapidly brought about. They have been found to the number of 54,666. On the other hand, the leukocytes are characterized by their varied shape and unusual size. The red cells display a high degree of poikilocytosis, while white cells inclosing red cells and fragments of red cells are also found, together with occasional eosinophilic leukocytes and large multinuclear neutrophilic leukocytes and nucleated red cells. All of these modifications of the blood-corpuscles may occur in leukemia, but in the latter disease there is not so marked a reduction either in the hemoglobin or in the number of erythrocytes. The difference in the form of the liver and splenic enlargement in the two conditions has been referred to on page 715. It has been suggested that this is a form of disease intermediate between pseudoleukemia, or Hodgkin's disease, and true leukemia.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of leukemia is unfavorable, the best that can be expected from treatment being the deferring of the fatal end. Some rather remarkable fluctuations are noted, and cases of cure are even reported, especially of late, by inhalations of oxygen. Osler saw a case ten years after the original diagnosis was made by Wm. H. Draper. The lymphatic leukemias are the more acute and more intractable.

**Treatment.**—The treatment has heretofore been mainly with iron, quinin, and arsenic, fresh air, and good food. Large doses of arsenic—as much as 30 drops (0.92 c.c.) of Fowler's solution, reached by gradual increment have been especially recommended and certainly should be tried.

Inhalations of oxygen, suggested in 1887, were used by Sticker and Pletzer with temporary benefit, and Da Costa and Hershey report the apparent cure of one case, a boy of 13, and such marked improvement in a man of 35 that he was thought for a time to be cured. This treatment deserves, therefore, to be tried along with that first named. Thirty to 100 liters (about 4 to 12 gallons) of oxygen are to be inhaled daily.

<sup>1</sup>*Op. cit.*, p. 29.

I used it faithfully in one case without results. *Bone-marrow* has been extensively used, but the results have been disappointing. It should, however, be tried in 1 fluidram (4 c.c.) doses of the glycerin solution, increased to 1/2 an ounce (16 c.c.), three or four times a day.

**Treatment by X-ray.**—The Roentgen ray has been employed in the treatment of leukemia, and no less than 109 articles have been published in the last two years (up to July, 1906) on this treatment of leukemia and pseudoleukemia. The results have not been uniform, although on the whole they may be said to be sufficiently encouraging to justify a trial in every case. No cures have been reported, although frequent remissions, one in which there was no recurrences for three and a half years after the exposures. It must not be forgotten that marked remissions in the progress of leukemia occur under any treatment. Certainly a trial of the treatment should be made where possible. There is no satisfactory explanation as to the action of the rays.

#### IV. LYMPHATIC ANEMIA—HODGKIN'S DISEASE.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Hodgkin's Disease; Pseudoleukemia; Lymphadenosis; Lymphadenoma; Malignant Lymphoma (Billroth); Adénie and Lymphadénie.*

**Definition.**—The disease consists essentially in an anemia accompanied by a fibroadenic enlargement of the lymphatic glands and the formation of lymphatic foci in the spleen and occasionally in other glandular organs, but unassociated with an increase in the colorless corpuscles of the blood.

**Historical.**—Hodgkin's paper, to which we are indebted for our first definite knowledge of the disease, appeared in 1832.

**Etiology.**—Its etiology is as undetermined as that of leukemia. Depressing influences of all kinds are believed to favor it. Scrofulosis has sometimes preceded it and tuberculosis been associated with it, but the conclusion reached after much discussion, is that it is not tubercular. The presence of an irritating (infection?) substance in the blood has been suggested, and the necessity of local irritation, associated with a lymphatic diathesis, has been insisted upon by Trousseau. It may occur at any age, but is more common in adult life, and in males.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Its morbid anatomy is, however, definite. There is both lymphatic and splenic involvement, the latter secondary to the former. The tonsils, intestinal lymphatic structures, and even the liver and kidneys may be invaded. There is, moreover, a deposition of new foci of lymphatic tissues decidedly more marked than in leukemia. The *lymphatic enlargement* usually begins first in the more superficial groups, as those of the anterior and posterior cervical triangles, the glands of the axilla, and the groin, but the entire lymphatic system may be involved, including the retroperitoneal glands, resulting sometimes in marked abdominal enlargement. Occasionally the overgrowth is limited to the deep-seated glands. Of the abdominal, the retroperitoneal are most frequently involved, producing tumors which have been mistaken for

myomata of the uterus. The bronchial glands may also be involved, and by their pressure produce dyspnea and suffocation.

The lymphatic enlargement is a hyperplastic one, shared by the cellular and trabecular tissue in varying degrees. When the former predominates, the product is soft and exudes a milky juice on section; when the latter, it is firm and resisting. The individual glands are not disposed to fuse nor to become adherent to adjacent tissue, differing in this respect greatly from glands enlarged by the tubercular process. The enlargement also exceeds that in leukemia.

Histologically,<sup>1</sup> the earliest changes as found in the smallest glands consist in increased vascularity with hyperplasia of the lymphoid cells and active proliferation at the germinal center, together with proliferation of the reticular endothelium. Mitotic figures are not infrequent in the reticular cells. The lymphoid sinuses contain many small and large mononuclear lymphocytes, epithelioid cells and a few eosinophiles. As the reticulum increases it grows coarser and the glands harden. In the last stages almost all traces of the normal structure are lost and only here and there are seen fragmentary remains of the lymphoid follicles and sinuses. In the spaces of the reticulum lie many small and large lymphocytes, plasma cells in large numbers, polymorphonuclear lymphocytes, eosinophiles in enormous numbers, epithelioid cells and large uninuclear and multinuclear giant cells. The giant cells, also often found in large numbers, are apparently traceable through the epithelioid cells to the endothelium of the reticulum. The various cell types are not equally distributed, lymphoid cells predominating in some parts, epithelioid cells in others, and giant cells and eosinophiles in others still.

After the lymph glands the *spleen* is more frequently involved. It is enlarged in various degrees, sometimes enormously. The changes in the enlarged spleen are quite different from those in Banti's disease or splenic anemia. On section, it is found filled with lymphomatous nodules composed of a tissue like that of the lymph glands. The earliest changes are seen in the Malpighian bodies. They consist in a hyperplasia of the lymphoid cells with early thickening of the reticular network and proliferation of the endothelial cells, forming grayish-white masses varying in size from a lentil to a walnut ( $1/4$  inch to an inch—.6 to 2.5 cm.), contrasting strongly with the dark red parenchyma. Typical uninuclear and multinuclear giant cells, eosinophiles and plasma cells are also present, sometimes abundantly. The connective tissue increases with the growth of the nodules in varying proportion. It is not reparative and represents an advanced stage of the disease.

The splenic enlargement is especially apt to be associated with enlargement of the retroperitoneal and bronchial lymph glands. It is more limited than in leukemia, the organ rarely exceeding ten inches (25 cm.) in length, as contrasted with the colossal size of the leukemic spleen. The spleen is not always involved, though Gowers found splenic enlarge-

---

<sup>1</sup>For a complete and thorough report of the histological changes in the organs and tissues in Hodgkin's disease, for which I am indebted for much contained in the text, the reader is referred to the excellent paper of W. T. Longcope, "On the Pathological Histology of Hodgkin's Disease with a Report of a Series of Cases," published in the Bulletin of the Ayer Clinical Laboratory of the Penna. Hospital, October, 1903.

ment in 75 per cent. of the cases collected and the organ contained lymphoid growths in 56 of these.

The *bone-marrow* is soft, very largely composed of cells, the fat being more or less replaced by lymphoid marrow. Myelocytes and large lymphocytes are the predominating cells, but myelocytes and polymorphonuclear leukocytes containing eosinophilic granules may also be numerous, though few of the typical bone-marrow giant cells are present, while the small lymphocytes are not relatively increased. Nucleated red blood-corpuscles are sometimes present in small numbers, usually of the normoblastic type. According to Longcope the most remarkable deviation from the normal consists in the great excess of the eosinophilic leukocytes and myelocytes, though he also says they may be absent.

The *liver* becomes the seat of secondary growths and is enlarged. The initial change is a deposit of small foci of lymphoid cells, in which take place the same changes as in the spleen and lymph glands. To this is added perilobular cirrhosis and fatty degeneration.

Similar changes may take place in the *thymus gland* and the kidney. Indeed, there is no organ in the body in which they may not occur, not excepting the nervous system. Paraplegia has resulted from pressure on the cord by growths in the spinal canal. The posterior nares may be occluded by invasion of the tonsils and the numerous lymphoid follicles in the pharynx. In like manner the intestinal walls may be invaded, producing thickening, while even serous surfaces do not escape.

The latest studies by Fischer, Reed, Longcope, Simons and Yanasaki go to show that the process is inflammatory and infectious, distinct from tuberculosis and Banti's disease, although tuberculosis may coexist.<sup>1</sup>

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of Hodgkin's disease are, again, the *pallor, weakness, dyspnea, palpitation, dizziness*, and other signs of anemia, concurrent with or even sometimes in advance of the glandular enlargement. There is quite often *fever*, very irregular and variable in degree, and cases have been observed by Murchison and De Renzi in which there was *paroxysmal glandular enlargement* coinciding with fever, the enlargement subsiding with the decline of fever, but not reaching the degree present prior to the enlargement. In a case of Laache's the glands diminished in size during the fever. In a case under my care in the wards of the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania in which the glandular enlargement was not conspicuous, there occurred an intermittent rise of temperature to a concurrent peritonitis, but the autopsy discovered this to be so limited that it is perhaps more reasonable to ascribe it to the febrile tendency characteristic of the disease.

The external glandular growths are variously conspicuous; occasionally, however, they are wholly absent. There is no fixed order of involvement, although the glands of the anterior and posterior cervical triangles commonly enlarge first, and with the acme of their growth produce a striking picture. The enlargement is not uniform, but at times remits and even ceases. It is said it may disappear altogether for a time. The glands are usually soft, sometimes there is even a sense of fluctuation.

<sup>1</sup>Reed, Dorothy M., on the "Pathological Changes in Hodgkins' Disease with especial reference to its relations to Tuberculosis, Johns Hopkins Hospital Reports," vol. x., 1902.

The glandular enlargements themselves contribute further to the symptoms by their effects. Thus, in the case of the bronchial glands, *dyspnea from pressure* on bronchi or trachea may occur, and may also be intermittent. Pressure elsewhere may lead to *pleuritic or abdominal effusions*, while the entanglement of nerves in the growth may cause *pain*. Erosion of bone may result. *Bronzing of the skin* has been found associated with enlargement of the abdominal glands. A *purpuric rash* is sometimes present in Hodgkin's disease, due perhaps to the hydremic state of the blood.

Macroscopically, the *blood* appears thin and pale. Minutely examined, the red corpuscles are diminished in number, although not always. Minimum counts make 960,000<sup>1</sup> to the cubic millimeter, while in a case reported by Henry,<sup>2</sup> that of a boy of five, with enormous enlargement of the right cervical glands, there were 5,462,000 to the cubic millimeter. Thus, the diminution is less than in pernicious anemia. The hemoglobin is, however, reduced to at least 60 per cent., furnishing thus one of the conditions essential to anemia. There are few nucleated red corpuscles and poikilocytes, and especially microcytes. The leukocytes may be slightly increased, occasionally decidedly so, but this is rare, and there is no approximation to the leukemic state of the blood, and the two states are distinct and separate. A combination of the two may be possible.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis requires some care, as more than one condition is attended by similar glandular outgrowths. Chronic and even acute *adenitis* has been mistaken for the early manifestation of Hodgkin's disease, while the converse has obtained perhaps more frequently. Time is the arbiter of such uncertainty.

A group of *tubercular glands* resembles more closely the disease under consideration, but it is not usually difficult to distinguish between the two. Tubercular glands are adherent to each other and to adjacent tissues, while the lymphadenoid growths are loose and easily movable. Tuberculosis rarely involves more than one group of glands, is characterized by caseation and suppuration, while the lymphadenoid growths almost never suppurate. Yet the tubercular process is the slower. Tuberculosis is commonly found in young persons under 20. Hodgkin's disease may occur at any age, but the average age is greater. It is more common in males. In Gowers' 100 cases, 75 were males and 25 females; 30 were under 20, 34 between 20 and 40, and 36 above 40.

*Sarcoma* also involves groups of glands, and in the beginning the consistence of the glands is similar to that in Hodgkin's disease. But this disease rapidly invades surrounding tissues, fusing with them, and destructive ulceration soon makes its appearance.

*Carcinoma of lymphatic glands* should also be mentioned as producing a somewhat similar growth, associated also with cachexia, but it is for the most part secondary to cancer elsewhere than in lymphatic glands.

Finally, all the conditions named as possible to be mistaken for Hodgkin's disease are limited to single groups, while the latter always extends, and the fact of such limitation is of itself sufficient to preclude the disease.

<sup>1</sup>Case reported by Richard Geigel, quoted by F. P. Henry ("Anemia," Philadelphia, 1887), from "Deutsches Archiv für klinische Med., 1885, Bd. xxxvii., p. 59.

<sup>2</sup>*Op. cit.* p. 67.

From *leukocythemia* the disease is easily distinguished by the leukocytosis characteristic of the former.

**Prognosis.**—While the prognosis is ultimately fatal, the course of the disease varies greatly, and death seldom results in less than a year. F. P. Henry places the average duration of life at two years, but admits it is greatly modified by such circumstances as age and previous health of the patient.

**Treatment.**—Treatment, too, may avert the fatal termination for a long time. Extraordinary results in this respect have followed the administration of arsenic, and even recoveries have been reported. Large doses, arrived at by gradual increment, should be attained and kept up until some physiological effects are observed. Such doses are from 15 to 20 minims (1 to 1.3 c.c.) of Fowler's solution. Particularly happy results are claimed for the injection of arsenic into the lymphoid masses. Especially is this recommended when arsenic is not well borne by the stomach. From 8 to 30 minims (0.5 to 2 c.c.) of Fowler's solution have been injected daily in divided doses. The kakodyllate of soda is now used hypodermically, the dose being  $1\frac{1}{2}$  a grain. Atoxel still more recent preparation of arsenic administered hypodermically in doses  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.022 to 0.033 gm.) on alternate days. Inunctions of iodine and iodide of potassium are also recommended. Supporting treatment of all kinds, including quinine, cod-liver oil, and the best of food, is necessary. Bone-marrow is indicated here as in other forms of anemia, if it possesses the qualities claimed for it.

Operative interference is sometimes necessary to avert danger to life, threatened by the encroachment of enlarged glands on vital organs and functions, such as respiration. It has even been claimed that the removal of a group of primarily enlarged glands has cut short the spread of the disease, but such an apparent result is rather an evidence of error in diagnosis. In view of the fact that at an early stage a diagnosis is impossible, the removal of a local group of glands should be recommended.

#### STATUS LYMPHATICUS.

#### SYNONYM.—*Lymphatism.*

**Definition.**—A hyperplastic state of the lymphoid tissues throughout the body, including the lymphatic glands, the spleen, the thymus, and the lymphoid marrow of bones, occurring chiefly in children and young persons.

This condition is rare in this country, and has never come under my observation. It has been described by Poltau and other Vienna physicians, and by James Ewing, of New York.<sup>1</sup>

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The lymphatic glands most frequently affected are the pharyngeal, thoracic, and abdominal; those of the cervical, axillary, and inguinal regions less frequently and in less degree, while the lymphatic elements of the tonsils and the upper pharynx, and the solitary and agminated follicles of the small and large intestines, are often much involved.

<sup>1</sup>"New York Medical Journal," July 10, 1897.

The spleen is moderately enlarged, while the Malpighian bodies stand out distinctly. The thymus gland is enlarged and soft, and on section may exude a milky fluid. The bone-marrow may be hyperplastic, and the yellow marrow replaced by red marrow. Along with these anatomical changes have sometimes been found rickets, and, again, hyperplasia of the heart and aorta.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms in addition to the anatomical changes noted are a lowered power of resistance, sometimes evidenced by sudden death or death from insufficient cause. The subjects are said to be poorly developed and infantile in appearance. As might be expected, the recognition of the actual condition is not always easy, if it dare be assigned a separate place in the nosology.

So far as I may judge from my limited knowledge, a separation of it from Hodgkin's disease seems scarcely justified.

## V. SPLENIC ANEMIA, OR SPLENIC PSEUDOLEUKEMIA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*L'épithéliome primitif de la rate; Splénomégalie primitive.*

**Definition.**—A chronic condition in which there is progressive enlargement of the spleen without marked swelling of the lymphatic glands, associated with more or less pronounced anemia. The term Banti's disease is applied to its termination in cirrhosis of the liver with ascites.

**History.**—Soon after Hodgkin's original paper, attention began to be called to enlargements of the spleen unassociated with leukemic blood. Among the early writers on this subject were Cohnheim and Strümpell. In 1866 Gretzel reported from Griesinger's Clinic a case of spleno-megaly, in which there was little or no swelling of the lymph glands. Gretzel believed this to be a case of true pseudoleukemia, involving the spleen rather than the lymphatic glands, and called the condition *anæmia splenica*, in contradistinction to *anæmia lymphatica* of Trousseau. The name splenic anemia was first applied by Griesinger in 1866. In 1867 Müller described several cases. In 1871 H. C. Wood<sup>1</sup> called attention to it as a separate variety of pseudoleukemia.

In 1882 Banti<sup>2</sup> described a spleno-megaly with hepatic cirrhosis and ascites. The former he regarded as primary, the latter as secondary and due to the former, claiming that the condition of the liver is a consequence of the splenic disease and not a cause. Banti also recognized the preascitic stage of the disease which he considered to be the same as splenic anemia of other authors.

In 1893 Westphal reported a series of cases of pseudoleukemia, five of which he regarded as of the splenic type, in which the disease started in the spleen rather than the lymphatic glands. More recently many cases have been reported, notably by Jarvin,<sup>3</sup> Osler,<sup>4</sup> Lichty,<sup>5</sup> Stengel,<sup>6</sup> S. Solis-Cohen,<sup>7</sup> J. and A. O'Malley,<sup>8</sup> and others. In 1900 Osler added the weight of his authority to those who separated the group entirely from Hodgkin's disease and called it splenic anemia. He also prefers to consider Banti's disease the second stage of splenic anemia.

On the other hand, Herman Senator<sup>9</sup> says that splenic anemia as a special disease cannot be distinctly differentiated from similar affections of the hemopoietic viscera, which are called pseudoleukemic. Naturally this view is held to some extent by others in Germany but has no following here.

Wentworth<sup>10</sup> considered the relation of splenic anemia to the *pseudoleukemia infantum* of von Jaksch and the *anæmia splenica infectiva* of the Italians.

<sup>1</sup>Wood, "Relations of leukocythemia and pseudoleukemia," "Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.," Oct., 1871.

<sup>2</sup>Banti, "Dell' anæmia splenica," Florence, 1882.

<sup>3</sup>Jarvin, "Anæmia Splenica," "Berliner klin. Wochenschrift," Aug., 16, 1897.

<sup>4</sup>Osler, "Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.," 1900-1902.

<sup>5</sup>Lichty, "Jour. Am. Med. Assoc.," Feb. 20, 1904.

<sup>6</sup>Stengel, "Trans. Assoc. Am. Phys.," 1904.

<sup>7</sup>Cohen, "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," Aug., 1904.

<sup>8</sup>O'Malley, "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," June, 1905.

<sup>9</sup>"British Med. Jour.," 1903, vol. xii, p. 573.

<sup>10</sup>Wentworth, "Boston Med. and Surg. Jour.," 1901.



**Etiology.**—This is undetermined, except that there is reason to believe that the condition sometimes succeeds the infectious diseases. It is to be separated from the enlarged spleen sometimes associated with a moderate anemia, so often the result of chronic malaria. It occurs alike in old and young, but is more common in adults, and in males rather than females four to one.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The organ is greatly enlarged, approaching that of the leukemic spleen rather than the spleen of Hodgkin's disease. It is three or four times its normal size, but retains its normal shape. It is indurated, and its incisures are deep. Its capsule is thickened and opaque in spots and sometimes adherent to adjacent tissues as is often true of any large spleen.

There is nothing distinctive in the histology of splenic anemia or Banti's disease. The process in the spleen is commonly regarded as chronic inflammatory, due to some unknown cause. There is a hyperplasia of all the splenic elements combined with a diffuse increase in the connective tissues and overgrowth of the reticulum, destroying and replacing the Malpighian body, a product of which may be tubercles as large as a pea containing central giant cells. There may be endothelioid proliferation and multinuclear epithelioid cells scattered through sections, and especially about the Malpighian bodies, the centers of which may also be the seat of hyaline degeneration. Eosinophiles may be present; also plasma cells. In the stage known as Banti's Disease there is super-added interlobular cirrhosis of the liver with pigmentation, and sometimes chronic diffuse nephritis.

There are no lymphomatous masses in the spleen as in Hodgkin's disease or enlarged lymphatic glands.

The bone-marrow is cellular, made up chiefly of large mononuclear leukocytes and myelocytes some of which contain eosinophilic granules; also many normoblasts and a few megaloblasts.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are analogous to those of pernicious anemia, and include *pallor*, *weakness*, *dyspnea*, *palpitation*, associated with the signs of *enlarged spleen*, evidence of which is sometimes shown by its weight and the pressure it exerts before other symptoms show themselves. There is also pain in the region of the spleen which increases on pressure and may radiate toward the back and loins. Rarely it may be due to perisplenitis, which may even invade the adjacent pleura. Finally, there results the cachectic state characterized by *emaciation*, *a deeper yellow color and pigmentation of the skin and mucous membranes*, a tendency to *hemorrhage* and *pyrexia*, with a possible temperature of 102° F., *edema*, *serous effusions*, *nausea*, and *diarrhea*, *extreme muscular prostration*, and *mental hebetude*. There is also said to be at times, as in lymphatic pseudoleukemia, an intermittent or *per saltum* course in the symptoms to the extent of apparent complete restoration to health in the intervals.

The *blood* exhibits the changes one would expect in cases in which there is destruction of the tissue devoted to its reproduction. It is anemic. The red disks are notably diminished, from 5,000,000 to as low as even 1,000,000. The hemoglobin is diminished, relatively less than the corpus-

cles. There are found also the other changes of the erythrocytes characteristic of pernicious anemia. There are poikilocytosis, megalocytosis, and microcytosis. Nucleated red blood-cells are numerous. The leukocytes are sometimes slightly more numerous; at other times they are in normal proportion and are said to be generally mononuclear.

Hemorrhage manifests itself especially as hematemesis, epistaxis, bleeding from the gums and even in the fundus of the eye. Hematuria and hemoptysis are infrequent; hematemesis is often excessive. Late in the disease there is ascites due to cirrhosis of the liver (Banti's disease).

An *increase in the urca* of the urine has been noted by Strümpell, and is regarded as evidence of increased proteid metabolism.

All clinical facts go to show that the spleen is responsible in some way for a destruction of erythrocytes and of their capacity for carrying oxygen.

The duration of the disease is from five to six months to three years.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of splenic anemia depends upon the presence of splenic enlargement associated with the phenomena of anemia previously described, and the absence of glandular enlargement, so conspicuous in Hodgkin's disease. Anemic symptoms attend the chronic malaria so often associated with enlarged spleen, but the history of malaria in such cases is invariably present, while the degree of anemia in malaria is not so high.

**Prognosis.**—The disease always prolonged, was formerly alternately fatal, but the prognosis has been modified by splenectomy.

**Treatment.**—The medical treatment is that for the other anemias, by iron and arsenic and nutritious food. Bone-marrow may be tried.

It is in this disease that splenectomy has been so satisfactory. In Banti's collection it appears to have been successful in three out of four cases, and later statistics seem to confirm this statement. Banti recommended splenectomy in all cases except profound cachexia and in pseudo-leukemic hypertrophy of lymphatic glands. He considers ascites indicates cachexia. Joseph O'Malley collected the cases up to the date of his paper, June, 1905. They numbered 32 with 24 recoveries or 75 per cent. G. E. Armstrong, in the "Lancet" of Sept. 15, 1906, reported that of 32 cases of splenectomy in Banti's disease 23 recovered and nine died, a mortality of 28 per cent., a little higher than that of O'Malley. Talma's operation has also been performed in these cases, but the cases have been too few to justify any conclusion.

## SECTION VI.

### DISEASES OF THE DUCTLESS GLANDS.

#### DISEASES OF THE THYROID GLAND.

##### GOITER.

##### SIMPLE GOITER OR STRUMA.

SYNONYMS.—*Bronchocle; Thyrocle; Thick Neck; Derbyshire Neck.*

**Definition.**—The name is derived from Latin, *guttur*, throat. Under this name are included all enlargements of the thyroid gland other than those due to inflammation, malignant disease, exophthalmic goiter, or parasites.

**Distribution.**—Simple goiter may occur endemically or sporadically, but in this country it is only sporadic. It is, however, quite prevalent about the eastern end of Lake Ontario and in the State of Michigan. It is still endemic in certain parts of Switzerland (cantons of Freiburg and Berne), in Italy (in the Southern Alps and in Savoy), in England, the Himalayas, in Asia and in Siberia. In the cantons named as many as 80 and 90 per cent. of recruits are found goitrous. It has even occurred in *epidemic* form in Finland.

**Etiology.**—The exciting cause of goiter still remains unknown, although a belief has long prevailed as to the endemic form that some constituent of drinking-water is responsible for it. That locality is in some way responsible is shown by the fact that removal from a territory subject to it arrests its development, while, if a healthy family moves into a goitrous district, the disease develops in some one or more members. A change in the water-supply of a district where goiter has been prevalent has led to its disappearance, while the water in certain wells on the continent of Europe is known to produce it. In fact, certain water is said to be drunk by men who desire to develop in themselves a goiter in order that they may be exempt from military service. What the responsible constituent of the water is, is, however, unknown.

In is much more common in women than in men, according to different authorities seven to 41 times as frequent. It has been suggested that this is because women drink more water. The disease generally develops after puberty, sometimes after 50. Congenital cases are known. It is sometimes hereditary, but heredity must be separated from the operation of one cause on different members of the same family.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—All simple goiters start in a true hypertrophy of the gland follicles, but ultimately assume special peculiarities, on which are based anatomical varieties. According to anatomical peculiarities assumed after the goiter sets in, there occur: (1) *Struma mollis*, or parenchymatous or hypertrophic goiter, in which there is a true hypertrophic enlargement; (2) *struma aneurysmalica*, in which the vessels are enlarged

and dilated; (3) *struma fibrosa*, in which there is an excessive development of fibroid tissue; (4) *struma colloides*, in which the follicles are enlarged and filled with colloid matter; (5) *struma cystica*, when the follicles have enlarged to cysts with liquid contents; (6) *struma ossca*, characterized by calcareous infiltration; (7) *struma amyloidea*, in which there is a wax-like product caused by amyloid change. There are various combinations or intermediate types.

**Symptoms.**—It may be said of the majority of goiters that they cause no inconvenience, and are mainly objectionable through the resulting deformity. The size attained varies: the enlargement may but slightly exceed that of the normal gland, or the organ may be very large and pendulous. It may be one-sided or bilateral, or only affect the isthmus. It is characteristic of all goiters and enlargements of the thyroid of any kind that they rise up when the patient swallows, and tumors of doubtful locality may thus be located. The goiter is sometimes low down, behind the sternum, and can only be felt during deglutition.

A goiter may press on the trachea, causing dyspnea, or upon the esophagus, causing difficulty in swallowing. When behind the sternum, it may press upon the veins in the neck, causing swelling of the face and head, and sometimes headache and drowsiness. There may be pressure on nerves, especially the pneumogastric, causing spasm of the glottis, paralysis of the abductor, and even complete paralysis of one or both vocal cords.

**Treatment.**—The medical treatment of goiter consists principally in the topical application of tincture of iodine. It is undoubtedly efficient at times. The simple iodine ointment or ointment of the red iodide of mercury may be daily rubbed into the goiter. It is recommended that after applications of the latter the neck should be exposed to the rays of the sun. This treatment has been especially efficient in India. Injections of iodine into the cyst are also used—20 to 30 minims (1.3 to 2 c.c.) of a solution of one part in twelve parts of alcohol twice a week, a new point being selected each time, care being taken not to wound any vessels or nerves.

Internal treatment is also recommended. Naturally, the iodide of potassium is conspicuous among remedies, in the usual doses—5 to 20 grains (0.3 to 1.3 gm.) three times a day. Thyroid extract is also being used with disputed success. Bruns treated 12 cases with raw thyroid glands in doses of 75 to 150 grains (5 to 10) gm. twice a week at first and once a week afterward. Nine were benefited. Kocher, however, thinks that the results with thyroid extract are no better than with iodine, and this view is now generally held.

If the goiter is produced by local causes, a change of residence is, of course, desirable.

When large and causing dangerous symptoms, goiter falls properly into the hands of the surgeon, who treats it as exigencies demand, sometimes extirpating it, though the operation is rather formidable at times and there is some risk of its being followed by myxedema. Cysts may be incised and drained or injected with iodine or perchloride of iron solution. Sir Morell Mackenzie injected the latter after tapping, using 2 drams (7.4 c.c.) of a 25 per cent. solution.

## EXOPHTHALMIC GOITER.

SYNONYMS.—*Struma exophthalmica*; *Graves' Disease*; *Basedow's Disease*; *Parry's Disease*; *Cardiothyroid Exophthalmos*; *Tachycardia strumosa*.

**Definition.**—A disease characterized especially by enlargement of the thyroid gland, protruding eyeballs, and frequent pulse, probably due to some perversion or hyperactivity of function of the thyroid gland.

**Historical.**—In the early part of the nineteenth century cases in which exophthalmos was a symptom were published by different authors. Some of these were probably examples of exophthalmic goiter. In 1825 C. Parry published several instances of a disease not previously described which were evidently cases of exophthalmic goiter. In 1828 Adelman published a case declared on Virchow's authority to be one of exophthalmic goiter, and therefore the first described in Europe. In 1833 Trousseau reported the history of a woman affected with goiter, exophthalmos, and cardiac palpitation at the same time, of which he said afterward that he was far from supposing that this symptomatic triad constituted a special morbid entity. In 1835 Graves published the clinical lecture whence arose his association with the name of the disease, which will perhaps continue through all time. He also described it in his "System of Clinical Medicine," published in 1843. He was the first to emphasize the absence of *organic* cardiac disease. In 1840 von Basedow published the results of his study of four cases of exophthalmic goiter, and with it the most exact description of the disease which had yet been given. He gave to the disease the name *exophthalmic cachexia*. Although his name has also become associated with it, and the Germans insist on the priority of his studies, he seems to have been clearly anticipated by Graves. Others who described the disease were: Romberg in 1851; Shoch in 1854; and in 1855 Koeben, who first ascribed it to derangement of the sympathetic nervous system. In 1855, too, Stokes included the disease in his book on "Diseases of the Heart," and drew special attention also to the nervous phenomena. Charcot thoroughly described it in 1856 and 1857, and in 1857 von Graefe described the symptoms known as Graefe's. In 1859 Fischer referred the symptoms to the remote effects of anemia. In 1860 Trousseau asserted the nervous origin of the disease, and that it should be classed as a neurosis. In the same year Aran ascribed the exophthalmos to a contraction of the muscular fibers of Müller supplied by the sympathetic. In 1862 a notable discussion in the Academy of Medicine of Paris took place, when Trousseau maintained that in all cases of exophthalmic goiter there was either an antecedent or a coincident derangement of the heart, and reasserted its nervous origin. Piörny denied the unity of the disease, and claimed that the prominence of the eye-balls was the result of retarded intracranial circulation due to pressure of the enlarged thyroid upon the external and internal jugular veins.

The neurotic nature of the disease has much in its favor, and most recently the medulla oblongata has been selected as the site for the lesion. This view has the support of some experimental evidence, and in a few autopsies changes have been found in the medulla. The view that it is a sympathetic neurosis has always commended itself, appearing as it does to explain the symptoms more satisfactorily than any other—the frequent pulse, the exophthalmos, the thyroid pulsation, the sweating, and the general nervousness being all thus accounted for.

Most recently the startling facts developed in connection with myxedema and the results of its treatment have drawn attention to a possible antithetic relationship between the two conditions. Thus we have, on the one hand, associated with exophthalmic goiter, excitability of the nervous system, manifested in restlessness of mind and body, a rapid action of the heart, and a moist, flushed skin; with myxedema the opposite conditions of dullness of intellect, torpor of body, slowness of pulse, dryness of skin. From this standpoint Moebius and Greenfield have taken the position that exophthalmic goiter is such an antithetic disease. Greenfield further adduces the fact that the changes in the gland are those of an organ in active evolution—i. e., proliferation with production of new tubular spaces and absorption of the colloid matrix, to be replaced by a more mucous fluid. Further are the facts that thyroid extract in excess produces tachycardia, tremor, headache, sweating, and prostration, symptoms of Graves' disease; that when administered during the disease, it aggravates the symptoms—has, indeed, in an overdose caused it, as in a case of Beclère's; and that the most successful treatment has been such as reduces the bulk of the gland.

**Etiology.**—Exophthalmic goiter is more common in women than in men—according to Trousseau, as 50 to eight. Others make it twice as frequent, others ten times. It is also more common in the young adult and

in the middle-aged. The average age may be put down at from 30 to 31 years; Bryon Bramwell says 15 to 30 for women and 30 to 45 for men. The oldest patient I have ever seen was 44. It has been observed as early as two and a half years, and as late as 68. Heredity is a rare factor, but its influence cannot be denied. It sometimes happens that several members of a family are affected. Sometimes myxedema affects one member of a family, and exophthalmic goiter another. It occurs with especial frequency in neurotic families. Sudden mental shock, worry and grief, and physical fatigue are assigned as exciting causes. So are many acute diseases, of which rheumatism is especially cited, also typhoid fever. Some of these are more likely to be coincidences. Its association with diabetes mellitus though infrequent, is a recognized one. Prof. W. H. Thomson ascribes Graves' disease to gastro-intestinal ptomain poisoning from excessive meat ingestion. Some perversion of function of the thyroid gland lies at the foundation of exophthalmic goiter.

**Symptoms.**—Of the cardinal symptoms mentioned in the definition, the cardiac and vascular usually appear first. The *palpitation* is extreme, delirious, as it were, the pulse-rate being commonly in the neighborhood of 120 to 140, and is said sometimes to reach 200. The slightest excitement augments the pulse-rate instantly. The *cardiac impulse* is *strong*, but the volume of the *pulse small*. The *heart-sounds* are loud, audible to the patient and even at a distance from the body, in one case described by Graves himself as far as four feet. A *systolic murmur* is often heard at the base, usually soft, but sometimes loud; more rarely at the apex, when it may be due to relative insufficiency of the mitral or tricuspid valve.

*Exophthalmos* is commonly described as the second of the cardinal symptoms to appear, but it is not much more infrequent than palpitation. The degree of this protrusion varies very decidedly. It may be so slight as to be scarcely noticeable, while again the peculiar staring effect arising from it is conspicuous, and attracts attention instantly. Exophthalmos may be present on one side only, although some do not admit such cases in the category of true exophthalmic goiter.<sup>1</sup> The eyes show a large amount of white, and the eye-lids when closed often cannot cover the eyes. It is in these extreme cases that *von Graefe's symptom* presents itself—a condition in which, when the eye is cast down or raised, the lid fails to follow it as it does in health. This symptom, of which so much has been said, is not a very frequent one. *Stellwag's sign*, which is less known, seems more frequently met. In it, the palpebral fissure is increased in width, owing to the persistent retraction of the upper lid. It may occur with or without von Graefe's sign. Retraction of the lower lid is occasionally seen. Moebius considers Graefe's symptoms the result of *Stellwag's*. The patient *winks* less frequently than in health. *Pulsation of the retinal arteries* can be seen with the ophthalmoscope, but other changes in the retinæ are rare. The same is true of the pupils. A *lack in ability to converge* the two eyes was pointed out by Moebius. Exophthalmos is absent in 20 per cent. of cases.

<sup>1</sup> See paper on "Unilateral Exophthalmos in Exophthalmic Goiter" by Posey and Swindells, "Ophthalmic Record," May, 1904.

The *thyroid enlargement* commonly presents itself at about the same time as exophthalmos. A patient of mine said, almost as early as she noticed swelling she observed her eyes began to protrude, showing that the events are not far apart, and that the three distinctive symptoms appear almost simultaneously. The goiter itself is in no way peculiar. It is usually of moderate size, almost never reaching the dimensions sometimes attained by a simple goiter. The tumor is largely contributed to by its vascularity, though there is also an overgrowth of the proper glandular tissue of the thyroid. *Pulse* and *thrill* are both palpable, while a loud systolic *murmur* may be heard on auscultation. The enlargement may be on one side only. In other cases there may be no enlargement. This may also be apparent only, but we are informed by the Mayo brothers that they have operated on exophthalmic goiters hardly palpable which proved greatly enlarged on exposure. When such a condition is associated with absent exophthalmos, the disease may be completely masked.

Another symptom, already alluded to, included by some as cardinal, is what is commonly known as "*nervousness*." It includes irritability, restlessness, a disposition to start at the slightest sound, and wakefulness at night. A part of this, or due to the same cause, at least, is "*tremor*," a highly important symptom, of such frequency as to be included by George R. Murray in his definition.<sup>1</sup> It does not, however, appear, as a rule, until the other symptoms have been present for some time. It may be best studied by holding out the hand with the palm downward; even better by laying the examiner's palm lightly upon the patient's fingers when the hand of the latter is held out. The tremor affects the flexor and extensor muscles of the wrist, and not the intrinsic muscle of the hand, so that the fingers do not vibrate independently, but the whole hand moves. It is rapid, regular, and uniform while it lasts. It occurs *eight or nine times in a second*. Its extent is small, but not always the same. It may be seen, too, in the foot, and in some instances the whole body appears to tremble. It is generally equal on the two sides of the body, but has been unilateral when goiter and exophthalmos have been on one side. It is variously modified by position—lying, sitting, or standing. It does not, as a rule, interfere with the movements of the hand, but when excessive may hinder sewing or writing. The tremor of general paralysis and alcoholism is less regular in extent, while the individual fingers tremble, the rate being practically the same. In the tremor of old age and disseminated sclerosis the rate is only one-half as rapid; and in paralysis agitans it is less regular. It resembles more the tremor of fatigue or that seen in recovery from long illness. Another symptom included in the same category is a *sudden giving away of the legs*, so that the patient falls to the ground without previous feeling of faintness or giddiness, and Charcot mentions also a weakness of the legs. *Painful cramps* sometimes occur. *Localized muscular atrophy* and that peculiar nervous symptom known as *astasia abasia*, in which there are inability to stand and inability to walk, are occasionally met.

Excessive *sweating* is a frequent symptom. It may be intermittent or irregular, or there may be a simple feeling of flushing without sweating.

<sup>1</sup> "Twentieth Century Practice of Medicine," vol. iv., 1895.

*Diminished electrical resistance* was pointed out by Vigouroux. This is a natural result of the constant moisture of the skin. *Polyuria* often occurs, caused, perhaps, as is the sweating. A dark coloration of the skin sometimes takes place, more decided in those situations in which the pigment is naturally more abundant, such as the face and arms. Yet the flexures of the joints, the axillæ, the genitals, and the inside of the thighs are also affected. The skin may be uniformly bronzed, or it may be darker in patches. Parts of the body which are subject to constant pressure are also disposed to take on pigmentation more deeply. *Edematous swellings* of the skin in various parts of the body may occur, and are to be carefully separated from edema the result of associated conditions, such as anemia, organic heart disease, etc. It manifests itself as swelling in the feet and ankles, and has been ascribed to vasomotor paralysis. The *nails* sometimes become thin, and occasionally have a corrugated appearance.

*Gastro-intestinal* symptoms are frequent, manifesting themselves by attacks of *diarrhea*, apparently of nervous origin, coming on suddenly without pain, with copious loose motions, of which there are two or three or more in a day. Uncontrollable *vomiting* may be associated with this. Acute forms are sometimes thus ushered in. The *tongue*, however, *remains clean*, and there is, *as a rule no rise of temperature*. Sometimes there may be very slight fever. The skin discoloration and gastro-intestinal symptoms suggest those of Addison's disease, and it is not impossible it may have been associated. *Rapid breathing* is a frequent accompaniment, equaling 30 to 40 respirations a minute. It may be associated with *cyanosis* of the face and swelling of the vessels of the neck. *Intermittent albuminuria* is frequent, as pointed out by Begbie. *Derangements of menstruation* are less frequent than might be expected, this function being normally maintained in the majority of instances. *Pregnancy is infrequent*.

The *mental condition* has been alluded to. It may be added that fits of depression alternate with buoyancy, while the moral nature may also be changed to a degree amounting to melancholia and mania. Active cerebral symptoms are sometimes present. This mania is of bad augury. Dullness or stupor seems to be entirely absent.

Occasionally Graves' disease may be associated with myxedema, when instead of the skin being moist it is dry and the nails are cracked.

Among complications, *hysteria* and *chorea*, and even *epilepsy* are included.<sup>1</sup>

**Diagnosis.**—This needs no detailed consideration. The combination of the three cardinal symptoms named can receive no other interpretation. There may be some doubt at the beginning, which time will shortly remove.

**Prognosis.**—Exophthalmic goiter is rarely fatal in itself, the patient usually dying of some other disease. At times the condition remains permanent, with little change, but in the course of time the majority of cases improve greatly, and some get well. I have been watching for years a young woman who, 19 years ago, had striking exophthalmic goiter, with its usual train of symptoms, who is now well, except that her eyes are

<sup>1</sup>Many further facts in relation to this disease may be found in a paper by W. Gilman Thompson in the "American Journal of the Medical Sciences," Dec., 1906, entitled "A Clinical Study of 80 Cases of Exophthalmic goiter."



slightly more prominent than is strictly natural. A physician of my acquaintance is in the same condition, attending actively to practice.

In some rare instances a rapidly fatal course ensues, death taking place in a few days after the onset. The majority of cases run a chronic course, the symptoms persisting more or less for years. When death occurs, it is from failure of the heart. It is generally preceded by an aggravation of all the symptoms. It may be sudden, as by syncope. Acute cases are reported, following one of the cited causes, in which the symptoms lasted a few days, and then disappeared completely.

**Treatment.**—Rest and protection from excitement are essential conditions to successful treatment. After this, the treatment has been mainly directed to the symptoms. The remedies heretofore used were mainly the bromids and digitalis: the bromids as nervous sedatives, and for their reputed action in producing anemia of the nerve centers, digitalis for its effect on the heart and pulse.

Among numerous other remedies is ergot, for its power of contracting the caliber of blood-vessels. By German writers, galvanism of the sympathetic is claimed to be of service. Theoretically, it should be. A constant current of from five to eight cells is used; the negative pole is placed on the fifth cervical vertebra, the positive pole along the sternum. Special efficiency has been claimed for the tincture of nux vomica by J. Newton Hunsberger, of Skippack, Pa. Hunsberger gave it to a well-marked case, beginning with doses of 25 drops, increased to 50 (0.77 to 1.54 c.c.). In three months after the treatment commenced the patient was able to do all her work, and has continued well ever since. Thyroid extract has not proved useful so far as tried—in fact, has appeared to be harmful. James C. Wilson, has used extract of suprarenal capsule with apparent advantage—5 grains (0.33 gm.) in tablet form at a dose.

Consistent with his view as to its etiology, Prof. W. H. Thomson insists upon the absolute necessity of a milk diet, which he says should be kept up for two years. He suggests the fermented milks where the ordinary milk is not well borne.

Opium in small doses has been recommended. It is certainly a rational remedy, quieting the irritability which is so marked a feature. Codein should be preferred, as a rule, because it is less likely to produce the harmful effects which attend the use of opium, especially constipation and the opium habit. Iodids are of doubtful value, but iodine is especially recommended by Rogers and Beebe (see p. 737).

The results of *operative treatment* have been more satisfactory, especially at the hands of such surgeons as the Kochers, of Zurich, and the Mayos, of Rochester, Minn., U. S. A. Oppenheimer collected 68 cases, of which 18 recovered completely, in 26 there was more or less improvement, in nine there was no change, five died almost immediately, and four within 24 hours.

Still more satisfactory were the results of the brothers Mayo. They operated on 110 cases of exophthalmic goiter, up to January, 1907, with nine deaths in all, and but two in the last 64 cases. They further say that of those who survive the operation, 50 per cent. make an early recovery, 25 per cent. improve of the main symptoms during several months,

and 25 per cent., while greatly improved, have occasional temporary relapses of the tachycardia and tremor. The exophthalmos is often one of the last symptoms to disappear."<sup>1</sup>

The *antiserum treatment* for exophthalmic goiter proposed by Rogers and Beebe,<sup>2</sup> though it has passed the experimental stage, must be regarded as still on trial. It is based on the assumption that the disease is due to an excess of thyroid activity and consequently an excess of thyroid secretion. For this they offer a specific antiserum which is made by injecting rabbits or sheep with the nucleo-proteid and thyro-globulin obtained from the human thyroid gland. The pathological thyroids obtained from patients suffering from Graves' disease seem to make a somewhat better serum than can be obtained by employing the normal human thyroid gland secured at autopsy; nevertheless the normal gland is sufficient for producing a very useful antiserum.

The statistics of the originators of this method of treatment cover some 300 cases and compare favorably with the more popular though more dangerous surgical procedure of excision of one lobe or of one lobe and the isthmus of the offending organ. According to latest reports, these statistics are as follows: 30 per cent. complete cures; 50 per cent. improved; and 20 per cent. of failures to affect the course of the disease and in this 20 per cent. of failures are included ten per cent. of deaths not because of, but in spite of every method of treatment. The authors confidently expect that with increasing experience and greater knowledge of the disease a much better statistical result will within the next few years be possible.

Rogers explains that there are different indications for treatment in different stages or forms of so-called exophthalmic goiter or Graves' disease, and he therefore designates the symptoms recognized as dependent upon overactivity of the thyroid gland as thyroidism. From anatomical studies and clinical experience it is known that the pathological changes in the thyroid of exophthalmic goiter may gradually progress into a state which is anatomically and clinically myxedema. Hence between these two extremes there are numerous cases which give some of the symptoms of both diseases, and sometimes one group of symptoms and sometimes another may predominate. In the Mutter lecture of 1907 Rogers gives illustrative cases of this type and describes the appropriate treatment.

From this it appears that some individuals require antithyroid treatment, either medical or surgical, in the sense of measures intended to check the excess of thyroid secretion. Others giving some of the symptoms of thyroidism or overactivity of the thyroid gland, but more of *deficient* function require prothyroid treatment, or treatment designed to help out the supposedly impoverished quality but excessive quantity of thyroid secretion.

It has not hitherto been generally accepted or believed that the thyroid secretion can vary both in quantity and in quality, but a double abnormality of this kind seems the only explanation possible in Rogers' opinion. In the early typical cases of exophthalmic goiter he believes there is an excess in the quantity of thyroid secretion which is only slightly

<sup>1</sup>C. H. Mayo, "Journal of the American Med. Assoc.," Jan. 26, 1907, vol. xlviii, p. 273.

<sup>2</sup>Mutter lecture for 1907 before the College of Physicians, Philadelphia.

impaired in quality, and for these he recommends the antiserum alone or in combination with ligation of one or more of the thyroid vessels, or if preferred excision of the part of the gland. For the cases which have run a longer course or which present atypical symptoms, such as a dry instead of a moist skin, or one with a yellowish-brown color, or which show any signs of myxedema like the well-known supraclavicular fatty pads or edematous ankles or puffy eye-lids or face, then prothyroid rather than antithyroid treatment is needed. By prothyroid is meant specific medication designed to help out or supplement the thyroid secretion or activity. For this purpose the ordinary commercial thyroid preparations, according to Rogers and Beebe, are, as a rule, useless or harmful.

Rogers and Beebe have found that sheep thyroids ground to a pulp and suspended in normal salt solution can be separated into a nucleoprotein material and thyroglobulin. The nucleoprotein portion, when dried and given by mouth in doses of  $1/50$  to  $1/100$  of a grain (0.00132 to 0.00066 gm.) three or four times daily, has little or no tendency to accelerate the pulse and yet has an extraordinary power of promoting nutrition and improving the general well-being and, in suitable cases, of actually reducing the tachycardia. Hence the nucleoprotein material derived from the thyroid is designated as "detoxicated" thyroid. It is indicated generally in combination with the antiserum, in the cases of thyroidism of some considerable duration but without manifest approach to myxedema.

It is given by itself or in combination with other adjuvants like iodine or dilute hydrochloric acid (2/10 per cent. in dosage of 4 to 6 ounces with each meal), in the atypical cases especially if there is any evidence of myxedematous taint.

Some cases, however, in this group of late thyroidism or some presenting atypical symptoms will not do well unless the thyroid proteins are given subcutaneously. For this purpose the authors recommend a 1 to 1000 solution of the normal human thyroid nucleoprotein or a 3 to 1000 solution of the normal human thyroglobulin. The indications for this rather unusual medication are as yet more or less undefined and a matter for experimental determination. Nevertheless, the cases cited indicate its necessity.

The dose of the antiserum is about 10 minims given not oftener than once daily in the back of the upper arm, the amount of reaction regulating the repetition. If there is none locally or generally, it should be given every day. If there is local swelling, wait until it has entirely subsided. If there is no improvement at the end of 4 to 6 weeks or if there is manifest injury earlier, do not repeat. The best resource is then hydrochloric acid and the detoxicated thyroid tablets (2 per cent.) one three times daily. If the tablets intensify the symptoms, try iodine.

Rogers believes from his experience that radical operation by removal of more or less of the gland in exophthalmic goiter can only be expected to cure the disease in its early and typical stages.

In the conditions intermediate between acute typical exophthalmic goiter on the one hand, and myxedema or extreme degeneration of the thyroid on the other, improvement may thus be obtained, but it will be only temporary.

In the later stages of the disease and in the atypical cases Rogers regards radical operation as always dangerous and generally harmful. The great difficulty at present is in distinguishing with any degree of certainty the period and character of the disease. For this purpose he claims the antiserum is invaluable. For cases which do not respond well to the antiserum he has found almost invariably do poorly after removal of  $1/2$  or more of the gland.

### MYXEDEMA.<sup>1</sup>

SYNONYMS.—*Cachexie pachydermique* (Charcot); *Cachexia thyroidea vel strumipriva vel thyreopriva* (Kocher); *Athyrea*; *A Cretinoid State Super-vening in Adult Life in Women* (Gull).

**Definition.**—A myxomatous infiltration of the subcutaneous connective tissue of the body, characterized also by dryness of the skin, subnormal temperature, mental failure, and atrophy of the thyroid gland.

**Historical.**—Nearly one hundred years ago King, of Guy's Hospital, London showed experimentally that the colloidal matter of the acini of the thyroid gland passed into the lymphatics and thus suggested the idea of what is called in modern times an internal secretion. Schiff showed in 1850, by experiment on carnivora, that the gland is important to life, and confirmed this in 1884 by showing that the removal of the organ alone in these animals is followed by striking symptoms preceding death. In 1884-85-86 Victor Horsley, experimenting on monkeys and later herbivorous animals, showed that myxedema could be produced in the monkey by removing the thyroid gland. The disease itself, as occurring in man, was first described by Sir William Gull in England in 1873 as a contribution to the anatomy of the cretinoid condition. Further described by William M. Ord in 1877, and named by him myxedema. It was also studied by Charcot, who called it *cachexie pachydermique*. In 1882 Jacques L. Reverdin called the attention of the Medical Society of Geneva to the occurrence of the symptoms of myxedema after total extirpation of the thyroid in the human subject. Theodor Kocher states that in the autumn of 1882, previous to this event, he spoke to Professor Reverdin of the remarkable consequences of the operation, and that six days later Reverdin read a paper on the subject. In 1883 Kocher reported to the Twelfth Surgical Congress at Berlin similar results in patients from whom he had entirely removed the thyroid gland, calling the condition *cachexia strumipriva*, having previously known nothing of myxedema as a separate disease. He did not attribute the condition to the loss of the thyroid, but to injuries received in the structures of the neck in the operation. In a succeeding paper the brothers Reverdin recognized the condition as identical with myxedema, and called it *myxedema operatoire*. Shortly afterward Felix Semon suggested that the loss of function in the thyroid gland was probably the common factor in the production of both. Victor Horsley's results were not published until 1890, the same year in which von Eiselberg<sup>2</sup> announced that the removal of the thyroid caused tetany. Horsley ascribes the tetanic symptoms to the fact that the animals were kept at a temperature of 90°F. (32.2° C.) after the operation. N. Weiss also pointed out that tetany is apt to follow operative extirpation of goiter. In 1890 Horsley published a note on the possibility of the successful treatment of myxedema, sporadic cretinism, and cachexia strumipriva by grafting with thyroid tissue from the necks of animals, though in this he was anticipated by Kocher in 1883 and Bircher in 1889. Kocher's graft was absorbed, but Bircher's patient was enabled to return to work. Victor Horsley's results were a part of a report by a committee of the Clinical Society of London, appointed in 1883, whose conclusions were as follows:

1. Myxedema is identical with cachexia strumipriva.
2. Sporadic cretinism is myxedema occurring in childhood.
3. Endemic cretinism is also closely allied to myxedema.
4. Further, that while these conditions are dependent on loss of function due to removal or disease of the thyroid gland, the ultimate cause of this loss of function in

<sup>1</sup>The student is referred to five noteworthy papers on the subject of "Myxedema and Cretinism" in vol. viii., 1893. "Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," by Francis P. Kinnicutt, James J. Putnam, M. Allen Starr, W. Gilman Thompson, and William Osler; to the "Atlas of Clinical Medicine," by Byrom Bramwell, for admirable illustrations; and to the exhaustive article on "Myxedema" by George R. Murray, of Newcastle, England, in the "Twentieth Century Practice of Medicine," vol. iv., 1895. Also to an address by Victor Horsley on the "Physiology and Pathology of the Thyroid Gland," published in the "British Medical Journal," December 5, 1896.

<sup>2</sup>Von Eiselberg's experiments were made chiefly on cats.

ordinary myxedema is not as yet explained. George R. Murray suggested the hypodermic injection of the gland extract in 1891 and Horwitz, of Copenhagen, E. L. Fox, and H. Mackenzie its internal administration.

**Etiology.**—All forms of myxedema are the result of disease or removal of the thyroid gland, but what excites this disease is not known. It is much more common in girls. In the simple form, a minor rôle may be assigned to heredity, but in cretinism heredity plays no part, as cretins are not sexually developed. Yet it occurs in members of the same family, which only goes to show that one cause operates to produce it. Many are the children of neurotic persons, while Langdon Down considers that alcohol is responsible, especially if the alcohol habit is present at the time of procreation.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid changes in the myxedema after death are those described as characteristic in life, but autopsy has disclosed the thyroid absent in nine out of ten cases of cretinism examined, confirming the theory of its origin. Enlargement of the *hypophysis cerebri* was found in six cases of cretinism by different observers, and Horsley says that the convolutions of the brain are ill-defined, and the blood-vessels small, even in proportion to the rudimentary condition of the nervous system.

**Symptoms.**—Three groups of cases are recognizable:

1. Pure myxedema.
2. Myxedema associated with congenital or sporadic cretinism.
3. Operative myxedema or cachexia strumipriva.

1. *Pure Myxedema.*—This is much more frequent in women than in men—at least as six to one—and occurs usually between the ages of 30 and 50, but is not confined to these ages, being found in those who are younger and older. Heredity is a recognized factor, acting usually through the mother. Several members of a family may be affected. The poor suffer most. It is said to have no relation to the catamenia, but has followed frequent pregnancies, injuries, severe hemorrhage, and mental disturbance. Most essential is some change in the thyroid gland. Formerly thought to be rare in this country, cases have multiplied since attention has been called to it.

The face is the chief seat, but the extremities, the trunk, the tongue, and even the internal organs may be involved. The *face is uniformly swollen, broadened, and flattened, the nose is broad, the mouth large*, all lines are obliterated, and expression is gone. The *skin* of the neck above and below the clavicle is thrown into folds of fatty and myxomatous tissue. It is yellow, translucent or waxy, dry and scaly. The cheeks and sometimes the nose are flushed. True edema may be associated, and there are rarely albuminuria and glycosuria. The *hands lose their natural shape*, and were described by Gull as "spade-like;" the *feet* are also misshapen; the *gait* is slow and labored. The *mind is feeble*, slow in its action, memory is poor, while irritability and suspicion are added qualities, and sometimes there are delusions and hallucinations, ultimately often dementia. The organic functions are fairly well performed. *Atrophy of the optic nerve* is a rare but possible symptom, also *synovitis* from trifling causes. *Sub-normal temperature* is characteristic, though in early stages the temperature

may be normal or slightly above. In winter the patient always feels cold and hugs the stove. The course of the disease is slow, and the patient usually dies of some intercurrent affection.

2. *Myxedema Associated with Cretinism, Congenital or Acquired.*—(Cretinoid idiocy: Idiotie avec cachexie pachydermique.) Cretinism is a form of idiocy associated with absence of the thyroid or with a functionless thyroid. It is myxedema in childhood. There is almost complete arrest of mental and bodily development. The cretin is a dwarf. In the congenital form, there is congenital absence of the thyroid, and the child is further characterized by its thick neck, short arms and legs, and prominent belly. The face is large, the lips are thick, and the tongue is large and often protruding. All the bones of the skeleton are short and broad, the epiphyses swollen, but not ossified. The skull is short and broad, and the basosphenoid junction early ossified. The cretin resembles the rickety child, and may be confounded with it.

Acquired cretinism may start before birth and be barely appreciable at birth. More frequently the infant appears normal at birth, and the changes make their appearance between the second and fifth years. The arrest of development continues, or, rather, there is very slow development, so that at adult age the man or woman does not exceed in stature a child of from five to seven years. The myxedemic symptoms are similar to those described in pure myxedema.

From the fact, however, that the disease may start to develop later than infancy, there results a series of types intermediate between those represented by congenital and adult cretinism. This arrest of mental and physical development is, of course, greater the earlier the disease begins to develop; whence two cretins of the same age will differ materially if one has commenced to develop at or before birth, and the other not until seven or eight years of age.

True congenital cretinism—that is, cretinism which is evident at birth—is very rare. Some cases of supposed intra-uterine rickets may have been cretinism. In most cases, the child does not long survive its birth. In another form described by Horsley the disease is supposed to begin shortly before birth, but develops slowly, so that at birth it has not attained the degree incompatible with life, and the child can live. In this there is usually a goiter at birth.

Cretinism may be endemic, as in some parts of the continent of Europe; or sporadic, as in England, and America as well. The sporadic cases are, as a rule, without goiter, the thyroid glands being either undeveloped or atrophied, while one-third also of the endemic cretins are without goiter. In either event, the gland is functionally dead, even though it may appear natural in size, the original true gland tissue having been replaced by an indifferent element. Endemic cretinism occurs in localities where goitre is also endemic—in the shut-up valleys of mountainous districts of Europe and Asia, to which it is confined. At one time—in 1847—a number of cases—some 24 out of a population of 350—prevailed in Cheselborough, Somerset, England, but the disease has died out. The endemic form is commonly ascribed to the use of certain drinking waters, but no responsible constituents have been isolated. The child, being normal at birth, remains

so until the change begins in the thyroid, when it becomes less lively, development is arrested, and the conditions described on page 740 slowly develop. The cretin may reach the age of 30 or 40 years, but ceases to change after the 20th year, whether the case be sporadic or endemic.

3. *Operative Myxedema or Cachexia Strumipriva*.—By this is meant a condition of myxedema the result of removal of the thyroid (see History, p. 738.). It is more likely to follow total than partial removal of the thyroid, but does not follow every case, having been observed in 69 out of 408 cases. Cases of operative myxedema are very rare in this country.

**Diagnosis.**—This is easy. The *edema of Bright's disease or heart disease* may be confounded, especially as albuminuria and casts are sometimes present in myxedema; but the peculiar flat face, the absence of pitting on pressure, and of the signs of heart disease are distinctive features of myxedema.

**Prognosis.**—This was regarded as unfavorable until the hypodermic use of thyroid extract was suggested by George R. Murray, of Newcastle, England, in 1891, based upon the satisfactory effect obtained by Bettencourt and Serrano, in 1890, in ingrafting sheep's thyroid in human subjects having myxedema, the idea being in this manner to substitute the juice or secretion of the gland. Every expectation was realized. In 1892, Howitz, of Copenhagen, and soon after, E. L. Fox and H. Mackenzie, in England, substituted for the hypodermic use the administration of the gland itself or some preparation of it by the mouth. At the present day, the effects of the administration of thyroid preparations in myxedema are among the marvelous results of medicine.

**Treatment.**—The treatment at the present day is, therefore, solely by the sheep's thyroid. The gland is best administered in the shape of glycerin extract or tablet. From 15 to 30 minims (1 to 2 gm.) of the former and 5 grains (.33 gm.) of the latter are to be given daily, its effect being carefully watched. If no effect follows, the dose should be doubled, and further increased if necessary. As improvement takes place, smaller doses should be given at longer intervals, until finally from 10 to 15 minims (0.66 to 1 gm.) or 10 to 15 grains (.66 to 1 gm.) of the solid extract are given once a week or less often. During the first week the patient should be watched, with a view to guarding against heart failure, prohibiting all physical exertion on his part, this being an apparent effect of the medicine in excessive doses.

The myxedema being removed, it is necessary, of course, to continue the treatment in this second stage by such doses as will maintain the cure, for it is to be understood that, as the thyroid is still functionless, the omission of the treatment is followed, sooner or later, by its return. The quantity required varies in different cases, but it is found to range between 5 and 15 minims (0.33 to 1 c.c.), the more precise dose being determined by trial. A single daily dose is preferred by Murray to a smaller dose more frequently repeated. A fall of temperature below normal, a slight return of swelling or of other symptoms, indicate that too small a dose is being given, while acceleration of the pulse indicates that the dose should be reduced. In a climate not subject to great variations the same dose may be given the year round. In hot weather a smaller dose suffices

than in cold, and a dose that has been found sufficient during the summer may not be enough in the winter.

The treatment of cretinism is also by the thyroid extract. Relatively larger doses of thyroid extract can be given to children than to adults. The liability to syncope during treatment is less marked than in myxedematous adults, but it is advisable not to allow any unusual exercise during the first part of the treatment. In the absence of the extract, the sheep's raw thyroid may be administered, giving one-eighth to one-quarter of a lobe twice a week.

Thyroid grafting is also employed for the treatment of cretinism, with the same results and same shortcomings, and is carried out in the same way. It is especially with a view to more permanent results that the successful application of this method is desirable, and symptoms have been kept in abeyance for some time by it. Sooner or later, however, they return, and the operation must be repeated or the extract administered. If grafting, which is usually done into the peritoneal cavity, is practiced, it should be preceded by a course of thyroid extract, and the symptoms of myxedema removed as far as possible before the operation is done, usually for two or three months. The details of operative treatment are left to the surgeon.

The results of treatment in cretinism are as marvelous as in myxedema. They include not only the removal of the hideous deformity and the restoration of intellect, but also an increase in height, which, though not amounting to a restoration of the normal height, is still appreciable. The earlier treatment is commenced, the more prompt and marked is its effect.

Of the treatment previous to the introduction of that by thyroid extract, that by *jaborandi* and *pilocarpin* should be mentioned, because the partial benefit derived from them is explainable by supposing that they produced increased activity in small portions of residual glandular tissue. Should thyroid extract be unattainable, these drugs may still be used.

## TETANY.

SYNONYMS.—*Tetanilla*; *Intermittent Tetanus*; *Hypoparathyreosis*; *Status Parathyreoprivus*; *Contracture des nourrices*.

**Definition.**—A condition of deranged metabolism exhibiting continuous or intermittent tonic spasm of the extremities, usually symmetrical, but occasionally confined to one limb, rarely even becoming general. It is ascribed to disease of a ductless gland (the parathyroid) or its insufficiency.

**Historical.**—A knowledge of the symptom complex of tetany was gradually acquired. The first to describe it in a recognizable form was Steinheim, in Germany, who in 1830 called it *hitziger Gelenkrheumatismus*, from its apparent relation to acute multiple articular rheumatism. A year later it was described by Dance, in France, who especially noted the intermittent character of the attacks of spasm. In 1844 it was described by Imbert and Goubeyre, and again in 1846 by Drepach. In 1852 Corvisart, after a careful study of the disease, published his treatise in which he suggested the name *tetany*, by which it has been since known. In 1860 Trousseau



discovered the effect of pressure on the large vessels and nerves of the arm in producing the contraction in the hand muscles, and suggested the name *contractures des nourrices*, because of its frequent occurrence in nursing women. In 1877 Chvostek described the markedly increased motor excitability of nerves known as Erb's symptoms. In 1890 Chvostek and N. Weiss discovered the phenomenon of facial and lip muscle contraction elicited by tapping the facial nerve. In 1887 Hoffman showed that in tetany even sensory nerves are overexcitable and L. von Frankl-Hochwart showed that only galvanic excitability is increased and faradic not. Later the same observer published a second monograph on the disease in Nothnagel's System of Medicine.

The relation of the thyroid gland to tetany appeared in the results of removal of the thyroid in Billroth's Vienna Clinic many years ago (1860-70) when tetany was found to occur in 13 out of 37 operations for removal. This event became so frequent that it resulted in a partial discontinuance of the operation, both for simple cases of goiter and for Graves' disease. The discovery that it was the loss of the little parathyroids was made by Gley,<sup>1</sup> confirmed by Vassale and Generali<sup>2</sup> who cleared up many difficulties which Gley had found. Indeed W. G. MacCallum, whose studies are the most recent and have greatly enlarged our knowledge, regards their paper as the first convincing one.

**Etiology.**—Tetany occurs in children and in adults, and when present in the latter, it has usually made its appearance in comparatively early life. It has been supposed to be rare in North America, but J. P. C. Griffith, in a noteworthy paper read before the Association of American Physicians in 1894, collected 72 cases occurring in this country. Of these, five happened in his own experience. It is rather more frequent in girls than boys. The disease is more common in Vienna and Heidelberg than anywhere else, especially in the late winter and early spring. L. von Frankl-Hochwart has shown that it occurs quite frequently among the shoemakers and tailors of Vienna.

Among possible causes may be mentioned digestive derangement, including dentition, dilatation of the stomach, hyperchlorhydria, and diarrhea; rheumatism, whence this form is sometimes called rheumatic tetany; osteomalacia; rickets; open wounds; laceration. Pregnancy, acute fevers, and diphtheria are also alleged causes.

The effect of removal of the thyroid and especially of the parathyroid glandules in producing tetany received consideration in the historical sketch. What relations the associated conditions just mentioned have with parathyroid disease is unknown. It has been suggested that gastric tetany and that of the infectious fevers is connected with disturbance of calcium metabolism, which is even more likely to be true of osteomalacia and rickets. Its presence in nursing women, as pointed out by Trousseau, may have to do with the drain of calcium in the formation of milk which is rich in calcium, and in pregnancy with the formation of the bones of the child. The analyses of MacCallum tend to confirm this explanation.

**Symptoms.**—The characteristic *spasm* is usually limited to the hands and feet, arms, and legs. In the hands the thumbs are flexed into the palms, the fingers firmly bent at the metacarpophalangeal articulation, but straight elsewhere. The fingers are adducted, the ring and middle fingers sometimes overlapping. The wrists are flexed, the elbows bent, and the arms folded over the chest. The hand is described as the obstetrical hand, from the position caused by the cramp. In the lower

<sup>1</sup>"Soc. de Biol. and Archiv. de Physiol.," 1891-4.

<sup>2</sup>"Soc. de Biol.," 1897, 1898.

"Progres Medical," 1901.

<sup>2</sup>Vassale, G. e Generali, F. "La Riforma Medica," 1897, vol. i, p. 800.

<sup>3</sup>"Archives Italiennes de Biologie" (Turin), 1896, vol. xxv, pp. 459 to 464; 1896-97, vol. xxvii, p. 61-65. Translation of the same paper in the "Amenist and Neurologist," 1897, vol. xviii, p. 57-61.

limbs the knees and hips are stiff and extended, the feet extended, and the toes adducted. Sometimes there is dorsal flexion of the foot and flexion at the knee. Contractions may last from a few hours to several days. The term *continuous* may be applied to those cases in which the contractions have lasted uninterruptedly for over two days, and *intermittent* when they do not last longer than two days without permanent or temporary disappearance. Following this standard, Griffith found 38 cases intermittent and 25 continuous. The spasm is always associated with *tenderness* or *pain*, the latter being often extreme. At other times these symptoms are present only in the beginning of the attack or when the members are handled. Rarely the muscles of the back, neck, and face are involved; and there may be *trismus*, the angles of the mouth being drawn out.

Associated symptoms are *stridulous respiration*, regarded by some as an essential part of the disease or as a manifestation of the disease in the larynx.

Further interesting phenomena, especially studied and called cardinal symptoms, are *contraction caused by tapping the muscles*, as, for example, the pectoralis or the facial muscles, known as Chvostek's symptom. Another is Trousseau's symptom—the production of *spasm by pressure upon a large artery or nerve*, especially in the arm; and still another is Erb's symptom—*increased electrical excitability*. *Inability to urinate* may be present, and anesthesia has been recorded among symptoms. There may be *slight elevation of temperature* and *frequent pulse*.

**Diagnosis.**—The rarity of this disease sometimes causes it to be overlooked, while differences of view as to what constitute its essential symptoms also cause a different diagnosis. Thus, some would exclude the *carpopedal spasm* of children; while Gowers, Dana, and Griffith include these cases under tetany. Many cases of *mild spasm succeeding gastrointestinal irritation* and the like would be regarded by some as tetany and by others not. It possesses nothing in common with *tetanus*, whose name it so closely resembles, but whose symptoms are totally different.

**Prognosis.**—This is usually favorable, recovery taking place in from a few days to months. The fatal cases are those associated with dilated stomach, gastric carcinoma, and thyroidectomy. The disease has a marked tendency to return, and is most common in late winter and early spring.

**Treatment.**—The *cause* of the condition should be sought and, if possible, eliminated. After this, *remedies calculated to diminish nervous excitability* should be administered; also wholesome hygienic measures availed of, including *massage*, *passive motion*, and *electricity*. *Warm baths* are especially recommended. The cases attended with severe pain may require the hypodermic use of morphin, and delayed response to the latter may even demand chloroform inhalation.

The rational treatment of tetany includes any measure which will restore the function of the parathyroids. Parathyroid may be administered by the mouth, but the effect is found to continue only so long as the administration is continued. The hypodermic injection of a serum from the same source promises more permanent results, but most promising of

all is the transplantation of the parathyroid itself into the spleen, as suggested by Pays and repeated by Halsted, using as large a portion of the thyroid as will presumably contain parathyroid structure.

## NEOPLASMS OF THE THYROID.

The thyroid is subject to a variety of morbid growths, among which may be mentioned:

1. *Adenoma*, which occurs as an encapsulated growth, varying considerably in size. There may be nodules in both lobes. Metastases of growths resembling thyroid tissue are reported to have been found in the lungs and bones of the body.
2. *Primary medullary cancer*, as a rare growth with a tendency to invade the trachea and esophagus, developed from the epithelial cells of the follicles. *Secondary cancer* has also been reported.
3. *Tuberculosis*, always supposed to be a possible but rare disease, has been found by Chiari in seven out of 100 postmortems on persons who had had tuberculosis. Bruns refers to six cases of tuberculous goiter.
4. *Syphilis*, including gummy growths. 5. *Hydatid disease*. 6. *Actinomycosis*.

*Abscess* of the thyroid is an occasional event.

The *treatment* of these abnormalities is surgical, except in the case of tuberculosis and syphilis, which demand the usual antituberculous and antisyphilitic remedies.

## DISEASES OF THE SUPRARENAL CAPSULES.

### ADDISON'S DISEASE.

**Definition.**—A term applied to any disease of the suprarenal capsule attended with pigmentation of the skin.

**History.**—Addison's disease was first described by Addison, of Guy's Hospital, in 1855, in a paper entitled, "The Constitutional and Local Effects of Disease of the Suprarenal Capsules." A surprisingly small number of facts has been added since Addison's original paper was published. Greenhow's paper is a noteworthy one written in 1866; also that of R. D. Rolleston, the Gulstonian lectures for 1895 on the "Anatomy, Histology and Morbid Anatomy of the *Suprarenal Bodies*."

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This includes (1) tuberculosis with fibrocaseous and calcareous degeneration; (2) cystic degeneration; (3) fatty degeneration; (4) simple atrophy; (5) chronic interstitial inflammation which may lead to atrophy; (6) malignant disease, including carcinoma and sarcoma; (7) hemorrhagic extravasations; (8) embolism. Whatever causes these morbid conditions constitutes the causes of Addison's disease. Blows on the abdomen or back may be such causes. It is more frequent in men, 119 men to 64 women.

**Symptoms.**—Some of these morbid states appear to be totally without symptoms, the conditions having first come to light at autopsy. Other symptoms may be produced by any of them, and there is none distinctive for any one state. They include:

*Pigmentation* or *bronzing* of the skin. This was first described by Addison as associated with disease of the suprarenal capsules, an association which, since the publication of his paper in 1855, has been called Addison's disease. The clinical concept thus named especially affects the lower classes, Dr. Greenhow having found nine-tenths of cases among laboring people. It is also a disease of adults, being rare under 35 years. The lesion most frequently thus associated is the fibrocaseous tuberculous one. But, as stated, the pigmentation may accompany any one of the above-named lesions, if prolonged, or may be absent. As to the *coloration* itself, which is usually the first symptom to attract attention, it varies from a light yellow to a deep brown, and even almost black. It is deeper on the more exposed parts of the body, where the normal pigmentation is greater, and therefore is commonly first seen on the face and hands. In rare instances only is it general. It is associated at times with unpigmented patches—leukoderma. It is noticeable also at times on the mucous membrane of the mouth, conjunctiva, and vagina, and very rarely even upon serous membranes in patches.

Great pains have been taken to explain this peculiar "bronzing," ascribed by Addison himself to the loss of function of the adrenals. Two chief theories have been suggested:

1. By experimental evidence it has been sought to show with some reason that these glands furnish some sort of internal secretion essential to normal metabolism. To explain those cases in which the adrenals are diseased and yet there is no pigmentation, it is suggested that accessory adrenals may be present, though none has been demonstrated, so far as I know; while the presence of pigmentation in association with healthy adrenals is ascribed to disease of the adjacent semilunar ganglia interfering in some way with the function of the glands. Such a theory, that a secretion furnished in health by the suprarenal capsule is necessary to normal metabolism, is analogous to that which ascribes myxedema to the loss of function of the thyroid gland, and has acquired some additional support from the knowledge recently added upon this subject.

2. According to the second theory, the pigmentation is due to disease of the abdominal sympathetic system itself, commonly associated with disease of the adrenals, but also at times caused by other chronic disorders which invade the solar plexus and ganglia. In one of my own cases in which all the symptoms, including pigmentation, were conspicuous, and which came to autopsy, there was found, in addition to advanced tuberculosis of the suprarenal capsules, also an enlarged semilunar ganglion. The latter view would make it a disease of the nervous system, and the pigmentation a trophic phenomenon.

As stated, there are no other symptoms which are distinctive of any one of the lesions of the suprarenal capsule described, but among those which are more or less constantly associated are *anemia*, *extreme debility* and *general languor*, *irritability of the stomach*, and quite often *diarrhea*. The irritability of the stomach is manifested by *anorexia*, *nausea*, and *vomiting*, and may be a very early symptom. The heart's action is feeble, the pulse correspondingly small and rapid, and there is also often a tendency to fainting. There is *dyspnea*. At other times there is *headache*.

*Mental hebetude* goes *pari passu* with bodily weakness, while the other symptoms commonly associated with the latter condition are also present—namely, dizziness and ringing in the ears. Ultimately, the *asthenia* becomes so profound that the patient cannot rise, but keeps his bed, growing weaker and weaker, until he dies of sheer exhaustion. Sometimes there are *convulsions*, possibly due to brain anemia.

The *urine* is usually normal, although occasionally there is polyuria, and sometimes the urinary pigments have been found increased.

**Diagnosis.**—It is probable that pigmentation alone, at least unless it be very decided and general, is never sufficient to justify a diagnosis of suprarenal disease, since other abdominal affections are known to produce a similar condition. Among these are tuberculosis of the peritoneum, cancer and lymphoma; pregnancy, uterine and even hepatic disease. The popular notion that every discoloration of the skin is due to some *derangement of the liver* (liver-spot) has scanty foundation. In the hardening of the liver sometimes associated with *diabetes*, pigmentation has been noticed. All these facts go to show that the nervous system must have some powerful influence, supporting the second theory. The same testimony is afforded by the pigmentation which attends *exophthalmic goiter*. *Protracted filthiness* and vagabondism also produce discoloration of the body which is not distinguishable *per se* from that of Addison's disease. Deep general pigmentation has been found associated with *melanotic cancer*. Finally, pigmentation is sometimes the result of the prolonged administration of *arsenic*. It is well, therefore, to seek carefully for signs and symptoms other than pigmentation before a diagnosis is made. In the case of my own referred to, there were pulmonary tuberculosis and tuberculous disease of the spine, with pigmentation and asthenia, on which was based the diagnosis of Addison's disease, confirmed by autopsy.

**Prognosis.**—In a well-determined case of Addison's disease, as might be inferred from the nature of the causes, recovery is impossible, though the course of the disease is commonly prolonged and improvement may take place. In a few cases only is the course rapid. From 18 months to several years usually cover the duration.

**Treatment.**—This is principally symptomatic. We aim to restore the condition of the blood, and, of course, above all, iron is indicated. It may be associated with that other tonic so constantly used with iron especially—arsenic. An excellent preparation of arsenic is the solution of the chlorid, which is as good as Fowler's solution and mixes well with the chlorid of iron. The doses are the same as those of Fowler's solution—from 3 to 5 minims (0.18 to 3 c.c.); or the iron and arsenic may be given in pill form as the carbonate of iron and arsenious acid, and to this strychnin may be conveniently added. If very asthenic, the patient should be kept in bed and fed with nutritious, easily-assimilable food, of which peptonized milk and broths, beef-juice, cod-liver oil, and glycerin are the type. The diarrhea should be treated as other diarrheas, with bismuth and other remedies. For the nausea the usual gastric sedatives, including ice, carbonic acid water, champagne, milk and lime-water in small doses, koumiss, whey, and the like are suitable, massage may be helpful.

With the knowledge which has grown out of the treatment of myx-

edema with thyroid extract, no treatment of the combination of symptoms known as Addison's disease would be complete without the administration of some similar preparation of the adrenal gland. There have been prepared an extract in the shape of the tincture, a powder and a glycerin extract; and the glands are eaten fresh or dried. The equivalent of two a day is recommended. Of the powder, 3 to 5 grains (0.2 to 0.3 gm.) are given three or four times a day. At the present day, solution of adrenalin 1-1000 would be employed in doses of from 5 to 15 minims or more. In an analysis by E. W. Adams of 97 cases, treated by suprarenal extract, there was seeming permanent relief in 16. In two cases treated at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, one died of an acute infection after all severe symptoms had disappeared, and at the autopsy the suprarenal bodies were found sclerotic. The remedy is still *sub judice*, and as the disease is rare some time must elapse before its value can be determined.

### DISEASES OF THE SPLEEN.

Most of the morbid states of the spleen which possess clinical interest are considered in connection with diseases of the blood and with malaria.

**SPLENITIS.**—Splenitis occurs rarely as the result of extension of inflammation from a neighboring organ, such as the stomach, perinephric tissue, the diaphragm and lungs, or as the consequence of injury.

The symptoms are *tenderness* and *enlargement* in connection with the inflammatory conditions of adjacent organs referred to, and it is upon the association of such symptoms with those in the spleen itself that the diagnosis depends.

**PERISPLENITIS.**—This may occur as the result of the same causes as produce splenitis, and may be recognized by the presence of palpable friction fremitus. It may be suppurative in association with abscess of the spleen giving rise to one form of subphrenic abscess.

**ABSCESS OF THE SPLEEN.**—Abscess of the spleen occurs along with pyemic processes elsewhere, in the presence of the usual causes of pyemia. It is characterized by tenderness and enlargement. A remarkable case associated with suppurative splenitis occurred in my wards at the Pennsylvania Hospital, after metritis following criminal abortion. It was also associated with luxuriant mitral valvulitis. Such abscess may break into the stomach, bowel, or lungs, as well as into the peritoneal cavity.

**RUPTURE OF THE SPLEEN.**—This arises from severe injury, also from extreme and sudden acute hyperemia, due to malignant malaria, and from rapidly growing splenic tumors. The symptoms are sudden pain in the region of the spleen, collapse, pallor, and death, associated with the causes named.

**THE AMYLOID SPLEEN.**—This appears as a hard, smooth, and enlarged organ, associated with amyloid disease of other organs, such as the liver and kidneys, especially when there has been long-continued suppuration, as in hip disease, osteomyelitis, tuberculous consumption, or syphilis.

**ATROPHY OF THE SPLEEN.**—On the other hand, the spleen may be reduced in size by fibroid overgrowth and contraction due to syphilis.

**HEMORRHAGIC INFARCT OF THE SPLEEN.**—Infectious hemorrhagic infarct results in abscess of the spleen. The noninfectious is the result of embolism by a noninfectious embolus such as arises from the cardiac valves in acute or chronic endocarditis, from clots in the cavities of the left ventricle, or from clots in aneurysm in the large arteries. After the kidney, the spleen is the most frequent seat of such lodgement.

**Symptoms.**—The infarction is sometimes ushered in by chills, vomiting, and painful enlargements, the true nature of which can only be inferred when the causes named are present or the symptoms of embolism elsewhere occur simultaneously.

**NEOPLASMS OF THE SPLEEN.**—These are represented most frequently by gummy tumors, which are almost never recognized before death. *Carcinoma*, *sarcoma*, and *tuberculosis* occur, but are not recognizable by special characters. A nodular and uneven spleen may be regarded as due to cancer when associated with cancer elsewhere, sarcomatous when there is general sarcoma, tuberculous if there is tuberculosis elsewhere, and syphilitic if associated with the history of syphilis, especially the congenital form.

**ECHINOCOCCUS OF THE SPLEEN.**—The spleen may present a fluctuating tumor the nature of which can only be determined by the certain knowledge that a tumor of the same kind exists elsewhere, or by the recognition of hooklets in the aspirated fluid. Should the fluctuating tumor be associated with chills and fever, it is more likely to be abscess, which, it is to be remembered, may also begin as echinococcus disease which later takes on suppuration.

**WANDERING SPLEEN.**—This is a term applied to a condition of the spleen analogous to the movable kidney and liver. It is the direct result of an elongation of the gastrosplenic ligament and splenic artery and vein. Under these circumstances the usual splenic dullness in the midaxillary line, between the ninth and eleventh ribs has disappeared, and the spleen can usually be felt elsewhere in the abdominal cavity, usually, however, on the side below its normal site, whence it may be pushed into the natural situation, to leave it immediately as the upright position is assumed. Rarely, it is found in more distant situations, even in the pelvis. At times it may form attachments by inflammatory adhesion in the new situations, making its restoration difficult or impossible.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are not unchanging. The most constant is a *dragging sensation*, while there may also be the *effects of pressure*, which vary with the situation. There may be pressure on the ureter or bladder, causing difficulty in micturition; upon the bowel, causing partial obstruction or pain from compression of sensitive parts. The same train of nervous symptoms which attends floating kidney may also be present.

**Diagnosis.**—Some difficulty of diagnosis may result in consequence of such vagueness of symptoms. There may be a question between the existence of wandering spleen and *fecal tumor*. With the former, the

normal splenic dullness is wanting, though the well-known fact that the dullness is sometimes very small in health may give rise to error. A freely movable *cancer of the pylorus*, a tumor so movable that it may be felt in the left hypochondrium, may occasion similar difficulty, which must be settled in the same way. And so with other abdominal tumors of movable nature—the normal splenic dullness remains. The question as to whether a *movable* organ is the spleen or *kidney* is not likely to be a knotty one, even if the movable kidney be the left, if the same guide be availed of. The difference in outline of the two organs may be recognized in persons with thin abdominal walls, and, in rare instances, by the splenic notch. The possible coexistence of a movable spleen and a movable kidney is to be remembered.

**Treatment.**—The treatment must consist of mechanical measures to keep the spleen in place—measures which must be determined by the requirements of each case. They are variously successful.



## SECTION VII.

### DISEASES OF THE URINARY ORGANS.

#### GENERAL SYMPTOMATOLOGY.

Three important symptoms more or less characteristic of diseases of the urinary organs, and especially of disease of the kidneys, may, for the sake of brevity, be considered at the outset of our studies of these affections. They include *albuminuria*, *renal dropsy*, *uremia* and *tube casts*.

#### ALBUMINURIA.

**Definition.**—By albuminuria is meant a condition of the urine in which it contains some one of the forms of albumin of which at present we need consider only serum albumin and globulin. The sources of the albumins in urine are various, and may be conveniently divided into *extrarenal* and *renal*.

#### EXTRARENAL ALBUMINURIA.

The pelvis of the kidney, the ureters, the bladder, the urethra, and in the female the vagina and uterus in addition, are the most important sources of extrarenal albuminuria. In all of them it is almost invariably the serum of *pus* formed during catarrhal inflammation which furnishes the albumin. The presence of pus-corpuscles, therefore, in sufficient number in the urine commonly explains the source of such albumin, which is, moreover, usually small in quantity—never more than about one-tenth the volume of urine tested, even with the most copious sediment of pus. It must not be overlooked, however, that the two sources, kidney disease itself and the mucous surfaces referred to, may coexist, in which event careful microscopic examination will sooner or later discover tube-casts, while the quantity of albumin will be larger than can be accounted for by the presence of pus alone.

Menstrual or lochial blood need only be referred to as sources of albumin in the urine hardly likely to be overlooked by any physician; while hemorrhage from any one of the mucous surfaces referred to, as well as from the kidney itself, would be a source of albuminuria. It is usually comparatively easy to determine whether a hemorrhage has its source in the kidney or in the mucous membranes previously mentioned. In the former coagula are rarely present, for the blood, entering the ureter slowly, becomes intimately mixed with the urine. It imparts to it, too, when acid in reaction, a *smoky hue* which is very characteristic. The coloring-matter of the corpuscles is commonly dissolved out by the urine which is thus tinged, and on standing, the stroma of the corpuscles sinks

to the bottom as a brownish sediment. The microscope reveals these corpuscles shrunken, almost colorless, and often crenated. I have said that the smoky hue is present only in acid urine. When the latter becomes alkaline, either by spontaneous or artificial change in reaction, it assumes a brighter red hue, the degree of which depends upon the quantity of blood. The same cause, acidity, produces the smoky hue of blood which is vomited, and therefore mixed with gastric juice. When blood comes from the pelvis of the kidney or the ureter in any quantity, coagula which are molds of the ureter are sometimes found, the descent of which is often attended with severe pain.

Another source of albuminous urine, though not likely to cause error, should be mentioned—viz., the so-called chylous urine, or chyluria, in which in consequence of some as yet imperfectly understood communication between the lymphatic system and the urinary tracts, chyle enters the urine and imparts its physical and chemical characters thereto. These are the presence of albumin, and a milk-white appearance due to the presence of fat in a molecular state.

The kidney itself may be the seat of suppuration, and contribute through the pus thus added to an albuminuria.

#### RENAL ALBUMINURIA.

**The Immediate Cause of Renal Albuminuria.**—Albumin is usually considered as transuded into the glomeruli, but it may also pass through the intertubular blood-vessels and lymph-vessels into the urinary tubules so that either a glomerulitis, irritation of the parenchyma of the kidney, derangement of the circulation, or change in the blood may be presupposed whenever albuminuria exists. Delayed circulation of the blood through the glomeruli is doubtless of itself sufficient to cause albumin, to pass through the walls of the capillary blood-vessels into the urine, though it is more than probable that an altered state of the renal epithelium also contributes to a facility of transit. The necessary obstruction is produced by any cause which sufficiently resists the movement of the blood through the kidneys, whether it resides in the organ itself or in the venous system beyond it, whence the albuminuria which so often attends extreme valvular disease of the heart. The comparative smallness of such albuminuria as contrasted with that in parenchymatous nephritis, in which the renal cells are an early seat of change, is strong evidence in favor of some active participation of epithelial change in causing albuminuria. In chronic albuminuria another important influence operating to facilitate the transudation of albumin is a hydremic state of the blood, which is in turn a consequence of albuminuria. The use of oversalted foods is held to increase albuminuria when the kidneys are diseased, such food causing chlorid retention (see p. 755).

Renal albuminuria also occurs as a secondary symptom in diseases other than renal. First may be mentioned the albuminuria of fever, such as that of typhoid fever, small-pox, etc. The albuminuria of diphtheria and scarlatina, due to an intercurrent parenchymatous nephritis, is, of course, not intended. The febrile albuminuria alluded to is not usually large, and disappears with the decline of the disease. It is in great measure

the result of irritation of the kidney by the infectious agent; possibly also, in part, the result of diminished cardiac force with which the blood is driven through the kidneys and of the resulting turgor.

Other conditions in which albuminuria thus occurs are anemia, leukæmia, diarrhea, cholera, lead colic, also certain conditions of the brain and spinal cord, including hemorrhages into the brain, meningitis, epilepsy, tetanus, and others. In all of these there is probably diminished arterial pressure directly or indirectly through the nervous system.

The significance of renal albuminuria has altered greatly as our knowledge of this subject has increased. While large albuminurias of renal origin can scarcely be due to anything else but renal disease, and the degree of albuminuria is within limits a measure of the seriousness of the disease, yet the important fact remains that there may be true albuminuria, usually moderate, in which there is no disease of the kidney whatever; there may also rarely be Bright's disease in which there is no albuminuria. The significance of albuminuria is always increased by its association with tube-casts, yet there may be both albumin and casts in urine where there is no Bright's disease, while again, there may be Bright's disease without albumin or casts. I myself incline to the belief that such cases are infrequent, and yet this possibility must be acknowledged. In illustration of what has been said I may refer to:

*Physiological or Functional Albuminuria.*—The possibility of a physiological or functional albuminuria at the present day is generally conceded. By it is meant an albuminuria unassociated with other symptoms. There are no tube-casts or feeling of ill-health. Such albuminurias are often discovered accidentally, especially by examiners for life-insurance. Much care should be exercised in concluding upon the nature of an albuminuria suspected to be functional. In the first place, it should be small, not exceeding one-tenth the bulk of urine tested, and though it is not necessary that it should be absent on rising, yet it is a strong point in favor of the functional nature if it is absent at this time and present only after some exertion has been made or on taking food. No tube-casts should be in the urine, the urea should be in sufficient quantity, there should be no retinal change, no hypertrophy of the left ventricle, no high tension to the pulse, nor even a suggestion of dropsy. Further, this condition should be watched over a considerable length of time before the conclusion is arrived at that we have to do with a harmless functional albuminuria.

*Other proteid matters* are sometimes found in the urine, such as globulin, mucin, peptone, and hemialbumose, but, except in the case of globulin, their clinical significance is not sufficiently determined to justify their further consideration in a text-book. A certain amount of *globulin* is always associated with albumin. In an ordinary serum albuminuria the ratio commonly maintained is 10 to 18 of serum albumin to one of globulin, the ratio in the blood being one of serum albumin to 1 1/2 to 3 of globulin. A like ratio holds for these constituents in pus.

This ratio in albuminuria is at times exceeded, especially in the case of the amyloid kidney, where I regard the presence of globulin in large amount as of diagnostic value.

## TESTS FOR ALBUMIN AND GLOBULIN.

TO TEST FOR ALBUMIN.—The test which is at the same time the most delicate and reliable is the heat-and-acid test. It is best applied in the following manner:

*The Heat-and-Acid Test.*—A suitable quantity of urine, filtered if not clear, is poured into a test-tube, say to a depth of five cm. (two inches), and boiled over a Bunsen flame or spirit-lamp. Then nitric acid is added, drop by drop, until from 10 to 15 drops are added to this quantity of urine. Any precipitate produced in the act of boiling which is dissolved by the acid is phosphates. After the total quantity of acid has been added the tube is placed aside for half an hour, and if at the end of this time no further precipitate appears, the specimen may, for clinical purposes, be declared free from albumin. It is very important that the acid should not be added first, as is sometimes directed, for it often happens when a considerable amount of albumin is present, acid albumin is formed which is not precipitable by heat, and thus such quantities of albumin may elude detection. The test of heat and acid applied in the manner described is really more delicate than the contact method with nitric acid, recognizing, as it does, smaller quantities of albumin.

*The Contact Method with Nitric Acid, or Heller's Test.*—On the other hand, the contact method with nitric acid is free from the error possibly occasioned by acid albumin to which the heat-and-acid test is subject. The contact method, also known as Heller's test, is best done by placing a sufficient quantity of nitric acid in the bottom of a test-tube and overlaying it gently with urine. If albumin is present, a sharp white line will promptly form above the acid. A dark, reddish-brown color-line which forms in concentrated urines at this point will not, of course, be confounded with albumin. Furthermore, in concentrated urines a layer of acid urates, dirty white, is sometimes found at the junction between the two fluids. It behaves very differently, however, from the sharp white line of albumin, since it soon begins to rise above the surface, while the albumin remains at its primary position. Further, this less definite layer is promptly dissipated on the application of a moderate heat. When the heat-and-acid method and the contact method are jointly used in the way described, it is impossible for such an amount of albumin as is of clinical significance to elude detection. It is true that picric acid solution, Tanret's iodo-mercuric solution, and one or two others are slightly more delicate than the heat and acid, but they are subject to a now generally acknowledged source of error, the precipitation of mucin and of the vegetable alkaloids of which quinin is the type, which always appear in the urine when administered in full doses.

*The Picric Acid Test.*—As confirmatory test, however, the picric acid solution is very useful, and if its application is negative, we may feel assured that there is no albumin present, while a delicate response is doubtful, for the reason named. The picric acid test is also best applied in the contact method, the urine being placed in the tube first and overlaid with the saturated picric solution, because the picric acid is commonly lighter than the urine to be tested. When they are of the same specific gravity,

it is not easy to maintain a separation at the line of contact, but a careful examination of the fused portions will recognize a diminished transparency due to either mucin or albumin. A saturated solution of picric acid should always be kept on hand for the control purposes named.

**TO TEST FOR GLOBULIN.**—Globulin may be separated by Poehl's method as follows:

Render the urine slightly alkaline by ammonium hydrate, and after several hours filter, to separate the phosphates. Then add saturated neutral solution of ammonium sulphate in the proportion of one volume to one volume of the filtrate. If a precipitate forms, it is globulin.

### RENAL DROPSY.

Renal dropsy does not differ essentially from cardiac dropsy, though it is less directly traceable to venous obstruction and consequent transudation. It very frequently appears first in the face and upper extremities, and this fact alone goes to show that something else than obstruction to the circulation enters into its causation. In addition, it is well known that there may be advanced renal disease without dropsy when one would naturally expect obstruction. Venous obstruction must, however, be considered as one of the contributing factors, especially when in the lower extremities. Aside from this we must have recourse to theory to explain it. A hydremic state of the blood very probably favors the transudation in certain cases, this being occasioned by the deficient water secretion so often present. At first thought this would seem an explanation scarcely sufficient to explain the edema which appears so early in many cases of acute Bright's disease, but this objection is more apparent than real, for one need pause but for a moment to realize how quickly blood may become hydremic with an almost total anuria, while the habitual quantity of water continues to be ingested daily. Moreover, diminished urinary secretion often exists for some time before attention is called to it. I believe that sufficient stress has not been heretofore laid on this factor.

As the disease advances, the conditions favoring the hydremic state continue and grow so that in advanced stages this element doubtless contributes largely. It is more than likely also that in such stages alterations of some kind in the vascular and lymphatic walls contribute to facilitate the transudation, while the diminished elasticity of surrounding tissues may also constitute a factor. Where edema does not occur, its absence can only be explained by the presence of continued secretion of water by the kidneys or by supplemental secretion by some other organ, as the skin and bowels.

**Chlorid Retention.**—Strauss, in Germany, and Widal and Javal, in France, in 1902 and 1903 called attention to the fact that there is an abnormal quantity of sodium chlorid in the tissues of persons affected with renal dropsy, reporting cases in which it was possible to cause edema to appear and disappear almost at will by varying the amount of chlorid in the diet. The rationale of these events is supposed to be as follows: In nephritis

the ability of the kidney to excrete chlorid is decreased, whence their accumulation in the tissues and the consequent accumulation of water in the same tissues in order to keep the chlorids in solution. Although there appear to be exceptions and the parallelism is not always demonstrable, the correctness of the statement is generally admitted. An opposite theory, that the primary trouble in nephritic edema is the retention of water to which the retention of salt is secondary, is not sustained by the weight of evidence. Chlorid retention has been observed in some cases of cardiac dropsy and with some cases of edemas occurring in patients with inflammatory disorders, but there is no evidence to show that there is any causal relation between the two conditions or that the chlorid retention is more than can be explained by the retention of fluid in the edematous parts. The effect of chlorid retention is also to increase albuminuria.

The degree of dropsy varies greatly in different cases and different forms of Bright's disease, being in some cases trifling and in others enormous, including, ultimately, invasion of serous cavities like those of the pleura, peritoneum, and even pericardium.

### UREMIA.

The third symptom common to renal disease and, indeed, peculiar to it, is uremia. It may be defined in general terms as a condition due to retention within the blood of excrementitious substances which it is the function of the kidney to excrete. When we come to separate these substances, we are, however, completely at a loss, for no clinical or experimental studies have as yet given us the required information. Preeminently the experimental introduction of urea into the blood has repeatedly failed to excite symptoms of uremia, though the animals on which these experiments were made were presumably sound. Ligation of the renal veins has been equally futile in producing them. C. A. Herter has shown that the toxicity of the blood-serum is increased in uremic states, while extirpation of the kidney or a part of it increases the accumulation in the blood of urea and nitrogenous substances of the creatin class. It is probable also that the alloxuric bases, xanthin, hypoxanthin, which are virulently toxic, contribute to the sum of toxins responsible for uremia. Retained ammonia was held responsible by Frerichs and others. Most recently Croftan has sought to show that uremia is dependent on insufficiency of the liver.

In consequence of such failure, clinicians—and preeminently Rees and Traube—sought to explain certain of the more active nervous symptoms, such as the coma and convulsions, by supposing a localized edema of the brain or its membranes.

**Symptoms.**—It is not unlikely that *gastrointestinal symptoms* including the loss of appetite, nausea, vomiting, and headache which sometimes usher in an attack of nephritis may be the result of retained excrementitious matter. At all events, these same symptoms may be the initial ones of a uremia, coming on suddenly when the cause is unsuspected. Vomiting thus caused may persist, and the patient perish in consequence. *Headache* is often occipital, extending down the neck. To it is superadded *dizziness*.

An early symptom is *drowsiness*, which may be sudden or gradual in its onset and may be slight or decided. From the latter degree the transition is easy to the next symptom, that of *coma*, from which the patient may or may not be temporarily aroused. Alternating with the latter may be epileptoid *convulsions*, which are the most alarming and dangerous symptom of Bright's disease. This is not always the succession of these symptoms. Convulsions may succeed drowsiness, but as often precede, and they may occur without warning. Indeed, there may be no suspicion of Bright's disease whatever until a convulsion suddenly occurs. Drowsiness, in like manner, may be the first symptom of the renal disease to attract attention, others being overlooked or possibly even absent. The convulsion exhibits every grade of movement, from the slightest twitching to the most violent epileptiform spasm.

*Suppression of urine*, an almost constant symptom, is frequently the initial one which should at once excite suspicion. Accompanying it is often a breath of urinous odor, and when vomiting accompanies scanty or suppressed urine, the vomited matters sometimes have the same odor, the elements of urine being thus supplementarily eliminated.

*Impairment of vision or actual blindness—amaurosis*—suddenly occurring is another symptom of acute uremia which sometimes supervenes upon others, or it may itself usher in the complication. This blindness, it must be remembered, is altogether different from that which is the result of organic retinal changes, which are rare in acute nephritis, but common in some of the chronic forms. It may be due to retinal hemorrhage but is often unassociated with demonstrable retinal change. Uremic amaurosis often disappears as suddenly as it sets in. Uremic *deafness* is also possible, but is a rare event.

*Itching of the skin* is another symptom sometimes present in uremia. It is probably due to the irritant action of urea upon the nerves of the skin as it is being supplementarily eliminated by that organ. That such increased elimination takes place is attested by that rare but still unquestioned occurrence, in which the entire integument is covered with a frost-like coating, which has been found upon analysis to be made up of crystals of pure urea.

Another symptom of uremia which belongs rather to the uremia of chronic renal disease is shortness of breath—*uremic asthma*, it is called. This is an asthma which differs from bronchial asthma in the absence of spasmodic contraction of the bronchi, and its uremic origin, I think, is extremely doubtful. I believe it is more frequently a cardiac asthma, due to heart failure, the result of dilatation succeeding some cases of hypertrophy. It may happen that true spasmodic asthma is produced by uremia, but it must be exceedingly rare. The attacks are likely to occur suddenly at night. To it alone should the name uremic asthma be given. Paroxysms of dyspnea are also caused by edema of the lung, which is not infrequent in acute nephritis. It is recognized by the presence of fine, moist râles. Of course, it is not impossible for nephritis to occur in an asthmatic, whose attacks would then occur as before, independent of the uremic cause, or they might be increased in frequency or rendered more unmanageable by the latter.

*Cheyne-Stokes breathing* is also a symptom of uremia and may last for a long time. It may occur quite independent of coma. It is more than likely that other disturbances of breathing, even some which closely resemble dyspnea, may be due to disturbances of the respiratory center.

The question of *temperature* in uremia has not been satisfactorily determined. My own experience points to the absence of any elevation, with at times a tendency to subnormal temperature. I am aware that studies have been published which go to show that an abnormally high temperature is characteristic, and this may exceptionally be the case. But in true, uncomplicated uremia I believe in the majority of cases the temperature will not much exceed the normal. It is true, too, that toward the very end there is commonly a rise, but this attends dissolution in so many diseases that it cannot be considered characteristic.

The *pulse* is often slow in uremia before the appearance of severe symptoms: sometimes as infrequent as from forty to fifty, but with severe symptoms it becomes frequent.

*Acute mania* and *delusional insanity* (*Folie Britique*) may also be symptoms. Such acute delirium is not very frequent and I believe other conditions are sometimes mistaken for it, as for example the delirium of *mania a potu*. Rarely melancholia and paralysis, including hemiplegia and even monoplegia are symptoms. These may occur independently of a convulsion or succeed it, in which event there may or may not be any coarse lesion found at necropsy. True uremic palsies are of undoubted occurrence. I have met hemiplegias which could not be distinguished from those of apoplectic origin until their total disappearance cleared up the matter.

The following table, although not distinctive gives a general idea of the differences between the effects of cerebral hemorrhage, alcoholic narcosis and uremia.

CEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE.	ALCOHOLIC NARCOSIS.	UREMIA.
Pupils unequal or dilated.	Pupils contracted or dilated; eyes injected.	Pupils generally dilated; albuminuric retinitis.
Stertorous puffy breathing and flapping cheek.	May be stertorous breathing.	Stertorous breathing.
No odor.	Odor of alcohol.	No odor, unless urinous.
Paralysis; hemiplegia.	No paralysis usually.	Paralysis usual, but may be atypical.
Pulse slow and strong or irreg.; arteries often sclerotic.	Pulse frequent and feeble.	Pulse at first strong, later weak and rapid; tension strong; arterio-sclerosis.
Coma sudden and deep.	Coma gradual.	Coma gradual or sudden.
Convulsions late; may be unilateral.	No convulsions.	Preceded by general convulsions, headache, etc.
Urine generally negative.	Urine generally negative although patient may have Bright's disease.	Urine albuminous.
Apoplectic habit; heart may show hypertrophy.	Red face and nose, heart often weak and dilated; myocarditis.	Edema and pallor; heart hypertrophied.



## TUBE-CASTS.

Tube-casts or "cylinders," as they are sometimes called, are molds of the uriniferous tubules. Their origin is not always the same. They may be produced by the coagulation of a fibrinous constituent of the blood which having exuded into the tubule entangles whatever it may have surrounded in its liquid state; subsequently it may contract and slip out of the tubule into the pelvis of the kidney, whence it is carried to the bladder and voided with the urine. Casts rarely exceed  $1/25$  inch (1 mm.) in length.

Two other possible modes of formation of casts must be mentioned, according to one of which the cast represents disintegrated and fused cells which may be the epithelial lining of the tubules, red corpuscles, or leukocytes; and according to another, of a secretion from these same cells as originally suggested by Rovidó. That casts are sometimes formed according to the first, at least, of these two methods is not unlikely, while there is



FIG. 71.—Epithelial Casts and Granular Fatty Renal Cells.



FIG. 72.—Pus Cast.

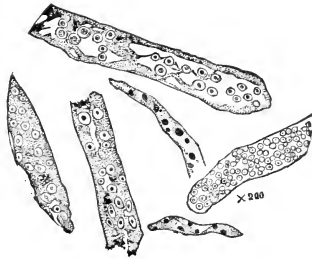


FIG. 73.—Blood Casts—(after Whittaker).

reason also to believe that the so-called "cylindroids" or mucus-casts originate in the second way.

That casts are sometimes found in urine free from albumin is undoubtedly true. That persons in whom such casts occur are entirely healthy cannot be as unqualifiedly asserted.

The mechanism of the formation of the different varieties of casts, on the supposition of an albuminoid exudation from the blood, is very simple. Thus, suppose a tubule to be filled with detached and loosely attached epithelium at the time the coagulable material is poured into it. These elements are entangled, and, as the casts contract, are carried out in the shape of an "epithelial" cast (Fig. 71). If the tubule should happen to have contained blood, the cast entangling it is called a "blood-cast" (Fig. 73); if white corpuscles or leukocytes, a "pus-cast" (Fig. 72). Casts containing even a few blood-corpuscles are also called blood-casts. The basic substance of blood-casts is most probably the fibrin of the blood. If the epithelium be firmly attached to the basement membrane of the

tube and remain behind when the cast passes out, or if the tube be entirely bereft of epithelium, then is the cast a "hyaline" (Fig. 74) or structureless cast. In the former instance the cast is of *smaller* diameter, and in the latter of *larger*, the diameter in the latter being that of the former plus twice

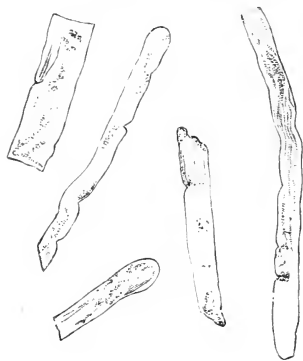


FIG. 74.—Hyaline Casts.  $\times 210$ .

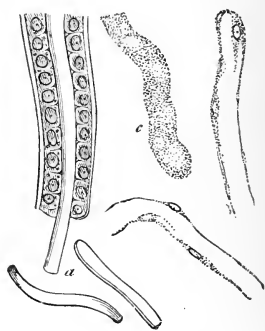


FIG. 75.—Hyaline and Granular Casts. Illustrating the Formation of the Former at *a*.—(*Rindfleisch*).

the thickness of an epithelial cell. Figure 75, *a*, from Rindfleisch, explains this sufficiently. From causes like these, as well as a subsequent contraction of the cast itself, the diameter of casts may vary considerably, ranging commonly from  $1/2500$  to  $1/500$  inch (0.01 to 0.05 mm.). A cast

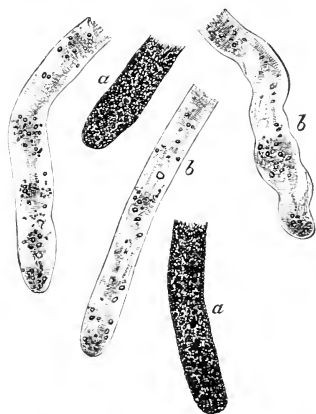


FIG. 76.—*a. a.* Dark Granular Casts. *b. b.* Casts Partially Hyaline, Containing Oil Drops and Granular Matter.  $\times 225$ .

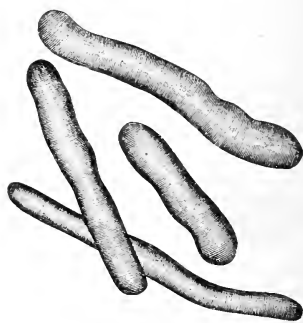


FIG. 77.—Waxy Casts.  $\times 150$ .

is seldom completely hyaline, generally containing a few granules and sometimes one or two glistening oil drops, but it is still called *hyaline*. Completely hyaline casts are, however, not infrequent. A variety of hyaline cast, more solid in appearance and resembling molten wax, is a "waxy

cast" (Fig. 77). Some hyaline casts are so delicate as to be overlooked unless the light from the mirror illuminating the field of view be modified by shading with the hand or by manipulation of the mirror itself. If a cast contains granular matter, which is generally the granular debris of the degenerated epithelial lining of the tubule or blood-corpuscles, it is called a "*granular*" cast, and *highly granular* (Fig. 76, a), *moderately* or *pale granular* (Fig. 75, c), *slightly* or *delicately granular* (Fig. 75, b), according to the amount of granular matter present. When the material of granular casts is derived from broken-down blood-corpuscles, the casts appear yellow or yellowish-red. Finally, if a cast is loaded with oil drops, either free or contained in epithelial cells, it is called an "*oil cast* or *fatty cast*" (Fig. 78).

Casts of smaller diameter are sometimes found within those of larger, the material of the latter having been poured out around that of the former after it has undergone some contraction. This occurs usually with waxy

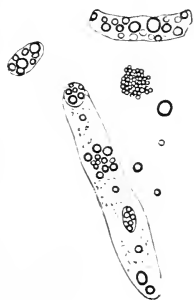


FIG. 78.—Oil-Casts and Fatty Epithelium.  $\times 200$ .

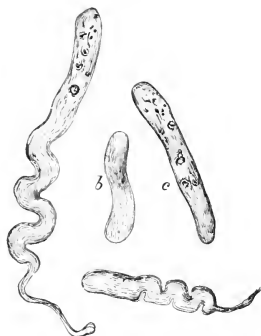


FIG. 79.—Cylindroid or Mucus Casts.  $\times 200$ .

or hyaline casts. In consequence of the mode of formation previously referred to, hyaline and waxy casts vary considerably in diameter, some being as narrow as  $1/1000$  inch (0.025 mm.) and even narrower, while others are as much as  $1/500$  inch (0.05 mm.) wide. There is no doubt that some of these are formed in the straight or collecting tubes near their openings on the papillæ. To these a limited number of epithelial cells is sometimes attached.

In addition to the epithelial casts previously described, there are found in urine under the same circumstances molds of the uriniferous tubules made up of simple *aggregations* of the *epithelial cells themselves*—simple exfoliations of the cellular contents of the tubule, which, having increased by proliferation, form a compact cellular mass. In addition to this are sometimes found epithelial casts in which the cells are seated on the outside or around the fibrinous mold.

**Mucus-casts, Cylindroids.**—Casts are occasionally found which are apparently pure *mucus-molds* of the uriniferous tubules (Fig. 79). Unless covered by accidental elements, as granular urates or phosphates of lime, they are smooth, hyaline, or gently fibrillated molds, especially

characterized by their great length, in the course of which they divide and subdivide, diminishing in diameter as the division proceeds, showing positively that they come from the kidney. Yet there is no albumin, or merely as much as could be accounted for by the presence of pus which sometimes attends them. For they are particularly apt to occur where there is irritation of the bladder, which is apparently extended through the ureters of the kidney. Under these circumstances they are frequently met. They are not infrequently voided in cases where the urine has a very high specific gravity, 1030 or higher, containing an excess of urea and urates.

These casts are not identical with the bands of mucin which are found in urine of highly acid reaction. The mucin bands are probably precipitated by the acids, are often beset with granular urates, and might on this account be mistaken for casts. At the same time the mucus-cast is probably nothing but pure mucus or mucin.

## DISEASES OF THE KIDNEY.

### DERANGEMENTS OF CIRCULATION.

#### ACTIVE CONGESTION.

**Etiology.**—Active congestion occurs as the result of poisoning by cantharides or arsenic, overdoses of turpentine, copaiba, cubebs, and carbolic acid. It is identical with the first stage of acute nephritis, however caused. The kidney in acute fever has usually been considered as actively congested, but recent experiments by Walter Mendelsohn go to show that the kidney in fever is really anemic, small, pale, and bloodless, so that the kidney is really comparable to the anemic kidney of cholera, in which, too, there are albuminuria and nutritional changes of a degenerative kind analogous to the cloudy swelling affecting the renal cells in acute fever, but more advanced in degree.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The kidney of active congestion is slightly enlarged, swollen, and, after removal of the capsule, brown or mottled. On section, the cortex is wider and darker than in health, the blood-vessels are overfull, the Malpighian bodies are distended, and the cells are the seat of cloudy swelling. The medulla is less markedly red and sharply defined from the cortex.

**Symptoms.**—There are none except a scanty urine of high specific gravity and high color, sometimes small albuminuria, with a few hyaline and pale granular casts.

#### PASSIVE CONGESTION OR CYANOTIC INDURATION.

**Etiology and Pathogeny.**—While any agency which obstructs the movement of the blood through the kidney may cause passive congestion, the causes encountered in actual practice are mostly limited to valvular disease of the heart and chronic pulmonary disease involving extensive areas of the lung, such as emphysema, interstitial pneumonia, and pleurisy,

with extensive effusion or marked adhesions. Tubercular phthisis is a less common cause, because of the impaired nutrition and small quantity of blood. Pressure on the renal veins by tumors, the pregnant uterus, or ascitic fluid acts similarly.

In any event the mechanism of its production is the same. The blood is crowded into the venous side of the vascular system. In mitral insufficiency the blood is regurgitated from the left ventricle into the corresponding auricle, and thence into the lungs; the latter organs become engorged, and again resist the entrance of blood from the right side of the heart, whence it is backed into the right auricle and valveless vena cava. The smaller veins of the extremities at first resist the encroachment by means of their valves, but the veins of the abdominal viscera, including the liver and the kidneys, are without valves, and are first, therefore, to receive the brunt of the stagnation, and they become engorged with blood. In pulmonary or pleural disease the obstruction begins in the lungs instead of in the heart, but the mechanism is the same. Pressure by tumor on the renal vein is even more direct.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The kidney of cyanotic induration or passive congestion is hard, firm, and bluish-red as to its external surface. In the earlier stages it is enlarged simply from the presence of the large amount of blood detained in its vessels. The stellate veins are unusually distinct. The capsule strips off easily, and on section the enlargement is found to involve the cortex, but the veins of both cortex and medulla are engorged, that of the straight veins causing the medulla to appear darker in hue than the cortex. The Malpighian bodies, on the other hand, are not always engorged. The cut surface of the kidney is moist and succulent, but the microscope reveals no further changes either in the cortex or the medulla, the epithelium being unchanged.

After some duration the kidney is slightly if at all larger than the normal organ, though rarely smaller. The other superficial characters of hardness, smoothness, and bluish-red color, however, remain. Sometimes there appears a slight tendency to lobulation. At this stage the capsule does not strip off quite so easily as usual, but may drag small portions of the parenchyma with it. There may then be seen some shallow depressions. On section, the vessels are less turgid, and the relations of the cortex and medulla are not much altered. There may be a slight overgrowth of interstitial tissue and a small-celled infiltration between the tubules. The malpighian bodies are sometimes shriveled, and the epithelium of the tubules is granular and slightly fatty.

**Symptoms.**—These are primarily those of the diseases of which it is the consequence, of which I will emphasize only *anasarca*, because of its importance. To such is superadded *scanty urine of high specific gravity*, containing usually a small amount of *albumin* and a few *small hyaline casts*.

The dropsy first involves the lower extremities, in the area drained by the inferior vena cava. There also occur, however, effusions into the pleural sac and peritoneum, and the hands and arms may be involved.

The *urine* is scanty and of high specific gravity, often 1030 to 1035, and even higher. It is turbid with urates, depositing a copious sediment

of them and of uric acid. The albumin is usually small in quantity, but may become larger if the obstruction to the movement of the blood is great. The casts are small, transparent, or faintly granular, and not numerous—indeed, often absent. Blood is rarely present, while its presence may be considered evidence of a superadded nephritis. The solids are secreted in normal amount. In fact, such kidneys can apparently be restored to their normal function at any time by proper treatment. *Uremia is exceedingly rare.* Very rarely does it happen that an interstitial nephritis is produced.

**Diagnosis.**—Passive congestion exists to a certain degree in all cases of valvular heart disease without compensation, but higher degrees may be suspected when the urine becomes scanty and albuminous, and when all the symptoms of the cardiac affection become aggravated. When the physician sees the patient after the symptoms of passive congestion have become marked, it is often a nice question to decide which of the two conditions is primary, the cardiac or the renal condition; but this subject will be further considered in treating of the relations between kidney disease and heart disease.

**Prognosis.**—With the addition of the renal complication, the inconveniences and annoyances of the cardiac disease become greatly aggravated, while the difficulties in the way of successful treatment are greater. Yet the results which sometimes follow appropriate and energetic treatment and the substitution of favorable for unfavorable hygienic surroundings, such as succeed the admission of a neglected outcast to the wards of a hospital, are often astonishing. Under these circumstances it is not unusual for the dropsy to decline, the albumin and casts to disappear, and the patient to be restored to comparative comfort, without, however, any change in the original lesion, which, upon the slightest provocation, may reexcite all the symptoms.

**Treatment.**—As intimated under prognosis, the substitution of favorable for unfavorable hygienic surroundings, if the former exist, is the primary requisite. Shelter, warmth, rest, and good food are indispensable. After this digitalis is the sheet-anchor, for evident reasons. We have here to deal with a dilated, weak, failing heart, unable to drive the blood forward. Its power must be increased, and we have a remedy capable of doing this in digitalis. Sufficient doses must, however, be given, whether of the tincture, powder, or infusion. A 1/2 ounce (15 c.c.) of the infusion may be given every six hours to an adult; of the tincture, not less than 10 minims (0.65 c.c.), or 20 drops, to be reduced when diuresis sets in. Under such doses, if the cardiac disease is not too advanced, the quantity of urine may increase, become clear, its albumin and casts diminish, and with these also the dropsy, dyspnea and restlessness, sleepless nights. All that has been said under the treatment of cardiac valvular disease of substitutes for digitalis is applicable here, and the reader is referred to that section.

Due attention must also be paid to the bowels, for the sake of securing prompt action of the diuretics, as well as the elimination which their free action accomplishes. The hydragogue cathartics, such as elaterium and the salines, are often excellent adjuvants.

## ACUTE PARENCHYMATOUS NEPHRITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Acute Nephritis; Acute Diffuse Nephritis; Acute Desquamative Nephritis; Acute Tubal Nephritis; Acute Bright's Disease; Acute Catarrhal Nephritis; Croupous Nephritis; Albuminous Nephritis; Hemorrhagic Nephritis; Acute Albuminuria; Acute Renal Dropsy.*

**Definition.**—Acute parenchymatous nephritis is an acute inflammation of the kidney, the tubular, vascular, and interstitial tissues being simultaneously involved in different degrees in different cases. In the majority of cases, the parenchyma, or secreting structure, is first and most invaded, whence the term parenchymatous nephritis.

**Etiology.**—Most cases of acute parenchymatous nephritis are caused by some poison of endogenous or exogenous origin which is carried by the circulation. Instances of the former are the toxins of scarlet fever or diphtheria, whence, therefore, it is frequent in children. A certain number originate in exposure to cold, especially cold and dampness, while the body is warm and perspiring. The latter cause is particularly potent if the person be fatigued or exhausted. When acute nephritis supervenes on scarlet fever, it is usually not until the end of the second week, often when convalescence is well established. It may occur as early as the tenth day, seldom, if ever, later than the 31st.

Other grave infectious diseases, as small-pox, acute endocarditis, and acute articular rheumatism, typhus and typhoid fevers, pneumonia, and malaria are also occasional causes. Measles, erysipelas, pyemia, jaundice, and diabetes have been known to cause it. Skin diseases, as well as extensive burns of the skin, are acknowledged causes: the former rarely, but the latter almost always if the burns be sufficiently extensive. Simple follicular tonsillitis is also a not infrequent cause, while the graver forms whether due to streptococcus or the Klebs-Loeffler bacillus, may be followed by correspondingly severe nephritis. I have known an abscess in the thigh, succeeding the lodgment of a splinter in the toe, to be followed by typical acute nephritis. Pregnancy is the cause of a good many cases of acute parenchymatous nephritis, to which, in turn, most cases of puerperal convulsions are due.

Most cases of acute nephritis due to other causes than scarlatina, diphtheria, cold, and pregnancy are mild in degree; and even in cases due to pregnancy, if the patient is once safely delivered, recovery is usually rapid. In looking for the evidence of nephritis in acute infectious diseases, it must not be forgotten that intense febrile movement may cause albuminuria, independently of any structural change in the kidney due to the toxic agent. When thus caused, the albuminuria is always small.

Of exogenous causes certain specific poisons of vegetable and mineral origin are capable of producing acute nephritis. Among the best known of these substances are cantharides, turpentine, oil of mustard, wormseed oil, and phosphorus; in a less degree, the mineral acids, arsenic, nitrate of silver, lead, and mercury. Very large quantities of alcohol, when swallowed, have caused acute nephritis.

The microbic origin of nephritis has also been invoked. Apart from

analogy, which, with our present knowledge of bacterial agency, renders such cause highly probable, pathogenic organisms have been found in the urine of cases, pure cultures from which, by Mannaberg, produced intense nephritis when injected into the blood of animals. Oertel claimed, 15 years ago, that in renal diseases following diphtheria he found "great numbers of micrococci and exuberant proliferations of the same," both in the renal tubes and Malpighian bodies; Heller, that he had repeatedly found the blood-vessels and their branches in acutely inflamed and swollen kidneys from cases of pyemia greatly dilated and plugged with masses which, under low powers, presented a peculiar grayish-yellow appearance, and with high powers were found to consist of extremely minute, highly refracting granular particles. These particles he considered spherical bacteria, and the resulting masses bacteria emboli. It is, therefore, now commonly conceded that the bacteria responsible for the acute infectious diseases are also the agents which produce the complementary nephritides in all of them.

As may be inferred from the etiology, acute nephritis is often a disease of early age, although when due to cold or any one of the causes named except scarlatina, it is as much more likely to affect adults as these latter are more frequently subjected to such causes. It is rare after 40, almost unknown after 50. More males are attacked than females in adult life, evidently because they are more frequently exposed to the causes. But even in childhood there is a slight preponderance of cases in boys affected, which can hardly be thus accounted for.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This varies with the stage of the disease, as well as its severity. In the first place, as ordinarily caused, the disease is symmetrical, both organs being alike involved. In the fully developed stage the kidneys are more or less enlarged, in the latter stages always so, sometimes to more than twice their normal volume, and they may weigh from eight to 12 ounces (240 to 360 gm.), those of children reaching the former, and those of adults the latter.

The capsule strips off easily, without dragging any of the parenchyma with it. Bereft of its capsule, the kidney itself is softer, inelastic, and doughy. Its surface is smooth and exhibits a peculiar mottled appearance, which is due to the fact that the little circlets of veins which form the boundary of the lobules are distinctly injected, while the area surrounded by each circlet is paler than in health, and in the more advanced stages even yellowish-white in color. This "irregular mixture of congestion and anemia," as Sir George Johnson early called it, is further contributed to by the injection of other veins indistinct in health. Spots of hemorrhagic extravasation may also be found scattered over the surface.

*On section*, it is evident that the enlargement is due to change in the cortex and the interpyramidal convoluted portion. The cut surface is smeared over with a dark red or chocolate-hued blood, but on scraping or washing it away the vessels are found injected like those of the surface, and between them the same paleness or yellowish-white hue is seen. The Malpighian bodies are enlarged and distinct, dark red, sometimes pale. Punctiform hemorrhages may also be present, as on the surface of the organ. The pyramids are dark red.



*Minute Changes.*—These are confined almost solely to the labyrinthine structure. They by no means always correspond in degree with what would be expected from the symptoms, being often entirely inadequate to explain them. The changes are *tubal*, *glomerular*, and *interstitial*.

1. *Tubal Changes.*—These vary a great deal with the stage of the disease. The earliest change assumed by the cells is cloudy swelling, a result of increased nutritive activity. In this state the cells are swollen and “cloudy” from a deposition of albuminous granules, which may obscure the nucleus. Although kidneys removed after death from cases of acute parenchymatous nephritis have, as a rule, advanced far beyond this stage, yet it is often possible to find points at which cloudy swelling exists alongside of more advanced stages, while alongside of these, again, may be tubes in which the epithelium is normal. As a result of the cloudy swelling, the cells are larger, and the tubes are therefore distended, broader than in health, but a stage later they are still more distended with granular cells, granular debris, and often red-blood disks and leukocytes. Under a low power, the tubules appear as black, more or less opaque lines. A closer examination of the *cells* at this stage, as obtained by scraping, shows them to be granular in various degrees. In some the nucleus is still visible, in others demonstrable by the aid of staining fluids only, and in others still entirely obscured. Occasionally a few fat drops may be present. In other situations the cells are so closely packed in the tubules that they cannot be differentiated, being apparently fused in one continuous, dark, granular mass. It is to these tubules, distended with granular cells and their debris, dark by transmitted light, but white by reflected, that the pale or white color seen between the injected blood-vessels is due. Casts of the uriniferous tubes are also found *in situ*, usually blood casts or small hyaline casts. Minute extravasations of blood, visible to the naked eye, have been referred to. They occupy the tubules, and in the “hemorrhagic” form the interstitial tissue.

2. *Glomerular Changes.*—In all cases in which the nephritis is due to a toxic substance which enters the blood the glomerule suffers first. The capillaries of the *tuft* are distended with blood, which bursts through into the Malpighian capsule, distending it with red blood-corpuscles and leukocytes. In a more advanced stage, the glomeruli may be paler, in consequence of the proliferation of the cells lining the capsule and covering the glomerule (glomerulonephritis).

These glomerular changes are present in almost all cases. They include swelling and desquamation of the capsular epithelium, and an accumulation of cells in the interior of the capillaries, probably due to a proliferation of their endothelial lining or an accumulation of white blood-cells, or thickening and hyaline degeneration of the capillary walls. These are especially frequent in nephritis after scarlet fever or diphtheria.

3. *Interstitial Changes.*—In mild cases there is no interstitial change, no formation or deposit of new material between the tubes. In others there is a serous transudate, with a few leukocytes in most cases, and red blood-disks. In severer cases there is a large outwandering of cells, and a small-celled infiltrate settles itself between the convoluted tubes and around the capsules. In cases of extreme severity, a diffuse nephritis

involving both tubes and intertubular tissue may be present from the outset. In such event, the latter is uniformly infiltrated or pervaded more intensely in certain places by leukocytes.

The epithelial lining of the straight tubes of the pyramids is unchanged, but the tubes themselves often contain cellular and granular material which has descended from the convoluted tubes.

Serous infiltration and effusion are present in various tissues when the patient is dropsical at the time of death. Among other tissues sometimes thus infiltrated are the membranes of the brain, constituting what is known as edema of the brain. The mucous membrane of the pelvis of the kidney may be injected, but is otherwise unchanged.

**Symptoms.**—The mode of onset of acute nephritis is not uniform, but among the symptoms earliest noticed is slight *swelling* or *puffiness in the face*, below the eyes, associated with more or less *falling off in urinary secretion*. This *edema rapidly extends* to the upper extremities and trunk, and thence, if the disease does not abate, into the lower extremities and abdominal walls. In the male, the scrotum and prepuce are favorite seats of swelling. The great serous sacs are the last to fill with fluid in acute nephritis, although in bad cases ascites not infrequently occurs, while there may also be transudation into the pleural and pericardial cavities. The degree assumed by the general anasarca is sometimes enormous, resulting in the extremest distortion. The eyes may be actually closed by the swelling, and movement of the lower limbs rendered almost impossible. Dropsy does not always follow the order here named. Much depends upon the position of the patient. Thus, if he be upon his feet, the latter may be the first to swell, or if he be lying in the recumbent position, the back may be the seat of the first swelling. While dropsy is a very frequent symptom in acute nephritis, it is not, however, always present. It is more particularly in the nephritis after scarlet fever and exposure to cold that it is a decided and almost invariable symptom. After the other infectious diseases it is frequently absent.

Not infrequently the disease is ushered in by *nausea* and *vomiting* and very rarely by uremic symptoms (see p. 756).

*Changes in the Urine.*—Simultaneously with, and sometimes earlier than, the dropsical symptoms are *diminution in the quantity and alteration in the quality of the urine*. The former may amount to actual suppression. The urine is darker than natural, and often smoke-hued from the effect of the natural acid reaction on a small quantity of blood. Should the urine become alkaline, the color becomes a brighter red. The hue is more positively red if the quantity of blood is large, which is not often the case; but here again the peculiar tint returns if the blood is allowed to subside. The blood may disappear, to return again.

The *specific gravity* of the urine at first is high—1025 to 1030—mainly due to the diminished quantity, while the solids remain nearly normal. Later, if the symptoms abate, the specific gravity diminishes with the increase in the quantity; or, if the disease lasts for any length of time or passes over into the chronic form, a similar reduction in weight occurs; this may result in a specific gravity as low as 1010.

The chief alteration is the *presence of albumin*. This is generally

copious, the urine often solidifying on the application of heat and acid, while it constantly contains more than half its bulk. This albumin is derived in part from the extravasated blood, and in part is a result of the inflammatory action. If estimated by weight, it will equal 0.5 to 1 per cent., and, in rare instances only, 1.5 per cent.

Next in importance is a reduction in the 24 hours' secretion of *urea*, which is invariable until convalescence sets in. The percentage remains as high or higher than in health, but the 24 hours' quantity is diminished. There is a good deal of range within the limits of health in the quantity of urea eliminated in 24 hours—from 300 to 600 grains (20 to 40 gm.) in adults, and it varies with the amount of proteid food ingested. More frequently the amount is reduced to one-fourth or one-half the normal. The phosphates and chlorids are also reduced.

As to *sediment*, the urine of all cases of acute parenchymatous nephritis deposits a sediment which, in the early stages at least, is copious and brownish or reddish-brown in hue; later, it may diminish in amount and assume a lighter color. *Microscopical examination* reveals this deposit to be made up mainly of casts of the uriniferous tubules, free cells from these same tubules, blood-corpuscles, red and colorless, and very constantly crystals of uric acid, together with granular urates. The casts include the varieties known as epithelial casts, blood casts, hyaline casts, waxy, and dark granular casts. Pus casts and numerous leucocytes are also sometimes present. The hyaline casts are probably pure fibrin. The epithelial casts consist of the same material, to which epithelial cells of the tubules are attached, and blood casts have blood-corpuscles caught in the coagulated exudate. The epithelium thus attached, as well as that which is found free in the urine, is variously altered. Some of the cells are merely the seat of cloudy swelling, others are decidedly granular, while others again are converted into compound granule cells or granular fatty cells by complete fatty degeneration. These arise as the disease advances. Casts containing a few oil drops may also be present, but much oil is not found until the case has continued for some time—in fact, become chronic.

Along with the diminished quantity of urine is often met a disposition to *frequent micturition*, the efforts at which are only partially successful, resulting in the emission of from a few drops to a tablespoonful. This frequent desire to pass water is a purely reflex symptom, the bladder being free from disease. It sometimes precedes, in point of time, all other symptoms. It is by no means constant.

*Fever* is not a marked symptom in acute nephritis; indeed, it is generally absent, unless as a part of the disease causing it. To a less degree the same is true of *pain*. It is mostly absent, and when present amounts only to a dull ache, as a rule. *Chilliness* and *rigors* sometimes introduce the disease. *Nausea* and *vomiting* are not infrequent in the beginning. Sometimes these symptoms usher in the disease. The *pulse* is quite characteristically altered. While not materially changed in rate, it exhibits, especially in sphygmogram, a decided increase in tension, as shown by the broader apex and diminished dicrotic element. Blood-pressure is increased, but much less than in chronic nephritis.

*Uremia*.—At almost any time in the course of an acute nephritis the patient is liable to *uremia* while the *train of nervous symptoms* usually known as *uremic*, and ascribed to the accumulation of excrementitious substances in the blood, is not confined to this form of Bright's disease, and is by no means invariably present. Its causes and phenomena, so far as known, were considered under general symptomatology, page 756. When present, however, it adds a phase of extreme gravity.

*The duration* of acute nephritis is variable—from a few days to several months, while the acute form may become chronic. The former class of cases are fatal, for none which recover do so in a few days. The most rapid usually require a month. As to the cases of longer duration, the possibility of recovery at any time cannot be denied, but nothing is better determined than that the longer the duration the more difficult the cure. Of course, such cases are no longer acute.

**Complications.**—These are not numerous in acute, as contrasted with chronic Bright's disease, and some which are described as complications are not really such, but local symptoms. Thus, *edema of the lungs* occurs as a part of the general tendency to dropsy, and may be a grave symptom, resulting in death by suffocation. It is not the result of an intercurrent bronchitis. *Pneumonia*, on the other hand, is an occasional true complication. *Inflammation of the serous membranes* is more truly a complication, but not every case in which there is effusion into a serous cavity is inflammatory. Such effusions may be local dropsies. The exudate may become purulent, thus also increasing the gravity of the case. Pleurisy is the most frequent form, pericarditis next, and peritonitis next. The tubercular origin of the graver forms of pleurisy occurring in Bright's disease has been suggested.

*Hypertrophy of the left ventricle* is not a frequent complication of acute nephritis. It is a well-recognized one of chronic Bright's disease. Time is an essential condition to its production. It is not, therefore, until the nephritis has existed for some time that it commonly occurs. It does occasionally happen earlier. Thus, Dickinson reports a case recognized at eight weeks, and von Leube one at ten days succeeding the first symptoms. The infallible sign of hypertrophy is sharp accentuation of the aortic second sound, with or without demonstrable enlargement of the normal area of dullness.

Allusion has been made to *gastric symptoms* which very commonly attend acute nephritis, especially after scarlet fever. Samuel Fenwick<sup>1</sup> and Wilson Fox<sup>2</sup> have shown that these may be associated with organic changes in the stomach. Fenwick ascribes them to gastritis, as evidenced by increased vascularity of the mucous membrane, distention of the tubes by a confused mass of cells and granular matter, and occasional thickening of the basement membrane. To these, Fox has added thickening of the intertubular tissue.

Notwithstanding the frequency of convulsions in acute nephritis, structural *alterations* in the *brain* are almost unknown. Apoplectic effusions are rare, probably because of the integrity of the blood-vessels of the

<sup>1</sup>Samuel Fenwick, "The Morbid States of the Stomach and Duodenum," 1868, p. 177.

<sup>2</sup>Wilson Fox, "Medico-Chirurg. Transac.," vol. xli., p. 361.

brain in the young, in whom the disease mainly occurs. Nor is the blindness which is not infrequently a symptom of uremia attended by retinal changes, nor does albuminuric retinitis occur in acute parenchymatous nephritis, except with the extremest rarity.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of acute parenchymatous nephritis is ordinarily quite easy. The previous history, the usually easily recognizable cause, the suddenness of the attack, the scanty and bloody urine with its high specific gravity, the copious albuminuria, the blood and epithelial and dark granular casts, the blood-corpuscles, free epithelium, and granular cells in the urine—these are a combination of symptoms which admit of only one interpretation. At a later stage, the absence of one or more of these symptoms may somewhat increase the difficulty, but it is scarcely possible to err if those which remain are duly considered. It must be remembered, also, that an acute condition, such as this described, may supervene upon any one of the chronic forms of *Bright's disease* to be described, and this may give rise to some difficulty of diagnosis, but if there be hypertrophy of the left ventricle, it is likely that there was chronic disease before; in the latter case, too, there is apt to have been anemia existing for some time, previous edema, headache, and other symptoms of chronic Bright's disease.

*Febrile albuminuria* is quite often mistaken for acute nephritis by those who have had little experience, though the distinction is easy. In pure febrile albuminuria, the quantity of albumin is very small, and while there may rarely be a few hyaline casts, there are no blood-disks and no epithelial casts. The absence of dropsy is of no significance, for in the acute nephritis of the infectious diseases, except scarlet fever and diphtheria, there is seldom dropsy. There may also be febrile albuminuria in scarlet fever which is quite different from the nephritis occasioned by this disease. It occurs early, and in this stage the other features of febrile albuminuria are present, while the scarlatinal nephritis does not come on, as already stated, until after the end of the second week.

While the glomerular changes referred to are more usual in scarlatinal nephritis, there is no certain way of recognizing such condition, and the term glomerulo-nephritis, which is applied to the nephritis associated with these changes, is scarcely justified from the clinical standpoint, because there are no symptoms by which it can be recognized.

The diagnosis of *uremia* commonly easy, is sometimes difficult. This is especially the case when, instead of the usual complex list of symptoms detailed on page 757, there are but one or two. By no means every nervous manifestation coincident with Bright's disease is uremic, and I am inclined to believe that some are ascribed to it which should not be. On the other hand, localized convulsions and hemiplegias, commonly ascribed to some anatomical lesion in the brain, are often uremic in origin. Given, however, a case of sudden convulsions or coma, or even muscular twitching, if it is associated with scanty urine and greatly diminished urea excretion, it may be ascribed to uremia, provided there is no cause which will explain it more satisfactorily. Uremia has been mistaken for *opium* and *alcohol intoxication*, and it must be admitted that the coma in all three is very much alike. But one need only be forewarned to

prevent such error. In opium-poisoning the pupils are contracted, in alcoholism they are dilated, in uremia they vary.

**Prognosis.**—Grave as this disease is justly considered, recoveries from it are numerous and the prognosis is generally favorable. Even without treatment, cases may recover, and more recoveries follow a judicious treatment. The prognosis should, however, always be guarded, as insidious causes may produce death when it is least expected. Among the most important of these is uremia.

Bartels said that death from uremia in acute nephritis has never occurred in his experience, except when the disease has resulted from scarlatina or diphtheria; but Dickinson narrates a fatal case resulting from exposure, in which death was preceded by coma and other symptoms of evident uremic origin, and I am certain I have seen similar cases.

Pulmonary edema is a cause of sudden death, the patient drowning, as it were, in his own secretions. Its onset is characterized by shortness of breath, frothy expectoration, and abundant small râles. Purulent exudation into the serous cavities may also precipitate death, very rarely.

The symptoms of gravest import are, therefore, those of uremia, manifested in any one or all the various ways, the presence of any of the complications alluded to, and especially suppression of urine. Cases should not, however, be despaired of, even when there is complete suppression of urine. Always, however, this is the gravest of symptoms, and death generally ensues within a couple of days after it sets in. The possibility of sudden death should always be borne in mind, and mentioned to the relatives of the patient, although the number of cases in which this occurs is not very great. Of course, the longer the duration of the case the less the likelihood of recovery.

**Treatment.**—Many cases of acute nephritis recover under the conditions of *rest, quietude, and warmth*, and it is further certain that, whatever other means of treatment are used, these three conditions are absolutely necessary to recovery. A patient with acute Bright's disease, therefore, whatever its mode of origin, should be put to bed, kept quiet, and covered warmly.

The *dict* of patients with acute Bright's disease should be of the simplest and easiest of digestion, and should contain a minimum of proteids. The irritability of the stomach in this disease has been alluded to, and it is important that food should be adapted to it. Milk may be considered the typical food, not merely because of its easy assimilation and nutritious character, but because there is abundant testimony to prove that albuminuria diminishes under its use, while the amount of nitrogen contributed to the blood is less than by animal flesh. The combination of lime-water, and still better of carbonated water or Vichy, with milk, is an eminently suitable one. Koumys, Zoolak and buttermilk are also suitable. While solid animal food is not to be recommended, weak animal broths may be permitted, to break up the monotony of a pure milk diet. *Beef-teas and extracts should be prohibited as harmful.* Rice and farinaceous preparations generally are suitable adjuvants to the milk diet.

We should seldom, however, be satisfied with this treatment alone.

The selection of other measures will depend somewhat upon the severity of the case. If the urine be suppressed, *dry cups*, or, in severe cases, cut cups to the loins may divert the blood and relieve the stagnation which always exists in the acutely inflamed kidney. Cups should be followed by a *warm poultice* to the same region, which, indeed, should be used under any circumstances, whether the cupping is necessary or not. Dry cups should not be allowed to remain on one spot longer than to secure a bright redness, after which they must be withdrawn or moved to another spot in the vicinity. By allowing them to remain too long, the blood is stagnated in the capillaries, its onward movement prevented, and there is, therefore, no derivation of blood from the involved organ.

The foregoing measures have for their object the direct relief of the congestion of the kidney. This is further accomplished by *purgation*, which supplements the action of the kidney. But a purgative is early employed not more for this purpose than to promote the action of other remedies. Absorption is slow when the blood-vessels are congested and there is a sluggish current. The cathartic relieves this turgor, and after its effect prompt absorption and action of other remedies may be looked for. The purgative most suitable is a saline. A simple dose of bitartrate of potassium, simple magnesia for children, citrate of magnesium, or Epsom salts for adults will be sufficient. The indication is to get a watery stool as soon as possible. In view of the fact that the stomach is often sensitive, it is desirable to use an aperient which is not nauseous or irritating, and to this end some one of the delicate effervescing preparations so common in modern pharmacy may be used.

Next, or simultaneously, the action of the skin should be promoted. This is done by maintaining warmth and avoiding cold, as already insisted upon. But we are not confined to these protecting measures. The skin may be made to do the work of the kidney itself, and thus one of the most alarming dangers of Bright's disease, uremic intoxication, averted, while at the same time the congestion of the kidney is also relieved. The class of remedies which produces this action are diaphoretics (the warmth described is one of these), and of the simple remedies, none is better than the ordinary sweet spirit of niter, especially if it be combined with neutral mixture and small doses of ipecacuanha. If more active measures are required, some one of the preparations of jaborandi may be used, the dose varying with the effect it is desired to obtain. If moderate diaphoresis only is desired, doses of from 10 to 15 minims (0.65 to 1 gm.) of the fluid extract may be given to adults every two hours, and increased, if necessary, until the effect is brought about. To children, from 5 to 10 minims (0.3 to 0.6 c.c.) may be given in the same manner, or pilocarpin may be given in doses of from 1/24 to 1/12 grain (0.0027 to 0.0054 gm.). The further use of this important remedy will be again referred to in treating uremia.

Another method of accomplishing the same end is by *warm baths*, or, better still, by the warm pack, in which the patient is wrapped in a wet sheet and then enveloped in a sufficient number of blankets. Perspiration is thus copiously induced, and when thus caused is agreeable and never attended by the faintness which sometimes follows the use of

the hot-air bath. In an ordinary severe case of acute Bright's disease, a single pack of this kind will often remove all urgent symptoms and happily inaugurate the convalescence. It may, however, be repeated daily, if necessary.

*Diuretics* are, perhaps, the first means thought of by most practitioners in the treatment of Bright's disease, and they are indicated where there are dropsy and scanty urine. They should, however, be deferred until the measures just described have been employed. *Digitalis* is the diuretic most to be relied upon. It is necessary, however, to have a reliable preparation, and unless one is sure of the quality of the tincture, it is best to use a freshly prepared infusion. I have already explained, on page 642, why I believe more efficient results are obtained from the infusion than from the tincture.

*Digitalis* should, therefore, be given in sufficient doses— $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 fluidram (2 to 4 c.c.) of the infusion to children, and 2 fluidrams to  $\frac{1}{2}$  fluidounce (8 to 16 c.c.) to adults—repeated every four hours, until an appreciable effect is produced on the rate of the pulse, when it should be diminished. Not until then can we look for a diuretic action. I prefer at first to give it alone. Later it may be combined with acetate, citrate, and bitartrate of potassium. The diuretic action of these salts probably depends upon the impetus they give to osmosis of fluids holding them in solution, thus filling the blood-vessels, which, in their turn, give out water to flush the kidney. To adults, 20 grains (1.3 gm.) of either may be given every two or three hours, freely diluted, because water itself is an excellent diuretic; from 5 to 10 grains (0.32 to 0.648 gm.) to children, as often. An important object, too, is to maintain an alkaline urine, which tends to dissolve exudates. For this purpose, the alkaline-mineral waters are also useful, or what is commonly known as cream-of-tartar tea may be drunk instead of water. A teaspoonful of potassium bitartrate is put into a pint of boiling water, and taken cold as drink is wanted.

Another admirable diuretic combination, including all of these elements, is Trousseau's diuretic wine, which consists of:

℞ Junip. contus,	5 x.	40 gm.
Pulv. digitalis,	5 ij	8 gm.
Pulv. scillæ,	5 j	4 gm.
Vin. xerici,	O j	$\frac{1}{2}$ liter
Macerate for four days and add		
Potas, acetatis,	5 iij	12 gm.
Express and filter,		
Sig.—Tablespoonful three times a day for an adult.		

Infusion of *digitalis* may also be used in the shape of fomentations. Cloths wrung out in hot infusion and laid over the abdomen of the patient have been known to produce diuresis when all other measures have failed.

Theobromin is also a diuretic which should not be forgotten in the treatment of renal dropsy, although it is better adapted to cardiac dropsy. The same is true of caffein; also diuretin and acet-theocin, which are combinations, the first of theobromin and salicylate of sodium, and the latter of acetate of sodium and theobromin. The latter I have found an excellent diuretic in doses of 6 grains (0.4 gms.) every six hours. Diuretin given in doses of 5 to 15 grains (0.3 to 0.6 gms.) every four hours is uncer-



tain, but sometimes very efficient. For the method of administration of caffeine and theobromin see treatment of cardiac dropsy, page 646. None of this group is as efficient in nephritis as in the dropsy of heart disease.

*Treatment of Acute Uremia.*—The alarming and dangerous character of the symptoms of this condition demand a separate consideration of the measures required in their treatment. The treatment which has just been described is such as would be called for by an ordinary case of acute nephritis of a decided character. The tendency of it will be to prevent the retention of those effete matters, whatever their precise nature, which constitute the cause of uremia. But all efforts in this direction sometimes fail, and we are called upon to contend with convulsions or coma, or, more frequently, both in alternation. How shall they be met? The indication has already been explained. Elimination is demanded. The kidneys are not acting, and the secretion of urine is suppressed. There remain, therefore, but the bowels and skin to operate upon. But the patient is unconscious and cannot swallow voluntarily. Such remedies, must, therefore, be used as do not require his cooperation. These are *croton oil* and *elaterium*. Of the former, 2 drops, slightly diluted with plain oil or glycerin, may be carried into the back part of the throat, or, in case of extreme necessity, undiluted, may be introduced into the mouth, whence it is quickly absorbed. Its operation may be facilitated by a rectal injection. Of *elaterium*, a quarter of a grain (0.0165 gm.) in solution may be administered by the mouth.

In like manner, the skin may be made to substitute the action of the kidney. The *vapor or hot-air bath or hot pack* should at once be availed of. The vapor may be conveyed by a pipe two or three inches in diameter, carried from a vessel containing water, under which a spirit-lamp is placed, under the bed-clothing, the patient being well covered with a mackintosh and blanket, excepting the head. An ordinary rain-spout may be used. Hot air may be similarly conveyed, but does not act so quickly. Its action may be favored by moistening the skin. The hot pack is also very efficient and perhaps less enervating.

*Jaborandi* or its active principle, *pilocarpin*, may be used, the latter preferably, because available hypodermically. One-third grain (0.02 gm.) of the muriate may be thus administered, and if perspiration does not set in in a half-hour, it may be repeated. Its action is also greatly facilitated by warmth applied to the patient. A freshly prepared infusion may be injected into the rectum with almost equally prompt results. Four ounces (120 c.c.) of hot water should be poured on a dram (4 gm.) of *jaborandi* leaves, and, when sufficiently cool, strained and injected. The doses here mentioned are intended for adults. When less urgency is required, a fluidram (4 c.c.) may be inspissated and made into a suppository. Should edema of the lungs occur, it may be overcome by the hypodermic injection of atropin, 1/60 grain (0.001 gm.).

If the convulsions continue, *blood-letting* may be practiced, or it may be done at once if the patient is not very feeble. No one doubts the efficiency of bleeding in puerperal convulsions, and if puerperal convulsions are uremic, as they are with few exceptions, then bleeding should be of service in the uremic convulsions of acute Bright's disease.

The *hydrate of chloral* should not be forgotten; indeed, it is one of the most valuable remedies for the convulsion and should be one of the first measures tried. In the case of an adult, a dram (4 gm.) in solution may be injected into the rectum; 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.) for a child. Its use is sometimes followed by the promptest favorable results. *Chloroform* may also be used to control the convulsion while the eliminating measures are acting.

The *use of opium* requires mention. The caution which has always been suggested in its use I believe to be, in the main, a wholesome one, and I should prefer to produce hypnotic, sedative, and antispasmodic effects by chloral and the bromids whenever it is possible. At the same time there can be no doubt that opium is less harmful in acute nephritis than in chronic, and especially chronically contracted kidney, and when other measures fail to control convulsions, it may be used cautiously. It was in the convulsions of acute nephritis that the late Professor Loomis, of New York City, recommended it, although its wider use has grown out of this suggestion. His practice was to treat cases of uremic convulsions in acute nephritis with hypodermic injections of large doses of morphin— $1\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.033 gm.) or more.

The same measures which have been detailed, excepting the general blood-letting and chloral, may also be employed in the treatment of suppression of urine or of obstinate dropsy without uremic symptoms, with such modifications as circumstances may suggest, due regard being paid to the strength of the patient. They will be further referred to when discussing the treatment of the chronic forms of Bright's disease.

Sooner or later, also, in the treatment of acute parenchymatous nephritis supporting measures are rendered necessary to repair the losses which the blood suffers by the albuminuria, and to some extent also by the depleting measures of treatment. These effects should indeed be anticipated by proper diet, tonics, quinin, especially iron, wine, malt liquors, whisky, or brandy, as indicated. These measures will also be more particularly alluded to in the treatment of chronic Bright's disease.

*Treatment of Complications.*—Complications should be treated by remedies called for by such conditions independent of the renal cause. Effusions into the pleural cavities and abdomen are often best relieved by paracentesis or aspiration; pneumonia and bronchitis by counter-irritation.

## CHRONIC PARENCHYMATOUS NEPHRITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Chronic Diffuse Nephritis; Chronic Tubal Nephritis; Chronic Catarrhal Nephritis; Large White Kidney.*

**Definition.**—A chronic diffuse hyperplastic process in the kidney, involving the epithelium, glomeruli, and interstitial tissue.

**Etiology.**—This cannot always be traced. While it is frequently a continuation of acute nephritis, more frequently it originates *de novo*. To cases in the former category scarlatina and pregnancy contribute the greater number. To the second class belong insidious cases, the cause

of which is often not traceable. Habitual exposure to cold and dampness, such as residence in damp, cold houses, may cause some. Tubercular disease of the lungs is an undoubted cause. Great stress is laid by German writers upon malarial poisoning as a cause. In this country it is not a frequent cause. One of two pretty well-founded cases, with others of doubtful authenticity, include my experience with this cause. S. C. Busey, I. E. Atkinson, and William Sydney Thayer have, however, also assigned this as a cause in special papers devoted to the subject. It may be the case in more southern parts of the United States, where malarial poisoning is more intense than in the Middle States. Alcohol is a cause, and the nephritis of confirmed drunkards and the employees of breweries may be thus accounted for, though it cannot be denied that the exposure to which some of the former class are subjected may be responsible. Males, and of these young adults, are the more frequent subjects. Sepsis in prolonged surgical affections may produce chronic nephritis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There are two distinct stages in the morbid anatomy of chronic parenchymatous nephritis if the disease is of sufficient duration—viz., the stage of enlargement, represented by the *large white kidney*, and that of contraction, or the *fatty and contracting kidney*. A special variety is *chronic hemorrhagic nephritis*.

1. *Stage of Enlargement.*—There are few more striking objects in morbid anatomy than a typical example of the *large white kidney*. The kidney is large, smooth, white, or slightly tinged with yellow; weighs generally from seven to ten ounces (217 to 310 gm.), but is often much heavier. It is usually doughy, and sometimes elastic in consistence. The capsule, which may be thinner than in health, strips off easily, but occasionally drags a little of the parenchyma with it. When the smooth white surface thus uncovered is examined, the little capillary circlelets bounding the lobules in the normal organ are in some places indistinct, in others conspicuous; the same is true of the stellate veins of Verheyen. Numerous yellow specks are seen scattered over the surface. Hemorrhagic extravasations are also occasionally present, but very much more rarely than in the acute form. Alongside of these the greater translucency of more nearly normal areas results also in a characteristic mottled hue. *On section*, it is evident that the enlargement resides altogether in the *cortex*, which is also anemic, its intense white contrasting strongly with the pink hue of the cones, which, though paler than in health, are much less so than the cortex. Closer examination of the cut cortex reveals the same yellow specks as found on the external surface. They contribute, with similar less decided alterations, to form a series of dull white striæ which alternate with somewhat broader, translucent striæ radiating toward the surface; the former correspond to the area of the convoluted tubules and Malpighian bodies—the labyrinth—the latter to that of the medullary rays.

The pelvis of the kidney in chronic parenchymatous nephritis is the seat of catarrhal swelling and a slight degree of hyperemia.

**Minute Change.**—Microscopic examination of thin sections shows the involvement of both *tubes*, *blood-vessels*, and *intertubular substance*. Of the former, many are found choked with granular cells and the granular débris of cells, causing them to appear, under the microscope, as black,

opaque lines by transmitted light, very similar, indeed, to the tubes in acute nephritis. In other situations the tubules are filled with fat globules and fatty cells. In places the lumen of the tubes is preserved, in others not. Other cells are the seat of hyaline change. Others still are nearly normal. The parts presenting a yellow tinge are those in which the fatty elements have replaced the normal, and this is the composition of the yellow specks already alluded to as visible to the naked eye. They represent a coil of tubules filled with oil drops or fatty cells.<sup>1</sup> Certain tubules contain casts, usually of the waxy kind. Sometimes, indeed, they are very numerous. Rarely, hemorrhagic extravasations are also found in the tubules.

The *capillaries* of the cortex are completely or nearly empty of blood, which has been expressed from them by the distended tubules. To this and to the fatty cells is due the extreme whiteness of these kidneys, whence the name by which they are known. Many of the glomeruli are enlarged, their capsules thickened, their vessel-walls thickened and hyaline, their capillary and glomerular epithelium proliferated and degenerated.

The *pyramids* in chronic parenchymatous nephritis are more changed than in the acute form, but the changes in them are quite secondary. They are sometimes a little paler, owing partly to a granular and fatty alteration in the cellular lining of the straight tubules, and partly to the presence of cells pushed down from the convoluted tubules above them. On the other hand, they may be congested and darker in color. The straight tubes of the cones as well as the looped tubes of Henle often contain waxy casts.

In chronic parenchymatous nephritis the *interstitial tissue* is always altered, and, it may be said, as a rule in proportion to the duration of the disease. It has already been said that sooner or later interstitial overgrowth always presents itself, although it is difficult to say when this overgrowth begins in any given case. Langhans reports a case in which death occurred five weeks after the appearance of the first symptoms, directly traceable to a thorough wetting, in which the stroma was *markedly thickened*. And in a case of Dickinson's already alluded to, intertubular cellular formation, "though approximating as much to pus as to fiber," was found within six weeks of the onset. Again, cases of much longer duration may be entirely without it. Interstitial *fibrosis* may, however, be considered as a superaddition of chronicity, and whenever a case is distinctly chronic, it may be inferred, with tolerable certainty, that it is present. In this overgrowth the quantity of the connective tissue between the tubules varies extremely, being sometimes so slight as to be discoverable only on microscopic examination of thin sections; at other times it is appreciable to the naked eye. Minute examination shows the thickened trabeculae to consist of numerous round and oval nuclei, between which may be homogenous or more or less distinctly fibrillated intercellular substance.

2. *The Stage of Atrophy—The Fatty and Contracting Kidney or Small White Kidney.*—The interstitial new formation previously referred to

<sup>1</sup>No satisfactory explanation has yet been offered of the great differences in the degree of fatty degeneration in the different kidneys of chronic parenchymatous nephritis or in different parts of the same kidney. Dickinson says the cells have a greater tendency to be fatty when cold is the cause.

possesses the properties usual to new connective tissue. Produced primarily to replace destroyed tubular structure, it shrinks and gradually contracts the previously enlarged organ, while obliterating in turn a certain amount of the same structure. The extent of contraction varies greatly, increasing with the duration of the process. The kidney may continue as large and even larger than the normal organ, though smaller than the large white kidney, and its surface is uneven, lobulated, rough, and granular. Its capsule does not strip off easily, as from the large, smooth organ, but drags with it considerable of the tubular structure. The capsule removed, however, the surface of the kidney exhibits between the constrictions the same pallid, speckled appearance, distinct stellate veins, etc., already described; and on section the cortex exhibits the same anemic appearance, but may be narrowed. Microscopically, sections exhibit the same alternation of groups of normal and choked tubules already described, alongside of other places in which the tubules, together with the Malpighian bodies at their extremities, are obliterated. Between them is found a large amount of interstitial tissue, and the Malpighian bodies are surrounded by concentric layers of the same. Even minute cysts, the result of obstruction of tubules by the constricting tissue, are found. The secondary origin of this form of kidney is not conceded by everyone. An independent primary origin is claimed for it.

3. A special form of this stage is *chronic hemorrhagic nephritis*. In this form brown hemorrhagic foci are scattered throughout the cortex between and into the tubes. The organ is still larger than normal, and presents in other respects the histology of this stage.

It not infrequently happens that along with the changes constituting chronic parenchymatous nephritis are found also those of *lardaceous disease*. Thus, in a large white kidney the Malpighian bodies will often strike the mahogany-red reaction with iodine characteristic of this condition, although the alternation may not be recognizable by the naked eye. Occasionally the change may even affect the afferent and efferent vessels.

**Symptoms.**—There are few distinctive symptoms of chronic parenchymatous nephritis. When not a sequel of acute nephritis it often begins insidiously, and, after a variable period of indescribable ill health, including, however, often *digestive derangements*, an *anemic, waxy appearance* develops, with *puffiness of the face* and *swelling of the feet*. Ultimately, the *anasarca* may become general, involving the face, hands, feet, legs, thighs, and trunk. The serous sacs also frequently contain fluid, almost always in severe cases. The swelling may be confined to the extremities or to the face, and may even be limited to more unusual situations, as the scrotum. Indeed, dropsy is often entirely wanting, but as a rule it is manifest sooner or later, and no symptom gives the patient so much inconvenience. In advanced degrees his legs and thighs are twice their normal dimensions. They are so heavy he cannot lift them, while they are often excoriated and moist with exuding serum, and smarting with irritation. Very frequently, as the result of spontaneous rupture of the skin, the discharge of serum is profuse, saturating the bed-clothing and even dropping upon the floor; occasionally, often, with relief to the patient.

Another very constant symptom is *anemia*, producing a peculiar

translucent waxy appearance, quite characteristic and often alone sufficient to suggest the disease. But there may be very slight degrees of it which are not at all peculiar. Again, the *debility* of those suffering from advanced degrees of this condition is very striking. If able to walk at all, they soon get out of breath—are soon exhausted. *Dyspnea*, especially on exertion, is therefore a frequent symptom, and sometimes is extreme. Locomotion is often impossible in consequence of the extreme swelling, even if the strength otherwise permit it.

*The Urine.*—The urine is diminished to about 10 to 40 ounces (300 to 1200 c.c.), although somewhat variable in quantity. It is often turbid, reddish-yellow, specific gravity normal or below, highly albuminous, and deposits often bulky, cloudy sediment. At other times the sediment is scanty. The quantity of urine also increases as the patient improves or as the stage of contraction is entered upon, so that it may even exceed the normal. The *albumin*, while also large, varies as to its percentage amount with the quantity of urine passed—from five-tenth to two per cent., or from one-half to three-fourths of the volume of the urine tested. The amount of albumin lost in the urine is sometimes very large. It has even occurred that the percentage proportion of albumin in the urine has exceeded that in the serum of the blood from the same patient. The quantity of albumin has very little effect upon the specific gravity. Indeed, the lighter urines are generally those which have the larger amount of albumin, because highly albuminous urines often contain little urea.

The *sediment* is made up of variously granular casts, among which the dark granular are conspicuous by their numbers and size, and especially their width. There are also found oil-casts and casts containing entire and fragmentary epithelial cells, which are likewise granular and oily. Finally, yellow waxy casts are found. Casts vary in number, being sometimes scanty, but, as a rule, they increase with the development of the disease and grow less as it mends. Occasionally they are entirely absent for a time, even in this form of Bright's disease, sometimes as the result of treatment, when such absence may be considered a favorable sign. Sometimes, on the other hand, the tubules are choked with them, and they do not descend into the urine. Compound granule (granular fatty) cells and other forms of fatty renal cells are often numerous. Leucocytes are also often very numerous, while red corpuscles may be present and in the hemorrhagic form are very numerous.

The normal constituents of the urine are *generally diminished* in quantity. The most important of these is *urea*, though less important than formerly regarded. To the reduced amount of solids, and particularly of urea, the reduced specific gravity is due.

Notwithstanding the small proportion of urea which is excreted in this affection, *uremia is infrequent in chronic parenchymatous as compared with acute nephritis* and contracted kidney. It is more frequent after the stage of contraction is reached.

*The Stage of Contraction.*—Are there any symptoms by which we can recognize the stage of secondary contraction, which takes place sooner or later, provided the patient lives? The most reliable evidence that this has occurred is the presence of hypertrophy of the left ventricle and ac-

centuation of the aortic second sound, although the possibility of an earlier hypertrophy cannot be denied. The increased vascular tension, mentioned as presenting itself even in acute nephritis, continues in the chronic variety to stimulate the heart to more forcible contraction, which must sooner or later result in hypertrophy. As already stated, time is required to reach this stage, and by the time hypertrophy is developed, contraction of the kidney is likely to have occurred. Long duration of the disease also affords presumptive evidence that contraction has taken place. If a case of undoubted parenchymatous nephritis continues under observation for a year or more, the process of contraction is likely to have commenced.

The *dropsy* diminishes and may disappear as the stage of contraction is entered upon. So, also, the *urine* changes in its properties. The quantity, previously small, is increased, while the specific gravity falls below normal—1010 to 1015; the quantity of albumin is also much smaller than during the stage of inflammation. In these respects—absence of dropsy, larger amount of urine, and smaller amount of albumin—it resembles the true contracted kidney of interstitial nephritis, with which, indeed, it may be confounded in the absence of a previous history. But the casts continue to be quite numerous, and exhibit much the same character that they do in the stage of enlargement, although they too may be few; and if we have not a knowledge of previous history, the diagnosis between contraction secondary to previous enlargement and primary contraction the result of interstitial nephritis may be impossible. Uremia is more common in the stage of contraction than that of enlargement.

In the hemorrhagic form the urine almost constantly contains blood. The quantity varies somewhat and is diminished while the patient is in bed, but reappears the moment he arises.

The *duration* of chronic parenchymatous nephritis is variable. Many cases terminate unfavorably within a year after they have been established, but I have one case now under observation in the stage of contraction which I have known to exist for 16 years at least. Others, especially mild forms, last a long time, causing comparatively little inconvenience.

**Complications.**—The complications of chronic parenchymatous nephritis are the same as those of acute. Edema of the lungs, bronchitis, pneumonia, and inflammation of serous membranes are all liable to occur. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle is more common than in acute nephritis, for the reasons already referred to, but still very much less so than in interstitial nephritis. Derangements of digestion are very frequent, probably due to a more advanced stage of the structural changes described under acute nephritis. The acute blindness, unattended by retinal changes, described as occurring in the uremia of acute nephritis, rarely occurs here, while retinal changes are rather more frequent, but still uncommon compared with interstitial nephritis, under which they will be described.

**Diagnosis.**—Many cases are very easy of diagnosis. The extreme pallor of the patient, the diminished urine of medium specific gravity, the usually large amounts of albumin, the numerous dark granular, oil and waxy casts of large diameter, free fatty cells, and fatty granular cells, especially if we are able to trace a history of long duration, all point

to the disease; and if there is an antecedent history of scarlatina or exposure to cold, pregnancy, or long exposure, probability becomes certainty.

The symptoms of *amyloid* or *lardaceous kidney* very closely resemble those of the large white kidney, and it has been mentioned that the same causes are capable of developing both. It is often impossible to say which form of disease is present. It has usually been considered that if there is enlargement of the liver and spleen, or persistent diarrhea, and the cause is one which may produce lardaceous disease, it is certain that the latter condition exists; but observation has shown that the first two, at least, may be present, together with all the causes and other symptoms which are regarded as favoring lardaceous disease, and yet the disease be parenchymatous nephritis;<sup>1</sup> while the usual causes of lardaceous disease may operate to produce it in the liver, leaving the kidney intact. As a rule, there is not so much dropsy in lardaceous disease, casts are more scanty, and generally hyaline, granular, and waxy; hypertrophy of the heart and uremia and albuminuric retinitis do not occur. Often, too, the two forms of disease coexist, either as the result of the same cause, or the amyloid disease may be the result of long-continued parenchymatous nephritis.

The stage of contraction is more difficult of recognition unless we have had the case for some time under observation and are able to trace its continuation with the stage of inflammation. The resemblance to the *contracted kidney* of interstitial nephritis may otherwise be very close. But here, again, the albuminuria is likely to be larger, and the casts more numerous, and to include the numerous varieties mentioned instead of the scanty, small hyaline casts which attend interstitial nephritis. In the latter the quantity of urine exceeds the normal, while in the former, although the quantity is larger than in the stage of enlargement, it is still less copious than in true interstitial nephritis.

**Prognosis.**—This is unfavorable so far as recovery is concerned. Well-marked cases terminate usually within two years, and sometimes within a few months. Many cases, however, may be very much prolonged by treatment, and if prolonged to the stage of contraction, the patient may be tolerably comfortable for some time—seems, indeed, to have another lease upon life. But sooner or later the dropsy returns, the heart fails, and the patient dies of exhaustion, or some one of the complications of uremia intervenes to carry him off. Of the former, edema of the lungs or of the glottis and pneumonia are particularly dangerous. In the stage of enlargement, uremia, while it is of rare occurrence, is also less apt to end fatally than in the stage of contraction.

On the other hand, it is to be remembered that there are many mild cases of chronic parenchymatous nephritis with correspondingly mild symptoms wherein the progress of the disease is slow and may extend over many years.

**Treatment.**—While it occasionally happens that spontaneous recoveries from acute nephritis occur, this is not the case with the chronic form. Here the expectant plan of treatment does not suffice. The patient

<sup>1</sup>See an article by Paul Furbringer, "Zur Diagnose der amyloiden Entartung der Nieren," "Virchow's Archiv," Bd. lxxi., 1877, S. 400.



with chronic parenchymatous nephritis, if left alone, grows steadily worse, and although measures of treatment may not frequently result in recovery, they often, if judicious, cause marked improvement and long avert the fatal end. There is always an intermediate stage between that of acute nephritis and the condition of the large white kidney, from which recovery often takes place, which calls for a modification of the treatment described for the acute, or some additions to it.

The chief indications in the treatment of chronic parenchymatous nephritis are two:

1. To improve the quality of the blood, which may have become anemic and contaminated with urea, purin bodies and allied excrementitious matter.

2. To combat the symptoms and complications which form a source of great inconvenience and danger to the patient.

1. The first of these indications is chiefly fulfilled by the use of iron, quinin, and strychnin, nourishing food of a suitable kind, a proper hygiene. Iron is regarded by many as almost a specific in chronic parenchymatous nephritis, and is prescribed constantly in the most reckless and thoughtless manner. *Large doses of iron should not be given.* They are useless, lock up the secretions, cause headache, and increase the danger of uremia. The well-known Basham's mixture is a great favorite. It is really a solution of acetate of iron, and, being made by adding to tincture of the chlorid of iron acetic acid and solution of the acetate of ammonia, has the advantage of at least tending to diuresis, while it is also a roborant.<sup>1</sup> But the tincture of the chlorid of iron alone is an efficient preparation which is always accessible, and when combined with the sweet spirit of niter and freely diluted, is perhaps as efficient as Basham's mixture. Only a few drops should be given. To either one the quinin and strychnin may be added, if desired, while to the iron the infusion or tincture of quassia makes a compatible addition.

With regard to *diet*, while it is true that a sufficient amount of food of good quality is desired, those articles should be selected which contain a minimum of nitrogen. Experience has shown that when the appetite is good and large quantities of meat are eaten, uremic convulsions have been more frequent, whereas when the appetite has been bad and little food taken, uremic convulsions in chronic nephritis are very rare. While, therefore, it is not necessary to omit all such food, it is desirable to limit it to moderation, and, while drawing upon the vegetable kingdom for food, to make up the deficiency in meats by the free use of milk. The good results of the milk treatment in cases of chronic nephritis are now generally acknowledged and are evidenced in the diminution of albuminuria, decline in dropsy, increase in the quantity of urine passed, and general amelioration of symptoms. Of the different methods of employing milk, the pure milk diet has been most satisfactory. From 2 1/2 to 3 1/2 quarts (2.5 to 3.5 liters) a day meet the requirements of an adult male, and less is often sufficient. The milk should not be skimmed, but

<sup>1</sup>The more usual formula for Basham's mixture is as follows: R Tinct. ferr. chlorid., f 5 ij (7.4 c.c.), Acid. acet. destillat., f 5 ij (7.4 c.c.); Liq. ammon. acetatis, f 5 iij (90 c.c.); Curacoe vel syrapi simpl., Aque; aa q. s. ad f 5 vj (180 c.c.). M. et Sig. Teaspoonful or dessertspoonful twice a day, in half a tumbler of water. If the mixture becomes turbid, it is probably because some of the acetic acid has evaporated, when a few more drops may be added to clear it up.

diluted, for by retaining the cream the casein or proteid constituent is maintained in smaller proportion. Rich milk is not desirable—indeed, it is better taken diluted with Vichy water or carbonated water and at stated intervals, say from 6 to 8 ounces every two hours. It is not, of course, always necessary to confine the patient to a pure milk diet, but it should at all times constitute a large part of the food. In the matter of diet the patient with chronic nephritis is not to be judged by the same standard as one with acute nephritis.

Next to diet, rest is a most useful measure to ameliorate the symptoms of chronic nephritis, and an albuminuria reduced to a minimum while the patient is up may often be further reduced by putting him to bed. The beneficial effect of rest upon edema due to any cause is too well recognized to require other than an allusion. The advantages of rest in bed are, however, sometimes more than counterbalanced by the disadvantage to the patient of confinement and want of fresh air and outdoor life. These, of course, must be weighed, and that one adopted which serves the patient best.

Under hygienic measures is included suitable clothing. That next the body should be of wool, for it must be remembered that, on the one hand, the skin is a powerful adjuvant to the kidney in its eliminating operations, and, on the other hand, any interference with or suppression of the action of the skin must throw more work on the kidney. Cold is the agent which produces such suppression, and warmth the means by which the action of the skin is encouraged, and no texture prevents the former or secures the latter more effectually than wool. For the same reason, while the maximum amount of fresh air is desirable, cold and dampness should be avoided or sufficiently guarded against.

2. The second indication is to combat the symptoms and complications which cause inconvenience or jeopardize life. These symptoms are those of dropsy, effusions into the serous cavities, and congestions. The patients suffering from them are usually confined to the house, or go out of it at so great inconvenience as to make it intolerable to do so. Of dropsy, there is abundant evidence to the naked eye.

With regard to purgatives and diuretics, nothing need be added to what has already been said under acute nephritis (p. 774). But as to measures which promote a decided action of the skin, I desire to add the warm bath, the Turkish bath, warm-pack bath, and the hot-air or vapor bath already alluded to. Any of these may be used as convenience or the patient's choice may determine, while the frequency with which they should be used depends on the urgency of the case.

The "warm" or "cold pack" is a very pleasant form of bath. The patient is wrapped up in a wet sheet, either warm or cold, and further enveloped in a sufficient number of blankets. A very comfortable sweat generally ensues, which is continued for an hour. In the use of the warm bath the patient is immersed at a temperature of about 104° F. (40° C.), and kept there for from half an hour to an hour. He is then removed and wrapped in blankets. It has been said under the treatment of acute parenchymatous nephritis that these effects are more conveniently and as efficiently brought about by the use of jaborandi and its derivative,

pilocarpin. The directions for their use, given in connection with acute nephritis, need not be repeated. They may be used about as often as the baths, usually on alternate days, occasionally daily, with advantage.

The judicious use of aperients is an efficient means of depleting the blood and reducing dropsy. The selection must depend on the urgency of the case, as sufficient has been said in connection with acute nephritis. But in many cases of chronic nephritis a stage is finally reached at which all treatment of the kind described fails to relieve the dropsy, which becomes eventually the sorest burden of the malady. The body becomes greatly increased in weight, the integument of the extremities is stretched almost to bursting, and sometimes it does rupture, followed by leakage, which, although in one way inconvenient, is in many senses a great relief to the patient by diminishing the tension referred to. Acting upon this, physicians have long been in the habit of puncturing the swollen parts to produce the required leakage. It is a common practice to make a number of minute punctures with a needle or sharp-pointed bistoury, but free incisions may be made on the inner or outer side of the ankle of each leg. Free drainage is thus secured, often with great relief; or Southey's tubes may be used at convenient places. They are introduced by means of a little trocar and after this is withdrawn fine india-rubber tubing is attached to the little cannula and carried to a suitable vessel outside the bed. Some remarkable recoveries have followed incisions. Great care should be taken to keep the tubes clean, as they are liable to become dirty and clogged.

Bearing in mind the effect of chlorid retention on renal dropsy successful treatment would naturally be favored by the elimination from the diet of articles rich in chlorids, seeking thus to reduce the chlorids ingested to two or three grams daily. This is accomplished by a diet including eggs, unseasoned meat, unsalted butter and milk, bread without salt, fresh-water fish, potatoes, rice, fresh vegetables, fruits and chocolate.

The treatment of the complications is in no way different from that of the same conditions under other circumstances. The point to be impressed is the importance of being constantly on the lookout for them. Effusions into serous cavities are probably the most important. Edema of the glottis requires especial allusion, as a complication most alarming and threatening to life. Inhalations of steam may be tried, but prompt punctures or incisions are the only certain means of relieving the patient and saving life.

I know of no measures directly curative in acute or chronic nephritis—that is, remedies which by their direct action remove the morbid state—and I believe none exists unless it be the operation to be next described. All that can be done is to place the patient in a condition most favorable for nature's kindly offices, which are always exerting themselves toward cure. This is accomplished by the measures recommended, which also eliminate the mechanical and poisonous products which interfere with recovery.

**Operative Treatment.**—Decapsulation of the kidney as a cure for chronic nephritis was proposed by the late George M. Edebohls, the suggestion growing out of some results of operation for floating kidney in per-

sons who happened to have coincident chronic parenchymatous nephritis. His results were published in the "Medical News," April 22, 1899. His first thought was that the cure of Bright's disease was due to correction of the displacement of the kidney, and it was not until after three secondary operations upon kidneys which had been anchored some time previously, that he discovered the essential condition underlying the cure to be decapsulation, or decortication. The last paper of Edebohls read before the Section on Surgery and Anatomy of the American Medical Association, June 19, 1908,<sup>1</sup> was based on a total of 102 cases, of which 33 were claimed to be complete cures, 21 received no benefit, and 48 experienced amelioration short of cure. Of the 21 not benefited ten died soon after the operation, from the effects of the operation. In 29 cases he operated on both kidneys at one sitting. The operation consists in stripping off the capsule and cutting it away entirely, close to its junction with the pelvis of the kidney.

The success of the operation is seemingly due, as Edebohls suggests, to arterial hyperemization of the kidney, whereby an increased and adequate blood-supply is furnished the organ which permits an absorption of interstitial and intertubular inflammatory products, thus relieving the tubules and glomeruli from the pressure previously interfering with function.

Several cases have passed under my observation and the following is a typical one of the kind likely to be benefited—one of severe chronic diffuse nephritis succeeding upon scarlet fever. The patient was a little girl aged ten. The case had lasted over four years and there was general anasarca as well as ascites. At the time of operation she was so weak that my colleague Chas. H. Frazier feared to operate on both kidneys at the same time. One only was therefore decorticated. The result may be truly called marvelous. The secretion of urine which under the most favorable circumstances before operation did not exceed 30 ounces (900 c.c.) rose rapidly, and on the fourth day after operation over 100 ounces (3000 c.c.) were secreted, and in ten days she was free from dropsy and ascites and a month later seemed perfectly well. There continued, however, to be a large albuminuria and there were numerous casts. On March 14, 1903, the second kidney was operated upon. She did well, but as there was no dropsy there did not succeed the large increase in the secretion of urine. In a few days, however, the quantity of albumin diminished decidedly and she remained seemingly well for a year, at the end of which time after exposure she suffered a relapse and died in a short time.

### CHRONIC INTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Contracted Kidney; Chronically Contracted Kidney; Renal Cirrhosis; Cirrhotic Kidney; Granular Degeneration; Granular Kidney; Red Granular Kidney; Gouty Kidney; Renal Sclerosis.*

**Definition.**—Chronic interstitial nephritis is a chronic process resulting ultimately in a shrunken kidney, in which there has been extensive

<sup>1</sup>Published in the Jour. American Medical Association, Jan. 16, 1909. The paper was read, on account of Edebohls's illness, by Samuel Lloyd. Edebohls died Aug. 8, 1908.

destruction of the tubular substance and overgrowth of interstitial connective tissue.

**Etiology.**—Of the recognized forms of Bright's disease, interstitial nephritis shares with chronic parenchymatous nephritis a large number of instances in which the cause is undiscoverable. There are, however, some well-determined causes. Among the most tangible of these is gout. *Gout* is associated with so many cases of contracted kidney that the term gouty kidney has become a well-recognized synonym for the product of interstitial nephritis. There are probably no cases of gout which have continued for any length of time which are not accompanied by interstitial nephritis. Uric acid and allied substances in the blood are probably the exciting cause. Another well-recognized cause is *lead* in lead-poisoning, the absorbed lead acting like the poison of gout. Hence painters, glaziers, workers in lead in any form, are frequent victims. Dickinson considers it safe to assert that of painters at least one-half eventually die of granular degeneration of the kidneys. This is certainly not the case in this country. *Alcohol* has always been assigned an important rôle in the production of chronic interstitial nephritis. It is probably true, especially if associated with a habit of overeating proteid foods. The latter habit alone I believe to be a frequent cause of chronically contracted kidney. It is almost incredible how much some persons eat—persons, too, who are inactive in mind and body. Such persons must overwork the kidney and gradually bring on a condition of chronic nephritis, which does not, however, usually appear until after middle life. On the other hand, I believe alcohol alone is responsible for more cases of chronic parenchymatous nephritis. Henry F. Formad, who, as coroner's physician for many years in Philadelphia, made an enormous number of autopsies on drunkards, always held this view, and claimed that the kidney was peculiar enough in shape to be called the "pig-back" kidney.

Long-continued *cystitis*, especially following gonorrhea, is a cause in a few instances, the inflammation traveling up the ureter to the pelvis of the kidney and thence to the intertubular tissue. The more usual result of such extension is suppurative nephritis.

Among the causes the operation of which cannot be so directly proved are *anxiety* or *business care* and *worry*. Clifford Allbutt, quoted by Robert T. Edes,<sup>1</sup> goes so far as to attribute "24 out of 32 cases in private practice to some long-continued anxiety or great grief." This also is contrary to my experience. It is true that this disease very often exists for a long time undiscovered in business men who have lived under a state of constant mental tension. The effect of this cause is augmented if its subjects combine too liberal eating and drinking with the hard work and anxiety.

*Hereditary influence* is occasionally a cause of contracted kidney. A remarkable instance of this has occurred in my own practice. I was consulted by a man, aged 30, who had granular kidneys. His father and mother both died of Bright's disease, aged 56 and 63 years, respectively. The mother had convulsions. A brother died of Bright's disease, without convulsions, at the age of 37. Two children of this brother had Bright's

<sup>1</sup>Robert T. Edes. "Some of the Symptoms of Bright's Disease," "Boston Med. and Surg. Jour.," vol. ciii, No. 2, July 8, 1880.

disease when four and seven years of age, respectively. A second brother died at the age of 29 with convulsions. A third and fourth brother, aged 23 and 32 years, respectively, have had Bright's disease for six years. A sister, aged 36, has had Bright's disease for five years. A brother, aged 26, and a sister, aged 34, have as yet exhibited no signs of Bright's disease. A maternal cousin died of undoubted Bright's disease, and other members of the family belonging to previous generations died with symptoms which suggest Bright's disease. The patient, himself, has undoubted granular kidney, discovered in August, 1880. An examination of his urine in 1876 revealed no evidences of the disease. There is no gout in the family. Dickinson also relates the history of a family in which a hereditary albuminuria existed independent of gout.

Prolonged *passive congestion*, due to valvular heart disease, may become a cause of granular kidney. The same may be said of *stone in the kidney* causing numerous attacks of nephritic colic. I have known typical chronic interstitial nephritis ensue on such attacks of nephritic colic.

*Pregnancy*, so frequently a cause of acute parenchymatous nephritis, is rarely, if ever, a cause of interstitial nephritis or chronic parenchymatous nephritis. It is true contracted kidney is sometimes found in autopsies of women dying of puerperal nephritis, but I believe it more frequently precedes than follows the pregnancy.

Interstitial nephritis is commonly a *disease of middle age*, the majority of persons in whom it is discovered being past 40. A few cases occur under 30. The youngest patient whom I have ever had was 26. Still younger cases are reported.

It must be remembered that there is a tendency to overgrowth in the interstitial tissue of the kidney, as of other organs, in old age. Hence the term, *senile atrophy of the kidney*. It is not safe, therefore, to call every instance of atrophied kidney met in the postmortem room a case of interstitial nephritis. The clinical history, or some one of the well-marked symptoms of the disease, as albuminuria or uremic symptoms, should have preceded to sustain the diagnosis.

As to *sex*, nearly twice as many males have the disease as females, because of the more frequent exposure of the former to the causes of the affection.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—In interstitial nephritis, both kidneys are involved, but there is often a marked difference in the extent of the disease in each.

Macroscopically, the organs are evidently smaller than in health, often less than half as large. I have seen them less than five centimeters (2 inches) in length. Next to this reduction in size, the most striking feature of the contracted kidney is its uneven or granular surface, which is, however, not always recognizable until after the capsule is removed. Very characteristic also is the presence of cysts with more or less clear watery or gelatinous contents, often visible through the capsule. These are not invariably, but quite frequently, present. The capsule, itself thickened, strips off with difficulty, dragging portions of the secreting structure with it. Owing to the resistance which the blood meets in its passage through the kidney, a larger portion of it passes out of the organ by way of the

capsule; hence the blood-vessels of the latter are dilated, as are also the lymph-spaces.

Bereft of its capsule, the kidney is hard, granular, tough, and usually darker than in health, whence one of its names, the "red granular kidney." This color is in strong contrast to the white or slightly yellow tinge of the fatty and contracting kidney, and although it is not always marked, and sometimes even substituted by a paleness, it is still easily distinguished from that of the contracting kidney of parenchymatous nephritis. The granules on the surface of the contracted kidney are distinct round and oval elevations of the surface, ranging in size from that of a pin's head to that of a pea, or from  $1/25$  to  $1/5$  inch (1 to 5 mm.). Those of smaller size are most numerous, and at first correspond with the lobules, the bases of which are visible on the surface of the normal organ. The larger ones result from the coalescence of two or more of the smaller. The granules themselves are of a lighter color than the depressed circlets between them, which are tinted with vascularity and have a purplish or faint red hue. The *cysts* already referred to are now more distinct (after removal of the capsule), and vary greatly in size. While equaling in minuteness the smallest of the granules, some of them are as large as a walnut. The larger are apt to be ruptured on stripping off the capsule.

*On section*, it is at once evident that the reduction in size of the kidney is largely due to a narrowing of the cortex, although the medulla is also contracted. The former may not be more than from  $1/8$  to  $1/6$  inch (3 or 4 mm.) in width, and exhibit every degree between this and the normal. The Malpighian bodies are smaller, less numerous, and can scarcely be detected by the naked eye, while the small arteries are more prominent from the thickening of their walls. Increased density and firmness of the organ are apparent. In a gouty subject, linear chalk-marks of sodium urate may be present, more particularly in the pyramids of straight tubules, and are contained within; as well as between, the latter. The little cysts referred to as seen on the surface may also be scattered throughout the section from cortex to papillæ, but they are more numerous in the former. They are not always present. The pelvis of the kidney may be unaltered. It is sometimes enlarged, and the calices are elongated from retraction of the pyramids. On the other hand, if the kidney is very much reduced in size, the capsule may be pursed up and proportionately smaller.

*Minute Structure.*—Minute examination of thin sections through the cortex clearly reveals the condition to be an excess of connective tissue, with destruction of the tubules and blood-vessels. The process is best studied if the sections include the capsular edge, as the disease progresses from without inward. In such sections may be seen extensive tracts of connective tissue separating the tubules, which, in healthy kidneys, are closely in contact without appreciable intertubular substance. The *tubules* themselves appear in places quite normal; in others they are represented by fragmentary portions in which the cells are still unchanged; in others, again, the cells exhibit a granular degeneration; some tubes are evidently dilated; others still are completely shriveled, while it is evident from the larger areas of connective tissue that many have completely disappeared. In a few tubules waxy casts are present. The Malpighian bodies are sur-

rounded by concentric layers of nucleated connective tissue. Many of them are shriveled and atrophied, and an attempt to inject them with colored injecting fluids fails either partially or completely. Some thus altered lie detached from the tubules, with which they should be continuous. The granules on the surface of the kidneys are resolvable by the microscope into tubules, some of which are in a tolerably perfect state, some decidedly dilated.

The *cysts* originate partly in dilatations of obstructed segments of the uriniferous tubules and partly in dilated Malpighian capsules. Proof of the latter mode of origin is found in the fact that compressed capillary tufts are sometimes found lying up against one side of the wall of the cyst. The same overgrowth of connective tissue may be seen in the pyramids, but it appears later, extends more slowly, and never reaches the degree found in the cortex.

The *blood-vessel* of the contracted kidney is the seat of important changes. In the first place, it shares with the tubules the compressing effect of the contracting new formation. As the result of this, a part of the capillary system is destroyed, and in the part thus destroyed are many capillary coils in the Malpighian bodies. Hence, as many afferent arterioles send their blood directly into the second capillary network, which is also cut down by the pressure. The vessels which remain are often sclerotic, dilated, and twisted, and in consequence of the destruction of numerous Malpighian bodies send much of their blood out through the capsule of the kidney. The intima is thickened, and the media and adventitia are invaded by hyperplastic connective tissue, but always to a less degree. Even arterioles whose walls have thus been thickened become involved in the atrophic processes affecting the glandular tissue of the organ, and ultimately disappear.

Associated with these changes are a *general arteriosclerosis* and *hypertrophy of the left ventricle* of the heart, sometimes also of the right. The final effect of these alterations is to produce a brittleness in the arteriole walls, which disposes them to rupture on very slight increase of intravascular pressure. Hence the frequent fatal termination of cases of interstitial nephritis by apoplexy, also the frequent nasal and retinal hemorrhages which characterize the disease.

The *retinal changes*—*retinitis albuminurica*—symptoms of which form so important a part of the symptomatology of chronic interstitial nephritis, are various and vary with the stage of each case. Many cases are first diagnosed by the ophthalmic surgeon. The changes include serous swelling of the disk and surrounding retina, hemorrhagic extravasations, dirty white splotches, representing fatty degeneration, and dilatation of the veins and capillaries, with fatty degeneration and sometimes hyaline thickening of their walls.

**Symptoms.**—The great obscurity as to the origin of a large majority of cases of contracted kidney is only equaled by that of the insidiousness of their approach. The beginning of the disease is certainly not characterized by any distinctive symptoms; and its progress is often unmarked by any, until those of uremia point to the beginning of the end. To the observing physician some obscure symptom may suggest an examination of



the urine; or the peculiar tense and bounding pulse of hypertrophy of the left ventricle, or the more tangible symptoms of a slight swelling of the feet or ankles, recognizable only at night or through the unexpected tightness of a boot, may lead to the same examination. An accidental recognition of greatly increased blood pressure may suggest the disease.

*Changes in the Urine.*—Attention being called to the *urine*, it will be found to present characters which are more or less distinctive and lead easily to a diagnosis. When freshly passed, it is acid in reaction, copious, often exceeding the normal amount, and never scanty, except in the last stages of the disease. The quantity is often 60 (1800 c.c.), and may reach 90 ounces (2700 c.c.). The patient very commonly must rise at night, probably not more than once or twice, to void urine. There may be corresponding thirst. Consequently, the urine is light in color and of low specific gravity—1005 to 1015—and contains a trifling or moderate flocculent sediment. It is generally albuminous, but the albumin is small in amount and may be temporarily absent, or it may be absent before a meal and present after it. Later, however, the albumin becomes constant. It seldom exceeds one-tenth the bulk of fluid tested, and is very constantly a great deal less, showing a delicate line of white by Heller's nitric acid test. Tube-casts are present, but not usually numerous. They are almost solely hyaline and pale granular. Some of the hyaline casts are delicately so, requiring delicate illumination for their detection; others are distinct and sharply cut; others still contain two or three glistening oil drops. Casts may at times be absent and again reappear, as is the case with albumin. Toward the termination of cases of interstitial nephritis the urine diminishes in quantity, the specific gravity increases, and the casts become much more numerous, and include among them highly granular or dark granular and occasionally even blood-casts in addition to those mentioned, and there are sometimes a few blood-disks earlier. The *urea* is also diminished, sooner or later, and in this manner the lower specific gravity is contributed to. This fall becomes marked toward the close, accounting for the uremic symptoms which often first announce the disease. It may be as low as 15 grains (1 gm.), and may range anywhere between this and the normal 24 hours' quantity, which may be put down at from 308 to 617 grains (20 to 40 gm.) in an adult, being largely influenced by the kind of food ingested. All the remaining normal constituents may be said, in general terms, to be diminished.

As to the other symptoms, a feeling of *unaccountable weakness* or of being tired is very often present, but it is a symptom which occurs in many conditions, and should only be considered as suggestive. *Slight edema* about the feet and ankles is often present, being so slight as to escape detection, or it is discovered accidentally. When present it is significant, but it is often entirely wanting.

*Hypertrophy of the left ventricle* of the heart without valvular disease is so constant as to be alone suggestive of the disease. No case of interstitial nephritis has existed for any length of time without this condition supervening, and as few cases are discovered until they have existed for some time, few are found without hypertrophy. In more than one-half of cases, at least, hypertrophy is evident. It is recognized at first not so much

by the resulting enlarged percussion area as by the sharp accentuation of the aortic second sound. Corresponding to this, the *pulse* is hard and resisting, indicating high tension and thickening. These two symptoms have, therefore, great diagnostic value. *Sclerosis* is distinguished from tension by obliterating the blood-current by pressure and feeling the artery beyond this point. The sclerosed vessel continues tangible; that of simple high tension disappears. A symptom of this stage is often an uncomfortable *pulsation* felt in the head and even in other parts of the body.

It is not easy to estimate the exact number of cases of pure interstitial nephritis associated with hypertrophy of the different cavities of the heart. The observations of Hasenfeld, in 1897, and von Hirsch, in 1900, found hypertrophy of all chambers in over 75 per cent. Von Buhl's results are essentially the same. Recently some attempts were made to settle this question by Nathaniel Bowditch Potter<sup>1</sup> and Horace Oertel, of the New York City Hospital, resulting as follows:

286 Autopsies, 151 Cases of Nephritis.

	Per cent. of Hyp. of L. V.	Per cent. of Hyp. of L. & R. V.	Per cent. of Normal or Atro. Heart.
66 chronic interstitial	30.5	11.5	58
22 arteriosclerotic interstitial,	27	9	64
25 chronic parenchymatous,	12	4	84

These observers did not follow Müller's accurate method or it is probable they would have found a larger proportion of cases in which the left ventricle and both ventricles were enlarged. Of the cases of atrophic or normal hearts generally associated with deficient nutritive power they found a number in which there was reason to believe the heart was originally hypertrophied and became later atrophic.

An increase of blood-pressure as recognized by the sphygmomanometer is a very characteristic and diagnostic sign, the measure being anything above 160, to 200 and 220 millimeters of mercury.

The causes of these changes in the vascular system will be considered when treating of the relation of heart disease and kidney disease.

As the disease becomes more advanced there are added *cardiac symptoms*, including dyspnea, palpitation, and reduplication of the first sound. The last is probably due to a want of synchronism in the systole of the two ventricles. There is usually no murmur, because there is no valvular disease. The latter may be present. The patient may have had valvular disease prior to the renal malady, or the latter itself, by its long continuance, may have produced endocarditis and atheroma with an aortic systolic murmur. There may be a mitral murmur due to relative insufficiency. Valvular disease is, however, unusual. The hypertrophy of the heart is conservative, and all goes well as long as the power of the heart lasts. When the latter begins to fail and dilatation appears, the blood-pressure diminishes, and with it begins a train of symptoms, among which diminished secretion of urine and dropsy are the most conspicuous, along with gallop rhythm, dyspnea, palpitation, and dizziness. These symptoms may again be averted for a time by *hypertrophy* of the *right ventricle*, which is

<sup>1</sup>"Cardiac Hypertrophy as Observed in Chronic Nephritis," by Nathaniel Bowditch Potter. "Journal of the American Medical Association," October 27, 1906.

a symptom of disturbed compensation. Among derangements of breathing must be included Cheyne-Stokes breathing, commonly toward the end of the disease.

*Dimness of vision* due to retinitis albuminurica, already described on page 790 is a characteristic symptom. It is often the first recognized, and hence the diagnosis is frequently first made by the ophthalmologist. It is a serious symptom, generally considered a sign of advanced disease, as, indeed, it usually is. Some assign two years as the limit of life after its recognition, but this is too unfavorable a prognosis. The atheroma of the blood-vessels is the cause of another symptom which frequently determines the mode of death—rupture of a blood-vessel in the brain: in a word, *apoplexy*. This accident is more usual late in life, but Dickinson reports a case in which cerebral hemorrhage occurred in a girl of 12. The proportion of cases of recognized interstitial nephritis in which this happens is not large, but many cases of apoplexy are directly traceable at autopsy to unsuspected renal cirrhosis. Dickinson believes that of fatal cases of apoplexy, one-half are preceded by this form of disease. Hemorrhages in other situations are referable to this same altered state of the blood-vessels, as, for example, into the retina, from the nose, and even into the stomach. *Sudden blindness*, in addition to the dimness of vision due to retinitis albuminurica, is a symptom which occasionally presents itself. Amaurosis and amblyopia also occur, and may disappear, but dimness of vision due to retinitis albuminurica is a permanent symptom, though I have seen it improve under treatment. Auditory disturbances also occur, such as ringing in the ears, with dizziness and more or less deafness.

The termination by *uremia* occurs more frequently in this than in any other form of Bright's disease. Bartels says that nearly all patients he has seen die in the extreme stage of atrophied kidneys sank under the symptom of chronic uremia. He is probably correct, and it is frequently the first intimation of the existence of any derangement, manifesting itself in any one or more of the forms already described under acute nephritis. Headache, drowsiness, convulsions, stupor, delirium, maniacal excitement, renal asthma, *restlessness*, nausea, vomiting—any one of these symptoms may usher in the dreadful train which is so likely to be fatal. E. C. Seguin especially has called attention to occipital headache as a symptom of uremia.<sup>1</sup> Von Leube considers that even the intermittent headaches which occur in this disease, and which very closely resemble migraine, are probably due to uremia. Temperature follows the same rule in uremia as in other forms of nephritis. The *convulsion* is commonly associated with a rise of temperature. *Dyspeptic symptoms*, with obstinate vomiting, particularly in the morning on rising, are apt to usher in a chronic uremia. *Diarrhea* is less common, but also sometimes occurs toward the close, when it may be very difficult to control.

*The duration* of this form of renal disease is indefinite. Always a chronic process, it may last for years undiscovered, and when discovered before it is too far advanced, the knowledge of its presence will suggest measures of precaution and treatment which may so prolong life that it

<sup>1</sup>"Archives of Medicine," vol. iv., No. 1, New York, August, 1880.

need only be determined by its natural limit or some other disease. Yet complete recovery from well-established interstitial nephritis is probably unknown.

**Complications.**—These include bronchitis, pericarditis, pleurisy, pneumonia, and, more rarely, endocarditis, peritonitis, intertubular gastritis, and even inflammation and ulceration of the bowels. But all inflammatory complications, except bronchitis, pleurisy, and pericarditis, are less frequent than in acute nephritis. The older authors emphasize bronchitis as a frequent complication, according to W. Howship Dickinson, 33 per cent. and according to Sir T. Grainger Stewart seven per cent. My own experience accords more nearly with the latter. Pericarditis is the most serious complication, occurring to Dickinson in 25 per cent. Pleurisy and pneumonia are also of tolerably frequent, Stewart finding the former in 15 per cent. of his cases and pneumonia in seven per cent. Acute endocarditis and peritonitis occur, but very seldom.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of an interstitial nephritis is usually easy, if in any way an examination of the urine is suggested. The increased quantity, the low specific gravity, small albuminuria, delicate hyaline, pale granular casts, and hypertrophy of the left ventricle, even in the absence of other symptoms, are sufficiently distinctive. The conditions which should suggest such an examination are a feeling of constant weariness, slight swelling of the feet, drowsiness, frequent headaches, confused intellect, dyspeptic symptoms, obstinate nausea, delirium, coma, and convulsions. High arterial tension should always suggest examination of the urine.

The special condition from which it is most difficult to distinguish it is the milder form of *chronic diffuse* or *parenchymatous nephritis*, especially if the latter has reached the contracting stage. In fact, the symptoms are often identical, and unless the history helps us, it may be impossible to decide. The evidences of decided fatty change, such as the oil-cast or free fatty renal cell in the urine, settle the question in favor of chronic diffuse nephritis.

It is important, if possible, to distinguish between interstitial nephritis with secondary arterial sclerosis and *general arterial sclerosis with secondary contracted kidney*, but it is not always easy to draw a sharp line between these two conditions. Both are equally insidious, in both there is the absence of dropsy except in the very last stages of the form with primary renal sclerosis, though here it is also rare, while it is wanting throughout in general arterio-sclerosis. In both there is a scanty albuminuria with very few hyaline casts, but if the opportunity presents to study urine for a time I should say the albumin and casts appear earlier in the primary renal cases. Indeed, in general arterio-sclerosis there is often no albuminuria whatever although hyaline casts may be present. In general arterio-sclerosis there are often brain symptoms due to anemia and imperfect circulation, namely, vertigo, tinnitus and amaurosis. In the latter condition retinal changes occur early, but they are not those of retinitis albuminurica and hemorrhage into the retina. As pointed out by de Schweinitz, there is thickening of the arteries which compress the veins where they cross them. These changes may occur early. Retinitis albuminurica, hemorrhages, and more serious derangements of vision occur only when the kidney lesion is primary. An important symptom characteristic of general arterio-

sclerosis is a tendency to emaciation and loss of weight, a change of color, a pallor, and loss of vigor which is characteristic. The condition of the arteries interferes with an adequate nutrition and the patient wastes as well as grows weaker and anemic. Alfred Stengel holds that this anemia is apparent rather than real, since the blood in the vessels is simply obscured by the thickened vessel-walls. Perhaps the most characteristic difference is found in the blood-pressure. In general arterio-sclerosis blood-pressure may be increased, but not nearly as much as in renal sclerosis where the systolic pressure is often 170 to 220 mm. as contrasted with an average normal of 115 to 140 mm. An important etiologico-pathological difference is claimed by Gull and Sutton in the kidneys. According to them, the destruction of renal tubules is due to the contraction of new connective tissue, the formation of which is due to the arterial changes. In primary contracted kidney the renal parenchyma dies first and is replaced by the connective tissue secondarily.

I have attempted to tabulate these differences between the two conditions as follows:

*Primary Chronic Interstitial Nephritis.*

1. Causes of chronic interstitial nephritis, such as overeating and drinking, gout, diabetes, syphilis, lead intoxication, etc.
2. Characteristic insidious onset, including digestive derangements, small albuminuria, few casts, with little or no evidence of arterial change at first.
3. Edema, never at first, later unusual.
4. Arterial pulsation often very annoying.
5. Vertigo infrequent.
6. Albuminuric retinitis and hemorrhages into retina.
7. Hypertrophy of one or both ventricles rather more frequent, say 42 per cent.
8. High blood-pressure and high arterial tension before vascular change, is evident.
9. True uremia.

*Primary General Arterio-sclerosis.*

1. Same causes.
2. Early appearance of arterial changes.
3. Edema frequent and often marked.
4. No pulsation in head or elsewhere.
5. Vertigo common.
6. Retinal changes, but not hemorrhage, nor retinitis albuminurica.
7. Rather less frequent, say 36 per cent.
8. Moderate or lowered blood-pressure, moderate arterial tension.
9. Simulated uremia.

Strictly speaking, all nephritis is primarily parenchymatous or tubular, but in what is known as chronic interstitial nephritis the changes are slower and the replacement by connective tissue more prompt and rapid, so that the interstitial element predominates and the cells are destroyed more rapidly.

*Diabetes insipidus* is comparable to contracted kidney in the increased quantity of urine of low specific gravity, but there is no albumin, casts are absent, and the quantity of urine is much greater.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is unfavorable as to recovery, but favorable as to prolongation of life if the diagnosis be made sufficiently early. Cases with casts and small albuminuria may continue under observation for ten or more years. If not made previous to the setting in of uremic symptoms, little may be expected. But even at this stage, energetic treatment may still avail to avert the immediate danger and prolong the patient's life. The possible sudden occurrence of convulsions and coma, and of death therefrom, should always be remembered and impressed upon the relatives

of the patient. These constitute unfavorable symptoms, to which, toward the end, Cheyne-Stokes breathing may be added.

**Treatment.**—From what has been said under prognosis, it is evident that the most hopeful result to be expected from treatment is the protection of the patient from the consequences of his malady, rather than the restoration of the kidney to its normal condition. Our power in the former respect depends largely upon the stage at which the disease is discovered. If detected at a period in which the urine is abundant, the albuminuria small, the casts few, and there is no edema, the indications are:

1. To maintain the integrity of the blood, by preventing the accumulation of urine—toxins in the blood.

2. To treat, as they arise, the accidents and complications which are often so dangerous to the patient.

The first of these is best accomplished by dietetic and hygienic measures, aided by the use of a few remedies. First, as to *food*, all that was said under chronic parenchymatous nephritis is applicable to interstitial nephritis, because the appetite is still good, and a suitable selection can be exercised. As the urea has its chief source in the azotized elements of food, it is plain that the larger the quantity of such food consumed, the larger is the accumulation of urea to be eliminated by the kidneys. Now, while it is not possible nor, perhaps, desirable to exclude all nitrogenous food, it may be largely reduced. This is accomplished by the substitution of all or a part of animal flesh by milk, while drawing the elements of a mixed food from the vegetable kingdom. The so-called vegetarians have proved conclusively that it is possible to live and maintain good health upon milk and an otherwise exclusively vegetable diet, and, while this diet may not be compatible with the highest mental and physical development of which man is capable,<sup>1</sup> which is not all proved, the resulting life is perfect enough for all its objects, and will doubtless be acceptable to those who prefer to live. On such a system I have known the patient with contracted kidney to maintain apparently perfect health for many years.

With regard to habitual beverages, the use of strong alcoholic drinks is harmful, and brandy, whisky, champagne, sherries and ports should be prohibited. The light wines, and especially the red wines and lighter alcoholic drinks, as lager beer, porter, etc., may be used in moderation. I have already referred to the very great value of the alkaline mineral waters, such as those of Vichy, Vals, and Kissingen; to these a little claret may be added at dinner.

What has been said of clothing, fresh air, and exercise in connection with chronic parenchymatous nephritis is even more applicable to interstitial nephritis. Warmth of the body, maintained by woolen garments next the skin to encourage its action, and the avoidance of damp and cold, which check it, are peremptory. The wetting of the body by rain, or of the feet alone, has frequently been the exciting cause of a fatal uremic attack. India-rubber overshoes should be worn in damp weather.

In this connection, sea-bathing requires mention. It is well known that sea-bathing sometimes induces albuminuria in normally constituted

<sup>1</sup>See Carpenter's "Physiology," seventh English edition, 1869, p. 77.

persons, or, at least, in individuals at other times free from albuminuria. This is probably due to a temporary congestion of the kidney, from introversion of the blood kept up by the duration of the bath. Still more mischievous, therefore, must be the effect of prolonged sea-bathing upon one whose kidneys are already damaged and incompetent to perform their office. Sea-bathing, therefore, or any form of cold bathing, should be interdicted to the patient with contracted kidney, or, indeed, with any form of chronic nephritis. Sea-bathing is especially mentioned because it is considered healthful, and persons remain in the water so long at a time. On the other hand, a daily warm bath at bedtime, and especially an occasional Turkish bath, is advantageous.

For the same reason residence in a warm, equable climate is often of signal service in interstitial nephritis; and cases are reported in which the albumin has disappeared and symptomatic recovery taken place during such residence.

Prolonged bodily or mental fatigue should also be avoided by these patients, as they have been known to be the exciting cause of uremia and death; especially are they so when associated with free eating and drinking. The patient should live a life as easy and as free from any of these causes which have been considered as his circumstances will permit.

As to drugs, they are of limited utility. The moderate use of *tonics*, including quinin, strychnin, and iron, is useful to combat the tendency to anemia and weakness, which sooner or later follows. In this form of Bright's disease, even more than in chronic parenchymatous nephritis, is the indiscriminate use of iron to be guarded against. Iron in contracted kidney, as often used, is a harmful drug. It locks up secretions, causes headache, and increases the danger of uremia. Only when there is evident anemia should it be used, and then only in very small doses. I hold that so long as iron blackens the stools or constipates the bowels, the doses are too large, and they should be reduced until the effect on the stools is very slight or not noticeable. Elimination is favored by stimulating the secretion of the skin, and this is best accomplished by an occasional warm bath, or, especially, a Turkish bath, with thorough friction and protection from cold by woolen underclothing. The Turkish bath is an admirable remedial measure, especially before the disease is too far advanced.

*Diuretics* are not indicated in the earlier stages, because the secretion of urine is already free. The bowels should be kept regular by the use of the natural aperient waters, the Hunyadi, Friedrichshalle, Apenta, Veronica and Rakoczy, or an occasional blue pill, or a dose of magnesium sulphate. Of course, later in the disease, when the heart begins to fail and the urine is scanty, both diuretics and purgatives are indicated. The same principles are to govern us in using them as have already been laid down under acute nephritis. Very high arterial tension sometimes demands treatment. A certain amount is a result of the conservative train of symptoms, beginning with hypertrophy of the left ventricle, and is necessary; but when a resulting throbbing is unpleasantly appreciable, especially if there is throbbing headache with flashes of light at each pulsation, tension should be lowered. The remedy which excels all others is nitroglycerin, which should be given in doses of 1/100 grain (0.00066 gm.) and upward

every three hours or oftener. The best preparation is the one per cent. alcoholic solution, of which one drop represents  $1/100$  grain (0.00066 gm.), the granules being more convenient, but less reliable. The dose should be rapidly increased until the physiological effect is obtained, and then reduced to what is found best to effect its purpose. Either the susceptibility of different persons varies greatly or the drug varies greatly in quality. I have repeatedly given it every two hours for days together in doses of  $1/100$  grain (0.00066 gm.). It may be associated with digitalis, with which it cooperates by relaxing the arteriolar spasm which digitalis produces, and which interferes with its happiest effects. Sometimes nitroglycerin fails of its purpose when small doses of tincture of aconite make an admirable adjuvant or substitute.

The second indication mentioned, the *treatment of the complications and accidents* incident to the condition, resolves itself into the treatment of the bronchitis, the pericarditis, the pleurisy, pneumonia, endocarditis, gastric and intestinal disorders, which have been named as occurring, and especially of the most serious calamity of all, uremia. The treatment of the complications is that of the same conditions under other circumstances. Paracentesis is a measure which is often of signal service in effusions into the chest, and occasionally of the pericardium.

Dyspeptic symptoms are best treated with pepsin and acids, and such other remedies as may be symptomatically required. *Opium* should be cautiously employed, if at all, not only in the gastro-intestinal disturbances, but under all circumstances, as it undoubtedly increases the dangers of uremia. This has been abundantly proved. It need not be discarded altogether, for there is sometimes no substitute for it in certain bowel affections and conditions of severe pain, but it should be given in smaller doses than usual and its effects watched. In like manner, hypnotic, sedative, and antispasmodic effects, when desired, should be produced by sulphonal, trional, vernal, chloral, and bromids, if possible.

Finally, as to the treatment of uremia, the measures described in the treatment of uremia in acute nephritis are to be used. Apoplexy, which is not an infrequent termination of the disease, in consequence of the atheromatous state of the blood-vessel walls, is recognizable by the paralysis, general or partial—most frequently hemiplegia—which accompanies the unconsciousness. Remedies are here generally futile, but such may be used as are indicated for apoplexy. The upright position, bleeding, counterirritation, and, if the patient survives the immediate accident, iodid of potassium, with a view to promoting absorption of the extravasated clot, may be used. Hemorrhages in other situations, as from the nose or alimentary canal, are treated by the same measures as when they occur under other circumstances. The close resemblance at times of the symptoms of uremia to those of apoplexy should be remembered.

As to special treatment, or treatment directed to the removal of the interstitial overgrowth in the kidney, there is none. Theoretically, the iodid of potassium ought to be of service. Unfortunately, the peculiar requirements of its administration—viz., the length of time during which the patient must take the remedy before any results may be expected, and the consequent difficulty in accumulating a sufficient number of cases—are



such that it is almost impossible to determine whether it can be of any service or not. Owing to these difficulties, it is doubtful whether its exact possibilities have as yet been determined. There can be no disadvantage in administering it, if the dose is so small as not to derange the stomach. Very rarely can more than a few grains daily be given. I believe I can say, however, of the bichlorid of mercury, that I have seen its long-continued use in doses of, at first,  $1/24$  grain (0.0027 gm.), and later  $1/50$  grain (0.0013 gm.), kept up a long time, followed by improvement. I have also seen improvement in the impaired vision of albuminuric retinitis follow its use. Certainly, in the event of a clear syphilitic origin, the iodid of potassium should be used. I have also used the biniodid of mercury with apparent happy results, in doses of  $1/24$  to  $1/16$  grain (0.0027 to 0.0040 gm.) a day.

*Operative treatment* by decapsulation has been applied in contracted kidney as well as in chronic parenchymatous nephritis. Indeed, some believe it more indicated in chronic interstitial nephritis, but my experience has been different. See treatment of chronic parenchymatous nephritis, p. 785.

## LARDACEOUS DISEASE OF THE KIDNEY.

SYNONYMS.—*Amyloid Disease; Albuminoid Disease; Waxy Kidney; Depurative Disease.*

**Definition.**—A morbid state of the kidney in which its structural elements are more or less infiltrated with a substance of albuminous composition and of bacony luster, best recognized by the deep mahogany-red color it strikes when treated with a solution of iodine.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent cause of lardaceous disease is profuse and long-continued suppuration, such as occurs in chronic bone disease, whether tubercular, syphilitic, or traumatic in origin; or such discharge as constitutes the expectoration in cases of chronic phthisis and chronic bronchitis with bronchiectasis. Syphilis itself, independently of the tertiary conditions which it produces, is a frequent cause of lardaceous disease. Cachectic states of any kind, chronic dysentery, ulceration of the bowels, and chronic albuminuria are possible causes.

Either sex is equally subject to lardaceous disease, but as men are more frequently exposed to its causes, it is in them rather more common. Very young children are rarely affected, for evident reasons, but in young persons from 11 to 30 it is most frequent. After 30 it grows gradually rarer. Tubercular hip disease in children, especially, is a cause.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The incipient stages seldom present alterations recognizable by the naked eye, unaided by reagents. But if, after section of the kidney, the cortex be treated by a solution of iodine and iodid of potassium,<sup>1</sup> numerous mahogany-red points make their appearance; or if by a solution of violet anilin, as many red or pink points. These are the Malpighian bodies, whose capillary tufts are the first to be affected by the

<sup>1</sup>*The Iodin Test Solutions.*—The best test solution for macroscopic purposes is one made by dissolving  $2\frac{1}{2}$  grains (0.16 gm.) of iodine by the aid of five grains (0.32 gm.) of iodid of potassium in one fluidounce (30 c.c.) of water. The solution contains about one-half of one per cent. of iodine. For microscopic preparations a solution weaker than the foregoing, or a one-quarter of one per cent., of iodine dissolved by twice the quantity of iodid of potassium, is more suitable, and sometimes a solution containing as much iodine as water alone will take up answers best.

change. The kidney, in this early stage, is normal in size or very slightly enlarged. Its capsule strips off readily, leaving an organ which exhibits no changes, or a paleness or translucency which readily escapes notice, but may be recognized at the edges of a thin section. Very often, too, they are completely overshadowed by other alterations, for amyloid kidney is most frequently a superadded event in the course of chronic diffuse nephritis while the same event may happen in interstitial nephritis. The large white kidney of chronic parenchymatous nephritis is especially apt to exhibit a slight degree of lardaceous change, which may altogether escape notice unless iodine is used. Hence, *iodine should be tried upon all kidneys removed at autopsy.*

In a more advanced stage of uncomplicated lardaceous change the kidneys are both enlarged, usually symmetrically, but the extreme degrees of enlargement are commonly associated with fatty degeneration of the epithelium. Such organs were a pair weighing 23 ounces (715 gm.) which came under Dickinson's<sup>1</sup> notice. Johnson<sup>2</sup> refers to a case in which the two kidneys weighed 28 ounces (870 gm.). Rindfleisch<sup>3</sup> has seen a single instance of that very rare condition, complete lardaceous infiltration—that is, in which the basement membrane of the uriniferous tubes, as well as the capillaries, was infiltrated—in which the kidney was enlarged to nearly twice its normal size. In the uncomplicated forms of lardaceous disease the capsule is not adherent, but if interstitial changes coexist to any extent, it is adherent. It leaves the surface of the kidney pale and anemic; occasionally, the stellate veins are conspicuous. The characteristic translucency may even be recognized in the organ in bulk, but in sections it is more striking. When the change is present in high degree, the edges of a thin section are almost as translucent as a similar section of bacon. On laying open the kidney the cortex is seen to be enlarged; it is pale, anemic, waxy, firm, and resisting. The pyramids are normal in hue and area. The iodine solution added to such a kidney produces its peculiar coloration not merely in the Malpighian capillaries, but also in the afferent and efferent vessels and the vasa recta of the pyramids. In a still later stage, that of atrophy, the kidney becomes contracted, diminished in size, rough, and even distorted in shape. The capsule is adherent, and on section the cortex is found narrowed, sometimes as much so as in the contracted kidney of interstitial nephritis.

*Microscopic Changes.*—To microscopic examination in the first stage, in which the naked eye often fails to detect anything abnormal without the aid of iodine, the Malpighian bodies exhibit a lustrous or waxy appearance. They are also enlarged and the capillary walls thickened. At this stage there is no visible alteration in the tubules or in their epithelium. In the second stage larger vessels are involved, the vasa afferentia and efferentia in the cortex, and also the vasa recta of the cones; also the second capillary network of the cortex, and an exudation occurs into the tubules of a glistening material which forms casts. This is undoubtedly at times the amyloid material, for such casts sometimes strike the mahogany reaction. At other times they have the composition of ordinary hyaline casts. It

<sup>1</sup> Dickinson, *op. cit.*, p. 249.

<sup>2</sup> Johnson, *op. cit.*, p. 104.

<sup>3</sup> Rindfleisch, "Path. Histology," "New Syd. Soc. Trans.," 1873, vol. ii., p. 167.

is to be remembered, too, that similar waxy casts are found in the tubules in other forms of chronic and even acute renal disease.

The arteriole walls are thickened by an involvement of both interna and media. This thickening is attended by an extraordinary distinctness of the muscular fiber-cells of the circular coat. Later, the basement membrane and epithelial lining may also be invaded, the cells being swollen, translucent, and apparently fused. It is also quite usual for the epithelium of the cells to be fatty, and the capillary walls to contain aggregations of fat globules, while the urine in the later stages contains oil casts and fatty cells.

In what has been called the third or contracting stage of lardaceous kidney, but which may be the ordinary contracted kidney on which the amyloid change has been ingrafted, minute examination reveals, in addition to the appearances described, the hypernucleated intertubal overgrowth. Cysts are occasionally present for the same reason that they are found in the granular contracted kidney, and the surface assumes also a certain degree of granulation.

**Symptoms.**—An individual who has had syphilis, or who has phthisis, bone-necrosis, or other affection causing an exhaustive drain, may acquire this form of kidney disease without appreciable addition to his symptoms. There may be a growing frequency in micturition, but this symptom may be totally absent. A somewhat copious albuminuria may be accidentally discovered. At first the urine may be quite clear, and no casts are met, or they are exceedingly scanty and hyaline or faintly granular. Later, a slight edema of the feet may appear while the patient is up and about, but it disappears during the night while he is in bed. The albuminuria is now copious, but still varies, and casts may be more numerous, or may still be scanty and continue hyaline or faintly granular. The urine is now decidedly increased in quantity—53 to 80 ounces (1600 to 2500 c.c.); its specific gravity is low—1005 to 1015. More rarely the urine is scanty. A cachectic anemic condition develops. There is sometimes a peculiar fetor of the breath, but it is doubtful whether this is characteristic of this more than of other forms of chronic kidney disease. Still later all these symptoms increase; the dropsy is persistent, the urine loaded with albumin, and, in addition to the ordinary delicate hyaline casts, it may contain the glistening waxy casts.

Senator announced some years ago that *serum globulin* is increased in the urine of amyloid kidney. Some winters ago I was enabled to make some observations which make me confident that he is right and that it is quite a valuable diagnostic sign. Fatty casts and free fatty epithelium from the tubules of the kidney may be superadded, as well as free oil drops. Epithelial casts are rare, as is blood. Edema of the lungs may also occur as a serious complication. Toward the close of the disease, the urine, which had been increased, becomes diminished in quantity, but is seldom suppressed. Of the chemical constituents, it may be said of all that they are, as a rule, slightly diminished, but not sufficiently to influence the course of the disease. It is in consequence of this that uremia is almost unknown in lardaceous disease, the urea and extractives being eliminated in sufficient amount to avert this evil. Nor do we find hypertrophy of the left ventricle or high arterial tension.

But lardaceous disease of the kidney almost never occurs alone. It is always accompanied by similar changes in the liver, spleen, and often of the intestinal canal. Hence, evidences of alterations in these organs are more or less marked. Thus, the percussion areas of the liver and spleen are almost always enlarged, and the blood-vessels of the stomach and intestines are often involved. In the former event obstinate vomiting, and the latter equally obstinate diarrhea, results. The latter is far more frequent than the former.

As to *duration*, the disease generally runs a very chronic course, which is limited only by the malady of which it is a complication. As such it is always of shorter duration than interstitial nephritis, and may be shorter than chronic parenchymatous nephritis, although the latter affection and lardaceous disease more closely resemble each other in respect to duration. When obstinate diarrhea and vomiting supervene, the end is usually not remote.

**Diagnosis.**—There are some instances in which lardaceous disease is easily recognized. If a patient has had syphilis with secondary and tertiary symptoms, or has long been a victim to phthisis, and he is discovered to be edematous and to have a large albuminuria, with an increased amount of serum globulin, with waxy hyaline and fatty casts and an enlarged liver and spleen and obstinate diarrhea, there can be little doubt but that there is lardaceous disease. But when neither of these two general diseases is present, or the phthisis has not existed a very long time, or there is not decided evidence of enlarged liver and spleen, we cannot be certain. While it is never safe to diagnose lardaceous disease without the presence of enlarged liver and spleen, such enlargement on the other hand, even when associated with large albuminuria does not necessarily imply amyloid kidney. The symptoms and course of the disease, particularly in its latter stages, are so like those of *chronic parenchymatous nephritis* that it is often impossible to separate the two. Further, there is every reason to believe that chronic nephritis is sometimes caused by the same dyscrasic conditions as produce the lardaceous disease. In such cases, too, therefore, a diagnosis is impossible. Finally, the two conditions may exist jointly.

The only other form of renal disease which it is at all possible to confound with lardaceous disease is *interstitial nephritis*. But in this we have the almost total absence of dropsy, small albuminuria, and scanty sediment, in which granular and hyaline casts are found. While the quantity of urine is increased in both these forms of chronic Bright's disease, the quantity is larger in interstitial nephritis. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle, an almost invariable symptom in contracted kidney, is very rare in lardaceous disease, while enlargement of the spleen and liver is common and does not occur in interstitial nephritis. Contracted kidney may also be associated with lardaceous disease.

**Prognosis.**—In the matter of prognosis much depends upon the presence or absence of the original disease causing the amyloid change. If the former cannot be cured, the effect of the latter can only be to hurry on the unfavorable termination, although it is subject to abatements as well as exacerbations. If the original disease is curable and the patient young, there are no limits to the possible improvement,

although it is scarcely likely that the diseased structures are ever restored to their normal state. But as it is unlikely that all the renal vessels are involved in the change, and the organ itself, is one capable of assuming an extraordinary degree of supplemental function, it is not impossible that there may be practically complete restoration of function. If the patient be past middle life, even if the original disease has disappeared, the probabilities of recovery are small, while a decided improvement is not impossible. If the stage of alteration of the blood-vessels of the stomach and intestines, as attested by obstinate vomiting and diarrhea, is reached, the disease is necessarily rapidly fatal.

**Treatment.**—Of the lardaceous disease it may be said with greater emphasis than in any other renal disease, “an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure.” A due appreciation by surgeons and syphilographers of the causes of lardaceous disease would prevent the occurrence of many cases, the timely amputation of a limb long the seat of suppuration and the thorough treatment of syphilis being all that is necessary to accomplish this. To this end also frequent examinations of urine should be made by the surgeon in charge of cases of the kind so often referred to, and the slightest indication of albuminuria should be the signal for prompt interference, if such be possible, while the possibility of the occurrence of this renal complication should always be before the surgeon’s mind. Especially watchful should be he who is in charge of children with hip-disease.

In syphilis the faithful and persistent use of remedies for a sufficient time after all the symptoms of the primary and secondary affections have disappeared is essential. To this end the “continuous,” rather than the “intermittent,” treatment of syphilis by small doses of mercurials long continued is the plan most likely to secure the eradication of the disease, and this should be kept up for at least six months after the disappearance of all syphilitic symptoms. (By small doses are meant doses of from  $1/50$  to  $1/25$  grain (0.0013 to 0.0026 gm.) of the bichlorid.)

If the causing disease continues to exist, the treatment of the amyloid disease is the treatment of the former—if it is syphilis, iodid of potassium and mercurials; if phthisis, cod-liver oil, iron, creasote and creasotal, quinin, an abundance of nourishing food, in which milk and cream should be conspicuous, alcohol, and restorative measures generally, together with fresh air and suitable exercise. Supposing the original disease to have disappeared, the measures of treatment indicated are precisely those of chronic parenchymatous nephritis, for the details of which the reader is referred to the section on that disease.

### SUPPURATIVE INTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS AND PYELONEPHRITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Septic and Pyemic Nephritis; Interstitial Suppurative Nephritis; Surgical Kidney; Abscess of the Kidney.*

**Definition.**—Suppurative nephritis, due to invasion of the kidney or its pelvis by pathogenic bacteria, either by way of the circulation or the urinary tract. A milder nonsuppurative grade of this disease, characterized by

cicatricial-like markings on the capsule of the kidney and sometimes by firm adhesions between the capsule and its fatty surroundings, may be named *capsulitis* or *perinephritis*.

Most frequently this form of nephritis starts in the pelvis of the kidney as a pyelitis, and thence extends into the interstitial tissue of the organ. Such a condition is preeminently a *pyelonephritis*. It may also happen that the nephritis starts in the interstitial tissue of the substance of the organ as the result of infectious embolism or traumatism or obstruction of the tubules by concretions. In either event both the kidney and its pelvis are sooner or later involved, and it is scarcely possible to separate the two conditions in diagnosis, and I do not, therefore, separate the two diseases.

**Etiology.**—The most frequent medium of invasion by *bacteria* is *retained* decomposed urine. Retention may be due to stricture of the urethra or even phimosis, to stone in the bladder or ureter or pelvis of the kidney. Perhaps there are always bacteria ready to avail themselves of sufficiently favorable conditions, but a favorite route of introduction is by unclean catheters. In many of these cases inflammation of the bladder is an intermediate state. Calculous concretions in the substance of the kidney also furnish conditions favorable for the action of bacteria of suppuration.

*Infectious emboli* cause a small number of cases of suppurative nephritis. The emboli are usually derived from the valves of the heart in cases of ulcerative endocarditis, but they may also arise in putrid wounds, stumps, or other seats of putrid inflammation. The abscesses found in the kidney in common with other organs in pyemia are thus produced. *Tubercle bacilli* are also causes, entering by either of the routes named, producing tuberculous pyelonephritis. Among the organisms found in the urine and held responsible are, besides the tubercle bacillus, the *bacterium coli commune*, the *protus Hauser*, the streptococcus and staphylococcus. *Parturition* is not an infrequent medium of introduction of pathogenic bacteria, while the infectious fevers are recognized causes.

*Traumatic agencies* such as blows, kicks, or penetrating wounds in the neighborhood of the kidney, or falls from a distance and striking upon the sharp edge of a fence or similar object, may also cause suppurative nephritis.

Suppurative nephritis may occur at any age subject to the operation of the cause. The youngest patient I ever had was two years old.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The appearances vary necessarily with the stage of the disease and also somewhat with the cause. In an earlier stage, if the inflammation pass from below upward, as is most frequently the case, the mucous membrane of the pelvis is first affected, being swollen and dirty gray in color, sometimes visibly congested. Later, the pelvis and calices may be dilated and the papillæ flattened. The distention may go on at the expense of the kidney until the whole organ is converted into a *pus-sac* bounded by a varying remnant of renal tissue. Such sac may be a constant source of pus, or if complete obstruction occurs, the pus may become inspissated and *cheesy*. The ureter is also often dilated, sometimes resembling, in consequence of such extreme dilatation, the intestine.

In tuberculosis extending *via* the urinary tract the *apices* of the cones are also invaded, it may be from the mucous membrane by continuity, or by direct lodgment of the bacillus. Successive portions of the kidney substance

break down, and the ultimate product will be the same, a sac filled with liquid pus or *cheesy, putty-like substance*.

In other instances, especially when the kidney is invaded by way of the vascular or lymphatic system, as in *pyemic abscess*, foci of suppuration a millimeter and upward in diameter are scattered in the cortex and separated by sound renal tissue. They are surrounded by an intensely red border, are often visible through the cortex, and may be ruptured by dragging off the capsule. On section at an early stage, linear streaks of pus may be found in the medulla.

At a later stage these little collections of pus unite to form larger ones, these again to form others still larger, destroying the tubular structure of the kidney as they encroach upon it, and it is at this stage that cases of pyelonephritis not infrequently terminate unfavorably and the specimens come under observation. At first each of the abscesses thus formed is confined to the region of a single pyramid, and it not infrequently happens that a kidney is partitioned off into spaces corresponding with these. Before this occurs, however, the abscess bursts through the papilla and calyx into the pelvis of the kidney. Thus, in an opposite direction from that first described, the kidney may again be converted into a purulent sac, but these cases generally terminate fatally long before this stage is attained.

When the *abscess is embolic* in origin, its seat is at first occupied by an area of intense hyperemia, resulting in *hemorrhagic extravasation*, which takes place also into the tubules, causing bloody urine. To this succeeds suppuration. The size and number of the abscesses depend upon that of the plug obstructing the blood-vessels, which is usually one of the interlobular arteries or a vas afferens. The embolic abscesses may also be multiple, in consequence of the breaking of the embolus into a number of minute fragments. When the cause is *traumatic*, the process is not so easily defined. Circumscribed abscesses may occur, or the kidney may be converted into a soft, pulpy mass, a mixture of pus, blood, and broken-down renal substance.

In the variety described as *capsulitis*, cicatricial markings or adhesions to adjacent tissue constitute its morbid anatomy.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of this condition are not numerous and, apart from the characters of the urine, are not very distinctive. In milder degrees of pelvic inflammation before the kidney is invaded there may be none. *Pain* and *tenderness* are the most constant, but considerable inroads may be made upon the structure of the kidney before pain results. On the other hand, it is often very severe, while the *tenderness* over the region of the kidney is pronounced. This tenderness is the most distinctive and valuable symptom. Usually the severest pain is in the renal region, whence it radiates toward the front of the abdomen and groin, and may be accompanied by retraction of the testicle. When the condition is the result of impacted calculus, the seat of the impaction is the primary seat of pain. It may be between the umbilicus and the pubis when the stone is low down in the ureter. The pain is always intermittent to a degree, sometimes totally so, but generally it is more or less constant, increased paroxysmally. Various positions are assumed by the patient with a view to easing the pain, among which lying on the face is not infrequent.

A distinct *tumor* may sometimes be discovered in the region of the kidney by palpation and percussion. This implies an enlargement of the organ, due either to its conversion into a purulent sac, or an augmentation of its size owing to the distention of its pelvis with pus or calculi or both. Very frequently it is due to perinephric invasion.

*Fever* is also a remittent symptom. Possibly in a very few latent cases it may be altogether absent, but except in these there is always elevation of temperature, with corresponding frequency of the pulse. These latter at times become decided, and in advanced stages the fever is septic, being followed by profuse *sweats*. In acute cases, especially pyemic, the beginning of suppuration is often marked by a *chill* and *high fever* or succession of chills, but in other instances it is quite impossible to recognize the beginning of the suppurative stage.

The *characters of the urine*, as intimated, are more distinctive. Except in acute infectious cases, the urine almost invariably sooner or later contains pus, and unless it does contain pus, no certain diagnosis can be made. *Blood* is also a very constant constituent from cases of suppurative nephritis, but while such urine is scarcely ever examined by the microscope without discovering a few blood disks, the quantity is often not large enough to be recognizable to the naked eye. The quantity of *pus* varies greatly. While it may be so copious as to produce a heavy white opaque deposit one-sixth to one-fifth the bulk of urine, it may be represented by little more than a trace. This variation will occur at different times in the same case. Pus from the kidney and its pelvis is usually distinguished from that formed in the bladder by the absence of that glariness so characteristic of the latter, due to admixture with mucus and decomposition products. Pus from the pelvis of the kidney is rarely fetid, as compared with pus from the bladder.

The urine is usually *diminished in quantity*. Complete suppression is not uncommon toward the close of cases presenting extreme degrees of destruction. Notwithstanding such diminution, the color may be pale and the specific gravity low, owing to the small proportion of urea present, the range of specific gravity in a single case being from 1003 to 1016. In reaction the urine is faintly acid, neutral, or alkaline, and though often prone to rapid decomposition, this is a much less characteristic feature than in cystitis. *It is always albuminous*, but the quantity of albumin is never very large, and varies generally *pari passu* with the quantity of pus and blood. When more albumin is present than is thus accounted for, it is likely that the parenchyma of the kidney has become involved. Such cases, are, therefore, more serious. In such cases, too, *tube-casts*, ordinarily rarely found in suppurative nephritis, may appear.

It sometimes happens that there is a sudden increase in the quantity of pus in the urine, followed by a gradual diminution, or the urine, previously clear, may suddenly become loaded with pus. Such occurrences indicate the probable period of *rupture of an abscess* through a papilla and a pouring out of its contents into the pelvis of the kidney, or of the removal of a temporary obstruction to the descent of the pus. It may happen that a small portion of the substance of the kidney is thus discharged, when it may be recognized by microscopic examination, which will discover the tubules and glomeruli of the kidney. Occasionally, also, the abscess, instead of



rupturing into the pelvis of the kidney, perforates into the perinephric tissue, burrowing in different directions and producing fistulous openings. Perforations may thus take place posteriorly in the lumbar region, or anteriorly at the groin, into the colon, and more rarely into the lungs and liver, and even into the peritoneal sac.

The *course* and *duration* of suppurative nephritis vary greatly. Traumatic cases are comparatively rapid, either toward recovery or death. Pyemic cases may run their course in 48 hours, and are invariably fatal. But cases due to other causes—viz., impacted calculus, tuberculosis, stone in the bladder, or cystitis—may be prolonged indefinitely, while some terminate without being discovered. Sooner or later the patient generally succumbs to exhaustion, but life may be sustained for years with paroxysms of the severest suffering and a surprising degree of destruction of the kidneys. The *greatest danger to those thus affected is intercurrent illness* which is always more serious and more apt to terminate unfavorably. It is then that the kidneys, previously surprisingly sufficient in eliminating power, give way in this respect, the symptoms of uremia supervene, and the patient dies of this complication. It is well known that the operation for stone is much more likely to be followed by a fatal result when the patient happens to have a surgical kidney.

There are no *complications* peculiar to suppurative interstitial nephritis save those mentioned as causing it; or as resulting from unusual accidents, such as rupture and perforation into neighboring organs, or uremia.

In capsulitis the resemblance of the symptoms to those of stone in the kidney is often very striking, and has led to the diagnosis of nephrolithiasis with operation.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of suppurative nephritis may be easy or difficult. It is easy when there is the history of a traumatic cause followed by hematuria, and later purulent urine, with tenderness and pain over the region of the kidney. If the urine contain pus constantly or intermittently, and in addition to this there be pain or tenderness in the renal region, suppurative nephritis may be averred with reasonable certainty. I know of no distinctive cellular elements from whose presence in the urine it may be asserted that pus comes from the pelvis of the kidney or ureter, for though the little columnar or pear-shaped cells are referred to these sources, they also come from the urethra and bladder. This question is now settled by catheterization of the ureters.

As to differential diagnosis, the only certain means of recognizing the *tuberculous form* is by finding the *bacillus* in the purulent urine, at the present day greatly facilitated by the use of the centrifugal apparatus. Should the symptoms described occur in a case of tuberculosis of the lungs, the tubercular nature of the nephro-pyelitis becomes quite probable.

*Pyelonephritis* is distinguished from *paranephritis* by the more circumscribed shape of the tumor, the absence of edematous infiltration of the lumbar region, and by the presence of purulent urine, unless it happens, as it rarely does, that the paranephric abscess breaks into the kidney and discharges by the ureter. Pain on flexing and rotating the thigh is characteristic of paranephric abscess, because of the involvement of the psoas muscle. Pyemic abscesses of the kidney may be suspected if a pyemic

process is present, and a chill supervene, followed by any or all of the renal symptoms described.

**Prognosis.**—Operation has done much to improve the prognosis of late years. Yet so far as recovery is concerned, it is still in most cases unfavorable. Traumatic cases may recover if the injury is not too extensive, while very grave injuries are usually rapidly fatal. Recovery, too, ensues on cases succeeding infectious fevers and pregnancy. Cases due to obstruction of the ureters cannot get well so long as the obstruction and irritation continue, and as their removal is often impossible, such cases gradually grow worse. On the other hand, their fatal termination may be delayed indefinitely. It is often a matter of astonishment, on viewing the postmortem appearance of cystic purulent kidneys, that the patient has lived so long with such extreme structural changes present, the barest remnant of secreting structure being sometimes found. It is impossible to say how far repair may take place if the cause can be removed. Conditions of this kind occur when a stone has been removed after having been long present either in the bladder itself or in the kidney or ureter. It is scarcely necessary to say that such persons are in imminent danger from the effect of cold, acute disease, or other cause which tends to suppress the action of kidneys already crippled in function.

**Treatment.**—As *operation* offers the best chance of cure in many cases, a surgeon should be called early. There is no curative treatment by medicine for suppurative nephritis without a *removal of the cause*, and as the latter is often impossible, it follows that medicinal measures are mainly palliative. One of the most frequent indications is the *relief of pain*, which is often so severe as to call for powerful anodyne measures—opium and its alkaloids being absolutely essential. Hypodermic injections of morphin in doses of from  $1/8$  to  $1/3$  grain (0.008 to 0.022 gm.), repeated, if necessary, are favorite and effectual methods of relieving the intense pain, which is often due, not so much to the inflammation, as to the impacted calculus or other cause of obstruction. Suppositories of from  $1/2$  to 2 grains (0.03 to 0.13 gm.) of the extract of opium may be substituted. Hot fomentations and simple counterirritants, such as mustard, are also valuable adjuvants.

The *catarrhal process* in the kidney, its pelvis, and the ureter, and also in the bladder, may be treated with varying success. Diluents are decidedly indicated, and for this purpose any one of the numerous negative mineral waters may be used. The alkaline mineral waters are contraindicated, as they inspissate the pus and make it more difficult to pass. The usual remedies are the balsam, benzoic acid and urotropin. Of the first, I prefer sandalwood oil, because it is better borne by the stomach than copaiba. Given in gelatin capsules, each containing 10 minims (0.65 c.c.), of which one or two may be taken three times a day, a decidedly beneficial effect upon the catarrhal inflammation sometimes ensues, seen in the diminished amount of pus. Benzoic acid fulfills another indication, that of securing an acid reaction of the urine, which is very often either alkaline or so faintly acid that it rapidly becomes alkaline, and thus predisposes to decomposition. The benzoic acid is best given in the form of capsules. For an adult 5 grains (0.33 gm.) four times daily are usually sufficient to keep

the urine acid. Larger doses than these may be given, or benzoate of sodium may be used in 10 grain (0.6 gm.) doses, either alone or in conjunction with the sandalwood oil, the former before and the latter after a meal. To children smaller doses should be given, 1 grain (0.006 gm.) three times a day, increasing the dose. The various vegetable diuretics, as buchu, pareira brava, etc., are of little use in suppurative nephritis and pyelitis.

Urotropin or formin is perhaps the best of the three remedies named. It should be given in 5 grain doses (0.33 gm.) four times a day preferably on an empty stomach in solution or in a capsule.

The constant and inevitable tendency in these cases to run down in general health, in consequence of the drain and wear and tear to which they are subject, demands *tonics*, such as quinin, iron, and strychnin, while milk and other nutritious articles of diet are always indicated. The dangers to which the patient is subject from exposure, cold, and dampness should be averted by suitable care and woolen clothing.

I repeat that many of these cases are saved at the present day by a timely nephrotomy, by which the pus is discharged, the kidney drained, and calculi, if present, removed. I look back upon many cases that were allowed to perish whose lives would at least have been materially prolonged by operation.

### PARANEPHRITIS OR PERINEPHRIC ABSCESS.

**Definition.**—Paranephritis is an inflammation invading the capsule and connective tissue about the kidney, terminating almost always in suppuration.

**Etiology.**—A number of causes may be responsible for perinephric abscess. Thus there may be rupture of a nephric abscess through the capsule of the kidney; perforation of the bowel, most frequently seen in connection with appendicitis; extension of suppurative disease from the spine, as in caries of the vertebræ, or from a burrowing empyema; finally, blows and injuries may terminate in suppuration about the kidney.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—At autopsy the kidney is found surrounded by pus, which is usually posterior to it, rarely in front between the kidney and the peritoneum. The pus has often a fecal odor from contact with the large bowel. It may burrow in various directions, and even burst into the pleura and be discharged by the lungs; or it may work its way to the groin and appear at Poupart's ligament. In turn it may perforate the bowel or rupture into the peritoneum, bladder, or vagina. Occasionally the fatty bed of the kidney is found to be converted into a fibrous capsule fused more or less closely with that of the true kidney capsule. There is a milder degree of this condition which I have called capsulitis.

**Symptoms.**—Most cases are secondary to disease in the neighborhood. *Pain and tenderness* in the region of the kidney are the most constant symptoms. In addition there is a peculiar *edematous* or *boggy condition* in the same locality, giving rise to pitting on pressure. The position assumed is often distinctive, the thigh being flexed to relax the psoas muscle, tension on which, especially in adduction, increases suffering.

The patient, if able to walk, relies as much as possible on the opposite leg, on which he leans, assuming also a stooping posture with the spine fixed. The whole attitude and behavior of the patient remind one of hip-joint disease, while the pain may even be referred to the knee, as in this disease. These symptoms do not, however, appear at once, and the approach is often insidious. At other times suppuration is ushered in by chills, fever, and sweats. The plastic form of fibroid paranephritis is without distinctive symptoms. Various directions of burrowing and seats of perforation were mentioned in treating of the morbid anatomy.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis from *nephric abscess*, with which it is most likely to be confounded, has been considered. The attitude of the patient in lying or standing is like that in *hip-disease*, but the history elicits that in its incipency the pain is much higher up in perinephric abscess, while examination shows that the swelling and tenderness are above the hip and not over the hip-joint itself. As most cases except those due to injury are secondary to disease in the neighborhood, it is not necessary to separate the two classes. Secondary forms are more sudden in their onset, though this is not always the case. Doubtful cases may be settled by the exploring needle.

**Treatment.**—This is by section and free drainage, for though spontaneous rupture sometimes takes place, it is apt to be preceded by destructive and dangerous burrowing, which should be anticipated by operation.

## NEPHROLITHIASIS (STONE IN THE KIDNEY).

**Definition.**—Nephrolithiasis means “stone in the kidney,” but the term is a general one, which covers the presence in the kidney, its pelvis, or ureter of concretions large enough to justify the term “stone,” of smaller masses appropriately known as “gravel,” and fine particles known as “sand.”

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Except in the case of “sand,” which includes particles made up either of pure uric acid or oxalate of lime, gravel and stone, as found in the kidney and its pelvis, always have an organic basis through which are distributed the mineral matters which go to make up their bulk, and which remains as a framework after the mineral matters are dissolved out. The matters thus precipitated, in some one of the shapes named, in the order of frequency are:

- (1) Uric acid and its compounds of sodium, ammonium, and potassium.
- (2) Oxalate of lime.
- (3) The phosphates of calcium and of ammonium and magnesium.

Only in the case of uric acid stones of small size, and of oxalate of lime stones likewise moderate in size, do we have the bulk of the stone made of a single constituent. More frequently it is the case that uric acid or oxalate of lime stone forms the nucleus, and about this aggregate in concentric layers, the phosphates, which make up the great bulk of all large stones as well as some stones in their entirety. More rarely a uric acid nucleus is surrounded by oxalate of lime or the reverse. Not only may the sediments become the nuclei of large stones, but foreign matters, such

as a clot of blood or a fragment of any kind of matter accidentally reaching the urinary passages, may also play a like rôle.

The steps for determining the more precise composition of stones will be found in appropriate manuals on the examination of urine, but the three principal varieties present certain physical characters by which they can with considerable certainty be determined. Thus, *uric acid stones* are usually smooth or lobulated, dark red or reddish-brown in color, hard in consistency, and rarely acquire a size of a centimeter (0.4 inch) in diameter, while many of them are no larger than a lentil. They may be multiple. *Oxalate of lime stones* are very hard and uneven, so characteristically so that they have received the name mulberry calculi, from their resemblance to this fruit. Their hard-pointed projections produce exquisite pain in transit from the kidney through the ureter into the bladder. They attain about the same maximum size as uric acid stones, and are also often multiple. The *phosphatic stones* are white in color or grayish-white, quite soft, easily disintegrated, may often be crushed between the fingers, though at other times they are much harder. They attain the largest size, being often as large as a hen's egg. When stones lie in the ureter rather than in the pelvis of the kidney, they are apt to be more elongated, or sometimes spindle-shaped, and present at times a spiral marking which is characteristic. Others are molded to the shape of the pelvis of the kidney with a prolongation for each calyx, which may be further branched—the dendritic or coral calculi. Rarer forms of calculi are made up of cystin, xanthin, carbonate of lime, and urostealith.

**Etiology.**—The rationale of the precipitation of sediments which aggregate to form concretions is not always the same, and is perhaps not thoroughly understood. In the case of uric acid the deposit takes place either because of the abnormal acidity of the urine, because it contains more than the normal quantity of uric acid, or because, for some reason, the amount of water secreted is abnormally scanty. In either event the uric acid is precipitated in the excretory tubes of the medullary substance or in the pelvis of the kidney, forming minute concretions made up of from five to ten whetstone-shaped crystals, whence they descend in the form of sand or gravel to the bladder. At times the sediments grow by successive additions in the pelvis of the kidney, forming thus true *renal* concretions, whose descent into the bladder, if at all possible, is accomplished with the greatest difficulty and pain. The method in which such concretions form in the calices of the kidney around a papilla is well shown in Fig. 80.

Oxalate of lime calculi form similarly by the precipitation of crystals of this substance immediately after the urine is secreted.

Phosphatic concretions are rarely primary. In order that they may form, the proportion of phosphates must be largely increased, or the reactions of the urine must be permanently alkaline. More frequently phosphates precipitate around nuclei of uric acid or oxalate of lime, or foreign bodies. The effect of these seems to be to cause an alkalinity in the urine immediately about them or, in cases of more general cystitis, in all the urine in the bladder. This alkalinity causes the precipitation of phosphates about the primary nucleus and formation of stone of various sizes. Rarely layers of phosphates and uric acid alternate.

**Symptoms.**—It sometimes happens that a stone is found *postmortem* in the substance of the kidney or in the pelvis which was not suspected, but it is hardly likely that even in these cases symptoms were not present. They were simply overlooked or ascribed to some other cause. The most constant symptom of nephrolithiasis is *pain in the region of the kidney* associated with more or less *tenderness*. Like the pain of stone in the bladder, it is *aggravated by motion*, especially rough motion, and there are certain positions of the body in which the patient is made more or less uncomfortable. Quite often the inflammation caused by the stone proceeds to suppuration, and the whole of the kidney, more or less, is substituted by a pus-sac. The pain is often suddenly aggravated when a large stone so lodges as to plug up the ureter and interfere with the descent of urine, or a small one

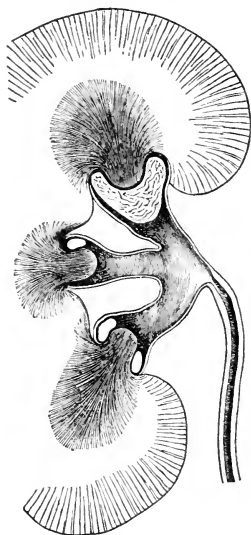


FIG. 80.—Hilus of Kidney with a Large and Small Renal Calculus, Showing How Precipitation and Aggregation Take Place—(from *Rindfleisch*).

descends through the ureter into the bladder. Under these circumstances come the attacks of so-called nephritic colic, characterized by pain which may equal in severity any to which man is subject. It has other distinctive features. It radiates downward into the groin and the neighborhood of the bladder and down the inside of the thighs and into the testicle, which is often retracted. Sometimes it extends upward toward the diaphragm, and it is not always easy to separate the pain of nephritic colic from that of hepatic colic when the former is on the right side. It may happen that both kidneys are the seat of impacted stone, though this is a very rare event. There are often nausea and vomiting, a cold sweat appears, and the patient may collapse.

After the pain and colic the changes presented by the *urine* may be highly distinctive, aiding greatly the diagnosis; at other times the urine is

absolutely negative. It very frequently contains blood, though the quantity is commonly small, and may be demonstrable only by the microscope. Especially is there blood in connection with fresh attacks of nephritic colic. Pus is almost always present in small or large amounts. Cyliindroids or mucus-casts may be found, true casts rarely. In some cases, too, uric acid crystals in the shape of red or brickdust-like particles either before or during an attack of nephritic colic point to the uric acid nature of the stone. The same is true of oxalate of lime crystals. In the case of the last two substances the urine is acid in reaction. Phosphatic stones may be suspected if the urine is alkaline in its reaction, as it is only possible for phosphatic sediments to form in the presence of an alkaline or neutral urine while uric acid crystals can only remain permanent in an acid urine. Oxalate of lime, the most insoluble of all crystals, occurs, however, in either acid or alkaline urine. In cases of gravel or sand, as contrasted with stone, there are no symptoms, as a rule, between attacks, as the stone must reach an appreciable size before it produces the constant or almost constant pain characteristic of it. In some cases there is complete suppression of urine, even when the kidney on the opposite side is normal, though more frequently when it is diseased, and death from uremia may occur in consequence.

**Diagnosis.**—It has been intimated that nephritic colic may be confounded with *biliary colic*. Usually the symptoms of each are sufficiently distinctive. Jaundice in biliary colic is almost invariably present and comes on very soon after the obstruction begins. The stools are without bile and grayish-white in color. Usually the pain is more toward the epigastric region as a center, and thence through the upper abdomen and perhaps through to the right shoulder-blade. The urine is also bile-stained, and responds to the tests for the coloring-matter of bile. Other substances, however, besides stone, may produce nephritic colic. Thus, *clots of blood* may obstruct the ureter and give rise to all the pain occasioned by an impacted stone, and in the absence of a history of stone and of hemorrhage there are no symptoms by which the two causes of colic can be separated. In the case of *hydatid cysts* of the kidney, fragments of these, too, may be discharged, and in suppurating kidney *inspissated pus* may occlude the ureter. I have in my possession some striking molds a centimeter in diameter and several centimeters long, composed of inspissated pus, which plugged up the ureter for a time and were subsequently discharged. Renal colic has been mistaken for *intestinal colic*, but such confusion is dissipated as the condition continues. Renal colic is also produced when the ureter is compressed by any cause as a *twist in the ureter* of a floating kidney, or by compression of a tumor. The symptoms of stone in the kidney sometimes closely resemble those of *stone in the bladder*, but the pain in the latter, though it may be felt, to the back, radiates toward both sides; in stone in the bladder the urine contains more mucus and is alkaline or becomes readily so, while in nephrolithiasis the pus is purer and the urine acid. In all cases pointing to the presence of stone in the bladder the sound should be promptly used.

The most invaluable aid to the diagnosis of stone in the kidney is the X-ray examination, and in all cases of suspected stone this measure should be employed. Almost without exception a stone, if present, is disclosed,

and many stones thus recognized have been found at operation which would have otherwise been less searchingly sought. Rarely it has happened that the X-ray has apparently disclosed a stone when none has been found at operation.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of stone in the kidney is very much more favorable now than it was 20 years ago, in consequence of the safety with which operations can be performed. The kidney may be exposed, split open, and the parts reapposed and restored with perfect recovery, and whenever the diagnosis of stone in the kidney is made, an operation should be done. When many severe attacks occur without other conclusive evidence, an exploratory operation is sometimes justified for the sake of diagnosis. When the sand or gravel is so small as to pass the ureter, the suffering terminates with its passage into the bladder.

**Treatment.**—It is needless at the present day to say there are no medicines which, when administered, are capable of producing solution of a stone if it be of any size. In cases in which there is no such formation and we have simply to contend with gravel or sand, therapeutic measures to prevent its further formation, and even in some cases to promote solution, may be availed of.

It is, however, a matter of extreme importance before treatment is instituted to know exactly the kind of sediment that is to be dealt with, and to this end the urine should be carefully studied. Thus, uric acid is dissolved by alkalies, and the object of treatment should be to alkalize the urine as much as possible, with a view to keeping the uric acid in solution. On the other hand, to give alkalies to the patient with phosphatic stone or sediment is only adding "fuel to the flame." As to oxalates, they are equally insoluble in both acids and alkalies, but there is reason to believe that they are produced under the same conditions which produce uric acid sediments, and the treatment is therefore the same for either.

The required alkalinity of the urine for the *solution of uric acid* may be produced in any one of a number of ways. Perhaps the most desirable of all is the free use of alkaline mineral waters, represented by the foreign waters of Tarasp, Vals, Vichy, and Ems, and in this country approximated by Saratoga Vichy and Saratoga Geyser waters, which may be termed alkalo-saline waters. It is unfortunate that in this country we have no native sources of alkaline mineral waters, at least east of the Rocky Mountains, and the alkaline waters of the West are so strong that it would not be possible to use them without dilution, while very few physicians seem to have had any experience with them. In the absence of true alkaline waters the numerous negative mineral waters which are so strongly recommended by their owners may still serve a useful purpose as diluents and solvents. They are almost too numerous to mention, but the Bedford, Poland, Waukesha, Buffalo lithia, Geneva lithia, Londonderry lithia and Ballardville lithia waters are among the best known. In a few cases they alone may be sufficient if used freely enough. They may be rendered more active by combining alkaline salts, such as the citrate of potassium and the bicarbonate of potassium and lithia. The lithia waters for sale in this country contain uncertain, and at most very small quantities of lithia. I think it much better, under the circumstances, to add a definite



amount of lithium carbonate or citrate to a glass of water—say from 5 to 10 grains (0.3 to 0.6 gm.). At least 1 quart (1 liter) of any of the true alkaline waters should be used every 24 hours by an adult subject to uric acid sediments, and a corresponding or larger quantity of the more negative waters referred to. *Liquor potassii* of the United States Pharmacopœia is a very excellent means of counteracting acid tendencies. It may be given in doses of from 15 to 30 minims (1 to 2 c.c.), and milk is a very suitable vehicle. Piperazin, a comparatively recently introduced solvent for uric acid, undoubtedly possesses this power outside of the body, and in a few cases it has also seemed to me of service when administered to patients with uric acid gravel. Some assert and others deny its efficacy. Its costliness is in the way of its general use in sufficient quantity to test its real value. All that has been said of treatment of the uric acid diathesis may be applied to that of the *oxalate of lime*.

Much also may be accomplished by *diet*. Persons with uric acid diathesis should limit the amount of nitrogenous food, using a minimum of meat and cultivating the use of milk and vegetables as a diet.

The *phosphatic tendency* is, unfortunately, not so easily combated, as our resources for the purpose of acidifying the urine are very limited. Only two drugs, benzoic acid and boric acid, have this reputation, and they possess it to a slight degree only, while large doses are not well borne by the stomach. From 5 to 10 grains (0.3 to 0.6 gm.) of each may be given three, four, or five times a day, as borne by the stomach. The newer antiseptic medicaments, such as cystogen, formalin and urotropin, also tend to acidify urine. In phosphatic lithiasis, too, there is, of course, the same indication for the free use of diluent drinks, and in these cases the negative mineral waters are as good as any, while, perhaps, distilled water serves as the type of a solvent. When the composition of the stone is unknown, it is best to use this class of waters rather than alkaline waters, lest the stone happen to be phosphatic, in which event alkaline waters would cause further deposit. While the mineral acids cannot, of course, be given in such dose as to produce acidity of the urine, they are still useful in counteracting any tendency to high degrees of alkalinity.

In the matter of diet, too, the phosphatic diathesis requires an opposite treatment. Meats are here indicated, while milk and vegetables may form a less abundant part of the food because of their tendency to alkalize the urine.

In treating the uric acid diathesis with alkalies it is possible to carry the effect too far and cause deposit of phosphates where uric acid sediments were previously precipitated. It is important, therefore, to watch the urine carefully and to avoid such an administration of alkalies as will cause phosphatic sediments to make their appearance. It is well known that stones are found in the bladder, which exhibit alternate layers, now of uric acid and now of phosphates, although the latter substance almost invariably makes up the bulk of calculi which have attained any size. The rationale of this is perhaps as follows: as soon as the uric acid gravel or oxalate of lime gravel becomes large enough to act as an irritant, it increases the organic matter in the urine in the shape of pus and mucus. These matters, it is well known, favor an alkaline reaction, so that the little

stone becomes surrounded, as it were, by a stratum of phosphate-precipitating urine, and the larger it grows, the more apt is this to be the case. When alternate layers exist, it may be inferred that the natural acidity reasserts itself and throws down the uric acid and urates, which in turn form a layer about the stone.

The extreme pain of attacks of nephritic colic must be combated by anodynes, and for this purpose rarely is anything except opium and its alkaloids sufficient, while the hypodermic mode of medication is far the best, both because of its prompt action and the less serious effect upon the stomach. It is rarely the case that less than  $1/4$  grain (0.016 gm.) of morphin thus administered is sufficient, and very frequently this dose must be repeated very soon. It has happened to me that when the pain was less severe, I could control it with full doses of penacetin and acetanilid, or by the aid of these substances render smaller doses of morphin sufficient. For this purpose not less than 15 grains (1 gm.) should be given. Hot poultices are useful to a certain extent in relieving pain when applied to the lumbar region and to the groins, while hot baths are of great service in relaxing spasm and allaying pain due to it.

The escape of the stone from the ureter into the bladder is followed by unspeakable relief, and its discharge from the urethra usually follows sooner or later with little or no pain, although a stone of considerable size may lodge in the urethra and require extraction. When stones are not discharged, they are likely to become the nuclei of larger stones in the bladder, where, of course, the majority of stones acquire their growth.

Stones too large to pass *per vias naturales* should be cut out of the kidney. It must be remembered, however, that after apparent well-founded diagnosis it sometimes happens that no stone has been found on section. Yet, strange as it may seem, it frequently happens that the symptoms do not return after such negative operation. Such cases, on the other hand, may prove to be cases of tuberculosis of the kidney. This is true of some of the conditions I have called *capsulitis* where the relief may be due to splitting the capsule.

## TUMORS OF THE KIDNEY.

**Definition and Application.**—The term “tumor of the kidney” is applied to almost any enlargement of the organ due to morbid growths. Yet there are morbid growths of the kidney which are not sufficiently large to produce appreciable change in its size. Thus, the *adenoma* does not usually exceed  $4/10$  inch (1 cm.) in diameter, though it may be two inches (5 cm.) or more. The same is true of the *angiomata* and *leukemic tumors*, of *fibroma* and *lipoma*, which sometimes form small white nodes in the fibrous tissue near the bases of the pyramids. *Lymph-adenoma* occurs in the kidney associated with similar disease of lymph glands, liver, and intestine. *Villous papilloma* sometimes grows in the pelvis of the kidney. *Syphilitic gummata* also belong to the group of moderate-sized tumors rarely producing symptoms.

*Cysts*, single and multilocular, acquire larger size, producing appreciable

enlargement of the kidney. The malignant tumors, *sarcoma* and *carcinoma*, belong to this category, and with cysts are, clinically speaking, perhaps the chief occasion of the term "tumor of the kidney." On the other hand, *renal abscess*, or pyonephrosis, does not usually earn for the kidney involved the name "tumor," while hydronephrosis does.

**Symptoms.**—Certain local symptoms are produced indifferently by any one of the tumors large enough to become clinically appreciable. In the first place, *renal tumors grow* for the most part *forward* rather than backward, because of the more yielding character of the parts in front of them than behind them, rarely producing posteriorly much more than a fullness of the back, in the course of which there is obliteration of the resonance which may be present between the kidney dullness and the vertebral spines. As this forward growth proceeds, a special effect results from the relation of the bowel to the kidney; as the ascending *colon* on the right side and the descending colon on the left lie *in front* of the corresponding kidney, the effect of enlargement of this organ is to push the bowel in front of it, the hollow viscus being recognized by the tympanitic percussion note. In this respect renal tumor differs from splenic tumor, and less invariably from that of the liver, since the bowel does not intervene between these organs and the abdominal wall, though, rarely, the small intestine may float between the liver and the parietes. Commonly, too, the hand may slide between the renal tumor and the liver on one side and the renal tumor and the spleen on the other, while it never loses the rounded border characteristic of the kidney.

By bimanual palpation with the palm of one hand placed in the lumbar region and the other in front below the ribs, pressure being made in both directions, the tumor may be recognized. In this examination, too, it will be noticed that the kidney permits a much more limited degree of mobility during breathing than does the liver, although it is not totally immobile. The renal tumor, too, commonly resists lateral movement.

Again, *pain* in the region of the kidney is an inconstant symptom. It is often totally absent, at other times exceedingly severe, especially if the vertebræ and spinal cord are encroached upon. It sometimes happens that in consequence of the pressure of the kidney upon the 12th dorsal nerve and branches of the lumbar plexus neuralgic pains in the abdominal walls are produced.

**Diagnosis.**—As to differential diagnosis, both varieties of tumor, viz., *carcinoma* and *sarcoma*, produce hematuria, though it is not a frequent symptom even with them. In the event of its occurrence the blood may be fluid or clotted, and is often molded in the pelvis of the kidney and ureter, an event very rare with blood poured into the pelvis under other circumstances. Hematuria is more frequent in carcinoma than in sarcoma. Both conditions are likely to produce pain. It is sometimes extreme and boring, when it indicates destructive encroachment on the vertebræ. More frequently it is dull, radiating over the flank into the thighs. These tumors also produce cachexia. Very rarely they may be recognized by the presence of distinctive histological elements in the urine. This occurred in my experience in at least two instances. Frequently the urine is altogether negative.

Of sarcoma and carcinoma between which no distinction was made until 40 years ago, the former is now regarded as the more common. Both may be primary or secondary, more frequently secondary. Sarcoma is a disease of early life, in fact, it is often congenital, when it is represented by that form known as rhabdomyoma, which contains striated muscular fibers. In more than half the cases it affects children under ten. On the other hand, renal cancer is not confined to later life, as are other forms of cancer, and it may even occur in children. May not these tumors, too, have been sarcomata? More usually one kidney only is affected. Such organ is uneven, soft, even to a sense of fluctuation. Carcinoma also selects one kidney whence it may invade the pelvis and ureter. It affects the general health more rapidly, hematuria is more frequent and copious, but intermittent. If there be a superficial primary growth elsewhere and a renal tumor is present, the presumption is that it is of the same nature, but no certain diagnosis can be made between carcinoma and sarcoma unless the rare opportunity occurs to examine fragments discharged with the urine. Unfortunately for diagnosis, the urine is too often quite free from any sediment, even of pus. Carcinoma of the kidney is apt to invade the renal veins and even the vena cava, and as such to cause metastasis in the lungs and in other organs as well.

From *ovarian tumors* renal tumors are distinguished by the fact that in the former the intestines lie in the flanks, giving resonance on percussion in that locality, while an enlarging kidney pushes the bowels in front of it. The ovarian tumor also grows from below upward and drags with it the uterus and appendages, as can be recognized by vaginal examination and by rectal touch.

Much more difficult is it to distinguish the renal tumor from *enlargement of the retroperitoneal glands*, as such enlargement also pushes up the intestines in front of it, giving rise to a tympanitic percussion note. Hematuria never occurs in retroperitoneal tumor, while it may or may not be present in renal tumor. The retroperitoneal tumor may press upon the ureter and the renal vessels and thus produce obstruction to the descent of the urine. The central situation of the enlargement in retroperitoneal tumors contrasts with the lateral growth in the renal tumors.

From *tumors of the liver* renal tumors differ in that the former sooner or later cause a bulging of the right hypochondriac region, while the renal tumors rarely reach as high as to alter the configuration of the lower thorax. The sharper border of the liver tumor as contrasted with the rounded edge of the kidney tumor is characteristic, while the freer movements of the liver with the breathing is also of value. *Splenic tumors* are not likely to be confounded with tumors of the left kidney. Splenic tumor protrudes from above downward and toward the umbilicus instead of from the lumbar region forward. It moves more with breathing, and its sharper edge and indentation may be recognized. It is always above or outside of the colon.

**Treatment.**—Renal tumor is beyond curative treatment by the physician. As soon as the diagnosis is made, a surgeon should be called and the question of operation considered.

## CYSTS OF THE KIDNEY.

Reference is here made only to such cysts as produce clinically appreciable enlargement of the organ. They include:

1. *Retention or obstruction cysts*, solitary cysts ranging in diameter from a centimeter (0.4 in.) to ten centimeters (4 in.) and larger. They may be present in one or both kidneys. These are probably primarily the result of stenosis of a uriniferous tubule behind which accumulates first urine, which is gradually substituted by an aqueous fluid in which may be found traces of urinary constituents. A trace of albumin may also be present. These cysts rarely give rise to symptoms.

2. *The congenital cystic kidney*, in which both organs are the seat of numerous round cysts varying in size from  $1/5$  inch (5 mm.) to one inch (2.5 cm.), may produce tumors of large size, so large, in fact, that they have interfered with parturition. They contain a fluid which is at times clear, at others again turbid, colloidal in consistence, and containing albumin, cholesterin, triple phosphates, rarely urea and uric acid, and sometimes fat drops. Persons with these cysts may grow to adult life, and, indeed, such cystic kidneys have been found postmortem when not suspected. Commonly, the subjects die either before birth or shortly after. The exact mode of origin of these congenital cysts is not understood, but they are probably the consequence of a defect in development.

There may be no symptoms beyond that of an enlarged organ, or they may be those of interstitial nephritis with its secondary cardiovascular consequences. There may be a small albuminuria. Blood-disks may be found, but no casts.

3. *Dermoid cysts* are also occasionally met in the kidney, while a *general cystic condition* invading the liver and spleen as well as the kidney is described.

4. *Hydronephrosis* is a monocystic degeneration of the kidney starting in obstruction of the ureter, succeeded by dilatation of the pelvis and gradual wasting of the kidney substance, due to pressure of the accumulating fluid.

The obstruction causing this condition may also be congenital. As such it, too, may be large enough to impede labor. An oblique insertion of the ureter at such angle as to interfere with the easy discharge of the secretion may be the cause of its retention in the pelvis of the organ. Among recognized causes during life are, also, occlusion of the ureter by cicatricial adhesion, by lithiasis, by tuberculosis of the ureter, by pressure, by tumors, by a retroflexed or prolapsed uterus, by bands of lymph in healed peritonitis and by twists in the ureter of a movable kidney. Finally, carcinoma of the bladder and even hypertrophy of the prostate and stricture of the urethra may be causes.

The contents of the tumor may be purely aqueous; more frequently they are slightly turbid; they contain a few pus-cells, more numerous if they are the seat of inflammation; also uric acid, urea, and albumin.

Its symptoms consist of those already described as common to benign renal tumors of sufficient size. An event which is almost pathognomonic is the occasionally sudden disappearance of the tumor simultaneously with

the discharge of a large quantity of fluid from the bladder, followed by gradual refilling of the sac and return of the tumor. This intermittent discharge may be kept up for years. Such an event must be ascribed to a valvular obstruction in the ureter which at times yields to the pressure of the accumulated fluid; or it may be due to the undoing of a twist in the ureter of a floating kidney.

As to differential diagnosis, *ovarian tumor* is the condition with which it is most frequently confounded. I have already (p. 818) called attention to the different relations of the intestine to the tumor in the two instances and other points of difference, all of which need not be repeated. The relative immobility of the renal tumor, as contrasted with the mobility of the ovarian, may, however, be mentioned; also the lumbar origin of the former, as contrasted with the pelvic of the latter, as determined by rectal and vaginal examination. Should the tumor disappear simultaneously with a copious discharge from the bladder, the diagnosis is, of course, conclusive. Aspirations may also be brought to aid the diagnosis, when advantage may be taken of the fact that the characters of the ovarian fluid and that of hydronephrosis are widely different. The dense, colloid fluid of the ovarian cyst, with its numerous cholesterin plates, fatty granular cells, small granular cells, and highly albuminous composition, contrast strongly with the aqueous consistence, the low specific gravity, and the general negative character of the hydronephrotic fluid. Too much stress must not, however, be laid upon these differences, as they do not always exist. The history in the case of ovarian tumor will develop the events of menstrual and sexual derangement, which are absent in hydronephrosis. Hydronephrosis is not likely to be confounded with *ascites*. The changes in the position of the fluid with that of the patient, characteristic of ascites, and its bilateral situation distinguish it at once from hydronephrosis.

From a *circumscribed peritoneal exudate* hydronephrosis is distinguished by the different history, the greater tenderness of the former, and tympany of the subjacent intestine elicited by strong percussion. In renal abscess there is fluctuation, but there are also fever and sometimes chills. The *renal retention cyst* is at times indistinguishable from hydronephrosis. Both may be congenital or due to congenital defects, but should there be intermittent emptying of the sac, with refilling, hydronephrosis may be suspected. The diagnosis from *hydatid cyst*, so far as is possible, follows in the next paragraph.

5. *Echinococcus* or *Hydatid Cyst*.—Hydatid disease of the kidney is a rare affection, and when the enlargement caused by it is sufficient to produce physical signs, they do not differ essentially from those of hydronephrosis and cystic kidney. Only in the event that the microscope recognizes hooklets or scolices, or fragments of the cyst-wall in the urine or in the fluid obtained by tapping or discharge into other localities, such as the stomach, intestines, or bronchi, can a diagnosis be made with certainty. Such discharge into the pelvis of the kidney, if it produce obstruction, may also cause acute hydronephrosis. The presence of hydatids elsewhere, and of the hydatid fremitus, is presumptive evidence. The chemical and physical characters of the fluid from hydatid cysts is given under hydatid disease of the liver (p. 513). Like hydronephrosis and cystic tumor, the hydatid

kidney differs from ovarian tumor by its immobility, unless the disease should perchance invade a movable kidney.

**Treatment of Renal Cysts.**—The treatment of the whole list of affections included under cysts of the kidneys lies in the province of the surgeon, the chief office of the physician in these cases being one of diagnosis and relief of pain.

## ANOMALIES OF FORM AND POSITION OF THE KIDNEY.

**NORMAL SITUATION OF THE KIDNEY.**—The normal situation of the kidney is on the quadratus lumborum and psoas muscles, the inferior end of the left kidney extending a variable distance below the edge of the 12th rib, while the right extends about  $3/4$  inch (20 mm.) lower down, the whole right organ being lowered by the position of the liver. The outer edge of the kidney is often in a line drawn vertically through the end of the 12th rib. Both kidneys descend about  $1/2$  inch (12.5 mm.) during deep inspiration. The kidney, if in its normal situation, is accessible to pressure just below the last rib at the outer edge of the erector spinæ muscle. Sometimes one or the other, more frequently the left, lies on the lumbar vertebra, on the sacrum, or in the inguinal canal.

**CONGENITAL ABSENCE OF THE KIDNEY.**—The total *absence of both kidneys* is possible in connection with extreme abnormalities and defect of development, but is incompatible with life.

*Congenital absence of one kidney* is not very rare, the absent one being usually the left. Such absence may be suspected when over the normal situation of the organ a tympanitic note only can be elicited by percussion. In such event, the remaining kidney supplements the work of the absent one, and serious consequences only follow in the event of disease or lesion of the remaining organ. The ureter and pelvis of the absent kidney are absent also, but sometimes the remaining organ has two pelves and two ureters. Occasionally the rudiment of a ureter is present. Congenital atrophy of one kidney is even more common, but is discoverable only at autopsy.

**LOBULATED KIDNEY.**—The lobulated kidney is the most frequent anomaly of form. It consists essentially in the persistence of the lobulation natural to the organ in the fetal state. This is acquired by the end of the eighth week of fetal life, after which it gradually disappears in normal development, but is still maintained with more or less distinctness throughout the first year after birth. The abnormal lobulation is variously distinct. Usually partial and superficial, the fissures are sometimes so deep as to divide the organ into separate reniculi, of which there may be from seven to 20. This lobulation, a rare event in man, is clearly seen in the kidneys of the lower animals, especially in the sheep and ox.

**HORSE-SHOE KIDNEY.**—The most striking of the anomalies of form is the horse-shoe kidney, in which usually the lower ends of the two organs

are united either by true renal tissue or by a band of fibrous tissue. More rarely it is the middle segments which are united, and more rarely still the upper ends. In either event, this coalescence is usually associated with displacement of the organ, which is then lower down than in the normal condition, usually just above the promontory of the sacrum, more rarely in the pelvis, and at times on one side or the other of the spinal column. In the fused kidney there are usually two pelves, with from two to four ureters. More rarely there is but one pelvis. The ureters pass over the front of the kidney. The renal arteries spring from the aorta at points corresponding to the situation in which the organ is found. Thus, when above the sacrum, the arteries spring from the back of the aorta near its bifurcation or from one of the common iliacs, while the veins enter the corresponding parts of the vena cava or iliac veins.

The horse-shoe kidney is generally first recognized at autopsy, or at operation, but rarely it may be recognized in its abnormal position above the sacrum, especially in thin persons.

#### THE MOVABLE OR FLOATING KIDNEY.

SYNONYMS.—*Ren mobilis*; *Floating Kidney*; *Palpable Kidney*; *Nephroptosis*.

**Description.**—The normal kidney is commonly quite firmly retained in position by its capsule of fat and by a covering of peritoneum. The movable or floating organ exhibits a very different degree of mobility in different instances. The mobility may be so slight that it can be recognized only by the expert manipulator, or so great that the organ may be easily grasped by the hand through the abdominal walls. In the latter condition there is a mesonephron or peritoneal fold loosely attaching the kidney to the spine.

**Etiology.**—The movable kidney is more common in thin persons than in the obese, in women than in men. Indeed, it has been said that one woman out of every four has a movable kidney. It is six times as frequent in the working-classes. The right kidney is far more frequently movable than the left. Repeated pregnancies are assigned causes, as is also mechanical violence, as a fall or tight lacing. It is most likely, however, that the majority of floating kidneys are congenitally loose, and that this looseness may be increased by the conditions named.

**Symptoms.**—The floating kidney often occasions no symptoms. At other times it is responsible for a remarkable train of *nervous symptoms*, mainly reflex in character. These include *obstinate indigestion* of every grade, *flatulence*, *palpitation of the heart*, *cardialgia*, *neuralgic pain* almost anywhere in the body, but especially in the abdomen and cardiac region. Gastric crises identical with those characteristic of locomotor ataxia have been ascribed to floating kidney. *Irritable bladder* and *dysmenorrhea* are also consequences. It is an interesting fact that where the degree of displacement and the mobility are most marked, the reflex symptoms are least so. This is not without a parallel in other diseases, and in illustration may be cited the well-known fact that *prolapsus uteri* of moderate degree often causes decided reflex symptoms, while a complete procidentia produces



often trifling local annoyance. The direct result of the displacement, so far as appreciable, is a sense of *dragging* or weight, which especially manifests itself while standing, walking, riding, or dancing, to which may be added a variable amount of *pain*. More serious symptoms sometimes manifest themselves as the result of *torsion* of the ureter, occasioned by complete rotation of the kidney, in which the renal vessels and nerves are also involved. These are agonizing pain, associated with symptoms of collapse, such as nausea, an anxious expression, and scanty urination. They are caused in part by obstruction to the ureter and the backing of the urine on the kidney. Acute hydronephrosis may also be the result of such strangulation, which may be caused, too, by inflammatory bands. This condition ends sometimes as suddenly as it begins. Both hemorrhage and albuminuria are reported as results. Both are certainly rare. There may be other effects of displacement due to the location of the organ at times, of which irritation due to pressure upon the bladder may be mentioned as one. It is often very uncomfortable for the patient to lie on the one side opposite that on which the displaced organ belongs.

**Diagnosis.**—This is variously difficult. The kidney exhibits some mobility in health, descending also always  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch (1.3 cm.) with each deep inspiration. Movable kidneys are sometimes so loose and movable that they may be felt with ease through the abdominal walls. Between this ready recognition and that which requires the highest manipulative skill of the examiner there is every degree. At the present day, movable kidney is regarded as a much more frequent condition than was formerly believed. So frequently has the set of reflex nervous symptoms described been found associated with movable kidney that their presence should always suggest an examination for the presence of such an organ. The examination may be made with the patient in the standing posture, or when lying on the back. In the first he bends slightly forward, the hands being placed on a table, and the clothing thoroughly loosened. The right hand of the examiner is then placed in front immediately next the skin, below the hypochondrium, while the left is placed over the lumbar region. The patient is directed to respire deeply and regularly, and to relax during expiration. The region between the two hands is carefully palpated, when, if there is any marked degree of displacement, or rather of lowered position, the organ can be felt as a firm, smooth, oval body, somewhat sensitive to pressure, which produces a sickening pain which is quite characteristic. Most rarely the pulsation of the renal artery can be felt. The right kidney naturally moves with breathing more than the left, being pushed down by the liver. Sometimes the manipulation will be more successful in the knee-elbow position. When in this position, the movable kidney having fallen forward, a resonant note may be obtained by percussing over the normal situation of the organ; or the patient may be placed on the back with the side to be examined toward the edge of the bed, on which the physician may sit. The hands are applied as in the standing position, and manipulation is practiced as described.

The displaced organ is hardly likely to be confounded with anything else. The *spleen*, which corresponds nearly in size, is also sometimes movable. Its shape is, however, different. Its anterior body is sharp

and often notched. Sometimes both the left kidney and the spleen are floating. A *movable pyloric tumor* has been mistaken for a movable kidney. The passage of a stomach tube in case of doubt would clear it up.

**Treatment.**—As may be inferred, many cases of movable kidney require no treatment. In a few instances the symptoms are relieved by improving the general health; in others the patient is comfortable while lying on the back, and such comfort may continue for a time after rising. When decided symptoms attributable to the kidney are present, surgical treatment for fixing the kidney—nephrorrhaphy—has seemed to me the most satisfactory treatment, and this sometimes fails. I have known an operation for removal of the kidney—nephrectomy—to be necessary after nephrorrhaphy had been attempted twice unsuccessfully. The use of pads and supports has been only partly successful in my cases. On the other hand, Charles D. Aaron has recently published a paper on the successful treatment of 442 cases without surgical intervention.<sup>1</sup> Progress has certainly been made in the success obtained by bandages made by skillful persons, and it is advisable to make an effort with a bandage before operation is tried.

### IDIOPATHIC HEMATURIA.<sup>2</sup>

**Definition.**—So-called idiopathic hematuria is a hematuria the origin of which is unknown. In addition to the various causes of bloody urine already referred to in treating diseases of the urinary organs, and, in addition to malarial hematuria, there remains a form of renal hematuria of not very infrequent occurrence, for which none of the causes named will account. To this the term idiopathic hematuria is appropriate.

**Symptoms.**—The characteristics of the urine in this form of hematuria are in no way different from those of renal hematuria from other causes. The blood is intimately admixed with the urine, and is not, as a rule, found in the shape of coagula, as is so often the case when the blood comes from the bladder or pelvis of the kidney or in malignant disease of the kidney. There is the usual smoky hue characteristic of acid urine containing a small amount of blood, becoming brighter red as the urine becomes alkaline, and darker red as the quantity of blood is increased. The microscope reveals numerous blood-disks recognizable by their usual characters, and often blood-casts and casts filled with the débris of red disks, or red disks so closely packed as to make it impossible to distinguish their outline. The urine is, of course, albuminous.

Next to the change in the urine, the most striking feature is the absence of other symptoms. The subject is not ill, is not weak, and complains of nothing. Occasionally a dull ache in the back is felt or supposed to be felt, perhaps because the patient thinks that since there is bloody urine, there ought to be pain in the back. The same may be said of weakness, but these symptoms are not usually complained of, though they may be present. Sir William Gull spoke of such hematuria as a "renal epistaxis." With

<sup>1</sup>" Jour. Am. Med. Assoc." Dec. 5, 1903.

<sup>2</sup>I realize that the subjects hematuria, hemoglobinuria, and chyluria, next to be considered, are not strictly renal affections, but it is difficult to classify them otherwise.

the lapse of time, however, and the continuance of the symptom, positive weakness gradually supervenes.

**Treatment.**—Rest is an important and essential condition in the successful management of idiopathic hematuria. The usual astringents, mineral and vegetable, known to be efficient in the treatment of hemorrhagic conditions elsewhere, are often without effect here, though these substances, including gallic acid, ergot, the persulphate of iron, and acetate of lead, alum, catechu, and kino, may be tried. The persulphate of iron has proved of undoubted value in my hands, in doses of from  $1/4$  to  $1/2$  grain (0.015 to 0.32 gm.) every four hours in a pill. Tincture of the chloride of iron in 30 drop doses four times daily apparently cured in three weeks a boy whom I saw with Charles H. Smith, of Uniontown, Penna., after many other drugs had been tried. The treatment was, however, associated with rest in bed under a trained nurse. The treatment was Smith's own suggestion. The astringent mineral waters, especially the alum waters, as those of the Rockbridge Alum Springs, in Virginia, and the Jackson Spring, North Carolina, have apparently proved curative, but I have also failed with them. A case which I saw in consultation with T. Parry Tyson, of Jenkintown, resisted all measures until Tyson tried the fluid extract of *hamamelis virginica* in doses of 20 minims (1.32 gm.) every three hours, and in 36 hours the hemorrhage ceased and has not recurred. As *hamamelis* contains much tannin and gallic acid, it may owe its efficiency to this constituent. One of my cases, after resisting every other form of treatment, finally recovered after electric baths had been used for 15 minutes every other day for one month.

Gelatin has also been recommended in hematuria, in common with other hemorrhages. As an example, Schwabe injected into each infra-clavicular region, 7 ounces (25 c.c.) of physiologic salt solution containing  $2\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of pure gelatin, followed by the daily administration by the mouth for a week of a pint of ten per cent. gelatin solution.

## HEMOGLOBINURIA.

**Definition.**—In this interesting condition, the coloring-matter only of the blood is found in the urine; very rarely a few blood-disks or their fragments. In their absence, other criteria of the presence of blood coloring-matter must be sought. To do this, one may take Teichmann's hemin crystals, as directed in the footnote on page 69; or if the spectroscope be available, the filtered and diluted urine produces the absorption bands of oxyhemoglobin between Fraunhofer's line D and E, or more frequently the three bands of methemoglobin, of which that in the red near C is distinctive. Sometimes both are present. The urine thus stained with hemoglobin is dark brownish-red, and even black in color. It is also albuminous, and in lieu of the blood-disks are sometimes found yellowish-brown, irregular, and granular flakes, and sometimes cylindrical masses of hemoglobin.

Hemoglobinuria is always associated with hemoglobinemia, which is, however, less easy of demonstration. The hemoglobin is set free from the corpuscles and imparts a reddish hue to the blood-plasma. The disks

themselves are paler, and yellowish-brown particles of hemoglobin may be demonstrated between the corpuscles. The number of corpuscles themselves may be reduced, falling to 4,000,000 and less.

Hemoglobinemia and hemoglobinuria may easily be separated into two divisions, toxic and simple paroxysmal.

**TOXIC HEMOGLOBINURIA.**—This is produced by toxic substances, which dissolve out the hemoglobin from the corpuscles. Such are sulphureted hydrogen, arseniureted hydrogen, carbon monoxid, carbolic acid, pyrogallie acid, naphthol, nitrobenzole; potassium chlorate in large doses, and the poison of certain mushrooms; also sometimes the poison of the infectious diseases, including scarlet fever, diphtheria, pyemia, yellow fever, typhoid fever, malaria, and even syphilis. The last has sometimes seemed to act as a predisposing cause, subsequently to which so trifling a thing as exposure to cold has caused it. I have seen it associated with pregnancy as a probable cause. Hemoglobinemia and hemoglobinuria sometimes succeed on extensive burns when the poison is probably the retained excretions of the skin. High temperature alone is said to have caused it. In malarial poisoning the hemoglobinemia may be the direct result of the action of the malarial plasmodium. The blood of one animal transfused into the vessels of another, must be added to this group.

**Prognosis.**—This depends upon the dose of the toxin causing it and the other symptoms produced. Recovery is usual, but some cases are rapidly fatal.

**Treatment.**—This is that of the disease occasioning it. The same astringent measures may be tried as in hematuria, and restorative medicines may be given to rebuild the blood. Of these, iron is the most important.

#### PAROXYSMAL HEMOGLOBINURIA.

In this, intermittent attacks occur. They come on suddenly, preceded by chills and fever, headache, and pain in the limbs, the temperature often reaching 104° F. (40° C.). The bloody urine follows in an hour or less, and may last four or five hours, or there may be two or three paroxysms in a day. At other times there is no fever or the temperature is even subnormal. Jaundice is associated with some cases, especially toward the end. At times, instead of the expected hemoglobinuria, there is only albuminuria. Ralfe explains this by supposing that the toxic agent has destroyed only a small number of corpuscles, the coloring matter from which is used up in the spleen and liver, while the globulin goes off in the urine. Von Leube especially calls attention to a swelling and tenderness of the liver and spleen, and says he has met these symptoms in lieu of the expected hemoglobinuria—in lieu even of albuminuria.

The occasional association of hemoglobinuria with Raynaud's disease is very interesting. The probability is that in most cases where the two conditions are associated, the preliminary hemoglobinemia is due to a separation of the hemoglobin from the red disks in the peripheral asphyxiated part of the nose, ears, fingers, or other parts.

As to other causes of paroxysmal form, malaria is undoubtedly one, though perhaps not so often as was once supposed. Another cause is excessive muscular exertion, especially when associated with cold, while cold itself is perhaps the most frequent of all causes. Mental emotion is sometimes a cause. It must be admitted that for the cases not explainable by toxic agency no satisfactory solution has been presented.<sup>1</sup>

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of the paroxysmal form is commonly favorable, though it may continue to recur for a long time.

**Treatment.**—This depends upon the cause. If it be malarial, the condition is easily curable by quinin. To seek the causes in many cases is to seek the unattainable, and the cases must be treated on general principles. Rest and warmth are essentials. After this, the same astringent remedies as those recommended under hematuria may be tried. As cold seasons and cold weather favor it, a residence in a warm climate should be recommended when the condition persists. Nitrite of amyl is said to have cut short and to have prevented an attack.

## NON-PARASITIC CHYLURIA.

**Historical.**—Chyluria was first mentioned in 1675; later by Müller, Morgagni, Sauvages and Chapotin; the latter in 1812, by Alibert in 1818, by Prout in 1818. It was described by Rayer in his book on Bright's Disease in 1841.

**Definition and Description.**—A state of the urine in which the secretion is admixed with fat in a minute state of division, whereby the urine acquires a milky or chylous appearance.

The proportion of fat varies greatly, being at times only enough to impart a mere opalescence, while at other times the urine is scarcely distinguishable from milk, even the characteristic odor and taste of urine being wanting. The fat, on standing, often rises to the surface, like cream. By the microscope, in addition to this molecular fat and a few oil drops, numerous blood-disks are also found. These are sometimes so numerous as to impart a pinkish tinge to the fluid, and at times a spontaneous coagulation takes place, with the formation of a slight reddish clot, showing the presence also, of fibrin—*hematochyluria*.

**Etiology.**—To produce chyluria there must be brought about in some way a leakage from chyle vessels into the urinary passages somewhere between the kidney and the neck of the bladder. Yet no such communication has ever been found, so far as I know, though W. H. Mastin noticed the patulous mouths of several chyle vessels opening into the serous sac of a testicle which he laid open for the cure of a chylous hydrocele or lymph scrotum. Having ligated them, no recurrence of the hydrocele happened. Supposing such a communication to exist, how is it brought about? In most cases probably by the blocking of lymph channels by prematurely discharged ova or embryos of the *filaria Bancrofti* (*parasitic chyluria*), to be described when treating of animal parasites. Undoubtedly, there occurs, on the other hand, what may be termed, under the circumstances, an idiopathic chyluria, the most searching examination of the blood during life,

<sup>1</sup>It is well known that horses are subject to hemoglobinuria, and that it occurs in them after exposure to cold, especially after having been stabled for several days.

and careful dissection after death, of lymph glands and vessels in certain cases, failing to discover either ova or embryos. On the other hand, by no means every case of filariasis is attended by chyluria.

**Symptoms.**—Few symptoms other than those of the chylous urine are present. It is usually intermittent, but may be persistent. There is sometimes a loss of strength from the draining off of fluid which is undoubtedly nutrient; at other times there is some pain in the back, and at others again painful urination due to obstruction of the urethra by coagula of fibrin, but in most cases the patient feels well and would not know there was anything the matter with him had not his attention been called to the urine.

**Treatment.**—No means have been discovered to destroy the filaria in parasitic chyluria, nor to check the leakage in the idiopathic form, which often persists for years and then subsides spontaneously. Should the mosquito be its cause, the same measures which will ultimately be found for its eradication will apply to the filarial disease.

See also article on Filariasis in section on Parasites.

## THE RELATION OF HEART DISEASE TO KIDNEY DISEASE.

Allusion has more than once been made in the foregoing pages to the relation of kidney disease to heart disease, and the association of lesions in the two organs. Of such importance is a proper understanding of this relation, that a few pages devoted to its consideration may be helpful to the student. The association admits of classification:

1. *Renal Disease Associated with Hypertrophy of the Left Ventricle without Valvular Disease.*—Modern studies have made it quite certain that this form of combined heart and kidney disease may originate in two ways: (a) The heart affection may be secondary to the kidney disease as its direct consequence; or (b) both conditions may result from one and the same cause—viz., arterial sclerosis.

(a) *The Renal Condition Precedes.*—The condition which precedes is commonly the contracted kidney of interstitial nephritis, and its result is hypertrophy of the left ventricle.

How is the cardiac hypertrophy to be accounted for? I will first review the theories which have been given from time to time, for theories alone they must be acknowledged to be. The oldest, which may be termed the "retention" or "chemical" theory, was advanced in its cruder form by Bright himself, whose acute observation had not failed to notice the association of cardiac hypertrophy without valvular disease with the disease so deservedly coupled with his name since 1827. Bright suggested two alternative explanations: "Either that the altered quality of the blood affords irregular and unwonted stimulus to the organ immediately, or that it so affects the minute and capillary circulation as to render greater action of the heart necessary to force the blood through the distant subdivisions of the vascular system." The late Sir George Johnson held this last view, and his pupil, Nestor Tirard, in England, and Senator, in Germany, still entertain it. At one time Johnson held that the hypertrophied state of the

muscular coat was the result of an *effort* of the vessels to aid the onward movement of the blood. More recently he ascribed the thickening of the muscular coat, which exists not only in the kidneys, but in the systemic arterioles generally, to a constant exercise of the normal stop-cock action whose object is to resist the passage of this abnormal blood; while the hypertrophy of the left ventricle is ascribed to an effort to overcome this resistance. Johnson maintained that there is a true hypertrophy of the muscular coat of the general arterial system, associated with thickening of the intima only in the kidneys, but of the adventitia also in the arterioles of other tissues.<sup>1</sup> Recent histological studies, made for Johnson under the direction of Halliburton, confirm this view. Unfortunately, other recent studies by modern methods, notably those by W. T. Councilman and Arthur V. Meigs, to be again alluded to, do not find the changes in the middle coat early described by Johnson and now again by Halliburton. Until lately, experiments which have for their object determining the effect of toxic substance introduced in the blood on the heart and vessel walls have proved negative. More recently a number of experimenters, notably Alfred Croftan, have succeeded in producing increased arterial blood-pressure, arterial spasm, thickening of arteries, and hypertrophy of the heart, as well as granular and fatty degeneration of renal-cells. Croftan used the alloxuric bases xanthin and hypoxanthin, while Ustimovitch, Grützner, von Cavazano, and Robustello injected urea into the blood.<sup>2</sup> It is to be regretted that a histological question seemingly so simple cannot be settled by the refinements of modern histology.

The so-called "mechanical theory" of cardiac hypertrophy was advanced by Traube, whose researches in 1856 gave a decided impulse to clinical study of the subject. According to Traube, the increased arterial resistance was caused by two erroneously-supposed states—the first, an overfullness of the vessels due to the diminished renal secretion; second, a resistance to the admission of arterial blood into the kidney, due to the renal contraction itself. The first hypothesis was erroneous for contracted kidney where the urinary secretion is really increased, while the second is opposed by the fact that even ligation of the renal arteries fails to increase arterial pressure. This is because of the ample vascular space elsewhere for the blood thus diverted. Nor did Cohnheim's further elaboration of the mechanical theory, which located the increased resistance more precisely behind the wasted glomerule, give any more permanent life to it.

I incline to the belief that we should not lose sight of the possibility that the primary changes in the heart may be *compensatory* in their nature, set up with a view to supplementing the gradual loss of renal substance. Such an action is paralleled everywhere in the physical economy. Nowhere do we meet with loss of function which is not at once met by an attempt of nature to compensate it. The dependence of the urinary secretion upon cardiac pressure is well understood, and an increase of cardiac power is the most reliable means available for stimulating the action of the kidneys, when desired, in therapeutics. The diuresis which is so con-

<sup>1</sup>"The Pathology of the Contracted Kidney," by Sir George Johnson, London, 1896.

<sup>2</sup>See Croftan's paper on "The Role of Alloxuric Bases in the Production of the Cardio-vascular Changes of Nephritis," published in the "American Journal of the Medical Sciences," November, 1900, where the reader will find references to papers by the other experimenters mentioned.

stant a symptom of the contracted kidney is acknowledged to be the direct result of a supplemental contraction of the left ventricle, which it is reasonable to suppose is induced for the purpose named, and results in hypertrophy.

This view receives confirmation in the subsequent course of the disease. So long as the free secretion with is the result of the compensatory action of the heart is kept up, so long the patient remains tolerably comfortable, and perhaps even for a time unconscious of the presence of disease. But an organ thus overgrown is sure, sooner or later, to suffer in its nutrition. Especially is this the case if its arteries be the seat of an endarteritis, interfering with the free movement of the blood and producing also fibromyocarditis. And what are the further consequences? The strong propulsive power of the heart declines, the pulse falls away in tension and power and becomes more frequent and sometimes irregular. The urine secreted diminishes in quantity and assumes a darker hue. Fortunate is the patient if the specific gravity of the urine rises inversely with its reduced quantity, as it indicates that the normal excretion of solids is kept up. Too frequently, however, this is not the case, and excrementitious substances accumulate in the blood, laying the foundation for uremia. Headache, nausea, a foul and even a urinous breath may be superadded, and uremia sets in, preceded by drowsiness, or it may be ushered in suddenly with convulsions. Or another set of symptoms may supervene; the patient becomes short of breath, first on slight exertion, and later this very distressing symptom occurs without such exciting cause. This sort of asthma, known as uremic asthma, has been discussed on page 757. For a time this symptom may be averted by whipping up the heart by cardiac stimulants, and the right ventricle even comes to the rescue for a time and hypertrophies in its effort to overcome the now disturbed compensation. Subsequently this, as well as the left ventricle, may become dilated, and edema of the lungs sets in, with annoying cough and serous frothy expectoration, sometimes blood-tinged. Nor does general dropsy continue absent, but ensues sooner or later with the growing heart failure. Our resources are now almost at an end, but are not exhausted, as even these symptoms sometimes subside.

It should be stated that not every case of interstitial nephritis is attended with hypertrophy of the left ventricle. In addition to the cases of contracted kidney from senile endarteritis already referred to, cardiac hypertrophy is apt to be absent in the interstitial nephritis of the weak and cachectic.

(b) *Both the Hypertrophy of the Left Ventricle and the Contracted Kidney are the Result of One and the Same Cause—Arterial Sclerosis or Arterio-capillary Fibrosis.*—It should be stated, first, that a certain school explains all cases of contracted kidney in this way. The changes described in the arteries differ chiefly from those described by Johnson in that they are held to be degenerative, so far as the muscular coat is concerned.

The late Sir William Gull and H. S. Sutton, in a paper which has become classic, announced in 1872<sup>1</sup> that the changes in the muscular coat were chiefly of an atrophic character, and, although the method of these

<sup>1</sup> "Arterio-capillary Fibrosis," "Med.-Chir. Trans.," London, 1872.



observers have been much criticised, the most recent studies on this subject by W. T. Councilman and Arthur V. Meigs go to confirm their conclusions both as to the seat and the nature of the changes. Councilman<sup>1</sup> finds atrophic changes in the muscular coat, including greater or less destruction of the muscular fiber-cells and the formation of a homogeneous hyaline tissue invading both coats, but especially the intima, where it produces decided thickening, and encroachment to a varied extent upon the lumen, sometimes amounting to occlusion. The capillary walls are likewise thickened, and sometimes, especially in the glomerule of the kidney, obliterated. Meigs<sup>2</sup> studies also find these changes for the most part confined to the intima, which is decidedly thickened. To a less extent, the intima of the veins is similarly involved. The picture of the changes thus briefly described may be obtained from a small artery taken indifferently from any tissue or organ of the body—for example, from the muscular substance of the heart, the kidney, or the liver. It is this diffuse form of arteritis, rather than the nodular, which is the link between the hypertrophy of the left ventricle and the contracted kidney. In the nodular form of arteritis the changes are limited to small areas in the aorta and large arteries—atheromatous patches, sometimes calcareous and sometimes fatty, the so-called senile arteritis. The resistance offered the free movement of the blood is evidently less than in the diffuse form.

Of the consequent results of such thickening, the hypertrophy of the ventricle is most easily explained. The resistance in the blood-vessels stimulates the ventricle to increased effort, and there result increased arterial tension and hypertrophy. The degree of cardiac hypertrophy is sometimes enormous, the organ weighing as much as 850 grams (28 ounces), and the average in 27 cases studied by Councilman being over 400 grams (13 ounces), as contrasted with the normal, ten to 12.

According to this view, the alterations in the kidney, which vary greatly in extent, being sometimes scarcely noticeable and sometimes extreme, are the direct result of an interference with its nutrition. The blood-supply to the renal elements being cut off, these gradually waste and ultimately disappear. The cells and tubules thus destroyed are gradually, but irresistibly, replaced by fibrous connective tissue, in obedience to the pathological law elaborated by Weigert, but which was announced, at least so far as the kidney is concerned, 50 years ago by Johnson,<sup>3</sup> that parts destroyed are partially replaced by cicatricial connective tissue. This contracts and reduces the size of the kidney, and perhaps also, in this contraction, further destroys the proper kidney structure, and thus increase the atrophy.

It has been said that in this form of combined kidney and heart disease there is no cardiac murmur. Nor is there, as a rule. It is not impossible, however, for the endarteritis of which we are speaking to creep along the walls of the aorta until it reaches the aortic valves, and so structurally changes them as to make them rough or incompetent and give rise to murmurs.

<sup>1</sup>"On the Relations Between Arterial Disease and Tissue Change," *Trans. Assoc. Amer. Phys.*, vol. vi., 1891.

<sup>2</sup>"New York Record," July 7, 1888.

<sup>3</sup>"Medico-Chirurg. Trans.," 1847.

The causes of this form of Bright's disease are, therefore, the causes of the endarteritis, which have been discussed on page 675. To a less degree, probably, the specific causes of all the infectious diseases must be included in this category—possibly even malaria. The subjects are usually middle-aged men, between the ages of 40 and 55, but they may be younger. Councilman has found these changes more common in the negro than in the white race.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of this form of combined kidney and heart disease is not different from that of interstitial nephritis. Even greater rigidity is necessary in eliminating nitrogenous food, and all food should be reduced to a minimum. A diet of milk diluted with water is the safest of all. Bread and butter may, however, be allowed, and even succulent vegetables easy of digestion, such as rice, potatoes, peas, and string-beans, while simple fruit-juices, as those of oranges and lemons, are allowable. Mental excitement and immoderate muscular exertion must be avoided, and the heart should not be overworked in any way.

The medicinal treatment especially directed to the arterio-sclerosis may be divided into that intended for the cure of the endarteritis and that directed to the relief of symptoms. The only drug from which results may be expected for the former purpose is the iodid of potassium, which should be given a fair trial in doses as large as can be borne without deranging the stomach. For the relief of the symptoms more especially due to the sclerosis—viz., headache, throbbing, and vertigo—the nitrites are often useful. Nitroglycerin should be given in doses of 1/100 grain (0.00065 gm.) every four hours or oftener, rapidly increased to 1/50 grain (0.0013 gm.) if the smaller dose is without effect. The aim should be to produce the physiological effect, which is a sense of fullness or a flushing. The sodium nitrite may be substituted in 3 to 5 grain (0.19 to 0.32 gm.) doses. It has the advantage of being more permanent in its effect, although it is slower in its action.

2. *Valvular Heart Disease Associated with Renal Disease in which the Heart Disease is Primary.*—The heart disease is commonly disease of the mitral valve. The kidney involvement does not occur in connection with aortic valvular disease until mitral insufficiency is superadded. It is well known that in mitral regurgitation as soon as compensation ceases the blood accumulates first in the lungs, then in the right side of the heart, and finally in the venous system, engorging especially the liver, stomach, and kidneys. The effects upon the first two were discussed in treating of heart disease. They generally manifest themselves sooner than the renal symptoms. The result in the case of the kidney is the kidney of passive congestion or cyanotic induration, already described on page 762.

Much more decided are the clinical phenomena resulting from such congestion. It is a well-recognized condition of copious secretion of urine that the blood should move freely through the kidney. A stasis is followed immediately by diminished filtration of water, the 24 hours' quantity being reduced to from 30 to 20 ounces (90 to 60 c.c.), and even to less. The solids at first at least remain the same, the urine is dark-hued, the specific gravity is high, the reaction is markedly acid, and a copious sediment of urates and uric acid makes its appearance as soon as the urine

cools off. There is almost always a small amount of albumin found, but as the congestion increases, albumin becomes copious. Casts are sparsely, if at all, present, and are of the hyaline and faintly granular variety. Both red and white blood-corpuscles are also sometimes detected, as might be expected. This condition of the kidney and the symptoms are the direct results of the cardiac valvular disease. Yet I often see these cases diagnosed as Bright's disease as though it were the primary and principal affection. They may also be produced by any cause producing venous stasis, as pulmonary emphysema, chronic pleurisy, and thrombosis of large veins. Their effect is further to augment the symptoms of the cardiac disease. The circulation, already everywhere obstructed, is further impeded, there is dyspnea, dropsy increases, appetite fails, and there are nausea and constipation. Sleep, already disturbed by dreams, become more so, and a more distressing picture than is presented by such a case is rarely met.

**Treatment.**—Yet these symptoms are often easily amenable to treatment so long as the heart muscle remains capable of being influenced by digitalis. I have seen many a patient, apparently *in extremis* gasping in orthopnea and with legs heavy and almost bursting with dropsical effusion, completely relieved by a few large doses of this drug. But they must be large doses—not less than from 8 to 10 minims (0.5 c.c. to 0.6 c.c.) or from 15 to 20 drops every three hours until an effect is produced. If digitalis fails, the tincture of strophanthus may be given in the same doses, or caffein citrate in 3 grain (0.2 gm.) doses, each every four hours, or spartein sulphate in doses of from  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.016 to 0.03 gm.). Theobromine in  $7\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.5 gm.) doses, and aceto-theocin in 4 to  $7\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.25 to 0.5 gm.) doses should not be forgotten. Purgation should not be omitted, and should rather be pushed to the production of watery catharsis. The ingestion of fluids should be restricted, and Hay's treatment of dry diet with purgatives is sometimes useful. But I have found a restricted milk diet limited to two ounces every two hours, associated with the drugs previously named, equally efficient.<sup>1</sup>

Such a kidney is, of course, more liable to become the seat of an acute or a chronic nephritis than the normal organ.

3. *Renal Infarct the Result of Heart Disease.*—The next form of kidney involvement secondary to disease of the vascular apparatus, commonly heart disease, is more frequently seen on the postmortem table than recognized in the living subject. It is *embolic infarction*, produced by the lodgment in some branches of the renal artery of an embolus derived from the heart or a blood-vessel. Its most frequent source is a fragment of vegetation or clot from a diseased heart-valve, commonly the aortic. An embolus may also arise from a thrombus in a vein. If from the latter, it must be carried first to the right heart, and thence through the lungs into the left heart, and thence by the aorta to the kidney, and must, of course, be small.

The effect of the lodgment of an embolus in the kidney is a wedge-

<sup>1</sup>See some cases reported by the author in a paper "On the Management of Obstinate Dropsies," *Med. News*, June 21, 1890.

shaped hemorrhagic infarct which at first is dark red in color, standing out above the surface, but which in time whitens, contracts, and is ultimately absorbed, leaving a mere cicatricial mark.

Most frequently a renal infarct occurs without noticeable symptoms. Its occurrence, if looked for by reason of the presence of valvular heart disease, may be suspected if there is the sudden appearance of blood in the urine. A sudden pain in the region of the kidney occurring at the same time with hematuria would go to confirm the diagnosis. No treatment, except rest, is indicated, even if the event is recognized.

4. *Accidental Coincidence of Renal Disease and Heart Disease.*—Finally, kidney disease and disease of the vascular apparatus, and especially cardiac disease, may coincide accidentally, each the result of its own cause, and reacting the one upon the other in various degrees and variously aggravating the symptoms of each, so that it often becomes a very nice question to determine which is the preponderating disease. Fortunately, this difficulty does not always extend to therapeutics, the same remedies which are useful to one affection being commonly indicated for the other. A careful study of each case should, however, be made on its own merits, and due weight assigned to each factor of the disease.

## DISEASES OF THE BLADDER.

## CYSTITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Catarrh of the Bladder; Vesical Catarrh.*

**Definition.**—Cystitis is an infectious inflammation of the bladder excited usually by different varieties of pathogenic bacteria.

**Etiology.**—Among these are the *bacillus coli communis*, the *gonococcus*, *staphylococcus pyogenes* and *bacillus tuberculosis*. The typhoid bacillus is not an infrequent cause.<sup>1</sup> The causes formerly assigned to such inflammation, though relegated by the above definition to favoring causes, are still very important. They include foreign bodies, such as stone, trauma, obstruction to the outflow of urine by enlarged prostrate or stricture of the urethra. A frequent medium of introduction of bacteria was formerly catheters. The number of cases caused by catheterization has diminished because of the greater precaution taken of late in the care of instruments. Of acknowledged bacterial origin is also gonorrheal cystitis, which, succeeding an attack of gonorrheal urethritis, invades the bladder by extension.

Cold was formerly recognized as a cause of cystitis, especially in women and children, but it is subject to the same conditions as the causes just named. On the other hand, cystitis succeeds upon the introduction of substances in the blood, as cantharides and capsicum. Even the ingestion of certain articles of food has been followed by it. Traumatic agencies may be classed among predisposing causes rather than exciting, furnishing the conditions favorable to the operation of bacteria.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The bladder of cystitis is a varied picture. There may be degrees so slight as to produce scarcely appreciable change in its appearance. At other times the mucous membrane is hyperemic and bathed with a mucoid or mucopyoid secretion of dirty-gray color. In many cases only the neck of the bladder and the part of the urethra passing through the prostrate are involved. Again, the bladder is "ribbed," a result of straining. During this act the mucous membrane between the muscular trabeculae yields, producing depressions bounded by the more unyielding muscular bands. On the other hand, in chronic cases permanent thickening of the bladder-walls may result. Finally, in the severest forms of inflammation due to pathogenic organisms, such as those associated with putrid urine, the mucous membrane may be covered with patches of false membrane, or the wall of the bladder may be infiltrated and undermined with pus, constituting the so-called phlegmonous or diphtheritic cystitis, from which there may result urethral and perineal infiltration. A further extension of the cystitis into the pelvic connective tissue about the bladder is known as paracystitis; this belongs to the province of the surgeon.

**Symptoms.**—While a division of cystitis into acute and chronic is justified by the suddenness and severity of symptoms in certain cases as

<sup>1</sup>See an admirable paper by Thomas R. Brown on "The Bacteriology of Cystitis, Pyelitis," etc., "Johns Hopkins Hospital Reports," vol. x., 1901.

contrasted with their slow development in others, yet the conditions so constantly verge into each other that a separate consideration of the two forms is not necessary. The first symptom is usually a *frequent desire to void urine*. Such frequency varies greatly in intensity. It may be every few minutes or almost incessant, several times an hour or once in two hours. After the primary frequency of disturbance it usually diminishes somewhat. Such frequency is often attended by painful straining. In severe cases there is always *tenderness* over the region of the bladder above the pubes, and in some cases there is constant *pain*. In these tenderness can also be elicited by pressure from the vagina and rectum, while catheterization is especially painful. In calculous cystitis pain is excited or aggravated by motion, especially such as is communicated to one riding in a wagon over a rough road.

As commonly met, there is rarely fever with cystitis, but the severe forms are attended with *moderate fever* and sometimes, in the diphtheritic variety, with *high fever*. Even when there is fever, the temperature does not exceed 100° to 102° F. (37.8° to 38.9° C.), though it may be higher. In certain acute diphtheritic cases of great virulence there are *chills*, *sweats*, and *high fever*. In advanced stages there may be *sepsis*, due to absorption of retained putrid matter from the bladder.

The *urine* presents striking changes, from which alone the diagnosis can be made. *First*, it contains pus in varying quantities, but it is especially characteristic of the pus of cystitis that it is associated with mucus, which imparts a glairy, stringy character to the urine, that increases the difficulty of its discharge from the bladder. The reaction of the urine when passed is commonly either alkaline or faintly acid, and if acid, it promptly becomes alkaline. This is due to the formation of ammonium carbonate out of the normal urea, the result of the operation of bacteria. The greater alkalinity thus resulting reacts upon the pus and converts it into a glairy matter resembling mucus, thus further increasing the difficulty of micturition. Under the circumstances the pus is loaded with amorphous phosphates of lime and glistening crystals of ammonio-magnesium phosphate. It is so viscid that it will not rise in the pipet, and must be cut with scissors to be manipulated for microscopic study. Blood is an almost constant constituent of the urine in calculous cystitis, and in the grave diphtheritic forms shreds of gangrenous bladder tissue may be discharged.

**Diagnosis.**—Ordinarily, the diagnosis of cystitis is easy, yet there sometimes occur mild forms which it is difficult to differentiate from mild degrees of *interstitial nephritis*, while it not very rarely happens that the two conditions are associated. In contracted kidney there are also sometimes a good many leukocytes. The presence of hyaline casts, even when scanty, points to nephritis, while hypertrophy of the left ventricle and increased arterial tension settle the question. Still more emphatic is the diagnosis if there is retinitis albuminurica.

The question as to whether there is *pyelitis*, separate or associated with cystitis, is still more difficult. It is true that the pus in pyelitis is very much less glairy and viscid than that of cystitis pure and simple. I know, however, no distinctive cellular elements which settle this question,

though some assert there are. Even spasm of the bladder, commonly regarded as peculiar to cystitis, may be present in pyelitis. Rather must we rely upon tenderness in the neighborhood of the kidney on the one hand and in that of the bladder on the other. Marked intermission in the purulent discharge, especially if associated with attacks of nephritic colic, which imply an obstruction of the ureter, point to *pelvic involvement*. Catheterization of the ureters may aid in the diagnosis, pus from the pelvis of the kidney being thus separated from the bladder contents.

*Calculus cystitis* may be suspected when pain in the region of the bladder is excited by motion, as in riding over a rough road, or at the end of the penis after micturition; also when there is blood in the urine or when the stream of urine is suddenly interrupted. These symptoms should immediately suggest the use of the sound, negative results with which must not, however, be accepted without qualification, as the stone may be concealed in a diverticulum.

**Prognosis.**—The medical treatment of cystitis does not furnish a very satisfactory chapter in therapeutics. It includes such treatment as the physician is called upon to use, supposing the exciting cause, such as a stone in the bladder or obstruction in the urethra, to have been removed, whenever possible. Thanks to modern surgery; the enlarged prostate which is responsible for so many cases of cystitis is, in the vast majority of cases, removable without accident even in the old. Many cases due to other causes get well; others are only partially relieved. Some of the most virulent acute cases terminate favorably with rupture into the vagina or rectum if the patient resist the primary attack of the disease.

**Treatment.**—*Acute Cystitis.*—Of this form the treatment is far more satisfactory, at least so far as the removal of the acute symptoms is concerned, than that of the chronic form. Rest in bed is a primary and essential condition. Leeches to the perineum should be applied more frequently than they are. A poultice to this same region and over the lower abdominal region is always useful, while a brisk saline cathartic should never be omitted.

As the feverish state which always accompanies cystitis is more or less constantly associated with scanty urine, concentrated and irritating to the inflamed mucous membrane, it is desirable at once to increase the secretion and thus dilute it. Copious libations of pure water, to which the citrate or acetate of potassium is added, in 15 to 20 grain (1 to 1.3 gm.) doses for an adult, should be allowed. The ordinary spirit of nitrous ether in dram (3.4 c.c.) doses every two hours is an admirable adjuvant, and may be combined with the official liquor potassii citratis, which contains about 20 grains (1.3 gm.) of citrate of potassium to 1 2 ounce (15 c.c.). Formerly, the mucilage of flaxseed or flaxseed tea was much used as a diluent menstruum for the diuretic alkalies indicated, but it is doubtful whether it is any more efficient than a like quantity of water. When there are much pain and straining, as is often the case, especially when cantharides is the cause of the inflammation, opium is indispensable, always in the form of a suppository, 1/2 grain (0.03 gm.) to 1 grain (0.065

gm.) of the extract, or a corresponding amount of morphin. Iced-water injections into the rectum, or pieces of ice similarly applied, are very efficient in allaying the pain and irritation when additional measures are needed. I have recently found injections of cocain into the bladder useful in allaying the intense irritation. Not more than 2 grains (0.13 gm.) of cocain should be introduced into the bladder at one time.

*Chronic Cystitis.*—The successful treatment of chronic cystitis is a much more difficult task, for three evident reasons:

1. The constant presence in the bladder of the urine with its irritating qualities, especially so to an inflamed mucous membrane.
2. The difficulty in getting remedies to reach the inflamed surfaces.
3. The pent-up inflammatory products, which in their decomposition often make the urine still more irritating by exciting in it ammoniacal changes.

There is no doubt that, if the urine could be kept from entering the bladder during the existence of an inflammation, the latter would rapidly heal; that cure would be facilitated by obtaining ready escape for the pus and mucus; while happier results might also be reasonably expected if we could secure readier access for remedies to the inflamed areas. None of these indications can be met entirely. They remain, however, the conditions to be fulfilled, and while none can be thoroughly fulfilled, they may be variously approximated.

First, the irritating qualities of the urine may be diminished by the use of diluents, already recommended in the treatment of acute cystitis. Almost any of the negative mineral waters, so highly recommended by their owners, are useful for this purpose. Just as good is pure spring water, and even better is distilled water. From one to two quarts should be taken daily. If the kidneys are equal to their office, a large quantity of light-hued urine of low specific gravity and relatively weak in solids will be secreted.

When it is purposed to go further and add to the efficiency of diluents, mistakes are often made. While one can scarcely go astray in adding alkalies to the fluid ingested in acute cystitis, it is very different with the chronic form. In this the urine is often alkaline, or ready to become so on the slightest addition of alkali to the blood. Such alkalinity of urine in turn favors decomposition, the effect of which is to convert the pus, if present, into a tenacious, glairy fluid which the bladder cannot evacuate. Notwithstanding this tendency, 'liquor potassæ and other alkalies are sometimes administered under precisely these conditions—adding "fuel to the flame." The indication under these circumstances is to render the urine acid, if possible, although the means to this end are unsatisfactory. Benzoic acid has the reputation of doing this, and it is probably true of it when administered in sufficient doses. It may be given in the shape of a 5 grain (0.32 gm.) capsule, of which at least six must be given in a day to produce any effect. Benzoate of sodium may be given in 10 grain doses (0.6 gm.) every two hours. The same property has been assigned to citric acid, but this is a mistake, as all of the vegetable acids, when ingested, are eliminated as alkaline carbonates.



The second indication is to medicate the inflamed surface. Two ways suggest themselves:

1. By the internal administration of drugs.
2. By the injection of medicated liquids into the bladder.

To carry out the first method, an enormous number of infusions, decoctions, and fluid extracts of vegetable substances have been suggested, the vast majority of which are absolutely useless, except as they serve by their quantity to act as diluents. Among the best known of these are buchu, pareira brava, uva ursi, and triticum repens. I have never known any beneficial results to be obtained from any of them, except perhaps buchu, and seldom prescribe them except as vehicles.

The remedies heretofore most efficient in cystitis through their internal administration are the balsams. Of these, the balsam of copaiba is practically unavailable, because not one stomach in a hundred will bear it in sufficient doses or for long enough time to permit it to be of any use. Sandalwood oil is more easily borne, and is also an efficient remedy. It is best administered in capsules containing 10 minims (0.6 gm.). Contrary to the usual custom of giving these and like remedies after meals, I have given them on an empty stomach before meals. They are as well and even better borne than when given after food, and they pass into the blood much more quickly. It is desirable to impregnate the blood and to impart a balsamic odor to the urine. This is scarcely possible with less than eight capsules a day—two before each meal and two at bedtime. They should be followed by a little milk rather than water.

A valuable addition to drugs useful in the treatment of cystitis is urotropin or formin, and it has been in my hands most efficient. It has seemed to me to be most indicated in subacute and chronic stages. The dose is 5 to 7  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grains (0.33 to 0.5 gm.) in a capsule three to five times a day. I have not found it always superior to sandalwood. Occasionally this balsam is more efficient.

Both boric acid and benzoic acid are useful adjuvants to the treatment of chronic cystitis through their antiseptic effect on the urine, each in 5 grain (0.32 gm.) does, rapidly increased to 10 grains (0.65 gm.). They may be given jointly, as in the following prescription:

℞ Sodii biborat., }	
Ac. benzoic., }	gr. x (0.65 gm.)
Infus. buchu,	f 3 ij (60 c.c.).
Three times a day.	

Resorcin in 3 to 5 grain (0.198 to 0.33 gm.) doses and naphthalin in 2 grain (0.13 gm.) doses are recommended for the same purpose. Salol has become a popular remedy, very large doses being advised—from 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.) every three hours—but in my experience these doses are not well borne, ten grains (0.66 gm.) being a maximum dose.

The application of remedies to the bladder by injections is best considered in connection with the third indication—the getting rid of inflammatory products, the pus and mucus, and the matters resulting from their decomposition. The latter are not always present, but all who have had much experience with cystitis are familiar with the tenacious, glairy, mucoid matter, which will not drop or rise up in a pipet, glisten-

ing with large crystals of triple phosphate, and exhaling a stinking, ammoniacal odor which quickly contaminates an entire apartment. There is only one way to get rid of this, and that is to wash out the bladder, and often this is too long deferred. Tepid water should be used first, and the injection made through the soft, flexible catheter. Sir Henry Thompson is very emphatic in his directions that no more than two ounces should be thrown in at a time, and that this should be allowed to run out, a like quantity again injected and allowed to run out, and this repeated until the water comes out as clear as it enters. But double this quantity may be used with entire safety, and with such quantity used, a much shorter time is necessary to cleanse the bladder thoroughly. After the capacity of the bladder has been determined, even more may be thrown in, because it is sometimes useful to distend the viscus a little, in order to reach the depressions and inequalities always present in advanced inflammations. These simple injections, practiced once a day, or in severe cases twice a day, often result most happily. After a few injections with plain water some medication may be added. Salicylate of sodium, in the proportion of a dram (4 gm.) to the pint (1/2 liter), is one of the best. Its disinfecting qualities are undoubted. Boric acid, in the proportion of a dram (4 gm.) to the pint (1/2 liter), is also very satisfactory. Sir Henry Thompson's soothing lotion—of biborate of sodium an ounce (30 gm.), glycerin 2 ounces (60 c.c.), water 2 ounces (60 c.c.), and of this mixture 1/2 ounce (15 c.c.) to 4 ounces (120 c.c.) of tepid water—may also be used.

At the University Hospital to-day the iodide of silver has altogether replaced the nitrate of silver. The bladder is first irrigated by a five per cent. boric acid solution. Two ounces (30 c.c.) of five per cent. solution of iodide of silver is then introduced into the bladder and allowed to remain as long as the patient can hold it. The injection is made at first twice daily. If the patient is made more comfortable we apply it daily. The bladder, if previously washed out by boric acid solution, should be irrigated with plain warm sterilized water in order to avoid chemical reaction between the nitrate of silver and the boric acid. For tuberculous cystitis an oil emulsion of iodoform is the best, beginning with a two per cent. emulsion leaving 1 to 2 ounces (30 to 60 c.c.) in the bladder according to its capacity. If well borne it should be increased to five per cent. The bladder should also be previously irrigated with five per cent. boric acid solution.

Alum is an astringent which has been too often overlooked of late in suppurating processes in mucous membranes, and may be substituted for the salicylate with advantage when the pus does not disappear so rapidly as is desired. It should be more cautiously used than the salicylate of sodium. Sufficient of the powdered alum should be first added to a pint of water to give it a distinctly astringent taste, when the bladder should be washed out as described, while a small quantity may be allowed to remain after the last injection.

When there is a foul odor present, the bichlorid of mercury may be used in exceedingly dilute solution—not more than 1 to 25,000 at first—gradually increasing the strength if it is well borne. Carbolic acid may also be used in weak solution—1/4 to 1/2 per cent.—also peroxid of

hydrogen, one part to four or five of water. Among other remedies recommended for use in the same way are acetate of lead, 1 grain (0.06 gm.) to 4 ounces (120 c.c.); dilute nitric acid, 1 or 2 minims (0.06 or 0.12 c.c.) to the ounce (30 c.c.).

Anodynes are indispensable in many cases of cystitis to relieve the patient of extreme pain and of the frequent desire to pass water, which are the result of the same cause. Opium and its alkaloids are the most efficient, and they are best introduced by the rectum. There appears to be no absorbing power in the bladder for opium, and there is no use in attempting to administer anodynes by that channel. Cocain, from which so much might reasonably be expected, is disappointing, though it should not be overlooked. I have injected as much as 2 ounces (60 c.c.) of a one per cent. solution into the bladder, representing 8 grains (0.5 gm.), without effect, except to produce some of the symptoms of cocain poisoning. To avoid this not more than 2 grains (0.13 gm. of cocain should be put into the bladder at one time. Disappointing, too, has been the use of cocain to remove the exquisite tenderness of the urethra which sometimes attends this condition, and is a serious drawback to the use of the catheter; yet it may be tried for both purposes. For catheterizing, a two per cent. solution may be injected into the urethra, allowing two or three minutes to elapse before the catheter is introduced. Then, through the soft catheter itself, a few drops of this solution may be injected in advance of the catheter, which is again pushed a little further; then a few more drops are instilled, the catheter is introduced a little further, and so on until the instrument enters the bladder.

When there is greatly *enlarged prostate*, catheterization is indispensable, and is often attended with the most happy results. It is often too long deferred because of the natural repugnance to the use of the instrument. The patient or his friends should be taught to use the catheter and to wash out the bladder. In these days of refined antisepsicism it is scarcely necessary to say that the greatest precautions should be taken to cleanse the catheter after its use, in order to avoid sepsis. There is nothing better for this purpose than the bichlorid solution, 1 to 1000, in which the catheter should be allowed to lie for a short time after being cleansed with boiling-hot water.

How much can be accomplished by such treatment as that just described? An absolute and total cure in chronic cystitis is a rare event. On the other hand, a life of suffering may be converted into one of comparative comfort, and I have many times seen it. It occasionally happens, of course, that all treatment of this kind fails, and yet the patient lives to be tortured by the discomfort of the situation. In such cases perineal section may be recommended, and I have had the operation done several times with some relief to the patient, although with less than was hoped for. Of late years suprapubic cystotomy has come into favor. The operation of castration, once advocated for enlarged prostate has fallen into disuse. Vasectomy, though a simpler operation, is even less efficient. Prostatectomy or enucleation of the prostate either by the suprapubic or perineal section is the only effectual operation and is now much employed with excellent results.

## STONE IN THE BLADDER.

All that has been said in a general way of stone formation and the treatment of its tendency when treating of nephrolithiasis may be applied to stone in the bladder.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of stone in the bladder are practically those of cystitis, already described, aggravated by motion, especially riding over rough roads. \*As further distinctive of stone in the bladder may be mentioned pain at the end of the penis immediately after micturition. The only proof, however, of the presence of stone is its recognition by the sound, which should be used in every case of cystitis.

**Treatment.**—For removal of stone in the bladder medicinal treatment is even less efficient, and operative treatment is, if possible, more imperative.

## NEUROSES OF THE BLADDER.

**Physiology of the Bladder and Its Derangements.**—A proper understanding of nervous derangements of the bladder will be facilitated by a review of its physiology. The control of the bladder over the urine is partly reflex and partly voluntary. The reflex center is in the lumbar enlargement of the cord; the voluntary, in the cortex of the brain. In the lumbar cord seem, however, to be lodged two reflex centers, one for the *detrusor vesicæ* and the other for the *sphincter*. If the bladder be partly filled and at rest, its control is given over to the sphincter, whose striated fibers are reflexly active. As the bladder becomes more nearly full, the unstriated fibers of the detrusor muscle are more and more stimulated, and a time arrives when the sphincter can maintain itself only by the assistance of the will if the subject be in a normal state. In such state, too, under suitable circumstances, the will suspends its control over the sphincter and the bladder is emptied.

## PARALYSIS OF BLADDER.

If the spinal cord is cut above the lumbar enlargement, voluntary power to aid or suspend the action of the sphincter is lost, the bladder is given over to the lumbar cord as a pure reflex center. The urine accumulates as long as the action of the sphincter prevails, but as soon as a sufficient amount accumulates to stimulate the extrusor, the bladder is emptied more or less completely. Thus is produced one of the forms of incontinence, as when there is extensive lesion of the cord above the lumbar region.

If, on the other hand, there is paralysis of the *detrusor* muscle and the sphincter remain intact, there will be retention of urine. If, however, communication with the brain remains intact, by an act of the will the reflex contraction of the sphincter may be suspended and the bladder partially emptied by a straining effort, at least so far as pressure can be exerted by the abdominal muscles. Should the afferent or sensory nerves of the reflex arc be paralyzed either alone or in conjunction with

the efferent to the detrusor, the bladder will become enormously distended; but if the distention continue, a point is reached when the sphincter is paralyzed by overstretching, when incontinence occurs and the urine dribbles away. There is the same effect if there be destruction of the cord at its lumbar enlargement. So long as the cord is intact the patient may partially empty the bladder by abdominal pressure. Again, if paralysis of the *sphincter vesicæ* occurs, incontinence succeeds as soon as urine has accumulated sufficiently to overcome the elastic closure of the bladder

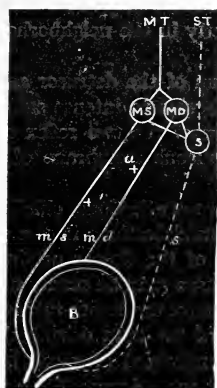


FIG. 81.—Diagram Showing Probable Plan of the Center for Micturition—(Gowers).  
 MT. Motor tract. ST. Sensory tract in the spinal cord. MS. Sphincter center, and *ms* motor nerve for sphincter. MD. Detrusor center, and *md* motor nerve for detrusor. *s*. Afferent nerve from mucous membrane to S, sensory portion of center. B. Bladder. At *r* the position during rest is indicated, the sphincter center in action, the detrusor center not acting. At *a* the condition during action is indicated, the sphincter center inhibited, the detrusor center acting.

orifice. It may also be slightly delayed by voluntary innervation of the sphincter, but is unrestrained during sleep. Hence at such time the patient wets the bed. Such incontinence is also manifested when the patient coughs or when in any way sudden pressure is brought to bear on the bladder. It is often seen in women who are said to have "weak" bladders. Combined detrusor and sphincter paralysis is followed by *dribbling* away of urine as soon as enough accumulates to overcome the elastic closure of the urethra, because there is no contraction of the bladder, and the outflow is a mere overflow.

#### MUSCULAR SPASM OF THE BLADDER—CYSTOSPASM.

**Symptoms.**—In detrusor spasm sudden evacuation of the bladder takes place. This occurs in hyperirritability of the mucous membrane of the bladder or of the reflex center in the cord as soon as a small amount of urine accumulates in the bladder. It may be controlled to a degree by a voluntary impulse to the sphincter, but at other times it is irresistible, and is especially prone to occur during sleep. To this class of cases belong many of the instances of incontinence in children.

In spasm of the sphincter, on the other hand, the orifice is kept forcibly closed, though this closure, too, may be intermitted by action of the will, permitting thus a small quantity of urine to be discharged at a time. As the urine accumulates the discomfort increases still further, when an attempt is often made to empty the bladder by straining efforts. This sometimes reacts on the sphincter, producing further contraction, which may extend to the bulbo-urethral and sphincter ani muscles, causing painful spasm. Such spasm, too, forcibly resists the introduction of a catheter. It may be due to hyperexcitability of the sensory reflex center or to irritation directly in the neighborhood of the sphincter, such as intense inflammation.

A combination of spasm of the detrusor and sphincter muscles may exist, giving rise in high degrees to intense suffering. It may be caused by a simultaneous irritation of the two reflex centers in the cord or by intense irritation of the mucous membrane of the bladder reflected to both sets of muscles.

In addition to the nervous affections, chiefly of the cord, which may occasion these symptoms, modifications in the sensibility of the mucous membrane of the bladder, of the deeper urethra and prostate may also occasion them. These changes may be purely neurotic. R. Ulzmann has refined the subject of neuroses of the genito-urinary system to a high degree, referring many symptoms of the kind described to an "exalted reflex excitability" caused by "overstrained physical, but especially by exciting mental activity," long kept up. Among these he mentions fright, pain, grief, loss of property, and the like, as well as the "gonorrheal process," excess in venery, and masturbation, apart from the organic processes of hyperemia, and even inflammation, which may be due to gonorrhea. The pure neurotic representatives of this class are unattended with changes in the urine, which is normal in every particular. These are not very uncommon, and they are often extremely difficult to treat successfully.

A comparatively frequent representative of this class is due to a hyperesthesia of the vesical mucous membrane, as the result of which the presence of the smallest quantity of urine gives rise to a pressing desire to empty the bladder, which is accomplished with spasm, pain, or other discomfort. As the result of this the patient must empty his bladder often—several times an hour, but much less frequently, if at all, at night. The urine is, as a rule, normal, and though sometimes concentrated, with a proportionate specific gravity, is still no more so than that which is commonly retained with perfect comfort. This occurs also sometimes in women.

Occasionally there is absolute loss of sensation in the vesical mucous membrane, apparently also functional, in consequence of which the urine accumulates without exciting the attention of the patient, and the bladder becomes thus overdistended.

**Treatment.**—Of *Incontinence* or *Enuresis*.—Previous to instituting treatment for these conditions the most careful inquiry must be made as to the cause, and its removal sought. This is often impossible, and treatment must then be empirical.

Incontinence most frequently calls for treatment. If due to disease

of the cord, it is amenable to treatment so far as such disease is, and in the meantime the patient must be protected by catheterization from the overdistention which is so apt to precede incontinence. Incontinence due to weak sphincters demands that this weakness should be treated by full doses of strychnin, which may be advantageously given in gradually ascending doses. Tincture of *nux vomica* may be substituted in ascending doses until 15 minim (1 c.c.) doses or more are attained. Electricity has been highly commended for this form of incontinence, in the shape of faradization, one pole being applied to the lumbar part of the spine and the other in the urethra, in the vagina, or to the perineum, the sittings being continued for a few minutes each day or every other day. Cold douches to the perineum are also useful.

If incontinence is due to hyperesthesia of the mucous membrane or to irritability of the bladder, belladonna is the accepted remedy. It should be given in ascending doses, and toward evening if it be nocturnal incontinence, so common in children. The physiological effect of the belladonna should be produced. The bromids may be combined with it or used separately. If there is irritability of the lumbar cord, ergot commends itself through its effect of diminishing congestion of the cord. The urine should receive attention, since a high degree of acidity or the presence of sediments of uric acid and of oxalate of lime may become the exciting causes of incontinence.

Incontinence in children (which is the most frequent variety met in practice) is a source of great annoyance, but in the majority of cases it subsides spontaneously not later than the 12th year. In its treatment in addition to the measures suggested, close investigation should be made for causes which should be removed. Masturbation especially in asylums and institutions is apt to be a cause of incontinence and should be carefully sought for.

Habit is sometimes a cause of incontinence in children, and encouragement of a cautious practice of holding the water may gradually correct the evil. Children should *not* be punished for incontinence, as the nervous apprehension excited only serves to make matters worse. General ill-health and irregular habits are sometimes responsible, and when these are corrected the patient recovers. Phimosis is sometimes a cause, and should be corrected if present. Indeed circumcision is sometimes a cure even when phimosis is not present.

*Of Retention.*—An overfull bladder should always be relieved by the catheter, and catheterization should be repeated as often as necessary to prevent recurring distention while the cause is being treated. When the retention is due to weakness of the detrusor muscle, strychnin will be of service. Electricity may also be used—one pole being placed behind the pubes and the other applied to the lumbar region.

If retention is due to spasm, the cause should be carefully sought. The same irritations referred to as causes of incontinence may produce spasm, and some of the same remedies are useful to relieve it, as belladonna and the bromids. Warm sitz-baths and full baths and enemas of warm water may be used at a temperature of 95° F. (35° C.) two or three times a day. In the event of failure with these measures, more

powerful anodynes may be used, including opium and morphin. These are best administered in the shape of a suppository containing from  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain to 1 grain (0.033 to 0.066 gm.) of extract of opium, and  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0165 gm.) of morphin. Ultzmann recommends, in cases of frequent micturition due to hyperesthesia of the prostate, injections through the prostatic urethra by a catheter which just reaches the membranous portion of the urethra. The solutions used are a  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of carbolic acid and a  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. solution of sulphate of zinc, increasing the strength as it is borne to three, four, and five per cent. These should be used once a day with a syringe holding 4 ounces (100 gm.), and the whole quantity should be thrown into the bladder in the manner prescribed.

Other forms of spasm must also be treated by sedatives, and, strange as it may seem, the passage of a sound will sometimes relieve such spasms.

Unfortunately, the causes of either of these conditions cannot always be ascertained, and a cure must be secured by passing from one remedy to another until the correct one is arrived at.

### HEMORRHOIDAL VEINS OF THE BLADDER.

Excluding all other causes of hemorrhage of the bladder heretofore considered, such as villous cancer, stone, and tuberculosis, there remains a cause of hemorrhage which, by exclusion, resolves itself into a hemorrhoidal state of the veins. Its subjects are only older persons, rarely under 60; it is rather copious and yet rarely fatal—in my experience never so—though fatal cases are reported.

Great care should be taken in the study of cases of this kind in order to make sure that the hemorrhage is not due to the more serious causes already considered, otherwise a grave mistake in prognosis, as well as in diagnosis, may occur. The bladder should be carefully explored by the sound and, if necessary, by the endoscope.

**Treatment.**—Hemorrhages from this source may occur and not be repeated, and it is this favorable termination, in the absence of stone or malignant disease, on which we are sometimes unfortunately compelled to rely for the diagnosis. Should the hemorrhage continue, astringent solutions— $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. and upward of alum and sulphate of zinc—may be injected into the bladder, always using the soft catheter. Absolute rest in bed should also be insisted upon. At the same time, the astringent drugs and mineral waters recommended under the treatment of hematuria may be tried, but it is hardly to be expected that astringent effects can be produced in the bladder through the route of the circulation by medicines administered by the mouth. In some cases, ergot appears to have been efficient in controlling these hemorrhages.

### MORBID GROWTHS OF THE BLADDER.

The bladder is subject to myoma, myxoma, sarcoma, and carcinoma, especially the variety known as villous cancer or papilloma; also to tuber-



culosis. Carcinoma may be primary, but is commonly secondary. The simplest histoid tumors are not clinically recognizable, one from the other.

**Symptoms.**—*Carcinoma of the bladder* may be suspected if, in addition to the usual symptoms of cystitis, hemorrhage is copious and persistent, if there is carcinoma elsewhere, and if there is rapidly-developed cachexia, and especially if there are other signs of secondary cancer in the vicinity. Occasionally villi of the papillomatous growth are passed in urine and easily recognized. Unless thus fortunate, the only certain means of diagnosis in the male, though not always to be relied on, is the endoscope, which, in the hands of a skillful manipulator, affords valuable assistance. In the case of the female it is easier and quite as satisfactory to dilate the urethra under ether and explore with the finger, though the endoscope may also be used.

The symptoms of *tuberculosis of the bladder* are those of cystitis, and the recognition of the bacillus of tuberculosis by microscopic examination affords the only sure means of differential diagnosis between it and other forms of inflammation of the bladder. It is, however, relatively easily found when present, especially if the urinary centrifuge is used.

**Treatment.**—If the diagnosis of villous cancer can be made early, the life of the patient may be prolonged by scraping the bladder, but in my experience the growth returns, sooner or later. In a few instances in which I have had surgeons operate for me in true cancer of the bladder, the result has been unfortunate—the patient perishing soon after the operation. The palliative treatment is that of cystitis. At the same time the counsel of a surgeon should be promptly sought.

The local treatment of tuberculosis of the bladder is that of cystitis. It demands the same general treatment as tuberculosis occurring elsewhere. See also p. 840.

## SECTION VIII.

### DISEASES OF DERANGED METABOLISM

#### (CONSTITUTIONAL DISEASES).

### RHEUMATISM AND RHEUMATOID AFFECTIONS.

**Historical.**—The term rheumatism was originally used to indicate morbid conditions associated with mucous discharges (Gr. *ῥευμα*, a flux), conditions to which the term catarrh was later applied and for which this term is still used. Rheumatism and gout were originally confounded under the name *ῥευματισμός*, first applied to gout and so used by Hippocrates (B. C. 460–357) and Aretæus (the latter half of first and beginning of second century A. D.), Sydenham (1633) was the first to separate the two conditions and to describe them intelligently.

#### ACUTE ARTICULAR RHEUMATISM OR RHEUMATIC FEVER.

(See Infectious Diseases.)

#### MUSCULAR RHEUMATISM.

SYNONYMS.—*Rheumatic Myositis; Myalgia.*

**Definition.**—A painful condition of voluntary muscles and their aponeurotic coverings, especially aggravated by motion and pressure. It affects especially large muscles, such as those of the neck, the shoulders, the arms, the back, the thighs, and the calves of the legs, and the intercostal muscles.

**Etiology and Pathology.**—Exposure to cold, damp and wet, and especially to drafts of cool air, as from an open door or window, is the most frequent cause. The acute form, at least, does not move about, but persists in the muscles primarily attacked until relieved. Barometric changes with or without the approach of rain may increase the severity of the pain, more particularly in the chronic variety.

Its true nature is unknown, and whether it is an affection of muscular substance or of the intermuscular connective tissue is also unknown. From the supposed rôle played by the latter, the term “fibrositis” has been suggested as a substitute for muscular rheumatism.<sup>1</sup> Certain forms of muscular rheumatism, especially that of the back, are ascribed to gout. An infectious origin has been suggested. It is sometimes associated with articular rheumatism, but has probably a different etiology, though like exciting causes operate to produce it. Similar pain often succeeds muscular strain, but it is doubtful if this should be called muscular rheumatism.

The division of muscular rheumatism into *acute* and *chronic* is based upon the duration of the pain and upon its disposition to recurrence. The term chronic is justified by those forms which recur with changes

<sup>1</sup>For an excellent paper by Arthur P. Luff, enlarging these views, see “Clinical Journal,” Oct. 11, 1905. “Forms of The Diagnosis and Treatment of Some of the So-called Rheumatism.”

in the weather, and are either excited or relieved by them. It, too, is less localized than the acute. On the other hand, it is not inaptly at times called wandering. It is more common in men than in women, because of their more frequent exposure to its cause.

**Symptoms.**—The only invariable symptom is *pain*, aggravated by motion or pressure. Sometimes there is *swelling*. It is usually rather sudden in its onset, requiring at most but a few hours, and often less, to develop it. It is never accompanied by marked constitutional disturbance. The *pulse* may be somewhat accelerated, and the *temperature* may approach 100° F. (37.8° C.), but more often there is no fever at all.

Muscular rheumatism is especially named according as it involves special muscles. Thus, *lumbago* is a painful affection of the lumbar muscles and their tendinous attachments. The attacks come on under the conditions already named, but sometimes suddenly without discoverable cause. The suddenness of its occurrence under these circumstances—as, for example, subsequent to a simple twist or stooping—has given rise to the term “kink in the back,” or, among the Germans, to the word *Hexenschuss*, or “witches’ shot.” It has seemed to me that this sudden pain was really a “cramp,” being entirely analogous to the cramps which seize the muscles in other localities. The strain in most cases is altogether too insignificant to cause laceration. As a consequence, the body is at times immovable as in a vice, so excruciating is the pain caused by motion.

Rheumatic *stiff neck* or *torticollis* (as contrasted with congenital and spasmodic torticollis, p. 1131) is an affection of the side and back of the neck, forcing the patient to hold his neck to one side as the situation of least discomfort, and when he desires to turn his head he is forced to turn the whole body. The relief given to pain by dropping the head toward the painful side may be ascribed to relaxation and not contraction of the muscle. In a few instances the pain is on the side opposite that toward which the head is drawn, in the muscle which is on the stretch.<sup>1</sup> Sometimes it becomes chronic and is rather difficult to cure. It is more frequently met in children and young adults.

*Omalgia* is a similar condition of the muscles of the shoulder and upper arm, making motion exquisitely painful. Ankylosis of the shoulder joint may be caused by delayed motion. *Pleurodynia* affects the intercostal muscles and makes breathing and coughing very painful, while a deep breath becomes impossible and sneezing an agony. The pectoral and serratus muscles may also be involved when the pain is higher up. It occurs more frequently on the left side.

*Cephalodynia*, or rheumatism of the muscles of the scalp, *scapulodynia*, and *dorsodynia* are all forms of muscular rheumatism which explain themselves. It also affects the *abdominal muscles*, and a most interesting instance of this form simulating peritonitis was published by myself in the “Philadelphia Medical Times,” volume x., 1880.

The duration of the acute form is brief, seldom lasting for more than a few days, though there may be a tendency to relapse. The chronic forms are indefinite in duration.

<sup>1</sup> See a paper on “Rheumatic Torticollis” (with references) by John M. Swan, “Philadelphia Polyclinic,” Sep. 3, 1898.

**Diagnosis.**—This is easy for the coarser acute forms of omalgia, stiff neck, and lumbago. Muscular rheumatism may, however, be confounded with *neuritis* and *neuralgia*. In muscular rheumatism the pain is more diffuse; in neuritis there is pain with tenderness more localized and along the course of large nerve trunks. Muscular rheumatism and neuritis are distinctly worse on motion; neuralgia less so. Rheumatism is commonly relieved by the warmth of the bed; neuritis may be aggravated while neuralgia is uninfluenced by this cause and increased by cold winds. *Pleurodynia* is sometimes difficult to distinguish from intercostal neuralgia, but attention to the points named will prevent mistakes. *Neuritis of the brachial nerve trunks* resembles omalgia, but the former is early followed by atrophy, while muscular rheumatism is not. From *pleurisy*, pleurodynia is easily distinguished by the absence of fever and of physical signs. The lancinating pains of *locomotor ataxia* and the pains of *incipient disease of the vertebræ* resemble at first those of lumbago, but the special symptoms of these diseases are soon superadded.

**Treatment.**—The *acute* form of muscular rheumatism is occasionally amenable to treatment by the *salicylates* and *salicin*. Some phenomenally good results sometimes follow the use of these remedies. They are, however, inconstant, and if, after a fair trial, such results are not promptly attained, the drugs should be omitted. If efficient, the same rules as to their continued use in reduced doses after relief has been obtained apply as in acute articular rheumatism. The group of muscles treated must be placed at *absolute rest*, and in the case of the thorax this is best accomplished by strapping the side with adhesive plaster. Rest may, however, be overdone, in case of muscles like those of the shoulder in which atrophy may result from too prolonged a rest. Another measure of great value is *dry heat*, applied by means of a hot-water bag covered with flannel, or by a warm flat-iron. To use a popular expression, a muscular rheumatism may thus be sometimes “ironed out.” A flannel cloth should be interposed. With these measures may also be associated massage. Sometimes a single efficient treatment by massage is enough to “rub out” such a rheumatism. Of less permanent utility are hot poultices, although they allay pain, at least. The same effect is accomplished by moist hot-air or vapor (steam) baths, which, in special establishments, can be localized.

The chronic form is also treated by massage, passive motion, and electricity, either the induced or direct current. Counterirritation by liniments, such as those made with chloroform, ammonia hydrate, or turpentine, have long enjoyed a reputation, but at the present day it is beginning to be questioned as to whether, after all, it is not the friction, rather than the liniment itself, which produces the good effect. Some efficiency in the liniment itself, I think, must still be admitted, and I would advise its use as determined by circumstances. Acupuncture, consisting in the puncture by needles thrust deeply into the skin, is a measure which has some advocates, especially in the treatment of lumbago. My experience with it is limited. Hydrotherapy is more likely to be useful, and here the warm or cold pack is the better method of application. Dry-cupping is also often of service. Small blisters should not be forgotten.

General treatment should not be neglected: cod-liver oil, iron, strychn-

nin, quinin, and good food are necessary measures when the patient is run down. Among diseases which need nutritious food, chronic muscular rheumatism is preeminent.

### CHRONIC ARTICULAR RHEUMATISM.

**Definition.**—A term, often vaguely applied, which should be restricted to chronic inflammatory swelling involving the soft tissues of the joint, not due to sepsis, traumatism or tuberculosis.

**Etiology.**—Occasionally a sequel of acute rheumatism, it is more frequently of independent origin in those subject to prolonged exposure to cold and dampness or to changes in the weather. It is often a sequel of the subacute form, as the subacute is of the acute. On the other hand, it sometimes precedes the acute and subacute forms. It is a disease usually of middle life, and is more frequent among the poor and the working classes. Evidence, to the effect that many of the cases of so-called chronic articulation rheumatism are due to a pathogenic organism of no settled variety, is growing. Most recent studies in this direction have been by Goldthwait,<sup>1</sup> Schüller<sup>2</sup> and Fayerweather<sup>3</sup>.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This, superficially, is similar to that of acute rheumatism, but the internal joint changes are more marked. The joint is enlarged chiefly because the capsule and tendons are thickened, as are also the sheaths of the tendons, explaining the difficulty of motion and the stiffness. The cartilages may be involved and eroded in chronic cases. On the other hand, the joint tissues may be unaltered. In protracted cases, especially when there is neuritis, atrophy of the muscles covering the joints takes place, producing marked deformity. In these cases, too, there may be ankylosis. At other times there is distention of the joint with effusion, the pressure of which upon the muscles themselves or on the vessels leading to them may be responsible for the atrophy.

**Symptoms.**—These are chiefly *stiffness and pain in the joints*, including their muscular and fibrous coverings. The latter is characteristically increased on motion, while the stiffness is often diminished by exercise. There may be little swelling, but marked *tenderness* to the touch, though not always. All the symptoms are aggravated by cool and damp weather, and often by other unknown meteorological influences. They are almost invariably improved by warm weather. There is rarely slight fever, nor is the pulse much altered. The stiffness may pass into actual immobility due to ankylosis, and there may be distortions of the joint, as described under morbid anatomy. Cardiac lesions as the direct result of the cause do not occur, but the valves may gradually be sclerosed, and fibroid changes may take place in the muscle.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not usually difficult. The age of the patient, the family history, the varying amount of the pain, the multiple joint affection, and the large size of the joints involved, the effect of motion, and the slight fever are sufficient to distinguish it from *gout* and *surgical monarthritis*.

<sup>1</sup>"Boston Med. and Surg. Jour.," April 7, 1904.

<sup>2</sup>Verhandlung, Congres. für. inn. Med., Berlin, 1907. "Berliner klin. Wochenschr.," 1900, Nos. 5, 6, 7.

<sup>3</sup>"Infectious Arthritis: A Bacteriological Contribution to the Differentiation of Rheumatic Affections." "Am. Jour. Med. Sci.," Dec., 1905.

**Prognosis.**—This, as to cure, is unfavorable, unless the patient can be removed to a warm climate. Generally, in spite of treatment, the symptoms gradually grow worse as the patient ages, though his life is rarely shortened. Yet unaccountable improvement sometimes takes place.

**Treatment.**—The remedies useful in acute rheumatism are not usually efficient in the chronic form. Occasionally acute exacerbations are relieved by the salicylates. Of drugs sometimes serviceable, the iodid of potassium and bichlorid of mercury may be named. Cod-liver oil, iron, and tonics are often useful by building up the strength of the patient. Guaiacum is a drug which still maintains some reputation in the treatment of chronic rheumatism. It is usually given in the form of the tincture or ammoniated tincture, 5 to 30 minims (0.3 to 2 c.c.), four times a day, preferably in milk.

*Local treatment* is more important than internal medication. Counter-irritation by iodin or blisters persistently kept up is sometimes useful. Encasing the joints in red-flannel bandages occasionally gives relief and is a convenient adjuvant. Massage is undoubtedly an efficient measure, though its effects are not always permanent. It is especially useful when there is atrophy of muscles, in which condition it may be combined with electricity and passive motion. A local application quite efficient is a mixture of equal part of chloral hydrate, camphor and menthol rubbed together, and applied to the painful area by a brush or cotton, then rubbed in with the fingers. The menthol may be omitted if the cooling sensation is complained of.

Hot baths, which should be taken at night, give temporary relief, but in my experience it is not always permanent. Even the systematic baths at the various hot springs, as those of Virginia, Arkansas, St. Catharine's and Banf, in Canada, and elsewhere, which are undoubtedly serviceable, are apt to be followed by relapses. More satisfactory is permanent residence in a warm climate for those who can afford it.

In some of the obstinate forms of this affection, the Tallerman-Sheffield hot dry-air treatment may reasonably be expected to be of service, and should be tried. In this treatment the affected part is exposed to a temperature of 250° to 300° F. (121° to 148.7° C.).

See also treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.

#### JOINT AFFECTIONS SIMULATING RHEUMATISM.

These include numerous joint inflammations of septic origin, such as occur in septicemia, scarlet fever, diphtheria, and the like. They have all been appropriately referred to when treating of the infectious diseases.

#### ARTHRITIS DEFORMANS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Chronic Rheumatic Arthritis; Rheumatoid Arthritis; Osteoarthritis; Rheumatic Joint.*

**Definition.**—A deforming disease of the joints, regarded by most authorities as distinct from gout and rheumatism, and characterized by destructive changes in the synovial membranes, cartilages, and bone, and by bony outgrowths restricting the motion of the joint.

**Historical.**—Sydenham (1633), Musgrave (1763), Haller (1764), and de Sauvages (1768) allude to the characteristic changes in the bone due to arthritis deformans, but the first correct description was read by Landre Beauvais before the Paris Academy of Medicine, August 3, 1800, under the name "Goute Asthénique Primitive." William Heberden, Sr. (1710–1801), of England,<sup>1</sup> was, however, the first to recognize its true clinical position as something distinct from gout and rheumatism on the terminal finger-joints, since known as Heberden's nodosities. Haygarth's paper on "Nodosity of the Joints," in 1805, describes the disease clinically, and he remarked upon the peculiar liability of its occurrence in the female sex. Robert Smith (1835), R. Adams, and Charcot (1868) contributed to its morbid anatomy; Trastour (1853), Vidal (1853), and Charcot to its clinical aspects. Charcot and Trastour regarded it as a variety of chronic rheumatism, as do Mitchell Bruce, of England, and Kahler, of Vienna, at the present day. H. W. Fuller (1852) and A. B. Garrod (1859) described the disease accurately as something distinct from gout and rheumatism, basing their views on the absence of the visceral complications of these two diseases. Jonathan Hutchinson and others at the present day still hold that the disease is the product of a blending of gout and rheumatism. J. K. Mitchell suggested a nervous origin for the multiple form, and this idea has been developed by Senator (1877) and R. Wichmann (1890) in Germany, W. M. Ord (1884) and Dyce Duckworth (1884) in England, L. Weber (1884) in America, and others, until at the present day this neurotrophic view seems to be the most popular. Arbutnot Lane (1891) attaches much importance to mechanical wear and tear in the production of the lesions. Archibald E. Garrod contributed an exhaustive paper to volume ii. of the "Twentieth Century Practice of Medicine," 1895, from which the facts of this historical sketch are mainly drawn. In 1897, James Stewart, of Montreal, read before the Section on Medicine of the British Medical Association a paper in which an infectious origin of the disease was supported.

**Etiology.**—Although in the clinical features of its incipency arthritis sometimes closely resembles the mild form of acute rheumatism, its independence of rheumatism and gout and their causes is generally conceded. Heredity, however, plays a likely, if not an important, rôle. Some relation to gout is still claimed. Thus, the late J. M. Da Costa said rheumatoid arthritis is the form assumed by hereditary gout in the female. Females are much more liable to the disease than males, especially sterile women and those who have had uterine or ovarian disease. A. E. Garrod collected 500 cases, of which 411 were females and only 89 males. It is a disease said to be as common in the rich as in the poor, though I have seen many more of the latter, perhaps because of hospital practice. It usually begins between the ages of 20 and 30, but it may occur in children under 12 and as late as 50. The beginning of the menstrual period in women is a favorite time for its incipency.

Traumatism, often assigned by the subjects of the disease as a cause, has commonly no well-sustained relation, but must be allowed as a factor in *monarthritic* cases. Exposure, cold, and dietetic errors are ruled out at the present day as exciting causes, yet sometimes it seems impossible to exclude them. Certainly, insufficient food seems to favor the disease. Shock, worry, care, and grief are alleged causes.

**Nature of the Disease.**—The neurotrophic theory of the disease suggested by the late J. K. Mitchell, and additionally supported by Charcot's studies of the arthropathies, certainly explains the phenomena better than any other. According to this view, there must be allowed a lesion of the spinal cord, either primary or secondary to peripheral irritation, the result of uterine or traumatic disease. The reasons in favor of it are,

<sup>1</sup> "Commentaries on the History and Cure of Diseases" by William Heberden, Sr., a posthumous work, edited by his son, W. Heberden, Jr., was published in English and Latin in London in 1802 by T. Payne. It was arranged in 1782 by the elder Heberden, who was born in 1710 and died in 1801. On page 148 of the English edition appears the short article on "Nodes of the Fingers," in which he says: "They have no connection with the gout, being found in persons who never had it."

briefly, the symmetrical distribution of the articular dystrophies in the multiple form, the primary invasion of peripheral joints, and the centripetal extension of the disease; its etiology, the atrophy of muscles, the contractures, the occasional skin dystrophies manifested by pigmentation and local sweating. All these are, however, offset by the absence of anatomical evidence of spinal cord lesion, without which evidence the theory must still be regarded as not proved. The reflex origin of a cord lesion was especially supported by W. M. Ord.<sup>1</sup>

At the present day the infectious origin of the disease is gaining supporters. In evidence of this may be mentioned the paper of James Stewart read before the British Medical Association at its meeting in Montreal, 1897. Recent studies by C. A. Herter<sup>2</sup> and Wakeman<sup>3</sup> find evidence of perverted metabolism in the presence in the urine of an organic acid, other than that normally present probably due to intestinal putrefaction, which was found constantly excessive in those patients who had active symptoms of the disease. More recently G. A. Bannatyne, F. J. Poynton, Payne, Chaufford and Fayerweather have added further testimony. (See Chronic Rheumatism.)

**Morbid Anatomy.**—All three of the structures which enter into the formation of the joint share in the process, but the changes probably begin in the cartilages. These consist in a proliferation of the cartilage cells, succeeded by fibrillation of the intercellular substance, which subsequently undergoes mucous degeneration, liquefaction, and absorption. Thus, the bone ends are laid bare. These subsequently become atrophied, smooth, and eburnated. The bone ends and joint cavities are alike distorted; concavities may become convexities, and convexities concavities. The edges of the cartilages where overlapped by synovial membranes, thicken and form outgrowths, which subsequently ossify and become the osteophytes which contribute to the deformity of the bone, sometimes also forming rims or lips. The effect of the latter is to impair motion without producing actual ankylosis, except in very rare instances, which may include even vertebre. The synovial membranes also become thickened and the fringes hypertrophied. Effusion is sometimes present in the joints and in the bursæ. Fragments of cartilage may be attached to the tufts, or, becoming detached, they may lie loose in the joint. Muscular atrophy also makes a conspicuous part of the morbid changes.

**Symptoms.**—If the joint lesions be made the criterion of the presence of arthritis deformans, any remaining difference in symptoms depends mainly upon the grouping and extent of these lesions. Hence it is more convenient to subdivide them into clinical varieties. Two such are easily made:

1. Multiple arthritis deformans, including (a) Heberden's nodosities on the small joints and (b) the progressive form, in which large joints are successively invaded in an acute or a chronic manner.
2. The monarthritic or partial form, in which one or two joints are alone attacked.

<sup>1</sup> "Trans. of the Clinical Society," 1879, xiii.

<sup>2</sup> Herter. "Pathology of Acid Intoxications." "Trans. of Association of American Physicians," vol. xv., 1900.

<sup>3</sup> Wakeman and Herter. "Notes on Intoxications." "Proceedings of N. Y. Path. Society," 1900-1901.



## I. MULTIPLE ARTHRITIS DEFORMANS.

(a) **HEBERDEN'S NODOSITIES.**—These are prominences or nodules which develop gradually on the sides and ends of the distal phalanges, especially of the fingers and sometimes also of the toes. Women are the most frequent subjects, and the development begins usually between the 30th and 40th years, and gradually increases with age, but varies also at times and seasons independently of this gradual increase. The pain and tenderness also vary, being usually worse when the hands become cold, and especially when accidentally struck. At other times they are insensitve. These same nodosities occur in gout, and are especially attributed by the laity to gout, but this is an error. They may be considered of probable gouty nature when they are aggravated by errors of diet. They are quite independent of the tophaceous deposits of gout, which



FIG. 82.—Heberden's Nodosities.

From a photograph of the hand of a patient of the author.

are altogether absent in arthritis deformans. Persons in whom they are permanently present rarely have the large joints invaded, and, indeed, are said to have promise of long life. Subcutaneous nodules, similar to those characteristic of acute rheumatism, are also found in rheumatoid arthritis.

(b) **THE PROGRESSIVE FORM.**—This may be acute or chronic. The *acute* form simulates in its beginning a mild form of rheumatic fever in young women of from 20 to 30 years, but it may occur also in children. There are swelling of the joints, tenderness, and fever. These may continue without material change for weeks, or may abate to recur with increased severity; on the whole, however, growing worse, until the permanently enlarged and distorted state to be described is established.

In the *chronic* form the same changes develop more slowly and without fever, maintaining with remarkable constancy a symmetrical order of development, the order of frequency being the hands, knees, feet, ankles, wrists, elbows, shoulders, jaws, cervical spine, hips, and dorsal spine.

The most striking changes are seen in the knees, which become enlarged and so fixed that the legs are constantly flexed on the thighs, and the thighs on the trunk. These *flexions* may be contributed to by *contractures*, which may, however, arise secondarily, subsequent to the flexion, or form *pari passu* with it. They are seen in the upper extremity as well as in the lower, producing the "seal-fin" deflection at the wrist and a rectangular bend at the elbow. The actual *enlargement* is exaggerated in appearance because of wasting of the adjacent muscles and thickening of the capsular ligament. Its surface becomes hard and shining. There may also be some *effusion* in the joint, though the condition has been called by the French *arthrite sèche*. Motion grows more and more difficult, until the joint is almost locked, and grating and crackling attend attempt at motion. *Pain* varies greatly: at times it is very severe, at others it is quiescent, but it is always excited by attempt at motion. *Tingling*, *numbness* of the hands and feet, and *local sweating* and *skin pigmentations* are not uncommon among the early symptoms, and are regarded as trophic in origin. Day by day the patient becomes more helpless and, in the absence of fresh air, wan, weary, and anemic. Fortunately, in many cases the fingers are unencumbered, and the patient may be able to occupy himself or herself in some handiwork, such occupation serving to make more bearable a life of virtual imprisonment. *Weather* has its influences; diet rarely. The condition is singularly free from complications of all kinds.

## 2. THE PARTIAL OR MONARTHROTIC FORM.

This affects men more frequently than women, and of these, elderly men. The hip-joint is a frequent site, constituting the *morbus coxæ*, or chronic rheumatic arthritis of Adams, whose studies of this subject have added so much to our knowledge of the morbid anatomy. The other joints affected are the knee, the shoulder, and the vertebral articulations. It is often traced, rightly or wrongly, to injury. It is not always unassociated with disease in other joints, as there may be Heberden's nodosities, or the disease may involve in a less degree the corresponding joint on the other side. *Wasting* of the muscles of the buttock and thigh is a conspicuous associated symptom. The *knee-jerk* is commonly increased on the affected side. An interesting, though unusual, symptom, when the hip is affected, is the presence of a large *cyst* at some distance from the joint, ascribed by W. Marrant Baker<sup>1</sup> to an outflow of the serum from an overfilled joint to a point at which it is restrained by the muscular and other tissues of the part.

This form may occur in children, in whom it has been especially described by Still and is characterized by bony thickening and lipping about the joints as in adults.

**Diagnosis.**—This is rarely difficult. Arthritis deformans differs widely from *gout* in the total absence of tophaceous deposits, and from *acute rheumatism* in the absence of fever, though in the incipency of the progressive multi-articular form there is a certain resemblance to *acute*

<sup>1</sup> "St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports," xiii, 1877; xxi, 1885.

rheumatism, while in the more advanced stage, a stage in which the joint lesions are conspicuous, it resembles also *chronic* articular rheumatism. This will be appreciated when it is remembered that some regard it as only a further development of chronic rheumatism. The lapse of time may be necessary to determine which it is. The atrophied shoulder of *omoneuritis* also somewhat resembles the monarticular form, but the greater tenderness and painfulness, as well as acuteness, of this affection distinguish it. The arthropathies attending *locomotor ataxia* and *syringomyelia* are distinguished by the symptoms peculiar to them and by the absence of osteophytes.

**Treatment.**—This is not generally promising, and the usual remedies for rheumatism are of little avail. Yet treatment is by no means unavailing, especially if instituted early, and we may always hold out to the patient the hope of arrest at some stage. The principle of treatment consists in efforts to *improve nutrition* by means of good food and tonics, of which cod-liver oil, iron, iodine, and arsenic are the most efficient. A systematic course of these remedies, continuous, except so far as judicious intermission may be necessary, will sometimes accomplish surprising results if instituted early and continued perseveringly. The iodid, either in the form of the pill or syrup, is the best preparation of iron. A grain (0.066 gm.) of the former and 15 minims (1 c.c.) of the latter are suitable doses three times a day. Massage is, perhaps, the single measure calculated to be of most use, and if cod-liver oil and iron be used in connection with it, further benefit may be expected. Disappointing as the treatment often is, in a few cases surprising results may be obtained. One of the most serious drawbacks in certain cases is the difficulty in securing outdoor life and the advantage of exercise. One of the objects of massage must be to substitute the latter, while every possible effort should be made to have the patient in the open air as much as possible, and when his means will permit it, to take advantage of residence in warm but dry climates. It is very important to avoid the use of anodynes altogether, if possible. The relief afforded by them is but temporary, they militate against the effort at securing an improved nutrition, and, above all, there is danger of forming the morphin habit. Simple support by splints is sometimes a comfort to patients. The treatment by *hydrotherapy*, as carried out at Aix-les-Bains and Aix-la-Chapelle in Europe undoubtedly affords temporary relief. The same may be said of the treatment at the Hot Springs of Arkansas, Virginia, and North Carolina in this country, and at St. Catharine's in Canada. While general steam baths are contraindicated by reason of their debilitating effect, local vapor baths applied to separate limbs or portions of limbs by a specially constructed apparatus are sometimes useful. Some mention should be made of the electric bath. Like so many remedies, it is often of service at first, but I have yet to see any permanent good results follow its use. It may, however, be tried in cases which have resisted other treatment. The bath should be given under intelligent supervision and the current should be weak at first.

Much was expected first from the hot dry-air or Tallerman-Sheffield treatment of this disease. Temporarily it does produce relief of pain,

but I have been unable to learn that any permanent benefit has been secured.

The bowels should receive close attention, the body should be frequently bathed, preferably in warm water, and all measures desirable to secure the most perfect personal hygiene should be practiced. This is another of the few diseases where an abundance of good, nourishing food is necessary. This is the more important when we remember that many cases originate among the poor and badly fed. The use of wine, porter, stout, and ale should be encouraged.

Having a highly intelligent friend afflicted for many years with rheumatoid arthritis whose circumstances permitted him to seek every available means of relief, I asked him to give me the benefit of his experience. He replied in a letter so sensible, and which appeared to me to contain the truth so well condensed, that I append it with the belief that it will be useful.

"I received no benefit at any of the following places: Aix-les-Bains,\* Bourbonne, Royat, Wiesbaden, Homburg,\* Carlsbad,\* Gastein,\* Wiltbad,\* Acqui,\* Montesumano, Richfield (N. Y.), Green Sulphur (Fla.). In all the places marked with an \* there were people to all appearances affected similarly to myself who did receive benefit, and at the same time there were others also so afflicted who were made worse. In short, I am convinced from my experience that no physician can definitely settle what spring will be of the greatest service to any patient, and that the only chance of finding this out will be for him to select those which he thinks will be of the most service and let the patient try them in turn. In this way the patient will perhaps find one which will either materially alleviate or absolutely cure him. I found that the mud baths of Battaglia, Italy, did me the most good, but they, at the same time, nearly cost me my life. I am also convinced that rheumatoid arthritis cannot be successfully treated by giving the same remedies to different people suffering from it. There must be variations in our general make-up as there are in our features. In my judgment, therefore, each patient must be a law to himself. He must find out for himself by judicious experiments the food and drink that he can best assimilate, and confine himself to them, even if the usual practice would indicate that they ought to injure him. I also think that no patient ought to take any hot baths anywhere without ample nourishment of some kind, for a depleted diet and terrific perspiration have done me great harm, for it was like 'burning my candle at both ends.' My experience has convinced me that careful attention to diet, outdoor exercise, freedom from anxiety, and good digestion are much more serviceable than any springs in the world."

## GOUT.

SYNONYM.—*Podagra*.

**Definition.**—An acute and chronic constitutional affection, due to an abnormal accumulation of uric acid in the blood and tissues, causing various symptoms, of which arthritis is the most distinctive and significant.

**Historical.**—With the exception of the classic work of Thomas Sydenham, "*Tractatus de podagrâ et hydrope*," published in 1683, and based upon his own case, he having been himself a victim for 40 years,—the history of our knowledge of gout is the history of the development of its pathology, which begins with Wollaston's discovery in 1797 that the deposits in the joints and vicinity in this disease are largely composed of uric acid. Previous to this time a humoral view of the nature of gout was accepted, though without tangible foundation. In 1784 Cullen promulgated the nervous theory of gout which was adopted from G. E. Stahl. Cullen's theory did not entirely exclude the humoralistic, since he allowed that a morbid substance appeared in the blood of some gouty persons after a time, but as the effect of the disease rather than as its cause. (See also Pathology.)

**Etiology.**—The tendency to gout is more frequently inherited, but is also acquired. Between 50 and 60 per cent. of all cases of gout can be traced to ancestry, parents or grandparents. More men are gouty than women, and it is the male line through which the tendency is most frequently transmitted. It is not usually manifested until after 40 years of age, sometimes later, but the signs which are almost sure to eventuate in gout may show themselves before the 12th year. While over-eating, especially of meats, and intemperate drinking, associated with the luxurious habits which grow out of the possession of wealth, are the most frequent causes of acquired gout, these last are by no means essential. Sir Dyce Duckworth's studies of gout in what is probably the richest field in the world, London, go to show that many of the peasantry of Ireland, among whom gout is unknown, became gouty after having lived for a time in London. This may be due to free indulgence in malt liquors. Such gout is often spoken of as poor man's gout. Not every person who inherits a tendency to gout becomes gouty, since the fostering causes previously mentioned may be wanting. In others this tendency is so great as not even to require the favoring condition. Negroes are not exempt, and Osler reports three out of 59 cases admitted to Johns Hopkins Hospital, up to April 1, 1905.

While alcohol is an acknowledged cause of gout, it has been observed that something depends on the shape in which it is presented. Malt liquors, especially the "heavy" English ales and beers, strong in alcohol, are more active in the production of gout than the lighter beers consumed in Germany and this country where gout is less common. Strümpell believes, however, that gout is more common in Germany and especially in Bavaria than is commonly supposed. The strong and sweet wines, of which port and sherry are the type, are strongly predisposing, while pure whisky is less harmful. The glycogenic substances in the malts and sweet wines are probably responsible as sources of acid fermentation products in the stomach, which, after absorption, reduce the alkalinity of the blood and impair its solvent power over uric acid.

An interesting cause of gout is lead-poisoning. This is seen particularly in England and especially in London, as pointed out by Sir Alfred Garrod in 1854. It is, however, rare in other parts of Great Britain and Ireland, and is growing more infrequent in London; for in 1870, according to Garrod, 33 per cent. of people who suffered from gout had been poisoned by lead, while Sir Dyce Duckworth, up to 1890, found only 18 per cent. in hospital cases. It is a rare cause also in France and Germany. It may be, as suggested by Alexander Haig, that the effect of plumbism is to diminish the alkalinity of the blood and thus its solvent power

for uric acid which is consequently precipitated. In this country the combination is comparatively rare.

Injuries and blows on susceptible parts, and so slight a cause as pressure by a boot, are often predisposing causes. On the other hand, worry or shock may be exciting causes.

**Pathogeny.**—It is the habit at the present day to speak of gout as a result of faulty metabolism; and that this faulty metabolism results in an accumulation of uric acid in the blood and tissues. The fact that views as to the origin and formation of uric acid have changed does not affect its relation to gout. It may, however, be worth while to state briefly what these modern views are. According to them, uric acid is not, as was formerly supposed, an earlier stage in proteid oxidation of which urea is the end-product, but is derived from the nucleins of the ingested food and of the body cells, especially leukocytes. The production takes place in all organs of the body, but especially in those rich in nuclei, viz., the spleen and lymphatic glands. Alongside of uric acid are formed also the so-called xanthin or purin bases, including xanthin, hypoxanthin or sarcin, episarcin and others; these represent earlier stages of oxidation. The more active the oxidation the larger the proportion of uric acid and the less the xanthins. The xanthins are toxic, uric acid nontoxic but locally irritant. Since uric acid is largely derived from the food ingested, it is therefore influenced, by such foods, whence it is plain the new views affect the treatment of gout rather than its pathology. Whether, however, the uric acid thus responsible is the result of increased formation or diminished excretion, or both, is not well settled. As early as 1797, Wollaston showed that the deposits in the joints and vicinity were a compound of uric acid. About 1838 Sir Henry Holland suggested that the peccant material was uric acid in the blood. This was, indeed, suspected by others, but it was not until 1848 that Sir Alfred Garrod furnished the first demonstrative evidence of such accumulation by his well-known thread test.<sup>1</sup>

Alexander Haig<sup>2</sup> claims that there is "almost never" an excessive formation of uric acid at any time, and that its accumulation in the blood and body is generally due to retention or failure of excretion; that uric acid is, on the whole, continuously formed in the proportion of 1 to 33 of urea. In certain states of the blood, consisting essentially in increased alkalinity, uric acid is held in solution in larger quantity, constituting uricacidemia. At such times, too, it is eliminated in increased quantity in the urine, by which it is also readily held in solution because of the alkalinity of this secretion. In opposite states of the blood the uric acid is driven out of this fluid and deposited in the tissues of the joints. Haig holds, also, that these opposite conditions, which are fluctuations in secretion only, can be artificially produced by drugs, food, temperature, and other conditions influencing the reaction of the blood. Thus, alkalies, alkaline foods, and warm weather favor the former—*i. e.*, solution—while acids and cold weather favor precipitation, and it is under influences

<sup>1</sup> This is done as follows: To two drams (8 gm.) of serum from a blister add five or six minims (0.33 to 0.390 gm.) of acetic acid in a watch-glass. A thread immersed in this will in a few hours show an incrustation of uric acid. This reaction is not confined to gout. It occurs in chlorosis and leukemia.

<sup>2</sup> "Uric Acid as a Factor in the Causation of Disease," by Alexander Haig, London, 1892.

like these that uric acid in the form of urates is stored up in the body. He further says that the blood never becomes loaded with uric acid except as the result of previous imperfect excretion, and such imperfect excretion or retention is sufficient to account for the largest quantities he has ever seen in the human body, and that it is not necessary to suppose excessive formation in explanation. Further, that he does not assert that such formation never occurs, only that he has never met any conclusive proof of its occurrence, while all the phenomena of disease can be explained without presupposing the excessive formation of a single grain.

The ultimate result is, however, the same. Whether it be from diminished excretion or increased formation, or both, there is an accumulation of uric acid in the blood which is responsible, first, for certain premonitory symptoms of gout, and, second, for certain local symptoms. The latter are of an inflammatory nature, and consist essentially of pain, swelling, and redness of the joints, preferably of the smaller ones, and especially of the metatarsophalangeal articulation of the great toe: more frequently, perhaps, of the left great toe.

As to the relation of the uric acid compounds to the local inflammation, it is scarcely necessary to say that uric acid does not exist in the blood in an uncombined state, even in pathological conditions. The normal urates, as originally shown by Bence Jones, and confirmed by Sir William Roberts, are quadriurates. Such is the composition of the urate sediments in urine. In the pathological state these are converted into the less soluble biurates, which make up the local deposits. It has all along been considered that these deposits are the direct cause of the gouty inflammations. Haig, as the result of his recent researches, reasserts this view in the following graphic language:<sup>1</sup>

"Then I also noticed that in curing a headache by giving an acid to diminish the excretion of uric acid, I always produced a certain amount of pricking and shooting pain in my joints (generally in those which had been most used on the day in question), and it naturally occurred to me that the uric acid was held back in these joints and produced the pains. The uric acid which had failed to appear in the urine must have gone somewhere. What more natural than to suppose that it had been retained in the joints (where in gout it is found), and that the pricking pains were the evidence of its presence? Then, on turning to Sir Alfred Garrod, I find that he had described precisely similar joint pains as occurring in gouty subjects immediately after the ingestion of beer or wine, and a very little investigation sufficed to prove that all wines and beers are strongly acid, so that a very simple explanation could be given of the facts."

E. Pfeiffer holds that both gout and gravel arise from the fact that in these conditions uric acid is produced and excreted in a form difficult of solution. He believes, too, that such patients excrete on an average less uric acid, that the blood becomes overcharged with it and the uric acid salts are deposited in different parts of the body unnoticed and without symptoms of irritation. The attacks of gout occur when from any cause the alkalinity of the blood becomes so great as to dissolve the deposited urates, which then give rise to irritation and inflammation. According to this view,

<sup>1</sup> *Op. cit.*, p. 2.

not the precipitated uric acid, but the dissolved uric acid must be regarded as the irritating agent, an acute attack being the result of a re-resolution in the blood of previously deposited uric acid, while a deposit is the result of diminished alkalescence. Pfeiffer, in further support of this view, calls attention to the fact that the most recent chemical analyses by Lecorché, Ebstein, and himself show that the excretion of uric acid *during* an attack of gout is increased and not diminished, as taught by Garrod. Pfeiffer further cites in support of this view the fact that acids, especially salicylic, in large doses promptly relieve the pain in gout, while it is increased by the administration of alkalies.

The studies on this subject—by Sir William Roberts<sup>1</sup>—reaffirm the older view, that the “mechanical theory offers a natural and complete explanation. The crystalline urate precipitated in the cartilaginous and fibrous structures of the joints necessarily act as foreign bodies; they excite irritation, clog the lymph channels, exercise pressure on the tissue elements, and impede their nutritive operations. These effects sufficiently account for the inflammation, pain, and swelling which ensue, and explain the remoter degenerative changes which follow.” While admitting that old tophaceous deposits are not always painful, my experience is that of Sir William Roberts, and, I believe, of most clinicians, that coincident with a fresh deposit of sodium biurates there is always pain, while the salicylates or alkalies are, in my experience, the promptest means to relieve the pain of gout.

Of modern authorities Ebstein<sup>2</sup> is the most eminent, who ascribes the excess of uric acid in the blood to an abnormal *formation* of this substance in the body, in parts also which do not normally produce it, as bone-marrow and cartilage. The lymph and blood becoming surcharged, a balance is commonly restored by increased excretion or perhaps by decomposition of the uric acid. When, however, from any cause the lymph moves slowly, the so-called premonitory *symptoms of gout occur—viz., a “tired feeling,” vague pains, etc.* If an actual stasis occurs, the acute attack appears. This concentrated solution of uric acid acts like a chemical poison on certain tissues, giving rise to necrobiotic changes, and when these reach a certain stage, characterized by an acid reaction, the uric acid is deposited in them as sodium biurate. If this stage is not reached, the local symptoms disappear and the joints return to their natural state. So much of Ebstein’s view as makes a previously degenerated state of the tissues a necessary condition of the deposit of uric acid is commonly admitted by modern authorities, as represented by Ord, Sir Dyce Duckworth, and Van Noorden. The latter holds that the tissue change is due to a special ferment.

The nervous theory of gout promulgated by Cullen in 1873 was to the effect that it is a mixed neurohumoral rather than a purely neural disease. Of modern authors, Sir Dyce Duckworth has taken the most pains to elaborate and establish the theory that gout is a neurohumoral disease. The sum of his conclusions may be stated as follows:

The diseased states recognized as of undoubted gouty nature are

<sup>1</sup> “Uric Acid, Gravel, and Gout,” p. iii, 1892.

<sup>2</sup> “Beiträge zur Lehre von der Harnruhr-Diathese,” 1891.



primarily dependent on a functional disorder of the nervous system, and thus gout is a primary neurosis. This, like others, may be inherited or acquired, modified, or even repressed, and may be associated with other neuroses. A large part of the symptoms known as gouty is due to perverted relations of uric acid and sodium salts *caused by* the neurosis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As will be further evident in treating the symptomatology of gout, there is scarcely a tissue which may not be affected by it, but the morbid conditions which are more distinctive are, first, the characteristic inflamed great toe of acute gout—the true *podagra*. The angry, swollen, dark-red or mottled appearance of such a toe once seen is not forgotten. Similar though less striking changes are sometimes seen in the metacarpophalangeal articulation of the thumb.

The superficial changes in chronic gout are less distinctive, and are often not different from those of chronic rheumatism. But wherever uratic deposits are present in the tissues, there, by universal consent, is gout. They are found most often in joints and in the parts around them: first, the cartilages of the movable joints, then the ligaments, tendons, bursæ, and, finally, the connective tissue and skin, this being the order of feebleness in vascularity and nutritive activity. Frequent situations are the digital joints and cartilages of the ear; more rarely the cartilages of the nose, the vocal cords, the cornea, kidneys, marrow of bone, and expectoration. Cartilages impregnated with urates present the appearance of being smeared with whitewash or white paint, and when preserved in pure alcohol, maintain it for a long time. Minutely examined, cartilages are infiltrated on the peripheral surface, more rarely beneath, with acicular crystals of sodium urate. Rarely they are found in the bone under the cartilage. The cartilage cells are for the most part free, and after the urates are dissolved out, the tissue appears natural or slightly granular. The tophaceous deposits are the best known and most characteristic lesion of gout. About the digital joints, especially the knuckles of the hands, they sometimes ulcerate through the skin, making the oft-repeated story of the gouty subject who chalked his games of whist with his knuckles a not unlikely one. The deposits are often associated with deflection of the fingers to the ulnar side—"seal-fin" type of hands—and of the toes outward, a late symptom not confined to gout—in fact, more common in rheumatoid arthritis. It is due to stronger action of the abductor muscles.

The nodular gouty tophi are not to be confounded with Heberden's nodosities, also characteristic of rheumatoid arthritis. Indeed, Heberden himself denied their gouty nature, though they do occur in gout also. Their significance must be determined by other symptoms more essential to gout. They are irritable nodular outgrowths on the distal ends of the phalangeal bones. They vary in prominence and tenderness at different times, being worse in gout, especially after errors of diet, but on the whole they slowly increase with the age of the patient and the persistence of other symptoms.

Of undoubted gouty nature are the little vesicles over the nodosities, called "crab's-eye" cysts. To these are to be added certain exostoses

and ecchondroses, or "lippings," beneath the synovial membrane, at the edges of the cartilages, and round the heads of the phalanges, and even of larger bones like the femur, patella, and tibia.

Changes in the *internal organs* are most often confined to the kidneys and vascular system. Uratic deposits have been referred to. They are not constant, and are found usually in the interlobular tissue toward the apices, but also more rarely in the tubules. Ultimately the gouty subject acquires an interstitial nephritis, the well-known gouty kidney; though the term "gouty kidney" has also been applied to kidneys the straight tubules of which are found filled with uratic sediments, as is the case sometimes at necropsy. Arterio-sclerosis is almost always present, and must now be ascribed to the irritative effect of the purin bodies, which include xanthen bases on the one hand and uric acid on the other. The heart is hypertrophied in its left ventricle. There may be deposits of urate of sodium on its valves. Changes in the lungs are mainly confined to emphysema, which is found in many cases of long standing.

**Symptoms.**—*Of Typical Acute Gout.*—Persons subject to attacks of gout sometimes have *premonitory symptoms* suggesting the approach of an attack. These vary with the individual and are significant only in each case. They may be headache, neuralgia, any one of the numerous manifestations of deranged digestion, irregularity of the heart's action, palpitation, high tension of the pulse, depression of spirits, drowsiness, a disposition to yawn, a tired feeling—in fact, any symptom which the patient learns to associate with the attack. Attacks are apparently also invited or determined by anything which lowers the vitality of the patient. On the other hand, a supper with wine or a single glass of champagne will often produce an attack.

The first actual symptom of the typical attack is *articular pain*, commonly in the great toe, at the metacarpophalangeal joint, and with its appearance the premonitory symptoms usually pass away. The pain is extremely severe, sharp, shooting, and sudden, often arousing in the middle of the night a patient who has gone to bed apparently well and least expecting an attack. With this pain are the *swelling, heat, and discoloration* already described under morbid anatomy. Rarely, the attack begins with a *slight chill*. On the other hand, there may be pain without heat, redness, or swelling, and all the typical local anatomical features of an attack without pain. In some instances the attack develops more slowly. At times the first attack is so little distinctive that it is assumed to be something much more trifling, such as rheumatism or some slight injury, while the personal peculiarities, natural or acquired, always more or less influence the symptoms. After the outburst at night the extreme pain diminishes as morning advances, but it may recur the next night, and this goes on for four, five, or six days, when the attack terminates.

Some *fever* usually accompanies the onset of acute gout. The temperature promptly rises to 100° F. (37.8° C.) and even higher, but does not far exceed it, 102° F. (38.9° C.) being the usual maximum attained. As in other acute diseases, the temperature is higher in the evening. The local temperature, notwithstanding the sensation of heat, is five or six

degrees below that of the axilla at the same time. The attack terminates with *desquamation* of the epidermis over the inflamed joint.

*Changes in the urine* are almost distinctive. It is scanty, acid, highly colored, and of high specific gravity. It deposits uric acid and urates on standing and cooling and often contains a small quantity of albumin. It sometimes contains sugar in small or even decided quantity, but I am certain that at other times the reaction of uric acid on copper oxid is mistaken for that of glucose. During or preceding an attack the uric acid excreted may be diminished; later it may be increased, but, as elsewhere stated, a relative increase in uric acid is often mistaken for an absolute increase in the 24 hours' amount. The probabilities are that these changes are inconstant.

Futcher has made some interesting studies as to the relations of uric acid and phosphoric acid excretion to the acute attacks. Both increased nearly *pari passu* after a low output before the attack and in its early part, but rose to normal limit shortly after the onset.

A recognized symptom of acute gout, and sometimes the only one, is *pharyngitis*, and now the term "gouty sore throat" is one in common use, though it is doubtless also often used carelessly. There seems no way of distinguishing it locally from other forms of sore throat in which there is no decided swelling.

Gout is said to be *retrocedent* or *metastatic* when it disappears suddenly from its external site and there are substituted for the outward symptoms derangements of some internal organ, especially the *heart* or *stomach* or *brain* or *urinary bladder*. In the first there appear cardiac symptoms of varying severity, including pain, shortness of breath, and irregularity in the heart's action; in the second, gastrointestinal pain, a sinking sensation, vomiting or diarrhea, often associated with intense mental excitement or depression; in the third, meningeal symptoms; and in the fourth, cystitis and prostatitis. More rare events are gouty orchitis, parotitis, and urticaria or other fugitive skin affections. Metastasis is more prone to occur in atonic cases. Sudden death has supervened in some instances, but postmortem lesions of a definite kind seem to be wanting, at least lesions which can be held responsible for the symptoms.

*Of Irregular or Atypical Gout.*—This includes a set of symptoms not so distinctive in themselves as peculiar in this, that they occur in persons who have had gout or who have a decided hereditary tendency thereto. These conditions being fulfilled, there is scarcely any superficial or visceral symptom which may not be of gouty origin, but among them may be named cutaneous eruptions, gastrointestinal disorders, various forms of headache and neuralgia, hot and itching palms and soles, especially at night, a similar condition of the eyeballs, lumbago and other muscular pains, cramps in the legs, arterio-capillary fibrosis and its consequences, iritis, bronchitis, pericarditis, cystitis with hemorrhage into the bladder, and others.

Some affections of the *teeth* occurring under the same conditions may be regarded as gouty. Such are the so-called *pyorrhæa alveolaris* and "dental erosion."

All that was said of the general physical and chemical characteristics of urine in acute and chronic gout may be true of it in irregular gout.

Among other organs the *eye* in its blood-vessels, retina and optic nerve falls heir to changes which are ascribable to gout, but the same law as to their necessary relation holds, by which I mean that identical conditions occur which are not due to gout, and the conclusion that they are thus related depends upon a definite knowledge of the previous existence of gout in the patient. An exception to this exists in the rare cases of actual uratic deposits in certain situations, as the cornea, the crystalline lens, vitreous humor, and even the retina.

Many conditions are called gouty on insufficient foundation.

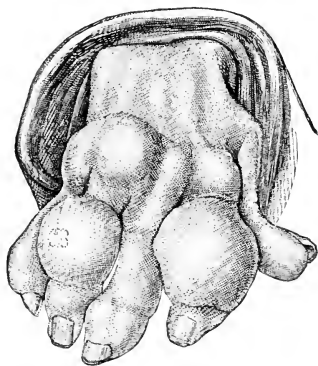


FIG. 83.—Tophaceous Gout.

Both hands were symmetrically affected, man aged sixty (*after Duckworth.*)

*Of Chronic Gout.*—As repeated attacks of gout occur and the patient grows older, there gradually accumulate the morbid changes described under morbid anatomy as more or less characteristic—the joints deformed by tophaceous and other deposits, the lipping, the seal-fin hand, the renal and arteriovascular changes, interstitial nephritis, etc. The urine now is increased, lighter hued, and contains albumin and a few hyaline and granular casts.

Some further allusion should be made to the deformities thus resulting as symptoms of chronic gout. They appear especially in connection with the toes and fingers, causing swellings, deflections, and torsions which produce the most fantastic shapes. Among these are deflected and abducted toes. Heberden's nodosities, the seal-fin hand, and the deformities caused by tophaceous deposits. It is important to remember that any of these except the tophaceous deposits may be due to rheumatoid arthritis as well as gout. Bursal cysts or crabs' eyes on Heberden's nodosities are said to point to their gouty origin. The appended cut from Duckworth illustrates the appearance of enormous tophaceous deposits undoubtedly of gouty origin as contrasted with Heberden's nodosities.

**Diagnosis.**—Only two events point unmistakably to gout in an individual, viz., podagra or tophi in an affected joint. Gout prefers the distal, smaller joints, and one of these rather than many. Frequent recurrence in the same joint is characteristic of gout rather than articular rheumatism. The gastrointestinal symptoms of gout are in no way distinctive. Nor are the skin affections or interstitial nephritis or cardiovascular changes, as the same may arise from other causes. Yet if they occur in a person who has had podagra or tophaceous deposits they are probably due to gout. Gout and cardiovascular changes may result from the same cause. The presence of lead-poisoning, on the other hand, lends support to a diagnosis of gout. The continued presence of uric acid sediments in the urine also lend a support to the diagnosis of gout. On the other hand, after interstitial nephritis has set in the urine may be increased in quantity, of low specific gravity and light colored. Heberden's nodosities occur in gout or in rheumatoid arthritis alike, but the presence of crab's eye vesicles on them points to gout. A certain unexplained relation exists between gout, diabetes and obesity. All of these or any two of them occur rather frequently in the same individual; or they may alternate.

**Treatment.**—The treatment easily divides itself into two parts: *first*, that of the gouty diathesis; *second*, treatment of the paroxysm or of the acute attack.

*Treatment of the Gouty Diathesis.*—It is plain that we may diminish the quantity of uric acid in two ways: first, by confining the gouty person to such food as produces a minimum of uric acid; second, by administering such medicines as will promote its solution and elimination. The first of these constitutes, in the main, the *dietetic* treatment, the second the *medicinal*.

**I. The Dietetic Treatment.**—This is by far the most efficient of the treatment of gout, without which all else is only palliation. It consists essentially in the elimination, from the dietary, as far as possible, of all *nitrogenous or albuminous* principles, whence arises uric acid in the manner described on p. 860. I say as far as possible, for it is practically impossible to eliminate them altogether. The foods which are the type of this class should, however, be altogether omitted. Such are glandular organs like the liver and pancreas, which are rich in nuclein, the meats of the butcher-shops and the cheeses. The first include beef, veal, mutton, lamb, and pork, whether salt or fresh, and for the most part fish. As to cheese, as one-half pound of this contains almost as much nitrogenous matter as a pound of beef—27 per cent. when made of the whole milk, and 28 per cent. when made of skimmed milk—it is plainly contraindicated. If we consider only the edible parts of beef—*i. e.*, meat deprived of the refuse represented by bones, skin, etc.—it contains according to its source, from 17 to 23 per cent. of proteids; mutton, from 15 to 18 per cent. Of fish, flounder contains 13.8 per cent.; mackerel, 18 per cent.; halibut, 15 per cent.; and salmon, 21 per cent., or quite as much as beef and more than mutton. Salt codfish contains 15 per cent.; smoked herring, 20 per cent.; and canned sardines, 24 per cent. Poultry contains from 14 to 15 per cent. of albuminates, and game 22 per cent. The

hen's egg, including albumen and yolk, contains 13.7 per cent. of proteid, whence it is plain that it is a less objectionable food than meat.

On the other hand, milk contains but from 3 per cent. to 4 per cent. of protein; butter, 1 per cent.; and oleomargarine, 0.6 per cent. The fat oyster contains 8 per cent., the lean, 4.2 per cent., and the lobster, 5.5 per cent.; fish other than those previously mentioned, from 5 to 10 per cent.

Of vegetable foods, wheat bread contains 8.9 per cent. of protein; wheat flour, 11 per cent., and Graham flour, 11.7 per cent.; rye bread, 6.7 per cent.; buckwheat flour, the same; corn (maize), 9 per cent.; rice, 7.4 per cent.; sugar, 0.3 per cent.; potatoes, 2 per cent.; sweet potatoes, 1.5 per cent.; turnips and carrots, 1 per cent.; cabbage, 1.9 per cent.; melons, 1 per cent.; apples and pears, 0.4 per cent.; and bananas, 2 per cent. Again, beans contain 23.2 per cent. and oatmeal from 12 to 15 per cent., large proportions of proteids.

Thus, the typical foods permissible from the standpoint of composition are milk, butter, fruits, and succulent vegetables, except beans, and oatmeal. To these eggs, oysters and lobster may be added, moderately; fish, except that containing a large amount of protein, and, when extreme rigidity is not required, poultry in moderate amount; but all butcher's meat should be strictly forbidden.

It is usual, also, to indierdict the use of *carbohydrates*—*i. e.*, starches and sugars—as well as the *hydrocarbons*—fats and oils—but I have never been able to see any reason for this. There is absolutely none from the standpoint of chemical composition, since they are totally without nitrogen, and, so far as my own experience goes, none from the clinical standpoint. Only in the event of their producing indigestion and fermentation, with the generation of acids, can they become a cause of gout, and then only, I should say, an exciting cause. I am in the habit, therefore, of permitting the use of rice, potatoes, and other farinacea, and, to a reasonable extent, sugar. I am glad to be able to say that I am sustained in this view by Sir William Roberts, who, in the brochure quoted on page 860, says also: "The most trustworthy experiments indicate that fat, starch, and sugar have not the least direct influence on the production of uric acid, but as the free consumption of these articles naturally operates to restrict the intake of nitrogenous food, their use has indirectly the effect of diminishing the average production of uric acid." Basing his conclusions upon experiments with solutions of blood-serum impregnated with common salt (0.1 per cent.), in which he found the precipitation of crystalline biurate always appreciably hastened, Sir William Roberts directed the gouty to restrict, as far as possible, the use of common salt at meals. On the other hand, he recommends that the subjects of uric acid gravel should be advised to take habitually with their meals as much common salt as their palates will tolerate.

There are, however, other sorts of ingesta, also entirely or almost free from nitrogen, acknowledged to be both a predisposing and an exciting cause of gout—namely, *malt liquors* and *wines*. These are composed of water, alcohol, carbohydrates, and a trace of mineral matters, but no nitrogen. It is not easy at first to understand why these substances

should be harmful. Experience, however, shows that the stronger wines, such as port, Madeira, and sherry, by their continued use, are very likely to produce gout, while the lighter wines—the clarets, hocks, and Moselle wines—if taken in moderation, rarely produce it. After these, stout, porter, and the strong ales induce gout. Even lager beer, which contains but 3 per cent. of alcohol, is capable of acting similarly, and I know many men who have been forced to give up this beverage because of such effect. Cider and perry least of all beverages predispose to gout. On the other hand, distilled spirits, especially whisky, are almost entirely without effect in producing gout. Why is this? Apparently, the amount of alcohol is not the measure of the effect, for whisky, gin, brandy, and rum all contain more alcohol than any of the wines named. If an examination is made of wines most likely to produce gout, it will be found that they are those which contain a considerable quantity of both sugar and alcohol. Such are port, sherry, and Madeira, all of which contain more than 15 per cent. of alcohol and much sugar; also sweet champagnes containing 11 per cent. of alcohol. On the other hand, some very sweet wines, as Tokay, Malaga, and the higher Sauternes, which contain much sugar, are said to produce gout less rapidly. It would seem that those liquors which contain alcohol in combination with other substances, especially sugar, are potent in producing gout, particularly when they excite indigestion, *probably by restricting elimination* rather than producing more uric acid.

As to the *acidity* of alcoholic drinks, it is easy to understand how it may act as an exciting cause. In this way act beers, in which both alcohol and sugar are present in small amount, but which are highly acid. An explanation of this fact is less easy from the standpoint that the acute attack of gout is due to a reabsorption of the deposited uric acid by alkaline blood, than on the supposition that the attack is due to the irritative effect of uric acid deposited in the joints because of the diminished alkalinity of the blood resulting from absorbed acid. Whatever be the explanation, few facts in the clinical history of gout are better established than that the ingestion of acid may be an exciting cause of attacks.

In the same way act *acid fruits*, such as strawberries, acid oranges, and lemons. On the other hand, to such influence I have known the most divergent response. Thus, a gouty patient of my own could bring on an attack by drinking a single glass of lemonade, while a gouty friend would drink a pitcher of lemonade at dinner without any ill effect whatever. It is to be remembered that the otherwise harmful effects of the strong distilled spirits, such as are well borne in gout, are no less serious in gouty subjects than in others, and are often induced by the careless prescription of whisky because less harmful than wines in gout.

A most valuable adjuvant to the dietetic treatment are the *natural mineral waters*. The waters which have heretofore received almost universal approval are the alkaline and alkaline-saline waters, although those possessing purgative properties also enjoy a good reputation. In America, however, few alkaline waters are native, while those which are, are so far inferior to the foreign waters that they do not serve the purpose. On the other hand the costliness of the foreign waters constitutes a very serious

obstacle to their general use. Most of the native waters which have been employed and highly vaunted by their owners are of the kind known as negative waters—that is, they have no mineral ingredients in any quantity to justify their classification in any of the five principal varieties of mineral waters—viz., the alkaline, the saline, alkaline-saline, the purgative and sulphurous—or on which to base any therapeutic results except by their diluent effect. At the same time it has been noticed that these waters are not without effect in relieving gouty symptoms. Reasoning from these facts, we may prescribe such native negative waters as are accessible to the patient, or distilled water, with this end in view—the simple diluent and solvent effect which comes from an increased proportion of water ingested. The further propriety of such a course is found in the fact that gouty and lithemic patients are often moderate water-drinkers, never drinking water between meals and very little at meals. To such, eight ounces of water ordered on rising, between meals, and at bedtime, will often clear off a dark-hued urine of high specific gravity and substitute a light-hued, clear urine, without any sediment.

The mineral waters which have actually acquired the greatest reputation in the treatment of gout are those of which sodium bicarbonate is the chief ingredient, to which the calcium bicarbonate is regarded a valuable adjuvant. Such are the alkaline waters of Vals and Vichy in France, Evian-les-Bains in Switzerland, Neuenahr and Fachingen in Prussia, Contrexville and Vittel in the Vosges (France), and Dax in France. Other waters possessed of reputation in the treatment of gout, in which the quantity of alkaline bicarbonate is smaller, owe it to their combined alkaline and aperient properties, chiefly due to sodium sulphate and magnesium sulphate, and belong in the second category of remedies for the treatment of gout. Such are the alkaline and saline waters of Carlsbad and Marienbad in Bohemia, Kronthal in Nassau, and Brides-les-Bains in Savoy. Then there are the saline waters represented by Baden Baden, Ems, Homburg, Kissingen, Wiesbaden, and our own Saratoga waters. In saline waters we are much more fortunate in this country, the Saratoga waters furnishing all that can be desired. Finally, there are the bitter acidulated and bitter purgative waters—Hunyadi Janás, Friedrichshalle and Rakoczy in Hungary, Pülna in Bohemia, and Rubinat in Spain—rarely resorted to for gout, but useful as eliminating agents. Among the weaker aperient waters are those of Bedford Springs, Pa., in this country.

The use of these mineral waters is especially indicated in a continuous manner between the attacks, with a view to averting them. Especially useful are the thermal waters in the chronic arthritic complications, in which their internal use is combined with bathing. In this connection may be mentioned Carlsbad and Marienbad (at both of which the mud-baths are employed). Baden Baden, Ems, Wiesbaden, Hammon R'Irha in Algeria, available in winter, Plombières in the Vosges, and Dax in France. Homburg and Kissingen are also resorted to for their baths, although the waters are cold.

Sulphurous waters also have some reputation in gout. Especially is this the case with the waters of Aix-la-Chapelle in Rhenish Prussia and



Aix-les-Bains in Savoy, Harrogate in England, Richfield Springs, Sharon, and St. Catherine's in Canada and Mt. Clemens in Michigan, U. S. A. In all these places the bath treatment is an important adjuvant. America is also more fortunate in sulphur waters.

The remedies in the second category—the aperients—are decidedly useful in gout, both as eliminators of toxic substances, and to prepare the way for the absorption and prompt action of the alkaline bicarbonates. They are not, however, used at the present day so freely as they were a century ago, and they are commonly reserved for the acute attack.

*Hygienic measures* are also of importance in the treatment of gout. The patient should bathe daily, using the cool bath in the morning or the warm in the evening on retiring, as experience may determine to be the best. The skin should be thoroughly groomed, and daily exercise should be practiced, an open-air, outdoor life being desirable whenever possible.

II. *The Medicinal Treatment and the Treatment of the Acute Attack.*—As a rule, the use of medicines is reserved for the acute attack. From the earliest history of the disease practice has recognized two classes of remedies in the treatment of gout—alkalies and purgatives—the object of both being to eliminate the offender, the first by producing soluble combinations which pass off readily by the kidneys, and the second to carry it off by the bowels. It is plain that a combination of the two principles might be expected to be more efficient than either one alone.

First, as to alkalies and alkaline combinations. My experience places the salicylate of sodium easily at the top, and while it is not so rapid in its effect in relieving the pain of an acute attack of gout as it is in rheumatism, it is nevertheless an invaluable remedy, excelling all others. During an attack it should be given in doses as large as can be borne. As a rule, adult men easily bear 15 grains (1 gm.) four times a day, or 10 grains (0.65 gm.) may be administered every two hours. Even larger doses may be given with advantage, if borne by the stomach. With relief to the acute symptoms the dose should be reduced; but, as in rheumatism, the remedy should not be discontinued, and between attacks smaller doses should be kept up for some time. These, however, may be substituted by the natural mineral waters to be presently alluded to. The efficiency of the salicylates is explained by the fact that their prolonged internal use is attended with an increased elimination of uric acid.

After the salicylates, the alkaline carbonates have always held a high position in the treatment of gout. Half an ounce (15 gm.) of potassium bicarbonate a day in divided doses should be the initial treatment, continued, but in smaller doses, when relief comes to the acute symptoms. It may be combined with a little lemon-juice to improve the flavor, or the citrate of potassium may be given in the same doses.

Among the eliminating remedies is the time-honored colchicum, a drug which is of undoubted value in gout, but which, in my experience, must yield the palm to salicylate of sodium. For a long time its action was inexplicable, and it came to be known as a specific in gout as quinin is in chills and mercury in syphilis. Modern studies have, apparently,

solved this problem. Professor Rutherford has shown that it is one of the most powerful cholagogues known. This, taken in connection with what we now know of the office of the liver in urea formation, simplifies very much the solution of the problem. It explains, too, why colchicum produces its sedative and anesthetic effect without necessarily causing purgation. Indeed, some, as Sir Alfred Garrod, consider that its effects are best attained without purgation, and Garrod says that if cathartic action is required, it is better to combine some aperient with the colchicum, as when much purging and vomiting results from colchicum, nervous and vascular depression follows. I confess I like to see a mild action on the bowels by increasing the dose gradually, and it is not necessary to produce either violent purging or vomiting. Whatever its mode of action, it sometimes operates in the most magical manner in relieving pain. The preparation commonly used is the wine. In this country the wine of the seeds is no longer official, so that if the wine is ordered, that of the root is dispensed. This is more powerful than the wine of the seeds. The dose of the latter is from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  drams (2 to 6 c.c.) every three hours during the attack, but of the root from 15 to 30 minims (1 to 2 c.c.), reducing the dose when nausea or purgation ensues. The acetic extract of colchicum was a favorite preparation of the older physicians, especially Scudamore, who introduced it, and who considered its action milder than that of any other form. It is still sometimes used, and has the advantage that it may be put into pill form. Its dose is from 1 to 2 grains (0.065 to 0.13 gm.). Scudamore's gout remedy consisted of magnesium sulphate, 4 drams (15 gm.); magnesia, 80 grains (5 gm.); vinegar of colchicum, 4 fluidrams (15 c.c.); syrup of crocus, 4 fluidrams (15 c.c.); mint water, 5 fluidounces (150 c.c.). From one to three tablespoonfuls are given every two hours until from four to six evacuations are produced in 24 hours. The fluid extract of colchicum may be administered in doses of from 2 to 6 minims (0.12 to 0.30 c.c.).

Colchicin, the active principle of colchicum, is also employed. Its dose is  $\frac{1}{50}$  grain (0.0013 gm.). The same dose may be employed hypodermically. A favorite modern remedy is the salicylate of colchicin in doses of 5 minims (0.31 c.c.), given in pearls or capsules. The other aperients commonly used in gout are the sulphates, of which magnesium sulphate is the favorite. Sodium sulphate is also used, and it is the constituent of the most actively purgative mineral waters already mentioned, viz., the Hunyadi János, Rakoczy, and Friedrichshalle, now largely used instead of the pure salt. It is also the largest constituent of the Carlsbad waters. A favorite combination of the older physicians was magnesium sulphate 2 drams, magnesium carbonate a scruple suspended in an ounce of cinnamon water, given two or three times a day until active purgation resulted. These two substances may be combined with colchicum, and with it make one of the forms of Scudamore's mixture, alluded to. Another of the older remedies, also purgative, should not be lost sight of. It is Warner's gout cordial, essentially the tincture of rhubarb and senna of the pharmacopœia of the present day.

Colocynth is also employed as an aperient in gout, and advantage has been taken of this fact in the preparation of the secret remedy known

as Laville's tincture, which is very largely used by the laity, and which undoubtedly has a very prompt effect in many cases of acute gout. The following has been published<sup>1</sup> as the composition of Laville's remedy, as determined by analysis:

Quinin . . . . .	5	parts.
Cinchonin . . . . .	5.	parts.
Colocynthin . . . . .	2.5	parts.
Lime salts . . . . .	5.	parts.
Water . . . . .	82.5	parts.
Alcohol . . . . .	100	parts.
Port wine . . . . .	800	parts.

The lithium compounds—the carbonate and citrate—have not proved so useful as to cause me to prefer them to salicylic acid. Indeed, the early results of Garrod with them cannot be said to have been realized in modern therapeutics. Sir Dyce Duckworth says of lithia that it is a remedy better adapted to the chronic than to the acute phases of gout, and so I have been using it. Five grains (0.3 gm.) four times a day, freely diluted, is the dose usually administered, and with this the potassium salts are sometimes combined.

Another modern remedy asserted to be efficient in the treatment of gout is *piperazin*. I regret to say that I have been disappointed in it. In my early trials I thought it useful, but soon learned that it was less efficient than the salicylates and colchicum. While an acknowledged solvent for uric acid when dissolved in water, it seems to be incapable of dissolving uric acid in the system. It still has some staunch adherents, and may be tried. From 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.) daily are advised, dissolved in water or in some one of the numerous mineral waters.

*Local Applications.*—For the relief of the acute attack of gout, leeches, blisters, and cold have all been discontinued of late years, not only because they are useless, but also because their use has been followed by fatal attacks of the so-called internal gout. Warmth and moisture do, however, have a mollifying effect, which is increased if the liquid preparations of opium be associated. Cocain, which might be expected to be useful, operates only through surfaces whence the epiderm is removed. Should such be present, a five per cent. solution may be applied on lint.

It often happens that the pain in a paroxysm of gout is so severe that it is impossible to wait until the effect of the foregoing remedies is secured, and a hypodermic injection of morphin is absolutely necessary to relieve the sufferings of the patient. I must remind the reader, however, that as many old subjects of gout have contracted kidneys, the use of morphin under these circumstances is attended with some danger, and the drug should be used with great caution.

All pressure by boots on joints disposed to gout should be carefully avoided, as well as injuries, as such influences undoubtedly act as predisposing causes. Muscular and mental fatigue are exciting causes of acute attacks, and should be avoided by the gouty.

*Treatment of Retrocedent Gout.*—The true nature of a metastatic attack having been determined, it must be relieved symptomatically, while efforts to stimulate a true external attack may be made by the

<sup>1</sup> "Druggist's Circular," October, 1889.

hot mustard foot-baths, sinapisms, and the like. It has even been suggested that a pint of champagne may be advised, this being the wine most frequently responsible for acute attacks.

### LITHEMIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Uricacidemia; Uricemia; American Gout.*

**Definition.**—A condition of imperfectly determined anatomical and chemical nature, but probably the result of an accumulation in the blood of products of defective metabolism or food metamorphosis, of which uric acid is the type. It differs from gout chiefly in the absence of joint deposits and joint inflammation. In England the name of Murchison is inseparably associated with lithemia, and in this country that of J. M. Da Costa. The former ascribed the accumulation to inactivity of the liver. It has been called American gout, because it has been thought to take in this country the place that gout occupies in England.

**Etiology.**—The accumulation referred to is the result of intemperate eating and drinking, especially with the lack of exercise sufficient to oxidize the food ingested. In either event the income is greater than the output, accumulation results, and morbid phenomena follow. Heredity also plays a part at times.

**Symptoms.**—Among symptoms tolerably constant are manifestations of *indigestion*, including fullness and discomfort after meals, an unpleasant taste, at times nausea, and at others acidity; a tendency to constipation and absence of bile from the discharges; also a tendency to aphthous ulcers in the cheeks and lips, with punctiform ulcers on the end and sides of the tongue. Extreme *nervous irritability* is also often associated or may be the most striking symptom, while *vertigo* and *headache* are among the most conspicuous and annoying. While vertigo is often associated with a fullness and throbbing, the vertigo and severe headache are rarely associated. A further characteristic is the *slow pulse*, which may beat at the rate of but 50 or 60 times a minute and even less, and exhibits a correspondingly increased tension, with sharp accentuation of the aortic second sound. On the other hand, if the patient be an alcoholic or addicted to tobacco, the first sound of the heart may be feeble. Curious *paresthesias* are also often present, of which *tingling* and a *sense of numbness* are conspicuous. There may be *anesthesia*. In contrast to this *muscular pain*, shooting or aching may occur anywhere in the body. Last, but by no means least, is *depression of spirits*, most inveterate and unpleasant, the patient imagining he is the subject of every known disease, while suicide is sometimes sought for relief.

There is almost invariably *alteration* in the *quality* and *quantity* of the *urine*. It is *scanty*, *highly colored*, of *high specific gravity*, depositing on standing, especially at a slightly lower temperature, a large bulky sediment composed of mixed urates or uric acid or both. In this sediment also are sometimes included oxalate of lime crystals. Yet, though almost invariably present, this state of the urine cannot be regarded as essential, and cases occur with the *tout ensemble* of symptoms while the

urine is in a natural condition. There may be slight enlargement of the liver and the symptoms enumerated are sometimes regarded as the early signs of cirrhosis of the liver.

**Diagnosis.**—This hinges very largely upon the condition of the urine, as described, and upon the habits of the patient. It has already been stated that lithemia differs from *gout* in the absence of joint symptoms, but it cannot be denied that the two conditions often occur conjointly. Less frequently, if at all, is lithemia the result of heredity, and it demands as an essential condition the overeating and drinking with defective metabolism referred to, which, while exciting causes of gout, are by no means always necessary to its production, especially when there is a decided hereditary tendency to the same. As intimated in the definition, uricæmia is rather a condition inferred than actually demonstrated—inferred from the disproportionate amount of uric acid excreted as compared with urea.

**Prognosis.**—It may be said, too, of lithemia, as distinguished from irregular gout and from gout, that the prognosis is, on the whole, more favorable, and a cure may be generally promised the patient if he comply with the physician's instructions.

**Treatment.**—The indications are evident. The overeating and overdrinking must be reduced, and active outdoor exercise must be practiced in order to burn up the remnant of unoxidized food. The restriction which would be required depends somewhat upon the severity of the case, but in all instances may be covered by the injunction to the patient to become a vegetarian rather than carnivor. The juicy green vegetables, such as peas, beans, spinach, asparagus, cauliflower, celery, onions, cabbage, lettuce, and an abundance of milk, are allowed. The free use of water, preferably the alkaline mineral waters referred to in treating of gout, and the omission of all alcoholic drinks should be enjoined. A quart (a liter) of Vichy or Vals daily, or in their absence any one of the indifferent mineral waters, with the addition of lithium or sodium carbonate, should be drunk. When urgency is required, a diet of diluted milk or of milk and Vichy may be insisted upon until such symptoms pass away.

Of meats which may be permitted in moderate quantity along with vegetable food are oysters, fish, the white meat of chicken, and game. The question of the carbohydrates is a mooted one. I have never seen such food as rice and potatoes do harm, nor bread—if of good quality and not too freshly baked. Sugar is best restricted, because of its tendency to produce acid fermentations and acidity. There is no chemical contra-indication. Hydrocarbons, on the other hand, are not well borne, and all fats should be forbidden, including butter, as well as the fat of meat.

As to medicines, the most important are the alkalies, which may be added to the negative mineral waters if they are used instead of the more truly alkaline waters. Aperients, and of these again the salines, are especially indicated, and above all the natural mineral purgative waters, such as Saratogo waters in this country, Hunyadi, Friedrichshalle, and the like. Phosphate of sodium is a favorite aperient in these conditions on account of its supposed action upon the liver. The usual dose

is 1 dram (4 gm.) in the morning, on rising, dissolved in hot water. The lithium salts may be used, and while I have not been able to trace any very direct results to their action, they serve as an excuse for the administration of liquids, since they are usually given dissolved in water—say 5 grains (0.3 gm.) of the carbonate or citrate in a glass of water before meals. Pleasant effervescing tablets containing these doses are now made by many manufacturing chemists. The stomachics and bitter tonics, of which *nux vomica* and *strychnin* are the types, may form useful adjuvants, and pepsin with hydrochloric acid after meals is often useful. The salicylates, if well borne, are useful remedies, to hold in solution the uric acid and favor its elimination. Extremely painful attacks may require the use of opiates, but the doses should be as small as possible, and their use should be discouraged under all circumstances excepting in extreme urgency.

### DIABETES MELLITUS.

**Definition.**—A condition of deranged metabolism characterized by copious secretion of a urine charged with glucose and due to some as yet imperfectly understood derangement of the glycogenic and glyco-destructive functions of the organism.

**Historical.**—Diabetes is one of the oldest diseases known, being referred to by the Roman Celsus and the Greek Aretæus, both of whom lived in the first century of the Christian era; also by the early East Indian physicians as a condition characterized by copious secretion of urine, extreme thirst, and emaciation. Little, if anything, was, however, added to the subject until the latter part of the seventeenth century, when Thomas Willis (1622–75) in England first inferred from its sweetness the presence of sugar in the urine. Moreover, it was not until a century later, 1775, that Matthew Dobson, also an Englishman, actually obtained sugar from urine. Among other early students of this subject were Cowley (1788), Frank (1794), John Rollo (1797), W. Prout (1825) in England, and Bouchardat and Mialhe in France. Inseparably associated with the subject is Claude Bernard, who first discovered that glycosuria could be produced by puncturing the floor of the fourth ventricle. Since that time there is perhaps no subject in medicine to which has been contributed so much knowledge from an experimental side as this one, and yet no subject as to the true pathology and etiology of which we possess proportionately less accurate information.

Other names associated with the clinical and experimental investigation of diabetes are Brücke, Cantani, Dickinson, Pavy, Ebstein, Frerichs, Külz, Lécorché, von Mehring, Minkowski, Naunyn, Seegen, C. C. von Voiht, Senator, F. Voit, and Carl von Noorden.

**Geographical and Racial Distribution.**—Diabetes is not a common disease anywhere, and it is variously frequent in different countries and races. Thus it is less common in the United States than in Europe, where there are said to be from five to nine cases among 100,000 inhabitants, while according to the United States Census of 1900 there are but 2.8 in 100,000. According to Dickinson, the disease is more widely prevalent in the agricultural countries of England than in the cities. It is common in Sweden, on the one hand, and in southern Italy and India, especially in Ceylon, on the other, while especially rare statistically in Holland, Russia, and Brazil.

It is much more frequent among Hebrews than among Christians in the experience of almost everyone, yet for what reason I have been unable to discover. One of my Hebrew friends suggested that it is due to the

intensification of hereditation by intermarriage. It is rare in the negro race, though I have met several cases. It is a disease especially frequent among the rich and well-to-do, though the poor are not exempt. It is also a disease of adults, yet it has occurred in infants at the breast. In the reports of the Registrar-General of England for the years 1851-60, ten deaths are registered under the age of one year and 32 under the age of three. The youngest patient I ever had was a little girl aged 22 months, who was delivered prematurely because of nephritis in the mother, though the child was healthy up to one year. Albuminuria was associated with the diabetes. The disease is most frequent between the ages of 30 and 60. It is more serious in the young, recovery in very young subjects being almost unknown. It is much more frequent in males than in females, in the proportion of nearly three to one, though Senator's<sup>1</sup> statistics show that under the age of 20 more females are affected than males. This has been my own experience. Little is known of the effect of occupation, though it is thought that occupations taxing the mind favor it. It has happened to me to treat a number of physicians and farmers. Heredity has in my experience been less conspicuous than European writers find it. From ten to 25 per cent. are thus traced by different Continental observers. On the other hand, it may occur in several members of a family. It is not unusual to find diabetes mellitus in some members of a family and gout in others.

**Pathology and Pathogenesis.**—The etiology of diabetes is so intimately united with its pathology that it is scarcely possible to separate their consideration. What is known, therefore, of its immediate causation will be developed in connection with the pathology, while its more remote causes will be briefly considered in the ensuing paragraph. Inseparably connected, also, with the pathology of diabetes are the phenomena of sugar formation in the economy. A brief statement of the latter seems, therefore, justifiable. During life there is constantly being produced and stored in the liver of man and the lower animals an amyloid substance, which was named by its discoverer, Claude Bernard, *glycogen*.<sup>2</sup> Its formula is  $C_6, H_{10}, O_{15}$ , that of starch, and the term *zoamylin*, or animal starch, was at one time suggested for it. The glycogen formation takes place whether animal or vegetable food be taken, but it is much larger upon a vegetable diet. It is commonly held that it does not occur at all with a diet of pure fats, but Salomon<sup>3</sup> claims that it is produced in the livers of rabbits fed on olive oil. C. von Noorden also considers that fat is converted into sugar in the liver.<sup>4</sup> All physiologists agree that this amyloid substance is derived mainly from the starchy and saccharine principles of food, but partly also by a splitting up and rearrangement of the elements of nitrogenous food. This possibly takes place in the liver, resulting in the production of urea and glycogen, the latter being stored in the liver-cells. The muscles are also favorite reservoirs for glycogen storage. The most important property of glycogen is its ready

<sup>1</sup> See Senator's article on "Diabetes Mellitus" in "Ziemssen's Cyclopædia of Medicine," vol. xvi., p. 866, *ad fin*.

<sup>2</sup> Bernard, "Nov. Fonc. du Foie," Paris, 1853.

<sup>3</sup> "Virchow's Archiv," vol. lxi., part 3, 1874, 18.

<sup>4</sup> Article "Diabetes Mellitus," in "Twentieth Century Practice of Medicine," New York, vol. ii, p. 42, 1895.

convertibility at the temperature of the body into glucose, or grape-sugar; for this a glycolytic ferment is probably required. By means of these storage reservoirs the blood is kept supplied with 0.12 to 0.18 per cent. of grape sugar in health, the oxidation of which contributes to the forces of the economy.

In diabetes mellitus some derangement of this balance takes place, as the result of which more or less of the glucose delivered to the blood is not utilized, in a word, is wasted. This may be brought about in several ways: (1) It may be that the glucose arising by a reconversion of the glycogen stored in the liver is contributed to the blood too rapidly to be oxidized; (2) It may be that, although the glucose is delivered in normal quantity, it is still not consumed because of some defect in the oxidizing mechanism, some deficiency in the glycolytic ferment; (3) It may be that the glucose arising from sugar and starch digestion in the intestine is not first converted into glycogen as in health, but passes directly through that organ to the vena cava too rapidly or in too large quantity to be utilized, or lacking some molecular quality which permits its oxidation. One or the other of these alternates will explain all cases of glycosuria when the nonutilized glucose is derived only from the carbohydrates of the food. These are the milder cases and include also those of glycosuria clearly traceable to overingestion of sugars and starches. Those bad cases of diabetes, however, which Dr. Pavy calls "composite diabetes," in which the glucose arising from proteid foods, and finally even from proteid tissues, is not utilized, are less easy of explanation. For it would seem that not only is the glucose normally arising unconsumed, but that there is also an increased formation of glucose from these sources, and it may be even from the "fixed proteids" of the body. Whichever of these it is, the excess of sugar thus resulting in the blood is eliminated by the kidneys, and thus glycosuria becomes an essential symptom of diabetes mellitus.

**Etiology.**—What causes this deranged mechanism? I have already said that there is no disease concerning which so much accurate knowledge has been arrived at and of the true pathology of which we are so thoroughly in the dark. It is not a kidney disease, as was once supposed in its early history, although this impression still prevails among the laity, and naturally so, because the essential evidence of its existence is found in the urine. We know, further, that diabetes occurs under very different circumstances. We can produce diabetes in an animal by irritating the floor of the fourth ventricle, as was originally done by Claude Bernard in his celebrated *piqûre* experiment. There are, however, also other parts of the nervous system, the irritation of which will produce diabetes, from the cerebellum down to the point of emergence of the sympathetic nerves to the viscera. It is commonly admitted that this experimental glycosuria is caused by a centrifugal stimulus from the nervous centers to the liver, through the vasomotor system. We know, also, that tumors impinging on the floor of the fourth ventricle, and lesions of this part of the brain, including abscesses, are attended by diabetes mellitus; also injuries to the spinal cord.

Relatively remote from the nervous centers is an organ, the pancreas, the diseases of which are often associated with diabetes mellitus, and



whose extirpation is followed by glycosuria. On the other hand, we know that in a large number of the gravest forms of diabetes autopsies have failed to disclose any lesion whatever; in fact, the most unmanageable and serious cases are those in which we find no lesion. Therefore, while we must admit that both the nervous system and the pancreas have something to do with the causation of diabetes, we are not able to trace a nervous or pancreatic lesion in every case. It is further likely that the sympathetic nerve is an important channel for nervous influence, regulating as it does the opening and the closing of the blood-vessels.

A word more as to the relation of the pancreas to diabetes. I have said such relation is proved from the experimental as well as from the clinical side, and I myself, in a few cases at autopsies, have found a pancreatic lesion. Hansemann claims pancreatic lesions in 50 per cent. of cases. From the experimental side it is found by von Mehring and Minkowski that extirpation of the pancreas is immediately followed by diabetes; and, although there are some differences in results, it is one of the best determined facts that glycosuria follows such extirpation. Sometimes such a diabetes has been transient, but then it has been found also that a fragment of the pancreas was left behind. I repeat that while we must admit that the pancreas has something to do with a large number of cases of diabetes, we cannot say so of all, as there are some in which no lesion is found.

The rationale of this relation of the pancreas is not settled. It has been alleged that the absence of the pancreatic secretion is responsible, but it has been shown that simply cutting off the secretion from the intestine does not cause diabetes. It has been suggested that extirpation of the pancreas really operates by disturbing the sympathetic nerves in the vicinity; but this has also been experimentally refuted, and, with this, the view of Klebs, accepted by Senator, that the coexistence of diabetes mellitus and disease of the pancreas is primarily or secondarily due to lesions of the celiac plexus. The researches of Lepine, which have been confirmed, ascribe the glycosuria to the absence of a glycolytic ferment furnished in health by the pancreas to the blood. This explanation certainly accounts for the facts. It is evident that it is impossible to explain all cases of diabetes from any one standpoint to the exclusion of another.

An important relation has recently been established between the suprarenal gland and glycosuria, by the studies of Blum,<sup>1</sup> Herter, and Croftan. The first showed that glycosuria ensued upon subcutaneous injection of animals with freshly prepared suprarenal extract, even when the diet was free of carbohydrates. This was confirmed by G. Suelzer<sup>2</sup> and A. C. Croftan.<sup>3</sup> Reasoning thence Croftan announced that the suprarenal capsules contain a substance which either causes the formation of sugar or inhibits the normal destruction of sugar.

Herter<sup>4</sup> does not accept Croftan's conclusion, but concludes rather

<sup>1</sup> "Ueber Nebennieren Diabetes," *Archiv f. klin. Med.*, 1901, Bd. lxxi., Heft 2 u. 3, S. 146.

<sup>2</sup> "Zur Frage der Nebennieren Diabetes," *Berlin. klin. Wochenschrift*, 1901, No. 48, S. 1209.

<sup>3</sup> "Concerning a Sugar-forming Ferment in Suprarenal Extract," *American Medicine*, January 18,

1902.

<sup>4</sup> With A. N. Richards, "Preliminary Communication," *Med. News*, February 1, 1902. Also "Experimental Glycosuria from Adrenalin Chlorid and its Relations to other Forms of Glycosuria, Dependent on the Action of Reducing Substances on the Cells of the Pancreas," *Trans. Assoc. Amer. Physicians*, 1902.

that many and perhaps most forms of glycosuria and diabetes are due to the action of substances or conditions which interfere with normal oxidation in the cells of the pancreas. He adduces in proof, the fact shown by himself that glycosuria results from subcutaneous injection of adrenalin chlorid, and moreover that painting the pancreas with the same solution is followed by a transitory glycosuria with corresponding glycemia, while no such effect follows a similar application to the liver or spleen; while after adrenalin chlorid undergoes oxidation it loses its ability, when thus applied, to cause glycosuria. Thus is laid at the door of the suprarenal capsule interference with the cell activities in the pancreas which are concerned with the production of an oxidizing enzyme whose function it is to oxidize glucose. Closer than this we have been unable to come. Deranged suprarenal function is of course not the only cause which interferes with the normal function of the pancreas.

Any agency, direct or reflected, which is capable of influencing normal cell activity of the pancreas may become a cause of diabetes. Hence a variety of causes, some of which seem but remotely connected with the disease, may operate to cause diabetes. In illustration of traumatic agency by which the pancreas is indirectly affected I may refer to cases of movable kidney causing pancreatic diabetes, cured by nephropexy reported by Sherman Thompson Brown.<sup>1</sup> As instances of such influence may be mentioned the rare instances of diabetes associated with pregnancy. Operating through the nervous system, in addition to nervous lesions already named, may be worry, gastro-intestinal derangements, disorders of the liver, sexual excesses and the like. Among more remote causes recently suggested are toxic agencies introduced from without or originating in the alimentary canal, which may explain cases otherwise unaccountable.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Diabetes can hardly be said to have an essential morbid anatomy, for, except in the instances mentioned, the morbid lesions which are found at postmortem examination are mostly the consequences of the continued glycemia rather than such as cause the symptoms. Sometimes there are absolutely no alterations discoverable, either by the unaided eye or with the microscope.

To begin with the organ which has so much to do with the glycogenic function of the body—the liver—it frequently presents the appearances of a hyperemic organ—that is, it is darker and harder than the normal organ, while it is also enlarged, sometimes considerably, at other times only slightly. Corresponding to this, the microscope, by very moderate amplification, shows enlarged and distinct acini, with capillaries dilated and distended in various degree with blood. Higher magnifying powers—300 to 400 diameters—show the liver-cells to be enlarged, distinctly nucleated, rounded, and disposed to fuse. If a weak solution of iodine is added, they may strike a wine-red color, which, according to Rindfleisch, is confined to the nucleus; but, according to Senator, may extend to the whole of the cell. Klebs ascribes this reaction to postmortem changes in the glycogenic substance. The minute changes described are said by Rindfleisch to be more striking in the peripheral zone of the lobule than in that of the portal vein, while the intermediate zone, or that of the hepatic

<sup>1</sup> "Philadelphia Medical Journal," April 4, 1902.

artery, is fatty, and the central part, including the rootlets of the hepatic vein, is nearly normal. Incidental morbid states hypertrophic cirrhosis and atrophic cirrhosis. An interesting fact in this connection is that the most serious organic disease of the liver appears never to cause glycosuria.

As to the *pancreas*, about which so much has already been said, it may be well to mention the changes found at different times. They include calculi found in the pancreas of a diabetic as early as 1778 by T. Cowley, cancer by Bright at a comparatively early date and atrophy by Griesinger, who had found the pancreas atrophied in one of the five diabetics whose bodies he examined after death, yet believed that this lesion was of no significance whatever. But the observations which have been published in great numbers (Hartsen, Fles, von Recklinghausen, Frerichs, Klebs, Harnack, Külz, Schaper, Lancereaux, Senator, and others) allow us to assume that diseases of the pancreas are present in about one-half of all the cases of diabetes. The statement of Senator<sup>1</sup> that this organ "is found diseased with surprising frequency, in particular either atrophied or, in addition, degenerated," is in the main correct. Among nine cases Frerichs saw atrophy or fatty degeneration of the gland five times, and in the Vienna dead-house the pancreas was found strikingly small, soft, and anemic in 13 out of 30 diabetics (Seegen). Other coincident diseases of the pancreas already mentioned are cancer and impacted calculus. Reference should not be omitted to the important work of Eugene L. Opie, who has shown minute changes in the island of Langerhans in certain cases of diabetes mellitus.<sup>2</sup>

The kidneys, primarily unaffected, are in many cases sooner or later influenced by the constant hyperemia to which they are subjected in eliminating the sugar. The appearances commonly met are those of hyperemia and overgrowth of epithelium—in a word, those of catarrhal nephritis. Occasionally the changes are more advanced, and the epithelium is fatty. More rarely granular contracted kidney is present, contributing a more serious significance to the albuminuria. These changes are not necessarily attended by albuminuria previous to death. In most other cases I believe nephritis to be an accidental coincidence. There occurs also sometimes a swelling of the epithelium in the straight tubes, hyaline changes in the descending limb of Henle's loop, as well as a hyaline change in the vessels of the Malpighian tubes. As to the proportion of cases in which the kidneys reveal morbid alterations, it is a decided majority.

The *lungs* are often the seat of tubercular deposits and cavities resulting from their softening; also of bronchopneumonia and croupous pneumonia, which may terminate in gangrene. In many cases of diabetes the heart is found normal or corresponds to the general nutritive condition of the patients. Quite often it is enlarged. An average of cases collected by Saundby, Israel, Mayer and Virchow found the heart hypertrophied in 17 per cent. Cardiac hypertrophy is seldom found in rapidly progressing cases, in young spare individuals, the myocardial changes in these cases being usually fatty though neither pronounced or definite. Naturally, cardiac changes are detected after death which may not have

<sup>1</sup> Senator, *loc. cit.*, p. 887.

<sup>2</sup> "On the Relations of Chronic Interstitial Pancreatitis to the Islands of Langerhans and Diabetes Mellitus," *Jour. of Experimental Medicine*, vol. v., p. 396, 1900-1901.

produce recognizable symptoms during life. Acid intoxication as well as the irritant effect of glucose in the blood may be a cause of any of the cardiac conditions found. Acid intoxication especially is responsible for feeble cardiac action and even syncope during life without true diabetic coma.

**Symptoms.**—Almost invariably the earliest symptoms noticed by the diabetic are *thirst* and *polyuria*. One or the other of the two may be noticed first, or the patient's attention may be called to both simultaneously. It occasionally happens that a *dryness of the fauces* and a glutinous *viscid* character of the *saliva* attract attention before any other symptom. Sometimes it is observed that a drop of urine falling upon the boots or clothing and evaporating there, leaves a persistent white or yellowish spot due to sugar. *Dryness and harshness of the skin*, due to absence of perspiration, soon make their appearance and early attract the attention of those who ordinarily perspire freely, and occasion varying amounts of discomfort. *Itching* of the skin is sometimes present. The *temperature* of the body is not increased, at this stage scarcely altered, although later in the disease it may be decidedly lowered. If the further progress of the disease is not arrested, a *voracious appetite* becomes the next symptom, notwithstanding which the patient observes that he slowly *loses in weight* and grows daily *weaker*. Extreme *languor* and *weakness* are characteristic. The rapidity with which these symptoms succeed one another varies. Sometimes the course is very rapid, constituting an acute form; at other times the successive stages are exceedingly slow in developing chronic diabetes.

*Boils* and *carbuncles* in the skin are also of frequent occurrence, favored by the malnutrition growing out of diabetes, and the former are occasionally the first symptoms recognized. The latter never occur early, but, when present, are frequently the immediate cause of death.

*Gangrene* of various parts of the body is another of this class of symptoms. It is sometimes spontaneous, but more frequently is immediately caused by some trifling injury which, under other circumstances, would be without result. It has been known to start from a blister and from the cutting of a corn. Beginning most frequently in those parts of the body most remote from the center of the circulation, as the toes, its progress and appearances are like those of senile gangrene. Sometimes, however, the gangrene is moist.

*Eczema*, with itching and burning of the labia and vicinity, is a frequent and troublesome symptom in women incident to the extremely frequent micturition. In the male the meatus urinarius is sometimes the seat of a similar irritation. Eczema elsewhere, as on the palms of the hands, is also a symptom.

The early loss of *sexual desire* is characteristic.

*Dyspeptic symptoms* may appear at various stages, seldom very early. Acid eructations, flatulence, and epigastric pain, or an indescribable sensation described as "sinking" of the epigastrium, are among them. *Constipation* is sometimes a very troublesome symptom, and adds, in my experience, to the seriousness of the case; on the other hand, diarrhea is occasionally present.

The foregoing category includes all the symptoms which present themselves in the milder form of the disease. But unless averted, all these symptoms become intensified. The patient complains of constant burning thirst, is continually urinating, and as constantly drinking water to quench his thirst, and, while often eating enormously, grows emaciated, although at the onset of the disease he may have been a robust, vigorous man.

As the disease advances there is a peculiar vinous or *acetous* odor of the breath, which has been compared to that of stale beer, and by Sir Thomas Watson to the odor of a place in which apples are kept. This is believed to be due to acetone and diacetic acid, both of which exist in the blood of severe cases of diabetes.

Later, cough often sets in, owing to bronchitis and tuberculous phthisis, and, with the copious expectoration incident to them, adds to the debilitating agencies already at work. Roberts thinks phthisis occurs in one-half the cases. I am sure not so many die of it in this country. C. von Noorden says one-fourth of all diabetic subjects in Germany have the disease, and Lancereaux, that victims of pancreatic diabetes are especially prone to tuberculosis. The consumption thus induced sometimes rapidly hastens the fatal termination, while at other times it appears to have but a trifling influence in this respect. The other symptoms characteristic of pulmonary consumption are also present, not excepting hectic sweats. The perspiration thus arising may contain sugar.

*Diabetic coma*, first described by Kussmaul in 1874, is a form of coma which often comes on in advanced stages of diabetes and almost as often terminates in death. The condition is one of suddenly or gradually supervening unconsciousness, with or without previous irritability or uneasiness, anxiety, vertigo, or symptoms resembling alcoholic intoxication. Sometimes it is preceded by obstinate constipation or intestinal catarrh or severe colicky and muscular pain. Convulsions do not occur, but the eyes are half open, the pupils dilated, and the eyeballs wandering. In addition to coma there are frequent and feeble pulse, deep inspiration, with short expiration, more or less frequent than in health, and gradually invading cyanosis. The temperature, at first slightly elevated, is subsequently subnormal. The condition lasts for from 24 to 48 hours, when death usually supervenes. Over one-half of all deaths in diabetes are ascribed to diabetic coma by Frerichs, but others assign a much smaller number to it. The odor of acetone may issue with the breath. The coma has been variously ascribed to acetone and diacetic acid, to oxybutyric acid, and many years ago by Professor Saunders and D. J. Hamilton<sup>1</sup> to slow carbonic poisoning due to fat embolism of the pulmonary vessels. All views are speculative. Acetone and diacetic acid are very often present for a long time, and yet no coma supervenes. There would seem to be better reason for ascribing the condition to "acid intoxication" or "acidosis," due to oxybutyric acid as held by Stadelmann and Minkowski, since the continued presence of this acid is always followed, sooner or later, by coma unless the patient die from other cause. Diabetic coma must not be confounded with other forms of coma which may occur in diabetes, as true apoplexy and uremia.

<sup>1</sup> "Edin. Med. Jour.," July, 1879.

Severe *neuritis* in the brachial and crural nerves is not infrequent. In grave cases the *tendon reflexes* are diminished or absent. *Unilateral sweating* has been observed. Senator refers to three cases—two of the left half of the face and one of the right. *Edema* sometimes appears late in the disease, and is not necessarily the result of renal complication.

Among the rarer symptoms is *cataract*, the association of which with diabetes was long ago noticed by Prout. It develops rapidly and is nearly always symmetrical, involving both eyes simultaneously, but not to the same degree. It is sometimes a very nice point to determine whether cataract is due to diabetes or to the usual causes. The earlier the age at which it occurs, the more probably is it due to diabetes.

Other visual defects may occur. Among these are myopia, amblyopia, presbyopia, and loss of accommodating power from defect of the ciliary muscle. George E. de Schweinitz informs me that a sudden development of myopia between the 40th and 60th years without apparent lesion is characteristic of diabetes. It may be due to a fine edema of the choroid, or a choroiditis which in turn determines an elongation of the axis of the eyeball and thus produces myopia.

The ophthalmoscope may reveal dilatation of the *retinal* vessels. Many years ago Albert G. Heyl<sup>1</sup> described a condition which he called *intra-ocular lipemia*, in which the light salmon color of the blood contained in the branches of the retinal vein and artery contrasted with the cinnabar-red of the vein and yellow-red of the artery, also by the greater width of these vessels and the lighter yellow of the fundus. Finally, *atrophy of the retina* and hemorrhagic and inflammatory affections of the eye have been described, and total blindness has been ascribed to the first named.<sup>2</sup> *Derangements* of other *special senses* said to attend diabetes are impairment of hearing, roaring in the ears, and derangement of smell and taste.

A *spongy* state of the *gums*, with recession and excavation, is an occasional symptom, resulting in extreme cases in absorption of the alveolar processes and falling out of the teeth.

*Blood-pressure in Diabetes.*—The results of different observers as to blood-pressure in diabetes are not uniform. My own experience would go to show that blood-pressure is certainly not increased in this disease *per se*. Eliminating complications, the tendency is to be normal or below the normal, say 115–130. Where complicated with arterio-sclerosis, a very frequent complication, of diabetes or by nephritis, blood-pressure is higher, reaching sometimes 160 or more. These results are in accord with those of Vaquez, Hensen, Theodore C. Janeway and Arthur R. Elliott,<sup>3</sup> of Chicago, as contrasted with Potain, Jaques Mayer, Tiessier Schott, Ebstein and others.

*Alterations in the Blood.*—It has already been mentioned that in diabetes the blood becomes highly charged with glucose, which increases from a normal of 0.05 to 0.15 per cent. to 0.2 per cent., and in extreme cases to 0.57 per cent., and from this hyperglycemia comes glycosuria. From the presence of the first we should naturally expect a higher specific

<sup>1</sup> "Lipemia and Fat Embolism in Diabetes Mellitus." "N. Y. Med. Rec.," vol. xvii., p. 477, 1880.

<sup>2</sup> Dufréne, "De l'Amblyopie Diabétique." "Gaz. Heb.," November, 1861.

<sup>3</sup> "Clinical study of Blood-pressure Variations in Diabetes and their Bearing on the Cardiac Complications," "Jour. of Amer. Med. Assoc.," July 6, 1907.

gravity of the blood-serum, which has been found as high as 1033, as contrasted with the normal 1028. On the other hand, the serum has been found thinner than normal, containing, according to different analyses, from 80.2 to 84.8 of water instead of the normal 78 to 79 per cent. The red blood-disks are often diminished. The alkalinity of the blood is also lowered, and as such diminution is at a maximum when oxybutyric acid is being excreted, it has been ascribed to the presence of this substance.

An abnormal amount of fat in the blood, producing the technical lipemia, was observed by the earliest students of diabetes, and is attested by many analyses, as well as by the milky appearance of the serum and the intraocular appearances described by Albert G. Heyl. The analyses of Simon shown from 2 to 2.4 per cent. instead of the normal 1.6 to 1.9 per cent.

*Changes in the Urine.*—The peculiarity of diabetic urine most noticeable to the patient is its enormous quantity, which has been known to exceed 70 pounds (31.78 kilos) in 24 hours, while apocryphal accounts of larger amounts are extant. Frank records 52 pounds (23.6 kilos); Bardsley<sup>1</sup> 36 pints (20.4 liters) and 32 pints (18.6 liters); Bence Jones found 56 pints (31.78 liters); Sir Thomas Watson and Dickinson 26 pints (14.77 liters), and Pavy 32 pints (18.16 liters). From 70 to 100 ounces (2100 to 3000 c.c.) are frequent quantities. The quantity of urine passed is limited by the amount of fluid ingested, for while it is possible that the amount of the former secreted may exceed for a very short period the quantity of the latter ingested, it is evident that this cannot continue for any length of time, and, in point of fact, it is found to be almost invariably a little less, the remainder being removed by the lungs, skin, and bowels. It is said that in health the lungs exhale fully one-fourth as much water as the kidneys secrete. Should it be proven that cases do occur in which the amount of water secreted exceeds that ingested by the mouth for any considerable period, it must then be admitted that absorption of water from the air by the skin is possible. On the other hand, it was early observed by Th. Cowley<sup>2</sup> (1788) that the quantity of water occasionally is not at all or but slightly increased. To this condition Frank,<sup>3</sup> another old author, gave the name of *diabetes decipiens*. It is well known, also, that intercurrent diseases, especially febrile affections, sometimes diminish the quantity of urine as well as the amount of sugar excreted; while the same diminution of urine and sugar also occasionally occurs toward the fatal termination of the disease.

But the most important change is, of course, the presence of *glucose*. Of this, the quantity varies greatly in different cases and at different times in the same case. Every case of trifling and temporary glycosuria should not, however, be considered a case of diabetes. The sugar should be easily recognizable by the ordinary tests and should be constant. From what may be indicated as "evident traces" the proportion of sugar may reach, it is said, as much as 15 per cent. I have never found more than 12 per cent., though I often hear reports of the finding of larger quantities which I can scarcely credit. The 24 hours' quantity varies similarly. The maximum quantity secreted in this time appears to be that reported

<sup>1</sup> Bardsley, article on "Diabetes" in the "Cyclopedia of Prac. Med.," Philadelphia, p. 607, 1845.

<sup>2</sup> Th. Cowley, "London Medical Journal," 1788.

<sup>3</sup> J. P. Frank, "De Curandis Hom. Morbis Epitome," lib. v., "De Profluviis," Pars 1, Manheimii, 1794.

by Dickinson, wherein a man 25 years of age voided 50 ounces (1500 gm.) of glucose in 24 hours. But the more usual quantity is from 10 to 80 milligrams to the cubic centimeter, or from 20 to 25 gm. in 24 hours; equivalent to 5 to 30 grains in the fluidounce, English measure, or from 300 to 3800 grains in the 24 hours.

The effect of muscular exercise in diminishing the quantity of sugar in the urine of diabetics was early confirmed by Külz and others, while it is scarcely necessary to say that accidental as well as intentional changes in diet are followed by consequent variations. So, too, urine passed after fasting, as on rising in the morning, contains generally less sugar than that passed after a meal, and in the clinical study of cases of diabetes, where a part of the 24 hours' urine is not obtainable, it is important to bear this in mind. As the difficulties in obtaining a part of the 24 hours' urine regularly are very great, it is often preferable, in my experience, to take for examination two samples, one passed in the morning on rising, and representing the fasting urine, and another on going to bed, representing the day urine.

Consistently with the increased solid matter thus added, the *specific gravity* of diabetic urine is, as a rule, high, 1040 being very common, while Bouchardat found it as high as 1074 in one instance. The well-known disposition of diabetic urine to become *frothy* on shaking, and to maintain this frothy condition, is a natural physical result of its increased density. Urine may, however, have a low specific gravity and yet contain sugar. I have found it as low as 1010 and lower. Such low specific gravities of glucose, if present in any decided degree, must depend on the low proportion of other normal ingredients. Sugar sometimes disappears very rapidly from urine by fermentation, thus reducing also the specific gravity.

Concurrent with the increase in quantity of urine is an *absence of color*, which in extreme degrees is almost total, so that the urine may be as clear as spring water. Almost all diabetic urine, sooner or later after exposure at a moderate temperature, becomes *cloudy* from the development of fungi coincident with fermentation. The *odor* of the urine is usually normal when first passed, but sooner or later, in consequence of fermentation setting up, it may acquire an acetous odor. The latter change also increases the normal acid reaction and maintains it much longer after exposure to the air than is the case with normal urine. This acetous odor is ascribed to acetone and diacetic acid. The urine may have a sweetish odor when passed, which has been compared to "sweet brier." Diabetic urine is sometimes quite free from *sediment*. At other times there is a copious sediment of uric acid. In the sediment may also be included the *penicilium* fungus, common to acid urine, as well as the more characteristic yeast or sugar fungus, or the *torula cerivisiæ*. This also sometimes appears as a *mold* on the surface of the urine.

Of the normal chemical constituents of the urine, *urea* is almost invariably increased. This is contributed to by two causes. The first is the ingestion of large amounts of nitrogenous food, whether to appease the appetite or by the physician's advice. The second cause is the destruction of the tissues themselves which characterizes the severest cases



in the last stages in spite of the enormous food consumption. In such event the nitrogenous tissues are split up into urea and sugar.

As regards *uric acid*, it is either normal or slightly increased. Of the other constituents of the urine, creatinin is increased; sulphuric acid is subject to its normal variations; chlorin, phosphoric acid, lime, and magnesia are said to be increased; phosphoric acid and lime especially so. Ammonia is sometimes largely increased, indeed enormously so in certain conditions, as in diabetic coma and threatened coma, when it is drawn out of the tissues to neutralize oxybutyric acid.

Of *abnormal* constituents, albumin is often present—perhaps in one-third of all cases; some make it a larger proportion, some less. The albuminuria is not generally large and, in my experience, is not often a serious symptom. Albuminuria does not necessarily imply renal change. The urine may become albuminous from any of the causes of albuminuria independent of diabetes, as pus from pyelitis, cystitis, etc.

*Inosit*, or muscle-sugar, occasionally replaces the grape-sugar in diabetes, but more frequently accompanies it. Gallois<sup>1</sup> found it in five out of 35 diabetics.

Finally, *acetone*, *diacetic acid*, and *beta-oxybutyric acid* are all frequently met in diabetic urine. Knoop's studies<sup>1</sup> have shown that the source of these substances may be either protein or fat, the fatty acids probably constituting the chief source, diacetic or aceto-acetic acid being probably first formed and rapidly transformed into acetone. When but little diacetic acid is produced, it is all converted into acetone; when much is formed, both substances appear in the urine. The conversion takes place mainly in the urine, but doubtless also in the tissues or the blood, since acetone may be present in the expired air. To acetone is ascribed the vinous odor sometimes present in the urine. Acetone is produced in health in a slight amount in the normal decomposition of albumin, freely in certain diseases other than diabetes. According to von Noorden, these substances are formed in the disintegration of the albumin of the body and not of the food—in a word, when the patient is "consuming his own proteids."

Beta-oxybutyric acid is believed by many to be the first stage in the formation of diacetic acid. Von Noorden also thinks this possible, but he claims for it a certain "clinical independence," and considers it probable that oxybutyric acid, on the one hand, and aceto-acetic acid, on the other, arise from qualitatively different disintegration processes. While acetone in the urine does not add to the seriousness of diabetes, the presence of oxybutyric acid is of the gravest prognostic significance. It is said never to disappear permanently after being once present, and to be almost always followed in a few days or weeks by diabetic coma and death. Diacetic acid has an intermediate significance between acetone and beta-oxybutyric acid.

Of the other secretions, the *perspiration*, when present, frequently contains sugar, at times a notable amount, as much as 6 1/2 grains (0.42 gm.) having been extracted by Fletcher from a piece of flannel, three inches square, which had lain upon the skin of a diabetic patient for 48

<sup>1</sup> Gallois, "Comptes Rendues," 1, p. 533; also "De l'Inosurie," Paris, 1864.

hours. The *saliva* has rarely been found to contain sugar independently of that which it acquires from the food. That the *gastric juice* ever contains it under similar conditions is disputed, but it has been found in effusions and exudations, as might be expected.

**Duration.**—Though the course of a few cases of diabetes is so rapid as to justify the name acute, the number of these cases is not sufficient to justify a classification into acute and chronic. In such rapid cases death has taken place at periods ranging from two days to six weeks, yet in no instance can it be averred that the disease was of as short duration as it seemed, since it may have existed some time before it was discovered, while in several it was evidently of longer duration. It is true, therefore, that diabetes mellitus is a disease almost invariably of long duration. Cases of 15, 18, and 20 years' duration are reported. I have had a number of cases under my care for more than ten years. The younger the subject, the shorter the duration and the more promptly fatal the result, while after middle age, under treatment, the duration may be indefinite.

Diabetes mellitus is sometimes distinctly intermittent for a time, regardless of treatment. I was for a long time incredulous on this subject, but experience has taught me that such a form of diabetes occurs, in which both polyuria and glycosuria may disappear without treatment, to recur again. Such cases are, however, easily controlled by treatment when discovered, while they are as certain to pass over into the permanent form if neglected.

**Complications.**—The diabetic is characteristically subject to complications, which may be accounted for in a word by his diminished power of resistance to all disease-causing agencies and to the toxic influences incident to the disease itself. Most of these have already been considered among symptoms. Such are the numerous skin affections, gastro-intestinal disturbances, pancreatic and renal affections, functional cardiac and nervous symptoms, including neuritis and diabetic coma. *Tuberculosis* has also been mentioned. It is especially apt to attack young subjects and to cause their death. *Arterio-sclerosis* is prone to occur in diabetics, with its full train of consequences, and to appear earlier in life among them. *Jaundice* sometimes occurs, and having presented itself twice in the history of a case under my observation, can hardly be considered accidental. Senator says that, when not an accidental complication due to a catarrh of the duodenum, it may result from compression of the biliary capillaries by the overloaded blood-vessels or enlarged gland-cells of the liver.<sup>1</sup>

Gout and diabetes are sometimes associated, and an interesting and important fact has been learned from this association, viz.: that cases of diabetes complicated with gout are always mild cases and easily controlled. Sometimes the symptoms of gout and diabetes alternate. That is, when the glycosuria appears the gouty symptoms subside and *vice versa*. These cases are apt to be associated with arterio-sclerosis and death from apoplexy may ensue.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of diabetes mellitus is very easy, yet I

<sup>1</sup> Senator, *loc. cit.*, p. 912.

have known it to be long overlooked by the practitioner. Unnatural thirst and copious diuresis should always suggest a chemical examination of the urine, and although there are sources of error in testing for small quantities of sugar, the quantities thus overlooked are not usually of clinical significance. In fact, in my observation, glucose is more frequently declared present by inexperienced examiners when absent than the reverse. Almost any one of the tests, therefore, which are found in the various manuals for the examination of urine, applied with ordinary care, will respond readily to quantities which are of clinical significance.

*Tests for Sugar.*—For provisional purposes Trommer's method of using the copper test answers very well. Its ingredients are easily attainable, and there is no risk of error from changes during keeping, to which Fehling's and Pavy's solutions are subject.

(1) Trommer's test is used as follows:

To a small quantity of urine, say five c.c. (50 minims), add half as much liquor potassæ or sodæ, then drop by drop a 5 or 10 per cent. solution of cupric sulphate. On first adding the copper, a blue precipitate of hydrated cupric protoxid takes place, *which, if sugar is present, is redissolved on shaking*, producing a clear blue liquid. The copper solution should be thus added until the precipitate is no longer dissolved on shaking. Then heat the mixture to boiling, and if sugar is present, a copious yellow precipitate of hydrated cuprous oxid or of red cuprous oxid occurs. Either is conclusive evidence. Occasionally the precipitate of earthy phosphates is so copious as decidedly to obscure the reaction, and by beginners is sometimes mistaken for the suboxid. In this event the earthy phosphates may be removed by filtration after *slightly* warming the mixture. The reaction should take place as soon as the boiling-point is reached—indeed, it sometimes occurs before this point is reached. Prolonged boiling should be avoided.

(2) In Fehling's solution<sup>1</sup> the constituents of Trommer's test are united in definite proportions in order that a quantitative estimation may be made. It is also used for qualitative testing, while a rough quantitative estimation may be made at the same time by what is known as the *clinical method* at the University of Pennsylvania Clinic.

A given quantity, say one c.c., of Fehling's solution is placed in a test-tube, diluted with about four times its bulk of water, and boiled for a few seconds. If the solution remains clear, add immediately the suspected urine, drop by drop. If sugar is abundant, the first few drops will usually cause the red or yellow precipitate, but if the reaction does not occur, the dropping may be continued, followed each time by heating until an equal volume has been added. If no red or yellow precipitate occurs, sugar is absent. Now, Fehling's solution is so composed that if an equal volume is exactly reduced by an equal volume of urine, that

<sup>1</sup> *Fehling's Solution.*—Dissolve 34.652 gm. of pure crystallized sulphate of copper in 200 gm. of distilled water; 175 gm. of chemically pure crystallized neutral sodic tartrate in 480 gm. solution of caustic soda of specific gravity 1.14, and into this basic solution the copper solution is poured, a little at a time. The clear mixed fluid is diluted to one liter, or 1000 c.c.

Ten c.c. of this solution will be reduced by 0.05 gm., or 50 milligrams, of diabetic sugar. If Fehling's solution is to be kept some time, it is absolutely essential that it should be placed in smaller bottles holding from 40 to 80 gm., sealed, and kept in a cellar.

Still greater security may be obtained by dissolving the cupric sulphate in 500 c.c. and the tartrate salt and potash in 500 c.c., keeping the two solutions separate in rubber-stoppered bottles. Equal volumes of the two solutions are united when needed for use.

urine contains one-half of one per cent. of glucose; if by half bulk, one per cent.; if twice the bulk, one-fourth per cent., and so on, whence one can easily estimate roughly the percentage. Should the urine contain more than one per cent. of sugar, it should be diluted one to ten and the result multiplied by ten.

If a reduction takes place on boiling the test fluid alone, a new supply may be obtained, or a little more soda or potash may be added, the fluid filtered, and it is again ready for use. Such spontaneous reduction of the cuprous oxid often occurs when Fehling's solution is kept for some time.

In judging the progress of a case of diabetes under treatment it is not sufficient to test the urine qualitatively, but a quantitative determination of sugar must be made. This may be done by the clinical method just described or by volumetric processes described in the manuals for the examination of urine, but the simplest process is the (3) *fermentation method* of Roberts. In this the specific gravity of the urine is taken before and after fermentation, and the difference in the two results indicates the number of grains of sugar in each fluidounce of urine. Suppose, then, the specific gravity before fermentation to be 1045, and after fermentation 1035: the quantity of sugar is ten grains to the fluidounce, or 0.65 gm. in 30 c.c. These figures can be reduced to percentage by multiplying by 0.23.

Mention should be made of those rare instances in which the sugar does not reduce cupric oxid. I have had a case under my care. The urine had a specific gravity of 1050 when the patient came under observation, but there was no response whatever to the copper or bismuth test; yet by the fermentation test a large amount of sugar was shown to be present.

(4) Polarimetry is a very convenient method of analysis if an instrument is at hand, though the costliness of a good instrument will probably always be in the way of its general use.

*Tests for Acetone, Diacetic Acid, and Oxybutyric Acid.*—Of the numerous tests for acetone, most of which require the distillate for their successful application, Legal's nitroprussid of sodium test is the most satisfactory for the practitioner, because it does not require the distillate.

*Legal's Test for Acetone.*—A fresh, rather strong solution of sodium nitroprussid is made by dissolving a few fragments in a little water in a test-tube. To three or four c.c. of the suspected urine add enough liquor sodæ or potassæ to secure a distinct alkaline reaction. To the mixture then add a *few drops* of the nitroprussid solution, when the whole quickly assumes a red color, whether acetone is present or not, said to be produced by creatinin even more rapidly than by acetone. In any event the red color disappears; but if acetone is present, the addition, of a few drops of concentrated acetic acid causes a purple or violet-red color. If there is no acetone, this final change does not occur, while the purple color also fades in a little while, even if caused by acetone.

To test for *diacetic acid* add a few drops of a solution of ferric chlorid to a small quantity of the urine, when a beautiful Burgundy-red reaction occurs. A precipitate of phosphates succeeds the adding of the first few drops, but this is redissolved by a further addition of the chlorid.

The test is confirmed if, after heating the original fluid, there is no response on application of the chlorid of iron—the effect of heat being to dissipate the diacetic acid. A more brilliant reaction is obtained if the urine be first treated with a solution of acetate of lead, filtering out the white precipitate and testing the filtrate. Urine passed after the administration of salicylic acid, antipyrin, carbolio acid, salol, phenocol, kairin and other drugs furnishes a similar reaction.

The reaction for diacetic acid being obtained, it is scarcely necessary to test for *beta-oxybutyric acid*, as the significance is the same. The test is a complicated one, but *beta-oxybutyric acid* is presumably present when a quantitative estimation indicates a larger quantity of glucose than does polarization, since *beta-oxybutyric acid* rotates polarized light to the left, as contrasted with the dextrorotatory power of grape-sugar. Again, if after complete fermentation with yeast or precipitation with basic acetate of lead and ammonia the urine is found levorotatory, *beta-oxybutyric acid* is presumably present.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis of diabetes varies with the age at which the disease makes its appearance, the time which has been allowed to elapse before treatment is instituted, and the treatment itself. Once thoroughly established early in life, or before 25 years of age, recovery is rarely possible, but even at this age, if treatment is instituted sufficiently early, much may often be done to avert the end. Diabetes is a disease in which the expectant plan of treatment is disastrous. It is a disease which never gets well of itself, and always gets worse if not properly treated. At the same time the mild cases amenable to treatment are in a decided majority. When the disease appears after middle life in fat persons or those disposed to gout, and is early recognized and promptly treated, it is usually easily controlled; and although it is almost never safe to declare a case of diabetes absolutely cured, it does occasionally happen that recovery is so complete that the patient may be left to his own mode of living. As a rule, however, even those who have apparently recovered must keep a watch upon their diet, and should at intervals have their urine examined with a view to sounding, as it were, their condition. We are entirely justified in saying to a diabetic patient, "As long as your urine remains free of sugar you are practically as well as if you had no tendency to diabetes." On the other hand, for spare, nervous, and hard-worked persons, especially mentally overworked, under 40, there is a much more unfavorable outlook. Even here, if the co-operation of the patient can be secured, much may be done. Every intermediate degree of seriousness may occur. When diabetes depends upon recognized nervous lesions, the prognosis is altogether that of the lesion itself. The cause of death is very frequently some intercurrent or consequent disease, as phthisis or diabetic coma. The syphilitic origin of the disease and obesity are favorable prognostic factors; a spare habit and habitual constipation are unfavorable.

**Treatment.**—This resolves itself easily into the dietetic, the hygienic, and the medical.

1. *Dietetic Treatment.*—This is by far the most efficient, and no permanent results have ever been obtained without it. It consists essentially

in the elimination from the diet of such articles as are readily convertible into glucose—viz., the carbohydrates. It is acknowledged that in the early stages of the disease only the saccharine and amylaceous foods fail to be consumed in the economy in the usual way and appear in the urine as glucose. Hence, if these be excluded from the diet and their place supplied by other assimilable articles, the symptom disappears, and the disappearance of this symptom seems to be, for the time being at least, the cure of the disease.

If it were necessary to select a diet absolutely free from sugar and starch, it would indeed be restricted, as there are comparatively few articles of food thus constituted. Such are, however, meats of every kind, fresh or salted, including tripe, tongue, ham, bacon, and sausage; soups made from meat and without flour; game, poultry, fish, oysters, lobsters, crabs, eggs in every form; butter and new cheese, oils and fats. Happily, however, it is not necessary to use articles absolutely free from the two baneful principles, and in this manner quite a variety of palatable articles may be added to the dietary. Among these are cream, curds, milk and butter milk, and all green vegetables, including spinach, endive, lettuce, dandelion, cabbage in various forms including coleslaw, Brussels sprouts, cauliflower, broccoli, string-beans, tomato, watercress, celery tops, asparagus tops, turnip tops, young onions, cucumbers, pickles, and olives. To these may be added unsweetened jellies (preparations of gelatin) and especially a variety of nuts, including almonds, walnuts, butternuts, filberts, pecan nuts, Brazil nuts, but not chestnuts; also, all acid fruits, as apples, lemons, strawberries, etc. Tea and coffee, with cream and without sugar, cocoa nibs, cocoa, but not chocolate, are permitted; also all wines which contain little or no sugar, including claret, Burgundy, Rhine, and still Moselle wines, together with very dry sherry, unsweetened brandy, whisky, and gin when required. The carbonated waters, natural or artificial (the so-called soda-water of the shops), are pre-eminently suitable. Water is to be allowed *ad libitum*, for water is the medium by which the sugar is carried out of the blood and tissues. Its supply should therefore be liberal, and with the diminished sugar formation comes diminished thirst. Better still are the alkaline mineral waters, especially those of Vals, Vichy, Carlsbad, and the Saratoga Vichy.

Beer, ale, porter, cider, and the fermented liquors generally are not allowable because of the sugar and carbohydrates they contain. They are less objectionable when fermentation is carried to a high degree, resulting in a more complete destruction of the sugar. This is the case with certain bottled lager beers and English ales.

It is not simply the small quantity of sugar and starch contained in them which renders the vegetable substances named admissible, for many of them contain a great deal of sugar; but these sugars, unlike grape-sugar and cane sugar, are more easily assimilable. Such are pre-eminently mannite, the sugar of manna; lactin, or sugar of milk; levulose, or fruit-sugar, and probably, also, inosit, or the sugar of muscle. Such is also inulin, a hydrocarbon and starchy principle found in the *inula helenium*, or elecampane, but especially in Iceland moss. Hence, too, the impunity with which milk can often be taken by diabetics, although it contains from

three to six per cent. of lactic acid. On this account, too, levulose may be cautiously used for sweetening tea and coffee in mild cases. Glycerin is also sometimes substituted for sugar, but though less objectionable, both theory and experience go to show that it is not a safe substitute. Levulose and even mannite are much to be preferred to glycerine, both for sweetening and as a substitute for sugar in force production. But none of these sugars can be used with safety for sweetening purposes, and if sweetening is indispensable for the patient, it should be done with saccharin.

It will be noticed that not only all saccharine substances of animal or vegetable origin and all vegetables largely composed of starch, as potatoes, rice, and corn, are omitted from the category of admissible articles, but that *bread*, and all preparations made of wheat, rye, rice, or corn-flour, are conspicuous by their absence. This is found to be a very important omission from the dietary of most persons, and numerous, indeed, have been the attempts to devise substitutes for it, with varying success. The best known and most popular of these is gluten bread, made of the so-called gluten flour, whence the starch is partially removed by washing. Unfortunately, the so-called gluten flour usually obtained in this country contains nearly as much starch as the white flours. The Battle Creek Sanitarium Co., of Battle Creek, Mich., furnishes a nearly pure gluten meal and a nearly pure gluten biscuit. The latter can be used only for thickening soups and dressings. The "Casoid foods" of Callard & Co., of London, which contain a minimum of carbohydrate, may be obtained of Thomas Leeming & Co., 73 Warren St., New York City. The Battle Creek foods may be obtained of Gimble Bros., in Philadelphia. In England and France diabetic patients are much more fortunate, gluten flours of sufficient purity being there obtainable. Flour of the soya bean (*soya hispida*), containing only four per cent. of starch and a large amount of nitrogenous matter and oil, is also used for making griddle-cakes and biscuit. These, if freshly made, are very palatable; but biscuits made for some time become rapidly rancid from decomposition of the oil.

Another substitute is bran flour or unbolted wheat flour, which contains relatively less starch. The pure bran itself is not wholly innutritious. Prout very early recommended, as a substitute for bread, a compound of bran, milk, and eggs, which he declared not unpalatable.<sup>1</sup>

Still another substitute for wheaten bread is the almond food suggested by Pavy. The almond is composed of 54 per cent. of oil, 24 per cent. of nitrogenized matter known as emulsin, six per cent. of sugar, three per cent. of gum, and *no starch*. Chemically speaking, it is therefore admirably adapted for diabetic food, and when the sugar and gum have been extracted, it leaves nothing to be desired. The sugar and gum are removed by treating the powdered almonds with boiling water slightly acidulated with tartaric acid, or by soaking the almonds in a boiling acidulated liquid, which may form part of the process for blanching. The boiling and the

<sup>1</sup> The following are Camplin's directions for making biscuit of the bran flour: To one-quarter of a pound of flour add three or four fresh eggs, one and a half ounces of butter, and half a pint of milk; mix the eggs with a little of the milk, and warm the butter with the other portion; then stir the whole well together; add a little nutmeg or ginger or other agreeable flavoring, and bake in small forms or patty-pans. The cake, when baked, should be about the thickness of an ordinary captain's biscuit. The pans must be well buttered. Bake in rather a quick oven for half an hour.

These cakes or biscuits may be eaten by the diabetic with meat or cheese for breakfast, dinner or supper; at tea they require rather a free allowance of butter, or they may be eaten with curd or any of the soft cheeses.

acid fluid are necessary in order to precipitate the *emulsin*, which would otherwise emulsify the oil of the almond. Biscuits made of almond-flour<sup>1</sup> and eggs are palatable, and may be eaten with a little dry sherry or whisky and water.

Biscuits made of *inulin*, the starchy principle already referred to on page 892, were suggested by Külz.<sup>2</sup> Lichenin, or moss-starch, abundant in Iceland moss, is a variety of inulin, and would be the material used for the purpose. Being very cheap, it is suitable on this account. Though a starch, it is, according to Külz, one of the assimilable starches already mentioned, of which small quantities, at least, do not increase the excretion of sugar. The biscuits are made with the addition of milk, eggs, and salt.

The best of these substitutes is unsatisfactory, as patients soon tire of them and want the real bread. Aleuronat<sup>3</sup> bread is regarded by von Noorden as the only one at all satisfactory, since it retains the bread taste. Although containing some carbohydrate, I have used it for my patients, but have not found it entirely satisfactory as a substitute for wheat bread.

The following classified summary of articles of food admissible for diabetics will be found convenient for reference:

*Shell-fish*.—Oysters, mussels, and clams, raw or cooked in any way, without the addition of flour.

*Fish* of all kinds, fresh or salted, including lobsters, crabs, sardines, and other fish in oil; fish roe, caviare.

*Meats* of every variety except livers, including beef, mutton, chipped dried beef, tripe, ham, tongue, bacon, and sausages. Also poultry and game of all kinds, with which, however, sweetened jellies and sauces should not be used.

*Soups*.—Clear bouillon and other soups, beef-tea and broth made without flour, rice, vermicelli, or other starchy substances; and without the vegetables named below as inadmissible.

*Vegetables*.—Cabbage, cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, broccoli, green string-beans, the green ends of asparagus, spinach, dandelion, mushrooms, tomatoes, lettuce, endive, coleslaw, olives, cucumber (fresh or pickled), radishes, sorrel, young onions, watercresses, mustard and cress, turnip tops, celery tops, artichokes, gherkins, okra, parsley, or any other green vegetables.

*Bread and cakes* made of pure gluten, bran, aleuronat, soya, peanut- or almond flour, inulin, with or without eggs and butter. Griddle-cakes, pan-cakes, biscuit, porridges, etc., made of these flours. Oatmeal porridge with cream. Where especial stringency is required, the last should be altogether omitted.

<sup>1</sup> Seegen recommends an almond food made as follows: Beat a quarter of a pound of blanched sweet almonds in a stone mortar for about three-quarters of an hour, as fine as possible; put the flour thus produced into a linen bag, which is then immersed for an hour and a quarter in boiling water acidulated with a few drops of vinegar. The mass is then thoroughly mixed with three ounces of butter and two eggs; the yolks of three eggs and a little salt are added, and the whole is to be stirred briskly for a long time. A fine broth made by beating the whites of the three eggs is then added. The whole paste is now put into a form, smeared with melted butter, and baked by a gentle fire.

<sup>2</sup> Külz, "Beitrag zur Path. und Therapie des Diabetes Mellitus," Marburg. Bd. 1, p. 145, 1874.

<sup>3</sup> Aleuronat bread is made by R. Williamson as follows: Mix two ounces (62 gm.) of desiccated cocoanut powder with a little water containing a small quantity of German yeast. Make the mass into a sort of paste, and put in a warm place for half an hour or longer. The small amount of sugar contained in the cocoanut is almost entirely decomposed by the fermentation produced by the yeast, and the cocoanut paste becomes spongy. Add two ounces (62 gm.) of aleuronat, one beaten egg, and a small quantity of water in which a little saccharin has been dissolved, and mix well until a dough is formed. Divide into cakes and bake in a moderate oven for 20 or 30 minutes.

Aleuronat is a yellowish powder containing from 80 to 90 per cent. of vegetable albumin and only seven per cent. of carbohydrates. I have found much difficulty in securing properly desiccated cocoanut powder.



*Eggs* in any quantity and prepared in all possible ways, without sugar or ordinary flours.

*Butter and Cheese.*

*Nuts.*—All except chestnuts, including almonds, walnuts, Brazil nuts, hazelnuts, filberts, pecan nuts, butternuts, cocoanuts.

*Condiments.*—Salt, vinegar, and pepper in moderate quantities.

*Fruits.*—Cranberries, plums, cherries, gooseberries, red currants, strawberries, acid apples, lemons, oranges sparingly—all without sugar. Acid fruits may be stewed, with the addition of bicarbonate of sodium instead of sugar.

*Jellies.*—None except those not sweetened with sugar. Saccharin may be used for sweetening instead of sugar. Jellies may be made of calf's foot or gelatin and flavored with wine.

*Drinks.*—Coffee, tea, and cocoa-nibs, with milk or cream, but without sugar. Also, milk, cream, soda- (carbonated) water, and all mineral waters freely; lemonade without sugar, acid wines, including clarets, Bordeaux, Rhine, and still Moselle wines, and very dry sherry. Unsweetened brandy, whisky, and gin. No malt liquors except those ales and beers which have been long bottled and in which the sugar has all been converted into carbonic acid and alcohol. Saccharin may be used for sweetening tea and coffee.

*To be Especially Avoided.*—Cantaloupes, watermelons, peaches, grapes, and all other sweet melons and fruits; potatoes (white and sweet), rice, beets, carrots, turnips, parsnips, peas, and beans; all vegetables containing starch or sugar in any quantity; sweet wines, including sherry, Madeira, port, and champagne:

In mild cases the dietetic measures previously indicated are usually followed by the most prompt and decided results, in some instances by the permanent removal of all symptoms, in others by a continued absence of them so long as a watchfulness over diet is maintained. In a more advanced stage of the disease, in which more rapid emaciation and loss of strength show themselves, such a regimen is followed by a decided diminution in the amount of sugar excreted, but it fails to disappear altogether, and a more rigid elimination of saccharin and amylaceous articles must be attempted. Sooner or later, however, a stage is reached when not only albuminous food breaks up into urea and sugar and urea and water, but the albumin of the tissues undergoes the same metabolism and excretion, while emaciation, starting first with the disappearance of fats, invades even the muscular tissue. Fatty foods longest resist this breaking up, but, ultimately, in progressive cases, even they increase the elimination of sugar.

Each case should be thoroughly studied as to its own peculiarities and demands. I do not pursue the same plan in every case. Sometimes I place the patient at the onset on a strict nitrogenous diet of broths, meat, and eggs, with a view to determining what can be accomplished. This done, successive articles of food are added and their effect upon the urine is watched. In other cases, especially when the quantity of sugar is not large, I first take away from the diet all sweets, and the purest starch foods, including bread. Too great stringency must not be insisted upon, and

the presence of one per cent. or a maximum of two per cent. of glucose in urine may be permitted for a time; but semi-occasionally, say once a month, a return should be made to the strict diet, with a view to taking soundings, and if it is found that all the glucose disappears, we may be encouraged to permit for a time a more liberal diet.

In many cases of diabetes of long standing there comes a time when it becomes necessary for the welfare of the patient that a rigid diet must be suspended for a time. So settled is this truth that some physicians erred on the other side and have been led to decry altogether the dietetic treatment. A question of great practical importance asks what shall guide us to such a change of diet? Modern studies go to show that the indication for such a change is the flooding of the tissues and circulation with organic acids, especially oxybutyric, to which Naunyn has given the name "acidosis." It is under these circumstances that the "oat cure" of von Noorden and the "potato cure" of Mosse are recommended. Von Noorden makes the striking statement that "many diabetics," particularly severe cases with marked acetonuria, secrete much less sugar when they eat large quantities of oatmeal than when they are put upon the strictest diet which is as free from carbohydrates as is technically possible.

Von Noorden's *oatmeal* food consists of:

Eight and one-third ounces (250 gm.) of oatmeal are cooked for about two hours on a moderate fire, with 3 or 4 quarts of water and a little salt; 100 gm. roborat, gliden, rice albumin, etc., may be added.<sup>1</sup> When the gruel is done add 10 ounces (300 gm.) of butter and pass through a sieve. Divide the whole into eight equal parts and take a part every two hours. The whole amount must be eaten in the 24 hours. American and Scotch oats are most suitable.

Tea or black coffee without cream or sugar may be taken on the same day with the above, also red wine and brandy, bouillon and lemon juice. The oatmeal may be taken hot or cold, and, if desired, fried in its own liquid.

When the gruel is ordered for one meal only, as at the second breakfast or supper, a larger proportion of butter (two and one-half to three parts to one of oats) may be used. Such a porridge is the following:

To 1 ounce (30 gm.) of oatmeal are added in the evening 2 fluid-ounces (60 c.c.) of water and soaked overnight. The next day add 3 to 5 ounces (100 to 150 c.c.) of water, and cook two hours in a water boiler. One-half hour before it is finished add 2  $\frac{2}{3}$  ounces (80 gm.) of butter. For porridge take only Scotch or American oats. Buckwheat may be substituted for oatmeal.

My experience with such large proportions of butter has been unsatisfactory. I have found, too, that as an exclusive diet for a day or more the oatmeal is prone to nauseate and disgust the patient. Much more bearable is the "portion" taken at one meal, as at breakfast, and if it is made an exclusive diet the proportion of butter must be reduced and the interval made every three hours instead of every two.

2. *Hygienic Treatment.*—Next in importance to the dietetic is the

<sup>1</sup> These may be omitted as they are not easily obtainable in the United States. The student is referred to the diet tables of V. Noorden for further arrangement of foods and meals for diet.

hygienic treatment of diabetes. This consists in bathing, and attention to the skin, together with outdoor muscular exercise and perfect ventilation within doors.

The diabetic should breathe the freshest and purest air. While the cases are not numerous in which embarrassed respiration results in glycosuria, there are undoubted instances in which this has occurred, as in croup and whooping-cough; and it is well known that asphyxiated lower animals are likely to have glycosuria. Although the glycosuria thus resulting is probably reflex, it can hardly be expected that the diabetic should improve under unfavorable respiratory conditions. He should not, therefore, live, work, or sleep in a confined atmosphere, but secure the most perfect ventilation, spending much of his time out of doors, and sleeping in large, well ventilated chambers, with windows open, etc. Especially should he avoid inhalation of irrespirable gases. Attention to the skin, or skin culture, is most important to the diabetic. He should bathe at least twice a week in tepid or hot water on going to bed in winter, and on rising take a cool sponge-bath daily. In summer he may take a cool bath on rising and on retiring. He should groom his skin thoroughly daily, either after the bath or independent of it on the days on which he does not bathe. Two tablespoonfuls of sodium carbonate to an ordinary bath is a suitable addition to the latter, softening the skin and facilitating its action by removing the effete epithelium.

Muscular exercise should be taken daily by the diabetic, both by walking and gymnastics. Glycogen is undoubtedly consumed in the muscles during their action, and it is quite certain that in diabetes there is an undue accumulation of sugar in the muscles. Exercise should be sustained regularly day by day, even in wet weather, care being taken to keep the feet dry, while it should never be carried to the point of fatigue.

Attention to other secretions, particularly to that of the bowels, is of the greatest importance. Diabetics who are constipated are always more difficult to relieve. It is probably partly on account of their action in this respect that the alkaline and alkaline-saline aperient waters, as those of Vichy, Vals, and Carlsbad, are so useful. To those who visit these springs, a part of the benefit is ascribable to the other favorable hygienic influences, such as rest, fresh air, and exercise, by which they are surrounded. Independently of these influences, however, there is reason to believe that the alkaline waters are of service to diabetics, and when their cost is not a consideration, a quart of Vichy or Vals and half as much Carlsbad may be taken during the day, beginning before breakfast. The Vichy is a more alkaline water, containing 35 grains (2.3 gm.) of carbonates to a pint (0.5 liter), while Carlsbad contains but 11 grains (0.51 gm.), but twice the proportion of chlorids, eight grains (0.7 gm.) to a pint (0.5 liter), and nearly ten times as much sodium sulphate, or 19 grains (1.25 gm.); hence its more purgative quality to which some of the good effect may be due.

The waters of the celebrated Saratoga Springs in this country have an undoubted action on the liver, probably through the chlorids they contain, which are in very large proportion, reaching in the Geyser Spring 70 grains (4.6 gm.) to the pint (0.5 liter), and in the Empire and Hathorn, 63 grains (4.19 gm.) to the pint (0.5 liter). They contain no sulphates, but the

carbonates are present in considerable proportion, though much less than in the Vichy waters. Saratoga Vichy, which, of the Saratoga waters, contains most sodium carbonate, has ten grains (0.6 gm.) to the pint; the Geyser, 9 grains (0.58 gm.). In the absence of the Carlsbad and Vichy waters I would use the purgative Saratoga waters, especially the Vichy and Geyser.

3. *The Medicinal Treatment.*—Like all diseases in which treatment by drugs is relatively inefficient, diabetes has its full share of reputed remedies, most of which are useless. This dare not, however, be said of all.

The only drug that can be relied upon to produce an effect in diminishing glycosuria is opium. It seems that it was used for diabetes as early as the second century by Archigenes. It was also used by Ætius the physician, in the fourth century, and in the latter part of the 18th century and beginning of the 19th by Rollo, Frank, Tommasson, and especially the English physician, Pelham Warren, in 1812. It is certainly a useful agent in diabetes, but its use is united with disadvantages in the locking-up of the secretions. On account of its comparative freedom from these effects, codein has come to be the favorite alkaloid of opium in diabetes. It may be given in  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.016 gm.) doses three times a day, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.032 gm.) twice a day, increasing  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.016 gm.) daily until the desired effect is produced or it proves useless. If the sugar disappears, the drugs should be gradually withdrawn. If constipation is caused by it, aperient remedies should be associated, and very suitable are the natural aperient waters, including the bitter waters, Friedrichshalle, Hunyadi János, Racokzy, Püllna, etc. I have seen a patient entirely relieved under its use, and it alone, with no return of the sugar after its omission. I rarely give as much as ten grains (0.65 gm.) a day, and usually defer its use until I find other measures insufficient.

After opium, arsenic has longest maintained its reputation as a remedy in diabetes, and I use it in all mild cases, preferring Fowler's solution. It seems to me there is something more than a simple tonic action in it. Possibly it acts partly on the gastro-intestinal tract and partly on the red blood-disks, increasing their oxidizing power over glucose. The plan I have adopted, after many years' experience, is to give small doses long continued rather than to attempt to bring about its physiological action. Hence three drops twice or thrice a day, continued indefinitely, is now my favorite dose.

The bromid of potassium is sometimes efficient in diabetes accompanying functional nervous disorders due to mental overwork or psychic disturbance. Bromin and arsenic are combined in the shape of Clemens' solution of bromid of arsenic, of which the dose is from 3 to 5 minims (0.184 to 0.3 c.c.).

Substances which possess the power of oxidizing sugar in the blood have long been sought. The alkalies, and especially the alkaline carbonates, acquired considerable reputation in the treatment of diabetes, after Mialhe claimed for them the power of destroying the sugar in the blood, and of neutralizing the volatile acids retained within the organism in consequence of the defective action of the skin. Whatever their mode of action, the carbonates continue to be used with results which justify the practice, and my almost invariable practice is to place my diabetic patients on sodium

bicarbonate in doses of a drachm (4 gm.) or more three times daily. It is probable that it neutralizes the acedosis which we have ascertained to be a dangerous condition. The efficiency of the alkaline mineral waters is thus explained.

Much was hoped of pancreas preparations, especially since the brilliant results that followed the use of thyroid extract in myxedema. They have proved disappointing, at least when given by the stomach. More hopeful is, however, the hypodermic use of these substances. Of these I have used amylopsin in 10 minim doses, increased to 20 minims, with results sufficiently good to encourage me to continue their use, although they have been temporary. The glycolytic ferment isolated by Lepine from the pancreas and from malt diastase has not been any more satisfactory. Suprarenal extract has also been employed, without effect. Secretin, a hormone derived from the mucous membrane of the duodenum, should be tried hypodermically or its production stimulated by the administration of hydrochloric acid.

The coal-tar derivatives, antipyrin, antifebrin, and phenacetin have been highly recommended by the French physicians, and I have found them of service in mild cases, giving from 10 to 15 grains (0.6 to 1 gm.) three times a day on an empty stomach, beginning with the smaller dose in the case of the first two. Their efficacy is said to be increased when combined with an equal bulk of sodium bicarbonate. Salicylate of sodium has warm advocates, and in gouty cases it may be useful. According to von Noorden, it is especially in neurogenous diabetes that the sodium salicylate is useful, quieting the irritability of the central nervous system.

Jambul is a remedy with some reputation. I have been so much disappointed in its effects that I rarely use it. It is given in the shape of powder or fluid extract, in doses of 5 to 30 grains (0.3 to 2 gm.) of the former and a half to 2 drams (1.8 to 7 c.c.) of the latter.

Iodid of potassium has produced some striking results in the case of diabetes due to syphilitic lesions of the brain.

Lactic acid was strongly advocated by the Italian physicians. Cantani recommends that from 75 to 150 grains (5 to 10 gm.) of the acid should be taken daily in from eight to ten fluidounces (240 to 300 c.c.) of water. Whence buttermilk or Zoolak (a fermented milk in which the sugar of milk is converted into lactic acid by a ferment) becomes a suitable food at least.

Cod-liver oil becomes a useful remedy in cases in which the proteins are largely and the carbohydrates totally converted into sugar and excreted, while the body albumin is being encroached upon as a source of energy. Especially useful does it become when associated with alcohol in the shape of whisky or brandy, which always helps the assimilation of fat. In the same category as cod-liver oil must be placed butter, cream, bacon, and the like as foods.

### Treatment of Complications.

*Eczema and Pruritus.*—These sometimes intensely annoying symptoms commonly abate with the reduction of the glycosuria, but require also other measures. In the first place scrupulous cleanliness is necessary, accomplished by warm, tepid bathing. In addition, we may use solutions of

boric acid 2 drams (8 gm.) to the quart (1 liter) or sodium hyposulphite, 1 ounce (30 gm.) to a quart (1 liter) of water; also zinc ointment, ointment of acetate of lead; solutions of corrosive sublimate, very weak—1 to 3000—and tumenol-sulphonic acid in 10 per cent. alcohol solutions. Carbolic acid 5 to 10 minims (.3 to .6 gm.) glycerine ʒij (8 c.c.) and water an ounce (30 c.c.) make a soothing preparation. As a last resort in pruritis nitrate of silver may be used in the strength of 20 grains (1.3 gm.) to the ounce (30 c.c.), making daily applications, which though sometimes painful, are ultimately effectual.

*Diabetic Coma.*—Treatment is usually futile here. The alkalies and alkaline mineral waters should be pushed. Intravenous injections of alkaline solutions have been disappointing. More hopeful is the intravenous injection of a 0.8 per cent. salt solution, as recommended by von Noorden, using a liter in four doses at intervals of four hours. A teaspoonful of common salt to a gallon of sterilized water affords a strength sufficiently near the percentage named. Hypodermoclysis, which is much easier, will accomplish the same result, as I can attest from personal experience. Copious diuresis follows, and may be expected to carry out noxious substances.

More hopeful is a *prophylactic* treatment of diabetic coma, called for when diacetic acid or oxybutyric acid and large amounts of acetone are found in the urine. Under these circumstances it seems certain that whatever be the form of diet in use at the time, it must be changed, and if it be remembered that these substances are now conceded to arise from the disintegration of body albumin and not from food, as formerly supposed, diet would at least seem a matter of indifference under the circumstances, while a change alone seems desirable. The patient should be immediately placed upon alkaline treatment, associated with the free use of alkaline mineral waters. Thus, 30 grains (1.3 gm.) or more of sodium bicarbonate may be given every three hours, dissolved in 8 ounces (250 c.c.) of Vals or Vichy water. The bowels should be kept open, and alcohol in the shape of whisky or brandy freely given.

## DIABETES INSIPIDUS.

**Definition.**—Any excessive secretion of non-saccharine and non-albuminous urine which has continued for a long time.

**Etiology.**—The condition, unlike diabetes mellitus, affects more frequently younger persons, being rare in those over 50 years of age, relatively frequent in infancy, and most common between the ages of twenty and thirty.

As to sex, it is said to be much more frequent in males than in females, affecting two or three times as many of the former as of the latter. In my own experience I have found the disease nearly equally frequent in both sexes.

As to causes, the same uncertainty prevails as with diabetes mellitus. An examination of cases shows an association with a certain number of conditions, such as cerebral disease, including tumor of the brain, menin-

gitis, paralysis of the sixth nerve, sunstroke, cerebrospinal fever, falls and blows on the head; exposure to cold and the drinking of cold fluids, drunkenness, pregnancy, hysteria, emotion, especially fright, hereditary influence, syphilis, and previous disease, etc., but this does not show causation. The proportion, however, of cases in which the condition is associated with brain disease and injuries to the head, taken in connection with the fact of Bernard's discovery that puncture of the floor of the fourth ventricle above the diabetic center produces polyuria without glycosuria, makes it very likely that central nervous irritation, however induced, is at the bottom of the symptom. It is reasonable to suppose, too, that diabetes insipidus may be the result of some irritation, direct or reflex, of this center in the medulla oblongata, or of the sympathetic ganglia in the abdomen. The latter explanation also applies to cases of polyuria attending the presence of abdominal diseases, such as tumor, aneurysm, or peritonitis, though it is doubtful whether these should be regarded as cases of true diabetes insipidus.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The essential morbid anatomy of diabetes insipidus would be the lesions of the nerve centers or sympathetic ganglia which may underlie the symptoms. But as these are often undiscoverable, or at least indefinite, it is impossible to describe them. Notably is the case with lesions of the third and sixth nerves. Associated central nervous lesions, when present, are found more frequently in the vicinity of the base of the brain.

**Symptoms.**—The *enormous secretion of urine* of almost spring-water-like clearness, and of specific gravity often as low as 1003, is the most conspicuous symptom, but more annoying, probably, is the *extreme thirst* which always attends it. These may be said to be the essential symptoms, others which may or may not be present being rather their consequence. Very constant among the latter are *dryness of the skin* and *absence of perspiration*. The health may be otherwise perfect, though *emaciation* and *weakness* are often present. The debility is sometimes extreme. Occasionally there are derangements of digestion, and sometimes also the appetite is ravenous, as in diabetes mellitus, though less frequently so.

These symptoms may occur suddenly in the midst of apparent health, or they may supervene upon others or be substituted for them, chiefly those of a nervous character, which may be the result of the nervous lesion causing the polyuria. Such symptoms are headache, restlessness, irritability, sleeplessness, what is commonly called *nervousness*, more rarely convulsions, delirium, paralyses—indeed, any one or more of the great variety of symptoms which result from organic or functional nervous disease. Sometimes these symptoms succeed upon the polyuria or are increased by it. It is certain that the milder nervous symptoms are sometimes the result simply of the inconvenience and annoyance caused by the two cardinal symptoms, polyuria and thirst. The patient is kept busy, as it were, night and day, in passing water. It is not surprising that such a patient should be fretful and irritable, and that sooner or later his health should be broken if the symptoms are not relieved.

In addition to the symptoms detailed, there are said to occur at times dryness of the tongue, epigastric and lumbar pains, diarrhea and impair-

ment of mental faculties and of the sexual function. In some instances there is the most extraordinary tolerance of alcoholic drinks, while in others there is an exaggerated susceptibility to their influence. A very slight lowering of the body *temperature* has been observed, amounting, however, to but a few tenths of a degree, and it is never below 97° F. (36.1° C.). In advanced stages of the disease *edema* of the lower extremities sometimes occurs.

*Physical and Chemical Characters of the Urine.*—As to the quantity of urine passed, it is enormous, exceeding often the amount passed in saccharine diabetes. As many as 43 liters (90 pints) are recorded by Trousseau, and one-fourth this quantity is common. It has been said, even, that the quantity secreted sometimes exceeds the amount of fluid ingested, but this is impossible for any length of time, unless water is absorbed from the atmosphere, which is not impossible. In point of fact, the water excreted is always a little less than that ingested, either as drink or in the solid food. As the quantity of urine excreted increases or its normal acidity diminishes, its color disappears and its specific gravity declines. In one case under my care the specific gravity was scarcely 1001, while the urine in moderate bulk was absolutely colorless. Again, a faint greenish tinge is exhibited by the urine in bulk.

As to the other constituents of the urine, it may be said in general that they are all increased, except possibly uric acid. Thus, the *urca* is increased to three and even four times its normal amount. In a case reported by J. M. Da Costa<sup>1</sup> the urea was diminished.

*Sulphuric* and *phosphoric* acids are both increased, and especially, according to Dickinson, the combination of phosphoric acid with the earths, lime, and magnesia. The same is true of the *chlorids*.

Of abnormal constituents, *inosit* has been found, and *albumin* very rarely, but care should be taken not to confound the polyuria with the slight albuminuria of a contracted kidney or with an albuminous polyuria in which there is no organic disease of the kidney.

Some of the accounts published as to the quantity of water consumed and excreted are almost incredible, yet they seem well authenticated. In illustration may be mentioned the following instances from Willis' work on "Urinary Diseases":<sup>2</sup> An artisan, 55 years old, had had constant thirst with commensurate diuresis since he was five years of age. From the age of 16 he had drunk, on an average, no less than two pailfuls daily. While in the Hôtel Dieu, to which he was admitted for an injury of the knee, he drank on an average 33 pints of water every day, often swallowing two liters, or about two quarts at a draught. He passed daily about 34 pounds of urine and one pound of feces. He otherwise enjoyed good health, and was the father of several children. The long duration of this case and the otherwise excellent health enjoyed by him are by no means exceptionable. Very little serious disturbance seems to result so long as water is supplied to quench the resulting thirst. In extreme cases patients have been known to drink their own urine.

An extraordinary flow of *saliva* was observed in one instance by Külz,<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "Transactions of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia," third series, vol. i., p. 139, 1875.

<sup>2</sup> American edition, Philadelphia, p. 23, 1839.

<sup>3</sup> "Diabetes Mellitus and Insipidus," Marburg, 1875.



along with polyuria, in a hysterical girl of 18 years, from whom as much as 18.72 ounces (525 c.c.) were collected in 24 hours, while the quantity ranged during four months from 360 c.c. to the former amount. The quantity of urine passed during this time ranged from 200 to 260 ounces (6000 to 7800 c.c.). The increased flow of saliva may be explained by the fact that in some of the experiments of Eckhard,<sup>1</sup> Loebe,<sup>2</sup> and Gruetzner<sup>3</sup> puncture of the medulla oblongata was followed by ptyalism.

The *duration* of the condition varies greatly. Sometimes it continues through life with no inconvenience except that from the constant diuresis and thirst. Willis records a case lasting 50 years. On the other hand, it is seldom of brief duration; indeed, there is needed a certain chronicity in order to admit it in the category of diseases. One case is reported as terminating fatally in seven weeks. Under prognosis will be found some further information as to duration, but it may be said, in general, that most cases which terminate unfavorably and most which recover completely do so within a year. I had under my care for 11 years a lad of 17, who was able to work quite hard much of the time.

*No complications* arise except such as cause the disease or result from it. Among the latter is occasionally dilatation of the pelvis of the kidney, and atrophy of this organ is mentioned, due to pressure of the accumulated urine and resulting in a sacculated condition. The symptoms of the malady are almost always influenced, and sometimes even cut short, by intercurrent disease, especially of a febrile character, or even by a profound physical impression, as long-continued suppuration after a blister. The boy referred to was an aggravated choreic before he became diabetic.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of diabetes insipidus is very easy. The persistent thirst, polyuria, and absence of sugar from the urine are pathognomonic. The only possible error is mistaking the polyuria of chronically contracted kidney of *interstitial nephritis* for that of diabetes insipidus. In addition, however, to the fact that a careful examination for albumin will disclose it in the urine of contracted kidney, the quantity is never so large, nor is the thirst so extreme; so that it would seem only necessary to mention the possibility of such an error in order to avoid it.

**Prognosis.**—It is extremely unusual for a case of diabetes insipidus to terminate unfavorably unless there have been also present symptoms pointing to serious nervous lesion. Recovery is not infrequent. According to Roberts, of 67 cases collected, 16 are reported as complete recoveries and 14 ended fatally, nearly an equal proportion. The remaining 37 were still in progress. In cases of recovery or death the duration is comparatively short. Of the 16 recoveries, in nine the duration was less than a year; in one, four years; in two, 18 and 19 years, and in the remainder, some years. Of the 14 fatal cases, nine terminated in less than a year, one *in seven weeks*, and two in two months; the other two survived 18 months and 20 years, respectively. Of the 37 cases in progress, only five continued for a year or less. The remainder lasted for periods ranging from something over a year to 59 years.

These results seem to be tolerably independent of treatment. It may be said, therefore, that, as a rule, cases that last more than a year are likely

<sup>1</sup> Eckhard, "Beiträge zur Anat. und Physiol.," iv., p. 191.

<sup>2</sup> Loebe, Eckhard's "Beiträge," v., p. 1; and "Dissertation," Giessen, 1869.

<sup>3</sup> Gruetzner, "Pflüger's Archiv," vii., p. 552.

to continue, but ordinarily only require to be furnished with an abundance of water to keep them tolerably comfortable. According to Dickinson, cases due to drunkenness are more likely to run a severe and rapid course, usually terminating fatally within a few months, and one terminated thus in two months.

The disease appears to me altogether less serious than diabetes mellitus, and I quite concur with Senator, who says "it is rather a troublesome than a dangerous complaint." But Trousseau and Da Costa were inclined to consider it more serious than diabetes mellitus.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of diabetes insipidus would naturally resolve itself into the treatment for the disease of which it is the symptom rather than of the symptom itself; but as the former is very frequently undiscoverable, it must consist mainly of efforts to diminish the secretion of urine, and with it the thirst.

First, it is generally conceded that there should be no restriction in the drinking of water or other harmless fluids, for the diuresis is not so much caused by the great ingestion of water as the thirst is caused by the diuresis. It should be mentioned, however, that one or two instances are reported wherein improvement seems to have resulted from such restriction; and if, as in some cases, a habit of drinking has been the initial event, moderate restriction may be reasonable. Caution should be used in the administration of drugs, though my experience is not that of Dickinson, who says that "remedies designed to restrain the urinary secretion seldom fail to do harm." The older remedies are ergot, opium, gallic acid, and valerian; of all, the doses ultimately used are usually large. In one of my patients the symptoms subsided under the use of gallic acid after I had failed with full doses of ergot. In another, probably due to syphilis, the effect of the iodid of potassium was shown in an aggravation of the symptoms whenever it was discontinued and an amelioration when it was resumed. Of all drugs, I have found the iodid of potassium most frequently followed by improvement.

Trousseau and Rayer claimed extraordinary results from the use of valerian, the former using the fluid extract in large doses—2 1/2 drams (6 c.c.) a day, which was increased to 1 ounce (30 c.c.) daily in one instance. Rayer used the powdered valerian and the valerianate of zinc, giving the latter in pills in gradually increasing doses until 20 grains (1.25 gm.) a day were given. At the present day the more palatable elixir of valerianate of ammonia, combined with bromid of potassium, is to be preferred.

Reasoning from the effect of intercurrent disease and powerful physical and nervous impressions, Roberts suggests a large *blister* at the nape of the neck or epigastrium, according as the associated symptoms and the anamnesis point to the nervous or the digestive system, a suggestion which may be acted upon with advantage.

The constant galvanic current has been recommended, and in cases of spinal lesion may be expected to be of advantage. Both Seidel and Külz have used it with good results. The former applied one pole of a "strong battery" over the loins near the spine, and the other as deeply as possible over the hypochondrium, upon each side daily for five minutes. In eight

days the urine fell from 195.9 ounces (5957 c.c.) to 153.3 ounces (4600 c.c.) per diem, in three weeks to 76.6 ounces (2300 c.c.), and the next month 63.5 ounces (1904 c.c.), while the weight of the body increased nine pounds. Külz applied one pole of a battery of from 30 to 40 cells as high as possible in the nape of the neck, and the other to the loins or epigastrium, the best results being apparently obtained with the positive pole to the nape of the neck, and the negative first to the loins for four minutes and then to the pit of the stomach for four minutes.

Tonics and nervines, such as strychnin, iron, arsenic, salts of quinin, cod-liver oil, etc., are appropriately added to the treatment with a view to sustaining the strength of the patient, which is apt to fail. To these are to be added fresh air, sea air, exercise, and all possible favorable hygienic influences.

Hygiene is even more important than in diabetes mellitus, and should include a careful attention to the skin, warm clothing, warm baths, frictions, etc., in order to divert a portion of the circulation from the kidneys to the skin. The thirst should also be quenched when possible by bits of ice and acidulous fluids.

## OBESITY.

SYNONYMS.—*Adipositas universalis; Polysarcia adiposa; Corpulence.*

**Definition.**—Obesity may be defined as an inconvenient accumulation of adipose tissue in the body.

**Etiology.**—The most usual cause of an excessive accumulation of fat doubtless is overeating associated with an inactive life; and though it may be true of some fat persons that they are really moderate eaters, careful examination will generally prove that they are not. Heredity exerts an undoubted influence, and we find corpulence running in families. Commonly it does not make its appearance until after 35 years of age, but in this country particularly it is often seen earlier, in boys and girls of ten years and upward. Gouty and rheumatic persons are often fat, probably from the causes which produce these diseases.

Of foods, each one of the representative varieties, albuminoids, carbohydrates, and fats, is capable of contributing fat, deposited in fat vesicles in the body, and it has even been said that albuminoids furnish more of the fatty tissues of the body than the carbohydrates. Certain it is that a person may become corpulent who eats very little fat. In most cases, however, corpulent persons are found to be liberal consumers of all three of the food elements. While the carbohydrates are direct sources of fat production, it is generally conceded that they act largely by sparing the fats derived from other sources. They decompose and oxidize so rapidly, and thus give themselves up so readily to force production, that the stored fats are not called upon. Thus it is that sugars and starches indirectly favor corpulence. To this class belong also alcohol, and especially beer, which contains over five per cent. of carbohydrates, in addition to from three to four per cent. of alcohol, and it is well known that liberal beer

drinking furnishes a large quota of fat men. A second method in which large quantities of alcohol contribute to adiposis is by hastening albuminous metamorphosis, setting free non-nitrogenous substances readily converted into fat, which are deposited, among other situations, in the liver, giving rise to the fatty liver so constantly found in drunkards.

Another cause of corpulency is muscular inactivity. Fat is consumed by muscular contraction, and its absence must contribute to fat accumulation, and one need not go far to see its evidence in many who lead lives of idleness. Oertel has especially called attention to the fact that a simple diminished ingestion of fluids, without other changes in the diet, will reduce the amount of fat. The effect may be brought about in two ways; first, by diminishing the work of the heart and thereby favoring oxidation; second, by an effect which is not so much the diminution of fat as a withdrawal of water—a sort of “desiccation,” it is called by Strümpell.

The subjects of anemia and chlorosis often become fat, probably because of defective oxidation, growing out of a diminished supply of oxygen, which the crippled corpuscles are unable to carry in sufficient quantity.

Sexual continence probably contributes to corpulence, since eunuchs are well known to grow fat, and both women and men are disposed to grow fat when the sexual function begins to abate. Finally, corpulence itself favors the further accumulation of fat, first by interfering with the muscular activity of its subject, and therefore with the oxidation of fat, and, again, diminishing combustion by reason of a reduced demand for heat, the fat itself conserving heat by preventing its radiation.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no essential morbid anatomy of corpulence. Incidentally the liver may become infiltrated with fat and enlarged, as may also the heart; later there may be dilatation of the latter. The lungs, too, may become infiltrated with fat. Even the blood-vessels may contain fat drops in the media and intima.

**Symptoms.**—A description is scarcely needed of the anatomical condition which constitutes obesity. The round, plump face, the double chin and hanging cheeks, the enormous girth of the body, the pendulous belly and elephantine arms, legs, and thighs need no further description. The labored, waddling gait is often conspicuous. The first evident indication of harmfulness due to corpulence is an increased frequency in the breathing-rate, at first on slight exertion and later independently of it. This is in part a true cardiac asthma—due, first, to the fact that the heart cannot push the blood through the lungs rapidly enough to permit its aeration at the ordinary breathing-rate; and, second, to the fact that the motion of the lungs is also restricted. The latter is due to the accumulation of fat over the thorax and in the mediastinum, and to the accumulated intra-abdominal fat and probably enlarged liver, which interfere with the proper descent of the diaphragm. This leads at first to cardiac hypertrophy, further stimulated by the extra work demanded of the heart in propelling the increased bulk of the blood; further augmented by resulting arteriosclerosis, and impeded venous circulation. Later the fatty infiltration of the muscular walls of the heart leads to further embarrassment in its action and to impairment of its nutrition, whence come cardiac weakness

and ultimate failure, with edema, pericardial and pleuritic effusion, and sometimes sudden death.

The pulse, hard to find, is usually frequent, but may be slow and irregular. The heart can be examined only with difficulty, on account of the large accumulation of fat, and the normal sounds are feeble and distant. The situation of the apex can be found only by the aid of the stethoscope. Intertrigo is often an annoying symptom, and great care is required to avert it. Interstitial nephritis may be superadded. By no means all corpulent persons run this course. Many lead lives of considerable comfort.

**Treatment.**—This consists in acting upon two principles: first, furnishing less food to oxidize, and, second, increasing the oxidation of the fat in the body.

The first is accomplished by cutting down the quantity of all kinds of food, but especially carbohydrates. Sugar should be prohibited altogether, and saccharin substituted, if sweetening is desired. Bread may be taken in small amounts, say two ounces, well toasted and with it a thin layer of butter; or hard biscuit may be substituted. A cup of tea or coffee with a little milk may be allowed; also a single egg at breakfast or luncheon; meat once a day. The latter may be of any kind, and with it may be taken green vegetables, such as peas, string-beans, tomatoes, cabbage, spinach, Brussels sprouts, lettuce, celery, and the like, omitting altogether rice, potatoes, and the farinacea in general. A little cheese may be allowed.

Only small quantities of fluid should be permitted at meals—just enough to aid in the solution and digestion of food. This may be tea, coffee, water, or skimmed milk, the first two without sugar or cream. Beer, porter, and sweet wines should be prohibited, but a glass or two of hock or claret with an alkaline mineral water may be allowed.

A diet of skimmed milk only is a sure way of reducing fat, and a start may be made with it, commencing with 2 ounces (60 c.c.) every two hours and increasing until from 6 to 8 ounces (180 to 240 c.c.) are attained. Unfortunately, very few persons will bear this treatment for any length of time, but, as stated, a beginning may be made with it, and when the patient tires, the other treatment just described may be instituted.

The second indication to promote oxidation is accomplished by exercise, gymnastics, walking, mountain-climbing, or cycling. The last has been effective in reducing the weight of the corpulent, and if combined with a proper diet, may be expected to do more. Massage is also useful, especially in co-operation with the Turkish bath and steam bath. These last help in the "desiccation" of the body, which in turn facilitates oxidation. Great difficulty is experienced in getting the patient to carry out the dietary and to exercise assiduously. Greatly in the way of exercise with a view to reducing adiposity is the unwieldy and cumbersome body and early fatigue which ensues on effort.

Certain health resorts have much reputation for their efficiency in reducing corpulence. Homburg, Marienbad, and Carlsbad are among the most celebrated of these, and I have seen many patients return thence after a cure of four to six weeks markedly improved in all the symptoms which come from obesity. The effect is probably altogether due to the strict diet, the systematic exercise, and the bathing, the massage, and the

laxative effect of the waters, although the physicians at the various spas which have a reputation for reducing obesity claim also that the effect of the sulphate of soda, which is a constituent of most of these waters, is to stimulate oxidation in the direction of the fatty structures, while limiting the metamorphosis of the nitrogenous substances. This intermittent method of treating obesity, by recourse to baths and springs once a year while the intervening period is spent in free eating, is not to be recommended. It is much better to adopt a continuous method which may not be as rapid, but is persistent.

*Medicinal Treatment.*—This is unsatisfactory. Thyroid extract has been administered with claimed advantage in doses of 1 grain (0.066 gm.) three times daily, and may be gradually increased to 3 and even 5 (0.35 gm.), with the same precautions as advised in the treatment of myxedema. Under this treatment the loss of weight is sometimes quite rapid, going to show that defective thyroid secretion may be a factor in causing obesity. The juice of the phytolacca berry has been recommended, but is not considered a safe remedy.

*Systems of Diet.*—Mention should perhaps be made of the so-called systems of diet for reducing corpulency, a number of which have been suggested. Those especially deserving of notice are the Banting system, Ebstein's method, the method of Dancel-Oertel, in addition to the mineral water cures. It is, of course, impossible in the limited space of a text-book to give these methods in full. The principles of their application will alone be considered and the student is referred to special sources for their description.<sup>1</sup>

(1) The Banting system consists in the administration of a large amount of albuminous food, especially lean meat to the exclusion of fats and carbohydrates; green vegetables being allowed *ad libitum*; (2) Ebstein's method demands moderation and restriction in the quantity of foods generally, and for the fat-forming carbohydrates substitutes fat itself, which does not increase stored fat and by diminishing appetite favors loss of weight. Sugar and potatoes are excluded; (3) the Dancel-Oertel method reduces especially the quantity of water and other liquids, only a maximum of 800 grams (about 1 1/2 pints) of water mixed with wine, and twice a day a cup of coffee or tea; of solid foods, nitrogenous alimentary substances and vegetables, especially such as contain little water, with fat only in such quantity as to render the dishes palatable. Oertel emphasizes the mechanical advantages of restriction in the use of water upon derangements of the vascular system; (4) the mineral water cures, as might be expected, are based chiefly upon the use of such waters, especially those containing sulphate of sodium and chlorid of sodium, the cold springs being preferred. The springs are thus classified: (a) cold waters containing sulphate of soda—Marienbad, Tarasp, Schulz-Tarasp, Frazensbad, Elster, Cudowa, and Rolitsch—carbonic acid waters; (b) hot springs containing sulphate of sodium—Carlsbad, Bertrich; (c) cold waters containing chlorid of sodium—Homburg, Kissengen, Nauheim, Neuhaus and Oeynhausien; in America the Saratoga springs; (d) springs containing iodine—Hall, Krankenheil, Salzschlirf, Kreuznach, Münster am

<sup>1</sup> "Dietetic and Therapeutic Hints to the Visitors of Bad Homburg." By Heinrich Will, 1893.

Stein. The drinking of waters at these places is combined with the use of saline, carbonated, mud, and steam baths.

*Prophylaxis* should not be overlooked especially in the case of hereditary tendency on the principle of the old claim of an "ounce of prevention" as contrasted with a pound of cure, and much may be accomplished in families in which there is tendency to corpulence.

For *Adiposis Dolorosa* see Nervous Diseases, subheading Neuritis.

## RICKETS.

SYNONYM.—*Rachitis*.

**Definition.**—"There is a disease of infants called the rickets, wherein the head waxeth too great, while the legs and lower parts wane too little" (Thomas Fuller, 1608-61). This quaint description of the celebrated English chaplain, written over 250 years ago, remains so nearly correct at the present day that I cannot forbear adopting it. It is further defined as a constitutional disease characterized by deformity in bones, due to cell overgrowth and deficiency in lime salts.

The term rickets is derived from the old English word *wrickken*, to twist. "The rickets" was evidently known for some time by the laity before it received its description by F. Glisson, in 1650, who suggested the change of name to rachitis from the Greek *ῥαχίς*, the spine.

**Etiology.**—Rickets rarely begins before the child is six months old or later than the age of 18 months, though a form was described by Sir William Jenner coming on as late as the ninth or even the 12th year; on the other hand, it may begin earlier, and the child may even be rickety in the womb. Yet it cannot be admitted that rickets is hereditary, in the usual sense of the term. The child may become rickety in the womb if the mother is feeble, underfed, and overworked, and if the father is weak at its conception, but not because the father and mother were rickety when children. Again, certain races tend to be rickety, especially the negro and the Italian. Foul air and bad food, absence of sunlight and exposure to dampness and cold, are more potent factors, and it is likely that a defective composition of the breast-milk, including a deficiency in the phosphates, is the strongest. Prolonged lactation may contribute to such deficiency. It is a disease of the city rather than of the country, and of the Continent of Europe rather than of America. Vienna, London, and Paris are prolific fields. In the first-named cities from 50 to 70 per cent. of all children brought to the clinics are said to be rickety. Parrot held that congenital rickets was a form of syphilis, basing this view on studies in the French capital. On the other hand, there is reason to believe that the changes in prenatal rickets are not identical with those of the postnatal form. The subjects of the former are usually still-born, are short of limb, and though the curves of the bones are exaggerated, there is no proliferating zone of cartilage between the epiphysis and apophysis, whence the term *achondroplasy*, suggested by Parrot, and *chondrodystrophia fetalis*, by Kaufmann. These terms are now used for a different variety of arrest of development to be considered later. Boys and girls are equally

liable to rickets. The syphilitic origin of congenital rickets is not, however, conceded by others.

Minute examination recognizes numerous cells in the spongy spaces in the bone. The studies of Kassowitz lead him to believe that a hyperemia of the periosteum, the marrow, the cartilage, and the bone itself is the fundamental condition responsible for the abnormal development. His views may be regarded as a refinement and development of those originally

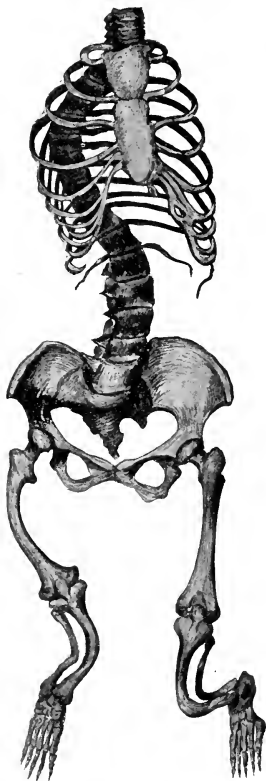


FIG. 84.—Deformed Skeleton from a Case of Rachitis—(from *Atlas du Musée Dupuytren*).

suggested in 1650 by F. Glisson, who held that an excessive vascularity was at the bottom of the changes.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This shades somewhat into symptomatology, and the two can scarcely be separated. The changes are mainly in the bones of the skull, the long bones, and the ribs. The first may escape if the disease sets in after the middle or end of the second year. The frontal and parietal eminences are exaggerated, while the top of the head and the occiput are flattened, the whole effect being toward making the head square or “box-



shaped." The fontanels remain open some time—until the second or third year of life—while the edges of the bones where they come together to form the sutures are thickened, though soft and yielding. In addition to these changes, or instead of them, there may be large areas of delayed ossification in the parieto-occipital regions, producing yielding spots, constituting the so-called *craniotabes* of Elsässer; but as *craniotabes* occurs in connection with syphilis and other wasting diseases of young infants exhibiting no other sign of rickets, and even in new-born infants, it cannot be regarded as pathognomonic.

In the *long bones*, such as the radius and ulna, swelling of the cartilage between the epiphysis and shaft is apparent. Owing to the rapid proliferation of the cartilage cells, resulting in a broad band of jelly-like material between the cartilage and the bone, a spongy structure is rapidly built up, deficient in strength and stiffness. Beneath the periosteum the same gelatinous material is deposited, and a spongy tissue is formed instead of

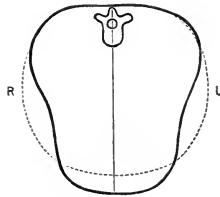


FIG. 85.—Ricky Chest—(after Gee).

Dotted line indicates the shape of the chest of a healthy infant about the same age.

normal bone. The process of bone formation does not proceed further. There is no deposit of lime salts. The periosteum is loosely attached. The long bones bend easily, especially the tibia, producing the characteristic bow leg, which may occur even before the child walks, when it is caused by sitting cross-legged. The thighs may also become bowed, the inner ends of the condyles prolonged downward and the tibia set outward, producing the "knock-knee." This does not, however, appear until the child begins to walk. In extreme cases the long bones may fracture. Sometimes both the femora and tibiae are bowed forward.

Quite as characteristic are the changes in the chondral ends of the *ribs* and in the shape of the chest. The former are enlarged and nodular at the junction with the bone, producing the well-known beaded appearance, which may often be recognized at a glance. The altered shape of the chest-walls, most marked in children who have had much cough, is due to the yielding of the soft costal ends of the cartilages and to a falling-in of the ribs at these points, while the sternum and cartilages are pushed forward, as seen in Fig. 85.

This is especially the case in the region between the fourth and eighth ribs, which may be so bent in as to form a vertical groove, increased during inspiration. Associated with this is sometimes a transverse groove, known as Harrison's groove, starting at the ensiform cartilage and passing transversely outward toward the axilla. At the same time the arch of the ribs

below may be widened and the belly thrown forward by the arching inward of the vertebræ. Extreme degrees of this chest deformity produce the prominent sternum constituting the "chicken breast" or "keel-shaped" thorax. Other changes in the bones are an exaggeration of the normal double curve in the clavicle; a bending of the humerus, usually at the insertion of the deltoid, sometimes produced by lifting the child by the arms; the radius and ulna may be curved and twisted, the articulations knotted and bulbous, loose and mobile, because of relaxed ligaments. The spine is also often altered, the change being for the most part an increase in the normal curve outward in the cervico-thoracic portion and inward at the lumbo-sacral. In other cases there is a lateral curvature. The scapula is often thickened. The pelvis is distorted and twisted, and the antero-posterior diameter is markedly lessened. The rickety pelvis is one of the well-recognized causes of dystocia. These changes are all the result of mechanical causes, such as the weight of the body or muscular traction.

*Chemical analysis* of rickety bones approximately reverses the normal proportion of organic and mineral constituents (calcium salts), reducing the latter to 35 per cent., while the gelatinous or organic matters amount to 65 per cent.

An *enlarged liver* and *spleen* are usually present, and sometimes also the mesenteric glands are enlarged.

**Symptoms.**—(See also Morbid Anatomy.) The earliest symptoms noticed are not invariably the same. There is usually *profuse sweating*, especially about the head and neck, and a mild degree of fever, as the result of which the child is inclined to throw off the bed-clothing. There is evident discomfort in being handled. The last symptom is apparently due to a *tenderness* of the skeleton, causing pain when the child is raised or danced up and down after the manner of amusing children. Along with these are the less distinctive symptoms of indigestion, indicated by nausea and vomiting, offensive stools containing partly digested milk, and flatulent distention, causing the belly to be prominent. Among other less essential symptoms may be mentioned *nervousness*, *restlessness*, *peevishness*, and *infantile convulsions*, the relationship of which to rickets is not accidental, and was pointed out by Jenner. *Tetany* and *laryngismus stridulus* are also often symptoms.

Concurrently it is noticed that teething is delayed, and we have the authority of Sir William Jenner that if there are no teeth at nine months there is something rickety about the child. But I am confident that I have seen dentition delayed after this time in children who were not rickety and who did not become so. In rickety children the teeth which are cut soon decay. *Muscular weakness* is characteristic, so that the child cannot sit up and makes but a feeble or no effort to walk. Such muscular weakness has been mistaken for paralysis, whence it has been called the *pseudoparesis* of rickets. Close upon these symptoms, or at least within two or three weeks of the first symptom, follow the *skeletal changes* described under morbid anatomy, page 910. The head is large in comparison with the face, and the skin is pale and thin, and the child has often an old and a wise look quite beyond its years. The appearance of the beaded ribs, the bowed

legs or "knock-knees," prominent belly, and curved spine often serve to make the diagnosis easy at a glance. The prominent belly requires some further description, as it varies somewhat at different periods. Before the child walks the normal cervical anterior curve may be increased and a posterior curve present from the first dorsal to the last lumbar vertebra, which may be recognized by holding the child up. After it begins to walk, however, the dorsal spine continues curved backward while the lumbar projects forward. The latter, therefore, contributes also to the prominent belly produced in part by the flatulent distention, and partly at times by an enlarged liver and spleen.

**Complications.**—These include especially bronchial catarrh and bronchopneumonia, the effects of which are aggravated by the conformity of the chest, the weakness of the ribs, and the feebleness of the respiratory muscles. Collapse of the lung is often a consequence of lung affections. Chronic hydrocephalus is a complication, while many of the conditions mentioned under symptomatology—viz., diarrhea, convulsions, laryngismus stridulus, and the like—may also be so regarded. The rickety child is weak and is vulnerable to all the illnesses of childhood.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually easy, although, of course, all the symptoms detailed are not always present in their typical expression. The various spinal curvatures may be somewhat confusing. Thus, the question of *caries* may arise. But the rickety spine differs from that of *caries* by the wide curve, the absence of angularity, the flexibility of the spine, and the fact that by laying the child flat on its face the curve disappears. The other symptoms of rickets are also present. The lordosis of rickets produces a deformity resembling that of *congenital dislocation of the hip* and of *hip disease*, but here again other signs of rickets are present, while the distinctive signs of the disease in question are absent.

**Prognosis.**—Rickets is never in itself fatal, and the course is toward recovery. But the child is always in danger from the complications. Such are bronchitis, bronchopneumonia, laryngeal spasm, and convulsions. Walking is always delayed, and the child may be still unable to walk at the end of the second or third year. Mention has been made of the fact that the rickety pelvis in women is one of the most frequent causes of difficult labor.

**Treatment.**—We should seek to avert rickets by a judicious prophylaxis which consists in keeping the health of the mother at the highest point at all times; this, not by organic food only, but by a judicious admixture of salts such as are contained in the whole cereal grain, especially in wheat and barley. Frequent pregnancies and prolonged nursing, being acknowledged causes, should be interdicted.

The treatment of the child should be *dietetic, medicinal, hygienic, and operative or mechanical*. As the condition depends often upon the lack of ordinary good food, the simple addition of such food in lieu of the mother's milk, if this be found defective, may be all that is required, especially if it be possible to secure that rarely attainable article, a healthy wet-nurse. In the absence of this, beef-juice, the yolk of eggs, peptonized milk, and beef peptonoids may be substituted. Due consideration must, however, be paid to digestion in the selection of food, the stools should be examined

daily, and if undigested residue is found, the food should be changed. Pepsin and hydrochloric acid in doses adapted to the age of the child should be given, while the predigested foods are often highly useful. Cod-liver oil inunctions are invaluable, and though in some respects unpleasant, I have seen so many children seemingly wrested from death by their use that I value nothing more highly. Saccharine and starchy foods should not be allowed, except in very moderate quantities. The flours of the whole cereals, well baked and cooked as thin gruels and strained, make a suitable addition to the food, while the fruit-juices of orange and lemon may be given in small quantities. Medicines should be cautiously given. Among them are lime salts, as the hypophosphite of calcium or lactophosphate of calcium, 10 grains (0.65 gm.) of either three times a day, or lime-water, or the official syrups containing the salts mentioned. Doses should be carefully regulated, as digestion is feeble. Minute doses of iron, preferably the citrate or malate, may be given. Phosphorus was recommended by Kassowitz, and is indorsed by Wegener, Jacobi, and Strümpell, in doses of from 1/200 to 1/100 grain (0.00033 to 0.00066 gm.) two or three times a day dissolved in olive oil or cod-liver oil. The principle of the administration of these two drugs is different. The salts previously mentioned are convenient modes of administering calcium, while phosphorus is supposed to stimulate *bone growth*.

The hygienic treatment is more important than the medicinal. Fresh air and outdoor life are indispensable. If the child is warmly clothed and well protected, it may be taken out even in cold weather. *It should not be allowed to walk or even to sit up unless properly supported*—in fact, should be handled as little as possible.

Mechanical appliances may be employed with advantage, especially in lateral bowing, before the bone is hardened. Forcible manual straightening may also be employed in moderate grades of deformity, but should be relegated to the experienced orthopedic surgeon. After ossification is complete, deformities may be corrected by the orthopedic surgeon, by osteotomy, chiefly of the bones of the lower extremities, though the radius and ulna are sometimes operated on. Osteotomy of the pelvis has been suggested by Macewen in parturient women in whom delivery is impossible, but a recently revived operation, symphysiotomy, has made it unnecessary.

## ACHONDROPLASIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Chondrodystrophia fetalis; Epiphyscal dystrophy.*

A condition of arrested development, in which the shafts of the long bones cease to grow, while the flat bones, such as the cranial and scapulæ, developed from membrane obtain a normal growth. As a consequence the legs and arms are very much shortened, while the cranium and trunk are nearly normally developed. The bridge of the nose is depressed and the fingers are shortened and trident. The joints are enlarged from hyperplasia of the cartilaginous ends. Hence the subject, whether child or an adult, shows the effects of the disease more especially when sitting, the feet being high above the floor, while the trunk appears of normal length. The shortening is

increased by some tendency to bowing of the bones of the legs. The arrest of development begins usually in fetal life, although it is said to start at times after birth. Most children die before birth.

The cause is unknown, but the joints are enlarged from hyperplasia of the end cartilages, while the arrest in the growth of the diaphysis seems to be due to fibrous outgrowth from the periosteum of the shaft over into the epiphysis, restricting development of the former and producing premature union between the epiphysis and diaphysis.

Achondroplasia is to be distinguished from true dwarfism, rickets, and cretinism. The arrest of development in the true *dwarf*, is symmetrical and universal. In *rickets* the disease does not begin until the period of dentition. It is due to a primary hyperemia of the cartilages and bone, as the result of which all the bones are defective in lime salts. Hence the bones are soft, easily bent and twisted, producing especially deformity of the pelvis and legs. The chondro-osseous articulations of the ribs are enlarged, producing the rickety rosary. The head is enlarged and the forehead broad, resembling that of hydrocephalus, and above all there is a universal tenderness, causing the child to cry out when taken up. There is a tendency to profuse sweating about the head and neck and a slight elevation of temperature.

Cretinism is also a much later development, generally appearing when the child is six months old and is characterized by the idiotic, expressionless face, large open mouth, broad thick nostrils, and thick lips. The skin is dry and rough, swollen and edematous in appearance, but does not pit on pressure. The mind is sluggish and motion slow.

## OSTEOMALACIA.

**Definition.**—A softening which takes place in the bones by a solution of lime salts subsequent to their complete development.

**Etiology.**—The precise cause is unknown. A geographical distribution, however, exists, in accordance with which it is common on the Rhine, in Westphalia, in Eastern Belgium, and in Northern Italy. In this respect it is similar to goiter, which prevails in special localities, and it has been suggested on this account that it may be due to some local cause. It is for the most part a disease of adults between 30 and 40 years old, and of women more than of men. It is favored by unhygienic surroundings, such as damp and badly ventilated dwellings. Frequent pregnancy is supposed to be an exciting cause.

**Pathogeny.**—There is, primarily, *increased vascularity*. To this succeed a solution and disappearance of the *lime salts* of the bone. These take place from within outward, from the marrow cavity, dissolving out first the lime salts and then melting away the matrix, enlarging the central cavity until the cortical portion acquires a paper-like thinness. The whole bone has been compared to an "inflated and dried intestine." The product of the solution at first is a mucoid matter that mixes with the marrow. The latter soon loses its vascularity and gradually acquires a thinner but still viscid character and a yellow color. The periosteum is likewise

hyperemic and at first thickened. The process is compared to the artificial solution of the earthy salts from bone by hydrochloric acid, and it is supposed that the solvent agent exerts its effect from the medullary spaces and Haversian canals. It has been suggested that lactic acid is the solvent, as it has been found in the medullary canal and in the urine of subjects of osteomalacia. The process extends unevenly. *It differs from rickets in being a degeneration of fully formed bone, while the latter is a degeneration of developing bone.*

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The favorite seats of the process are the vertebræ and the bones of the pelvis and thorax; also of the thighs. The result in the former is an S-like curve of the spinal column, due to a kyphoscoliosis or backward curvature of the dorsal and a lordoscoliosis or forward curvature of the lumbar part, while the cervical portion in connection with the upper dorsal portion protrudes anteriorly. The thorax is distorted and compressed laterally, while the sternum is prominent and bent. The pelvis is also compressed laterally, the symphysis projects like the prow of a ship, and the sacrum projects forward producing a deformity of the pelvis often discoverable only by internal examination.

**Symptoms.**—The first symptom is usually *pain*, deep seated and severe, oftenest in the sacral region, nape of the neck, back, and thighs, and this pain is persistent and increased by motion, giving rise to a hobbling gait. There is also *tenderness*. *Walking*, therefore, becomes more and more *difficult* and finally impossible, and the patient takes to bed. But this affords no relief, the pain being kept up by the pressure of the bed-clothing and the weight of the body. In the meantime the deformities described under morbid anatomy take place, though those of the pelvis are less obvious externally. *Difficult labor* is an inevitable consequence should the patient conceive, just as it is in rickets. *Dyspnea* is a frequent consequence of compression of the lung by the distorted thorax. *Fractures*, complete and incomplete, are frequent events, even of the ribs as well as of the extremities. In this respect osteomalacia differs from rickets, in which the bones bend but do not break. Such fractures repair imperfectly. Sometimes, on the other hand, the limbs are soft and yielding, and may be bent like a lead pipe. The bones of the head and face are for the most part exempt, though the head is much bent toward the chest, making the stature lower.

The *general condition* of the patient often remains for a long time unaltered. There is little or no fever. The organic functions are normally maintained. The presence of lactic acid in the urine has been mentioned. It is said that phosphoric acid is diminished. Albumin is also sometimes present. Calcareous concretions have been found in the kidneys and bladder.

**Diagnosis.**—At first there may be doubt as to the nature of the disease, but as the characteristic symptoms present themselves, its real nature becomes evident. *Disease of the vertebræ and cord* has been confounded with it, but the hobbling gait peculiar to it does not usually resemble any of the gaits of spinal disease. Being a disease of adults, it is not likely to be mistaken for *rickets*. Moreover, it is a disease which affects the shafts of bones rather than the epiphyses.

**Prognosis.**—The disease is usually ultimately fatal, although death is often long deferred and the course is chronic—from two to ten years. Arrest sometimes occurs, but is only temporary. The disease again starts, and its course is generally irresistible. Death commonly takes place from exhaustion or from some complication like pneumonia. Recovery is not impossible. The so-called cystic degeneration of bone is said to be a consequence.

**Treatment.**—Theoretically, the indications are the same as for rickets—viz., to supply the blood with lime salts. Practically, they have not proved of much value. They may, however, be prescribed in the shape of the syrup of the lactophosphate of lime in the dose of from 1 to 2 fluidrams (4 to 8 c.c.) or the syrup of the hypophosphates in the same dose or the latter in combination with iron or with cod-liver oil. Proper hygiene and good food are of the utmost importance. Phosphorus itself is a drug highly commended. (See Rickets.) Strümpell gives the following prescription for it:

℞ Phosphori,	0.01 gm. (3/20 grain)
Olei amyg. express,	10.00 gm. (150 grains)
Misce, deinde adde	
Pulv. acacie,	} āā 5.00 gm. (75 grains)
Syrupi, simplicis,	
Aquæ dest.,	
M. et Sig.—Two to four teaspoonfuls a day.	80.00 gm. (1200 grains)

Women who are subjects to osteomalacia should be warned against marriage.

## MULTIPLE MYELOMA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Myelopathic Albumosuria; Kahler's Disease.*

**Definition.**—A disease characterized by pain in the bones, especially those of the trunk, the presence of Bence Jones' albumose in the urine and a more or less rapidly fatal course. It differs from osteomalacia in that the urine contains albumose while that of osteomalacia does not. Up to June, 1904, 35 reliable cases were published.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The cases which have come to autopsy have revealed a more or less diffuse neoplasm, sarcomatous in structure, invading simultaneously several bones of the trunk, without the occurrence of metastases. It consists of round cells resembling those of the normal cells of the bone-marrow. This neoplasm replaces the bony structure in the cavity of the bone sometimes causing swelling of the bone and spontaneous fracture.

**Etiology.**—The condition has as yet been traced to no cause.

**Symptoms.**—Along with albumose in the urine, severe intermittent pain in the affected bones is the most constant symptom. The pain may be in the thigh, in a part or all of it; in the bones of the arm, the sternum or the ribs, or the spinal column. The pain is described as dull and continuous. The pain disappears at times regardless of treatment. There is at first no tenderness, but as the disease continues points of tenderness develop when moderate pressure or even the physician's percussion may cause intense

pain. When the disease is established, motion of the body, even that of breathing, aggravates the pain. As it continues, extreme weakness develops with anemia. There may be also attacks of nausea and vomiting with intermittent diarrhea, although the viscera, including liver, spleen, and lymphatic glands are normal. There is no fever, the temperature not exceeding 99; the pulse is moderately frequent, rising to 120. There is no edema of the extremities, though death may be preceded by edema of the lungs. Pleurisy has been found antecedent as in Meltzer's case.<sup>1</sup>

*Urine.*—As stated, the urine contains large quantities of albumose, one of the intermediate products of albumin digestion between albumin and the ultimate product peptone.

Albumose is thus recognized: It is precipitated from urine by nitric acid, more abundantly than albumin, as a rule, but is redissolved by heating to the boiling temperature. When urine containing Bence Jones' albumose is gradually heated, it becomes turbid at a comparatively low temperature, not more than 130° F., and coagulates when heated a little more. When the temperature reaches the boiling-point the coagulum redissolves leaving only a slight turbidity. As the urine cools the albumose precipitates again, and again dissolves on boiling. The quantity of urine is not materially altered being from 1200 to 2500 c.c. with a specific gravity of from 1015 to 1025. A peculiar feature is the absence of tendency to decomposition, although in the course of time the albumose disappears. If, however, thymol be added, the albumose is retained many months after the urine is passed, as shown by Meltzer.

The course of the disease is usually rapid, although one case described by Kahler, that of a physician, lasted over eight years.

**Diagnosis.**—The presence of albumose is pathognomonic of myeloma, and cases probably escape detection because of deficient examination of the urine, since routine examinations for albumin does not disclose albumose, hence the urine of all cases of pain in the bones of the kind described, should be tested for albumose by suitable tests.

**Prognosis.**—The termination is invariably fatal usually after a rapid course, but sometimes the disease is more prolonged as in the case of Kahler's physician referred to.

**Treatment.**—No remedy has been found which can be regarded in any sense as curative. A local application of ice in Meltzer's case relieved the pain.

## PURPURA.

SYNONYMS.—*Morbus maculosus; Peliosis.*

**Definition.**—A name given to several dyscrasic states, all attended by subcutaneous or submucous extravasations of blood. Such extravasations do not disappear on pressure, and vary in size from that of a pin-point to areas a centimeter or more in extent. When minute or punctiform, they are called petechiæ; when larger than this, ecchymoses. An indisposition on the part of the blood to coagulate is commensurate with the tendency to

<sup>1</sup> Meltzer, S. J., "Myelopathic Albumosuria." Reprint from "New York Medical Record," June 18, 1904.



extravasation. Purpura is always a symptom rather than a disease, but in certain conditions it forms the most conspicuous symptom of a group which scarcely admits of any other classification. In this event an adjective term derived from some more conspicuous one of these symptoms, or from the name of some investigator who has described the condition, is added to give precision. In other instances it is so purely a symptom and plays so minor a rôle in the disease that it is called symptomatic. Under any circumstances it is not always easy to keep the varieties distinct.

#### SYMPTOMATIC PURPURA.

This includes the forms of purpura in which the petechiæ and ecchymoses are usually of minor importance. In a few instances in which the dyscrasia is very great they become by their number and extent indices of the degree of such dyscrasia. Such are:

1. The purpura which often invades the extremities of the old (senile purpura).

2. The purpura of the infectious diseases (infectious symptomatic purpura), especially typhus fever, smallpox, scarlet fever, measles, pyemia, mycotic endocarditis.

3. The purpura of poisons (toxic symptomatic purpura)—as, for example, that which occurs in connection with venomous snake-bites, or with overdoses of certain medicines, such as ergot, mercury, copaiba, quinin, iodid of potassium, and others. Certain persons possessed of idiosyncrasies acquire purpura on the administration of much smaller doses. In these the extravasations may occur anywhere on the body.

4. The purpura attending certain diseases which, though *not infectious*, induce cachectic states—viz. (cachectic symptomatic purpura), cancer, tuberculosis, Bright's disease.

5. Certain nervous diseases (neurotic symptomatic purpura), including locomotor ataxia, myelitis, rarely neuralgia, and hysterical states associated with the bleeding points known as *stigmata*.

6. Mechanical symptomatic purpura, when induced by some cause resisting the onward movement of the blood, as a paroxysm of whooping-cough, croup, or an epileptoid fit.

The diagnosis of these conditions is a purely etiological one, and the prognosis and treatment are those of the diseases causing them.

#### SCURVY.

SYNONYM.—*Scorbutic Purpura*.

**Definition.**—A disease characterized by a dyscrasic state of the blood, associated with subcutaneous or submucous hemorrhages, by a peculiar spongy state of the gums, and extreme general weakness.

**Etiology.**—Less than half a century ago the idea of scurvy was always associated with the seafaring life, since sailors were its chief victims, though almshouses and prisons also held their complement. In the food of these persons fresh vegetables and vegetable juices and organic salts were want-

ing. So it came to be acknowledged that such privation was responsible for scurvy, and proof of this belief was thought to exist in the fact that with the quicker voyages of ships and a supply of suitable food, scurvy had almost vanished from the nosology. It appears, however, that, after all, the effect of such causes is predisposing and the disease may be really infectious, being due to some as yet undetected organism. Especially firm in this belief are those who have, by reason of its distribution, had the best opportunities for its studies—as, for example, in Russia, where the disease is endemic, sometimes epidemic. Finally, it turns out that not only sporadic cases, but even epidemics, occur quite independently of the dietetic causes named.

At the present day scurvy has become a rare disease, but is still met in camps, prisons, almshouses, and situations where the food causes named exist along with dampness, foul air, and depressing influences generally, among which nostalgia is supposed to be especially potent. The effect of the food causes has been held by Garrod and by Ralfe to be the deficiency of the potassium salts, more especially of the alkaline carbonates derived from the conversion of the organic salts of the vegetable and fruit-juices—viz., the malates, tartrates, citrates, and lactates. Experimental proof of the latter is adduced by feeding animals upon acid salts, the effect of which is to impair their nutrition and to produce dyscrasic states of the blood similar to those of scurvy and followed by like extravasations.

The disease attacks the old and young of either sex, though the old are more susceptible, and it happens, probably from accidental circumstances, that more males are affected than females.

Reference should be made to the observations of my colleague J. P. C. Griffith,<sup>1</sup> who has shown that scurvy has appeared in children who have been too long fed on certain artificial infant foods.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This consists in (1) alterations of the blood; (2) the extravasations of blood, which may be anywhere—subcutaneous, sub-mucous, intermuscular, and interstitial. The blood changes are not distinctive. The blood is dark and thin, the blood-corpuscles and hemoglobin are concurrently reduced in number, and there is no leukocytosis. Rarely there is even sloughing of the skin and mucous membrane, leaving ulcerated patches in the skin and bowels. The spleen is soft and enlarged, and there may be degenerative changes as well as hemorrhages in the kidneys, liver, and muscles.

**Symptoms.**—The more evident symptoms are the *changes in the gums*, and the *deep-seated and superficial hemorrhages*.

The *gums* are swollen, soft, and spongy, with disposition to bleed easily. In the more severe cases there is ulceration, with loosening and falling out of the teeth, the tongue is swollen, and the breath excessively foul. The gums of young children and of the aged are more often uninvaded. In rare cases only is there *necrosis* of the jaw.

The *hemorrhages*, always petechial, appear usually first in the lower extremities, then on the arms and trunk, but they occur anywhere as roundish, dark-red spots which may assume larger size. They are rare in

<sup>1</sup> "The Relation of Scurvy to Recent Methods of Artificial Feeding," "N. Y. Med. Jour.," Feb. 23, 1901; "Scurvy, Not Rheumatism," "Phila. Med. Jour.," Feb. 2, 1901; "American Pediatric Society's Collective Investigation on Infantile Scurvy," "Arch. of Ped.," July, 1898.

the face and scalp, and are less common under the mucous membranes and in deep-seated tissues. Subperiosteal hemorrhages may occur. Nasal hemorrhages may be frequent, melena and hematuria rare, hematemesis and hemoptysis still rarer. The extravasations are slow to disappear, even when recovery takes place. The occasional sloughing has been referred to. A residual, slowly healing ulcer results.

Other symptoms are *debility*, extreme in severe cases, and *anemia*. The *pulse* is small, feeble, and frequent, and corresponds to the heart's action, which is sometimes irregular; more rarely is it slower than in health. The *temperature* is normal, rarely somewhat elevated. *Sore throat* is mentioned as a premonitory symptom. In bad cases *nephritis* and *endocarditis* occur. Articular swelling is an occasional symptom; it is one of the results of the dyscrasia; so are *wheals* and *vesicles*.

**Diagnosis.**—This depends, as stated, on the etiology, the gingival changes, and the hemorrhages. It is these which chiefly distinguish it from the other forms of purpura.

**Prognosis.**—Sporadic cases always get well, and epidemic cases usually, unless too far advanced before coming under treatment.

**Treatment.**—This is usually most satisfactory when the necessary conditions are fulfilled—a restored wholesome hygiene and suitable food. Good ventilation and outdoor life in healthy localities, with plenty of fresh vegetables, fruits, and fresh meats, ordinarily suffice to accomplish a prompt cure. It is usual to give lemon and orange-juice as the types of the fruit-juices. Tonics and roborants, of which iron, quinin, and strychnin are the type, are the medicines needed. Calcium chlorid may be used in doses of from 5 to 15 grains (0.3 to 1 gm.). Antiseptic and astringent mouth-washes should be used, and ulcers should be stimulated by local applications, of which nitrate of silver in solution is the best.

#### INFANTILE SCURVY.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Barlow's Disease; Periosteal Cachexia.*

**Definition.**—A cachectic condition of infants, associated with subperiosteal hemorrhagic extravasations.

**Historical.**—In 1878 and again in 1882 Cheadle published in the "Lancet," and about the same time Gee published as occurring in England, cases of a cachexia in very young children, associated with hemorrhage, and due to imperfect food-supply. About the same time Barlow made an exhaustive study of the subject and gave his results in the "Medico-Chirurgical Transactions," volume xlvi., 1883, and in the Bradshaw Lecture for 1894. W. P. Northrup published a paper on "Scorbutus in Infants," describing cases in this country, in the "New York Medical Journal," December 12, 1891, and another with Crandall in the same journal, volume i., 1894.

**Symptoms.**—Barlow's account is graphic, almost sensational, but I gather that the condition exists essentially in a *hemorrhagic subperiosteal extravasation*, causing thickening and tenderness in the shafts of the bones beginning in the lower extremities, but invading also the forearm and arm, more rarely the scapula, vault of the cranium, and face. Rarely there is intermuscular extravasation. The resulting *tenderness* and *pain on motion* cause the child to keep quiet, with the legs drawn up, and to cry out when

handled. The lesions are symmetrical. The *joints* remain *free*. The sternum and adjacent cartilages and a small portion of the contiguous ribs may be sunk bodily back as though subjected to violence. There may be a sudden *prolapse of an eyeball*. Along with these symptoms are profound *anemia* and *erratic temperature*, which may be subnormal, normal, or as high as 102° F. (38.9° C.).

The disease occurs at any period after four months, but it is most common from the ninth to the 18th month, and is of rapid development.

**Treatment.**—It has been ascribed to the use of the proprietary forms of condensed milk and preserved foods for infants. These should therefore be omitted, and fresh cow's milk substituted, with beef-juice and strained gruel made from whole-grain cereals only. Orange-juice or lemon-juice in water may also be given in moderate doses. Under this treatment the prognosis is favorable and recovery prompt.

### ARTHRITIC PURPURA.

SYNONYM.—*Rheumatic Purpura*.

**Definition.**—The characteristic feature of arthritic purpura is a joint involvement. Hence it is also called rheumatic purpura, though its rheumatic nature cannot be said to be absolutely settled. Rheumatoid purpura would be more accurate.

**Symptoms.**—Three varieties are distinguished:

1. *Simple Arthritic Purpura*.—This is a mild form, most frequent in children. The *articular pain* is very mild and attended with but slight fever. The *spots* are found for the most part on the *legs*, more rarely on the trunk and arms. There may be *digestive derangement*, manifested by loss of appetite and diarrhea. The condition terminates favorably in a week or ten days. It may be associated with a mild degree of anemia.

2. *Peliosis Rheumatica*.—Schönlein's disease. This is a much more serious affection from every standpoint, occurring usually in young persons from 14 to 30. The *joint* symptoms are pronounced and multiple, and there are decided *swelling*, *pain*, and *fever*, with a temperature of 101° to 103° F. (38.3° to 39.4° C.). The *eruption* first appears on the legs near the affected joint, but I have seen it present extensively on the arm, distant from the joint, followed by sloughing; in the same case were retinal hemorrhages. *Sloughing* and *necrosis* of the skin even have occurred. It may be simply purpuric, or may be associated with urticarial wheals—exudative—or vesicles (pemphigoid purpura). When severe, it is often associated with hematuria and hemorrhagic nephritis with edema. I saw, with Agnew and Osler, a remarkable case in which the latter condition hastened a fatal termination by uremia. Endocarditis is also a complication.

3. *Henoch's Purpura*.—This is a variety occurring most often in children, but also in adults, characterized by *severe gastro-intestinal* disturbance *in addition to the previously named symptoms*. There are pain, vomiting, and diarrhea, rarely intestinal ulceration and perforation with fatal peritonitis. Acute enlargement of the spleen has been observed.

Here, also, recovery is the rule.

**Diagnosis of Arthritic Purpura.**—The diagnosis is easy by reason of the associated joint symptoms, but the same doubt exists as to a true rheumatic nature in all forms.

**Prognosis.**—This is regarded as favorable, but fatal terminations do occur, especially in peliosis rheumatica in which there is nephritis. Relapses in this form may occur at the same time of year for several years in succession.

#### PURPURA HEMORRHAGICA.

SYNONYM.—*Morbus maculosus Werlhofii*.

**Symptoms.**—This form of purpura is characterized by *hemorrhage* from the mucous membranes, including nose, mouth, palate, stomach, and intestinal canal, in *addition to extensive subcutaneous ecchymosis*. The brain and kidneys and serous membranes may also be seats of hemorrhage—apoplectic symptoms indicating the first. A *prodrome* of languor and weakness may precede for a couple of days, to be succeeded by a rapid succession of ecchymoses and hemorrhages. More decided constitutional disturbances follow, including typhoid symptoms and fever, though the latter is mild and may be altogether absent, even in severe cases.

In the *purpura fulminans* the hemorrhages are mainly confined to the skin, producing confluent ecchymoses and dense infiltrations covering large areas, with sanguineous blisters. The internal organs, on the other hand, remain free, while the urine and the bowel evacuations are natural. At times there is fever; at others, not. Hemorrhagic purpura has occurred after pneumonia and scarlet fever, and again in children apparently healthy.

**Diagnosis.**—As to diagnosis, *scurvy* is almost the only condition liable to be mistaken for purpura hemorrhagica. In the latter the gums are intact, and there is an absence of the conditions favoring scurvy.

**Prognosis.**—The termination is usually favorable in from ten days to two weeks, although there may be fulminating cases, usually in children, terminating fatally in 24 hours. Severe cases recover more slowly.

**Treatment of Arthritic Purpura and Purpura Hemorrhagica.**—Treatment is best directed to improving the quality of the blood and to building up the general tone rather than to the control of the hemorrhage, though the latter must not be entirely ignored. Almost all that has been said of the treatment of scurvy is applicable to these forms of purpura. Iron and arsenic are the typical roborants and blood-builders, to which nutritious food, including vegetable-juices, is to be added. Arsenic should be given in full doses, beginning with small ones and ascending rapidly.

In the articular forms the salicylates and salicin should be used in such doses as the stomach will tolerate.

Of the astringent remedies found serviceable may be mentioned ergot, in doses of from 5 to 30 minims (0.3 to 2 c.c.) of the fluid extract; per-sulphate of iron, in doses of from  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.016 to 0.032 gm.); acetate of lead, 1 to 3 grains (0.0648 to 0.2 gm.); dilute or aromatic sulphuric acid, 5 to 15 minims (0.33 to 1 c.c.).

## HEMORRHAGIC DISEASES OF THE NEW-BORN.

*Hemorrhagic Syphilis of the New-born.*—Usually about from the *third* to the *fifth* day after birth hemorrhage is observed at the navel of the child, or it may occur earlier. Blood also flows from the mucous membranes of the mouth, the bowels, and the kidneys. The skin becomes jaundiced. The stomach rejects food, and though it may appear well nourished at birth, the child rapidly wastes, and dies at the end of a *week* or *ten* days. The autopsy discloses *syphilitic lesions* in the liver, lungs, nasal passages, and elsewhere.

*Epidemic Hemoglobinuria of Infants, or Winckel's Disease.*—As described by Winckel in 1879, in an epidemic at the Foundlings' Hospital, at Dresden, the first symptoms, noticed usually on the *fourth day after birth*, are a bluish tinge on the skin of the face, trunk, and limbs, with a more or less icteroid hue. There are *fever*, *rapid breathing*, and sometimes *cyanosis*. Occasionally there are *vomiting* and *diarrhea*. The *urine* is light brown, albuminous, contains methemoglobin, and deposits a sediment consisting of epithelium and tube-casts. The *blood* contains an excess of leukocytes and numerous granular bodies. The child *lives*, on an average, *two days*, though in one case death supervened in nine hours. The autopsy in this case disclosed yellow staining of the skin and internal organs; the spleen was large, hard, and darkened; the kidneys were dark brown in color, their tubules being filled with granular pigment; the liver and heart were fatty. There may be punctiform hemorrhages on the surface of the internal organs. There is no septic condition of the umbilical vessels. An infectious origin is not unlikely.

*Acute Degeneration of the Internal Organs of the New-born, or Buhl's Disease.*—How far this disease, described by Buhl in 1861, differs from Winckel's disease, or the latter from the former, remain to be settled, for, in the first place, fatty degeneration of the heart and liver is found in many cases of Winckel's disease, while in others there is found the general fatty degeneration of kidneys, liver, heart, etc., described by Buhl. In the second place, infants surviving the first few hours after birth in Buhl's disease have the same symptoms as those described under Winckel's disease, while the other symptoms, such as minute hemorrhages and bile staining of various internal organs, are not essentially different.

*Morbus Maculosus Neonatorum.*—Still another form of hemorrhage from one or more of the surfaces, and especially of the alimentary canal, in the new-born is described under this title. The bleeding generally begins within the *first week*, but may be as late as the second or third week. *Hemorrhage from the bowels* (*mekena neonatorum*) is the most frequent form, but it may be from the stomach, mouth, nose and navel, or from the navel alone. It may be accompanied by hematogenous jaundice—indeed, by any or all the symptoms described under Winckel's disease—but differs in the occasional presence of *fever* and apparent *absence of postmortem* lesions, though ulcers of the esophagus, stomach, and duodenum have been found. It is generally fatal in from one to seven days. All these conditions can be appropriately considered as forms of purpura.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of hemorrhagic affections of the new-born

often avails little, though recoveries sometimes take place, especially in the last-described form, in which C. W. Townsend reports 19 recoveries out of 50 cases collected.

The treatment demands *absolute rest* with the head low. Even the exertion necessary in nursing at the breast should be interdicted, and the infant should be fed, while recumbent, with a teaspoon, using also the mother's milk if this be not condemned as worthless. The utmost care in providing *uniform warmth* should be taken. This can be best accomplished by means of an incubator. One may be improvised, as suggested by F. A. Hoffman, out of a box in the bottom of which hot bricks are placed. Over them is swung the infant's bed. A thermometer is so inserted as to be readily observable, and the temperature is kept at 90° F. (32° C.). To control the hemorrhage ergotin may be used hypodermically, one grain or minim (0.06 gm.) every six hours. Gallic acid may be given by the mouth in 1 grain (0.06 gm.) doses, but extreme care should be taken in using remedies by the mouth.

## HEMOPHILIA.

**Definition.**—A hereditary vice of constitution, manifested by a tendency to uncontrollable hemorrhage, occurring either spontaneously or as the result of trifling injury.

**Etiology.**—No explanation has as yet been offered of hemophilia. Some agency, be it a bacterium, a toxin or chemical solvent, so destroys the integrity of the vessel-walls as to permit the transudation of blood. While the disease is usually hereditary, it is sometimes though rarely acquired. While individual instances of fatal hemorrhage were observed centuries ago, the first mention of it seems to have been by an Arabian physician who died in 1107. "Families of bleeders" were first described in this country. Of great importance because of its bearing on the marriage of these hemophilic subjects is the fact that the tendency is transmitted through the female line rather than through the male. Thus, if a man belonging to a bleeding family who is himself not a bleeder marries a woman who is healthy and not a bleeder, his offspring are usually exempt from the affliction. On the other hand, a woman a member of a bleeding family marries, and even if she be exempt herself, she may have offspring who are bleeders. These facts were pointed out by Grandidier. Not all the children of such persons are afflicted, while the male members are more frequently subject than females. The families of bleeders are apt to be large, and their appearance is that of health, as a rule. It is said that blondes predominate, with delicate, soft skin and distinct, distended veins.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Two facts of importance have been recognized—viz., that in some instances the walls of the blood-vessels have been found thin with a fatty degeneration of the intima, and in many there is deficient coagulability of the blood. A third fact, which adds nothing in explanation of the hemorrhagic tendency, is a superficial situation of the arteries. A striking case of this kind in a blonde woman, formerly a

bleeder, was for a time under my observation. Beyond this we know nothing, notwithstanding the exhaustive studies of Wickham Legg, Grandidier, and Hössli.

**Symptoms.**—Attention is commonly called to a bleeder by the occurrence of a hemorrhage difficult to control, though induced by some trifling cause. The extraction of a tooth is one of the most frequent of these events. It may be the prick of a pin, or a scratch, or a slight cut, as in vaccination, or no cause may be discoverable. The tendency may manifest itself at the cutting of the umbilical cord at birth, or in Jewish children at the circumcision. On the other hand, the same accidents which are without result early in life may induce the hemorrhage later. Uncontrollable epistaxis is one of the most frequent manifestations, occurring in 169 out of 334 cases collected by Grandidier. It may be induced by simply blowing the nose. Other situations are the mouth, stomach, ear, and eyelids. On the other hand, hemorrhages rarely occur in the interstices of organs, and though interstitial hemorrhages do occur, they are usually the result of trifling blows, when the well-known "black-and-blue" appearance is produced. The absence of interstitial hemorrhages, except as the result of some cause, however trifling, may be said to distinguish hemophilia from the acquired hemorrhagic tendency.

Menstruation may be very copious in women, but not fatal, while the natural loss of blood in child-bearing is rarely augmented. In a case which came to my notice the hemophilia disappeared with the appearance of the menopause, soon after which it was substituted by a chronic nephritis.

The external hemorrhages, including those of the mouth and nose, may be profuse and even fatal. They often last 24 hours or longer. When checked, reaction from them is rapid, and the victims quickly resume their natural appearance, though repeated hemorrhages may engender a permanent anemia.

Joint affections may be associated with this as with the acquired hemorrhagic tendency. They involve usually the larger joints, and may include swelling and pain, with fever, producing a close resemblance to rheumatism, or there may only be pain.

**Diagnosis.**—This is apparent if the family tendency is known, and any alarming hemorrhage without sufficient cause should excite inquiry.

**Prognosis.**—Sooner or later hemophilia is apt to be fatal, though there may be many severe hemorrhages before the last one comes. *The younger the subject, the more serious the outlook.* It does, however, happen that the tendency is outgrown, subsequent attacks becoming milder and milder. In the majority of cases death takes place between the first and the eighth year, and adolescence once survived, the chances of outgrowing it are greatly increased.

**Treatment.**—This may be prophylactic. The children of bleeding families should be carefully guarded against traumatic causes, however slight, while they should be carefully looked after from the hygienic and nutritive standpoints. Fresh air, daily bathing, outdoor exercise, and judicious measures intended to harden the threatened subject should be practiced. Plain, wholesome, and nourishing food should be given, and due attention should be paid to digestion. As a part of the prophylactic treat-



ment, too, is discouragement from marriage especially in the case of women.

During an attack absolute quiet must be enjoined. Styptics are to be employed locally, rather than internal medicines. Of styptics, the solution of the perchlorid or persulphate of iron is the best, beginning at first with dilute solutions and increasing to the full strength of the official solution if necessary. Tannic acid is another good styptic, and if at hand, may be dusted well upon the part or applied on cotton to cavities. In epitaxis the nose must be plugged if the ordinary methods of applying these agents fail.

Though little is to be expected from internal remedies, they may be tried. Wickham Legg recommends the tincture of the perchlorid of iron in  $1/2$  dram (2 c.c.) doses every two hours. Ergotin and acetate of lead may also be used. Suprarenal extract and its active principle, adrenalin chlorid, have also been employed for hemophilia, the former in doses of 5 grains every three hours. Adrenalin chlorid is used in the shape of a 1 to 2000 solution applied directly to the bleeding point; or a fluidram (4 c.c.) of a 1/1000 solution may be added to a  $1/2$  pint or 1 pint (250 to 500 c.c.) of normal salt solution and administered by hypoder-moclysis, or intravenous injection. If urgent 15 minims (1 c.c.) may be used undiluted and the remainder in the diluted form.

The serum treatment of hemophilia is promising. P. Emile Weil has found the injection of fresh serum to prevent hemorrhages in two cases of the acquired form. In the hereditary form the injections of serum had also an excellent effect, though an incomplete one both as a preventive and curative.<sup>1</sup>

The usual treatment for consequent anemia should be employed.

---

<sup>1</sup> Weil, "La Tribune Medicale," January, 1906.

## SECTION IX.

### DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

#### GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

#### HISTOLOGY OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

The difficulties in the diagnosis of diseases of the nervous system are gradually diminishing as the thread of its histology is being unraveled. The studies of Golgi, His, Forel, Waldeyer, Ramón y Cajal, Dejerine, Lenhossék, van Gehuchten, and others have considerably altered previously accepted views. A brief statement of the fundamental features of histology seems, therefore, necessary.

The studies of these and other observers resolve the nervous system into an immense number of units, to which Waldeyer has given the name *neurons*—whence the name neuron theory. It is necessary to state that the neuron theory is vigorously attacked, but as it is of service in explaining nervous diseases, it may be employed until the evidence against it becomes so convincing that we are forced to abandon it. Each *neuron* is made up of:

1. A nerve cell body.
2. Protoplasmic processes, or dendrites.
3. An axis-cylinder or axon continuous with the nerve-fiber.
4. Terminal ramifications of the axis-cylinder.

The *axis-cylinder* of a *motor* spinal cell gives off at different intervals lateral branches known as *collaterals*. These *collaterals* or *paraxons*, and finally the axis-cylinder itself, break up into many fine fibers, known as *terminal ramifications*, or *end brushes*, or *branch tufts*. Each neuron has been believed to be independent of every other—that is, no protoplasmic process of one neuron is continuous with that of another, nervous communication being through simple contact or proximity. More recent investigations, however, throw some doubt on this. The protoplasmic processes conduct impulses to the cell, are *cellulipetal*, as named by Cajal; the axis-cylinders conduct impulses away from it and are *cellulifugal*. The nutrition of the neuron depends largely on the cell body. If the latter is intact, the processes are preserved. If it is injured they waste, or if they are cut off they degenerate; on the other hand, the cell body suffers when its processes become diseased.

The motor neurons having their cell bodies in the gray matter of the brain, are called central neurons; those neurons having their cell bodies in the spinal cord and in the ganglia on the posterior roots, are called peripheral neurons. The end brushes or terminal ramifications of a central motor neuron surround the body and protoplasmic processes of a peripheral motor neuron, while those of the peripheral neuron are in connection with a motor plate. The axis-cylinders of the central and peripheral neurons traverse chiefly the white tracts of the brain and spinal cord and the per-

ipheral nerves. The cells of the anterior roots of the spinal nerves lie in the anterior cornua of the gray matter, and have the protoplasmic processes short and the axis-cylinders long. (See Fig. 86.)

The cells of the posterior roots are situated in the ganglia on those roots; the axis-cylinders of these cell bodies divide soon after leaving the cell body, one process passing to the periphery, the other to the spinal cord. Communication between different parts of the nervous system and with the rest of the body is thus rendered possible. The processes extending to the periphery receive impressions from the exterior and carry them cellulipetal to the ganglion cells on the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, whence they

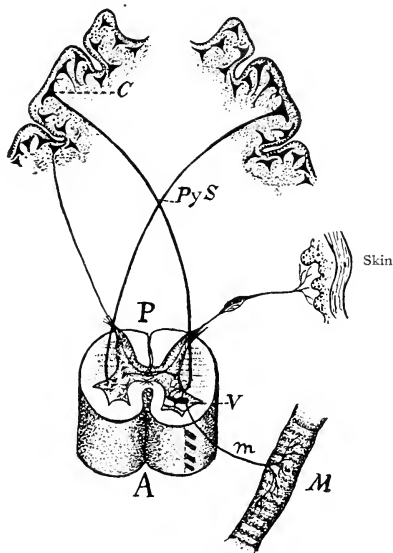


FIG. 86.—Diagram of an Element of the Motor Path —(after Strumpell, modified).

C. Motor ganglion cell in the cerebral cortex. Py S. Lateral pyramidal tract, central or upper motor neuron. V. Ganglion cell of anterior horn. m. Motor nerve, peripheral neuron. M. Muscular fiber.

are conveyed by the axis-cylinders cellulifugal to the cord. This impression may result in a reflex act, or it may proceed to the brain and give rise to a volitional act through the motor tract.

A motor impulse starting from the brain cortex must pass through at least two sets of neurons before it can reach the muscles. In this course it is cellulifugal from the cell in the cortex, cellulipetal to the cells in the gray matter at different levels in the anterior cornua, and thence cellulifugal from the latter cells to the various muscles of the body, ending in the end-plates. Hence we speak of the motor tract as being composed of two segments, an upper and a lower. The neurons of the upper motor segment have their cell bodies and protoplasmic processes in the cortex in front of the fissure of Rolando. The axis-cylinder processes run through the

internal capsule and the cerebral peduncles, through the pons, medulla oblongata, and cord, ending in terminal ramifications around the protoplasmic processes and cell bodies of the lower segment. The neurons of the lower segment are those having their cell bodies and protoplasmic processes in the anterior cornua of the gray matter, while their axis-cylinders leave the spinal cord by the anterior roots of the spinal nerves, to be distributed as described. The *upper segment*, in large extent at least, is a *crossed tract*—that is, the neurons composing it have their cell bodies and protoplasmic processes in the cortex, while their axis-cylinders cross the middle line to end about the cell bodies in the opposite half of the spinal cord; so that motor impulses starting in the left half of the brain produce contraction in the muscles of the right half of the body, and vice versa, although both sides of the brain probably innervate unequally each side of the body. (Fig. 86.) The *lower motor segment* is a *direct tract*—that is, its neurons, and the muscles to which they are distributed, are all on the same side of the body.

The path for sensory conduction is also composed of segments, but the direct route of sensory conduction is more complicated and our knowledge is much less exact. The cell bodies of the lower neurons are in the ganglia on the posterior roots of the spinal nerves and in the ganglia of the sensory cranial nerves. These ganglion cells have a single process, which, after leaving the cell, divides in a T-shaped manner, one branch running into the central nervous system and the other toward the periphery. (Fig. 86.) The process which connects with the periphery is regarded by some as a protoplasmic process, while that which passes to the center is known as the axis-cylinder. The former runs in the sensory nerves, starting from the various specialized sensory apparatus of the periphery. The axis-cylinder enters the cord by the posterior roots. After entering the cord it divides into an ascending and a descending limb, which traverse the posterior columns. The descending branch runs a short distance and ends in the gray matter of the same side of the cord, giving off a number of collaterals, which also end in the gray matter. The ascending branch may end in the gray matter soon after entering the cord, or it may run in the posterior columns as high as the medulla oblongata, ending in the nuclei of the posterior columns. Thus the *lower segment* is also a *direct tract* terminating in the gray matter of the posterior cornua at different levels, and in the gray matter of the medulla oblongata. (See also section on Spinal Cord.) The *upper segment* starting from these is a *crossed tract*, crossing at different levels, so that sensory impressions are ultimately lodged in the brain on the side opposite that whence they start in the periphery. The so-called muscular sense, perhaps better called the sense of position, is probably conducted upward on the same side in the columns of Burdach and Goll on each side of the posterior median fissure. The exact termination of the sensory processes in the cerebral hemisphere is not known, but they pass up in the tegmentum of the pons and possibly in the internal capsule. It is believed by many that these processes terminate in the optic thalamus, and that from here the impulses are conducted to the cortex by means of another set of neurons. Recent investigations seem to show that the sensory area of the brain is posterior to the Rolandic fissure.

Both motor and sensory spinal nerve roots are connected with definite segments of the spinal cord. They descend a variable distance within the spinal canal, unite within the intervertebral foramen, but external to the point where the roots perforate the dura mater and pass through the foramina as spinal nerves. But in their distribution they do not retain the same definiteness, the same sensory and motor areas being supplied with nerve fibers from different segments of the cord, and there is an overlapping, as it were, of part supplied by different nerve fibers. At the same time, by the combined aid of experiment and morbid physiology, we have learned that movements in certain muscles are accomplished by motor nerves which emanate from corresponding segments of the spinal cord, and that from certain sensitive areas are gathered up impressions which are carried to corresponding sections of the spinal cord. By the same means we have learned that there are areas in the cortex of the brain that preside over certain motions, and areas which have to do with sensation; though with respect to the latter our knowledge is much less definite. We know about as much of the cortical localization of the *special* senses as of sensibility. These facts are the foundation of what is known as *topical diagnosis*, in the case of the brain as *cerebral localization*, by which is meant the inference, from the study of local derangements of sensation, motion, and other functions of the more or less exact site of lesions in the nervous centers. These will be considered with appropriate detail in our study of the diseases of different parts of the nervous system.

## GENERAL SYMPTOMATOLOGY.

### (INVESTIGATION OF A CASE OF NERVOUS DISEASE.)

The advantages of a careful method in the study of disease are perhaps more apparent in the case of the nervous system than that of any other of the anatomical divisions of the human body. This is partly because of the number and variety of the affections to which the nervous system is subject, and partly because of the association of certain identical symptoms with widely different lesions.

The primary steps of family and personal history are the same as for other diseases, including age, sex, occupation, and whether married or single. We may therefore pass at once to the study of such symptoms as are special.

I. PHENOMENA OF MOTION.—It is immaterial whether we examine first sensory or motor phenomena, but it appears somewhat easier to begin with derangements of motion, and of these (1) *voluntary motion* is naturally first investigated. To this end, the patient is asked to move his limbs, while the strength of whatever motion he is capable of is measured by resisting it, and by testing the power of his hand-grasp. For more accurate measurement the dynamometer is used, an instrument devised to measure both compression and traction, although it is more commonly restricted to the former. Advantage may be taken of the fact, too, that the same motion requires different degrees of strength in different posi-

tions of the body. Thus it is easier to draw up the thigh when lying on the back than when on the side, and it may be possible in the former position when it is not in the latter. Both extensor and flexor muscles must be thus tested. By such an investigation we discover the presence of a complete *paralysis* or total loss of voluntary motion, and *paresis* or simple weakening of such power.

By a *monoplegia* is meant an isolated paralysis of one part of the body, as of an arm or a leg. By a *hemiplegia* is meant a paralysis of the entire half of the body, including half of the face, one arm, and one leg, also known as unilateral paralysis. By a *paraplegia* is meant a simultaneous paralysis of corresponding halves of the body. Paralysis of the two arms is known as a *superior, or brachial, paraplegia*, of the two legs as an *inferior,*

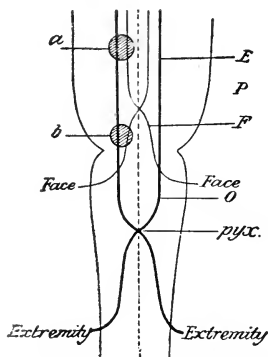


FIG. 87.—Illustrating Crossed Paralysis—(after Hirt).

O. Medulla oblongata. *pyx.* Decussation of anterior pyramids. E. Nerve-fiber going to extremities. F. Nerve-fiber to face.

or *crural, paraplegia*, while the word paraplegia alone is often used for the latter condition. A *diplegia* is a paralysis in which upper and lower limbs are affected on both sides of the body, usually attended with spasm of all the extremities, although the term is also employed for bilateral facial paralysis. Though commonly congenital, diplegia may also be acquired.

Impairment of voluntary muscular power, as thus tested, must be the result of structural change in the motor area of the cortex, in the motor tract of the brain or cord, or impairment in the integrity of the efferent nerves, or it may be more rarely in the muscle itself, "myopathic palsy"; or the power of the will may be abrogated. In diseases of the peripheral nerves, when the paralysis is called peripheral, it is limited to the region of distribution of the affected nerves, whether one or many. It may be said in general that hemiplegia is the usual form of cerebral paralysis, while paraplegia is the expression of spinal paralysis. Monoplegias are due to lesions of the cortex, or of the anterior gray matter of one side of the spinal cord, as in poliomyelitis, or are peripheral palsies; cortical monoplegia is rare.

In all hemiplegias caused by lesions above the pons, the palsy, including that of the face and extremities, is on the side opposite the lesion, but in

most lesions in the middle or lower part of the pons there is *crossed paralysis*—that is, there is paralysis of the extremities on one side, and of the face on the other side, provided the central fibers of the extremities and the facial nerve are involved in the lesion. The reason of this is that the central fibers of the facial nerve cross much higher than do the fibers to the extremities, and in such a lesion the intra-medullary portion of the facial nerve, and not the central fibers connecting its nucleus with the brain cortex are injured. The result is a paralysis of the face on the same side as the lesion and of the extremities on the other. This would be the case with a lesion at *b*, Fig. 87. If, on the other hand, the lesion is higher up, above the decussation of both the facial and pyramidal tracts, as at *a*, the paralysis is on the side opposite the lesion in both face and extremities. Other nerves may substitute the facial in this crossed paralysis as the oculomotor (third nerve) or hypoglossal (twelfth nerve) or abducens (sixth nerve). In rarer instances it is possible that a lesion at the decussation of the pyramids, by cutting the motor fibers of one extremity before they cross,

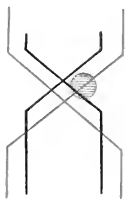


FIG. 88.—Illustrating the possibility of paralysis of arm on one side and of leg on the other.

and those of another after crossing, may produce the very rare condition of paralysis of an arm on one side and of a leg on the other. That this is theoretically possible may be seen from Fig. 88, in which the black lines represent fibers to the upper extremities and red lines fibers to the lower, and the red circle the seat of a small hemorrhage.

(2) Having determined this question of muscular strength, and the corollaries which grow out of it, we have next to ascertain to what extent the power of *co-ordination* is influenced. Every muscular act requires the duly proportioned co-operation of a number of muscles; and as the complexity of the act increases, the number of muscles required to co-operate also increases. Such co-operation is termed *co-ordination*, and its absence is recognized in the staggering gait of the drunkard, and the condition is known as *ataxia*. There are certain parts of the nervous system which preside over co-ordination—such as the cerebellum, the posterior columns, and probably the direct cerebellar tract, of the spinal cord. Disease of any of these may, therefore, produce ataxia. The ataxic or tabetic gait is described under *tabes dorsalis*, p. 1025.

A corollary, growing out of the investigation of the co-ordinating power, is the study of *station*, or the steadiness with which one stands with the eyes closed or open, and it is measured by sway of the head and body, laterally and anteroposteriorly. In health a lateral sway of the head exists to the extent of half an inch (1.25 cm.), and an anteroposterior

sway of an inch (2.5 cm.). A sway much beyond these limits is abnormal. Co-ordinating power is also tested by attempting to bring together the ends of the index fingers with the eyes closed, an effort which will be unsuccessful if co-ordinating power is lost.

(3) After ascertaining the condition of voluntary motion, co-ordination, and station, we must inquire into the question of possible *motor irritation* or *excessive muscular action* or *spasm*. Spasm may be continuous—*i. e.*, lasting for minutes, hours, or days—when it is known as *tonic* or *tetanic*; it may be intermittent or *clonic*; or it may be an admixture of both, when it is termed *tonic-clonic*. Tonic spasm is well illustrated by *trismus* or lock-jaw, while tetanic contraction of the muscles of the back produces *opisthotonos*, in which the vertebral column is arched and the body rests upon the back of the head and upon the heels. Tonic spasms are often attended with pain, probably due to pressure on intramuscular nerves, when they are called “cramps.” Spasm occurs also in involuntary non-striated muscular tissue. The presence of spasms implies irritation of motor centers, motor tract, or motor nerves, but motor irritation may also be excited secondarily by some reflex route, the result being a reflex spasm.

Spasm and paralysis are often associated. Thus, a limb may be paralyzed in a state of contraction, exhibiting a peculiar rigidity, and to such a condition the name *spastic paralysis* is applied. This condition may also exist as a state of persistent contraction of the antagonists of the paralyzed muscles, constituting the so-called *contractures*. Paralyses in which there is no such resistance to passive motion are known as *flaccid paralyses*.

Through the combination of tonic and clonic spasm result different varieties of morbid involuntary movements more or less complex. Some of these are the following:

1. *The Epileptiform Convulsion*.—This consists in a succession of clonic and tonic-clonic spasms extending over the whole or a part of the body, throwing the part involved into violent motion. The masseter and the temporal muscles share in the contraction, whence the tongue is often bitten. The convulsion of epilepsy is the type of this form, but the convulsions of uremia, or hysteria, and of organic disease of the brain may be epileptiform.

2. *Rhythmical Contractions*.—These occur in single groups of muscles, and are sometimes seen in apoplexy, and cerebral sclerosis. They may usher in the epileptiform convulsion, or the convulsion may terminate by a gradual substitution of the rhythmical contractions for the more violent spasms. Among rhythmical movements may be included *athetosis*, a peculiar slow, involuntary rhythmical movement, usually of the fingers and hands, but also of the head and trunk, or of the toes. The fingers make slow movements of the nature of extension and flexion, spreading and approximating each other in a striking way. They are a symptom of certain central nervous diseases, especially of the cerebral palsies of children.

3. *Tremors or Trembling Motions*.—These are limited movements—*i. e.*, movements of short excursion which rapidly succeed each other. “Shaking” is a more pronounced degree of tremor. Tremor is characteristic of paralysis agitans and of some other nervous affections. It occurs in old



persons as senile tremor, and in abusers of alcohol and tobacco. When it occurs or increases during voluntary motion, it is known as *intention tremor*, and is characteristic of multiple sclerosis. The immediate anatomical changes on which tremors depend are not known.

4. *Single Contractions*.—These are either sudden twitchings or slow contractions of muscles, seen especially in diseases of the nerves—as, for example, in old facial palsy. They may be single or multiple and persistent. They may be the result of direct motor irritation or reflex in origin.

5. *Fibrillary Contractions*.—These are contractions of separate small bundles of muscular fibrillæ, comparable to the “quivering” of raw flesh. They are independent of voluntary or passive motion. They may be pronounced and wave-like over the muscular substance. They are seen especially when the motor nerve cells are degenerating, as in progressive spinal muscular atrophy or bulbar paralysis. The “quivering” of the eyelid and of the orbicularis muscle below the eye, the so-called “jumper,” often an annoying symptom, is an instance of this condition.

6. *Choreic Movements*.—These are inco-ordinated movements, usually separated by short intervals of time, often first seen in the face, later in one limb or over the whole body. They may be very complex and general. They are characteristic of chorea, but also accompany other nervous affections, such as posthemiplegic chorea. Under the term posthemiplegic chorea, however, various movements are sometimes included.

7. *Constant or Co-ordinate Spasms*.—These consist in irresistible complicated movements, like moving forward or moving in a circle or rotating on the axis of the body; also complicated forms of spasm resembling jumping, laughing, screaming, all involuntary and forced. The first group of these is especially seen in disease of the cerebellum and cerebellar peduncles, the latter in severe forms of hysteria.

8. *Nystagmus* is a clonic rhythmical oscillatory and involuntary movement of the eyeball, usually horizontal, sometimes rotatory, more rarely vertical. It is noticed in congenital and acquired affections of the brain, including Friedreich's ataxia and insular sclerosis; also in albinism and in *miners* who work in dimly lighted mines, using the pick while reclining and directing the eyes laterally.

9. *Cataleptic Rigidity*.—In this there is also a tonic contraction of muscles whereby a limb remains for a considerable time in any position in which it may be passively placed, the will being abrogated. If the position of the limb be changed, it remains again in this situation, and from a resemblance to the behavior of wax under like circumstances it has received the name of “waxy flexibility.” It is characteristic of certain forms of hysteria, and may be produced at times in hypnotism. In hysteria it is commonly associated with anesthesia and loss of consciousness. It is also associated with psychoses, especially grave forms of melancholia known as *melancholia attonita* and with *katatonía*.

10. *Associated Movements*.—These are unintentional and uncontrollable movements which take place in muscles coincident with other motions actually intended—as, for instance, a motion in the arm when the patient wills to move only the leg.

(4) *Bladder control* and *rectum control* are next to be looked into. Full

control over the acts of these organs implies, first, an integrity of the sacral portion of the cord, in which reside the reflex centers regulating these acts; second, the integrity of volition, which, to a certain extent, fortifies such regulation; and, thirdly, integrity of the afferent and efferent nerve fibers constituting the reflex arcs. Through the operation of the reflex center, bladder and rectum both empty themselves when a certain degree of distention is attained. Through the operation of the will such evacuation is put off to a convenient time. Through an undue irritability of the reflex center such evacuation is imperative, and does not bide the will, or it may take place while the will is in abeyance, as in sleep. Thus may be explained some of the cases of incontinence of urine in children. Again, if will-power

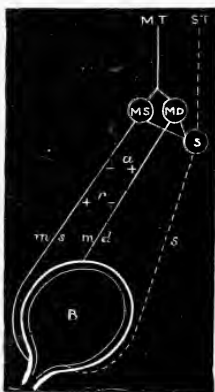


FIG. 80.—Diagram Showing Probable Plan of the Center for Micturition—(Gowers).

MT. Motor tract. ST. Sensory tract in the spinal cord. MS. Sphincter center, and *ms* motor nerve for sphincter. MD. Detrusor center, and *md* motor nerve for detrusor. *s*. Afferent nerve from mucous membrane to S, sensory portion of center. B. Bladder. At *r* the position during rest is indicated, the sphincter center in action, the detrusor center not acting. At *a* the condition during action is indicated, the sphincter center inhibited, the detrusor center acting.

is lost from disease of the cerebral cortex, evacuations of the bowels and bladder take place involuntarily so long as the sacral cord is intact, but not in a normal manner.

On the other hand, if the integrity of the sacral cord is lost, there will be no response to the sensory impressions conveyed from a full bladder or rectum, because the reflex arc is interrupted, and the organ remains unemptied; whence torpor or complete paralysis of the bowels and bladder are common symptoms of spinal disease; and while the repletion of the latter may finally overcome the resistance of its sphincter and lead to dribbling, the rectum may go on filling up until it is emptied by the finger or the handle of a spoon. A lesion situated higher in the central nervous system than the sacral portion of the cord may also cause similar disturbance of defecation and urination, probably because of a spastic condition of the sphincters, so that the latter do not relax until the bladder or rectum becomes distended, and finally they lose all function.

Again, if it should happen that the sphincter center is destroyed while

the detrusor center is intact, there would be dribbling of urine from the outset, but this is not likely to occur.

(5) The state of the *reflexes*, as they are called, is next ascertained. As here used, the term "reflex" is applied to a muscular contraction stimulated by a sensory impression, the simplest illustration of which is the retraction of the leg of the sleeper when the sole of the foot is tickled. For diagnostic purposes the reflexes are divided into the "cutaneous reflexes" and the "tendon reflexes."

The *cutaneous* or superficial reflexes are muscular contractions which take place in different parts of the body in response to irritation of sensory nerves of the skin, as by tapping the skin lightly or drawing the finger or a pointed instrument lightly over it. The sudden application of heat or cold or the prick of a pin or pinching are modes of excitation. The contractions are generally confined to the neighborhood of the locality irritated. The skin reflexes are much more easily excited in children than in adults, and in the lower extremities than in the upper; also with varying facility in different persons. They receive various names, according to the situations where they are readily excited. Thus we have the "plantar reflex," where contraction is excited by tickling the sole of the feet, resulting in a movement of the toes or foot, or even in a drawing up of the leg; the "cremaster reflex," contraction of the cremaster muscle and consequent drawing up of the scrotum on stroking or scratching the inside of the thigh. The retraction may take place on the one side of the scrotum only or on both. Then there is the "abdominal reflex," or a contraction of the abdominal muscles when the skin of the abdomen is stroked or scratched. A subdivision of the latter is the "epigastric reflex," produced by an irritation on the side of the thorax in the fourth, fifth, and sixth inter-spaces. The result is a dimpling of the epigastrium on the side stimulated. Cutaneous reflexes may be brought out in other portions of the body, as in the gluteal region by irritating the skin of the buttock. A contraction of the muscles about the scapula, the "scapular reflex," is produced by an irritation between the scapulæ. To test for the cutaneous reflexes is more important in the lower extremity than in the upper.

The *tendon* reflexes, or deep reflexes, are so called because they are generally elicited by striking upon tendons, while the corresponding muscles are placed slightly on the stretch, care being taken, however, to avoid all active tension in the muscle by the person examined. The blow is made either with the edge of the hand or with a hammer adapted to the purpose, commonly made of rubber. A sharp, sudden contraction of the muscle usually takes place. A similar, though less decided, contraction may be elicited by the mechanical irritation of parts analogous to tendons, as periosteum and fasciæ, and by striking the muscle itself. When the reflexes are in excess, sudden tension alone will excite them.

The most commonly tried of the tendon reflexes is the *knee-jerk*, or *patellar tendon reflex*, produced by striking the tendon of the quadriceps femoris between its insertion and the patella, while the leg is crossed upon its neighbor. The weight of the pendent leg gives a sufficient degree of tenseness. When the knee-jerk is normal, there is a decided rise of the foot with each blow of the hand hammer. This motion may be-

come abnormally increased or diminished. A more limited movement may also be produced by striking the patella itself or the quadriceps tendon above the patella, and, when the reflex is exaggerated, by a very light tap in these situations or even on the tibia. When thus exaggerated, the reflex may also be brought out in bed, as follows: the quadriceps tendon being put on the stretch by pressing the patella downward in the direction of the leg with the finger, the patella is percussed in the same direction. With each stroke there is a contraction, and the finger and patella are drawn upward. A "clonus," or repeated contraction, may even be produced in this way.

Similar is the *ankle reflex*, produced by tapping the *tendo Achillis* when the calf muscles are placed slightly on the stretch by a slight dorsal flexion of the foot. In health the ankle reflex is usually producible, but in disease in connection with this contraction is shown the most remarkable of the exaggerated reflexes, the "ankle clonus" or "foot clonus." It consists in contractions rapidly repeated so long as the tension of the calf muscle is kept up by pressing the foot toward dorsal flexion. From six to nine such contractions may occur in a second, and sometimes the whole leg is thrown into vigorous contractions. Occasionally a rotary or lateral ankle clonus is seen. One of the best ways to obtain the *tendo Achillis* jerk is to have the patient kneel on a chair with the feet projecting over the edge of the chair; the muscles are thus relaxed, and a tap over the *tendo Achillis* produces a movement of the foot.

The Babinski reflex or phenomenon is the extension or turning upward of the toes, and especially of the great toe, obtained by stroking the sole of the foot. In the normal individual, stroking the sole, if it produces any response, causes plantar flexion or turning downward of the toes, especially of the four outer toes. The Babinski reflex usually indicates a lesion or compression of the motor tract in the cord and brain, or probably also of the motor centers in the brain. The response is usually best brought out by stroking the inner surface of the sole from the heel toward the toe, although in marked cases it may be elicited by applying the stimulus to the sole in various positions and directions. In infancy some observations have shown that the toes tend to turn upward normally when the sole is stimulated. The reflex is obtainable in about 70 per cent. of cases of hemiplegia and diplegia, and in about the same proportion of diseases involving the motor tract in the spinal cord. It is found only exceptionally in cases of another class, viz., meningitis, hydrocephalus, poisoning, as for example alcohol or uremia.

Reflexes are also elicited in the upper extremities, but they are much less striking, and occasionally cannot be shown in health. The most important of these are the *arm-jerks*, produced by striking the biceps tendon at the elbow-joint in front, or by striking the triceps tendon above the olecranon. So-called *periosteal reflexes*—reflexes excited by striking the periosteum—may in exaggerated states be produced in the supinator longus and biceps of the upper extremity by striking the lower end of the radius and ulna; also in the adductors of the thigh by striking the internal condyle of the femur.

A *wrist clonus*, resembling the ankle clonus of the lower limbs, may

sometimes be obtained when the tendon reflexes of the upper limbs are much exaggerated. It is produced by pushing the hand of the patient forcibly backward and holding it dorsally flexed; involuntary antero-posterior movements of the hand may then occur. The *jaw-jerk* is produced by tapping on the front of the jaw, while the closing muscles of the jaw—viz., the pterygoids, masseters, and temporals—are placed on the stretch by partially opening the mouth.

The *ophthalmic* (supraorbital) reflex is a pure sensori-motor reflex, elicited by mechanical irritation (tapping lightly with the percussion hammer), or by the application of heat, cold, or pain-stimuli over the distribution of the ophthalmic branch of the fifth nerve, especially in the distribution of the supraorbital branch on the forehead. It is manifested by a fibrillary contraction of the individual fibers in the inferior half of the orbicularis palpebrarum. The sensory impulse travels through the supraorbital nerve (purely sensory) to the pons and thence through the facial fibers (purely motor) to the orbicularis palpebrarum.

The diagnostic value of this reflex lies in the loss of contraction resulting from a lesion cutting the arc in the ophthalmic branch of the trifacial, in the nucleus of the trifacial or of the facial in the pons, or in the fibers of the facial going to the orbicularis palpebrarum. It is therefore of value in localizing lesions of the pons, and differentiating a facial paralysis due to a lesion of the nucleus or its peripheral fibers from a supranuclear or cortical lesion, in which case the reflex is present and increased. It has the same significance as the reflex closure of the eyelids from irritation of the conjunctiva, as this also is a reflex in the distribution of the facial and trigeminal nerves.

*Physiology of Tendon Reflexes.*—The tendon reflexes were first studied by Erb and Westphal, and later by Tschirjew, Gowers, Jendrassik, Weir Mitchell, Lombard, and others. Erb explained the phenomena as purely reflex in their character, requiring the offices of a centripetal and a centrifugal nerve, an intermediate center, and an excitant. Westphal, on the other hand, regarded them as simple muscular contractions, stimulated as are the bared, quivering muscles of the recently killed animal, the tendon being simply the intermediary substance through which the irritation is conveyed. It was early objected to the purely reflex nature of these phenomena that a shorter time is usually required to produce them than to produce an ordinary reflex action, being but from  $1/40$  to  $1/30$  of a second, as compared with  $1/15$  of a second. But the strongest objection is found in the results of the experiment of Tschirjew, who cut all the nerves to the patellar tendon and found that the reflex still remained excitable.

Nevertheless, the tendon reflexes are arrested by any lesion which arrests reflex action. Hence reflex action must somewhere come into play. Accordingly, Gowers suggests that "the irritability is developed by the passive tension. If the muscle is relaxed, the fibers may contract, if they are struck directly, as do the fibers of a separated frog's muscle, but no contraction ensues on striking the tendon. Hence we must assume that the tension excites, by a reflex influence, a state of irritability to local mechanical stimulation, such as a tap on the muscle, its tendon, or even

the vibration from a tap on adjacent parts. But only that form of mechanical stimulation is effective which suddenly increases the previous tension. It is only because the tap on the tendon does this so readily that the tendon is the means by which the contractions are most easily produced, and through which they have been chiefly studied and prematurely named. If the tension put on a muscle is gentle and gradual, it may only develop the irritability, and an additional local stimulation is necessary to produce a visible contraction. If, however, the tension is sudden and forcible, it not only develops the irritability, but produces visible contraction in the muscle thus rendered irritable, as in setting up foot-clonus." Hence, too, according to Gowers, the term "tendon reflex" is altogether too inaccurate, and he suggests the word *myotatic*, from *μῦς*, muscle, and *τατικός*, extended, because tension is necessary for the production of the contractions. Weir Mitchell describes it well in these words: "A muscle moves when struck because of its innate capacity to twitch when irritated, but it does not move when excited by a blow on its tendon unless it has, besides its own excitability, a constant influx of tone-waves from spinal centers."<sup>1</sup>

Hence in a complete examination the "muscle jerk," or idiomuscular contraction, also known as mechanical muscular irritability, should be tested as well. It is done by a sharp, sudden tap on the muscle with the hammer. The response is of two kinds, first as a sudden contraction, and second as a hump-like rise which subsides slowly. The pectoral muscles are favorite sites for eliciting the pure muscle reflexes. It is, of course, impossible to deny that there is nerve as well as muscle irritation in such a blow.

Both the tendon jerk and muscle jerk are capable of re-enforcement by coincident muscular exertion, as in lifting weights or clinching fists, originally discovered by Jendrassik<sup>2</sup> in 1883 in the case of the tendon jerk. Mitchell and Lewis<sup>3</sup> also discovered in the course of their study of ataxic cases that the pure *muscle* jerk or hump could be produced after the tendon reflex could no longer be elicited, and that both could be produced by the re-enforcement referred to after they had disappeared to ordinary conditions.

*Significance of Abnormal Reflexes.*—What are the conclusions to be drawn from modifications in the reflexes? In the first place, it is to be remembered that they vary somewhat within the limits of health. Especially is this true of the cutaneous reflexes, which are also less easily elicited than those of the tendons. In general terms, *diminution* or *absence of a reflex normally present in health* implies either, first, a breach of integrity somewhere in the reflex arc as formed by the centripetal nerve, the motor nerve cells in the spinal cord situated in the anterior cornua of the gray matter, and the motor nerve; or, second, an increase in the reflex cerebral inhibitory influence. The latter would be irritative. Thus, it is well known that disease of one cerebral hemisphere may lessen or abolish the superficial reflexes on the opposite or paralyzed side of the body

<sup>1</sup> Mitchell and Lewis, "Tendon and Muscle Jerk," "Trans. Assoc. of Amer. Physicians," vol. i., p. 13, 1886.

<sup>2</sup> "Beitrage zur Lehre von den Sehnenreflexen," "Deutsches Archiv f. klin. Medicin," vol. xxxiii., p. 175, 1883.

<sup>3</sup> *Loc. cit.*

soon after the onset of a hemiplegia. Breach of integrity may lie in the spinal cord or in the centrifugal or the centripetal nerve. If it is in the centripetal nerve, it may be accompanied by impaired sensation; if in the centrifugal, there will be defective motion. Disease of the centrifugal nerve and of the motor center in the cord may also cause degeneration and wasting of muscle with loss of its irritability.

*Increase of the reflexes*, on the other hand, implies increased irritability of the motor areas of the cord—when the reflexes are spinal (anterior cornua and possibly of the pyramidal fibers) or a withdrawal of cerebral inhibition, as in certain cases of destructive brain disease or disease of the cord high up. In the case of a cortical lesion the increase in the reflexes is greater on the side opposite to that of the brain lesion, but the reflexes on the same side as the lesion may also be somewhat increased. In certain diseases of the cord there is a *delay* in the manifestation of the *cutaneous reflexes* after the irritation has been applied to the skin, an interval of from ten to fifteen seconds being often recorded before the response ensues. *Increase of cutaneous reflexes* is manifested by an unusual readiness of response in the normal areas, or an extension of these areas beyond their normal boundaries.

In general it may be said that absence of the tendon reflexes is especially characteristic of poliomyelitis and tabes dorsalis, and of all peripheral paralyses and neuritis; also of advanced diabetes mellitus. Abnormal increase is present in spastic spinal paralysis and in cerebral paralyses, being due in the latter instance to withdrawal of the normal inhibitory influences.

Appended is a table showing the conditions under which the tendon reflexes as represented by the knee-jerk are increased or diminished:

#### TENDON REFLEXES.

INCREASED.	DECREASED.
Spastic spinal paralysis.	Poliomyelitis, acute and chronic.
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.	Tabes dorsalis.
Cerebral paralysis in which the inhibitory center is impaired.	Progressive spinal muscular atrophy.
Lesions of the cord above the reflex arcs.	Muscular dystrophy.
Disseminated cerebrospinal sclerosis.	Peripheral paralysis.
Irritability of cord, as in maniacal hysteria.	Neuritis.
Strychnin poisoning.	Degenerated muscle.
Cerebral palsies of children.	Exhausted spinal centers.
	Poisoning from drugs (?).
	Advanced diabetes mellitus.

#### INCREASED OR DIMINISHED.

Paretic dementia: Diminished as a tabetic symptom; increased in beginning spastic paralysis of the leg.  
Cerebellar tumor, not infrequently diminished.

*Segments of the Cord Presiding over Certain Reflexes.*—Further accuracy in the application of a knowledge of the reflexes and of their modifications is secured by a knowledge of the exact portion of the gray matter presiding over the most important of them. Premising that some of these centers are of considerable extent vertically, the following from Gowers may be regarded as approximate for each of the reflexes named:

*Superficial Reflexes.*—Plantar, opposite second sacral nerve; gluteal,

fourth lumbar; cremaster, second lumbar; abdominal, sixth to seventh dorsal; epigastric, sixth dorsal; scapular, fifth cervical to first dorsal

*Tendon or Deep Reflexes.*—Calf muscles (foot clonus), fifth lumbar and first sacral; knee-jerk, third and fourth lumbar; flexor digitorum and triceps, seventh cervical; biceps and supinator longus, sixth cervical.

(6) *Paradoxical contraction* is a symptom allied to the reflexes for which no satisfactory explanation has been afforded. It was first studied by Westphal, and is only occasionally observed. In the *tibialis anticus* muscle it is induced by forcibly flexing the foot on the leg. As a result, the foot remains thus flexed for a considerable time, after which it slowly

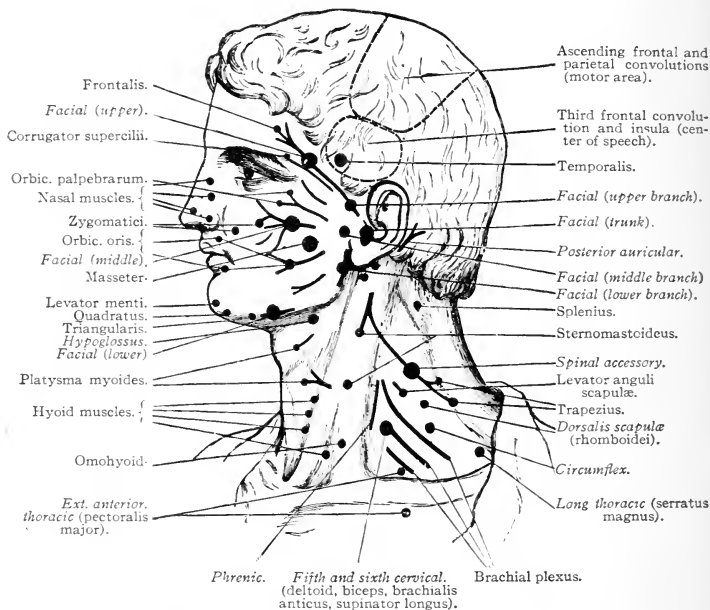


FIG. 90.—Motor Points on Face and Neck—(after Erb and de Watteville.)

relaxes. In one case the flexion continued for twenty-seven minutes. On repeating the flexion, the phenomenon recurs, but the response gradually diminishes in intensity. Contractions induced by faradism may similarly persist. It has been noticed in both spinal and cerebral disease, including the early stage of tabes dorsalis, multiple sclerosis, and paralysis agitans. More rarely it may be induced in the flexors of the leg and forearms.

(7) *Electrical excitation of motion* is an important means of investigation in nervous diseases. In health nerves and muscles are excitable by electricity, and in diseased conditions these reactions are liable to change. Motion may be excited by electrical stimulus applied to the muscle through its nerve or directly to the muscle itself. The latter



is called direct, the former indirect. This is equally true of the constant or galvanic current, and of faradism or the induced current.<sup>1</sup> Hence every complete investigation should include the use of both currents.

In order to test the electrical condition of muscles and nerves, one electrode, the indifferent pole, may be held in the hand of the patient or

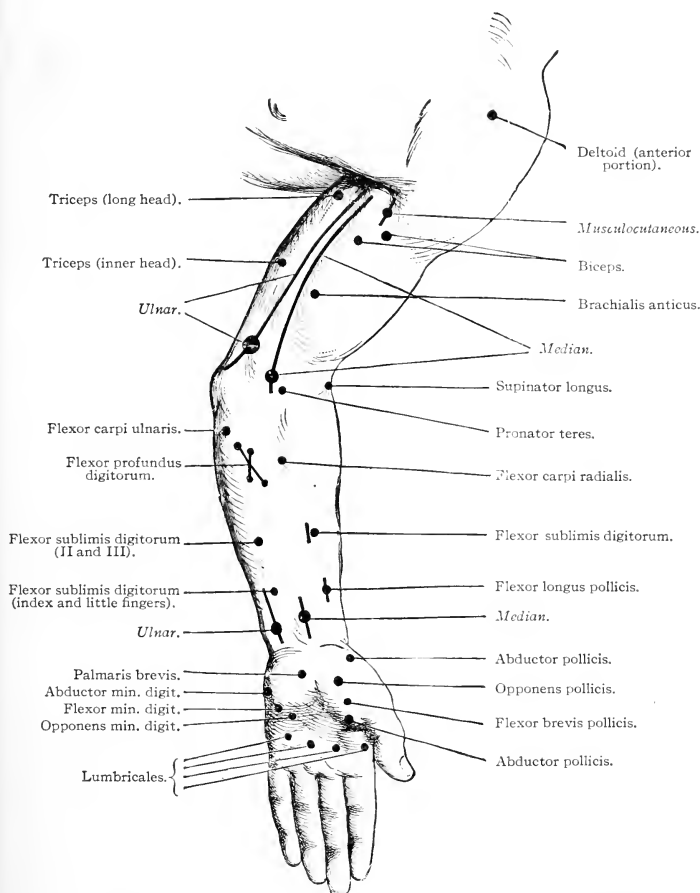


Fig. 91.—Motor Points on Upper Limb, Flexor Surface—(after Erb and de Watteville).

placed over the sternum or at the back of the neck, while the other or *testing* pole is applied to the nerve or muscles, selected in accordance with the well-known nerve points of Erb in Ziemssen's plates; or the indifferent

<sup>1</sup> Under all ordinary circumstances electrical contraction produced in muscles is indirect—that is, through the nerve filaments distributed to the muscle. That the two are, however, distinct may be shown through the influence of curare, which destroys nerve irritability, but allows that of muscle protoplasm to remain.

pole may be placed on the nerve point of a given muscle or set of muscles, and the testing pole applied to the belly of the same muscle. The testing electrode should be small enough to permit the isolation of a single nerve or muscle.

With the faradic or galvanic battery contractions may generally be produced in health with great facility, either directly or indirectly,

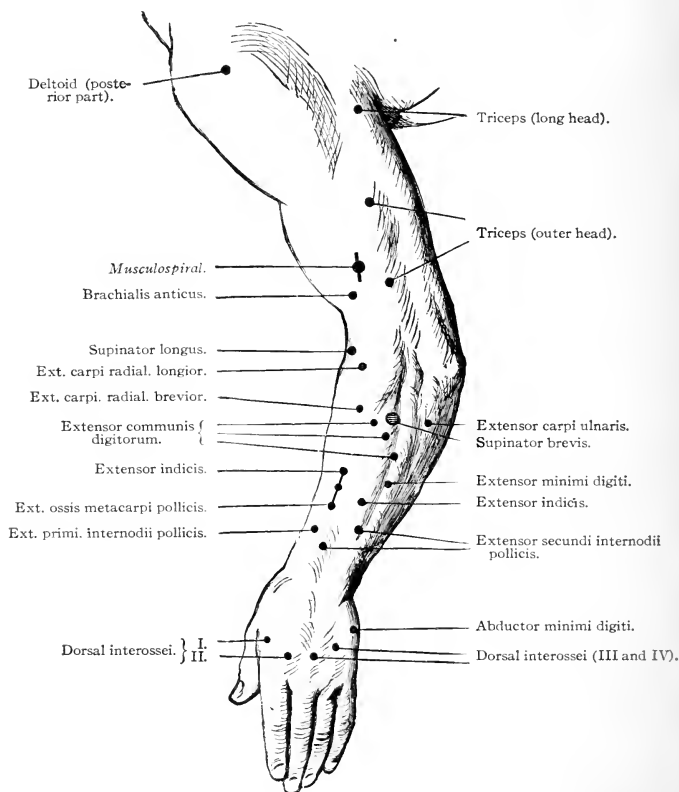


FIG. 92.—Motor Points on Upper Limb, Extensor Surface—(after Erb and de Watteville.)

although stronger currents are required for direct stimulation. Contractions take place with the galvanic battery only at the making and breaking of the current by the "commutator" or "reverser." A definite law of response exists with galvanism. Thus, beginning with very weak currents, it is observed that contraction first takes place at the moment of that closure which makes the testing pole the kathode or negative pole—kathodal closure (KaCl). As the strength of the current is increased the kathodal closure contractions become stronger, and anodal closure (AnCl) contractions make their appearance. With still stronger

currents the anodal opening (AnO) contraction occurs, and, last of all, when the kathodal closure contractions become tetanic (Te), slight kathodal opening (KaO) contractions appear. *These facts are equally true of normal muscle and nerve and may be formulated.* Representing slight contraction by a small "c," decided contraction by a large "C," and the absence of contraction by a minus sign (—):

With weak currents, KaClc, AnCl—, AnO—, KaO—; with stronger currents, KaClC, AnClc, AnO—, KaO—; with still stronger currents, KaClC, AnClC, AnOc, KaO—; with strongest currents, KaClTe, AnClC, AnOC, KaOc.

In *pathological states* two sets of deviations from the normal reaction to electrical stimulus are observed—viz., *quantitative* and *qualitative*.

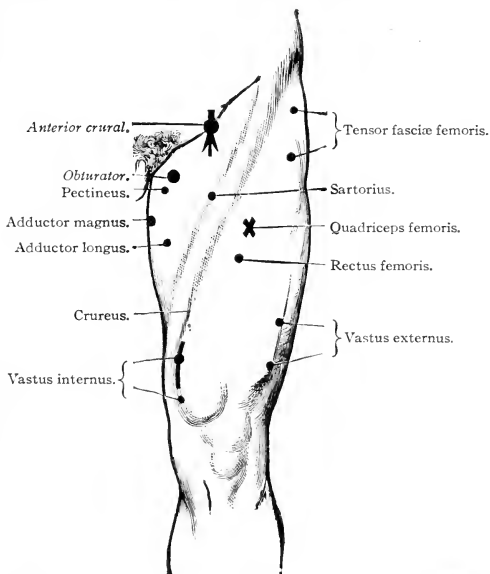


FIG. 93.—Motor Points on Thigh, Anterior Surface—(after Erb and de Watteville).

In the *quantitative* deviations there is simply an increase or a diminution of the normal irritability of both nerve and muscle to either faradism or galvanism. These differences are, of course, most easily measured when the alteration exists only on one side of the body, which may then be compared with the other. When both sides are affected, estimates can be made only by comparison with a healthy body or by the galvanometer. For this purpose superficial nerves, such as the facial, ulnar, and peroneal, are usually selected. *Instances:* Increased quantitative changes are found in tetanus and in the early stage of certain peripheral palsies, while diminished electrical excitability is found when the lower motor segments (motor spinal cells, motor nerves, including the muscles) are involved—as, for example, in progressive spinal muscular atrophy, bulbar paralysis, and muscular dystrophy.

More important from a diagnostic point of view, at least, are the so-called *qualitative* deviations from the normal law of contraction known as the *reaction of degeneration*. These are produced by the *galvanic* current only, and may, in general terms, be regarded as a reversal of the usual order of response to interruption of currents and in the substitution of a slow and vermicular contraction for the usual sudden and jerking contraction. The entire group of events is best illustrated by describing the electrical phenomena which present themselves in an ordinary case of peripheral paralysis. In two or three days to a week after its appearance there begins a gradually diminishing response in the *nerve* to both faradic and galvanic currents. This goes on for one or two weeks, at the end of which time it disappears to both currents, even the strongest. The nerve is now dead. During this same time the *muscle* is also losing its responsiveness to the faradic current, but not to the galvanic. There may be also at first a slight diminution to the galvanic current, lasting, say, one week, and constituting the "first degree" or "first stage" of degeneration. But during the second week this is substituted by an increased excitability, so that there is now marked response to weak currents—increased quantitative deviation. But there is also *qualitative* change. The anodic closure contractions become now as strong as or stronger than the kathodal closure contractions. Nay, more: the kathodal opening contractions, which in health were exceedingly weak and could be brought about only by the strongest currents, are now often stronger than the kathodal closure. This state of affairs for *muscle* may be represented thus:

#### MUSCLE CONTRACTION—REACTION OF DEGENERATION.

First stage of reaction of degeneration— one week:	{ Diminished quantitative response to galvanism. No qualitative deviation.
Second stage of reaction of degeneration— four to eight weeks:	{ Increased quantitative response to galvanism. Qualitative deviation as follows: AnCl = or > KaClc. KaOC > KaClc. Contraction prolonged and vermicular.

The phenomena of qualitative change are purely muscular, and it should be mentioned that they are not always typically present. Even more constant and equally distinctive and more reliable as a sign of reaction of degeneration is the second qualitative change in the muscular contractions excited by galvanism in this stage. Instead of being quick or sudden, they become *slow, prolonged, and vermicular*.

The second stage lasts from four to eight weeks, increasing during the third and fourth. In cases of recovery the abnormal muscle irritability to galvanism often persists after return of voluntary power, but it diminishes as the faradic irritability returns. In severe cases, when recovery does not take place and the nerve is not restored to its natural state, *all nerve irritability and faradic muscular irritability* remaining permanently absent, the *increased galvanic muscular irritability* may con-

tinue for months, but ultimately also decreases, disappearing finally with the muscular substance.

Certain exceptions to these laws must be mentioned. Thus, when the nerve lesion is slight, the fall in quantitative *nerve* irritability is sometimes preceded by a corresponding rise, or the rise may persist throughout and such rise may be considered as evidence of a slight lesion. Further, the change is not always the same to faradism and galvanism, and is often brought out much better by the slow interruptions in the faradic battery than by the rapid interruptions in the same or by the galvanic current.

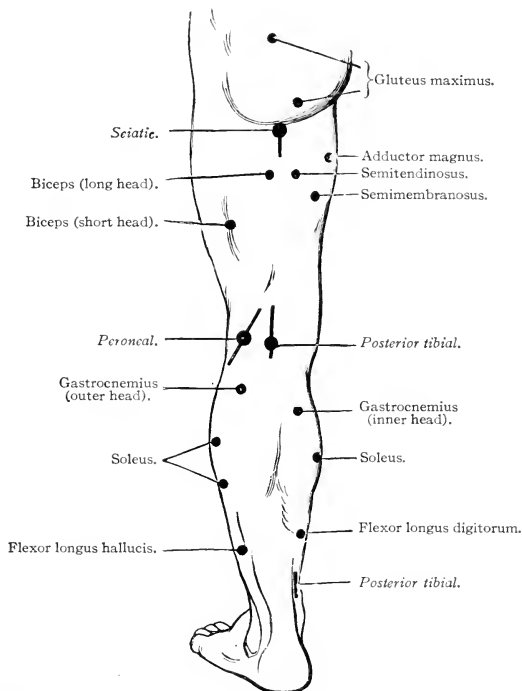


FIG. 94.—Motor Points on Lower Limb. Posterior Surface—(after Erb and de Watteville).

Gowers noticed in one instance moderate but prolonged diminution of faradic irritability when no change could be found with galvanism, and Bernhardt has noticed lessened irritability to faradism with distinct increase to galvanism in an ulnar nerve the seat of traumatic paralysis. Again, *faradic* irritability may not diminish to the same degree in the muscle as in the nerve in mild cases, and conduction of voluntary impulses from the brain may be possible when there is no response to electrical currents, and there may be response to electrical currents when there is no conduction of voluntary impulses from the brain. In still milder

peripheral paralyses there is no reaction of degeneration at all, whence a favorable prognosis may always be made. It is to be especially observed in recovery from nerve lesions that *voluntary* motion often returns decidedly earlier than the electrical excitability of peripheral nerves.

*What do reactions of degeneration teach us?* Simply that the disease is seated in the anterior cornua of the gray matter of the cord, or in the peripheral nerves. They teach us nothing as to the nature of the lesion. Upon the integrity of the cells in the anterior cornua and their "trophic influence" depends the nutrition of the nerve and the muscle over which the cells preside. Hence with disease of the cornua result degeneration of the nerve and wasting of the muscle. The muscular fasciculi become

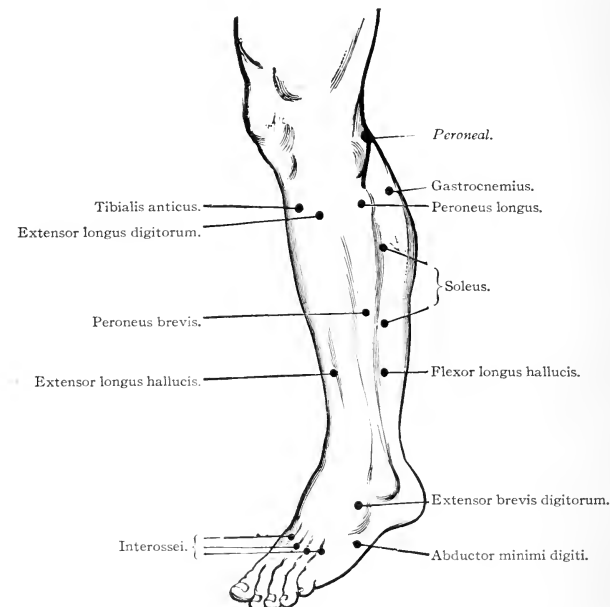


FIG. 95.—Motor Points on Leg, External Surface—(after Erb and de Watteville).

reduced in size and ultimately totally disappear. This is associated with a certain amount of interstitial overgrowth. In the transition referred to, certain fasciculi assume the yellow, glassy appearance known as waxy degeneration. The *sensibility* of the muscle, if the sensory nerve is intact, becomes increased, and there may be pain, partly due to compression of the nerves by morbid contraction, and partly to a morbid sensitiveness of the nerve-endings and to the interstitial inflammation. The recovery of the nerve is followed not only by gradual restoration of its power over the muscle, but also by restoration of the nutrition and development of the muscle. For this, however, much time is required, and it often remains permanently smaller than normal. The atrophy of muscle can be prevented to some extent by massage.

Lesions of motor nerves, whether inflammatory or traumatic, are followed by similar results—degenerative atrophy of nerve and muscle because of interference with the conduction of the trophic influence. Occasionally in cerebral palsies and in spinal paralyses in which the lesion is above these ganglion cells there is some wasting, but no reaction of degeneration is developed, because the nutrition is maintained by the intact cell body of the lower neuron.

From the foregoing the diagnostic and prognostic value of the reaction of degeneration is at once apparent. The seat of the lesion, whatever its nature, is easily determined, in so far as it is within the cerebral or peripheral motor segments, but we may not be able to say whether the nerve-cells or their peripheral processes (the peripheral nerves) are diseased. We are also informed that recovery, though not impossible, must be delayed in proportion to the degree of degenerative reaction, because of the extensive repair necessitated in muscle and nerve. Much experience with the use of electricity should, however, be had before the physician permits himself to draw conclusions.

II. SENSORY PHENOMENA.—Under this head naturally fall first the *subjective sensations* of the patient. They include, strictly speaking, only the various modifications of sensibility appreciable to him alone and independent of external impression—pre-eminently, *pain*. They also include those peculiar modifications due to internal irritation as contrasted with external impression, and known as *paresthesias*—viz., numbness, tingling, prickling, formication, or a feeling as of ants crawling over the skin; also a sensation like that of the contact of wool or fur—a furry feeling—vertigo, tinnitus aurium, or ringing in the ears, and a sense of unpleasant odors or tastes.

After these come modifications of the different varieties of cutaneous sensibility as excited by external impressions—*objective sensations*. They are of the nature of increase or decrease, the former being known as *hyperesthesias* and the latter as *anesthesias*, the latter being further characterized as partial or complete. To the latter the term paralysis of sensation, partial or complete, is also applied.

1. *Tactile sensibility*, the sense of touch or pure contact, is usually first investigated. The simplest method is by the touch of a finger, cotton wool, or blunt object of about the same temperature as the body, for both heat and cold must be eliminated in this test. The patient should be directed to close his eyes or avert his head. More refined measures are the application of rough, smooth, or coarsely uneven surfaces. More delicate still is the esthesiometer, essentially a pair of compasses with blunt and sharp points and graduated quadrant attached, by which the distance between the two points is accurately measured. By this instrument, in connection with a normal standard of relative sensibility worked out by E. H. Weber, the degree of impairment in delicacy of touch may be measured. Closer approximation may be recognized if the two points of the compasses are put down one after the other and varying the test by touching the same place twice or a different place each time. Weber's table is as follows:

*Minimum distance at which the two points of a pair of compasses in contact with the skin may be recognized as two points :*

Cheek, 11 to 15 millimeters.	Backs of the hands, 31 millimeters.
Tip of the nose, 6 millimeters.	Backs of the fingers, 11 to 16 millimeters.
Forehead, 22 millimeters.	Tips of the fingers, 2 or 3 millimeters.
Tip of the tongue, 1.2 millimeters.	Back, 55 to 77 millimeters.
Back of tongue and on the lips, 4 or 5 millimeters.	Chest, 45 millimeters.
Neck, 34 millimeters.	Thigh, 77 millimeters.
Upper arm, 77 millimeters.	Leg, 40 millimeters.
Forearm, 40 millimeters.	Instep, 40 millimeters.

These figures can, however, only be used within limits, as they are by no means constant for different individuals, or, indeed, for the same individual at different times. Marked deviations from them may, however, be accepted as indicating derangements of tactile sense.

2. *The sense of pain* is of equal importance to that of pure touch, because these two not infrequently fail to diminish or increase *pari passu* in morbid states. Parts insensible to touch may respond decidedly to painful impressions. Pain is most easily investigated by pricking with a pin or pinching a fold of skin, by painful electrical currents or painfully hot metals. The special term *analgesia* is applied to loss of sense of pain while the tactile sense is preserved. Analgesia exists in peripheral and central nervous disease and may be observed especially in syringomyelia.

*Tenderness* or pain on pressure in the course of nerves should be studied in connection with the sense of pain. It is found in nerves which are the seat of inflammation, especially in sciatic neuritis and multiple neuritis.

3. *The sense of temperature* may be roughly tested by ascertaining the power of the patient to discriminate between the warm breath close to the skin and the cooler current produced by blowing from a distance. More precisely, the sense of temperature is studied by testing the ability to recognize differences in the temperature of flat-bottomed test-tubes filled with water of different temperatures and brought into contact with the skin. The therm-esthesiometer has been devised by Eulenburg for the same purpose, but the student is referred to works on nervous diseases for its description.

In health differences of  $0.5^{\circ}$  to  $1^{\circ}$  F. ( $0.27^{\circ}$  to  $0.55^{\circ}$  C.) may be recognized on the fingers and face at temperatures from  $80^{\circ}$  to  $100^{\circ}$  F. ( $26^{\circ}$  to  $37^{\circ}$  C.), while on the back differences to be recognized must amount to  $2^{\circ}$  F. ( $1^{\circ}$  C.).

In disease we sometimes notice complete loss of sense of temperature, while the skin appreciates other forms of irritation, and, again, this state of affairs is precisely reversed; or the temperature and pain senses may be lost or impaired, while tactile sense is preserved, as in syringomyelia. This is known as dissociation of sensation. It occurs most commonly in syringomyelia, but has been seen in other diseases. Strümpell has called attention to a peculiar reversal of the sense of temperature, as the result of which cold objects appear warm. This has been noticed in various diseases.

4. *Sense of Locality*.—By this sense we know, without looking, what part of the body is being touched. While cutaneous sensibility may



remain intact, the sense of locality may be seriously deranged. Thus, a patient may think he is being touched on the leg when the contact is with the foot.

5. *Delayed conduction of sensory impressions* represents a form of modified sensibility of which after-sensations are a further subdivision. In delayed conduction an irritation, more particularly a painful one, like the prick of a pin, is noticed by a patient after an appreciable interval, whereas in health the recognition is instantaneous so far as the unaided perception is able to judge. Touch and pain may even be thus separated, the immediate contact of the pin being promptly recognized, while the sense of pain presents itself a few seconds later. It is likely, also, that the sense of touch may be delayed.

6. *An after-sensation* is a prolonged sense of pain which succeeds a momentary impression. Such is the prolonged burning on the sole of the foot which sometimes succeeds the prick of a pin, or which may occur once or oftener after a short interval, as if additional pricks had been made. Occasionally an isolated prick of a pin is not perceived, and repeated pricks are necessary, the whole producing a painful sensation; this is known as summation of sensation.

These abnormal sensations occur particularly in diseases of the spinal cord or of the nerves, and especially in tabes dorsalis.

7. *The muscular sense*, it were better named the *sense of position*, is that sense by which we become aware of the position of any of our limbs without the aid of vision, as well as of any degree of motion by them. It is probable, however, that the sensibility of the articular surfaces, ligaments, tendons, and skin aids the sensibility of the muscles in furnishing this information, and it is better to call this sense the *sense of position* when we speak of it in reference to the position of the limbs, or *deep sensation*. This power is diminished in nervous diseases, and may be tested by having the patient first touch a certain object with his eyes open and asking him to repeat the act with the eyes closed; or by moving the fingers or toes of a patient and requesting him to give their positions when his eyes are closed and voluntary movements of the parts are restrained.

The "muscular sense" is not only thus estimated, but the strength required to lift a leg or an arm, more plainly evident when one is tired, is also measured through it. It is the muscular sense which causes the paretic to say that his leg feels heavy. By the muscular sense, too, or by the "sense of power," we estimate the amount of strength demanded by any muscular contraction, and thus measure the difference in weight of objects, eliminating, however, the sense of pressure, which may be done by suspending the object in a towel.

In tabes dorsalis, as well as in paralysis of cerebral origin and in cortical lesions, the muscular sense may be defective; also in hysterical affections. It is also found defective in diseases of the peripheral nerves and in diseases of the lemniscus, or of the internal capsule, or of the nerve fibers passing to the cortex behind the fissure of Rolando.

It is disputed whether the muscular sense has a center separate from that of motion in the cortex or from the pain or tactile or temperature

senses, but an observation by Allen Starr<sup>1</sup> would go to show that it has a separate center two inches behind the fissure of Rolando and about an inch and a half to the left of the median line. It seems probable that the posterior columns of the spinal cord and the parietal lobes are especially concerned with the muscular sense.

The muscular sense is also estimated by the amount required to be added to an existing weight on the skin before the addition is appreciated. Thus it has been ascertained that in health an addition of  $\frac{1}{20}$  or  $\frac{1}{30}$  to an existing weight can be appreciated. Thus, if a weight of 95 gm. be placed on the skin, an addition of a single gram will not be recognized, but nearly five gm. must be added before the increase is appreciated, while if considerably more than this is necessary, it means that the sense of pressure is less delicate. Sufficiently accurate measures are coins of different weights. Temperature must be eliminated by placing non-conducting substances between the weight and the skin, while the part to be tested must also be supported.

It is not unusual to find, in paralysis of the muscular sense, failure to recognize a doubling and even tripling of weights. It is more especially in tabes dorsalis that such paralyzes are found while the tactile sense proper is intact, a light touch of the skin being felt, while a considerable pressure is not appreciated.

*Astereognosis* is the inability to recognize objects, their nature and uses, by touch, as the result of cerebral disease, but not because of any affection of the peripheral nerves or spinal cord. Most frequently it occurs in association with incurable hemiplegia, or as a symptom of tumor of the brain. The attempt has been made to limit the term, stereognosis to the recognition of the form and characteristics of an object, while symbolia is employed for the recognition of the object in regard to its uses. This distinction is likely to cause confusion.<sup>2</sup>

8. *Anesthesia* is said to be peripheral, spinal, or cerebral, in accordance with the seat of the broken conduction between the terminal apparatus and the cerebral cortex. *Peripheral* anesthesia occurs after chilling of the skin through the action of ether, from cocain, aconite, veratrum, as well as corrosive agents like acids, alkalies, and carbolic acid. Spasm of the small vessels, forming the so-called spastic anemias, is also attended by anesthesia. The anesthetics of washerwomen, who have their hands in water all day long, may belong to this class. Lesions of nerve trunks by pressure, inflammation, and degeneration may cause anesthesia. The *paresthesias* referred to—numbness, formication, and tingling—are among the effects of such lesions. *Spinal* anesthetics are found, especially in connection with disease of the posterior roots, posterior columns, and posterior cornua of the cord. Such a disease is tabes dorsalis especially. Anesthesia is found, however, also in myelitis, acute and chronic, and when there is pressure on the cord from hemorrhage into the spinal canal or pressure by diseased or broken vertebræ or from tumors. Such anesthesia is usually bilateral and is known as *paraaesthesia*. *Cerebral* anesthesia occurs as the result of

<sup>1</sup> "Psychological Review," January, 1895.

<sup>2</sup> See Burr, "American Journal of the Medical Sciences," March, 1901. "Therapeutic Gazette," Feb. 15, 1904.

hemorrhages, softening, or tumors, which impinge on the posterior limb of the internal capsule, through which the sensory fibers, probably after interruption in the thalamus, pass upward to the cerebral cortex. If the cerebral anæsthesia affects half of the body, it is known as hemianæsthesia, and the half of the body affected is opposite the hemisphere of the brain in which the lesion lies, since the sensory fibers also decussate in their course from the periphery, and most of them throughout the cord very soon after their entrance into the posterior roots.

The hysterical anæsthesias, and anæsthesias due to the narcotics and anesthetics, are regarded as cerebral in their origin. Those succeeding such acute infectious diseases as typhoid fever have been ascribed to both peripheral and spinal origin. The hysterical hemianæsthesia is much commoner than the organic cerebral hemianæsthesia.

III. SENSORY MOTOR PHENOMENA.—These words explain themselves, but in addition to the general application they include such special conditions as *akinesia algæra* in which all sorts of muscular action are attended with pain in the active muscles—even the act of speaking is attended with pain. It is a symptom of several neuroses, among which hysteria and neurasthenia are conspicuous. *Atremia*, which resembles akinesia, differs from it in the absence of tenderness of the muscles affected.

IV. VASOMOTOR AND TROPHIC PHENOMENA. We pass next to the study of *vasomotor* and *trophic alterations*. Two sets of vasomotor nerves have been demonstrated by physiologists—the vasoconstrictors and vasodilators—the former contracting the arteries when stimulated and permitting their dilatation when paralyzed. The vasodilators are influenced in an opposite manner by the same agencies, but their number, so far as proved, is not great, as they include up to the present time only fibers in the chorda tympani, nervi erigentes, and sciatic nerve. Blushing may be the result of stimulation of vasodilators. Moreover, pathology has as yet failed to separate lesions of the two sets of nerves and their effects and vasomotor phenomena are generally regarded as results of a *paralysis* or of an *irritation* of vasoconstrictors. Instances of the former are redness, a feeling of warmth, and sometimes an actual elevation of temperature, sweating, all in circumscribed areas or half the body. They may persist or intermit. Instances of vasomotor irritation are pallor, coldness, accompanied by stiffness, formication, and even pain. These are phenomena of vasomotor spasm. A more or less permanent condition of the hands sometimes results, characterized by a blueness or mottled appearance accompanied by a lowered temperature further augmented by external cold. Still higher degrees are said to have produced circumscribed gangrene (Raynaud's disease).

Symptoms of vasomotor *paralysis* occur in connection with cerebral and spinal lesions and with injuries of the sympathetic system and nerve trunks containing vasomotor fibers. The essential causes of vasomotor *spasm* are less easy to locate. It is found associated with prolonged convulsive seizures, and in angina pectoris at the beginning of the attack, as if caused by irritation of the sympathetic ganglia in the heart.

That *trophic* or nutritive phenomena are closely allied to vasomotor phenomena is commonly admitted. That they are under the control of the same nerves is doubtful, although the proof of the existence of separate trophic nerves is still wanting. Vesicular eruptions in the area of distribution of nerves, such as herpes zoster, certain atrophic skin diseases, pigmentations and depigmentations, such as morphea, Addison's disease and vitiligo, scleroderma, and the glossy skin which succeeds certain injuries to nerve trunks are illustrations of trophic influences. Similar are the changes in the skin, hair, and nails, as the result of which the first becomes dry, the second is lost or becomes rapidly gray, and the last grow brittle, thicken, or drop off. The latter events occur in connection with spinal and even cerebral lesions. The circumscribed edema known as acute angioneurotic edema and the more permanent condition of myxedema are also probably trophic. So, also, are the atrophies which result from disease of the cells of the anterior horns of the gray matter of the cord, or from injuries to nerves by which they are essentially cut off from the trophic cells; also unilateral facial atrophy including even atrophy of bone, and the still more remarkable spinal *arthropathies* of Charcot, as the result of which the joints enlarge or become the seat of effusions.

Finally, there is the acute bed-sore or eschar, so well described by Charcot,<sup>1</sup> beginning in an erythematous patch on which bullæ and blebs are rapidly developed, quickly succeeded by gangrene. While pressure or irritation may be necessary to the production of these sores as exciting causes, they are more easily invited in spinal paralyses than in non-paralytic conditions. Such results follow cerebral lesions and lesions in the medulla oblongata, spinal cord, and sympathetic nerves.

It is well known that the vasomotor nerves surrounding the various blood-vessels are derived from the sympathetic trunks, which, in turn, receive their vasomotor filaments from the roots of the spinal nerves.

V. MENTAL PHENOMENA.—Under this head come the phenomena of consciousness or unconsciousness, coma, the state of the will, the various perversions of mental processes, including delirium, hallucinations, delusions, illusions, and insane acts. *Hallucinations* are descriptions of the special senses which appear to the individual as real. They have no external cause. The victim of delirium tremens who imagines that he is pursued by monsters of various sorts is the subject of hallucination. A *delusion* is a false belief which can not be corrected by argument or experience. The deluded person imagines that he is the happy possessor of millions when he is actually a pauper, or complains of poverty although affluent. An *illusion* is based upon an actual perception, but an erroneous impression arises therefrom. In a hallucination no object is actually seen; there is no sensory impression. The idea of relief obtained on looking at a picture in the stereoscope is an illusion.

*Delirium* is the more or less acute manifestation of one or all these perversions of mental process, associated with muttering or active speech suggested by them or with action growing out of them. Thus consti-

<sup>1</sup> "Lectures on Diseases of the Nervous System," Philadelphia, 1879.

tuted, delirium may be the result of toxic states or acute disease other than of the brain.

The same perversions of mental process continued and unaccompanied by fever constitute *insanity*, which is probably always associated with structural change in the brain or its membranes, although such may not always be demonstrable. Other symptoms are added, however, in insanity, such as extreme depression of spirits, while hallucination, delusion, and illusion may be present in various degrees. Special insane acts should be specified and modifications of normal sleep noticed.

VI. ALTERATIONS IN VISION AND HEARING.—In addition to the ordinary defects of vision, the *response of the iris to light* should be noticed; also its *accommodating power*. The former is absent in three-fourths of all cases of locomotor ataxia, while the latter remains. The iris thus failing to respond to light, but retaining its accommodation to change of distance, is known as the Argyll Robertson pupil. Each eye should be tested separately, the other being covered. Finally, the eye-ground should be examined in every exhaustive study of a nervous case.

Modifications in *hearing* are the nature of increased and diminished intensity, and there is that very common symptom known as *tinnitus aurium*, or ringing in the ears, already alluded to as a good instance of a subjective symptom. Hyperacusis occurs in association with augmented acuteness of the other senses in acute affections of the brain or when there is hyperemia of the brain from any cause. It is also often complained of in hysteria. Deafness, on the other hand, is more frequently the consequence of disease of the ear itself. Ringing in the ears occurs in many conditions, known and unknown. While some more than usual impression on the nerve is a condition of tinnitus, it by no means follows that the cause resides in the nervous system. In addition to the numerous forms of irritation due to ear disease, the blood in an adjacent vessel may be thrown into vibration and produce an audible murmur. On the other hand, tinnitus is sometimes due to intracranial irritation either of the nerve or of the auditory centers.

VII. ALTERATIONS IN BREATHING AND PULSE.—*Alterations of breathing* are very common in nervous diseases. Respiration may be rapid or slow, and labored and sighing, or irregular, but especially peculiar is the *Cheyne-Stokes breathing*, in which, succeeding a long pause, so long sometimes that it seems as though the patient would never breathe again, follows gentle and shallow respiration, which gradually grows deeper and more frequent until an acme of dyspnea breathing is reached, when it again gradually diminishes in depth and frequency until the pause again occurs. It is an arrhythmical breathing of a periodic type. During the pause the pupil often contracts and the heart's action becomes less frequent. Cheyne-Stokes breathing may occur in tubercular meningitis, cerebral hemorrhage, embolism, thrombosis, and aneurysms of the basilar artery; also in uremia, heart disease, and more rarely in other conditions, including the infectious fevers, in which the respiratory center is influenced.

The period of arrest varies from five to forty seconds, and the duration of each cycle may be from 15 to 75 seconds, and may vary.

A modification of Cheyne-Stokes breathing is a form in which there are periods of deep and energetic breathing which begin suddenly, and in which the respirations gradually become shallower until they cease, and after a pause energetically recommence.

Cheyne-Stokes breathing was ascribed by Walsh and later by Traube and Rosenbach to lessened excitability of the respiratory center in the medulla oblongata. Filehne suggested that a periodical vasomotor spasm due to stimulation of the *vasomotor* center by the asphyxiated blood, arrested the rhythmogenic office of the *respiratory* center. The arterial spasm in the medulla oblongata thus caused prolongs the stimulation of the respiratory center as well as that of the vasomotor center by hindering the access of oxygenated blood. The respiratory center being less excitable, the respiratory movements, therefore, continue energetic—run riot as it were—after the blood has become oxygenated. The gradual onset of the breathing may be due to the fact that the reactive vasomotor dilatation exceeds the normal, and thus the quantity of blood reaching the respiratory center lessens the stimulating influence of its quality; but these are merely theories.

The *pulse* is influenced chiefly by diseases of the cranial contents, especially of the medulla oblongata, the cerebrum, and the meninges. It is at times very slow, as in meningitis and apoplexy, or when there is intracranial pressure from any cause or when there is pneumogastric irritation. It may be accelerated when there is inflammatory pyrexia or irritation of the cardiac center. Again, it may be irregular, acting through the nervous system, of which opium poisoning is among the familiar causes; uremia is another cause, rarely also is influenza.

Changes in the order of investigation proposed in this section will, of course, be demanded by circumstances, while at times certain steps may be omitted altogether.

VIII. FOCAL DISEASE AND FOCAL SYMPTOMS.—The terms focal disease and focal symptoms will be often used in the following pages. By *focal disease* in the nervous system is meant a circumscribed lesion, no reference being made to the nature of the lesion as to whether it is softening, a tumor, or compressing clot. By focal symptoms is meant symptoms caused by a lesion in one spot whether in the brain or spinal cord. Cerebral syphilis is a diffuse process, therefore usually not a focal disease. The *general* symptoms of a tumor in the motor cortex are headache, vertigo, choked disk, etc., the *focal* symptoms are paralysis of one or both limbs on the opposite side of the body, convulsions confined to these limbs or groups of muscles. Focal symptoms are localizing symptoms, or symptoms that indicate the focus of the disease or the region affected.

## AFFECTIONS OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVES.

## NEURITIS.

**Definition.**—Neuritis, or inflammation of a nerve, may be confined to a single trunk, whence it is called *localized*; or it may involve a large number of nerves, when it is known as *multiple neuritis* or *polyneuritis*. In *perineuritis* the connective tissue surrounding a nerve is the seat of the inflammation; in *interstitial neuritis* the tissue between the bundles of nerve-fibers is involved, and in *parenchymatous* or *degenerative* neuritis the substance of the nerve-fibers themselves is affected.

## LOCALIZED NEURITIS.

**Etiology.**—Exposure to cold is the most frequent cause of neuritis, and the nerve most frequently thus affected is the facial. Trauma is another cause, including compression, contusions, or cuts, as with glass, or stretching and laceration such as occur when there are dislocation, fracture, and other violent injuries. Neuritis may also occur as the result of extension of inflammation from contiguous parts, as from caries in a bone through which the nerve passes, adjacent joint inflammation, pleurisy, and meningitis. Finally, neuritis may be caused by toxins and morbid states of the blood, such as produce the infectious and constitutional diseases, as diphtheria, syphilis, and gout. The mineral poisons, especially lead and arsenic, are frequent causes. Alcohol is also a cause of this kind of neuritis, although it more frequently produces multiple neuritis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—An inflamed nerve is reddish, from hyperemia of the *vasa nervorum*, though the stage of demonstrable hyperemia may have passed away when the nerve comes under observation. In *perineuritis* and *interstitial neuritis* the primary change is in the connective tissue—in the former, an infiltration of the nerve sheath with leukocytes, and in the latter, of the interstitial tissue with the same cells. There may even be minute extravasations of blood. These changes are more apt to occur in places along the course of the nerve where it is exposed to special irritation, as in passing through foramina or over bone. The lymphoid cells gradually become fusiform cells, resulting in the formation of true connective tissue. The pressure of this new tissue gradually destroys the nerve itself, the medullary sheath being gradually broken up into drops, which subsequently disappear, while the nuclei of the sheath of Schwann increase; finally, the axis-cylinder also becomes granular and disappears—all this in varying degrees. The nerve-fiber may be substituted by a fiber of connective tissue, in which there may be a deposit of fat, a condition seen in the lipomatous neuritis of Leyden.

In *parenchymatous neuritis* the primary change is in the nerve-fiber itself. Here the medullary sheath and the axis-cylinder are the first involved, the former breaking up into drops, as described, and the latter into granules, both ultimately disappearing, while the interstitial connective tissue remains comparatively unchanged; but the nuclei of the sheath

of Schwann proliferate and become a part of the interstitial connective tissue.

The muscles connected with the inflamed nerve also atrophy—in the case of the motor nerves, at least—being practically cut off from their center of nutrition. The change in the nerve is essentially the Wallerian change noticed in the nerve-fiber of a cut nerve. In some instances the changes noticed in the sheath of Schwann extend over into the interstitial tissue of the muscle.

**Symptoms.**—There is not much constitutional disturbance in localized neuritis, though the thermometer may show some rise of temperature. *Pain*, especially pain on motion, and tenderness, are the salient symptoms. The pain may be confined to the seat of the inflammation or may involve the distribution of the nerve, or the whole limb may be involved. It varies in degree and also in character, being sometimes burning and at other times aching, boring, or shooting. It is likely to be worse at night, and when in situations involving pressure on the nerve itself. The nerve may be swollen appreciably, and rarely the skin over it is reddened.

The pain in the trunk of an inflamed nerve is probably due to pressure on the *nervi nervorum*. Weir Mitchell has especially called attention to this. An interesting fact is that the nerves composed almost purely of motor fibers are less tender than sensory nerves. This would imply that fewer sensory nerves are distributed to the motor nerve trunks than to sensory nerves, or that some pain is felt by the sensory fibers which make up the inflamed trunk.

Mitchell also describes elevation of surface temperature and trophic disturbances, such as sweating, herpes, and effusion into neighboring joints. Other trophic derangements, including muscle wasting, associated with peculiar "glossy skin" or slight edema, may be present. Vesicles, bullæ, and herpetic eruptions may occur. The nails become brittle, rough, and marked with transverse ridges. The bones in the fingers may even become atrophied. There may be thickening of the skin and a condition resembling ichthyosis may be present. Ultimately the hyperesthesia and paresthesia may become anesthesia, though usually limited to small areas.

Motor disturbances, including twitchings and contractions, may be present.

The electrical condition of the nerves and muscles must be studied. It may be normal in slight cases. In more severe cases there may be the reaction of degeneration, with the slow, lazy contraction of the muscles, and the reversed reaction to opening and closing currents, described on page 945.

The course of the disease is variously prolonged. Many acute cases terminate favorably in a few weeks. More cases become chronic, extending over months and even years, after which they may gradually subside.

A rare variety is "ascending neuritis," in which the inflammation extends from smaller to larger branches, until finally most of the nerves of a limb may be involved, or possibly even the spinal cord, producing myelitis, with or without spinal meningitis. Paralysis may result from such a condition. This is possibly the rare form of paralysis that suc-



ceeds visceral disease, as that of the bladder. Even the corresponding nerves of the other side may be involved. It is the opinion of some of the best neuropathologists that this ascending neuritis occurs only from a suppurating wound. The theory of an ascending neuritis is not universally accepted.

ADDITIONAL SYMPTOMS DUE TO NERVES INVOLVED.—(1). In inflammation of the *facial* nerve there may be complete paralysis of all the muscles supplied by the nerve. In inflammation of the *median* nerve there is disturbance on the palmar surface of the thumb, forefinger, and middle finger on its radial side, and there is often intense pain in these same situations.

(2) In inflammation of the *ulnar nerve*, there are pain and loss of sensation in the outer half of the third finger and in the fourth finger, with wasting of the flexor carpi radialis, the intrinsic muscles of the little finger, the interossei, lumbricales, and the adductor of the thumb. Here, in case of long standing, we have the "claw hand," the result of overextension of the first phalanges and flexion of the last two.

(3) In inflammation of the *musculospiral* there are great pain and tenderness of the upper arm and forearm, the region of the brachialis anticus and triceps extensor, the extensors of the wrist and fingers, the two supinators—the back of the hand, thumb, and index finger. In extreme degrees we have the characteristic wrist drop and inability to extend the first phalanges of the fingers and thumb, with partial anesthesia of the base of the thumb and forefinger.

(4) The *circumflex nerve* supplies the deltoid and teres minor. There may be pain or impaired sensation in the muscles and the skin over them, to which may succeed loss of power and atrophy of the deltoid and the arm cannot be raised.

(5) In inflammation of the *brachial plexus*, which is prone to occur in gouty subjects over 50 years old, there may be a combination of symptoms belonging to the last-named four nerves. A subvariety of brachial neuritis is *radicular* neuritis, in which the pain suggests the involvement of the roots of the nerves.

**Diagnosis.**—The disease is chiefly to be differentiated from *neuralgia*. This depends upon pain and tenderness in the course of the nerve and upon the limitation of the symptoms to its distribution. Neuralgia is more intermittent, and is relieved rather than aggravated by pressure. The presence of the paresthesia points to neuritis and the diagnosis is confirmed if there is ultimately lessened sensibility. In neuralgia, nerve and muscle reactions remain normal. It is possible, however, that neuralgia may result in neuritis. The distal pain of *central spinal disease* must be differentiated. In brachial neuritis the pain may radiate to the left side, suggesting *angina pectoris*, and there may even be a tendency to cardiac distress, but there is no tenderness in the course of the nerve in angina.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis varies greatly, being favorable in mild and in most traumatic cases. Those consequent upon local suppuration are the gravest. In ordinary cases from cold or contusion recovery usually ensues sooner or later, although some last a long time and recurrences

are not unusual, especially in neuropathic dispositions, in which, too, recovery is slower.

*Special Variety of Localized Neuritis—Sciatica.*

**Definition.**—This term is applied to all painful affections in the distribution of the sciatic nerve, some of which may be neuralgic, but the vast majority are inflammatory and perineuritic, as it is the sheath of the nerve that is usually involved.

**Etiology.**—Sciatica is far more common in men than in women, in the ratio of about four to one, while brachial neuritis affects both sexes about equally. It is also a disease of adults, being unknown in children and very rare in the second decade. It is most frequent between forty and fifty, next between fifty and sixty, and next between thirty and forty.

Gout and rheumatism are favoring causes, especially fibrous rheumatism. Very rarely syphilis may be a predisposing cause. Exposure to cold is the most frequent exciting cause, especially after severe muscular exertion; while standing in water, sitting or lying on the cold ground, and the like are frequent causes. Exposure to drafts, though less frequently than of neuritis of the upper extremity, is still a cause. A sciatica may also arise by extension from a rheumatic focus, especially that form of lumbago involving the fibrous attachments of muscles at the back of the sacrum, whence the inflammation extends to the sheath of the sciatic nerve. Pressure by mechanical agents and possibly muscular contraction may be a cause; also pressure by tumors and other new formations within the pelvis. Even the pressure of fecal accumulation may cause it if it is on the left side. In bilateral sciatica the possibility of intrapelvic tumor should be carefully considered. In addition to the intrapelvic causes referred to, secondary sciaticas may be caused by bone disease and other foci of suppuration external to the pelvis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid changes are those already described under neuritis.

**Symptoms.**—The leading symptom, is, of course, *pain in the course of the nerve*. Felt first in the back of the thigh, it also travels above the hip-joint, into the sciatic notch, behind the knee, below the head of the fibula, behind the *internal* malleolus, and on the dorsum of the foot. It may be more diffuse, but the course of the main trunk of the nerve is often indicated by it, and the points previously named, especially the back of the middle of the thigh and the sciatic notch, will often be pointed out by the patient as seats of special tenderness. It usually begins gradually, but it may start suddenly, especially in cases of rheumatic origin. Motion, particularly in walking, and positions in which the nerve is put in a state of tension or is compressed, aggravate it. A valuable sign of sciatica is pain produced by passive flexion of the thigh upon the pelvis with the knee extended (Lasègue's sign); by this means the sciatic nerve is stretched, and pain is readily produced if the nerve is inflamed. The characteristics of the pain are those already described under neuritis. The other more unusual symptoms of neuritis may also be present, as herpes, edema, and wasting, but the reaction of degeneration is almost never present. The loss of the *tendo Achillis* jerk is an important sign.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not difficult, although a careful study should be made of each case with a view to determining its primary or secondary origin. *Pelvic tumors*, especially in women, and *rectal accumulations* should be sought for. *Lumbago*, *hip-disease*, and *sacroiliac disease* are all to be recalled, but in none of these is there pain on pressure in the course of the nerve. In the last only is there sometimes pain in the posterior part of the thigh. Pain felt only in the outer side of the thigh is not sciatica. Some writers attribute all sciatica to joint diseases, but this view is not tenable. The rare cases of *sciatic neuralgia* are not characterized by tenderness. They occur in persons subject to neuralgia, and the pain is not influenced by position and motion, but is purely spontaneous. *Disease of the vertebræ*, of the *cauda equina*, and even of the *spinal cord* may produce sciatic pain; but here, again, tenderness is not so common in the course of the nerve, the pain is more likely to be bilateral, and changes in objective sensation may be distinct. Inflammation of the roots of the sciatic nerve, however, may extend downward. Bilateral pain is indicative of disease of the nerve-roots, although bilateral sciatica does occasionally occur. The shooting pains of *tabes dorsalis* are like those of sciatica, but the other symptoms of the former disease are present.

**Prognosis.**—Cases of sciatica, however obstinate, usually sooner or later get well, although they may persist for months. A case came under my observation which lasted seven years, but recovery finally was complete.

**Treatment.**—Here, as elsewhere, if a cause is discoverable, it should be removed. Exposure to cold and dampness should be avoided, pressure by cicatricial tissue or dislocated bones should be relieved, and constitutional states favoring neuritis, such as gout and syphilis, should be corrected.

Of curative measures, rest is the most important. When a limb can be splinted, this should be done, pressure by muscular contraction being thus prevented. Cold may be a useful application, as by an ice-bag. In other instances heat, now dry and again moist, subserves a useful purpose. A blister or blisters may be applied over the tender nerve. Especially convenient is the Paquelin cautery, which should be used earlier than it commonly is; its application takes but a second, and may be rendered painless by previously applying, for a few minutes, a mixture of ice and salt to the spot to be burned, although this has been largely superseded of late by the more convenient ethyl chlorid. Morphin is sometimes indispensable, and the hypodermic method of application is best— $\frac{1}{6}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.011 to 0.0165 gm.) for an adult. But the morphin habit is easily acquired, and the patient should not be allowed to use the syringe himself. Cocain may be similarly used— $\frac{1}{10}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  grain (0.0066 to 0.022 gm.)—and Gowers recommends it highly, more particularly for its power in arresting local transmission of the impulses that cause pain. Eucaïn is even better. Here, too, the injection should be made at the seat of the pain by the physician or a trusted attendant. Gowers, whose large experience always bespeaks respect, considers mercury also a most efficient agent, in the shape of a blue pill, 1 grain (0.066 gm.) once or twice a day, associated, if necessary, with morphin, the con-

stipating effect of which it counteracts. Salicylate of sodium is undoubtedly sometimes useful, as is also more rarely iodid of potassium. Strychnin is also of service. Injection of a considerable amount of normal salt solution into the buttock near the seat of pain has been recommended.

In the chronic form also Paquelin's cautery should be repeatedly used, or if not at hand, blistering may be substituted. Electricity here comes into play, and galvanism is the form to be used, the positive electrode being placed over the nerve or seat of pain, and the negative indifferently placed. A weak current is best, but its strength may be increased if such current be inefficient. The application should continue for about ten minutes. The wasted muscles recover as the inflammation subsides, but massage and galvanic electricity help them. Faradism is less favorably regarded, especially in the active stage.

*Every case of sciatica* should be at once ordered to rest, and the more complete the rest, the sooner the recovery. Splinting of the limb as recommended by Weir Mitchell, is necessary in some cases, and would probably hasten cure if used earlier, but it is so inconvenient that the temptation to temporize is very strong. Rest being secured, I am confident that recoveries would be prompter if Paquelin's cautery were oftener used at the onset. Counterirritation by blisters, mustard, and iodin is relatively inefficient. Treatment by cold along the course of the nerve certainly relieves the pain for a time, but in my experience the relief thus obtained is not permanent.

Attention should be paid to local causes, if these are discoverable, and to constitutional causes as well.

For the relief of mild degrees of pain phenacetin and antifebrin, and especially a combination of phenacetin and caffein citrate, say 10 grains (0.66 gm.) of the former and 3 grains (0.2 gm.) of the latter every two hours is often efficient. For severe degrees morphin is necessary, and is best given hypodermically in doses of from  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.008 to 0.0165 gm.). The danger of establishing the morphin habit must always be kept in mind, and cocain should be tried first as a deep-seated injection in doses of from  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.008 to 0.0165 gm.). Acupuncture over the course of the nerve is of service for the same purpose—relief of pain rather than cure. Anodyne liniments may be used, and although not curative, do give some comfort and meet the wishes of the patient that something should be done. The internal administration of ichthyol in small doses has been highly recommended by Crocq. Ichthyol locally is sometimes serviceable.

In chronic cases change of scene is often of advantage, and if associated with thermal bath treatment may accomplish a cure in otherwise obstinate cases. The mud-bath is a measure of treatment applied in Europe with some success. In the chronic stage electricity also meets the demands of patients and friends and may do some good. The galvanic current should be employed. Massage is less efficient than in muscular rheumatism, though it should be tried. Nerve-stretching is a very dubious expedient, it may cause serious consequences.

## MULTIPLE NEURITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Polyn neuritis; Peripheral Neuritis; Korsakow's Psychosis.*

**Definition.**—An inflammatory condition involving many peripheral nerves, either simultaneously or in rapid succession.

**Historical.**—Multiple neuritis is a disease of modern recognition. The symptoms peculiar to the condition were described first, probably, by James Jackson, Sr., of Boston, Mass., as early as 1822. In 1854 Robert Bentley Todd, of London, wrote of lead palsy: "The nervous system in thus first affected at its periphery, in the nerves, and, the poisoning influence continuing, the contamination gradually advances toward the center." Duchenne described the symptoms fully in 1858. Samuel Wilks described alcoholic paraplegia, but the existence of multiple neuritis as an actual disease was first demonstrated by Dumenil, at Rouen, in 1864, and the literature was further contributed to by Joffroy in 1870, Leyden in 1880, Grainger Stewart in 1881, Buzzard in 1886, James Ross, Henry Hun, and Charles K. Mills in 1892. W. R. Gowers' article in the second edition of "Diseases of the Nervous System," 1891, is a very complete one, as is also the work by Remak and Flatau in the Nothnagel system.

**Etiology.**—The causes of multiple neuritis are numerous, and by no means easy of classification. They include:

1. The commonly acknowledged poisons introduced from without: (a) Organic, including alcohol, by far the most frequent cause, ergot, morphin, ether, carbon monoxid, carbon bisulphid, benzine and its products, and anilin; (b) inorganic, including lead, arsenic, phosphorus, and mercury.

2. Endogenous toxins generated in the organism by chemical changes. Such is the cause of the neuritis of diabetes mellitus, whether glucose, oxybutyric acid, diacetic acid, or acetone, all of which are found in the blood in that disease.

3. *Toxins* inherent to the infectious diseases, whether an organism or its product. Instances of the former are malarial neuritis, leprous neuritis, beri-beri or so-called endemic neuritis, also, probably, the neuritis of acute infectious jaundice (Weil's disease). In these instances the cause is an organism. Of neuritis due to toxic products of pathogenic bacteria are diphtheritic neuritis, septicemic neuritis, the neuritis of smallpox, typhoid fever, tuberculosis, and possibly syphilis are instances.

4. Intrinsic states of the blood of undetermined nature, with which cold may or may not co-operate as an exciting cause—viz., rheumatism, gout; also the puerperal state, and chorea. Advanced microbic doctrines would place rheumatic neuritis in 3, while a greater conservatism might place septicemic neuritis in 4. Malnutrition, such as characterizes cachectic and senile states, cancer, tuberculosis, and wasting diseases generally are also causes. It is not impossible that cold alone may, by its operation, generate a poison capable of producing a polyn neuritis, but more probably it acts by lowering the vitality of the nerves and rendering them liable to attacks from other agents.

**Age and Sex.**—Multiple neuritis is a disease of adults. Aside from rare cases of diphtheritic neuritis, the most common form observed in children is a complication of acute anterior poliomyelitis. Gowers says "it may, perhaps, now and then be met with apart from the spinal malady as an infantile variety of multiple adventitial neuritis irregular in distribution." It is not improbable that in some of the cases of poliomyelitis

the changes in the nerves are secondary to alterations of the nerve cells in the anterior horns of the spinal cord.

The remaining chief forms occur usually between the ages of 20 and 50, the alcoholic between 30 and 40 or later, and senile neuritis at a still later age. The alcoholic form is more frequent than all others put together, and of this form 70 per cent. occur among women. This preponderance of the disease in women has been especially noticed in England, where alcoholism among females is more common than in this country. More than one cause may co-operate, when one may be the predisposing and the other the exciting. Cold probably most frequently plays the latter rôle, but there may be others, such as depressing emotions, anemia, and the like.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The special anatomical feature of multiple neuritis is that it is *parenchymatous*, as contrasted with interstitial and perineural—that is, the changes begin in the nerve-fibers themselves, as described on page 957, rather than in the connective tissue between and around them. Yet this is not invariable. Indeed, it is improbable that either form of neuritis exists without the other for any length of time. It is further characteristic of multiple neuritis that the involvement is symmetrical—that is, the corresponding nerves on the opposite side of the body are affected. The more this is the case, the more likely is it that the change is parenchymatous. The changes are also more marked in the peripheral distribution than in the trunk of nerves. Macroscopic alteration is very rarely appreciable. In acute changes the nerve may be swollen, reddened, hemorrhagic, or in old cases hardened from overgrowth of connective tissue.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms vary greatly in different varieties of neuritis, but there are some more or less common to all varieties, particularly illustrated by the alcoholic and rheumatic. These common symptoms will be considered first, and afterward some special features of varieties due to specific causes, particularly the metallic poisons, the acute infectious diseases, and the poison of beri-beri.

The symptoms are easily divided into three classes: *Motor* weakness, *sensory* derangement, and *inco-ordination*. The first is the result of the involvement of motor nerves, and manifests itself usually first in the extensors of the wrist and fingers, flexors of the ankle, and extensors of the toes. The sensory disturbances are tingling, numbness, and pain, while the inco-ordination resembles that of tabes. According as one or the other of these sets of symptoms predominates we have a motor form, a sensory form, or an ataxic form.

*The onset may be rapid or slow.* In the rheumatic form, or that due to cold, it is usually sudden, with chill and fever and a temperature of 103° or 104° F. (39.5° to 40° C.), headache, and backache. The slow onset is characteristic of alcoholic neuritis, though it may be precipitated by some exciting cause, as cold, exposure, fatigue, or some other toxic state. Neuritis of slow onset is rarely febrile. In the initial stage *sensory symptoms* are numbness and tingling of the fingers and toes, palms of the hands and soles of the feet, and other parts of the lower arms and legs; then hyperesthesia, tenderness, and pain, more marked in the legs, sometimes

associated with cramp in the calves. These symptoms may in mild degree precede the onset as premonitory for weeks and for months, especially in the alcoholic form.

Very characteristic is the *tenderness of the muscles* themselves, developed as they become weaker, and elicited by grasping them, the slightest pressure often causing the patient to cry out with pain. This is regarded as evidence that all the nerves of the muscles are involved, the sensory as well as the motor. The nerve trunks are also tender, although this tenderness is less marked than in simple neuritis, because the contrast with the hyperesthesia of the surrounding skin is less conspicuous.

The *motor symptoms*, seldom absent, soon follow the sensory phenomena just mentioned. They include palsy or inco-ordination or both in upper and lower limbs, but with this characteristic—that the involvement of the limbs is symmetrical and the distal extremities, as the feet and hands, are affected, the former more frequently. Motor symptoms may exist in the feet and sensory symptoms in the hands, the latter commonly preceding.

The muscles commonly involved are those supplied by the peroneal nerve in the lower, and by the posterior interosseous branch of the musculospiral in the upper extremity. With weakness in the legs comes *loss of knee-jerk* and *ankle-jerk*, quite frequently, but not invariably, depending, of course, on the involvement of the nerves forming these reflex arcs. The muscles above the knee are less frequently affected, and still less frequently those which move the hip-joint.

The paralysis of the muscles innervated by the peroneal nerve gives rise to a peculiar and distinctive walk known as the *steppage* gait, and occasionally it is unilateral, when only one peroneal nerve is affected. It is the gait of polyneuritis in which the foot drops, and in order to raise it from the ground and thereby to "shorten" the limb, the thigh is drawn up unnecessarily high and the knee is flexed excessively so that the gait resembles that of the "high-stepping" horse. The extremity of the foot strikes the ground first, followed by the heel, so that there is often a recognized interval of time between the two events. Closing of the eyes does not affect this gait. Occasionally the anterior tibial muscle may escape when the other muscles of the peroneal distribution are paralyzed.

As contrasted with the *diminished tendon reflexes*, the reflex action from the skin may be increased, especially when there is hyperesthesia, even when there is considerable motor paralysis, the movement being caused by the muscles which escape involvement. In severe cases, on the other hand, when there is much loss of sensation and motion, the skin reflex is absent; exceptionally, it may be absent when sensation is perfect. Myotatic irritability is almost always lost, although in the early stages of the disease, or in those cases in which the anterior crural nerves escape, it may be preserved.

In the arms it is the extensors of the wrist and fingers which are first affected, and these symmetrically, illustrated by one of the best recognized toxic forms of neuritis, lead palsy. In the latter there is paralysis of the extensors while the extensor of the metacarpal bone of the thumb and the supinator longus usually escape, although in some cases of lead palsy these muscles are affected. After the extensors, the flexors of the wrist and

fingers are involved, then the interosseous muscles, and, finally, the thenar and hypotenar muscles are attacked, always to a less degree than the extensors. The muscles above the elbow are less affected.

Occasionally the fibers of the *pneumogastric* are involved, causing frequent pulse-rate and paralysis of the vocal cords, cardiac failure, and death. Still more rarely the diaphragm and muscles of the thorax and abdomen are involved. The facial and motor oculi nerves are possible seats. Neuritis confined to the cranial nerves has been described. The sphincters are also rarely affected.

The muscles exhibit the *reaction of degeneration*, faradic irritability being lost, while galvanic irritability is increased, but not always altered in quality. In the nerves, irritability to both currents diminishes and ultimately disappears, although in the very first stage there may be increased galvanic irritability, as described under the reaction of degeneration. In severe cases total loss of excitability may occur at once because of a corresponding destruction of muscular substance, instead of being preceded by an intermediate state of increased excitability.

*Wasting* of the muscles is sooner or later inevitable, unless the disease is of short duration, although it may be obscured by a temporary edema or a condition of fatty infiltration, in which the fat accumulates between the wasting fasciculi, keeping up for a time the bulk of the muscle. The less affected muscles are likely to undergo shortening and contracture because of maintaining so long a fixed position, either from being given over to gravitation or as a result of an effort to relieve pain. This alteration occurs most frequently in the lower extremity, contributing to intensify the "foot-drop" at the ankle, and more rarely to produce flexure at the knee-joint and to a less degree even at the hip, both of the latter being the result of posture. The foot-drop may be increased by the pressure of the bed-clothes upon the foot.

The sensory and motor phenomena are commonly associated *pari passu*, the latter extending from the hands and feet up the outside of the arm and leg. Very rarely either set of symptoms may occur alone.

*Tremor* is a marked symptom in some alcoholic cases and may precede loss of power.

*Ataxic phenomena* are usually associated with the sensory and motor symptoms. They are manifested by difficulty in balancing while standing, or by inability to execute finer movements with the fingers. Indeed, these may be the first symptoms, and may lead when studied to the knowledge of some defect in extending the wrist and fingers, or in raising the toes, or foot, from the ground while walking. The ataxia is more marked in the lower extremities, and is believed to depend chiefly upon sensory nerve involvement, since these nerves are supposed to have most to do with co-ordination. Involvement of the motor nerves may possibly also cause ataxia. Because of the associated absence of the knee-jerk, the term peripheral pseudotabes has been applied to the ataxic variety. The symptoms may closely resemble those of tabes, but the phenomena always fall short of those of true tabes. It may be said, too, of the ataxic form that the sensory disturbances are sometimes less severe than in other typical cases. Absence of the Argyll Robertson pupil and of vesical disturbance, rapid



development of the disease, a history of the case suggesting a cause for neuritis, and, finally, recovery, are diagnostic points in favor of the ataxic form of neuritis as distinguished from tabes.

*Trophic changes* may occur in prolonged cases, including mainly glossy skin, arthritic adhesions, and thickening; also vasomotor derangement, shown by edema, especially about the ankles and the dorsum of the foot; also pallor of the fingers and changes in the nails and hair.

*Mental symptoms* are found more particularly in connection with the alcoholic form of neuritis. Besides irritability and general ill temper, more active symptoms are at times present. A childish jocularity in women, hysteria, and skilful duplicity in obtaining alcohol are characteristic. The phenomena may be those of delirium tremens or simple hallucination with extravagant ideas. Especially peculiar is the condition described by Wilks, and especially by Korssakow, in which there is a loss of appreciation of time and place, the patient describing with minute detail impossible journeys recently taken and persons whom he imagines he has seen. Convulsions and optic neuritis are rarely present; if present, they are probably due to meningeal inflammation. A simple mild delirium may occur in toxemic cases from the action of the poisons on the brain cells. Mental symptoms are not usually present in multiple neuritis from other causes.

The number and variety of the symptoms vary greatly in different forms, being most widespread in those cases due to alcoholism, to cold, or to combined causes, and limited in the cases due to metallic poisons, as lead. The more acute the case, the more widespread are the symptoms.

**Complications.**—These are the other diseases to which alcoholics are subject—cirrhosis and fatty change of the liver, gastric catarrh, and alterations of the kidneys and their consequences. The chief one in the toxic form is gout due to mineral poisons, almost exclusively lead. Pulmonary tuberculosis is common, and pneumonia, invading especially the middle portion of the lung, and sometimes bilateral, is a frequent cause of death. Patients with multiple neuritis are more liable to infections.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of alcoholic cases is usually easy from the history, although sometimes skilful deception, especially in women, deprives the physician of this assistance. The distinctive features of the disease are the symmetrical localizations of the sensory and motor symptoms, first and mainly in the extremities, and the tenderness of the skin, nerve trunks and muscles. There are, however, great variations in different cases, even in those dependent on the same cause, some cases being very acute and general and even rapidly fatal, others slow with limitation to groups of muscles; some mainly motor, others sensory and ataxic (pseudotabes).

The possible sources of confusion are *rheumatism*, acute and chronic; *neuralgia*, *tabes dorsalis*, *poliomyelitis*, acute and subacute; *pachymeningitis* damaging the nerve-roots, *acute ascending paralysis*, and *hysterical palsy*.

In *rheumatism* the tingling characteristic of neuritis is not present, and although the tenderness of a nerve passing in the neighborhood of a joint, especially apt to be aggravated in motion, may be mistaken for joint pain, careful examination will elicit its true nature. Neuritis differs from *neuralgia* in the bilateral symmetry of the pain, and in the persistence of tenderness and hyperesthesia as contrasted with the spontaneous pain of neuralgia.

The ataxic form of the disease, especially the form called neurotabes (peripheral pseudotabes), sometimes resembles *tabes dorsalis* very closely. In neurotabes the lesion consists only of the nerve degeneration, while the spinal cord is free, its claim to the title being the fact that the loss of motor power may be slight in neurotabes, as in most cases of true tabes. The diagnosis from tabes may generally be easily made. The association of absolute paralysis or distinct weakness of extensors with inco-ordination would indicate neuritis. The "lightning pains" of tabes are seldom found in neuritis, nor are waist constriction nor pupillary symptoms, while the muscular tenderness is not found in tabes. Rapid onset of the disease and ultimate recovery occur in pseudotabes. The extreme hyperesthesia, so distinctive a symptom of neuritis, may be less valuable in diagnosis, because it is often absent in the ataxic form. Girdle pains, paralysis of the sphincters of bladder and rectum, are much more common in cord involvement, even in alcoholic cases, but may occur in multiple neuritis.

*Poliomyelitis*—inflammation, acute or subacute, of the gray matter of the cord—resembles the rheumatic and toxemic forms of neuritis, which have, like it, a febrile onset, *initial* rheumatic pains, and muscular wasting with the reaction of degeneration. But, again, we contrast the symmetrical distribution of the palsy of neuritis and its limitation to nerve distribution with the random distribution of poliomyelitis. Pain on pressure and subjective sensory disturbances are not prominent in poliomyelitis, but sometimes the symptoms are suggestive of the association of multiple neuritis with poliomyelitis.

In *pachymeningitis* which involves the nerve-roots, producing paralysis, wasting, and anesthesia, the legs do not suffer early in the disease, as a rule; and while the upper parts of the arms and trunk may be anesthetic, there is no tenderness of the nerve trunks, unless these also are inflamed.

*Acute ascending paralysis* (Landry's) resembles the most rapid form of multiple neuritis in some of its symptoms, but the paralysis usually ascends the trunk from the legs to the arms, and does not begin in the hands and feet *at the same time*, nor does it affect the trunk last, as in neuritis. There is, moreover, no anesthesia in typical ascending paralysis. There are, however, transitional cases between multiple neuritis and Landry's paralysis, and the term Landry's paralysis is somewhat in disfavor.

Some assistance in diagnosis may be had from the etiological standpoint; the history of metallic poisoning, of alcoholic excesses, or of exposure to infectious diseases, or the presence of diabetes being suggestive.

**Prognosis.**—A large number of patients with multiple neuritis get well, though slowly, especially if the cause be discovered and removed. Especially is this true of the alcoholic cases, although improvement does not always begin immediately on withdrawing the cause—indeed, the disease may even progress for a long time, and improvement may not be observed for several months. Hence the prognosis should be guarded. The acute and widespread cases are the most dangerous to life, and in such the prognosis should always be guarded. The involvement of the heart and of the muscles of respiration, including the diaphragm, is most to be feared. Pain in the trunk muscles is a grave symptom if the motor power of the limbs has diminished much. Paralysis of the diaphragm may be insidious and un-

noticed until that of the intercostals is added, when there may be accumulation of mucus, bronchitis and death by suffocation. Involvement of the vagus nerves is manifested by frequency of pulse. Superadded involvement of the spinal cord increases the danger. At best, months are required for recovery, and even years may be necessary. Involvement of the spinal cord precludes total recovery. The return of faradic irritability in nerve and muscle is favorable. To sum up with Gowers: "The prognosis is better in the sensory than in the motor form, better when the arm escapes than when all the limbs are involved, better in cases of chronic than acute onset, and better if a case of apparently acute onset is really such, than if it succeeds slight symptoms of longer duration."

**Treatment.**—The removal of the cause, if possible, is a primary step in treatment. Along with this, rest is most important, and the rest should be complete—in bed, and this should be enforced in the earlier stages; later the pain and loss of motor power make rest obligatory. Care should be taken to avoid any pressure of the bed-clothes upon the feet, which might aid in the contracture of the muscles in the position of foot-drop. There should be no compromise with alcohol, although in some cases of great debility, when the cardiac action is feeble, gradual withdrawal may be justifiable. The patient should, on the other hand, be fed on the most nutritious food. Local anodyne applications may be resorted to to relieve the pain, and may be varied according to effect. Dry heat, moist heat, applications of lead-water and laudanum, and ointments of aconite and veratrum are some of those which may be employed. Wrapping in cotton or wool is sometimes beneficial. Warm baths are soothing; sometimes very hot ones give relief.

Postures assumed because of the relief they give to pain should not be too long permitted lest deformity result by contraction and adhesion, difficult or impossible to overcome. Dropping of the feet should be prevented by splints or by support with sand-bags. The same is true of flexion at the knee and hip.

As to drugs, they are of little use; the salicylates, phenacetin, antifebrin, and antipyrin may be useful in mild cases, and should be tried in doses of from 5 to 15 grains (0.3 to 1 gm.), but their action should be watched if the heart be affected. They are more particularly useful in cases due to cold. Extreme pain may demand the cautious use of morphin hypodermically in doses of from  $\frac{1}{6}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  grain (0.011 to 0.022 gm.) combined with  $\frac{1}{150}$  grain (0.00044 gm.) of atrophin, which modifies and improves the action of morphin most happily. For the mental symptoms the hydrobromate of hyoscin in doses of from  $\frac{1}{200}$  to  $\frac{1}{100}$  grain (0.00033 to 0.00066 gm.) hypodermically, or hyoscin in doses of from  $\frac{1}{400}$  to  $\frac{1}{150}$  grain (0.00016 to 0.00044 gm.) may be tried. Mercurials, so highly approved by Gowers in simple neuritis, are useless here. The iodids are sometimes beneficial in chronic cases and in cases due to lead absorption.

Roborant medicines, such as iron and cod-liver oil, are indicated to build up the patient, who is generally broken down. Electricity, massage and strychnin are very useful after convalescence has set in.

## ENDEMIC NEURITIS.

**Definition.**—This term is applied to certain forms of multiple neuritis, supposed to be due to vegetable organisms, limited to certain localities. Three separate varieties have been recognized, but others probably exist. The three referred to are malarial neuritis, beri-beri, and leprous neuritis.

1. **MALARIAL NEURITIS.**—This corresponds in its clinical features to the simpler forms of multiple neuritis, and requires no detailed description. Its malarial nature is based on its prevalence in malarial districts and its curability by quinin. While it is believed to be caused by the plasmodium of malaria, I am not aware that this organism has as yet been discovered in the blood of patients suffering from it; the plasmodium, however, has been found in the central nervous system of persons who have manifested various symptoms of nervous disease.

2. **BERI-BERI, THE KAKKE OF JAPAN.**—Beri-beri is a disease prevalent in Japan, the Eastern Archipelago, India, New Zealand, Ceylon, the South Pacific Islands, and the coast of Brazil. It is especially prevalent in the Dutch East Indies among soldiers and in prisons, and has been thoroughly investigated under the Netherlands Government. In this country, J. J. Putman has described a similar disorder among New England fishermen who frequent the Grand Banks of Newfoundland, and Bondurant has observed it among sailors in the Gulf ports of Alabama. It is also not uncommon among Norwegian sailors. Seguin, of New York, has described cases originating in the West Indies and coming to this country.

**Etiology.**—Sheube and Baelz first determined its true nature, but our knowledge has been greatly increased by the studies of Pekelharing and Winkler.<sup>1</sup> It is believed to be due to a special organism, of which rods and cocci have been described, and of which cultures have been made. These, when inoculated, produced peripheral neuritis of the same distribution as beri-beri. Repeated inoculations having, however, been required to produce the disease, it has been reasonably concluded that repeated exposures are necessary before infection results. It is transmissible from individual to individual. The disease is also acquired by residence in certain houses, and patients recover after removal to a district which is free, relapsing on returning. It has been thought that a nitrogenous and especially an exclusive fish diet predisposes to the disease, and, again, a rice diet. Roll<sup>2</sup> has shown that in all probability the disease is transmitted through drinking-water, since he traced two epidemics on board ship to this cause. In both cases the sailors were free so long as they had a supply of European water; but in one instance, after laying in fresh water at Batavia, and again in Mauritius, where the disease prevailed endemically, it appeared among the crew at the end of five weeks.

**Symptoms.**—There are several types of cases. Among the earliest symptoms is a *change in the electrical excitability of the peroneal nerves and the flexors of the ankles*, consisting in a slight degree of reaction of degeneration, quantitative and often qualitative, this even before there are any sub-

<sup>1</sup> Pekelharing and Winkler, "Centralblatt f. Nervenkrankheiten," 1899, and "Deutsche med. Wochenschr.," 1888, No. 30.

<sup>2</sup> "Norsk Magazin for Lægevidenskaben," November, 1895, and May, 1896.

jective symptoms. Sometimes, indeed, the disease goes no further. Generally, however, the subjective symptoms begin as a *sense of heaviness of the legs, a tendency to tire easily, perverted sensation, diminished tactile sense in the lower part of the legs, and irritability of the heart.* In an acute pernicious form the nervous phenomena are less marked. There are *fever, anemia, and general anasarca.* The edema is quite constant, beginning in the legs. The *urine* is scanty, but not otherwise altered, and contains no albumin. A critical increase in the quantity of urine indicates an improvement. In the second group the neuritic symptoms are more marked, there being *numbness, anesthesia, loss of tendon reflexes, muscular atrophy, and anasarca.* In the third group, the *atrophy and paralysis* are most conspicuous, and the clinical picture is that of a rapidly progressing multiple neuritis with sensory and motor symptoms. The mortality varies from three to 60 and even to 70 per cent. The *diaphragm* and *larynx* may become paralyzed, and the cardiac branches of the vagus involved, producing cardiac failure and death.

**Treatment.**—The treatment calls for the removal of the cause by disinfection or removal of the patient from the infected house or district and by the withdrawal of suspected food or drinking-water.

The symptoms are treated as in other forms of neuritis. In consequence of the tendency to cardiac weakness heart tonics may be needed, such as digitalis, strychnin, strophanthus, and caffeine.

3. LEPROUS NEURITIS.—Similar to beri-beri is leprous neuritis, already considered as to its etiology, symptomatology, and treatment. (See Infectious Diseases.) It differs from beri-beri in being transmitted from parent to offspring and in its extreme slowness of development after exposure, as much as ten years intervening. It differs also from beri-beri in that the neuritis is not an essential part of the disease. The neuritis is a symptom of the so-called "anesthetic leprosy." Leprous neuritis differs, further, from the usual forms of multiple neuritis in not being perfectly symmetrical and in being a perineuritis and an interstitial neuritis instead of parenchymatous. The bacillus is also found in the tissue, by its presence causing the inflammation, while in beri-beri the virus circulates in the blood. Hence the irregular distribution of the neuritis in the leprous form, resembling in this respect the more isolated neuritis of syphilis.

**Symptoms.**—The special symptoms are muscular wasting and anesthesia, more marked toward the extremities of the limbs, but not confined to them, being found elsewhere, as in the face, involving the fifth and seventh pairs of nerves. Sometimes tenderness and pain are present; the latter is, however, not severe. There may be tingling, also anesthesia and diminished electrical excitability, with reaction of degeneration. The irregular areas of anesthesia are generally associated with irregular patches of pigmentation and pallor.

The **diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment** are the same as those of leprosy.

## ADIPOSIS DOLOROSA.

SYNONYM.—*Dercum's Disease*.

**Definition.**—A condition first described by Dercum, in 1888, in which there are irregular deposits of fat in different parts of the body which are the seats of pain or tenderness or have been preceded by it.

**Etiology and Pathology.**—The subjects are almost always women. A neuropathic family predisposition has been generally present and the alcoholic habit and syphilis also. Sclerosis with diminution in size of the thyroid gland has been found and in a case of Burr's there was a tumor of the pituitary body. There is sometimes neuritis and later degeneration of smaller nerve branches, the main trunks being intact. The disease is probably a neuritis associated with peculiar fat formation.

**Symptoms.**—Sometimes, after middle life, the patient, usually a woman, acquires irregular deposits or bunches of fat in various parts of the body. These gradually become the seat of burning, scalding, shooting pain and paresthesias. The masses of fat grow larger and become soft and pultaceous, but do not pit on pressure. There remain areas of the body quite uninvolved, especially the peripheral parts of the limbs. Hyperesthesias may alternate with anesthesia elsewhere than in the fatty masses. At times there is mental weakness, even dementia. As the accumulations grow there succeeds muscular weakness, at times extreme; the skin appears normal, the hands and feet remain normal. The skin is at times normal, at others it is pigmented or atrophied.

**Diagnosis.**—The disease differs from simple obesity in the lumpiness as contrasted with the uniform distribution of fat, and by the painfulness and tenderness. From myxedema it differs in the absence of the peculiar facies and other symptoms which attend myxedema.

**Treatment** is without effect. Local anodynes may palliate. Thyroid extract should be tried. Coal-tar derivatives may be employed, especially aspirin and phenacetin. Morphin should be put off as long as possible.

## NEURALGIA.

**Definition.**—Strictly speaking, the term neuralgia should be restricted to such varieties of nerve pain as are unattended with structural changes in the nerve. Formerly, many cases now regarded as cases of neuritis were called neuralgias, and it is probable that, as our knowledge grows, other so-called neuralgias will be eliminated. Finally, the border-line existing between neuralgia and neuritis cannot be drawn sharply, but as far as possible, the term neuralgia should be restricted to nerve pain without organic change.

**Etiology.**—Neuralgia is a disease of adults. It rarely occurs before puberty, and is relatively rare in old age. It is more common in women than in men, although not so very rare in old men. Heredity is responsible for a tendency to neuralgia. According to Anstie, fully one-fourth of all

cases are the result of heredity. It is frequent in so-called neurotic families and in the so-called "nervous" person—*i. e.*, one who is excitable, anxious, and fretful in disposition. In this category, too, are the hysterical neuralgias. The debilitated, anemic, and poorly fed are liable to it. So are they who are overworked and worried.

The most frequent *exciting* cause is cold. Malaria is one of the most common causes, producing, especially, hemicrania, while the malarial cachexia also predisposes to neuralgia. The pain of carious teeth is not regarded as neuralgic, but when such pain causes irritation of the peripheral branches of the fifth nerve, a neuralgia may be produced in the distal distribution.

**Symptoms.**—*Pain* is, of course, the leading symptom. "Spontaneous pain," by which is meant pain independent of neuritis or irritation of the nerve, and the modifications to which it is subject in severity and distribution, constitute, in fact, the disease. This pain is irregularly paroxysmal, shooting, darting, or burning in character, not usually increased by motion and if not relieved by pressure, may be by gentle friction. The more the pain is increased by motion and the more there is pain over the nerve trunks on pressure, the more is it a neuritis and the less a neuralgia. Yet we cannot literally adhere to this, as evidenced by the "tender points" of Valleix, which will be further referred to under the different varieties of neuralgia. Multiple dartings and shootings, separated by seconds or minutes of freedom from pain, are characteristic.

The absence of primary tenderness is also characteristic; but after the pain has continued for some time there often succeed tenderness of the skin and even a redness and swelling, the absence of any unnatural degree of which at the beginning is considered distinctive. These phenomena, including edematous swellings, are regarded as vasomotor in origin. Other vasomotor symptoms are hyperidrosis, increased secretion of saliva and tears, and elevation of temperature. Trophic effects are seen in shedding of the hair and its rapid blanching, and other symptoms to be referred to. Muscular twitchings are also not uncommon at the seat of the pain, and sometimes even muscular spasm.

The duration of an attack of neuralgia varies from an hour or even less to many hours. Sooner or later, if not relieved, it subsides spontaneously, though with a greater tendency to recur than when relieved by treatment.

#### VARIETIES DEPENDING UPON NERVES INVOLVED.

Neuralgias are variously named in accordance with the nerves affected, whence we have the following varieties:

1. *Trifacial Neuralgia (Neuralgia of the Fifth Pair; Tic douloureux; Prosopalgia).*—This form involves one or more of the branches of the fifth pair, rarely all. It is more common than all other varieties of neuralgia combined. Here, doubtless, we have sometimes to do with a neuritis not always easily separable. One or more numerous tender points are usually demonstrable, of which those at the supra-orbital and infra-orbital foramina are the most conspicuous.

Of the branches of the fifth, the *ophthalmic*, or the first division through its supra-orbital branch, is that most frequently affected, giving rise to the well-known supra-orbital neuralgia. The pain radiates from the "tender point" at the supra-orbital notch over the anterior half of the head sometimes to the eye itself, the eyelid, and half of the nose. There may be injection of the eye and suffusion. There is sometimes pain in the occipital protuberance and cervical spines. This supra-orbital form must most frequently be distinguished from catarrh of the frontal sinuses, but the latter is more likely to be symmetrical, and while the pain is severe, it is duller, less shooting, and is accompanied by coryza; it terminates suddenly with a free discharge of purulent matter, sometimes offensive.

When the distribution of the *infra-orbital*, or second branch is involved, the pain occupies the superior maxillary area between the orbit and the mouth, over the cheek to the ala of the nose. The "tender points" are at the emergence of the nerve below the orbit, at the side of the nose, over the most prominent part of the malar bone, and along the gingival line in the upper jaw, rarely in the upper lip.

When there is involvement of the third, or *inferior maxillary*, division, less common as an isolated form—except as to its inferior dental branch—there is a much more extensive area of pain, including the parietal eminence, the temple, the ear, the lower jaw, and the tongue. The "tender points" are in front of the ear where the auriculotemporal crosses the zygomatic arch, where there is often burning pain, and at the mental foramen on the chin. The movements of mastication and speaking may be painful, and there may be salivation. A herpetic eruption about the eyes or lips occasionally present points to neuritis. Atrophy and induration of the skin have been included in the symptoms, but these are ascribable also to a neuritis.

There is a pure *ocular neuralgia* involving the eyeball only. It may or may not be due to errors of refraction. Of these, hypermetropia, or far sightedness, is the most common cause. Either one or both eyes may be affected. It may be accompanied by dimness of vision.

A form of trigeminal neuralgia, called by Trousseau "epileptiform," consists in sudden, severe, and frequent attacks of pain, lasting from a few seconds to a few minutes, many times repeated during the day.

2. *Cervico-occipital Neuralgia*.—This affects the area of the neck supplied by the posterior branches of the first four cervical nerves, and the posterior part of the head supplied by the great occipital branch of the posterior division of the second cervical nerve, at the exit of which there is a tender point about half way between the mastoid process and the first cervical vertebra. Two other tender points are just above the parietal eminence, and between the sternomastoid and trapezius muscles. The pain may extend over the greater part of the neck and head, as far forward as the parietal eminence and the ear.

Exposure to cold or a draft of air is the most common cause of this form. Nephritis has been alleged to be a cause.

3. *Cervico-brachial and Brachial Neuralgia*.—This involves the area supplied by the four lower cervical and the first thoracic nerves, the area of sensory distribution of the brachial plexus.

The tender points are the axillary, the circumflex at the posterior part



of the deltoid, the superior ulnar behind the elbow, and the inferior ulnar in front of the wrist. This form is often confounded with neuritis due to rheumatic affections of the joints or injury.

4. *Neuralgia of the Phrenic Nerve*.—This is rare, the pain in its area during pleurisy and pericarditis being rather a neuritis. The pain is at the lower part of the thorax, at the attachment of the diaphragm. Breathing is shallow, because pain is caused by the breathing movements. Coughing and even deglutition cause pain.

5. *Trunk Neuralgia*.—This naturally divides itself into two subvarieties: dorso-intercostal and lumbo-abdominal.

(a) *Dorso-intercostal neuralgia* covers the area supplied by the intercostal nerves from the third to the ninth, and is characterized by pain along the intercostal spaces or in parts of them. It is sometimes bilateral. There is usually a constant dull pain with or without acute stabbing exacerbations, or the latter may be excited by deep breathing or motion. There may be special tenderness at the points of emergence of the three branches of the intercostal nerve—viz., posteriorly near the vertebræ, anteriorly near the median line, and midway between these two points in the midaxillary line.

The term *pleurodynia* has been used with a good deal of vagueness. Strictly speaking, it should be limited, as it is by Gowers, to neuralgia of the pleural nerves. Consistently with this it should not be applied to pain localized in the course or point of exit of an intercostal nerve. It is very acute in character and excited by expansion of the thorax rather than by lateral movements of the trunk. The pain of herpes zoster is not a neuralgia, but a neuritis.

Another variety in this locality is the inframammary neuralgia of anemic women.

(b) *Lumbo-abdominal neuralgia* involves the posterior branches of the lumbar nerves, especially the ilioscrotal branch. The area of the pain is the region of the iliac crest, along the inguinal canal and the spermatic cord in the scrotum, or round ligament in the labium majus. The pain is often bilateral, sometimes resembling the constricting girdle pains of spinal cord disease, from which it differs, however, by its changing place. It is especially frequent in connection with the diseases of pelvic organs, particularly in women. The testes and penis are the seat of neuralgic pains.

6. *Neuralgia of the spinal column* is the more modern term for the "spinal tenderness" of the older authors. It is common in feeble and hysterical women, and a sequel of the modern railway accident under the name of "spinal congestion." The pain in most cases is felt along a considerable vertical extent of the spine, but is more intense in certain spots. The thoracic region is the most common seat next the lower cervical, and least frequently the lumbar region.

7. *Sacral neuralgia and coccygodynia* are defined by their names. These affections reside in the nerves between the bone and the skin, and are often exceedingly difficult to cure. The pain may really be due to organic lesions in the part.

8. *Neuralgia of the feet* includes painful heel, plantar neuralgia, and erythromelalgia. In the latter, first described by Weir Mitchell, vascular changes, including either acute hyperemia or cyanosis—probably of vaso-

motor origin—are associated with severe pain in the heel or sole of the foot. It is probably a neuritis in some cases.

9. *Visceral neuralgia* means neuralgia affecting the gastrointestinal tract, the kidneys, ovaries, and other pelvic organs. Idiopathic nephralgia, or neuralgia of the kidney, I regard as a rare event. It and testicular neuralgia are more frequently secondary to inflammation of adjacent urinary passages, but idiopathic testicular neuralgia is less rare than nephralgia.

Neuralgias are further classified according to character and cause. Thus, in addition to the epileptiform variety alluded to, there are reflex or symptomatic neuralgias, traumatic neuralgias, herpetic neuralgias accompanying herpes, hysterical, rheumatic, gouty, diabetic, anemic, malarial, syphilitic, and degenerative neuralgias. Many of these terms are loosely applied. The term rheumatic neuralgia is often erroneously applied to muscular rheumatism. It should not be used.

Very interesting and important is the subject of *reflex neuralgias* and *referred pains* which have been especially studied by the late Dr. Anstie in England and Charles L. Dana in this country. Reflex neuralgias are due to disease in organs distant from the actual seat of the neuralgia. The fifth nerve is a favorite seat of such neuralgias. Thus, an irritation of the distribution of one branch of this nerve by a carious tooth may excite a neuralgia in another distribution of the same nerve. Illustrations of referred pain are the "pain in the back" or spinal cord pain in ulcer of the stomach, the left scapular pain in diseases of the liver, the sacral pain in uterine disease, and the testicular pain in renal colic.

**Diagnosis.**—Neuralgia is chiefly to be distinguished from *neuritis* and the effects of *pressure on nerves*; and also *rheumatism*. From *neuritis* it is separated by its unilateral distribution as contrasted with the more frequent symmetrical distribution of neuritis, although neuritis is not infrequently unilateral; also by its numerous remissions and intermissions, and the shifting of the pain from one spot to another. The fixed neuralgias are more difficult of separation from neuritis, especially mild cases. The severe forms of neuritis are soon recognized by the anesthesia which succeeds upon the hyperesthesia in the cases of sensory nerves, and muscular wasting with changes in the electrical irritability in mixed nerves. In the case of *compression of nerves* the pain is continuous, while the symptoms and consequences of neuritis will, sooner or later, show themselves. Nevertheless, doubt and error must not infrequently occur.

*Muscular rheumatism* differs in its localization in muscles or groups of muscles such as the lumbar or shoulder muscles, its continuousness and pain increased by motion.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis in neuralgia is usually ultimately favorable, although some forms and cases are very stubborn. Especially true is this of neuralgia of the fifth pair. The more frequent the recurrence and the wider the distribution, the more difficult is the cure. On the other hand, the severity of the pain is not, in my experience, a measure of obstinacy to cure, some of the severest cases being easiest relieved. Hereditary cases are the more obstinate. The same is true of cases occurring in the decline of life. Epileptiform neuralgia is said to be incurable.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of neuralgia is divided into that of the

*condition predisposing* to it and of the *paroxysm*. The anemias—especially chlorosis—malaria, and other predisposing causes should be corrected by quinin, iron, and arsenic. Good nourishing food is important. Change of scene and residence is often necessary. Reflex causes should be carefully sought for and removed. Until these predisposing causes are removed, the treatment of the paroxysm affords but temporary relief.

For the paroxysm quinin is by far the most efficient remedy, and will cure many cases. Two or 3 grains (0.12 to 0.194 gm.) should be given hourly until the paroxysm is relieved or decided cinchonism is produced. The salicylate of cinchonidia is a valuable preparation. Some cases are relieved by phenacetin or antifebrin (acetanilid) in from 10 to 15 grain (0.66 to 1 gm.) doses. A combination of phenacetin and caffein, 3 grains (0.33 gm.) of the former and 1 (0.11 gm.) of the latter each, in hourly doses, is often efficient. Some cases can only be relieved by sulphate of morphin. The hypodermic injection is the promptest and surest remedy, in doses of from 1/8 to 1/4 grain (0.008 to 0.016 gm.), but morphin is a drug to be avoided in neuralgia, if possible, as the danger of acquiring the morphin habit is extremely great. The patient should never be allowed to use the hypodermic syringe himself. The use of anodynes is sometimes more than palliative, the repeated removal of the pain tending to prevent its recurrence. The combination of atrophin with morphin undoubtedly modifies the unpleasant effect of the latter drug and increases its efficiency.

Belladonna, and its active principle, atropin, are remedies which have long enjoyed reputation in the treatment of neuralgia, when uncombined with other drugs, but in my hands they have been feeble remedies. The doses recommended are from 1/6 to 1/2 grain (0.011 to 0.03 gm.) of the extract and from 1/120 to 1/60 grain (0.0005 to 0.0011 gm.) of atropin. Aconite and gelsemium have also some reputation, especially in neuralgia of the fifth nerve. Gelsemium may be given in doses of 15 minims (0.92 c.c.) of the tincture, frequently repeated. Gelsemia may be given hypodermically in doses of from 1/60 to 1/30 grain (0.0011 to 0.0022 gm.), and aconitin in doses of from 1/250 to 1/100 grain (0.00027 to 0.00066 gm.), but the latter is a remedy so dangerous that I rarely employ it. Cannabis indica is also sometimes useful in doses of 1/4 grain (0.016 gm.) three times a day or oftener, but the drug varies so much in strength that it cannot be relied upon.

Local applications are sometimes very useful. Pressure relieves many mild cases, especially when associated with gentle friction. Local anesthetics, such as menthol, the ointments of veratria and aconitia, are similarly useful; so is the tincture of aconite painted over the involved area. The local use of opiates, at least without first removing the epidermis, and of atropin (five per cent. strength), is, however, commended. The extract of belladonna, diluted with glycerin so as to admit its being smeared on, is sometimes useful. Frequent renewals of all these local applications should be made in the course of the day. Counterirritation by blisters or sinapisms, by chloroform either pure or variously diluted, and by camphor may be used. The last two may be applied on lint and covered with oiled silk. Both will blister if left on too long.

*Cocain* might be reasonably expected to be useful, but to act through

the skin the ointments and solutions containing it should be strong—from 10 to 15 per cent. For mucous surfaces this strength should be used with caution. A cocain habit is as easily established as morphinism, and is about as unpleasant in its results, though more easily cured. The hypodermic injection of cocain is much more efficient. The usual dose is  $1/4$  grain (0.016 gm.), but smaller doses may be commenced with. The Paquelin cautery is often a prompt and efficient agent.

*Acupuncture* and *aquapuncture* are employed, the latter consisting of injecting water under the skin. For their local effect, also, *chloroform*, *carbolic acid*, and *osmic acid* have been injected *hypodermically*. From 15 to 20 minims (0.92 c.c. to 1.23 c.c.) of the first may be used, from 5 to 10 minims (0.31 c.c. to 0.62 c.c.) of the second, and 1 or 2 drops of a one per cent. solution of osmic acid in water and glycerin. Chloroform should be cautiously used in this manner, as it may occasion ugly sloughing. It is more especially in sciatica that these measures have been employed. *Local* applications of *heat* and *cold* have been found useful—cold by freezing or by the ether spray; heat by the hot-water bag, or in the case of a supra-orbital neuralgia, by the nasal douche. Heat is usually more efficient than cold; indeed, the latter sometimes aggravates neuralgia.

*Electricity* is of uncertain value in neuralgia, but is sometimes very useful. The constant current is the form most frequently used, but faradism may also be employed. It is used in two ways: a strong current is applied at once with a view to removing the neuralgia promptly (this is scarcely to be recommended); in the second method a sedative effect is sought by a weak current, preferably of galvanism, just sufficient to produce a tingling or burning sensation. Experience goes to show that the direction of the current may be ignored, but it is commonly recommended to apply the positive pole to the painful part, the sponge being well wet with warm water, and if faradism is used, it should be with rapid interruptions.

The *surgical treatment* of neuralgia has been followed by brilliant results, and has met signal failures. The most common procedure is division of a nerve, or, better, the exsection of a portion of the nerve. It has been most frequently done in the case of the fifth nerve, and is almost always followed by temporary relief, but, sooner or later, an operation on the Gasserian ganglion usually becomes necessary. Operation is to be recommended in intractable cases, and should be done at a point as near the origin of the nerve as possible, as second operations are not infrequently necessary on account of the recurrence of the pain.

*Nerve stretching* is also performed with a measure of relief less thorough than exsection, but in view of the fact that its disadvantages are less lasting, it is the better operation to do first in the case of certain nerves. It is important to remember that relief does not always immediately follow the operation. The sciatic is the nerve most frequently stretched, but the procedure is not to be recommended. The intercostals and branches of the fifth, including the lingual, have been similarly treated with satisfactory results. The removal of the Gasserian ganglion affords relief in tic douloureux, and, while a serious operation, is to be employed when the pain is intense and does not yield to other treatment.

## TUMORS OF NERVES.

*Definition and Morbid Anatomy.*—Strictly speaking, the term neuroma should be restricted to tumors composed purely of nervous tissue, which are to be distinguished from *fibrous tumors* or *fibromata*, often seated on nerves and known as *false neuromata*. Some, however, dispute the existence of true neuromata, and they are certainly very uncommon. Another form of false neuroma is a variety of the small, subcutaneous, painful tumor—*tubercula dolorosa*—occurring in nerves of the skin in the neighborhood of the joints, on the face and on the breast. Myxomata, sarcomata, and even carcinomata are found in connection with nerves. The latter are commonly the result of extension by contiguity, infiltrating the connective tissue between the fibers. The nervous tissue represented in the true neuroma is usually fibrous, but very rarely ganglionic nerve-cells are found, and in such event the tumor may be regarded either as dislocated nerve tissue or as a glioma the cells of which closely resemble true nerve-cells. The nervous tissue may be of the medullated or non-medullated variety—*i. e.*, myelinic or non-myelinic. Connective tissue varying in quantity is associated with both, producing various degrees of hardness, which is most striking in the multiple fibro-neuroma.

An interesting variety is the *plexiform neuroma*, nodular and tortuous in appearance to the naked eye, the internal structure of which is composed also of interlacing nodular and tortuous nervous cords made up of connective tissue and nerve fibers. It is most frequently found in connection with the fifth pair of nerves in the orbit, on the upper eyelid, or on the temporal bone, but is seen also in connection with any of the spinal and even sympathetic nerves. It grows slowly, and probably begins in fetal life.

Fibromata of nerves are usually small, but may be three or four inches (7.5 to 10 cm.) in diameter and even larger. They are usually found seated in nerve trunks, or at their ends, are often multiple, and their number is sometimes large.

**Etiology.**—Nerve tumors which are not congenital may be traumatic. More than one member of a family has been found affected. Their growth seems stimulated by perversion in the healing process, since they are found on the ends of nerves in cicatrices after amputation. Growths of this character are truly neuro-fibromata, the others are usually fibromata.

**Symptoms.**—Neuromata may be totally without symptoms. At other times they are very painful, the *pain* being aggravated by pressure. There may be *numbness* and *formication* and even *loss of sensation* on the one hand, *muscular twitching* and *paralysis* on the other, the latter especially when the tumor is in the course of the nerve.

Neuromata of the cauda equina may cause paraplegia. Reflex spasm in adjacent or distant muscles, and even epileptiform convulsions, are occasionally present. A neuroma may give rise to visible swelling, or it may be beneath the surface out of sight and touch.

**Diagnosis.**—Except in the case of plexiform neuroma, which has a characteristic form described, the exact diagnosis of the variety of nerve tumor can for the most part be made only by microscopic examination

after removal, since all the symptoms occasioned by true neuroma may be caused by pressure on nerves by any form of morbid growth. Multiple neuromata are usually false neuromata.

**Prognosis.**—Nerve tumors rarely cause death, though they sometimes undergo malignant change, and in this way cause a fatal termination. The extreme pain which is so characteristic may in time exhaust a patient, but the course of the disease is always prolonged.

**Treatment.**—Excision is the proper treatment for neuromata and all other forms of tumors connected with nerves, if they can be reached, and if the symptoms demand active treatment. Often such treatment is not demanded. If syphilitic origin be suspected, syphilitic treatment should be adopted. In operations involving section of a nerve trunk the possibility of loss of function is to be remembered.

Local anodyne applications may be used to palliate in mild cases, but they are useless in severe ones. Cocain in doses of from  $\frac{1}{6}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.011 to 0.033 gm.) may be injected hypodermically, but morphin should not be used, as the conditions are especially favorable to the production of morphinism.

## AFFECTIONS OF THE SPINAL CORD.

**Anatomical.**—The spinal cord, covered by its membranes, the dura and pia arachnoid, hangs loosely in the spinal canal from the atlas to the second lumbar vertebra. It is, therefore, much shorter than the spinal canal itself. The remainder of the canal is occupied by the cauda equina. Each pair of spinal nerve-roots arises above the foramen of exit, and descends to the latter within the canal. The uppermost cervical roots leave the spinal canal about on a level with their point of origin. The part of the cord whence each pair arises is known as the *segment of that particular pair of nerves*. The following from Deaver's "Surgical Anatomy" locates with sufficient accuracy the origin of these nerves: "The eight cervical nerves arise above the sixth cervical spine, the upper six thoracic nerves between the sixth cervical and fourth thoracic spines, the lower six thoracic nerves between the fourth and 11th thoracic spines, the five lumbar nerves between the 11th and 12th thoracic spines, and the five sacral nerves between the last thoracic and first lumbar spines." (See Fig. 96.)

In transverse section the cord is easily seen by the naked eye to be made up of central gray matter and external white substance. The former is composed largely of cells, the latter of fibers. The gray matter, roughly comparable to two crescents placed back to back, reaches the surface only by its posterior horns, where the posterior roots of the spinal nerves enter. The broad, blunt anterior cornua do not reach the surface, but the white fibers of the anterior roots are seen perforating the white matter to enter the gray. The cord is separated into halves by the anterior median fissure, and by the posterior median septum, which is not a fissure.

At the bottom of the anterior median fissure is the transverse commissure of white matter, in front of the central spinal canal. A short distance to the outside of the posterior median septum is another less distinct septum, the *posterior intermediate septum*, which bounds the *posterior median column* or column of Goll, which does not extend as a distinct column below the thoracic portion of the cord. Outside of this, bounded by the posterior horn, is the *posterior external column*, or column of Burdach, limited in like manner to the cervical and thoracic parts of the cord. The *antero-lateral column* is divided by a line coinciding with the outermost of the anterior nerve roots, and thus is made an anterior and a lateral column. The white matter is composed of the usual medullated nerve fibers unprovided with neurilemma and of neuroglia supporting the nerve fibers. The further divisions of the cord in transverse section are clearly indicated in Fig. 98, representing a transverse section of the cord in the cervical region, with description.

Of these parts, the anterior (or direct) pyramidal tract, the lateral (or crossed) pyramidal tract (adjacent to the posterior cornua), and the anterior cornua may be characterized, generally speaking, as motor, while the posterior columns, the *direct cerebellar tract*, the antero-lateral ascending tract of Gowers, part of the antero-lateral ground fibers, and the *posterior cornua*, may be described as sensory.

The white matter gradually diminishes as the cord is descended. The

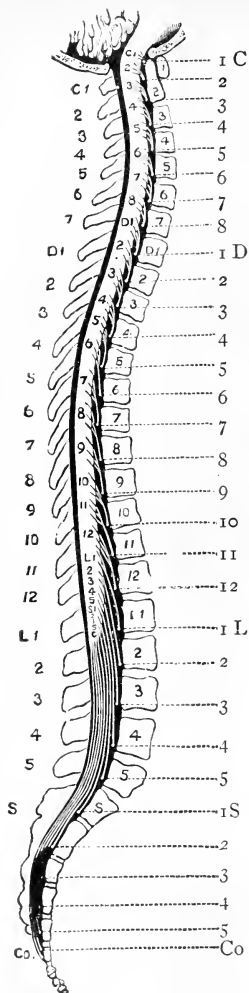


FIG. 96.—Diagram from an Original Investigation by W. R. Growers, Showing Relation of Vertebral Spines to their Bodies and to the Nerve-roots.

Only in the lumbar region are the ends of the vertebral spines opposite the middle of their bodies. They correspond to the lower edge of their bodies in the cervical and at the last two dorsal; and to the upper part of the body below them in the rest of the dorsal region. (See also text.)

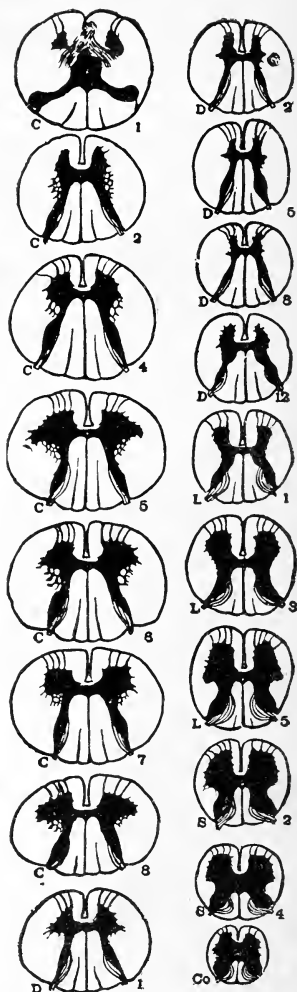


FIG. 97.—Diagram Showing Relative Size and Shape of the Cord and Gray matter at Different Levels—(after Growers).



gray matter also varies in extent and shape at different levels, which will be appreciated by the examination of Fig. 97, which explains itself. It should be added that certain tracts described, and at present chiefly of interest to the anatomist, are not included in this diagram. Mention should be made of *Clarke's column*, a group of nerve-cells in the inner part of the neck of the posterior horn, from the upper thoracic to the second lumbar, also known as the lateral fascicular column. Scattered cells in the cervical region form the continuation of this column. In the upper thoracic and lower cervical regions, a group of cells projects outward from the gray matter into the lateral column, called by Lockhart Clarke the *intermediolateral process*, but well named also the lateral horn. The *lateral or crossed pyramidal tracts*, representing about three-fourths of the motor fibers passing down from the cortex, decussate at the lower part of the anterior

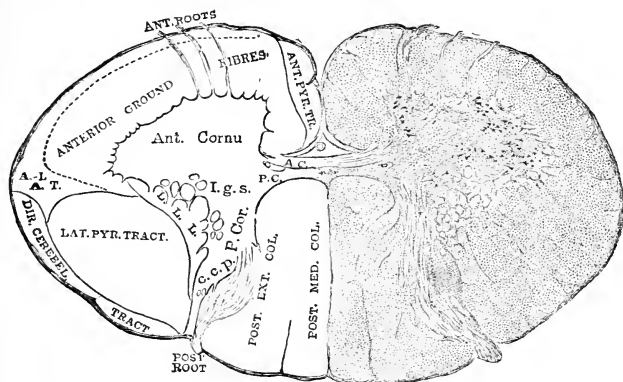


FIG. 98.—Section of Spinal Cord in the Cervical Region—(after Gowers).

A. C. Anterior commissure. P. C. Posterior commissure. I. g. s. Intermediary gray substance, the gray matter between the two horns. P. cor. Posterior cornu. C. C. P. Caput cornu posterioris. L. L. L. Lateral limiting layer. A. L. A. T. Anteriolateral ascending tract of Gowers, which extends along the periphery of the cord.

pyramids. The remaining fibers of the pyramidal tract, which do not decussate, pass down the same side of the cord in the inner part of the antero-lateral column, constituting the *anterior or direct pyramidal tract*, also known as *Türk's column*.

At every level of the spinal cord, axis-cylinders leave the crossed pyramidal tract to enter the anterior horns and end about the cell bodies of the lower motor neurons. This tract extends nearly to the end of the cord, but becomes smaller and smaller. The fibers of the direct anterior or pyramidal tract possibly cross at different levels in the anterior white commissure, to end about the nerve-cells in the anterior horn on the opposite side of the cord. If primarily small, this tract may not extend beyond the middle of the cervical enlargement. If originally large, it may be traced as far as the lumbar enlargement, or even into the sacral part of the cord. Throughout the greater part of the cervical and thoracic regions the lateral pyramidal tract is separated from the surface by a narrow layer of fibers, the *direct cerebellar tract*, which in the upper cervical region lies further

forward, so that the pyramidal tract comes to the surface close to the posterior horn.

The axis-cylinder processes forming the *anterior roots* of the spinal nerves start from the nerve-cells in the anterior cornua of the segment

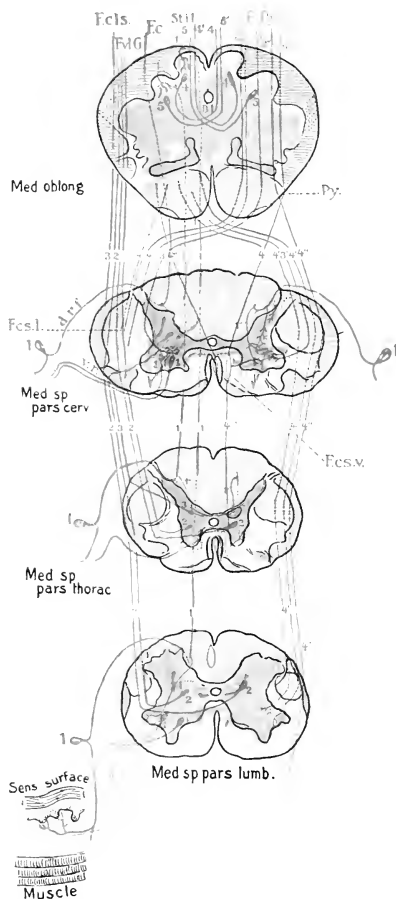


FIG. 99.—Sensory and Motor Paths in the Spinal Cord—(after Barker).

whence these roots arise, and after uniting with the posterior roots within the dura pass out to be distributed to the muscles they supply.

The relation of the axis-cylinders of the *posterior roots* after they enter the cord is not, however, so simple. It has already been said (p. 929) that the single process which leaves the cell in the ganglion on the posterior roots of the spinal nerves (Fig. 86) divides in a T-shaped manner, one limb traversing the spinal nerve to the periphery of the body, the other passing

to the spinal cord as an axis-cylinder. After entering the cord each axis-cylinder process again divides into an ascending and a descending limb, which run in the posterior columns. The descending branch runs a short distance and ends in the gray matter of the same side of the cord. The ascending branch may end in the gray matter soon after entering it or may run upward in the posterior columns to the medulla oblongata, ending probably in the nuclei situated in the posterior columns of the medulla oblongata (nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus), remaining up to this point on the same side of the middle line. From the nuclei of the posterior columns of the medulla oblongata the axis-cylinder processes, after crossing, run toward the brain, form the fillet, into which possibly enter also the ascending fibers of the lateral column containing the crossed fibers of the upper sensory neurons. The exact termination of sensory processes in the cerebral hemispheres is not known. The position of the tract in the crus and internal capsule is posterior. The lower sensory neurons also have endings in the cells or about the cells in Clarke's column, from which cells the axis-cylinders run in the direct cerebellar tract of the same side; also about cells the axis-cylinder processes of which run but a short distance in the cord to end in the gray matter at a different level. Thus the possible paths of sensory conduction, probably many, are not definitely determined, whence disturbances of sensation do not give us so much help in topical diagnosis as those of motion. It may, however, be said in summary that cutaneous sensory impulses in man are conducted toward the brain chiefly on the opposite side of the cord. The crossing of sensory impulses takes place partly in the central gray matter soon after the path enters the cord, and partly after the fibers leave the higher nuclei in the posterior columns of the medulla oblongata.

The *muscular sense* "or sense of position" is probably conducted on the same side of the cord in the posterior columns, to cross in the medulla oblongata, and we have some evidence that the tactile fibers ascend in the posterior columns. *Thermal* and *pain impulses* probably cross to the anterolateral columns of the other side very soon after entering the cord, and possibly ascend in Gowers' tract.

**Spinal Cord Localization.**—It has already been said that the areas of distribution of spinal nerves, sensory and motor, are not sharply defined for each nerve as it emanates from the spinal cord, and that the regions supplied by these nerves overlap. At the same time physiologists and clinicians have been able to map out with approximate accuracy the motor and sensory areas corresponding to the distribution of each pair of nerves emanating from different segments of the cord. Among those who have especially devoted themselves to this subject are M. Allen Starr, Charles K. Mills, and Charles L. Dana in America, and William Thorburn and Henry Head in England.

The results of various observers differ in detail, but agree in essentials. The appended table is that originally devised by Starr, further modified by C. L. Dana and C. K. Mills.

It must not be forgotten that these areas of distribution correspond to a nerve *constituted as it is when it emanates from a corresponding segment of the cord*, and not to a nerve as it is constituted immediately before it begins to spread.

## LOCALIZATION OF THE FUNCTIONS OF THE SEGMENTS OF THE SPINAL CORD.

SEGMENT.	MUSCLES.	REFLEX AND CENTERS.	SENSATION.
I C.	Rectus lateralis. Rectus capitis. Anticus and posticus. Sterno-hyoid. Sterno-thyroid.		
II and III C.	Sterno-mastoid. Trapezius. Scaleni and neck. Omo-hyoid. Diaphragm.	<i>Hypochondrium</i> (?). Sudden inspiration produced by sudden pressure beneath the lower border of ribs.	Back of head to vertex and neck. (Occipitalis major, occipitalis minor, auricularis magnus, superficialis colli, and supraclavicular.)
IV C.	Diaphragm. Deltoid. Biceps. Coraco-brachialis. Supinator longus. Rhomboid. Supra- and infra-spinatus.	<i>Pupillary</i> (4th cervical to 2d dorsal). Dilatation of the pupil produced by irritation of neck.	Neck. Shoulder, anterior surface. Outer arm. (Supraclavicular, circumflex, external musculocutaneous, cutaneous.)
V C.	Deltoid. Biceps. Coraco-brachialis. Brachialis anticus. Supinator longus. Supinator brevis. Deep muscles of shoulder-blade. Rhomboid. Teres minor. Pectoralis (clavicular part). Serratus magnus.	<i>Scapular</i> (5th cervical to 1st dorsal). Irritation of skin over the scapular produces contraction of scapular muscles. <i>Supinator longus</i> . Tapping the tendon of the supinator longus produces flexion of forearm.	Back of shoulder and arm. Outer side of arm and forearm to the wrist. (Supraclavicular, circumflex, external cutaneous, internal cutaneous, posterior spinal branches.)
VI C.	Deltoid. Biceps. Brachialis anticus. Subscapular. Pectoralis (clavicular part). Serratus magnus. Triceps. Pronators. Rhomboid. Latissimus dorsi.	<i>Triceps</i> (5th to 6th cervical). Tapping elbow tendon produces extension of forearm. <i>Posterior wrist</i> (6th to 8th cervical). Tapping tendons causes extension of hand.	Outer side and front of forearm. Back of hand, radial distribution. (Chiefly external cutaneous, internal cutaneous, radial.)
VII C.	Triceps (long head). Extensors of wrist and fingers. Pronators of wrist. Flexors of wrist. Subscapular. Pectoralis (costal part). Serratus magnus. Latissimus dorsi. Teres major.	<i>Anterior wrist</i> (7th to 8th cervical). Tapping anterior tendons causes flexion of wrist. <i>Palmar</i> (7th cervical to 1st dorsal). Stroking palm causes closure of fingers.	Radial distribution in the hand. Median distribution in the palm, thumb, index, and one-half middle finger. (External cutaneous, internal cutaneous, radial, median, posterior, spinal branches.)
VIII C.	Triceps (long head). Flexors of wrist and fingers. Intrinsic hand muscles.	.....	Ulnar area of hand, back, and palm, inner border of forearm. (Internal cutaneous, ulnar.)
I D.	Extensors of thumb. Intrinsic hand muscles. Thenar and hypothenar muscles.	.....	Chiefly inner side of forearm and arm to near the axilla. (Chiefly internal cutaneous and nerve of Wrisberg or lesser internal cutaneous.)
II D.	.....	.....	Inner side of arm near and in axilla. (Intercostohumeral.)
II to XII D.	Muscles of back and abdomen. Erectors spinæ.	<i>Epigastric</i> (4th to 7th dorsal). Tickling mammary region causes retraction of the epigastrium. <i>Abdominal</i> (7th to 11th dorsal). Stroking side of abdomen causes retraction of belly. Vasomotor centers. Second dorsal to 2d lumbar.	Skin of chest and abdomen, in bands running around and downward, corresponding to spinal nerves. Upper gluteal region. (Intercostals and dorsal posterior nerves.)
I L.	None.	<i>Cremasteric</i> (1st to 3d lumbar). Stroking inner thigh causes retraction of scrotum.	Skin over groin and front of scrotum. (Ilio-hypogastric, ilio-inguinal.)
II L.	Vastus internus.	<i>Patellar</i> . Striking patellar tendon causes extension of leg.	Outer side and upper front of thigh. Lumbar region. (Genito-crural, external cutaneous.)

## LOCALIZATION OF THE FUNCTIONS OF THE SEGMENTS OF THE SPINAL CORD—(Continued).

SEGMENT.	MUSCLES.	REFLEX AND CENTERS.	SENSATION.
III L.	Sartorius; adductors of thigh. Flexors of thigh.	. . . . .	Front and outer side of thigh. Inner side of leg and foot.
IV L.	Extensors of knee. Abductors of thigh.	<i>Gluteal</i> (4th to 5th lumbar). Stroking buttock causes dimpling in fold of buttock.	Inner side of thigh, leg, and foot. (Internal cutaneous, long saphenous, obturator.)
V L.	Outward rotators. Flexors of knee. Flexors of ankle. Peronei. Extensors of toes.	<i>Achilles tendon.</i> Overexten- sion causes rapid flexion of ankle, called ankle clonus.	Back of thigh and outer side of leg and ankle; sole; dorsum of foot. (External popliteal, external saph- enous, musculo-cutaneous, plantar.)
I and II S.	Calf muscles. Glutei. Peronei. Extensors of ankle. Small muscles of foot.	<i>Plantar</i> (5th lumbar to 2d sacral). Tickling sole of foot causes flexion of toes and retraction of leg.	Back of buttock and thigh, side of leg and ankle; sole; dorsum of foot.
III to V S.	Perineal. Muscles of bladder, rectum, and external genitals.	Genital center. Vesical center. Anal center.	Circum-anal region, anus, rectum, penis, urethra, vagina, perineum. (Small sciatic, pudic, inferior hemorrhoidal, in- ferior pudendal.)

The preceding table includes only the distribution of spinal nerves.

The following table includes the distribution of nerves starting from the nuclei in the pons and medulla oblongata, so far as these are concerned with motion:

*Nuclei.**Muscles.*

III Cranial.	{ Sphincter iris. Ciliary muscle. Levator palpebræ superioris. Rectus internus in convergence. Superior rectus. Inferior rectus. Obliquus inferioris.
IV Cranial.	{ Obliquus superioris. (Upper facial group.)
VI Cranial.	{ Rectus externus. Rectus internus of opposite side in lateral movements.
V Cranial.	{ Associated movement of levator palpebræ. Muscles of the lower jaw.
VII Cranial.	{ Facial muscles.
XII Cranial.	{ Lower facial group. Muscles of tongue.
IX Cranial.	{ Muscles of pharynx.
X Cranial.	{ Muscles of esophagus.
XI Cranial.	{ Muscles of larynx.

The study of the sensory areas is facilitated by the use of diagrams in which the areas are mapped out and indicated by color or a shading which will permit one to separate them easily one from another, like those annexed, in which, too, the areas corresponding to each spinal segment are indicated by suitable lettering.

Interpreting by the data contained in tables and diagrams such motor or sensory derangements as may be present, one may deduce with more or less accuracy the seat of the lesions in the cord producing them. It has been mentioned that motor localization, being more definite, its arrangement permits more exact inference than sensory derangements.

The union of both adds further facility. Results vary also according as a lesion involves only one-half or a complete section of the cord. Recall-

ing the distribution of the two tracts, as given on page 983, it is evident that an injury involving the *entire transverse section* of the cord must produce, *first*, motor paralysis in all parts supplied with nerves emanating from segments below it. In less complete lesions correspondingly limited degree and extent of motor paralysis succeed. Such paralysis may extend to the bladder and rectum. After complete or nearly complete section the muscles are usually flaccid and the deep reflexes absent. There is no rapidly developing atrophy, and the muscles respond normally to electricity. No satisfactory explanation has as yet been offered of the abolition of the

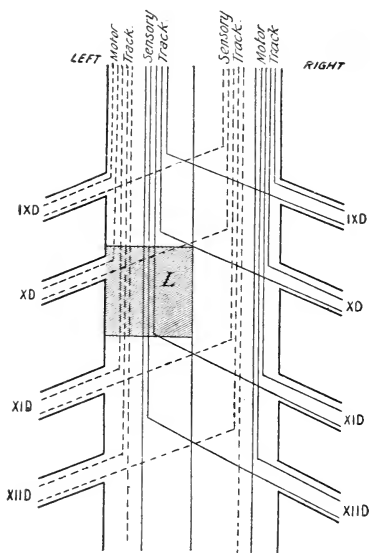


FIG. 100.—Diagram of Lesion Showing Brown-Sequard's Paralysis—(after Starr).

*L.* Lesion in left half of cord cuts off motor impulses to left leg, sensory impulses from right leg, and sensory impulses from eleventh dorsal nerve.

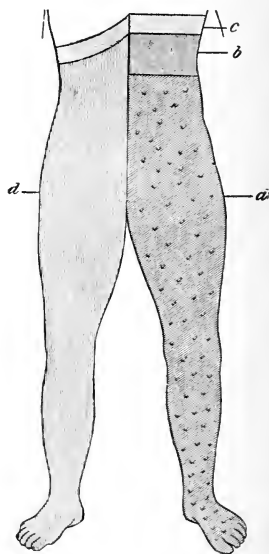


FIG. 101.—Scheme Showing Chief Symptoms in Left Unilateral Lesion of the Dorsal Cord—(after Erb).

Oblique shading at *a* signifies motor and vasomotor paralysis; vertical shading cutaneous anesthesia at *b* and *d*; dots on a cutaneous hyperaesthesia. *b.* Small anesthetic zone. *c.* Small hyperesthetic zone.

deep reflexes in complete or nearly complete transverse lesion of the cord above the level of the reflex arcs; although neuritis is supposed by some to be the cause of this loss of the deep reflexes, it is probably not the cause in all cases. *Second*, there is impaired sensibility in the parts supplied by sensory nerves associated with corresponding segments below the lesion. Anesthesia does not, however, reach quite to the level of the lesion, because of the overlapping of sensory areas by nerves which enter the cord above the section. Thus, if the section be in the segment of the sixth thoracic, the anesthesia may extend only as high as the area supplied by the seventh.

Moreover, above the anesthetic area there is also at times an area of increased sensibility—the effect of the section possibly being to increase the sensitiveness of the cord above it by increasing its vascularity—due to section of vasomotor nerves by the lesion. By means of these facts we may be enabled to ascertain the level of the disease.

*Muscular* sense or sense of position is lost. *Reflex excitability*, at first slightly impaired, may subsequently be increased when the lesion is not complete and is above the reflex arcs, but may remain impaired in complete transverse lesions of the cord or in those portions of the body whose reflex arcs are situated in the damaged region of the cord.

The phenomena are modified if the lesion be a *hemi-lesion* of the cord. In such an event there is, *first*, motor paralysis in the portion of the body on the same side supplied by nerves whose cells of origin are below the lesion (Figs. 100 and 101), varying, however, with the seat of the lesion. If the lesion is in the cervical part of the cord, the motor paralysis is of the arm and leg on the same side, while if in the lumbar part of the cord there is loss of motion in the leg only of the same side. On the other hand, there is diminished sensibility in the arm and leg of the opposite side. The anesthesia may be to pain and to thermic sense only, the tactile sense being unimpaired. Such anesthesia exists on the *opposite* side, because of the fact, already mentioned, that one of the many routes of sensory impressions crosses the cord soon after it enters it from the periphery.

More than this: the sensibility on the *same* side, below the segment of the lesion, so far from being diminished as to touch, pain, and temperature, may even be slightly increased, possibly owing to the vasomotor paralysis caused by the lesion, in consequence of which, too, there may be a slight rise of temperature on the same side. Slight pricks may be painful, and the soles of the feet may be unusually sensitive. In the area corresponding exactly to the segment involved on the same side there is anesthesia, while just above it on the same side, again, there is a small zone of hyperesthesia. The anesthesia is due to the fact that the sensory nerves coming from the same side are cut just as they enter the cord. It begins somewhat lower down than the exact seat of the lesion, because of the overlapping of the upper sensory area. The hyperesthesia in the lower portions of the body on the side of the lesion has been said to be inexplicable, but may it not depend on hyperemia due to section of vasoconstrictor nerves? It may be for this reason also that the temperature is higher on the side of the lesion—from 1° to 2° F. (0.5° to 1° C.). The upper hyperesthetic zone above the anesthetic area on the side of the lesion may be explained as the result of irritation of sensory nerve fibers entering just above the lesion. The muscular sense or sense of position on the same side is impaired, a condition ascribed by Brown-Séquard to the fact that the fibers of this sense run on the same side uncrossed, and probably in the posterior columns, until the medulla oblongata is reached. Reflex excitability, at first diminished on the side of lesion, is subsequently increased and there is often a good ankle clonus, explainable by the interruption of the inhibiting influence from above.

The phenomena detailed in the foregoing paragraph are those of the so-called *Brown-Séquard's paralysis*, due to unilateral lesion of the spinal

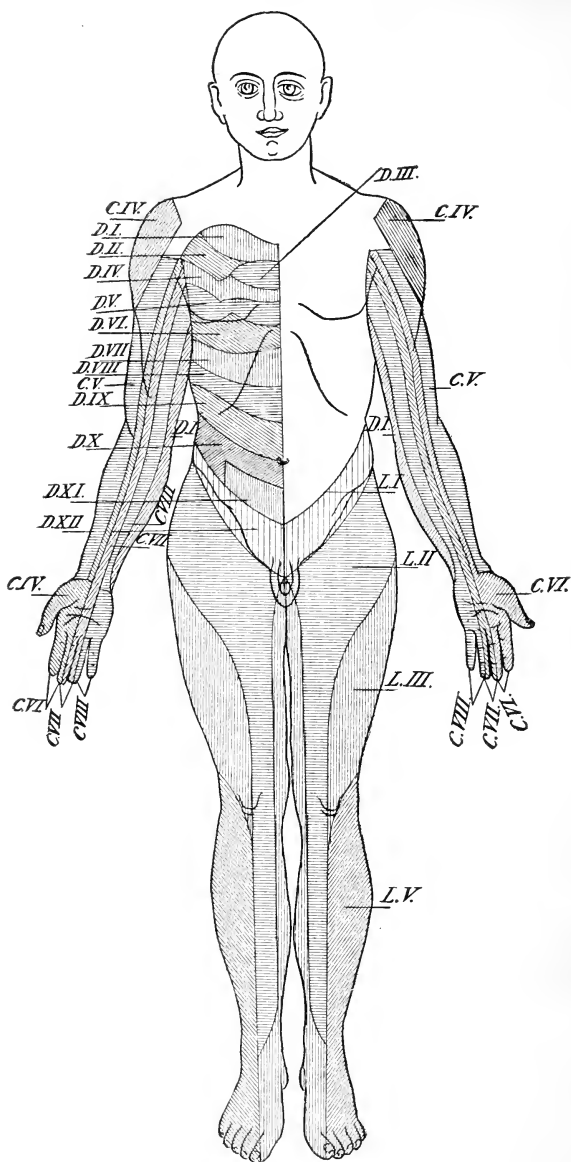


FIG. 102.—Diagram of Skin Areas Corresponding to Different Spinal Segments—(chiefly after Starr. Trunk areas from Head).  
Roman numerals refer to nerves.



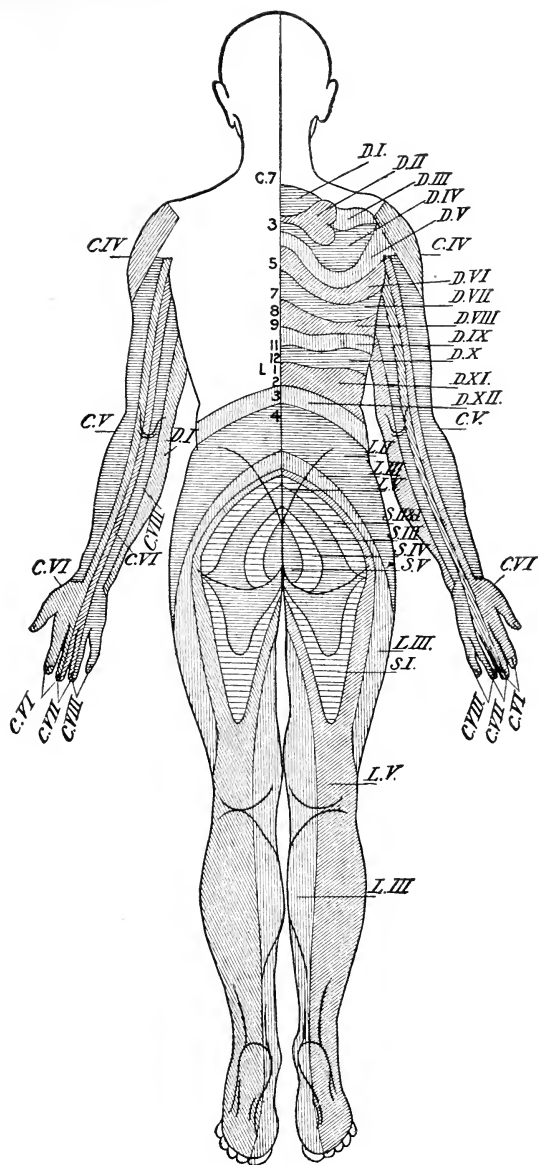


FIG. 103.—Diagram of Skin Areas Corresponding to Different Spinal Segments—(chiefly after Starr. Trunk areas from Head).

Arabic numerals refer to vertebrae, Roman to nerves.

cord, caused by knife-cuts, stabs, by pressure from tumors or inflammatory products, especially syphilitic.

On the opposite side muscular power is intact, sensibility is impaired, and the derangement may include the senses of pain, touch, and temperature, or any one or two, touch usually escaping; there is no elevation of temperature, the muscular sense is intact, and reflex action is normal.

All these results, as described, may be produced by the experiments on the spinal cord originally suggested by Brown-Séquard, which included also section along the median line of the spinal cord, which impaired sensation on both sides, leaving motion intact. So far as completed, minute anatomical studies furnish results quite consistent with the derangements of motion produced by diseased states, and, to less extent, also with the morbid phenomena of sensation as illustrated by disease. Thus, anatomy, experiment and pathology contribute to the same conclusion. It should be mentioned, however, that the explanation of the Brown-Séquard type of paralysis here given has not been fully accepted.

More circumscribed lesions produce more limited results. Thus, a local lesion may produce paralysis in only a few groups of muscles. Destructive lesion of the anterior cornua produces lower segment paralysis in the parts innervated by nerves arising in the injured cornua, with secondary degeneration and muscular atrophy, the reaction of degeneration, diminished reflexes, and diminished muscular tension.

Irritative lesions in the central motor tract cause spastic conditions, including exaggerated tendon reflexes, all of which have been described. More commonly such symptoms are the result of diminished inhibition of the brain.

It is also a matter of importance to know whether a lesion lies in a nerve or in the cord itself. Frequently this is at once apparent. At other times it is more difficult to settle. It has already been said that hemiplegias are almost invariably cerebral in their origin, while paraplegias are usually of nerve origin or spinal. It is chiefly with localized palsies that difficulties in diagnosis arise. Etiology aids us somewhat. Thus, localized palsies succeeding localized exposure to cold are likely to be peripheral. Some assistance is rendered if there be an associated anesthesia. Thus, if a part be anesthetic and palsied as to motion, and if the same nerve supplies sensory and motor fibers to the muscles, the lesion is in that nerve. If, on the other hand, the muscles are supplied by several nerves from a given segment of the cord, and the anesthesia corresponds to the area of distribution of nerves from the same segment of the cord, the lesion is probably in the cord or in the nerves at their origin from it.

### Affections of the Membranes of the Cord.

As in the case of the brain, the dura mater and pia arachnoid may be separate seats of disease, chiefly inflammatory, not quite so well understood nor quite so definitely separated in their clinical features. As in the case of the brain, too, we call inflammation of the dura mater pachymeningitis; of the pia mater, leptomeningitis.

## SPINAL PACHYMEINGITIS.

The dura mater is separated by loose connective tissue from the bony canal which surrounds it, and an inflammation may invade this outer or the inner layer, affording a *pachymeningitis externa* or *interna*, though it is not easy to separate these two conditions symptomatically or even anatomically as the external form is likely to extend to the inner layer and even the pia mater.

**EXTERNAL PACHYMEINGITIS.**—This is usually secondary to disease of the vertebræ or similar morbid processes or to trauma or aneurysmal erosion. While an acute condition may thus supervene, it is much more commonly chronic.

**Etiology and Morbid Anatomy.**—Perhaps its most frequent cause is tuberculosis of the spine, with its pathological cheesy product and its traumatic result—the spinal curvature known as Pott's disease. It may be confined to a limited area, corresponding to the primary seat of the disease, or it may extend over a large area of the meninges, corresponding to six or eight vertebræ. As already mentioned, such inflammations spread to the inner layer and pia.

**Symptoms.**—These are those of the vertebral lesion, together with those of the internal form detailed below.

**INTERNAL PACHYMEINGITIS.**—This occurs in two forms, first as an inflammation of the internal layer of the dura, usually confined, primarily, at least, to the cervical part of the cord. It was first fully described by Charcot in 1871, and later by his pupil Joffroy, under the name of "*pachymeningitis cervicalis hypertrophica*"; second, as a *pachymeningitis interna hæmorrhagica*, in every way anatomically identical with the same disease to be described in connection with the dura of the brain.

**Etiology and Morbid Anatomy.**—Cervical hypertrophic pachymeningitis, ascribed to exposure to cold, to the abuse of alcohol, and to syphilis, is a chronic process, consisting in an accumulation on the inner surface of the dura of concentric layers of a firm, fibrinous growth, covering either a small extent or a considerable portion of the cervical enlargement, and sometimes causing adhesions of the dura to the pia.

**Symptoms.**—To the subjective symptoms of the inflammation itself are naturally added compression symptoms, which, in fact, overshadow the former. The former include *pain*, not merely at the seat of inflammation in the back, but also in the area of distribution of the spinal nerves, the roots of which are involved in the process.

The compression of the cord and of the nerve-roots which are involved produces symptoms divisible into three stages:

1. *The Painful Stage.*—In this there is pain in the region supplied by the nerves whose roots are thus compressed—viz., that of the arms, cervical region, and occiput—pain at times of great severity. In addition are observed paresthesia, numbness, and tingling, rarely herpes.

2. *The Stage of Paralysis of the Upper Extremities.*—After two or three months the second period, or stage of paralysis, sets in—an atrophic paralysis in which there is weakness of the arms, resulting from pressure on

the anterior nerve-roots. The wasting affects certain muscular groups, as the flexors of the hands, supplied by the ulnar and median nerves, while the distribution of the posterior interosseous nerve to the antagonistic extensors remains free. The result is the very striking claw-hand, or *main en griffe*. In extreme cases the atrophy of the arms and shoulders becomes very great. There may be anesthesia of the skin at this stage.

3. *The Stage of Spastic Paralysis in the Lower Extremities*.—If the compression of the cord continues, we reach the third stage of the disease. The motor fibers to the lower extremities which pass through the cervical cord become involved, and the result is a spastic paralysis of the lower extremities—a paresis with *increased reflexes*, and without wasting of the muscle, because the trophic centers for the muscles of the lower extremities in the anterior cornua of the lumbar cord remain intact. In cases of long duration, however, the compression of the cervical cord may lead to anesthesia of the lower extremities, paralysis of the bladder, and bed-sores.

The symptoms of the internal *hemorrhagic* pachymeningitis are not essentially different from those detailed, but are commonly superadded to those of hematoma of the dura mater of the brain, with which it is usually concurrent. It has generally been observed in the same class of persons, general paralytics and drunkards. It may occur at any part of the cord, or it may be limited to the cervical region, producing corresponding symptoms, but it is rarely recognized before death and is an extremely rare finding.

**Diagnosis.**—The superaddition to the symptoms of spinal caries of those detailed as characteristic of spinal pressure determines at once the condition. The forms arising in other ways are to be distinguished from *amyotrophic lateral sclerosis*, *syringomyelia*, and *tumors*. From the first it can be differentiated by the presence of the characteristic severe pain in the neck and arms, and by the absence of bulbar symptoms; from syringomyelia, by the absence of the sensory changes peculiar to that disease; but from tumors in the same locality it is often distinguished with difficulty because the pressure symptoms in both are the same.

**Prognosis.**—Cases are described in which decided improvement has taken place, if not recovery.

**Treatment.**—The usual methods of treating spinal caries by extension or operation constitute the treatment of the external forms thus arising. The symptoms are to be relieved by appropriate measures. Baths, iodid of potassium, counterirritation, and electricity have been recommended.

The first three are reasonable; the last is of doubtful value. Iodid of potassium is indicated in cases of syphilitic origin. Joffroy recommends the application of the hot iron to the neck. Paquelin's cautery would answer the purpose as well.

## SPINAL LEPTOMENINGITIS.

### ACUTE SPINAL LEPTOMENINGITIS.

**Etiology.**—As a disease separate and distinct from epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis, described under infectious diseases, acute spinal leptomeningitis may occur:

1. As the result of tuberculosis, its most common cause. When thus occurring, it is as a tuberculosis infection separate and independent of the tuberculosis extension in Pott's disease.

2. From localization of the poison of the infectious diseases, as syphilis and typhoid fever.

3. As the result of extension by contiguity.

4. Possibly as the result of exposure to cold.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The pathological changes are similar to those of epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis. Injection, accumulation of fluid in the piaarachnoid space, either a serofibrinous or a purulent exudate, round-cell infiltration, and, finally thickening of the membrane, all are more or less in evidence. As determined by the position of the body, the fluid exudate tends to gravitate downward or toward the posterior aspect. Not infrequently the morbid process more or less extensively invades the cord, especially at its peripheral portions, producing a meningomyelitis.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are those of the disease with which the meningitis is associated, in addition to fever and such other symptoms as are the result of vascular derangement and mechanical interference. These have already been detailed under cerebrospinal meningitis, including *pain in the back* of varying severity, *stiffness, sensitiveness of the spine*, symptoms of *irritation of nerve trunks*, and *disturbances of sensation*. The *reflexes* may be increased. Kernig's sign of "flexion contraction" at the knee-joint, described in connection with cerebrospinal fever (p. 172), should be looked for. Examination of the fluid obtained by lumbar puncture is of diagnostic value.

*Paralytic symptoms* are a late and also a rare development. At such time the reflexes are sometimes diminished or abolished on account of the destructive involvement of nerve-roots or of the spinal cord. The urinary and bowel functions are sometimes deranged.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of simple acute meningitis in association with the infectious diseases should not be too hastily made, because of its simulation by these diseases. Such simulation is, however, less common with spinal meningitis than with cerebral. Here, as in cerebral meningitis, the etiological factor may help us out; while, on the other hand, given the disease, the special variety present cannot always be told. The tuberculous form is most easily recognized, because of possible pre-existing symptoms of the disease. Stiffness and pain in the back are not so distinctive as hyperesthesia and pain in distant parts supplied by nerves from the seat of special spinal involvement. Again, cases of spinal meningitis have been found on the autopsy table in which no symptoms were recognized during life.

**Prognosis.**—This is generally unfavorable in all forms. Except in the cerebrospinal form recovery rarely occurs, though it is more likely to occur when the disease is secondary to the infectious diseases.

**Treatment.**—This is mainly symptomatic, and the details are those given under the head of cerebrospinal meningitis.

## CHRONIC SPINAL LEPTOMENINGITIS.

**Etiology.**—So rare is primary chronic meningitis that its existence as a separate disease may be doubted. It may, however, remain as a remnant of an acute inflammation, especially of epidemic meningitis. The possibility of its occurrence secondary to chronic disease of the cord, such as tabes dorsalis, is admitted, but it then almost never gives rise to symptoms. It is regarded as a possible consequence of syphilis and alcoholism.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The distinctive morbid change would be a thickening and opacity of the membrane, and adhesions between the dura and arachnoid, localized or general. Certain white cartilaginous plates sometimes found on the posterior surface of the spinal arachnoid are not to be regarded as inflammatory.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms would be those described in connection with the acute form, milder in degree and less definite. In fact, the diagnosis is rarely made. A long-continued, otherwise inexplicable stiffness in the trunk and extremities would justify suspicion.

**Treatment.**—This is symptomatic. Counterirritation would naturally be indicated if the diagnosis be made; Paquelin's cautery is the best instrument for the purpose.

## HEMORRHAGE INTO THE SPINAL MEMBRANES.

SYNONYMS.—*Hemorrhachis; Meningeal Apoplexy.*

Hemorrhage may take place between the dura mater and its bony column, *extrameningeal*, or within the dura mater, *intrameningeal*. A third variety of spinal hemorrhage, *medullary*, into the substance of the cord, is described elsewhere, p. 1002.

**Etiology.**—Extrameningeal hemorrhage is almost invariably the result of trauma, such as concussion or fracture of the spinal column, puncture, or gunshot wound. The blood comes from the rich plexus of veins that surrounds the dura. A considerable amount of blood may be thus effused without compressing the cord. An aneurysm may burst into the spinal canal with fatal consequences.

Intrameningeal hemorrhage is rare, and is naturally more limited, as are the sources of the hemorrhage. Punctiform hemorrhages, such as occur in cerebrospinal meningitis, are possibly of little significance. Intrameningeal hemorrhages occur sometimes in connection with the infectious diseases, and William Osler observed two such cases in malignant smallpox, while they have been found after death from convulsive diseases, such as epilepsy, tetanus, and strychnin poisoning. So, also, in ventricular apoplexy blood in transit from the fourth ventricle into the meninges is not a very rare finding. Aneurysm of the basilar or vertebral arteries is, however, the most frequent cause of this form of hemorrhage.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms in both varieties are those of pressure on the cord, and may be slight and scarcely recognizable, or decided, with resulting paralysis and pain on the one hand, or anesthesia on the other.

The symptoms are as sudden as is usually the event which causes them. Sometimes, however, the extravasation is slower and the symptoms are correspondingly gradual in their appearance. The absence of all cerebral symptoms from a complex including the above points to spinal rather than cerebral hemorrhage.

The extent of the paralysis and the other nervous symptoms depend on the seat of the hemorrhage. If in the lumbar region, the legs are alone involved, the lower deep reflexes may be absent, and the functions of bladder and rectum are impaired. If in the thoracic, there may be complete paraplegia, while the reflexes are retained, and there may be girdle pains. Herpes may be present. If in the cervical region, arms or legs may be paralyzed, and there may be pain or anesthesia in the upper extremities and neck. Embarrassed breathing, stiffness of the muscles of the neck, and even pupillary symptoms may be added when the hemorrhage is thus situated.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is based on the absence of brain symptoms in connection with the suddenness of the symptoms due to the disease and the history of possible cause.

**Prognosis.**—In certain cases in which the hemorrhage is small, contraction and absorption of the clot may take place, and the symptoms may pass away. In others the hemorrhage is fulminating and death follows early from involvement of the medulla oblongata in the pressure. In intermediate states there is corresponding improvement.

**Treatment.**—Conditions favoring the arrest of hemorrhage and the absorption of blood should be secured. Absolute rest is most important. If symptoms remain permanent, without aggravation, iodid of potassium may be used to promote absorption, and the usual measures intended to restore muscular and nervous power, such as massage, baths, and electricity, should be employed.

## AFFECTIONS OF THE SUBSTANCE OF THE CORD.

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS.

Two separate sets of pathological changes invade the substance of the spinal cord. In one they are confined with marked constancy to certain *definite areas* which have precise functions residing in "systems of fibers," so that the clinical phenomena of the disease are exactly defined. These affections are called *systemic diseases*. They include such as tabes dorsalis, an affection of the posterior column; amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, a disease of the lateral columns and anterior horns. Why certain definite areas of the cord are especially involved, and why this peculiar selective systemic implication, we do not know any more than we know why certain poisons, such as curare, strychnin, and lead, select certain tissues for their operation.

In the second group there is no such limitation of area invaded, but the cord in its entire transverse section is involved in one large focus, or several foci separated by areas of sound tissue are invaded. In this group are included acute and chronic diffuse inflammations, the hemorrhages

and traumatic lesions, multiple sclerosis, etc. These are the *non-systemic diseases*. Since, in the diffuse affections, all the parts involved in the systemic lesions are also affected, the symptoms of the latter are found associated with those growing out of the diffuse lesion. The diagnosis arrived at by a study of these symptoms is still, however, mainly a "topical" one, for it is an important fact growing out of the functions of the cord that all diseases involving certain areas produce the same symptoms, whence we infer the *seat* of the lesion rather than its nature or exact cause. This may, however, be determined with a varying degree of certainty from other symptoms.

A further peculiarity of all diseases of the substance of the cord is that its symptoms are commonly *bilateral*. This depends upon two causes: first, the fact that the two halves of the cord are in such close proximity that almost any cause of a violent kind, such as hemorrhage, affecting one-half, must also extend its influence to the other; and, second, the cause of system diseases commonly select corresponding parts in two halves of the cord for their operation.

Again, symptoms vary according as the lesion affects the conducting path in the substance of the cord, to and from the brain, or a portion of the peripheral system of fibers within or without the spinal canal. The symptoms are accordingly known as "central," and as "root" symptoms.

## SECONDARY SYSTEMIC DEGENERATIONS OF THE SPINAL CORD.

Very important in connection with nervous diseases is the subject of *secondary degenerations*. These succeed cerebral lesions and lesions in the spinal cord itself. They depend upon the fact, several times referred to, that a trophic influence is exerted by ganglion cells upon the fibers originating from them, so that the latter degenerate when the conduction of the trophic influence is interrupted or when the trophic ganglion cells are destroyed. For motor fibers such ganglion cells exist in two situations—in the motor areas of the cortex cerebri and in the anterior cornua of the spinal cord. The former exert on the motor fibers arising from them a trophic influence which extends down the cord as far as the latter. For sensory fibers in the cord the trophic influence resides in cells, probably on the posterior spinal root ganglia, and also ganglion cells in the posterior gray matter. The fibers of the lateral cerebellar column in the periphery of the cord arise in the cells of the column of Clarke, or posterior vesicular column—the group of cells in the inner part of the neck of the posterior horn.

*Secondary Degeneration in the Spinal Cord after Cerebral Lesions.*—If there be disease in the motor area of the cortex or in any part of the motor tract in the brain—that is, in the motor fibers of the corona radiata, the internal capsule, the crus, or the pons—interrupting conduction, a secondary degeneration of the motor fibers takes place below in the related pyramidal tracts, anterior on the same side of the cord, lateral on the opposite side, as far as the anterior cornua of the gray matter. In many cases



there is slight degeneration in the lateral tract on the same side as far as the lumbar region, showing that some fibers of each anterior pyramid find their way to the lateral tract on the same side. The relative proportion of the crossed lateral fibers and the anterior fibers that remain uncrossed varies

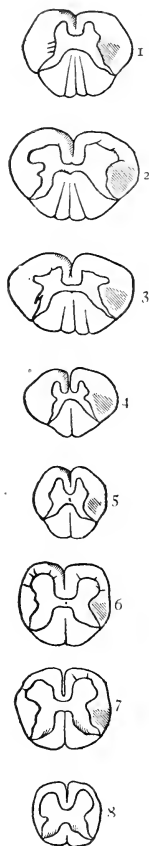


FIG. 104.—Secondary Descending Degeneration of the Pyramidal Tracts in a Primary Lesion of the Left Half of the Cerebrum—(after Erb).

The lateral pyramidal tract of *right* half is degenerated down to the lowest part of the lumbar region. 1-8. The anterior pyramidal tract of left half is degenerated to beginning of lumbar enlargement.

within limits. In cases in which no anterior pyramidal tracts exist—that is, where all the fibers pass over to the lateral column of the opposite side—there is no descending degeneration of the anterior column. Fig. 104, after Erb, shows secondary degeneration of the pyramidal tracts succeeding a primary lesion of the left half of the cerebrum. Fig. 105, after Edinger,

shows graphically the descending degeneration in the pyramidal tract due to a lesion in the left internal capsule.

*Secondary Degeneration of the Spinal Cord after Transverse Lesion of the Cord Itself.*—If a lesion be seated in any part of the cord affecting more or less its transverse section, the interruption of conduction in these fibers is also followed by secondary degeneration, which may be traced in two directions upward and downward, ascending and descending. Such lesions may be transverse myelitis, compression of the spinal cord, and tumors—any lesion, in fact, involving the whole of the cord.

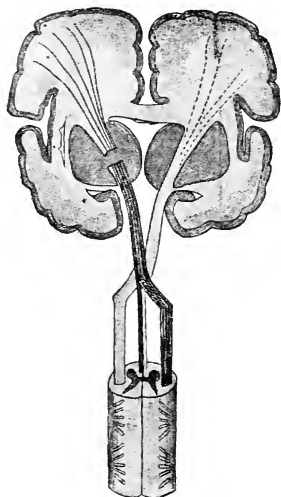


FIG. 105.—Diagram of Descending Degeneration of the Pyramidal Tracts Due to a Lesion in the left Internal Capsule—(after Edinger).

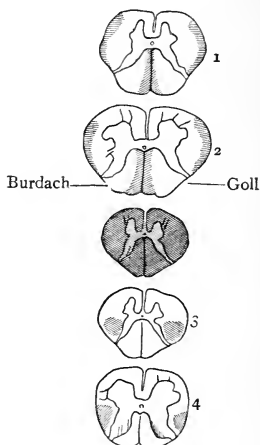


FIG. 106.—Secondary Ascending and Descending Degeneration in a Transverse Section of the Upper Dorsal Region—(after Strümpell).

The columns of Goll and the direct cerebellar tracts are degenerated upward, shown in 1 and 2, the anterior and lateral pyramidal tracts downward, as in 3 and 4.

The descending degeneration of the pyramidal tract is like the descending degeneration after cerebral lesions, except that after spinal lesions the degeneration of the pyramidal tract is usually more extensive; as the transverse disease affects the pyramidal tract on the two sides, the secondary descending degeneration will affect both lateral pyramidal tracts below the seat of lesion. The ascending secondary degeneration developing upward from the seat of lesion affects the columns of Goll—*i. e.*, the posterior median columns—and the columns of Burdach—*i. e.*, the posterior lateral columns and the lateral cerebellar tracts on the periphery of the lateral columns, because the conduction in those parts which receive their trophic influence from lower cells is interrupted. The ganglionic cells which act trophically on the fibers of Goll are probably in the ganglia on the posterior roots. The lateral cerebellar tracts share in the ascending degeneration, because

they are cut off from the cells of the column of Clarke, and when this occurs or these cells are destroyed, such degeneration may be traced upward into the restiform bodies. Fig. 106 shows secondary ascending and descending degeneration of the cord as occurring after transverse section in the upper thoracic region.

*Clinical Effect of the Secondary Degenerations.*—This is disputed, Charcot and some of the French clinicians ascribing to them the contractures and increase of the tendon reflexes in the paralyzed limbs of hemiplegia, while Strümpell and others think they have no clinical import. It is more probable that the symptoms are caused by an interruption of the nerve-fibers and that the sclerotic tissue in the degenerated tracts produces no clinical signs of disease.

*Secondary Degeneration in the Spinal Cord after Injuries of the Cauda Equina.*—After fractures, caries, or other injuries to the lower lumbar vertebræ or sacrum producing injury to the cauda equina, or as the result of new-growths in this region, a secondary ascending degeneration takes place in the cord after the rupture of continuity. This is due to involvement of the posterior nerve-roots; whence the degeneration is confined to the posterior columns of the spinal cord, and in its distribution it resembles closely the state of the cord in tabes dorsalis. In the lumbar cord all the posterior columns are degenerated except a small median zone and the most anterior portion. The ascending degeneration grows smaller as we ascend, and finally is confined in the cervical cord to the regions of the columns of Goll, which include, in part at least, the prolongation of the fibers from the root zones of the lumbar and sacral cord.

### Acute Affections of the Spinal Cord.

#### DISTURBANCES OF THE CIRCULATION OF THE SPINAL CORD.

**CONGESTION.**—From the standpoint either of clinical observation or postmortem examination but little is known of the phenomena of congestion of the cord as differentiated from inflammation. It is a well-known fact that active hyperemia may partly disappear after death. Congestion of the vessels is found under so many conditions that a diagnosis of inflammation based on this finding alone would not be justifiable.

**ANEMIA** of the cord has been studied clinically and experimentally. The phenomena of paraplegia which succeed profuse hemorrhages as of the uterus *postpartum*, and from the stomach, are fairly ascribable to anemia of the cord.

This is confirmed by some experiments of Stenson, who compressed the abdominal aorta of an animal with the effect of causing almost immediate paralysis of the extremities; and of C. A. Herter, at Johns Hopkins Hospital, in which paraplegia supervened a few minutes after the application of a ligature to the aorta, followed more slowly by paralysis of the sphincters. Within 36 hours there were marked changes in the

ganglion cells of the anterior horns in the lumbar segment, and, later, signs of myelitis. Within 14 days contracture of the limbs set in with atrophy of the muscles and with fibrillar twitchings. Similar results have followed the experiments of others on animals. Obstruction of the aorta by thrombi and emboli has been followed by similar clinical phenomena, but it is questionable whether the results of these experiments can be applied to man, as ligation of the abdominal aorta in man may be done without causing paralysis. In intense degrees of general anemia, such as is found in pernicious anemia, the cord is not so rarely affected. Observations showing that the posterior and lateral columns are involved in pernicious anemia are numerous.

*Embolism* and *thrombosis* of the spinal arteries have been produced experimentally, with resulting *choreiform movements*. Embolism of the smaller vessels possibly occurs in connection with endocarditis. *Endarteritis* or its results are frequently found postmortem in syphilitic subjects as a nodular periarteritis or endarteritis, sometimes associated with gummy tumors of the meninges; and as an *endarteritis obliterans* with thickening of the intima and consequent narrowing of the lumen, involving chiefly the arteries of medium and larger size. Sudden paralysis of spinal origin is likely to be from thrombosis of the vessels of the cord. *Miliary aneurysm* and *aneurysm* of the larger vessels of the spinal cord are very rare.

#### HEMORRHAGE INTO THE SUBSTANCE OF THE CORD.

**Etiology.**—Hematomyelia is at most a rare event. That it ever occurs primarily independent of disease is reasonably questioned. Its possibility must, however, be admitted, at least, as the result of traumatic causes, such as falls. Great physical exertion is another possible primary cause; so are cold and exposure and tetanic and other convulsions. Repeated coitus is mentioned by Gowers as having been followed by hemorrhage in the gray substance at the top of the bulbar enlargement, and this cause may have operated in a patient of my own who was suddenly seized with a paraplegia during one of a number of closely repeated acts of coition and while in vigorous health. Secondary hemorrhage is more frequent.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The cord may be distended, infiltrated, or lacerated by the hemorrhage escaping into the meninges; if not too copious, the bleeding may be limited to the gray matter and may extend up and down the cord to a considerable extent. The blood undergoes the usual changes after effusion, *i. e.*, coagulates, becomes darker hued, then yellow, and, finally, at times, the seat of the hemorrhage is occupied by a cyst, while numerous hematoidin crystals will be found in the residue. The blood may remain liquid for a long time.

**Symptoms.**—If the hemorrhage is in the lumbar enlargement or the thoracic region of the spinal cord, the effect is, as a rule, *sudden paraplegia*. If the cervical part of the cord is the seat of the hemorrhage, the arms as well as the legs are involved, and there may be embarrassed respiration, and possibly *sharp pain* in the extremities supplied by the nerves pass-

ing to the cord at the seat of the effusion. *Loss of sensation* follows later, while the reflexes also disappear. Myelitis is often developed as a consequence of the irritative presence of the clot, and there follow its usual symptoms, including *trophic changes* and *fever*.

**Diagnosis.**—This is based upon the suddenness of the consequent events—acute pain and paraplegia—under the etiological conditions described, viz., trauma, and other causes. *Hemorrhage into the spinal meninges* is, of course, equally sudden or nearly so, but the symptoms of injury to the cord are less prominent, and there is little or no fever. In meningeal hemorrhage the pain is more severe and symptoms of irritation are more likely to precede the paralysis, while the paralytic symptoms are less persistent.

**Prognosis.**—The accident is rapidly fatal in the severest cases. In others paralysis may exist for a long time or may be permanent. In others there is slow but persistent improvement, and the patient may even recover. Hemorrhage into the cervical region of the cord is more serious because the center of the phrenic nerve which innervates the diaphragm is likely to be invaded. The presence of trophic changes renders the prognosis as to recovery more unfavorable.

**Treatment.**—This is identical with that for hemorrhage into the membranes. Absolute rest is the primary essential condition. Ice may be applied to the spine over the seat of the hemorrhage, and leeches or wet-cups in the same locality, although the benefit obtained by these measures is somewhat doubtful.

If the case is not immediately fatal, improvement is apt to follow the contraction of the clot, as in cerebral hemorrhage. Then, from the theoretical standpoint, ergot is indicated. Full doses,  $\frac{1}{2}$  dram (2 c.c.) to 1 dram (4 c.c.), of the fluid extract, or from 3 to 5 grains (0.2 to 0.32 gm.) of ergotin, repeated in two or three hours with a view to producing a profound effect early, should be given. Later muscular nutrition should be kept up by massage and electricity.

## CAISSON DISEASE.

SYNONYM.—*Diver's Paralysis*.

**Definition.**—A paraplegic and sometimes general paralytic affection which happens to workers in caissons after their too rapid return to the surface from the compressed atmosphere of the caisson.

**Pathology.**—This is not thoroughly determined. That it is, however, a spinal lesion a study of the symptoms goes to show. It is ascertained that the pressure about the body required to produce it must exceed three atmospheres, that the symptoms do not come on until the patient returns to the surface, and that they are more prone to occur the longer the exposure. Under these circumstances it has been suggested that the symptoms are due to the escape from the blood of gases, especially oxygen and nitrogen, with which it has become charged in breathing in the highly compressed air—gases, which, under ordinary circumstances,

escape gradually by the lungs. Gas escaping in the more rapid manner from nervous tissues may exert a pressure which arrests for a time the function. At one time local hemorrhages were supposed to be the cause, but in the few autopsies which have been made nothing has been found which would explain the symptoms from that standpoint. In a case dying on the 15th day Leyden found small, irregular fissures in the middorsal region, chiefly within the posterior and the hinder part of the lateral column, filled with round cells, but containing no blood-corpuscles. It has been suggested that the fissures were produced by the sudden escape of gas, and were finally occupied by wandered-out round cells. In a case dying at two and a half months Schultzer found these fissures, together with signs of myelitis. Leyden suggests that the thoracic region is affected because of its relative softness as compared with other parts of the nervous system. Andrew H. Smith, of New York City, who had excellent opportunities for studying the disease in connection with the building of the Brooklyn Bridge, ascribed the phenomena to a congestion followed by stasis, supposing that under the high pressure the blood is driven from the periphery into internal organs, especially the cord and brain, dilating and paralyzing the blood-vessels. When the pressure is removed, the blood rushes to the periphery. Smith supposes that within the cord, when the pressure is relieved, the circulation is retarded and a stasis results. Is it not possible that the anemia resulting in the cord from the sudden withdrawal of blood from the brain and cord may cause the symptoms? It should be stated that in three fatal cases studied by Leyden, Schulze, and Van Rensselaer, diffuse parenchymatous myelitis with degeneration was found in the posterior and adjacent lateral columns.

**Symptoms.**—These come on, as stated, not during exposure to the abnormal conditions, but on return to the normal atmospheric pressure, often immediately, always within a half-hour. *Paraplegia* or *hemiplegia* is characteristic and essential, although the onset is usually preceded by *pain in the ears and joints*, especially in the larger joints. The latter may be affected without paraplegia after shorter periods of exposure, and there may be *tenderness in the limbs*, or sensibility may be impaired, though the impairment is imperfect and irregular. The onset of the paraplegia is sudden. Monoplegia and hemiplegia are rare, and when present, they are likely to be transient. In severe cases the sphincters are affected. There may be dizziness and headache or the *cerebral symptoms* may be more severe, amounting to sudden loss of consciousness and continuing as coma. *Abdominal pain* and *vomiting* may be present. Severe cases are usually fatal in a few hours. Those who are less accustomed to the work are the most liable to suffer, but the power of resistance also varies in different individuals.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is not usually difficult, the history of the case furnishing the conditions and explaining the symptoms.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is usually favorable, the symptoms generally passing away in the course of a few days, although in severe cases they may last for weeks or months, and may even be permanent. In fatal cases death may occur in a week, or as late as the end of two

or three months, with the symptoms of myelitis. Of 110 cases occurring in connection with the building of the Brooklyn Bridge, three died.

**Treatment.**—None of an active character is usually required. Morphine may be needed to relieve pain. The prophylactic treatment is of greatest importance. This consists in avoiding too long continuance of work under pressure, and care should be taken to make the transition from the higher to the lower pressure gradually. Andrew H. Smith advises that in passing through the lock, from the low to the high pressure, at least five minutes should be taken.

### DIFFUSE MYELITIS (ACUTE AND CHRONIC).

SYNONYMS.—*Myelitis; Transverse Myelitis.*

**Definition.**—The line of demarcation symptomatically between acute, subacute, and chronic myelitis is not sharp, but the term *acute* is applied to that form of inflammation in which the symptoms come on suddenly. When requiring from two to six weeks for their development, it is called *subacute*. When a still longer time elapses before the symptoms reach a decided degree of intensity, it is *chronic*. At the same time it is plain that no very sharp line of demarcation can be drawn between these forms. When the whole thickness of the cord is involved to a small vertical extent—a common form—it is said to be *transverse*; if an extensive area, *diffuse*; when one small area, *focal*; when many foci, contiguous or distant, it is *disseminated*. Inflammation of the gray matter around the central canal, extending into the intermediate gray substance, is called *central* myelitis, which may be parenchymatous and interstitial.

**Etiology.**—The cause is often undiscoverable. There is an occasional hereditary tendency to it. It may occur at any age, but is more common in adult males. It may result:

1. From repeated exposure to wet and cold, or from overexertion, or from both combined.
2. Rarely from the acute infectious diseases, as smallpox, typhoid fever, or puerperal fever.
3. From syphilis, either as the direct result of primary infection, or secondarily from invasion of the cord by syphilitic tumors; the former appears within a few months or several years after the primary inoculation, the latter as a late manifestation, but a macroscopic gumma of the spinal cord is a very rare finding.
4. From tumors other than syphilitic.
5. From injuries to the spinal column, especially fractures, and from caries of the vertebræ. It is extremely difficult, nay, often impossible, to distinguish the inflammatory results of tumors and caries from those of compression; and, indeed, the symptoms due to tumors and caries are chiefly the result of pressure.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The seat of invasion varies, the upper half of the

thoracic cord being most frequently involved, but there may be cervical myelitis and rarely lumbar myelitis. There may be a central focus and numerous small foci in the vicinity. The extent of the involvement varies at different levels. The softer reddish conditions indicate the more acute stage; the harder, grayer, and more contracted, the chronic stage—sclerosis.

Considerable experience is necessary to be able to recognize the changes in many cases of myelitis. The separation of the process into different stages is difficult or impossible. To the untrained naked eye the cord often appears quite normal. The expert examiner may recognize by touch that over a certain extent the cord may be either softer or harder and firmer. On section, the substance of the cord rises up more than in the normal state, the contour of the gray matter is less distinct, and sometimes has a hyperemic, reddish coloring, while the white matter is reddish-gray. There may be minute hemorrhages. The consistence may be diffuent, constituting red softening. These foci of hemorrhage may give place to cavities. The gray matter may be involved throughout considerable extent. The meninges may be involved, producing myelomeningitis.

These changes become much more evident if the cord is allowed to remain in hardening fluid, and only after hardening can the lesions be satisfactorily studied.

Microscopic examination of the fresh cord recognizes numerous *granular fatty cells*. *Blood-disks* and *leukocytes* may be present, the latter rarely in quantity to justify the name of pus or abscess. Thin sections stained by carmine give a very different picture even to the naked eye, the diseased tissues taking on the darker staining because of their greater richness in neuroglia. By the microscope it is found that in these portions the normal nerve tissue has partly or almost wholly disappeared. In some places axis-cylinders remain, possibly much swollen, and having lost only their medullary sheaths; in others the nerve tissue has disappeared. The *changes in the ganglion cells* are also definite; they have lost their processes and are rounder, or are entirely destroyed, while the *increase of neuroglia* goes on *pari passu* with the destruction of the proper nervous matter. The neuroglia occupies the enlarged meshes caused by the disappearance of the nervous elements. The cells of the neuroglia increase, and Deiters' spider cells may be numerous. The granular fatty cells may also be recognized, especially by osmic acid, provided no alcohol has been used in hardening. The blood-vessels are dilated and distended, and their walls are hyaline. The sum of these changes constitutes *sclerosis*.

In localized acute myelitis affecting the white and gray matter after injury the cord is swollen, the pia injected and soft, and on cutting the membrane an almost diffuent fluid may escape. In less degree the appearances first described are present. It is these cases which arise particularly by invasion from without or from compression in which the white matter is involved.

Localized areas of softening with blood accumulation constitute *red softening*. Abscess of the substance of the cord may occur, and at



least nine or ten cases have been reported. Pus forms in the cord in considerable quantity only in purulent meningitis.

**Symptoms.**—The distinctive symptoms of myelitis may be preceded by constitutional disturbance, including *headache* and general *malaise*, and even *chill*, *fever*, and *delirium*. A temperature of  $107^{\circ}$  to  $108^{\circ}$  F. ( $41.7^{\circ}$  to  $42.2^{\circ}$  C.) has been noticed. These symptoms are, however, unusual.

The characteristic symptoms vary greatly with the part of the cord involved, and no picture can be drawn to suit such differences of locality. I prefer, therefore, following Strümpell, to describe the symptoms more or less common to all localities, and, after this, such modifications or peculiarities of these as enable us to locate more precisely the process. The former include:

1. *Symptoms of Motor Paralysis.*—They are the most conspicuous and commonly the first recognized sign of developing transverse myelitis. Beginning with a tired feeling in one or both legs, followed by evident weakness and then dragging, the paresis continues to grow until the patient is totally unable to make any active movement with his legs. This implies that the lateral columns of the cord, and especially the posterior part of the lateral columns, carrying the lateral part of the pyramidal tract, are involved, cutting off the motor impulses. In some instances this paralysis occurs very rapidly, and probably is from occlusion of the blood vessels of the cord. The motor paraplegia can occur in every form of myelitis—lumbar, thoracic, or cervical; but in the first two the upper extremities are intact. In the cervical, paralysis of the upper extremities also takes place. If one side of the body is involved more than another, it implies that one-half of the cord is more intensely affected.

2. *Symptoms of Motor Irritation.*—These consist in spontaneous twitchings of the muscles of the paretic limbs, either rapid and short or slow and persistent. They occur at the beginning and during the course of the disease, and are variously severe. It is not always easy to distinguish them from increased reflexes, hence their diagnostic value is not great. Ataxia and intention tremor may occur in connection with involvement of the upper extremities and in the convalescence of acute cases, but they are very rare.

3. *Disturbances of Sensibility.*—These occur in marked degree much later in the disease than the motor phenomena. At the beginning there may be numbness, formication, tingling, and even girdle sensations, but severe pain is rarely present. When pain is present, it is an evidence of involvement of the vertebræ or meninges. In advanced stages, in addition to anesthesia, there may be paresthesia and striking hyperesthesia. The involvement of sensibility probably means that the whole transverse area of the spinal cord is intensely affected.

Disturbances of sensibility are useful in determining the segment of the cord involved because the lesion corresponds very nearly, or sufficiently so for practical purposes, to the level of the seat of the modified sensibility. Thus, in myelitis of the lumbar region the altered sensation extends nearly to the umbilicus, in the lower thoracic to the ensiform

cartilage, in the upper thoracic to the level of the axillæ, while in the cervical the sensibility of the upper extremities is impaired, but total anesthesia is very rare.

4. *The Reflexes.*—The effect of myelitis on the reflexes varies greatly with the seat of the disease and the degree and extent of the lesion. In the very incipency of an inflammation of the cord we may expect all the reflexes, cutaneous and tendon, centering in the part involved to be increased, but with the progress of the disease the effect varies greatly and must be discussed in detail.

(a) *Skin Reflexes.*—The reflex arcs of the cutaneous reflexes are not definitely determined. Their connection with reflex inhibitory fibers from above is to be remembered, irritation of which fibers possibly diminishes, and interruption of which possibly increases the sensitiveness of the reaction. In extensive lumbar myelitis the reflex path is broken and the cutaneous reflexes of the lower extremities are diminished, running about *pari passu* with altered sensibility. In thoracic and cervical myelitis the arc for the lumbar reflexes is intact, and if the reflex inhibitory influence is removed, these skin reflexes may even be increased. Experience shows, however, that the skin reflexes in the leg may be diminished even in dorsal or cervical myelitis, in which event there must be loss of irritability in the fibers. The cremaster reflex has its arc at about the level of the first lumbar nerve, hence its loss means disease there. The lower abdominal reflex corresponds to the lower thoracic cord and the upper to the level of the fourth to the seventh thoracic vertebra. There is much need for careful study on the behavior of the cutaneous reflexes, as this subject is far from being fully understood.

(b) *Tendon Reflexes.*—The reflex arc of the patellar reflex lies at about the level of the second to the fourth lumbar segment inclusive. Hence the knee-jerk fails in disease of the lumbar cord involving the lateral part of the posterior columns and the anterior cornua of the gray matter. The ankle clonus probably has its reflex arc at the level of the first sacral segment. It is always absent in extensive disease of the posterior columns and gray matter of the sacral cord in this vicinity. *The absence of deep reflexes of the lower extremities is, therefore, one of the most valuable signs of myelitis of the lumbar cord.* In almost all inflammations above the lumbar cord—that is, of the thoracic and cervical portions—there is a decided *increase in the tendon reflexes of the lower extremity*, because these lesions destroy the reflex inhibitory influence. When, therefore, alongside of this it is remembered that the fibers which influence the condition of the tendon reflexes run chiefly in the *lateral* columns of the cord, we may conclude that the lateral columns are involved. In cervical myelitis the tendon reflexes of the upper extremities are often increased. It should be remembered that complete or nearly complete, transverse lesion of the cord in the thoracic or cervical region may cause a loss of the deep reflexes of the lower limbs.

5. *Disturbances of the Bladder and Rectum.*—These are common in myelitis. There is, first, delay in micturition, finally accomplished by extra straining, but later all power to empty the bladder is lost—the *detrusor urinæ* is paralyzed. Still later the *sphincter vesicæ* is paralyzed,

and then there is incontinence of urine. These symptoms occur in connection with paralysis in any part of the cord. The ultimate effect is almost invariably a cystitis, the result partly of decomposition, induced by germs introduced through repeated catheterization, even when most cautiously conducted, partly by the entrance of germs through the patulous sphincter. Such cystitis has also been ascribed to trophic influence. To the cystitis may succeed pyelitis and purulent pyelonephritis.

In myelitis there is at first obstinate constipation, followed by paralysis and incontinence of feces. This symptom does not give any information as to the seat of the myelitis. Defecation and micturition are sometimes reflexly aroused in abnormal degree when there is increased reflex irritability. Sexual functions, the centers of which probably reside in the sacral cord, are also often deranged in myelitis.

6. *Trophic Disturbances.*—These are most important symptoms, and valuable also in diagnosis. In cervical and thoracic myelitis the trophic centers in the lumbar cord are intact. The paralyzed muscles, therefore, do not atrophy excessively, though they may be somewhat softened from want of use. They retain their normal electrical excitability, or at least the reactions are not qualitatively altered, although they may be quantitatively. On the other hand, genuine atrophy and the presence of the reaction of degeneration show that the anterior gray cornua or the fibers of the anterior roots of the lumbar cord are involved; in the upper extremities they show that the same portions of the cervical cord are involved. Bed-sores are among the trophic phenomena, the possibility of the occurrence of which should always be vividly present. They are among the most unpleasant and most unmanageable symptoms, yet they may be guarded against; for, although favored by the deranged trophic influence, they require an exciting cause such as pressure, the irritation of secretions, or foreign substances to originate them. They occur over the sacral and gluteal regions, more rarely on the feet and inner sides of the knees. The total anesthesia often associated with advanced stages of the disease co-operates to permit the action of the exciting causes.

Other trophic effects often met are drying and hardening of the skin; glossy skin, also thick and brittle nails. Vasomotor disturbances also occur, producing congestion and mottling, and there may be slight edema of the paralyzed parts; also sweating, which may be localized. The temperature of the affected limbs may be lowered, and multiple arthritis may occur.

7. Disturbances in the area of distribution of the *cranial nerves* almost never occur, though bulbar symptoms are met in rare cases of cervical myelitis, when the process has extended to the medulla oblongata. Optic neuritis and pupillary changes, vomiting, hiccough, slow pulse-rate diminishing to 20 or 30, dysphagia, dyspnea, and syncope, have been observed in cervical myelitis.

By uniting the symptoms detailed and their mode of manifestation we may draw conclusions with a certain degree of positiveness as to the portion of the cord involved. The following table by Morton Prince in Dercum's "Text-book" will be helpful:

	LUMBAR MYELITIS.	DORSAL MYELITIS.	CERVICAL MYELITIS.
Paralysis.	Paraplegia.	1. Dorsal, abdominal, and intercostal muscles, according to height of lesion. 2. Leg.	Neck muscles, diaphragm, arms, trunk, and legs.
Sensation.	Pains in legs, or girdle pains around loins; hyperæsthetic zone around loins; anesthesia of legs, complete or uneven distribution.	Girdle pain and hyperæsthetic zone between ensiform cartilage and pubes.	Hyperæsthesia and pains in certain nerve distributions of arms; below this, anesthesia of arms, body, and legs.
Atrophy.	Of legs.	Of dorsal and abdominal (and intercostal muscles, not subject to examination) corresponding to height of lesion; sometimes mild and slow of legs.	Atrophy of neck muscles (rare) or more commonly of arms.
Electrical reaction.	Reaction of degeneration in atrophied muscles; or, in mild cases, quantitative diminution.	R. d. in dorsal and abdominal muscles; slight quantitative changes only in legs when wasted.	R. d. in atrophied muscles.
Bladder.	Incontinence from paralysis of sphincter.	Retention, or intermittent incontinence from reflex action; later from overflow. Cystitis common.	Same as in dorsal myelitis.
Bowels.	Incontinence from paralysis of sphincter, disguised by constipation.	Involuntary evacuation from reflex spasm, or constipation.	Same as in dorsal myelitis.
Reflexes, superficial.	Lost.	Temporary loss, then rapid increase.	Same as in dorsal myelitis.
Reflexes, deep.	Lost.	Temporary loss, then slow increase.	Same as in dorsal myelitis.
Priapism.		Often present.	Often present.

**Diagnosis.**—The difficulty of diagnosis is sometimes very great, because identical symptoms may be produced by other diseases, especially pressure diseases of the cord, such as are caused by tumors or hemorrhages, possible conditions which must be carefully sought.

*Landry's acute ascending paralysis* and *multiple neuritis* present some striking resemblances, and in some cases Landry's paralysis is due to myelitis. Both Landry's paralysis and multiple neuritis present rapidly progressive motor paralysis, but though sensory derangement may be a late development in myelitis, it is still a symptom belonging to it rather than to Landry's paralysis, which is a motor affection, while the trophic symptoms, the paralysis of the bladder and rectum, rapid wasting, electrical disturbances, and fever, pertain to myelitis. The resemblance to multiple neuritis is closer. In this, however, anesthesia is less complete, the wasting less rapid, and bladder and rectum involvement almost never present, and the parts affected are in nerve distributions.

**Prognosis.**—Almost all cases of myelitis are chronic after a more or less acute beginning, seldom lasting less than a year, often two or three years and even longer. The term acute is not, therefore, applied in its ordinary meaning, implying rapid course and early termination, but it is used to indicate cases which develop rapidly to their acme as contrasted with those that are slow. Even these cases become chronic. There are many who doubt the existence of a myelitis which begins in a chronic form. They hold that all so-called chronic cases of myelitis have an acute commencement. Rapidly developing cases passing to a fatal termination in from five to ten days may occur, but are rare. Moreover, recoveries are not impossible, though also rare. Certain cases, after reaching a given

stage, remain as to symptoms *in statu quo*, by which it is understood that the local lesion has healed, while function has not been regained because of the impossibility of restoring the normal structure of the cord. Remissions and improvements are less infrequent. Death is usually the result of exhaustion, although it may result from intercurrent disease.

**Treatment.**—This is for the most part to be directed to the relief of symptoms, no curative means existing beyond what nature herself provides. In cases with acute onset and pain, cups may be applied to the back. Even in syphilis it is thought by some useless to give the usual remedies, but it is safer in cases of suspected disease to give iodid of potassium in ascending doses to the extent permitted by the stomach, while the mercurial effect should be brought about by inunctions, 30 grains (2 gm.) to a dram (4 gm.) of mercurial ointment being rubbed in daily in different parts of the body, care being taken to select those parts having less hair. Tonics, such as iron, quinin, and strychnin, are useful in this as in other prolonged affections.

The most painstaking attention must be given to the skin by bathing with alcohol and thoroughly drying after all washing, in order to prevent the excoriations which are often the beginnings of bed-sores, while the irritating effects of the excretions must be carefully watched, and if catheterization is necessary, it must be practiced with the closest attention to antisepsis. It may even be desirable to keep a soft catheter permanently in the bladder, to which a long tube is attached and the bladder thus kept drained. Should cystitis supervene, the bladder is to be washed out as directed on page 839. When possible, the rectum should be emptied by enema rather than by purgatives, which should be cautiously used.

Electricity is elaborately directed by the German authors, although they admit that in the majority of instances it is principally a diversion to the patient. In the later stages, however, of the forms in which there is atrophy of the muscles, some advantage may be expected. The constant current is most highly commended, by large electrodes placed over the vertebral column, and a moderate stable current or slowly labile current is passed for four or five minutes through the supposed seat of the disease. Peripheral galvanization or faradization of the paralyzed muscles and nerves should also be employed. Massage is useful, perhaps more so than electricity. The bladder may also be treated by electricity.

The bath treatment is carried out to various degrees of elaboration. The simple tub-bath with warm water furnishes the easiest form and may be quite useful, at a temperature of 85° or 90° F. (24° to 26° C.), in the cases with spastic symptoms. The baths should be at first limited to 10 or 15 minutes three or four times a week, and if well borne, may be increased to an hour daily. The water may be impregnated with sodium chlorid, using either the sea-salt or common salt, from 4 to 6 pounds of the former or from 5 to 10 pounds of the latter to the bath. When the patient is able to travel and avail himself of the actual sea-baths they may be expected to be beneficial. The Hot Springs of Arkansas and Virginia in this country may be resorted to. In Europe the thermal waters at Rehme and Nauheim in Hesse, Ragatz, in Switzerland, Teplitz in Austria, Wildbad in Wurtemberg, Gastein in Salzburg, Austria, and

Wiesbaden in Baden are among those recommended; also the mud-baths of Carlsbad and Marienbad in Bohemia and Elster in Southern Saxony.

### ACUTE ANTERIOR POLIOMYELITIS OF CHILDREN.

SYNONYMS.—*Myelitis of Children; Spinal Paralysis of Children; Atrophic Spinal Paralysis; Infantile Palsy; Essential Paralysis of Children.*

**Definition.**—An acute febrile disease of children, usually under three years of age, in which there is paralysis with rapid wasting of certain muscles.

**Historical.**—The clinical phenomena of this disease were described as early as 1840 by Jacob von Heine. The same physician 20 years later suggested that a spinal malady lay at the bottom of it, but it was reserved for Prevost and Velpeau, Charcot and Joffroy, to demonstrate the lesion which justifies the use of the term "spinal paralysis of children," for the older term "essential paralysis of children."

**Etiology.**—Especially a disease of later infancy, it may occur at all periods of life, but is ten times more frequent in the first decade than in all the rest of life. It is rare before the fifth month and often the fourth year. It is more common in boys than in girls, and in the warm months, as pointed out by Wharton Sinkler, who ascertained that in Philadelphia four-fifths of the cases occurred in May to September. There seems to be a slight family tendency. It has appeared in epidemic form in Stockholm, where Medin reports 29 cases from August 9 to September 23. A very remarkable epidemic in this country, occurring at Rutland, Vt., was reported by Caverly in the "New York Medical Record," volume ii., 1894, in which 190 cases occurred during the summer, of which 85 were under six years of age, and 18 died. Other epidemics have been recorded during the past few years. Acute anterior poliomyelitis has been ascribed without foundation to dentition, to cold, and to overexertion, and is very frequently erroneously attributed by parents to falls and the carelessness of nurses. Most children are attacked while in perfect health, although previous exhausting diseases may reasonably be held responsible. It is probably an infectious disease due to bacterial invasion. Among predisposing diseases are typhoid fever, measles, and diphtheria. Strümpell, however, says that though the paralyzes arising after these diseases are of spinal origin, they cannot be identified with the idiopathic spinal paralyzes of children.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The disease occupies more frequently the cervical or lumbar enlargement. The usual lesion found in old cases, which are those which commonly come to autopsy, is an *atrophy of one anterior cornu*, which is changed to a dense sclerosed tissue, whence the ganglion cells have almost or totally disappeared, often pierced by thickened and dilated vessels. The seats are the corresponding cornua of the cervical enlargement if the paralysis is in the arm, and of the lumbar if in the leg. If bilateral, both cornua would be involved. The corresponding anterior nerve-roots are atrophied and the muscles supplied by them are wasted, undergoing a fatty and sclerotic change. The white matter of the cord in the vicinity may be involved to some extent, resulting in sclerosis and slight reduction in size. Opportunities for autopsy in the

earlier stages are rare, but a condition of acute myelitis predominating in the gray matter, with degeneration and rapid destruction of the ganglion cells, has been found by a number of investigators.

**Symptoms.**—*Sudden onset* is characteristic of the disease, although there may be, and probably oftener than is noticed, slight previous indisposition with feverishness. A child, apparently perfectly well and lively, may be suddenly taken with *fever*,  $101^{\circ}$  to  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $38.3^{\circ}$  to  $38.9^{\circ}$  C.), sometimes reaching  $105^{\circ}$  to  $106^{\circ}$  F. ( $40^{\circ}$  to  $41^{\circ}$  C.); *headache* and sometimes *pain* in the *loins* and *limbs* and *aching* in the *joints*, *drowsiness*, and even *stupor*. Rarely there may be *convulsions* and *loss of consciousness*. These initial symptoms do not often last longer than a couple of days, when *paralysis* sets in abruptly, reaching its climax usually in 24 hours. The extent varies, involving one or both arms, one or both legs, more rarely one arm and one leg, or there may be crossed paralysis, as of the right arm and left leg. Groups only of muscles may be affected, as those of



FIG 107.—Section through the Cervical Enlargement in Anterior Poliomyelitis; the Left Anterior Column (b) is very much contracted and is without Ganglion Cells—(from Charcot and Joffroy).

the upper or lower arm, upper or lower leg, corresponding to the nerve-cells involved. Less frequently the paralysis comes on more slowly, taking from three to five days to develop. It commonly also diminishes in extent after its first invasion, in rare cases even totally disappearing, but usually withdraws itself to a definite set of muscles, which remain more or less permanently affected. In the legs, the flexors of the foot, the tibialis anticus and extensor groups of muscles are more commonly affected than the glutei and the hamstrings; in the arm, the deltoid. The child, in the meantime, has regained its health in other respects.

At first the affected limbs remain natural, and hence the child, too, appears vigorous, especially as the face is not involved. This may be the case for some time, but usually in a few weeks *atrophy* sets in and progresses rapidly, producing a soft, flaccid, wasted limb. The *changes in the electrical reaction* of the nerve and muscle appear at the same time, commonly more rapidly than the visible atrophy. Usually as early as the first week the reaction of degeneration is present. Faradic excitability of both nerve and muscle is gone, and galvanic excitability in the nerve. In muscles there is at first increased responsiveness to galvanism with a

predominance of slow anodal closure contraction (An Cl C), while after two or three months even galvanic excitability falls decidedly, though the muscular contraction maintains its characteristic slow vermicular quality.

Often the growth of *bone* in the affected limb is delayed, and even arrested, and a stunted development results. After a time there also ensue *relaxation of the joints* and deformity from secondary muscular contraction. In the lower extremities the paralytic club-foot (*talipes varo-equinus*) develops, resulting from the paralysis of peroneal muscles and the tibialis anticus, permitting the point of the foot to drop, while a contracture develops in the antagonistic muscles of the calf. In paralysis of muscles of the calf there results, on the other hand, a moderate degree of *talipes calcaneus*, from contraction of the antagonistic muscles. In the arms numerous *contractures and deformities arise*, mainly due to the contracture of unparalyzed antagonistic muscles and to external mechanical conditions, such as weight and pressure. In some instances the abdominal muscles are paralyzed.

*Sensation* remains intact, as also does, fortunately, bladder and rectum control. At the onset *micturition* is sometimes slightly deranged, but subsequently becomes normal. The tendon *reflexes*, and almost always the skin reflexes, are *lost* in parts affected by the atrophy. The skin sometimes exhibits trophic disturbances, being cool and cyanotic.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually easy. There are few diseases in which one can reason so soundly from characteristic symptoms to morbid states causing them. The paralysis of one or more limbs, the flaccidity, the rapid wasting, the reaction of degeneration, and the absence of reflexes, with integrity of sensibility and undisturbed mental state, point only to disease of the anterior cornua. The pseudoparesis of *rickets* presents some similarity in paretic and muscle phenomena. There is not, however, in rickets true paralysis—simply pain on motion, to which are added the peculiar head-sweating and hyperesthesia, together with rachitic symptoms elsewhere.

**Prognosis.**—This is always unfavorable so far as recovery is concerned, but improvement, at first general, and afterward in groups of muscles, is often decided, so much so, indeed, as to be somewhat delusive. In protracted cases we must expect the superaddition of contractures, while deformities must be mentioned to parents as possible. The initial period passed, there is no danger to life, and subjects may live to old age.

**Treatment.**—Notwithstanding the unfavorable prognosis, treatment should not be ignored. Paralysis is established, of course, before the diagnosis is made, and atrophy nearly as soon. The early symptoms can, therefore, only be treated symptomatically. An aperient should be given and febrifuges ordered. Should an opportune circumstance favor an early diagnosis, cold applications may be made to the spine; it is doubtful whether they will accomplish much. Paralysis supervening, the little patient must immediately be put at rest in bed and wrapped in cotton. No active measures should be taken at this stage.

The acute stage passed, electricity is the most important therapeutic measure to be employed. It is used both for curative purposes and to keep up the nutrition of the muscles. In attaining the former, galvanism



is preferred, a broad electrode being placed on the vertebral column over the spot supposed to be diseased—on the cervical region, if the upper extremity is paralyzed, and over the lumbar if the lower—while the other pole is placed over the paralyzed muscles and nerves. The latter is moved about, the current being at times reversed. Interruptions may also be made. While the galvanic current is commonly employed, faradization may be used.

The second purpose of the electrical treatment, keeping up the nutrition of the muscles, is more likely to be effectual. For this purpose massage and baths, after the method laid down under treatment of myelitis, are also useful. The electrical treatment must be persisted in for months and even years in order that the muscles may be in a condition to resume their function should the integrity of the cord be restored. Both massage and electrical treatment may be carried out by members of the family after a little instruction.

Tonics are employed for the usual purposes, and orthopedic appliances may be necessary to overcome the effect of muscular relaxation on the one hand and of contractures on the other.

## ACUTE POLIOMYELITIS IN ADULTS.

SYNONYM.—*Acute Atrophic Spinal Paralysis of Adults.*

The existence in adults under thirty of a disease with all the clinical manifestations of the one just described as comparatively frequent in children must be admitted, since an undoubted anatomical lesion of the same kind, associated with such manifestations, has been found by investigators. On the other hand, it must be conceded that the disease is very rare and that many of the cases so diagnosticated were really cases of multiple neuritis. Landry's paralysis in some cases may be the clinical manifestation of poliomyelitis. In view of the fact that the symptomatology is almost the same as that of the infantile form, no separate description is necessary. Among peculiarities may be mentioned the possible involvement of all four extremities, as contrasted with a monoplegia or a paraplegia at other times. Again, there may be the involvement of groups of muscles. Thus, in paralysis of the crural region the sartorius muscle often remains free. In the leg the tibialis anticus may be separately involved or the extensor digitorum. In the forearm the supinator longus supplied by the musculospiral nerve may remain free while all the other muscles on the extensor side of the forearm are paralyzed, furnishing "the forearm type" of E. Remak; or the supinators may be paralyzed alone or together with the biceps, brachialis anticus, and deltoid, furnishing "the upper arm type" of Remak. The latter form is said to correspond to a lesion at the level of the fifth and sixth cervical roots, and the former to a lesion of the eighth cervical and first thoracic roots.

**Diagnosis.**—This is mainly from *multiple neuritis*, in which the palsy is symmetrical instead of irregular in distribution, pain is more characteristic and persistent, while the nerve trunks are inflamed and painful.

**Prognosis and treatment** are similar to those of the same affection

in children, except that the prognosis is rather more favorable, recovery being reported, though such cases may have been multiple neuritis.

#### SUBACUTE AND CHRONIC POLIOMYELITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Subacute and Atrophic Spinal Paralysis; General Anterior Spinal Paralysis, Subacute of Duchenne.*

All that was said of the probable confounding of acute poliomyelitis of adults with acute multiple neuritis may be said of the subacute and chronic forms. Yet it would seem that undoubted cases have been studied. Oppenheim especially studied a case—in which the anterior cornua of the cord were found markedly diseased at necropsy, and other cases are found in the literature. There were, clinically, paralysis and atrophy of all four extremities without sensory disturbance. The cases differ from the acute form in the absence of the severe initial symptoms, fever, headache, somnolence, delirium, and vomiting.

#### ACUTE ASCENDING SPINAL PARALYSIS.

SYNONYM.—*Landry's Paralysis.*

**Definition.**—A disease first described by Landry, in 1859, characterized by an advancing paralysis beginning in the lower extremities, passing upward to the trunk and arms, and finally to muscles supplied from the medulla oblongata, including those of respiration; sensibility and bladder and rectum control remaining intact.

**Etiology and Pathology.**—It is most common in men between 20 and 30, and usually those who are strong and healthy. Cases have, however, been seen in children and old persons. *No anatomical lesions pathognomonic of the disease have been shown to be associated with it.* Hence attempts have been made to classify it elsewhere, and H. Oppenheim, James Ross, Neuwerk, Barth, and others regard it as a form of peripheral neuritis, Ross having found an interstitial form confined to nerve roots, while Neuwerk and Barth described a case confined to peripheral nerves. Other carefully studied cases failed to disclose such lesion. In some cases myelitis, especially poliomyelitis, is the cause. A toxic cause seems not unlikely. It is quite consistent with such cause that it should leave no local lesion, as well as that it should always seek the same spot. Gowers is especially disposed to ascribe the disease to such a cause. Some cases have, however, followed trauma.

**Symptoms.**—The characteristic symptoms are commonly preceded by a prodrome, in which *loss of appetite, general malaise, moderate fever, headache, backache, and tingling in the extremities* are conspicuous. These symptoms vary in severity and last from a few days to several weeks, when a *paresis* suddenly sets in, first of one leg and then of another, increasing rapidly, so that in a few days, sometimes in a few hours, an almost total motor *paraplegia* is developed. The paresis next extends to the trunk; in a few days or even less the arms are paralyzed. The muscles

of the neck are next involved, and ultimately those of respiration, deglutition, and articulation, producing bulbar symptoms. Finally, facial paralysis and other disturbance of facial muscles may ensue. The paralysis is a flaccid one, and there is no tendency to spasm or resistance to passive motion. There is *not* usually a *change* in electrical reaction, although there is sometimes a rapid loss of faradic muscular excitability. The *reflexes are diminished* or absent, but the *muscles do not waste*, because death usually occurs before atrophy has had time to develop.

There is *no definite loss of sensation*, but in addition to the primary tingling referred to there is sometimes *hyperesthesia* and *muscular tenderness*. In other characteristic cases sensation is intact. More rarely there is a *blunted* and *delayed sensation*. The *special senses* are not affected, nor are the *bladder* and *rectum*. Sometimes there are *vasomotor edema* and *sweating*. The *spleen* has been found enlarged and slight albuminuria has been observed.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not always easy, the disease being simulated by *multiple neuritis*, *acute anterior poliomyelitis*, and *ascending myelitis*. All these may cause difficulty, and sometimes a distinction clinically and pathologically is impossible. The rapid motor paralysis, advancing from below, in the feet and hands, instead of from above, the absence of anesthesia, of wasting, and of electrical changes, are characteristic of *Landry's paralysis*.

**Prognosis.**—This is grave, and the possibility of a rapidly fatal termination, even in a few days, is to be remembered, the danger being from interference with the cardiac and respiratory functions of the medulla oblongata. Other cases terminate similarly in three or four weeks. If, on the other hand, the acute stage passes off, the symptoms of paralysis may cease to extend, and recovery is possible and has occurred in some cases.

**Treatment.**—The patient should be put to *bed* immediately, and *counterirritation* should be applied to the back by dry cups, and maintained by gentler means, as by a mustard plaster. The thermocautery has been recommended, but is of doubtful value. Paquelin's cautery is, at least, harmless.

Of internal remedies the apparent results from *ergotin* and *mercury* justify their further use. Gowers relates a remarkable case of recovery under the use of the former drug, 20 grains (1.32 gm.) having been given in the course of a night in divided hourly doses. Likewise cases of syphilitic origin have been reported, in which the *iodid of mercury* has seemingly proved of service. The *biniodid* may be given in doses of from 1/50 to 1/30 grain (0.003 to 0.006 gm.). The *salicylates* have been advised. Both remedies are indicated if its toxic origin be admitted. *Perchlorid of iron* is recommended in traumatic cases, especially when there is evidence of septic poisoning.

If *swallowing is difficult* the patient must be nourished by the rectum or through the nasal tube, and if symptoms of respiratory failure come on, electrical stimulation of the phrenic nerve and respiratory muscles may be used. If the acute symptoms pass away and paralysis persists, the usual application of galvanism and faradization may be made for restoring muscular and nervous power.

## Chronic Affections of the Spinal Cord.

## SPASTIC SPINAL PARALYSIS.

SYNONYMS —*Primary Lateral Sclerosis; Spasmodic Tabes Dorsalis.*

**Definition.**—A chronic disease of the spinal cord, characterized by stiffness and weakness of limbs with greatly exaggerated tendon reflexes, but without atrophy or sensory or vesical derangement.

**History.**—In 1875 Erb, and independently Charcot, called attention to a form of paralysis characterized by "a gradually increasing paresis and paralysis, usually advancing from below upward, with muscular tension, reflex contractions and contractures, with marked increase of the tendon reflexes and *complete absence of sensory and trophic disturbances of vesical and sexual weakness, and of any cerebral disturbance.*" Both observers agreed on a "primary symmetrical sclerosis of the lateral columns" as the anatomical condition of the disease. Since then numerous cases have been observed corresponding in clinical features, but while the anatomical features described as essential have been found, they have, with one or two exceptions, been accompanied by other lesions, which are not alike in different cases. A few cases have been described, which seem to show the possibility of the occurrence of primary lateral sclerosis, without complications, but most foreign writers discard the name of lateral sclerosis, and some speak of it by its most prominent symptom, spastic paraplegia.

**Etiology.**—The etiology is not always apparent, although the causes are probably many. The cases mostly begin between the 20th and 40th years. It may occur in children. It has been traced to syphilis, several times to trauma, to acute infectious fevers, lead-poisoning, and the puerperium; the diagnosis in such cases usually has been without anatomical confirmation. Strümpell has called attention to a hereditary family type, found in male members, between the 20th and 30th years, and in some families the symptoms are first manifested in early childhood. A form closely related, but resulting from arrested development rather than from atrophy of the central motor tracts, is the spastic paraplegia occurring in children born prematurely, and sometimes classed as one type of Little's disease.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The lesion which would be expected in spastic spinal paralysis is degeneration of the pyramidal tracts. In point of fact this condition is found, but it is likely to be part of a mixed lesion which may include that of myelitis, meningomyelitis, multiple sclerosis, compression of the cord by tumors or by caries of the vertebræ. In a few cases, however, the lesion almost uncomplicated has been found by Strümpell, Dejerine, Sottas and others.

**Symptoms.**—The conditions may begin with a sense of *fatigue and weariness* in the legs, but the two essential and predominating symptoms are *increase of the tendon reflexes and motor paresis*. The first is the more unmistakable, constant, and characteristic. In decided degrees of this increase the contractions come on even with that amount of tension on the tendons which is produced by the weight of the limbs or any active or passive movements, while the reflex muscular tension or rigidity opposes any attempt at motion. The muscles feel rigid and firm, and the legs are found in almost permanent extension, while the feet are in plantar flexion. Any attempt, especially if sudden, to flex the leg at the knee

or the foot dorsally meets with resistance. Yet if slow effort is made, flexion may generally be accomplished, the leg, while undisturbed, remaining in the position assumed, whence the graphic term of Weir Mitchell "lead-pipe contraction." If the thigh be placed over the edge of the bed, the traction of the leg on the quadriceps extensor may be sufficient to excite vigorous extensor tetanus and a convulsive tremor of the whole leg, like that of ankle clonus. If the patient is examined in a bath, the spasms are less violent because the effect of the weight of the legs is diminished. The superficial reflexes are also increased.

*Walking* is interfered with in two ways, first by the *stiffness* in the legs, and second by the *paresis*. The legs are only partially, if at all, flexed at the knee, and the foot is not raised, but is pushed along the floor in short, difficult steps. Owing to the contraction of the calf muscles the toes are brought to the ground, and thus the patient walks on his toes; sometimes an ankle clonus is developed by contact of the toes with the ground. The legs are kept close together, the knees touch, and in certain cases adductor spasm may cause cross-legged progression. Stiffness is not always so marked. The effect is the so-called *spastic gait*. In some cases there is no paresis, and the peculiarity of the gait depends purely on the muscular spasm. The effect is what Strümpell calls *pseudo-paresis*, or spastic pseudoparesis. The absence of actual paresis is shown by the fact that, notwithstanding the stiffness in the gait, the patient can still walk some distance, even miles.

With all this, the *patient is well nourished* and there is no wasting of muscles, which may even be hypertrophied, and outside of these symptoms he may enjoy excellent health. *Nor is there vesical disturbance*. There is no *sensory derangement*. Ocular symptoms are rare.

The tendency is to grow gradually worse, but very gradually; finally the patient cannot walk at all, nor can he stand. Rarely the muscles of the trunk and arms become involved, presenting also a paresis with decided increase in the tendon reflexes without disturbance of sensibility or muscular atrophy. Such is the picture of spastic palsy, rarely, perhaps, seen in an uncomplicated form.

**Diagnosis.**—As stated at the outset, there is absence of sensory and trophic disturbance. The onset may be sudden, but is never so in typical cases, with progressive loss of strength, but no emaciation. Spastic symptoms, with increased knee-jerk, appear, followed by gradually developing paresis. The arms are often affected, but less so than the legs, and may escape. The course of the disease is slow, and mental symptoms similar to those of dementia paralytica may be present at the close. It resembles amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, but it differs in the absence of muscular atrophy.

Hysterical spastic paraplegia may furnish in the most striking manner the symptoms detailed. Every symptom to be mentioned may repeat itself more or less identically. It is, therefore, not necessary to name them. Moderate wasting is sometimes added. It occurs more commonly in women, and usually careful examination will reveal some distinct stigmata of hysteria.

**Prognosis.**—Spastic paraplegia of all forms except the hysterical

is of long duration with little prospect of recovery. The upper extremities are tolerably free from derangement, and the mind is usually clear. Hysterical spastic paraplegia may end in recovery, if properly managed. When the cause is transient, also, recovery may be expected with removal of pressure, as in caries.

**Treatment.**—If *caries* is present, mechanical measures should be used to remove pressure. If *syphilis* is suspected, treatment by *iodids* and *mercurials* should be persevered in. Mercurial inunction is the most ready way of bringing about mercurialism. *Galvanism* and *faradization* are less useful in spastic conditions of the muscle than in those in which nutritional changes are more decided, but in hysterical spastic disease they are of signal use for their moral effect. The electrical brush is here the most useful instrument. It should be associated with *massage* and *passive motion*, and early attempt at locomotion should be encouraged and a positively favorable prognosis made. These, at least, tend to defer the immovable stage.

In any case friction, massage, and forcible flexion may be of benefit, but should be used cautiously, as the irritation produced in this way may possibly hasten premature contracture. Hydrotherapy is commended. The effect of the prolonged warm bath at 90° to 95° F. (30.2° to 35° C.) is often an amelioration of the spastic symptoms. The bath should be kept up for half an hour and manipulation practiced during it.

## TABES DORSALIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Posterior Spinal Sclerosis; Duchenne's Disease; Locomotor Ataxia.*

**Definition.**—A disease especially characterized clinically by loss of co-ordinating power, and by sensory and trophic symptoms; anatomically it is pre-eminently a disease of the posterior spinal roots and posterior columns of the cord, although the cerebrum does not always escape, and the optic nerves are commonly affected.

**Historical.**—Inco-ordination of movement in cases of spinal cord disease was noticed in the first third of the last century, but the cases in which it was present were not separated from those with loss of power. The association of this distinctive symptom with disease of the posterior columns was first announced by Stanley in 1840, and the first accurate account of the disease was published by R. Bentley Todd in 1847. He distinguished inco-ordination without weakness from paraplegia, inferred involvement of the posterior columns, and confirmed his inference by autopsy. In 1851 Romberg described the disease and the lesion in the posterior columns, but failed to eliminate loss of power from the symptoms. In 1855 Russel Reynolds accurately described the symptoms and ascribed ataxia to muscular anesthesia, giving thus the first correct explanation of this symptom. Türck first recognized with the microscope the wasting of the fibers in the posterior columns of the cord. In 1858-59 Duchenne, without adding anything essential to the symptomatology or pathology of the disease, published a monograph which so attracted attention that the disease has come to be called by his name, although, as Gowers correctly says, if the name of any man should be associated with tabes dorsalis, it is that of Todd.

**Etiology.**—The etiology of tabes dorsalis is not a satisfactory chapter. The disease is more common in cities, affects ten men to one woman, is rare in the negro, and is pre-eminently a disease of middle life, about

one-half the cases beginning between 30 and 40, one-fourth between 40 and 50, and less than one-fourth between 20 and 30. It has been met as late as 66, and occasionally before the age of 20. Direct inheritance, independent of inherited syphilis, is unknown.

Of the direct causes, syphilis is believed to be the most frequent. From 50 to 90 per cent. of cases have been ascribed to it by different authors, Erb and Strümpell leading with the latter figure. Möbius even believes that all cases of tabes are due to syphilis, a view which Mott shares. Yet there are difficulties in tracing the relation growing out of the facts, first, that the pathological product is not anatomically a syphilitic one, and,

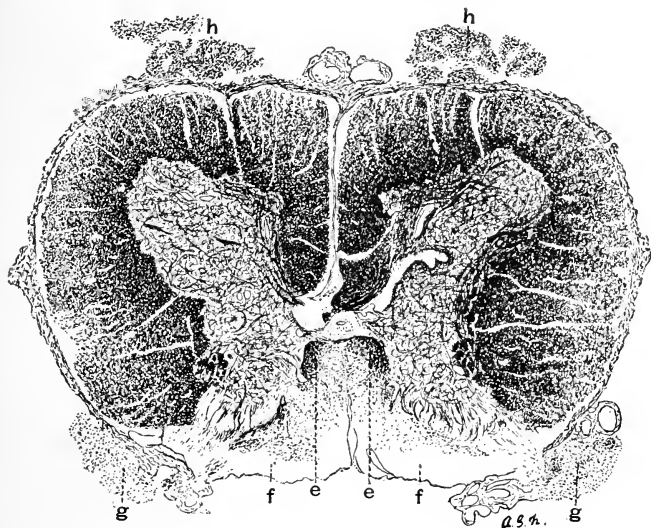


FIG. 108.—Lumbar Region. *g g*, degenerated posterior roots. *h h*, normal anterior roots. *f f*, degenerated posterior columns. *e e*, ventral fields of the posterior columns intact—(after Spiller).

second, that it does not respond to the treatment of syphilis. A reasonable explanation of these difficulties is one which ascribes tabes to a toxin analogous to that of the paralysis which follows diphtheria, acting especially on the centripetal sensory fibers. Indeed it may well be questioned whether tabes ever occurs without previous syphilitic infection.

Prolonged exposure to cold and wet, such as belongs to certain occupations, as lumbering, has been an admitted cause, but simple over-exertion, physical and mental, especially sexual excesses formerly held responsible, are probably not causes. Alcoholism is also held responsible less commonly than formerly. On the other hand, Tuczek, has shown that in chronic ergot poisoning symptoms like those of tabes develop, and with them a lesion appears in the posterior columns of the cord.

Traumatism affecting the spine has been believed to be a cause in a few instances, but this relation has not been established.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—*Tabes dorsalis* is pre-eminently a disease of the posterior spinal roots and posterior columns, although the cerebrum does not always escape, and the optic nerves are usually affected.

Directing our attention to the spinal cord, in which are found the most manifest changes, we find that, at times, even when inclosed in the membranes, its smallness and thinness are noticeable, while through the pia we may see the *posterior columns* distinctly as a gray band throughout the length of the cord. The pia is, however, commonly thickened and opaque, especially on the posterior surface, sometimes more firmly adherent than is natural, while the blood-vessels also show signs of arterial sclerosis. The

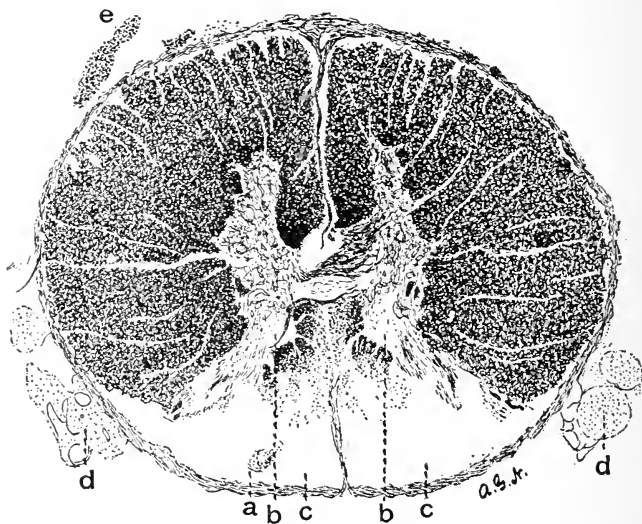


FIG. 100.—Thoracic Region. *d d*, degenerated posterior roots. *c c*, degenerated posterior columns. *b b*, degenerated columns of Clarke. *a*, small group of normal fibers from one or more posterior roots, lower in the cord, which were not entirely degenerated. *e*, normal anterior root—(after Spiller).

contraction of the posterior columns is more conspicuous on section. These columns are flattened instead of convex, while the gray translucent appearance of the posterior column is also evident, being due to the fact that the nerve-fibers have been substituted by neuroglia tissue. Hence, also, the name "gray degeneration." In the cord hardened in Müller's fluid the difference in hue is even more striking than in the fresh state. The posterior cornua and the posterior nerve-roots are small and gray.

On minute examination, in transverse sections stained by carmine or other staining fluid, the affected areas are more conspicuous, because of the deeper staining of the sclerosed tissue, while all parts of the posterior columns are not equally affected. In the *lumbar cord*, which, with the lower thoracic region, is usually the most frequently and seriously involved, the change affects chiefly the middle and posterior parts of the columns,



while the extreme anterior portion, the so-called ventral fields, remains intact. The sclerosis is commonly most intense in the part adjacent to the posterior cornua, into which the posterior roots enter, also near the surface of the cord. Ascending into the *thoracic cord*, the intensity of the disease in many cases gradually diminishes in the external parts of the posterior columns, and increases in their median portions. It presents in this way the distribution of an ascending degeneration, which in fact it is, receding from the commissure in the upper cervical region.

In the *cervical cord* the columns of Goll are chiefly affected, sometimes with the fibers in the root zones—that is, those portions of the columns of Burdach in which fibers enter directly from the posterior nerve-roots,

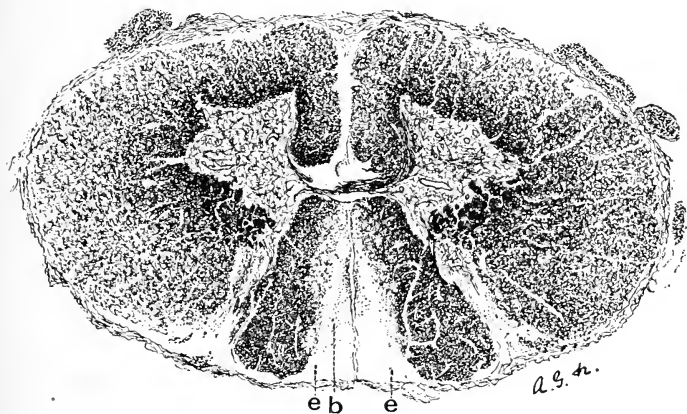


FIG. 110.—Cervical Region. The degeneration of the posterior columns is now nearly limited to the columns of Goll, *e e*. *b*, normal fibers from roots lower in the cord. Figures were not entirely degenerated—(after Spiller).

Figures 105, 106 and 107, from an advanced case of tabes.

and from which fibers may be traced further into the gray matter of the posterior cornua; but two anterolateral areas in the columns of Burdach remain free from disease, at least for a long time.

Fig. 111 shows how the beginnings of the disease are localized in the posterior columns. It is in consequence of involvement of the *posterior roots* that the corresponding posterior cornua into which they enter are also affected. The same is true of the medullated *fibers of Clarke's columns* (Fig. 109), which are also direct processes of the posterior roots, while the cells of the columns remain normal. Lissauer's tract, a narrow strip at the periphery of the posterior cornu, is early involved.

In advanced cases, in the *larger peripheral nerve trunks*, such as the sciatic, and in the finer branches of the sensory nerves, many degenerated fibers can be recognized. Some of these atrophies may be secondary, but modern clinicians are disposed to regard the peripheral degenerations of tabes as independent and primary, especially since, in addition to these,

decided degenerative processes sometimes occur in the trunks of certain cranial nerves, such as the optic and oculomotor, and more rarely the vagus and auditory. They will be referred to in treating the diseases of special nerves.

Finally, there are even *cerebral changes* of various kinds. While the spinal ganglia on the posterior roots have been found invaded in a few cases only, it is the disposition of some observers to place the initial changes of the morbid process constituting tabes dorsalis in these ganglia, and

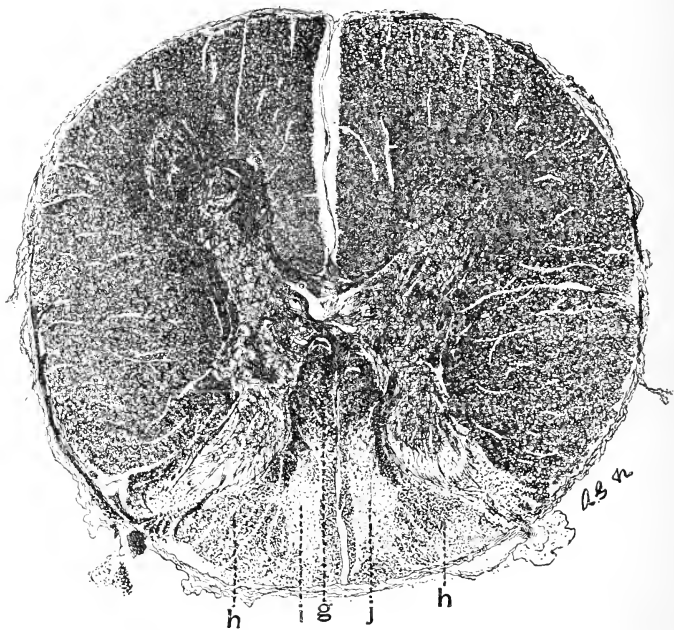


FIG. 111.—Lumbar Region. *h h*, posteromedian root zones (Flechsig) only slightly degenerated. *i*, middle root zones (Flechsig) degenerated. *g*, normal ventral fields. This section represents the earlier lesions of tabes.  
Figure 111 should be compared with Figure 108—(after Spiller).

thence the fibers ascending into the posterior columns. Thus considered, tabes dorsalis would be a general disorder of the central and peripheral nervous system, but limited mainly to sensory tracts, though motor ganglia and nerves do not altogether escape.

Other investigators place the primary lesion at the point where the roots penetrate the dura; and still others at the place where the posterior roots pass through the pia to enter the posterior columns of the cord.

**Symptoms.**—The characteristic symptoms of tabes are easily divisible into three sets: *motor*, *sensory*, and *reflex*. In addition to these there are others not essential, but striking, including modifications of *special*

sense and certain *visceral symptoms* characterized by pain and known as "crises." The special sense modifications include especially that of vision, while of "crises" the gastric is most striking.

The *motor phenomena* are usually the most prominent, whence the disease takes the name of locomotor ataxia, but this symptom may be absent for years, and hence the inappropriateness of the term. The distinctive symptom is a *loss of co-ordinating power* in the legs, having its simplest illustration in the unsteady gait of a drunken man. It is intensified when the patient attempts to walk with his eyes closed, and, indeed, in its early development does not appear except when the eyes are closed. It is usually *unaccompanied by a loss of power or muscular wasting*, but the latter may be extreme. On the other hand, *inco-ordination is by no means always the earliest symptom* and it may, indeed, never be developed, while there is usually a preataxic stage in most cases of tabes. The inco-ordination may be shown sometimes, before otherwise evident, by directing the patient to place the heels and toes together and then to close the eyes, when a swaying appears, as though the patient were going to fall—*Romberg's symptom* or "tabetic swaying." In health a slight unsteadiness under these circumstances is present which varies in different persons. Higher degrees develop the "sway" even when the eyes are open. The symptoms often exist for a long time before being recognized by the patient. Soon the peculiar gait is noticeable. The foot is thrust forward too far, and brought down suddenly, with the heel first on the ground, with a stamp. This is the typical tabetic or "heel" gait. The patient cannot walk in a straight line, and the staggering becomes worse when the eyes are closed, because the power of orientation through vision is lost. The movements of the lower limbs are excessive and unnecessary. Ultimately, he can walk only with the aid of a cane or by keeping the eyes fixed upon the floor. He rises from the sitting posture with difficulty, often after three or four efforts. The loss of co-ordinating power may also be shown in the recumbent posture when the patient attempts to touch the knee with his heel, when he will carry it around and in front and behind without accomplishing his purpose. The ataxic gait is not confined to tabes, but may occur in disseminated sclerosis and cerebellar disease. In the latter closure of the eyes may not increase the ataxia of the gait.

A peculiar symptom called by Fränkel *hypotonia* is noted in this stage or earlier, viz., a peculiar muscular relaxation which permits the joints to be placed in a condition of hyperextension and hyperflexion which may give an appearance of backward curve to the lower limb. Sexual power diminishes or disappears with the development of ataxic symptoms.

*Inco-ordination* also develops in the hands, but much more rarely, and late in the disease, though it may appear in them first. It is shown in connection with more delicate acts, such as picking up a pin, buttoning, and writing. It may be demonstrated also by asking the patient to bring the ends of two of his fingers together with his eyes closed, or to touch the end of his nose with one, which he may not be able to do.

<sup>1</sup> This symptom is classed by Strümpell among those of impaired sensibility in the soles of the feet and the muscles, whence follows defective control of muscular movements necessary to equilibrium.

With all this ataxia the *muscular power remains intact*. The patient lying in bed can kick out with great force, and resist successfully any effort to flex the extended leg, while the grip of the hand is strong.

J. H. W. Rhein<sup>1</sup> reports a case of locomotor ataxia with a tremor resembling that of paralysis agitans which he regards as possibly one of tabes associated with paralysis agitans.

The *sensory symptoms* are less distinctive, especially at first. The most frequent of these—indeed, among the most frequent of all symptoms—are *pains* of a darting, shooting, or stabbing character, whence they are called *lightning-pains*. They are said to occur in nine-tenths of all cases. They resemble closely those of neuralgia, lasting but a second or two. They are most common in the legs, and are often accompanied by burning or tingling, especially in the feet. They may be felt in the trunk, arms, and even in the head. Commonly they do not correspond with nerves or affect joints. They are often considered by the patient as rheumatic pains. A *sensation of cold* is felt, also a feeling as though the limb were immersed in cold water. The pains are induced by fatigue or excesses or by temporary ill health from other causes, and are likely to come on at night. They may last hours or a day or two. There may be areas of *hyperesthesia* and *anesthesia*. A very curious sensation is felt in the soles of the feet when walking, a feeling as though *soft carpet or cotton were interposed* between them and the floor. A painful sense of constriction about the limb or waist or around the entire trunk—*girdle pain*—is regarded as characteristic.

There are other disturbances of sensation, such as retardation of tactile, and more especially of pain sensation, wherein the prick of a pin, instead of being instantaneously felt, is *delayed* for several seconds. Another sensory symptom is difficulty in localization, manifested, for example, in referring a pin-prick to the right foot when it is made in the left—*allochiria*—or it may be felt in both feet—*polyesthesia*. In advanced stages the *muscular sense* is also impaired, and the patient is unable to indicate correctly the position of a limb. There may be other perversions of sensibility. The sense of pain may be lost or perverted; also the temperature sense—that, too, without derangement of the pain-sense or common sensibility. All varieties of sensation may be lost in the most diverse parts of the body and most irregularly.

*Viscera' pains*, known as tabetic crises, among which the gastric is the most common, are also among the sensory phenomena. They may be laryngeal, rectal, nephritic, urethral, etc., and are sometimes exceedingly severe. The gastric crises are sometimes accompanied by vomiting of strongly acid gastric secretion. On the other hand, the vomited matters may be alkaline, the result of a reflux of the intestinal contents into the stomach. Nor are gastric crises limited to tabes. They may occur in other cerebrospinal disease, including general paralysis, *sclerose en plaques*, and subacute or chronic central myelitis. The laryngeal crises may be associated with spasm and dyspnea, with noisy breathing. Death is a possible termination from this cause. Rectal crises consist

<sup>1</sup> Rhein, J. H. W.: "A case of Locomotor Ataxia with a Tremor resembling that of Paralysis Agitans." Sec. on Nervous and Mental Diseases of Amer. Med. Assoc., at 55th Annual Session, June, 1904.

in paroxysmal pain and tenesmus, with a sensation as of a foreign body in the rectum.

The *reflex symptoms* consist in *impairment in reflexes* both tendon and cutaneous. The loss of the knee-jerk is one of the most frequent and early of these, occurring sometimes years before ataxia appears. Of itself it is not diagnostic, as it may be absent in healthy persons, but in association with lightning pains and ocular symptoms it is almost conclusive evidence of the disease. In by far the greater number of tabetics—at least 70 per cent.—the patellar reflex is wanting, with or without the Argyll Robertson pupil. The skin reflexes fail *pari passu* with the loss of tactile sensibility, and it is doubtful whether they are ever present without this. The plantar skin reflex is that most frequently impaired, and after this are successively involved the gluteal, cremasteric, and abdominal. It happens rarely that in the early stages of the disease the skin reflex is increased, sometimes, considerably, but even then the knee-jerk is absent or diminished.

Of the remaining symptoms the *ocular* are the most important. They include *ptosis* of one or both eyelids, producing a very striking appearance. It may be unaccompanied or associated with *external strabismus* and *double vision*. Rarely there may be paralysis of all the external muscles of the eye, producing *ophthalmoplegia externa*. The most remarkable eye symptom is, however, the *Argyll Robertson pupil*, in which there is loss of reflex contraction of the iris in response to light, while the contraction in accommodation and convergence remains. According to Gowers, the loss of this reflex occurs in five-sixths of all cases. The contraction in accommodation is, however, not always maintained. Very rarely the reverse of the Argyll Robertson pupil exists. Wendell Reber has made a clinical study of the correlation between the iris and patellar tendon reflexes, and finds that in non-specific cases of tabes they are both involved in 70 per cent., and in the specific cases in 77 per cent. He holds that the co-involvement of these distant reflexes is evidence in favor of the view held by Sachs, Trevelyan, and Hirt, that tabes is a secondary degenerative process in which the entire nervous system takes part, and of Nageotte that the three separate clinical pictures of general paresis, tabes, and cerebrospinal syphilis are only the result of the preponderance of the inflammatory process in different localities, the nature of the process being essentially the same, the initial change being vascular starvation.<sup>1</sup> Often the dilatation of the pupil which takes place in health when the skin of the neck is pinched cannot be produced and coincident with this is often unnatural smallness of the pupil—spinal myosis.

Finally, there is sometimes *atrophy of the optic nerve, producing the amaurotic form*. When it occurs, it is often an early symptom, usually commencing before inco-ordination; and, what is more singular, the ataxia often does not supervene—that is, there seems to be a tendency for the spinal malady to become stationary when the optic nerve is affected early. The failure of vision usually begins with peripheral limitation and pro-

<sup>1</sup> Reber's paper, published in the "Annals of Ophthalmology and Otology," vol. v., No. 3, July, 1896, showed that in *nonspecific cases* the patellar reflex alone was involved in 23 per cent., the iris alone in 77 per cent.; in *specific cases*, the patellar reflex alone in seven per cent., and iris alone in 16 per cent. It must be recognized that often much uncertainty exists in obtaining a history of syphilitic infection.

gresses slowly to total blindness, sometimes to a considerable extent before the patient notices it. Occasionally it ceases, and there may even be slight impairment.

*Deafness* may be present from disease of the auditory nerve; also, more rarely, *anosmia*, from atrophy of the olfactory nerve. Attacks of *vertigo* occur in some cases. Abnormalities in function of other cranial nerves may be due to similar involvement. Among these may be mentioned pain at one time and anesthesia at another in the area of the fifth nerve; also unilateral atrophy of the tongue.

There may be *delayed micturition* from weakness of the detrusor muscle of the bladder, or *incontinence* from paralysis of its sphincter, with partial evacuation of the bladder, and resulting cystitis. The anal sphincter is less frequently affected.

*Vasomotor and trophic phenomena* also occur, and may be predominating symptoms. They include local sweating of the palms and soles, or of half the head, edema, skin ecchymoses, herpes, and modified hair growth, loss of pigment from hair and skin, thickening of the epidermis of the sole, succeeded by blisters under it. Alteration in the nails, and onychia with ulceration, may be present; also decay of the teeth and the so-called *perforating ulcer of the foot*, which is almost peculiar to this disease. Only late in the disease may atrophy of muscles, sometimes associated with neuritis or involvement of the anterior cornua, occur. *Paroxysmal diarrhoea* occurs, and has been regarded as vasomotor in origin.

The so-called *arthropathies* are an interesting trophic symptom and are directly the result of the disease. The most common is that known as Charcot's joint, anatomically similar to chronic affections in which the disease begins in the bone as contrasted with the synovial membrane, resulting in atrophy and in the destruction of bone and cartilage, while brittleness of bones, attended with spontaneous fracture or luxation, may occur. If union takes place, there is a superabundance of callus, with ossification or calcification of adjacent structures and of any newly formed inflammatory tissue. The large joints are those commonly affected and are painless when the seat of arthropathy. There may be effusion and even pus in the joints, but pus is not likely to form unless the joint has been injured. The arthropathies may occur in the preataxic stage. They may be excited by injury. The joints may also become greatly relaxed, while changes in the tarsal bones and articulations may cause the foot to become flat, with projection backward or inward of the tarsometatarsal articulations and of the tarsal bones, producing the "tabetic club-foot."

*Cerebral symptoms* also occur, but are rare, and may resemble those of *dementia paralytica*. It is not always easy to decide whether the dementia or the tabes is primary. The final stage of the disease, in which the patient is bed-ridden, is known as the *paralytic stage*.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis, commonly easy when the characteristic symptoms are developed, may demand critical judgment in the early stage. The combined presence of lightning pains, absence of knee-jerk, early ocular palsies, including the Argyll Robertson pupil, ptosis or squint, and ataxia are conclusive. Lightning pains and ocular palsies should

always stimulate to thorough examination. The same is true of severe attacks of gastralgia in middle-aged men.

*Differential Diagnosis.*—*Disease of the vertebral column* with resulting compression of the spinal nerves is also associated with lancinating pain and absence of the patellar reflex, but the later symptoms are widely different. The same is true of deep-seated tumors impinging on the spinal cord.

Peripheral *alcoholic neuritis* and *arsenical neuritis* also may be associated with diminished knee-jerk, a pseudotabetic gait, and sharp pains, but the gait differs from the true tabetic gait, the leg being lifted high in order that the *toes* may clear the floor. The pain also follows the course of the nerves, which are tender on pressure, and there is none of the shooting character. Nor is there reflex immobility of the pupils, and seldom bladder disturbance. *Multiple sclerosis* in rare instances presents similar symptoms, but defective speech, nystagmus, mental weakness, and ultimate apoplectiform seizures serve to distinguish it, and the tendon reflexes are usually exaggerated. In *diphtheritic palsy* there is absence of knee-jerk, but the history of the case, the throat palsy, and all absence of pain are distinctive. *Ataxic paraplegia* also displays ataxia, but here symptoms of implication of the pyramidal tracts are present. In *cerebellar disease* there is also loss of co-ordination, and the knee-jerk may be absent, there may be headache, optic neuritis, and vomiting, but no lightning pains or sensory disturbance. Occasionally neuritis may present a clinical picture closely resembling tabes, known as peripheral pseudotabes. The rapidity of development, the absence of the Argyll Robertson sign, and of implication of the bladder, and in some cases recovery, are the most important differential features.

*General paresis* and *tabes* sometimes merge, the latter developing on the former, or the former on the latter toward the end. Rapidly developed ataxia with mental symptoms often resolves itself into general paresis. Yet acute involvement of the posterior columns may be possible, producing ataxia.

Finally, there is the *nicotin* tabes of Strümpell, who has twice met, in men long working in tobacco factories, a set of symptoms consisting in painful sensation, absence of patellar reflex, contracted pupil, with reflex immobility and uncertain gait, differing, however, from tabes in the presence of tremor and marked increase in the skin reflexes, especially in the lower extremities.

*Course and Prognosis.*—It is generally conceded that no case of thoroughly developed tabes has ever recovered. The disease may, however, be arrested. This happens especially if optic nerve atrophy has set in early, after which ataxia rarely develops further, while the other symptoms subside. In most cases of the disease, however, the advance is slow but irresistible. The duration of the first stage, characterized by absence of knee-jerk, and by the presence of the Argyll Robertson pupil and of lancinating pains, lasts from a few months to 20 years, or longer. The second stage—that of ataxia—from which, indeed, the patient often dates the disease if the initial symptoms were slight, may then supervene gradually or suddenly. Finally, the paralytic stage supervenes, to be

soon followed by death. Tabes is believed by many to assume a milder type more commonly now than was the case 20 or 25 years ago.

**Treatment.**—While recovery from tabes dorsalis probably never occurs, much may be accomplished by treatment in arresting progress and relieving symptoms. There is no specific treatment, although this effect has been claimed for more than one remedy. *Nitrate of silver*, first recommended by Wunderlich, has probably had most reputation, but has latterly fallen into disuse, and coincidentally the number of cases of chronic argyria has diminished. The dose administered is from  $1/6$  to  $1/4$  grain (0.011 to 0.0165 gm.) three times a day. A proper question is as to the length of time the remedy may be used without danger of producing this unfortunate result. Professor E. Harnock asserts that in no recorded case of argyria were less than 450 grains (30 gm.) of the salt taken before the discoloration appeared. To consume this much in  $1/4$  grain (0.0165 gm.) doses three times a day would take 600 days. If, therefore, it is given in the usual doses for a month and then suspended for one week, as commonly directed, it does not seem possible that unpleasant effect can result. In this manner, then, it may be kept up indefinitely; or it may be alternated with *arsenic*, of which last Gowers at least says that it does distinct good more frequently than any other remedy. The favorite preparation in this country is Fowler's solution, of which 5 minims (0.3 c.c.) are given three times a day for an adult. The edema beneath the eyes, which results from its accumulated effect, is a sign that the dose should be reduced or the drug temporarily suspended. Arsenious acid in doses of from  $1/30$  to  $1/20$  grain (0.0022 to 0.0033 gm.) or sodium arsenite in doses of from  $1/30$  to  $1/10$  grain (0.002 to 0.006 gm.) may be substituted. Sometimes a smaller dose only is borne. Gowers has also found the *chlorid of aluminium* useful in doses of from 2 to 4 grains (0.132 to 0.264 gm.) three or four times a day. More recently it has been recommended in doses of 5 to 10 grains (0.33 to 0.66 gm.) three or four times a day.

The supposed frequent causal relation between syphilis and tabes renders the antisyphilitic treatment appropriate in all cases in which such relation can be traced. To this end *mercurials* are to be administered until the specific effect is produced. This is best accomplished by inunction, a dram to a dram and a half being rubbed into different parts of the body daily, to be discontinued when the gums are affected. After this the *bichlorid* may be given in doses of  $1/24$  grain (0.0027 gm.) three times a day, in association with the *iodid of potassium* in ascending doses if well borne, or the *biniodid of mercury* may be given in doses of  $1/24$  grain (0.027 gm.) three times a day. If this treatment is found effectual, the iodid should be continued in the minimum doses, which will keep up the effect. The antisyphilitic treatment is more successful in those cases in which cerebrospinal syphilis simulates tabes. It may be harmful in true tabes. *Calabar bean* in doses of from  $1/10$  to  $1/5$  grain (0.0064 to 0.0128 gm.) three times a day and the fluid extract of ergot in doses of from 5 to 30 minims (0.3 to 1.6 c.c.) or more are recommended, but the results have not been such as to give them a permanent reputation. Iodid of potassium may be tried apart from the indications



of syphilis. The rest *treatment*, originally suggested by Weir Mitchell, has been found useful in arresting the disease, but I do not know that it has been followed by permanent results. *Extension of the spinal column* and presumably of the cord by suspension of the body for from one to three minutes daily was used for a time, among others by Mitchell, but it has been discontinued, perhaps too soon, for instances of undoubted improvement have been reported under its use: *vide* one reported by Charles S. Potts in the "University Medical Magazine" for September, 1891, and several by De Forest Willard and Guy Hinsdale in the "Medical News," November 24, 1894.

In Germany *electricity* is still a popular remedy, and failure with it in this country may be due to imperfect and too brief trial. Erb's directions for galvanism are to place a moderate-sized anode in the vicinity of the sympathetic in the neck, and a large kathode on the side of the vertebral column for four or five minutes, moving it at intervals from above downward. Severe pain and vesical weakness are treated by galvanization and the faradic brush. The latter, as recommended by Rumpf, should be brushed over the skin of the back and extremities for five or ten minutes, using a strong current. Counterirritation by blisters is of no use, although simple rubefacients may relieve slight degrees of pain.

*Hydrotherapy* likewise maintains its popularity in Germany, although claimed by some authorities to be sometimes harmful, especially in the shape of hot baths and vapor baths and wet packs. The *tepid bath* is entirely safe and often symptomatically useful. Its temperature should be from 80° to 90° F. (26.6° to 32.1° C.), accompanied by gentle rubbing. *Wet compresses* upon the abdomen or legs at night sometimes relieve the pains. In Germany, too, there are numerous water-cure establishments in the hands of experienced directors, to which patients may be advantageously sent, but, unfortunately, there is nothing of the kind in this country which can be recommended. Oeynhausien-Rehme in Minden has the best reputation for its carbonic acid thermal salt baths, but the baths at Nauheim in Hess are similar. Mud and iron baths are found at Pymont, near Brunswick; Driburg, in Westphalia, Prussia; Elster, pleasantly situated in Saxony; Karlsbad, Marienbad, and Frazenbad, in Bohemia.

The *painful attacks* are often not relieved by the measures thus far suggested, and require more powerful treatment. The first to be used should be *phenacotin*, *acetanilid*, *exalgin*, *salophin*, *aspirin*, and *antipyrin*, while *morphin* should be deferred as long as possible. It may, however, be necessary, when it should be used hypodermically. *Cocain* used in the same manner in doses of from 1/6 to 1/4 grain (0.011 to 0.165 gm.) is also sometimes efficient, while *cannabis indica* in doses of 1/4 to 1/2 grain (0.0165 to 0.033 gm.) of the extract may also be tried. Bandaging with a broad flannel bandage from toes to thighs has been recommended for the sciatic pain and pressure for the relief of painful spots. Massive doses of strychnin have been suggested for the same purpose.

*Fatigue* of all kinds as well as anxiety of mind should be *avoided*, while moderate exercise may be encouraged. The bladder should be emptied at regular intervals even though there may be no desire for micturition. Vesical anesthesia may lead to retension. Excessive use of

the eyes should be avoided, as reading by a poor light or in a railroad train. Excesses in smoking, and especially in the use of alcohol, are harmful, as is also too frequent sexual indulgence. Overeating and the use of indigestible articles of food should be avoided, as gastric crises are invited by them. Excessive use of iodid may produce pseudo-crisis.

Great benefit has been obtained by the Fränkel movements. They are "based upon the education of the central nervous system by means of repeated exercises, whereby it is enabled to receive sufficiently distant stimuli from the limbs as to their position and so on, although the available quantity of sensation is rather small. It is necessary, of course, that the movements be attempted and carried out repeatedly and with great attention." They are too complex to be repeated here, and the student is referred to Fränkel's book.<sup>1</sup>

### HEREDITARY ATAXIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Hereditary Ataxic Paraplegia; Friedreich's Disease.*

**Definition.**—A disease whose clinical features are especially ataxia and paraplegia, occurring in families and at an age much earlier than ordinary tabes, from which it differs also in the addition of peculiar symptoms associated anatomically with lesions in the posterior and lateral columns.

**Historical.**—Friedreich reported in 1861, six cases of this disease and a further number in 1870, whence the association of his name with it, but as the name Friedreich's disease is also applied to *paramyoclonus multiplex*, confusion results. On the other hand, the term hereditary ataxia is scarcely correct, because while sometimes it is hereditary and even congenital, it is not always so. It usually occurs in families, several brothers and sisters being, as a rule, affected. Yet isolated cases occur. In one case of William Osler's three generations were involved. A neurotic tendency is sometimes noticed. Alcoholism and syphilis were present in parents in a few instances, consanguinity of parents in a very few only.

**Etiology.**—Its etiology is unknown. It is more common in males than in females, affecting 86 males and 57 females out of 143 cases collected by J. P. C. Griffith. Strümpell makes the opposite statement as to sexes, but other observers agree with Griffith. Of Griffith's cases, 15 occurred before the age of two, 39 before the age of six, 45 between six and ten, 20 between 11 and 15, 18 between 16 and 20, and six between 20 and 24. Cases have followed the acute infectious diseases.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The whole cord is smaller than in health. There is a decided degeneration of the posterior and lateral columns, and the degeneration in the posterior columns may extend throughout the cord, involving the whole of Goll's column and nearly all of Burdach's, leaving a narrow band of normal tissue near the posterior cornua. Different opinions are held in regard to the condition of the posterior roots. The degeneration of the lateral columns involves the area of the crossed pyramidal tracts, the direct cerebellar and Gowers' tracts as well as the column of Clarke with degeneration of its ganglion cells. As yet no changes

<sup>1</sup> "The Treatment of Tabetic Ataxia by means of Systematic Exercise," Freyberger's Translation, Philadelphia, 1902.

have been found in the cells of the posterior horns. The pia mater over the posterior column is sometimes thickened.

The disease seems to consist of a double morbid process, consisting in early degeneration of nerve elements, associated with a tendency to overgrowth of interstitial or neuroglia tissue. According to Dejerine and Letulle, it is a gliosis of the posterior and lateral columns, due possibly to defect in development.

**Symptoms.**—The essential symptoms are *ataxia with paraplegia*. Initial pains are rare. The ataxia is, however, peculiar. As in tabes, it begins in the legs, but it is swaying and irregular, more like that of drunkenness, more like cerebellar inco-ordination. The feet are not often raised too high, and while there is stamping, as in true tabes, it is less marked. Tabetic swaying may or may not be present. If present it is not increased when the eyes are closed. Ataxia is present in the reclining position.

The ataxia of the arms occurs early and is striking, the movements being choreiform, jerky, irregular, and swaying. The hand first moves an object in its efforts to secure it and then pounces upon it. There seems to be a superabundance of effort in voluntary movements, action is overdone, and prehension is claw-like. Again, the fingers may be spread out or overextended. The first manifestation of the disease in children is often a tendency to fall.

As the disease advances, irregular, *jerky movements* affect the head and shoulders, sometimes tremor-like. In most cases there is *nystagmus* when the eyes are moved laterally or upward, usually a late, sometimes an early, symptom. *Atrophy of the optic nerve* is rare, and the pupils are normal. *Speech* is sometimes impaired, generally as a late symptom—three, five or ten years after the initial symptoms. Syllables are elided—the speech is *scanning*—with occasional movements of the tongue, but no twitching of the lips.

The *paresis* is at first slight—indeed, the power of the muscles is at first unimpaired—while there is rarely ever total paralysis. Some patients, however, never walk. The nutrition of the muscles is good. The *knee-jerk generally disappears early*, or is at least absent when the cases come under observation. In a few this symptom appears late, while in some atypical cases this reflex has been reported increased. *Sensory symptoms are not usually conspicuous*. There may be none, even in bad cases. At times there is delayed sensation or impaired sensibility to pain and temperature. Increased sensitiveness may be present. *No visceral crises occur*.

While trophic lesions of the usual kind are rare, there occur peculiar *deformities*, especially of the feet. There is talipes equinus or equinovarus, and the patient walks on the outer edge of the foot. The *great toe* is overextended or dorsally flexed, and occasionally this is the first sign of the disease. There may be *lateral curvature of the spine*. The disease may last from 20 to 40 years.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not difficult, although sometimes the disease is confounded with *chorea*, with the hereditary form of which it has certain points in common. The ataxia in early life, the club-foot, overextended

great toe, spinal curvature, lost knee-jerks, nystagmus, and scanning speech form a complex of symptoms not found in any other disease.

It resembles *ataxic paraplegia* or combined lateral and posterior sclerosis in more than its symptomatology, but the increased knee-jerk, foot clonus, and spasms of the latter disease are wanting. In cases of combined sclerosis in which the knee-jerk is absent, the family history and youth of the subject can alone settle the question. The loss of iris reflex in children points to tabes, the result of inherited syphilis. *Disseminated sclerosis* presents inco-ordination, nystagmus, and defective articulation, but the knee-jerks are almost always exaggerated, and intention tremor is characteristic.

**Prognosis.**—This is invariably bad, so far as recovery is concerned, although the disease lasts many years.

**Treatment.**—There is no treatment except such as will overcome tendency to deformity. The remedies used in locomotor ataxia may be tried.

CEREBELLAR HEREDITARY ATAXIA has been described by Marie, Sanger-Brown, Klippel, and Durante. It starts after 20 years of age. There are ataxia, disordered speech, nystagmus, and heredity, but the knee-jerks are normal or exaggerated, there is Argyll Robertson pupil, optic nerve atrophy with limitation of the field of vision, while there is no scoliosis or club-foot. The opposite is true of hereditary ataxia. Many do not recognize the cerebellar hereditary ataxia as a distinct symptom-complex.

PROGRESSIVE INTERSTITIAL HYPERTROPHIC NEURITIS OF CHILDHOOD is also a family disease. The symptoms are a combination of those of tabes dorsalis with those of neurotic muscular atrophy (peroneal type of progressive atrophy). There are hypertrophy and hardening of peripheral nerves. It was first described by Dejerine and Sottas.

TOXIC SCLEROSIS, especially of the posterior and lateral columns, results from such diseases as pellagra, ergotism, and pernicious anemia.

## ATAXIC SPASTIC PARAPLEGIA OR COMBINED SCLEROSIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Progressive Spastic Paraplegia; Combined Lateral and Posterior Sclerosis.*

**Definition.**—A chronic disease of the spinal cord, characterized by symptoms which point to lesions of both lateral and posterior sclerosis, including, therefore, both spastic and ataxic features, the symptoms of one lesion being more or less modified by the other.

**Etiology.**—This is obscure. It is more common in males, is a disease of adult life in which overexertion, exposure, spinal traumatism, and sexual excess each have been antecedent events. Less frequently than tabes does it follow in the wake of the syphilitic taint. It is always associated with general paralysis of the insane. Heredity has been observed in one-tenth of the cases, and the neurotic constitution seems to favor it. It is probably most frequently associated with anemia.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As the name suggests, lesions are found in both posterior and lateral columns. In the posterior columns they resemble those of uncomplicated tabes dorsalis, and are most intense in the cervical

and thoracic portions of the cord, variously distributed, sometimes equally, at others preponderating in one or the other. The changes in the posterior root zones are less pronounced than in true tabes. In the lateral columns the crossed pyramidal tracts and in the anterior columns the direct pyramidal tracts are chiefly involved, though the mixed zones of the lateral columns, the lateral limiting layers, and the direct cerebellar tracts may also be invaded. The gray matter and membranes remain intact. Most cases are not truly systemic but are examples of diffuse lesions with secondary degeneration. This is especially true of the cases due to anemia.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are slow in their development, though occasionally a more rapid course is pursued, the only modification in this being that occasionally months instead of years are sufficient to develop the distinctive features. Those of either lesion may predominate at first. More usually those of ataxia are the first to appear, including fatigue and even pain after comparatively slight exertion, unsteadiness of gait, increased with the eyes closed, though an associated stiffness, may prevent the typical gait of tabes. There is also more or less paresis.

Sensibility is also diminished in combined sclerosis, but less so than in pure tabes. There may be dull pain or numbness in the lower extremities and in the back or sacral region, but the lightning pains of tabes are rarely present; nor is the girdle sensation, while visceral crises very rarely occur. The Argyll Robertson pupil is, also, commonly absent, but nystagmus is not infrequent.

The most striking difference in the symptomatology of ataxic paraplegia, as contrasted with true tabes, is the presence of *exaggerated reflexes in the former*, including knee-jerk and ankle clonus. Simple tapping of the patella or the belly of the quadriceps extensor brings out the former. The upper extremities are also often involved, and the chief symptoms here are weakness, inco-ordination with exaggerated wrist- and elbow-jerks.

Electrical reactions are unaltered, at least in the early stages of the disease. With advance of the disease the features of a purely lateral sclerosis become very pronounced; those of tabes less so. Muscular paresis and rigidity become marked, and the patient is unable to leave his bed. There is no localized *atrophy* of the muscles, although general wasting is not uncommon in the late stages of the disease. Very rarely there may be atrophy of the optic nerve, the ocular muscles remaining intact. The sphincters of the bladder and rectum are sometimes involved; at others not, that of the bladder more frequently, producing difficult micturition. On the other hand, by rest and tonic treatment the spastic symptoms may be diminished, while ataxia remains unchanged. The mind remains normal.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually easy, enough of the symptoms of each lesion being present to show the existence of a combined disorder. The *absence of co-ordination on the one hand and increase of knee-jerk on the other* are the two antipodal symptoms around which others of each lesion cluster. The presence of the Babinski reflex is regarded as distinctive of organic as distinguished from functional paraplegia. So it is in association with other signs indicative of organic disease. It is not, however, pathognomonic and may be found in pure functional conditions, as, for

example, uremia affecting the brain. Its presence, when of the typical type—*i. e.*, when the upward extension of the big toe, especially, is slow—strongly suggests organic disease of the central motor tracts.

Then, as to differential diagnosis, *myelitis* may present similar symptoms. On the other hand, *myelitis* is usually a disease of sudden development, characterized by a rapid increase of symptoms as contrasted with the slower course of the disease under consideration. *Friedreich's ataxia* resembles ataxic paraplegia closely in its pathology, but the exaggeration of the tendon reflexes and the spasticity are absent in the former. *Cerebellar tumor* may be mentioned with better reason as a disease which may be confounded, but in this headache, optic neuritis, and vomiting are peculiar, and while there is ataxic gait, it is the reel of a drunken man, and not the inco-ordination of tabes. So, too, there may be spastic symptoms in cerebellar disease, but they are less decided than in combined sclerosis. *Disseminated sclerosis* is a disease with which combined sclerosis may be confounded, and although it is the less pronounced forms of each which give rise to doubt, it is important to remember that the disseminated sclerosis has been found postmortem in cases which presented the clinical symptoms of spastic paraplegia during life. Whence it is not impossible that it may also present in its earlier stages symptoms of ataxic paraplegia.

**Prognosis.**—This is unfavorable as to recovery, but the disease is so slow in its development that death commonly results from intercurrent disease or from complications favored by the disease itself, such as disorders of the urinary organs, bed-sores, and septic complications. The disease may be arrested for a time.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is mainly symptomatic: warm baths and a warm climate for the spastic symptoms; massage and exercise for the ataxic symptoms. Electricity and spinal stimulants like strychnin are contra-indicated as calculated to increase the spastic symptoms, while bromids and belladonna may be of service in controlling these. If a specific history can be traced, the disease should be appropriately treated by iodids or mercurials, and when anemia is present the treatment should be directed to the improvement of this condition.

### SYRINGOMYELIA.

**Definition.**—A term applied to all cavities in the spinal cord, most of which are surrounded by an overgrowth of neuroglia.

**Etiology and Morbid Anatomy.**—The cavities are formed by defective closure of the central spinal canal or by the breaking down of residual embryonal tissue or of gliomatous tissue. The cavity of a syringomyelia is usually in the posterior part of the cord, extending toward the posterior cornua. It may prevail throughout the entire extent of the cord, but in most cases involves only the cervical or thoracic regions or more limited areas. The transverse section is oval or circular, but it may be fissure-like or quadrilateral, even irregular. On the other hand, a primary hemorrhage of traumatic origin, or even without trauma, may be the starting-point of a

syringomyelia, and it has been supposed that such a hemorrhage into the spinal cord, occurring at birth from difficult labor, may later in life cause the symptoms of syringomyelia. So, also, compression of the cord due to fracture or dislocation may furnish the condition which will result in cavity formation. The cavities may be multiple. The term hydromyelia, applied to the forms in which the cavity is merely the dilated central canal, is falling into disuse, and there is no real difference between this and the other varieties. It is probable that hydromyelia may change into syringomyelia.

**Symptoms.**—The milder degrees are without symptoms and are often overlooked. Symptoms usually make their appearance about the period of adolescence. They are mostly gradual in development, and are partly the result of the secondary processes of distention which derange natural function. The symptoms are influenced also by the situation of the cavity, which is found most frequently in the cervico-thoracic region, whence the arms and neck are correspondingly affected. They depend also on the greater involvement of the gray matter of the cord.

The essential symptoms are modified *sensibility*; chiefly to *pain, temperature*, and to a *less degree* simple touch; also muscular *atrophy*, the latter progressive in development; and *trophic disturbances*. The sensory symptoms are the earlier and more constant. The sense of tactile impression may be lost by involvement of its path, which, as has been said, is not precisely known after it enters the posterior roots, though it is probably, partly in the posterior columns. The comparative rarity of this involvement may be said to be due to the difficulty in destroying this path completely. Derangement of the sense of pain and thermal sense is probably due to implication of the central gray matter, since it is through it that these impressions probably radiate to the white conducting tracts of the opposite side. The extension of the process to the lateral columns probably explains the derangement of pain and thermal sensations, in portions of the body below the level of the cavity in the spinal cord. There may not only be a loss of thermal sense, but it may be reversed in that heat is felt as cold, and vice versa. So, also, subjective sensations are felt, including heat and cold, or, in their absence, pain, which may be neuralgic in character and irregular.

The muscular atrophy is the result of injury to the motor cells of the anterior cornua from compression or destruction of these cells. This cause's degeneration of the nerves and wasting of the muscles, and along with it is a lowered electrical irritability. There is also *muscular weakness*, involving the trunk muscles, and possibly to this is due the lateral curvature. If the legs are affected, it is generally from simple spastic paralysis from pressure on the pyramidal tracts, but sensory changes in the lower limbs occur. Great wasting of the legs indicates lumbar involvement, and the presence of ataxic symptoms points to involvement of the posterior columns. The remaining symptoms are not essential, but may be incidentally present from the action of the causes which usually produce them.

The *reflexes* may or may not be increased, and *myotatic irritability* may in rare cases be lost, while *tremor* of the limbs has been noticed in some cases.

*Trophic* symptoms are not rare in the parts affected by sensory loss. The skin may be glossy and thin, or thick and horny, while there may be

eczema, herpes, bullæ, and even ulceration and gangrene. The nails may become fissured and drop off. There may be deformity and absence of the end phalanges and lingual hemiatrophy. *Vasomotor* disturbances are more common, including coldness, lividity, or redness with swelling and heat. There may be sweating, brittleness of bone, and joint changes like those of tabes.

The area of the *cranial nerves* may be invaded when there is involvement of the medulla oblongata. The phenomena may include paralysis of one vocal cord, the tongue and face, difficulty in swallowing, of breathing, and embarrassed heart's action. The eyes may be disordered, and the pupils unequal, but the other special senses escape.

**Diagnosis.**—This is based upon the sensory symptoms, and of these thermo-anesthesia and analgesia rather than tactile insensibility, together with muscular atrophy succeeding after some interval. *Cervical pachymeningitis* causes like symptoms similarly distributed. J. Hendrie Lloyd, in an important paper,<sup>1</sup> has also called attention to certain traumatic affections of the cervical region of the cord simulating syringomyelia. Cervical pachymeningitis runs a more rapid course; the anesthesia includes all varieties of sensation and corresponds more nearly in its distribution to that of the muscular atrophy, pain is more conspicuous, and the reaction of degeneration is commonly present in the wasting muscles, and later, signs of compression of the cord are observed.

The symptoms of syringomyelia are sometimes simulated by the anesthesia and wasting of *anesthetic leprosy*, but in the latter disease the trophic changes are more marked, the phalanges often drop off, while the sensory symptoms include all varieties of sensation.

*Progressive muscular atrophy* differs in the absence of altered sensation. An intramedullary *spinal tumor* in the same situation as a syringomyelia furnishes almost identical symptoms, and may have an identical origin if it starts from the neuroglia, but the symptoms may be more rapid in their development.

The diagnosis of syringomyelia is sometimes exceedingly difficult to make, as the characteristic disturbances of sensation may be absent.

**Prognosis.**—This is ultimately fatal, although the course is slow, extending over a period from 15 to 20 years. Toward the end the course is more rapid, death resulting from exhaustion or interference with the functions of the medulla oblongata.

**Treatment.**—This can only consist in measures to combat symptoms and tendencies to them, such as cystitis, bed-sores, and the like.

#### MORVAN'S DISEASE.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Analgetic Panaritium; Analgesic Paresis with Panaritium; Painless Whitlows.*

**Definition.**—This term is applied to a chronic affection described in 1883 by a Breton physician named Morvan, which is characterized by neuralgic pains, tactile and thermal anesthesia, analgesia, and painless

<sup>1</sup> Read before the Philadelphia Neurological Society, March 26, 1894.



destructive felons (paronychia). The disease is probably in most cases the same as syringomyelia; in some instances it is leprosy. Twenty cases were recognized in a population of 50,000 in Brittany. One or two cases have been reported in America.

Zambuco, of Constantinople, found in the broken-down matter of the syringomyelic cavity of what seemed a typical case, Hansen's lepra bacillus. In two well-studied cases reported by Marinesco and Jeanselme to the Société Médicale des Hôpitaux de Paris, February 12, 1897, the typical lesions were found, but no bacilli.

## COMPRESSION OF THE SPINAL CORD.

SYNONYMS.—*Compression Myelitis; Pressure Paralysis of the Spinal Cord.*

**Definition.**—Under this head are included all forms of paralysis due to gradual compression of the cord from whatever cause.

**Etiology.**—A large number of causes may operate in the way indicated, among which are tumors or inflammatory new formations, including syphilitic products either in the membranes or outside of them, caries of the vertebræ, especially the form known as Pott's disease or tuberculosis of the vertebræ, cancer of the vertebræ, echinococci and cysticerci in the vertebral canal. Extraplural causes may also produce erosion of the vertebræ and compression of the cord; among these are aneurysm of the aorta, retroperitoneal sarcoma, lymphadenoid growths, and suppurating kidney; also retropharyngeal abscess. Pott's disease is by far the most frequent cause.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The changes in the cord as the result of compression are best studied in the compressions due to dislocation of the vertebræ in the breaking down of the bodies of one or more from tuberculous infiltration, or as the result of intrusion into the spinal canal of foci of cheesy pus from the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebræ. Macroscopically, the cord is often smaller, softer, and sometimes bent. In old cases it may be harder. The term myelitis has been applied to the changes thus produced in the cord, but careful examination fails in most cases to find any of the usual histological products of inflammation. In the early stages the axis-cylinders are swollen, and fatty granular cells may be present. The nerve-cells undergo more or less alteration depending on the degree of pressure. At a later stage may be seen a secondary overgrowth of neuroglia, replacing the destroyed nervous tissue, first loose, later firm and fibrillated. After a certain duration there may be ascending and descending secondary degeneration of certain systems of fibers in the spinal cord.

**Symptoms.**—When tuberculous disease of the spine is the cause, the resulting deformity—kyphosis—is usually seen long before the symptoms of compression of the cord are present. On the other hand, when the erosion is due to aneurysm or growths within the thorax or abdomen, the subjective symptoms appear before the deformity, or more frequently

without external deformity. The first of these symptoms is usually *pain* at the seat of the compression, which often does not amount to more than a dull ache, while at another time it is extremely severe. It is also aggravated by bending or straightening the body. Again, the pain is distributed along the course of the nerves, when the compression is exerted on the nerve-roots. Previous to such pain and associated with it are *paresthesias* of various kinds, such as numbness, tingling, and formication. More rarely there is *impaired sensibility*, the same degree of pressure which deranges the function of motor fibers having often no effect on the sensory. Marked anesthesia is rare, and then only in the last stages. When the lesion is confined to the thoracic region, there may be *girdle sensation* and *pain* in the course of the intercostal nerves.

With the foregoing soon become associated *motor symptoms*, which may consist in *stiffness*, giving rise to difficulty in moving arms or legs, with peculiarity of gait, or there may be simple weakness or *paresis*, increasing to complete motor *paralysis*. These symptoms rarely affect both arms or legs at once, but rather first one and then the other.

The seat of the more pronounced sensory and motor symptoms varies with the segment compressed. Thus, when the caries is in the *upper cervical region*, between the axis and the atlas, or between the latter and the occipital bone, there may be *spasm of the cervical muscles*, the head may be fixed, and movements may either be impossible or extremely painful. Retropharyngeal abscess may be the cause of such a symptom, as in a case in the Montreal General Hospital mentioned by Osler, where movement was liable to be followed by transient instantaneous paralysis of all four extremities from the compression of the cord, the patient dying in one of the attacks.

If in the *lower cervical region*, there may be *dilatation of the pupils* from interference with the ciliospinal center or nerve-fibers arising in this center. There may be *flushing* of the face and ear on one side or *unilateral sweating*, *rigidity of the muscles* of the neck, while the sensory and motor symptoms described, if present, will be found in the arms. The deformity of tuberculous caries is not always marked in this locality, but after recovery evidence of its presence may be found in a conspicuous *callus*, which may cause permanent rigidity of the neck. The cortical inhibitory influence being suspended, both tendon and cutaneous *reflexes* are increased, sometimes so markedly as to produce in the lower extremities a pronounced type of the spastic paralysis, with increased patellar reflex and ankle clonus. The increase of the skin reflexes is less marked than that of the tendons.

When the *thoracic* and *lumbar* segments are involved, only the *lower extremities* suffer from the effect of compression; commonly the paresis is late, though rarely it may appear before the deformity of Pott's disease. Girdle sensation and pain in the course of intercostal nerves were named above as sensory symptoms of compression of the dorsal cord. Here, as elsewhere, motion is affected before sensation. As to the reflexes, since the reflex arc for the lower tendon reflexes is in the lumbar region, compression of the *thoracic* cord should produce an increase in them, and this is usually the case. On the other hand, they are diminished

when the *lumbar* cord is compressed. If the lower thoracic and lumbosacral region is affected, the sphincters are apt to be involved, and there is, first, difficulty in micturition, then retention, and finally incontinence with cystitis, but the sphincters may also be involved from lesions higher in the cord. Yet all these symptoms may disappear, and recovery take place after many months' duration of the disease.

*Trophic symptoms* may be present in the paralyzed parts. These may include herpetic eruptions in the course of the nerves, at other times derangement of nutrition, manifested by bed-sores forming on slight irritative provocation, rapid shedding of the epidermis and brittleness of the nails. With the involvement of their trophic center the muscles may waste.

**Diagnosis.**—This is easy when there are evident signs of caries of the spine, manifested by prominence of spinous processes of the vertebræ and by tenderness on pressure. Repeated examination of the spine should be made. Nerve-root symptoms, or symptoms resulting from pressure of nerve-roots, as they pass out between the vertebræ, are always significant. They include radiating pains, girdle sensation, and hyperesthesia or anesthesia, spasm and wasting. Stiffness on motion in separate parts of the spinal column is also significant. Root symptoms are said to be more common in cancer than in caries, but any of the symptoms named have increased diagnostic value if there has been cancer elsewhere, especially of the breast, and if the age exceeds 40. There is much more pain attending the paraplegia of cancer—whence the term *paraplegia dolorosa*, when the pain is referred to areas anesthetic to tactile and painful impressions. Such is the case whenever erosion is wrought from the abdomen outward, as by retroperitoneal growths or aneurysm.

**Prognosis.**—This is unfavorable in all cases except tuberculous spondylitis, which often terminates in cure, for, sooner or later, especially with suitable treatment, the tuberculous process may cease and the symptoms of paralysis disappear, although, of course, the kyphosis remains. Some cases perish from miliary tuberculosis, others from the exhaustion incident to bed-sores, cystitis, and pyelonephritis.

**Treatment.**—Only when tuberculous spondylitis is responsible is there hope of cure. The treatment is general, by the usual measures found useful in tuberculosis, such as cod-liver oil and creasote or creasotol, with such tonics as iron and iodine, good food, fresh air, and mechanical appliances suggested by the orthopedic surgeon. These should be so adjusted as not to produce pain. Their object is to produce extension and thus relieve compression, and if this is not accomplished, they are useless. The method of extension by suspension, originally suggested by the late J. K. Mitchell, and more recently revived by Weir Mitchell and extensively practiced of late years, has again fallen into comparative disuse, partly because of the difficulties in carrying it out, and perhaps because there have been some unfortunate accidents. Good results have, however, followed its use. Especially may such results be hoped for if the extension is used early, although they have followed even after paralysis had supervened.

Along with the extension, rest in bed is a most important measure,

and many cases are arrested by such rest. Local measures, like counter-irritation and the hot iron, are of no use—rather harmful than otherwise. The same may be said of electrical treatment and massage, except so far as they are useful to keep up the nutrition in the paralyzed muscles. On the other hand, warm bathing is useful in relieving pain and allaying discomfort.

*Operative treatment*—laminectomy—has lately been practiced with a good showing of result, and it should be considered, at least, after other measures have failed. Treatment should be persevered in, as recovery takes place sometimes after paralysis has long persisted, and in no form of tuberculosis has the general treatment previously recommended been so useful.

In the incurable forms anodynes must be resorted to to relieve pain, including even the hypodermic use of morphin, which should never be used without bearing in mind the possibility of the patient acquiring the morphin habit.

### TUMORS OF THE SPINAL CORD AND MEMBRANES.

Both the membranes and the substance of the cord may be seats of tumors, while the cord may also be invaded from the spinal column by enchondroma or sarcoma.

**Varieties.**—From the spinal column, enchondroma, sarcoma, and cancer may intrude into the canal. External to the dura mater in the extradural space occur fatty and malignant tumors, while parasites are also found in this region. The extradural tumors, all rare, may spring from the dura or from the tissue between it and the bone, or may arise outside and pass through the intervertebral foramina. Within the dura are found myxomata, fibromata, lipomata, and neuromata on the nerve-roots. Subdural tumors may arise from the inner surface of the dura, the arachnoid, or from the pia, and may include sarcomata, syphilitic, tuberculous, and parasitic growths. The last two are rare, but both echinococci and cysticerci have been met, developing in the meshes of the arachnoid. Schlesinger collected 44 cases of echinococcus disease. When the parasite is intradural it is round or oval and compresses the cord. The dura is not usually implicated, merely distended. Of the 44 cases only five were intradural, so that the extradural location is seven times more frequent than the intradural. The cysts are usually on the posterior surface of the cord and in the thoracic portion of the vertebral canal, at least in the extradural variety. They may be the size of a pea, of a walnut, or even larger. Their contents are clear and they often contain daughter cysts. Their growth is usually slow. It is said that the hydatids are sometimes found in the substance of the bone.

Fatty tumors are also rare, but have been found and are probably congenital, because they were usually found associated with spina bifida. In the cord itself occur tuberculous, syphilitic, and gliomatous tumors; sarcomata and myxomata have been found. Glioma and sarcoma are the most common. Some of these tumors spring from the pia mater, but

tuberculous growths also develop in the gray matter. Some tumors are compound, as myxosarcoma, etc. Sarcomatous or carcinomatous meningitis occurs infrequently.

The size attained by tumors of the spinal cord and membranes is necessarily limited by the surrounding space. The largest do not exceed two inches (5 cm.) in diameter, and many are very small, not larger than a pea. They are usually single, rarely multiple, as seen in the instance of neuromata, and occasionally sarcoma. The so-called neuromata are usually fibro-neuromata. Tumors developing within the cord may lead to syringomyelia.

**Symptoms.**—These vary with the seat of the tumor and the degree of pressure exerted. When the latter increases slowly, the growth may

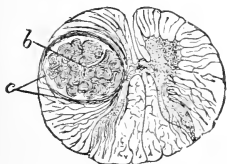


FIG. 112.—Sarcoma of the Lower Cervical Cord—(Adamkiewics).



FIG. 113.—Sarcoma Compressing the Cervical Cord—(E. Long Fox).

reach quite a large size before serious symptoms occur. *Pain* is a frequent and conspicuous symptom, and is likely to be maintained by pressure on nerve-roots which are in the way of the growth. The seat of pain varies with the course of the nerves impinged upon, and may be of every variety, such as "burning," "tearing," "stabbing," "aching," "girdle sensations," and the like. It may be unilateral or bilateral, and is worse, according to Horsley, when the tumor presses forward. Sometimes the pain is in the spine itself, which may also in rare instances be tender to pressure. When the growth is in the lower lumbar region, the pain may be referred to the soles of the feet, and may ascend from this seat. In other cases there is hyperesthesia of the skin, which may be associated with pain felt at the level of the tumor, or pain may be felt in anesthetic areas. Very rarely pain is absent, chiefly in extradural lipoma.

*Muscular spasm* is also frequent, especially when the tumor springs from the membranes, when it may be very decided. There may be rigidity

at the seat of the growth, most marked when the disease is at the more mobile parts of the spine, as the cervical region. Then there is apt to be pain in the vicinity, increased by motion. Spasm in the abdominal muscles may also be associated with *girdle pains*. *Contractures* may arise in the limbs, both those supplied by nerves directly irritated by the tumor and by those given off lower down. It is important to note the seat of the rigidity and its character, which may aid us in diagnosing the seat of the tumor, whether it is on the nerve-roots or conducting tract of the cord. Thus, a tumor in one-half of the cord, in the cervical region, may cause persistent contraction of the arm and leg on the side of the growth, and in the early stage of thoracic tumors one leg only may be rigid at a time or one may be more so than the other. In the thoracic region the level of the pain is likely to be a little below the level of the growth, and the reflexes centering at this level may be lost, but retained in the legs.

*Paralysis* occurs sooner or later as constantly as pain, increasing gradually with the pressure. Paraplegia is more common, but all four limbs may be paralyzed by a tumor in the cervical region, one limb being usually affected before the other, though when the tumor is exactly central, both sides are affected simultaneously. Loss of sensation follows paralysis sooner or later. It corresponds in distribution to the motor palsy when the tumor is in the lumbar region of the cord, but if higher and on one side, the sensory loss may be greater on the opposite side; especially is this the case when the tumor is within the cord, when the symptoms may be those already described under the head of Brown-Séquard's paralysis.

*Atrophy* follows involvement of the anterior cornua, and *vasomotor* disturbances may be marked. In cases of prolonged interruption *ascending and descending degenerations* may occur. Tumors not infrequently cause subacute or acute myelitis, whose symptoms may mask the clinical picture.

**Diagnosis.**—The characteristic symptoms are slow development of severe and constant unilateral root symptoms, later bilateral, at the level of the growth, and a progressive paralysis, motor and sensory. The radiating pain is usually at the level of the tumor or below. Pain in the spine itself is an important sign. Rigidity of the muscles of the spine, muscular contractions in the limbs, early and marked exaggeration of reflex action when the cord itself is involved, are also important signs, especially when associated with the history of syphilis or tuberculous disease. *Caries of the spine* may produce the same symptoms, but the radiating pains are less severe and the effects of compression of the cord are more likely to be bilateral, either from the first or soon after their commencement. Tenderness of the spine may generally be elicited by careful examination, while irregularity of surface, from the breaking down of the bone, sooner or later makes its appearance. When the *tumor is in the bone itself*, the symptoms at first scarcely differ from those of caries, though the pain on motion is usually worse in the former.

The symptoms of *cervical meningitis* also closely resemble those of tumor. They are, however, usually bilateral from the first and have considerable vertical extent. Central tumors covering a like area may produce identical symptoms, except that pain is usually unimportant.

Pain and muscular atrophy in the arms without wasting occur in both extramedullary tumor and meningitis, but wasting is likely to develop later, and the diagnosis between the two conditions may be extremely difficult.

*Chronic transverse myelitis* also closely simulates tumor in its radiating pain, sense of constriction, progressive paralysis, and a differential diagnosis is sometimes impossible. The symptoms here, too, are from the first bilateral, while the radiating pain is commonly not severe in myelitis, which invades also larger areas of the cord.

*Circumscribed serous spinal meningitis* may closely simulate clinically tumor of the spinal cord. It has been found in association with necrotic osteitis of the vertebræ, pachymeningitis, caries of the vertebræ, adhesions between the dura and pia, bony projection on the inner surface of a vertebra, and meningo-myelitis. A few cases are on record in which no complication seemed to be present. At operation or at necropsy a collection of clear fluid, resembling cerebro-spinal fluid, is found in a cyst, the wall of which is made by the delicate pia. Nothing is really known as to the cause of this apparently idiopathic collection of fluid. Inasmuch as it is strictly circumscribed, it produces the symptoms of pressure upon the spinal cord, and cannot be distinguished clinically from spinal tumor. Removal of the fluid by operation may give complete relief from the symptoms, and there may be no tendency to recurrence. The recognition of the condition by surgeons is therefore of much practical importance, especially as the disorder is probably more common than the paucity of reports indicates. Sometimes the meningitis is circumscribed without cyst formation.

As to the exact seat of the tumor, in general terms it may be said that *when within the cord*, the symptoms are those of a gradually increasing paraplegia or of a Brown-Séquard's paralysis, while vasomotor disturbances are marked, and reflexes are bilaterally influenced, according to the law explained. Atrophy means involvement of the ventral cornua. Acute or subacute myelitis may be associated and complicate the clinical picture. Tumors in the *membranes* are characterized by early "root symptoms," including radiating pains, girdle sensation, and hyperesthesia or anesthesia. Irritation of motor nerves may cause spasm or wasting, with paralysis late in the disease.

The nature of the tumor may be inferred only from the history of the case, syphilis and tuberculosis giving the most valuable assistance. Its seat is suggested by the level of the transverse symptoms. It is never below these, while it may be a distance of three or four vertebræ above the nerves corresponding to the highest level of anesthesia or pain. The diagnosis of tumor from other transverse lesions of the cord may be at times impossible.

**Prognosis.**—In all forms the symptoms gradually increase until paralysis results, unless operative interference produces a more favorable termination—a practice which modern methods are rendering more frequent and justifiable.

**Treatment.**—When there is reason to believe syphilis is present, the antisyphilitic treatment may be used with reasonable expectation of suc-

cess, as some cases of syphilitic meningitis simulate tumors. Beyond this, symptoms must be met as they arise. Attempts made of late years to formulate the laws governing surgical operations in these cases have been more or less successful, but wider experience is necessary before they can be thoroughly relied upon. I may, however, close this subject with the advice of Victor Horsley, whose studies on surgery of the nervous system entitles his opinion to the highest respect: "If it is clear that the growth is not syphilitic, and that no good can be done by other treatment, delay in an operation can only cause harm—can only result in a less favorable state for the proceeding, less chance of recovery, longer and greater suffering, and should, on every ground, be avoided."

### LESIONS OF THE CAUDA EQUINA AND CONUS MEDULLARIS.

The *cauda equina* is the bundle of nerves coming off from the lower cord and occupying the spinal canal from the second lumbar vertebra downward. At this vertebra the cord itself terminates in the *conus medullaris*, prolonged into the thread-like *filum terminale*. Fractures and dislocations in the lumbosacral region may impinge on these parts, while the filaments of the nerves of the cauda equina may be invaded by tumors or compressed by cicatrices.

**Symptoms.**—*Compression* of the *conus* and of the *last sacral nerves* given off from it, such as may be caused by a dislocation of the first lumbar vertebra, produces paralysis of the bladder and rectum and loss of sexual power, whence it has been inferred that the anovesical center and the center for the sexual functions are seated in this part of the cord. This paralysis may be the only symptom or it may be associated with disturbance of sensation about the anus and in the perineum and external genital organs except the testicle, the latter being supplied with sensation from a higher segment of the cord.

When the *lumbar nerve-roots*<sup>1</sup> are involved, from the *second to the fourth* inclusive, there is paralysis embracing all the muscles of the thigh and leg except the outer rotators of the thigh, the flexors of the knee and of the ankles, the peroneal muscles, the long flexors of the toes, and the small foot muscles. There is also loss of sensation in the front, inner, and outer parts of the thighs and the inner side of the leg and foot.

Involvement of the fifth lumbar and first and second sacral nerves produces paralysis of the muscles just excepted, and loss of sensation in the outer and posterior part of the leg, foot, and sole of the foot. *Lesion of the third, fourth, and fifth* sacral and *coccygeal* nerves causes paralysis of the peroneal muscles, the bladder, rectum, and of the external genitals, the coccygeus, with loss of sensation in the back of the thigh, anus, perineum, genital organs, and skin about the anus and coccyx.

<sup>1</sup> Of the lumbar nerves, the first root appears between the first and second lumbar vertebrae, the fifth between the last lumbar and the base of the sacrum. The four upper sacral nerves pass from the spinal canal through the sacral foramina, the fifth between the sacrum and coccyx.



## SPINA BIFIDA.

SYNONYMS.—*Split Spine; Hydrorrhachis; Myelocoele; Meningocoele*

**Definition.**—A name applied to a congenital defect in the closure of the spinal canal, through which protrudes a sac-like portion of the dura containing cerebrospinal fluid, at times a part of the cord, either normal or altered, and forming also, as a rule, an external prominence of tumor covered by skin.

**Description.**—The tumor is found commonly in the lumbar and sacral portions of the spine, rarely in more than one place, very rarely throughout the whole column. Its size ranges from that of a small nut to that of an orange, and occasionally it is so large as to interfere with the birth of a child afflicted with it. On section of the skin the protruding sac of the dura is seen and beneath this the arachnoid. Rarely is the dura cleft so that the sac is formed by the arachnoid only. There may be a dilatation of the central canal—hydromyelia—when the substance of the cord is found more or less atrophied, while the central canal communicates directly with the cavity of the spina bifida. At other times the cord is normal, while its lower end may be adherent to the sac. A tumor of similar character is occasionally seen protruding through the skull.

**Symptoms.**—At first there are usually no clinical symptoms. By pressure the contents of the tumor can often be forced into the spinal canal, causing expansion of the fontanels and increase of cerebral pressure with its consequences—viz., somnolence, with changes in the pulse and breathing, which may be fatal if the pressure is continued. The absence of such symptoms goes to show that communication of the tumor with the spinal cord is cut off.

With the lapse of time the tumor usually grows slowly, and the effects of pressure on the spinal cord or cauda equina appear. These are paralysis, atrophy, anesthesia, bed-sores, vesical derangements, talipes varus, and trophic phenomena, of which perforating ulcer of the foot is one. The sac may burst, or the walls become inflamed, converting the contents into pus.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—Unless removed by surgical interference, the child dies sooner or later of exhaustion. The tumor has been rarely obliterated by gradually increasing pressure or by injecting the cavity, after evacuation of the fluid, with iodine, producing obliteration through an inflammatory process. Other surgical measures may be found in text-books on surgery.

## PROGRESSIVE BULBAR PALSY.

SYNONYMS.—*Polioencephalitis inferior chronica; Glossolabio-pharyngeal Paralysis; Paralysis of the Tongue, the Soft Palate, and the Lips; Duchenne's Disease; Atrophic Bulbar Paralysis.*

**Definition.**—Bulbar palsy is a progressive paralysis invading the lips, the tongue, the palate, the pharynx and larynx, and in more advanced

cases the lower face muscles due to lesion of the motor nuclei in the medulla oblongata (or bulb), whence arise the nerves distributed to those parts.

**Historical.**—Bulbar palsy was first completely described in its clinical aspects by Duchenne in 1860, but the exact seat of the disease was not determined until 1870, when Charcot in France and E. Leyden in Germany confirmed the earlier suggestion that it was a progressive degeneration and atrophy of the nuclei in the medulla oblongata.

**Etiology.**—Primary progressive bulbar palsy is difficult to account for. It is more frequent in men, and sometimes heredity or family tendency is noted. It has been ascribed to the overuse of the muscles of the mouth, as in the blowing of wind-instruments; to a tumor in the medulla oblongata or vicinity; while syphilis, to which so many of the unaccountable lesions of the nervous system are ascribed, is less commonly held responsible for this affection than for some others. Cold, emotional excitement, and extreme fatigue have all been named as causes. Most frequently, however, no cause is traceable.

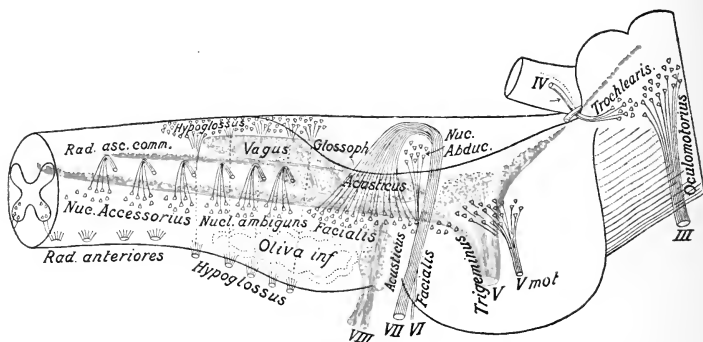


FIG. 114.—Situation of the Cranial Nerves—(after Edinger).

Cranial nerve nuclei, oblongata, and pons represented as transparent. Motor nuclei, black; sensitive nuclei, red.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Most writers concede that the lesion starts in the motor nuclei of the medulla oblongata. It may be that the entire motor apparatus from the muscular fiber to the ganglionic cell is invaded simultaneously. Certain it is that bulbar paralysis is often associated both with progressive spinal muscular atrophy and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, the symptoms now of one and now of the other preceding. There can be no doubt that these three conditions are closely allied. The nature of the lesion is the same in each, the motor cells in each are involved, the muscles are wasted in each, though the particular ones involved vary as the situation of the motor cells is different.

The anatomical lesion is an *atrophy of the motor cells of the medulla oblongata*. The nucleus of the hypoglossus, the nucleus of the pneumogastric, to a less degree that of the facial and that of the glossopharyngeal are all involved, while the *sensory nuclei are intact*. Very rarely the nuclei of the ocular nerves, third, fourth, and sixth, are involved.

From these nuclei the degeneration extends to the *nerves* which have their origin in them, and thence to the *muscles* to which they are distributed.

The nature of the degeneration is a more or less complete destruction of the motor cells. In addition, there is an overgrowth of neuroglia tissue and a thickening of the walls of the blood-vessels. The nerve-fibers of the pyramidal tract may undergo degeneration.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of progressive bulbar paralysis are exceedingly gradual in their development. The first symptom noticeable is usually a *difficulty in the pronunciation of words* containing letters which require the use of the tongue in their formation, such as E, R, L, S, G (hard), K, D, T, and N. Still later there is difficulty in pronunciation of words requiring the aid of the lips, as P, B, F, V, O, A (long), and the sound of O in tool, while whispering becomes impossible.

Concurrently with these symptoms the *tongue and lips* are observed to *waste*, the tongue becomes thinner and narrower, the lips thin and compressed in appearance, the loss of power being commensurate with the degree of wasting. *Fibrillar tremors* are usually seen in the tongue, and the mucous membrane may be thrown into transverse folds. Finally, the *tongue cannot be protruded*, or can be brought only to the edge of the teeth, while the *mouth cannot be closed* because of complete paralysis of the orbicularis oris muscle. In more advanced stages other muscles of the face become involved, the labionasal fold is less distinct, and the face becomes expressionless.

Before this degree has been attained, however, the muscles of the *palate* have commenced to fail in their action, and thus a further difficulty in the articulation of words is added, while the *voice is nasal*. Fluid begins to pass through the nose when swallowing is attempted. The difficulty in swallowing is increased by growing *paralysis of the pharyngeal muscles*, and is further aggravated by the inability of the tongue to carry the bolus of food backward. Feeding the patient is a troublesome and disgusting process, the food being scattered all about and sometimes thrown to a considerable distance, by the act of coughing facilitated by absence of power in the lips to retain substances in the mouth. By this time, too, the *laryngeal muscles* are involved, and the patient's efforts to speak result in mere grunts.

Thus he cannot talk, he cannot swallow, he cannot close his mouth; he cannot expectorate, yet the saliva flows from his mouth because he can neither swallow nor close his lips, and the term "driveling idiot" well covers the impression caused by his appearance. Yet his mental powers are unimpaired, and may remain so until the last. The motor electrical phenomena in the muscles involved may be altered, and the *reaction of degeneration* may be present.

To these symptoms are to be added complications due to the paralysis. From the difficulty in swallowing, particles of food may enter the larynx, be insufflated to the deeper parts of the lungs, and there cause a pneumonia which may be fatal, or the fragment which enters the larynx may be so large as to cause death by suffocation.

In rare cases the lower distribution of both facial nerves is involved,

producing *diplegia facialis*; but the upper distribution usually escapes. Or there may be paralysis of the ocular nerves to which it may be confined (anterior bulbar paralysis or progressive *ophthalmoplegia* of von Graefe). Even the muscles supplied by the spinal accessory and the motor branch of the trifacial may be invaded. In all these instances the nuclei of the corresponding nerves are affected.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is generally easy, the symptoms are so characteristic and so evident. For a typical case they must be purely motor; they must be disassociated from other muscular involvements which would go to make them a part of *progressive spinal muscular paralysis* or *amyotrophic lateral sclerosis*. If there are disturbances of sensation, invasion of the upper division of the facial, of nerves of special sense, the disease is not true bulbar paralysis. There must be some general involvement of the medulla oblongata, thrombosis, or embolism, a tumor developing near it or diffuse sclerosis through it.

There is a *glossolabiopharyngeal paralysis* of cerebral origin known as "pseudobulbar paralysis," in which there is partial or complete paralysis of the tongue and lips, due to bilateral and possibly even unilateral cerebral lesions. Close examination will, however, detect, sooner or later, deviations from the typical course, which include absence of fibrillary tremor, and of atrophy, and of reaction of degeneration. The symptoms tend, too, to occur first with the involvement of the limbs of one side and later of those of the other side. Mentality is much affected, and the reflexes may be exaggerated. Bulbar tumors run a like chronic course, but almost always present unilateral symptoms.

**Prognosis.**— The disease is invariably sooner or later fatal, although it is said that its progress may be delayed by treatment; this, however, is questionable.

**Treatment.**—If there be any suspicion that syphilis is the cause, *iodid of potassium* should be used. *Galvanism* is recommended, electrodes being applied to the two mastoid processes daily for two or three minutes, the current often reversed. The sympathetic nerve and the affected muscles of the lips and the tongue may be similarly treated, faradization being also substituted for galvanism in the case of the muscles. Deglutition may even be excited by galvanism when it begins to be impaired. This is accomplished by placing the anode on the nape of the neck and the cathode on one side of the larynx. At every cathodal closure, or every time that the cathode is carried across the side of the larynx, there is a reflex act of deglutition. When deglutition becomes very difficult, the stomach-tube should be used and nutrient substances thus introduced. Great care should be exercised in feeding the patient without the tube, lest the food pass into the trachea and cause suffocation. Hence, too, the use of the tube should not be too long deferred.

In addition to *iodid of potassium*, *nitrate of silver* and ergot are also recommended. The first should be given in such doses as the stomach will tolerate, while salivation may be controlled by atropin— $\frac{1}{100}$  to  $\frac{1}{60}$  grain (0.00066 to 0.0011 gm.). Silver should be given in the usual doses of  $\frac{1}{6}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  gr. (0.0166 to 0.016 gm.); ergot in usual doses.

## ACUTE BULBAR PALSY.

**Etiology.**—Besides the chronic or progressive form of bulbar palsy, there is an acute variety which is caused by hemorrhage into the pons and medulla, or possibly by thrombosis or embolism of the vessels supplying these centers—viz., the anterior spinal, vertebral, and basilar. Inflammation of the medulla oblongata is also a cause. Thrombosis may occur in any of the vessels, and is commonly due to atheromatous or syphilitic endarteritis. Inflammation is a rare affection, but does occasionally occur.

Hemorrhage, thrombosis, and embolism are subject to the same causes here as elsewhere in the brain, but the cause of the inflammatory form of acute bulbar palsy is unknown. It is probably infection or intoxication.

**Symptoms.**—In any event the symptoms are sudden. They are those already detailed in connection with progressive bulbar paralysis, but others are added. There is usually no loss of consciousness, though there may be. There may also be deranged cardiac action and respiration, including irregular and frequent pulse, vasomotor derangements, and Cheyne-Stokes breathing. The temperature, normal at first, may rise to 105° to 107° F. (40.5° to 40.71° C.) and higher as a fatal termination is approached. Sensation is rarely affected. Most characteristic of all is the so-called *crossed paralysis*, described on page 932, which attends most hemorrhages into the pons, in which there is paralysis of the face on one side and of the extremities on the other; but the motor tract may not be involved, and in that case paralysis is not observed.

**Diagnosis.**—Suddenness of occurrence of the symptoms named indicates one of the accidents previously mentioned, while a crossed hemiplegia, provided it is of the limbs on one side and of the face on the other, is conclusive. When inflammation of the medulla oblongata is present, the phenomena of bulbar paralysis do not occur quite so suddenly. They may be several days or even a few weeks in developing, and may be preceded by prodromal symptoms, such as vertigo and painful sensations in the back of the neck.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is the same as for similar lesions elsewhere in the brain.

## MYASTHENIA GRAVIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Pseudoparalytic Myasthenia; Bulbar Palsy without Discernible Anatomical Changes; Asthenic Bulbar Paralysis; General Profound Myasthenia; Erb's Disease; Hoppe-Goldflam Symptom Complex.*

**Definition.**—A disease beginning usually with weakness of the muscles of the tongue, lips, larynx, and eyes, followed by rapid exhaustion and temporary paralysis of the muscles of the extremities; by temporary recovery of power after rest; occasionally terminating in persistent paralysis.

**History.**—The disease was first described by Wilkes in 1877 as "an unusual form of glosso-labio-laryngeal paralysis." In 1879 Erb reported three cases which he described as a new syndrome, probably of bulbar origin. It, however, attracted little

attention until the publication of Goldflam's paper in 1891. In 1891 and 1892 Jolly, and in 1892 Hoppe published reports of cases; also in 1892 Goldflam published his paper in which were collected all cases published up to that date with four new cases. In 1896 Strümpell collected twenty cases. In 1900 Harry Campbell and Edwin Bramwell made the most complete study of the cases so far as published—in all about 70. They give the details of 60. In a later paper<sup>1</sup> Edwin Bramwell says up to the present time only some 80 or possibly 90 cases have been reported. Other cases have, however, been reported since this date.

**Etiology and Pathology.**—The disease occurs usually in those from twenty to forty years of age, and in both sexes alike. It is believed to be due to an autogenetic toxin. Congenital defect or abnormality either in the construction or mode of functioning of the neuro-motor apparatus rather than in the muscles, has been suggested by E. Bramwell, and especially the lower motor-neuron. It has followed the infectious diseases, and in about one-fourth of the cases neurophathic heredity has been noted. At necropsy no lesion was found for a long time, which would account for the symptoms, but more recently several cases have been reported in which a cellular infiltration of muscles was observed.

**Symptoms.**—These include ptosis, paresis of the facial muscles, difficult mastication, and difficulty in swallowing and talking. They are due to fatigue of the muscles involved, and the patient can talk a few sentences quite glibly, but his speech soon grows indistinct and ultimately incomprehensible. So with chewing and swallowing so far as the first mouthfuls are concerned, but these acts soon become impossible. The muscles of the extremities and trunk, as well as those innervated by the cranial nerves are involved, the same rapid fatigue supervening on effort. Thus one of Strümpell's patients could ascend a flight of stairs very well once, but in making a second effort had to invoke the aid of a bannister, while the third and fourth efforts were ineffectual. Such a condition is known as the *myasthenic* state. At times the abnormal fatigue and consequent symptoms are limited to the lower extremities. A similar effect succeeds on continued faradization of the muscles, first detected by Jolly, and is called the *myasthenic reaction*. Almost equally characteristic is the disappearance of fatigue after the muscles have been put at rest for a time.

**Diagnosis.**—In well-marked cases this is easy, but when the symptoms are less pronounced, there may be difficulty. Cases are often met, especially in hysterical women, who complain of inability to hold up the head, which clearly do not belong to this class. But it is to be remembered that true myasthenia gravis is very different from hysteria. An ability to use the muscles at first, followed rapidly by an opposite state, must always be looked for, and these conditions may be applicable to the muscles of the lower extremities, as well as to those of the bulbar nerves. The absence of muscular atrophy is essential to myasthenia gravis; the ocular and upper face muscles are more likely to be paralyzed than in bulbar palsy. The myasthenic reaction should be sought. The muscles respond normally to galvanism.

**Prognosis.**—This is not always unfavorable, but one must not be misled by the apparent improvement succeeding rest, which is often temporary.

<sup>1</sup> "Scottish Med. and Sur. Journal," May, 1901.

**Treatment.**—It is evident from what has been said that rest is most important. Prolonged rest and the avoidance of mental excitement, and the use of massage and mild galvanization of muscles are recommended, and even central galvanization of the spinal cord and medulla oblongata. Galvanization of the respiratory muscles may produce unfavorable results. Since faradization excites the myasthenic state, it should not be used.

The nourishment, or mode of nourishment, is most important, in view of the fact that the muscles of mastication and deglutition are at fault. The food, therefore, should either be liquid or very finely minced, and unless deglutition is natural and easy, the stomach tube should be used, but great care should be exercised in its use for fear of producing exhaustion. Dark glasses may relieve the fatigue of the ocular muscles.

The drugs recommended are the usual ones: strychnin, arsenic, phosphorus, and other tonics, but no direct results have been traced to them.

## AMYOTROPHIC LATERAL SCLEROSIS.

SYNONYM.—*Charcot's Disease.*

Notwithstanding the similarity of the clinical phenomena, and, to a certain extent, of the morbid anatomy of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis to those of the so-called progressive spinal muscular atrophy, to be next considered, there appears to me sufficient difference to justify a separate consideration.

**Definition.**—Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is a systemic degeneration of the pyramidal tracts of the spinal cord, with atrophy of motor cells in the anterior cornua and medulla oblongata, and consequent wasting of muscles, depending upon these cells for their trophic influence.

**History.**—The confusion which has long existed between this disease and progressive spinal muscular atrophy was first cleared up by Charcot and his pupil, Joffroy, who published a fairly accurate account of the disease in 1869 and a complete description in 1874. Such description became possible, however, only after Flechsig's studies of the paths of motor conduction in the spinal cord. That there are, however, certain common features in the two affections appears not only from the clinical history, but also from the morbid anatomy.

**Etiology.**—The causes of this condition are still essentially unknown. *Severe muscular exertion* has been assigned as a cause, as it has also of the allied affection, progressive spinal muscular atrophy. As in it, too, the *male* sex suffers most. It is a disease of *middle age*. It is probably due to the degeneration of an imperfectly formed central motor system.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—A *sclerosis of the crossed pyramidal tracts* in the two lateral columns and the *direct pyramidal tracts* in the anterior columns is essential to the morbid anatomy in a typical case. As important is *atrophy* of the corresponding *large ganglion* cells in the anterior cornua and medulla oblongata. The degeneration has been traced in the pyramidal tracts from the sacral cord upward to the pyramids in the medulla oblongata, some times even through the pons and crura into the internal capsule and central convolutions, in which, too, the large ganglion cells have been found atrophied. The nerve nuclei which are affected in the

medulla oblongata are especially those of the vagus and hypoglossal nerves. The motor cranial nerves are sometimes degenerated.

The changes in the motor ganglion cells of the cord and the nerve nuclei in the medulla oblongata are analogous and produce corresponding results in the *muscles* supplied by the motor nerves originating from them. These results are an atrophy present in various degrees, some fibers disappearing almost entirely, others partially. The process is by fatty metamorphosis and absorption of resulting fat, leaving a residue of connective tissue.

**Symptoms.**—The clinical phenomena are in strict accord with what would be expected from the pathological lesions, consisting in *muscular wasting* and *corresponding paresis*. Before the muscular wasting appears, a *sense of fatigue* succeeding slight effort may be manifested, followed by a positive weakness, primarily almost always in the *upper extremity*, first one and finally both. This is followed by *wasting* of the muscles of the *same* extremity, usually first seen in the thenar and hypothenar eminences, the interossei and the muscles of the extensor side of the forearm, while the flexors of the hand and fingers remain longer uninvaded. The atrophy is particularly well seen in the deltoid, and to a less degree in the triceps, still less in the biceps and shoulder muscles. Usually symptoms do not appear in the lower extremities, with the exception of exaggeration of the tendon reflexes, until some time after they have appeared in the upper, but occasionally the disease begins in the lower limbs.

When the lower limbs are affected, the patient tires easily in walking, the gait becomes unsteady and stiff, and rising from the chair becomes difficult. *Tremor* may appear in the legs. The paresis in both extremities is proportionate to the destruction of muscle, though first, at least, it is independent of the atrophy. Associated with muscular atrophy, sooner or later, is a *diminished electrical excitability*. Some excitability, however, remains as long as the muscles are intact, diminishing as their destruction spreads. A reaction of degeneration may also develop in the muscular fibers still intact. The excitability remains for the most part *intact* in the *nerve-trunk* because in any event a large number of fibers are preserved in their normal state.

A distinctive feature of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is found in the *reflexes*, which, in strong contrast to progressive muscular atrophy, are *markedly increased*. Even in the early stages of the disease vigorous contractions are obtained by gently tapping the tendons of almost any of the muscles in the extremities. Always most conspicuous is the patellar reflex, while more rarely ankle clonus may be obtained. The same is true of the masseter reflex. In the arms the biceps and triceps and the flexors of the hands may be excited to strong contraction.

*Contractures* may take place in the later stages of the disease in the *arms and hands*, but not always. In the lower extremities, where the atrophic symptoms develop some months later and are less marked, *spastic* symptoms are a more prominent feature. The legs become rigid and some strength is required to flex them, though the muscles themselves are parietic. A typical spastic paraplegia may be produced, which is due



mainly to the increase of the tendon reflexes, and a spastic paretic gait is common—that is, at first.

Later on in the disease *bulbar symptoms* may present themselves, manifested first by defects of speech, difficulty in retaining the saliva and in swallowing; and later still the lips and tongue may be seen to be atrophied, and ultimately there is difficulty in taking food, whence nutrition is impaired, and the patient gradually sinks. In some cases the disease may begin without bulbar symptoms.

Throughout, *sensibility* remains *normal* in the upper and lower extremities, and the superficial reflexes are not much altered. The *sphincters* are, as a rule, *unaffected*, although micturition may be disturbed. There may be constipation, but no actual paralysis of the bowel. Sexual power may be lost.

The successive involvement of the upper extremities, the lower extremities, and the bulbar centers marks quite well-defined stages of the disease.

Death comes ultimately from exhaustion, or more frequently through an inspiration pneumonia, caused by entrance of foreign matter into the air-passages as a result of defective deglutition, or through bulbar palsy.

**Diagnosis.**—The disease is distinguished from *progressive spinal muscular atrophy* by the invariable increase in the tendon reflexes, even in the early stages, as contrasted with their absence in the latter disease.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—The prognosis is very unfavorable and the disease cannot be arrested. By rest in bed, massage, electricity, and hot bathing we may be able to defer the end somewhat. (See, also, Treatment of Progressive Spinal Muscular Atrophy.)

## PROGRESSIVE SPINAL MUSCULAR ATROPHY.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Wasting Palsy; Progressive Muscular Atrophy, Type Duchenne-Aran; Duchenne-Aran's Disease; Cruveilhier's Atrophy; Chronic Anterior Poliomyelitis; Chronic Degeneration of the Motor Nuclei.*

**Definition.**—Progressive spinal muscular atrophy is a *progressive wasting* of more or less limited *groups of voluntary muscles*, associated with *degenerative atrophy of the corresponding portion of the motor nerve tract*, including the ganglion cells of the anterior cornua, but *unaccompanied by disease of the pyramidal tracts*. The existence of this condition has been disputed, but degeneration of the cells of the anterior horns without degeneration of the pyramidal tracts has been seen by most reliable investigators. It is well to include the word spinal in the description of this disease, as thereby the disease is distinguished from progressive muscular atrophy from other causes.

**Historical.**—The history of the development of our knowledge of this disease is very interesting. A few facts only can be given here. Although a number of isolated cases were described at an earlier date, Duchenne's memoir on "*Atrophie Musculaire avec Transformation Graisseuse*," published in 1840, and Aran's "*Recherches sur une Maladie non encore décidée du Système Musculaire*," published in the next year, contained the first accurate description of this malady. Cruveilhier's studies were commenced in 1832, but were not given out until 1853. All of these

observers believed at first—Cruveilhier reluctantly—that the disease was purely muscular. In his third case, however, Cruveilhier found atrophy of the anterior roots of the spinal nerves, and in his fourth, lesion of the gray matter of the cord, whence the anterior roots take their origin, and first asserted the belief that the disease of the gray matter in the spinal cord was the special anatomical lesion of the disease. The researches of Lockhart Clarke in 1866 and 1867 and of Charcot in 1869 may be said to have established the spinal nature of the disease; while Friedreich in 1873 still maintained its muscular nature, and Gowers and Leyden regard it as identical with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Strümpell also separates the two diseases of progressive spinal muscular paralysis and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and it appears to me there is quite enough reason for doing so. The close relation of these two diseases cannot be disputed, but most unquestionable proof has been furnished by Dejerine and others that they are not identical.

**Etiology.**—In the majority of instances we fail to find a sufficient cause. Heredity has been regarded as playing an important rôle in its causation, but Strümpell considers the cases thus originating as instances of the juvenile myopathic variety of atrophy—that in which no nervous lesion is traceable. On the other hand, *excessive muscular exertion* seems to be more than an accidental coincidence. Exposure to cold, especially to very cold water, and the *infectious diseases*—typhoid fever, influenza, diphtheria, and syphilis—have all been held accountable, but it is likely that some of the atrophies thus resulting include other forms than the true progressive spinal muscular atrophy.

It is a disease commonly of adult males, most supposed cases among those who are younger being probably, as held by Erb, instances of the juvenile form of muscular dystrophy, although a very rare family form of progressive spinal muscular atrophy has been observed in children.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The *anterior horns of the gray matter* are wasted and reduced in size; their ganglion cells wholly or partially destroyed; the neuroglia is proliferated and is intercalated in places with spider cells. The *anterior nerve-roots* passing from the horns are *atrophied*, as are also the motor nerve filaments in the peripheral nerves. But the crossed pyramidal tracts in the lateral columns containing the crossed motor fibers descending from the brain to the cells in the anterior cornua are intact. A slight degeneration may be seen in some cases in the antero-lateral columns about the anterior horns. The *muscles* seen to be *wasted* before death are found converted into fat and connective tissue, a remnant of true muscular tissue remaining. At times also they are the seat of waxy change, at others still, narrowed but retaining their transverse striation.

As to the *relation of the nervous changes to the muscular atrophy*, the conspicuous symptoms of the disease, there is more than one possible explanation. As in bulbar palsy, according to one view, the atrophy of the anterior cornua is primary, the result of chronic poliomyelitis anterior, the degeneration of the peripheral nerves and muscles being secondary to it. According to another view, the muscular atrophy is primary, possibly due, as Friedreich sought to prove, to a myositis, followed by fatty metamorphosis of the sarcous substance and subsequent absorption of fat, or to a simple primary fatty metamorphosis. In such event it may be inferred that the nerves atrophy from want of use. According to a third, the degeneration begins in the last terminal branches of the motor nerves and extends upward along them to the spinal cord. Finally, it is held that there may be a simultaneous degeneration of the

whole motor system involved, including muscles and nerve, and nerve cell. It is more in accord with the office of the spinal cord as a nutritive center, as well as with its morbid anatomy, to suppose the disease is a chronic poliomyelitis anterior, the essential infantile paralysis of Rellet and Barthez being an acute form of the same disease. Very important is the anatomical fact that the pyramidal tracts are quite normal in a typical case.

**Symptoms.**—One of the most striking features of the disease is its *slow development*. Like its congener, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, it begins most frequently in the *upper* extremities, seven out of nine times in Aran's cases. Of the upper extremities, the right was first invaded in 37 out

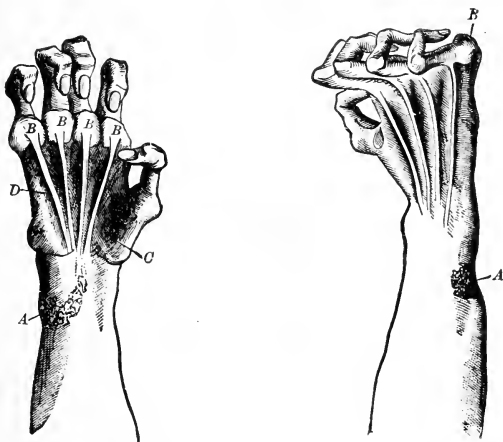


FIG. 115.—Position of Hands and Fingers in Ulnar Paralysis of Long Standing; Bird-claw Hand, "Main en Griffe"—(after Duchenne).

A, A. Wound of the ulnar nerve. B, B, B, B, B. Ends of the metacarpal bones. D. Tendons of the flexor sublimis digitorum. C. Muscles of the ball of the thumb.

of 62 of Sandahl's cases, the left 14 times, while the involvement was simultaneous in 11. The disease may begin in the *lower* extremities, as shown by Friedreich's statistics, according to which these were first invaded 27 times out of 146 the upper extremities 111, the lumbar muscles in eight.

The atrophy usually begins with the short muscles of the thumb, the abductor policis brevis first, then the opponens and the abductor. The consequent flattening of the ball of the thumb and its persistent approximation to the second metacarpal bone produces the so-called "ape-hand." Simultaneously, or almost simultaneously, the interossei begin to waste, producing conspicuous depressions between the metacarpal bones, associated with loss of power to extend completely the terminal phalanges of the fingers. Atrophy of the lumbricales follows, producing a flattening of the hollow of the hand. The ultimate result is the characteristic *main en griffe* of Duchenne, in which the extensor tendons on

the dorsum of the hand, and the flexors in the palm, may become as distinct as if dissected out.

From the hand the wasting creeps up the forearm and thence to the arm, or it may skip the forearm and pass into the arm, sparing usually the triceps extensor. In the forearm the muscles on the extensor (external) side are usually first affected, then the abductor pollicis and extensor longus pollicis, and later the supinators and flexors. It may come to a standstill at either of these stages, or may involve the muscles of the shoulder, especially the deltoid, in which, indeed, it may begin, preferably in the right, passing thence to the scapular and trapezius muscles, the pectorals, the rhomboidei and latissimus dorsi, while a grotesqueness of effect is often produced by reason of certain adjacent muscles retaining their natural size or being even seemingly hypertrophied. This is particularly the case with the inferior part of the trapezius and platysma myoides which are almost never involved. The disease may be arrested at almost any of these stages.

The lower extremities may escape altogether and the atrophy always develops late. The small muscles of the foot would naturally be the first affected. Very rarely there may be exceptions to this rule. The muscles of the face are invaded late or not at all, but ultimately even the intercostal and abdominal muscles may be involved. The result, then, is a veritable living skeleton, instances of which are sometimes exhibited. Deformities, including lordosis or anterior curvature of the spine may result.

With all this, *sensibility* is unaffected in the vast majority of cases, but the patient may complain of a numbness and coldness of the affected limbs. Very rarely *pains* precede the wasting in the muscles, when they are sometimes regarded as rheumatic. The *galvanic and faradic irritability* of the muscles progressively diminishes and disappears with the complete destruction of the muscle, the galvanic persisting longer. The *reaction of degeneration* may, however, be elicited late in the disease in certain muscles, more especially in the modified form known as "partial reaction" of degeneration. If the disease runs a rapid course, it may occur earlier and be more typical. *Fibrillary* muscular contractions may be present, and idiopathic muscular contractions, or myoid tumors brought out by a blow, may be thus produced. The bladder and rectum remain intact, but sexual function may be lost.

Sweating and other *vasomotor* disturbances may occur in the affected muscles, such as pemphigoid bullous eruptions, thickening and fissuring of the skin, and curving and grooving of the nails. In certain places there is an overaccumulation of fat, producing an appearance of hypertrophy when there is actual atrophy.

Along with wasting there is a corresponding *paresis*, the result of the atrophy and not its cause. The arms are flaccid and toneless and hang loosely at the sides. The patient can no longer dress himself, and various devices are resorted to in order to accomplish certain acts. Especially characteristic is one of these—when the shoulders, being first affected, the arm and forearm retain their usefulness. Under these circumstances the power of lifting the arm from the side, and especially of raising it above the head, is lost, while that of the forearm remains. Hence, if the

patient wishes to lay hold of anything, he swings the arm forward with a jerk until the object is brought within reach of his fingers, when it may often be caught by the pathologically hooked terminations of these. So long as the neck muscles remain active, objects may be grasped by the mouth.

In true progressive spinal muscular atrophy the *reflexes* are entirely absent, at least in the wasted extremities, a natural result of the atrophy of the ganglion cells in the anterior cornua and of the centrifugal motor fibers of the reflex arc. The *special senses* and the *sphincters* remain normal.

Toward the close of the disease sometimes, and then only after it has existed for a long time, the phenomena of *bulbar* paralysis may present themselves after invasion of the ganglia of the medulla oblongata. These have been detailed in the section on that subject. They are by no means always present, even in advanced cases.

**Diagnosis.**—Muscular atrophy is not confined to the disease under consideration. It occurs in diffuse myelitis, in tumors of the cord and when cavities are formed in its interior, in multiple neuritis, and especially in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. From all these named, except the last, it is easily distinguished by strict attention to the conditions and order of development of the symptoms—viz., insidious and progressive atrophy of groups of muscles to the exclusion of others, beginning usually in the hand or more rarely in the shoulder and upper arm; accompanied by a corresponding loss of power in the affected muscles and partial or complete reaction of degeneration in the same, by diminished reflexes and fibrillar twitchings.

**Differential Diagnosis.**—From *amyotrophic lateral sclerosis* it is to be distinguished by its greatly *slower course* and *absence of the reflexes* and of *spastic symptoms*. It is also to be distinguished from *muscular dystrophy* in its various forms—the myopathic juvenile muscular atrophy of Erb, pseudohypertrophic muscular paralysis, and Duchenne's infantile type. In the *juvenile progressive muscular atrophy of Erb* there is also slow symmetrical, and intermittent wasting, with weakness in certain groups of muscles, especially those of the shoulder girdle and upper arm, and later possibly the pelvis, upper thigh, and back, associated at times with true or false *muscular hypertrophy*, but usually unassociated with *fibrillar contraction* or reaction of degeneration. The average age, also, in the juvenile form is much less, Erb's cases ranging from seven to 46  $\frac{1}{2}$  or an average of 26  $\frac{1}{2}$ , while in the spinal form or true progressive spinal muscular atrophy the average age is much greater. Of Roberts' cases, all of which seem to be true cases of progressive spinal muscular atrophy, the youngest was 20, while the ages of the remaining four were 38, 39, 47, and 67.

While in the *pseudohypertrophic* form there are also great weakness and wasting of muscles, though the latter may be obscured by the fatty deposit, there are *no alterations in the spinal cord*. It is a disease of childhood, and strikingly *hereditary*, beginning in the lower extremities, while progressive muscular atrophy is a disease of adults, is not hereditary, and begins usually in the upper extremities.

*Duchenne's infantile type* is characterized by onset at an *early age*,

infancy or adolescence, and by *beginning in the facial muscles*. It is often hereditary. The distribution of the atrophy is very similar to that of Erb's form, when the disease has involved the muscles of the shoulders, but it begins in the face and may be confined to the face. The muscles of the hands and fingers are spared in Duchenne's form; *fibrillar tremors* are not present, and there is no reaction of degeneration.

**Prognosis.**—Many years are required to develop these symptoms in their entirety, and there may be spontaneous arrest, during which the patient may die of other causes. Sooner or later, if the patient lives, they recur, and their march is irresistible.

**Treatment.**—It has already been said that cure is impossible, although well-authenticated cases of arrest are reported. *Mercurials* and *iodid of potassium* should be used in cases of suspected syphilitic origin. Cooke reports a case of arrest under a course of mercury, after the disease had progressed for five years, during which many remedies were tried. In the main the treatment must consist of measures intended to *maintain the health and strength* of the patient and to counteract the muscular wasting. To the former end an abundance of nutritious food, fresh air, and outdoor life should be supplied, while tonics, including, especially, cod-liver oil, iron, arsenic, and strychnin, are indicated. The muscular wasting may be combated by *electricity* and *judicious massage*. Both kinds of *electricity* may be used, the faradic with rapid interruption to stimulate the circulation, or with slow interruption to excite individual muscles to contraction. The current should be of moderate strength, not too frequently interrupted, and continued for a few minutes only. Duchenne recommended, particularly, treatment of important muscles, like the diaphragm through the phrenic nerve, or the intercostal muscles and the deltoids before they are actually invaded by the disease. In evidence of its usefulness he relates the case of a man who had lost many of his trunk muscles, and who was beginning to suffer from dyspnea, on whom faradization of the phrenic nerves, repeated three or four times a week, was of great service, enabling him to walk considerable distances and to go upstairs without fatigue. Another patient, whose arms were much wasted, was again able to support his family. The direct current—galvanism—is useful in advanced stages of the disease, when the strongest faradic currents fail to produce response. When galvanic currents fail to excite contractions, the treatment ought to be persevered in for a long time, using very strong currents at the onset, gradually reducing them as contractility returns. Remak, who especially advocated the use of the continuous current, advised placing the positive pole in the front of one mastoid process and the negative pole on the opposite side of the neck, near the spinous process of the vertebræ, not higher than the fifth cervical, by which he produced the contractions already described as diplegic in the fingers and other paralyzed parts. Galvanization of the sympathetic has been apparently useful in the hands of some, Erb reporting a case of complete cure.

Massage is especially important, and should be used in connection with electricity, but at a different time of day. Eulenberg refers to a case said to have been brought to a standstill by it.

Hypodermic injections of strychnin, from 1/100 to 1/40 grain (0.0005 to 0.002 gm.), are said to have arrested the disease on the authority of Gowers.

In families in which a hereditary tendency exists prophylactic treatment should be used. It should include hygienic measures of the kind already referred to and the avoidance of undue fatigue and exposure, and in the selection of an occupation these matters should be kept in view. On the supposition that the disease is a purely local one, gymnastics involving the exercise of the groups of muscles prone to attack are indicated, but assume less importance from the standpoint that it is a spinal cord disease. At the same time the patient should have the benefit of any doubt in the pathogeny, and as gymnastics are eminently calculated to improve the general health and thus indirectly to avert disease, their use is indicated on these grounds.

## DISEASES OF THE BRAIN.

### LOCALIZATION OF CEREBRAL DISEASE.

SYNONYMS.—*Cerebral Localization; Relation of Locality to Symptoms; Topical Diagnosis of Cerebral Lesions.*

**Physiology.**—The brain is the organ of consciousness and of perception of impressions and sensations—of memory, of thought, of origination of voluntary motion, and of speech. It is also the seat of the instinctive acts. It has been learned from clinical observation in connection with studies at the autopsy table and from experiment that certain parts of the cortex are concerned with corresponding offices, especially motion, speech, vision, and hearing, so that from the presence of given symptoms the involvement of corresponding localities may be inferred. Allusion has already been made to the subject of topical diagnosis, on page 930. Such diagnosis, it is important to remember, gives no information as to the nature of the lesion, the result being the same whether it be abscess, hemorrhage, or softening. We are simply informed that such and such area is involved.

**Historical.**—As early as 1825 Bouillaud asserted that derangements of speech are produced only by disease of the anterior lobes of the brain. In 1836 Marc Dax, also a French physician, pointed out that aphasia was caused only by lesions in the *left* half of the brain. In 1861 Broca announced that aphasia results from a lesion of the third left frontal convolution, which was accordingly called the convolution of Broca. Other observations show that it is the posterior part, or the *pars opercularis*—the part of the frontal lobe covering the island of Reil, which is the speech center, and, further, that lesions here are the cause of motor aphasia only. The publications of Marie are extremely radical. He denies the importance of Broca's center and advances views very different from those previously held regarding aphasia. In 1870 Fritsch and Hitzig published the results of their experiments in irritating the surface of the brain in animals, such irritation being followed by muscular contractions in definite portions of the opposite side of the body. These observations were rapidly confirmed and extended in further experiments by Meynert and Flechsig among anatomists Ferrier, Munk, Goltz, and others among physiologists, and Charcot, Nothnagel, Hughlings Jackson, Horsley, Marie, Grünbaum and Sherrington, among clinicians. Our knowledge in this department is, however still inexact, and is likely to be altered as well as increased by further studies.

## I. THE MOTOR AREAS OF THE CORTEX.

An examination of the following illustrations (Figs. 116 and 117) will convey an idea of the gyri and sulci of the surface of the brain.

**Functional Assignments.**—The motor region was formerly regarded as made up of the two central convolutions, anterior central and posterior central, also known as ascending frontal and ascending parietal; the posterior part of the three frontal convolutions; the upper part of the parietal lobe adjoining the ascending parietal convolution, and the paracentral lobule (Fig. 117) on the median surface of the hemisphere. The investigations of Grünbaum and Sherrington<sup>1</sup> on the gorilla seem to show that the

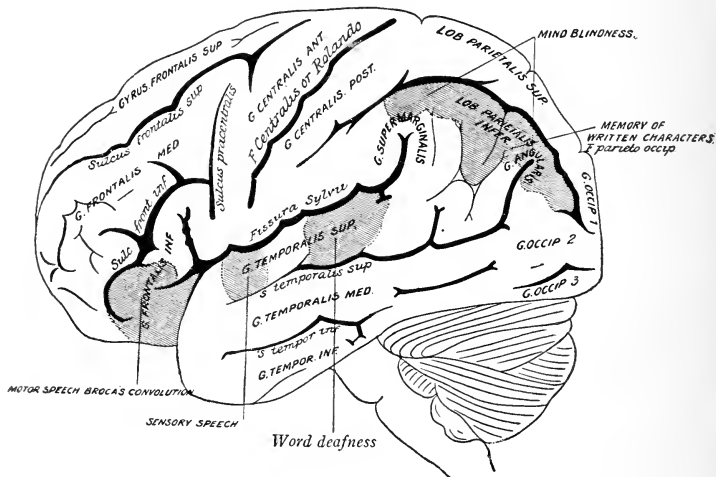


FIG. 116.—Lateral Aspect of the Brain—(after Ecker, modified).

motor cortex is entirely in front of the Rolandic fissure, and this view has been widely accepted (Fig. 116). All diseases which destroy any considerable portion of this cortical area invariably produce paralysis of the opposite half of the body, while no matter how extensive the destructive process elsewhere in the cortex, motion remains intact if this is not touched. An acute cortical lesion sufficient to involve all the motor centers of one side and cause total hemiplegia would be likely to be fatal, while a smaller lesion, extending into the white matter, involving fibers coming from uninjured portions of the cortex, might produce a more extensive palsy than a more superficial cortical lesion.

We can even point out separate regions which act as separate centers for various groups of muscles. The center for the movements of the facial muscles lies at the lower end of the precentral convolution (Figs. 116 and 117). Near

<sup>1</sup>Sherrington. The Integration Action of the Nervous System, London, 1906.



by and lower down is the center for movements of the tongue and vocal cords, while the center for the movements of the arm lies somewhat higher than that for the face—that is, about the middle of the anterior central convolution. From above downward the various segments are represented as follows: Shoulder, elbow, wrist, fingers—the index finger and, lowest of all, the thumb. The center for the leg lies in the uppermost part of the central convolutions, but mostly in the paracentral lobule. Most

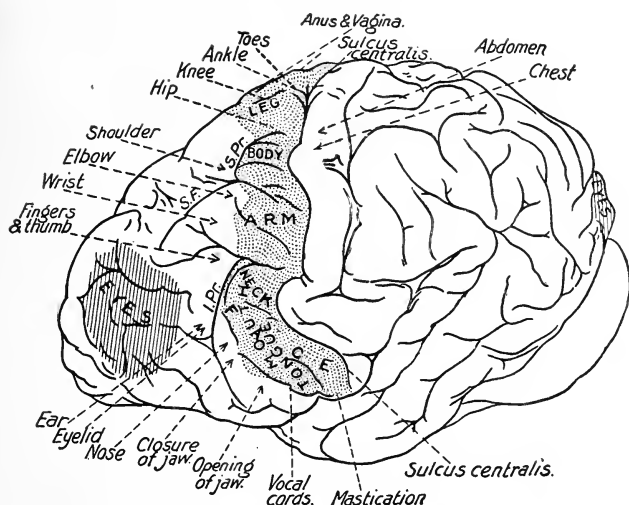


FIG. 117.—Brain of a chimpanzee (*Troglodytes niger*)—(from Grünbaum and Sherrington).

Left hemisphere viewed from side and above so as to obtain as far as possible the configuration of the *sulcus centralis* area. The figure involves, nevertheless, considerable foreshortening about the top and bottom of *sulcus centralis*. The extent of the "motor" area on the free surface of the hemisphere is indicated by the black stippling, which extends back to the *sulcus centralis*. Much of the "motor" area is hidden in sulci; for instance, the area extends into the *sulcus centralis* and the *sulci precentrales*, also into occasional sulci which cross the precentral gyrus. The names printed large on the stippled area indicate the main regions of the "motor" area; the names printed small outside the brain, indicate broadly by their pointing lines the relative topography of some of the chief subdivisions of the main regions of the "motor" cortex. But there exists much overlapping of the areas and of their subdivisions which the diagram does not attempt to indicate.

The shaded regions, marked "eyes," indicate in the frontal and occipital regions, respectively, the portions of cortex which, under faradization, yield conjugate movements of the eye balls. But it is questionable whether these reactions sufficiently resemble those of the "motor" area to be included with them. They are therefore marked in vertical shading instead of stippling, as is the "motor" area. S. F., superior frontal sulcus. S. Pr., superior precentral sulcus. I. Pr., inferior precentral sulcus.

anterior is the hip, next the knee and ankle, next the great toe, the center for the movement of which surrounds the upper end of the fissure of Rolando; still further back are the centers for the small toes. The center for the trunk is situated in the precentral convolution between those for the upper and lower limbs. The different regions are not sharply defined, but merge into one another.

As to the so-called *muscular sense*, it has been believed that it resides also in the motor area, while there have been those who have claimed for

it also a separate and different localization. M. Allen Starr and A. J. McCosh<sup>1</sup> have reported a case of injury with symptoms which go to prove the latter view and to show that the seat of the muscular sense is "a spot in the brain about at the junction of the superior and inferior parietal convolutions, clearly posterior to the posterior central convolution." The so-called muscular sense is probably largely represented in the parietal lobe.

These *cortical motor areas are united with spinal centers by nerve-fibers which proceed from cell to cell in each, without connection with intervening cells. Their route is through the white matter of the hemispheres, where they form the corona radiata, the fibers of which converge to the internal capsule which lies between the optic thalamus and the caudate nucleus on the inside, and the lenticular nucleus on the outside.* (See

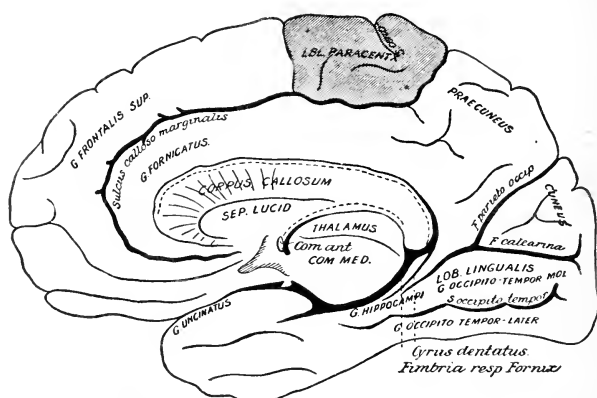


FIG. 118.—Aspect of the Median Surface of the Cerebrum as it appears when the Two Hemispheres are Separated—(after Ecker).

The gyri and fissures are indicated by the lettering.

Fig. 120.) The anterior portion of the capsule—the knee—is occupied by the fibers from the face, tongue, eye, and speech centers; behind these lie the fibers from the upper extremities, while those from the lower extremities occupy the middle of the posterior part. Thence the fibers of the motor path pass into the crus cerebri through its middle third, then through the pons, covered by the superficial transverse fibers of this body, into the medulla oblongata, of which they form the anterior pyramids. At the lower portion of the medulla oblongata a large portion of these pyramidal fibers cross over into the opposite half of the spinal cord, constituting the crossed pyramidal tract of the lateral column, while a small bundle of fibers descends into the anterior column of the same side, forming the direct pyramidal tract, or Türk's column; some fibers probably pass to the lateral column of the same side. Both pyramidal tracts diminish in bulk as they descend, because they give off fibers which pass into

<sup>1</sup> "Amer. Jour. of the Med. Sciences," November, 1894, p. 520.

gray matter, dividing and subdividing, to come into contact with the protoplasmic processes which are continuous with the large nerve-cells of the anterior cornua.

These motor fibers form the *upper or cerebrospinal segment* of the motor system. Between the motor nerve-cells in the anterior cornua and the muscles to which the motor nerve-fibers are distributed is the *lower or spino-muscular segment*. In response to the law already mentioned as to the nutritive independence of each neuron, each of these segments has a certain nutritional independence, depending for its integrity upon

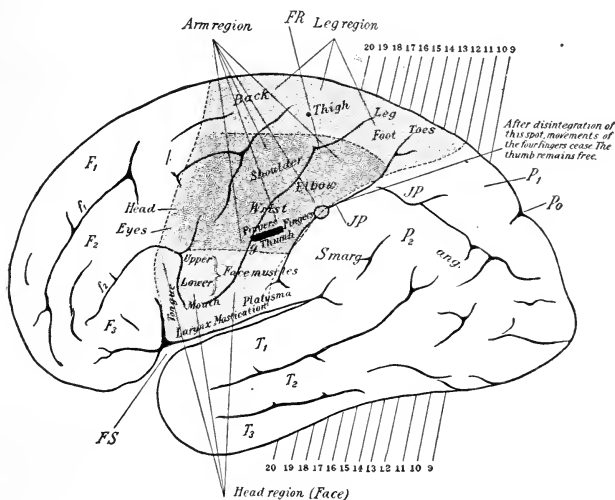


FIG. 119.—Lateral Aspect of the Brain—(after v. Monakow).

Lateral aspect of the human cerebral hemisphere. Motor fields (principal foci) after Allen Starr, W. W. Keen, Charles K. Mills, Victor Horsley, and Monakow's observations. 3, Spot on the posterior central convolutions whose isolated irritation causes thumb movements, and whose destruction in a case of cranial injury caused continued defect of motion of the thumb and finger; also derangement of the stereognostic sense. The lines 9-9, 10-10, etc., 20-20 indicate certain planes of section in other figures in Monakow's monograph in Nothnagel's system.

the integrity of its neuron, the upper or cerebral depending upon the cortical cells and the lower upon the large cells in the anterior cornua.

*Lesions of the Upper Motor or Cerebrospinal Segment.*—If, therefore, the cortical cells of the motor area degenerate, the fibers attached to them will waste as far as the beginning of the lower segment, and if the cells in the latter degenerate or are cut off, not only do the nerve-fibers below them waste, but the muscles to which they are distributed as well. Accordingly, all the cases of paralysis due to *destructive* disease in the motor cortical region have been found associated with descending degeneration of the motor tract previously outlined, into the *direct* pyramidal tract in the anterior column of the cord on the same side, and the *crossed* pyramidal tract in the lateral column of the other side. At the same time

the paralysis is accompanied by a *spastic condition*, manifested by an exaggeration of the tendon reflexes and an increase in the tension of the muscles, ascribed to a loss of the inhibitory control exerted by the cells of the cortex in the normal state. This explanation, however, is not entirely satisfactory. In other respects the paralysis due to cortical lesion does not differ from that due to focal disease lower down in the upper tract, except that the latter is apt to involve more muscles because of the compactness of the tract at this point. Atrophy is usually not intense in muscles paralyzed by lesion of the upper segment, but occasionally is observed in muscles thus paralyzed, but the reaction of degeneration

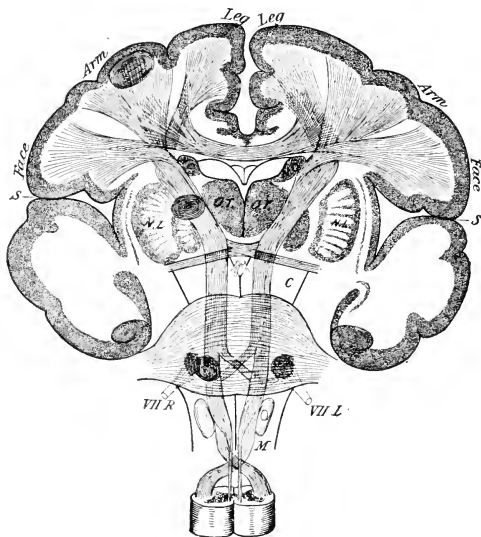


FIG. 120.—The Motor Tract—(after Starr).

S, S, Fissure of Sylvius. NL, NL, Lenticular nucleus. OT, OT, Optic' thalamus. NC, NC., Caudate nucleus. C, Crus. P, Pons. M, Medulla. O, Olivary body. The tracts for the arm, leg, and face gather in the capsule and pass together to the lower pons, where the face fibers cross to the opposite seventh nerve nucleus, while the others pass to the lower medulla, where they partially decussate, to enter the lateral columns of the cord. The non-decussating fibers pass into the anterior median columns.

does not occur. Lesions of the motor cortex are sometimes limited, causing correspondingly limited paralysis and even monoplegias, never, however, affecting less than a whole limb or a segment of a limb. A lesion may involve two centers lying close to each other, producing paralysis of the face and arm or of the arm and leg, but rarely of the face and leg without involvement of the arm. It happens not infrequently that the whole motor cortex is involved, producing paralysis of one side—cortical hemiplegia. The lesion then is usually thrombosis of the middle cerebral artery.

Such is the effect of destructive lesion of the cortex. Quite different is that of *irritative* lesions. These produce convulsive seizures known

as Jacksonian or cortical epilepsy, characterized by convulsions beginning in a single muscle or group of muscles and proceeding in a definite order to the involvement of other muscles corresponding to portions of the cortex affected. Thus, the convulsions may begin in the face, and extend thence to the arm and thence to the leg. The convulsions may also be accompanied by sensory symptoms and followed by weakness of the muscles involved, as a result of exhaustion of the motor centers implicated.

In point of fact, most lesions of the cortex are both destructive and irritative, consisting in the destruction of nerve-cells in one center and increasing the activity of cells of neighboring centers.

Lesions of the upper segment include hemorrhages, tumors, abscesses, injuries, inflammations, and degenerations involving the brain and spinal cord.

*Lesions of the Lower or Spinomuscular Segment.*—Here, as in the upper segment, the *destructive* lesions produce motor paralysis. The added peculiarity is, however, a degeneration of the muscles as well as the nerve-fibers distributed to them from the motor cells of the anterior cornua, as evidenced by the wasting of the muscles, and further characterized by the presence of the reaction of degeneration described on page 946. In these lesions there is also a loss of reflex excitability in the areas supplied from the segments destroyed, the reflexes are lost, and there is reduced muscular tension. Lesions of the lower segment may also cause paralysis of limited groups of muscles when confined to limited areas of the cord.

*Irritative* lesions of the lower segment do not occur unless we regard as the result of such the slow atrophy of the ganglion cells of the anterior cornua in progressive spinal muscular atrophy, and consider the fibrillary contractions found in this affection as a result of the stimulation of these cells in their slow degeneration.

## II. SENSORY AREAS OF THE CORTEX AND SENSORY PATHS.

Our knowledge of the sensory areas is much less definite than that of the motor. Beginning at the periphery, we learn that sensory fibers emanating from tactile surfaces, like the skin, promptly and for the most part become associated with motor nerve filaments in the lower motor segment, the union of both constituting a mixed nerve. The two sets of fibers, however, separate again within the spinal canal, the motor filaments are continuous with the anterior roots, and the sensory enter the cord by the posterior, on which is a ganglion. The areas whence the posterior roots gather their nerves will be found in Starr's table on page 1078. The precise routes of sensory impressions to the brain are not determined, but experiment and clinical pathology show that probably a considerable number of sensory fibers cross at once and become associated with other fibers which ascend to the brain in the opposite half of the cord. The following seems to be the results of the latest histological studies:

The sensory nerve-fibers, entering the spinal cord from the spinal ganglion on the posterior root, pass to the posterior columns and divide dichotomously, one branch passing upward, the other downward. From



peripheral centripetal neuron); *F. c.*, axon of fasciculus cuneatus; *F. cls.*, axon of fasciculus cerebellospinalis (direct cerebellar tract); *F. vl. G.*, axon of fasciculus ventrolateralis [Gowers]; *St. i. l.*, axons of stratum interolivare lemnisci; 1, cell bodies of peripheral centripetal neurons (situated in the spinal ganglia); 1', ascending limb of bifurcated central axon of peripheral sensory neuron extending from the pars lumbalis of the spinal cord to the medulla oblongata, being situated first in the fasciculus cuneatus, in higher levels of the cord in the fasciculus gracilis, and finally terminating in the nucleus funiculi gracilis. 1'', ascending limb of bifurcated central axon of peripheral sensory neuron pertaining to the thoracic portion of the spinal cord. It enters the fasciculus cuneatus, and passing upward, approaches the medial border of this fasciculus without, however, entering the fasciculus gracilis. It is seen to terminate ultimately in the nucleus funiculi cuneati. 1''', ascending limb of bifurcated central axon of peripheral sensory neuron pertaining to the pars cervicalis of the spinal cord. It passes upward in the fasciculus cuneatus to terminate at a level higher than that indicated in the diagram. 1''', reflex collaterals extending from the central axons (or their subdivisions) of the peripheral sensory neurons to the ventral horns of the spinal cord, there coming into conduction relation with the cell bodies and dendrites of the lower motor neurons. 1, collaterals from the axons of the fasciculus cuneatus to the nucleus dorsalis [Clarkii]; 2, cell bodies in substantia grisea giving rise to axons of the fasciculus ventrolateralis [Gowers]; 2', axons of fasciculus ventrolateralis [Gowers]; 3, cell body in nucleus dorsalis [Clarkii] giving rise to axon of fasciculus cerebellospinalis; 3', axon of fasciculus cerebellospinalis (direct cerebellar tract); 4, cells of nucleus funiculi gracilis giving rise to axons of fibræ arcuatæ internæ which undergo decussation (decussatio lemniscorum) in the raphe; 4', continuation of axons of fibræ arcuatæ internæ after decussation. They run cerebralward in the stratum interolivare lemnisci. 5, cells of nucleus funiculi cuneati which give rise to axons of fibræ arcuatæ internæ which undergo decussation (decussatio lemniscorum) in the raphe. 5', continuation of axons of fibræ arcuatæ internæ after decussation. Having had their origin in the nucleus funiculi cuneati of the opposite side, they now run forward in the stratum interolivare lemnisci.

*Blue.*—The areas of white matter in the spinal cord and medulla oblongata indicated by parallel blue lines correspond to the position of the fasciculi cerebrospinales (pyramidales). The cell bodies and axons of the lower motor neurons are also printed in blue. *F. cs. l.*, fasciculus cerebrospinalis lateralis or lateral pyramidal tract; *F. cs. v.*, fasciculus cerebrospinalis ventralis or ventral pyramidal tract; *F. Py.*, fasciculi pyramidales in the medulla oblongata; *Py.*, pyramis medullæ oblongatæ, *v. r.*, radix ventralis, nervi spinalis; 1, cell bodies of lower motor neurons situated in the ventral horns of the gray matter of the spinal cord giving off axons which go to form the ventral roots of the spinal nerves; 3', axons of fasciculi pyramidales which undergo decussation in the decussatio pyramidum and pass down in the fasciculus cerebrospinalis lateralis of the opposite side of the spinal cord to terminate in the ventral horns of the cervical region. They throw the lower motor neurons which innervate the musculature of the upper extremity of one side under the influence of the pallium of the opposite side. 4', axons of fasciculi pyramidales which undergo decussation in the decussatio pyramidum and pass down in the fasciculus cerebrospinalis lateralis of the opposite side of the spinal cord to terminate in the ventral horns of the lumbosacral region. They throw the lower motor neurons which innervate the musculature of the lower extremity of one side of the body under the influence of the pallium of the opposite side. 4'', axon of fasciculi pyramidales which does not undergo decussation in the decussatio pyramidum, but passes down in the fasciculus cerebrospinalis lateralis of the same side (homolateral fiber). 4''', axon of fasciculi pyramidales which does not undergo decussation in the decussatio pyramidum, but passes down in the fasciculus cerebrospinalis ventralis to terminate in the ventral horn of the same side. It would throw the lower motor neurons governing a portion of the musculature of one side under the influence of the pallium of the same side. It is probable that in addition to these fibers of the fasciculus cerebrospinalis ventralis, which terminate in the ventral horn of the same side, there are other fibers (not shown in the diagram) which, passing through the ventral commissure, terminate in the ventral horn of the opposite side. (See text.)

*Yellow.*—Cell bodies, axons, collaterals, and terminals belonging to the fasciculi proprii of the ventral and lateral funiculi—(Barker).

ganglion cells in the anterior and posterior horns and in Clarke's column. From these ganglion cells other nerve-fibers are projected, the course of which is not clear except as to those which pass into the anterior roots, and those from Clarke's column which pass over to form the ascending cerebellar tract. Some pass up the anterolateral columns, some decussate through the gray commissure with fibers from the opposite side. Many fibers from the posterior roots ascend in the posterior columns of the same side and decussate in the medulla oblongata to form the fillet or lemniscus. Further confirmation of this course is found in the fact that if a posterior nerve-root is cut, the ascending Wallerian degeneration is

seen only in the posterior columns of the same side, and ceases in the nuclei of the *funiculus gracilis* or *funiculus cuneatus*, which are ganglionic bodies in the medulla oblongata beginning another stage of the sensory path. It is questionable whether there are separate strands of conduction for tactile, thermal, or painful impressions, but probably there are such fibers. The experiments of Gotch, Horsley, and Mott also go to show that tactile impressions pass up the same side in the posterior columns, while impressions made by pain, cold, and heat radiate into the gray matter of the cord, and through these probably again into the white conducting tracts of the lateral column. Hence pain and painful temperature sensations are only of different degrees, and excite a wider and more complex nervous mechanism than simple touch. Whence not only diseases involving extensively the gray matter, as syringomyelia, cause alteration in the temperature sense, but also diseases of peripheral parts, as pachymeningitis and neuritis. Many hold very different views from those just expressed and believe that different fibers exist for the conduction of the different forms of sensation.

Many investigators believe that all the sensory fibers of the opposite side of the body are collected in the posterior third of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, just behind the motor fibers of the upper segment. Dejerine utterly rejects this teaching, and holds that the sensory fibers are mingled with the motor in the posterior limbs of the internal capsule.

SENSORY AREAS IN THE CORTEX.—Much doubt exists as to the seat of the sensory areas in the cortex. Horsley suggested that the muscular and tactile senses are localized in the motor cortex, and that two of the three principal layers of cells in this region subserve these functions. The experimental studies of Munk lead to the same conclusions—that the so-called "sphere of sensation" lies in the same region as the motor centers of the cortex. Dana also has shown that many lesions of the motor area, especially in the hinder part, are associated with anesthesia, while Ferrier considers the *hippocampal convolution*, and Schäfer the *gyrus fornicatus*, as the sensory center in the cortex. Clinical evidence on this point is not uniform. In some cases of motor paralysis there is undoubted simultaneous disturbance of sensation, in others not. By some the parietal lobe is considered the important sensory area, and the weight of opinion is in favor of this view. The muscular sense is also sometimes impaired in paralyzed limbs, in consequence of which the patient cannot tell with his eyes closed the position of the affected limb.

Among the cortical areas representing sensation must be included those for sight, hearing, smell, and taste, which will be considered in connection with affections of the peripheral nerve. Suffice it to say, briefly, that the auditory center is located in the first temporal gyrus, the visual in the occipital lobe, the cortical visual center being on the mesial surface in the *cuneus*, especially about the calcarine ("calcar," a spur) fissure, where are represented the opposite half visual fields. Some authorities include more of the occipital lobe than this in the visual area.

LESIONS OF THE SENSORY TRACT.—These may also be *destructive* or *irritative*. *Destructive lesions* would, of course, destroy sensation in the part whence the nervous supply comes to the point of lesion. Most fre-



quently it is an injury to a peripheral nerve, though loss of sensation is rarely complete in the part to which such nerve is distributed, because that area may receive sensory nerves from another segment of the spinal cord. Complete transverse section of the spinal cord itself causes complete anesthesia in the parts supplied from the segment below the injury. The effects of a lesion invading one-half of the cord are detailed on page 988.

*Irritative* lesions of the sensory path cause paresthesias, including formication, tingling, numbness, and finally pain corresponding to the degree of irritation. The last is commonly due to irritation in the course of a peripheral nerve, though it may also be caused by irritation to the sensory path within the central nervous system.

## CORTICAL AREAS COVERING SPEECH.

### THE VARIOUS FORMS OF APHASIA AND THEIR ANATOMICAL LESIONS.

It has already been stated that almost our first accurate knowledge of cerebral localization was the discovery by Broca, in 1861, that derangements of speech result from lesions of the third or inferior left frontal convolution. The loss of power to comprehend words correctly and to use them properly is covered by the general term *aphasia*. Further derange-

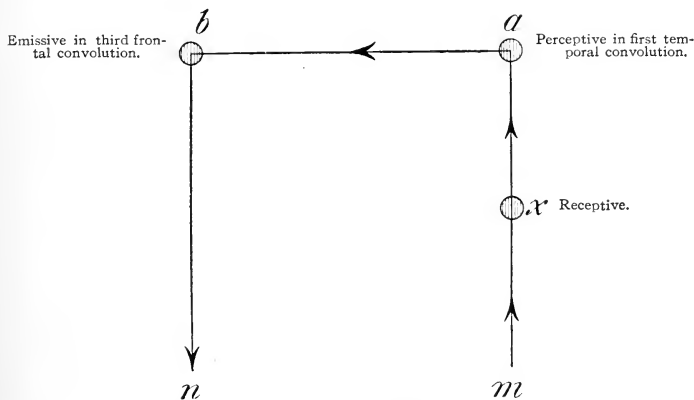


FIG. 122.—Primitive Speech Apparatus of the Child in Mechanical Repetition of Words, according to Wernicke and Lichtheim.  
*a*, Sensory speech center. *b*, Motor speech center. *x*, Acoustic center of pure sense of hearing.  
*m-x*, Route to acoustic center. *b-n*, Motor speech tract.

ment consists in inability to articulate words, and is due to lesions of nuclei situated for the most part in the pons and medulla oblongata, regulating the action of the vocal cords, the tongue, and the lips, and is known as *anarthria* or *dysarthria*.

The study of the phenomena of aphasia will be facilitated by a brief review of the conditions of acquired language. Language is acquired

by the child gradually through imitation. Thus, when the mother teaches it to say "cat" or "bell" or "papa," she names the word, and its sound impresses the distribution of the auditory nerve, *m* (see diagram, p. 1071) whence it passes to the *acoustic center*, *x*, and thence to the sensory *speech* center, *a*, in the first or *upper temporal* convolution, where it is stored as a sound memory. From this it passes from behind forward along the association fibers to *b*, the motor speech center in the left inferior *frontal* convolution (Broca's center, propositionizing center of Broadbent),<sup>1</sup>

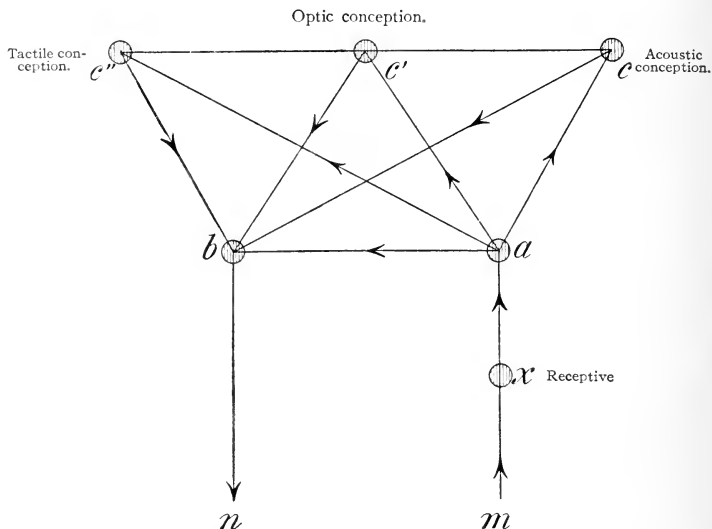


FIG. 123.—Wernicke's Schema, Showing the Association of the Various Partial Conceptions to Form the Whole Conception or Word Image of an Object.

For the sake of simplicity only three partial conceptions and three sensory areas are shown, instead of the many which go to make up our notions of complex objects. The letters *a*, *b*, *m*, and *n* have the same application as in the previous figure, but *x* may indicate the seat of any of the special senses—hearing, vision, smell, touch.

whence the muscles of articulation are put into operation and the word is spoken. Thus, the speech mechanism consists of *receptive*, *perceptive*, and *emissive* centers.

The development of *voluntary* speech in the child continues through the accumulation of associated ideas in the perceptive and emissive centers, *a* and *b*. The *word image* or picture which is the foundation of every word is made up of the sum of a number of partial conceptions of memory pictures acquired by experience and stored for further use in the different sensory areas of the cerebral cortex. Thus, the memory of the *sound* of a word as spoken, the memory of the *appearance* of a word as written or printed, as well as the *muscular movements* needed to speak the word

<sup>1</sup> That is, the center where thoughts are set in a framework of words, but through which utterance is not consummated; whence other cortical centers are necessary to motor speech, and these are found caudal of Broca's convolutions at the foot of the two central convolutions. This region Broadbent calls the *uttering center*.

or write it, are distinct from one another and yet associated. Loss of one of these memory pictures or derangement in their association impairs the integrity of the word image and produces such defects in the use of the word as are covered by the different varieties of aphasia. These derangements have been arranged in two divisions, according as the defect is in (1) the receptive and perceptive and (2) emissive function of the brain, the former constituting the *sensory* aphasias, the latter the *motor*.

#### THE PHYSICAL BASIS OF THOUGHT—APRAXIA.

A *word* is a means of expression of a thought. Thus, when we say the word "bell," with a full conception of its meaning, such conception or mental picture is made up of as many distinct partial conceptions or memory pictures as there are special senses, these conceptions being seated in the most diverse parts of the brain. Especially concerned in the case of the bell is the acoustic conception, *c*, derived from its sound; the optic, *c'*, from its appearance; the tactile, *c''*, from what is learned by touch, united to form one conception, as shown in Fig. 122, where the partial conceptions, *c*, *c'*, *c''*, among others, taken together, give us the idea of a bell. In the blind, of course, the sensory perceptions are smell, taste, touch, and hearing only. The schema of conscious voluntary speech may be still further simplified by combining the partial conceptions, *c*, *c'*, and *c''*, into one single point, *C* (Fig. 123), as the sum of intellectual concepts, *m* representing any of the special senses—hearing, vision, smell, etc.

Broadbent has gone a step further, and suggested the existence of a center on the sensory side of the nervous system, to which converge sensory fibers from all the receptive centers and in which is combined all the evidence respecting the nature of the object, which he called the *naming center*. He suggested a locality for this center in an unnamed lobule on the under surface of the temporal lobe near its junction with the occipital lobe. Charles K. Mills<sup>1</sup> has reported a case of glioma with autopsy which goes to confirm Broadbent's speculation and to locate the exact position of this center in the *third temporal convolution*. Its correlative center is the *propositionizing* center referred to on page 1071, in which names or nouns are set in a framework for outward expression or utterance.

The loss of these memory pictures is known as *apraxia*, which may be defined as a state in which there is impairment or loss of the power to recognize the nature and purpose of objects, and which is something apart from aphasia. In one form of it any object, such as a watch, a knife, or a spoon, may be taken up and handled by the patient, but all knowledge of its use or purpose is gone. Such a condition, when dependent on loss of the visual memories, was well named by Munk *mind-blindness*. A person formerly familiar with the tick of a watch or the sound of a bell no longer interprets such sounds aright; or is unable to follow melodies or appreciate music as he once did. Thus we have *mind-deafness*, or auditory amnesia, or in the case of music, *amusia*. Again, the odor of the

<sup>1</sup> Dercum, "Diseases of the Nervous System" by American authors, p. 427, 1895.

rose and violet no longer suggests these flowers, giving *mind anosmia*; or the taste of an orange, *mind agcusia*; or the soft feel of fur or velvet gives no notion of these substances, *mind atactilia*. For the sum of these defects the term *apraxia* is now used, but mind-blindness and mind-deafness are the most important subvarieties. Apraxia may occur alone, but it is usually associated with sensory or motor aphasia. In simple apraxia the patient may be able to read, but the words arouse no intelligent impression in his mind. Some observations go to show that the lesion in mind-blindness is in the *supramarginal and angular gyri*, or in the tracts interior to these in the white matter beneath them; and possibly mind-blindness only occurs when this area is injured, as pointed out by M. Allen Starr, in the left hemisphere in right-handed persons, and

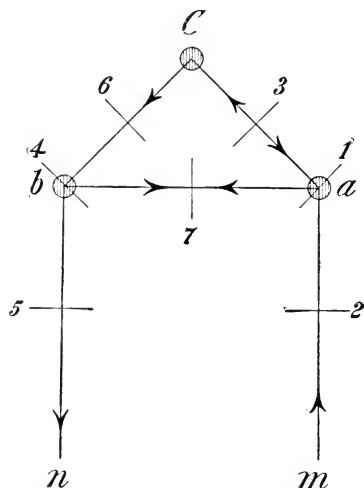


FIG. 124.—Simplification of the Schema of Voluntary Speech by Uniting the Ideas into the Point, C, and Omitting the Acoustic Center, x.

The letters have the same meaning as in Figures 122 and 123.

in the right hemisphere in those left-handed. Mind-blindness is, however, at times functional and transitory, and as such is associated with many forms of mental disturbance. Starr also considers it probable from the association of psychical or *mind-deafness* with the form of aphasia known as *word-deafness*, to be considered presently, that mind-deafness may be due to lesion in the *upper temporal convolution*, though autopsies are wanting.

There are as many varieties of apraxia as there are organs of sense, but the most common appears to be psychical or mind-blindness, generally associated with the form of aphasia known as word-blindness. The seat of the lesion in mind-atactilia has been placed in the gyrus fornicatus, hippocampal gyrus, precuneus and postparietal gyrus. Mind anosmia in the uncinate and hippocampal gyri, and mind ageusia in the temporal gyrus.

## APHASIA, OR LOSS OF THE FACULTY OF SPEECH.

Aphasia is sensory or motor according as it is caused by a loss of memory of words, or by an inability to enunciate—according as it is the receptive or the emissive center which is at fault.

**Sensory Aphasia.** Including **Word-blindness**, **Word-deafness**, **Amnesic Aphasia**.—By *word-blindness* is meant loss of the memory of the appearance of a word. In this condition the patient does not recognize words which he sees on the written or printed page, and although he may be able to pronounce them after hearing them or write them at dictation or copy them, he does not understand what he reads or writes. On the other hand, *figures* are sometimes recalled when words are forgotten, and the patient may even be able to solve mathematical problems and to recognize playing-cards. Word-blindness may occur alone or with

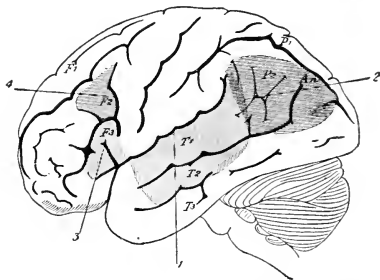


FIG. 125.—Situations of Lesions Causing Aphasia—(after Starr).

*F*<sup>1</sup>, First frontal convolution. *F*<sup>2</sup>, Second frontal. *F*<sup>3</sup>, Third frontal. *T*<sup>1</sup>, First temporal. *T*<sup>2</sup>, Second temporal. *T*<sup>3</sup>, Third temporal. *P*<sup>1</sup>, First parietal. *P*<sup>2</sup>, Second parietal. 1, Lesion of word-deafness and deafness for musical sounds, or mind-deafness, according to M. Allen Starr. 2, Lesion of mind-blindness and word-blindness, according to Ferrier. 3, Lesion of motor aphasia. 4, Supposed lesion of agraphia.

*motor aphasia*. The lesion in most cases of word-blindness has been in the *angular* and *supramarginal* gyri on the left side, as located by Ferrier, but this area is not believed by all to be the center for word-seeing. *Alexia*, or inability to read, is a corollary growing out of this, as is also *agraphia*, or inability to write, so far as it depends on sight. It is often associated, as already stated, with *mind-blindness*, but may occur independently of it.

*Word-deafness* is a condition in which the patient has forgotten the significance of spoken words, although he hears them as sounds. The words of his own language are as a foreign tongue which he does not understand, while there is deafness also to musical sounds—*amusia*, the "*Tontaubheit*" of the Germans. Word-deafness is commonly associated with other forms of sensory aphasia in various degrees, but cases of pure word-deafness occur in which the patient has been able to read and to speak, but is unable to recognize the meaning of a word when spoken. It is a rare variety of deafness whose *lesion* is placed by most students of the subject in the first *temporal convolution* or its posterior part, but

Starr, basing his conclusion on 50 cases which he has collected with autopsies, places it, with Seppilli, in the *posterior half* of both the *first and second temporal* convolutions of the left side in right-handed persons, and of the right side in left-handed persons, as shown in the drawing. Recent investigations indicate that the posterior convolutions in the left island of Reil in right-handed persons is important in word hearing.

A simple variety of sensory aphasia is *amnesic aphasia*, in which the patient simply forgets words—just as we are all, at times, at loss for a word. Such a person sees a dog or another animal, knows perfectly well what it is, but cannot recall its name. The moment, however, the word “dog” is suggested, he knows all about it. In disease usually a

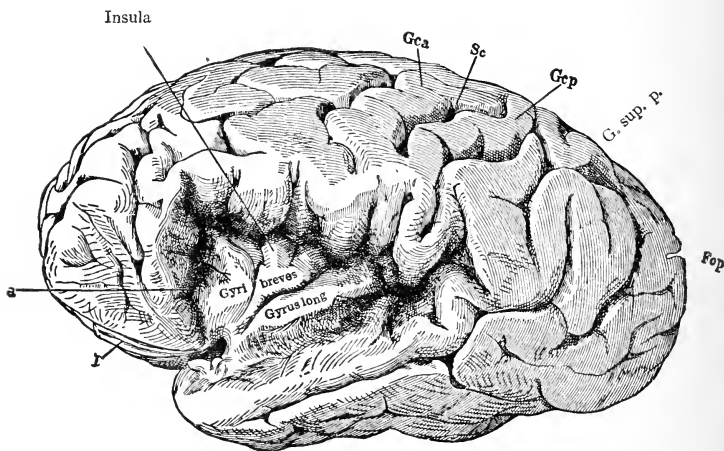


FIG. 126.—The Left Hemisphere, with the Fissure of Sylvius Drawn Apart in Order to Show the Convolutions in the Island of Reil or 5th Lobe. The Island of Reil is covered by the *pcrs opercularis* or posterior part of Broca's convolution, which is here drawn aside—(after Henle).

Sc. Sulcus centralis. Gca, Gcp. Gyrus centralis, anterior and posterior. Fop. Fissura parieto-occipitalis.

number of words are thus lost. Such aphasia is called *amnesic*, because it is really a loss of memory for words. It may be partial, as when a patient forgets nothing but his own name and remembers all other words, or when he is able to express himself in another tongue. If permanent, it is probably due to a *break in the association tract*, to be later considered, and should be so limited. Word-deafness may be distinguished from amnesic aphasia by asking the patient to do some act, such as to touch an object, when he will respond correctly if he has simple amnesic aphasia, but will not if he is the subject of word-deafness.

Allied to amnesic aphasia is sensory or *amnesic agraphia*, in which a word cannot be written because it cannot be called to mind. A person thus affected may be unable to write voluntarily, but may be able to

write at dictation if he is one who writes much. As already mentioned, agraphia also occurs as a part of word-blindness so far as it depends on sight.

**MOTOR OR ATAXIC APHASIA OR APHEMIA—ALALIA.**—In this condition the memory of the muscular action necessary to transfer the word image into speech is lost. There is disturbance of the emissive center, *b*, in which this transfer takes place. The patient knows perfectly well what he wishes to say, but cannot say it, though he may make the greatest effort to do so. Nor can he repeat a word after hearing it. The degree varies greatly. In complete cases he may be able to read, though not aloud, and understand what is said, but cannot say a word himself. More commonly, he can say one or two words, such as "no," "yes," while in mild cases he may simply misplace or omit letters, say "widow" instead of "window," or "wrelsters" instead of "wrestles." Singularly, too, when in a passion he may be able to say the right word or to swear. This is because such words are uttered, to a certain degree, involuntarily. A man acquainted with the French and German languages may lose the power of expressing his thoughts in them while retaining his mother tongue, and if completely aphasic, he may recover one language before the other. This is the form of aphasia long ago recognized by Broca and localized by him in the third left frontal convolution, and since this is in contact with the center for the face and arm, there is not infrequently partial or complete *right-sided hemiplegia*. *Alexia*, or inability to read aloud, is a necessary corollary to motor aphasia so far as it depends on the power to speak.

*Paraphasia*, or *mixed aphasia*, and *monophasia* are allied to motor or ataxic aphasia. Paraphasia is a confounding of words, the wrong word being used instead of the right one, because of a confusion between the idea and the proper word. All degrees of this also occur, only a single word being sometimes erroneously used, while in others whole sentences are wrong. The patient may also use a wrong word which has a certain resemblance to the correct one, beginning, for example, with the same syllable, as "between" for "bewitch"; or the idea usurps the situation, as in the case of one of Strümpell's patients, who called a white handkerchief "snow." In these cases the *association* or *conduction tract* between the *perceptive* center and the *emissive* center is broken whence it was called by Wernicke *aphasia of conduction*. The lesion in paraphasia is usually in the island of Reil and in the convolutions which unite the frontal and temporal lobes. But any disturbance in the association processes of language, no matter where the break lies, may cause it. In *monophasia* the patient can command but one syllable or one word or a short phrase, which he repeats over and over again.

*Motor agraphia* must also be distinguished from sensory. Sensory agraphia is sometimes amnesic—that is, the patient cannot write the word because he cannot call it to mind; at others it is a part of word-blindness. Motor agraphia is quite independent of ability to read aloud—that is, of effort memories necessary to speech, the difficulty being connected with the movements of the hand; but when motor aphasia exists, motor agraphia is usually also present. In sensory agraphia the patient may

still be able to write by dictation, in the latter not. Agraphia also varies greatly in degree. The patient may write one or two letters, or he may be totally unable to write voluntarily or from dictation. The seat of the *lesion* of motor agraphia is still unsettled. It was located by Charcot in the neighborhood of the middle of the anterior central *convolution*, but studies by Victor Horsley furnish some ground for locating it in the *posterior central* (*ascending parietal*) convolution. According to some authorities the graphic center is located in the *second frontal* convolution of the left side, near the ascending frontal convolution. Starr locates it in the middle of the convolution (Fig. 125). *Paragraphia* is a condition in which one word is written when another is intended. It is a corollary to paraphasia.

*Amimia* is the loss or impairment of the power of expression by signs when caused by cerebral disease. *Paramimia*, the misuse of signs in the attempt to express thought, is comparable to paraphasia for speech and paralexia for reading, and is dependent on a like cause—the *destruction or impairment of commissural or association tracts between sensory and motor centers*. It is not correct to suppose that the aphasic can substitute signs for words and thus express himself, for the two defects go hand in hand, even though he retain the power of moving his hands. A patient may, however, regain pantomimic power before he regains speech. Loss of pantomimic power is found often associated with *destruction of the third left frontal convolution*, or destruction of the receptive speech centers or their connecting tracts. It may accompany verbal amnesia due to disease of these areas or disturbance of the association tracts. Just as the aphasic may say "yes" when he means "no," so he may use a sign which will be affirmative when he intends to be negative.

The following table may aid somewhat a review of the previous text, while Fig. 125, from Starr's book of "Familiar Forms of Nervous Disease," shows the situation of the lesions causing aphasia:

APRAXIA, inability to recognize the nature and purpose of an object.

	<i>Seat of Lesion.</i>	
<i>Mind-blindness.</i>	Supramarginal and angular gyri, or the white matter beneath, in the left hemisphere in the right-handed and right hemisphere in the left-handed.	
<i>Mind-deafness, including amusia, or auditory amnesia.</i>	Upper temporal gyrus of left hemisphere in the right-handed.	
<i>Mind atactilia.</i>	Gyrus fornicatus, hippocampal gyrus, precuneus, and post-parietal (Mills).	
<i>Mind anosmia.</i>	Uncinate gyrus (Ferrier) and hippocampal gyrus.	
<i>Mind ageusia.</i>	Temporal gyrus (Ferrier).	

APHASIA, inability to comprehend words correctly and to use them properly.

<i>Sensory aphasia</i> , inability to recognize word pictures and word sounds, loss of memory of word pictures and word sounds.	<i>Word-blindness</i> , in which memory of the appearance of a word is lost.	Angular and supramarginal gyrus.
	<i>Word-deafness</i> , in which memory of the sound of a word is lost.	Posterior part of first and second temporal gyri (Seppilli and Starr).
	<i>Amnesia</i> , inability to recall a word.	Disturbance of association tract.



*Motor aphasia*, inability to utter words, though knowing well what to say.

Including *alexia*, or inability to read aloud.

Posterior part of third left frontal (Broca's convolution).

*Paraphasia.*

A confounding of words in speaking, in which the wrong word is used instead of the right one.

Island of Reil and any disturbance of the association tracts.

*Animia.*

Loss of power of expression by signs.

Third left frontal convolution, receiving or concept center. Disturbance of association tracts.

*Paramimia.*

Misuse of signs to express thought.

AGRAPHIA, inability to write.

*Sensory Agraphia.*

Inability to write because (a) of want of idea as to what a word is or (b) looks like.

(a) Amnesic agraphia.  
(b) A part of word-blindness.

*Scat.*

Association tract.  
Angular and supramarginal gyrus.

*Motor Agraphia.*

Inability to write because of want of motor power of writing, although the other movements of the hand may be excellent.

Not settled, but possibly middle of the ascending frontal convolution or ascending parietal—i. e., in the arm center. Possibly posterior part of second left frontal convolution.

Availing ourselves of Wernicke's condensed schema (Fig. 124), most aphasic derangements met in practice are easily explained by it by supposing lesion and interruption of conduction in certain places. According as the centripetal conduction, *m*, *a*, *C*, or the centrifugal conduction, *C*, *b*, *n*, is interrupted we have sensory or motor aphasia, while the interruption of the line, *a*, *b*, produces the conduction aphasia of Wernicke. Lesions between *a* and *b* on the one hand and *C* on the other are called *transcortical* aphasias; between *a* and *b*, *cortical*, and between *a* and *b* on the one hand and the periphery on the other, *subcortical*. These distinctions are schematic.

### DERANGEMENTS OF SPEECH OF IRRITATIVE ORIGIN.

In addition to those due to direct lesion of the speech centers there are also derangements of speech due to irritation. Such are the different kinds of stuttering, the labiochoreic and gutturotetanic stuttering and choreic speech. The first two probably reside in the cortical speech centers, but the choreic spasms not necessarily, since the function of muscles concerned in their production may be disturbed from lesions in other centers as well.

**Diagnosis.**—The study of derangements of speech is by no means an easy matter, but it may be facilitated by pursuing a systematic method like the following, which is that of M. Allen Starr, slightly modified:

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>A. To determine whether apraxia is present.</p> <p>B. To test integrity of the auditory speech area and association tracts between other sensory areas and the temporal convolutions.</p> | { | <p>(1) Test the power of recognizing the nature, uses, and relations of objects.</p> <p>(1) The power to recall the spoken name of objects seen, heard, handled.</p> <p>(2) The power to understand speech and musical sounds.</p> <p>(3) The power to call to mind objects named.</p> |
|--|---|--|

C. To test the condition of the visual word memories in the angular gyrus and of the connections between this area and the surrounding sensory and motor areas.

D. To test the integrity of Broca's center and its association tracts.

- (1) The power to understand printed or written words.
- (2) The power to read aloud and understand what is read.
- (3) The power to recall objects whose names are seen.
- (4) The power to write spontaneously and to write the names of objects seen, heard, etc.
- (5) The power to copy and write at dictation.
- (6) The power to read understandingly what has been written.
- (1) The power to speak voluntarily; and if it is lost, the character of its defects.
- (2) The power of repeating words one after another.

When aphasia is associated, as is so often the case, with paralysis of the right arm, the writing test may be made with the left hand, when the patient may produce the so-called aphasic mirror writing, which can only be read by the use of a mirror; or if he cannot write with the left hand, as also happens, he may be asked to form words by letters cut out of printed pages or with the letter blocks of children.

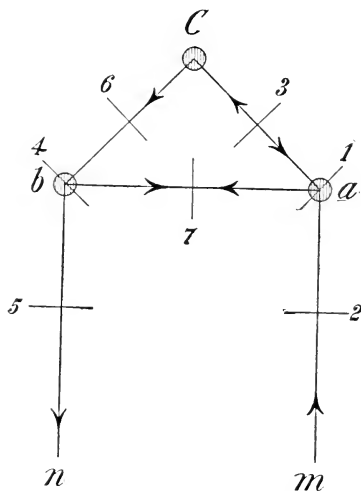


FIG. 127.—Simplification of the Schema of Conscious Speech by Reduction of the Ideas to the Point, C, and Omission of the Acoustic Center, *x*.

The letters have the same application as in previous figures.

Recently Marie has announced some iconoclastic views as regards aphasia. He believes hearing is not localized in the first temporal convolution, and denies that impairment of hearing has ever been observed as a result of a lesion of the right first temporal convolution. In aphasia there is more or less difficulty in understanding spoken words due to defect of

intellect, and not to a lesion of the left third frontal convolution, since Broca's area has been destroyed without causing aphasia, and motor aphasia has occurred without a lesion in Broca's area. He declares that the left third frontal convolution plays no part in the function of language, and when a lesion occurs in this convolution the occurrence of aphasia is a mere coincidence. In motor aphasia which Marie calls the aphasia of Broca, the patient cannot read or write and understands imperfectly what is said to him. It is similar to sensory aphasia which he calls the aphasia of Wernicke, from which it differs solely in that the patient cannot speak. In what Marie calls anarthria the patient cannot speak, but understands what is said to him and can read and write. It is the condition described as subcortical motor aphasia. Everyone, says Marie, places the lesion of anarthria in or near the lenticular nucleus, it may be in the right hemisphere. When the lesion is limited to one hemisphere the anarthria tends to disappear, but is persistent when the lesion is within or near each lenticular nucleus and is usually a part of a pseudobulbar symptom-complex.

He also says aphasia is a unit and that the aphasia of Broca is only aphasia complicated by anarthria. According to Marie, the only region capable of causing aphasia when damaged is the zone of Wernicke, i.e., the supramarginal and angular gyri and foot of the first two temporal convolutions. The aphasia of Broca is caused by a lesion of Wernicke's zone, or of the fibers coming from it, associated with a lesion in or near the lenticular nucleus. The speech zone should not be divided into separate centers. The intensity of aphasia corresponds with the extent of the lesion. Dejerine denies most of Marie's assertions.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—Aphasia is a symptom of a disease and not a disease itself. Yet it is a symptom which in its various phases informs us so precisely of the seat of the lesion that it sometimes suggests a point of operative interference comparatively easy of access. Where the symptoms of diffuse cerebral disease are wanting, and where the continuation of the symptoms and the addition of others suggest the presence of a possible circumscribed cause, such as abscess or tumor, operation is justified, and by it not only cortical, but also subcortical lesions and abscesses have been relieved. In cases of *sensory* aphasia the trephine should be applied over the upper part of the *temporoparietal* region, in *word-deafness* over the posterior part of the first *temporal*, in *word-blindness* over the *angular gyrus*, in word-deafness and word-blindness combined over the *inferior parietal* and *first temporal gyrus*, especially if verbal amnesia be present. In purely *motor aphasia*, in which the understanding of language is preserved but the power of talking lost, the trephine should be applied over the posterior part of the *third frontal convolution*, or Broca's center. The lesion of simple *agraphia* is not sufficiently determined to warrant surgical interference.

When urgent symptoms do not exist, attempt should be made to re-educate the patient, and much may be accomplished in this way by perseverance, especially in the young. With adults, the prognosis is more unfavorable, especially in cases of complete motor aphasia associated with right hemiplegia. In them the patient may be taught to write with his left hand: Sensory aphasia, if it exist alone, is commonly transient.

## CORTICAL AREAS WHOSE FUNCTION IS UNKNOWN OR UNCERTAIN.

After subtracting the motor, visual, and speech areas of the two hemispheres there remain extensive cortical areas, the function of which is more or less uncertain, and which are unexcitable. They include:

1. *The Frontal Region, Including all the Frontal Convolution except the Posterior Half of the Third Frontal on the Left Side, and if Starr be correct, the Middle of the Second Frontal Convolution on the Left Side where he Locates the Graphic Center.*—Of this area the most that can be said is that, if injured, mental symptoms are quite likely to be prominent—symptoms ascribable to a loss of self-control. It is to the greater development of the region of the frontal lobes in man as compared with the lower animals that his higher mental qualities are ascribed. Various forms and degrees of dementia have been observed after such lesions, and when such mental symptoms are present, it may with reason be inferred that there is lesion of the frontal lobes, especially of the left frontal lobe according to some investigators, more particularly when the lesion elsewhere can be excluded. It should never be forgotten, however, that the intellectual development depends on the integrity of the entire brain.

2. *The Region of the Cortex Lying between the Rolandic Fissure and the Occipital Convolution, Including all the Parietal Convolution except the Left Inferior Parietal Lobule.*—Recent investigations seem to show that this is the chief sensory region of the brain. The recognition of objects by contact when the eyes are closed, the sense of position, and general sensibility have all been found affected in extensive lesions of the parietal lobe.

3. *The Region Covering the Entire Temporosphenoïdal Lobe on the Right Side except the First Temporal, which probably has to do with hearing of ordinary sounds, and the temporosphenoïdal on the left side, excluding the parts not concerned in hearing of words, as well as ordinary sounds.* To the first temporal gyrus the function of hearing is assigned, but the remainder, so far as the cortex is concerned, appears unexcitable. Abscesses are common here after otitis media, and are sometimes reached with the trephine, the diagnosis being based on the presence of otitis with symptoms of brain disease.

4. *The Apex of the Temporosphenoïdal Lobe, including the uncinate convolution.* To this the olfactory sense has been ascribed with some show of reason.

5. *Of the Entire Median Surface of the Hemispheres, except the paracentral lobule, which is motor, and the cuneus, which is visual, and including the gyrus fornicatus and the hippocampal cortex, the function is unknown, although the hippocampal is probably a part of the olfactory area.*

TRACTS WITHIN THE BRAIN—CENTRUM OVALE, INTERNAL CAPSULE,  
CENTRAL GANGLIA, CORPORA QUADRIGEMINA.

CENTRUM OVALE.—In the centrum ovale, constituting the mass of white fibrous substance beneath the cortex and above the level of the basal ganglia, the fibers of the motor paths are more or less closely associated with other systems of fibers. They include three sets—*projection, com-*

*missural*, and *association* systems; the first connecting the cortex with nervous structures lying below it, the second joining the two hemispheres, while the third, or *association fibers*, join different parts of the same hemisphere. By these fibers adjacent convolutions, alternate convolutions, and more distant regions are connected, and through these as a physical basis the activities of the various cortical areas are harmonized and the different memories united.

The *diagnosis* of lesions involving this mass is exceedingly difficult. We can only surmise in cases of *disturbance of association*, such as occur with aphasia and kindred disorders, that the *association fibers* have been destroyed. A break in the continuity of the fibers of the corona radiata

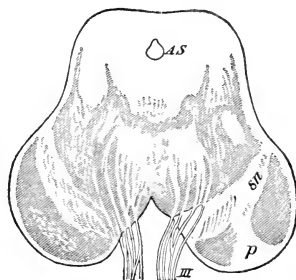


FIG. 128.—Transverse Section through the Crura Cerebri in Secondary Degeneration of the Right Pyramidal Tract (after Churcol).

*sn.* Substantia nigra. *p.* The degenerated, and therefore translucent, pyramidal tract. *III.* Oculomotor nerves. *AS.* Aqueduct of Sylvius.

must produce the same symptoms as if the corresponding center were destroyed. Thus disease of the white substance of the *occipital lobe* may cause *hemianopsia*; of the *left temporal lobe*, *word-deafness*. If the coronal fibers which proceed from the *third left frontal convolution* are injured, *motor* or *ataxic aphasia* occurs; yet quite extensive disease of the white substance of the frontal lobe has been found postmortem without any symptoms having been present during life.

**INTERNAL CAPSULE.**—Since in the comparatively narrow space in the posterior limb of the internal capsule is centered the pyramidal tract on its way from the cerebral convolutions to the crus cerebri, a very limited focal disease in this locality will lead to hemiplegia on the opposite side, while clinical experience shows that almost all cases of persistent hemiplegia are occasioned by disease in this spot.

According to the views of many neurologists, a purely motor hemiplegia, unattended by impairment of sensation, implies a lesion that does not involve the most posterior portion of the internal capsule, while such involvement is probable when there is sensory disturbance as well as motor paralysis. Dejerine, on the other hand, believes that disturbance of sensation in hemiplegia indicates involvement of the optic thalamus, and that there is no distinct sensory tract in the posterior part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule.

CENTRAL GANGLIA—*i. e.*, *Caudate Nucleus*, *Lenticular Nucleus*, and *Optic Thalamus*.—In the writer's student days the corpus striatum was regarded as the great motor ganglion and the optic thalamus as sensory, while most hemiplegias were ascribed to lesions of the former, and hemianesthesia was ascribed to lesion of the optic thalamus. From what is said above it is evident that there is a tendency to return to these older views of the function of the thalamus. It is conceded, also, to-day that the optic thalamus may have to do with the movements of mimetic or emotional expression, such as laughing and crying, which are lost in lesion of the thalamus, but which remain when the thalamus is intact, even though the half of the face is paralyzed and cannot be moved voluntarily. It is also likely that some of the fibers of the optic tract terminate in the posterior portion of the thalamus known as the pulvinar, while most of the fibers go to the corpus geniculatum externum, and possibly some to the anterior colliculus of the corpora quadrigemina. Hence destruction of the hinder part of the thalamus produces complete hemianopsia of the opposite side, usually by destruction of the optic radiations. Focal disease of the thalamus has been supposed to cause posthemiplegic chorea and other posthemiplegic symptoms of irritation.

It would appear from recent experiments that the lenticular nucleus contains centers for regulating heat, which would explain certain temperature changes in cerebral affections.

Beyond this, little definite is known of the effect of lesions strictly limited to the central ganglia, while disorganization of these ganglia has been found unattended by any symptoms during life.

CORPORA QUADRIGEMINA AND CRURA CEREBRI.—Lesions of the *corpora quadrigemina* are rare. Not much, therefore, is known of their function. The anterior tubercles are connected with fibers of the optic tract, but the extent of the connection in man is uncertain. Unilateral, or even bilateral, *paralysis of the oculomotor nerve* has been observed in connection with lesions of the quadrigeminal bodies, as have also *nystagmus* and *immobility of the pupil*. But this is because the nuclei of the motor nerves of the eyeball, except the sixth, lie very close to the tubercles, and may, therefore, be involved in such a lesion. According to Nothnagel, a staggering gait with oculomotor paralysis, associated with general symptoms of a tumor, points to the corpora quadrigemina as its site. The oculomotor paralysis is apt to be of irregular distribution, involving upward and downward movements of the eye, and should be an early symptom. Tumor of the corpora quadrigemina causes early optic neuritis.

If a *crus of the cerebrum* is diseased, there often result characteristic symptoms—*viz.*, *paralysis of one side of the body* (arm, leg, and face), and on the side *opposite* the hemiplegia a *paralysis of the motor oculi*, or *third nerve*—crossed paralysis. An examination of Fig. 128, from Charcot, will explain this. A lesion on the right side at *p* in the right pyramidal tract, might involve the oculomotor nerve, III, on that side, but would produce a hemiplegia on the left side. Since the crus contains sensory fibers from the opposite side, a lesion in one crus may also produce hemianesthesia of the opposite side of the body. Tegmental lesions should also produce sensory paralysis.

## CEREBELLAR DISEASE.

The cerebellar lateral lobes may occasionally be the seat of extensive lesions which do not produce symptoms. The trunk and lower extremities are chiefly affected in cerebellar ataxia. The patient may be able to lie abed and move his legs much better than when standing, but as soon as he arises he begins to sway back and forth with his whole body. This tendency is increased if he brings his feet together, but is diminished while the legs are widely separated. In this respect cerebellar ataxia does not differ from the ataxia of posterior sclerosis. Closing the eyes may occasionally increase the ataxia, but usually does not do so markedly, because the cutaneous and muscular sensibility of the lower limbs remains normal. So, too, when the patient tries to walk, he totters, but there is none of the stamping gait of *tabes dorsalis*. It is more the true drunkard's reel, at one time forward, rolling now to one side and now to the other, but often with a distinct tendency toward one side or backward. Unfortunately, this gait is not so peculiar to cerebellar disease as to be pathognomonic of it, and we can only suggest that the cerebellum or its peduncles may be involved. The upper extremities are usually less affected than the lower, but Hughlings Jackson has called attention to a paresis of the trunk muscles as the result of which the movements of bending, erection, and lateral flexion of the trunk cannot be performed. The head is sometimes carried much inclined toward one side, but it is impossible to use this sign to determine with certainty the side on which the lesion is situated.

The *vertigo* of cerebellar disease, if severe, is one of the most distressing symptoms with which one can be afflicted. It varies greatly and is not constant, while it may be the only symptom. It occurs, however, under the same circumstances as the ataxia—that is, when the patient stands or moves about, disappearing when he lies down. The vertigo and ataxia are not necessarily associated, and either may be present and the other absent.

*Headache* is a frequent symptom in cerebellar disease, having been present in 83 out of 100 cases collected by W. C. Krauss. Most frequently it is occipital; more rarely there may be pain in the side of the head or in the forehead. *Vomiting* is also a result of chronic disorders of the cerebellum, being present in 69 of Krauss' cases. So is *visual disturbance* due to optic neuritis, which was found in 66 cases. None of these symptoms is pathognomonic, and each one may be a symptom of disease elsewhere in the brain. The most valuable, perhaps, is persistent *occipital headache*, especially if associated with the cerebellar gait. It might be expected that retained reflexes would be a distinctive sign as contrasted with their absence in *tabes dorsalis*; but, in fact, they are sometimes absent, this being the case no less than 12 times in Krauss' 100 cases.

Other symptoms which suggest cerebellar disease, but are not distinctive, are *neuralgic pains* in the region of the neck and occiput; blocking of the venæ Galeni and dilatation of the lateral ventricles producing *hydrocephalus* in children; pressure on the medulla oblongata, causing *paralysis of the cranial nerves*, *glycosuria*, or even *sudden death*, if the vital spot is impinged upon; finally, *bilateral rigidity* from pressure on the motor paths.

On the other hand, there may be cerebellar disease without any symptoms whatever, especially as long as the middle lobe is not involved.

*Form of Lesion.*—By far the most frequent cerebellar lesion is *tumor*—in fact, some sort of tumor was found by W. C. Krauss in 88 out of 100 cases, of which ten were *abscess*, and there was one each of *softening* and *hemorrhage*. The remainder were: sarcoma and tubercle, each, 22; glioma, 18; nature of tumor unspecified, 13; cyst, seven; and one case each of endo-thelioma, cyst and sarcoma, cancer, gumma, and fibroma. The tumor occupied one or the other hemisphere 32 times; the middle lobe, 17 times.

*Disease of the middle cerebellar peduncles* may be accompanied by the so-called *forced positions* and *forced movements*. As a result of the former, the subject may lie in bed upon a particular side, whether conscious or unconscious; and if put on the other side, may reassume his former position involuntarily. Sometimes this is accompanied by a corresponding forced position of the head and eyeballs, the extremities being seldom affected. The *forced movements* are less frequent. They consist either in oft-repeated rotations of the body on its longitudinal axis or, if the patient can walk, in involuntary circular movements. There is no guide by which to determine which of the two peduncles is affected under these circumstances, while in a few cases of brain disease the same symptoms have been observed without involvement of the cerebellum.

The following very convenient summary from Strümpell's "Text-book," slightly altered American edition of 1901, contains the most important facts bearing on the localization of cerebral disease, and will be found useful for reference:

"1. The most frequent cause of ordinary hemiplegia is a lesion of the *pyramidal tract* in the posterior limb of the internal capsule. If the hemiplegia be persistent, then this tract is actually destroyed; if temporary, the tract has been functionally deranged for a time by focal disease in neighboring parts of the brain.

"2. Monoplegic cerebral paralysis is usually due to affections of the *cortex* of the brain—that is, the anterior central convolution and the paracentral lobule. Monoplegia of the face and tongue is the result of lesions in the lower extremity of the anterior central convolution. Monoplegia of the arm is referable principally to some lesion of the middle third of the anterior central convolution. Monoplegia of the lower extremity implies some affection of the upper portion of the anterior central convolution and the paracentral lobule.

"3. Hemiplegia or monoplegia, if associated with epileptiform convulsions affecting either one-half or one particular portion of the body, is almost always caused by cortical lesions. These same symptoms of motor irritation without accompanying paralysis are likewise to be ascribed to some irritation of the above-mentioned regions of the cortex.

"4. Hemiplegia with crossed paralysis of the oculomotor nerve developing at the same time indicates a lesion of a *crus cerebri*. Co-existing tactile hemianesthesia implies that the tegmentum is involved.

"5. Hemiplegia with crossed facial paralysis implies, provided that the paralysis of the limbs and opposite side of the face occurred at the same time, that the lesion is situated in the pons.



"6. Posthemiplegic chorea (*vide infra*) seems to occur especially when there is focal disease in the neighborhood of the posterior part of the internal capsule. It is a rare phenomenon.

"7. Hemianesthesia of the skin and of the organs of special sense, associated with hemianopsia, is due chiefly to lesions of the most posterior portion of the internal capsule.

"8. Hemianopsia may be due to a lesion of the cuneus and neighboring parts in the occipital lobe. Probably, also, a lesion of the posterior extremity of the internal capsule may cause it, in which case it is usually associated with hemianesthesia. Finally, it may be produced by affections of the pulvinar of the optic thalamus, of the lateral geniculate body, or of one of the optic tracts.

"9. Genuine motor aphasia indicates disease of the foot of the third left frontal convolution. Unless we accept the teaching of Marie.

"10. Word-deafness (loss of understanding of speech) is due to disease of the first left temporal convolution or of the posterior convolutions in the island of Reil; word-blindness (loss of understanding of writing) is due to disease of the left lower parietal lobe (angular gyrus)—supramarginal gyrus also, according to Ferrier.

"11. Difficulty in articulation implies disease of the medulla oblongata, as does also dysphagia.

"12. Staggering gait and vertigo are the most constant symptoms of cerebellar disease, but they may also occur in diseases of the corpora quadrigemina and of the frontal lobe (*vide supra*). Forced positions and forced movements perhaps indicate lesions of the crura cerebelli ad pontem or of the optic thalamus.

"13. Staggering gait and ocular paralysis implicating the third and fourth nerves are indicative of lesions of the corpora quadrigemina."

## DISEASES OF THE CRANIAL NERVES.

### OLFACTORY NERVE.

The olfactory fibers may be affected in their intracerebral course in the rhinencephalon or in their distribution to the olfactory region of the nose. There are probably nerve cells in the frontal lobe belonging to the rhinencephalon, and nerve tracts belonging to the rhinencephalon pass through the frontal lobe.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The lesions may be *tumors of the brain*, instances of which have been found in the hippocampal gyri, or disease in the hemispheres. There may be *congenital defect* of the olfactory center or atrophy of the nerve, which may explain the occasional anosmia in tabes dorsalis. There may be *inappreciable changes*, caused by injuries to the head or by concurrent disease, such as epilepsy, the aura of which is sometimes manifested by parosmia. The area of distribution of the olfactory nerve in the nose may be destroyed by *chronic nasal catarrh* or by *polypus*. *Hysterical neuroses* of the olfactory nerve are not infrequent. The sense of smell is sometimes impaired in cases of tumor situated in portions of the brain

remote from the olfactory area. This possibly may be caused by increased intra-cranial pressure.

**Symptoms.**—Lesions in any of these localities may produce subjective sensations of smell, or *parosmia*, of which various foul odors are illustrations; hypersensitiveness of the normal sense, or hyperosmia, in certain highly developed degrees of which the patient, generally a highly sensitive woman, can distinguish one person from another by the sense of smell; or loss of the sense of smell, *anosmia*.

**Diagnosis.**—The nasal region should be carefully explored by the rhinoscope and the sense of smell should be tested. For this purpose the essential oils, such as anise-seed, cloves, or peppermint, in various degrees of dilution are employed. Cologne water, musk, or asafetida may be used for the same purpose. Pungent substances should be avoided, as they stimulate the fifth nerve in the nasal mucous membrane, and thus the subject perceives what he does not smell. By such agents the fifth nerve is tested. No conclusion can be drawn as to anatomical differences on the two sides without a rhinoscope examination.

**Treatment** is useless, unless the condition be due to curable or removable polypos.

## OPTIC NERVE AND TRACT.

There may be derangement of the retina, of the optic nerve, of the chiasm, and of the optic tract.

### I. AFFECTIONS OF THE RETINA.

These may be *organic* or *functional*.

#### (a) *Organic Diseases of the Retina.*

The organic affections include hemorrhage and inflammation, or both.

HEMORRHAGE into the retina (arterial sclerosis) occurs as a cause or result of Bright's disease, most commonly chronic interstitial nephritis, in gout profoundly affecting the system, in leukocythemia, anemia, syphilis, purpura, ulcerative endocarditis, and other forms of septicemia. The hemorrhages are in the layer of the nerve-fibers. At first bright red, and then becoming darker and eventually lighter in color, they ultimately assume a diffuse cloudiness, owing to serous infiltration. The hemorrhages vary in extent, and often follow the course of the vessels. In septicemia they are due to capillary septic embolism, and often have white spots in the center, owing to the massing of leukocytes. Other white spots are due to fibrinous exudate, fatty degeneration of the retinal elements, or localized sclerosis of the same. Similar hemorrhages sometimes occur in the pia mater in the same cases.

RETINITIS occurs under the same circumstances as hemorrhage, especially in chronic nephritis, syphilis, anemia, leukemia, and also malaria; and in diabetes mellitus and chronic lead-poisoning.

*Albuminuric retinitis* may occur in all forms of chronic nephritis, more frequently in the interstitial variety, of which disease it may be the earliest

symptom recognized. It is characterized in general by the presence of white spots of various extent and distribution, as seen by the ophthalmoscope. They are caused by degenerative processes and hemorrhages. Gowers recognizes three forms:

1. A degenerative form, which is the most common, in which there is retinal changes, but scarcely any alteration of the optic disk.
2. An inflammatory form, in which there is much swelling of the retina with obscuration of the optic disk.
3. A hemorrhagic form, in which there are many hemorrhages, but little evidence of inflammation.

In some instances of the second type the inflammatory changes in the optic nerve predominate over those of the retina, producing an *optoneuritic* form, in which the appearances are more closely allied to those of papillitis or choked disk, such as is caused by intracranial disease.

*Syphilitic retinitis* is a rare affection in acquired and congenital disease. In the latter it is called *retinitis pigmentosa*. *Syphilitic choroiditis* is less rare. Retinitis is not uncommon in *chronic anemia*, especially in the pernicious form. After excessive loss of blood the patient often becomes blind, either suddenly or in the course of one or two days. In such cases a neuroretinitis has been found quite sufficient to explain the blindness, which, in rare instances, may be permanent and complete. A rare variety of anemic retinitis is *malarial retinitis*, first described by Stephen MacKenzie. It may be associated with hemorrhage. In *leukemic retinitis* the retinal veins are large, and hemorrhage may also occur, with white and yellow areas. Tumor of the brain, especially of the cerebellum, has been found in some instances to cause a condition of the retina like that of albuminuric retinitis.

#### (b) *Functional Disturbance of the Retina, or Amaurosis.*

This may be *toxic*. Of this, the most striking and best known variety is *uremic amaurosis*.<sup>1</sup> Its suddenness is its most striking feature, and it is very frequently the forerunner of uremic convulsions, although it may occur without them. It, too, may be the first symptom noted in Bright's disease. The retina is free from any changes visible by the ophthalmoscope, and the condition is probably due to the action of the poison on the nerve centers. It generally disappears, not quite so suddenly as it comes on, but comparatively quickly, while the impaired vision of retinitis albuminurica is a more or less permanent condition. Similar are the amauroses from *lead-poisoning* and from massive doses of *quinin*. *Hysterical amaurosis* is more frequently a dimness of vision—*amblyopia*—but true blindness may occur in one or both eyes. *Tobacco amblyopia* is usually gradual in its appearance, and affects more especially the center of the field of vision. There may be congestion of the optic disk, and if the use of tobacco is persisted in, there may be a permanent organic change, with atrophy of the disks. A scotoma for red and green is invariably present.

In *nyctalopia*, or night-blindness, objects are clearly seen by the day or

<sup>1</sup> Amaurosis is a vague term usually defined as partial or total loss of vision. For partial loss of vision amblyopia is now commonly applied, while the less obscure term blindness is best used for total loss of vision.

by strong artificial light, but are visible in the shade or at twilight. In *hemeralopia* the reverse state of affairs exists, objects being seen with discomfort in bright daylight or by strong artificial light, but being easily seen in deep shade or at twilight. *Retinal hyperesthesia* is sometimes met in hysterical women.

## 2. AFFECTIONS OF THE OPTIC NERVE.

Those which are of medical significance are *optic neuritis*, or choked disk, and *optic atrophy*.

### (a) *Intracranial Trunk.*

The intracranial trunk of the nerve is rarely affected, by reason of its shortness. It may, however, be compressed by a *tumor* in adjacent parts, as of the pituitary body or of the bone; by *aneurysm of the ophthalmic artery* within the orbit, or of the *internal carotid* within the skull. The trunk may also be the seat of inflammation, which may extend from carious bone or meningitis, or may be rheumatic.

### (b) *Optic Neuritis, Papillitis, Papillo-edema, or Choked Disk.*

**Definition.**—Inflammation of the intra-ocular end of the optic nerve.

**Anatomical.**—It will be remembered that the optic nerve pierces the sclerotic and choroid coats about  $1/10$  inch (2.5 mm.) to the nasal side of the center of the retina, which is occupied by the yellow spot of Sömmering. In this spot the sense of vision is most nearly perfect, while the optic papilla or disk is the only part of the retina from which the power of vision is absent. A central depression, or "cup," is due to the separation of the nerve-fibers, pale because of the absence of blood-vessels, while the periphery of the disk has a rosy tint from the presence of the minute blood-vessels that lie among the nerve-fibers. The "cup" varies in size, and may be absent, the vascular portion of the disk at times extending over it. The tint of the vascular portion of the disk also varies, and differences are of significance only when noted at successive examinations of the same case.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—It is by swelling and diminished transparency rather than by recognizable signs of congestion that the *first stage* of optic neuritis is characterized. Then there follows lessening of the sharpness of the edge of the disk, and finally its total obscuration, as seen in the right half of Fig. 129 as contrasted with the left half. It is to be remembered that the normal contrast is sometimes diminished within the limits of health, with this difference: that the pathological indistinctness is better seen with the direct method of examination, while the indistinctness sometimes normally present is more evident to the indirect. The abnormal change is earlier recognized on the nasal side, because there are more nerve-fibers there than at the temporal edge. In the *second stage* the swelling rapidly increases and the whole circumference of the disk disappears, though the cup is still represented by a slight depression. The swelling extends even beyond the normal disk, becoming two or three times as wide. The swollen disk assumes a red or grayish-red color to the indirect examination, but

by the direct a fine striated appearance is noted, the striae radiating from the center of the disk in the direction of the fibers. White spots may appear on its surface, due to degeneration of the nerve-fibers, and may be seen in the illustration. As the swelling increases the retinal vessels, at first unaffected, become affected by the compression, the veins becoming wider and more tortuous, the arteries being narrowed or remaining normal, while hemorrhages may occur. The retina may also be invaded, producing a neuro-retinitis.

In very slight degrees of inflammation the swelling subsides and recovery takes place. In high degrees it remains for a long time, owing to the presence of inflammatory products, which gradually, however, undergo

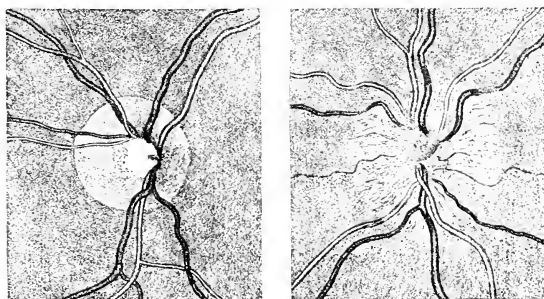


FIG. 129.—Commencing Optic Neuritis from a Case of Caries of the Sphenoid Bone with Secondary Meningitis—(after Gowers).

The left-hand figure shows the normal right optic disk with clear outline and deep central cup. The right-hand figure of the left papilla shows well-marked neuritis; the edge of the disk is concealed by a swelling which extends beyond the normal limits of the disk. The central cup is encroached upon, but not yet quite obliterated. Some of the vessels are partly concealed at their points of emergence, and the veins lose their central reflection.

the usual contraction of cicatricial tissue, a condition of "consecutive atrophy" resulting, in which the disk is white and atrophied.

**Etiology.**—Most commonly optic neuritis is caused by intracranial disease; especially in nine-tenths of all cases tumor is said to be present. It gives no information as to the seat of the tumor. It is ascribed by some to a descending neuritis; by others, to intracranial pressure. In over 90 per cent. of cases the neuritis is bilateral, though often unequal in the two eyes. Unilateral neuritis is generally due to disease within the orbit or at the optic foramen, but may also be due to intracranial tumor. *Meningitis*, either tuberculous or simple, is the next most frequent cause. It is said to be rather more common in meningitis of the base than of the convexity. Such optic neuritis is less severe than that caused by tumor. *Cerebral abscess* may cause it; so may *diffuse cerebritis*. In *thrombotic softening* and *hemorrhage* optic neuritis is rare, but in *embolic softening* it is more common.

Optic neuritis may result from *Bright's disease*, *chlorosis*, *anemia*, or *lead-poisoning*, and may occur after *acute fevers*, especially scarlet and typhoid. In the latter it may be associated with brain symptoms, especially headache. About six per cent. of all cases of *multiple sclerosis* are accom-

panied by optic neuritis, due to inflammatory or sclerotic patches in the nerve, usually slight and of short duration, often one-sided in consequence of unilateral involvement of the nerve by a sclerotic patch.

**Symptoms.**—Mild degrees of optic neuritis may be without symptoms, except such as are revealed by the ophthalmoscope. With higher degrees, acuity of vision, color vision, and the visual field all become affected and may be lost. Its severest effect on vision may not appear until contraction sets in, because it is at this period that the nerve elements suffer most in integrity. The defective sight is not, however, necessarily due to changes in the disk or retina; it may be due to intense inflammation in the nerve behind the eye or to intracranial disease.

**Prognosis.**—Even in severe cases there may be some improvement of vision with subsidence of the inflammation. On the other hand, vision may be permanently lost.

### (c) *Optic Atrophy.*

There are three varieties of atrophy of the optic nerve:

(1) Primary; (2) secondary; (3) consecutive.

1. *Primary or simple atrophy* is that form which is not preceded by any recognizable inflammatory change in the papilla or surrounding structures. It occurs in degenerative diseases of the brain and spinal cord, more frequently in multiple or disseminated sclerosis and tabes dorsalis. It is present in about 40 per cent. of all cases of multiple sclerosis, and, in various degrees, in at least 15 per cent. of those of tabes. In dementia paralytica it is present in about five per cent. Primary atrophy is sometimes hereditary, occurring in the males of a family after puberty. Other causes to which the condition has been ascribed are cold, alcoholism, lead-poisoning, sexual excesses, diabetes, and the specific fevers.

2. *Secondary atrophy* is the result of damage to the optic nerve behind the eye or at the chiasm. It is characteristic of it that demonstrable signs of atrophy follow, instead of accompany, the deranged vision; of which, too, hemianopsia may be a form.

3. *Consecutive atrophy* is that form of atrophy which succeeds neuritis or papillary neuritis. It has the same causes and the same significance. Only secondary and consecutive atrophy are the result of uncomplicated intracranial diseases; for although primary atrophy accompanies disseminated sclerosis, tabes dorsalis, and general paralysis of the insane, it is not caused by the associated brain disease, but is the result of the same widespread tendency to degeneration.

The ophthalmoscopic appearances in primary atrophy differ somewhat from those of the consecutive and secondary forms, the disk being gray-tinted—whence the name *gray atrophy*—with its edges well defined, while the arteries appear almost normal. In secondary and consecutive atrophy the disk has an opaque, white appearance, with irregular outline, and the arteries are small.

The **symptoms** of optic atrophy are the defects of vision already detailed when treating of optic neuritis.

As to **prognosis**, in primary atrophy the ultimate result is usually

blindness, but in secondary consecutive atrophy some vision remains, even in severe cases, while in mild cases recovery is not impossible.

### 3. LESIONS OF THE CHIASM AND TRACT.

**Anatomical.**—The decussation of the optic tracts at the chiasm is peculiar. As it reaches the chiasm each tract divides and sends a portion—the smaller—of its fibers to the temporal half of the corresponding retina, and the remaining portion to the nasal half of the opposite retina. Thus the right tract supplies the right or temporal half of the right retina and the right or nasal half of the left retina; the left tract supplies the left or temporal half of the left retina and the left or nasal half of the right retina. The decussating fibers occupy the middle of the chiasm, and the direct fibers the corresponding side. (See p. 1094.)

*Effect of Lesion of the Chiasm: Hemianopsia.*—(a) If the central portion of the chiasm, composed of decussating fibers only, is involved (lesions *b* and *c*, Fig. 130), the result will be anesthesia of the inner half of each retina and blindness of the outer half of each field of vision, it being remembered, of course, that the half field which is blind is the reverse of the half of the retina which is anesthetic, since the picture formed on each half of the retina is projected from the opposite half of the field of vision. Such half blindness is known as *hemianopsia*, and the form just described, in which outer or temporal half of each field is blind, is known as *bi-temporal hemianopsia*.

(b) If the whole chiasm is involved, as is not infrequently the case as the result of pressure by tumor, there will, of course, be total blindness.

(c) If the lesion is intermediate, involving the direct fibers on one side of the chiasm as well as the central fibers, there will then be blindness in one eye and temporal hemianopsia in the other.

(d) The rarest of all forms of hemianopsia is *bi-nasal hemianopsia*, due to a symmetrical lesion involving only the direct fibers passing to the temporal half of each retina, whence results blindness in the nasal field only. It is found sometimes in tumors involving the outer part of each tract, or of each optic nerve.

*Effect of Unilateral Lesion of the Tract.*—If there be a lesion involving the left tract at *d* (Fig. 130), the left or temporal half of the left retina and the nasal half of the right retina become anesthetic and useless, the right half of each field of vision is blotted out, and there results a right *lateral hemianopsia* which is called *homonymous hemianopsia*. The reverse is the case if the lesion is in the right tract. The number of cases involving the right side is about equal to the number involving the left. When the left half of one field and the right half of another is blind, or the reverse, the condition is known as *heteronymous hemianopsia*.

In the usual forms of bi-temporal hemianopsia the obscure fields are by no means always exact demi-fields, which would be the case if the dividing line passed exactly through the fixing point, or macula lutea. It may diverge to temporal side so as to leave a small area around this within the seeing half. These differences are due to peculiarities in the decussation rather than to the lesion. The half fields which remain, though com-

monly natural, are sometimes contracted. This is usually due to an inflammatory affection of the peripheral fibers of the optic nerves in front of the chiasm.

There are other differences in the dividing-line, such as obliquity, want of sharpness, etc., due to the same cause, but minute description

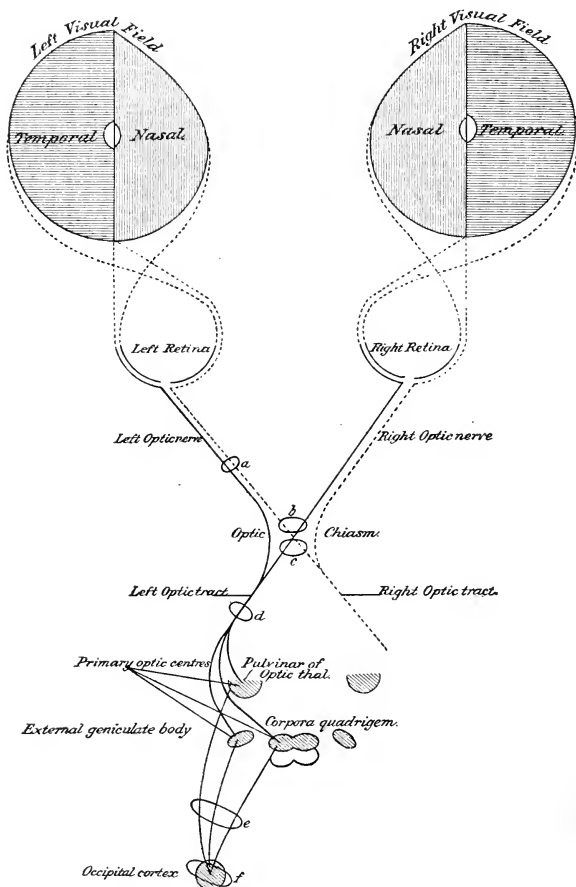


FIG. 130.—Diagram of Course of Optic Nerve-fibers from the Cortex to the Retina—(after Sahli, Modified and Extended).

of these belongs to special works on nervous diseases. Since vision remains intact in the central region, equally in right and left-sided hemianopsia, it follows that there must be a passage of fibers from the macular region to the optic tract of each hemisphere, else this region would be blinded by disease of one or the other tract. There is usually the same loss of vision



for color in the half field, but half vision for color may be lost in central disease without any change in the field for white. This is known as *hemichromatopsia*.

#### 4. LESION OF THE TRACT AND CORTICAL CENTERS.

The optic tract on each side crosses the crus cerebri backward and sends fibers to the external geniculate body, to the pulvinar of the optic thalamus, and to the anterior colliculus of the quadrigeminal body. From these so-called primary optic centers fibers pass backward through the posterior part of the internal capsule, forming the fibers of the optic radiation in the white substance of the occipital lobe, into the visual area of the cortex, of which the area about the calcarine fissure is the chief cortical center, though other parts of the occipital cortex possibly also receive and store up visual impressions.

Whence it is plain that vision may be influenced by lesions in any of the following situations:

1. In the tract itself.
2. In the external geniculate body.
3. In the pulvinar of the optic thalamus and in the anterior colliculus of the corpora quadrigemina.
4. In the fibers passing from the primary optic centers to the occipital lobe, as at *e* (Fig. 130), in the hinder part of the optic radiation.
5. In the area about the calcarine fissure.

The effect of lesion in any one of these situations is to produce anesthesia of that half of the retina corresponding to the affected side and a homonymous hemianopsia of the opposite half of the visual field.

**Morbid States Affecting the Optic Nerve, Chiasm, Tract, and Centers.**—Outside of the affections of the retina, which concern the ophthalmologist chiefly, and outside of optic neuritis or papillitis as a result of intracranial disease, already considered, the affections of the *optic nerve* which concern the physician are tumors springing from the pituitary body or the bone, aneurysm of the ophthalmic artery within the orbit or of the carotid within the skull, and interstitial inflammation from an adjacent focus, or rarely from rheumatism and injury.

The *optic chiasm* is encroached upon by tumors in the neighborhood, especially of the pituitary body; by tuberculous or syphilitic growths in its substance, or by inflammation invading it from the adjacent dura mater or from carious bone; by internal hydrocephalus, the distended infundibulum of the third ventricle pressing on the middle of the chiasm; by interstitial inflammation of a possible gouty origin or associated with *tabes dorsalis*; and, finally, by interstitial hemorrhage.

The *optic tract* may be invaded or compressed by tumors springing from the inner part of the temporosphenoidal lobe, by softening after thrombosis of the internal carotid, or by disseminated sclerosis. Primary softening in the tract is rare, as is also hemorrhage.

The *cortical visual centers* may be invaded by hemorrhage, softening, tumors, pressure by depressed bone in fracture, and other traumatic causes.

**Symptoms of Lesions of the Optic Nerve, Chiasm, Tract, and Cortex:**

1. *Visual Effects.*—(a) Lesions of the optic nerve cause defects of vision on the same side, with lessening of the reflex action of the pupil proportionate to interference with vision. The impairment of vision includes extent of field of vision as well as degree. There may be concentric limitation of the visual field because the peripheral layer of nerve-fibers near the optic foramen is damaged by processes external to it. In other cases there is irregular defect, and in others still the loss of sight is total and lasting.

To the ophthalmoscope there may be at first no change, but if the lesion is considerable, the atrophic condition soon makes its appearance "secondary" to changes in the nerve as distinguished from "consecutive" atrophy, which succeeds papillitis. There may be slowly supervening atrophy without recognizable papillitis. Central loss of vision, due to axial neuritis, is less common, but occurs sometimes in tobacco amblyopia.

(b) In lesions of the chiasm the characteristic symptom is bitemporal hemianopsia, or loss of the outer half of each field of vision; this is because the lesions mainly affect the chiasm at its central portion, where the fibers, after decussating, pass to the nasal half of each retina. Usually, however, the process, be it tumor or inflammation, which causes temporal hemianopsia extends laterally, involving the non-decussating fibers of one side of the chiasm, causing total blindness of the corresponding eye; or, if extending to both sides, blindness of both eyes. The different stages may often be traced in a single case as the disease progresses. The term "oscillating bitemporal hemianopsia" is applied to a rapid and frequent variation of the dark fields, and is regarded as more or less clearly diagnostic of basal syphilis, such as gumma or syphilitic meningitis. More rarely we have the binasal hemianopsia already described. Slight variations in the extent of the dark fields have been referred to as the result of peculiarities in decussation rather than of lesion or seat of lesion.

(c) In lesions of the optic tract between the chiasm and the external geniculate body there is bilateral hemianopsia.

(d) Bilateral hemianopsia is also a result of lesion of the central fibers of the nerve between the primary visual centers and the cerebral cortex.

(e) Lesions of the cuneus cause bilateral hemianopsia. A lesion in each hemisphere, destroying the visual paths back of the chiasm, will cause a double hemianopsia, with total loss of vision in both eyes. Such a result has followed successive lesions in the two occipital lobes.

(f) Hemianopsia may be due to functional disease. Transient hemianopsia is sometimes a symptom of migraine, either as an isolated symptom apart from headache and gastric disturbances or associated with them. It may affect now one half of the field and now another.

Hemianopsia has been reported as a symptom of hysteria, but the occurrence of true hemianopsia in hysteria is questioned.

2. *Other Symptoms Associated with Hemianopsia.*—In about one-half the cases of hemianopsia there is transient or permanent hemiplegia, the result of the same lesion, the hemiplegia being on the side of the loss of vision, so that the patient cannot see on the paralyzied side. Hemianesthesia

may also be associated, and defects in speech are sometimes found when the paralysis is on the right side.

Hemichromatopsia has been mentioned. (See p. 1096.) In this condition there is no change in the field for ordinary objects, but all colors appear gray as soon as the vertical line is passed. The symptoms, according to Gowers, probably depends on disease of one part of the occipital lobe, and is proof of a separate center for color not yet precisely located, perhaps in some part of the occipital cortex in front of the apical region.

The limitation of the remaining functionally active half field and the isolated loss for colors are the only known differences in the features of hemianopsia due to variations in the seat of the lesion in the optic path behind the chiasm; the limitation of the active half field indicating a lesion in the optic radiation near the thalamus, the isolated loss for colors pointing to a lesion in the occipital lobe.

3. *Amblyopia*.—Amblyopia is another form of sight defect due to brain disease. The term is used to indicate a *partial loss or blurring of vision*. There is concentric limitation of the visual field, different in different cases, and along with it the color fields are also reduced.

Similar eye defects, associated with hemianesthesia, occur sometimes in hysteria, with which it may be confounded. Since a simple functional loss of vision may rarely result as a reflex from irritation of the fifth nerve or from hysteria, so a functional amblyopia, affecting both eyes, may also result from such causes—indeed, is more common than the organic form. A carious tooth may act in this way. Amblyopia from errors of refraction must not be confounded with the amblyopia due to brain disease.

**Diagnosis.**—How shall we interpret these phenomena of vision concerned with the optic nerve and tract? Some conclusions are easy; others are difficult, because of our limited knowledge. Accurate investigation of fields of vision, with a view to the study of hemianopsia and other defects in the visual fields variously caused, is made by means of the perimeter, for directions concerning the use of which instrument the student is referred to works on ophthalmology. Herman Sahlbi suggests an easy, rough method, quite sufficient for recognizing marked difference in the field of vision, performed as follows: The physician seats himself opposite the patient, whose right eye—supposing this to be the one to be tested—is opposite the physician's left, the other eye of each being closed. The two open eyes being thus fixed opposed, the physician passes his finger to and fro across the field of vision exactly midway between the two eyes. In this way he can compare his own field of vision with that of the patient, noting at what moment the finger is seen approaching from the periphery of each. Care must be taken that the finger is kept exactly midway between the physician and patient, and in order to do this, the examiner may from time to time open his closed eye.

Defective sight in one eye with diminished reflex action of pupil proportionate to the defect, the function of the remaining eye being intact, usually means disease of one optic nerve. In some rare cases of functional disease in which the sight of one eye only is involved, the perfect responsiveness of the pupil distinguishes it from organic disease of the nerve. Total loss of sight in both eyes may mean chronic atrophy, damage to the

chiasm, or disease of both tracts or in both hemispheres. In these cases the symptoms are at first partial, and in this way the diagnosis is aided.

Central scotoma means damage to nerve-fibers in the center of the trunk of the optic nerve, either inflammatory or the result of hemorrhage. Peripheral limitation of vision means damage to fibers running in the periphery of the nerve. Sectorial blindness in one eye means disease of the nerve, decided in degree but limited in extent.

Bitemporal hemianopsia means disease of the chiasm, while the combination of complete blindness of one eye with temporal hemianopsia in the other means disease of the chiasm which has extended to the outer fibers, and even to the optic tract or optic nerve, on the side on which blindness is complete.

Bilateral hemianopsia may be due to disease back of the chiasm, and the determination of the spot involved in the tract between the chiasm and the occipital area which is the cortical center of vision, stimulates diagnostic acumen. The most that can be attempted is the settling of the question as to whether the disease is in the tract between the chiasm and the external geniculate body or in the fibers beyond in the visual center of the hemisphere. To this end the *hemianopsic pupillary* reaction of Wernicke is sought. A perfect pupil reflex requires the integrity of the retina, of the fibers of the optic nerve and tract, of the nuclei and fibers of the third nerve, and of the iris. When the light is thrown on the blind half of the retina the pupil contracts as much as if it is thrown on the seeing half, if the disease is in the hemisphere; but if the disease is in the tract, it does not contract because the path to the third nucleus below the corpora quadrigemina is interrupted. The employment of the test requires much care and experience. Seguin directs that the patient, being in a darkened room with a light behind his head in the usual position, be directed to look to the other side of the room, so as to eliminate accommodation movements. Then a faint light is thrown upon the eye from a plane or large concave mirror, held well out of focus, and the size of the pupil is noted. With the other hand a beam of light, focused by an ophthalmoscope mirror, is then thrown directly into the optical center of the eye, then laterally in various positions and from above and below the equator of the eye, noting the reaction at all angles of incidence. According or not as a response is obtained in the pupil the inference is drawn.

Amblyopia with concentric reduction of the field, decided in one eye and slight in the other, may be due to atrophy of the nerve, to disease of the distal visual center in one hemisphere, or to hysteria. If atrophy, the ophthalmoscope recognizes the lesion and the responsiveness of the pupil is diminished. If disease of one hemisphere, the nerve is normal to the ophthalmoscope, the pupil contracts perfectly under the action of light, and the onset is sudden or accompanied with other signs of organic brain disease. Mind-blindness, described on page 1074, may also be a result of lesion in this locality. In hysteria the symptoms are the same as in disease of the higher visual center, and the diagnosis depends on the presence or absence of signs of organic or functional disease. In hysterical blindness the loss of sight is rarely complete. In hysterical and neurotic defects of vision there may be a derangement of the natural relation in color fields.

Thus, while normally the blue field is most conspicuous in the last-named conditions, it is often overshadowed by other colors.

## LESIONS OF THE MOTOR NERVES OF THE EYEBALL.

**Anatomical.**—The third cranial nerve (oculomotor) supplies the levator palpebræ superioris, the superior, inferior and internal recti, the obliquus inferior, the sphincter of the iris, and the ciliary muscle. The fourth cranial nerve (the trochlear) supplies the superior oblique; the sixth cranial nerve (the abducens), the rectus externus. The functions of the muscles to which these nerves are distributed are sufficiently indicated by their names.

**THIRD NERVE.**—Lesions may involve the nerve at its nuclear origin or in its course. Lesion of the third nerve *at its origin* involves also usually the origin of the other motor nerves of the eye, except the sixth, producing general ophthalmoplegia, as a result of which the eyeball is motionless, and an object moved about in front of it can be followed only by moving the entire head. The nerve may be invaded *in its course* by traumatic causes, meningitis, gummata, aneurysm, or neuritis, frequently rheumatic, and may also be affected in diphtheria, tabes dorsalis, and diabetes mellitus. The effect may be spasm or paralysis.

The results of *spasm* of the muscles supplied by the third nerve are manifested in *nystagmus*. This consists in an involuntary, clonic, rhythmic, oscillatory movement of the eyeball, usually horizontal, but sometimes rotary, more rarely vertical. It is seen in congenital or acquired brain lesions, and is often a striking feature in albinism. In meningitis and hysteria there is also sometimes spasm of the muscles supplied by the third nerve, especially the internal rectus and the levator palpebræ, the antagonist of the orbicularis.<sup>1</sup>

*Paralysis* of those muscles supplied by the third nerve, which include all the eye muscles except the external rectus and the superior oblique, results in outward squint; ptosis, or drooping of the upper eyelid; the absence of contracting power in the pupil, which remains of medium size; loss of accommodation; double vision, or diplopia. Such paralysis, involving all the branches of the nerve, may be recurrent, especially in women, often at the menstrual period, or at wider intervals.

It is sometimes associated with pain in the head and at other times with migraine. The individual attack lasts a few days, or as many weeks. Partial involvement of the third nerve may include the levator palpebræ, the superior rectus, the ciliary muscle, and the iris, while the external muscles—that is, the internal and inferior recti and the inferior oblique—may escape.

*Ptosis* only, due to paralysis of the levator palpebræ, complete or partial may occur under various conditions. It may be congenital and incurable, or due to cerebral lesion; or it may be hysterical, when it is apt to affect both eyes and is associated with other symptoms of hysteria. It may be caused by disease of the sympathetic nerve (pseudoptosis), and may be

<sup>1</sup> Blepharospasm is a spasm of the orbicularis muscle, which is supplied by the facial nerve. It amounts usually only to twitching of the eyelids, but may be so severe as to close them completely, so that it is not in the power of the patient to open them.

associated with symptoms of vasomotor palsy—viz., elevation of temperature on the affected side, redness or edema of the skin, and contraction of the pupil on the same side. Finally, it is seen in weak, delicate women as a transient event, especially in the morning. When ptosis is the result of a definite lesion of the third nerve, at its nucleus or in its course, it may also be associated with a paralysis of the superior rectus alone, or of the internal and inferior recti in addition.

*Condition of the Pupil.*—The condition of the pupil should be studied with light of moderate intensity, and in doubtful states the pupil under examination should be compared with that of the eye of a healthy individual about the same age.

*Miosis*, or contraction of the pupil, is found physiologically during sleep, especially in elderly persons; pathologically, as an early symptom in tabes dorsalis, in progressive paralysis of the insane, and as an effect of eserin, pilocarpin, morphin, and in complete chloroform narcosis.

*Mydriasis*, or dilatation of the pupil, occurs in deep unconsciousness, during extreme pain, in dyspnea, in peripheral blindness, especially from optic atrophy, in oculomotor paralysis, rarely in tabes dorsalis and progressive paralysis of the insane. It is also an effect of atropin, duboisin, and cocain, and of the early stage of chloroform narcosis.

The pupil may be unduly large from palsy of the sphincter (third pair) fibers or from spasm of the radiating (sympathetic) fibers; or the pupil may be abnormally small from the opposite conditions.

Other limited paralyses due to third nerve disease are cycloplegia and iridoplegia. *Cycloplegia* is paralysis of the ciliary muscle, producing loss of the power of accommodation. In this state of affairs distant vision is good, but near objects cannot be seen distinctly. It may occur in one or both eyes, being in the latter event more usually due to disease of the nuclear origin of the third nerve. It is one of the earliest manifestations of diphtheritic paralysis, and is a symptom also of tabes dorsalis. It may be corrected by the use of eye-glasses.

*Iridoplegia* is paralysis of the iris, and its three forms are thus classified by Gowers, one associated and two reflex:

1. *Accommodative iridoplegia* is a form in which the pupil does not diminish in size during accommodation. It is tested by having the patient look at a distant object and then at a near one in the same line of vision, so as to avoid any change in the amount of light entering the eye. It is usually associated with paralysis of accommodation, but the ciliary muscle may be efficient and yet the associated action of the iris be lost, or the reverse. This loss is less common than that of reflex action. It is the result of the same cause as cycloplegia.

2. *Reflex Iridoplegia, or Argyll Robertson Pupil.*—The path for the optic reflex is along the optic nerve and tract to the nucleus of the third nerve; thence to the ciliary ganglion, and through the ciliary nerves to the eye. In testing for this condition each eye should be tried separately, the other being covered, but not closed. The patient is asked to look toward a dark part of the room, when a bright light is thrown suddenly in front of the eye at a distance of three or four feet, so as to avoid the effect of accommodation. If the patient looks at a nearer light, he will accom-



**FOURTH NERVE.**—The fourth cranial nerve (trochlear), as it passes around the outer surface of the crus into the orbit, is liable to be compressed by tumors, by aneurysm, or by the exudation of basal meningitis. Its nucleus below the aqueduct of Sylvius may be involved in tumors or may undergo degeneration with other ocular nuclei. As the superior oblique muscle, supplied by it, acts in such a way as to direct the eyeball downward and rotate it slightly, paralysis causes retardation of downward and inward movement, often so slight as not to be noticeable. The head is inclined somewhat forward and toward the sound side, and there is double vision when the patient looks down, as in descending stairs. Paralysis of this nerve is seldom met with alone, except in nuclear disease.

**SIXTH NERVE.**—The sixth nerve (abducens), emerging at the junction of the pons and medulla oblongata, passing forward and entering the orbit, is liable to be affected by meningitis at the base, or by tumors, especially fibromata, or by cold. The external rectus being alone supplied by it, the effect of its paralysis is to produce *internal squint*, and the eye cannot be turned outward. There is diplopia when looking toward the paralyzed side. It is a frequent ocular palsy, because the nerve has so long and exposed a course.

If the nucleus of the sixth nerve is affected, a very interesting condition results, which was first studied by Beever. In consequence of paralysis of the external rectus the eye of that side is turned inward, while at the same time the internal rectus of the eye of the opposite side has lost the power to turn its eye inward. Consequently, both eyes are turned to the side opposite and away from that of the injury. Thus, if the nucleus of the right sixth nerve is involved, both the right and the left eye are turned toward the left. Such opposite deviation away from the side of lesion is known as "conjugate deviation." It is due to the fact that the nucleus of the third nerve, supplying the internal rectus, is connected by fibers with nucleus of the sixth; whence in lesion of the nucleus of the sixth nerve there is paralysis of the internal rectus nerve, in associated movements, even though the nucleus of the third nerve is not involved while the power of convergence is not affected.

In consequence of the proximity of the nucleus of the sixth nerve to that of the seventh or facial, disease of the former is likely to involve the latter. Whence, say if there is lesion of the left nerve, there follows conjugate deviation of both eyes to the right, with a complete paralysis of the left half of the face.

Diabetes insipidus is sometimes associated with paralysis of the sixth nerve. Such a case I saw at the Philadelphia Hospital with J. Hendrie Lloyd. The paralysis of the sixth nerve was subsequently substituted by paralysis of the third, the polyuria remaining. A similar condition may be caused by syphilitic meningitis. Basal meningitis, involving the vascular supply to the floor of the fourth ventricle, may be suspected. Other cases of polyuria associated with paralysis of the sixth nerve are reported, notably Maguire's.

**Phenomena in General of Paralysis of Motor Nerves of the Eye.**—These include, first, limitation of movement and strabismus, referred to. In



addition to these certain derangements of vision, known as *secondary deviation*, *erroneus projection*, *double vision*, occur.

*Secondary deviations* are thus demonstrated: After covering the sound eye, let the paretic eye fix itself upon a point which it cannot reach at all, or can reach only after extreme exertion. Then remove the covering hand from the sound eye, and it will be found that the latter has been moved much too far in the same direction, the abnormal attempt at innervation of the affected eye passing over to the associated ciliary muscle of the healthy eye and causing in it too great a contraction.

*Erroneus projection* furnishes the idea that an object at which we are looking is further on one side than it really is or that the movement of the eye in following it, when moving, is greater than it is. Under these circumstances, in an attempt to touch the object with the fingers the latter may go beyond it. This grows out of the fact that when the eyes are at rest in the mid position, an object at which we are looking appears directly opposite the face. Turning the eye to one side, the object appears to the side of its former position; and if the object moves, we estimate the extent of its motion by the amount of movement of the eyeball following it. Now, when one muscle is weak, the increased innervation required to contract it gives the impression of a degree of movement greater than actually takes place. This is erroneous projection. Now, as the equilibrium of the body is largely maintained by a knowledge of the relation of external objects to it, obtained by the action of the eye muscles, the erroneous projection due to paralysis disturbs the harmony of visual impressions and may produce dizziness known as ocular vertigo.

*Double vision* results from the fact that if one eye is paralyzed the axis of the two eyes do not coincide, nor do the images in the two retinæ. The image produced in the sound eye is called the true image; that in the affected eye, the false image. In simple or homonymous diplopia the false image is on the same side as the paralyzed eye; in crossed diplopia it is on the other side. It is one of the most annoying symptoms of paralysis of the eye muscles.

**OPHTHALMOPLÉGIA.**—Ophthalmoplegia or nuclear palsy, is a term applied to a chronic progressive paralysis of the ocular muscles, *due to disease of the ocular nuclei*. It is called *internal* when the internal muscles only are involved—*i.e.*, the iris and ciliary muscles; *external*, when the external muscles are affected more or less completely. When both internal and external muscles are involved, it is known as *total ophthalmoplegia*.

**Historical.**—The term was first used by Brunner, in 1850. The nature of the cases was pointed out by v. Graefe in 1856, and in 1868 compared by him with bulbar palsy. Foster localized the lesion in 1878 for external palsy, including all the muscles except the iris and ciliary muscles. Internal ophthalmoplegia was described by Hutchinson in the same year, and the external form, with postmortem proof of its nature, in 1879.

**Symptoms.**—These vary according to the position and character of the lesion, which may be degenerative, hemorrhagic, or the result of pressure by tumors or the product of basilar meningitis. They are bilateral, except in the instance of the sixth nerve, with resulting conjugate paralysis. Gowers describes three modes of onset—chronic, sudden, and acute.

The *chronic* form is the most common, due to nuclear degeneration, or more rarely to tumor and embolic obstruction, and still more rarely to hemorrhage. In this form there is a great variety of combination and degree. Thus, there may be internal ophthalmoplegia only, or external, or both. In the internal form there may be loss of the iris-reflex only or of the ciliary muscle action only. In the external variety the levator and superior recti are commonly first involved, the other muscles gradually. There may be loss of the upward and downward movement of the eye, ptosis, and conjugate lateral palsy. There may be double vision, generally of short duration. In the total form the eye is fixed and immovable. Each variety may be associated with tabes dorsalis, general paralysis of the insane, progressive muscular atrophy, and bulbar palsy, often with syphilis. It is more common in males, and occurs occasionally in the young. There is a form occurring in children, known as infantile oculo-facial palsy, which may be congenital or acquired; rarely, it occurs as a sequel of diphtheria, late and permanent.

The disease may be very slow in developing, and may require years. Sometimes one eye is more affected than the other. If the internal muscles are unaffected, the disease is quite certain to be nuclear, because these muscles can scarcely escape bilateral disease of the nerve trunks. Indeed, v. Graefe thought this absence of involvement of the internal muscles characteristic. Palsy of the external ocular muscles is likely to be accompanied by facial palsy.

In *sudden nuclear palsy*, the second in frequency, the onset may take but a few minutes or an hour or two. The causes in such cases are commonly obstruction to the basilar arterial branches, rarely embolic obstruction, and still more rarely hemorrhage. The obstruction is usually bilateral. The lesions are irregular, and the symptoms are correspondingly irregular and unsymmetrical; the tendency is to recover. In these respects it differs from the chronic form also in that hemiplegia is a frequent accompaniment, generally on the side opposite the greater eye palsy. When hemorrhage is a cause, the resulting ocular palsy lasts usually but a few hours, provided the hemorrhage acts on the ocular centers only by pressure, while the other phenomena of pressure by effused blood, which is apt to spread, make their appearance.

*Acute nuclear palsy* is rare. It develops in a few days or weeks, and is possibly of inflammatory or toxic origin whence called by Wernicke *poliomyelitis superior*; but toxic cases may occur without inflammation. This form, according to Gowers, may be due to peripheral neuritis and not to nuclear disease. Alcohol may be a toxic cause. The eye muscles are invaded irregularly, and it is common for the internal muscles to escape. In fatal cases the causal influence extends to the centers of other nerves and possibly to the cortex. In cases that survive there is improvement, various in degree.

**Treatment of Ocular Palsies.**—The cause should be sought and if found, treated. Although syphilis is thought to be one cause of this disease and of tabes dorsalis, with which it is so frequently associated, disappointment follows the syphilitic treatment in the majority of cases. Yet mercury perhaps accomplishes more than any other single

remedy. Arsenic, strychnin, and iron are sometimes used, strychnin hypodermically.

In acute cases, when there is pain, hot fomentations, leeches, and counterirritation may be used. In chronic forms electricity has been extensively used, galvanism being preferred. Benedikt recommended placing the anode, or positive pole, on the forehead, and the cathode, or negative pole, on the margin of the orbit near the affected muscle. If the faradic current is used, the orbital pole is held still; if the voltaic, it is kept moving over the skin, or the current is broken by the commutator. To overcome the ptosis, electric stimulus is applied to the third nerve, as the muscle is not accessible.

The diplopia is removed by a prism not strong enough to fuse the two images completely, but of sufficient force to approximate them, so that the fusion may be completed by muscular action. Such action may be practiced for an hour each day. The dizziness due to erroneous projection can be removed only by throwing the eye out of use by an opaque glass. Operative treatment is not recommended.

PERIODICAL OCULOMOTOR PARALYSIS.—Up to June, 1890, according to A. Niden,<sup>1</sup> 21 cases of periodical oculomotor paralysis had been published. The organic lesion at the bottom of these paralyses is not yet settled upon. Möbius,<sup>2</sup> who was one of those who has contributed largely to the subject, claimed a *nuclear degeneration* as the cause, while Mauthner<sup>3</sup> another contributor, considers that the majority of cases have a basal cause, by which it is presumed he means a *basal meningitis* or other cause compressing the trunk of the nerve at the base of the cranium. The most recent paper on this subject is "Migraine ophthalmoplégique," Bornstein, *Monatsschrift für Psychiatric und Neurologie*, vol. xxv, No. 3, March, 1909.

In the paper referred to, Niden reports a case of periodical combined facial and abducens paralysis occurring in a woman 36 years of age, who had seven attacks involving the sixth and seventh nerves, separately or jointly, at intervals of from a few days to several months. Between these attacks she was free from symptoms. At other times there was derangement of other cranial nerves, especially of the auditory on the same side, manifested by tinnitus, which considerably interfered with the sense of hearing for the time. Again, in the fourth attack there was a paralysis of the left half of the tongue, which made speech stammering and unintelligible. All the attacks were accompanied by severe headache, which is more or less characteristic of oculomotor paralysis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—From these conditions Niden infers an involvement of the nuclear region of the sixth and seventh cranial nerves affecting first the nucleus of the latter on the left side, and after a short interval the former of the same side and a part also of the nucleus of the hypoglossal. He thinks that there may have been an exudation in the region of the floor of the fourth ventricle deep enough to involve the nuclei of these nerves as well as the trunks of some of them

**Treatment.**—Because of syphilitic origin, in many of these cases mer-

<sup>1</sup> "Centralblatt für praktische Augenheilkunde," p. 164, 1890.

<sup>2</sup> Möbius, "Ueber periodische wiederkehrende Oculomotoruslähmung," "Berliner klin. Wochenschr.," 1884, Nr. 30 u. 38, S. 604; and "Arch. f. Psych. u. Nervenkrankh.," xiv., S. 844.

<sup>3</sup> Mauthner, "Die ursächlichen Momente der Augenmuskellähmungen," "Vorträge," S. 415. Wiesbaden, 1885, Bergmann.

curial treatment proved promptly efficient, while at times the symptoms subsided spontaneously.

### LESIONS OF THE TRIFACIAL OR FIFTH NERVE (TRIGEMINUS).

**Anatomical.**—This important mixed nerve of the face supplies by its motor trunk the muscles of mastication; by its sensory portion, the skin of the face, the mucous membrane of the mouth and nasal cavity, the conjunctiva, and the cornea; also, according to some physiologists, the anterior part of the tongue with gustatory fibers. The gustatory fibers are supposed to reach the lingual fibers of the fifth nerve by the chorda tympani nerve. Recent studies of Harvey Cushing make this doubtful.

**Lesions.**—1. There may be lesions of the pons, especially hemorrhage, or areas of sclerosis invading the trigeminus nucleus.

2. Injury or disease at the base of the skull, especially acute and chronic meningitis and caries of the bone, tumors, syphilis, new formations compressing the trunk or the Gasserian ganglion. Fracture of the base rarely affects this nerve.

3. Tumors or aneurysms pressing on the first division (ophthalmic) of the nerve through the cavernous sinus, on the second division (superior maxillary) and on the third division (inferior maxillary) by invasion of the sphenomaxillary fossa.

4. There may be inflammation of the nerve, which is rare.

5. The sensory division may also be affected in hysteria.

6. The gustatory fibers of the trigeminus may be influenced by peripheral lesions of the facial, whence the chorda tympani is derived.

**Symptoms.**—*Paralysis of the Sensory Portion.*—The distribution of the anesthesia varies according as the whole trigeminus or only a part is involved. In total anesthesia there is loss of sensation in half the corresponding side of the head, including the conjunctiva and cornea, mucosa of the lips, tongue, hard palate, and nose of the same side. Hence on the tongue or mucous membrane there are often ulcers which come from unconscious lacerations by the teeth. There is, according to the views of many, loss of the senses of taste and smell. The loss of the sense of smell is probably due to drying of the mucous membrane, as it is not probable that the fifth nerve contains olfactory fibers. The so-called trophic phenomena are also observed, and among them the much-discussed *neuroparalytic ophthalmia*, an ulcerative keratitis, beginning, also, always in the lower segment of the cornea, and passing over into purulent inflammation of the whole eyeball. It seems, on the whole, more likely that the inflammation is primarily due to the action of irritants which in health are excluded by the proper closure of the eyelids, though the inflammatory process itself may be trophically influenced. The salivary, lacrymal, and buccal secretions may be diminished and the teeth may become loose. Herpes is a trophic result which may develop in the course of the nerve, is painful, and may last a long time. So, too, the anesthesia may be preceded by tingling. The skin of the face is sometimes swollen.

*Paralysis of the motor portion*, which supplies especially the muscles of

mastication, the masseters, temporals, and pterygoids, is not common. It is most frequent in diseases of the base of the skull, compressing this branch. Difficulty in chewing is the result. If on one side, the patient can chew only on the other; if on both sides, he cannot chew at all. The lower jaw hangs down and cannot be moved from side to side because of the paralysis of the pterygoids. If on one side, the external pterygoid cannot push the jaw toward the sound side, and when depressed, the jaw is pushed by the muscle of the sound side toward the paralyzed side. Cases have occurred associated with cortical lesion; from one such Hirt inferred that the motor center for the trigeminus is in the neighborhood of the lower third of the ascending frontal convolution.

*Spasm* of muscles of mastication is found in connection with muscular cramp, the muscular contraction of tetanus (trismus), sometimes in tetany and meningitis, and reflexly through painful affections of the jaw or teeth, or from irritation near the motor nucleus. It is also sometimes hysterical. Clonic spasm occurs in muscles supplied by the fifth nerve, constituting "chattering teeth." It occurs generally in connection with general conditions, such as paralysis agitans, but it may happen as a local symptom in women late in life.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not difficult. Sensibility is tested in the ordinary way. The preliminary pain must not be mistaken for *neuralgia*. Gustatory sense is tested in the anterior end of the tongue by applying weak acid or salt solutions and comparing the effect on the two halves. The motor power is tested by biting on a piece of wood or cork or by moving the jaws against resistance.

**Treatment.**—This must depend upon the cause, which should be carefully sought. Syphilitic new formations are the lesions most commonly amenable to treatment. In the absence of such causes the treatment must be symptomatic. Stimulating liniments and faradization through the electric brush are often useful. Galvanism may also be used, brushing the part with the cathode. The anesthetic part should be carefully protected against irritants.

In the absence of tangible cause, systemic treatment is not indicated, except to build up the general health of the patient.

## LESIONS OF THE FACIAL NERVE, OR SEVENTH PAIR.

The seventh pair (portio dura of the seventh, old classification) is the motor nerve of the face, and is subject to paralysis of motion and to spasm.

### PARALYSIS OF THE FACIAL NERVE.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Mimetic Facial Paralysis; Bell's Palsy; Monoplegia facialis.*

*Monoplegia facialis* may be caused by lesions in the *cortical center* of the nerve, in the brain between the cortex and the nucleus, in the *nucleus itself*, and in the *nerve trunk*.

*Supranuclear Paralysis.*—The cortical center resides in the foot of the central convolution, probably the anterior central, from which pass out

fibers along with the pyramidal fibers through the internal capsule to the facial nucleus in the tegmentum of the pons on the opposite side. Accordingly, the nerve is commonly involved in hemiplegias—in fact, facial paralysis forms a part of most hemiplegias. Such a paralysis, due to lesion above the facial nucleus, is known as *supranuclear*.

In such a palsy the voluntary muscles of the lower half of the face are paralyzed, while the secretory and gustatory functions of the facial are not affected; nor are the orbicularis and forehead muscles, except in some cases in the beginning of the hemiplegia, these being innervated by the upper branch of the facial. These features, together with the normal electrical excitability of both nerve and muscle, the intact reflexes and taste sense, all point to a *central* facial paralysis as distinguished from a peripheral. The limitation of the paralysis to the lower half of the face is due to the fact that the lower portion only of the face receives exclusively crossed innervation, while the upper part, like the ocular muscles and the motor trigeminus, is innervated more from both hemispheres, so that a lesion in one may be overbalanced by the other. This will be understood by an examination of the schematic drawing (Fig. 132), from which it is plain that a one-sided brain lesion at *a* paralyzes only the inferior and not the upper facial, because the upper facial is also innervated from the sound side. Recent investigations show that the upper and lower branches of the facial nerve have not separate nuclei, although they may be represented in different parts of the same nucleus. That they are *functionally* distinct is further shown by the fact that in bulbar paralysis, also a disease of the nerve nuclei of the medulla oblongata, only the inferior facial is involved. That the upper face muscles are totally uninvolved in central facial paralysis is not quite true, for careful examination will show that the function is not quite so perfect as in health; the patient cannot close the eye of the paralyzed side by itself, as in the normal state; whence it follows that the upper half of the face is innervated from both hemispheres, as is also shown in Fig. 132. The crossed influence is, however, the larger.

Cortical facial paralysis, *monoplegia facialis*, has been found associated with lesions in the center for face muscles in the lower Rolandic region, but isolated facial paralysis due to involvement of the nerve-fibers in their path from the cortex to the nucleus is extremely rare. Cortical or capsular facial paralysis, as already explained, is on the same side as that of the arm and leg.

*Nuclear Paralysis.*—Paralysis may also be caused by lesions of the nucleus, but is not common. The symptoms are essentially the same as those of paralysis of the trunk of the nerve, or peripheral facial palsy, although there is no loss of taste in the nuclear palsy.

*Infranuclear Paralysis, or Peripheral Facial Paralysis.*—This includes all cases due to involvement of the nerve trunk. The distinctive features of this, as compared with cortical paralysis, have already been stated. It still remains, however, to determine the precise segment of the nerve involved, to be again referred to when treating of diagnosis.

*Etiology.*—*Cortical paralyses* are usually due to compression or destruction of the cortical center, as by traumatism, hemorrhage, tumor, meningitis, or embolism. *Nuclear paralysis* may be caused by tumors, chronic

softening, hemorrhage, or the diphtheritic toxin, while rarely anterior poliomyelitis may involve the facial nucleus.

The most frequent cause of *peripheral paralysis* is exposure to cold, as to a cold wind or draft from an open window. Such cases include so-called rheumatic paralysis, and may be due to neuritis. Disease of the middle ear and caries of the petrous portion of the temporal bone are relatively frequent causes, which have evident explanation in the course of the facial through the Fallopian canal adjacent to the tympanic cavity, whence it may be invaded. At the base of the brain, tumors, syphilitic new formations and inflammatory processes also involve the facial. Rarely swelling

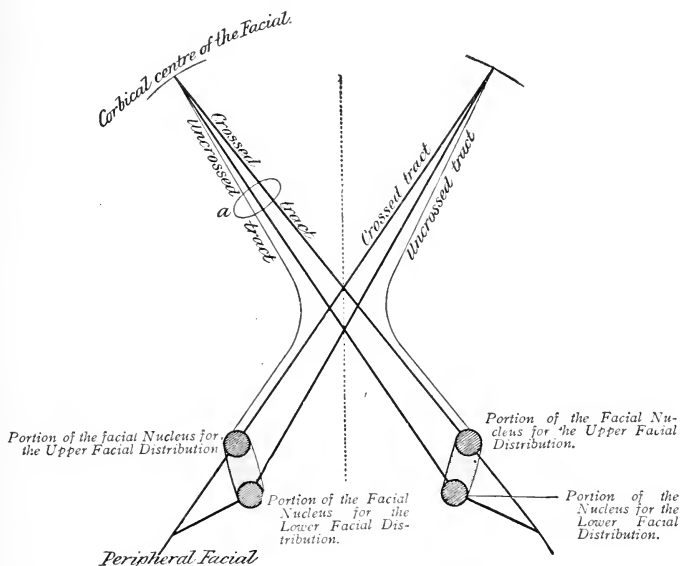


FIG. 132.—Schema and Central Innervation of the Facial Nerve—(after Sahli).

The nucleus of the upper branch is innervated from both hemispheres, though mostly from the opposite side, while the nucleus of the lower branch is innervated almost totally from the opposite side.

of the parotid gland is a cause of pressure. John H. W. Rhein reports a case of right-sided Bell's palsy in a child of eight months succeeding the opening of an abscess under the chin on the right side.<sup>1</sup>

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms vary with the exact seat at which the nerve is invaded. Paralysis of the facial muscles of expression produces the most striking change of physiognomy. The homely description, understood by everyone, is that the face is drawn to one side; and so it is to some degree—to the sound side, except in old cases after contracture has occurred. The appearance of the face being drawn to the sound side is largely deceptive, and is caused by the flattening of the face on the paralyzed side and the contrast afforded by the two sides. Exami-

<sup>1</sup> "Archives of Pediatrics," January, 1906.

nation discloses that on the opposite and paralyzed side there is a remarkable smoothness of face, the wrinkles have disappeared from the forehead, the labionasal fold is gone, and this half of the face is quite expressionless. The corner of the mouth on the paralyzed side is lowered, while saliva frequently flows from it; the eye is wider open than natural, and can be only partly closed, even during sleep—*lagophthalmos*—and the eye waters. These symptoms are rendered still more striking on effort at smiling, talking, or whistling, at turning up the nose, wrinkling the forehead, inflating the cheeks, or closing the eyes. On attempting the latter the upper lid drops as though heavy, the eye is turned upward, the pupil covered, but quite a space remains “uncovered.” The so-called “corneal” and “optical” reflexes, by which, through closure of the lid, the eye protects itself from the entrance of foreign bodies seen approaching, are lost, and a tendency to conjunctivitis results.

In complete facial paralysis winking is impossible. Whistling is also impossible, and speech may be interfered with, owing to the difficulty in forming labial sounds. The proper muscles of mastication are not paralyzed, but, owing to paralysis of the buccinator muscle, food collects between the teeth and cheek on the paralyzed side, and an attempt to sniff reveals paralysis of the nasal muscles. The upper teeth cannot be uncovered, and an attempt to drink is only partly successful, because the lips cannot be kept close to the glass. The tongue is sometimes described as protruding toward the paralyzed side, but this appears to have been an error. The organ is really central, when examined in its relation to the incisors, and the erroneous impression arises from the fact that the lips are drawn to the sound side. Many authorities speak of a paralysis of the soft palate on the affected side, since facial fibers pass through the superficial petrosal nerve to the sphenopalatine ganglion. It is described as drooping, while effort at phonation raises the soft palate obliquely to the sound side. Both Gowers and Hughlings Jackson, however, deny this symptom in most cases, and are sustained by the discovery of Horsley and Beever, that the soft palate is innervated by the spinal accessory nerve. The innervation of the soft palate, however, is not definitely known.

*Derangement of taste* also occurs in the anterior two-thirds of the tongue on the paralyzed side in cases where the facial is involved in that part of its course in which it contains the chorda tympani nerve—that is, in the Fallopian canal between the genu and the union of the chorda tympani with the facial. When the nerve is affected outside of the skull, the sense of taste is intact. Tactile sense in the tongue is also sometimes lessened; salivary secretion is diminished, producing dryness of the mouth. Hearing may be more acute, especially for low notes, because of paralysis of the stapedius muscle, antagonized by the tensor tympani, which is innervated from the trigeminus. Hence results a greater sensitiveness of the membrana tympani. Other disturbances of hearing are also present, but they are generally due to associated aural trouble. Herpes is also an occasional symptom, and is ascribed to the presence of trigeminal filaments among those of the facial.

Facial paralysis usually sets in suddenly, rarely gradually. Sometimes there are prodromata, consisting in abnormal sensations of taste,



pain in the ear and face, and ringing in the former, all from inflammation of the nerve. With this exception, pain is not common.

**Diagnosis.**—The recognition of the presence of paralysis of the facial is for the most part easy. More difficult, and proportionately important, is it to ascertain the modifications due to lesions in different parts of its course. This is rendered easy by the appended schematic drawing of the distribution of the facial nerve, after Sahli. (Fig. 133.)

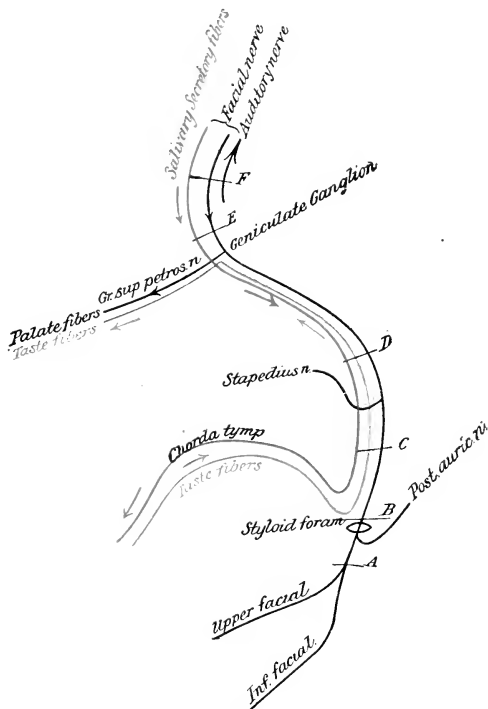


FIG. 133.—Simplified Drawing of the Peripheral Distribution of the Facial Nerve—(after Sahlb).

The phenomena vary in accordance with the following:

- (a) Lesion at *A*, trunk of the facial, affecting only the mimetic branches. Paralysis of all the facial muscles; taste, secretion of saliva, hearing, and palate normal.
- (b) Lesion at *B*, within the styloid foramen. Paralysis of facial muscles, and occipital muscles innervated by the posterior auricular nerve.<sup>1</sup> Taste, secretion of saliva, hearing, and soft palate normal.
- (c) Lesion at *C*. Paralysis of the facial muscles, derangement of taste, diminished secretion of saliva; hearing and soft palate normal.
- (d) Lesion at *D*. Paralysis of the facial muscles, derangement of

<sup>1</sup> Since the occipital muscle is in most men not under control of the will, its paralysis can be ascertained only by the electrical test (reaction of degeneration).

taste, diminished secretion of saliva, abnormal acuteness of hearing, and paresis of soft palate.

(c) Lesion at *E*, above geniculate ganglion. Paralysis of the facial muscles, diminished secretion of saliva, abnormal acuteness of hearing, paresis of soft palate, but no disturbance of taste.

(f) Lesions at *F*, in Fallopian canal, often associated with a lesion of the auditory nerve in consequence of its proximity to it. Paralysis of facial, diminished secretion of saliva; hearing may be influenced by common lesions to auditory; palate normal, taste normal.

The student is referred to what has previously been said as to the modification rendered necessary by the observations of Gowers and others on the non-involvement of the soft palate in facial palsy.

We are aided also in recognizing precise forms by the causes, if known, like the presence of ear disease, or a history of exposure to cold or of traumatism. Coexisting symptoms of brain or bulbar disease must also be considered. Reaction of degeneration cannot occur in true cerebral facial palsy, only in peripheral palsy or in such bulbar paralysis as affects the facial in or below the nucleus itself. In the cortical facial paralysis the frontal distribution of the facial nerve and the ocular muscles are not seriously affected except in the early stages; in the peripheral paralysis they usually are.

The existence of bilateral facial paralysis—*diplegia facialis*—points almost invariably to a central lesion, and more especially to a bulbar affection, since it must be a rare event to have a simultaneous involvement of both nerves in their peripheral distribution, though its possibility cannot be denied. Syphilitic meningitis is a common cause of facial diplegia.

**Prognosis and Course.**—The prognosis varies with the etiology and with the degree of severity. Some cases get well rapidly; others partly recover; many are permanent. The following division of forms with their probabilities, according to Erb, will be helpful:

1. *The Mild Form of Facial Paralysis.*—To this many rheumatic cases belong. The affection is usually one of facial muscles only. Electrical excitability in the paralyzed muscles remains normal, and there are no severe and deep-seated changes in nerves or muscles. Recovery is rapid, usually taking place in two or three weeks.

2. *Middle Form.*—There is partial reaction of degeneration, the excitability of nerve being diminished but not lost; in the muscles, however, in two or three weeks, there is decided increase of galvanic excitability to direct excitement, the anodal closure contraction being greater than the cathodal while contractions are slow. Recovery may still be quite rapid, usually in from four to six weeks.

3. *Severe Form.*—Complete reaction of degeneration in nerve and muscles—*i. e.*, loss of faradic and galvanic excitability of nerve, loss of faradic excitability of muscle, and quantitative and qualitative changes in galvanic excitability of muscle. In this form there is always degeneration of nerve and muscle, so that, if recovery takes place at all, it is only after two or six months or longer.

In these cases there often intervene symptoms of motor irritation, consisting:

1. In a marked tonic contraction of the paralyzed muscle, sometimes very striking.

2. Single spasmodic contraction of muscles.

3. Special associated movements. Thus, if the patient closes his eyes or winks, there always follows a marked distortion of the corner of the mouth, which cannot be restrained.

4. An increased reflex irritability, as the result of which, on pricking or blowing on the skin, vigorous muscular contractions follow.

These symptoms last for a long time—for years in incurable or imperfectly cured cases.

Further points bearing on prognosis have reference to the nature of the primary disease. Paralysis caused by tumors of the base of the brain and caries of the petrous bone is almost always incurable. If the paralysis is due to middle-ear disease, the prognosis depends on the curability of the ear disease. The electrical examination affords helpful data. If at the end of one or two weeks electrical excitability still remains normal, a rapidly favorable termination may be predicted. If, on the other hand, the reaction of degeneration is present, a much longer course and delayed recovery, if any, may be expected. Relapses may occur.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is, of course, that of the lesion which lies at the bottom of the paralysis. If it is a syphilitic, inflammatory product, the iodids should be administered in the usual ascending doses. Middle-ear disease should receive the promptest and closest attention, as some of the most unfortunate cases are thus caused. Any possible cause of pressure should be sought and removed.

When cold is the cause, and the case comes early under observation, warmth, either dry or moist, should be applied to the distribution of the nerve in the face, while mild counterirritation at the *pes anserinus* is useful. Decided blistering is of questionable utility, but it is harmless and probably does good.

For the paralysis remaining after the removal of the cause electricity is indicated, and more especially the constant current. A weak current should be used for from three to five minutes at a time, interrupting from four to six times a minute, placing first the anode and then the cathode in the auriculo-mastoid fossa, the other pole in front of the ear. Galvanism and faradization may be applied to the muscles themselves, including the orbicularis, the direct effect of the electricity on which is shown by an increased power to close the eye immediately after the application of the current. Massage of the muscles may be used.

Sulphate of strychnin is a drug which has some reputation in facial paralysis, although it is difficult to trace the results of its use. Its administration by subcutaneous injection, daily or on alternate days, is recommended. The salicylate may be used with advantage in some cases. Massage of the facial muscles is advisable.

#### FACIAL SPASM.

**Definition.**—By facial spasm is meant a real spasm confined to the mechanism of motor innervation of the face as contrasted with mimetic facial tic or convulsive tic, all usually unilateral, sometimes bilateral.

**Etiology.**—No cause can be found for most cases. Possible causes are exposure to cold, lesions at the base of the skull, or irritation of the facial center in the cerebral cortex. Other cases may be explained by reflex causes, such as irritation by ocular disease, carious teeth, intestinal worms, or disease of the sexual organs. Others have been ascribed to violent mental excitement.

**Symptoms.**—Hugh T. Patrick<sup>1</sup> thus contrasts facial spasm with facial tic, *tic convulsif*, or habit spasm. First, as to points of resemblance: Both facial tic and facial spasm are hyperkinesias. Both present intermittent painless twitching and contraction of facial muscles, both tend to become chronic and both cease during sleep with rare exceptions in case of spasm. Here resemblances cease.

On the other hand, tic is much more common than spasm, and invariably develops in a nervous or neuropathic person. Temperament has nothing to do with spasm. Second, facial spasm is a real spasm confined to the mechanism of motor innervation of the face. Tic is not a spasm, but a movement of volition.

3. Spasm is totally beyond voluntary or involuntary control, while tic is always to some extent under voluntary control and always to involuntary control as by strong emotional or mental preoccupation.

4. Spasm, according to Patrick, is an "anatomical, tic a physiological disorder." A good idea of facial spasm may be obtained by faradizing the facial nerve, and no one would mistake such resulting contraction for a voluntary movement. Tic is a reproduction of a perfectly natural and normal, though it may be unusual movement. Voluntary imitation of facial spasm is impossible, but the patient or even another person may imitate the tic movements.

5. In its incipency spasm is confined to a part of a muscle and ultimately extends to the entire distribution of the facial nerve, no less, no more, and is, moreover, strictly unilateral. Tic never affects a part of a muscle, because voluntary fascicular contractions are impossible. On the other hand, all the facial muscles are rarely included in one movement. In tic one physiologically associated group of muscles may contract one moment, and another group the next. Tic is apt to be bilateral either simultaneously or alternately, and it is peculiarly liable to be associated with tic of adjacent or remote muscle groups.

6. The contraction of facial spasm is very like that produced by faradism when the vibrator is not running smoothly. While the general effect is tonic, there is also a flickering or quivering, or rapid slight irregular twitching such as never occurs in voluntary movement or tic and cannot be imitated. Each spasm begins with this flickering contraction, generally of a part of a muscle and most frequently in the *orbicularis palpebrarum*. The preliminary quiver may be very brief or may last several seconds, and even in a fully developed case one may see abortive spasms. This never occurs in facial tic.

7. Facial spasm may not look worse than facial tic, but is more uncomfortable and much more disabling. The subject of tic may talk and sing as he pleases, and though his talk may be interspersed with grimaces his

<sup>1</sup>Patrick, "Journal of Nervous and Mental Diseases," January, 1909.

sentences are not interrupted by them. The speech of a person with spasm may be cut short at any time.

*Blepharospasm.*—A variety of the partial form is *blepharospasm*, a tonic or clonic spasm of the orbicularis muscle. In the clonic form it is apt to be associated with spasm of the lateral facial muscles, and there is constant twitching of the side of the face, with partial closure of the eye. In another clonic variety there is constant contraction of the eyelids and consequent winking.

The tonic form is usually reflex in origin, bilateral, and may last for days or weeks, with occasional interruptions. The reflex cause is commonly some affection of the eye, producing photophobia, or it may reside in some other point in the distribution of the trigeminus. The clonic form may also sometimes be traced to a reflex act as a cause.

Very interesting in connection with blepharospasm is the discovery by v. Graefe of certain so-called "pressure points." These are points at which pressure causes the spasm to cease, so that the eyelids "fly up as if by a spring." These are commonly found at points of exit of the trigeminus, but have also been found on the vertebral column and elsewhere.

For other forms of spasm of the facial nerve see Choreiform Affections, page 1210.

**Prognosis.**—This in all forms is, as a rule, unfavorable. There are intervals of suspension, sometimes of considerable length, but the spasm recurs, and the disease generally remains incurable.

**Treatment.**—The treatment by drugs is correspondingly unsatisfactory, but a number of things may be done. Causes of reflex irritation should be sought and removed, such as carious teeth and ophthalmia. Paquelin's cautery may be applied to the trunk of the nerve, or to pressure points, if they exist. Nerve section of the supra-orbital nerve has been practiced in blepharospasm. Nerve stretching has been followed by relief, at least as long as the paralysis continues, which is commonly a welcome substitute for the twitching. The constant current may be used, seeking also for pressure points, to which the anode is to be applied. If there are none, this pole should be applied to the trunk of the nerve and to the different branches of the pes anserinus. In cases of reflex origin Berger reports that satisfactory results were obtained by applying the anode to the occiput just under the protuberance, while the cathode was held in the hand—an attempt at galvanization of the medulla oblongata. The single sitting should last from five to ten minutes. Weir Mitchell recommends the freezing of the cheek every day or every other day with the rhigolene spray; at least transient relief follows. The injection of a small amount of alcohol into and about the nerve is a new and promising method of treatment. It has been successful in a number of cases. Paralysis of the facial distribution occurs, and after it has disappeared the spasm may not reappear.

As to medicines, those usual in nervous affections should be tried—bromid of potassium, strychnin by hypodermic injection, arsenic, iron, oxid of zinc, atropin, curare.

The treatment of convulsive tic is that of hysteria.

## LESIONS OF THE AUDITORY OR EIGHTH NERVE.

The eighth pair (portio mollis of the seventh in the older classification of Willis) with its central connections may be affected anywhere in its course from its cortical center in the upper part of the first temporo-sphenoidal convolution, thence in the internal capsule across to its nucleus at the junction of the pons with the medulla oblongata, or at the base of the brain after it passes out of the pons into the internal auditory meatus to its distribution in the cochlea and vestibule. The proximity of this nerve to the facial at the base of the brain and in the internal auditory meatus is to be remembered. As indicated by its name, it is softer and more vulnerable than the facial, so that equally acting causes may affect it and leave the facial intact.

The auditory nerve should be regarded as two nerves—the cochlear and the vestibular; the former having to do with hearing and the latter with co-ordination.

**Symptoms**—Directly due to disease of the auditory nerve are limited to some derangement of hearing, and it is their association with others which widens their significance in the study of nervous diseases. The derangements of hearing resulting from such lesion are six:

1. Loss of hearing, or deafness.
2. Increased sensitiveness, auditory hyperesthesia, or hyperacusis.
3. Symptoms of irritation, causing subjective aural sensations—tinnitus aurium and allied symptoms.
4. Disturbances of equilibrium or sensation of such, due to irritation of the fibers in the semicircular canals—Ménière's disease.
5. Certain rare instances of involuntary movements, due to disease of the nerve within the ear, as oscillatory motions of the head.
6. Purely functional derangements of hearing, occurring especially in connection with hysteria and with anemia following large hemorrhage.

## I. LOSS OF FUNCTION; NERVOUS DEAFNESS.

**Etiology.**—Deafness may be congenital when it is due to labyrinthine defect. According to Gowers, 80 per cent. of deaf mutes are congenitally deaf. The remaining 20 per cent. become so from disease in early life. Of congenital cases it is said that the intermarriage of relations having similar defects is responsible for some, while such intermarriage, even where there is no such defect, is held responsible for a smaller number. Partial as well as total deafness may be congenital.

Of the cases of acquired nervous deafness, disease of the labyrinth, either primary or secondary to that of the middle ear, causes most. The labyrinth is subject to inflammation, acute or chronic, to syphilitic disease, to degeneration, and to hemorrhage. It may be invaded by meningitis, cerebrospinal or tuberculous. Its membrane may undergo degeneration, due to gout or simply to old age. The product of all these may be fibrous or calcareous new formation. The deafness caused by certain drugs, as quinin, has been ascribed to congestion of the internal ear, and that by loud noise, as the explosion of artillery, to hemorrhage.

Lesions of the nerve trunks are less common causes. They may be of the same character as those of the labyrinth, except primary inflammation, although even this is said to be a cause. Primary degeneration may occur in *tabes dorsalis*. The nerve may be compressed by thickening of the cranial bones, calcareous nodules, tumors, or extravasated blood.

The nuclei within the pons may be damaged by hemorrhagic extravasations and tumors. Above the nuclei there may be a lesion encroaching on the superficial layer of the tegmentum, a lesion in the internal capsule, or in the cortical center.

**Symptoms.**—Since, as already stated, derangement of hearing constitutes the only essential symptom of nervous deafness, any enlargement of the subject can be made only by considering the modifications and conditions of this system, and by reviewing such methods of determining the precise seat of the lesion as exist.

The ability to hear through the bone while the air conduction is impaired implies that the function of the labyrinth is intact, and that deafness is due to obstruction of the meatus or to disease of the middle ear and not to nerve deafness. This is further confirmed if the bone conduction is intensified by closing the meatus, since in this way the vibrations, which ordinarily pass out by the meatus, are retained. On the other hand, if there is diminished bone conduction, it does not necessarily follow that the labyrinth is diseased, because there may be ankylosis of the stapes, which will diminish bone conduction, although no amount of disease of the middle ear will extinguish it if the labyrinth be intact. Further, in health air conduction is heard after bone conduction ceases. This is the basis of Rinne's test, in which the vibrating tuning-fork is first placed upon the mastoid process and allowed to remain until the sound dies away to the patient, when the fork is suddenly transferred to the external auditory meatus of the same ear. If the air-conducting apparatus is normal, the vibration of the fork should again be heard. Again, there may be a moderate impairment of hearing and maintenance of the relative delicacy of the air conduction. Absence of bone conduction is, however, the characteristic symptom of nervous deafness. So, to a less degree, is deafness to short and high-pitched sounds, whence the high-pitched, short sounds of the ticking of a watch is a delicate test of the ability to hear through the bone. Simple senile labyrinthine degeneration may be responsible for inability to hear the ticking through bone in persons sixty years old or more.

Can we distinguish between labyrinthine disease and disease of the nerve before its terminal distribution? Given the absence of bone conduction, if the facial nerve is paralyzed, and there is also disease of the middle ear or of the bone, we may conclude that the nerves (facial and auditory) are affected at the base of the brain or in the internal meatus. If there is disease of the middle ear along with deafness and paralysis of the facial, it is probable that the facial nerve and labyrinth are affected by extension of the disease from the tympanum, but this is not certain. An involvement of the trunk of the nerve at the base is also probable if some other nerve near it, as the sixth, is involved. The fact that the auditory nerve is more sensitive to pressure than the facial has already been mentioned, whence

an agency, such as an inflammatory product, pressing on both nerves may affect the auditory and leave the facial intact.

No distinctive symptoms have been found associated with lesion of the auditory nuclei in the medulla oblongata. Such lesion is very rare, but has been found associated with deafness on the same side, while it has also been found when the hearing has been unaffected. Sudden deafness, associated with other symptoms of a lesion of the pons or medulla oblongata, should excite suspicion of nuclear lesion, especially if paresis of limbs on the opposite side be one of those symptoms.

The auditory fibers between the cortex and the auditory nucleus in the pons, in their passage through the tegmentum, may also be affected and may produce deafness. Such a lesion is a tumor of the corpora quadrigemina.

Lesions of the cortical center are very rare, though they have been sufficiently frequent to confirm the results of experiment on the monkey, which go to show that the first temporo-sphenoidal gyrus represents the center for hearing, since the destruction of this gyrus on the left side in man has been attended by word-deafness. It is possible that the first temporal gyrus in each hemisphere in man must be damaged in order to produce cortical deafness for sound. Hemorrhages, softening, and pressure by fractures or tumors may be causative lesions in this situation.

**Treatment.**—This is for the most part unsatisfactory, at least from the physician's standpoint. Careful otoscopic examination should be made with a view to discovering the existence of disease of the external and middle ear, and the aural surgeon should invariably be consulted in derangements of hearing of more than brief duration, with a view to obtaining certainty of diagnosis between nerve deafness and disease of the middle or external ear. Suspected syphilitic tumors should be treated by iodids. A blister in front of or behind the ear may be useful, especially in acute cases; but deep blistering should be avoided in front lest it cause facial neuritis. Electricity has been employed with partly satisfactory results.

## 2. AUDITORY HYPERESTHESIA.

True hyperesthesia, or hyperacusis, is a condition in which ordinary sounds are heard with more than normal acuteness, and in which sounds inaudible become audible. In dysesthesia, or dysacusis, ordinary sounds, although not intensified, produce discomfort. There is generally present some pre-existing symptom, as a headache, during which sounds usually without effect intensify the headache. Both these conditions occur in functional as well as in organic brain disease. Of the former, hysteria is an instance; of the latter, meningitis.

**Treatment.**—The treatment, outside of the removal of the cause, is by nerve sedatives, as the bromids, preparations of valerian, and asafetida.

## 3. IRRITATION OF THE AUDITORY NERVE—TINNITUS AURIUM.

**Definition.**—The term tinnitus includes almost every conceivable form of auditory subjective sensation, of which the most common is ringing, roaring, or hissing. The tinnitus may include humming, ticking, the sound



of rushing steam, the roaring of machinery and the like, the sound of a bell, and even articulate speech, music, or the sound of voices. It may be persistent or intermittent, with rhythmical intermissions—these commonly corresponding with the beating of the pulse. The sounds may be so slight as to be forgotten when the attention is directed to something else, or they may be heard through everything, causing the sorest distress and misery. In fact, their victims have even been impelled to self-destruction. The clicking symptom, sometimes audible to those standing near, is often very annoying, and may be due to clonic spasm of the muscles connected with the Eustachian tube or levator palati. The so-called premonitory “aura” of epileptic seizures may be a variety of tinnitus.

**Etiology.**—Beyond what is conveyed by the word “irritation,” it is exceedingly difficult to discover the cause of tinnitus. Changes in the labyrinth appear to be the most common, and Gowers tells us that “evidence of nervous deafness, mostly due to changes in the internal ear, is distinct in four-fifths of the cases which come under the physician’s notice. Disease of the middle and external ear, including inflammation and wax accumulation, is also a fruitful cause, while in a few cases the process may be wholly in the auditory centers, in the nucleus of the nerve, or in the cortical area. Blood movement, not usually audible, may become so. Internal aneurysm is a possible cause. Tinnitus is a very frequent symptom in gouty cases, in my experience, especially when associated with the nervous temperament. So it is in anemia and neurasthenia. An epileptic aura is often a tinnitus. A systolic brain murmur is sometimes heard over the ear in children, and even in adults.

**Treatment.**—This is generally most unsatisfactory. The ear should be explored and its surgical diseases treated.

The gouty diathesis must be treated by the administration of the salicylates, colchicum, and purgatives, and by regulation of the diet; anemia and neurasthenia by iron, arsenic, nutritious food, and rest. Large doses of salicylic acid and quinin, it is known, produce ringing in the ears—a fact to be remembered always.

The bromids are sometimes beneficial, and a few drops of tincture of belladonna are sometimes added. Nitro-glycerin has been highly commended. Beginning with doses of  $\frac{1}{100}$  grain (0.00066 gm.), they should be rapidly increased until the physiological effect is produced. My experience with nitro-glycerin is that the physiological effect is often not attained in adults even by doses of  $\frac{1}{100}$  grain (0.00066 gm.).

Counterirritation is undoubtedly useful at times. It should be applied behind the ear, and actual vesication is the most efficient form. The temporary effect is sometimes striking, while permanent results may be produced by repeated blistering.

#### 4. DISTURBANCE OF EQUILIBRIUM ASSOCIATED WITH DEFECT OF HEARING—LABYRINTHINE VERTIGO. MENIERE’S DISEASE.

**Definition.**—The term Ménière’s disease is applied to a vertigo, usually sudden, associated with deafness and noises in the ear.

**Pathology and Etiology.**—In 1861 Ménière described some cases in

which vertigo was produced by a sudden lesion of the labyrinth. Since then the term Ménière's disease has come to be applied to all cases of sudden vertigo associated with labyrinthine disease. Gowers says that "in nine cases out of ten in which there is definite giddiness, not epileptic in nature or obviously due to organic brain disease, it is due to a morbid state of the labyrinth or auditory nerve endings." Thus the vertigo becomes the result of the irritation of the nerve.

In addition to clinical sources for the confirmation of this view there is the fact that experimentally induced lesions in the semicircular canals of animals result in vertiginous movements. In point of fact, aural vertigo results from almost any one of the morbid processes possible to the labyrinth and the nerve endings it contains, but not from disease of the middle ear. The precise nature of the morbid change can only be conjectured. It is twice as frequent in men as in women, and four-fifths of all cases occur between the ages of 30 and 60. Cold, gout, and syphilis have been followed by it, probably through inflammation, and possibly resulting hemorrhage. The slower forms may be due to degenerative processes, like those of tabes or such as are due to age. Vasomotor neuroses of the vessels of the labyrinth have been held responsible.

**Symptoms.**—The vertigo is usually sudden and paroxysmal, though there may be light continuous dizziness between paroxysms, which occur at intervals of from a few days to as many weeks. Occasionally they occur daily. They may be spontaneous or an exciting cause of trifling character may bring them on, such as turning, coughing, or sneezing. Gastric disturbances may excite them—a fact to be remembered in the differential diagnosis from gastric vertigo. There may be brief unconsciousness. The attacks generally pass off in a few minutes, leaving the patient pale, faint and nauseated, often in a cold, clammy sweat. Vertigo may or may not be accompanied by a tendency to fall forward, backward, or to one side, and the victim may have to grasp something to save himself from falling. External objects may appear to circle about him. The seeming movements of person and external objects are usually in the same direction.

The auditory symptoms—deafness and tinnitus—may be in one or both ears, and more marked in one side than in the other. In the latter case the sense of movement may be toward or from the ear most affected; but when the subjective and objective movements coincide in direction, they are more often toward the affected side.

The deafness is nervous and always partial. The tinnitus is usually roaring or throbbing. There may be ocular symptoms; these are secondary, and include nystagmus and diplopia. Pressure on the drum or on the meatus may bring on the nystagmus, and sometimes an apparent jerky movement of objects. Diplopia, nystagmus, and jerky movements may occur together.

**Diagnosis.**—The essential symptoms of Ménière's disease are dizziness, tinnitus, and deafness. Gastric disturbance is not peculiar to it. The deafness must be proved to be nervous and not the result of defective air conduction. True *gastric vertigo* is not associated with deafness, while other symptoms of dyspepsia are present with it.

While the aura of *epilepsy* is sometimes accompanied by giddiness,

there is no impairment of hearing. Moreover, in Ménierè's disease slight vertigo is more or less constant, the tinnitus is persistent, and loss of consciousness, if present, is very brief. It is the *petit mal*, with its brief unconsciousness, with which the confusion may occur.

The vertigo of *cardiac valvular disease*, especially aortic insufficiency, of *arteriocalillary fibrosis*, and of *chronic interstitial nephritis* is unaccompanied by any of the other distinctive signs of Ménierè's disease. *Gelier's vertigo*, characterized by attacks of parietic weakness of the extremities, ptosis, and profound depression, but without loss of consciousness, occurring especially among laborers in the canton of Geneva, should be mentioned as a source of possible error.

**Prognosis.**—This depends upon the durability of the lesion causing the malady. In cases resulting from remedial causes—such as gout and even syphilis—recovery is possible, while palliation is not infrequently attained. Other cases are obstinate and incurable. Relief, however, comes to the dizziness when the deafness becomes total.

**Treatment.**—When traceable to gout and syphilis, the remedies appropriate to these diseases should be prescribed. The salicylates and iodids are most frequently useful, but the lithium salts and colchicum are to be remembered. The salicylates should be given in moderate doses rather than large ones, which produce the ringing in the ears. In the absence of knowledge of a definite cause the bromids are the remedies to be most relied upon. From 20 to 30 grains (1.3 to 2 gm.) should be given at a dose, and Gowers recommends the addition of a few minims of the tincture of belladonna. Nitro-glycerin has been recommended. Suprarenal extract may be beneficial in some cases. Where the tinnitus is intense and not amenable to drugs, intracranial division of the auditory nerve may be advisable. The general health should be looked after.

Counterirritation by blistering behind the ear is sometimes promptly followed by favorable results.

## LESIONS OF THE NINTH OR GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE.

**Anatomical.**—This triply mixed nerve supplies sensibility to the soft palate, the tonsils, the upper part of the pharynx, the Eustachian tube, and the tympanic cavity; motor impulses to the stylopharyngeus and to the middle constrictor of the pharynx; and the sense of taste to the posterior third of the tongue and to the palate.

The study of the precise pathology of this nerve is rendered difficult by its numerous communications with other nerves, notably with the fifth, the facial, and the pneumogastric, and by the fact that it is rarely involved alone. Experimental inquiry with it also is difficult.

The nerve may be invaded by meningitis, tumors, or degenerations.

**Symptoms.**—Symptoms of such lesion would be *difficult deglutition* and *perversion of the sense of taste—parageusia—or complete gustatory anesthesia.*

Modifications of the sense of taste are tested by means of sapid substances in solution, applied to the anterior and posterior parts of the tongue by a glass rod or a brush, suitable substances being used for each taste.

Thus, for bitter a solution of quinin may be used; for sweet, a solution of sugar; dilute acetic acid or vinegar for acid, and common salt for the saline taste.

Ageusia may result not only from lesions of the glossopharyngeal nerve, but also from those of the gustatory or lingual branch of the fifth, and possibly of the fifth itself within the cranial cavity; from affections of the chorda tympani in disease of the middle ear, of the facial between the entrance of the chorda tympani and the geniculate ganglion, and in lesions of the peripheral organs of the nerves of taste. Disturbance of taste may possibly result from cerebral lesions, but the cortical area for taste is not known. It is probably in the region of the uncinate gyrus.

Perversion of the sense of taste is known as "parageusia." It is a rare phenomenon, found in patients with facial palsy, in the hysterical, and in the insane, in whom, also, subjective sensations of taste may be present. The latter also occurs as an aura in epilepsy. Hyperesthesia of taste is even more rare, and is purely a hysterical symptom.

#### LESIONS OF THE PNEUMOGASTRIC OR VAGUS NERVE— THE TENTH PAIR.

**Anatomical.**—This nerve has by far the widest distribution of any of the cranial set, supplying the pharynx, larynx, lungs, heart, esophagus, and stomach, and in part also the intestines and spleen. The symptoms of its involvement are, therefore, numerous and varied.

It is a *mixed nerve* of motion and sensation, some of its most important motor functions being derived from the spinal accessory nerve. It is the chief sensory nerve for the respiratory center in the medulla oblongata, but contains, also, accelerating and inhibitory fibers from this center. The former office preponderates, so that section of the nerve renders respirations less frequent, though deeper, while stimulation of the divided central end accelerates them, and acceleration may proceed to tetanic arrest. The inhibitory fibers are contained chiefly in the superior laryngeal nerve, stimulation of which arrests breathing with the muscles in a state of relaxation.

It is also the inhibitory nerve of the heart, slight stimulation increasing the length of diastole, while stronger stimulation arrests its action. On dividing the nerve cardiac contractions become more frequent. It is also inhibitory for the vasomotor center, and its stimulation produces relaxation of the arteries throughout the body. It is the motor and sensory nerve for the esophagus, sensory nerve for the stomach, and partly the motor nerve for the stomach and intestines.

#### LESIONS INVOLVING THE NUCLEUS AND TRUNK OF THE PNEUMOGASTRIC AND BRANCHES.

The *nucleus* in the medulla oblongata may be involved in softening, hemorrhage, or slow degeneration, but adjacent nuclei are also affected at the same time, whence resulting effects are associated and are especially seen in bulbar palsy.

The *trunk* of the nerve near its origin may be compressed by thickened meningitis, tumors, or aneurysm of the vertebral artery. In its course it has been implicated in incised wounds, and tied in ligation of the carotid. Neuritis and neuromata are possible. The results of such lesion are commonly paralytic, rarely irritative. The former, if total, are diminished breathing-rate, "suffocation," frequent pulse-rate, and death. According to Traumann and others unilateral division of the vagus in experiments on animals caused few pulmonary symptoms. One vagus seems to be sufficient for the function of both lungs. The results of partial paralysis are better considered in connection with lesions of the separate branches of the pneumogastric, some of which are also invaded separately.

**LESIONS OF THE PHARYNGEAL BRANCHES.**—These branches of the pneumogastric, together with branches of the glossopharyngeal, form the pharyngeal plexus, from which the muscles and mucous membrane of the pharynx are innervated.

**Etiology.**—Nuclear disease is a most common cause of paralysis of the pharynx. It shares with disease involving adjacent nuclei, constituting bulbar palsy, already considered; but it may also be caused by meningitis or bone disease at the base of the skull, or it may form part of the lesion of diphtheritic paralysis.

**Symptoms.**—The results are mainly paralytic, occasionally irritative, producing spasm. The symptoms of *paralysis* are difficulty in swallowing, food lodging in instead of descending into the esophagus. A most frequent consequence is the entrance of food into the larynx, causing spasm and even choking. Pulpy food is better swallowed than liquids, the latter passing easily into the posterior nares when there is paralysis of the soft palate, and even when the paralysis is limited to the superior constrictor of the pharynx owing to contraction of the middle constrictor. When the nerves on one side only are involved, the difficulty is much diminished. Should there be a doubt in diagnosis between paralysis of the pharynx and obstruction or morbid growth, the passage of a bougie will clear it up.

*Spasm* of the pharynx is always functional in origin, chiefly hysterical. The so-called "globus hystericus," or sensation as of a ball in the throat which has to be swallowed but immediately arises again, is one of its manifestations; so is eminently the spasm in hydrophobia. Extreme degrees are those in which persons cannot swallow their food in the presence of others.

**LESIONS OF THE LARYNGEAL BRANCHES.**—The laryngeal branches are two, the superior and inferior or recurrent laryngeal. The former supplies the mucous membrane above the vocal cords, the cricothyroid, and the depressors of the epiglottis. The inferior or recurrent laryngeal on the left side winds around the arch of the aorta; on the right, around the subclavian. The nerves then pass up to the larynx between the trachea and the esophagus, supplying all the laryngeal muscles except the cricothyroid and epiglottic, and the mucous membrane below the cords; also that of the trachea. It has been supposed that the motor fibers in these nerves come from the spinal accessory nerve, but this is now doubted. The

sensory filaments of the laryngeal branches pass to the medulla oblongata in the roots of the pneumogastric.

In order to appreciate the phenomena of paralysis of the larynx it should be remembered that the glottis is opened or closed only by the movement of the posterior extremity of the cords, the anterior remaining fixed, and that this movement is effected chiefly by the arytenoid cartilages attached to the cricoid cartilage by an articulation which permits free movement. Each arytenoid is shaped like an irregular pyramid prolonged at the base into two processes—an anterior or vocal, from which the cord passes to the thyroid cartilage, and an external or muscular, to which the muscles are attached. When the latter, which is at right angles to the vocal process, is moved back, this process moves outward from its fellow, the cord is abducted, and the glottis opened. If the muscular process is moved forward, the vocal process is moved inward toward its fellow, the cord adducted, and the glottis closed. These movements are further aided by movements of the arytenoids away from or toward each other.

**Symptoms.**—These are phonic and respiratory, together with altered position of the cords, as recognized by the laryngeal mirror. The voice may be changed or lost, the entrance of air in breathing impeded, while the closure of the glottis, necessary to coughing, is usually imperfect. The voice and respiratory functions of the larynx are regulated by the same muscles and nerves, but by centers that differ in anatomical connection, if not in position.

In breathing the cords are abducted or separated during inspiration, the extent being proportionate to the force of inspiration. During expiration they are a little nearer than in inspiration. In phonation they are made tense and brought together, the degree of adduction and tension varying with the note produced. After death the vocal cords assume a position of slight abduction from the middle line, a little nearer than during ordinary breathing, known as the cadaveric position. The position is one of partial relaxation, complete relaxation being never fully attained during life.

The symptoms of deranged function of the laryngeal nerves admit of classification into those of *paralysis* and *spasm*.

1. *Total Paralysis of Both Cords or of One.*—In what is known as *complete paralysis* of the laryngeal muscles—which does not, however, usually include the cricothyroid—the vocal cords assume the cadaveric position previously mentioned, from which they cannot be moved. Hence vocal sounds cannot be produced. In deep inspiration the current of air may bring them a little closer, and there may be slight stridor, and instead of the natural explosive cough, there is only a sudden rush of air through the glottis. If *one cord is paralyzed*, it alone is motionless in the cadaveric position. Phonation may still be possible, because the unaffected cord may be overadducted beyond the middle line, but the voice is low-pitched and often hoarse. During inspiration the abduction of the healthy cord prevents stridor, while an explosive cough is impossible because the glottis is not closed with sufficient firmness to produce it, unless the paralysis is very slight.

The *causes* of complete paralysis are central disease and disease of the trunk of the vagus or of the recurrent laryngeal.

2. *Bilateral Abductor Paralysis*.—In abductor paralysis involving the posterior crico-arytenoids the cords are near together—in the position of phonation—and cannot be abducted even as far as the cadaveric position. They can, however, be brought together in phonation and in coughing, at the cessation of which they recede a little, but the normal wide abduction of inspiration does not take place. This slight recession is due to the elasticity of the attachment of the cords. The abductors, unopposed, undergo secondary contracture, so that if the paralysis is of long duration, the chink of the glottis becomes permanently narrower. The tensors are still active, as well as the abductors, hence the voice is little affected. The chief difficulty is in breathing, since the normal recession of the cords essential to inspiration does not take place, while they are even brought closer together by the pressure of the entering air. Hence inspiration is accomplished with stridor, and the obstruction to the entrance of air brings into play the extraordinary muscles of respiration, the effect of which is to prolong the inspiratory act. Expiration is unimpeded, the current of outward air tending to open the cords. The absence of voice involvement and of cough may cause the obstruction to be referred to the trachea, but the absence of the expiratory stridor excludes this, while the movement of the larynx up and down during breathing is greater than in tracheal stenosis. The added urgent dyspnea, the loud inspiratory stridor, livid features, and cold extremities furnish an unmistakable picture; so that a laryngoscopic examination is therefore not necessary to complete the diagnosis. In bilateral palsy there is even great danger, as a slight catarrhal swelling may close the larynx and tracheotomy may be necessary to save life.

The *causes* of abductor paralysis are central disease and local influence such as laryngeal catarrh and degeneration of the posterior cricothyroids, possibly of toxic origin. Disease of the recurrent laryngeal has produced such paralysis, although this nerve supplies fibers to the adductors as well as abductors. On the other hand, the abductors have been found degenerated when the other muscles were found normal. Paralysis of both cords is generally due to disease of both nerves, and may be produced by pressure on both vagi and both recurrent laryngeal nerves. Central causes are tabes dorsalis and bulbar palsy. Abductor paralysis is also a rare symptom in hysteria, when it is bilateral, with characteristic symptoms, and has caused death.

3. *Unilateral Abductor Paralysis*.—In this the affected cord is near the middle line, and it does not move in inspiration. There are hoarseness and roughness of voice and sometimes dyspnea, but the mobility of the other cord permits the function of the larynx to be carried on with tolerable comfort. If the adductors become involved, as is sometimes the case, phonation is still more impaired.

The most frequent cause is *aneurysm*, and the *left cord* is most frequently involved—though other tumors may cause it—and on the right side the nerve may be involved in a thickened pleura.

4. *Adductor Paralysis (Phonic Paralysis; Hysterical Paralysis)*.—In adductor paralysis due to involvement of the lateral crico-arytenoid and the arytenoid muscles the cords are apart and cannot be approximated. In true adductor paralysis there is still the power of separating the cords

on deep inspiration, but no power to bring the cords nearer than in the cadaveric position.

The *causes* of adductor paralysis are rarely organic diseases of the nerves or centers. It is the condition causing the oft-quoted *hysterical aphonia*, and may be brought on by overuse of voice and catarrhal laryngitis. The patient with hysterical aphonia can sometimes sing, though she can only talk in a whisper. It is most common as a partial paralysis. While the cords cannot be approximated for phonation, they can be in coughing. Hence it was called by Türk "phonic paralysis." Another partial adductor paralysis is due to the loss of power in the arytenoid muscle, resulting in defective closure of the posterior part of the glottis and hoarseness or loss of voice.

5. *Tensor Paralysis*.—Little is known of this except that palsy of the internal fibers of the thyro-arytenoideus causes the edge of the cord to be concave.

**Diagnosis.**—The laryngoscope is necessary to a proper diagnosis of laryngeal palsies, but symptoms are also useful. The inability to produce explosive cough is of great value in pointing to palsy of organic origin, if there is no local lesion to prevent it.

(a) Absence of cough with entire loss of voice points to bilateral palsy of organic origin.

(b) No cough, voice low-pitched and hoarse, paralysis of one cord.

(c) Loud inspiratory stridor without loss of voice, total abductor paralysis.

(d) Little change of voice or cough, unilateral abductor paralysis.

(e) Perfect cough, no voice, no stridor, unimportant adductor palsy.

The following table from Gowers contains in separate columns the symptoms, laryngoscopic picture, and lesions:

SYMPTOMS.	SIGNS.	LESION.
(a) No voice; no cough; stridor only on deep inspiration.	Both cords moderately abducted and motionless.	Total bilateral palsy.
(b) Voice low-pitched and hoarse; no cough; stridor absent or slight on breathing.	One cord moderately abducted and motionless, the other moving freely and even beyond the middle line in phonation.	Total unilateral palsy.
(c) Voice little changed; cough normal; inspiration difficult and long, with loud stridor.	Both cords near together and during inspiration not separated, but even drawn nearer together.	Total abductor palsy.
(d) Symptoms inconclusive; little affection of the voice or cough.	One cord near the middle line, not moving during inspiration; the other normal.	Unilateral abductor palsy.
(e) No voice; perfect cough; no stridor or dyspnea.	Cord normal in position and moving normally in respiration, but not brought together on an attempt at phonation.	Adductor palsy.

*Spasm of the Larynx*.—In spasm of the larynx the adductors are alone concerned. The closers of the glottis are stronger than the openers, while reflex mechanism is connected chiefly with those muscles because of the importance in guarding against the entrance of foreign bodies into the larynx. Spasm is quite common in children, especially in the rickety, and is not rare in adults under the name of laryngismus stridulus. It is generally reflex, although the reflex cause is not always discoverable. The patient com-



monly wakes up at night in an attack of intense dyspnea; but it may occur at any time. The symptoms are like those of ordinary croup.

The paroxysm differs from that of abductor paralysis in that stridor accompanies expiration as well as inspiration. The attacks occur in the so-called laryngeal crises of *tabes dorsalis*, in tetany, in the paroxysms of hydrophobia, sometimes in alternation with attacks of migraine, and in hysteria.

Spasm is also sometimes excited by attempts to speak, when aphonia results. The condition is the reverse of phonic paralysis, in which the cords cannot be brought together in speaking, while in spastic aphonia they come together too forcibly.

Disturbances of the sensory innervation of the larynx are chiefly confined to the irritation which causes cough and spasm.

**LESIONS OF CARDIAC BRANCHES.**—The cardiac plexus is made up of fibers derived in part from the pneumogastric and in part from the sympathetic. The vagus fibers are motor, sensory, and probably trophic.

The *motor fibers* include those which inhibit, control, and regulate the cardiac action. Their *irritation* inhibits the heart's action and causes slowness of the pulse, or bradycardia. In *complete paralysis* of the vagi the inhibitory action is abolished and the accelerator influence is unhampered, producing rapid pulse, or tachycardia. Yet it sometimes happens that complete paralysis of the vagus is followed by no cardiac symptoms.

The causes of these effects are, unfortunately, not always discoverable. Pressure of a tumor, accidental ligation of one vagus, irritation of its nuclei, anginal attacks, in one instance associated with a small tumor of the vagus, have all been followed by bradycardia. Toxic blood states are also held responsible for it. Some persons are able to control the action of their own hearts, notably a Colonel Townsend, who could control the action of his heart at will. The heart may sometimes be slowed by pressure against the pneumogastric in the neck.

The opposite condition, tachycardia, has been produced by diphtheritic neuritis, tumors of the vagus, or accidental removal of the vagus.

*Sensory* phenomena in connection with parts supplied by the cardiac branches of the pneumogastric are unusual, but any uncomfortable sensations arising from palpitation or irregularity are conveyed by branches of the pneumogastric.

*Trophic* influence in the pneumogastric is inferred from the fact that the heart has been found in a state of fatty degeneration after injury to the nerve.

**LESIONS OF GASTRIC AND ESOPHAGEAL BRANCHES.**—Among phenomena ascribed to effect on these branches are spasm of the esophagus and difficulty in swallowing. The vagus is also the sensory nerve of the stomach, and pain in this organ is felt through this nerve. The severe gastric crises which occur in *tabes dorsalis* are due to central irritation of the vagus nuclei. The senses of hunger and thirst are also believed to be conveyed through it, and have been lost in disease involving the root, but appetite is not always lost after section of the nerve, while in some cases of disease of the nerve there has been excessive appetite. On the other hand, loss of appetite is

due to so many causes that it cannot be ascribed to pneumogastric lesion without careful investigation.

The pneumogastric is also the motor nerve of the stomach, though motion of the organ is not entirely arrested after its section. Vomiting is probably produced through its agency, and is excited by central and reflex irritation. Meningitis, which so frequently excites vomiting, does so through it; the pressure of a tumor on the nerve has had a similar effect, also direct pressure on an exposed nerve.

**LESIONS OF PULMONARY BRANCHES.**—While the vagus sends branches to the lungs, little is known of their office. They are supposed to go to the bronchial muscles, and it is held that asthma is a neurosis of these fibers. Irritation of the afferent pulmonary fibers certainly produces spasm. Stimulation of the respiratory center also causes energetic respiratory movements, while rapid congestion and even hemorrhage have been noticed after section, though these effects may possibly be of reflex origin excited through the sympathetic, since the vasomotor fibers in the vessels of the lungs are derived from the sympathetic. After section of the vagus animals die of broncho-pneumonia. This has not been considered the result of trophic influence, but because of the entrance of foreign particles into the bronchi in consequence of paralysis of the larynx and esophagus; this was shown by Traube as far back as 1871, and confirmed by Frey by numerous experiments in 1877. Such broncho-pneumonia has also been ascribed to paralysis of the bronchial musculature and of the vaso-constrictor fibers which causes neuroparalytic hyperemia of the pulmonary tissue. Spiller's case, recently reported,<sup>1</sup> has some bearing on the subject. This patient suffered an injury of the left glossopharyngeus and vagus by a fracture of the base of the skull. He died 46 days after the accident and at necropsy numerous areas of bronchopneumonia were found. It seemed improbable that the pulmonary condition was caused by the entrance of foreign bodies into the lungs in this case, because the patient was unable to swallow. Saliva, however, doubtless passed into the trachea and carried with it micro-organisms. The patient was tested with a glass of water and his choking was so alarming that the attempt was not repeated. He was nourished by rectal enemas and the stomach tube was passed only on the day before his death. The choking was probably the result of impaired function of the epiglottis. Spiller thinks it reasonable to attribute the pulmonary condition to the paralysis of the vagus nerve, although the pulmonary lesions were not recognized until the necropsy was made.

The phenomena of hiccough may be the result of disease of this nerve, as they are also the result of disease of the respiratory center.

**Prognosis in Pneumogastric Lesions.**—This varies greatly. In central and nuclear disease it is unfavorable; it is unfavorable also when it is the result of pressure from intrathoracic tumors, especially aneurysm. In hysterical and purely local affections the prognosis is more favorable.

**Treatment.**—This is, of course, that of the casual lesion, if it can be discovered. Syphilis is the more curable of the central causes. Other causes of central disease are not removable.

<sup>1</sup>Univ. of Penn. Med. Bull," March, 1903.

Of diseases of the trunk, neuritis of the vagus is as amenable to treatment as the polyneuritis of which it is a part. The laryngeal symptoms due to involvement of the recurrent laryngeal are as remediable as the causes which produce them. If they are caused by aneurysm of the aorta or cancer, treatment is useless; if caused by siphilitic and scrofulous growths, the prognosis is more hopeful.

In the paralyses of more purely local origin, especially the hysterical, phonic, and diphtheritic forms, electricity offers the most promising results. The method of its employment will be found detailed under diseases of the larynx. Either form of electricity may be used. Strychnin is a useful remedy, used locally as mentioned. The method preferred is by hypodermic injection, the nitrate being employed in doses of from 1/60 to 1/30 grain (0.0011 to 0.0022 gm.) daily.

In addition to strychnin, other tonics should be used to restore the general health of the patient. Laryngeal gymnastics have been recommended and used with some success. They consist in pressing firmly with the thumb and forefinger on each side of the upper and hinder part of the thyroid cartilage, the patient being requested to make a simple sound during the compression.

The treatment of laryngeal spasm demands also the removal of the cause if possible, in addition to which sedatives, local and general, especially the bromids and cocain, may be used. Chloral, chloroform, and nitrite of amyl by inhalation may be necessary to break up the spasm.

## LESIONS OF THE ELEVENTH PAIR OR SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE.

**Anatomical.**—This nerve, purely motor in its function, has two portions—an internal, which passes to the pneumogastric and innervates the laryngeal muscles, and an external or spinal portion. The former has been considered. It should be regarded as probably a part of the vagus, and the eleventh nerve is called by some the vago-accessory nerve. The latter, *i. e.*, the spinal portion, is essentially a set of motor fibers from the cervical spinal cord, which ascends into the cranial cavity and passes out again with one of the cranial nerves to be distributed to the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles, whose innervation they share with the spinal nerves. The purpose of the trapezius is chiefly to raise the shoulder; that of the sternocleidomastoid is to assist in turning the head to the opposite side, the chin being at the same time raised. This is accomplished by drawing the occiput toward the side of the muscle acting.

**Lesions.**—The nuclear origin of the nerve may be involved and contribute to the phenomena of bulbar palsy, or it may share in progressive central degeneration, causing wasting in the muscles supplied, which may be a part of a more general muscular atrophy. The trunks of the nerve or both nerves may be compressed in the foramen magnum by meningitis or tumor. Outside the skull there may be wounds, tumors, caries of the vertebræ, and resulting abscesses, and sometimes abscesses springing from

the cervical glands. Rarely the spinal accessory may be invaded by rheumatic neuritis.

The resulting conditions are *paralysis* and *spasm*. Those of the internal or accessory portion have been described under lesions of the pneumogastric. It remains to consider only those of the external branch.

**Symptoms of Paralysis of the External Branch of the Spinal Accessory Nerve.**—The seats of the paralysis are the sternomastoid and trapezius muscles. When one sternomastoid is involved, the head may still be moved to the opposite side, and there is no wry-neck, or torticollis, though in some cases the head is held obliquely. The trapezius is not so much involved because it is well supplied with cervical and thoracic nerves, but a portion which passes from the acromion to the occipital bone is motionless. The middle portion of the muscle is also weakened, the shoulder droops downward and forward, and the inferior angle of the scapula is rotated inward by the action of the rhomboids and the levator anguli scapulæ. Elevation of the arm is also partial, because the trapezius does not fix the scapula at a point whence the deltoid can work. The paralysis is well seen when the patient takes a deep breath or tries to shrug his shoulders. Wasting almost always accompanies the loss of power, and there is usually reaction of degeneration.

In bilateral paralysis the power of holding the head in the upright position is impaired. If both sternocleidomastoids are affected, the head tends to fall backward; if both trapezii, it falls forward so that the chin rests on the sternum. The latter is the characteristic position of the head in progressive spinal muscular atrophy, and in children who have chronic meningitis about the foramen magnum, pressing on both nerve trunks, and in cervical meningitis the result of caries. A peculiar drooping of the head is sometimes seen during the first year of life in children, which Gowers says may be due to injury to the spinal accessory nerves in difficult labor. In recent cases the nerves may give characteristic reaction of degeneration. In central disease the reaction varies, as it does in progressive spinal muscular atrophy.

**Treatment.**—This must have for its object, first, the removal of the cause, or the morbid process which produces it. After this the weak muscles are to be treated by massage and electricity. Faradization is, perhaps, most efficient for this purpose, and either form of current will answer.

**Symptoms of Accessory Spasm (Non-rheumatic Torticollis; Wry-neck).**—Though the muscles supplied by the spinal accessory are not the sole ones responsible for these conditions, they are the ones chiefly concerned. The terms are applied to unnatural positions of the head resulting from contraction of these muscles. There are two principal varieties:

1. Fixed wry-neck, or congenital torticollis.
2. Spasmodic wry-neck.

These two may be regarded as *true* torticollis, and are to be distinguished from two somewhat similar states which may be called *false* torticollis. The first of these is the ordinary rheumatic "stiff neck," which is really a rheumatic condition due to exposure to cold, and characterized by pain and tenderness, for the relief of which the position is assumed, and

should not be called wry-neck. The second is a twist-neck, not due to muscles, but to some other cause, most frequently disease of the cervical vertebrae. This deviation puts the sternocleidomastoid muscle on the stretch, and thus may give rise to the impression that it is responsible.

1. CONGENITAL TORTICOLLIS, OR FIXED WRY-NECK.—This depends on the shortening of some muscle, commonly the sternocleidomastoid, which is also often atrophied, hard, and firm. It is met most frequently in children, and is thought to be due, in some cases at least, to injury of the muscle produced by traction during birth. In others it is ascribed to developmental shortening of the muscle, due to the inclined position of the child's head in the pelvis. It is not always noticed immediately after birth because of the natural shortness of the child's neck. A similar condition may result from injury to the muscle during life, producing inflammation and cicatricial contraction. It affects the right side almost exclusively. It is more or less constantly associated with facial asymmetry, first noticed by George Wilks and further studied by Golding Bird, who suggested that the two conditions are parts of one affection which has a central origin. In fixed wry-neck the head is turned toward the side opposite to that of the contracted muscle, which stands out conspicuously, and cannot be turned toward the latter. While the sternocleidomastoid is the muscle almost invariably responsible in these cases, the trapezius is occasionally the seat of similar atrophy.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is by section of the contracted muscle. Some appliance may be necessary for a time to keep the head in proper position, especially when secondary changes in the articulations have taken place. In simple rheumatic wry-neck I have used an appliance consisting of webbing or "saddle girth" about three inches wide, stretched from side to side of the bed and raised a few inches above the mattress—the distance to be regulated by circumstances—on which the patient lay at night, instead of on a pillow on the side to which the head is drawn. This expedient may be used after operation. The facial asymmetry is likely to remain after the wry-neck is cured, and may even become more conspicuous.

2. SPASMODIC WRY-NECK.—This is a condition analogous to the facial spasm, occurring as a symptom of disease of the facial nerve. There are two forms, the tonic and the clonic, which may alternate in the same case or, as is most usual, occur separately and remain so.

**Etiology.**—It is for the most part an affection of adults, and, according to Gowers, is more common in females—that is, in 22 out of 32 cases. While this must be true of England, the opposite seems to be the case in this country, since of eight or ten cases observed by Osler in Philadelphia and Montreal, all were men. It is more common in middle life, two-thirds of all cases occurring between the ages of 30 and 50. In women under 30 it is likely to be of a hysterical origin; rarely it is ascribable to the same cause in boys. It is prone to occur in neurotic families. Very rarely it occurs in the first year of infantile life, ceasing after a few months. Cold has been assigned as a cause; also traumatism.

In the *tonic* form, when the sternocleidomastoid is responsible, the head

is continually turned to the opposite side, the chin is raised, and the occiput is drawn down toward the affected side—the *caput obstipum spasticum*. When the trapezius is involved, the head is still more depressed toward the same side. In combined and bilateral spasm of these muscles the head is drawn backward, producing the *retrocollic spasm*. In prolonged cases the muscles involved are prominent and rigid, and there may be spinal curvature with the convexity toward the sound side.

In the *clonic* form there are paroxysmal twitchings of the head, which may be very severe and correspondingly distressing. When there is predominating unilateral spasm of the sternocleidomastoid, the head is turned to the opposite side and the chin is raised with every contraction of the muscle. In unilateral spasm of the trapezius the head is drawn more backward with each contraction and toward the shoulder of the affected side. In bilateral and combined spasm there is clonic retrocollic spasm, with shaking and nodding movements—the so-called “salaam convulsions” sometimes seen in children. They may be produced also by contractions of the other muscles of the neck. Tonic and clonic spasm of the splenius may occur either alone or in combination with that of the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid. In splenius spasm the head is also drawn backward and toward the affected side, and there will be noticed muscular swelling to the outside of the cervical portion of the trapezius. The splenius is, according to Gowers, associated with the sternomastoid about half as often as the trapezius. The retrocollic spasm is commonly associated with a wrinkling of the forehead in both the tonic and clonic form.

In the clonic form the contractions may come on suddenly or be preceded by stiffness and irregular pain. The movements occur every few minutes, and the head cannot be kept still, although the movements cease during sleep. They are increased by emotion, excitement, or fatigue. Sometimes there is pain, but at other times there is merely a sense of fatigue. The muscles in time may become hypertrophied, but never waste.

**Pathology.**—This is very obscure. Reasoning, rather than demonstration, leads to the conclusion that the muscular contractions probably depend on the overaction of nerve-cells, and not on irritation of nerve-fibers; the movement usually involves the deep rotators on one side of the neck and the sternocleidomastoid muscle on the opposite side. It is therefore a movement of associated muscles, and this suggests a cortical origin, at least in many cases.

**Diagnosis.**—The distinction lies between true and false torticollis, in which there is deviation of the head from some other cause than muscular contraction, and it is only the form of true torticollis due to shortening of one sternocleidomastoid which is likely to be confounded with the false. In the spurious form the sternomastoid is tense on the side toward which the face is turned, and in the true form the tension is on the side opposite. In retrocollic spasm the invariable association of contraction of the frontalis muscles, producing the peculiar wrinkling of the forehead, distinguishes it from simple tremor. The hysterical form occurs in women under 30, and this fact is presumptive evidence of its presence, while hysterical spasm is also apt to spread from the neck to the trunk; in the true form of torticollis it is limited to the neck.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is always grave, and the more severe and extensive the spasm, the more unfavorable. Relief is more possible in the first half of life than in the second. Cases do, however, occasionally get well, and temporary relief is more frequent.

**Treatment.**—If the cause can be found which is responsible, it ought to be removed. If discovered in an acute stage, absolute rest in bed and fomentations or dry heat are indicated. Electricity has, perhaps, more reputation than any other remedy. The faradic brush may be applied over the skin of the affected muscles and to the swelling. Gradually increasing faradic currents may be used. If the galvanic current is used, a weak one is preferred, and the anode, or positive pole, is placed below the occiput or highest accessible part of the nerve, and the negative on each contracting muscle, for 10 minutes at a time.

Sedatives and narcotics have also some reputation. Among these the bromids and cannabis indica are included in large doses. Five-minim (0.3 c.c.) doses of the fluid extract of cannabis indica may be given, rapidly increased. The drug is proverbially unreliable. The hypodermic use of morphin is of undoubted value in relaxing the spasm, but the dangers of its protracted use almost preclude it. It would be unfair to the drug, however, to omit the statement of Gowers that, "continued for several months in doses increased gradually to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  or 1 gram a day, it has entirely removed the spasm." Naturally, such persons are weaned from the drug with difficulty. The hypodermic use of atropin in the affected muscles has also been recommended.

Mechanical supports for fixing the head are recommended, but are not well borne. Surgical measures have been employed—such as section, excision, stretching of the nerve, and section of the muscle—with, at best, but temporary results. Mention should be made, however, of the deep-seated operation of W. W. Keen and Noble Smith, which consists in dividing the spinal accessory nerve and the posterior branches of two or three cervical nerves which also supply the splenius and complexus. This reduces the spasms that reside in these muscles to a slight degree, while the otherwise paralyzing effect of the division of branches of the spinal nerves is comparatively unimportant.

## LESIONS OF THE TWELFTH PAIR OR HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE.

**Anatomical.**—This is the motor nerve of the tongue, and supplies also the depressors of the hyoid bone and the hyoglossus and geniohyoid of the elevators. It arises from the medulla oblongata beside the olivary body. Its cortical center is probably the lower part of the ascending frontal gyrus. It is subject to paralysis and spasm.

**Etiology.**—1. *Cortical disease* is frequently responsible for paralysis of the tongue on the opposite side, as is seen in the numerous cases of hemiplegia associated with this condition. The same accident occurs when the fibers between the cortex and the nucleus in the medulla oblongata are invaded, and probably this is the most frequent cause of paralysis of the

tongue. Apoplexies and other causes of compression, softening, thrombosis, and embolism, are agencies operating to this end.

2. *Nuclear disease* is another cause. It is usually degeneration, rarely sudden softening: the former as a part of bulbar palsy and tabes dorsalis, and the latter from vascular obstruction. The effect is almost always bilateral, the nuclei being so close together that it is scarcely possible to involve one only, although such isolated result has occurred in sudden cases and, rarely, in slow ones, as in tabes dorsalis and general paralysis.

3. *Infranuclear disease* may operate at various sites—

(a) Within the medulla oblongata the root fibers may be invaded by a tumor or by softening.

(b) Outside the medulla oblongata the fibers may be damaged by the products of meningitis, simple or syphilitic, and by new formations. The nerve may be compressed in its foramen by outgrowth of bone. Outside the skull the nerve is compressed by tumors, by inflammatory products, or injured by disease communicated from caries of the upper cervical vertebræ and by penetrating wounds. Hence the spinal accessory and vagus nerves are often implicated coincidently and there is paralysis of the palate, occasionally of the vocal cords, with or without wasting of the trapezius and sternomastoid. The hypoglossal may be the seat of neuritis.

**Symptoms.**—1. *Of Hypoglossal Paralysis.*—These are motor only. When there is supranuclear disease in addition to the palsy of the tongue, there is hemiplegia, but no wasting of the tongue, which is protruded toward the affected side, nor change in electrical reaction. In nuclear disease the lesion is apt to be bilateral palsy. The tongue lies motionless in the floor of the mouth, and speech and deglutition are seriously impaired. Mastication is interfered with mainly because the tongue cannot regulate the position of the food, the proper muscles of mastication being intact. There are atrophy and reaction of degeneration. The mucous membrane is thrown into folds. The condition is likely to be a part of a bulbar palsy. In infranuclear disease only one nerve is affected, there is wasting with reaction of degeneration and fibrillary twitching. Speech is not much impaired, nor is swallowing.

2. *Of Spasm.*—Spasm of the tongue as an isolated event is very rare. It may be unilateral or bilateral. It commonly occurs as a part of some other convulsive affection, as epilepsy or chorea, or spasm of the facial muscles. It may also occur in hysteria. In the biting of the tongue in epilepsy the organ is thrust between the teeth by spasmodic contraction of the genioglossus and caught by the jaws through a spasm of the masseters. Spasm of the tongue occurs in some forms of stuttering, the spasm often preceding the explosive utterance of words. In other cases there are various protrusions and deviations of the tongue, produced in some instances by irritation of the fifth nerve, variously induced, as by a carious tooth. The spasm may be clonic, the tongue being thrust in and out many times in a minute, at others more slowly. It may be associated with facial spasm. It may occur during sleep.

**Diagnosis.**—This is generally easy. If there are hemiplegia and palsy, but no wasting of the muscles of the tongue, no reaction of degeneration, the lesion is supranuclear. If there is paralysis of the tongue on the one



side and of the limbs on the opposite, there is probably a unilateral lesion in the medulla oblongata, involving the nucleus or the fibers arising from it. When the disease is on the surface of the medulla oblongata, the paralysis is commonly unilateral, and is associated with paralysis of the corresponding half of the palate and vocal cord, because of the involvement of the spinal accessory nerve. Spiller believes it is because of involvement of the vagus.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is usually unfavorable because the lesion is incurable.

**Treatment.**—The treatment embraces that of the disease producing it. The lingual paralysis may be treated with electricity—with an electrode in the shape of a tongue depressor.

The treatment of spasm has been by sedatives, including bromids, by iodid, and by electricity.

## DISEASES OF THE SPINAL NERVES AND BRANCHES.

### CERVICAL PLEXUS.

**AFFECTIONS OF THE PHRENIC NERVE.**—Paralysis of this nerve may be the result of a lesion in the anterior horn of the gray matter of the cord, at the level of the third and fourth cervical nerves; of a lesion to these nerve-roots in disease of the membranes of the cord or of the vertebræ; or by compression by aneurysms or other tumors. Exposure to cold, producing neuritis, may cause it, and it may be a part of a diphtheritic palsy.

**Symptoms.**—The result is *paralysis of the diaphragm*, which is complete if both nerves are involved, as in the case in disease of the cord or its membranes; partial when a tumor or other cause affects one nerve. Respiration is still carried on by the intercostals, and when the victim is quiet, there is little or no embarrassment, but examination shows the abdomen to be retracted in inspiration and protruded in expiration. In other cases, in consequence of increased movement of the thorax, the upper abdominal walls are drawn outward with inspiration—a movement not to be mistaken for movement of the diaphragm. On exertion, however, there is *dyspnea*, which is also observed if the paralysis is sudden. The effect of paralysis of a single phrenic, involving one-half of the diaphragm, is scarcely noticeable.

A further effect is to aggravate any lung affection, as bronchitis or pneumonia. There is difficulty in coughing effectually, and, therefore, of emptying the lungs of mucus, accumulation of which may result in impairment of resonance at the base of the lungs in bronchitis, and in the physical signs of edema.

**Diagnosis.**—Nervous breathing resembles the breathing of paralysis of the diaphragm in that this muscle is used very little, while the upper thorax is freely used. If, however, the attention of persons thus breathing is distracted, or they are watched when not conscious of observation, the diaphragmatic breathing will at once become apparent.

The diaphragm does not move when it is inflamed or in diaphragmatic

pleurisy, but it is because of the extreme pain which its motion causes under these circumstances.

The diaphragmatic palsy from diphtheritic neuritis is only a part of the symptoms due to such neuritis. In diaphragmatic paralysis due to spinal disease there is usually atrophy of other muscles, together with other symptoms of that disease.

**Prognosis.**—This depends upon that of the disease of which it is a part, except in diphtheritic neuritis, in which it is the direct result of the disease, and where the prognosis is unfavorable.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is that of the disease of which it is the result. If there is neuritis, effort should be made to galvanize the nerve by pressing one pole outside the clavicular portion of the sternomastoid, and the other pole over the epigastrium or the corresponding half of the diaphragm. Counterirritation may also be applied in the triangle of the neck outside the clavicular portion of the sternomastoid.

## BRACHIAL PLEXUS.

**OF THE COMBINED PLEXUS.**—This may be affected above the clavicle by causes producing pressure on the nerve-trunks—the five lower cervical and first thoracic—after they leave the spine and before they unite to form the plexus. Such causes are tumors and other morbid processes in the neck. More frequently, causes operate below the clavicle, of which the most frequent is prolonged luxation of the humerus, especially under the coracoid process. One or more branches may be thus involved, producing a corresponding degree of paralysis, to which is added wasting of muscles, with reaction of degeneration and trophic changes in the skin. Fracture of the humerus is another cause. Blows or falls on the shoulder and injuries in the neck may produce the same results, as may also compression during birth. The muscles involved may be the deltoid, supraspinatus, infraspinatus, biceps, and brachialis anticus.

Neuritis of the brachial plexus also occurs rarely as a primary inflammation. The result ultimately may be complete loss of power in the arm. A still rarer disease is neuroma of the plexus.

**LESIONS OF INDIVIDUAL NERVES.**—*Of the Long Thoracic or Posterior Thoracic (Serratus Palsy).* This nerve is particularly subject to pressure through its long course and position, especially in the posterior triangle of the neck. Such pressure may be direct, as by carrying heavy burdens on the shoulder, or as the result of severe muscular effort in carrying or wielding a hammer, or long exertion with the arm raised, as in whitewashing a ceiling. The result may be a neuritis. Neuritis may also be caused by cold. The same nerve may be involved in progressive spinal muscular atrophy or poliomyelitis anterior. From natural causes it is more common in men.

The result is a dislocation of the scapula of the corresponding side, which presents a winged appearance in consequence of projection of its angle and posterior border, rendered especially distinct when the arm is moved forward, since the scapula is no longer held to the thorax by the

serratus. In severe cases faradic irritability is lost, though voltaic excitability may remain. Severe neuralgic pain may precede the paralysis.

The course of serratus palsy is slow, and the paralysis is sometimes permanent.

**Treatment.**—The treatment consists in maintaining the nutrition of the muscles by electrical stimulation. Counterirritation may be applied over the scalenus muscle, because it is in it that the nerve is most frequently injured. Among the conditions to which the now popular vibratory stimulation has been applied with more or less success is brachial neuritis. The arm should be kept at rest, and to this end should be carried in a sling, embracing the elbow in such a way as to raise the shoulder.

**NERVES OF THE ARM.**—1. *Of the Circumflex Nerve.*—This rises from the posterior cord of the plexus and supplies the deltoid and teres minor, and the skin over the deltoid. It may be injured by dislocations, blows, bruises, pressure by a crutch, or position long maintained, as during illness. Neuritis may result from these causes and from cold, or by extension of inflammation from the joint.

There is loss of power in the deltoid and the arm cannot be raised, also a loss of sensation in the skin over the lower part of the muscle. The muscle wastes and the shoulder becomes flattened. The joint may relax and a space arise between the head of the humerus and the acromion. On the other hand, adhesions may form, partly trophic, since the articulation is supplied by the same nerve. Movement may be further impaired by thickening of the ligaments.

Paralysis of the deltoid is to be distinguished from ankylosis, in which the scapula moves with the arm, which it does not do in palsy.

2. *Suprascapular Nerve.*—This nerve rises from the trunk formed by the union of the sixth, fifth, and a branch of the fourth cervical, but its own fibers are derived from the fifth and partly from the fourth cervical. It is occasionally injured alone or with the circumflex in dislocation of the humerus, and by falls on the shoulder, or by carrying heavy weights. The result is palsy of the supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles. The first is of little significance, but the latter causes a defect of rotation outward of the humerus, interfering with many movements, of which one is carrying the hand along in writing. The scapula is rotated so that the lower angle is rotated upward and inward.

3. *Musculospiral Paralysis.*—The musculospiral nerve arises from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus, and apparently derives its motor fibers from the nerve-roots forming the plexus except the first thoracic. With its branches the muscular, cutaneous, the radial and posterior interosseous, it supplies the triceps, all the muscles of the back of the forearm, the extensors of the wrist and fingers, both the supinators, as well as the skin on the radial side of the back of the hand, back of the thumb, index-finger, and half of the middle finger. As the musculospiral nerve is called the radial by the Germans, its paralysis is described in German literature as radial palsy.

It is more frequently paralyzed than any single nerve, because of its position—winding around the head of the humerus after it leaves the plexus.

It is often bruised by crutches, producing the so-called "crutch palsy," by blows and fractures, and especially by pressure when sleeping with the arm over the back of a chair or with the arm under the body. Even a sudden and violent contraction of the triceps, as in pulling on a tight boot, or forcible extension of the forearm as in throwing a ball, may bruise it. More rarely it is the subject of a neuritis from cold.

In a lesion of the nerve high up all the muscles previously named are involved; when near the middle of the humerus, the triceps generally escapes. The supinator longus and extensor carpi radialis longior usually are involved, but escape if the lesion is below the origin of the branches supplying them, and sometimes in partial injury of the nerve higher up. A characteristic symptom of extensor palsy is the "wrist-drop," while the inability to supinate is also striking. Sensation is rarely lost, though there may be tingling without loss of sensibility.



FIG. 134.—Wrist-drop in Musculospiral Paralysis—(Leube).

Paralysis of the musculospiral is to be distinguished from the wrist-drop of lead palsy, which is, however, bilateral, while the supinators are unaffected and the onset is gradual. However, in lead palsy the supinator longus may be affected, and in wrist-drop from pressure this muscle may escape. Bilateral wrist-drop is common in other forms of neuritis, especially the alcoholic, but the gradual mode of onset, the involvement of the legs, and the sensory symptoms are their characteristics.

The prognosis is usually favorable, the pressure palsy disappearing in a short time, while recovery is the rule even when delayed.

Erb's rules as to prognosis apply as follows: If both faradic and galvanic irritability are maintained, recovery may be expected in from 14 to 20 days; if these are lessened for the nerve and increased for the muscle, while  $An\ C > Ca\ C$ , with contraction sluggish, recovery may take place in from four to six weeks, sometimes in from eight to ten weeks. When there is evidence of degeneration of the nerve, the prognosis is more unfavorable, so that recovery may be delayed for from two to fifteen months.

4. *Ulnar Nerve*.—This comes through the inner cord of the plexus from the last cervical and first thoracic. It is the first of all the brachial nerves to be affected by disease ascending from the thoracic to the cervical part of the cord. It supplies the ulnar flexor of the wrist, the ulnar half of the deep flexor of the fingers, the muscles of the little finger, the interossei, two of the lumbricales, the adductor, and the inner head of the short flexor of the thumb. Its sensory portion supplies the ulnar side of the hand, back and front,—more of the back—the ulnar side of the little finger and the adjoining sides of the little and ring fingers. It communicates with the posterior branch of the internal cutaneous nerve and sends a communicating branch to that branch of the radial nerve which supplies the adjoining sides of the middle and ring fingers. (Gray.)

The course of the nerve, superficial behind the elbow and at the wrist, makes it vulnerable. It may be injured in wounds of the forearm and about

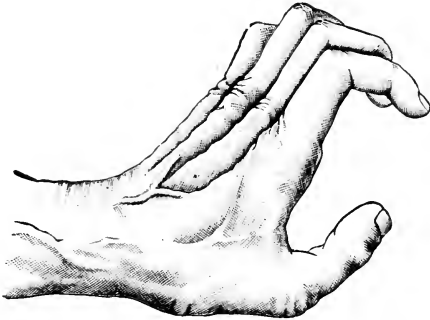


FIG. 135.—Position of Wrist, Hand, and Fingers in Ulnar Paralysis—(Leube).

the elbow, in dislocations and fractures about the shoulder and elbow, and continued flexion of the elbow. Neuritis is a possible cause. The most common cause is probably a blow upon the arm.

The hand moves toward the radial side because of paralysis of the ulnar flexor, and adduction of the thumb is impossible, the first phalanges cannot be extended, and in long standing cases the "claw-hand" may be produced, consisting in overextension of the first phalanges and flexion of the others. There may be wasting of the muscles supplied by the nerve. There is loss of sensation in the sensory distribution.

A similar condition of the ulnar nerve may be produced by lesion of the lower cervical portion of the cord.

5. *Median Nerve*.—Its motor fibers arise from all the cervical roots that enter the brachial plexus. They supply the pronators, the radial flexor of the wrist, flexors of the fingers—except the ulnar half of the deep flexor—the muscles that abduct and flex the thumb, and two radial lumbricales. The sensory fibers supply the radial side of the palm and the front of the thumb, the first two fingers, half of the third finger, and the dorsal surface of the same fingers.

Isolated palsy of this nerve is not frequent, but it may be caused by

wounds or fractures of the forearm, rarely from injuries of the upper arm. There may be neuritis from compression.

The wrist can only be flexed toward the ulnar side, and the thumb is in a state of persistent extension and cannot be opposed to the tips of the fingers. Pronation is impossible beyond the midposition to which the supinator can bring the forearm; an attempt is made to supplement this by rotating the humerus inward and separating the elbow from the side. The second phalanges cannot be flexed on the first, nor the distal phalanges of the first and second fingers, while in the third and fourth fingers this action can be performed by the ulnar half of the deep flexor. There is conspicuous wasting of the thumb muscles, which gives a characteristic appearance.

There may be complete or partial loss of sensibility. If there is anesthesia, it is more marked on the palmar surface.

**Treatment of Lesions of Nerves of the Arm.**—The first principle of treatment is the removal of the cause, whatever it may be, as determined from the etiology. If neuritis is present, it must be treated. Rest by supports or splints may be necessary, on the one hand, and electrical stimulation and massage on the other.

## LUMBAR AND SACRAL PLEXUSES.

**THE LUMBAR PLEXUS.**—This is sometimes damaged by growths in the abdomen, especially of the lymph glands, by inflammatory process, by psoas abscess, and by diseases of the bones and vertebræ affecting the nerve-roots. The obturator nerve may be injured during parturition; the anterior crural nerve by the same cause, by wounds of the groin or thigh, by dislocation of the hip, and sometimes by growths about the spine.

**Symptoms.**—In paralysis of the *obturator*, adduction of the thigh and crossing of the legs are impossible, while outward rotation is also deranged.

In paralysis of the *anterior crural* extension of the knee is impossible; there is wasting of muscles, with anesthesia of the anterolateral part of the thigh and of the inner side of the leg and big toe. There may be pain in the area of distribution.

Paralysis of the *superior gluteal nerve*, which is rare in the isolated form, causes loss of the power of abduction and circumduction of the thigh from paralysis of the *gluteus medius* and *minimus*.

**THE SACRAL PLEXUS.**—This suffers from compression by growths in the pelvis, pelvic inflammations, and compression during labor. In addition to spontaneous neuritis, there may also be a neuritis ascending to it from the sciatic nerve. The sciatic may be affected by wounds, dislocation of the hip, disease of the bone, and morbid growths. It is also occasionally the seat of neuroma.

The result of lesions of the *sciatic* varies with its seat. If near the sciatic notch, there is paralysis of the flexors of the leg and all the muscles below the knee, while injury below the middle of the thigh involves only the latter muscles, the flexors of the legs escaping. There is anesthesia of the outer half of the leg, of the sole and greater portion of the dorsum

of the foot, but the leg may escape, perhaps through the intermediation of other nerves. Frequently there is wasting of the muscles, with other trophic symptoms. In lesion of one sciatic the leg is fixed in extension by the action of the quadriceps extensor, and the patient can walk, even when all the muscles below the knee are paralyzed, the foot being raised by over-flexion of the hip.

The *small sciatic* is implicated only when the pelvic plexus is impinged upon, and it rarely suffers alone. The effect is palsy of the gluteus maximus with difficulty in rising from the sitting posture, and a strip of anesthesia along the back of the middle third of the thigh and upper half of the calf.

Injury to the *external popliteal* or *peroneal* nerve results in paralysis of the tibialis anticus, long extensor of the toes, peronei, and extensor brevis digitorum. There results inability to flex the ankles or extend the first phalanx of the toes, or to raise the foot from the ground in walking—there is foot-drop. Talipes equinus ultimately results, and may be attended with persistent flexion of the first or proximate phalanges from contraction of the unopposed interossei. In walking the whole leg must be lifted, and there is the steppage-gait of neuritis. In old cases there may also be wasting of the anterior tibial and peroneal muscles. There is also anesthesia in the outer half of the front of the leg and on the dorsum of the foot.

Lesion of the *internal popliteal* produces paralysis of the popliteus, calf muscles, tibialis posticus, long flexors of the toes, and muscles of the sole. The symptoms are loss of plantar flexion, inability to extend the ankle-joint, and, if the disease is high enough to involve the branch to the popliteus, loss of power to rotate the flexed leg internally; the foot cannot be adducted, nor can the patient rise on tiptoe. Talipes calcaneus results, and the toes may assume a claw-like position from secondary contraction, due to over-extension of the proximal and flexion of the second and third phalanges. There is also loss of sensation on the outer lower part of the back of the leg and on the sole of the foot.

**Treatment.**—The treatment of lesions of the nerves of the legs is similar to that of lesions of nerves of the arms. Secondary contractures are to be guarded against, being favored by position. Fatigue and exposure to cold should be avoided, as they favor fresh attacks of neuritis.

## EFFECT OF SECTIONS OF SENSORY NERVES. SENSORY MECHANISM OF PERIPHERAL NERVES.<sup>1</sup>

The recent studies of Head and Sherren on the effect of nerve section go to show that the sensory mechanism of the peripheral nerves includes three systems: 1. protopathic sensibility; 2. epicrotic sensibility; 3. deep sensibility. When a nerve is cut only a small area supplied by it becomes totally analgesic, the remainder being variously modified as to sensibility through the distribution to it of adjacent nerves giving rise to the systems named.

By protopathic sensibility is meant altered sensation in which stimula-

<sup>1</sup>"The Afferent Nervous Systems from a New Aspect." Henry Head, "Brain," part xi., Nov., 1905. "The Consequences of Injury to the Peripheral Nerves in Man." *Ibid.* Abstracted in "Review of Neurology and Psychiatry," vol. iv., p. 47, 1906. This abstract is so admirably condensed that it has been necessary to follow it quite closely.

tion by the prick of a pin is felt more severely than over healthy skin, the pain is more widespread and the site of stimulation is not always accurately localized. The patient cannot tell the two points of a compass when separated by less than two centimeters. The power of recognizing differences of temperature is so modified that he cannot recognize cold above  $22^{\circ}$  C. or heat below  $40^{\circ}$  C. In considering the peculiarities of this area it is not the fibers of the cut nerve that show this modified sensibility, but the fibers of neighboring nerves that supply certain forms of sensation to this impaired area.

The epicrotic sensibility presents well-marked and definite qualities, such as greater sensitiveness to touch as shown by the recognition of gentle stimulation, as by cotton wool, more precise and definite sense of localization, the perception of the two points of the compass as distinct when separated by less than two centimeters, and the discrimination of fine grades of temperature. Epicrotic sensibility is not only an addition to the protopathic sensibility, but it has a remarkable inhibitory or modifying effect on the protopathic sensibility, inasmuch as the pain felt by a prick is less severe and radiation of pain and of cold is much less extensive than when protopathic sensibility is alone present.

The deep sensibility which responds to pressure and to movements of joints is capable of evoking pain when pressure is excessive or when a joint is injured. It is best demonstrated in an area where the skin is totally analgesic through division of a purely sensory nerve. Because it is thus present, where the skin is totally insensitive it is inferred that the sensory nerves supplying deeper structures, like muscles, tendon, bones, and joints, reach their destinations not by the purely sensory nerves, but by the nerves supplying the muscles. Support for this inference is found in the facts that Sherren has found afferent fibers in the nerves supplying the muscles and that section of motor nerves deprives the muscles and deep structures of all sensation. If an injury severs the ulnar nerve at the elbow before the muscular branches are given off, then deep sensibility of certain fingers is destroyed. But if the ulnar is cut at the wrist, then the deep sensibility of the fingers persists. If the injury severs the tendons as well as the ulnar nerve at the wrist then the deep sensibility of these fingers is lost. Hence, it is argued that the fibers supplying the deep sensibility of those fingers reach their destination by running along the tendons.

Much information is gained by studying the phenomena attending the gradual repair of the nerve. Some time elapses before sensation begins to be restored, and the restoration takes place in an orderly manner. The first sign is a diminution of the analgesic area due to the gradual spreading over it of protopathic sensibility, which proceeds until the whole analgesic area is covered. The time required for recovery is from two to three months, and more than six months may elapse before complete restoration of protopathic sensibility is restored. After this there is often an interval of two or three months before improvement takes place in epicrotic sensibility. When it begins it appears as a blurring of the margin separating the protopathic from the epicrotic sensibility. There is a simultaneous return of all the forms of sensation by which epicrotic sensibility is recognized—of light touch, better localization, appreciation of finer grades of temperature,



etc. Recovery is gradual, and usually more than a year is required to complete it.

If the nerve has been bruised or incompletely divided, it may fail to conduct impulses, and the resultant loss of sensation may at first resemble that which follows complete division. Recovery, however, in such cases pursues a different course from that following a complete division of the nerve. Thus, at the end of a period varying with the extent of the injury, an insensibility to prick and light touch return simultaneously, and as recovery progresses protopathic and epicrotic sensibility return together. By observing the form of recovery one can tell whether the nerve is completely severed or merely injured.

"A difference in the distribution of protopathic and epicrotic sensibility is also observed, depending partly on the distance of the section from the spinal cord. Thus section of a peripheral branch of a nerve near its final distribution presents a different result from section of a nerve near its exit from the spinal cord. If the forearm and hand be divided into a pre-axial (radial) and post-axial (ulnar) half, it is found that the nerves supplying one of these halves overlap only to a slight extent the areas supplied by the nerves of the other half, while the peripheral branches that supply one of these areas overlap among themselves to a very considerable extent. Thus section of the internal cutaneous high in the arm produced an area of total analgesia embracing the greater portion of the ulnar half of the forearm and hand, while at the same time the epicrotic sensation is lost over the remaining portion of the ulnar half of the forearm and hand. This shows that there is very little overlapping of the nerves supplying the radial half of the forearm with the field supplied by the internal cutaneous. Division of one of the two branches of the internal cutaneous presents a very different result—the overlap being so great that little or no analgesia results from section of one branch only.

"Injury to the cords of the brachial plexus produces not only very considerable changes in the sensibility of the parts supplied by the nerves constituting the cord, but they sometimes show a great difference in the relationship of the protopathic and epicrotic area. Here the areas of protopathic and epicrotic sensibility are nearly co-extensive.

"A further difference in the relationship of these two forms of sensibility is shown when the posterior nerve roots are cut. In two cases division of several posterior nerve roots resulted in the loss of protopathic sensibility over an area greater than that of epicrotic sensibility; that is to say, there was an abolition of the sensation to prick over an area larger and more sharply defined than that which became insensitive to light touch. Moreover, this insensibility to prick was accompanied by an inability to appreciate temperature below 15° C. and above 60° C., although 40° C. and 23° C. appeared definitely warm and cool."

The practical applications of the above in interpreting phenomena of deranged innervations is evident. Seats of lesions and progress in improvement may be inferred by the study the phenomena observed.

## DISEASES OF THE MEMBRANES OF THE BRAIN.

Although, anatomically considered, the brain is enveloped by three membranes—the tough dura mater, the delicate arachnoid, and the highly vascular pia mater—the diseases of the membranes are practically confined to the dura on the one hand, and the arachnoid and pia conjointly on the other, the last two being always affected together. The dura is, however, separable into two layers—a thin internal layer with its endothelial lining, and a looser external layer which serves as a periosteum to the bones; these two layers may be affected separately.

The term pachymeningitis is applied to inflammation of the dura mater, and leptomeningitis to that of the pia and arachnoid; the latter is commonly meant when the word meningitis is used alone.

## PACHYMEINGITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Inflammation of the Dura Mater.*

## EXTERNAL PACHYMEINGITIS.

**Etiology.**—External pachymeningitis is *always acute* and is commonly circumscribed. It usually results from injuries to the head, especially *fractures*; from *caries* of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, caused commonly by middle-ear disease; or from *syphilitic disease* of the bone with pus formation. Sometimes no cause is discoverable. Rarely pus infiltrates between the two layers of the dura mater. More frequently there is pus between the dura and the bone. This may occur in syphilis, which, too, may cause thickening of the bone.

**Symptoms.**—These are indefinite and are often obscured by those of its causal disease. They are pain, delirium; sometimes, but not always, fever; sometimes convulsions, and signs of pressure. Such pressure may or may not be sufficient to cause paralysis of the opposite side.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is that of the causing disease, with surgical interference to remove pressure and give vent to pus.

## INTERNAL PACHYMEINGITIS.

This is *usually chronic*. Three forms are commonly noticed—purulent, pseudomembranous, and hemorrhagic.

PURULENT and PSEUDOMEMBRANOUS INTERNAL PACHYMEINGITIS are not recognized before death. The former may follow an *injury primarily*, but commonly it is an *extension from* inflammation of the *pia*. Pus between the dura and arachnoid is rare. Pseudomembranous internal pachymeningitis may occur as a secondary process in *infectious diseases*.

INTERNAL HEMORRHAGIC PACHYMENINGITIS.—Hemorrhagic pachymeningitis, or *hematoma* of the dura mater, is a rare, but well-recognized condition; it is much more common in infirmaries and hospitals connected with almshouses and asylums. It occasionally occurs in children.

**Etiology.**—It is probably most frequently a result of chronic alcoholism, though it has been found in chronic insanity without association with alcoholism, especially in general paralysis of the insane; also in acute fevers, when it is associated with profound anemia. Syphilis is a possible cause; in like manner, tuberculosis. It occurs chiefly in males over 50, but also in those between 30 and 40. In mild degree it is sometimes found in chronic cardiac, renal, or pulmonary diseases, when it is commonly first recognized at necropsy.

**Pathology and Morbid Anatomy.**—The original dictum of Virchow continues for the most part to be held—viz., that it begins as a hyperemia in the area of the *middle meningeal artery*, extending thence forward, backward, and downward. The arteries become tortuous, dilated, and surrounded by thickened adventitia, while the capillaries, being over-filled, produce a rose-colored flush on the under surface of the membrane. To this succeeds a delicate web-like tissue containing wide, thin-walled capillaries three or four times the natural width, between which is a delicate reticulum of spindle cells extending over the greater part of one or both hemispheres. This becomes afterward paler and firmer. Upon this succeeds another delicate vascular layer, succeeded by another and even another. From three to seven layers are thus superposed until a product of from  $1/8$  to  $1/5$  inch (3 to 5 mm.) in thickness results. The delicately-walled capillaries, however, easily give way, causing hemorrhages which vary in extent from mere points to large collections of blood—the smaller being interstitial and the larger between the youngest vascular layer and the next older. The proportion of blood and organized membrane varies greatly, now one predominating and now another. At times there seems to be blood only. The hemorrhage is believed by some to be the initial event.

Both products are subject to degenerative changes, the effused blood being disintegrated and partially absorbed, while the blood-vessels become obliterated and substituted by lines of pigment deposit along their course. There may also be serous infiltration, cystic degeneration, and even diffuse supuration.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are indefinite. There may be *apoplectic form seizures* coincident with fresh hemorrhages, *drowsiness*, or *coma*. *Muscular weakness* was very marked in a case under my own observation. *Headache* in the region involved, *vomiting*, *nystagmus*, *convulsions*, generally unilateral, and even hemiplegia may be present, and, toward the close, *optic neuritis*; extensive disease may, on the other hand, exist without any symptoms whatever.

**Diagnosis.**—In the absence of distinctive symptoms the possibility of the presence of hematoma should be remembered when there are other signs of general paralysis or chronic alcoholism. If to such symptoms great muscular weakness is added, further suspicion is justified.

**Prognosis.**—This is absolutely unfavorable so far as recovery is concerned.

**Treatment.**—This consists only in the relief of symptoms as they

arise. Indications of hemorrhage should be treated by rest in bed, elevation of the head, and an ice-cap.

### LEPTOMENINGITIS.

SYNONYM.—*Inflammation of the Pia Mater.*

Of leptomeningitis there may be an acute and a chronic variety. In addition, other adjective terms are used to indicate its seat and the nature of its cause; such as basilar meningitis, meningitis of the convexity, tuberculous meningitis, etc. Epidemic meningitis has received separate consideration.

### ACUTE LEPTOMENINGITIS.

**Definition.**—An acute inflammation of the pia and arachnoid membranes, attended by exudation between two membranes.

**Etiology.**—All ages are subject to meningitis, that of the convexity being possibly more frequent in adults because they are more subject to traumatic agencies which cause it, while the basilar form is more common in children. It is rather more frequent in males, and there is a hereditary tendency to one form—tuberculous meningitis.

Of the direct causes—

1. An eruption of *miliary tubercles* is the most frequent. This cause may operate at all ages, but is most active in children. In adults it generally starts from a recognized tuberculosis elsewhere; in children the process is almost always part of a general tuberculosis. Tuberculous meningitis takes place generally at the base of the brain, constituting the chief form of *basilar meningitis*.

2. *Adjacent disease*, which may be outside of the dura mater, such as caries, especially in the petrous portion of the temporal bone. Even disease outside the skull, like erysipelas or suppurative disease of the scalp, may be a primary focus. In these cases it is usually unilateral, and may be accompanied by thrombosis of the sinuses and abscesses; or the disease may result in abscess within the brain.

3. The bacterium or toxin of the acute *infectious diseases*—pneumonia, ulcerative endocarditis, measles, scarlet fever, smallpox, typhoid fever, acute rheumatism, and septicemia. Care must, however, be taken not to confound the simple intense delirium in some of these affections with meningitis, remembering, too, that the latter complication is, under any circumstances, a rare one. The toxin of pneumonia is the most common cause, and perhaps after this that of smallpox. The inflammation thus caused is chiefly of the *convexity*, except in septicemia, when it is general.

4. Chronic Bright's disease and other cachectic conditions. In these the inflammation is commonly basilar.

5. Sunstroke.

6. Mental excitement and brain work—doubtful causes.

7. Rarely in acute inflammation, syphilis, whose product is also basal.

8. Finally, unknown causes may produce meningitis of the convexity or of the base. Possibly, as Gowers suggests, organisms otherwise power-

less may become sufficient causes during ill health. Thus may be caused some undoubted though rare cases of non-tuberculous basilar meningitis of children—*leptomeningitis infantum*.

In tuberculous meningitis, which is chiefly basilar, the eruption of tubercles precedes the inflammation. There may even be tuberculosis of the pia without inflammation. In tuberculous meningitis the inflammation is never actually purulent, though the lymph has often the appearance of pus. The tubercles are most abundant about the optic chiasm, over the pons, and in the fissure of Sylvius, but the cortex is often affected. According to Spiller's experience the brain cortex has contained more tubercles than were found at the base.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The early results of leptomeningitis are the same in all varieties. They consist, first, in a hyperemia of the capillaries producing a diffuse pinkish tinge. The next visible changes are a turbidity and an opacity of the arachnoid which extend to the pia, where opacity is especially distinct along the blood-vessels, consisting, in fact, in an infiltration of the lymph spaces and lymphatic sheaths with leukocytes. As the cellular accumulation increases the exudate beneath the arachnoid assumes a yellowish-white, creamy appearance. The sub-arachnoid fluid increases, constituting *hydrocephalus externus*. In suppurative cases it becomes pus, which forms a greenish-yellow layer at the convexity or base, or both.

Ventricular effusion is present in the majority of instances—about four out of five—constituting *hydrocephalus internus*, generally associated with closure of the openings of the fourth ventricle. The effusion is usually limited to a few ounces, but it may be large in quantity, distending the ventricles and compressing the cortex. The walls of the ventricles and the choroid plexuses may be inflamed, and the ventricular effusion may be the result of such inflammation.

In all varieties of meningitis, and especially in the tuberculous, the superficial layer of the cortex is also involved, being at least hyperemic, and sometimes softened; it may also be the seat of punctiform hemorrhages, constituting *red softening*. This is especially prone to occur in tuberculous meningitis, because of the extension of the tuberculosis along the blood-vessels which dip into the cortex. In pulling off the pia these blood-vessels are dragged with it, leaving a ragged appearance of the cortex.

*Leptomeningitis infantum* presents an appearance similar to that of tuberculous meningitis. It involves chiefly the posterior part of the meninges and cerebellum, closing sometimes the foramen of Magendie, whence the term *occlusive meningitis*. It may also cause an acute, sometimes purulent, hydrocephalus.

**Symptoms.**—These are varied and not always distinctive of the different forms. First, it is important to remember that all except those which are peculiar to inflammation of the base may be present in any of the serious infectious fevers without meningitis, especially pneumonia, typhoid fever, and smallpox; but in some cases of typhoid fever the typhoid bacillus has been found in the cerebral membranes. When secondary to these affections, they are accompanied by the symptoms of the disease to which they succeed.

Meningitis is usually ushered in by *premonitory symptoms*, which, again, are not distinctive, being those usual to acute disease. Perhaps *irritability* is more constant than in other acute diseases. In case of children, *vomiting* with a slight cause, or without discoverable cause, is a symptom of more suspicious nature. It is especially frequent in basilar meningitis, of which it is more or less characteristic. It has this peculiarity, that it is not usually accompanied by nausea and retching. Generally there are *high fever*, *coated tongue*, and *constipation*, although fever is not invariable. The usual temperature is from  $103^{\circ}$  to  $104^{\circ}$  F. ( $39.5^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$  C.), but it may reach from  $105^{\circ}$  to  $106^{\circ}$  F. ( $40.5^{\circ}$  to  $41.1^{\circ}$  C.), and toward the close of fatal cases,  $108^{\circ}$  F. ( $42.2^{\circ}$  C.). It is especially likely to be mild or absent in the meningitis of Bright's disease or of debilitated children. The *pulse* is increased in frequency at first, but later may be slow and irregular.

Of the symptoms the direct result of the disease, *pain in the head* is the most constant. Commonly frontal, it may be general. Its constancy and severity are characteristic. Yet it is subject to such exacerbations as may cause the patient to cry out, constituting the *hydrocephalic* cry of children. The headache is invariable, followed sooner or later by *unconsciousness*. Delirium is an early symptom and soon follows the headache; at first wandering, it soon becomes active, and may alternate with drowsiness or stupor.

General *convulsions* are also another symptom, occurring in all forms and at all ages, but more frequently in the tuberculous meningitis of children. When the inflammation is at the base, *rigidity of the neck* with retraction of the head is very marked, especially when the inflammation extends down the membranes of the spinal cord. *Optic neuritis* is another symptom, usually late in occurrence—at the end of the first week—and possibly due to involvement of the sheath of the optic nerve within the skull. *Strabismus* is also common. There may be weakness of the eye muscles and slight *ptosis*. The *pupils* are usually *contracted* in the early stage from intolerance of light; later, they are *dilated*. *Inequality* of the pupil is even a more characteristic symptom, though transient and variable. It occurs in connection with inflammation of the convexity as well as of the base.

The *facial nerve* may be involved in basilar cases, producing slight paralysis, as may also be the *fifth nerve*, producing anesthesia and trophic changes in the cornea. On the other hand, *hyperæsthesic* skin is often present; also *hyperæsthesia* of the *special senses*, especially hearing and sight.

Symptoms in the limbs may present themselves, such as *muscular rigidity*, *unilateral convulsions*, and even *hemiplegia*, but the last is rare. When they occur, they are late symptoms.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis is not always easy, because so many symptoms may be simulated by simple congestion due to the poison of the *infectious diseases*. The *basilar symptoms* are the most distinctive, and it is a real help to know that a possible cause is present, either predisposing or exciting; such, for example, as the tuberculous taint, or tuberculous disease, or middle-ear disease. Retraction of the head, so characteristic of this form, may result from *rheumatism* of the muscles of the back of

the neck. Sir William Jenner pointed out a difference between the relation of headache and delirium in general disease and meningitis: In general disease the headache ceases when the delirium begins; in meningitis the headache continues and coexists with the disease. Convulsions, too, when present, occur at the beginning of a general disease, particularly in scarlet fever, while they occur late in meningitis. Optic neuritis and other eye symptoms are common in meningitis.

A rapidly growing *intracranial tumor* often gives rise to difficulty in the diagnosis between it and meningitis. In tumors which may be tuberculous or gliomatous, symptoms in the extremities, such as weakness, hemiplegia, and convulsions, are manifested only after the tumor once begins to interfere with function, which it may not do at first; the loss of power, moreover, comes on gradually, while in meningitis all these symptoms are rapidly developed. Higher degrees of optic neuritis, as observed by the ophthalmoscope, are found in connection with tumor rather than with meningitis. The duration of the disease will settle the question ultimately, as meningitis is of short duration—from two or three days to as many weeks—while tumors last for months.

Meningitis, especially tuberculous, is sometimes mistaken for *hysteria*, but the almost invariable presence of fever in meningitis and its total absence in most cases of hysteria should prevent error. In children the symptoms even of tuberculous meningitis are sometimes closely simulated in bad *cachectic states*, in which there is no meningitis whatever. What is regarded as meningitis after *sunstroke* is a prolonged state of mental hebetude with symptoms usually aggravated on slight exposure to the sun.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis in leptomeningitis is unfavorable, although not necessarily hopeless. In meningitis of the convexity recovery is possible; in undoubted tuberculous meningitis it is very rare, and yet it may occur. But I have so often known an erroneous diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis with corresponding prognosis followed by complete recovery in children, that I have grown very cautious in making a prognosis. Especially in general tuberculosis should we avoid too unfavorable a prognosis, because mistakes here are quite frequent. In meningitis from adjacent bone disease much depends on the accessibility of the bone lesion, but as this is generally difficult of access, the prognosis is correspondingly serious. This is especially the case in ear disease. In syphilitic meningitis if the diagnosis is made early, chances of recovery or improvement are better.

**Treatment.**—The *treatment of adjacent disease* which may cause the meningitis is of the first importance. Surgical interference should be promptly resorted to in middle-ear disease. In the absence of such disease the treatment is mainly symptomatic. The utmost *quiet* and the avoidance of all causes of excitement are paramount. It is the one disease, outside of ophthalmia, in which the darkening of the room may be justified. The *head* should be *raised*. *Leeching* is a most valuable measure toward cure, when possible, and temporary relief when cure is impossible. Leeches should be applied to the back of the ear and to the temple. *Ice* should be kept applied to the head. *Counterirritation* by blisters to the back of the neck is also very useful, and not so painful or annoying as

its appearance suggests. It has even been applied to the whole scalp after shaving the head, but I have never felt justified in doing this, especially when the diagnosis of tuberculous disease is quite clear. The *bowels* should be kept free.

The *diet* should be liquid—milk and animal broths of a light kind are the best food. Such drugs as meet the symptoms should be given. *Phenacetin* to relieve pain in the head if the ice and abstraction of blood do not do it. The temperature is kept down by *sponging* and even by cool *bathing*. *Mercury* is still an acknowledged drug in meningitis not tuberculous; and as chances of error of diagnosis always exist, it may be employed in any case. It should be administered to the production of slight salivation, preferably by inunction because the effect is more rapidly produced. The mercurial ointment should be used.

#### CHRONIC LEPTOMENINGITIS.

**Etiology and Morbid Anatomy.**—This comparatively rare disease affects chiefly the convexity of the brain, and is the result of alcoholism, syphilis, or tuberculosis.

In milder degrees, seen in alcoholics, the pia arachnoid is opaque, as seen over the sulci, the opacity and thickening being more marked along the borders of the blood-vessels. In syphilis there are often foci or thickened patches, thickest in the center and receding toward the edges. These may reach dimensions to justify the term gummy outgrowth or tumor. The blood-vessels are the seat of endarteritis. In the tuberculous forms in children the base of the brain is affected, as in acute tuberculous meningitis. Internal hydrocephalus may be a consequence when there is obstruction of the orifice of the fourth ventricle.

**Symptoms.**—These are those of the acute form in a milder and more prolonged manner—headache, vomiting, mental symptoms, sometimes convulsions, rigidity, retraction of the head, optic neuritis, more rarely strabismus, and nystagmus. They may last from a month to a year or more. Fever is more frequently absent in chronic meningitis, but careful observation will generally find some elevation of temperature.

**Diagnosis.**—It is, in fact, the chronic variety of leptomeningitis which is separated from *tumor* with the greatest difficulty. Loss of motor power is more characteristic of tumor. Optic neuritis is also a more decided symptom in tumor, and goes on increasing, while it seldom reaches an advanced stage in chronic meningitis. Other eye symptoms—strabismus, irregularity of pupil—are more distinctive of meningitis. Strabismus occurs in *hysteria*, but it is always convergent and there is total absence of fever, as shown by the absence of elevation of temperature.

**Prognosis.**—This is not so unfavorable as in the acute variety. The syphilitic form is quite amenable to treatment, the alcoholic less so; the tuberculous is almost always sooner or later fatal. Caution in prognosis is demanded by occasional error in diagnosis.

**Treatment.**—The cause must be carefully sought. If syphilitic, iodids and mercurials must be used, as for this disease. In alcoholism and tuberculosis the symptoms must be treated by measures already indicated.



## AFFECTIONS OF THE BLOOD-VESSELS OF THE BRAIN.

## HYPEREMIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Cerebral Hyperemia; Congestion of the Brain.*

**Definition.**—A condition of the brain in which the blood-vessels are surcharged with blood. The congestion is *active* as the result of increased flow of blood to the brain, as in alcoholic hyperemia; *passive* when there is obstruction to its outward movement, as in constriction of the vessels in the neck.

**Etiology.**—The causes of *active* hyperemia are prolonged mental activity, excitement, and overwork, pre-eminently alcohol and the causes of the acute fevers; the hypertrophy and overaction of the heart which attend aortic regurgitation may be causes. The causes of *passive* congestion are mainly mechanical, including mitral valvular heart disease, emphysema, straining, or other cause obstructing the return of blood from the brain—such as tumors pressing on the vessels of the neck, or tight clothing.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—While, from the standpoint of morbid anatomy, our ideas may be very definite as to what should constitute active and passive hyperemia, it cannot be said that a definite set of symptoms is associated with either in the case of the brain. In the first place, the amount of blood in the brain varies greatly within the limits of health, and while it might be said that physiological hyperemia ends where abnormal mental phenomena present themselves, it is undoubtedly true also that an overfullness of the vessels of the brain may exist for some time without the symptomatic expression which finally appears. With the appearance of such symptoms we commonly date the clinical beginning of the pathological state known as chronic hyperemia.

The difficulties are increased by the fact that in acute active and passive hyperemia, at least, no postmortem evidences of it remain, the congestion having disappeared with death, although an unusual distinctness of the puncta vasculosa has long been regarded as postmortem evidence. The difficulty of recognizing such condition makes this sign an unreliable one. In chronic hyperemia there result, sometimes at least, a turbidity and even an opacity of the pia mater, with slight thickening, together with elongation and tortuosity of the vessels, which are regarded as characteristic.

**Symptoms.**—These are not very distinctive. The symptoms of active hyperemia, so far as recognizable, are a sense of fullness or pressure, headache, mental excitement, irritability, confusion of ideas, insomnia, vertigo, ringing in the ears, and, in extreme cases, hallucinations, delirium, and mania. These symptoms are increased when the head is held downward or there is straining. The phenomena of so-called "rush of blood to the head" are probably the result of active hyperemia. They include a suffusion of the skin of the face and head and a feeling of warmth in these situations, strong beating of the carotids, headache, tinnitus aurium, spots before the eyes, vertigo, and sometimes actual falling.

It is not easy to separate the phenomena of passive hyperemia from those of active congestion. They are, however, less pronounced and slower in their development.

**Treatment.**—The indications for treatment are, nevertheless, plain. The *head* is to be kept *raised*. *Purgation* is the first measure to be thought of. The saline and hydragogue cathartics are especially indicated, because of their depleting effect. The *ice-cap* should be used. In extreme cases even *blood-letting* may be necessary, the efficiency of which is sometimes seen in the relief afforded by bleeding of the nose. Leeches applied behind the ears often afford magical relief to the symptoms commonly ascribed to congestion of the brain. Wet cups may be placed upon the back of the neck for the same purpose. The diet should be spare and easily assimilable, in acute cases liquid only.

Of medicines, the *bromid of potassium* theoretically fulfills the indications, and in full doses of from 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.) every three hours to adults is often useful, though it should not be allowed to substitute the other measures mentioned. *Phenacetin* is an admirable remedy for the headache, a single dose of 10 grains (0.66 gm.) being often sufficient. It may be repeated if necessary, or smaller doses may be given more frequently.

### ANEMIA OF THE BRAIN.

**Definition.**—The more usual application of the term anemia of the brain is to conditions in which the quantity of blood in the organ is diminished, although depraved states of the vital fluid without loss of bulk may also produce the same symptoms.

**Etiology.**—The causes leading to this condition are for the most part those which withdraw blood from the brain, but they include also such as prevent its access. Among the former are hemorrhages, profuse and rapid; bowel fluxes, such as those of cholera in adults and cholera infantum in children; and the opening of vascular areas by the removal of pressure caused by large tumors or ascitic fluid. Thus is explained the fainting which sometimes succeeds the removal of a large abdominal dropsy. In the second set of causes are feeble action of the heart, ligation of the carotid artery, or other obstruction in vessels carrying blood to the brain. Such obstructions are thrombi and emboli. The brain substance adjacent to the dilated ventricles in hydrocephalus internus is anemic from compression. The fainting due to sudden emotion, such as fright, is ascribed to a withdrawal of blood from the brain.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This is more distinctive than in hyperemia. The membranes are pale, the blood in their vessels, except the larger ones, is scanty, and over the convolutions the vessels are quite empty. The gray and the white matter are both pale on section, and the *puncta vasculosa* are less distinct and less numerous. The cerebrospinal fluid is increased.

**Symptoms.**—Some of these are definite and the direct result of loss of blood to the brain. Such are the dizziness, confusion of ideas, flashings of light, roaring in the ears, nausea, and ultimate loss of consciousness

and even death which succeed hemorrhages or emotion. In other cases the skin is cold and clammy, and a cold perspiration starts to the surface. Other symptoms are less distinctive. They are ascribed to chronic anemia, but may result also from other causes. Such are mental apathy, disinclination to work, a sleepy feeling during the day, and insomnia at night. Nausea, headache, tinnitus, vertigo, hallucinations, and delirium are

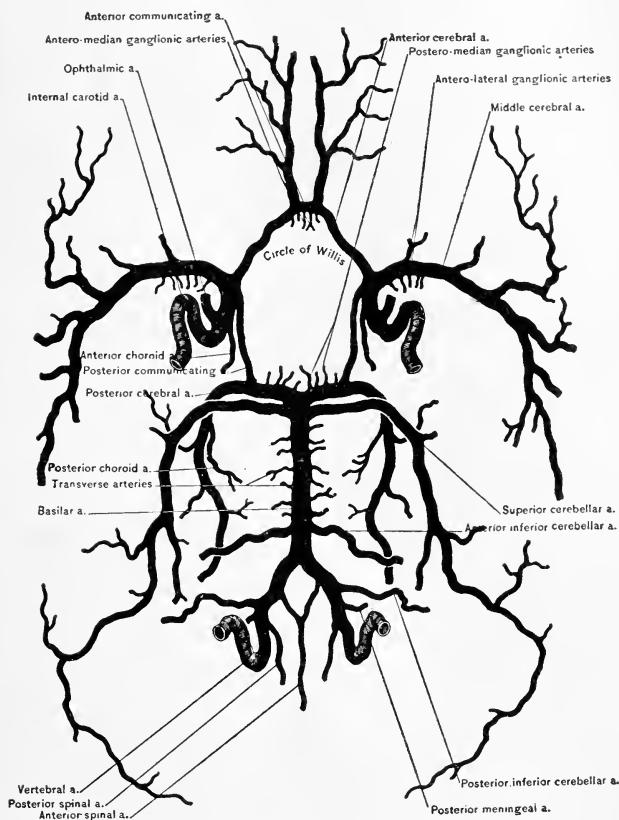


FIG. 136.—Circle of Willis and Arteries of Brain—(Deaver).

also consequences more particularly of lowered composition of the blood, of anemia, in fact, the result of prolonged illness, like pulmonary consumption and Bright's disease. The convulsions characteristic of the latter disease have been ascribed to anemia and also to edema of the brain.

The hydrocephaloid symptoms, described by Marchall Hall as the direct result of prolonged diarrhea and of cholera infantum in children, are regarded as results of anemia. They include semistupor with eyes unclosed, later, dilated pupils, strabismus, convulsions, rigidity, and death.

**Treatment.**—The immediate consequences of the acute form of anemia are diminished or averted by placing the patient on the flat of the back with the head low; by diffusible stimulants, of which alcohol and ammonia are the types; also cardiac stimulants, and nourishing and easily assimilable foods. The chronic forms of brain anemia are treated by nutritious, easily assimilable foods, and tonics, especially iron and arsenic. In the hydrocephaloid condition in infants alcohol is the pre-eminent remedy, associated with warm baths and general restorative measures.

### EDEMA OF THE BRAIN.

**Definition.**—The term includes two conditions, the most definite and easily recognizable of which is an abnormal accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid within the pia arachnoid. In the second condition there is added to the first an abnormal moistness of the substance of the brain.

**Etiology.**—The most common cause is mitral stenosis, although any cause obstructing the return of blood from the brain as well as recurring irritative hyperemias, such as are produced by alcoholism and the psychoses, are also causes. Bright's disease is a cause of edema of the brain, local or general.

Local edemas of the brain are also caused by obstruction of single sinuses of the dura mater, or compression by tuberculous or other tumors of the veins of the velum interpositum, known as the *venæ Galeni*.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The membranes are turbid, their vessels are distended and serpentine in their course, and the subarachnoid space is filled with clear fluid. The substance of the brain is anemic, moist, and glistening. In extreme cases there is compression of the cortex, with resulting flattening of the convolutions and widening of the sulci. The fluid in the lateral ventricles may also be increased.

**Symptoms.**—These are ill defined. There may be *hallucinations* and even *mania*, very similar, in fact, to those of anemia. Traube and Rosenstein ascribed the *convulsions of Bright's disease* to edema of the brain, while certain *unilateral* convulsions and *paralysis* in connection with this disease have been assigned to the same cause. Even death has been ascribed to sudden serous effusions of this kind, constituting acute edema of the pia mater, or *apoplexia serosa*. In recent years much has been written on cerebral edema under the name of meningitis serosa.

**Treatment.**—The treatment is that of the conditions to which the symptoms are secondary. The effects of cardiac stenosis must be overcome by cardiac stimulants; Bright's disease must receive appropriate treatment. Thrombosis of the sinuses admits of no treatment, though its effects may diminish by gradual contraction and possible liquefaction and removal of the thrombus. The psychoses should receive treatment appropriate to them.

### APOPLEXY.

**Definition.**—The term apoplexy is applied to a sudden loss of motor power with or without loss of consciousness due to cerebral hemorrhage, or the sudden plugging of a blood-vessel. Laceration of the brain with-

out hemorrhage produces a like effect. In point of fact, when the term apoplexy is used, cerebral hemorrhage is commonly intended.

Unconsciousness may also be produced by simple congestion, and it was formerly thought that a simple serous transudate could produce similar symptoms in a milder form and of shorter duration; whence the term "serous apoplexy." Concussion of the brain, also, causes similar symptoms.

## I. CEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE.

**Arterial Distribution.**—In the first place hemorrhage is *meningeal* or *central*. Meningeal hemorrhage may be outside of the dura between it and the bone, or between the dura and the arachnoid, or within the pia arachnoid. The extradural and subdural meningeal hemorrhages are both traumatic, one variety of which is produced during birth, but those in the pia arachnoid are due to the causes to be considered below. Central hemorrhages may also burst into the membranes as well as into the ventricles of the brain and in some instances the hemorrhage is almost entirely intraventricular. Meningeal hemorrhage may occur in the infectious fevers, in leukemia, and in anemia.

It is a rare event to find a rupture in any of the large arteries of the circle of Willis, although white patches of atheroma are often seen upon them at autopsy. But the free anastomosis of this circle scarcely allows of increase of intravascular pressure sufficient to cause rupture. Further, it is the "central" rather than the "cortical" branches of this circle which rupture, and especially the central branches of the *middle cerebral*, which, entering the brain at the anterior perforated space, pass to the corpus striatum and internal capsule. One of these is the so-called artery of "cerebral hemorrhage," thus named by Charcot because of the frequency of its involvement. It passes to the internal capsule and lenticular nucleus, where the majority of the massive hemorrhages of the brain occur.

**Etiology.**—Disease of the artery involved is responsible for the vast majority of cerebral hemorrhages. Indeed, except in the case of traumatic hemorrhages either with or without fracture of the skull, it is very doubtful whether hemorrhage ever occurs without such disease. The simplest form is the fatty degeneration and "erosion" of the intima, characteristic of advanced age. *Endarteritis*, however produced, is perhaps the most frequent cause. Its ultimate result, as shown by Charcot and Bouchard as far back as 1868, is the *miliary aneurysm* which very frequently precedes the rupture. It is a spindle-shaped, rarely lateral, dilatation, from  $\frac{1}{25}$  to  $\frac{1}{5}$  inch (1 to 5 mm.) in diameter. The inflammatory process preceding it consists in a proliferation and degeneration of the intima cells, followed by atrophy, which extends also to the muscular layer and the scanty adventitia. These, yielding to the intravascular pressure at the weak points, dilate to form the little aneurysm, which is later ruptured by some further increment of pressure. Embolism is also a cause of endarteritis which may result in aneurysm.

The "fatty erosion" of the intima which is the next most frequent cause of vulnerability is favored by age, by chronic interstitial nephritis,

and the overstrain of the vessels due to hypertrophy of the left ventricle, so often associated with that disease as well as with valvular heart disease.

While by far the larger majority of hemorrhages are preceded by miliary aneurysm or fatty erosion—fully nine out of ten—there still remain a number of instances in which careful search fails to find anything but *diffuse degeneration*; whence the miliary aneurysm and fatty erosion cannot be regarded as indispensable conditions. The *infectious fevers, leukemia, and anemia* are also causes of hemorrhage which is independent of miliary aneurysm.

*Age* is also a predisposing factor, most ruptures occurring after 50, although apoplexy has occurred under ten; while the occupations and dissipations of men furnish additional predisposing elements which accounts for its greater frequency in the male sex. Other predisposing causes are those usually responsible for endarteritis—viz., gout, alcohol, syphilis, Bright's disease, the apoplectic habit, as seen in the stout, short-necked, full-blooded individual; and, finally, heredity, which is, strictly speaking, a hereditary tendency to the favoring diseases.

The exciting causes are such as temporarily increase intravascular pressure, as violent exertion, straining, debauch in eating and drinking, and mental emotion.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The *large central ganglia in the neighborhood of the lateral ventricles*—i. e., the optic thalami, the caudate and lenticular nuclei, and the adjacent white matter of the internal capsule and centrum ovale—are the favorite seats of miliary aneurysm and consequent hemorrhage. These aneurysms are found also, but much more rarely, in the smaller branches of the *cortical vessels*, in the *pons, cerebellum, crura cerebri, or medulla oblongata*. On section of the large ganglia these may be seen as small dark points, as large as a pin's head, and are often very distinct in arteries drawn out of the substance of the brain, especially the anterior perforated space. Coarser aneurysms are also found on the branches of the circle of Willis.

Given a massive hemorrhage, what is its effect on the brain substance, and what are the changes in the extravasated blood? The former varies somewhat with its situation. If extradural, the dura mater is torn away from the bone to a varying extent. If subdural or beneath the pia arachnoid, it separates these membranes from the brain substance, but in either event the convolutions are more or less flattened and the sulci more or less obliterated.

As already stated, central hemorrhage most frequently occurs in the neighborhood of the corpus striatum, through which, if large, the blood finds its way toward the outer section of the lenticular nucleus, pushing inward the optic thalamus and bursting into the lateral ventricle or into the white matter of the centrum ovale. The pressure exerted is often such as to flatten the convolutions, empty the parietal veins, and press the falx aside, sometimes even to produce a sense of fluctuation over the membranes. Hemorrhages may occur in the crura or pons or fourth ventricle, and also in the cerebellum, not infrequently from the superior cerebellar artery. Osler mentions two cases of death in women of twenty-five from cerebellar hemorrhage. Very rarely hemorrhages into the

ventricle may start in the choroid plexus or the ventricular walls. Blood in large quantities may be poured out at the base of the brain, and it may flow down into the cord from a rupture of any of the arteries going to or from the circle of Willis.

If the patient survives, changes take place in the extravasated blood, which promptly coagulates into a dark-red mass. This almost immediately begins to contract, permitting often the return of a certain degree of function by removing pressure. As time elapses the dark-red mass passes into a chocolate-brown pulp, composed of liquefying blood-clot and disintegrated nervous matter. The microscope, at this stage, recognizes numerous hematoidin crystals and granular fat-cells which are probably fatty by imbibition of fat-granules. The adjacent nervous tissue is stained yellow by the imbibed hematoidin. The clot itself becomes encapsulated by fibrin and gradually absorbed, being often substituted by a semitransparent or completely transparent fluid, forming the apoplectic cyst. If smaller, the walls approach and unite, leaving only a linear pigmented scar. Especially is this the case with small clots on the surface of the convolutions, which may leave only a staining of the membranes. In other cases of abundant cortical effusion, especially in infants, there may be circumscribed wasting of the convolutions and a cyst of the meninges or brain. The position and extent of the permanent lesion determine the presence of secondary descending degeneration. If the motor cortex or motor tract is involved, there may be found, in persons dying some years after a stroke of apoplexy with hemiplegia, degeneration in the pyramidal fibers of the pons and medulla oblongata, in the direct pyramidal fibers of the cord of the same side, and in the crossed pyramidal fibers of the opposite side, and to some extent in the crossed pyramidal fibers of the same side.

**Symptoms.**—*Premonitory* signs are occasionally present. There may be a feeling of fullness in the head, headache, tinnitus, vertigo, or numbness, tingling, pains in the limbs on one side, loss of memory of words or choreiform movements—prehemiplegic chorea,—possibly due to miliary aneurysm or otherwise diseased vessels.

With the bursting of a vessel of sufficient size there occurs the *apoplectic "stroke,"* or apoplectic shock. Its most striking feature is *sudden loss of consciousness*. If complete, the patient falls heavily to the ground, and there may be slight convulsive movement, but it soon ceases. More rarely a true convulsion ushers in the attack. The patient cannot be aroused, the face is suffused, cyanotic—sometimes, however, pale; the *breathing* is slow, noisy, stertorous often attended with a puffing sound during expiration. Corresponding with a blowing out of the relaxed cheek on the paralyzed side; it may also be the Cheyne-Stokes type. In contrast with the foregoing, the development of unconsciousness is sometimes much more gradual, requiring several hours or a day, corresponding to which it is presumed that the hemorrhage is slow, constituting the "ingravescent form."

The second major symptom of apoplexy is *motor paralysis*, of which hemiplegia is the most conspicuous form. In most cases the motor pyramidal tract, as it descends in the internal capsule, is either directly de-

stroyed or indirectly affected. Hence most patients who survive the primary shock present a hemiplegia—paralysis of half the body opposite that of the hemorrhage, and most frequent on the right side. It is most noticeable in the arms and legs. These are thoroughly relaxed, falling limp when allowed to drop, as the limb of one thoroughly etherized. More rarely there is early *rigidity*, especially on the paralyzed side. This symptom is possibly more frequently associated with hemorrhage into a lateral ventricle. *Reflex action* is early either totally suspended or only brought out in response to a deep pin thrust or severe pinching.

The signs of hemiplegia are not always easily elicited at first, because a certain degree of consciousness is necessary to stimulate attempt at motion, but it may be that the angle of the mouth hangs down lower on one side—the paralyzed side—while the puffing of the cheek alluded to may be present on the same side, or the limbs of one side may be appreciably more flaccid than those of the other, or a small amount of reflex response may be elicited on the sound side. The *pulse* is usually slow, full, strong, and tense. The *temperature* may be subnormal at first, rising to normal and even above, and in basal hemorrhage may be higher. In a rapidly fatal case it remains subnormal to the end. The *pupils* are *irregular*—*i. e.*, sometimes contracted, at others dilated, unequal. They respond to light either slowly or not at all. If the hemorrhage is where it can irritate the nucleus of the third nerve, the pupils are contracted. This may occur with hemorrhage into the pons or ventricles.

In *cortical lesions* quite often one of the early symptoms in hemiplegia is *conjugate deviation* from the paralyzed side and toward the side of lesion, from which we have the expression that “the patient looks at the lesion;” that is, in right hemiplegia the head and eyes look toward the left side. This symptom usually passes away, but sometimes continues for weeks, and, as Gowers suggests, is perhaps occasionally represented by nystagmus or movement in the direction concerned. Should, however, convulsion, or spasm, or early rigidity develop, the head and eyes are rotated toward the paralyzed side—*i. e.*, away from the side of lesion. This is true only of cortical lesions.

In lesions of the *pons*, on the other hand, where the conjugate deviation may also occur, the phenomena are reversed—the patient looks away from the lesion, in the absence of spasm—but if the convulsion or spasm or rigidity occur, the eyes and head look toward the lesion. These facts are a little confusing at first and may be expressed in the following.

In lesion of the cortex—

Without spasm, conjugate deviation is *toward* the side of lesion.

With spasm or convulsion or early rigidity, *from* the side of lesion.

In lesion of the pons—

Without spasm, *from* lesion.

With spasm, etc., *toward* lesion.

This may be due to the fact that these movements in health are innervated from both sides, and when a lesion occurs on one side of the cerebrum, the innervation is given over to the other side until the injured one resumes its function, or until irritation in it causes it to assert or exceed its function. In pontile lesions the destruction occurs possibly



below the decussation of the fibers innervating the parts affected in the conjugate deviation and the symptoms are reversed. Conjugate deviation in lesions of the pons is, however, a rare phenomenon.

Where unconsciousness exists the *feces* and *urine* are passed involuntarily, and the latter is sometimes slightly albuminous.

As to further progress in a few cases there is no reaction from the previously described condition. The symptoms all deepen, the breathing becomes rapid and rattling, the skin cool, the pulse weak and rapid, and the patient dies. In most cases, however, there is a certain abatement of the symptoms, even if the patient does not recover more fully. Consciousness returns partially or completely, the patient can be aroused by a loud voice, and one can recognize which side is paralyzed. There may, at this time, be a febrile movement, due to cerebral inflammation or disruption of heat-regulating centers, during which the patient may die; or there may be another hemorrhage which carries him off.

On the other hand, improvement may continue to a further degree. The consciousness and intelligence may return completely, and the signs of paralysis may gradually grow less, *more rapidly in the legs than in the arms*. They, however, almost never disappear completely, the patient continuing lame and requiring the use of a cane for the rest of his life. In severe cases a remnant of paralysis of the face can almost always be recognized, while articulate speech may also continue defective.

Such marked improvement is, for the most part, reserved for the milder attacks, in which there is great variety as to degree. In such the loss of consciousness is of short duration, or it may not occur at all. Such attacks are not infrequently ushered in by nausea, vomiting, vertigo, or sudden headache. The paralytic symptoms may still be marked, and permit a study rather more satisfactory than the fulminating cases. In such study it will be found that all muscles are by no means equally paralyzed. Thus it will be seen that the lower division of the facial nerve, which supplies the muscles of the cheek, nose, and mouth, is plainly paralyzed; while the upper division, distributed to the muscles of the eyes and forehead, is almost, if not entirely, intact. The forehead may be wrinkled with equal ease on the two sides, but an attempt to draw up the nose or purse the mouth fails, while one labionasal fold may be obliterated and one angle of the mouth lower than the other. The natural wrinkles of the forehead are commonly less distinct on the paralyzed side than on the other. This event—the comparative freedom from paralysis in the upper part of the face—may be explained by the fact that while both sides of the face receive fibers from each cerebral hemisphere, this is especially true of the muscles of the upper part of the face, which are always exercised bilaterally.

The *tongue* may not be paralyzed, but when it is, if protruded, it goes toward the paralyzed side, being pushed out by the geniohyoglossal muscle of the other side, the innervation being by the hypoglossal nerve. Occasionally paralysis of the tongue contributes to difficulty in articulation. The motor branch of the fifth nerve is sometimes involved on the hemiplegic side, and there is paralysis of the pterygoid, temporal, and masseter muscles.

Of the *trunk muscles*, the trapezius is almost solely involved, and that but slightly, permitting the shoulder to drop a little, and the paralyzed side of the chest may expand more than the normal side in ordinary breathing, while in voluntary deep breathing this is not the case. The reason of this possibly may be found in the exaggeration of the reflexes on the paralyzed side; ordinary breathing being a reflex action.

*Sensation* is but slightly impaired in most cases of hemiplegia due to cerebral hemorrhage, and such impairment usually grows rapidly less as time elapses, unless the optic thalamus is seriously damaged. It is hemianesthesia when anesthesia exists, and it is on the side opposite that of the lesion. There may also be trifling paresthesia at first. Any marked disturbance of sensation means that the posterior extremity of the internal capsule is involved, or, according to some authors, it indicates that the optic thalamus is invaded. Distinct impairment of the deep sensibility—the so-called muscular sense or sense of position—may indicate a lesion of the parietal lobe. There is sometimes temporary and even permanent *hemianopsia*, which implies some lesion of the fibers of the optic radiation posterior to the internal capsule or in the posterior portion of the optic thalamus—the pulvinar.

Astereognosis or the inability to recognize objects by touch is sometimes a symptom.

The *tendon reflexes* are increased in nearly all cases on the paralyzed side, though at the very beginning of a severe shock they may be abolished, and if this abolition of the reflexes persists, it is regarded as a serious sign. In cases of any duration even the periosteal reflexes are increased, and to a less degree the reflexes of the sound side are increased, because each side of the body is innervated from both sides of the brain, although the number of fibers passing to the same side of the body is considerably less than those passing to the opposite side. There is even, at times, ankle clonus, and, more rarely, wrist clonus. These events are explained by supposing a suspension of the inhibitory reflex cortical centers, due to the cerebral lesion. The *skin reflexes*, on the other hand, are diminished on the paralyzed side, remaining normal on the sound side.

The *rapid improvement* mentioned as occurring in some cases is usually confined to a few weeks or days, after which improvement goes on more slowly, the lower extremities recovering more completely than the upper. The *gait* resulting from partial recovery is peculiar. Short steps are taken by the affected leg, and the toe is dragged more or less, while locomotion is sometimes accomplished by sweeping the leg around in a semicircle by the iliacus and psoas and the vastus externus, while it is held stiff, as in a splint, by the quadriceps extensor muscle. In the upper limb the hand muscles are the last to recover.

Later in the history of the case *contractures* may come on in the paralyzed muscles, shown especially in flexures of the fingers, contracture of the forearm in a position of pronation, and partial flexion, with the upper arm adducted. The lower extremity is usually in the position of extension. This contracture is explained by some, and notably by Strümpell, as a "passive contracture," the position assumed being the natural one in a state of rest. On the other hand, Charcot and his pupils

hold that the contractures are due to secondary degeneration of the pyramidal tract. It is very doubtful whether secondary degeneration produces symptoms.

There are also sometimes *associated movements* of the paralyzed muscles, to which Hitzig has called attention. In these, movements of the sound side excite associated movements in the corresponding muscles of the other side, and attempts to move the affected side result in motion of corresponding muscles of the sound side. Sometimes, also, involuntary movements of the lower extremity occur when the patient attempts to move the corresponding arm. A *posthemiplegic chorea*, first described by Weir Mitchell, should also be mentioned. It is seen not so much in the hemiplegia resulting from cerebral hemorrhage as from focal disease of the posterior end of the internal capsule and optic thalamus. A form of *hypertonia* has recently been described in which the muscles are in a state of exaggerated tonicity without much paralysis. In this condition the position of the spastic limbs varies from time to time. It is seen in some cases in which a cerebral lesion has occurred early in life.

*Trophic symptoms* may appear late in the disease, seen at first in elevation of temperature, increase of color on the paralyzed side of the face, swelling of the eyelids, and contraction of the pupil; also swelling of the hands. It is to be remembered, however, that slight swelling may result from sluggish circulation of blood and lymph, contributed to by diminished muscular contraction and absence of use. In a more advanced stage the extremities become cooler and are often constantly moist. Among these vasomotor events Charcot has placed what he calls *acute malignant decubitus*—a disposition to rapid gangrene of the tissues over the sacrum. It may appear in a few days after the shock, beginning with a circumscribed redness and formation of vesicles, succeeded by deep-reaching necrosis. While this is probably, as Charcot regards it, a vasomotor phenomenon, it is also invited by the usual causes of gangrene in dorsal decubitus, such as irritation by urine, feces, and even inequalities in the bed-clothing. Charcot also considers an occasional arthritis, acute or chronic, a neuropathic event.

*General nutrition* is well maintained, the patient even gaining in flesh at times. More rarely there is rapid wasting.

The *mental condition* of patients who recover partially from the effects of hemorrhage is, for the most part, good, but it not infrequently happens that after a time mental weakness manifests itself in loss of memory and defective intellection, while imbecility sometimes ultimately supervenes.

**Diagnosis.**—The greatest difficulty lies in the differential diagnosis between cerebral hemorrhage, *embolism*, and *thrombosis*. I will, however, defer its consideration until cerebral embolism and thrombosis are treated.

In *fulminating cases* the coma is sometimes so profound that it is difficult or impossible to ascertain the presence of hemiplegia. The symptoms which aid in determining this have been mentioned on page 1157. To these may be added the increase of reflexes on the affected side, present in an early stage of the paralysis, conjugate deviation of the head and eyes, and rigidity of limbs on one side. It is these cases that are sometimes confounded with *epilepsy*, *opium poisoning*, *acute alcoholism*, or *uremia*. In *epilepsy* there is the history of previous convulsions, and

it is only when this has been overlooked that mistakes occur. In *opium poisoning* the coma is slow in its onset, the pupils are uniformly contracted, and the odor of laudanum is often on the breath. But here, too, the victim is often only discovered after coma has thoroughly developed. In *alcoholism* there is the odor of whisky, but many an innocent person has been treated as a drunkard on whose brain lay a clot pressing him to death. The young ambulance or police surgeon is wise who defers his opinion. Sometimes alcoholism and apoplexy are combined, in which event a conservative course will be no less astute. The coma of *uremia* in Bright's disease very strongly simulates that of apoplexy, especially in the rare cases of the latter in which there are convulsions. The presence of dropsy, or, in its absence, of the peculiar anemia of Bright's disease, and the finding of albuminuria and casts should suggest this disease, but albumin may be found in hemiplegia not of renal origin. It is to be remembered, too, that uremic convulsion may terminate in hemorrhage, while Bright's disease is also associated with a state of the arteries which disposes them to rupture. Coma in a puerperal woman, associated with dropsy and albuminuria, means uremia.

**Prognosis.**—To have had a stroke of paralysis is justly regarded as having received a blow which marks the beginning of inevitable decline in health and usefulness, though cases are constantly occurring in which a "slight stroke" is followed by complete recovery. Some of these are probably errors of diagnosis, yet all are not. The cortical hemorrhages are those most frequently followed by recovery. After these come a large number of cases of first attack, from which the patient recovers quite a considerable degree of health. Second attacks are prone to occur, which are more severe, and few survive a third attack.

The unfavorable cases are those in which the coma is profound and lasting. Such are hemorrhages into the ventricles and corona radiata, which are rapidly fatal. Meningeal hemorrhages are serious, but less so when traumatic than when due to diseases of the vessel. Cases attended by early and persistent fever and delirium are unfavorable, as are also cases complicating renal disease and alcoholism. Hemorrhages into the corpus striatum and internal capsule produce persistent hemiplegia, followed by contracture. When cases survive the primary stroke and improvement sets in, this is much more rapid in the first few weeks than later. In explanation of this it has been held that the symptoms thus rapidly removed are indirect focal symptoms, due to pressure of the clot on adjacent nervous tissue, while those more slow to yield are the result of destructive lesion.

**Treatment.**—The patient should be promptly placed in a horizontal position *with the head raised*. This is of the greatest importance, as it constantly happens that a patient in whom consciousness is returning immediately becomes comatose when the head is lowered. *He should then be bled* unless the pulse be small and feeble. The bleeding should be accompanied by a *laxative*, which should be given alone if there be any reason why phlebotomy should not be practiced. In view of the unconscious state of the patient the best laxatives are croton oil and elaterium. Two drops of the former should be mixed in a little glycerin or oil and

carried to the back part of the throat, or  $1/4$  grain (0.0165 gm.) of elaterium, dissolved in a small quantity of water, may be given in the same way. The rectum should be at once cleaned out by an enema of warm water. An ice-bag should be placed on the top of the head, hot water and mustard to the feet, while counterirritation may also be applied to the back of the neck, but it is doubtful whether any of these measures will accomplish much.

*Compression of the carotid artery*, formerly recommended and practiced on empirical grounds, has recently received the indorsement of Horsley and Spencer, these experimenters having found that bleeding from the lenticulostriate artery ceases when the carotid is compressed. It is especially in the ingravescens form that it has been recommended. F. X. Dercum and W. W. Keen<sup>1</sup> report two cases of ingravescens hemorrhage treated by ligation of the common carotid, of which one recovered.

If, after bleeding and purgation, the pulse continues bounding, the *tincture of aconite* or *veratrum viride* may be given in doses of a minim every half-hour until the pulse is influenced. *Iodid of potassium* can hardly be expected to promote absorption of the clot, but may be given if syphilis is suspected. It may, however, facilitate circulation by dilating the blood-vessels.

The foregoing treatment is for the period immediately succeeding hemorrhage. The remainder of treatment consists in measures to protect the patient against the effect of decubitus if this is prolonged, and in maintaining the nutrition of muscles and protecting against contractions. The former is accomplished by attending to the secretions, preventing the irritation of the body by putrid urine and feces or foreign substances like bread-crumbs, by bathing and drying the body thoroughly, by frequent changes of posture. The latter will also guard against pneumonia, which is rather prone to occur on the paralyzed side. This last disease may also be caused by the inspiration of particles of food, liable to happen if there is paralysis of the muscles of deglutition. The second indication is met by massage, faradization, and gymnastics, but they should be deferred for two or three weeks. *Warm salt baths* three or four times a week are useful to the same end. Tonics in the form of iron in small doses, quinin, and strychnin may be given, but alcohol in more than very moderate amounts is contraindicated.

Operative treatment has been suggested to relieve the pressure of a clot in cerebral hemorrhage, and when it is certain that the clot is meningeal, especially after fracture, satisfactory results show that it is justified. Careful attention should be paid to the facts mentioned under topical diagnosis with a view to determining the seat of hemorrhage and the place to trephine. Deep hemorrhage is, however, beyond reach.

## II. EMBOLISM AND THROMBOSIS OF THE CEREBRAL VESSELS.

### A. Of Cerebral Arteries.

SYNONYMS.—*Cerebral Softening; Acute Softening.*

**Definition.**—By *embolism* is meant the plugging of an artery by a foreign body carried by the blood-current from some point in the vascular

<sup>1</sup> "Jour. of Nervous and Mental Disease," September, 1894.

system to a situation beyond which it cannot pass. By *thrombosis* is meant plugging of an artery or vein by a clot formed *in situ*.

**Etiology.**—*Nature and Source of Embolism.*—The embolus is most frequently a vegetation from a diseased valve in the left ventricle. Less commonly it is a fragment of a clot in the same ventricle or in the auricular appendage or in an aneurysm, or it may be a calcareous particle from an atheromatous vessel or a piece of thrombus from the same. Even the territory of the pulmonary veins may contribute an embolus. Embolism is very much more frequent in chronic valvular disease than in primary acute endocarditis. It is prone to occur in recurring valvulitis, and especially in malignant mycotic endocarditis. Pregnancy with or without heart disease, the infectious fevers, and blood dyscrasiæ may be predisposing causes.

The embolus commonly enters the brain by the carotid, especially the left—which furnishes the most direct course—thence through the internal carotid to the *left middle cerebral* in the fissure of Sylvius; more rarely by the *vertebral* and its *posterior cerebral* branch.

*Thrombosis.*—In thrombosis there is also plugging of a living vessel, but by a clot formed *in situ*, which is either primary at the point plugged or secondary about a previous embolus. Some favoring cause commonly exists. This is most frequently roughening due to endarteritis, with or without atheroma. Weak heart and blood dyscrasiæ are also predisposing causes. Ligation of the carotid artery is sometimes followed by thrombosis of cerebral vessels.

The vessels most frequently affected in thrombosis are the *middle cerebral* and the *basilar* in its course or at its bifurcation; but the *vertebral*, the *posterior cerebral*, and the branches of the circle of Willis may be plugged.

*Relative Frequency of Thrombosis and Embolism.*—Embolism has been thought to be more frequent in women, but of 79 cases collected by Newton Pitt at Guy's Hospital, 44 were in men and 35 in women. Thrombosis is considered more common in men. Embolism is rare in children, being more frequent at from 20 to 50; thrombosis in older persons at from 50 to 70.

**Morbid Changes Due to Thrombosis and Embolism.**—*Degeneration and softening of the brain* are the direct result of obstruction of its arteries, and occur sooner or later when the shutting off of the blood-supply is sufficiently complete. The process generally begins within 24 hours and the minimum time required to complete it is from one to two days. The local anatomical product of embolism is much less distinctive in the brain than in the lungs or spleen. Thus, there is almost never a distinct hemorrhagic infarct, though there is often a condition resembling it, the area cut off being infiltrated with blood. At other times the region is paler than in health and slightly softer. In either event the area becomes gradually infiltrated with serum and a more or less complete liquefaction results, presenting a reddish, yellow, or white color, whence, the terms *red softening*, *yellow softening*, or *white softening*. These variations are not the result of any essential difference in the nature of the process, as was formerly thought, but are rather accidental. In

red softening the softened focus happens to contain an unusual amount of extravasated blood, due to punctiform hemorrhage or capillary apoplexy. This blood melts away and stains the softened mass. In yellow softening the proportion of fatty degenerated cells is larger, and it is found, therefore, chiefly in the cortex, where cells prevail. In white softening there are few or no cellular elements, hence the white softening is found in the white nervous matter. It is most characteristically seen about tumors and abscesses. As the gray matter of the cortex is also the most vascular part of the brain, it is here also that we find red softening. Certain superficial yellow spots known as *plaques jaunes* are found at times on the surface of the cortex in old persons. They are sharply circumscribed, measure from two to four centimeters (.8 to 1.6 inches), are made up of a yellow, turbid material sometimes crossed by trabeculae, and are the result of fatty degeneration of peripheral cortical arteries.

*Minutely examined*, the softened areas consist of fatty granules and oil drops, myelin drops, fragments of swollen nerve-fibers, fatty granular cells representing fatty neuroglia and nerve-cells, or leukocytes and neuroglia cells, and perhaps endothelial cells which have *imbibed* the oil drops, arising probably from disintegrated nervous matter. In the yellow softening these constitute the sum of altered materials. In red softening there are added in the early stages blood-disks, later pigment granules or hematoidin crystals, or there is general staining by dissolved hemoglobin. In the white softening the fragments of nerve-fibers together with myelin drops make up the chief bulk, as already stated. If collateral compensatory circulation is set up within two days, the destruction may not go so far, and the nervous elements may resume their function; or if this does not occur and the patient lives, the dead and disintegrated tissue may be gradually absorbed and eventually be replaced by a cyst, while a minute focus of softening may be replaced by indurated cicatricial tissue. If the embolus is derived from an infective focus, as ulcerative endocarditis, an abscess may result.

**Symptoms.**—Neither thrombosis nor embolism of the cerebral arteries is always followed by recognizable symptoms. All the large arteries of the base and the smaller arteries of the surface anastomose so freely that the effects of obstruction are promptly equalized. Nay, more; it is not unusual to find at the necropsies of elderly persons yellow spots of fatty degeneration; the *plaques jaunes* referred to, scattered over the convolutions where nothing was suspected before death. Moreover, softening may take place in the "silent regions" without exciting suspicion.

Very different is it with obstruction of the middle cerebral artery—the artery of the fissure of Sylvius. The clinical aspect differs, however, according as this vessel is plugged at its origin or a little further on in its course. Allusion has already been made (p. 1157) to the two separate systems with which the brain is supplied—the "cortical arteries" (Duret), passing to the cortex, and the "central" arteries, passing to the central ganglia. The central arteries are the first given off by the cerebral branches of the circle of Willis, and are terminal arteries, unprovided with anastomoses. The cortical arteries spring from a network of branches of the cerebral arteries in the pia mater, in which toler-

ably free communication exists between the tertiary branches of the same trunk, and even between the branches of different trunks. These two systems of cortex and center are, however, altogether independent of each other, and no anastomosis takes place between them, the zone at which they meet within the cerebral convolutions. In the case of the middle cerebral artery, when it is obliterated beyond the point at which its "central" branches come off, the superficial parts of the brain are alone affected, and since its branches in the pia mater anastomose with those of the anterior and posterior cerebrals, there may be no softening at all, and but a temporary loss of function. At other times softening does occur, the exact situation and extent of which vary with the arteries plugged. The blood-supply of the two central, the three frontal, and the three parietal convolutions being more or less cut off, there is motor paralysis of the opposite side of the body, and as the lesion is most frequent on the left side, there are right-sided hemiplegia and aphasia; the same phenomena, in fact, as follow hemorrhage, and which may be permanent or transient; or the lesion may be still more limited. The embolus may lodge in the artery passing to the third frontal convolution, or in that of the ascending frontal or ascending parietal. It may lodge in the branch passing to the supramarginal or angular gyrus, or to the lowest branch, which is distributed to the upper convolution of the temporosphenoidal lobe. If, on the other hand, the seat of the lesion is at the point where the Sylvian artery arises from the internal carotid, the central ganglia are involved, and there is almost certain to be softening of the corpus striatum and optic thalamus, because the arteries have no anastomoses, while the cortex escapes entirely because its vessels are distinct.

*Summary of the Effects of Plugging of the Cerebral Vessels:*

*Internal Carotid.*—There may be no symptoms or there may be transient hemiplegia, or permanent hemiplegia and coma ending in death in a week or 10 days. In the first alternative the circulation is maintained by the communicating vessels of the circle of Willis, which ordinarily dilate rapidly. If these vessels are small or absent, permanent hemiplegia and death must result, as a small part of the hemisphere only receives blood by the posterior cerebral. Thrombosis is very likely to extend from an initial focus in the internal carotid to its branches, and may extend to the ophthalmic artery.

*Anterior Cerebral.*—Because of the right-angled direction at which this vessel is given off from the internal carotid, it is rarely obstructed by embolus unless the parent trunk is plugged before this branch is given off, and then the mischief is trifling or *nil*. The symptoms are not so intense probably because the frontal lobe's functions are not so positive.

*Middle Cerebral.*—This is the most frequently plugged of all cerebral vessels. The result is hemiplegia, permanent if the embolus lodges before the central arteries are given off, since softening of the internal capsule ensues. If on the left side, there is aphasia, and there may also be impairment of sensibility for a time. The symptoms vary somewhat, according as one or more of the cortical branches are obstructed by a plug at the point of division of the vessel in the island of Reil. Occlusion of the first branch may produce softening of the third frontal convolution and aphasia if on the left side; occlusion of the second and third branches, softening of the ascending frontal or ascending parietal convolution and hemiplegia, partial when the softening is incomplete; of the fourth branch, softening about the posterior limb of the fissure of Sylvius, and if on the left side, sensory aphasia—defective perception of words—with corresponding impairment of speech.

*Posterior Cerebral.*—Plugging of this branch distributed to the occipital and temporosphenoidal lobes is a rare cause of softening. So far as ascertainable the phenomena are mostly sensory, including hemianesthesia from softening of the teg-



mentum of the crus, or of the internal capsule, or hemianopsia from softening of the cuneus, though the same symptoms may result from interruption of the optic tract when the cortex is intact. Complete but temporary loss of sight has resulted from plugging of one posterior cerebral artery.

*Basilar Artery.*—Total occlusion of this vessel may produce bilateral paralysis from involvement of both motor paths in the pons, with other symptoms of apoplexy of this center—viz., bulbar palsies, irregularity of heart and breathing, spasm, and rarely convulsions; the temperature may rise rapidly to 109° F. (42.6° C.) or thereabouts after an initial fall.

*Vertebral Artery.*—The left is more frequently plugged, rarely alone, along with the basilar. The nuclei of the medulla oblongata are affected, and we have symptoms of acute bulbar palsy.

*Cerebellar Arteries.*—Obstruction of the isolated cerebellar arteries is rare as compared with plugging of the parent trunk in the basilar. Even then the area of cerebral softening is limited, by reason of collateral anastomoses, and the symptoms may be obscured by those due to damage to the pons and medulla oblongata.

Inco-ordination of movement has been reported in one or two cases in which the region supplied by the posterior cerebellar was cut off. Occlusion of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery gives a distinct symptom-complex.

**Diagnosis.**—It has already been said that the chief difficulty lies in the differential diagnosis between cerebral hemorrhage, on the one hand, and embolism and thrombosis on the other. Sometimes, indeed, at first it is impossible. As to *embolism*, both it and hemorrhage are sudden. In embolism the patient is commonly younger, but not always so, and we look for valvular heart disease. According to Charles L. Dana, even in patients say between the ages of 30 and 50, when there is no heart disease, the chances are six to one in favor of hemorrhage. *An apoplectic seizure after parturition is likely to be embolic.* In embolism, too, there is less disturbance of temperature, the paralysis is more likely to precede the coma and convulsions if the latter are present; the turgid face, hard pulse, loud breathing, and greater general disturbance of a serious stroke of apoplexy from hemorrhage are wanting.

In *thrombosis* the difficulty in diagnosis may be even greater. The symptoms of thrombosis are slower in their development, but in the "in-gravescent" form of apoplexy, in which the hemorrhage is gradual, requiring sometimes a day or two, the development of symptoms is correspondingly slow. In thrombosis there are more frequently prodromata in the shape of slight seizures, quickly recovered from. Such events occurring in the aged, when there is evident atheroma of the blood-vessels and weak heart, point to thrombosis, in which, too, there is absence of stertorous breathing, of variations in temperature, and of pupillary disturbance. *Lesions in the pons and cerebellum* are more likely to be hemorrhages.

It is also important to be able to decide whether the obstruction is embolic or thrombotic. In the former the onset is sudden, without premonitory symptoms; in the latter it is gradual, and there are often premonitory symptoms. In embolism there may be convulsive twitchings, but hemiplegia quickly follows, with or without temporary loss of consciousness. In thrombosis the patient has previously complained of headache, vertigo, or tingling in the fingers; then paralysis may begin in one hand or foot and extend slowly, the hemiplegia often remaining partial. Speech may have been embarrassed for some days previous, and the memory defective. In thrombosis due to syphilis, especially, the hemiplegia may come on gradually without loss of consciousness. The same is true of the so-called senile softening, which is generally due to

thrombosis after atheroma of the cerebral arteries. In a few cases the onset is more sudden, and may happen during sleep. The temperature usually has a slight initial fall, followed by rise, as in hemorrhage. In embolism aphasia is quite a characteristic symptom, as it seems to occur more frequently on the left side than on the right.

In both embolism and thrombosis the hemiplegia tends to improve rapidly unless the vessel obstructed be a large one or there be rupture of a collateral branch. It is true that acute softening may terminate fatally within 24 hours, but usually the patient survives the onset, and at the worst dies after several weeks, the phenomena of the chronic stage being almost identical with those of that stage after hemorrhage. Spastic symptoms may also occur, and there is a tendency to the characteristic mobile spasm.

**Prognosis.**—A patient rarely dies of a first attack of cerebral embolism, unless a very large vessel is obstructed, such as the internal carotid or basilar, whose occlusion is fatal; next in seriousness after these is plugging of the middle cerebral and vertebral, while obstruction of the two vertebrals is always fatal. Every succeeding attack increases the danger. Embolism is less serious than thrombosis; and thrombosis due to syphilitic disease is more hopeful than senile softening. Sudden severity in thrombosis is serious, and deranged breathing is an unfavorable symptom. Convulsions may be a result of syphilitic thrombosis. When the embolism is due to valvular heart disease, the condition is likely to recur; when due to other causes, not. Thrombosis is prone to recur, especially when due to atheroma.

**Treatment.**—Neither thrombosis nor embolism demands blood-letting, as does hemorrhage. Indeed, it is strongly contraindicated. *Rest in bed*, with head raised, is important. If syphilis is the cause of thrombosis, it should receive the usual treatment—the iodid of potassium in ascending doses until doses of a dram or more are reached. There is no treatment for atheroma. Attention should be paid to the heart, kidneys, and bowels. The heart is commonly feeble, and digitalis and strophanthus are needed to keep its action uniform and strong, by which one condition of thrombosis is removed. The urine is scanty and highly colored, but the treatment for the heart is also the treatment for the scanty secretion, which calls also for diluents. The bowels should be kept freely open to aid in promoting the circulation. The latter is aided by nitroglycerin, which may be given in doses of 1/100 grain (0.0066 gm.) every two hours. The iodid of potassium is useful also for this purpose. Its effects are more permanent than those of nitroglycerin. From 5 to 15 grains of the iodid (0.33 to 0.99 gm.) should be given three times a day.

Moderate stimulation is beneficial. The aromatic spirit of ammonia and alcohol are the most useful for this purpose. Mental excitement is to be especially avoided after a return to consciousness, and physical rest should be continued. Stimulants are then best discontinued, or continued in great moderation. Care should be taken to protect against the effects of decubitus.

Unfortunately there is no treatment which will restore softened brain matter, although a certain amount of function may be vicariously

assumed. The same measures calculated to maintain nutrition and muscular integrity as are recommended in the treatment of hemorrhage should be taken.

### *B. Of the Cerebral Sinuses and Veins.*

**Description.**—Thrombosis occurs in the sinuses rather than veins and is *primary* or *secondary*. Primary thrombosis is the result of a state of the blood and circulation; secondary, a consequence of disease adjacent to the sinuses. The former is much the rarer, occurring half as often.

*Primary thrombosis* is met in the longitudinal sinus, more rarely in the lateral, sometimes in the cavernous. It is found associated with general malnutrition and prostration, more frequently in children during the first six months of life as the result of exhausting maladies, especially diarrhea. It is met also in older children. Brayton Ball and others have shown its association in young girls with chlorosis and anemia. It occurs in the aged also as the result of exhausting disease, like pulmonary tuberculosis and cancer.

Coagulation is favored by the trabeculae which cross the cavity of the sinus, and by irregularities in the shape and lining of the latter. It may or may not be associated with phlebitis.

Very little is known of primary thrombosis of the cerebral veins, except that it may occur in veins of the convexity as the result of meningitis, and from other causes that produce thrombosis of sinuses.

*Secondary thrombosis* occurs at any age, and is the result of disease adjacent to a sinus, commonly caries of bone, and is especially frequent as the result of disease of the internal ear. It spreads more frequently from the posterior wall of the middle ear, but also from the mastoid sinuses. Fracture, suppurative disease outside of the skull, especially erysipelas, and tumor compressing the sinus may produce it.

**Symptoms.**—There may be no symptoms in primary thrombosis, or there may be *nausea* and *vomiting*, *headache*, and *hebetude* increasing to *coma*. Dilatation of the pupils, choked disks, and paresis have been reported.

Secondary thrombosis is a septic process. It is commonly announced by a *chill*, followed by *fever* and *occipital pain*, succeeding on earache with suppurative otitis. The sinuses occluded are those near the ear, but the blood escapes by other channels, and the brain substance is not seriously invaded. The *symptoms of meningitis* are soon added. They are headache, somnolence, and stupor, or there may be active delirium and convulsions, rigidity, or optic neuritis, all the results of meningitis. Death is most frequently due to *suppurative pulmonary pyemia*, as was the case in 70 per cent. of Newton Pitt's cases, and the appearance of the latter disease under the circumstances is almost conclusive evidence of previous sinus thrombosis.

**Prognosis.**—This is always grave. The average duration of the secondary disease is about three weeks, and its termination is almost always fatal. Pitt reports a case of recovery in a boy of ten who had otorrhea for years, after removal by operation of a foul clot from the lateral sinus.

**Treatment.**—For primary thrombosis there is no treatment except that for its cause. For secondary, operative treatment is indicated by trephining or other measures to give exit to pus. Quinin and restorative measures are indicated. Gowers lays particular stress on the use of the tincture of the chlorid of iron.

### INTRACRANIAL ANEURYSM.

**Definition.**—Intracranial aneurysms are of two kinds, miliary and those of larger size. The former have been considered when treating of hemorrhage. The latter vary in size from that of a pea to a walnut.

**Distribution.**—Larger aneurysms affect the larger arteries at the base of the brain in the following order:

1. Middle cerebral.
2. Basilar.
3. Internal carotid.
4. Anterior cerebral.

The anterior or posterior communicating and vertebral arteries are also occasional seats; the posterior cerebral and inferior cerebellar rarely. William Osler found 12 of these aneurysms in 800 autopsies, and Newton Pitt 19 in 1900.

**Etiology.**—Intracranial aneurysms are found rather more frequently in the male sex, and most frequently between the ages of from 10 to 60. Osler and Pitt each found one at the age of six. Heredity exercises some influence. Endarteritis and embolism, both of which weaken the vessels are the chief causes. The former may be syphilitic or simple. The presence of endocarditis should especially invite examination for them at autopsies.

**Symptoms.**—*Death from apoplexy*, owing to rupture of the aneurysm, may be the first intimation. Not only are there often no symptoms, but when present they are vague. They may be those of tumor at the base of the brain, including optic neuritis and paralysis of the third and other cranial nerves. There are rarely *convulsions*. There may be *head-ache*, *vertigo*, *nausea*, *hebetude*, and even *coma*, *hemiplegia*, and *hemianopsia*. A *murmur* may be heard on auscultating the skull, while occasionally the patient himself is conscious of a murmur or recognizes the pulsations in his head.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually impossible, but the foregoing symptoms, associated with endarteritis, may excite suspicion. *Syphilitic disease* being as likely to produce tumor, the history of its presence gives no assistance in diagnosis.

**Treatment.**—None exists which can be specifically directed to the disease.

### THE CEREBRAL PALSIES OF CHILDREN.

**Definition.**—Referring to the division already made of the motor path into an upper cortico-spinal segment, extending from the cells of the cortex to the gray matter of the cord, and a lower spino-muscular,

extending from the ganglia of the anterior horns to the motorial end-plates, the diseases now to be considered have their anatomical seat in the former, and are characterized by paralysis, with spasm or disordered movements, exaggerated reflexes, normal electrical reactions, without rapid or extreme wasting. They result from a destructive lesion of the motor centers, or of the pyramidal tract in the hemisphere, internal capsule, crus, or pons. They are hemiplegic, diplegic, or paraplegic.

#### SPASTIC INFANTILE HEMIPLEGIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Hemiplegia spastica cerebialis* (Heine); *Hemiplegia spastica infantilis* (Bernhardt); *Acute Encephalitis der Kinder* (Strümpell); *Die atrophische Cerebrallähmung* (Henoch); *Agénèse cérébrale* (Cazauvielh); *Sclérose cérébrale atrophie partielle* (other French writers).

Hemiplegia in infants and children with spastic symptoms.

**Historical.**—In 1884 Strümpell, in a paper, "Ueber die acute Encephalitis der Kinder," called attention to the possibility of encephalitis in children. Numerous papers on infantile hemiplegia have appeared in Germany, France, and America, among which may be especially mentioned those of Gaudard, Wallenberg, Jules Simon, Morse, Ross, Gowers, Sarah J. McNutt, Weir Mitchell, B. Sachs, Wharton Sinkler, H. C. Wood, J. Lewis Smith, and William Osler.

**Distribution.**—The disease is somewhat more common in girls than in boys, 63 out of 120 cases studied by Osler at the Nervous Infirmary in Philadelphia being of this sex. Of these cases 15 were congenital, 45 arose in the first year, 22 in the second, 14 in the third, one in the fourth, three in the fifth, sixth, and seventh, one in the eighth, ninth, tenth, and older. In ten the age of onset was not given. The hemiplegia was right-sided in 68 and left-sided in 52 cases.

**Etiology.**—Among the causes may be mentioned abnormal conditions of the mother during pregnancy, including accidents, possibly disease, especially syphilis, in a few cases fright or distress, the effect of the last two being doubtful. Especially frequent causes are difficult or abnormal labor, injury with forceps producing depressions and fractures of the cranial bones during delivery. After birth are penetrating wounds of the head, ligation of the common carotid, and infectious diseases, including whooping-cough, diphtheria, scarlet-fever, measles, meningitis, typhoid fever, vaccinia, and mumps. Previous convulsions may cause the lesion on which the paralysis depends, and in a few cases embolism may be responsible.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid states of the brain found at autopsy are mainly *sclerosis* and *porencephalia*, the latter a defect consisting in arrest of development of the brain resulting in the absence of convolutions or even lobes, causing irregular subpial cavities. *Embolism* and *thrombosis* of vessels, especially of the Sylvian artery, and *hemorrhage* into the ventricle and substance of the brain, have been found in a few cases. The sclerosis involves either groups of convolutions, an entire lobe, or even an entire hemisphere. The *skull* may be flattened on the affected side, broad and prominent above the mastoid processes, sometimes thickened. The *dura* may be thickened and adherent and in one case contained extensive osseous plates; the *arachnoid* turbid and thickened and the amount

of cerebrospinal fluid increased. The *pia mater* may be thickened and adherent, and drag portions of the cortex away on being removed, leaving a roughened surface, while there may be nodular projections of sclerosed tissue. The *reduction of weight* of the sclerosed hemisphere may be very considerable; in one case, referred to by Osler in his monograph, the atrophied hemisphere weighed 5 1/2 ounces (169 gm.), the normal being 20 ounces (653 gm.). The lateral *ventricle* may be greatly *dilated*, and the brain tissue over it very thin, while *cysts* have been found in the sclerosed areas—the remnants of old hemorrhages. The Rolandic area is that most frequently involved.

In 90 cases studied by Osler the lesions in 50 were atrophy and sclerosis, in 24 porencephalia, and in 16 embolism, thrombosis, or hemorrhage.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms are complex and varied, but may be divided into three classes: those of the *onset*, those pertaining to the *paralysis*, and the *residual* symptoms.

The most important symptoms of the onset are *convulsions* and *coma*, although the hemiplegia may come on suddenly, without spasm or loss of consciousness, in children apparently healthy. In the majority of cases, however, the disease begins with convulsions, partial or general. Loss of consciousness almost always accompanies the convulsions, and may last from a few hours to many days. Rarely coma occurs without convulsions. Among other symptoms may be mentioned *fever*, transient or persistent; according to Strümpell and Guadard, it is an invariable accompaniment of the convulsions. *Delirium* is a common symptom, as is also *soreness* of the general surface. *Vomiting* and *screaming spells* are also noticed.

The *hemiplegia*, which is noticed as soon as the child recovers consciousness, is usually complete. Less commonly there is first, *paresis*, which gradually extends to complete loss of power; and in some instances a total *paralysis* is established after repeated convulsions. The *face* is not always involved, and, as a rule, in facial paralysis of cerebral origin the superior muscles are intact, and the child can close the eyes and elevate the brows. The facial palsy usually disappears rapidly and completely.

As to residual symptoms, the *residual paralysis is most marked in the arm*, which is subject to slow wasting, and is commonly useless for the ordinary purposes of life. The *atrophy is moderate*, but there may be arrested development, leaving a wasted and withered member. In extreme cases the arm is held close to the side, the forearm strongly flexed at right angles and in a semiprone position, the hand flexed and the fingers contracted, the palm usually embracing the thumb. Motion may be almost lost in the arm and completely in the fingers, though in most cases there is considerable power of movement, the patient being able to lift the arm above the head, while flexion and extension can be made at the elbow and wrist. The finger and more delicate movements of the hand are rarely recovered. The *leg*, as a rule, *recovers more rapidly* and completely than the arm, and the palsy may disappear entirely in it, while it rarely does in the upper extremity. In the leg the wasting is also less pronounced, while arrested development is also less frequent. A persistent halt is apt to remain—indeed, almost always does—as evidence of impaired power; this may consist in simply favoring the affected side, noticeable only on rapid walking. A

decided dragging of the limb is, however, more usual, and there may be tremor of the leg while moving.

The frequency with which *rigidity* is present has given rise to one of the names of the disease, *spastic infantile hemiplegia*. It is not, however, an invariable symptom, and the paralyzed limbs may be relaxed a long time after paralysis sets in. When rigidity is present, it is lessened during sleep, and is increased by emotion and forcible attempts to overcome the spasm. Contracture may ultimately result, after which relaxation is no longer possible. A form of rigidity without much paralysis is known as *postapoplectic hemi-hypertonia*, and has been previously referred to.

The *reflexes* are almost always *increased* in the affected limbs, ankle clonus being often obtainable in addition to exaggerated knee-jerk. The reflexes may even be increased on the sound side. Rectus clonus and clonus of the flexors of the fingers are rarely present, while in a very few cases the reflexes are absent.

*Sensation* is rarely affected, but vasomotor derangements are sometimes present. *Electrical reactions* are *normal*, as a rule.

Posthemiplegic *chorea*—*hemiataxia*—is not infrequent. More uncommon are *mobile spasm* and *athetosis* and posthemiplegic *tremor*. These interesting symptoms were first described by S. Weir Mitchell and Hammond in a study of cases of cerebral palsy.

*Aphasia* is present in a majority of cases almost invariably transitory, associated most commonly with right hemiplegia, very rarely with left.

*Defects of intelligence* are very common, the degree of feeble-mindedness ranging from low-grade imbecility to total idiocy. Psychoses may occur late in life, even when there have been no defects in childhood.

*Epilepsy* is very frequent, and is sometimes confined to the paralyzed side, but also tends to become general. The attacks usually begin within two or three years, sometimes within a few weeks, after the onset of the hemiplegia, but may be delayed from eight to ten years, or even longer. The seizures may present *three well-defined degrees*—the first, in which the child is simply dazed for a moment or two, or longer, without any motor involvement; second, Jacksonian epilepsy, without loss of consciousness, in which the spasms are confined to the affected side,<sup>1</sup> and third, general convulsions, beginning in the paralyzed limbs, and usually accompanied by loss of consciousness. The Jacksonian epilepsy is most common, but all forms may occur in any one case.

**Diagnosis.**—Infantile *spinal* paralysis (anterior poliomyelitis), most frequently must be excluded, usually without difficulty. The history of the case, including the presence of some of the causes named, the frequent onset with convulsions, the hemiplegia, the absence of rapid wasting of the affected muscles, the retained electrical reactions, are characteristic of infantile cerebral hemiplegia in its early stages; while rigidity of muscles, increased reflexes, the peculiar gait, and residual palsy, with mental imbecility and epileptic seizures, distinguish the later stage.

*Tumor of the brain* sometimes produces similar symptoms. Tubercu-

<sup>1</sup> Jacksonian epilepsy is usually without loss of consciousness, unless the convulsions are very severe or involve a large portion of the body.

losis and glioma are the forms most common in children. *Pressure paralysis* by obstetrical forceps affects the face and upper extremities, but other symptoms are wanting, and it is scarcely likely to be confounded with infantile hemiplegia.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—The prognosis is favorable so far as life and the recovery of considerable locomotive power are concerned; unfavorable as to recovery from mental defect and epilepsy. An institution for feeble-minded children, in which the subjects have the benefit of training and watching, is the safest permanent home for them.

#### BILATERAL INFANTILE SPASTIC HEMIPLEGIA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Spastic Rigidity of the New-born* (Little); *Tonic Contraction of extremities*; *Essential Contractions*; *Permanentes Kinder-Tetanus* (Stromeyer); *Spastic Diplegia*; *Spastic Paralysis of Children* (Adams); *Spastic Diplegia* (Gee); *Spasme Musculaire Idiopathique* (Delpech); *Birth Palsies* (Gowers); *Little's Disease*.

**Definition.**—Double hemiplegia in infants and children with spastic symptoms.

**Historical.**—Delpech was probably the first to describe the disease fairly correctly. To the German orthopedic surgeon, Heine, belongs the credit of first appreciating these conditions and their cerebral origin and separating them from common infantile paralysis. His paper was written in 1860. Little's paper, published two years later in England, so attracted attention that his name became applied to the disorder. Stromeyer, Adams, and Rupprecht have furnished careful accounts.

**Etiology.**—Most cases of bilateral hemiplegia in children date from birth, and are the result of *injury during birth*. The infectious fevers are responsible for a certain number, and a few are direct results of convulsions. In a word, the causes are those of infantile hemiplegia. J. H. W. Rhein<sup>1</sup> reports a case of spastic diplegia following pertussis.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As may be inferred from the name, the lesions are bilateral and involve motor areas of the cortex almost solely. They consist in *sclerosis* or *porencephalous* defect, of which the most frequent primary cause is compression by a blood-clot due to meningeal hemorrhage from the veins or longitudinal sinus. A meningo-encephalitis may, however, be responsible for the sclerosis.

Descending degeneration of the pyramidal tracts or imperfect development of these tracts has been found in a few cases.

**Symptoms.**—These are to be distinguished from those of the next form, cerebral spastic paraplegia, which the disease closely resembles when the arms are so slightly affected that the palsy is scarcely appreciable. The cerebral spastic paraplegia of childhood is due to lesions similar to those of the bilateral spastic hemiplegia. In the diplegic state *all the extremities* must be more or less *spastic*, although the legs almost always are more so than the arms. These cases are further characterized, as are those of spastic paraplegia, by their occurrence *at or very soon after birth*.

<sup>1</sup> Rhein, J. H. W. "Spastic Diplegia Following Pertussis," "Journal of Amer. Med. Assoc.," March 4, 1905.



There may be *convulsions* or a prolonged succession of convulsions immediately after birth. After this or without it there may be noticed a *limpness* or flaccidity of *muscles*, an expression of *paresis*, often overlooked, because present at a time when the muscular development of the child is so slight that little is expected of it. Soon, however, the *inability to hold up its head* may be observed, and when the time comes for it to walk, it is noticed that the limbs are clumsily used, and when examined, they are found to be *stiff*. As the child grows older it slowly acquires some power so as to be able to sit, but the *legs* are *crossed* and the head is not well supported by the neck muscles. If it is held up, the legs are extended and strongly adducted, and crossed with the feet in the pes equinus or equinovarus position. Occasionally the legs are partially *flexed*, while stiffness varies greatly, involving, in extreme cases, the whole body, sometimes one side more than the other. It is sometimes constant, at other times not. It may be greater on one side than another. The *arms* are usually *stiff* in flexion.

To the spastic symptoms described are added, in certain cases, *spasm* and certain movements known as *athetoid*. In the former, in an attempt at voluntary movement, as taking hold of an object, the fingers are thrown out in a stiff, spasmodic, or irregular manner, or there may be constant irregular movements of arms and shoulders, movements which are usually characterized as choreic. In fact, such cases have been named *chorea spastica*, being differentiated from the congenital choreas by the spastic feature. Spasm rarely affects the muscles of the face, though it does occasionally, causing a continual *grimacing*, which does not always disappear during sleep.<sup>1</sup>

The *athetosis* is double or bilateral, resulting in the most grotesque and distorted movements. They consist in a constant flexion and extension of muscles, more particularly of those of the fingers of one hand and forearm. Flexion of the fingers of one hand may take place, while those of the other may be extending, and the same may be true of different fingers of the same hand. The shoulder and trunk muscles may be also affected, producing a rhythmical and orderly twisting and bending of the body; or those of the neck, producing a turning of the head from side to side. These movements are all increased under excitement or with the effort to do anything.

*Mental defect*, consisting in imbecility and various grades of idiocy, is more or less characteristic of these cases, but is commonly less than in infantile hemiplegia.

The form resulting from premature birth should be distinguished from that caused by injuries at birth, or by lesions acquired later, as in the former convulsions and athetoid movements do not usually occur, mentality may not be affected, and improvement may be slowly progressive even after many years.

<sup>1</sup> Athetosis was first thoroughly studied by W. A. Hammond in 1871, also by Charcot, who considered it identical with posthemiplegic chorea or a modified form of it. This is probably correct in cases when there has been hemiplegia, and athetosis occurs in the muscles of the side which was hemiplegic. It occurs in connection with hemiplegic weakness and contraction due to tumor of the brain. Frequently it is seen as a sequel of infantile palsy. Epileptics, idiots, and alcoholics also, exhibit it in the bilateral form. Rarely it is an independent affection, said to be the result of cold or psychical derangement, and is even held to be congenital.

## INFANTILE SPASTIC PARAPLEGIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Paraplegia cerebralis spastica* (Heine); *Tetanoid Pseudoparaplegia* (Seguin); *Spastic Spinal Paralysis* (Erb); *Tabes dorsalis spasmodique* (Charcot).

**Definition.**—Spastic paralysis of the legs in infants and children.

**Historical.**—A common affection of children, though only recently understood, it was fully described and correctly named by Heine in 1849. Delpech and Stromeyer in Germany and Adams and Little in England also described it. Erb and Seeligmüller in Germany and Gee in England brought the subject to the notice of physicians, and Erb contrasted it with the spastic paraplegia of adults. Ross, Hadden, Gowers, d'Heilly, Gilbert, and Osler have treated the subject as one of the cerebral palsies of children. It must be distinguished from the spastic paralysis occurring in adults and found in a very few cases to be due to primary degeneration of the pyramidal tracts.

**Etiology.**—The causes are those of spastic diplegia and infantile hemiplegia, and also premature birth, the child being born at a period when the central motor tracts are very imperfectly developed; premature birth causes an arrest in the development of these tracts.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This is less known than the morbid anatomy of the other forms of cerebral palsy. It may be due to cerebral lesion involving especially the centers for the lower limbs, to imperfect development of the motor tracts, or to other causes. A few cases with necropsy are recorded.

**Symptoms.**—These are almost *identical* with those already described as belonging to the *spastic paraplegia of adults*, with which the earlier writer classed it. Spastic paralysis of the lower extremities, dating from birth or appearing within the first few years of life, with talipes equinus or equinovarus, adductor spasm, rigid stiff gait, the patient walking on his toes or by crossed-legged progression—*all without wasting*—these are, in a word, the symptoms. The order of sequence of events is very similar to that described under spastic diplegia. In attempting to walk the heels are everted and knees approximated, because of spasm of the adductors, which may be so strong as to make it impossible to separate the thighs. The spastically extended legs may, however, be gradually forced into flexion after the manner of the “lead-pipe” contraction. If, however, the attempt be made to extend the leg, the spasm returns. If the extension be gradually insisted upon, it often happens that when the extension is nearly complete, the spasm suddenly completes it, as the spring acts on the blade of a pocket-knife, whence the name “clasp-knife” rigidity.

*Mental imbecility* is not so serious as in spastic diplegia or even as in infantile hemiplegia, and may be entirely absent, especially in those cases resulting from premature birth.

**Diagnosis.**—The distinction between *spastic diplegia* and *paraplegia* is not a very important one. The two conditions are probably the results of different degrees of similar lesions having different locations. There is an affection of children known as *pseudoparalytic rigidity*, idiopathic contraction with rigidity, or tonic contraction of the extremities, with which it is sometimes confounded, but the following table of differences from Osler's monograph will aid in separating the two conditions.

## PSEUDOPARALYTIC RIGIDITY.

Follows a prolonged illness. Is often associated with rickets, laryngismus stridulus, and the so-called hydrocephaloid state.

Begins in hands and feet as carpopedal spasm; often confined to hands and arms.

Spasms painful and attempts at extension cause pain.

Intermittent and of transient duration.

## SPASTIC PARALYSIS; DIPLEGIA AND PARAPLEGIA.

Usually exists from birth. History of difficult labor [or of premature labor], of asphyxia neonatorum, or of convulsions.

Arms rarely involved without legs and not in so marked a degree.

Usually painless.

Variable in intensity, but continuous.

The spasm in the pseudo cases is altogether more severe and difficult to overcome. The disease is associated with rickets and other constitutional diseases.

*Tetany* is characterized by a different history and causation. Bilateral rigidity may also be produced by *tumors* of the pons and cerebellum.

**Treatment.**—The treatment varies with the stage existing at the time the physician is called. If in the stage of initial convulsion, there is no remedy like chloral, which should be given in doses sufficient to control the fits. In the mild degrees, or with a view to keeping up an effect first obtained by chloral, the bromids may be used. If chloral fails, chloroform may be inhaled.

In established paralysis medicines do not avail much and recoveries are rare. Hygiene and good food, gymnastics, manipulation, massage, passive motion, and surgical appliances may be used. Baths and electricity should not be forgotten.

The epileptic convulsions should be treated as when occurring under other conditions, though the cortical lesions occasioning the disease preclude any expectation of permanent relief. Operative procedure has been suggested in certain selected cases and carried out, but with results which have been disappointing.

The mental deficiencies are best treated in an institution for feeble minded children, where all such cases should be taken, whatever the circumstances of the parents.

## HERPES ZOSTER.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Acute hemorrhagic inflammation of the dorsal root ganglia; zona; cingulum; ignis saccr; zoster; shingles.*

**Definition.**—Herpes zoster, as shown by the studies of Head and Campbell, is an acute inflammation of the posterior ganglia of the spinal nerve-roots associated with extravasations of blood and destruction of the ganglion cells and their axis cylinder processes.

**Etiology.**—There is usually a specific cause. In some cases there is a prodromal period of illness and neuralgic pain, on the third or fourth day of which the eruption makes its appearance. Atmospheric influences, such as severe cold and dampness, may act as causes. So may checking of profuse perspiration and mechanical violence producing injury to nerves, all favored by lowered resisting power due to mental and physical fatigue. Arsenic

has been regarded as a cause and this belief has the support of such an authority as Jonathan Hutchinson.

**Symptoms.**—The chief symptom is a painful vesicular eruption, along the course of the afferent spinal nerves, covering their respective skin fields and is therefore correspondingly irregular. It is, as a rule, confined to one side of the body, though in rare instances, especially about the head, it invades both sides. According to the locality, it is called *zoster capitis*, *z. faciei*, *z. orbicularis*, *z. nuchæ*, *z. brachialis*, *z. pectoralis*, *z. abdominalis*, and *z. femoralis*, and in these different varieties corresponding ganglia are involved; the Gasserian ganglion in *zoster* of the face, the otic ganglion in *z. orbicularis* which may be complicated with transient paralysis and sometimes severe auditory and visual symptoms. On the head it may invade the scalp as well as the forehead, appearing in the course of the supraorbital nerve and upward over the scalp. The circular involvement of the chest, *zoster pectoralis*, whence the name *herpes zoster*, is rarely complete, indeed seldom embraces half the circumference.

Everywhere there is the same severe burning pain in the seat of the eruption which is seated on an angry red surface. While rupture of the vesicles is infrequent, their contents may sometimes become purulent and result in chronic ulceration. There may be an extension of the process from the posterior ganglia to the adjacent meninges, causing pains down the spine, girdle pains, and exaggerated knee-jerks with leukocytosis.

It is met in both sexes, in children as well as adults. In the case of persons past middle life, the disease is often very exhausting, being sometimes the beginning of a decline in health which is permanent. Among the sequelæ is a most inveterate form of neuralgia.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is most favorable in children, and in ordinary circumstances ten days to three weeks suffice to cover its duration, although it may be prolonged much beyond this period. Subjects rarely have more than one attack, although Dühring refers to a case of Kaposi which had nine relapses all on the right side of the body but not in exactly the same region. The disease commonly runs an acute course, terminating spontaneously in recovery except in those rare cases followed by neuralgia.

**Treatment**—This appears to be without effect in cutting short the disease and is commonly limited to soothing local applications. The pain is often so severe as to require the hypodermic injection of morphine. Morphine may be employed locally in the shape of a dusting powder. Solutions of carbolic acid ten to 15 grains to an ounce of water (0.3–0.5 gm. to 30 c.c.), may be used locally, and it is generally comforting to have the parts protected from the atmosphere by a light covering. Dusting with stearate of zinc is a soothing treatment.

## GENERAL OR LOCALIZED HYPOTONIA OF THE MUSCLES IN CHILDHOOD.

SYNONYMS.—*Myatonia Congenita*; *Congenital Myohypotonia*.

**Definition.**—A congenital affection consisting in atrophy with corresponding weakness of muscles (hypotonia and atonia), especially of the extremities and more of the lower; associated with loss more or less complete of the tendon reflexes. In advanced cases the weakness resembles paralysis, but closer observation discovers feeble contractions in the muscles but not sufficient to move the limbs. The muscles of the trunk and the neck are most rarely affected, while those of the eye, tongue and throat escape, as does the diaphragm, while the intercostal muscles may be invaded. The electrical reaction is affected proportionately to the myatonia. Intelligence and sensation are undisturbed. Neither hereditation nor family tendency seem to play any part. Although always congenital the symptoms are not always noticed immediately after birth. Oppenheim who was the first to investigate it believes the morbid change is in the muscles which are arrested in their development, and thinks it has no relation to *muscular dystrophy*. He admits the possibility of disease in the cells of the anterior horns of the cord whence it is, however, distinct, the latter developing acutely in a previously normal child.

Congenital myatonia differs from *progressive muscular dystrophy* especially in the absence of family tendency, in being congenital, and in the absence of progressive increase in the symptoms; from *amaurotic family idiocy* in that in the latter the symptoms increase and the ophthalmological changes are pathognomonic. It occurs in more than one member of a family.

No case came to necropsy until one described by Spiller<sup>1</sup> in 1905 in which, however, no changes in the nervous system were found, but the muscles were wasted, in places almost absent, while a large amount of fatty connective tissue was present with increase of its nuclei. The muscles presented also in places a hyaloid appearance. Postmortem rigidity was delayed. The microscopic examination showed arrest of development of the muscular fibers, but no change in the central nervous system or peripheral nerves. A still later necropsy seemed to show in that case some alteration of the nerve cells of the spinal cord.

Improvement has been observed in some instances.

## MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS OF THE BRAIN AND SPINAL CORD.

SYNONYMS.—*Insular Sclerosis*; *Disseminated Nodular Sclerosis*; *Sclérose en plaques*.

**Definition.**—A chronic affection of the brain and spinal cord, consisting in the presence of numerous sclerotic patches scattered through the nerve centers, characterized especially by intention tremor, scanning speech, and nystagmus.

<sup>1</sup> Contributions from the Laboratory of Neuropathology, University of Pennsylvania, for the year 1905

**Etiology.**—Its precise cause is unknown. The infectious diseases, especially scarlet fever, are alleged causes; so are cold, exposure, mental emotion, and syphilis, but without definite foundation. Hereditary predisposition has been noticed. The disease is more common between the ages of 18 and 35, though Strümpell met a case which came to autopsy at 60. Both sexes are equally subject. Prichard states that more than 50 cases have been reported in children, but it is doubtful whether the diagnosis was invariably correct. It has been thought that the disease depends on anomalies of the vessels, but this view is not held by all.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The sclerosed patches are widely scattered through the brain and cord, rarely in the cord alone. They may generally be recognized by their gray color and unnatural firmness. On section, they appear as grayish-red areas. Histologically they consist of thickened neuroglia traversed by a few healthy nerve-fibers. In the vessels there is an increase of the nuclei and, later, a thickening of the walls. Fatty granular cells are present in fresh cases. Many of the axis-cylinders are preserved in the sclerotic patches for quite a long time after destruction of the medullary sheaths. The favorite seats of the plaques in the brain are the centrum ovale, the walls of the lateral ventricles, the corpus callosum, and the cerebellum; while they are quite numerous in the pons, less so in the medulla oblongata, but numerous in the cord, especially the white substance. The brain cortex is not often invaded.

**Symptoms.**—By no means every case of multiple sclerosis can be recognized, so often are the symptoms united with those of other lesions whose effects predominate, while the slowness of the onset necessitates delay in the recognition of even typical cases. Typical cases do, however, occur, and they present a set of symptoms whence their recognition is more or less easy.

One of the most important of these symptoms is *tremor*, known as "*intention tremor*," because associated with any voluntary effort to perform an act, as picking up an object, raising a glass of water to the lips, or apposing the ends of the fingers of the two hands. This does not prevent the ultimate attainment of purpose. When the patient is quiet, the tremor ceases, and in this respect it can be differentiated from the trembling of paralysis agitans. It is not confined to the arms, but occurs also in the head and trunk, so that the head trembles when it is raised from the pillow. It is increased by excitement.

Another characteristic symptom is what is known as *scanning speech*, a slow, measured, yet indistinct and obscure utterance, depending upon disturbances in the innervation of the tongue and larynx, probably due to the presence of sclerotic patches in the pons and medulla oblongata. There may be tremor in the tongue and lips when speaking. The third symptom is *nystagmus*—oscillatory or lateral movements of the eyeball when the eyes are directed to an object. In addition there may be *spastic symptoms* manifested chiefly in the presence of *increased reflexes*—including periosteal as well as tendon reflexes—in both upper and lower extremities, but the skin reflexes remain normal. There is ankle clonus, and the gait is often spastic. *Parosis*, at first absent, ultimately appears, amounting at times to complete *paralysis*. Indeed, spastic rigidity and paresis may be among the earliest signs of the disease. The sphincters remain intact, at least until toward the

close. There are *no disturbances of sensibility* in the majority of cases. *Optic atrophy* is present in 40 per cent. of cases and in 15 per cent. in *tabes dorsalis*, and associated with such *derangements of vision* as amblyopia, achromatopsia, and even blindness. *Optic neuritis* may occur with subsequent atrophy, especially in the temporal halves of the optic nerve. There may be also derangements of innervation with diplopia.

*Mental weakness* and *imbecility* are sometimes present, more rarely *melancholia* or *exaltation*. *Apoplectiform* attacks also occur, following prodromal symptoms, such as *vertigo* and *headache*, and succeeded by hemiplegia, which, however, subsequently disappears.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not difficult in typical cases. The intention tremor, the scanning speech, and nystagmus are characteristic, and when associated with spastic weakness, the diagnosis of multiple sclerosis is probably correct. The apoplectiform seizures and mental weakness are also valuable signs. When the symptoms are mixed with those of other nervous lesions, diagnosis is not so easy. In *paralysis agitans* tremor occurs during rest as well as motion; in multiple sclerosis only when motion is attempted. Strümpell says: "The circumstance, indeed, that the anomalous cases will not properly fit the molds of any other form of disease should make us think of the possibility of multiple sclerosis."

The disease known as *pseudo sclérose en plaques*, described by Westphal, seems to have most of the symptoms of multiple sclerosis except nystagmus. The tremor movements are said to be more violent. Strümpell has found slight degeneration of the pyramidal tracts in a few cases of this kind. It is probably a diffuse sclerosis which is not always easy to detect with the microscope, but may be sufficient to cause a peculiar hardness of the brain and cord before they have been put in any hardening fluid.

**Prognosis.**—This is unfavorable after a long and tedious course, terminating in the bedridden state.

**Treatment.**—This is unavailing. The end possibly may be delayed by galvanism and tepid bathing.

## PARETIC DEMENTIA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Chronic Diffuse Meningo-encephalitis; Dementia Paralytica; General Paresis; Progressive General Paralysis of the Insane.*

**Definition.**—A chronic progressive meningo-encephalitis, or meningo-rachitis, with resulting mental and motor derangements, terminating in dementia and paralysis.

**Historical.**—Boyle in 1822 and Calmeil in 1826, by their descriptions, first separated paralytic dementia from other diseases which run a like course. The minute anatomical changes causing the symptoms are a matter of comparatively modern study.

**Etiology.**—At least 75 per cent. of all cases are caused by syphilitic infection, and observations reported by Krafft-Ebing seem to indicate that the proportion is much greater. Starting out with this assumption, we have at once an explanation of its greater frequency in the male sex, though

many women have it; while it is rather a sad commentary on the fidelity of man that it is much more frequent among married men. It is possible, however, that syphilis was contracted before marriage, as the development of parietic dementia may be delayed for a number of years after a syphilitic infection. The fact that it occurs most frequently between the thirtieth and fiftieth years, that it is a disease of the better classes—especially army officers and artists—and that it is pre-eminently a disease of the cities, should be added. Although other factors apparently enter into the causation of general paresis, those who have most closely studied the subject are disposed to assign to them a predisposing rôle. Such influences are heredity and exhausting mental work, such as comes of public political life and ambitious financial ventures. Intemperance, chronic lead-poisoning, and traumatism are included among causes.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—An *atrophy* of the brain, and especially of the frontal lobes, may be set down as the most important morbid change. The convolutions are wasted and pale in color, the fissures are wider, and the weight of this portion is reduced to one-fourth or one-third the normal, while the consistence is firmer and more resisting to section. Other macroscopic changes are a *thickening of the dura mater*, *pachymeningitis interna*, *edema* of the pia with thickening, opacity, and adhesion to the cortex. Minute examination of the cortex recognizes *thickening of the vessel-walls* and cellular infiltration of the adventitia of the arterioles and lymphatic sheaths—in other words, the effects of mild inflammation. To these are added demonstrable *destruction of nerve elements*, especially of the fine medullary nerve fibrils known as “tangential fibers” in the frontal convolutions, island of Reil, and elsewhere; also *atrophy of the ganglion cells*. Associated with this are neuroglia proliferation and numerous Deiters’ spider cells. Here enters a contested question as to whether the nerve changes are primary, or secondary to an interstitial encephalitis. Tuczek, Wernicke, and Strümpell hold to the former view; while Rindfleisch and Mendel adopt the latter, making the destruction of nervous tissue secondary to the overgrowth of neuroglia.

The white matter is also involved, the central ganglia as well. Coincident *changes in the spinal cord*—first described by Westphal—consisting in fascicular systemic degeneration of the *lateral columns* and *posterior columns*, either alone or jointly, are quite constantly present. To these is ascribed a large part of the ataxic and spasto-paralytic symptoms. From this brief statement of the character and situation of the morbid changes it will be seen that they are widespread, while they are also degenerative.

**Symptoms.**—So widely scattered a distribution of morbid changes naturally brings about corresponding differences in the variety and severity of the symptoms. As further characteristic, no absolute constancy is observed in the order of their development. As a rule, however, the *first stage* is characterized by abnormal mental processes, and these are at first what may be comprehended under the single expression *peculiarity* or “*queerness*” of conduct. The patient will perform acts wholly unnatural to him, and will surprise his friends and family by breaches of decorum and morality. An *apathy* and *loss of memory*, causing the omission of obligations, are also constant. At first these may pass unnoticed as temporary, but their per-



manence is gradually established. In lieu of this may be present an *irritability* and intense *restlessness*, so that the patient cannot remain in one spot, but walks constantly to and fro. Not often in this stage is there much volubility, but rather a *morose silence* is observed. In this stage, too, the patient may make rash and ruinous financial ventures, and lose his own money and that of his friends, or he may become very generous, giving away freely all he possesses, and more, too. The power of arithmetical calculation is defective or gone. He may be self-satisfied and intensely egotistical. On the other hand, he may be conscious of these ills and be anxious about them, as well as experience a discomfort or malaise, for which he may consult the physician.

Nor are *motor disturbances* wholly wanting in the first stage. They are chiefly *derangements of speech and handwriting*, and are of no small diagnostic value. The speech is slow and hesitating, yet the patient stumbles over syllables, especially when the word is complex or rather difficult to enunciate. As to the handwriting, it is tremulous, characterized by the omission of letters and substitution of wrong ones, as well as erroneous spelling—all motor defects.

*Other symptoms* of the first stage are *inequality of the pupils, ocular paralysis*, in tabetic cases often reflex immobility of the pupils. There may be absence of the patellar reflexes, and in spastic cases increase of reflexes. There may be *neuralgic pain* and attacks of *migraine*.

The *second stage* is characterized by more *exalted mental symptoms* and excitement, with a *higher degree of motor disturbance*. The former consist in exaggeration of all previously maintained mental symptoms, amounting to noisy, boisterous, and maniacal excitement, and even uncontrollable violence. In this stage belong, too, those extraordinary delusions of grandeur—expansive delirium—in which the patient imagines himself or herself to be a person of great consequence and unlimited wealth. This is not, however, invariable, and there may be an exaggerated degree of the opposite condition of melancholy sometimes present in the first stage, or the two conditions of delirium and depression may alternate or may be absent. *Sleeplessness* may be added to restlessness and mental excitement, causing rapid decline of strength.

*Motor disturbances* are greatly increased in this stage, but a uniform order of invasion is by no means always observed, while remissions and temporary improvement are often noticed. *Speech* becomes almost impossible and incomprehensible. There is *paraphasia*—persistent repetition of words—and reading and writing are impossible. The voice can no longer be modulated, and is weak and rough from imperfect innervation of the vocal cords.

The *gait* becomes defective, and the patient often trips in walking. There may be *ataxia* and other tabetic symptoms; apoplectic seizures with *paralysis*; or *epilepsy* with grand or petit mal and aura, sometimes one-sided and followed by monoplegia or hemiplegia. There may be loss of *sensibility*, with *bladder and rectum paralysis*. The *tendon reflexes* may be lost and the pupil be immobile, or the opposite condition of spasm with increased tendon reflexes prevails. The paralytic attacks may occur in the earlier stages, though in mild degree, manifested by vertigo or obscuratio and loss of

consciousness, lasting for a short time and then passing away. There may be local twitching in the face and extremities and even typical Jacksonian epilepsy. Finally, *bulbar* symptoms may appear with invasion of the medulla oblongata. Ultimately, the patient becomes helpless, bedridden, and completely demented, dying from exhaustion or intercurrent disease. In a few cases none of the mental symptoms described are present, but a gradual decline of mental power takes place until complete dementia supervenes.

An *acute variety* is also sometimes met, properly termed "galloping," in which the disease runs its whole course in a few months, and is especially characterized by emaciation and rapid loss of strength due to restlessness, sleeplessness, and insufficient food. The *pulse* and *temperature* are essentially normal, or at least there are not characteristic variations.

**Diagnosis.**—To recognize paretic dementia *ab initio* is perhaps impossible, but to watchful observation the disease commonly reveals itself after the symptoms have existed for a short time. The early symptoms resemble those of *neurasthenia*, but differ from those of the latter disease in their steady progression. Other affections possibly mistaken for it are *cerebral syphilis*, *tumors of the brain*, and *multiple sclerosis*. In *cerebral syphilis* the onset is usually more sudden, and paralytic symptoms appear earlier. Headache is more frequent and severe, and there may be convulsive seizures; affections of the tongue and speech are wanting, while the train of mental symptoms is less complete and characteristic, and expansive delirium, as a rule, does not occur. The epilepsy is more commonly Jacksonian. It is to be remembered that the syphilitic virus produces both, and it is not unnatural that the two should sometimes merge. *Tumors of the brain* frequently, but not always, produce symptoms more localized, and often also optic symptoms, including choked disk. The symptoms of *insular sclerosis*, which include dementia, are often identical with those of paralytic dementia, and the two diseases cannot then be differentiated. Intention tremor is more characteristic of sclerosis. The cerebral symptoms of some forms of *plumbism*, it is said, also sometimes closely resemble those of paralytic dementia.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis is almost always unfavorable, although the course of the disease varies somewhat. The most rapid cases of the galloping form may terminate in a few months, but two or three years is the more usual duration; sometimes much longer, it may be 10 years or more. Death ensues from exhaustion, hastened by the complications and secondary conditions which naturally supervene on an illness so prolonged and in which nutrition is so interfered with; or it may be due to intercurrent disease.

**Treatment.**—In view of the general acknowledgment of the syphilitic origin of chronic diffuse meningo-encephalitis and the acknowledged efficiency of antisiphilitic treatment over tertiary manifestations of the disease, it is rather surprising that attempts at curative treatment are so futile. The treatment is confined mainly to iodids and mercurials. Mercurials are best used by inunction, and the iodids in ascending doses. These, however, do not arrest the disease.

As to the rest, treatment must be symptomatic. The bromids and

chloral, with quiet, hygienic surroundings, and sometimes enforced retirement, are measures demanded for the relief of the nervous excitement.

For the opposite condition of depression and melancholia change of scene by travel and residence in different localities should be enjoined. Further than this the use of a proper hygiene, with bathing, frictions, whole some outdoor life, and an abundance of nourishing and easily assimilable food constitute about the sum of the means we can bring to bear against the disease.

### PARALYSIS AGITANS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Chorea sclotyrbe sive festinans* (Sauvages); *Chorea procursiva* (Bernt); *Shaking Palsy*; *Parkinson's Disease*.

**Definition.**—A chronic nervous disease characterized by muscular weakness, tremor, or shaking in the extremities, muscular rigidity, and forward-bent gait.

**Historical.**—The disease was first fully described by Parkinson, of London, in 1817, so accurately that little of importance has since been added to his description.

**Etiology.**—Shaking palsy is commonly a disease of the second half of life, but occasionally occurs between 30 and 40, and has been observed as early as the twentieth year. It is a little less frequent among women than men—11 to 14. Among the causes held responsible for it are exposure to cold and wet, fright, mental excitement, business worry, injury, —whether to nerves or other parts of the body—alcoholism, sexual excesses, and the infectious diseases, including malaria, while heredity is said to have a slight influence. The etiology of the disease is largely a matter of conjecture and inference.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This is unknown so far as essential lesions are concerned. Various lesions have been described, while the brain, spinal cord, and peripheral nerves of the most typical cases have been examined with results not entirely satisfactory.

As the phenomena are similar in kind, if not in degree, to those of senility, it is held by Dubief, Borgherini, Koller, Sass, Jacobson, Ketscher, and Sanders that they have for their anatomical basis the lesions of senility somewhat intensified, and that the disease differs from true senility only in its earlier onset. Other investigators conclude that this is not the case, and that paralysis agitans is a disease *sui generis*, although there are many changes in the spinal cord and brain, which are common to the two affections, consisting essentially in increase in interstitial tissue and proliferation of neuroglia cells in the spinal cord, medulla oblongata, pons, and the motor cortex in a less degree. Charles L. Dana<sup>1</sup> says: "The most logical conclusion one can reach is that in paralysis agitans there is early a functional disturbance and later a destruction and degeneration of the dendrites of the anterior horn cells which interfere with the even flow of motor impulses, and finally lead to motor weakness and rigidity, owing to the cell being

<sup>1</sup> "Paralysis Agitans and Sarcoma," "Am. Jour. of the Med. Sci.," November, 1899.

practically cut off from the brain." Dana continues: "The difference between this condition and that found in spastic paraplegia due to a sclerosis of the voluntary motor tracts is manifest, for there the dendrites of the anterior horns which subserve reflex purposes are normal, while in paralysis agitans all are somewhat affected. The rigidity of this disease is much like that found late after total transverse cord lesions."

H. C. Gordinier,<sup>1</sup> on the other hand, says the primary seat of the pathological changes is in the blood-vessels, starting with an endarteritis and peri-arteritis and consequent proliferation of the neuroglia in the immediate neighborhood, with the production of patches of perivascular sclerosis, which are characteristic of the disease. Also that "the alterations which have been observed in the nerve-cells of the anterior cornua and cranial nerve nuclei, together with the slight changes in the cells of the motor cortex, are secondary, due, in all probability, to a gradual diminution of nutrition dependent on the vascular changes." The truth is, the pathology of this disease is unknown, and is at present a subject for speculation.

**Symptoms.**—The disease is not a very rare one in this country, and the county almshouses almost always contain one or more cases—easily recognized by the characteristic shaking or tremulousness of the hand. Though commonly gradual in onset, the symptoms may come on quite suddenly, and at first only after exertion. Indeed, there may even be a *prodrome* in the shape of neuralgic pains, paresthesia, dizziness, and the like. The more sudden cases follow fright or trauma. The *tremor* is most marked in the fingers and hands, where it commonly begins, and whence it extends to the arms and lower extremities. The upper arm muscles are rarely involved. It most frequently passes from the right arm to the right leg, thence into the left arm, and thence into the left leg; or the course may be crossed—that is, from the right arm to the left leg. It may remain in one limb to the exclusion of the others. In the fingers the movements between the thumb and index-finger is frequently that of rolling pills, but the movement may not always be characteristic. At the wrist it is one of pronation and supination. In the feet it is most marked at the ankle-joint. It affects the writing, making it trembling, as in the aged, and ultimately it becomes impossible to write. The muscles of the head and face are last involved, sometimes not at all, and when present, the motion is vertical and quite rhythmical, usually about five times in a second. At first the tremor ceases during sleep, but continues during the waking state even when the muscles are at rest, but ultimately it continues even during sleep—in fact, sleep is sometimes prevented thereby. It frequently is partially arrested by voluntary motion and is increased by emotion. Should rigidity become excessive, the motion may cease.

The rate of tremor varies greatly, being at first slower, and increases in rapidity as the disease advances. Roughly, it may be put down at from three to five times a second. There may be intermissions of the tremor of days and even weeks.

*Muscular weakness* is a less striking symptom, but may be estimated by the dynamometer, and increases with the duration of the disease and the intensity of the tremor. It is most striking at least in the extensor muscles,

<sup>1</sup> "The Pathology of Paralysis Agitans," December, 1899.

the *flexors* being disposed to *rigidity* and *spasm*, which early produce a slowness and stiffness of motion which is characteristic. It is this flexor spasm which brings the thumb and forefinger into the writing or pill-rolling position. At other times, hyperaction of the interossei muscles over that of the common extensors of the fingers results in the position so characteristic of arthritis deformans—that is, with the first phalanx bent, the second extended, and the terminal phalanx also bent. Ultimately extension is impossible. Occasionally the opposite state of fixed extension exists.

The *attitude* and *gait* ultimately assumed by the subject of shaking palsy are also the result of rigidity, which sooner or later affects most of the muscles. The head is bent forward, the back is bowed, the arms are held away from the body and flexed at the elbows, and the knees are approximated so that they are often rubbed in walking; while the general appearance is that of a man in danger of falling forward. The position of the body due to flexion also gives rise to a “propulsive” gait, caused by carrying forward the center of gravity, so that, when started, the patient is apt to “get a-going” and cannot stop until he comes up against some object. On the other hand, a push backward, bringing the centers of gravity behind the point of support, is apt to make the patient fall, because he cannot move back fast enough to save himself by “retropulsion.” Charcot regards both these phenomena as “forced movements,” but Strümpell prefers to explain them by simple physical laws, as previously described. Sometimes the characteristic position of the patient exists without the shaking, and for this the name “*paralysis agitans sine agitatione*” has been employed.

The similarity in the rigid bent condition of the vertebral column and the deformities of the hands in this disease and rheumatoid arthritis, together with other points of resemblance has suggested to W. G. Spiller a similar origin of the two diseases.

The *facial expression* is also very strikingly altered. The face is indeed without expression, stiff and mask-like, giving rise to the name “Parkinson’s mask.” There is often a dribbling of saliva from the partially closed mouth. On the other hand, sometimes the mouth is kept closed, and is found full of saliva—a condition ascribed to delayed deglutition rather than to increased secretion. The speech is slow, hesitating, and monotonous, and the voice may be piping and shrill. On the other hand, if the lips and tongue share in the tremor, the speech is stuttering, as though the patient were in a hurry to speak—quite different from the scanning speech of insular sclerosis.

The remaining nervous and organic functions are essentially normal. Sensation is usually unaltered, and the bowels and bladder are usually unaffected, as is also the temperature, although it is said that the surface temperature is sometimes elevated. Charcot has noticed an alteration of the temperature sense. There is sometimes a tendency to unnatural perspiration.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually very easy, and can generally be made at a glance. *Multiple sclerosis* resembles it in some respects. Both have tremor, but in multiple sclerosis this is shown more particularly when the patient attempts to do something, as to bring a glass of water to his lips or approximate his fingers. The speech is rhythmical, “scanning,” instead of

stuttering, as in shaking palsy; there is nystagmus, and the disease begins almost invariably in the lower extremities, while the attitude is not that of paralysis agitans. *Chorea* is characterized by movements, but these are irregular and more intermittent.

**Prognosis.**—A well-established case of paralysis agitans is not curable by medicines. On the other hand, the disease lasts indefinitely, the patient getting slowly worse, with perhaps the intermissions alluded to, until he dies of some intercurrent disease or from the effects of some accident growing out of his condition.

**Treatment.**—Under the circumstances this must, for the most part, be by tonics and general hygienic measures. As the disease advances the patient should be guarded against accident; and especially when in bed his position should be changed for him if he cannot change it himself, as is often the case.

Cases have improved under the use of the iodid of potassium and arsenic, and hyoscin has been especially recommended by Erb—hypodermically, in doses of from 1/150 to 1/100 of a grain (0.00044 to 0.00066 gm.) of the hydrobromate. Good results have also been reported from the use of atropin, of which from 1/100 to 1/60 grain (0.00066 to 0.0011 gm.) may be used subcutaneously or by the mouth.

Measures calculated to improve the general health are indicated, such as sea-bathing, massage, electricity, fresh air, and outdoor life.

#### OTHER FORMS OF TREMOR.

##### SYNONYM.—*Ballismus*.

In addition to the tremor in paralysis agitans, a similar tremor occurs under other circumstances, sometimes without assignable cause, when it is known as *simple* tremor, or it may be induced by fright or overexertion. A *hereditary* tremor has been described by C. L. Dana. *Senile* tremor is the well-known form of tremor which comes on with advancing years, at times earlier than others, but usually not until after 70 years. The existence of a tremor due to senility was denied by Charcot, but is accepted by most neurologists.

*Toxic* tremor is due to a number of toxic agents, among which tobacco and alcohol are the most frequent. Lead is another of these causes. Finally, *hysterical* tremor occurs as a part of hysterical phenomena in women. *Asthenic* tremor is due to simple weakness, and is especially seen in exertion during convalescence from acute disease.

#### TUMORS OF THE BRAIN.

##### SYNONYMS.—*Neoplasmata cerebri; Intracranial Tumors*.

**Definition.**—Cerebral tumors, clinically considered, include not only tumors of the meninges and substance of the brain, but also all intracranial and even such extracranial tumors as ultimately invade the brain. Among the latter are tumors of the orbit or nasal cavity, of the antrum, and of the sphenopalatine fossa.

**Varieties.**—The principal varieties of cerebral tumor, approximately in the order of frequency, are:

1. Tyroma, or tuberculous tumor. 2. Glioma. 3. Sarcoma. 4. Carcinoma. 5. Cystic, including parasitic cysts and cysts arising in sarcomata and gliomata. 6. Gumma. 7. Histioid tumors. Among these occur in irregular order, cholesteatoma, lipoma, myxoma, angioma, fibroma, psammoma. Even dermoid cysts, as well as parasitic cysts—including the echinococcus or hydatid cyst and the cysticercus cellulose, are met. Of these tumors, psammoma and glioma are peculiar to the brain. According to M. Allen Starr's tables, gliomata and gliosarcomata practically equal in number the sarcomata, but the term gliosarcoma is regarded by many unfavorably.

**Etiology.**—Except sarcoma, tumors are found in males more frequently than in females. Tubercle is more common in childhood; parasites, glioma, sarcoma, and gumma in early and middle life, and cancer in middle and late life, but is rare even then. Brain tumors of any kind are rare after 60. Heredity appears to have slight, if any, influence. A few brain tumors are metastatic, especially carcinoma, and to a less degree sarcoma. Eichhorst relates several remarkable cases in which trauma seemed to be the exciting cause.

**Distribution.**—Certain tumors seek by preference special localities. Thus, *tuberculous* tumors are most numerous in the cerebellum and about the base of the brain. *Glioma* starts from the neuroglia in any part of the brain, but more frequently the cerebrum or pons, and may also attain a large size—larger than any other brain tumor; it is further characterized at times by its great vascularity, leading sometimes to rupture and apoplectic symptoms. Glioma may also occur in the eye. *Sarcoma* develops most frequently in the membranes of the brain and sheaths of the vessels; it may be primary or secondary; it is often encapsulated. *Myxoma* and *fibroma* occur in the same localities. *Carcinoma* is usually secondary, but may be primary; it arises more frequently in the membranes or pituitary body, but may be found in the substance of the hemispheres; it is especially secondary to primary cancer of the breast, lungs, or pleura. *Syphiloma* elects the hemispheres or the pons and vicinity; it is generally superficial, grows from the meninges, or is attached to arteries, attaining sometimes a large size. It may be multiple. *Parasitic tumors* are found in the membranes, the substance of the brain, and the ventricles. The hydatid cysts developed by the echinococcus are usually on the surface of the brain; the cysticercus, usually multiple, on the surface or in the ventricles. *Psammoma*, or sand tumor, is found commonly in the neighborhood of the pineal gland.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of cerebral tumor are in no way specialized by the kind of tumor present, and depend entirely upon the effect exerted on the surrounding brain substance, chiefly by pressure. They do, however, vary somewhat with the part of the brain involved. It occasionally happens that a brain tumor may produce no symptoms whatever, being thoroughly latent, and disclosed only by the autopsy. On the other hand, apparently insignificant tumors cause very decided symptoms. Such differences may depend in part on the location of the tumor, and in part on the rapidity of its development.

As in all local diseases of the brain, two sets of symptoms usually present themselves: (1) Diffuse and (2) Focal symptoms.

1. *Diffuse or General Symptoms.*—These are symptoms which may be associated with various forms of nervous disease. The most constant of these is perhaps *headache*, which varies in intensity and constancy. Probably the severest headaches it is given human beings to suffer are caused by brain tumors, exhibiting every variety of pain—sharp, cutting, shooting, boring, or dull and pressing. At times it is moderate, producing a sense of discomfort only. It may be intermittent or constant. It may be over the entire head, or half of it, or be still more localized in the forehead or back of the head, extending also from the former over the face and the latter down the neck. It may be increased by mental excitement of any kind, by noise, or by alcoholic drink or strong light. There may be tenderness on pressure, or pain in percussing the head. The seat of pain is, however, for the most part, no indication of the seat of the tumor, though the presence of pain limited to the occiput and back of the neck suggests a tumor in the posterior fossa of the skull, the occiput, or the cerebellum. Localized pain on tapping the skull is a more reliable index.

Astereognosis is an occasional symptom.

*Vomiting* is another characteristic symptom of brain tumor. It may occur independent of headache, but is often associated with it. It is further characterized by being independent of food ingestion, may be without nausea, and is apt to be worse in tumors of the cerebellum and pons.

*Dizziness* is also a very frequent symptom, and often an early one. It is at times intermittent, at others constant, and it may be so severe as to make it impossible for the patient to walk. It is most serious in tumors of the posterior fossa and of the cerebellum. Along with vertigo may be *slowing of the pulse*.

*Mental symptoms* may be present. They may be intermittent, and variously manifested in peculiarities of temper, such as sullenness, indifference, absent-mindedness, and loss of memory; or the opposite condition of maniacal excitement or delirium; or there may be drowsiness and even coma. Such mental states may, indeed, be the only manifestations of tumor.

*Speech.*—The patient may *talk slowly*, and the facial expression is sometimes altered.

*Apoplectic seizures* and *epileptiform attacks*, especially of the Jacksonian variety, are distinctive symptoms. The former may be due to hemorrhages in the tumor or around it, and may be followed by transitory paralysis and paresis. Epileptic convulsions, especially if unilateral, point, though not unmistakably, to tumors in the hemispheres impinging on the cortex. *Choreiform movements* are sometimes present.

*Choked disk*, *papilloedema* or *papillitis* and *optic neuritis* are the most constant and most valuable diagnostic symptoms of brain tumor. Choked disk consists, in brief, in a swelling of the optic nerve, with overdistention and congestion of the retinal veins, and narrowing of the retinal arteries. It is usually bilateral, rarely unilateral. There is still much difference of opinion as to the mechanism of choked disk, but it is thought by many to be the result of intracranial pressure forcing the cerebrospinal fluid from the



subarachnoid space into the lymph sheath of the optic nerve, causing compression of the nerve and the vessels within it. The vision is not necessarily deranged in choked disk, and its defects are not uniform, varying from slight amblyopia to total blindness. The swelling may diminish and improvement in vision ensue, but retinitis or neuro-retinitis may set in with consequent nerve atrophy, producing permanent impairment of vision. The choked disk is sometimes the only symptom of brain tumor, and its subject first consults the oculist for relief. On the other hand, it is not caused by brain tumor alone, but it may result from meningitis or abscess, in fact anything which produces intracranial pressure. Papilloedema occurs in from 80 to 90 per cent. of all cases of intracranial tumor. It may be absent, even though a brain tumor of considerable size exists. By optic neuritis a milder degree of papillœdema is generally understood.

The *senses of smell and hearing* may be impaired by tumors impinging on the olfactory or auditory nerves, and there may be *pruritus* and other modifications of cutaneous sensibility; also *neuralgic pains*. If the tumor is on the floor of the fourth ventricle, there may be *polyuria* and *glycosuria*. Finally, sooner or later the *appetite* may fail and the *nutrition* suffer, although the opposite condition of large appetite and good nutrition may obtain. In the terminal stage there may be *irregularity of breathing* (Cheyne-Stokes) and slowing of the pulse, while the final issue is often preceded by a *febrile movement*. The local temperature in brain tumor is usually raised from 92° to 95° F. (33° to 34.9° C.), and even 98° F. (36.7° C.).

2. *Focal Symptoms*.—These are symptoms peculiar to the seat of irritation or destruction, and become, therefore, of value in diagnosis. They are the results either of irritation or destruction of nervous tissue, irritation causing contraction and spasm, while destruction causes paresis and paralysis. For convenience in localization the brain may be divided, as in Fig. 137, after C. L. Dana, into:

1. The prefrontal area, including all anterior to a line starting from the upper end of the ascending branch of the fissure of Sylvius at right angles to another drawn between the frontal and occipital ends of the brain.

2. The central region, bounded in front by the line just named and behind by a line limiting the posterior central convolution prolonged downward to the Sylvian fissure.

3. The parietal lobe.

4. The occipital lobe.

5. The temporal or temporosphenoidal area.

6. The pons and medulla oblongata.

7. The cerebellum.

The boundaries of these territories are shown, as far as possible, in the accompanying illustration.

In addition there are: (8) The corpus callosum; (9) the great basal ganglia and capsules; (10) the corpora quadrigemina, and pineal gland; (11) the crura cerebri; (12) the base of the brain.

1. *Tumors of the prefrontal area*, especially on the right side, often give no localizing symptoms whatever, motor or sensory, while general symptoms may also be absent and the tumor truly latent. Then, again, general symptoms may be well marked, including mental torpor and imbecility, childish-

ness, irritability, and emotional phenomena. These symptoms occur whichever side of the brain is affected, but possibly are more pronounced in tumors of the left frontal lobe. If the tumor extends downward into the inferior frontal convolution, it may cause aphasia; or if backward, it may occasion irritative spasm or destructive paralysis. Involvement of the optic tract may cause hemianopsia and optic neuritis; of the olfactory system, anosmia; if the tumor invades the orbit, oculomotor paralysis and protrusion of the eye. Percussion tenderness may aid in localizing the tumor.

2. *Tumors in the central or motor region* (possibly true only of tumors in the precentral convolution) may cause irritative lesions, resulting in spasm. If the tumor is in the upper third of this area, the spasm may begin in the toes, in the ankles, or in muscles of the leg; if in the middle

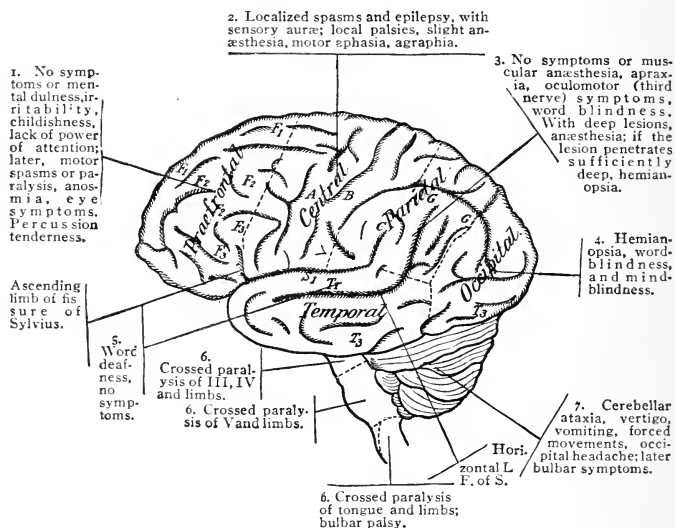


FIG. 137.—Showing Focal Symptoms of Brain Tumor—(after Dana).

third, spasm beginning in the fingers, in the thumb, in the muscles of the wrist or shoulder; if in the lower third, in the muscles of the face, the angle of the mouth, or tongue. In a word, the phenomena of Jacksonian epilepsy are present. All of these may be preceded or associated with sensory disturbance, such as numbness and tingling, and may be limited to one muscle group before extending to another, constituting the "signal symptom" of Seguin. There may be an aura, and the muscular sense is also sometimes affected.

Destructive lesions cause paralysis, and this may have the same distribution as the convulsions which sometimes precede. If on the left side in right-handed persons, aphasia and agraphia may result.

3. *Tumors of the parietal area* may produce no symptoms of sensory or motor phenomena, but there may be impairment of stereognostic percep-

tion, and often of ordinary sensation and of the sense of position with ataxia. With the involvement of the angular gyrus and lower parietal lobule may come word-blindness and mind-blindness. If the tumor is upon or near the central area, spasms and paralysis of the various muscular groups described under 2 may develop. Paralysis of the third nerve has occurred in connection with tumors in the neighborhood of the angular gyrus; no satisfactory explanation for this has been offered—possibly it is due to pressure at a distance.

4. *Tumors of the occipital lobe*, if in the cuneus or neighboring parts, may produce homonymous lateral hemianopsia; and if double, total blindness; if elsewhere on the left side, there may be mind-blindness; and if the tumor extends also into the angular gyrus, word-blindness, along with hemianopsia; if obtruding further forward into the parietal lobe, hemianesthesia, hemiataxia, and perhaps some hemiplegia from involvement of the internal capsule may occur.

5. *Tumors of the temporosphenoidal area on the right side* rarely produce symptoms; on the left side, in the posterior part of the first and upper posterior part of the second gyrus, they cause word-deafness. Disturbances of the senses of smell and taste may result from involvement of the hippocampal convolution.

6. *Tumors of the pons and medulla oblongata* produce two sets of phenomena by:

- (a) Irritation or destruction of fibers in the pons and medulla oblongata.
- (b) Pressure on the nerves emerging in this region.

Either may occur alone or both jointly. Lesions here are especially likely to produce alternate paralysis: that is, involvement of certain of the cranial nerves on one side and the limbs on the opposite side.

If the tumor is in the cerebral peduncle, there may be a palsy of the third nerve on the same side and a hemiplegia on the opposite side; if lower down and in the pons, a palsy of the fifth on the same side and hemiplegia on the other; if still lower down, it may involve the sixth nerve, producing internal strabismus, the seventh producing facial paralysis, and the eighth causing deafness. If the tumor is very large, it may produce a hemianesthesia as well, and there may be forced movements of the body, either toward or from the side of lesion. Conjugate deviation of the eyes away from the side affected may also occur. This is in direct contrast to the conjugate deviation sometimes noticed in cerebral lesions, in which the head and eyes are turned toward the side of lesion.

Tumors of the medulla oblongata may produce hemiplegia and hemianesthesia, and, if the tumor is large, symptoms of bulbar paralysis. From irritation of nerves on the same side, the ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth, difficulty in swallowing, irregular action of the heart, irregular breathing, and vomiting may arise. Sometimes also there is retraction of the head, or sensory symptoms including numbness and tingling and finally convulsion. If the cerebellum is impinged upon, there may be unsteadiness of gait, but this is frequently caused by implication of the cerebellar peduncles without involvement of the cerebellum.

7. *Tumors of the cerebellum* produce very characteristic symptoms, though here, too, there may be latency if the growth is limited to the hemi-

spheres. If the middle lobe is invaded, vertigo, vomiting, headache, papilloedema, with blindness and cerebellar ataxia, are present. *Papilloedema is more common in cerebellar than in cerebral tumors* and is usually an early sign. The pressure causing papilloedema is not directly on the occipital lobe or optic tract, but is generally on the cranial contents, and possibly interference with the circulation of fluid in the ventricles causes pressure on the optic chiasm by an excess of fluid in the third ventricle. More rarely nystagmus and neuralgic pains in the neck and occiput occur. The irregular and staggering gait of cerebellar ataxia is very striking, the patient reeling like a drunken man, or he may be thrown sideways or forward, rarely backward, by forced motion.

If the medulla oblongata is compressed by the tumor, vomiting from this cause may ensue, also bulbar symptoms and glycosuria.

8. *Tumors of the corpus callosum* are rare. The symptoms are similar to those of tumors in the third and lateral ventricles of the brain, extending peripherally. They cause general symptoms of brain tumor, with gradually developing hemiplegia, and later paraplegia. With this there are mental dullness and drowsiness and indisposition to speak. The cranial nerves are not involved.

9. *Tumors of the basal ganglia and the internal capsule* produce symptoms similar to those that occur in the corpus callosum. They are partly pressure symptoms. There is progressive hemiplegia, with which there is likely to be hemianesthesia. Sometimes there are choreic and athetoid movements if the tumor involves the optic thalamus and adjacent parts of the internal capsule. Tumors of the caudate nucleus alone, or of the lenticular nucleus alone, are generally latent; so are those of the anterior three-fourths of the optic thalamus, except that choreic and athetoid movements referred to may be noticed, due to irritation of fibers of the internal capsule, or, as supposed by some, to irritation of the anterior cerebellar peduncle. Tumors of the basal ganglia are often infiltrative (glioma) and therefore cause few symptoms at first. Tumors in these areas are very likely to give pressure symptoms. A large tumor of the thalamus may involve the fibers of the optic radiation and cause hemianopsia or sometimes hemianesthesia. This may be differentiated from hemianopsia due to lesions of the occipital lobe by the presence of the hemianopic pupillary reaction, in accordance with which a ray of light thrown on the insensitive part of the retina will not produce a reflex contraction of the pupil. Papilloedema is likely to be an early symptom of tumors in this vicinity.

10. *Tumors of the corpora quadrigemina* usually involve the crura as well. They are characterized by inco-ordination, forced movements, and oculomotor palsies, to which may be added hemianopsia, or blindness due to destruction of the primary optic centers; the pupillary reflex is lost and there is nystagmus.

11. *Tumors of the crus* from involvement of the third nerve are especially characterized by oculomotor paralysis on one (the same) side and hemiplegia on the other. Tumors of the crus are, however, rare.

12. *Tumors of the base*, if of the anterior fossa, produce symptoms much like those of tumors of the prefrontal area, adding, however, anosmia from destruction of the olfactory lobe; while there may be also involvement of the

optic and oculomotor nerves and of the orbital contents. Tumors of the middle fossa and of the interpeduncular space produce pressure on the optic chiasm with consequent neuritis and bitemporal hemianopsia, by which lesions of this area are distinguished from those in the anterior fossa.

**Diagnosis.**—This consists first in the recognition of the presence of tumor from the general symptoms, and then the determination of its location in either hemisphere from the focal symptoms. The same symptoms may be produced by any agency causing pressure on these structures. *Papilloedema*, which is so constant a symptom of tumor, may be caused by *Bright's disease*, *cerebral syphilis*, *lead encephalopathy*, and *anemia*. The albuminuria, hypertrophy of the right ventricle, polyuria, and tube-casts usually help to recognize the first. Other symptoms of lead-poisoning indicate that disease, and the usual symptoms of anemia point to it. *Meningeal thickening*, *hemorrhage*, *aneurysm*, and *abscess* may also produce pressure symptoms.

The nature of the tumor may be determined in part by what has been said of the preference for certain localities and the age of the patient, and in part by the history, say of tuberculosis or syphilis or primary growths elsewhere. The surface temperature is of uncertain value in diagnosis. Death may be sudden, especially from growths near the medulla oblongata. It is usually the result of increasing pressure. The X-ray has recently been applied to the diagnosis of brain tumor with uncertain results; a change in the percussion note over a tumor is also of doubtful value.

**Prognosis.**—This is generally unfavorable. It is true that in some rare instances the brain tumors cease to grow after a time. Various observers find the ratio of removable tumors from five to ten per cent. Of 1121 cases collected from different authors by M. Allen Starr in his article on "Tumor of the Brain" in Dercum's "Nervous Diseases," 80, or 4.25 per cent., were regarded as operable, but four-fifths of all persons operated on perish. When due to syphilis, they may in some cases be melted away by mercurials and iodids. Calcification is a rare, but happy, termination of tuberculous growths. The duration of tumor averages two or three years; the extremes average from a month to many years.

**Treatment.**—This is *medicinal*, *hygienic*, and *operative*. The first is limited in its purpose to the cure of syphilitic tumors and, perhaps, in a slight degree, to tuberculous. The astonishing effect of the mercurial and iodine treatment upon syphilitic new formations is nowhere so well shown as upon cerebral gumma. Unless syphilis can be excluded with absolute certainty, the *iodid of potassium* should be given in any case in ascending doses, limited only by their effects. In the absence of syphilis the larger doses are not well borne. In addition, *mercury* should be used, at first preferably by inunction until the specific effect is produced, after which it may be discontinued, to be renewed as indicated. Instead of inunction, the *bichlorid* may be given internally in doses of 1/12 grain (0.005 gm.) three times daily, or until the physiological effects are produced. When the tumor is once under control, it is still necessary to keep up the treatment in such doses as experience may determine to be necessary. Usually the iodid of potassium is sufficient for this purpose. When, however, the symptoms of tumor disappear and remain absent many years under iodids, the diagnosis of tumor

may be doubtful. This would seem to be verified by the following case: I had under observation for 30 years a patient in whom the disease has been kept in check by a dose of 60 grains (4 gm.) a day, which had occasionally to be doubled for a time. The evidence of a syphilitic lesion in this case seemed conclusive, since following acknowledged infection there occurred secondary symptoms of syphilis, the full train of classic symptoms of brain tumor, including ophthalmic symptoms studied by an experienced ophthalmologist. The case, however, came to necropsy and only meningitis was found. If mercury is necessary in this stage, the *binioid* may also be used in doses of from 1/24 to 1/12 grain (0.0025 to 0.005 gm.), as required, though I have not the confidence in it that I have in the separate use of the iodid of potassium and the bichlorid of mercury.

In tyroma the usual constitutional treatment of tuberculosis by cod-liver oil, iron, and other tonics, with nourishing food and healthful indoor and outdoor life, is to be carried out.

The usual remedies indicated to relieve pain are to be used, bromids, if necessary, in large doses, phenacetin, antifebrin, and antipyrin, and, if necessary, morphin. The ice-cap may be used, and, above all, leeching tried. The most magical effect is sometimes produced by free leeching, though it is unfortunately temporary. Other symptoms should be treated by appropriate remedies.

The hygienic treatment is of the greatest importance. Excesses of every kind should be avoided, alcohol should be rigidly excluded, as well as all sexual excitement and mental excitement of any kind, for the slightest increment of blood in the brain may bring on a convulsion and cause death.

Exploratory operation being much less dangerous than formerly, with the aseptic precautions of the present day, should be made whenever the tumor can be localized with any approach to accuracy. Although cerebral localization has been developed to a very high degree, it must still happen that we frequently fail to locate a tumor accurately. Cerebral decompression is important for relief of symptoms, especially when the location of the tumor cannot be determined, and if performed early may save the eyesight as well as remove some other symptoms.

### SUPPURATIVE ENCEPHALITIS.

SYNONYMS.—*Suppurative Inflammation of the Brain; Cerebritis; Abscess of the Brain.*

**Definition.**—By encephalitis is meant inflammation of the substance of the brain as contrasted with inflammation of its membranes. What is spoke of as inflammation of the brain in popular parlance is really inflammation of the membranes of the brain, or meningitis. A literal application of the term encephalitis is here intended.

**Etiology.**—The causes of cerebritis are: (1) Traumatic; (2) an adjacent focus of inflammation extending to the brain substance; (3) pyemia.

Under traumatic causes are included blows upon the head and falls, more commonly those attended by fracture or punctured wound; although it is not necessary that there should be even a scratch upon the skin.

Under adjacent disease, whence extension of inflammation is especially frequent, is to be included caries of the petrous portion of the temporal bone due to disease of the middle ear or labyrinth, the most common of all causes of abscess of the brain. Disease of the orbit or of the nasal passages is another focus of the same kind. The route of such a communication may be through either the sinuses of the brain or the lymph paths.

Pyemic abscess of the brain is rare. Causal foci are malignant endocarditis, gangrene of the lung, chronic bronchitis with bronchiectasis, bone disease, suppuration of the liver, and the specific fevers, among which may be included *la grippe*.

Encephalitis occurs most frequently between the ages of 10 and 40, and about three times as often in the male sex as in the female.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Abscesses of the brain are usually solitary, though there may be two or three, or even more. The abscesses may be from one-half to three inches (one to eight cm.) in diameter, rarely more, though an entire lobe has been involved. The abscess itself is a very interesting product. Unless very recent, it is surrounded by a distinct wall which is composed of *three layers*. The inner is smooth, made up for the most part of granular fatty cells. Outside of this is a layer of germinal tissue containing spindle cells and more perfect fibrillated tissue. Externally again is another layer of fatty cells. The pus within the abscess is usually greenish-yellow in color and acid in reaction, while its corpuscles are distinctly nucleated. The *zone outside of the abscess is edematous*, the cells are swollen, sometimes disintegrated, with blood points scattered throughout, becoming sparser as the periphery is extended.

The locality of the abscess may be preceded by the condition known as *red softening*, which is often spoken of as the first stage of the inflammation, but it is most important to remember that red softening is not peculiar to abscess. It consists simply of brain substance broken down into a reddish, blood-stained pulp. In this substance are found fragments of nerve-fibers, drops of myelin, pus-corpuscles, and granular fatty cells. The termination of cerebritis is not always in abscess. It is barely possible, before the stage of abscess is reached, for a condition of *yellow softening* to supervene, and the so-called apoplectic cyst may be the final result, or even cicatricial tissue may develop.

The *cerebrum* is involved *four times as often as the cerebellum*, the *left hemisphere* more frequently than the right, and the temporo-sphenoidal lobe more than any other. The cause has something to do with the location: Ear disease places the abscess in the temporal lobe or cerebellum; if in the tympanum, the cerebrum rather than the cerebellum; if the mastoid cells and labyrinth, the cerebellum.

**Symptoms.**—While inflammation of the brain is spoken of as acute and chronic, more strictly speaking it is rather primary and delayed, the symptoms of the so-called chronic form being essentially the same as those of acute cerebritis, but characterized by their late appearance after the cause which precedes them. In acute cases the symptoms develop rapidly and may run their course in a few days, while in the forms known as chronic the symptoms are scarcely less rapid after they once set in, which may be weeks, months, and even longer, after the operation of the cause.

These symptoms are the result of pressure—direct or indirect—of destruction of the brain substance, or of poisoning by absorbed putrid matter. They are much the same as those of meningitis, with which, indeed, abscess is often associated, especially if there is injury. The most striking are *headache*, often severe and persistent; *vomiting*; *vertigo*; *mental dullness*, succeeded sometimes by *delirium* and sometimes by *coma*. *Convulsions* are often present, and are epileptoid in character. *Optic neuritis* is also one of the symptoms. Other cranial nerves beside the optic are sometimes involved.

There is usually *fever*, as shown by elevation of temperature. At other times the temperature is normal or subnormal. The *pulse* is usually slow—from 60 to 70. The symptoms may set in with a *chill* after the latent period. The toxic symptoms are those usual to toxic states—viz., chill, irregular fever, prostration, emaciation, exhaustion. *Paralysis* in the form of hemiplegia sometimes occurs. The paralysis, however, is not always hemiplegic, and may be limited to the arm and face, especially in abscess of the temporo-sphenoidal lobe, which may compress the internal capsule. If on the left side, there may be *aphasia*.

When the abscess is in the parieto-occipital region, there may be *hemi-anopsia*. It is especially in abscess of the cerebellum that *vomiting* occurs, and *staggering* if the middle lobe is affected.

Of the *chronic* form it has already been said that the symptoms, though long delayed, are the same as those of the acute form. Such delay, however, does not always cover all symptoms, since during the latent stage the patient may have headache or vertigo in a mild degree, and especially may he be irritable and depressed, while he may even have a convulsive seizure during this preliminary period. It occasionally happens that there are no symptoms at all, and cases have occurred, more particularly of abscess in the frontal lobe, in which there were no signs or symptoms before death.

*Phlebitis* of the superior petrosal and lateral sinuses is especially common when the abscess is caused by disease of the ear, since the former receives a vein from the internal ear, and the latter receives the mastoid veins. *Edema about the ear and neck and hardness of the jugular veins* should suggest phlebitis, while *rigidity* of the neck and *cranial nerve paralysis* even more unerringly point to meningitis.

**Diagnosis.**—This is easy in acute cases, being substantiated by the history of injury, rigor, and fever, followed by the brain symptoms described. Almost as certain is the diagnosis when such symptoms follow chronic ear disease or localized putrid lung disease. It is to be remembered, that general cerebral symptoms may be produced by pus in the middle ear. These should be treated by puncture of the tympanum, and should the symptoms persist, after puncture abscess may be suspected. In like manner *meningitis* and *abscess* may be confounded, and with reason, because, in the first place, meningitis may be produced by the causes that produce abscess; and, second, meningitis may be caused by abscess, and both may occur together. Meningitis, however, affects the cranial nerves more than abscess, unless the abscess is seated in the pons, and usually meningitis succeeds more promptly upon its cause. It is to be remembered that



*tumor of the brain* may produce symptoms identical with those described. The chief distinctive symptom in abscess is the presence of fever.

**Prognosis.**—This, unless we admit a curable form described by Strümpell, is always ultimately fatal unless we have the rare good fortune to reach it by operation.

Acute cases last from eight to 14 days, rarely 30 days; the delayed cases may not show their first symptoms for months. In the curable form referred to, Strümpell says pronounced symptoms of focal disease exist for a time and suggest a tumor, but after some months or even a longer time they gradually abate, and recovery is complete. The nature of the symptoms is such as to suggest a seat in the cortex, for there is usually paresis of some part of the body, often associated with symptoms of motor irritation and impairment of speech.

**Treatment.**—A certain prophylaxis may be exercised in the proper treatment of disease of the ear, for it is often the neglect of this which leads to the abscess. Such prophylaxis includes measures which secure free discharge and antisepsis. Beyond this the only treatment for abscess which promises anything toward a favorable result is operation, on which account the surgeon should be promptly associated in the treatment of the case. The use of the trephine has saved a few cases. For the details of the operation the student is referred to text-books on surgery.

**ENCEPHALITIS WITHOUT ABSCESS.**—When, on the one hand, inflammation of the surface of the brain accompanying meningitis is eliminated, and, on the other, softening of the brain, formerly thought to be the result of inflammation, but now known to be due to the arrest of blood-supply, a number of cases of encephalitis without abscess remain, in some of which a necropsy was obtained.

## CHRONIC HYDROCEPHALUS.

**Definition.**—A collection of serous fluid either between the meninges or in the ventricles of the brain. The former constitutes intermeningeal hydrocephalus, or *hydrocephalus externus*, or *hydrocephalus ex vacuo*. The latter is ventricular hydrocephalus, or *hydrocephalus internus*. The seat of effusion in hydrocephalus externus may be either in the subdural space—*i. e.*, between the dura mater and the arachnoid—or in the subarachnoid space. The first was formerly regarded as the most frequent; later its occurrence came to be denied, but more recently, by means of frozen brain sections, it has been demonstrated. Since the subarachnoid space communicates with the ventricles of the brain, the two forms of hydrocephalus may coexist. Both external and internal hydrocephalus may be diffuse or circumscribed. When circumscribed there result in the case of the former cystic spaces in the membranes, and in the latter distention of portions of the ventricles.

**EXTERNAL HYDROCEPHALUS** occurs in connection with atrophy of the brain, and is not of much clinical importance.

## INTERNAL HYDROCEPHALUS

This is divided into congenital and acquired.

*Congenital Hydrocephalus.*

This pre-exists birth, and may be present to such a degree as to retard the birth of the head. More frequently it is not recognized until some time after birth.

**Etiology.**—This cannot be said to be certainly known. Virchow early ascribed it to inflammation of the ependyma; Rindfleisch rather to an obstruction to the circulation in the choroid plexus. Drunkenness and syphilis in parents, and accidents in pregnancy, are held responsible; occasionally, also, tumors of the brain. More than one child in a family is sometimes affected.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The head is characterized externally by its spherical shape and large size, its smooth eyebrows and protruding eyes, the last being due to depression of the orbital plate of the frontal bone. The protrusion is often so great that the eyelids cannot close over the eyes. The size of the head thus obtained is often enormous—from eight to ten inches (20 to 25 cm.) in diameter in a child of three or four years. On the other hand, the face appears very small. On closer examination the cranial bones are found separated and exceedingly thin, at times almost as thin as paper. In the membranous interspaces are often found Wormian bones. The veins may be seen beneath the skin, and fluctuation may sometimes be obtained through the scalp. On incising the brain a variable quantity of limpid fluid passes out. The quantity is sometimes enormous, reaching 20 pounds (40 kilos) or more. The cerebral cortex is greatly thinned, the thickness on the convexity being reduced to but a few millimeters. The gyri and the basal ganglia are compressed, and the ventricles are dilated. The commissures are stretched and even torn. The foramen of Monro is a wide opening, and the third ventricle is dilated and sometimes also the fourth. The ependyma is thickened, the choroid plexuses are vascular, sometimes little changed.

**Symptoms.**—These consist largely of the external morbid states just described, but in addition there is *slowness of physical and mental development*. The child learns to walk late and is very feeble and likely to be mentally deficient, although it is sometimes bright. The weight of the head is sometimes so great that it inclines to fall to the side or backward or forward, and must be supported by the hands of the patient. Other symptoms may, at times, be decidedly delayed, and the child may make some progress in studies. Signs of *mental imbecility* sooner or later make their appearance, manifested first, perhaps, by absence of development, but progressing until the child lives an almost vegetative existence, having to be fed and cared for like an infant, even though several years old. At times there is early headache. There may be *convulsive contractions, tremors, ataxic gait, paresis, and paralysis*; in fact, all the symptoms which succeed on irritative and destructive lesions of the nervous system. So, too, if life is sufficiently prolonged, the symptoms of tumor of the brain may be quite closely simu-

lated, especially when the cranium does not enlarge with the growing distention of the ventricles. There may be *choked disk*, *atrophy of the optic nerve*, and *total blindness*. This is more true of acquired hydrocephalus. There may be prolonged attacks of *drowsiness*, or *coma*, with *slow pulse*, while *sudden death* is not uncommon during epileptiform convulsions or apoplexy.

**Diagnosis and Prognosis.**—The rachitic head may be mistaken for the hydrocephalic, but the latter has not the broad forehead with prominent frontal eminences; it is rather spherical and smooth. A child with congenital hydrocephalus rarely lives to be more than four or five years old, though it may attain adult life

### *Acquired Hydrocephalus.*

**Etiology.**—This is also commonly ascribed to some inflammatory process, although it is said to be sometimes idiopathic. Especially is it a consequence of suppurative and tuberculous meningitis, when it is spoken of as acute acquired hydrocephalus, though chronic inflammatory processes may also cause it. Derangements in the circulation in the choroid plexus and in the ependyma of the ventricles may, however, be responsible. Especially may a tumor in the third ventricle, at the base of the brain, pressing upon the venæ Galeni or on the straight sinus of the dura mater, be a cause; or closure of the foramen of Monro, by which the ventricles communicate with the membranous spaces. Even lung or heart affections and growths in the mediastinum and neck may produce the needed obstruction.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—In cases of acquired hydrocephalus, even though beginning tolerably early in life—say the seventh year—as well as in adults, the skull does not necessarily expand, and the head may not enlarge. Indeed, the head may even be smaller than natural, as in cretins. In these instances the brain substance must yield, and is reduced in thickness, at times to a few millimeters only. In other cases the skull yields, its plates become thin, the fontanels grow larger, and an appearance like that of congenital hydrocephalus may result.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of acute acquired hydrocephalus are never distinctive, on account of the rapidity in the course of the disease which produces and obscures it.

Of chronic acquired hydrocephalus as of congenital the most striking symptom is, as a rule, the *marked distortion in the size and shape of the head* already described.

Other symptoms are those of congenital hydrocephalus influenced by the greater age the patient may attain.

Spontaneous evacuation of the fluid sometimes takes place by the nose, mouth, ear, or orbit.

**Diagnosis.**—This is commonly easy. It is only in cases in which the cranium does not expand that the symptoms of *brain tumor* may lead to a diagnosis of the latter condition instead of hydrocephalus.

**Prognosis.**—This is usually unfavorable. Generally the child lives from two to five years, though it may perish in a few months or live for from 10 to 15 years, or, as in a case of Bright's, to 29 years, or even longer. It has happened that spontaneous recovery has followed the evacuation of

fluid previously described. The absorption of small amounts of fluid is also possible.

**Treatment.**—This consists primarily in the treatment of the disease which is responsible for the hydrocephalus if it can be discovered; secondly, in the treatment of the symptoms which may arise, and next, in attempts to cure the malady. Some favorable results have followed the removal of the fluid by puncture of the ventricles, although there has been failure in the majority of instances. Measures should be taken to make the removal gradual, if possible, thus attempting to imitate the spontaneous efforts of nature, which have occasionally been followed by recovery. To this end the slow removal of the fluid—by puncture of the subarachnoid space between the third and fourth lumbar vertebræ—has been recommended and practiced by Quinke. At this point, too, the spinal cord is not very likely to be injured. It is more particularly in congenital hydrocephalus that operation is indicated.

If operation is deemed undesirable, attempts may be made to get rid of the fluid by diuretics and purgatives, although with little prospect of success. Iodid of potassium may be tried, with the faint hope that the hydrocephalus is due to a syphilitic tumor which might thus be melted away. Blisters may also be applied.

## GENERAL AND FUNCTIONAL DISEASES—NEUROSES.

The term neuroses is applied to nervous affections in which there are functional disturbances corresponding to which there is no known anatomical lesion.

## ACUTE DELIRIUM.

SYNONYM.—*Bell's Mania*.

**Definition.**—An acute and violent febrile delirium of unknown cause and undetermined lesion, running a course of from two to three weeks, and usually fatal.

**Historical.**—The disease was first described in 1849 by Luther Bell, of the McLean Asylum.

**Symptoms.**—These set in suddenly and consist in violent, active *delirium*, in which the patient talks and moves incessantly, with a speech that is incoherent and unintelligible and movements which are aimless and irresistible or rhythmical as though with a purpose. This is kept up for hours and hours, notwithstanding the use of the most powerful anodynes, until the patient becomes exhausted, the whole presenting a picture which is at once revolting and pitiable. At times sleep is obtained for an hour or two, but immediately on waking the active movements and delirium begin. The rhythmical movements may be like those of the salaam convulsions, up and down, as of one chopping wood or working a pump-handle. Throughout there is *high fever*, the temperature ranging from 102° to 104° F. (38.9° to 40° C.).

The tongue is dry, the pulse rapid and feeble, the skin, in like manner, dry and often covered with petechial spots or pustules and bullæ or bruises, the result of the violent acts of the patient. There seems, however, no pain or tenderness other than is due to these causes.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As stated in the definition, there is nothing definite. There may be venous engorgement of the meningeal veins and of the cerebral cortex, with perivascular exudation and cellular infiltration of the lymph sheaths and perivascular spaces. There is often engorgement of the bases of the lungs, and deglutition pneumonia has been found.

**Diagnosis.**—At first the disease may be mistaken for any of the acute fevers which sometimes begin with violent delirium, especially for *typhoid*, but the course of the temperature and absence of other distinctive symptoms soon eliminate any doubt.

The same may be said of forms of *puerperal mania*, and more rarely *pneumonia* of the meningeal type and of *cerebral meningitis* itself. The *incessant* violence is, however, peculiar to Bell's mania.

**Prognosis.**—This is almost always fatal.

**Treatment.**—This must consist of measures to control the mania, of which hypodermic injections of morphin are almost alone efficient, and these often only feebly so. Chloroform or ether must sometimes be em-

ployed, because of the dangerous doses of morphin which seem necessary. Blood-letting has apparently been of service in some cases, and there certainly is no contra-indication to it in the early stage of most cases, the patients at this stage being commonly very strong and vigorous. The cold bath may be employed, but is not an easy treatment to carry out, because of the difficulty in controlling the patient.

### ACUTE CHOREA.

SYNONYMS.—*Chorca minor*; *Mild Chorea*; *Sydenham's Chorea*; *St. Vitus' Dance*.

**Definition.**—A disease chiefly of the young, characterized by irregular, involuntary muscular contractions, associated at times with psychical disturbance, often with rheumatism and endocarditis. The term chorea is derived from the Greek *χορεία*, dancing.

**History.**—The term *chorea Sancti Viti* was first applied by Paracelsus (1493–1541) to an affection of a totally different nature, a sort of hysterical dancing mania which prevailed in epidemic form in the fourteenth, fifteenth, and sixteenth centuries in Germany and the Netherlands, for which the subjects sought relief by pilgrimages to certain shrines, among which was that of St. Vitus, in Zabern, whence the disease was called St. Vitus' dance. From other shrines it received other names, as St. John's and St. Anthony's dance. Chorea minor was first recognized by Sydenham in the sixteenth century, and was also called by him St. Vitus' dance, though a widely different affection from the St. Vitus' dance of Paracelsus.

**Etiology.**—The disease, though not confined to children, occurs far more frequently among them, notably from the time of the second dentition—the sixth or seventh year—to the 15th year. More than three-fourths of the entire number of cases occur during this period. Among adults it is relatively more frequent from the 15th to the 24th year. Occasionally it occurs in old age, when it is known as *chorea senilis*. Chorea is about twice as frequent in the female sex as in the male if all periods of life are considered, but below the period of puberty the difference in the sexes is not so striking. Heredity has always been an acknowledged factor in its causation, but is probably less significant than was once supposed. It has even been claimed that the disease is sometimes congenital in the offspring of a choreic mother. It is more frequent in neurotic families. As to temperament, it is well known that high-strung, excitable, nervous children, as contrasted with the dull and phlegmatic, are especially liable to the disease. It is principally in these that overstudy is seen to have a predisposing effect. Psychical influences are undoubtedly potent; thus, fright causes a large number of cases, while grief causes many, and even joy some.

The so-called Huntington's chorea, which is hereditary, is not the same as Sydenham's chorea, although Charcot did not make this distinction. Sydenham's chorea affects children of all social grades, but is more common among artisans and the lower classes. It is rare in the negro. Wharton Sinkler, who has especially investigated this point, has seen but one case in a full-blooded negro, while William Osler, at the Johns Hopkins Hospital,

out of 175 cases found five in the negro race. It is apparently unknown among Indians in their natural state.

The season of the year appears to have an undoubted influence. Morris J. Lewis, whose studies have been most thorough in this direction, finds that the fewest attacks occur in October and November and the greatest number in March and April. Hermann Eichhorst, on the other hand, says that the greatest number of cases occur in the autumn and winter months. The disease prevails more generally in towns than in the country.

Imitation, commonly regarded as an exciting cause, has been shown by modern studies to play a less important rôle than was thought, many cases described as thus originating being really hysteria. Trauma precedes a certain number of cases. Reflex irritation, especially digestive disturbances, and intestinal worms were regarded as potent causes by the older observers; but here again Osler's studies have failed to find any causal relationship. The chorea of pregnant women has been referred to this category. The causal relation of eye-strain to chorea has been emphasized by Stevens, but is practically denied by George de Schweinitz, who concludes, from an examination of more than 100 cases, that, while ordinary chorea and many forms of facial spasm—habit spasm, etc.—are materially benefited by correcting refractive errors and anomalies of the ocular muscles, he does not believe there is any proof to show that eye-strain is of itself responsible for their origin, with perhaps the single exception of habit spasm affecting the orbicularis and adjacent facial area. It may be such chorea which Howard F. Hansell cured in Da Costa's clinic<sup>1</sup> by atropin, paralyzing the ciliary muscle and preventing the effort at accommodation until the habit was broken up.

The association of arthritis and chorea was observed by the earliest students of the subject, and was distinctly recognized in England as early as 1802, but the exact causal relation of the two diseases has, perhaps, not yet been made out. That they are frequently associated and that there is close connection between the two affections is admitted by English and French writers, but the Germans find the association much less frequent. Steiner, for example, found only four cases of rheumatism in 252 cases of chorea. English observers find from 20 to 70 per cent. of cases of associated joint affection, while in this country, where rheumatism is apparently less frequent in children, the range of percentage found by various observers is from 15.5 to 54 per cent. That the arthritis precedes the chorea in a large number of cases is generally conceded, the latter disease developing with the subsidence of the former, or not until convalescence has been well established. Hence that the rheumatism is the cause of the chorea seemed at one time established, but recent views as to the probable infectiousness of rheumatism and the possible infectiousness of chorea changed the conditions. As the nature of the virus of rheumatic fever is unknown, it may be that chorea is caused by a similar poison. This theory is further sustained by the fact that the infectious diseases play an acknowledged rôle in the etiology of chorea. Scarlet fever, diphtheria, measles, typhoid fever, gonorrhea, secondary syphilis, puerperal fever, pyemia, multiple suppurative polyarthritis, have all been followed by chorea; but with the exception of acute rheumatic

<sup>1</sup> Da Costa's "Medical Diagnosis," eighth ed., p. 221. 1895.

polyarthritis and some forms of septicemia, the number of cases thus associated is not large. On the other hand, acute exanthemata developing in the course of chorea usually check the disease. Anemia has been held to be a cause, and probably is a predisposing cause, although frequently also a result. In fact, the studies of Charles W. Burr and others go to show that anemia is less frequently associated with chorea than has been commonly supposed. The relation of hysteria to chorea is interesting from the close resemblance, at times, of the two conditions. It has already been said that the cases of so-called imitation chorea are often examples of hysteria, and, on the whole, the association of the conditions is rather coincidental than causal, but some cases may be truly imitation in children not hysterical. Poisons are acknowledged causes in a few instances. Carbon dioxid and iodoform are among those which appear to have caused acute attacks of chorea of short duration.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—There is no definitely ascertained morbid anatomy for chorea, and the lesions which have been found are the result of the complications or are incidental. The most constant of these associated lesions are endocarditis, in 85 per cent. of Osler's cases; pericarditis, 26 per cent.; combined heart lesions, 90.4 per cent.; pneumonia, 12 per cent.; less numerous were acute pleurisy, pyemia, and phlebitis, also noticed. As to the nervous system, the symptomatology would lead us to expect the essential lesions in the cortex of the brain, and C. L. Dana has analyzed the recorded autopsies, of which there were only 39 in which the state of the nervous system was accurately described. In 16 there were intense cerebral hyperemia, periarterial exudation, erosions, softened spots, minute hemorrhages, and occasional emboli. The changes were most marked in the deeper parts of the motor tracts, particularly in the lenticular nuclei and the thalami. These changes are the same as those described by W. H. Dickinson in 1876. Essentially similar were the lesions found in two of Osler's cases. In two reported by Bevan Lewis there was apoplexy, one cerebellar and one cerebral and extraventricular. The so-called chorea corpuscles described by Ellischer are in no way characteristic. The same may be said of the swelling and turbidity of certain of the large pyramidal cells in the deeper layers of the cortex in the Rolandic region described by F. C. Turner. The changes in the ganglion cells of the spinal cord described by H. C. Wood in canine chorea have been found also by Triboulet, but he agrees with others who hold that canine chorea is a very different disease from human chorea.

**Nature of Chorea.**—This, it must be admitted, is as yet unknown. It has been intimated that the symptoms are of a kind which would naturally result from lesions in the motor cortical area. No constancy in such lesions is demonstrable. A cerebral seat for chorea is rendered likely by the existence of hemichorea, the association of chorea with mild psychical derangements, and by the fact that choreiform movements are sometimes symptoms of undoubted brain lesions—*posthemiplegic hemichorea*. The embolic theory which was suggested by Senhouse Kirkes, and supported by him, Hughlings Jackson, Broadbent, Tuckwell, and others, was based upon the presence of foci of embolic softening found in a few instances in connection with endocarditis, but has gained few supporters.



The theory which is at the present day naturally attracting most attention is the infectious theory, but the limits of a text-book do not permit its developmental consideration. Suffice it to say that Pianese, of Naples, has apparently isolated from the nervous system of a choreic patient a bacillus which he was able to cultivate successfully, and the cultures from which caused death in animals; also that while the acuter forms present many, if not all, of the conditions necessary to the conception of an infectious disease, the course of the milder forms, their etiology, notably their negative morbid anatomy, seem to demand that the disease be regarded for the present as a neurosis—that is, a disease of functional derangement without known anatomical basis.

**Symptoms.**—*Premonitory* symptoms, both motor and psychical, usually precede the onset of chorea. They include *restlessness* and inability to sit still, and an *altered disposition*, manifested by irritability and perversity. These symptoms, often misunderstood by parents, are sometimes the occasion of reproof and even severe punishment to the child—a course which accelerates and aggravates the disease.

A close study of the symptoms permits of their division into three separate groups, determined chiefly by their severity:

1. A *mild* form, including the majority of cases in which the affection of the muscle is slight, the speech scarcely involved, and the general health slightly disturbed.

2. The *severe*, in which the choreic movements are general, power of speech is lost, and the patient is unable to go about and help himself.

3. The *maniacal*, or *chorea insanicens*, characterized by intense cerebral excitement.

It is, however, unnecessary to separate the symptoms of each variety.

The *motor phenomena* are those first observed. They consist in peculiar jerky movements which begin most frequently in the upper extremities, especially in the right hand, rarely in the legs. They may even be general from the first, though the earliest symptoms often escape notice. *Speech* is affected, sooner or later, in one-fourth of the cases. The extent varies greatly from slight hesitancy to incoherency—the difficulty being in the muscles of articulation rather than in phonation. As a rule, the movements cease during sleep, though they sometimes persist even then. It is not generally believed that the movements extend to the muscles of organic life, though associated irregular and rapid action of the heart has been ascribed to choreic spasm of the papillary muscles. As the disease continues *muscular weakness* becomes manifest in a general want of strength rather than paralysis, though the weakness may be distributed hemiplegically or even monoplegically. It may even precede the jerking movements. Very rarely the pulse may be slow in the feeble state that follows chorea.

*Sensory symptoms* are less conspicuous than motor. Pain is rare, though its presence has been characteristic enough in some cases to obtain from them the name “painful chorea” from Weir Mitchell. Painful points over the sites of emergence of spinal nerves have been pointed out, though they must be rare. *Numbness, tingling, and prickling* sensations are occasionally met, and may be a part of the phenomena of multiple

neuritis sometimes present. *Headache*, sometimes very severe and paroxysmal, may occur, while *epileptiform seizures* are also a rare symptom, and when they occur are probably not a part of the chorea. The *reflexes* are variously affected, the knee-jerk being normal in about half the cases, in the remainder increased or absent. Trophic lesions are almost unknown. *Mental symptoms*, in the majority of cases, are not very conspicuous, though there are in some severe cases extreme manifestations, including melancholia, hallucinations, and even mania, which have their climax in *chorea insanicns*.

Most important are the *symptoms of cardiac disease*, in regard to which William Osler makes the startling statement: "There is no disease in which endocarditis is so constantly found postmortem as chorea. It is exceptional to find the heart healthy." The symptoms which are, therefore, to be always carefully sought include a *systolic apex murmur*, *palpitation*, and *irregular heart action*, although the child rarely complains of the latter or of pain about the heart. It is further important to note that in a majority of these cases the endocarditis is independent of acute arthritis, unless we hold with Bouillaud that in young subjects the heart acts as a joint. Organic *murmurs at the base* are very much more uncommon, most of the murmurs here being functional. They are heard with greatest intensity in the area of the pulmonary artery, but are audible sometimes in the aortic area as well. In a large proportion of all cases in which a murmur is heard at the base or along the left margin of the sternum in the second, third, and fourth interspaces it is functional, but a soft systolic murmur in this area with systolic pulsation in the cervical veins may be caused at the tricuspid orifice.

On the other hand, *endocarditis* sometimes occurs *without symptoms* or physical signs, while the disappearance of physical signs does not prove that endocarditis was not present. A *presystolic murmur* is also at times present, indicating mitral stenosis—in 19 per cent. of Osler's cases. On the other hand, the comparative rarity of simple aortic valve involvement is conspicuous, this being more uncommon than combined aortic and mitral disease, or even combined mitral and tricuspid disease. The tricuspid valves may alone be attacked.

A to-and-fro murmur, indicating *pericarditis*, may be present in from 8 to 25 per cent., and in more than half of these it is associated with endocarditis. It is to be remembered that both forms of organic heart disease, and especially endocarditis, may occur in chorea without rheumatism—*e. g.*, in 66 per cent. of Osler's cases—also that such endocarditis may lay the foundation of permanent organic disease.

W. S. Thayer, in his studies of 689 cases at Johns Hopkins Hospital or Dispensary, found evidence of cardiac involvement in 25.4 per cent. of the cases, and in the wards of the Hospital 50 per cent. The cardiac involvement occurred with somewhat greater frequency in cases where there was acute polyarthritis than where such history was absent.

Cardiac involvement was commoner in cases of chorea with frequent recurrences than in those in which there was but a single attack.

In 110 cases treated in the wards there was fever of moderate degree in almost every instance, and where there was high fever there was

evidence of cardiac involvement. There is good reason for the belief that the presence of fever in otherwise uncomplicated chorea is in a large proportion of cases associated with complicating endocarditis.<sup>1</sup>

Occasional *skin affections* make their appearance in chorea, the larger proportion being due to the prolonged administration of arsenic, so much used in the treatment of this disease. The forms for which the arsenic treatment is more or less responsible are erythematous and papillary eruptions, herpes, and the pigmentation frequently resulting from the prolonged administration of this drug. Eruptions also occur independent of arsenic administration. They are usually purpuric and associated with arthritis, similar in form to the purpura so often associated with rheumatism, and include some of the forms of multiple erythema—as erythema nodosum, purpuric urticaria, or simple purpura. C. H. Brown<sup>2</sup> has reported a remarkable case of subcutaneous nodules composed of young granulating tissue in a case of chorea in a boy of 11.

*Fever* is a rare symptom in chorea, except as the result of complications, of which arthritis is the most common, but endocarditis and pericarditis may also cause fever. The rare instances are cases of *chorea insaniens*, in which the temperature may rise to 105° F. (40.5° C.).

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually easy. *Simple tremor, athetosis, paralysis agitans*, as well as *alcoholic, senile, saturnine*, and *mercurial tremor*, are not likely to be confounded with the movements of chorea. The symptomatic choreiform movements due to cortical irritation by *meningitis, tubercle, hemorrhage, softening, tumor*, or *parasites*, are attended by other symptoms which distinguish them from chorea. In multiple and diffuse *cerebral sclerosis* the so-called *chorea spastica* movements may be very similar, but the early onset—usually in infancy—impaired intelligence, increased reflexes, rigidity, and chronic course of the disease characterize it. *Friedreich's ataxia* might be mistaken for chorea, but it is easily recognized by the lost knee-jerks, the slowness and inco-ordination of movements, talipes, nystagmus, and family distribution. Huntington's chorea is characterized by its hereditation, its limitation to adult life, and ultimate gradually developing dementia.

**Prognosis.**—Except in *chorea insaniens*, which is always fatal, recovery is the rule in from eight to ten weeks. It happens, too, sometimes that the severest cases of the ordinary forms are intractable, and rarely that they terminate fatally after a few days' illness, it may be from exhaustion or it may be from the complicating heart disease. Chorea of the pregnant woman is more serious than the chorea of children.

The *duration* of the disease may be from eight to ten weeks for the ordinary cases and from three to six months for the very severe ones. *Remissions* occur, and *relapses* as well, pointed out by Sydenham. A disposition to vernal recurrence has been noticed.

**Treatment.**—All cases should be carefully examined for causes of reflected irritation, which should be removed; then rest is essential. It is not necessary that the very mildest cases be put to bed, but they should be withdrawn from school and guarded from excitement and the curious gaze of

<sup>1</sup> "Journal Am. Med. Assoc.," Oct. 27, 1906.

<sup>2</sup> "Journal of Mental and Nervous Disease," August, 1893.

friends and strangers, for the movements almost invariably increase when the patient is under observation. More serious cases should be put to bed—a more thorough exclusion as well as rest is thus secured. Not only is recovery thus facilitated, but a diminished liability to heart complication is also attained.

Of drugs, *arsenic* and *iron* hold the first place. The former is given in slowly ascending doses of Fowler's solution until its physiological effect is produced, after which the dose should be gradually diminished. Some one of the preparations of iron should be given continuously in moderate doses. The bromids are also indicated, especially when there are restlessness and want of sleep, when chloral may also be added, and in severe cases may be given continuously. Opiates should, however, never be employed. An old remedy in this country is black snakeroot or *cimicifuga racemosa*, first recommended by the late Hiram Corson, who wrote me that he had used it for 50 years without a failure. I have sometimes used it in the shape of the infusion in mild cases, with apparently satisfactory results, in doses of 1 or 2 fluidounces (30 to 60 c.c.). Modern remedies are antipyrin and physostigma. The former is given to adults in doses of from 7 to 15 grains (0.5 to 1 gm.), much reduced for children. Physostigma has been given in doses of from 1/70 to 1/35 grain (0.0094 to 0.0188 gm.) hypodermically. Hyoseyamin in doses of 1/100 grain (0.00065 gm.), three times a day, has apparently been followed by good results. The oxid of zinc, valerianate of zinc, nitrate of silver, and sulphate of copper, formerly much recommended, have fallen into disuse. In consequence of the close relations between chorea with its attending arthritis and rheumatic arthritis it is reasonable to expect that the salicylates might be useful, but such expectation has not, as yet, been realized.

Montrose Graham Tule attaches great value to apomorphin. He administered in a desperate case, a girl of 15, hypodermically 1/40 grain (0.0016 gm.) which allayed the spasms in three minutes. This was followed up by 1/20 grain (0.0033 gm.) by the mouth every three hours, followed by prompt recovery. Chloralose has also controlled the spasms in an acute case in my hands.

### CHOREIFORM AFFECTIONS.

There remain to be considered some forms of convulsive contractures several of which are included under the term "habit spasm" or "habit chorea," or "tic." The term *tic*, as originally understood, means *facial spasm*. It has, however, been extended by the French school (whose lead in these affections seems at present acknowledged) to include "an habitual, conscious, convulsive movement, resulting in the contraction of one or more muscles of the body, reproducing, most frequently in an abrupt manner, some reflex or automatic action of common life" (Guinon). It is characteristic of these motions that they are more or less under the control of the will, in which respect they differ from the contractions of chorea minor.

## I. SIMPLE TIC.

SYNONYMS.—*Habit Spasm; Habit Chorea.*

Simple tic may be localized or general.

*Localized tic* begins usually in young persons, most frequently in girls from seven to 14 years of age, and may persist through life. The spasm is confined to a single muscle, a group of muscles, or a group of associated muscles, *most frequently the muscles of expression*. The mild forms are looked upon as simply peculiarities of the individual; but the more severe forms, in which nearly all the muscles of the face are affected and even the depressors of the jaw and the tongue are often thrown into action while speaking, are manifestly pathological. It differs from the *idiopathic facial* spasm of adults in that the latter is rarely seen until after the 40th year, and is, moreover, slower than the habit spasm of the facial muscles. It is possible for the simplest forms of habit spasm to be a childish trick perpetuated; such may be a blinking of the eye or the act of sniffing. In other simple forms there is a drawing aside of the mouth or a jerking of the head to one side, or a simple shaking of the head, while the eye is winked at the same time; or there may be shrugging of one shoulder. More rarely the contraction occurs in the legs, as in the very characteristic "string-halt" tic, in which at times the leg is suddenly drawn up. Localized tic may be transient, gradually disappearing after a few months. The French school has devised a method of treatment of these localized tics, consisting of educational movements of the affected muscles.

*Generalized Tic, Electric Chorea* (Henoch).—In this there is sudden electric-like spasm of the muscles of the trunk and limbs, but especially of the neck and shoulders, causing an instantaneous start, which affects the patient for an instant only, when it passes off and leaves him quiet and motionless. The contraction is like that produced by a galvanic shock. It may be associated with facial spasm. It occurs especially in children, but also in adults, particularly in women, and may persist for years.

*Paramyoclonus Multiplex; Myoclonia*.—This term was applied by Friedreich in 1882 to a disease first observed by him, in which there are clonic convulsions in symmetrical muscle groups in the arms and legs without loss of consciousness. It occurs usually in males, and follows emotional disturbances like fright. In addition there is a considerable increase in the tendon reflexes. In order that a case may be one of true paramyoclonus it is necessary that the contractions in the single muscles should be sudden—lightening-like. The muscles affected are commonly those of the trunk and extremities. The contractions are usually bilateral, and vary from 50 to 150 a minute. There are no sensory symptoms. Between the attacks there may be tremors. These cases are allied, on the one hand, to the electric chorea just described, and, on the other, to the different forms of convulsive tic, clonic facial cramp, and clonic cramp of the neck muscles. Some cases of so-called paramyoclonus are really cases of hysteria. This view is sustained by Arthur Conklin Brush<sup>1</sup>, who reports three cases and reviews several.

<sup>1</sup> "The Nature of Paramyoclonus Multiplex," "American Jour. of the Medical Sciences," December, 1899.

*Dubini's Disease.*—The term electric chorea is applied to an acute infectious disease occurring in Lombardy, and known as Dubini's disease, in which there are sudden contractions, first usually in the arm, but passing thence into all the extremities, followed in several weeks or months by paralysis and muscular atrophy, occasionally by epileptiform convulsions and fever. No morbid anatomy has been determined.

## II. TIC WITH EXPLOSIVE UTTERANCES, COPROLALIA, ECHOLALIA, FIXED IDEAS, ETC.

SYNONYMS.—*Maladie de la tic convulsif; Gilles de la Tourette's Disease.*

**Definition.**—In addition to motor spasm, this form of tic is characterized by explosive utterances of certain words and sounds, such as "fire" "murder," "hah," "bow-wow;" or profane words, such as "God damn," "Jesus Christ;" or filthy and obscene words, when it is known as *coprolalia*. There may also be mimicry of words, when it is called *echolalia*, or mimicry of action, *echokinesis*; or the patient may be possessed of a fixed idea of the variety known as *arithmomania*, *délire du toucher*, *onomatomania*, and *folie pourquoi*. In *arithmomania* almost every action is preceded by performing a certain number of acts, as in a patient of Osler's, who before she went to bed had to tap her heel upon the bedstead a given number of times; before drinking a tumbler of water, to rotate the glass nine or ten times, and the same thing when setting it down; before opening a door a certain number of knocks had to be given, and the greatest difficulty was experienced in getting her to brush her hair, as it took so long to count before she began. In the *délire du toucher* there is the constant fear of contamination from contact with objects; in *onomatomania* to repeat over and over again names which arise, and in the *folie pourquoi* to demand a reason for every one of the simplest acts. In other instances the patient imagines that some one is talking to her. All these are in addition to the convulsive acts.

The involuntary movements themselves vary greatly from trifling tic in any one or more of the muscles of the face to contractions involving all the muscles of the body. This condition, which is neither chorea nor habit spasm, is at times mistaken for both. It is commonly easy of recognition, and although of uncertain prognosis, recoveries take place.

## III. COMPLEX CO-ORDINATED TIC.

**Definition.**—This includes a number of forms of habit movement differing from ordinary tic in the more complex nature of the actions performed. It includes tricks and habits, such as those of one who in writing stops at every few words and looks intently at his finger tips; the "head nodding" of children (not to be confounded with the *epilepsia nutans* of children), "thumb sucking," "rocking in bed," and similar actions. Of the same nature is the so-called "head-banging," in which the child, asleep or awake, while in bed, will turn over and bang the head violently into the pillow, repeating this act five or six times or for two or three hours at a time;

or the child may strike the head repeatedly with the fist—*krouomania*; or it may rotate the head violently from side to side, balancing or gyrating the body with great rapidity. This practice is sometimes communicated from one child to another. These movements are met especially in feeble-minded children, in whom it may be accompanied by nystagmus, and is sometimes the result of injury after birth. When these phenomena do not occur in the feeble-minded or after injury early in life, the prognosis is said by Gee and Haden, who have especially studied the subject, to be favorable.

#### IV. SPASM OF THE MUSCLES OF RESPIRATION AND DEGLUTITION.

**Definition.**—The spasm affects the muscles of respiration and phonation, the muscular contraction being accompanied by more or less noise, as a “sniffle” or “hiccough” during inspiration, or some noisy or explosive sound during expiration. Such spasms are sometimes part of a hysterical state. Among those described as thus occurring is a sort of rumbling which comes from low down in the abdomen, passes up the stomach, and out of the mouth as an explosive loud noise—something like belching, but louder. In another instance there was a peculiar clucking noise in the throat accompanying motions, particularly those of swallowing, which disappeared only during sleep. Again, there may be a loud inspiratory cry preceded by three or four deep inspirations and followed by a deep, hoarse, expiratory sound.

#### V. CHRONIC PROGRESSIVE CHOREA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Huntington's Chorea; Chronic Hereditary Chorea.*

**Definition.**—A disease of adult life, commonly hereditary, characterized by irregular movements, deranged speech, and ultimate dementia gradually developing.

**Historical.**—The affection was first described by C. O. Waters, of Franklin, N. Y., in Dunglison's “Practice of Medicine,” in 1812; again in the “American Medical Times,” 1863, by Irving W. Lyon; fully in 1872 by George Huntington, of Ohio, in the “Medical and Surgical Reporter,” in whose paper the following three marked peculiarities were presented and dilated upon:

1. Its hereditary nature.
2. A tendency to insanity and suicide.
3. Its manifesting itself as a grave disease only in adult life.

Subsequent to Huntington's description little is found in literature until 1884, when C. A. Ewald reported two cases in Germany, and 1885, when Clarence King, in this country, reported another family. Then followed numerous reports; and finally, in Paris, in 1889, the monograph of Huet, and another by Osler, in 1894, in which the history of two families is detailed. Numerous cases were reported between 1889 and 1894.

**Etiology.**—Its frequent hereditary origin has been mentioned. Indeed, heredity is one of its most striking features, 25 per cent. of certain families having been victims, and even more than 50 per cent. of the adults in families. It is especially when both parents were affected, and seriously, that one or more of the offspring almost invariably have the disease if they live to adult age. The two sexes are about equally affected, though in some families males are oftener affected. It is further characteristic that if a generation is skipped, the disease never manifests itself again in that family,

and that it *rarely* presents itself *before 30 years* of age. Huet has, however, collected seven cases of earlier onset. It is said, also, that it is not invariably hereditary, being sometimes due to emotional causes. In all the families in which this choreic tendency has been found the nervous temperament prevails.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This is somewhat more definite than that of chorea minor. At least, there has been found at necropsy quite frequently a condition of *pachymeningitis* and *hematoma* of the dura mater with atrophy of the cortex, and less frequently a disseminated *encephalitis*, evidenced by sub-cortical foci of round cells. Nothing has, however, been found which can in any way be regarded as peculiar or as accounting for the disease occurring at a certain age or for its affecting certain individuals, though the lesions do explain the motor phenomena. It should be stated that Charcot and his pupil Huet do not separate this chronic progressive chorea from chorea minor, but all other writers do.

**Symptoms.**—The *onset is gradual* in hereditary cases, although it may be sudden in cases arising otherwise. As in chorea minor, *motor symptoms* are the first to appear: first usually in an unsteadiness of the gait or slightly irregular movements of the hands. Occasionally only the *mental symptoms* are the first to appear, not usually manifesting themselves until the motor are well established. Motor symptoms include also *spasm* of the muscles of the face. The movements differ from those of chorea minor in being *slower* and by *absence of co-ordination*, strikingly manifested in walking. The station may be good, except for a slight swaying of the trunk, but an attempt to walk is followed by an unsteadiness characterized by marked lateral deviation from the straight line, by swaying of the body, and sometimes by precipitate falling movement from which the patient may, however, recover himself—in brief, a typical drunkard's gait. This unsteadiness ultimately makes locomotion impossible, and the patient takes to his bed. Yet before this stage is reached, although ataxic, he may be able to walk long distances. While at rest the movements cease altogether. They are aggravated by emotion and excitement, while in the beginning they may to a degree be influenced by the will. Thus, a patient said to me lately: "If I put my mind to it, I can stop it."

*Speech* is affected in most instances, being at first slow and hesitating and interrupted by interjections; later it is indistinct. The handwriting is likewise involved, the letters being irregular and badly formed, running into one another and off the line, and ultimately writing becomes impossible. Sensation and the special senses remain intact, as does the muscular sense, until the disease is advanced. The reflexes are usually increased.

The *tendency to insanity and suicide* has been referred to as an acknowledged symptom. Beginning as a simple irritability or moodiness with depression, it passes slowly over into feeble-mindedness. The suicidal impulse is sometimes carried out.

**Diagnosis.**—This is easy in the hereditary cases only. *Friedreich's ataxia* resembles it slightly, but begins earlier. *Idiopathic double athetosis* also occurs in elderly persons, but in it the movements are associated with rigidity and are of a peculiar character, and the gait is also spastic, while neither rigidity nor spastic gait plays any part in progressive chorea.



**Prognosis** is ultimately fatal. The progress of the disease is progressively and irresistibly from bad to worse.

**Treatment** is of no avail.

## VI. CHOREA MAJOR.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Pandemic Chorea; Automatic Chorea; St. Vitus' Dance; Rhythmical or Hysterical Chorea; Lata; Miryachit; Jumpers; Jerkers; Holy Rollers.*

I prefer to include under this heading all the different varieties of saltatorial spasm of which the historical St. Vitus' dance of Paracelsus, prevalent in the fourteenth, fifteenth, and sixteenth centuries, is the most familiar illustration.

All are varieties of tic, in which strong contractions take place in the leg muscles when the patient attempts to stand, causing a jumping or springing action. All are endemic neuroses, illustrated by the "jumping Frenchmen" of Maine and Canada, the subjects of which are liable, on any sudden emotion, to jump violently and utter a loud cry or sound and obey any command or imitate any action without regard to its nature. The jumping prevails in certain families. Similar were the "jerkers" who appeared during the religious revivals in Kentucky in the early part of the present century; and the "holy rollers," in New Hampshire and Vermont. The disease known as *lata* among the Malays, and *miryachit* in Russia are similar. In the true St. Vitus' dance, chorea major, or *chorea Germanorum*, the paroxysm arises spontaneously; so, also, in the salaam convulsions of children, in which the muscles of the abdomen are affected, and in which there is a bowing forward of the head and body as many as a hundred times or more. The paroxysms may occur several times a day, lasting from a few seconds to as many minutes. In the others, as the American jumpers, etc., it is in response to some external impression. During the paroxysm the affected person sings, dances, jumps from the ground, rolls from side to side, hammers with his hands, stamps with his feet, or whirls madly around until he falls exhausted to the ground.

## VII. POSTPARALYTIC CHOREA AND POSTCHOREAL PARALYSIS.

**SYNONYM.**—*Posthemiplegic Mobile Spasm* (Gowers).

**Definition.**—By this are meant choreiform movements which are the result of cerebral disease, most frequently hemorrhage. They may immediately precede or follow the stroke.

**History.**—Weir Mitchell<sup>1</sup> first called attention in 1874 to certain choreiform movements which sometimes occur in partially paralyzed limbs after an attack of hemiplegia. Later, Charcot recognized the condition and described it.

Posthemiplegic chorea, on the other hand, ordinarily appears in the limbs previously paralyzed, at the time when they again begin to be capable of motion. It is generally sudden, and either continues throughout life or disappears gradually. Often it is associated with contractures. Not infre-

<sup>1</sup> "American Jour. of the Medical Sciences," October, p. 342, 1874.

quently the affected side of the body is anesthetic, and even the organs of special sense may take part in the hemianesthesia, in which cases it is probably a hysterical hemianesthesia.

The movements are more frequent in the hand than in the leg, though sometimes they occur in both, most marked in the fingers and toes, and diminish toward the shoulders and hips. They are really more athetoid than choreic, but quicker, consisting mainly in inco-ordinate gyrations of the fingers and thumbs, flexion and extension of the wrist and elbow, shrugging and other movements of the shoulder. They always cease during sleep. Charcot considers posthemiplegic chorea as identical with athetosis.

**Symptoms.**—The prehemiplegic form is rarer and more serious in significance. The movements vary greatly, and the milder degrees can be recognized only on close examination. In this form the symptoms precede, usually by a few days, the apoplectic stroke, and cease as soon as paralysis appears.

The lesion causing these symptoms is regarded as cerebral, and in that portion of the cerebrum within the internal capsule in which the fibers of the pyramidal tract pass between the lenticular nucleus and the optic thalamus. Sometimes, however, similar phenomena are associated with disease elsewhere, as in the pons or even in the spinal cord; but under any circumstances it would seem to be necessary that there should be irritation of the pyramidal tracts somewhere in their course.

## EPILEPSY.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Morbus caducus sive sacer; Morbus divinus; Falling Fits.*

**Definition.**—Epilepsy is a chronic paroxysmal disease, characterized in its typical form by sudden loss of consciousness and by violent general convulsions (grand mal); but both unconsciousness and convulsions may be so fleeting as to be barely recognized (petit mal); while convulsions may be localized and unattended by loss of consciousness (Jacksonian or cortical epilepsy); finally, seizures may be substituted by conditions of uncontrollable violence or somnambulistic acts (psychical epilepsy).

Epilepsy is, strictly speaking, a syndrome or group of symptoms of which the morbid basis is not always the same. Formerly it was considered essential to the diagnosis of epilepsy that the convulsions should not be toxic, reflex, traumatic, the result of previous brain disease, or heart failure. At the present day toxic convulsions, which are essentially covered in actual practice by uremic convulsions, are not regarded as epileptic, nor are pure reflex convulsions which are due to such causes as teething, constipation, worms, and other forms of peripheral irritation. On the other hand, certain convulsions due to cortical brain lesions, which will be further considered, are acknowledged to be epileptiform. For most cases of epilepsy no anatomical basis has as yet been discovered.

**Etiology.**—From one to six persons out of every 1000 have epilepsy. The tendency of modern studies is to diminish the importance of heredity, formerly so conspicuous as a supposed cause of epilepsy. Gowers' statistics,

which may still be regarded as representing the older pathology, drawn largely from his own practice ascribe to heredity a percentage of 35, while the range in the older statistics is from 9 to 40. Osler's observations, on the other hand, on cases at the Infirmary for Nervous Diseases in Philadelphia, and in the Institution for Feeble-minded Children at Ewlyn, Pa., give the percentage in the two institutions as a little over 1 per cent., and in five cases out of 435 in which the epileptics were children of epileptic parents it was traceable to the mother in every instance. The comparative unimportance of heredity as a cause is upheld by the modern French school, notably by Marie. On the other hand, the disease is of frequent occurrence in neurotic families, including those subject to insanity, hysteria, and neuralgia. So, too, vices of constitution and vicious habits in parents, especially alcoholism and syphilis, are acknowledged causes. The intermarriage of relatives is also an element. More certainly responsible is local disease of the brain *cortex*, including tumors and traumatic disease, such as are produced by fractures, and the conditions described as causing the cerebral palsies in children.

All of these are causes which may be both essential and exciting. Among the more purely exciting causes are fright, irritation by worms in the intestinal tract, dentition, constipation, and the like, all of which may provoke attacks in an epileptic. Some would regard the reflex epileptiform attacks excited by these causes as true epilepsy, and call it reflex epilepsy. But at present these cases should not be called epileptic, since they do not recur after the exciting cause is removed. Such were the two striking cases in my own experience, one of which disappeared entirely after the removal of a tapeworm in a girl of 18, and another after the cure of constipation in a young man of 20. These are very different from others in which attacks are brought on by like exciting causes, but occur also independently of these causes.

True exciting causes are infectious diseases, alcoholism, and syphilis. The influence of infectious diseases is thus shown: Given an epileptic who is subject to seizures once a month, who acquires typhoid fever, the prodromal symptoms are almost always sure to include frequently-recurring epileptic seizures. *Masturbation* is included among the true causes, but is probably only an exciting cause. *Ocular and aural irritations* are exciting causes. *Cardiac epilepsy* is a variety in which there is disturbance of the heart's action, either palpitation or slowing, prior to attacks; but such derangements are symptoms rather than causes, or they may be a mode of manifestation of the aura to be presently described.

Epilepsy is pre-eminently a disease of childhood and youth, and after 20 it is most unlikely to arise. Most cases begin between the ages of 10 and 16. Yet idiopathic epilepsy may occur after 60. It seems to be slightly more frequent in boys than girls, although all statistics do not point this way, whence it may be concluded that the numbers in each sex are nearly equal.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The cortical lesions described as causing the cerebral palsies of children and some resulting from trauma are found in connection with most cases of Jacksonian or focal epilepsy. *Tumors*, especially those involving the motor layer of the cortex, are among these

causes; so are localized *syphilis*, *pachymeningitis*, and *tyroma* or tuberculous tumor, and sometimes tuberculous meningitis, pointed out by J. Hendrie Lloyd. Lloyd would, however, exclude the gross deformities, such as por-encephalia; and diffuse processes, such as lobar sclerosis, which manifest themselves by idiocy and arrested development, and are not infrequently provocative of epileptic seizures.

*Sclerosis* of different parts of the brain and medulla oblongata is also found in cases of epilepsy. This is especially true of the hippocampus major, this being probably a conspicuous local focus of a more diffuse lesion. Similar sclerosis is sometimes found in the cerebellum. A *nuclear degeneration* and vacuolation of the cells of the second layer of the cortex has been claimed by Bevan Lewis as a distinctive lesion of epilepsy. Many cases of so-called idiopathic epilepsy are still without a demonstrable morbid anatomy.

**Mechanism of the Convulsion.**—The epileptic seizure itself is regarded in the light of our present knowledge as an explosion or *discharge of nerve force*, the seat of discharge, in the severe seizures, at least, being the large motor cells in the deeper layers of the cortex, the function of which is to store up and discharge nerve force. The same mechanism exists in sensory and psychical epilepsy. The explanation is not entirely satisfactory.

**Symptoms.**—These vary in the four varieties known as grand mal, petit mal, Jacksonian, and psychical epilepsy.

1. *Grand Mal.*—In a large number of cases the epileptic attack is preceded by what is known as the *aura*, a peculiar sensation which differs greatly in different individuals. Occasionally it is like what the word literally means, a breath of air, which starts from a particular part of the body, as the extremities or a single finger or toe or a part of the surface of the body, such as the neighborhood of the stomach or the heart. At other times the aura is a simple epigastric sensation, a sense of discomfort or uneasiness emanating from the stomach or the feeling of a ball arising therefrom, and this is not a very uncommon form. It may be a flash of light, which may be of different colors; an object, as a face or faces, and even a coffin—as in one of M. Allen Starr's cases. Auditory auræ are manifested through the sense of hearing, and may be subjective sounds of any kind, including musical tones or even voices. Gustatory and olfactory auræ include subjective tastes and smells, mostly of an unpleasant character. Auræ are represented also by tingling, numbness, or simple flushing or chilliness anywhere in the body. "Intellectual auræ" so called by Hughlings Jackson, are certain mental conditions, such as the "dreamy state," and the consciousness of a certain algebraic formula, which always presented itself to a patient of Starr.

In other cases there is a more prolonged *prodrome*. For several hours or for a day the patient may be the subject of sensations. He may feel generally miserable, dispirited, timid, irritable, or dizzy, or he may be pale or quiet, and wait patiently for the dreaded event, known to him rather by its consequences than its phenomena, of which he is unconscious. There is pathetic sadness often in this patient expectation. *The aura is by no means always present*, indeed, perhaps in the majority of cases of epilepsy there occurs no warning of the attack. The aura may be substituted by certain movements, such as running rapidly for a few minutes either forward or in

a circle—the so-called *epilepsia procursiva*—or the patient may stand on his toes and rotate with great rapidity.

Following the aura or independent of it occurs the *convulsion* or “fit,” of which the initial event is often the *epileptic cry*. This is succeeded by the *fall*, which may be sudden, as if the patient were shot, while serious injury may be a consequence. Following this the phenomena of the fit may be quite sharply divided into *three stages*, that of tonic spasm, of clonic spasm, and of coma.

(a) *The Tonic Spasm*.—In this the head is drawn back or to the right and the jaws are fixed; the arms are flexed at the elbow, the hand is flexed at the wrist, and the fingers are clinched into the palm, while the legs and feet are extended. The muscles of the chest are involved and respiration is suspended, and the face becomes dusky, livid, and swollen, contrasting with the initial pallor. The muscles of the two sides are not equally affected, so that the neck is twisted and the spine curved. This stage lasts but a *few seconds* and is succeeded by clonic spasm.

(b) *The Clonic Spasm*.—Now the muscular contractions become intermittent. At first tremulous and vibratory, they soon become strong and general, until the arms and legs are thrown about in the most violent manner, sometimes so violently as to produce dislocation, usually of the shoulder. The muscles of the face are also involved in distorting contractions, while the eyes roll and the lids open and close. The jaw muscles contract violently and the tongue is apt to be caught and bitten. A frothy saliva, often blood-stained, escapes, and the patient is said to “froth at the mouth.” There may be involuntary discharge of feces and urine. The lividity supervening in the first stage diminishes somewhat during this stage. The temperature rises  $1/2^{\circ}$  to  $1^{\circ}$  F. ( $0.28^{\circ}$  to  $0.55^{\circ}$  C.). Very soon the contractions become less violent, finally abate, and this stage terminates, in *one or two minutes*, in the stage of coma.

(c) *Coma*.—In this the limbs are relaxed and there is profound unconsciousness, but the breathing is noisy and stertorous. The face remains congested, but is no longer cyanotic. The patient may, after a time, be aroused, but if left alone, commonly sleeps several hours, awaking after a time in a remarkably natural state, feeling bruised and aching, but otherwise quite himself; or there may be some mental confusion and even headache.

These are the phenomena of the attack in the vast majority of cases of grand mal. There may not be another attack for several days or a month or more. In severe cases, on the other hand, there may be daily recurrence, though not until the disease has lasted for several years. In a few instances the attacks may follow one another in rapid succession without a return of consciousness, lasting from 12 hours to a day or more, producing the *stat epilepticus*, in the course of which the patient may die from exhaustion. In this state there is often decided fever. In some instances the Jacksonian form of epilepsy may appear as status epilepticus.

After the attack the *reflexes* may be increased and ankle clonus may be obtained; at other times the reflexes are absent. The urine is also often increased, and a small amount of albumin is quite common after the fit. There is also sometimes an increase in the amount of uric acid in the urine *after* the convulsion in *grand mal*.

Inequality of pupils (anisocoria) has been considered a symptom of epilepsy. This symptom,<sup>1</sup> however, occurs in healthy individuals, and too much value should not be attached to it.

2. *Petit Mal*.—The symptoms in minor attacks vary somewhat, but commonly the patient stops in the midst of what he may be doing, the eyes become staring and fixed, the pupils dilated, the countenance pale, there may be some twitching of the facial muscles or the limbs, and consciousness is lost, but there is no convulsion. Anything that is in the hand may be dropped, but in a minute or two consciousness returns and the patient resumes what he has been doing as though nothing had happened. Here, too, though rarely, there may be auræ of various kinds and even an epileptic cry; also forced movements—procurive epilepsy. There may be dizziness without unconsciousness, and the patient may fall. An increase of uric acid in the urine is said also to be quite frequently associated with this form of epilepsy. As the disease continues the attacks of *petit mal* generally become *grand mal*, or the two forms of attack may alternate.

3. *Jacksonian or Partial or Cortical Epilepsy*.—In this, *consciousness is retained*, though it is thought by some that there is always a momentary period of unconsciousness while convulsions occur, though circumscribed to a single group of muscles or to a single limb. It is almost always symptomatic of some focal lesion in the cortical motor area, which may be a tumor, an injury or inflammatory process in the membranes or brain substance, softening, hemorrhage, abscess, or sclerosis. It is especially likely to be a sign of a growing tumor. Hence it is also called symptomatic epilepsy. Previous to the twitching there may be a numbness or *tingling in the part to be involved*, which has been called the "signal symptom" by Seguin, because it ushers in the attack. It may remain during the attack, and is of value in determining the seat of the lesion, and therefore the place for operation. Its seat is usually the same in the same patient in all the attacks.

The spasm or convulsion begins uniformly in one part—it may be the face, the thumb, the toes—thence slowly invades an entire limb. It continues sometimes for three or four minutes or longer. The movement is tonic and clonic, extending from the part in which it begins to other parts in a definite order of extension. Thus, if it begins in a part of the face, it extends thence to the whole face, then to the shoulder, arm, forearm, and hand, and possibly the leg from the trunk down to the toes; or it may start in the fingers and go in the opposite direction. Jacksonian epilepsy also occurs in uremia and progressive paralysis of the insane, and it has already been spoken of as following the hemiplegia of children. After the convulsion, the parts convulsed and especially that in which the spasm begins may be partially paralyzed and awkward in movement, and quite often the numbness and palsy continue for some time, with a moderate degree of tactile or thermal anesthesia. More rarely this paresis is permanent, when it is evidence of changes in the cortex such as may be caused by a growing tumor. Rarely the opposite side of the body is affected, and if this occurs, consciousness may be finally lost.

4. *Psychical Epilepsy*.—This occurs either as a later symptom following the more common forms of *grand mal* and especially *petit mal*, or as an

<sup>1</sup> See a paper by Wendell Reber, "The Pupil in Health and Epilepsy," "Med. News," August 24, 1895.

independent state or as what is known as a "psychical epileptic equivalent," where the usual seizure is substituted by a somnambulistic state in which the patient performs various acts, sometimes of great complexity, including driving, walking, and the like, of which he is totally oblivious after he passes into the natural condition. Some striking instances of psychical epileptic equivalent are related by M. Allen Starr in his book on "Familiar Forms of Nervous Disease." Other manifestations of psychical epilepsy are represented by violent maniacal excitement and uncontrollable violence, in which criminal acts, including even homicide, are committed. See also under Prognosis.

*Relative Frequency and Time of Attacks.*—The major form of attack is the most frequent, after this, mixed forms of major and minor, and then minor and Jacksonian; the most infrequent are the psychical forms.

Two-thirds of the attacks occur between 8 A. M. and 8 P. M.; many attacks occur early in the morning after awaking, some between 3 and 5 A. M., and others in the night at unknown hours—nocturnal epilepsy. In true epilepsy the patient generally feels perfectly well between the attacks—indeed, he not infrequently feels better for a time after the spell.

*Diagnosis.*—The epileptic fit is of itself in no way characteristic of the disease. The uremic convulsion is identical, as is also the reflex convulsion due to teething and other causes. Even hysterical convulsion closely resembles it, but there are points of difference. Something more, therefore, than the convulsion is necessary to prove the presence of the disease. The *aura* is distinctive, and when present, is almost conclusive. Scarcely less so is the epileptic "cry" although it is less constant than the *aura*. The *relaxation of the sphincters* belongs rather to the epileptic fit, while the bitten tongue, the dilated pupil, and sudden unconsciousness belong to uremia as well; and it is from *uremia* that it is most important to distinguish epilepsy. The occurrence in the midst of apparent health of a convulsion with the features described, followed by prompt recovery without albuminuria or casts, can hardly be anything but epilepsy. At other times, when other signs of Bright's disease are absent, it may be necessary to defer the diagnosis a little longer in order to examine the urine. Finally, epileptics may have *Bright's disease*, when errors are still more likely and sometimes unavoidable.<sup>1</sup>

The *reflex convulsion* in children is likely to be repeated until the cause is removed, and in this respect the condition resembles the *status epilepticus*, but in the former a little careful searching will probably discover the cause. The isolated reflex convulsion may be more difficult to account for at first, but in these cases immediate decision is less important, and may await time to help us. The very short duration of the *petit mal* separates it sharply from the uremic fit. Nocturnal convulsions, occurring as they do often without the knowledge of the patient, are usually epileptic.

The *hysterical convulsion* sometimes simulates closely the epileptic. But the hysterical patient rarely loses consciousness completely, the fall is not so sudden, the victim rarely if ever hurts herself, and never bites her

<sup>1</sup> See two interesting cases reported by me in the "Transactions of the Association of American Physicians," vol. vi., 1891.

tongue; nor is there any rise of temperature, while even the pulse and respirations commonly remain quite normal. There is rigidity, but it is unlike that of epilepsy—it is not more conspicuous in the beginning of the attack. Opisthotonos, or arching of the back, does not occur in the epileptic convulsion. Finally, the hysterical convulsion is of longer duration, lasts 10 minutes or more, while the duration of the epileptic fit is not usually more than three or four minutes.

The *petit mal* is most frequently mistaken for *fainting*, but after two or three occurrences it should be recognized. The vertigo of *Ménière's disease* and of attacks of *indigestion* resembles it, but in the former there is deafness, while in neither is there actual unconsciousness, as is always the case in *petit mal*.

Jacksonian epilepsy is *sui generis* and is not simulated by any except the rare instances of *circumscribed uremic convulsions* and similar spasms in *general paresis*; however, it has been described as occurring in hysteria. A further study of each instance must quickly dissipate the error. While the approximate *seat* of the lesion may be inferred in many cases of Jacksonian epilepsy, the precise *cause* cannot generally be determined, because all sorts of lesions produce the same symptoms. Recurring epilepsy in persons over 30 is probably due to organic causes, and in nine cases out of ten, according to H. C. Wood and also Fournier, is due to syphilis.

The highest refinement of diagnosis in the study of epilepsy attempts to determine from the character of the aura the seat of beginning cortical irritation. Thus, a visual aura, it is claimed, might indicate that the nervous discharge began in the occipital lobes; a vertigo might indicate that it began in the cerebellum; a sense of numbness, the sensory area of the cortex. The "intellectual auræ," as they are called by Hughlings Jackson, are regarded by him as affording evidence of a nervous discharge from the highest cerebral centers.

**Prognosis.**—The true epileptic rarely gets well. I believe I have seen two cases of recovery in my experience. In such statement epileptiform attacks due to peripheral irritation are rigidly excluded as not being true epilepsy. These invariably get well with the removal of the irritation, while true epilepsy, in which attacks are readily excited by such irritation, is benefited but not cured. The chances of recovery are said to be greater in the young, and in the male sex than in the female. One of my cases of apparent recovery was a man who had his last fit after 40; the second a woman who had no attack after 14. Both live. C. L. Dana places the recoveries at from five to ten per cent., which appears to me large. Even in cases of combined *petit mal* and *grand mal*, in which the prognosis is most unfavorable, recovery is said to occur. The prognosis of *petit mal* is more unfavorable than that of *grand mal*; of the mixed forms still more unfavorable, and posthemiplegic epilepsy most unfavorable of all.

On the other hand, an epileptic rarely dies of his disease. He may fall in the water during an attack and drown, may choke to death if attacked while eating, or may be smothered by the bed clothes. Death sometimes occurs from exhaustion in the *status epilepticus*, but this is not frequent. The health of epileptics usually deteriorates slowly, and life is shortened.



accordingly, few surviving the age of 40 or 50. They rather frequently die of tuberculous phthisis. Especially frequent is mental deterioration; indeed, it may be said to be the rule when the patient lives long enough, and about ten per cent. become demented or insane. Changes begin with loss of self control succeeded by confusion of intellect. Delirious and passionate outbreaks precede and follow the convulsive seizures during which criminal acts are committed. Much may be done by treatment to control the number of attacks, and the less numerous they are, the less serious is the effect upon the health. Many epileptic persons earn a living, and more could if properly helped.

The more infrequent the attacks, the better the prognosis. Pure nocturnal epilepsy and the pure diurnal form are each more easily cured than the mixed forms. Cases, too, which arise after 20 years of age are more likely to get well.

**Treatment.**—No fact in therapeutics is better established than that the *bromids* control epilepsy in varying degree—it may be completely, it may be simply to render infrequent the seizures. There is probably no important difference in the efficiency of the various preparations, but the bromid of potassium has been most extensively used. The bromid of sodium is preferred on account of its greater solubility. Bromid of ammonium is slightly more stimulating. More recently bromid of strontium has been highly recommended. Causes of *peripheral irritation* should first be sought, and if possible *eliminated*. Gastro-intestinal irritation should be removed. Phimosis should be cured. The possible practice of masturbation should be inquired into. These eliminated, the bromid treatment may be commenced. The doses required vary greatly and must be determined by trial. Scarcely less than 15 grains (1 gm.) four times a day are required for adults, and from this point the dose may be increased until the desired effect is produced. The massive doses sometimes given, amounting to ounces in a day, are ultimately harmful, but doses of a dram (4 gm.) are sometimes necessary and well borne, but if long continued are likely to produce bromism. It is sometimes of advantage to combine the various bromids of sodium, potassium, and ammonium. Greater efficiency is secured if the drug is given on an empty stomach, half an hour before meals or two hours after, and smaller doses suffice when thus administered, and the omission of sodium chlorid from the diet is believed to lessen the amount of bromid necessary and to increase its efficiency. Bromism, shown by drowsiness, mental torpor, gastric and cardiac distress with acne, sometimes results. It is doubtful whether it can be obviated in any way except by omitting the drug. The bromid eruption may sometimes be averted by combining arsenic, but this does not always succeed, and on this account, too, the drug must be omitted. In a few cases the bromids are absolutely useless, more especially in cases in which they produce gastro-intestinal derangement, perhaps in about five per cent. of cases. *Chloral* adds to the efficiency of the bromids, and is sometimes necessary to produce the desired effect. It may be given in doses of from 10 to 30 grains (0.66 to 2 gm.).

Of late dechloridation or elimination of chlorine from the food has been recommended as an adjuvant to the treatment of epilepsy by the

bromids. It is accomplished by substituting sodium bromid for sodium chlorid in the food of epileptics. Sodium chlorid is not wholly eliminated but enough bromid is added to the food to make each patient take about 15 grains a day. It is claimed that the bromid is rapidly absorbed and becomes part of the body tissue when thus given, and that only one-half the usual quantity is necessary to produce the sedative effect. Arthur Morton<sup>1</sup> concludes that this method controls the convulsions and has little if any effect upon the nutrition, although it is likely to cause constipation and does not furnish enough salt to satisfy the patient. He says it may be advantageously employed in intelligent epileptics but useless in middle grade epileptics, as they have neither desire nor will to carry it out.

Flechsig claims for the associated use of opium and bromid superior results, but the possibility of an opium habit will restrain the cautious physician from adopting its use.

To treatment by the bromids should, of course, be added proper hygienic measures. Suitable food, especial attention to the bowels, fresh air, and outdoor life are indispensable. Bathing is important, and cold baths—particularly douches and shower-baths, cold sponge-baths or wet packs should be judiciously used. Vasomotor tone and circulation are thus strengthened.

Of other remedies recommended may be mentioned *antifebrin* and *antipyrin*. A trial of the former in the Vanderbilt Clinic in New York, by M. Allen Starr, was unsatisfactory. On the other hand, in the hands of Charles S. Potts, at the Dispensary of the University of Pennsylvania, it was apparently useful. Especially efficient at the latter proved a combination of antipyrin and bromid of ammonium, suggested by H. C. Wood. For adults a dose of 6 grains (0.39 gm.) of the former and 10 grains (0.66 gm.) of the latter, three times a day, in a number of cases averted the seizure for months. Continuous exhibition seems necessary. These drugs at least merit a trial where the bromids are for any reason unsatisfactory. *Monobromated camphor* has been recommended by Hasle. The best mode of administration appears to be in a capsule or emulsion, the dose being 2 to 5 grains (0.13 to 0.32 gm.).

Starr has also used the *tincture of simulo* (*Capparis coriacea*) at the Vanderbilt Clinic with the effect of reducing the number of attacks in *grand mal*, but to no purpose in *petit mal*. It was used in doses as large as 1/2 ounce (13.5 c.c.) daily. In *petit mal* the same observer found *nitro-glycerin* the only remedy of any service. He appears to have used it in doses of 1/100 grain (0.00065 gm.) three times a day. In my experience this regulation dose fails in a large number of cases to produce the physiological effect, and larger doses—from 1/50 to 1/25 grain (0.0013 to 0.0026 gm.)—may be given. It is to be remembered that epilepsy is one of the diseases which are nearly always influenced for a time by new remedies. The preparations of *valerian* may also be tried in the event of failure with the bromids. Others which have been used are borax, iodid of zinc, and sulphonal. Chloretone is sometimes of great service in doses of 3 grains once or twice daily.

<sup>1</sup> "Boston Medical and Surgical Journal," No. 24, p. 698, 1905.

The *nitrile of amyl* has been employed to abort the attack in cases where there was an aura, and in a certain number of cases—about 25 per cent. in Starr's experience—has proved efficient.

*Operation*, usually trephining, is increasingly practiced, and many successful cases have been reported, chiefly of Jacksonian epilepsy. When a well-defined lesion can be located, operation should promptly be done. Even in doubtful cases operation may be justified, as with modern surgical precautions it is attended with much less risk. It should be remembered, too, that operation *per se* has proved curative—that is, cases have apparently recovered after trephining where no lesion was found after removing the disk.

Food should be simple and easily assimilated, overeating should be especially avoided. Stale bread, wheaten grits, and similar foods, rice, potatoes, fresh succulent vegetables like string beans, peas, and tomatoes, with an abundance of milk, are suitable. Water should be freely drunk by the patient, and a glassful is advised between meals and at bedtime. Constipation must be avoided.

*Asylum Provision.*—It is exceedingly important that some systematic provision should be made for epileptics either by the State or by private charity. They are, as a rule, unwelcome inmates of hospitals because of their incurability and the disturbance they occasion. Doubtless the neglect to which they are subjected at home aggravates in many instances their condition, while it makes even more unhappy their lot. Provision should be made to enable them to pursue some vocation, the tendency of which has been shown to be curative. A hospital with such provision has been inaugurated near Philadelphia, and similar institutions exist in some other States. The mind should be kept occupied; nothing is more baneful to the epileptic than idleness, and it is said that cures have been effected by giving the patient something to do.

*Treatment of the Convulsion.*—Of no small importance is the treatment of the eclamptic attack. The first measure is to secure protection against biting the tongue. Unfortunately, this is often the initial event in the convulsion. The end of a towel may be twisted and inserted between the teeth, or a suitable piece of wood or a clothes-pin may be similarly used. A small object like a cork is unsafe, as it may be swallowed or drawn into the larynx and cause death by suffocation. Some patients carry such an appliance ready for use. The patient should be controlled sufficiently to protect him from injury.

Given a case that under the bromids has yielded to treatment, what course shall be pursued as to its interruption? The most experienced clinicians urge that the drug should be continued at least two years after the fits have disappeared, and Seguin even advises that there should be no reduction in the bromids until three years have elapsed without symptoms. My own practice has been to continue a dose of from 15 to 20 grains (1 to 1.32 gm.) at bedtime for an indefinite period after cessation of the fits. The friends of the patient should be impressed with the importance of such a course, as he himself is almost sure to grow indifferent after the long absence of attacks.

## REFLEX CONVULSIONS OF CHILDREN.

SYNONYMS.—*Infantile Convulsions; Eclampsia; Epilepsia Acuta.*

**Definition.**—Convulsions due to peripheral irritation in children.

**Etiology.**—There is some confusion in the use of the word eclampsia. Some would use it as simply synonymous with the word convulsion, an application, I think, altogether the best. Others apply it to convulsions due to peripheral irritation only; others seemingly to puerperal convulsions only; others, notably Hermann Eichhorst and C. L. Dana, define eclampsia as acute epilepsy. Eichhorst further says: "Epileptiform convulsions, which have the same genesis as true epileptic attacks, are excited by irritation of the cortical motor brain areas." He then names, among the causes of these, toxic agencies, including uremia and lead-poisoning, but also says he will treat only under eclampsia of the convulsions of infants (5 to 20 months), among the causes of which he names heredity; psychical causes, as fright or anger; but most frequently reflex irritation, as of the skin or gastro-intestinal tract (dentition, intestinal worms, inflammation, and the like); foreign bodies; fecal accumulation; stone in the bladder, etc; and finally, the infectious fevers and rickets. This class of cases I have taken great pains to exclude from the epilepsies, and prefer to include at present under the heading of Reflex Convulsions of Children. The convulsions which attend diseases of the brain are a part of the symptomatology of these affections, and do not require separate consideration.

Debility and malnutrition may be considered as predisposing causes of the form of convulsion under consideration.

**Symptoms.**—These demand no detailed consideration, since the convulsion is epileptiform and has been described. It is much more often partial than the typical fit of true epilepsy, but it has the same stages of the tonic and clonic spasm followed by drowsiness. It is most frequently single, but the fits may follow one another in rapid succession, and though rarely, terminate fatally. As in epilepsy, the temperature rises slightly during the fit. It may come on suddenly without warning, or be preceded by restlessness and fever. It not infrequently occurs during sleep.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually easy, the convulsion coming on suddenly in the midst of health, yet traceable to some such event as the ingestion of some indigestible food, to teething, or to some other source of peripheral irritation.

The convulsion is distinguished from that of *infantile hemiplegia* by the absence of hemiplegia. A transient paresis does, however, sometimes follow the reflex convulsion.

These convulsions most frequently occur between the fifth and twentieth months, and toward the end of the second year, though they may occur as late as the fifth year. Convulsions occurring after this period are more likely to be true epilepsy.

**Prognosis.**—Cases of infantile convulsions are always alarming, yet most get well, and doubtless many cases among the poor recover

which do not come under the notice of the physician. On the other hand, not a few deaths are caused by them—according to Morris J. Lewis, 8.5 per cent. of all deaths in children under 10; and according to West, 22.35 per cent. of all who die under one year. Cases of infectious disease ushered in by convulsions are almost always serious, but the convulsions themselves are rarely fatal. Convulsions due to gastric derangement are generally followed by recovery.

**Treatment.**—The first step in the treatment must always consist in finding and *removing the cause*. If it be undigested food, an emetic and an enema are indicated; if dentition is at fault, the lancet should be promptly applied to the gums. The next step is immersion in a *warm bath*, say at 95° F. (35° C.), increased to 100° F. (38.8° C.), to which mustard may be added. At the same time *cold* should be applied to the head by means of an ice-bag or cold water. To control the convulsion, *chloral* is the remedy *par excellence*, but while waiting for its effect, it may be necessary to permit the child to inhale a few drops of chloroform. The dose of chloral should be sufficient—2 1/2 to 5 grains (0.165 to 0.33 gm.) to a child of one year, frequently repeated until the effect is produced. It may be given in enema in double this dose, the buttocks being compressed until it is absorbed. The *bromids* may be given in combination with chloral, but they are altogether too feeble to be relied upon alone. Should these measures fail, *opium* may be used and even morphin, hypodermically, in minute doses; but these drugs should be used only as a last resort. Generally, the attack is relieved the moment the peripheral irritation is removed.

## MIGRAINE.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Sick Headache; Bilious Headache; Hemicrania; Megrin; Migrän; Paroxysmal Headache.*

**Definition.**—Migraine is an intermittent, sensory neurosis, of which headache, commonly hemicranial, is the most invariable symptom. Almost as constant are aggravated nausea and vomiting, to which may be added other sensory symptoms, especially deranged vision. Ophthalmoplegic migraine is a rare form, in which paralysis of ocular muscles occurs.

**Etiology.**—This is obscure. The disease is more common in females—apparently three times as frequent as in males. It begins early in life, commonly at puberty, and even earlier—as early, in fact, as at two years. It affects vigorous and strong as well as nervous and anemic subjects. Exciting causes are fatigue, mental and physical, including eye-strain, digestive derangements, and menstrual disorders. What is known as the uric acid diathesis plays an undoubted rôle in certain cases. As often none is discoverable.

It is usual to speak of migraine as a vasomotor disturbance, because there are symptoms which point to involvement of the sympathetic system, but this is a matter of inference rather than demonstration. The attacks are characteristically paroxysmal. It appears to be more frequent in

the winter season in this climate, when it is not infrequently associated with a gouty or rheumatic attack. Caries of the teeth and nasal troubles are a cause in children.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—No lesions other than those described as causal are found. The precise seat of the pain is not known, but is believed to be in the meninges of the brain.

**Symptoms.**—The attack is often ushered in without any warning, at others with *prodromal* symptoms familiar to the patient. They are various and not distinctive of the disease, but so characteristic for each case that the individual foretells the attacks on their approach. They include general discomfort, vertigo, a sense of pressure, tinnitus, spots before the eyes, chilliness, and the like. Hemianopsia and scotoma may be among them.

Then the *pain* starts in suddenly and is continuous, usually in one side of the forehead, but it may also be in the occiput, whence it extends to the half or whole head. It is extremely severe, sometimes described as blinding, at others sharp and boring or shooting. It is sometimes attended by flashes of light. Light and noise aggravate it, and a darkened room is always sought. Hemianopsia is not infrequent.

Along with pain there is generally total want of appetite, and intense *nausea* succeeded by *vomiting*. The vomited matter includes first the contents of the stomach (if the stomach is empty, mucous matter), and later yellow and bitter bile, whence the term “bilious headache.” If the stomach happens to be full, the pain may be relieved by the vomiting.

The *vasomotor* symptoms are conspicuous in some cases, and are assigned by some an important rôle in the causation of migraine. From this standpoint two subdivisions are made, *angiospastic hemicrania* and *angioparalytic hemicrania*. In the first form, described by Dubois-Reymond from observations on himself—some of the best descriptions have been by sufferers—the forehead and ear on the affected side are pale, the skin is cool, the temporal arteries are contracted, the *pupil is often dilated*, and the secretion of saliva is increased—in a word, there are the symptoms of irritation of the sympathetic. In hemicrania angioparalytica, described by Möllendorff, also from observations on himself, the face is reddened on the affected side, it feels warm, the temporal arteries are dilated and pulsate strongly, there is sometimes unilateral sweating of the face, with the *pupils contracted*—symptoms suggestive of paralysis of the sympathetic. By no means all cases are capable of being thus classified, and mixed forms are met.

The frequency of the attacks varies greatly; usually they do not occur oftener than once in two weeks or once a month. They may, however, occur every ten days or even weekly.

The duration of the attack varies. Very often the patient goes to bed at night, and in the morning, or at the end of 12 hours, is relieved; or the attack may last 24 hours or even two or three days. the attacks continue over a period of many years, sometimes ceasing in women after the climacteric is passed, and in men after 50.

Further speculation as to the true nature of migraine would be unprofitable here, though mention should be made that the arteries on the

affected side sometimes become the seat of arteriocapillary fibrosis, a condition giving some force to the view of vasomotor origin.

**Diagnosis.**—The symptoms of *brain tumor* sometimes closely simulate migraine. One case of supposed migraine under my observation turned out to be brain tumor. Ophthalmoscopic examination may discover papilloedema in cases of brain tumor and thus settle the diagnosis. Such examination should always be made.

**Prognosis.**—This is favorable so far as life is concerned, but it is not always easy to prevent the attacks or diminish the frequency of their occurrence. It often happens that they cease after middle life.

**Treatment.**—Before treatment is instituted every case should be thoroughly investigated with a view to discovering causal conditions. Should such search be successful, their elimination may result in a cure. Such accessible causes are eye-strain, affections of the nose, mental and physical fatigue, and indiscretions in diet.

The attack itself is more likely to be warded off the earlier the treatment for it is instituted. Sometimes a dose of salts, taken as soon as the first symptoms appear, wards off an attack, or the attack may be relieved by vomiting. *Phenacetin* in from 10 to 15 grain (0.66 to 1 gm.) doses relieves some attacks. Byrom Bromwell in a very impressive paper recommends 30 grain (2 gm.) doses of this drug as curative. After the first dose it may be continued in smaller doses. *Antipyrin* and *antifebrin* are similarly successful, and I am informed by apothecaries that many women purchase these drugs regularly to relieve their attacks. Such practice should, however, be discouraged.

Sometimes a hypodermic injection of *morphin*, even so small a dose as 1/8 grain (0.011 gm.), acts magically, and on the whole it is the most reliable remedy, although it is one to be put off if others succeed. *Caffein* is a less efficient remedy, but may be used in conjunction with morphin or immediately after it to counteract the unpleasant effect of this drug. It may be given in 3 to 5 grain (0.2 to 0.33 gm.) doses, and is sometimes administered hypodermically in the shape of caffein-sodio-benzoate in the same dose. *Salicylate of caffein* is also recommended in like doses. *Cannabis indica* is a remedy much recommended, but is unfortunately of uncertain strength. We may begin with 1/4 grain (0.016 gm.) and increase rapidly. *Bromids* may be tried. *Guarana* is more efficient in from 30 to 60 grain (2 to 4 gm.) doses of the powder and similar doses of the fluid extract.

If the spastic form can be distinctly recognized as present, *nitrite of amyl* may be expected to be serviceable—3 to 5 drops by inhalation. In the opposite or paralytic form *ergot* has been advised, and may be given in doses of from 10 minims to 1 dram (1 to 4 gm.). *Nitroglycerin* in doses of from 1/100 to 1/50 grain (0.00066 to 0.0013 gm.), and *nitrite of sodium* in doses of from 3 to 5 grains (0.2 to 0.33 gm.), may be useful in the class of cases benefited by nitrite of amyl. Cold to the head is sometimes grateful, and when there is nausea, cracked ice or cold carbonated or apollinaris water or small doses of iced champagne are sometimes efficient.

*Electricity* is said to have been useful in a few cases, but I have had

no experience with it. It is recommended that in the spastic form the anode should be applied to the sympathetic, and in the paralytic form the kathode, the other pole being applied to the cervical cord as high as possible on the occiput.

*Preventive Treatment.*—General treatment between attacks should not be neglected. When there is anemia, the judicious use of *iron* and *arsenic*, continued for some time, has occasionally been followed by a disappearance of the tendency to the disease.

The urine should be carefully examined, and if concentrated and tending to deposit uric acid or oxalates, diluents and the alkaline mineral waters are indicated. In a few instances in my practice the daily use of natural Vichy water, to the extent of a bottle a day, had the effect of diminishing, and in one instance of eliminating, the attacks. The conditions of a healthful life, bathing, fresh air, and simple wholesome food, should be observed. Many persons are totally free from attacks while traveling. A course at Contrexville, Vichy, or Carlsbad may be of service in averting attacks,

## OCCUPATION NEUROSES.

SYNONYMS.—*Professional Spasm; Copodyscinesia.*

**Definition.**—A term applied to a group of diseases characterized by symptoms excited by an effort to perform some oft-repeated muscular act, commonly one involved in the occupation of the patient. The most usual symptom is cramp or spasms in the muscles concerned, whence this word is preceded by that of the various occupations, to indicate its special variety. Thus we have writer's cramp or scrivener's palsy, telegrapher's cramp, pianoforte-player's cramp, typewriter's cramp, seamstresses' cramp, milker's cramp, etc.

### WRITER'S CRAMP.

SYNONYMS.—*Graphospasmus; Cheiropasmus; Mogigraphia; Scrivener's Palsy.*

**Definition.**—The professional neurosis of clerks and scriveners. It is the most frequent of the occupation neuroses and may serve as the type for all.

**Historical.**—The first notice of writer's cramp appears to have been by Bernhart Ramazini in 1746. It was first fully described by Sir Charles Bell in 1830, and called scrivener's palsy by Samuel Solly, who published three admirable clinical lectures in "The Lancet" in 1864-65. Other monographs are those by G. V. Poore, in "The Practitioner," in 1872-73 and 1878, also in his "Text-book of Electricity," 1876, and "Med-Chir. Trans.," vol. lxi., 1878; W. H. Erb's article in "Ziemssen's Cyclopaedia," 1876, and O. Berger's article, "Beschäftigungsneurosen," in Eulenberg's "Real-Encyclopädie," first edition, 1880, third edition, 1894.

**Etiology.**—There is no predisposition to sex, the disease being more frequent in men in occupations where more men are employed, and more frequent in women in occupations where more women are employed; and it is likely that since an increasing number of women have become tele-



graph operators, more cases may be expected among them, in whom, perhaps, also, the neuropathic temperament may favor it. The majority of all cases occur between 20 and 50—154 out of 177 cases collected by Berger from Gowers, Poore, and himself. Predisposition is caused by previous injury and a neurotic disposition, while even heredity is said to predispose. An especially important factor is a faulty method of writing, while cases have occurred which were apparently independent of the usual exciting cause. Steel pens are said to be responsible for an increased number of cases since their introduction. The disease is becoming less frequent as clerical exactions grow less.

**Morbid Anatomy and Pathology.**—No distinctive anatomical changes have ever been discovered in writer's cramp. Three theories are held regarding its nature. According to the *first*, it is essentially a local disease: weakness in certain muscles permitting overaction on the part of their antagonists, an overaction which increases to spasm. According to a *second* theory, the spasm is reflex and due to an irritation of the sensory nerves concerned in the act of writing. The *third*, and usually accepted theory, makes the affection primarily and essentially central, due to deranged function in the centers concerned in the act of writing, and therefore in the central nervous system.

The only discoverable morbid change is an occasional atrophy of muscles concerned.

**Symptoms.**—*Spasm* is almost always the initial disturbance, commonly affecting the forefinger and the thumb; but the onset is gradual, and the first effect is an awkwardness in which the pen does not move quite as intended. It is irresistibly grasped too tightly, yet the forefinger has a tendency to slip off, the pen passing between it and the middle finger, while an attempt to mend matters by taking a new hold only increases the difficulty, and the hand labors as if tied down. It feels tired, and there is often an aching pain throughout, extending even to the arm. The writing is irregular and uneven. These symptoms may continue, with more or less difficulty in writing, lasting for weeks or months, coming earlier, however, after each effort, and with gradual increasing severity until the intolerable spasm sets in. This may be so violent in a combined movement of flexion and adduction in the thumb that the pen may be wrested from the grasp and thrown to a distance, or there may be a lock spasm, described by S. Weir Mitchell, in which the pen is firmly locked between the fingers. The spasm is almost always tonic in character, although it may now and then be varied by a slight start or jerk. It is sometimes associated with *tremor*. Rarely tremor occurs alone, and it may be the premonitory symptom of *atrophy*. The spasm may be limited to the act of writing, while other actions are well performed; but absolute limitation to this act is seldom met in severe cases.

Special difficulty attends the performance of acts requiring delicate co-ordination of the muscles. Sometimes a patient can write with a pencil, but not with a pen. *Paresis* and *paralysis* may occur with spasm or alone. On the other hand, the strength of the hand may be quite unimpaired. Such loss of power varies greatly, being sometimes trifling, at other times considerable.

*Sensory symptoms* are almost always present in various degrees. They may even exist alone, producing a sensory form. They are manifested at first by the distressing fatigue alluded to, or by dull pain often referred to the bones or joints, very often to the metacarpal bones or to the wrist, ceasing with cessation of writing. Sometimes there is local tenderness or a tingling sensation. Again, the pain is more severe, neuralgic in character, and distributed along the course of the nerve, induced at first by the act of writing, later by any muscular act of the part. There may also be tenderness in the course of the nerve.

*Vasomotor* disturbances are seen in severe cases, manifested by hyperaesthesia, a glossy, shining skin, or a cyanosed, chilblain-like appearance; or the hand may become blue and hot on attempting to write.

In the beginning the *electrical reactions* are normal, but in advanced cases there is a diminished faradic and sometimes increased galvanic irritability of the motor nerve endings distributed to the muscles. It is to be remembered that the radial, ulnar, and median nerves all supply muscles employed in writing.

**Diagnosis.**—This is usually easy, the initial limitation of the symptoms to the act of writing sufficiently indicating the nature of the case. More frequently other paralytic and painful affections of the arm and hand are mistaken for writer's palsy. Among these may be included *hemiplegia* of gradual onset, *commencing insular sclerosis*, early *tabes dorsalis* affecting the arms, or *pressure palsy of the musculo-spiral nerve*.

In most of these cases, however, other symptoms are present or are soon added. More frequently nervous persons *imagine* they have writer's palsy. In some cases the condition is really one of *muscular rheumatism*.

**Prognosis.**—A well-established case of scrivener's palsy rarely gets well. There are, however, exceptions, even under the most unfavorable conditions. The prognosis is more favorable when sensory symptoms predominate. Relapses are prone to occur when the patient returns to work.

**Treatment.**—*Prevention*, as usual, is much more effectual than curative treatment. The disease is confined almost exclusively to those who write in a cramped manner, and is said to be unknown in those who write from the shoulder. The curative treatment consists essentially in *rest* promptly adopted—a long rest being often sufficient to effect a cure, while no other treatment can take its place. Various *mechanical devices* to aid in writing while the cure is going on have not accomplished much, and the patient may learn to write with the left hand, although the disturbance may occur in this hand also. Typewriting is, as a rule, as easily learned with the affected hand as before disability. The devices referred to may be such as a very thick penholder which can be directed by the whole hand; or a pen attached to a ring, which is slipped over the index or middle finger, and the thumb is thus permitted to rest. The typewriting machine has, however, rendered all such devices of less consequence. The usual nerve tonics, such as strychnin, may be given. Hygiene of the part, including hydrotherapy, frictions, especially massage, and sometimes electricity are useful.

The important position assigned by all neurologists to the *electrical*

*treatment* of writer's cramp demands some special consideration, especially as the methods advised are by no means uniform. The preference given to the galvanic current over the faradic is, however, almost unanimous, and unless the latter is especially mentioned, the former is intended. Berger recommends a *stabile* current—*i. e.*, a current in which the electrodes are not moved about—with the positive pole in the neck and the negative partly in the fossa supraclavicularis, partly on the affected nerves and muscles of the arm; the length of sitting, from five to ten minutes daily, or every other day.

Benedict recommended galvanization along the spinal column, with especial reference to sensitive vertebræ, but also localization of the galvanic current, as recommended by Berger; duration of sitting, three to four minutes, current strong enough to be easily felt. He also found subsequent faradization to the muscles most affected useful. Eulenberg also advised galvanization of the muscles affected with chronic cramp and of the involved nerve-trunk with the positive pole. In cases with tremor and rapid exhaustion the negative pole is to be applied to the spinal column and the positive on the peripheral nerve-trunks and muscles affected. Erb advised galvanization of the cervical vertebral column, with ascending *stabile* and *labile* currents combined with peripheric galvanization. In several cases it appeared to him that transverse and longitudinal currents through the head were followed by favorable results.

Onimus used an ascending current through the affected arm, with the negative pole in the neck and the positive pole upon the muscles of the forearm, especially the ball of the thumb, in addition to a current of moderate strength along the cervical vertebræ. M. Meyer employed a *stabile* galvanic current with the anode to the tender spots on the vertebral column when these were present, and the kathode on the sternum. Althouse sought to reach the cervical cord by placing the anode upon the cervical spine and the kathode on the depression between the angle of the jaw and the sternocleidomastoid muscle—a position corresponding to the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic. The current should be mild, uniform, and uninterrupted for from three to five minutes at a time. The method should not be reversed. In cases of paresis of certain muscles it is sometimes of benefit to have the patient make voluntary movements of these muscles simultaneously with the closing of the galvanic current applied to the nerve innervating these muscles.

Testimony is united to the effect that the galvanic treatment must be kept up for a long time, even for months continuously, with a current of moderate strength, say a maximum of four milliamperes, and section electrode of about three qcm.

Faradization is recommended only in cases where there is demonstrable paresis and anesthesia, and then in weak currents. In anesthesia the brush may be used. Erb found that many of his patients were benefited by wearing on the arms, for several hours daily, a simple galvanic element, such as a zinc and copper plate, united by wire, and under it a moist piece of linen.

Gowers has much less confidence in electricity, especially in the spasmodic form of the disease, and is probably right when he says if the patient

goes on writing electricity has not the slightest influence on the disease. My own experience with electricity has not been very encouraging.

The position accorded to *gymnastic exercise* of the arm and hand muscles is scarcely second to that of electricity—indeed, it is preferred by some. Especially efficient appears to be that of a German writing-master, Julius Wolff. The gymnastics are of two kinds: First, active, in which the patient moves the fingers, hands, forearms, and arms in all directions possible, each muscle being made to contract from six to twelve times with considerable force, and with a pause after each movement, the whole exercise not exceeding 30 minutes, and repeated two or three times daily. Second, passive, in which the same movements are made as in the former, except that each one is arrested by another person in a steady and regular manner. This may be repeated as often as the active exercise. Massage is practiced daily for about 20 minutes, beginning at the periphery; percussion of the muscles is considered an essential part of the massage. Combined with this are peculiar lesions in pen-prehension and writing. Priority for this method is claimed by Roman Vigoroux and Th. Shott. The testimony of some of the best authorities in Europe is given in behalf of this method. Poore secured good results by combining gymnastic exercises with the use of electricity. Tenotomy and nerve-stretching have been attempted and abandoned as useless.

## HYSTERIA.

**Definition.**—Hysteria is a morbid state of the nervous system in which may be manifested every variety of nervous symptoms due to deranged function of the cerebral, basal, and spinal centers, associated with lowered will-power and exaggerated emotional tendencies.

**Etiology.**—Hysteria is a disease of civilization and of certain races. It is unknown in the barbarian, and is more rare in Northern races, while the volatile Southern temperament favors its development. Thus, the French and Italians of the Latin race furnish many subjects, while it is rarer among Germans, English and Americans. The disease is also frequent among Hebrews.

The sexual organs of women have been held responsible for hysteria in the female, and the name hysteria is derived from *ὑστέρα*, a womb; but this conception is erroneous. In males the disease assumes more the form of hypochondriasis, but in them also convulsions, contractures, and paralysis occur. It is found in boys as well as in adult males, especially in alcoholic males. About half of all cases occur in the second decade, especially after puberty, though it may also occur earlier; one-third between 20 and 30; while boy subjects are commonly under the age of puberty. Masturbation and adherent prepuce are held responsible for many cases in boys. Heredity plays a certain part, while the neurotic constitution especially favors hysteria.

Among the exciting causes are included diseases of the generative organs in women, but their influence as compared with other illnesses may simply grow out of their frequency. Ovarian disease has been held

responsible, and tenderness in the ovarian region is undoubtedly a frequently associated symptom, but it is questionable whether this tenderness is of ovarian origin. Association with others similarly affected is an undoubted factor, and it is not unusual for the disease to spread itself from one to a number of girls living under the same roof. Various diseases other than those mentioned also predispose to hysteria. Even local affections, including injuries, may thus operate, and hysterical joint affections may follow trauma of a joint. Strümpell relates an instance of a girl who, from having inhaled smoke, acquired hysterical paralysis of the vocal cords. General disease of an exhausting kind, such as fevers, nervous diseases, functional and organic, predispose to hysteria. Hysteria is common in prostitutes. Cerebral tumors, tuberculous meningitis, multiple neuritis, chorea, infantile hemiplegia, often cause conspicuous hysterical phenomena. Diphtheritic paralysis may pass into hysterical palsy, while Gowers has known hysterical convulsions to attend the onset of embolic hemiplegia, as shown by autopsy. Among psychical nervous causes are fright, such as attends a runaway or a fire; an angry scene; the constant operation of trifling mental causes, including worry and anxiety.

**Symptoms.**—An idea of the number and variety of the symptoms of hysteria has probably been obtained from the definition given—a variety which belongs to no other disease, and which may include almost all symptoms excited by any of the numerous nervous diseases. The hysterical patient is, however, characterized by certain general, corporal, and mental peculiarities which should be first considered. Such persons are emotional, irritable, capricious, sensitive, often willful, sometimes because of indifferent early home training and overindulgence. They exaggerate every illness, and demand an inordinate amount of sympathy. If women, they are at times disagreeable and petulant or doggedly silent, while at others they are charming and fascinating. They are often intellectually bright. Hysteria does occur, however, among intellectual degenerates. Other hysterical cases present no mental peculiarities. As to physical development, the hysterical patient is by no means always delicate; indeed, some of the most stubborn cases are those which appear in blooming health, rosy, and well nourished.

The symptoms of hysteria are conveniently arranged in five divisions: 1. Derangements of sensation. 2. Derangements of motion. 3. Vaso-motor derangements. 4. Visceral derangements. 5. Convulsive seizures. 6. Joint symptoms. 7. Mental symptoms.

Some of these symptoms are so common in hysteria and so peculiar to it, that of themselves they are of decided diagnostic value, and as such have received the name of "hysterical stigmata." Among the most important of these are:

1. DERANGEMENTS OF SENSATION.—The symptoms in this category are, as a rule, only elicited by the special examination of the physician, being rarely discovered by the patient. They include, especially, alterations of cutaneous sensibility, manifested by anesthesia or hyperesthesia. Most striking is insensibility to painful impressions, known as *analgesia*. It is usually tested by thrusting a pin deeply into the flesh—an act which

is often totally unfelt. Less invariably is there failure to appreciate the sharp irritation of the electric current. Such analgesia may be confined to definite parts of the body, half the body, or may be general. It may extend to the mucous surfaces as well, and even to the deeper tissues, as those of the muscles and joints. While analgesia is the most common manifestation of deranged sensibility, there may be absence of the sense of temperature, of pressure, and even of the muscular sense.

*Hyperesthesia* is almost equally characteristic. The areas involved may be exquisitely sensitive or but slightly so, requiring, sometimes, considerable pressure to develop the tenderness, while at other times it is elicited by the slightest touch. The hyperesthesia is especially noticeable when the attention of the patient is directed to it by such remarks as, "This will hurt you very much when I touch you." The sensitive areas may also be limited or extended and anywhere—on the head, thorax, limbs. Inguinal tenderness is especially frequent on the left side. Even more characteristic is the hyperesthesia of the spinal column,—the so-called "hysterical spinal irritability"—which affects the column as a whole or in segments, not infrequently a single vertebra. The sensitiveness may be so extreme that the slightest contact may cause the patient to cry out, while strong pressure may be necessary to cause it. Of special interest also are the hysterical zones, to be again referred to.

The *special senses* are variously involved. There may be simple dimness of vision or narrowing of the field, due to anesthesia of the peripheral part of the retina. There is often total amblyopia, but never hemianopsia. The cases of so-called hysterical hemianopsia are rejected by some competent observers. Hysterical achromatopsia is not infrequent. According to Charcot, the loss of the appreciation of violet is the most common, then of green, and, lastly, of blue and yellow. Loss of hearing is not infrequent, and still more frequent is anesthesia of taste and smell, even bitter substances, like quinin, or pungent ones like vinegar, producing no impression or but a trifling one.

2. DERANGEMENTS OF MOTION.—The most striking of these is *paralysis*. It commonly comes on suddenly, apparently as a result of fright or other suddenly acting cause. It may, however, be gradual, and take weeks for its development. It is most frequently hemiplegic, but may be monoplegic, rarely diplegic, while every form of organic paralysis may be simulated. Hemiplegia is more usual on the left side—according to Weir Mitchell, four times as frequent as on the right. The face is not usually affected, the neck and arms rarely, the legs oftenest. The patient can sometimes move the legs in bed or even when sitting up, while all attempts at walking are unsuccessful; or she may be able to move the arms when the eyes are open, but not when they are shut. It is a paralysis of the will. Sometimes one leg only is paralyzed, giving rise to a peculiar gait, the free leg making long strides while the paralyzed one is dragged along with a shuffling noise, and not swung outwardly in a circle as in true hemiplegia. Sometimes there is ataxia with paresis. Paralysis may be either flaccid or spastic. Though far more frequently a symptom of hysteria in women, it may be as striking in men. Paralysis of the vocal cords is one of the most frequent symptoms of hysteria, giving

rise to *aphonia*. The paralysis is easily demonstrable by laryngoscopic examination, because of anesthesia of the pharynx. It may be so marked that the vocal cords actually open with an attempt at phonation. Anesthesia and motor paralysis are commonly associated.

*Contractures* and *spasms* are a form of motor derangement; they may occur alone or with anesthesia and paralysis. They exhibit every variety, and may attack any group of muscles; they may be tonic or clonic, and sudden or gradual in development. The tonic contracture is most usual in the arm, which is flexed at the elbow and wrist, while the fingers grasp the thumb in the palm tightly. In the feet, also, flexures predominate, the feet being inverted and the toes flexed. In the larger joints, on the other hand, the extensors are involved, as a rule. Rarely extensor contractures occur in the small joints; all disappear with chloroform narcosis unless they have persisted a long time and shortening of the muscles, ligaments, etc., has occurred. The reflexes may be very much exaggerated and the condition closely resemble spastic paraplegia. Extreme emaciation may occur in connection with these contractures, as witness a remarkable case related and illustrated by Weir Mitchell in the "Medical News," August 24, 1895.

Even hysterical trismus may occur, and a very striking result of abdominal contracture is the *phantom* tumor, which is found usually just below and in the neighborhood of the umbilicus, often simulating a firm and solid growth. The mechanism of its production, according to Gowers, is a relaxation of the recti and spasmodic contraction of the diaphragm, together with inflation of the intestines and an arching forward of the vertebral column. Women have even been prepared for surgical operation on such tumors when the delusion was dissipated by the anesthetic, and the abdomen has been opened for purely hysterical conditions. Such tumor is not infrequently associated with symptoms of spurious pregnancy—*pseudocyesis*. Visible tremor may be present, rarely hysterical athetosis.

3. VASOMOTOR DERANGEMENTS.—A striking *pallor* is often present, at other times hyperemia, and even a hot skin. *Hemorrhage* from internal organs, especially the stomach and lungs, often alleged, is usually at least apocryphal. Commonly, the blood is derived from the gums, and its amount is never considerable. Yet such symptoms have been the basis of a diagnosis of pulmonary disease or gastric ulcer. Hemorrhages into the skin are also alleged, but are very rare.

*Hysterical fever* belongs also to vasomotor symptoms. A temperature of 106° F. (41.1° C.), and even more, has been reported. Such temperatures are characterized by their irregular occurrence. Actually they are extremely rare, being in most instances traceable to deception, and many doubt their existence.

*Anomalies of secretion* include profuse and scanty perspiration, the latter resulting in a peculiar dryness of the skin; the salivary secretion is similarly influenced, and modifications in the urinary secretion are some of the most characteristic phenomena of hysteria. They include *ischuria*, but especially *polyuria*, the patient passing a large amount of very light-colored urine of low specific gravity. *Excessive thirst* is also frequent,

further augmenting the polyuria. The chemical composition of the urine is altered in many severe cases; thus, the phosphates and urates have been found diminished, while the ratio of earthy to alkaline phosphates may be changed to one to two or one to one, instead of one to three. Such changes are held by Charcot's school to be diagnostic of convulsive hysteria as contrasted with epilepsy.

4. VISCERAL DERANGEMENTS.—The *digestive system* is especially disturbed by simple indigestion, depraved appetite, flatulence, and gastric pain. Not infrequently there is spasm of the esophagus, causing difficulty in swallowing; in some instances expulsion of food before it reaches the stomach. Hysterical vomiting is very common, and alleged vomiting of impossible substances is one of the most characteristic symptoms. An antagonism to food is sometimes present, so extreme that death by starvation has been barely averted; indeed, is said to have occurred. Constipation is a frequent and troublesome symptom. Much more rare is the opposite condition of diarrhea.

*Cardiovascular* and *pulmonary* symptoms exhibit every variety, including irregularity of the heart's action, tachycardia and bradycardia, precordial oppression and sense of suffocation, with extreme frequency of breathing and deranged rhythm. Laryngeal spasm, hysterical cough, and hysterical hiccough are frequent symptoms. *Hysterical cries* with inspiration or expiration, and imitation of the sounds produced by various animals are described by the French neurologists.

5. JOINT AFFECTIONS, purely hysterical, were early studied by Sir B. Brodia, and later by Sir James Paget. They involve the knee and hip and consist of fixation, tenderness, and even swelling.

6. The MENTAL SYMPTOMS are a prominent feature of hysteria, and vary greatly in their manifestations. Irritability and capriciousness of temper, maniacal excitement, hallucinations, and even insanity may occur. The hysterical trance is a well-known condition. It may come on spontaneously, but more frequently it follows one of the forms of hysteroid attacks to be later described. The cataleptic state may be associated with this symptom.

7. CONVULSIVE SEIZURES.—Hysterical convulsions are a recognized symptom, while in some they are the only manifestation of the disease. Their severity varies greatly; but two degrees are described, a milder or minor, and a severer or major.

(a) *Minor Form*.—This may come on suddenly or be preceded by a *prodromè*, including hysterical behavior, such as laughing and crying; a sense of constriction about the throat, or that of a ball rising in it (the so-called *globus hystericus*); a feeling of anxiety with shortness of breath with pain and discomfort in the chest or abdomen (*pseudo-angina*).

In the *actual seizure* the *patient falls*, with this striking feature: that she rarely fails to find a soft spot, such as a sofa or bed, to receive her. The convulsion consists in clonic contractions of a disordered and irregular kind, in which all four extremities and even the trunk may take part. Though seemingly unconscious, the patient still gives to the careful observer the impression of a certain method in her madness. The convulsion lasts usually a few minutes, when it passes off spontaneously, or the patient



may be aroused by some powerful impression, such as the dashing of cold water in the face, or by a sharp galvanic shock. She may remain emotional for a time, but the period of torpidity, so characteristic of the epileptic fit, is rare.

(b) *Major Form (Hysterical Epilepsy).*—This has become widely known, more particularly from the graphic descriptions and vivid pictures furnished by the French school of neurology. It is much less common in this country; indeed, it is rare outside of hospital walls, where prostitutes are the usual subjects. The attack may be preceded by prodromata similar to those that precede the milder attacks. The convulsion is described by French writers as having four distinct stages:

1. The epileptoid state, closely simulating a true epileptic attack, with apparent unconsciousness, tonic spasm, even opisthotonos, grinding of the teeth, livid face, succeeded by clonic convulsions, relaxation, and coma; lasting rather longer than the true epileptic attack.

2. The period of "contortions and grand movements," called by Charcot "clownism," characterized by emotional display, striking contortions, or cataleptic poses.

3. The period of spastic positions and passionate attitudes, including those of ecstasy, fright, beatitude, or eroticism.

4. The return to consciousness and a stage characterized especially by manifestations of delirium with extraordinary hallucinations and by hypnotic "suggestibility." In it visions are seen, voices heard, and conversations carried on with imaginary persons. Imaginary events are related as actually true. These hallucinations sometimes persist even after recovery. These periods are not sharply separated from one another.

*Suggestions and Hypnosis.*—At this point it is suitable to say something of these conditions, so closely associated with the hysterical state and which have attracted much attention of late. By suggestibility is meant the susceptibility of a person to the production of a definite psychical or physical state dependent upon the arousing of corresponding ideas in the mind. It is really a further development of the hysterical mental constitution already referred to, in which the patient permits himself to be dominated by his imagination. Suggestion is merely the artificial fostering of the psychical peculiarity. It is most easy during the part of the hysterical attack when the patients speak, hear, and answer. At such times a definite direction may be given to the patient's ideas. If he is told in an emphatic, convincing manner that he is in a certain situation, be it one of a pleasurable kind or a state of suffering or danger, he believes it, and at once, by behavior or expression, shows that he believes it, and is actually experiencing the conditions named. Physical states may be similarly suggested, such as paralysis, contractures, and anesthetics, while severe pain may be inflicted without exciting sensibility. After the attack is over the subject is totally ignorant of what has transpired, but during another attack may remember the events of the previous one, or, what is still more strange, supposed events, furnishing thus an instance of double consciousness.

*Hypnosis* is closely allied to suggestion. It is regarded by many

as nothing more or less than the intentional production of a hysterical attack, or a hysterical psychosis by suggestion. As Strümpell graphically puts it, "Hypnosis is an artificial hysteria." This view, however, is not held by all. The French school makes four principal forms of the hypnotic state with many transitions:

1. The cataleptic state, in which the limbs retain all the positions artificially given them.
2. The state of suggestion or artificial hallucination, in which patients are induced to eat tasteless and unnatural food with a gusto.
3. The lethargic state: a state of apparent unconsciousness, with the eyes closed, the muscles relaxed, yet with a markedly increased excitability in the muscles and nerves, in which a light tap on a nerve like the facial is sufficient to put all the muscles supplied by it into a tetanic contraction far outlasting the irritation.

4. A state of hysterical somnambulism, in which the patient, while remaining half unconscious, still answers automatically questions put to her, obeying orders or giving them, and sometimes exhibiting certain sensory hyperesthesias. It will be seen that each of these corresponds with one or another of the different manifestations of the hysterical attack.

*Hysterogenous Zones.*—In this connection some further reference should be made to the so-called hysterogenous zones already alluded to. These are hyperesthetic areas especially studied by Richet, on which persistent pressure will sometimes excite a hysterical attack. While the submammary areas, especially the left, and the inguinal region are favorite hysterogenous zones, the zones may be in any part of the body: as, for example, the sides of the trunk. Pressure in such a zone may cause an existing attack to subside. Hysterical spasm may be localized or limited to groups or muscles.

In the above description of hysteria the views long prevalent have been retained. Within the past few years an entirely different conception of hysteria has been promulgated by Babinski.<sup>1</sup>

He defined hysteria as a neurosis made up altogether of symptoms which are produced by *suggestion*, and are capable of cure solely by *persuasion*, either directly or indirectly. He therefore suggested the name pithiatisme, derived from two Greek words *πειθα*, meaning *persuasion*, and *iaōs*, *curable*, curable by persuasion. He regards his conception as a further exemplification of the old nosological adage *naturam morborum curationes ostendant*, the cure indicates the nature of the disease. At greater length he defines hysteria as a special psychical condition manifested principally by certain symptoms which are primary and others which are secondary or accessory. The primary symptoms may be produced by *suggestion* in certain subjects with rigorous exactness and may be made to disappear under the exclusive influence of *persuasion*. They include anesthesia, paralysis, contractures, crises, mutism, etc. The secondary symptoms are those strictly subordinate to the primary. The muscular atrophy in the hysterical person is the type of these. It never appears primarily; suggestion cannot cause it. It is secondary to hysterical paralysis or con-

<sup>1</sup> J. Babinski: *Ma Conception de l'Hystérie et de l'Hypnotisme (Pithiatisme)*. Conférence faite à la Société de l'Internat. des Hôpitaux de Paris, June 28, 1906.

tracture, and never precedes them. It slowly disappears when the muscular function is restored.

Hypnotism he defines as a psychic condition rendering the person who is found susceptible, subject to the will of another. It manifests itself by phenomena which suggestion may produce and persuasion cure, and which are identical with those incident to hysteria. On the contrary, to declare to a patient affected with a psychic paralysis that the symptom with which he is affected is cured, be it by a simple act of the will or by electrotherapy or any other treatment, is not suggestion, for the idea given out is reasonable; it is persuasion.

The word suggestion in the medical sense is employed to express an action by which one tries to make acceptable to another an idea manifestly absurd. For example, to say to someone at a time when it is clear and dry that the heavens are overclouded and it is raining, constitutes a suggestion, for this allegation is in flagrant discord with the truth. To say to an individual whose muscles are functioning normally that he is hemiplegic or paraplegic is also a suggestion, because it is contrary to common sense. If these assertions are accepted, if the visual hallucination or the paralysis is realized, one can say that the person under consideration has been suggestionized or hypnotized.

**Diagnosis.**—This is not usually difficult. There is something indescribable in the bearing and appearance of a hysterical patient which enables the experienced physician often to recognize the disease at a glance. While, as stated, every phenomenon of any organic nervous disease may be present, yet the essential symptoms of organic lesion are still wanting and there are symptoms which are peculiar to hysteria alone. The anesthetics are peculiar in their area of distribution, and hysterogenous zones are nowhere else found. The hysterical convulsion is quite *sui generis*, the throat and pharyngeal symptoms are not found elsewhere, and the emotional symptoms are tell-tale. Cases occasionally occur in which the diagnosis between hysteria and organic disease is very difficult.

**Prognosis.**—This is very rarely serious, though the course and duration of the disease vary greatly. The milder cases may be of very short duration, while the more serious may last for weeks or years, often, however, with intermissions and changes. Only in very rare instances does a fatal result occur, and reports of death from hysteria demand very critical examination.

**Treatment.**—A proper prophylactic treatment, so commonly overlooked, would prevent many cases of hysteria. The counteracting of all that is mentioned under the head of predisposition constitutes such treatment. Wholesome discipline or training in youth, the inculcation of self-denial as contrasted with overindulgence and the gratification of fancy, and careful exclusion from the companionship of hysterical persons make up the sum of these.

The successful curative treatment of hysteria also more frequently depends upon the individuality of the physician than on the remedies employed. Indispensable, however, is the removal of the causes which predispose to the disease, whether they be of the nature of moral influences or bodily ailment. Among the most difficult to eliminate of the former

are those which arise from the fondness and sympathy of relatives who have, from long habit, become almost slaves to the fancies of the hysterical subject, and with whom, in consequence, firmness has become impossible. It is in consequence of such difficulties that the isolation plan of treatment, which has become inseparably associated with the name of Weir Mitchell, has been so successful. Originated for neurasthenic cases, it is as applicable to the hysterical in whom neurasthenia is likewise often present, while hysteria also often forms a large factor in the neurasthenic state. Whenever possible, the patient must be removed from her previous surroundings, her family, and even her friends. This accomplished, the details of management largely depend upon the peculiarities of the case, but in a general way the Weir Mitchell plan may be said to be as follows:

First, and indispensable, is the care of an intelligent and sensible nurse. Under her charge the patient is put to bed and kept in a condition of absolute rest, even reading being prohibited, and also at first self-feeding. Massage is used daily, at first for short periods, which are gradually lengthened, until an hour is thus consumed. With massage is associated electricity, the faradic current with slow interruptions being usually preferred. Thus, with a small electrode, the motor nerve points can be picked out, and the contraction of individual muscles produced. Massage and electricity both have for their purpose the substitution of exercise, to which end the former is by far the most useful and important. Both are discontinued during menstruation. The food at first is milk, which has been usually skimmed, but in my own experience good milk unskimmed and diluted with one-fourth its bulk of water, or aerated water, answers the purpose better. The proportion of casein is less, and the oil, which is so valuable for the nutrition of the patient, is retained in more nearly its normal quantity. At first from four to six ounces of milk are given every two hours. After a week or ten days a chop or a few raw oysters are added at luncheon, with a cup of coffee or tea, and later at breakfast an egg, bread and butter or biscuit with the milk, the latter being continued at two-hour intervals. The patient should have a thorough sponge bath daily at the hands of the nurse. It is convenient to make out a schedule including the hours for nourishment, massage, and electricity, of which the last two should be separated by several hours. Massage should be followed by a full hour's rest. Under this forced feeding the patient gradually fattens, and concurrently with this the excitability of the nervous system usually grows less. In a month or six weeks the patient is allowed to sit up, at first for a few minutes only, but each day a little longer, until the whole day is thus spent, interrupted by periods of rest. Later she is taken out to drive, and then to walk for gradually increasing distance, until, in the vast majority of instances, she is enabled to perform enormous amounts of physical exercise without fatigue. I have known patients bedridden for months and even years, women whose relatives had been worn out with nursing, who, after a few weeks of this treatment, acquired the most vigorous health, walking many miles a day and presenting an appearance of health and strength which would be considered absolutely impossible by one unfamiliar with the results of this mode of treatment. As a rule, three months should be asked for

its fulfillment. As has already been said, the individuality of the physician has much to do with the success of the method. One who has a firm, earnest, yet gentle manner will do more with such cases than one who is vacillating and disposed to yield to the caprice of the patient. An element of "suggestion" must perhaps be acknowledged in the power of the physician thus constituted, yet the full application of this principle of treatment by hypnotic suggestion is to be deprecated. The nurse in charge must be similarly constituted, and it not infrequently happens that a nurse otherwise excellent is totally unadapted for the management of a case of this kind.

As to medicines, the number that are useful are few. Iron and arsenic, in very moderate doses, are the only ones which are actually curative. The various nervous sedatives, including valerian, asafetida, the bromids, the milder hypnotics, such as phenacetin, rarely chloral, may be used as occasion requires; morphin should never, or almost never, be given. A convenient form in which to use asafetida is the suppository; 10 grains (0.66 gm.) may be put in a single one.

The paralysis and contractures generally require some time to overcome, and in some cases are persistent in spite of all treatment. Cure is accomplished mainly by manipulation aided by electricity, under the use of which the symptoms gradually disappear and the patient, induced at first to walk for a few steps, will slowly acquire full power of locomotion. Anesthesia is best treated by faradization and the electrical brush. Paralysis of the vocal cords is also best treated by electricity, suitable electrodes having been devised for that purpose.

Allusion should be made to metallotherapy, a treatment instituted by a French physician named Burq, who years ago ascertained that by laying plates of metal upon a cutaneous surface affected by hysterical anesthesia, sensation is sometimes at once restored not only in the immediate region, but also sometimes in a much larger area. The cases so treated were, for the most part, hysterical hemianesthesias. Iron is the metal most frequently efficient, but sometimes copper, zinc, or gold are employed. The process of determining the metal essential to each individual case was called *metalloscopy*, and Burq held that this metal would also have the same effect if given internally. A committee of the Paris Society of Biology tested these statements in 1876 and confirmed them, except as to the internal administration of the metal. A similar discovery was that of Charcot, also substantiated, that the return of sensation to an anesthetic area as the result of applying a metal plate is accompanied by a simultaneous development of anesthesia upon the opposite side previously normal and in an exactly corresponding place. This is known as transfer. Other hysterical symptoms than anesthesia have been found to exhibit analogous phenomena. Thus, transfer can sometimes be observed in hysterical amblyopia, achromatopsia, deafness, loss of the senses of smell and taste, contractures, and paralysis, while such transfers may be induced by other means than metal plates, known as esthesiogenous remedies. They include large magnets, feeble galvanic currents, static electricity, vibrating tuning-forks, and sinapisms. It must be plain to any thinking person that these phenomena are merely

the result of suggestion produced by ideas similar to those already described. Their career will doubtless end like that of Perkins' tractors. Hypnotism has also been employed of late for the treatment of hysteria, and has acquired some popularity in France, where it has been especially practiced by the school at Nancy. Wonderful cures have doubtless thus been accomplished, but based as it is upon mysticism and imagery, and being already much abused by charlatans, it is to be hoped that its fate will be that of metallothrapy and Perkins' tractors.

### NEURASTHENIA.

SYNONYMS.—*Nervous Exhaustion; Nervous Weakness; Encephal-esthenia; the American Disease.*

**Definition.**—A term originally suggested by George M. Beard, in 1879, for a complexus of symptoms without anatomical basis, in which muscular weakness, nervous irritability, and pain are variously manifested. Beard defined nervousness as "Deficiency of nerve force, manifested chiefly by undue sensitiveness to external impressions," and neurasthenia as "A sign and type of functional nervous disease" evolved out of this general nervous sensitiveness. The line of demarcation between neurasthenia and hysteria is not always definite. Not only do the two conditions sometimes merge, but certain cases of neurasthenia are in no way distinguishable from the minor forms of hysteria. The condition is called *spinal*, *cerebral*, *cardiac*, or *gastric*, according as the symptoms dependent on one or the other of these systems predominate, but the line of demarcation is not sharp.

**Etiology.**—The same class of persons who are predisposed to hysteria are predisposed to neurasthenia, and such predisposition may be inherited or acquired. So, too, many of the exciting causes of the former become the exciting causes of the latter. Among these are overstrain of mind and body, overwork, especially overwork associated with care and anxiety. It is distinctive of neurasthenia as contrasted with hysteria that it is more frequent among men, on whom business care and financial worry fall more severely. It is well known that men differ greatly in their power to bear the mental strain incident to the struggle for existence or business success. From the special prevalence of this disease in America it has been called "the American disease," and is reasonably ascribable to the fact that mental and physical strength in this country is more taxed than in any other.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Although Beard took great pains to prove that neurasthenia is a physical and not a mental state, and that these phenomena do not come from emotional causes or excitability, but from nervous debility and irritability, there has been found no distinctive morbid change associated with its complexus of symptoms any more than with hysteria. It is barely possible that the investigations of C. F. Hodge and others, demonstrating changes in nerve-cells during functional activity, may result in some further knowledge in this direction.

**Symptoms.**—It has already been said that the symptoms of the minor

forms of hysteria are the symptoms of many cases of neurasthenia. The *appearance* of the patient may be that of perfect health; less frequently he looks worn and worried. In the *spinal* form motor phenomena are the most conspicuous. Of this and, indeed, of all forms, the most constant symptom is *muscular weakness*, as a result of which the patient complains of being tired and weary, even too weak at times to keep out of bed. Such weakness may affect the gait, making it uncertain and trembling, and the acts performed by the upper extremities may be similarly embarrassed. There may be *hyperesthesia* and *paresthesia*, and even the special senses may be affected, especially *vision* and *hearing*. The latter is more frequently oversensitive, and vision may be obscured by the presence of scotomata or muscæ volitantes. In the *cerebral* form especially characteristic is a low-spiritedness or *despondency*, often painful to witness, and which may alternate with *irritability* or *moodiness*. Another symptom is *sleeplessness*, though many patients sleep well; indeed, there is occasionally an irresistible disposition to sleep. A disposition to seek *solitude* is characteristic, while at other times the patient fears to be alone. Again, he is *restless*, unsettled, and impelled to move about from place to place, while there is sometimes a pronounced disposition to *suicide*. *Confusion of mind*, and especially a difficulty in dealing with figures, is a very common symptom, sometimes an initial symptom, the simplest arithmetical problems being quite impossible with one so affected.

The *cardiac* form is characterized by *palpitation* and frequent irregular action of the heart and *precordial pain*, which give rise to the belief in the patient's mind that he has cardiac disease, arteriocapillary fibrosis, or "hardening of the blood-vessels," as it is called by the laity. Of vasomotor phenomena there may be *flashes* of heat, *sudden sweats*, even night-sweats, and a relaxed state of the peripheral blood-vessels to an extent which may cause the "*water-hammer*" and even *capillary* pulse, similar to that of aortic regurgitation. *Epigastric pulsation* is often an annoying symptom in women. In the *gastric* form are, especially, *gastric pain*, the distinctive symptom of "nervous dyspepsia," but there are also distention and discomfort after eating, or a constant noisy motion of gases—*borborygmus*. *Polyuria* is a conspicuous symptom. A slight degree of glycosuria and even intermittent albuminuria have been reported. The opposite condition of urine—a dark hue and high specific gravity—is more rarely present. *Hoarseness*, *aphonia*, and very frequent breathing are regarded as symptoms of neurasthenia as well as of hysteria.

**Diagnosis.**—This is generally easy, and is arrived at by the exclusion of the objective symptoms of organic disease and by the etiology, for it will be observed that all of the symptoms which have been narrated are subjective in character. The so-called *spinal irritation* is a condition which resembles neurasthenia, and probably some of the cases so named which are not hysteria are cases of nervous exhaustion. Sensitiveness of the vertebræ is not apt to be present in neurasthenia, whereas it is the most distinctive symptom of spinal irritation.

**Prognosis.**—Recovery from neurasthenia may be confidently promised to almost every patient who is in a position to meet the indications of a successful treatment, which, unfortunately, are likely to be expensive,

though the modern hospital affords to even the poorer classes an asylum where the treatment may be successfully carried out.

**Treatment.**—The first essential condition of a successful treatment is *removal of the causes* which are responsible for the illness. To this, in the case of women, and sometimes of men, the most successful adjuvant is the *rest treatment* of Weir Mitchell, the technic of which has been already described under the treatment of hysteria. After this and, in the case of men, often even before this, *removal from the scene* and surroundings which attended the development of the disease is most useful. *Travel* away from home, especially in foreign countries, a sojourn at a sanitarium or health resort, the seaside, the woods, the mountains, for prolonged periods, have always, in my experience, sooner or later been followed by recovery. For the poor, the rest-cure as carried out in hospitals may be substituted for the more expensive methods of home treatment.

The treatment of the *insomnia* of neurasthenia calls for brief special consideration, and what is said here may apply to the treatment of any form of simple insomnia, by which I mean insomnia not the result of pain. Modern therapeutics has added to our resources a number of drugs which are more or less efficient to this end. The best of these, considered from all standpoints, is *sulphonal*. Not less than from 10 to 15 grains (0.66 to 1 gm.) should be given to an adult, while twice as much may be given if needed. I prefer to give this dose and repeat it in an hour if no effect follows. It is bulky, soluble with difficulty in cold water, but readily so in any hot menstruum, and especially suitable is hot milk. It should be given an hour or two before sleep is desired, but associated quietude is necessary to secure its effect. Nearly the same may be said of *trional* in the same doses. It is rather more conveniently administered, and may be placed dry on the tongue and washed down with a mouthful of water. *Paraldehyd* is an excellent remedy, but very disagreeable, and is more prompt in its action than sulphonal or trional, and should be given in dram (4 gm.) doses. *Chloralamid* is also a good hypnotic; its dose is 30 grains (2 gm.). It should be dissolved in alcoholic menstruum diluted to 1/2 ounce (13.5 c.c.). *Phenacitin* may be used in doses of from 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.). *Chloral*, as a simple hypnotic, is better, perhaps, than any of those named, although it has yielded its former high place to those just mentioned because of their harmlessness. It has the further disadvantage of sometimes causing drowsiness the next day, and occasionally it is exciting. From 10 to 30 grains (0.66 to 2 gm.) should be given at a dose. It is especially useful when combined with morphin, making a much smaller dose of this drug efficient, but morphin should not be used if it is possible to get along without it. *Chloralose*, a modified chloral, is often efficient in doses of 5 grains (0.33 gm.) to an adult. It often acts magically but sometimes a second dose excites. Hydrobromate of *hyoscin* may be used in doses of 1/100 grain (0.00066 gm.) if the drugs named fail. Sometimes it acts like a charm, at other times it produces the opposite effect—exciting the patient. One trial suffices to settle the question.

It is true of all the drugs named that their effect is apt to wear off, and increasing doses must be used, and the hypnotic habit is easily formed.



It is, therefore, desirable to obviate the necessity of their use as early as possible, and, if possible, substitute other measures. Often the patient simply needs a start to put him in the way of sleeping, while sometimes the simple feeling that there is something at hand which he can use if he wishes gives him the needed confidence and he goes to sleep at once. A warm *bath* before retiring, or even at times a cool bath or cool sponging, and again a hot bath, promote sleep. To persons residing in cities sleep is often favored by a sojourn at the seaside, many being able to sleep there when they cannot do so at home. The same is true of the country or the mountains.

It is important, too, in our efforts to secure sleep for our patients to investigate the various functions, derangement of any of which may keep a neurasthenic patient awake. Irregularities of digestion and circulation should receive attention. An undigested meal or a loaded bowel often keeps one awake, while an excited heart, by its ceaseless beating, repels the restful sleep without which life is wretched. Often a light meal or a single glass of wine seems to furnish the brain-cells the right amount of stimulus to enable them—

"To shut the banging doors and windows wide  
Of restless sense."

## TRAUMATIC NEUROSES.

SYNONYMS.—"*Railway Brain*"; "*Railway Spine*"; *Traumatic Hysteria*;  
*Erichsen's Disease*.

**Definition.**—A neurasthenic or hysterical state, the result of shock from railroad accident or accident of similar alarming character.

**Historical.**—The condition was first studied by Erichsen in 1868 to 1875, under the designation of "railway spine." Erichsen regarded it as an inflammation of the spinal meninges. Leyden, in 1875, made important contributions to the literature of the subject in treating of spinal concussion. Spitzka, in a review of "Spinal Injuries as a Basis of Litigation," in 1883, referred the symptoms to the category of spinal irritations. J. J. Putnam and G. L. Walton, in 1883, first pointed out the hysterical nature of the affection, a view which is commonly accepted to-day. H. W. Page, an English railway surgeon, published in 1885 a considerable volume directed against Erichsen's view. There still remain a few, and among them S. V. Clevenger, in a work on "Spinal Concussion," published in 1889, and Gowers in his 1892 edition, who hold that railway spine is something more than a purely mental condition. W. A. Hammond suggested an anemic origin.

**Etiology.**—Profound nervous shock, however induced, by railroad accidents, shipwreck, boiler explosions, and the like, even when the sufferer himself is not a victim, but is profoundly impressed by it, is capable of producing this nervous state.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—In the vast majority of cases, anatomical changes are not discoverable; in fact, as most cases recover, there is little opportunity to seek them. In a few, however, morbid alterations have been found in the brain and spinal cord, including *degeneration* of the pyramidal tracts of the cord, demonstrated by Edes in four cases; *multiple sclerotic areas* in the white matter, and *arteriosclerosis* in the vessels of the brain, with scattered areas of degeneration, but the study of concussions in man

has not led to very definite results. The effects of concussions of the brain and spinal cord have been studied in animals, and changes in the nerve-cells and nerve-fibers have been found.

**Symptoms.**—These are not essentially different from those of neurasthenia from other causes. The most remarkable fact with regard to them is that they do not necessarily immediately follow the accident, and there may be some interval of time between the two events—the accident and its result. In some cases the symptoms appear suddenly, in others they are gradual in their invasion. All the symptoms detailed under neurasthenia may be present, especially spinal tenderness and pain in various parts of the body, principally in the back and head; there may be numbness and tingling in the extremities, increased muscular irritability, and increased knee-jerk. The latter varies from day to day, and may be exhausted by repeated stimulation. Extreme depression of spirits is another symptom. Other patients exhibit active hysterical symptoms, including modifications of sensation and motion, hemianesthesia, anesthesia, paresis, and even paralysis.

In the more severe cases in which there is actual concussion the symptoms suggest organic changes, which are, indeed, actually found at times in the shape of pachymeningitis. Such cases exhibit diminished superficial reflexes, with exaggeration of the deep ones. There may be severe pain, variously distributed. Other symptoms are alterations in the temperature sense and in the muscular sense, both of which may be bilaterally distributed. There may also be modification of the special senses, including those of smell, taste, and vision, with inequality of pupils. There may be monoplegia with or without contracture. Symptoms which imply true organic change are optic atrophy, bladder-symptoms, paresis, and exaggerated reflexes. Such cases are sometimes, though rarely, fatal.

**Prognosis.**—Most cases get well. The effect of litigation is often to delay recovery, while successful litigation does not always relieve the symptoms, and when it does, it is by no means always speedily—months and even years elapsing before the cases recover. A few cases, where there is true organic disease, perish.

**Treatment.**—Rest, mental and physical, is the first essential condition of recovery. It may be aided by the measures useful in other forms of neurasthenia, such as massage, electricity, and proper feeding. Medicines avail little, except for their moral effect. Narcotics should be avoided.

## OTHER FORMS OF FUNCTIONAL PARALYSIS.

### ABASIA-ASTASIA.

**Definition.**—Abasia ( $\alpha$  privative;  $\beta\alpha\sigma\iota\varsigma$ , a step) is a term given by P. Blocq, in 1888, to a difficulty in starting the act of walking from a state of previous rest. Astasia ( $\alpha$  privative;  $\sigma\tau\alpha\sigma\iota\varsigma$ , a standing) is an inability to stand, contrasted with integrity of sensation, muscular strength, and co-ordination of other movements of the legs.

**Nature.**—The phenomena are thus far inexplicable in the absence of discoverable lesions, and are usually regarded as hysterical. It is a condition occurring in adults, equally frequent in men and women—as determined by Knapp's study of 50 cases, of which half were in either sex.

**Symptoms.**—These occur in connection with a variety of morbid states, and a large majority of them are doubtless hysterical.

In the "unconscious" variety the patient is without any idea that he cannot walk or stand, when he suddenly finds that he cannot do either. Another variety of abasia-astasia is the "hypochondriacal," in which the patient acts under "conscious" erroneous impression that he cannot walk or cannot stand. It is sometimes associated in the hypochondriacal paranoiac with paresthesia, and in the neurasthenic with abnormally increased sense of fatigue. A third form is associated with some suddenly acting "shock," as fright, which acts inhibitorily on the motions of the patient. Finally there is the "coercion" variety of abasia-astasia, in which the patient, while in the act of walking or standing, is suddenly seized with the idea that he cannot walk or shall not walk. This differs from the hypochondriacal form in that the patient is conscious of the erroneousness and absurdity of the idea, but is nevertheless coerced by it.

These different forms are not always sharply defined. Suddenness is especially characteristic in the "unconscious" form. In other cases the patient may walk a few steps and then suddenly break down. Sometimes he stands rooted to the ground, as it were. At other times the development is slow, requiring even years to reach its acme. Sometimes it is preceded by trembling or staggering, as associated symptoms, the result of the effort of the patient to stand or move forward.

Closing the eyes usually increases the difficulty. On the other hand, sometimes, with the eyes closed the patient can walk in the normal manner, when it is impossible to do so with the eyes open. The latter is especially true of the hypochondriacal variety. In these cases, too, the natural gait is sometimes restored after attempting an unusual method of walking, as walking backward or with the legs crossed or by leaping or in military step. So, also, abasics can walk on all-fours. The morbid state is also influenced by certain surroundings, as broad open surfaces or long narrow corridors or standing without special support. Th. Ziehen refers to a case in which it came on when the patient walked under a tree, the moving leaves of which produced moving shadows. There is sometimes associated tachycardia; at other times evident hysterical symptoms, such as tender spots, hemianesthesia, and the like. In other cases there is epilepsy, paralysis agitans or chorea.

**Diagnosis.**—This is based upon the retention of absolute integrity of sensation, of muscular strength, and of co-ordination of the legs, demonstrable in the recumbent position. From *hysterical paraplegia* it differs in that the power of motion is intact in the recumbent position. From *intermittent lameness* it is distinguished by the fact that in intermittent lameness the inability to walk comes on after the patient has been walking a while, and the power of locomotion is restored after rest. Abasia-astasia has been observed in tumor of the frontal lobe of the brain.

**Prognosis.**—This is regarded as favorable, though relapses occur.

**Treatment.**—The evident hysterical nature of the affection, in the majority of cases, suggests the treatment for such cases. The rest-cure, massage, gymnastics, electricity, gradually increasing practice in walking, are measures which are likely to be useful. Th. Ziehen, to whose article in Eulenberg's "Real-Encyclopädie" I am indebted for much of the information in this section, recommends "suggestion without hypnosis," especially in the hypochondriacal and hysterical forms, as a reliable means of rapid cure; and in the cases in which fear or terror is conspicuous, small doses of opium.

#### FAMILY PERIODICAL PARALYSIS.

**Definition.**—A rare form of hereditary or family paralysis of the voluntary muscles, usually general, except the face, recurring at intervals of from one or two weeks to three months, and confined principally to children. It is attended with a loss of reflexes and electrical reaction, but no mental or sensory disturbance.

The disease is rare. It was first described by Cavaré in 1853 and by Romberg in 1857. Edward Wyllis Taylor<sup>1</sup> collected 25 cases, including two of his own, up to September, 1898, to which John K. Mitchell<sup>2</sup> added a twenty-sixth in 1899.

**Etiology.**—The disease is hereditary and is transmitted through the mother. As many as 12 members of a single family have been affected, though it does not usually affect all the children. Goldflam suggests that the paralysis is due to autointoxication, the poison acting upon the nerve endings in the muscles, while he also found that the urine secreted during the attacks was more toxic than at other times. The view of autointoxication is not accepted by all, and J. J. Putnam has advanced a theory of inhibition. The recent studies of John K. Mitchell on the case referred to, for some time under his observation, tend to confirm Goldflam's view, and also to show that there are two poisons, one of which predominates in one case and the other in another, and according as one or the other predominates the effect is greater on the peripheral nerves and muscles or the spinal center. It should not be omitted that some clinicians, including C. L. Dana, consider the majority of cases hysterical, though he says some may be cases of recurring poliomyelitis.

**Symptoms.**—The disease occurs in *youth* and in the *midst of health, even during sleep*. Beginning as a weakness or weariness in the arms and legs, it is *usually complete in 24 hours*. It is rarely confined to the legs, and may also involve the muscles of the neck, and even those of the tongue and pharynx, while those of the head and face remain intact.

**Sensation** for the most part is *unaffected*, as are also the special senses. The deep reflexes are diminished, sometimes abolished, while the superficial reflexes are feeble. Faradic sensibility of nerves and muscles is greatly lessened, sometimes absent. There is no fever, and sometimes

<sup>1</sup> "Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease," vol. xxv., p. 637, 1898. Dr. Taylor alludes to 53 cases, but does not include cases inadequately reported: as, for example, cases merely mentioned by writers, but not reported in detail.

<sup>2</sup> "Amer. Jour. of the Med. Sci.," December, 1899.

the temperature is below normal, while the pulse is slow. Nothing abnormal has been found in the blood or urine, though the breath is heavy, the tongue is coated, and the urine is relatively diminished during the attack and increased after its termination, as happens in migraine.

The attack recurs at intervals of from one to two or more weeks, in some instances daily. It *begins to abate usually in a few hours or after a day or two*, and ultimately disappears completely, and the patient remains well until another attack sets in.

**Treatment.**—None is of any service, though some of the earlier cases seem to have yielded to quinin, while it is more than likely that these were in some way complicated with malaria.

## VASOMOTOR AND TROPHIC DERANGEMENTS.

### ACUTE ANGIONEUROTIC EDEMA.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Giant Urticaria; Acute Circumscribed Edema of the Skin.*

**Definition.**—Edematous swelling occurring suddenly in various parts of the body, disappearing in a few hours, perhaps to recur again.

**Historical.**—The disease was first accurately described by Quincke<sup>1</sup> in 1882. Strübing<sup>2</sup> proposed the name now adopted, as more appropriate to the symptom-complex.

**Etiology.**—Heredity is sometimes observed, but any other cause is unknown.

**Pathology.**—The condition is regarded by Quincke as a vasomotor neurosis producing sudden dilatation and increased permeability of the vessels. It is, however, one of the derangements which may be said to be of mixed vasomotor and trophic origin.

**Symptoms.**—The *face*, especially the eyelids and nose, is the most usual site, but the swelling may affect any part of the *body*, as the hands, face, or genitalia, including the penis. It may be painful. Even the *mucous membranes* may be invaded, especially the lips, mouth, and pharynx, while a fatal edema of the larynx has occurred. The *onset* is *sudden* and the patient's previous health may have been excellent. *Gastro-intestinal disturbances* manifested by vomiting, colic, diarrhea, and gastralgia, are sometimes associated while they sometimes alternate. They are ascribed to an edema of the mucous membrane. This has been demonstrated from sections of fragment of mucous membrane of the stomach removed by stomach-tube by Roger S. Morris.<sup>3</sup> There are also at times *heat, redness*, and *itching*. While the symptoms arise suddenly, subsiding often as quickly, the disease is likely to be prolonged.

**Treatment.**—Remedies calculated to increase muscular and nervous tone, such as nitro-glycerin, strychnin, quinin, and iron, are indicated. In other respects the treatment is symptomatic, and directed to whatever symptoms demand attention. Morphine is sometimes necessary to re-

<sup>1</sup> Ueber akutes umschriebenes Haut ödem. "Monatshefte f. prakt. Derm.," 1882, Bd. i.

<sup>2</sup> "Zeitschrift f. klin. Med.," 1885, Bd. ix.

<sup>3</sup> "Angioneurotic Edema," "American Journal of Medical Sciences," November, 1904.

lieve pain. Tracheotomy may be necessary to save the life of the patient from death by edema of the glottis.

### RAYNAUD'S DISEASE.

SYNONYMS.—*Local Asphyxia; Symmetrical Gangrene of the Extremities.*

**Definition.**—A vasocontractile disease characterized by three stages, more or less complete—viz.:

1. Local syncope.
2. Local asphyxia.
3. Local gangrene.

**Historical.**—The disease was first described by Maurice Raynaud in 1862. Raynaud's thesis, translated by Barlow, with additional cases and bibliography, is published in volume cxxi., 1888, New Sydenham Society's publications.

**Symptoms.**—The disease is more frequent in women—Raynaud's cases including 20 women and 5 men. It is also a disease of early life; the majority of Raynaud's patients were between the ages of 18 and 30, while five were between three and nine. The first phenomenon noticed is an unusual *pallor or anemia of the part*, resulting in marble-like whiteness and loss of sensation. This is the *local syncope*. Affecting, as it often does, the fingers and toes, these have been called dead fingers and toes. It follows exposure to cold, and to comparatively slight degrees of cold in those predisposed. The condition may disappear under warmth, and then only does pain manifest itself—when the parts are being thawed out, as the saying is. *Local asphyxia* follows, consisting in *engorgement*, the parts previously pale becoming purple and livid. The change is not simultaneous in all the fingers, some being still white while the others are livid.

The local asphyxia may succeed the local syncope, or it may come on independently of it. The tip of the nose and helices of the ears are the parts prone to cyanosis, but in addition to the fingers and toes the hands, feet, and arms and legs may be involved. A peculiar and striking mottling is the result on these large surfaces, produced by an alternation of various shades of purple with intervening lighter-hued spaces. In the darkest areas the capillary circulation is quite stagnant. There are also *swelling*, resulting *stiffness*, and *pain*, the latter often extreme and associated with an intense itching. But in Raynaud's disease there is perhaps more frequently *anesthesia* than pain. These are the phenomena, too, of chilblains, with which so many suffer in this climate with the approach of cold weather. In Raynaud's disease, as in chilblains, these symptoms may pass away in time under the influence of warmth; in fact, for a long time they occur only during the colder weather. A reaction takes place, and the parts assume a bright, red color in which the circulation is very active, and the anemia produced by pressure is rapidly replaced by an active hyperemia. The attacks may keep recurring for years without further effect, though in extreme cases there may be *loss of substance* in the ear-tips and fingers' ends, which in time may become indurated, uneven, and scarred from this cause.

The third stage of *local* or symmetrical *gangrene* is reached in a few cases only. In these the parts affected remain asphyxiated, and the phenomena of dry gangrene make their appearance. The fingers or toes, one or more, become black, dry, and cold, while gangrenous blebs appear in the parts adjacent to the sound tissue, a line of demarcation occurs, and the dead part sloughs away less extensively than at first seemed likely to be the case. Rarely, and only in cases of young children, does a fatal termination occur.

The symptoms that have been described may be said to be essential, but others also may be added of great clinical interest. One of these is *hemoglobinuria*, which is, of course, associated with a corresponding albuminuria. There are, at times, a few blood disks in the urine. Hemoglobinuria, when present, generally occurs at the same time with the cyanosis, and the attack has frequently been preceded by a chill. Other associate symptoms, less common, are scleroderma and edema, probably angioneurotic.

At other times *cerebral symptoms*, including torpor and partial loss of consciousness, are present; at others, epilepsy, mania, delusions, and even temporary hemiplegia. Dimness of vision is a symptom easily explained if we suppose there is a spasm of blood-vessels producing local retinal syncope. Other associated symptoms are peripheral neuritis with tingling and formication—neuritis being regarded as one of the causes of the disease; arthritic swelling; urticaria; erythema; also colicky pains, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea.

**Pathology.**—Three chief theories have been brought forward to explain Raynaud's disease:

1. That it is due to endarteritis obliterans.
2. That it is caused by peripheral neuritis.
3. That it is the result of vascular spasm.

The intermittent nature of the disease is quite incompatible with its causation by endarteritis, which is progressively increasing in its effects. It is true that some of the results of peripheral neuritis are similar to those of Raynaud's disease, but the frequency of the former affection as contrasted with the rarity of the latter militates, also, against this view.

The theory of arteriole spasm, suggested by Raynaud himself, best explains the symptoms. Its frequency among women and children, whose vasomotor system is so impressible; its occurrence under the influence of cold, which is one of the most powerful excitors of vasomotor spasm; the frequent dimness of vision, which has been shown by ophthalmoscopic examination to be associated with contraction of the central artery of the retina; the occasional precedence of a chill; and the phenomena of hemoglobinuria, all go to show the probability of vasomotor spasm. Since the hemoglobinuria is likely to be associated with hemoglobinemia—which probably arises from the solution of hemoglobin liberated in the asphyxiated parts—such an origin for the hemoglobinuria must be admitted. It will be noticed that the conditions in Raynaud's disease are in some respects similar to those of intermittent hemoglobinuria, and such similarity affords a basis which may ultimately help to explain more satisfactorily the phenomena of both. The relation of Raynaud's disease to chilblains

also affords an interesting field of investigation—in fact, has already been studied by Legroux.

**Diagnosis.**—It is not unlikely that Raynaud's disease and gangrene from endarteritis obliterans have been confounded. Raynaud's disease is limited to smaller areas, as the ends of the fingers, the tip of the nose and the helices of the ears. It is preceded by local pallor. Obliterating arthritis affects larger vessels and limbs, especially the lower limbs, is less apt to be symmetrical, and is more likely to be fatal while Raynaud's disease is rarely so.

**Prognosis.**—This is not altogether unfavorable. Only delicate and feeble children, as a rule, perish, while it is quite possible, under favorable circumstances, to outgrow the tendency.

**Treatment.**—Persons subject to local syncope and local asphyxia should be protected from cold, and when the attack comes on, they should be kept warm, if necessary in bed, the parts being wrapped in wool and subjected to artificial heat. Friction may with advantage be associated. Galvanism and faradism are recommended.

B. B. Cates, of Knoxville, Tenn., has reported the successful treatment of Raynaud's disease by nitroglycerin in doses of 1/100 grain (0.00065 gm.) increased to 1/50 grain (0.0013 gm.) three times a day, and Harvey Cushing has recently reported a case with recovery by the application of the tourniquet or rubber bandage to the affected limbs repeated frequently during the day.

#### PROGRESSIVE FACIAL HEMIATROPHY.

SYNONYM.—*Unilateral Progressive Facial Atrophy.*

**Definition.**—A gradual progressive wasting of the bony, muscular, integumental, and adipose tissue of half the face.

**Etiology.**—That it is a trophic neurosis can scarcely be doubted. In one case—that of Mendel's—which came to autopsy there was the terminal stage of a neuritis in all the branches of the trifacial. In Homen's case, an acute one, and perhaps not strictly to be regarded as an instance of true facial hemiatrophy, a tumor was found pressing on the Gasserian ganglion and trigeminal nerve, but in similar cases of tumor of the ganglion facial hemiatrophy has not occurred. It has been observed in syringomyelia.

The disease usually begins in youth, but in a few cases it did not make its appearance until middle age. It is rather more common in the female sex. Sachs has collected 97 cases.

**Symptoms.**—The atrophy is much more frequent on the left side than on the right. It may begin as a circumscribed spot on the cheek or chin, or diffusely, involving first the subcutaneous tissue, the muscles, chiefly those of mastication, and finally the bones, especially of the upper jaw. In the cases which begin in early youth the muscles remain intact. The tissues of the orbit take part in the atrophy, and the eye appears sunken. The corresponding halves of the tongue and of the soft palate are sometimes involved. The hair on the same side may fall out and appears thin. The



line of demarcation is sharp in the median line. In a few rare instances the disease is bilateral, and in a few cases also the atrophy involves the corresponding shoulder and arm. Sensibility is intact.

**Diagnosis.**—The disease, though very rare, can scarcely be confounded with anything else. The facial asymmetry associated with *congenital*



FIG. 138.—Left Facial Hemiatrophy—(Strümpell).

*wry-neck* alone resembles it. Strümpell mentions a case of facial *hemihypertrophy* in a boy of 10 under his observation. Hypertrophy of one side or of one limb is also a rare condition.

**Treatment.**—A suitable treatment is the application of electricity to the atrophic side, alternated with massage.

#### ACROMEGALY.

**Definition.**—A disease characterized by enlargement of the bones, especially the bones of the hands, feet, and face.

**Historical.**—It was first described by Marie, of Paris, in "Revue de Médecine," 1886. It had, however, been previously described under other names, as "hyperostosis of the entire skeleton" by Friedreich, as general hypertrophy, or "makrosomie," by Lombroso, as "giant growth," by Fritzsche and Klebs. Since then numerous cases have been reported, and the disease was exhaustively described by Arnold, of Heidelberg, in Ziegler's "Beiträge," in 1891.

**Etiology.**—It is a disease of early adult life, usually occurring under 30 and is, perhaps, slightly more frequent in women. Heredity, syphilis, and the specific fevers have preceded the disease, but no necessary relation has been shown.

**Morbid Anatomy and Pathology.**—This consists in a true hypertrophic enlargement of the bones, except the superior maxillary, which contributes

to the enlargement of the face by a dilatation of the antrum, while the lower jaw is simply enlarged. As stated, the enlargement is uniform and symmetrical instead of involving only the shaft as in osteitis deformans, or the ends as in arthritis deformans, and is quite independent of rheumatism. Hyperplasia of the pituitary body has been a striking feature in most cases which have come to necropsy, in every one of 34 collected by Furnival. Marie early sought to make these changes responsible, as disease of the thyroid is for myxedema. Persistence and enlargement of the thymus gland have been found, and atrophy as well as enlargement of the thyroid.

A further study of acromegaly in connection with "giantism," "dwarfism," and "cretinism," go to show that it is at least not improbable that all of these are the result of some deranged function of the pituitary gland. It is well known that giantism may degenerate into acromegaly, while a comparison between the skeletons of a dwarf and a macrocephalic suggests that they are opposite extremes of one and the same process. Of further interest in this connection is the embryonic relation between the pharyngeal tonsil—adenoids in the vault of the pharynx, and the extraordinary influence they have on nutrition—and the pituitary body, which are at one period of development in connection and subsequently separated by ossifications at the base of the skull; while not infrequently in early life they remain connected by a fibrous cord running through the body at the sphenoid.

**Symptoms.**—The most striking features are the *enlarged bones*, especially those of the hands and feet, the appearance of the former being well characterized as spade-like, while the fingers and nails are broad. The *legs* and *arms*, on the other hand, are not elongated early, but late in the disease the forearms and legs may increase in circumference; while the *ends* of long bones, like the femurs, are often prominent. The scapulæ, clavicles, sternum, and the ends of the ribs are also sometimes involved. The proper use of the hands is not interfered with. The *head* and face are *enlarged*, the latter is elongated, while the neck appears short, and the inferior maxilla may project beyond the upper, and the lower lip protrude in consequence. The *ears* are unduly prominent, while the *cartilages* of the nose, eyelids, and larynx are enlarged and thickened, as is also sometimes the tongue. The *spinal column* may be involved, and there may be kyphosis. The *muscles*, on the other hand, are sometimes atrophied, and the genitalia are unusually developed. The skin, though coarse and exhibiting a tendency to perspire, is not thickened as in myxedema.

Among other symptoms are *mental dullness*, a sense of fatigue, and quite severe pain in the head and extremities; *alteration of voice* due to changes in the tongue and larynx, and possibly to paresis of the vocal cords; impairment of special *senses* of taste, smell, and hearing; blindness due to optic atrophy; thirst, shortness of breath, *asthmatic* attacks, *palpitation*, and even *hypertrophy of the heart*. In a number of cases bitemporal hemianopsia has been observed and was due to pressure on the chiasm by the enlarged pituitary body. There are *menstrual derangement* and early cessation of the menses in women. The alterations

in the *thyroid* have been alluded to, and an area of dullness over the manubrium is ascribed by Erb to persistence of the *thymus*.

**Diagnosis.**—This is easy. The difference between acromegaly and *osteitis deformans* and *arthritis deformans* has been mentioned. In *osteitis deformans*, too, as pointed out by Marie, the face is triangular, with the base *upward*, while in acromegaly it is ovoid, with the large end downward. Acromegaly has been mistaken for congenital progressive hypertrophy or "giant growth," but in the latter only one limb is usually involved and the shaft of the bone is affected.

**Prognosis.**—The duration of the disease is long and usually ultimately fatal, although it is sometimes arrested. The fatal cases are probably those with tumor of the pituitary body.

**Treatment.**—None has been found to be of any value. Naturally, one thinks of the possible utility of extract of the pituitary gland, though if the condition be the result of excessive pituitary secretion, but little can be expected from such use. In fact, such has been the result in the few cases in which it has been tried.

#### SCLERODERMA.

SYNONYMS.—*Cutis tensa chronica; Sclerema; Dermatosclerosis; Glossy Skin.*

**Definition.**—A chronic, somewhat diffuse, indurated, hide-bound, and pigmented condition of the skin, trophoneurotic in origin.

**Historical.**—The disease was first described by Alibert, in 1817. A publication on the subject is "Die Sklerodermie," by Lewin and Heller, 1895, in which 508 cases were collected.

**Etiology.**—This is obscure. It is more common in women than in men, and is most frequent in early adult and middle age. In one case under my observation, that of a hack-driver, long exposure to wet and cold seemed a likely cause, and others report similar experience. Rheumatism, especially of the joints, and strong impressions on the nervous system have been regarded as causes.

**Pathology.**—The identity of scleroderma and morphea is claimed by some. I follow Louis A. Duhring in separating them, because both are capable of assuming a variety of forms which present entirely different clinical features at various stages. Scleroderma is much rarer than morphea. In the matured forms, while the epidermis is unaltered, there is increase of pigment in the lower layers of the rete, with a distinct overgrowth of connective tissue in the corium and subcutaneous connective tissue. Contrary to what would be expected, the sweat and sebaceous glands appear to be normal.

**Symptoms.**—The disease appears first in the neck, shoulders, back, chest, arms, and face. It begins usually as a stiffening of the *skin* which passes over into a *hard, tense, unyielding tissue*, resisting motion, and causing fixation and flexion. The patient is literally "*hide-bound*." The hand, with its smooth, glossy surface, utterly without wrinkles, is striking and distinctive. The change may involve the greater part of the body

and even the whole of it. When less general, it is symmetrical. The condition passes insensibly into that of the surrounding healthy tissue. *Pigmentation* is usually a later symptom, but may be an early one.

There is generally *no constitutional disturbance* or other local symptom, such as pain, burning, and tingling, but more rarely these are present. The evolution of the condition is generally slow, requiring weeks and months, and when completed, it is likely to remain unchanged for months or years, or slowly passes away, leaving the skin normal. Rarely, however, an atrophic state may succeed, producing such a shrinking or contraction that the integument is apparently bound to the bones, while over the joints the skin may become so fixed and immobile that ulcers and excoriations are easily produced.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis rarely furnishes difficulty. In some stages it resembles morphea, from which it will be distinguished when that subject is considered.

**Prognosis.**—This should always be guarded, as the disease is often intractable, though recovery sometimes occurs.

**Treatment.**—Treatment of a curative kind is unknown. The patient should be thoroughly protected against cold, as he is exceedingly sensitive. Friction with oil is a rational means for softening the skin, and may give comfort, but does not check the spread of the disease. Cod-liver oil, iron, and arsenic are indicated. The constant electrical current has been recommended in the local forms.

## MORPHEA.

SYNONYM.—*Keloid of Addison.*

**Definition.**—A trophic, asymmetrical neurosis of the skin, characterized by patches of skin firm in texture, white, pale pink, light yellow, or waxy hued, sometimes elevated, at other times depressed.

**Etiology.**—More common than scleroderma, it is also found more often in women, and at all ages. Its etiology is unknown, but its tropho-neurotic origin is more than likely.

**Symptoms.**—The *patches* occur more frequently about the breasts and neck and sometimes in the course of nerves, such as the intercostal or lumbar, or on the face along the branches of the fifth pair. They range from  $2/5$  inch (1 centimeter) to four inches (10 centimeters) in diameter. There may be a *preliminary hyperemia* with itching of the skin and increased pigment deposit, or a milk-white *leukoderma* from the beginning. The *spots* are dry, without perspiration, sometimes scaly. Ultimately there may be *anesthesia*, in pinkish or purplish hyperemic spots or in small linear cicatricial-like areas, which grow rapidly. In fact, the *rapidity of spread* of the spots is one of the most interesting clinical features. In the later stages there are often distinct *atrophy* and *cicatrization* with *pigmentation*. The spots may persist for months or disappear in a few weeks, and though more frequently persistent for a long time, they ultimately disappear spontaneously. The spots seem to be the *direct result* of a *cutting off of the circulation* by a *narrowing of the blood-vessels*. This

may be by compression by an inflammatory exudate, but is more likely to be a vasomotor constriction, probably due to irritation of the vasoconstrictor nerves.

Histologically there is a condensation of the connective tissue of the corium with a shrinkage of the papillary layer.

**Diagnosis.**—Morphea differs from scleroderma in that its lesions are more circumscribed, and in an absence of sclerodermic hardness. Pigmentation and cicatrization usually appear only in the later stages of morphea, while they are seen in the early stages of scleroderma before there is change in structure. Scleroderma is symmetrical in distribution; morphea is not. The atrophic striæ seen in one form of morphea closely resemble the lineæ albicantes of pregnancy or other cause of distention.

**Treatment.**—That recommended in scleroderma may be expected to be useful in morphea, especially arsenic, which is recommended by Louis A Duhring. Here, too, the constant galvanic current is held to be of service, an extended trial being, however, necessary.

### AINHUM.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Ainham*; *Quigila*; *Suhka Pakla*, or *Dry Suppuration*; *Pityriasis athiopijs*; *Scleroderma annulare*.

**Definition.**—A trophic disease, resulting ultimately in the amputation of one or more toes, especially the little toe, confined almost exclusively to male negroes.

**Historical.**—It was first described in 1866 by da Silva Lima, of Brazil, to which country it was at first thought to be limited, but since then cases have been reported from almost every quarter of the tropical and semitropical globe, including the extreme southern United States.

**Etiology.**—It would seem that a moist, sandy soil and warm climate must have some influence in its etiology, but nothing definite is known. Its practical limitation to the colored race has been referred to. The operation of a pathogenic organism has been suggested, and the disease as an amputating leprosy. Traumatism has undoubtedly been associated with it.

**Symptoms.**—Ainhum begins as a furrow or crack at the digitoplantar fold, seen first on the inner side. In a few days the toe will swell and become the seat of a burning, shooting pain, which may extend into the foot and leg, though pain is not constant. The furrow increases laterally and in depth until finally the toe is constricted and the distal end becomes ovoid. The swelling subsiding, spontaneous amputation ultimately takes place, a dry scab forms at the furrow, and the case ends. It is not always confined to one toe, though it is as a rule. Sensation is not usually destroyed, though it may be, and the nail remains unchanged. There are no constitutional symptoms.

The histology of the process has been studied by C. H. Eyles, who concludes that there is an ingrowth of epithelium with corresponding depression of surface, due to a hyperplasia that strangles the papillæ

and cuts off the nourishment of the epithelium and causes it to undergo horny change. The bone changes are those of a rarefying osteitis, proceeding from the periosteum inward. According to Collas, it is an amputating leprosy.

The **diagnosis** is easy. There is no disease which resembles it.

The **prognosis** is favorable as to any danger to life. The duration of the disease is from two to four years.

**Treatment** is unnecessary.

## SYPHILIS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

SYNONYM.—*Syphilis of the Brain and Spinal Cord.*

**Definition.**—A term applied to the condition and symptoms resulting from invasion of the nervous system by syphilitic disease.

**Etiology.**—Any one of the various lesions which arise in the tertiary stage of acquired syphilis or are the result of inherited syphilis may invade the nervous system. More frequently they are the result of acquired syphilis, but a gummy tumor may develop in the brain of the fetus *in utero*. The phenomena of syphilis of the nervous system present themselves usually a year or more after the primary infection. Exceptionally only do they present themselves before the end of the first year, but may appear a few months after the infection. Occasionally from 10 to 30 years may elapse after the infection before symptoms of syphilis of the nervous system appear.

Age and sex have a bearing only as they influence the distribution of the disease. The same conditions which predispose to the development of other brain affections predispose also to the implantation of the syphilitic poison. Such is the inherited nervous disposition, or vulnerability acquired in any way, say through traumatic or septic agencies. Such predisposition favors the earlier operation of the syphilitic poison as well as of other causes of nervous disease. For evident reasons also nervous syphilis is more frequent in the male than in the female sex.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—As stated, any of the tertiary syphilitic lesions may be the cause of nervous syphilis. While the fundamental process in each instance is the same, it may be quite definitely subdivided into two—

1. Extravascular syphilitic new formations.
  2. Syphilitic disease of the blood-vessels.
1. Extravascular syphilitic new formations include—
- (a) Specialized new formations, the syphiloma or gumma.
  - (b) Simple inflammatory products.

(a) The *syphilitic gumma*, or syphiloma, is a circumscribed yellow or grayish-yellow mass often caseated in the center. It may occur as a single focus or in multiple foci. Its most frequent seat is in the dura mater or the subarachnoid space, whence it invades the brain substance and adjacent vessels and nerves. More rarely it starts *ab initio* in the substance of the brain, whence it sometimes closely resembles the tyroma

or solitary tubercle. The tendency to degeneration, which results in the caseation referred to, is the characteristic feature of the gummy tumor, but it is associated with another property of extreme importance, a fibroid change at the periphery, which produces the appearance of a capsule about the tumor, although no distinct capsule exists. Such fibroid change may also interpenetrate the tumor itself.

(b) Of even greater clinical importance is the *simple inflammatory luetic neoplasm*, which starts in the meninges—*meningitis gummatosa*—most frequently at the base of the brain, especially in the neighborhood of the optic chiasm, but also in the fissure of Sylvius and on the convexity. In these more diffuse areas one often finds, alongside of each other, the different stages of young granulation tissue, cheesy foci, and contracting connective or scar tissue. Either of the two membranes, the dura mater or pia mater, may be involved.

2. *Syphilitic disease of the blood-vessels* includes *intravascular syphilitic growth*.

Starting from the endothelial cells of the intima, it produces a firm connective tissue which differs from atheroma in being thicker and more translucent, but which, after internal administration of iodid of potassium, becomes thinner and more opaque, in fact, more like simple atheroma, for which it is, then, often mistaken. Thickening of the adventitia is also sometimes superadded. It is to be remembered that this intravascular and perivascular formation presents no distinctive histological features, any more than does syphilitic meningitis. The vessels affected are those of the base of the brain, especially the middle cerebral artery and its branches.

The possible results of such intravascular growth are (1) *occlusion*, with resulting necrotic softening or induration of the cortex, especially in children; or (2) *intracranial aneurysms* of the larger arteries. Of these, Gowers says: "We know two other causes of such intracranial aneurysms: one, very rare, is traumatic arteritis. The other is embolism 'imperfectly occluding the vessels,' probably the cause of two-thirds of such aneurysms before the degenerative period of life. In the remainder, in which there is no history of injury and no evidence of embolism, there is a history of syphilis in so many cases as to justify the opinion that most of them are due to this influence. Often the history is imperfect, because the aneurysm has been unsuspected until the final rupture, and syphilis has not been inquired for. When we consider how great is the amount of new-growth in the walls of a diseased artery, and how prone are the new elements to change into extensible fibroid tissue, the wonder is that aneurysm is not a more frequent occurrence. Probably the explanation is to be found in the common persistence of the elastic layer, which affords the chief safeguard against permanent dilatation."

(3) A third effect of syphilitic vascular disease is *hemorrhage* within the substance of the brain, and small hemorrhages are not uncommon within the brain and spinal cord.

In the *spinal cord*, syphilis frequently produces chronic inflammation of the dura mater—spinal pachymeningitis. Its effect is mainly seen on the spinal and bulbar nerve-roots, although the cord also may be invaded

by sclerotic fibrous tissue. The pia mater may be invaded in association with the dura mater, especially in diffuse inflammation, and sometimes is more involved than the dura mater. The most common syphilitic manifestation in the spinal cord, however, is meningo-myelitis. Gummata visible to the naked eye are seldom found in the spinal cord.

The *cranial nerves* may suffer from compression by tumor or chronic meningeal inflammation, or may be invaded by an inflammation involving the sheath and interstitial tissue.

**Symptoms.**—Of fundamental importance in studying the symptomatology of nervous syphilis is the fact that the symptoms due to syphilitic disease are in no way distinctive. They are essentially the same as those of tumor or meningitis or occlusion of blood-vessels from other cause. This being admitted, it might seem scarcely necessary to make a separate subject of syphilis of the nervous system. It, however, affords opportunity for a somewhat more systematic classification of the lesions and a review of the symptoms caused by them.

These symptoms vary with the seat of the lesion, of which sometimes quite a close diagnosis can be made. The specific nature of the lesion may be inferred to a degree from the symptoms, but most largely from the history. From the grouping of the symptoms may be inferred the most important of the local processes, as originally suggested by Huebner. They are:

1. *Basal Brain Syphilis or Basal Gummy Meningitis.*—The symptoms are to a certain extent those of a tumor in this section—viz., *general cerebral and focal symptoms*, due to the local effect of the growth.

*General symptoms* are intense headache, often worse at night, apathy, loss of memory, somnolence, and tendency to stupor, all of which characterize more or less the typical tumor of the brain. Maniacal excitement, ultimate imbecility, and physical weakness may supervene.

The *compression or focal symptoms* due to basal syphilis are also the same as those due to tumor. The nerves concerned are especially the optic and oculomotor (third), and to a less degree the trochlear (fourth) and abducent (sixth) of the eyeball. The symptoms include narrowing of the field of vision, hemianopsia, and even total blindness, alterations in the pupil and defects in the movement of the ball and eyelids. In syphilis these effects are irregular and seldom bilateral. There may also be optic neuritis and even choked disk, but the latter is less frequent than in other varieties of brain tumor. Syphilomata always cause a rapid and severe form of optic neuritis, so that chronicity in a neuritis is presumptive evidence against its syphilitic origin. Especially characteristic of syphilis is variation in the severity of the symptoms, due to variation in intracranial pressure the result of contraction of the new formation; and especially characteristic is amelioration, the result of properly timed specific treatment. Other nerves which suffer are the auditory, facial, olfactory, and trigeminal. Gummata on the nerve-trunks furnish no symptoms distinct from those of inflammation.

The course of syphilitic lesions is subacute or subchronic, never acute or chronic. Marked improvement, arrest, and even cure may result from proper treatment. On the other hand, involvement of the blood-



vessels by syphilitic disease may lead to hemiplegia, epilepsy, and bulbar symptoms, of which there can only be one eventual termination, and that a fatal one, but the patient may live a long time.

2. *Gummy Meningitis and Syphiloma of the Convexity and Neighborhood of the Fissure of Sylvius.*—In this more rare seat of localization the same prodromata may precede the severer symptoms, sometimes for a considerable time. These severer symptoms include, first, *general or local epileptiform convulsions*, which are sudden and succeed one another at longer or shorter intervals. They are of great diagnostic value, it being true of them, as originally said by Fournier, that, occurring in subjects over 30, if not due to uremia or alcoholism, in nine out of ten cases they are caused by syphilis. They are rarely preceded by an aura. Other cortical symptoms are hemiplegic or monoplegic paresis, cortical derangements of speech, such as motor aphasia and the like, and imbecility. These cases are often fatal. The convulsions continue, consciousness becomes deranged, coma supervenes, and death ensues. Even here, however, a judicious treatment is often of great service.

Syphilitic meningitis is more common at the base of the brain than at the convexity, though gummy tumors are more common in the latter situation. In either place the symptoms of the local meningitis are such as indicate a surface lesion, at the base by implication of the cranial nerves, at the convexity by causing motor phenomena. The signs always point to a superficiality of situation and become thus of value in a topical diagnosis, but they do not indicate that lesions more deeply situated are absent.

3. *Syphilitic Disease of the Walls of the Arteries.*—The characteristic symptoms are those of a sudden focal lesion, and are due to the sudden closure of a vessel by *thrombosis*. The most frequent symptom is *hemiplegia*. *Convulsions* are exceedingly rare. *Hemianopsia* may sometimes be present, indicating disease in the *posterior cerebral artery*, while lesions may occur in parts of the brain in which there can be no focal symptoms. Disease of the basilar and vertebral arteries, sufficient to cause definite symptoms, is seldom survived. In 19 cases out of 20, according to Gowers, the Sylvian artery and its branches are the vessels invaded.

Cerebral embolism causes the same symptoms, but it seldom occurs before 45, or the age of tendency to degeneration, unless there is valvular heart disease or endocarditis. In the absence of these, therefore, we can infer syphilis with considerable certainty. Except embolism and injury, sudden hemiplegia occurring between 25 and 45 is very seldom due to any other cause than syphilis. The course of the disease and extent of the paralysis vary as greatly as when caused by embolism. It may be slight and transient, or severe and lasting. All of the symptoms may not occur instantaneously, some hours or days being required to develop them. On the other hand, the phenomena of embolism are more likely to be suddenly complete. In thrombosis one stroke may succeed another at short intervals, and this is rather characteristic of syphilis. So is the fact that *consciousness is seldom totally lost*. Giddiness and vomiting sometimes precede it, more often does severe headache—in fact, in more than half the cases. The headache may be general

or chiefly on the side of subsequent lesion. It may precede the threatened lesion by only a few days, or a week, often for several weeks, rarely for two or three months. There may be tingling in the side about to be paralyzed. In severe cases death takes place promptly, ordinarily with high temperature.

4. *Cases of Combined Cerebral and Spinal Syphilis.*—Under these are included cases illustrating any one of the three forms considered, associated with symptoms of a more widespread syphilitic disease. Thus there may be a combination of the cerebral symptoms described, with spinal symptoms, the latter especially often as the result of *meningitis of the cervical cord* producing paraplegia, hemiplegia, or arm paresis alone, and pain in the course of the spinal nerves, or the cerebral symptoms may be associated with those of tabes dorsalis or progressive paralysis, and if so, there is scarcely a limit to the complex of nervous symptoms which may thus arise.

**Diagnosis.**—A gumma of the cortex and glioma in the same region may produce identical symptoms. So, too, the symptoms due to occlusion of an artery by syphilitic disease may be identical with those due to embolism—in fact there are no symptoms or combinations of symptoms that are not produced by other causes. How, then, shall we know the syphilitic origin? Having first made the topical diagnosis, we notice any modification of the usual symptoms of meningitis or brain tumor or arterial occlusion, or such additional symptoms as may be due to syphilis. What are these? We have seen that the very sudden onset of symptoms is not usual in syphilis except from occlusion of a blood-vessel. At least a week is usually necessary for their development. On the other hand, they are very seldom chronic. We have seen that there is great variation in the severity of the symptoms. We have seen that convulsions occurring after 30 not due to uremia or alcohol are in nine cases out of ten due to syphilis; that localized spasms, unilateral or more limited, ocular palsies, morbid somnolence, point to syphilis; that hemiplegia in persons under 45 years and not due to cardiac embolism is likely to be due to syphilis. Persistent headache, worse at night, either alone or associated or preceding the palsy, is characteristic of syphilis. Of value in diagnosis is the therapeutic test—the effect of treatment—but it must be remembered that lesions not syphilitic—glioma, for example—may be improved by antisymphilitic treatment. The symptoms are usually relieved by specific treatment. Above all, though not conclusive, is the knowledge of the presence of syphilis learned from the anamnesis, from ocular discovery of lesions, from miscarriages in women, and the presence of syphilids. Multiple sarcomatosis of the brain and spinal cord may cause symptoms almost exactly like those of syphilis, but fortunately the former is a very rare condition.

“Wasserman's reaction” in the diagnosis of syphilis is the application of the phenomenon of the deviation of the non-specific complement from the hemolytic series to the specific syphilitic series; *e.g.*, when the washed erythrocytes of sheep are brought together in suspension with definite quantities of the heated serum of a rabbit, previously immunized with washed erythrocytes of the sheep, and complement in the form of fresh

guinea-pig serum, solution of the corpuscles, or hemolysis, occurs. These three elements are spoken of collectively as the hemolytic series, the corpuscles as the *antigen*, the rabbit's serum as the *amboceptor*, and the guinea-pig's serum as the *complement*. Theoretically, a similar process takes place in syphilis as occurs in the immunization of the rabbit, *i.e.*, amboceptors are formed. If, therefore, the cause which excites the human organisms to the production of these amboceptors is brought into contact with them and a complement containing serum, anchoring will take place in a manner similar to that seen in the hemolytic series. If anchorage of the three elements in such a mixture does occur, it can be demonstrated by subsequent addition of the hemolytic antigen and amboceptor when no hemolysis or only that degree of hemolysis will take place in proportion to the amount of complement unabsorbed.

The method is as follows:

The syphilitic antigen is prepared from a syphilitic fetal liver either by shaking small pieces of the organ in salt solution containing 1 per cent. carbolic acid for several hours and then filtering, by making an ethereal extract, or by desiccation of the organ in vacuum and making a solution of the residue in salt solution.

The hemolytic antigen is prepared from defibrinated sheep's blood washed several times in isotonic salt solution, a 5 per cent. suspension of corpuscles being recommended.

The hemolytic amboceptor is prepared by immunizing rabbits with intraperitoneal injections of the suspension of sheep's erythrocytes collecting the serum and heating it to 50° C. for 30 minutes to destroy the complement.

The test is carried out as follows:

Varying amounts of the syphilitic antigen and the heated serum from a syphilitic subject is mixed with a definite quantity of guinea-pig's serum and placed at incubator temperature for an hour. A mixture of 5 per cent. suspension of sheep's erythrocytes and a definite quantity of hemolytic amboceptor serum is added to the tubes and shaken. This final mixture is placed at incubator temperature for an hour and then centrifuged. If the complement has been absorbed in the first series then no hemolysis will take place; if, however, the tested serum was non-syphilitic, then the same degree of hemolysis should take place as found in the controls of the hemolytic series alone.

Hideyo Noguche has modified this reaction as follows:

He prepares the antigen by extracting a lipid substance from the liver and heart of dogs and cows.

Instead of using sheep's corpuscles in the hemolytic series, he employs human corpuscles, owing to the fact that a certain percentage of human sera tested produced hemolysis of the sheep's corpuscles.

In his test, therefore, he obtains the hemolytic amboceptor by immunizing rabbits with washed normal human corpuscles.

Another important improvement in the technic is the preservation of the specific antigen and the hemolytic amboceptor, which rapidly lose their strength in solution, in a dried form by soaking measured strips of filter-paper (.5 mm. square) with each.

His test is carried out as follows:

A strip of antigen filter-paper is brought in contact with a definite quantity of the human serum to be tested and fresh guinea-pig's serum added, the whole being suspended in isotonic salt solution. This is allowed to stand at incubator temperature and then the hemolytic series added by taking a strip of the hemolytic amboceptor paper and a definite quantity of washed normal human blood corpuscles.

**Prognosis.**—Much benefit may be obtained by a timely and appropriate treatment of syphilis of the nervous system, though some cases do not respond to treatment. It is to be remembered, when there is actual destruction of nervous tissue, as in old cases of syphilis of the nervous system or in forms of degenerative disease due to syphilis, no medicines can be of much benefit. It is only the syphilitic lesion itself which is amenable to treatment, and with its removal comes relief to the pressure and irritation which cause so many of the symptoms of nervous syphilis.

**Treatment.**—It is evident from what has been said that treatment, to be efficient, must be prompt and early; whence the importance of an early diagnosis. Mercury and the iodid of potassium are almost the sole drugs needed, and at first they should be united. The most effectual way to bring about the mercurial effect is by inunction, although some prefer the hypodermic use of bichlorid of mercury. The method of inunction, using from 30 to 90 grains (2 to 6 gm.) daily, and beginning with the axilla, has been described on page 214. Simultaneously the iodid of potassium should be administered, beginning with 10 grains (0.66 gm.) three times a day, rapidly increasing until some effect is produced. As soon as this effect is noticed the dose may be held at a sufficient amount, usually a dram (4 gm.) a day. It is well known that very large doses of iodid of potassium are borne in syphilis without producing iodism.

The mercurial inunction should be kept up for a couple of weeks after the symptoms have commenced to yield, or it may be substituted by the bichlorid of mercury in  $1/12$  grain (0.0055 gm.) doses three times a day, which may be further reduced and finally omitted. The iodid of potassium should, however, be kept up for an indefinite time in such doses as are well borne. Such remedies should be given as are indicated to relieve special symptoms, as phenacetin, antipyrin, and opium to relieve pain. A prompt bleeding is undoubtedly of service at times in apoplectic cases, and is harmless in any case. It should, therefore, be used tentatively in all cases in which it is not contraindicated by debility, the quantity of blood drawn being regulated by the effect on the symptoms and on the pulse.

Should it happen that the symptoms are totally relieved by treatment, what should be our course thereafter? Certainly not to allow the patient to believe he is permanently cured. For almost inevitably the symptoms will return if such a course is pursued. Doubtless the advice given by Gowers in his admirable Lettsomian lecture is good, that every syphilitic subject, for at least five years after the date of his last symptoms, should have a three weeks' course of treatment twice every year, taking for the time 20 to 30 grains of iodid of potassium a day. But it is questionable whether the period should be limited to five years.

Better is it to continue the intermittent treatment for the remainder of his days. Especially likely are the symptoms to return in the second half century, when the natural tendency to tissue degeneration sets in.

#### LEONTIASIS OSSEA.

An affection in which there is undue enlargement of the bones of the cranium and sometimes of the face, causing resemblance to the face of the lion. M. Allen Starr has reported such a case. He has called the condition megalcephaly. Putnam says the disease begins in early life and is often traumatic in origin.

#### MICROMEGLY.

A condition, the opposite of acromegaly, defined by Jonathan Hutchinson and Hastings Gilford<sup>1</sup> as a "mixed premature and immature development." Gilford says "it is a disease of that part of the nervous system presiding over nutrition, manifested by smallness and immaturity of some parts or functions, and a relative or actual enlargement or prematurity of others."

<sup>1</sup> *Lancet*, vol. ii., p. 1227, 1896.

## SECTION X.

### *DISEASES OF THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM.*

#### MYOSITIS.

##### RHEUMATIC MYOSITIS, ACUTE AND CHRONIC.

These have been treated in connection with the subject of rheumatism.

##### INFECTIOUS MYOSITIS.

**Definition.**—A rare form of acute or subacute inflammation of striated muscle, due to unknown infectious agencies.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—Several cases have come to necropsy. The conditions found have been firmness, fragility, and fatty degeneration of the muscle substance, with serous infiltration and hyperplasia of the interfascicular connective tissues. In another case there was hyaline degeneration in varying degree without involvement of the intermuscular tissue.

**Symptoms.**—The parts usually involved are the extremities, but the disease may also invade the trunk-muscles and heart. There is swelling with slight edema, hardness, and stiffness, making motion painful and difficult. Instead of pain there is rarely paresthesia. The symptoms resemble those of trichiniasis, insomuch that it has been called pseudo-trichiniasis. In addition to the symptoms named an erythematous rash, irregularly scattered over the trunk and extremities, is regarded by Löwenfeld as characteristic. It is sometimes followed by slight pigmentation. There sometimes succeeds an atrophy of groups of affected muscles, and Wagner suggested that some of the cases may be examples of acute progressive muscular atrophy. Such cases are hardly fair examples of infectious myositis. The duration of the disease is from three months to three years.

Another form of infectious myositis is acute purulent myositis, sometimes associated with pyemia.

##### PROGRESSIVE OSSIFYING MYOSITIS.

This is a rare form of myositis, in which the muscles undergo progressive calcification, localized or extending over widespread areas. The disease is more common in males, and usually begins about puberty. It occupies many years in development, and consists in a preliminary inflammatory process, followed by more or less extensive deposits of bony plates throughout the muscular system, and at times in ossification of entire muscles, with fixation of joints and vertebræ.

**Treatment.**—No treatment has availed in any of these forms of acute inflammation.

PROGRESSIVE MUSCULAR DYSTROPHIES—PRIMARY  
MYOPATHIC FORMS OF MUSCULAR ATROPHY.

In addition to the spinal or myelopathic forms of muscular atrophy described under nervous diseases, there are several varieties of muscular wasting which apparently reside in the muscles themselves, and which are therefore strictly idiopathic. These forms occur in the young, and follow decidedly upon hereditary disposition. They are all probably the result of a congenital tendency to defective development.

There are several clinical types of primary muscular atrophy, of which the principal are:

1. Pseudo-hypertrophic muscular paralysis.
2. Erb's form of juvenile muscular paralysis or the scapulo-humeral form.
3. The facio-scapulo-humeral type of Landouzy and Dejerine.

These are all forms of one disease, called by Erb progressive muscular dystrophy.

## 1. PSEUDO-HYPERTROPHIC MUSCULAR PARALYSIS.

**SYNONYMS.**—*Pseudo-hypertrophy of Muscles*; *Lipomatosis luxurians muscularis* (Heller); *Atrophia musculorum lipomatosa* (Seidel).

**Definition.**—A state of muscular paresis associated with an atrophy of the muscles involved—an atrophy obscured by interstitial fatty overgrowth.

**Etiology.**—This is especially an affection of childhood, and heredity is an important causal factor, many members of the same family being sometimes affected through several generations. Boys are more frequent subjects than girls, though the disease is more likely to be transmitted through the mother, even though she may not herself be a subject. Heredity is not invariable. The disease usually begins before puberty, though sometimes as late as the 20th or 25th year or even later. Hysteria, epilepsy, feeble-mindedness, with an occasional anomaly of the skull, have been observed in the same families.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The nervous system is not involved except in rare cases. Minutely examined, the muscles exhibit marked differences in the size of the muscular fasciculi, some being wider, many narrower than normal, while there is considerable increase in the adipose and connective tissue between the fasciculi. The fibrillæ themselves are not fatty.

**Symptoms.**—The disease begins gradually with paretic symptoms, without the hypertrophic appearances which are later so pronounced. A child previously healthy exhibits clumsiness in its movements and insecurity on its legs, being especially awkward in jumping and running upstairs. Then close examination discovers that certain muscles or groups of muscles are enlarged, the calves of the legs being especially conspicuous. The extensors of the leg, the glutei, the lumbar muscles, the deltoid, triceps, and infrapinales next become enlarged, while the hands, arms, and neck are

rarely involved, in strong contrast to the spinal atrophies. *Walking* becomes more and more *difficult*, until finally a diagnosis may be made from the gait alone, which becomes waddling, while the shoulders are thrown back, the belly is thrown forward, the vertebral column being also arched forward in the lumbar region. The buttocks stand out, and the legs are far apart. In walking the legs are raised slowly, the toes dropping from paresis of the dorsal flexors. Especially characteristic is the child's method of rising from the floor. He first gets on all-fours, and raises his trunk by moving the arms along the floor. The arms are then drawn toward the legs until the knees can be reached, when, with one hand on the knee, he pushes himself up, then grasps the other knee, and completes the act of raising himself to the erect position. Late in the disease the same paretic condition may extend to the upper extremities, making it impossible to rise.

The enlargement of the muscles is due to an interstitial deposit of fat, and as a consequence they are soft and flabby instead of hard and firm, as in true hypertrophy. Thus the hypertrophy is truly a pseudo-hypertrophy, the condition being really one of atrophy of muscular substance. Along with this may be associated a genuine atrophy of other muscles, with loss of substance unassociated with fatty infiltration, especially in the upper extremities. Very rarely there is a true hypertrophy, except of individual muscle-fibers.

*Fibrillar twitchings* are rarely present. *Electrical excitability* is diminished in proportion to the destruction of muscular tissue, but there is never a reaction of degeneration in a typical case. *Sensibility* remains normal, and the sphincters are intact. The patellar *reflex* is sometimes absent. The skin, especially of the legs, sometimes presents a peculiar bluish mottling. As a rule, the *intelligence* of the child is *preserved*, though sometimes there is mental and moral obliquity.

## 2. ERB'S JUVENILE FORM OF PROGRESSIVE MUSCULAR DYSTROPHY

SYNONYM.—*Scapulo-humeral Form of Muscular Dystrophy.*

This type is also commonly found before the age of 20, usually between 15 and 20, but its subjects are not so young, as a rule, as those of the pseudo-hypertrophic form. It is, like all the forms of muscular dystrophy, hereditary in families of which female members are affected, while the boys may have pseudo-hypertrophic paralysis. It starts rather more frequently in the upper extremities, the upper arms and shoulders, but may begin also in the back and legs. The following are the *muscles involved*, according to Erb: In the upper extremities the pectoralis major, latissimus dorsi, and later the triceps; while there remain normal, at least for some time, the sternomastoid, the levator anguli scapulæ, the coracobrachialis, the teres major and teres minor, the deltoid, the supraspinatus and infraspinatus, and the small muscles of the *hand*, which, it will be remembered, are remarkably wasted in myelopathic atrophy. The muscles of the forearm, except the supinator longus, remain exempt for a long time, if not altogether. In the lower extremities the glutei, the quadriceps, the



peronei, and the tibialis anticus are affected, while the sartorius and calf muscles are spared for a long time.

Very characteristic is the marked projection of the scapula, due to paralysis of the serratus. The gait in this form becomes waddling, and walking is ultimately impossible, although, like its congeners, the progress of the disease is slow, 23 to 28 years being the range of duration of cases described by Erb. Bulbar symptoms are rare, but the diaphragm may atrophy and death be due to respiratory deficiency.

The muscular changes are essentially atrophic, though in the beginning a few of the muscular fibers may be hypertrophied. The interstitial connective tissue is increased, its nuclei proliferated, and there is no interstitial fat. The number of muscle nuclei is also increased, and vacuoles may be seen in the individual fasciculi.

### 3. THE FACIO-SCAPULO-HUMERAL TYPE.

This is also a family form. Duchenne called attention to the fact that in certain children's palsies the muscles of the face are involved in the atrophy, but the fact was overlooked until Landouzy and Dejerine opened the subject anew, and showed that this event is not infrequent—indeed, may be the first symptom. This atrophy may begin later in life—say the twentieth to thirtieth year. In these cases the eyes can no longer be completely closed, and whistling, laughing, and talking become difficult. An appearance characteristic, even diagnostic, known as the *facies myopathique*, results, to which the half-closed eyes, the sunken cheeks, and the tapir mouth contribute. The muscles of mastication, the internal ocular, and those of the forearm and hand remain normal. Fibrillary contractions are absent, and there is no reaction of degeneration. In other respects it resembles the juvenile form of Erb's palsy, with which it is closely allied. From what has been said it is evident that the three forms just described are modifications of one variety, a view strengthened by the fact that two or more of the types may be present in the same family.

### THE PERONEAL TYPE OF PROGRESSIVE MUSCULAR ATROPHY.

SYNONYM.—*Progressive Neural Muscular Atrophy.*

This form of atrophy, described by Charcot and Marie, and independently by Tooth, is met in the second half of childhood, seldom after 20. It occurs also in families, more frequently in males. It begins in the peroneal muscles, involving also the intrinsic muscles of the foot, and may lead to club-foot, of the variety *pes equinus* or *pes equinovarus*. The upper extremities may be affected after many years, and rarely it begins in the hands. It differs from the other forms of juvenile atrophy in the presence of fibrillary contraction and the occasional presence of the reaction of degeneration, while vasomotor and sensory disturbances may also be present.

Degeneration of the peripheral nerves has been found with ascending degeneration of the posterior columns, and some change in the lateral columns. Both the symptomatology and morbid anatomy of this, so far as known from a limited number of autopsies, go to show that it is a combination of neuritis and alteration in the spinal cord.

**Prognosis and Treatment.**—These are also essentially identical with those of progressive muscular atrophy.

### MYOTONIA CONGENITA.

SYNONYM.—*Thomsen's Disease; Myohypotania.*

**Definition.**—A hereditary affection, characterized by overdevelopment of muscles and by tonic cramp on attempt at voluntary motion.

**Historical.**—The disease was described in 1876 by Thomsen, a Schleswig physician, in whose family it had been present for five generations. Since then numerous cases have been described in Scandinavia, Germany, France and Italy. It is rare in this country and in England. In 1880 Hale White made a thorough study of the subject and published his results in "Guy's Hospital Reports" for that year.

**Etiology.**—The disease is always congenital, the symptoms making their appearance in early childhood and in family groups, more frequently in men. Cases of acquired myotonia have been observed, but these are regarded as somewhat different from Thomsen's disease. A few isolated cases presenting the same symptoms have been described. It is to be regarded as a congenital anomaly of the muscular system.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The muscles are characterized, especially in the extremities, by voluminous development in strong contrast to their power. In addition to an obvious macroscopic enlargement there is also found histologically an evident increase in the volume of the muscular fasciculi, recognized by Erb and confirmed by Hale White, together with intermuscular proliferation of the muscle nuclei and moderate increase of the connective tissue itself. The heart is exempt, but the diaphragm may be involved. There is no lesion of the spinal cord. The only necropsy in a case of Thomsen's disease ever observed was reported by Dejerine and Sottas. The muscles were altered, but the nervous system was normal.

**Symptoms.**—The disease manifests itself at first in childhood by a *stiffness* or "mild tetanus," in which the relaxation which necessarily precedes each muscular act is delayed. Voluntary contraction takes place slowly and with difficulty. The arm and leg muscles are involved, and thus the child's play is interfered with. There is, however, *no paralysis*, and after motion is started, it proceeds with facility. Prompt, rapid, and precise muscular movements are, however, difficult, and military service, for example, becomes impossible. Rarely facial, ocular and pharyngeal muscles are involved. *The condition is aggravated by cold and emotion.* Sensation and the reflexes are normal. Rarely there is mental weakness.

A peculiar reaction of muscle and nerve to *both* currents is developed, called the *myotonic reaction* of Erb. The motor nerves show quantitatively a normal faradic and galvanic excitability, and all briefly acting stimuli give

short contractions; but with continuous irritation by both currents the contractions attain their maximum slowly and relax slowly, while vermicular wave-like contractions pass from the kathode to the anode. The *muscles* are also faradically easily excited, responding to a fairly strong current always with the above described prolonged contraction. To galvanic irritation of muscle there is a slight increase of excitability, and to somewhat strong currents the contractions are sluggish, tonic, and continued. They occur only with current closure and not with current opening. The mechanical irritability of the muscles to strokes from the percussion hammer is also increased.

**Diagnosis.**—If more is needed than the peculiarity of the muscular phenomena, the electrical and mechanical muscular reactions described are characteristic.

**Prognosis.**—The disease is incurable, but patients become accustomed to the defect and conceal it as much as possible.

**Treatment.**—Nothing specific is known. Friction and massage, with muscular gymnastics, are rational measures to be recommended.

## AMAUROTIC FAMILY IDIOCY.

**Definition.**—A rare and generally fatal disease affecting several children of the same family, characterized by a feeble mental development, by progressive weakness of all the muscles of the body and by failing vision terminating in complete blindness depending on optic nerve atrophy and changes in the macula.

**History.**—The disease was first described by Warren Tay in 1881 in a child 12 months old. In the same family three similar cases occurred, also under Tay. The ophthalmoscopic finding was confirmed by Magnus, Goldzieher, Wadsworth of Boston, Hirschberg, of Berlin, and H. Knapp. In 1887 B. Sachs described a similar case without knowledge of previous cases. In 1896 Carter collected 19 cases of which eight came under his notice. After this numerous cases were published in America and Europe and finally in 1901 Falkenheim analyzed 64.

**Etiology.**—This is obscure. Singularly the disease is apparently almost confined to Hebrews, and Sachs tells us that he knows of no undoubted cases in other races. It cannot be ascribed to syphilis though the nerve atrophy resembles that due to hereditary syphilis, with which it may therefore be confounded. Its duration is usually less than two years. The disease is regarded by some as acquired, by others as congenital; the latter is more likely.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The morbid changes are essentially those first described by Sachs who found them similar to those in brains of arrested development. There was confluence of the median and Sylvian fissures and complete exposure of the island of Reil. The cortex was hard and grating to the knife. Microscopic examination found destruction of the brain cells whose contour was rounded or elongated and the cell protoplasm was variously degenerated. The nucleus and nucleolus were sometimes wanting. Very few pyramidal cells were left. Hirsch found these same changes in the gray matter of the entire central nervous system, including the spinal cord and spinal ganglia.

Retinal changes are thus described by Tay:<sup>1</sup> "The optic disks were apparently healthy, but in the region of the yellow spot of each eye there was a conspicuous, tolerably diffuse, large white spot more or less circular in outline, and showing at its center a brownish-red fairly circular spot contrasting strongly with the white patch surrounding it. This central spot did not look at all like a hemorrhage, nor as if due to a pigment, but seemed a gap in the white patch through which one saw healthy structures."

**Symptoms.**—The child is well nourished at birth and the disease does not usually set in until the third to sixth month of life, when the mental and physical defects begin to be noticed. The child becomes quiet, listless and apathetic, and visual disturbance makes its appearance. As time passes muscular weakness occurs, the child is unable to hold up its head or sit up, the muscles are soft and flabby though they may be spastic. The reflexes may be normal, slightly subnormal or exaggerated. There is sometimes hyperacusis to sound and touch; on the other hand, a loss of hearing has been noted. Convulsions may occur but are not essential. Bodily functions and vitality are lowered resulting in susceptibility to bronchial and gastro-intestinal derangement. Retinal changes occur as described from Tay. (See morbid anatomy.) The symptoms gradually increase in severity and terminate in ultimate complete mental imbecility, marked palsy and total blindness. The child wastes and dies usually before the end of the second year.

**Treatment.**—None has ever proved of use. Proper and sufficient nourishment with wholesome hygienic surroundings naturally suggest themselves.

<sup>1</sup> For a fuller presentation of this subject the student is referred to the paper by B. Sachs in Posey and Spiller's book on "The Eye and the Nervous System," 1906.

## SECTION XI.

### THE INTOXICATIONS.

#### ALCOHOLISM.

**Definition.**—The effect on the human economy of the intemperate use of alcohol in some one of the forms in which it is used as a beverage. Such effect is either acute or chronic.

#### ACUTE ALCOHOLISM.

**Definition.**—This is the condition known as inebriety or drunkenness. Varying amounts of alcohol are required to produce it, very small quantities sufficing to intoxicate those unaccustomed to its use, while the habitual drinker may consume large quantities without effect.

**Symptoms.**—The order of symptoms is not always the same. More frequently the primary effect is one of excitement, associated with flushed face, bright eye, and loose tongue. To this succeeds the well-known staggering gait of drunkenness, which increases until its subject is unable to walk and finally falls to the ground. The ready speech, at first coherent, now wanders at random, and finally ceases altogether. The stage of narcosis is reached, and the drunken man breathes stertorously in his sleep, his face being congested and his breath alcoholic. He may, perhaps, be aroused, and may respond vaguely and incoherently to a question, but soon drops off to sleep again.

In another subject the first stage is much more violent, and he may cry out boisterously, and either spontaneously or upon the slightest provocation inflict injury or even commit murder. In other subjects, again, there is no stage of excitement, and they are morose, or pass gradually and directly into stupor. The stage of inco-ordination and ultimate stupor is, however, invariable if the quantity of alcohol drunk is enough to bring it about. The effect is upon the cortical nerve-cells of the brain.

Other less conspicuous features are a lowered temperature—96° to 90° F. (35.6° to 32.2° C.), or even lower—involuntary evacuations of the bowels and bladder, dilated pupils, and muscular twitchings.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of drunkenness is usually easy, yet mistakes are not infrequent; it has been mistaken for *apoplexy* or *apoplexy with fracture of the skull*. In the latter case stupor is usually deeper, and the patient cannot be aroused, while the breathing is more stertorous. The subject should always have the benefit of the doubt, and resident physicians in hospitals will often save themselves and the institution they serve much opprobrium if they will remember this. *Uremic coma* developing with convulsions also simulates drunkenness, and, when the existence of Bright's disease is unsuspected, may cause error. In such the odor of

alcohol in the breath is wanting, while that of urine is sometimes present, although, of course, a person with nephritis might have an attack of uremic coma after he had been drinking alcohol. In acute alcoholism the pupil is commonly dilated. In uremia it is variable, being sometimes dilated and sometimes contracted. In all doubtful cases the urine should be drawn by the catheter and tested for albumin. In *opium poisoning*, which may also be confounded with alcoholism, the pupil is contracted.

#### CHRONIC ALCOHOLISM.

**Definition.**—This is a condition which supervenes sooner or later in individuals who habitually use alcohol intemperately. *Dipsomania* is a term applied to a condition in which there is an inherited immoderate desire for alcohol at times, followed by periods in which there is no such inclination. Intemperance does not always imply the consumption of the same amount of alcohol, smaller quantities producing harmful effects in some persons while larger amounts are apparently harmless in others. The predisposition in some persons to be easily affected organically by alcohol is due to some constitutional weakness as yet not understood. It is alleged that the children of alcoholics are not only more susceptible to the degenerative effects of alcohol, but also to other diseases, such as gout, rheumatism, syphilis, and diseases of the nervous system. Among the latter may be mentioned, especially epilepsy, melancholia, dementia, and insanity.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—If we include under this the numerous morbid states which are directly or indirectly ascribed to the long-continued use of alcohol, such as cirrhosis of the liver, gastritis, low grades of meningitis, and the arterial changes so frequently ascribed to it, a large amount of space would be consumed. Fortunately, these conditions have already been described as separate entities, and their relation to alcohol as a cause has been discussed.

A few words may, however, be devoted to the consideration of the effect of alcohol on the cellular elements, since it is through such effect that its consequences are produced. Some time ago Lionel S. Beale called attention to the destructive effect of alcohol on protoplasm. More recently, in 1894, Obersohn, working in the laboratory of Gaule, in Zürich, demonstrated not only that alcohol, ether, and chloroform destroy cellular protoplasm, but also that the cells which are the most complicated, so far as function is concerned, such as nerve-cells, are the most vulnerable. These conclusions were confirmed by other experimenters, among them Wilkins, in this country, in 1895, and the whole tendency of experiment and observation at the present day is to show the degenerative effect of alcohol on elementary histological units.

Chronic alcoholism, like acute, predisposes to other diseases. Its direct effect is, as already stated, mainly on the protoplasm of cells, modifying or impairing their normal metabolism, at times destroying cells and substituting them by fibroid material, at others inciting to inflammatory action; at others still simply delaying oxidation, as in the case of the adipose

vesicle, whose fat remains unoxidized because its congener, alcohol, is more easily oxidized. In some instances, as in the case of the liver-cells, fat is deposited in new situations because it cannot be sufficiently burnt up. Different kinds of alcoholic beverages also seem to act differently, some, as gin, producing destruction of liver-cells and cirrhosis, while others, as malt liquors, produce fatty livers. It is also true that persons addicted to intermittent debauch are less liable to inflammatory lesions than constant consumers.

As a consequence of irritation of the intima by the alcohol, arise endarteritis, sclerosis, and thickening followed by atheroma and fragility. Irritation of nervous tissues results in different forms of meningitis and cerebritis with degeneration.

Thirty years ago Lancereaux announced that alcoholic excesses are one of the principal causes of tuberculosis, affecting by preference the back of the right lung, while disease of the left in front is the result of insufficient aeration or defective alimentation; also that such disease is characterized by improvement and general arrest if the patient leaves off his habit, and by recurrence if he relapses. As recently as 1895<sup>1</sup> this clinician retracted this view, while the observations of Lagneau developed the remarkable fact that tuberculosis only became prevalent in France after the phylloxera had ruined the vines and curtailed the supply of wine. Then tuberculosis, previously only one-half as common in men as women, reversed its election, twice as many men being affected as women.

The effect of alcoholism on the *kidney* is also two-fold in the direction of contraction and enlargement, the former due to gradual destruction of renal cells and tubules with substitution of interstitial tissue, the latter to fatty infiltration and hypertrophy. I have often expressed the belief that alcohol is a less frequent factor in the production of interstitial nephritis than was formerly supposed, because of the facilities for its elimination in its long journey from the stomach through the liver and lungs before it reaches the kidney. In this I am sustained by W. Howship Dickinson and the enormous experience of the late Henry F. Formad as Coroner's physician in Philadelphia.<sup>2</sup> The enlarged kidney of alcoholics was also studied by Formad, who called it the "pig-back" kidney, and found it a true hypertrophy rather than a degenerative change.

**Symptoms.**—These may be classified according to the systems they invade. Thus we have the effects of alcohol on the—

*Nervous System.*—The most constant of these is the well-known unsteadiness—especially of the hands in the performance of muscular actions. It is also apparent in an attempt to protrude the tongue. Gradual mental deterioration is an inevitable consequence, sooner or later, of chronic alcoholism. It is manifested in sluggishness of intellect, in weakness of resolution, a loss of moral character, in irritability, restlessness, and occasional dementia and insanity. Yet it is surprising how some enormous consumers of alcohol maintain their mental acumen and ability to manage large financial interests, while their vascular and digestive apparatus is evidently the

<sup>1</sup> "Effets comparés des boissons alcooliques chez les hommes et leur influence prédisposante sur la tuberculose." "France Med.," xliii, et al., 1895.

<sup>2</sup> "Heart and Kidney in Bright's Disease." "Trans. of the Assoc. of Amer. Physicians," vol. iv., 1889. Formad's experience covered as many as 1172 autopsies in a single year.

seat of advanced degeneration. When dementia and insanity are present, they are probably due to vascular degeneration and consequent secondary changes in the brain structure. The tendency of such insanity is toward delusions, including suspicion, distrust, fear of impending evil, and, more rarely, delusions of grandeur, as in general paralysis of the insane.

Multiple and simple neuritis is a well-recognized and almost characteristic symptom of chronic alcoholism, and has already been considered.

Pachymeningitis hæmorrhagica is sometimes met. More frequent are slight thickening and turbidity of the pia arachnoid membrane. But this is not peculiar to alcoholism, being the same as that found in the neuroses of insanity.

*Digestive Apparatus.*—This is a favorite point of attack in alcoholism. Chronic gastric catarrh is one of its most frequent consequences, producing loss of appetite, nausea, constipation, coated tongue, and foul breath, symptoms which are always worse in the morning, and are temporarily relieved by the dram which the habitual drinker is apt to seek at this time of day. Autopsy in such cases may be negative as to the stomach, or reveal the changes described under chronic gastric catarrh.

*Symptoms due to Liver Changes.*—From these arise the symptoms due to cirrhosis and contraction, fatty infiltration, and enlargement. The interstitial overgrowth so characteristic of cirrhosis is probably secondary to a primary poisonous and destructive effect of the alcohol on the cells, as confirmed by the experiments of Weigert, and later by those of Obersohn and Wilkins, previously referred to. The compression of the cirrhotic liver on the portal vessels produces secondary effects, viz., hyperemia of the stomach, causing gastric catarrh; hyperemia of the rectum, producing hemorrhoids; and of the esophagus, pharynx, and nasal mucous membrane, resulting in hemorrhage in any one of the localities; in dilatation of the venules of the face and nose, and eruptions on the latter, constituting the acne rosacea or "blossom," by which the toper is so often marked. In many cases, on the other hand, the livers of hard drinkers have been found normal.

*From vascular changes* result cardiac and renal diseases, and their symptoms, unequal distribution of the blood in the brain, and consequent symptoms, viz., dizziness, thrombosis, apoplexy, softening.

#### DELIRIUM TREMENS, OR MANIA A POTU.

**Definition and Symptoms.**—This is a special manifestation of chronic alcoholism, ascribed to the long-continued action of alcohol on the brain, though its occurrence coincides rather with the sudden withdrawal of the drug. On the other hand, a debauch, however prolonged, by a person previously temperate, is never followed by mania a potu, so that the relation of the illness to the withdrawal of alcohol may be more apparent than real. Purely accidental circumstances may determine the cessation from drinking. It is very frequently an attack of acute illness, especially pneumonia, to which drunkards are especially predisposed. The first symptom is usually sleeplessness associated with intense depression, or there



may be intense restlessness, during which the patient, unless restrained, will go out of the house on some imaginary business. To this succeed hallucinations of vision, as the result of which he imagines he is pursued by monsters, serpents, rats, mice, and other vermin. The intense shivering terror of the victim under these circumstances is pitiable, and the "horrors"—a term applied to the disease—is but a feeble expression of the terrors of the patient. Frequently, in his attempts to escape these objects, he is unmanageable, and must be confined. Suicide is not infrequent with such patients. At other times the eager though misguided intelligence displayed in watching the imaginary objects is amusing. Auditory hallucinations may be present, and unusual noises be complained of. At the same time, even though the patient is violent, the pulse will be found frequent, feeble, and often irregular. There is great muscular weakness, as evidenced by the tremor which accompanies all muscular acts. There is slight fever,  $102^{\circ}$  to  $103^{\circ}$  F. ( $38.9^{\circ}$  to  $39.4^{\circ}$  C.), which is increased if there is intercurrent inflammatory disease.

**Diagnosis.**—This is never difficult. The symptoms certainly resemble those of *meningitis*, and *meningitis* is also sometimes present, but with the history of the case and the general appearance of the patient a mistake is not likely to be made. It is most important, however, to examine each case thoroughly, as *pneumonia* is so frequently associated with *delirium tremens* and constitutes its most serious danger. Again *pneumonia of the apex* is sometimes accompanied by *delirium* similar to that of *delirium tremens*.

**Prognosis.**—If there is *pneumonia*, recovery is a rare event, but if *delirium* is uncomplicated, recovery generally takes place, certainly from the first attack, and generally even after one or more attacks and a duration of from three or four days to a week. If recovery does not take place, the *adynamia* increases, the pulse grows increasingly feeble, the tongue dry, the *delirium* becomes muttering, and the patient dies with the usual symptoms of the typhoid state. The event is, of course, more common in hospital practice.

### Treatment of Alcoholism.

*Acute alcoholism* rarely requires any treatment except restraint from the further use of alcohol and opportunity to sleep off the debauch. A full dose of chloral—from 15 to 30 grains (1 to 2 gm.)—may be necessary when there is extreme excitement. Morphine is indicated, but as alcoholics sometimes have contracted kidney, caution should be exercised in its use. In cases where the subject is not too drunk to swallow, from half a dram to a dram (1.85 to 3.7 c.c.) of aromatic spirit of ammonia often acts happily; and when there is reason to believe that alcohol or undigested food is in the stomach, an emetic of warm water and mustard—a heaped dessertspoonful of mustard to half a pint of water (250 c.c.)—may be given and the stomach washed out. Should it be deemed desirable that an emetic be given to one unconscious, apomorphine hypodermically administered is the best—from 1/15 to 1/10 grain (0.0044 to 0.0066 gm.).

The first step in the treatment of *chronic alcoholism* is the withdrawal of the poison. Except when *mania a potu* is present, this may be total.

Nothing is to be gained by gradual withdrawal, while it only prolongs the struggle. No drugs like morphin or chloral or cocain should be used in the treatment of chronic alcoholism, as to do so is simply to substitute one evil for another, and to weaken the resolution of the victim. The bromids may, however, be availed of, and trional, chloralamid, and sulphonal may be employed to procure sleep. Not less than 15 grains (1 gm.) of any of these drugs should be administered for an adult, while twice the dose may be necessary. Hydrobromate of hyoscin is often an admirable remedy to quiet excitement. It may be given in doses of  $\frac{1}{96}$  grain (0.0007 gm.). Attempts at reformation are rarely successful, but success is not impossible. Some means of restraint is usually indispensable, and as a rule can only be secured in an institution. Unfortunately, relaxation of this is apt to be followed by a relapse. The difficulties increase in the presence of hereditary tendency. An abundance of nutritious food should be insisted upon, as it is found to be the best substitute for alcohol, while tea and coffee may be allowed freely, having the advantage of being stimulating without intoxicating. Tonics, such as strychnin  $\frac{1}{30}$  grain (0.0022 gm.) three or four times a day, or quinin, should be administered.

As to the remainder of treatment, it must be mainly symptomatic, directed to the symptoms as they arise. Neuritis, one of the most important of these, has been elsewhere considered.

Still another drawback is the intense depression which succeeds the exciting effect of alcohol and often impels to a return to its use.

Various means have been at different times resorted to with the object of disgusting the victim with alcohol. C. Carter strongly commends atropin, because of its physiological antagonism to alcohol. He says that if small doses—less than  $\frac{1}{100}$  grain (0.00066 gm.)—of atrophin be administered hypodermically three or four times a day to a victim of the alcoholic habit, it will produce a great distaste for alcoholic liquor in from one to five days. Whisky will become repellent both to sight and smell, and will have a most intolerable taste, resembling that of turpentine or benzine. If, under these circumstances, drinking is still attempted, nausea and vomiting follow without the addition of apomorphin or other emetic to the liquor.

### Treatment of Mania a Potu.

The first indication after withdrawal of the alcohol is to secure sleep. For this purpose the soporifics previously named scarcely suffice, though they may be tried in the full doses specified. Especially may we hope to obtain some result from the hyoscin in doses of  $\frac{1}{96}$  grain (0.0007 gm.) given hypodermically. In many cases of delirium tremens it is scarcely possible to do without morphin, which may be given hypodermically in  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0165 gm.) doses, caution being observed not to repeat too often. Chloralose may be given in from 5 to 10 grain (0.33 to 0.66 gm.) doses, dissolved in warm water; it has the advantage of small doses, equal in effect to the largest of chloral, while it also diminishes tremor and has no harmful secondary effects. R. Bellamy gives 20 grains (1.32 gm.) of trional, mixed in water, with 10 minims (0.62 c.c.) of tincture of capsicum, after a calomel purge. A very hot bath is given, of which the temperature is

gradually lessened. If in 30 minutes the delirium shows no signs of abatement, 10 grains of trional (0.65 gm.) are again given. In all cases forced feeding in small quantities often repeated is practiced, the diet consisting of milk, eggs, and soups. Paraldehyd in fluidram (3.7 c.c.) doses is a remedy which may be expected to be of service. The fluid extract of ipecac has recently been recommended by W. F. Waugh, of Chicago, to produce sleep, in from 20 to 30 minim (1.23 to 1.85 c.c.) doses in water, followed by dorsal decubitus for at least five minutes to avert nausea. A cold bath sometimes has a tranquilizing effect, especially if there is fever, or sponging the body may suffice. Many things must be done to keep the patient occupied, because, after all, the treatment amounts for the most part to a conflict between the patient and faithful attendants and the irrepressible and, at times, almost maniacal desire of the patient to get away. In preventing this it may sometimes be necessary to confine him to bed, but all gentleness should be exercised in carrying out this measure. It is much better to use a folded sheet than the unsightly straps which are sometimes used in hospitals.

I have said that alcohol may be withdrawn at once. Some object to this because of fear of resulting adynamia, and it may happen that there is great weakness, as indicated by frequent and feeble pulse demanding alcohol. As a rule it is much better to stimulate with the aromatic spirit of ammonium, digitalis, and strychnin, one dram (4 gm.) doses of the first, 10 minims (0.62 c.c.) of the second, and 1/30 grain (0.00022 gm.) of strychnin being given every three hours to overcome such weakness. Even larger doses may be demanded by emergencies. Nourishing food in easily assimilable shape, repeated at short intervals, should be insisted upon as the best substitute for alcohol. With the first sound sleep comes, usually, relief and the patient awakes convalescent, unless, as already said, the mania is accompanied by acute disease, like pneumonia, when death is apt to be the termination, whatever our efforts.

## THE MORPHIN HABIT.

SYNONYM.—*Morphinism*.

**Definition.**—An irresistible craving for morphin, which is commonly used in gradually increasing daily doses to meet the demand. Periodic attacks, or "morphin sprees," comparable to alcohol sprees, during which large quantities are used for the time being, also occur.

**Etiology.**—The morphin habit is most frequently acquired as the result of long-continued administration of morphin, by a physician's order or otherwise, to relieve some suffering caused by a painful or incurable malady or for insomnia. The influence of heredity in favoring the formation of the habit is acknowledged. Neurotic persons are more apt to become its victims. The victim of alcohol often becomes a morphin fiend, being deluded by early experience with the drug to believe that he can thus overcome the previous more disgusting, if not more terrible, habit. The same is true of cocain.

The quantities consumed are often enormous, as much as 400 grains (25.92 gm.) as a daily dose being reported.

**Symptoms.**—The chief symptom is, of course, the *craving for morphin*, but it brings with it others which are more or less temporarily relieved by a dose of the drug. Among these are *irresolution* and *loss of self-control*, and a *moral obliquity* similar to that induced by alcohol, especially in women, who are the most frequent subjects. *Untruthfulness*, especially with regard to the drug and the quantities used, is habitual. Epigastric *pain* or *nausea*, or both, are frequently complained of toward the time when another dose is due, though whether this is actual or feigned is not always easily determined. *Mental depression* is a more constant and characteristic symptom, associated with *intense anxiety*, *restlessness*, and a *sense of impending evil*, both relieved for a time by the dose. All of these symptoms are increased by a more prolonged withdrawal of the drug, when the mental depression becomes intense, sometimes impelling to suicide. So far from the usual constipating effect of morphin being produced by the drug thus used, diarrhea is not infrequent.

As the habit is prolonged *tremor*, *paresis*, and more rarely *ataxia* are superadded, while diffuse and neuralgic *pain* is complained of. *Sleep* is irregular, digestion is bad, and appetite and nutrition fail, the pulse becomes feeble and rapid, vasomotor derangements appear, as shown by a tendency to sweating and by dilatation of the pupils. Except when under the direct influence of the drug the patient grows weak and becomes a ready victim to acute disease.

On the other hand the opium eater sometimes attains old age, presenting a wizened, sallow appearance quite characteristic. The pleasurable effect so often ascribed to opium is rarely realized, though it is not unlikely that a certain amplification and distortion of actual facts which may arise in the dreamy state may form the basis of such weird and beautiful fancies as are pictured by DeQuincey.

**Diagnosis and Prognosis.**—The diagnosis is easy, but the prognosis is exceedingly uncertain because of the difficulty in carrying out treatment.

**Treatment.**—Successful treatment is scarcely possible outside of an institution, and even within one serious difficulties beset the way, the chief of which is the deception practiced by the patient. Patients should be divested of their own clothing and put to bed in hospital garb, because in this way alone can we be sure that morphin is not concealed about the person. In the case of women, whenever possible, a special nurse should be assigned to each case. The latest testimony favors complete and sudden withdrawal of the drug as furnishing a short struggle, though a severe one. Such treatment is usually followed by diarrhea, vomiting, and insomnia. In most cases it is impossible to secure the consent of the patient to sudden and complete withdrawal, when the gradual plan must be adopted. The success of either plan depends on securing effectual control of the patient, and if this cannot be obtained, all efforts fail. Some counsel even that no adjuncts should be employed, but certainly there can be no harm in the employment of general tonic treatment and remedies directed to the irritability of the stomach and torpor of the liver.

A calomel purge is useful at the start. It is a well-established fact that, as in alcoholism, the patient should be well nourished, given such food as milk, cream, beef-juice, or beef peptonoids, rich broths, and beef-tea. When there is great asthenia, aromatic spirit of ammonium, strychnin, and digitalis may be given as directed under alcoholism. If possible an occupation of an absorbing kind should be furnished.

To promote sleep, one of the numerous hypnotics in which the present day is rich should be given. Chloralamid is probably the best of these. It is not easy of administration, because of its pungent taste and difficult solubility. Twenty grains (1.32 gm.) or 30 grains (1.98 gm.) are a moderate dose, and are easily soluble in a fluidram (3.7 c.c.) of a mixture of two parts alcohol and one part glycerin. Of such solution two teaspoonfuls should be given in a glass of sherry wine or four table-spoonfuls of milk at the ordinary temperature. Trional and sulphonal or somnal may be given in from 15 to 20 grain (0.99 to 1.32 gm.) doses dissolved in hot water. Hyoscin in doses of 1/96 grain (0.0007 gm.) may also be tried. Chloral itself may be used in doses of from 10 to 30 grains (0.66 to 1.98 gm.). If there is cardiac weakness, the dose should not exceed 10 grains (0.66 gm.). Chloralose may be given in 5 grain (0.33 gm.) doses in wafers or in hot milk.

Too much carelessness is practiced by physicians in placing morphin in the hands of patients to be used at their pleasure. The hypodermic syringe has wrought untold mischief, and should never be placed in the hands of patients. On the other hand, when morphin is judiciously ordered for patients suffering extreme pain only, it is very rarely the case that a habit is established.

## CHLORALISM.

**Definition.**—The chloral habit or the habitual use of chloral.

This habit is sometimes acquired when the drug is used to obtain sleep or prescribed by the physician for any purpose.

**Symptoms.**—For symptoms and treatment of *acute chloral poisoning* see page 1400.

The presence of the *chloral* habit is characterized by nervousness, mental weakness, and depression of spirits, even to a degree of melancholia. There may also be general weakness, characterized by muscular tremor and cardiac palpitation. Lowered temperature is characteristic. These symptoms are aggravated by sudden withdrawal of the drug. There is sometimes dyspnea, aggravated at meals or after exertion. Mania and dementia are reported.

Various skin eruptions or a tendency toward them are a symptom. Though there may be no eruption, the slightest exertion or a glass of wine will produce an intense erythematous redness on the face and elsewhere on the body. This erythema, which may also extend to the mucous membranes is ascribed to vasomotor weakness. There may be diarrhea from the same cause.

**Treatment.**—Treatment requires the gradual withdrawal of the drug

and cardiac stimulation by ammonia and digitalis, the use of nutritious food, tonics, massage, and electricity. For insomnia if needed, sulphonal or trional, administered as previously directed, are more suitable than chloralamid. In extreme cases morphin may be used. It is not usually difficult to master the habit.

### COCAINISM.

Cocainism has become a comparatively frequent modern habit. It is especially common among physicians, some of whom acquire the habit in tentative local applications to their own mucous membranes in the treatment of patients. I have known three successive chiefs of clinic in throat and nose dispensary service to acquire the habit. Cocain is also taken as a substitute for some other drug, and its subjects are very apt to be those with neuropathic tendencies.

**Symptoms.**—The effect is a total demoralization of the individual, who loses all moral responsibility, delaying and neglecting appointments in the most remarkable manner. There is volubility of tongue, suggesting alcoholism, and the presence of hallucinations, which also resemble those of the alcoholic effect. The eyes are bright, and the pupils are dilated. The subject becomes suspicious, charging his wife with infidelity, and his best friend with persecuting him. Hallucinations of hearing, sight, and smell are sometimes present, including tinnitus aurium. Mild epileptoid seizures, with partial loss of consciousness, may occur, limited to muscle groups, as about the eyes. Nystagmus is also a symptom. The pulse becomes weak and feeble. The symptoms are often associated with those of alcoholism and opium.

A symptom to which a certain amount of diagnostic value has been attached is a sensation of foreign bodies under the skin. In one case observed by Rybakoff of Moscow, was a sensation as of worms beneath the skin. The recognition of the symptom is ascribed to M. Magnan of Paris.

**Treatment.**—If uncomplicated, treatment is promising. It mainly requires withdrawal of the drug, which should be total. The assistance of a trusty nurse or friend may be needed, but it is not often necessary to remove the patient to a sanatorium—I am speaking of uncomplicated cases. Cases complicated with alcoholism or the opium habit are more difficult to handle, and incarceration in an institution becomes necessary.

Tonics of the usual kind—strychnin, in full doses, and quinin—should be ordered. Non-intoxicating stimulants, like ammonia and coffee, should be given to counteract the depressing effect, while good, nourishing, easily assimilable food is necessary.

### THE TOBACCO HABIT.

TO CURE: Apomorphin,  $1/30$  grain (0.0022 gm.), fresh and pure, every two hours, increasing the dose until slight nausea is felt.

## LEAD-POISONING.

SYNONYMS.—*Colica pictorum; Plumbism; Saturnism; Devonshire Colic.*

**Definition.**—A disease of manifold symptoms resulting from the toxic effect of lead on the system, having its subjects mainly among workers in lead-works, and among painters, glaziers, and plumbers.

**Etiology.**—The lead enters the system by inhalation, through the digestive tract, or by the skin. Almost without exception the cases I have had in hospital were from the lead-works in the neighborhood of Philadelphia. The Philadelphia Hospital is almost never without one or more such cases. Even animals in the neighborhood of lead-works are said to have had the disease; also birds which have been fed on berries grown in the vicinity of such works. Water which has been kept in lead tanks, or even painted tanks, or water passed through lead pipes, has produced the disease. It must, however, be very pure water, such as rain water, and it is the very impurities of our drinking-waters which protect us. Almost all drinking waters contain sulphate of lime, the sulphuric acid of which combines with the superficial layer of lead and forms an insoluble coating of sulphate of lead which prevents further solution.

Accidental contamination has been caused by the use of cosmetics and hair dyes. To the use of chrome yellow as a substitute for eggs for coloring were traced a number of cases occurring in Philadelphia in a very interesting study by D. D. Stewart.<sup>1</sup> Even the use of vegetables canned in tin vessels is held to have produced lead-poisoning.

All grades of what is known as tin, which is really iron coated with a layer of tin, contain a small quantity of lead; and the more inferior the tin, the larger the quantity of lead. Certain conditions favor the solution of this lead. Thus, if any of the vegetable acids, as acetic, tartaric, or citric, be present, they may dissolve the lead and form soluble salts, which are readily absorbed. Of course, such solution is favored by prolonged action of the acids; hence old canned vegetables are more dangerous than those recently canned, and it would be a wise measure to insist that canned foods should be stamped with the date of the canning. The solder used in closing the cans may also be a cause of poisoning. When it is considered how enormous is the consumption of canned foods, and how few the cases of lead-poisoning traceable to it, it is evident that even moderate precautions may suffice to remove the danger altogether.

Among the more rare cases of lead-poisoning may be named materials used in making rag carpets,<sup>2</sup> cooking in badly glazed crockery-ware, beer drawn through lead pipes, or beer, cider, and wine from bottles which have been washed with shot of which some have been left behind, the use of snuff packed in spurious tin-foil containing lead, and from sleeping on mattresses the hair in which was dyed black by some lead-containing substance; and one, a most incredible case, mentioned by Naunyn, is that of a proof-reader who was poisoned after many years' reading of printed proof. Notwithstanding the solubility of the acetate of lead so much used

<sup>1</sup> "Philadelphia Med. News," June 18 and December 21, 1887.

<sup>2</sup> A very interesting case thus caused is reported by J. Milton Miller and G. Oram Ring in the "Amer. Jour. of the Med. Sciences" for February, p. 193, 1896.

in medicine, it is very rare that poisoning has resulted from its administration, and there need be no fear of using it for the purposes in which it is indicated until at least 2 drams (7.4 gm.) have been given. Cases of poisoning by lead administered as a medicine are reported by Taylor and other toxicologists. To these J. Milton Miller has added two interesting instances and reviewed others.<sup>1</sup>

It has always been an interesting question how lead in the system operates to produce its peculiar effects. That the lead itself lodges in the tissues is easy of demonstration, and analysts have gone so far as to determine the exact quantity in the different tissues of animals poisoned by lead; which, by the way, is surprisingly small, the largest amount found being  $1/4$  of one per cent. in the bones, while that in the muscles was but  $2/1000$  to  $3/1000$  of one per cent. On the other hand, it would seem that lead is contained in the tissues of many persons who are healthy—according to J. J. Putnam, in 25 per cent. It was formerly customary to ascribe the symptoms of lead-poisoning in part to the direct action of lead in the tissues; the cramps and the palsy to the presence of lead in the muscular substance; the colic to the lead in the unstriated muscular fiber-cells, and the nervous symptoms to the lead in the nerve-centers. In part, too, these phenomena were ascribed to anemia of the tissues, due to the contraction of the arterioles, stimulated by the presence of lead in the muscular coat of the vessel. More recently, there has been a disposition to account for certain of the symptoms by lesions in the central nerve-centers in the brain and spinal cord. These views are sustained by the studies of Huebel and Lugaro who induced degeneration of central nerve-cells and fibers by the action of lead, and they may be in part thus produced. The phenomena of lead-poisoning have been compared to those of chronic alcoholism, which are ascribed to effects upon the nerve-centers, of circulating blood charged with alcohol.

Some recent studies by Strauss and Phillipson on metabolic changes in lead-poisoning found certain toxic products of decomposition in the intestines which it is reasonable to suppose might produce the symptoms in lead cases. Whether the lead or the atony of the bowel produced these toxins could not be proven.

Most cases occur among adults, usually between the ages of 30 and 40, but in children occasionally. Women are said to be more predisposed than men, as four to one, and to be more readily brought under its influence. Yet one seldom sees a case of lead poisoning in women, because they are less frequently exposed to the cause.

The period of exposure necessary to produce lead-poisoning varies greatly, from a month or less to many years.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—This is not striking. Tissue may contain a considerable amount of lead without exhibiting changes. Fatty degeneration and fibrosis are, however, characteristic. Thus, the muscles become fatty and fibroid. The kidneys gradually lose their parenchymal cells and become fibroid, while nerves exhibit fatty degeneration. In the spinal cord are found in chronic lead-poisoning the changes characteristic

<sup>1</sup> Lead-poisoning from the therapeutic use of lead-acetate in capsules with a report of two cases. "Therapeutic Gazette," Aug., 1904.



of anterior poliomyelitis—i. e., sclerosis of the anterior cornua, with atrophy of the cells and nerve-fibers, but the remainder of the cord and nerve-roots are not altered. Demonstrable changes in the central nervous system, even when there are symptoms of lead encephalopathy, are not numerous. In 32 out of 71 cases Tanquerel found none. Von Monkalow discovered a high degree of atrophy of the cortex, especially marked over the frontal region at the vertex, and in the crura cerebri. Small hemorrhages in various parts of the brain and atheroma of the arteries have been noticed; also overgrowth of connective tissue. Severe enterocolitis has been found in acute cases.

**Symptoms.**—While the symptoms which make known the presence of lead-poisoning are at times rapid in their development and at others slow to appear, there seems on this account scarcely sufficient reason for dividing them into two classes of acute and chronic.

The most striking of the symptoms, and often the first to which attention is called, is *colic*. Indeed, it, with constipation, next to be considered, is often the sole manifestation of the disease, and from these two alone a diagnosis may be made, after exposure to lead absorption. The term *lead colic* has long been a recognized term in medical terminology. It is most frequent in the region of the umbilicus, and is often relieved by pressure. It varies greatly in degree, being sometimes a simple grumbling pain, at others of extreme severity, the patient writhing in the paroxysm. This, as a rule, does not last long, but is soon followed by another. On the other hand, the pain may continue for hours or until relief is afforded by treatment. It is probably due to powerful contractions of the muscular wall of the intestine, by which the nerve filaments distributed through it are compressed. As contrasted with flatulent colic, the abdomen is not distended, but flat, and may even be contracted, sometimes so much so that it is said that the vertebrae may be discerned through the abdominal walls. Yet distention of the abdomen is occasionally present. The pulse during the attacks of colic is often strikingly slowed, having been noticed as infrequent as 30 beats in a minute.

Groups of muscles anywhere, and especially the flexor muscles, as of the arms and legs, become involved in cramp, the latter more frequently. There may also be cramps in the fingers and toes. In addition to these painful cramps, which, like the colic, are intermittent, there is pain in the neighborhood of the joints. The sum of these painful joints and muscles has received the name *arthralgia saturnina*. They are quite frequent, occurring, according to statistics of Tanquerel, in 755 out of 2151 cases.

*Constipation* is very common, even more commonly present than the colic, and yet it is not invariable, and may even be substituted by *diarrhea*.

A *blue line* on the patient's gums is a very characteristic symptom, and appears at the border of contact of the gums with the teeth, or just above it. As a rule, it is easily recognized when present. It is caused by the presence of sulphuret of lead, produced by the action of sulphureted hydrogen upon the lead in the tissue of the gums. Hence the line is more common and distinct on the gums of those who take no care of the mouth,

and in whom sulphureted hydrogen is generated in the decomposition of the food. This line often remains after all other symptoms have subsided, and although it is not invariably present, its disappearance may be considered as quite a certain sign that the lead has been practically eradicated.

*Anemia* of the simple variety is a very constant symptom in lead-poisoning, and its higher degrees are attended by a sallowness which early gave rise to the term *icterus saturninus*, but which is in no way due to a deposit of bile pigment. In more serious cases, too, the impaired nutrition results in an *emaciation* which is sometimes extreme. Along with the anemia there is often *loss of appetite*, and frequently a *sweetish taste* and *fetid breath*.

Comparatively recent studies have found associated with lead-poisoning in common with other toxic conditions a granular degeneration of the erythrocytes. The granular change which responds to the basophilic stains was first investigated by Geelmyden, Hanseemann, Von Noorden and others, but Grawitz was the first (1889) to lay particular stress on the condition as evidence of a special form of degeneration. It would appear from the recent studies of Alfred Stengel, C. Y. White and Wm. Pepper, 3d,<sup>1</sup> that no poison thus far studied is as regular in its production of degeneration or as prompt in its action as lead. Cadwallader has also shown the occasional occurrence of nucleated red corpuscles in the blood of lead poisoning.

Another symptom of great importance is *muscular paralysis*, which may be *localized or general*. The localized palsies, in contrast with muscular cramp, are more likely to involve extensor muscles than flexors, and especially those of the wrist, giving rise to the very characteristic symptoms known as "wrist-drop," which, in Tanquerel's experience, occurred in 107 out of 2151 cases. Usually it is not until the colic and arthralgia present themselves that the paralysis appears. On the other hand, it has been the first symptom observed. It may last but a few days, or it may resist all treatment. It may affect a single muscle or groups of muscles. It is further characterized by the fact that the muscles affected are subject to rapid and extreme *atrophy*, so that they seem almost to disappear. Dislocations of the more movable joints, as the shoulders and phalanges, may occur in consequence. While sensibility is but slightly impaired, *electromuscular contractility* rapidly *disappears*. The muscles cease to respond to the faradic current, while the reaction to galvanism is unchanged or slightly increased at first.

The palsies of lead-poisoning are commonly ascribed to *neuritis* which may also be acute.

The localized forms of lead palsy are divided by Madame Dejerine-Klumpe in her masterly monograph<sup>2</sup> into the following groups:

1. The *antibrachial type*, the most frequent of all forms, and in which the musculo-spiral nerve is involved, producing paralysis of the extensors of the fingers and the characteristic wrist-drop, the supinator longus

<sup>1</sup> "Further Studies of Granular Degeneration of Erythrocytes," "American Journal of the Medical Sciences," May, 1902.

<sup>2</sup> Des Polynévrites en general et de Paralysies et Atrophies Saturnines en particulier par Madame Dejerine-Klumpe, Paris, 1889.

usually escaping. As the result of the prolonged flexion of the wrist there may be slight displacement backward of the ends of the bones with distention of the synovial sheaths producing the so-called Gruebler's tumor over the wrist.

2. The *superior* or *brachial type* involving the deltoid, the biceps, the brachialis, the supinator longus and rarely the pectoralis. It is much rarer than the anti-brachial type. The atrophy is of the scapula-humeral type and is commonly bilateral. It may be primary or secondary to the first form.

3. The *Aran-Duchenne* type in which the small muscles of the hand and the thenar and hypothenar muscles are involved producing a paralysis like that of the early stage of polio-myelitis anterior. This group seems to be always primary and may be the first manifestation of lead intoxication.

4. The *peroneal* type in the lower extremities producing foot-drop and steppage gait, due to paralysis of the peroneal muscles, of the common extensor of the toes and of the extensor proprius of the great toe.

5. *Laryngeal* form invading the adductor muscles of the larynx as noted by Morell MacKenzie.

In the generalized palsies the invasion may be gradual, beginning in the wrist and ankles and extending gradually over the body, or it may extend rapidly becoming complete in a few days.

The *central nervous system* may also be invaded by lead-poisoning. Occurring usually in those who are peculiarly exposed, the symptoms come on in from eight days to 50 years, the majority showing themselves, according to Tanquerel, within the first nine months. The most frequent mode of manifestation is in *eclampsia* independent of Bright's disease. True epilepsy may follow these convulsions. But there may be headache or amaurosis, optic neuritis, apathy, stupor, or the opposite condition of maniacal excitement or melancholia and hallucinations. In a few cases of lead-poisoning the symptoms are limited to the central nervous system—in 72 out of 1390 cases observed by Tanquerel. *Tremor* of the paralyzed muscles is a frequent nervous symptom.

A frequent complication, more especially when it has been present for some time, is *interstitial nephritis*, and its resulting morbid product, the contracted kidney, as shown by the presence of a small degree of albuminuria and hyaline tube-casts; and as this is the form of kidney disease in which uremic convulsions are most frequent, it is evident that these must be distinguished from the convulsions just referred to as part of saturnine encephalopathy. Hence an examination of the urine in every case should be early made in the study of the case. *Arteriosclerosis* is often a direct result as well as *hypertrophy of the heart*.

*Gout* is a well-recognized symptom, but the relation between the two was sufficiently considered in treating of that disease. True uratic deposits may occur in the big toe joint and in the tissues, their precipitation being favored by the lead, which may act by diminishing the alkalinity of the blood, as suggested by Rolfe. I may repeat, also, that in this country the association is an uncommon one.

**Prognosis.**—As to prognosis, it depends largely upon the degree of saturation of the system with lead. Ordinary lead colic is commonly

followed by recovery. As a rule, therefore, persons who respond most quickly to the action of the poison are those who most promptly recover, provided, of course, they are removed from the influence of the lead, for such persons, too, being most susceptible, are in great danger from prolonged exposure. We are enabled to infer something of the prognosis from the symptoms which are present. If the attack be ushered in by a colic, and there be no other symptoms except constipation, we may confidently expect our patient to recover completely. If there be arthralgia and palsy, the prospect is less certain, still less so if there be atrophy, and least of all if there be encephalopathy, though even here recovery may take place. Contracted kidney due to lead-poisoning is also usually incurable. No favorable prognosis should be given when the patient is unable to remove himself from the cause. It must be remembered, too, that relapses occur, often at long intervals, even when the patient is removed from exposure, and that the primary disease has been known to make its appearance a long time after exposure.

**Treatment.**—Much may be done to guard against the occurrence of lead-poisoning by *proper precautions* on the part of those exposed to it, and those employed in lead-works may do much to protect themselves, or rather their employers may do it for them. Such persons should keep themselves scrupulously *clean* by frequent *hot baths* and frequent changes of clothing, which should never be allowed to become saturated with lead. Mehu recommends that *hypochlorite of sodium* be added to the hot baths. It is made by mixing in 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  gallons (10 liters) of water 13 ounces (400 gm.) of chlorinated lime with 11 drams (43 gm.) of sodium carbonate. *Sulphur baths* were recommended by Todd, it being thought that sulphur has the power of neutralizing lead by forming insoluble compounds with it. From 2 to 4 ounces (62.5 to 124.5 gm.) of sulphuret of potassium are mixed in from 20 to 30 gallons of water (75.5 to 113.4 liters). Above all, the employees in lead-works should *not* be allowed to *eat meals* in the lead factory, as the metal is often introduced with food. Finally, the *ventilation* of the factory should be of the best. Experience has shown that much may be done to arrest the dangers of lead-works by such precautions. The same remarks as to cleanliness, bathing, and change of clothing apply to painters, and indeed to all who have to do with lead in any shape or degree. It is evident that leather-lined and painted cisterns should never be used in houses, that cosmetics and hair-dyes are dangerous, and that care should be taken in the selection of canned foods not to use those which have been too long canned.

The curative measures may be divided into those for the immediate relief of urgent symptoms and the removal of the lead from the system. It is scarcely necessary to say that the patient should be promptly removed from the influence of the lead. The extreme pain of the lead colic requires to be relieved by the hot bath or poultice, and an opiate, of which the best mode of administration is by the hypodermic syringe,  $\frac{1}{4}$  or  $\frac{1}{3}$  grain (0.016 or 0.02 gm.) of sulphate of morphin being required for the purpose. Identical treatment is required for the arthralgia. The accompanying constipation is best relieved by sulphate of magnesium, the sulphuric acid of which, on theoretical grounds, at least, aids in render-

ing inoperative the lead which has entered the system by forming an insoluble sulphate.

These more urgent symptoms being relieved, measures directed to the *elimination of the lead* should be taken. The hot baths already referred to may be used for this purpose, as well as for prophylaxis, while *purgatives* and *diuretics* may aid elimination. The *iodid of potassium* is the remedy most relied upon to eliminate lead. It is believed that after its absorption the lead becomes intimately united with the albumin of the tissues, forming an insoluble compound; that the iodid of potassium, after its absorption, combines with the lead and forms a soluble iodid of lead, which is dissolved out, re-enters the circulation, and is passed out with the urine and feces. It is evident that elimination by these channels will be encouraged by purgatives and diuretics. It is even suggested that acute lead-poisoning may be produced by the liberation of the soluble lead salt into the blood in this way. Hence caution is suggested in the use of the iodid. Practically, I can scarcely conceive this to occur with such doses as are ordinarily given, 10 grains (0.66 gm.) three times daily, after a time reduced to 5 (0.33 gm.), but this dose should be kept up indefinitely. Iodid of potassium is more efficient when given fasting and freely diluted.

For the paralyzed muscles *faradic electricity* is indicated and should be daily applied, both to resist the tendency to atrophy and to overcome it.

That *restorative* and *blood-making* remedies, in the shape of nutritious, easily assimilable food, together with iron, should also be given to antagonize the cachexia which is always a part of plumbism is evident. In view of the nervous and muscular symptoms which enter so largely into the disease *strychnin* may be expected to be a useful adjunct to our treatment, and it is generally so considered. It should be given in full doses, 1/30 grain (0.0022 gm.) three times a day, and increased to 1/20 grain (0.0033 gm.), which should be kept up. *Ergot* is said to have been useful in restoring the power of muscles involved in the palsy.

## ARSENICAL POISONING.

**ACUTE ARSENICAL POISONING.**—Acute arsenical poisoning is usually the result of accidental or intentional ingestion of Paris green or "Rough on Rats," prepared and sold for the destruction of rats, mice, vermin, and insects. Occasionally it is taken also with suicidal intent.

**Symptoms.**—These are intense *abdominal pain*, at first gastric, with *vomiting*; later intestinal, with *diarrhea* and *tenesmus*, which may be followed by collapse and death. The symptoms are not unlike those of cholera, including rice-water stools, cardiac weakness, and cyanosis. Sometimes a *skin eruption* makes its appearance, and sometimes *blood* and *albumin* appear in the *urine*. Fatal cases terminate in one or two days.

Recovery from these acute effects may be followed by paralysis.

**Treatment.**—The ingestion of a poisonous dose of arsenic is apt to be followed by free vomiting. But even in the event of emesis, mustard, or sulphate of zinc from 10 to 30 grains (0.66 to 0.1944 gm.), should

be administered, and the stomach well washed out with draughts of warm water. With the emetic or before it the antidote should be administered. The best antidote is freshly precipitated sesquioxid of iron, which forms, with arsenic, an insoluble compound. It must be freshly prepared, taking any of the sesqui solutions of iron, preferably the chlorid, and neutralizing it with sodium carbonate or magnesia. The precipitate, being hastily washed by emptying on muslin or a filter, pouring water on it and allowing it to drain, should be freely administered. Dialyzed iron may be used, but it is best also precipitated with ammonia or other alkali before using. In extreme cases the tincture of the chlorid of iron, Monsel's solution, or any of the sesqui preparations may be substituted for the precipitated sesquioxid.

After the emetic has acted, and while the antidote is being given, castor oil should be administered to carry off the poison from the bowels.

**CHRONIC ARSENICAL POISONING.**—This is ascribed to wall-papers covering occupied apartments, to artificial flowers, and clothing fabrics colored or dyed with arsenic. The glazed green and red papers are those especially dangerous. Occasionally, arsenic medicinally administered may produce the symptoms of slow arsenical poisoning.

**Symptoms.**—Chronic arsenical poisoning may be suspected in the presence of unexplained *anemia* and *debility*, *irritation* of the conjunctiva, mouth, pharynx, and lower digestive tract, *numbness*, *tingling*, and *gastralgia*; also nervous symptoms and altered nutrition in special parts. All these symptoms may, however, be produced by other causes. *Paralysis* may also ensue, resembling that of lead palsy, but affecting rather the lower extremities, especially the extensors and peroneal group, whence may arise the characteristic *steppage gait* of peripheral neuritis. These symptoms have been ascribed by some authorities, as in the case of lead-poisoning, to central lesions rather than to alterations of the nerves. *Deranged electrical reaction* may be present before any loss of power, but on differential examination a weakened power of wrist extension and feeble power to spread the fingers may be detected.

**Treatment.**—The patient should be removed from the exposure and the symptoms be treated as they arise. The iodid of potassium may be used.

### BISULPHID OF CARBON POISONING.

**History.**—A. Delpach first described carbon bisulphid poisoning in France in 1850, and F. Delpach added to the knowledge in 1863. In 1883 Frost, Gunn and Nettleship considered especially the eye symptoms. James Ross described the paralytic symptoms in 1886, and Pierre Marie emphasized hysterical symptoms in 1888. Maass made it the subject of an inaugural thesis in Berlin in 1889. In 1892 MacGregor in Australia and Peterson in America published papers. Lastly Henry D. Jump and John M. Cruice published two cases of chronic bisulphid poisoning in 1904<sup>1</sup> arising in artificial silk-works near Philadelphia, U. S. A. It occurs to those working in the fumes of bisulphid as in the process of vulcanizing rubber. In the artificial silk mills cellulose is treated with caustic soda and then with bisulphid of carbon.

**Symptoms.**—The acute symptoms are those of exhilaration followed by depression, excitement or taciturnity, loss of appetite and headache.

<sup>1</sup> "University of Pennsylvania Med. Bulletin," July, Aug., 1904.

Overwhelming doses cause great weakness. Mania and hysteria have been reported. The chronic symptoms are those of peripheral neuritis resembling those caused by alcohol, great muscular weakness, followed by wasting; sluggish reflexes, tremor. Absence of sexual desire is a characteristic symptom. There may be foot-drop, wrist-drop and finger extension, or the fingers may become stiff and numb. There may be scotoma and limitation of the field of vision with hyperemia of retinal vessels. These symptoms may occur after short exposure or only after long periods. The urine has been affected in some cases, shown by the presence of hematuria, albumin, indican, and hydrobilirubin. Blood changes are not marked or numerous but the hemoglobin may be reduced.

**Prognosis.**—Death never occurs from the poisoning alone though it may be caused by resulting cachexia. Recovery is more or less complete, some claiming that it is never complete. Muscular weakness is often permanent in mild degree.

**Treatment.**—Prophylaxis should be observed to protect the workmen. The work-room should be on the ground floor with vents next to the floor to carry off the gas which is heavier than air. Such removal can be facilitated by the air-pump. The muscular weakness is best treated by electricity and massage; general weakness by strychnin and nourishing food.

## PTOMAIN AND LEUKOMAIN POISONING.

Ptomain, from Greek *πτῶμα*, a cadaver, is a word suggested by the Italian toxicologist, F. Selini, for substances generated in the decomposition of organic matter, which more recent studies have shown to be the result of bacterial action. Ptomains are basic, uniting with acids to form salts. Leukomains are similar basic substances formed in the living body. Ptomains differ greatly in their character and properties, certain ones being intensely poisonous, others harmless. For the former L. Brieger suggested the name toxins, retaining that of ptomains for the non-poisonous basic products; but, as Victor C. Vaughan suggests, there are difficulties in the way of such classification, because a ptomain may be poisonous under certain conditions and harmless under others.

Leukomains are more usually harmless, although they may also produce disease under certain conditions.

Among ptomain poisons are the agencies which are responsible for various forms of meat poisoning, of poisoning by milk products, by shellfish and fish.

**MEAT POISONING.**—This succeeds the eating of various forms of meat which has been the seat of a decomposition in the whole or some one of the constituents of the mass.

*Sausage poisoning*, also called botulismus and allantiasis, follows the eating of infected sausage. Numerous outbreaks have occurred in Germany, more particularly in Wurtemberg and adjacent Baden. In 1820 Kerner had collected reports of 76 cases, of which 37 were fatal, and in 1822 he had increased the number to 155, with 84 fatal. The poison-

ous qualities are referred to defective methods of preparation which permit decomposition.

*Ham poisoning* not due to trichina has occurred in England, Germany, and Switzerland, while poisoning has also been traced to beef, mutton, veal, turkey, and goose-grease, and in America to canned meats. Some of these must be ascribed to muriate of zinc and tin, but others are doubtless due to the meats. Poultry, especially if kept too long, and game birds also prove poisonous at times.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of various epidemics vary somewhat, but the following are more constant, after a period of incubation of from one to 48 hours: *nausea, vomiting, cramps, and diarrhea*—in a word, acute gastro-intestinal irritation. To these may be added *dryness of the mouth, constriction of the throat, difficulty in swallowing, vertigo, indistinctness of vision, dilatation of pupils*, while sometimes *constipation* substitutes diarrhea. *Thirst, headache, and muscular weakness* may also be present.

The symptoms may begin at once without incubation in a feeling of languor and general malaise, loss of appetite, nausea, and griping pain in the belly.

In fatal cases the symptoms of cholera are simulated, such as cramps in the legs or arms, or both, muscular twitchings, stiffness of the joints, drowsiness, coldness of surface, pinched features, blueness of fingers and toes and around the sunken eyes—in a word, the symptoms of collapse. On the other hand, the temperature sometimes rises to 101° to 103° F. (38.3° to 39.4° C.), with a pulse of from 100 to 128.

**POISONING BY MILK AND ITS PRODUCTS.**—The causes of poisoning by cheese claimed attention as far back as 1827, when analyses of poisonous cheese were made by Hunnefeld. The older view that the poisons are fatty acids has been refuted, and Vaughan isolated a ptomain in 1884 which he has called tyrotoxinon' (*τυρότοξινον*, cheese, and *τοξινόν*, poison). Tyrotoxinon was not, however, always found by Vaughan in cheeses of acknowledged poisonous properties. In 1885 he found tyrotoxinon in milk which had stood in well-stoppered bottles for about six months, and in 1886 Newton and Wallace obtained it from milk which had poisoned a number of persons in a hotel at Long Branch, N. J. Since then tyrotoxinon has been isolated many times from poisonous milk. Finally, in 1886, Vaughan obtained tyrotoxinon from ice-cream which had proved poisonous, and since then it has been frequently found in such cream. A number of cases of poisoning after eating "cream puffs" have been reported in Philadelphia and elsewhere, in which doubtless the same ptomain is responsible. A family under my observation was poisoned by *blanc mange*, of which all had eaten freely, and which had been made for several days.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms of milk and cheese poisoning are those of gastro-intestinal irritation, comparable in various degrees to those described as due to meat poisoning, etc

**POISONING BY SHELL-FISH AND FISH (*Ichthysmus*).**—The mussel furnishes the most frequent source of poisoning from this cause, instances of which were reported as early as 1827 by Combe. A ptomain was isolated by L. Brieger in 1885, from poisonous mussels, at Wilhelmshaven, where



numerous instances occur. Brieger has called it mytilotoxin, from *mytilis*, a mussel. It is found chiefly in the liver of the mussel, but whether in a special poisonous mussel or a mussel which becomes poisonous under certain circumstances is not settled, though the latter would seem to be true, since Schmidtman found that non-poisonous mussels placed in the waters of Wilhemshaven Bay became poisonous, and poisonous mussels from the latter became harmless after being placed in the open sea.

**Symptoms.**—Both cooked and raw mussels may produce the poisonous symptoms. Three sets are described:

*First*, those of gastro-intestinal irritation, similar to those described as due to meat poisoning, and which may terminate fatally within two days, the autopsy revealing inflamed stomach and intestines.

In a *second* set of symptoms the nervous system seems to bear the brunt of the poison, and these cases are said to be the most frequent. The symptoms include a sense of heat and itching, usually beginning in the eyelids, but soon extending over the whole face and sometimes over a large portion of the body. An eruption, vesicular and papular, makes its appearance and intensifies the itching. The eruption is often followed by asthmatic breathing. Sometimes the dyspnea precedes the eruption, the face becomes livid, the patient unconscious, and there are convulsive movements of the extremities. In other cases there are delirium, convulsions, coma, and death within three days. In other nervous cases there are numbness and coldness, frequent pulse but no fever, the pupils are dilated, and death takes place in a couple of hours with symptoms of collapse.

In a *third* set of cases a symptom like intoxication by alcohol is present, followed by paralysis, coma, and death.

### Treatment of Ptomain and Allied Poisoning.

This is mainly symptomatic—the *purgative* and *emetic* effect of the poison generally promptly gets rid of any residue which may be in the stomach or intestinal canal. But if there is any reason to believe that these are not emptied, purgatives should be administered, and of these calomel is probably the best because it is less apt to be rejected.

In addition counterirritation by mustard, hypodermic injection of  $\frac{1}{4}$  grain (0.0165 gm.) *morphin*, repeated if necessary, to relieve pain, digitalis from 10 to 30 minims (0.66 to 2 gm.), and strychnin  $\frac{1}{30}$  grain (0.0022 gm.) administered in the same manner to counteract collapse may be given. *Stimulants* by the mouth should be given if retained, and to this end champagne becomes very suitable, or milk mixed with carbonated water may be given in small quantities.

### GRAIN POISONING.

For a century or more districts have been subject to ailments which have been traced to the use of certain grains as food, some of which have been found to be spoiled or the seat of disease. People in some parts of France, Germany, Switzerland, Italy, Spain and India have been thus affected.

1. **ERGOTISM.**—Ergotism is one of these ailments. It is a disease found to succeed upon the use of meal contaminated with the *sclerotium*, an intermediate stage of development of the *claviceps purpurea*, a fungus which infests the rye grain. An ergot is this sclerotium, which appears at the base of the grain as a hard, dark-hued "spur," which, as it grows, lifts up the diseased and withered mass of the original grain. Wheat, barley, and rice may also become spurred. The growth of the fungus is favored by wet seasons. The disease prevailed in France, Switzerland, and Germany much more commonly from the 10th to the 18th century than at present. The cause of ergotism was discovered in 1830 by Thuillier.

Two forms of chronic ergotism are recognized, one convulsive or spasmodic, the other gangrenous.

*Spasmodic Ergotism.*—In this form there is a prodromal period of from 10 to 15 days, during which there are a peculiar sense of weariness and anxiety, a tingling and sense of formication in the skin, especially of the fingers and toes, gastro-intestinal irritation manifested by vomiting, purging, and colicky pains, accompanied sometimes with slight fever. Then *spasmodic symptoms set in*. These consist at first in involuntary twitchings, which soon pass into painful continuous contractions, the arms being flexed and the legs and toes extended. The cramp lasts for an hour or more, followed by a period of exhaustion, which may be succeeded by another painful convulsion. There may be delirium, melancholia, or dementia. The urine may be suppressed or violent dysuria may be present from spasm of the bladder. Pustules, boils, whitlows, and other evidence of deranged nutrition may appear. Cardiac contractions are slow and feeble, the arteries are constricted and contain little blood. Death may occur from cardiac paralysis, and is often preceded by convulsions or paralytic symptoms. The duration of the illness is from four to eight weeks or longer.

Sclerosis of the posterior columns of the cord was found in some of the cases which came to necropsy. Thus, Tuczek and Siemens found it four times in nine autopsies, which represented, also, the deaths in a group of 29 cases.

*Gangrenous Ergotism.*—This form is ushered in by the same prodrome as that described for the spasmodic. On this succeeds, from the third day to the fourth week, an erysipelatous redness in some peripheral locality, as in the toes and fingers, ears, and nose. This is followed usually by dry gangrene, but the moist form, which may be confined to a finger or toe or may involve the whole hand or foot, may also appear. The disease may not go beyond the erysipelatous redness.

For acute ergot poisoning see concluding section.

2. **PELLAGRA.**—This is a disease thought to be due to a fungus which infests moldy maize or Indian corn. Lomborso and others have isolated a ptomain from the meal made of such corn. The disease occurs in Lombardy, the South of France, and in Spain, especially among the poorer classes in the country districts, where the meal of maize is largely used. It begins almost invariably in an erythema in the spring of the year, which is followed by a scaly and wrinkled condition of the skin, especially in the parts exposed to the air. Occasionally crusts form, and beneath

these pus is found. Along with these skin diseases there are digestive derangements, salivation, dyspepsia, and even dysentery. The disease lasts a few months, when improvement sets in. In the more severe and chronic forms there may be headache and backache, the strength and mental faculties are affected, sensation is obtunded, and cramps with convulsions supervene, such as in ergotism.

Recently pellagra has been found prevalent in the Southern United States, and among other situations in insane hospitals to which the patients were admitted on account of the mental symptoms peculiar to the disease. Only ten per cent. of the cases occurring in Southern Europe are found with the mental symptoms referred to.

Edw. J. Wood,<sup>1</sup> of Wilmington, North Carolina, has done much to enlarge our knowledge of the disease as it occurs in this country.

The *morbid anatomy* is vague. There may be fatty degeneration and a pigmentation of the viscera.

3. LATHYRISM, or LUPINOSIS.—This is a condition resulting from the use of meal made from the chick-pea, or grain of a variety of vetches, more particularly the *lathyrus salivus* and *lathyrus cicera*. It is used in admixture with barley and wheat in India, Italy, and Algiers. According to James Irvine, the symptoms supervene in India when the proportion exceeds 1/12.

The symptoms are, first, gastro-intestinal irritation, then a condition of spastic paralysis, which may pass on to complete paraplegia. The arms are rarely, if ever, affected.

No associated *morbid change* has been discovered.

### Treatment of Grain Poisoning.

This consists, primarily, in the removal of the cause and the substitution of wholesome food; in removal, also from the district, if possible, and suitable treatment of symptoms.

<sup>1</sup>"Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.," p. 37, July 6, 1907.

## SECTION XII.

### EFFECTS OF EXPOSURE TO HIGH THOUGH BEARABLE TEMPERATURE.

Such effects are easily separable into two groups, covered by the terms heat exhaustion and thermic fever.

#### HEAT EXHAUSTION.

**Definition.**—A condition of syncopal exhaustion with vasomotor paralysis and lowering of body-temperature, caused by exertion under high temperature. Such condition may arise quite independently of the direct rays of the sun. The heat may be that of confined rooms and may be artificial heat.

**Symptoms.**—The sense of *great weakness*, often experienced in hot weather after some unusual exertion, exhibits the mildest degree of this condition. In the more severe forms a sense of faintness, associated with *pallor*, *dizziness*, at times *blindness*, and the starting of cold *perspiration* are the first symptoms. Sometimes the victim can get to a place where he may sit or lie down; at other time he faints away before assistance can reach him. Then follows a condition of *unconsciousness* or semi-consciousness, whence, under favorable circumstances, he may respond to simple stimulus by ammonia or wine and then fall into a sleep, from which he will awake in an hour revived.

In more severe cases the *collapse* is more permanent, the *pulse* is extremely feeble and frequent, the *skin* continues leaky, while there may be great *restlessness* and *muttering delirium*. It is characteristic of this form of heat affection that there is extreme *adynamia* with *lowered body-temperature*. H. C. Wood, whose name is inseparably associated with the subjects of heat exhaustion and thermic fever, reports a case with a temperature as low as 95° F. (35° C.), with complete collapse.

**Diagnosis.**—Heat exhaustion is characterized by *lowered temperature* and feeble pulse, as contrasted with the opposite in *thermic fever*. It is important that the two conditions should not be confounded, because of the widely different treatment required. The syncopal attack from *cardiac failure* or from *concealed hemorrhage* much more closely resembles heat exhaustion, being associated also with feeble pulse and lowered temperature, but as the treatment is identical, the distinction is less important. The fall in temperature is, however, less decided in *syncope*.

**Treatment.**—The patient should be put to bed at once with his head horizontal or slightly raised. When possible, stimulants should be administered moderately by the mouth—brandy, whisky, or ammonia with digitalis. If this is not possible, digitalis and strychnin should be given hypodermically from 10 to 30 minims (0.66 to 2 gm.) of tincture of the former and 1/30 grain (0.0022 gm.) of the latter. Friction should be applied, and dry heat by hot-water bags or cans.

## THERMIC FEVER.

SYNONYMS.—*Heat Fever; Sunstroke; Coup de soleil.*

**Definition.**—A state of high fever induced by exposure to heat, natural or artificial.

**Etiology and Pathology.**—In this country the majority of cases occur in the summer season in those exposed to the direct rays of the sun, though they occur also among those exposed to high temperature within doors, as in sugar refineries, fire-rooms of ocean steamers, laundries, and the like. A heated atmosphere charged with moisture, impeding, therefore, evaporation, produces fever much more rapidly than a dry heat, which is in fact slow to produce it. The habitual use of alcohol is found to be a potent predisposing cause—at least alcoholics succumb very much sooner to the influence of overheat than temperate persons.

The pathology of the two conditions of heat exhaustion and thermic fever is thus explained by H. C. Wood: "There is in the pons or higher portion of the nervous system a center whose function it is to inhibit the production of animal heat, and in the medulla oblongata a center (probably the vasomotor center) which regulates the dissipation of bodily heat. Fever is due to a disturbance of these centers, so that more heat is produced than normal and proportionately less thrown off. Let it be supposed that a man is placed in such an atmosphere, that he is unable to get rid of the heat which he is forming. The temperature of the body will slowly rise, and he may suffer from a general thermic fever. If early or late in this condition the inhibitory heat center becomes exhausted by the effort which it is making to control the formation of heat, or becomes paralyzed by the direct action of the excessive temperature already reached, then suddenly all tissues will begin to form heat with the utmost rapidity, the bodily temperature rises with a bound, and the man drops over with one of the forms of coup de soleil.

"Heat exhaustion," on the other hand, "with lowered temperature, represents a vasomotor palsy—i. e., a condition in which the existence of the heart paralyzes the center in the medulla oblongata, and the heat is dissipated more rapidly than it is produced." It must be admitted that the explanation of heat exhaustion is less satisfactory than that of thermic fever.

**Morbid Anatomy.**—The high temperature characteristic of heat fever remains a long time after death. Hence putrefaction sets in early. Rigor mortis also occurs promptly. The blood remains liquid. There is general venous engorgement, especially of the lungs and cerebrum. In early autopsies the left ventricle is found contracted, the right dilated.

**Symptoms.**—A sense of uncomfortable *burning heat* and feeling of *oppression* may precede the "stroke" which fells its victim, who quickly becomes *unconscious* and comatose, perishing sometimes instantly, at other times in a few hours. In other cases there are intense *headache*, *dizziness*, *oppression*, *nausea*, and *vomiting*, occasionally *diarrhea*. *Chromatopsia*, or colored vision, may be present. Sooner or later unconscious-

ness sets in, and may be associated with *muttering delirium* and intense *restlessness*. In this condition the patient is commonly admitted to hospital with face flushed, eye suffused, skin hot and dry, temperature from  $107^{\circ}$  to  $112^{\circ}$  F. ( $41.6^{\circ}$  to  $44.4^{\circ}$  C.), the *breathing* labored, and sometimes *stertorous*, the *pulse* frequent and full. The *pupils* at this stage are usually contracted, though at first dilated. The urine is scanty, sometimes albuminous. Usually there is relaxation of the muscles, but at times there is a *convulsive tendency*, shown by twitching and jactitation, and occasionally by epileptiform convulsions. The *skin*, usually dry, may become moist and bathed with perspiration, which does not, however, reduce the temperature. Wood speaks of a peculiar *odor* exhaled by the entire body as characteristic.

Attention has been called by C. F. Close<sup>1</sup> to cardiac dilatation as a symptom of thermic fever.

In fatal cases the stupor deepens, the pulse becomes more frequent and loses even its seeming strength, then becomes irregular; the breathing is labored and irregular, and toward the last, shallow, or assumes the Cheyne-Stokes type previous to death. Death does not usually take place for several hours. In favorable cases improvement is indicated by a falling temperature and a return to consciousness.

Iron and steel workers, ship's stokers, and a variety of other persons, whose occupation exposes them to very intense heat, frequently develop attacks of muscular spasm, which may be of very mild character, but are often violent and intensely painful, and in rare cases even fatal. The spasms especially affect the flexors of the forearms, legs, hands and feet, and at times have a superficial resemblance to tetany; but any or all the muscles of the trunk and extremities may be affected and Chvostek's and Trousseau's phenomena are absent. Signs of involvement of the cerebrum, spinal cord and nerve-trunks are usually absent also, and the disorder seems to be resident chiefly in the muscles themselves. The temperature may be somewhat elevated, normal or, especially in the severe cases, subnormal. There is likely to be marked and at times dangerous general collapse in the very bad cases. In the cases studied by my colleague D. L. Edsall there were very remarkable disturbances of metabolism, showing severe tissue destruction, probably chiefly in the muscles. Elliott has reported practically negative postmortem findings.

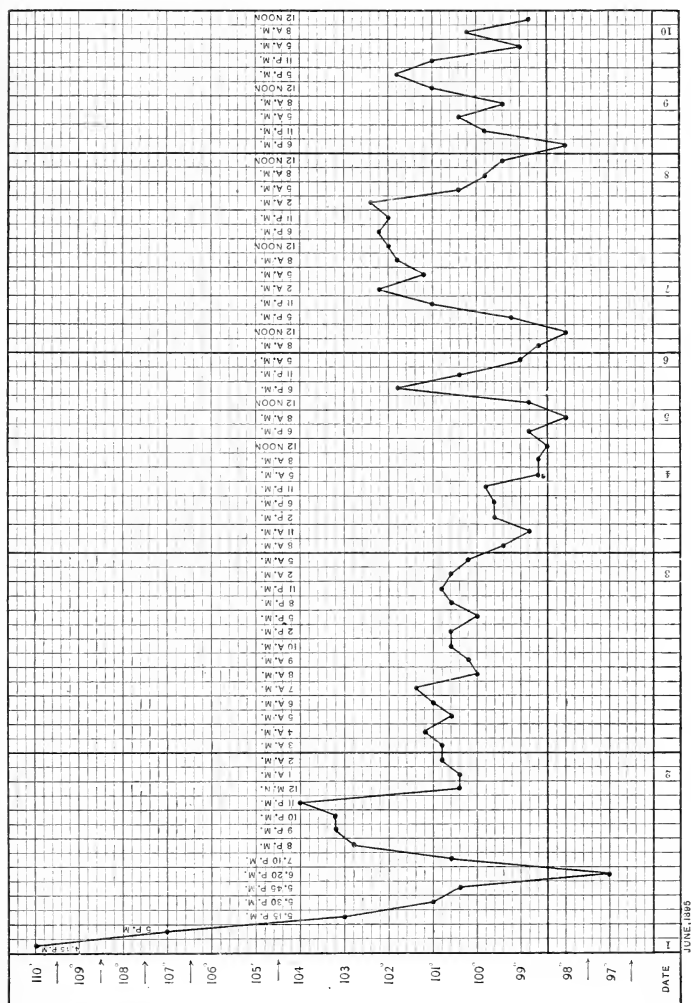
Recovery may be complete, but more rarely a permanent condition results in which there may be more or less constant *mental weakness*, as evidenced by incapacity for sustained mental effort, while exposure to moderate degrees of temperature produces great excitement or headache or pain in the upper cervical region. *Epileptic* convulsions sometimes occur. In these cases there is probably a certain degree of meningitis.

Mention has already been made, when treating of fevers, of the form of continued fever occurring in the south of the United States, where it is known as "Florida fever" and "country fever," and in India and the West Indies as *fièvre inflammatoire*, for which John Guitéras proposes the name *continued thermic fever*, but which more recently he is inclined to ascribe to a septic origin.

<sup>1</sup> "Journal of the Am. Med. Assoc.," March 1, 1901.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnosis of heat fever presents no difficulties. The distinction between it and *heat exhaustion* has been alluded to.

**Prognosis.**—The prognosis depends partly upon the severity of the



**Treatment.**—The success of treatment of thermic fever depends altogether upon our ability to lower the temperature. To this end the patient should be placed in a *bath of water* to which ice is freely added to keep the temperature down as low as it can be, which in summer is not likely to be below 60° F. (15.54° C.). The surface of the body is further vigorously *rubbed with ice*. In the absence of bathing facilities the patient should be placed on a mattress covered with a mackintosh and be rubbed with pieces of ice. The refrigerating effect may be further increased by *ice-water enemas*. This treatment should be regulated by the thermometer in the rectum, and abated as the temperature approaches the normal, and renewed as it again rises.

After this, or in addition to this, *treatment* should be *symptomatic*. For convulsions, chloral or chloroform; for heart failure, digitalis and strychnin hypodermically; for asphyxia, bleeding. Mild cases or recurrent fever may be treated with the antipyretics represented by antifebrin, phenacetin, and antipyrin.

In the cases associated with muscular spasm, treatment consists of the use of laxatives and sedatives, though in the bad cases the effects of even morphin are unsatisfactory. Normal salt solution by enema or subcutaneously, and freely used, may prove valuable, since chlorids are absent from the urine; and some cases seem to have been benefited by this.



## SECTION XIII.

### ANIMAL PARASITES AND THE CONDITIONS CAUSED BY THEM.

Parasitism is essentially a condition of infestation of some form of life by another living organism, usually of lower type. The parasite is the invading form, whether animal or vegetable, and is spoken of as either an *ectoparasite*, if living upon the surface, or as an *endoparasite*, if inhabiting some part of the internal structures of the invaded organism. The latter is spoken of as the *autosite*, or *host*; and when in the life of the parasite there are special stages in its cycle, the host of the fully developed organism is spoken of as the *primary* or *definitive host*, the one or more hosts accommodating the intermediate stages of the parasite being denominated the *secondary* or *intermediate hosts*. While the vegetable parasites present a number of features in common with those of animal parasites in their effects upon the organisms invaded by them and while many of these are in their organization distinctly separated from the bacteria, for convenience it has become customary to consider the various vegetable parasites of whatever degree of organization in the special field of bacteriology; and for the same reasons animal parasites are usually grouped for study in separate treatises.

The effects of animal parasitism may be practically nil according as the numbers of parasites present are small or the influences of the parasites are slight, or according to the part of the host affording accommodation to the parasites in question. On the other hand, pathogenic influences are exerted and anatomical changes and symptoms of variable intensity are produced by animal parasites just as in case of infection by pathogenic bacteria. The irritation caused by the presence and by the movements of the parasites, with consequent inflammatory effects, as well as the possibility of tissue destruction, pressure atrophy, and secondary degenerations, must be taken into consideration. The possibility of obstruction of more or less important channels, as the occlusion of blood or lymph vessels by the ova of blood flukes or the embryo filarial worms, as well as a large number of similar possible disturbances in other parts of the body by one or other form of parasites, must from time to time be reckoned with. The abstraction of food-stuff from the economy of the host by the parasite cannot be looked upon as of serious import in itself, but the possibility of loss of valuable matter, as in blood destruction by the malarial hematozoon or the loss of blood by hemorrhage from the wounds in the intestinal mucosa through lesions caused by hook-worms and other sucking parasites, may constitute serious factors of disease for the host. Moreover, there unquestionably are toxic influences generated in one or other manner in animal parasitism which may exert marked and deleterious influences upon the infested organism, as doubtless in malaria, in uncinariasis, bothriocephalus disease and a number of other similar affections.

Out of the vast number of animals which in one or other period of the life cycle are parasitic upon some higher form of life, the group which infests man either as the definitive host or as host of some intermediate stage is comparatively small; and that which includes only the more important forms capable of actually working harm to the human host is much smaller. Representatives of the animal parasites of sufficient importance to be here considered are distributed among the *protozoa*, the *worms* and *arthropods*.

## I—PROTOZOA.

Protozoa are animals composed of but a single cell. Although exceptionally such single-celled animals may associate themselves in colonies or groups for convenience or advantage of life and function, for the most part each pursues its life isolated as a single individual. A few are of sufficiently large size to be appreciable to the unaided eye, but the vast majority are minute and difficult of observation. In their structure they follow in general the organization of the ordinary cell and consist essentially of a mass of protoplasm (*cytoplasm*, *sarcode*), with differentiations for functional purposes (*organelles*) of variable character, constancy and prominence in the different examples. Thus the sarcode is at times separable (as in *ameba*) into an internal distinctly granular portion known as the *endosarc*, and a peripheral clearer portion known as the *ectosarc*; a cell-membrane in some instances is a well-marked feature, while in others (naked forms) it is absent; and in some of the free-living protozoa special external covering (*case*, *exoskeleton*) of chitinous, siliceous or chalky composition, incloses the protozoon. Of the various parts the nucleus is, after the cytoplasm, the most constant (absent in *monera*?), varying much in appearance, shape, size, and number in the individual forms (*single nucleus* of variable size and shape; *double* or *dimorphic nucleus*, a macronucleus of vegetable character, a micronucleus with creative function; *polymorphous nucleus*, multiple nuclear granules more or less widely distributed in the cytoplasm). Not uncommon examples of specialization are met in the *contractile vacuoles* (respiratory, excretory), in pigment spots (sensory?), in mouth-like ingestion foci (*cytostome*) and their pits (*cytopharynx*) on the surface of many forms with relatively firm cell-membranes, in the anus-like excretory point (*cytopygon*) of the same forms, or the peripheral motor organelles (*cilia* and *flagella* of infusoria and the flagellates), in the sucking tubes of the suctor, the hook-like fixation apparatus of gregarines, etc.

Motile protozoa move by a variety of ways. The naked rhizopods move by a peculiar rolling due to currents in the internal substance of the cell or by the protrusion of the cell substance as extensions or *pseudopoda*, these movements being always accompanied by change in the cellular shape of the animals. Ciliates and flagellates move through the activities of the special cuticular appendages known as cilia and flagella; and in the stationary examples the movement of these appendages is utilized for the creation of currents in the surrounding liquids to aid in the acquirement of nutritive materials. Gregarines move by the excretion of material upon a particular side of the animal, the expelled matter forcing the cell body passively in the opposite direction. Finally many forms are fixed, or movable only by passive convection in the medium in which they happen to exist.

The acquisition of nutritive material presents even more variation in the different forms. Those having rigid body-walls and no naked portion of such covering (*cytostome*) acquire all their matter by osmotic process, excretion being accomplished essentially by the opposite means. Those with cytostome; whether fixed or motile, may take in nutritive material also by osmosis, but particularly are able to ingest particles coming in contact with the naked protoplasm at the site of the cytostome; and these usually have about such stoma a collar of cilia or flagella (*peristome*) through the active movement of which currents are generated carrying the particles in contact with the uncovered protoplasm and into the pit of the cytostome. In the naked rhizopods particles brought into contact with any part of the surface may sink into the sarcode, the acquirement of such particles being often aided by the animal thrusting its substance out and around the former in the form of pseudopods. Excretion in the forms fixed in shape and provided with definite wall is sometimes accomplished through the cytostome, or through other special unclad portion of the surface (*cytopygon*), or in more or less measure by exosmosis. Excretion in the naked forms is by the reverse of the engulfment of particles; that is, by the flowing of the cell mass away from excretory particles extruded to the surface of the animal.

The reproduction of protozoa, at one time regarded as extremely simple (by ordinary cell division either amitotic or mitotic, or by budding), is really in its variability and possible complexity one of the most interesting phenomena con-

nected with life. Cell-division, direct or mitotic, gives origin to two or more individuals of the same character as the parent. The entire parent cell may thus be utilized in the offspring or some *residual portion* incapable of further life may be left. On the other hand, the offspring may present characters differing from those of the parent cell, and whether produced intracellularly or, as in budding, at the periphery of the parent, these are spoken of as *spores*; these subsequently, directly or after special changes, developing into the original type. Multiplication is often without the least approach to the fertilizing processes seen in higher forms of life; but not infrequently an approach to sexual fertilization is seen. Thus two similar individuals (*isogamous*) may merge before cell division occurs; or two individuals of the same kind but different in appearance (*anisogamous*) may similarly unite before multiplication. Such union of two parent forms if permanent, both thus being sacrificed in the succeeding division, is spoken of as *copulation*; if only temporary as *conjugation*. Further, alternation of generations is not uncommon, in which in one generation multiplication may proceed by ordinary division or by budding, with or without previous copulation or conjugation; while in an intermediate generation male and female elements may form; and maturation of the female cell by extrusion of nuclear matter, with fusion of the male cell with the matured female cell, may take place as in the higher forms of life.

Protozoa have a wide distribution in nature, commonly live in fresh or salt water, in moist soil and similar locations, and are not infrequently parasitic.

The following outlined classification has been adopted with a few minor modifications from Braun (*Die tierischen Parasiten des Menschen*: 1903):

- I. Class: *RHIZOPODA* (Sarcodina): protozoa whose cytoplasm forms pseudopods; often forming cases of chitinous, siliceous or chalky composition (exoskeleton), which permit the extrusion of the pseudopods either generally over the surface or at special points; with single or multiple nuclei.
  - Order 1. *AMEBINA* (Lobosa): naked or with a simple case made up of foreign particles glued together; pseudopods irregular and shred-like or digitate; contractile vacuole present; usually a single nucleus; living in fresh or marine water, in earth or as parasites.
  - Order 2. *FORAMINIFERA* (Reticularia): generally with chalky and commonly many-chambered exoskeleton, permitting the extrusion of the pseudopods generally over the surface or only at one part; pseudopods filiform and often anastomosing; contractile vacuole absent; nucleus generally multiple; marine.
  - Order 3. *HELIOZOA*: naked, or with a chitinous or radially constructed siliceous exoskeleton; pseudopods filiform and often supported by cross filaments, but not tending to anastomosis; contractile vacuole present; nucleus single or multiple; fresh water.
  - Order 4. *RADIOLARIA*: cell mass with radial filiform pseudopods and with a "central capsule" surrounding nucleus; exoskeleton common, chalky, composed of radially or tangentially arranged pieces, or as lattice-work; contractile vacuole absent, but in the peripheral cytoplasm always vesicles; marine.
- II. Class: *FLAGELLATA* (Mastogophora): protozoa with one or more long, lash-like extensions (flagella) which are employed for progression or for food acquirement; cytostome frequently present; contractile vacuole always; naked, or with definite cell-wall (cuticle), or with case; single nucleus; living in fresh and salt water or as parasites.

This class is subdivided into a number of orders of which only the following are here of interest: *Monadida*; *Polymastigida*; *Heteromastigida*.

- III. Class: *SPOROZOA*: living only as parasites in the cells, tissues and hollow viscera of other animals, receiving their nutriment only by osmosis; cell-surface covered by an ectoplasmic layer or cuticle; in stage of full development without cilia; very rarely with pseudopods; flagella only in the male germ (sporozoite); single or multiple nucleus; reproducing characteristically by encysted spores (sporocyst) and germs or sporozoites formed either directly from the parent or indirectly through the spores.
  - A. Subclass: *TELOSPORIDIA* (Cytosporidia): usually of fixed cell-outline, rarely ameboid; in developing stage always with a single nucleus; as adults are endocellular parasites; sporulation as end of life-cycle.
    - Order 1. *GREGARINIDA*: bodies of fixed, usually elongate shape, with definite cell-wall; endocellular in stage of development; in intestine or stomach of invertebrates, especially in arthropods, and as intestinal parasites have special fixation apparatus; isogamous (or without conjugation); spores encysted, usually containing sporozoites, without polar bodies.
    - Order 2. *COCCIDIIDA* (Coccidiomorphia): bodies of fixed spherical or ovoid shape; endocellular, not living free in cavities; anisogamous; spores encysted, without polar bodies, usually with numerous sporozoites.
    - Order 3. *HEMOSPORIDIA*: parasitic upon blood-corpuscles of vertebrates, ameboid; with alternation of generations and of host; sporulation asexual in one generation, in intermediate host sexual; spores not encysted.

- B. Subclass: NEOSPORIDIA: in developing stage with multiple nuclei; shape of cell variable; sporulation throughout life-cycle and before completion of development, the entire cell not being used in spore formation.
- Order 1. MYXOSPORIDIA: spores encysted, with or without terminal appendage, usually with two or four polar capsules (containing threads like a nematocyst); ameboid; multinuclear; free in hollow viscera (urinary-, gall-bladder) or in the tissues as in fish.
- Order 2. MICROSPORIDIA: spores encysted, without filament, with one polar capsule; living especially in body tissues of arthropods.
- Order 3. SARCOSPORIDIA: generally elongate parasites of muscle fibers of vertebrates, rarely also in the connective tissues; spores naked, without polar body (?), usually kidney-shaped or falciform (all within the cyst wall of parent).
- IV. Class: INFUSORIA (Ciliata); cell-body usually of fixed shape, with ciliæ; contractile vacuole; usually with cytostome; almost always with macronucleus and micronucleus (dimorphic); living free in water or as parasites. The orders: *Holotricha*, *Heterotricha*, *Hypotricha*, and *Peritricha*, are based on the arrangement of the ciliæ.
- V. Class: SUCTORIA: cell-body provided with suctorial tubes; contractile vacuole, macronucleus and micronucleus; without cytostome; usually ectoparasites in water-animals and plants; early stages ciliate and not infrequent parasites of infusoria.

# I. CLASS: RHIZOPODA;

Order: AMÆBINA;

Genus: *Amæba*.

*Amæba Coli*, Lösch.

(*Amæba dysenteriae*; *entamæba coli*, Schaud.; *entamæba histolytica*, Schaud.; *entamæba hominis*, Casagrandi.)

The *amæba coli* is a naked, colorless rhizopod, of long oval or pyriform shape, extending one or two coarse lobose pseudopods when active, spheroidal when quiescent; varying between 10 and 50 micromillimeters in diameter; cytoplasm showing but little of the clear ectosarc in rounded form but with ectosarc evident toward anterior end and in pseudopods when active; endosarc finely granular and usually containing numerous foreign particles (as fecal waste, bacteria, and blood cells or their débris); usually several non-contractile vacuoles; single rounded, vesicular nucleus, showing a nucleolus in stained preparations; moving by formation and retraction of pseudopods and more actively progressive by the peculiar rolling movement caused by currents within the cell mass, known as *ameboid*; reproducing ordinarily by cellular division, but apparently also by endogenous formation of young amæbæ in quiescent, encysted parent amæba (cf. Casagrandi and Barbagalli, Schaudinn); parasitic in human colon and regarded as the cause of "amebic dysentery."

The *amæba coli* is commonly observed in the stools and in the wall of the colon of human beings subjects of so-called *amebic* dysentery.

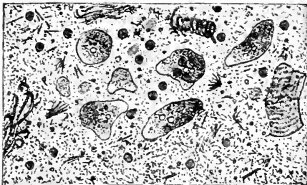


FIG. 140.—*Amœba coli* in fecal matter; several of the parasites show included red blood cells. In the fecal matter in addition to the granular (largely bacterial) matter, one may note red blood corpuscles, muscle and elastic tissue, a vegetable spiral duct and numerous crystalline bodies.

Its demonstration in the dejecta is to be made by placing a bit of fresh warm material upon a slide, and covering with slip without further precaution than to obtain a thin and even layer. The blood-stained mucus in the dysenteric stool is especially suitable for the purpose. The parasite may be recognized by the characters above outlined, but for easy recognition and identification it is desirable to obtain the cells in active motion. They are very susceptible to the influence of cold and then quickly become quiescent; it is therefore best to insist that the stool should be quite

fresh and warm from the body or with its warmth artificially maintained, and that the observation be made in a warm room or with the aid of a warm stage. In such case the movements are usually quite active and

readily draw attention to the parasites; but even if slow and uncertain they may be surely determined by making outline drawings of a cell at frequent intervals for a few minutes and comparing these. It is difficult to reinduce movement when the animals have become chilled. In such preparations of dejecta, especially after they have become cold, encysted forms (spherical and with an apparent cell-wall) are often to be observed; this condition being apparently assumed as more resistant to the influences of heat, cold, drying, etc., and believed to be that most favorable for prolongation of life and the usual condition of amœbæ in transmission from one to a second host. In the walls of the colon the amœbæ are found in the necrotic matter of dysenteric ulcerations and in the surrounding tissues of the mucosa and submucosa, often being seen in great numbers in the lymph spaces of the latter layer, even at some distance from the base of the ulcer. (For the general description of the pathological changes, symptoms, and treatment of amebic dysentery reference should be made to the special section dealing with this disease (p. 104).

Errant examples of the parasite are most frequently met in the pus of secondary hepatic abscesses in dysenteric subjects and in the bordering hepatic tissue, and in the lung and expectoration where such abscesses have perforated the diaphragm and penetrated the lung. Smith and Magnenat have described a case of acute cystitis with amœbæ coli in the urine in a dysenteric subject, the cystic symptoms and the amœbæ from the urine disappearing with the disappearance of the intestinal amœbæ and recovery from the dysentery. It seems quite probable that the so-called *amœba urogenitalis* of Baelz and others may be similarly regarded, being morphologically identical with amœba coli. So, too, it seems quite possible that the amœbæ met by Flexner and by Kartulis in abscesses of the jaw may be looked upon as errant amœbæ coli. The transmission of amœba coli is by no means clear. It is thought that the parasites when passed from the intestine of the original host assume an encysted condition and are carried to the alimentary canal of the second individual in impure water, or perhaps by foods tainted by such water or by contact with insects carrying the amœbæ from the dejecta in which they originally existed. Arrived in the large intestine the parasite multiplies by division; Grassi believes, too, that he has seen endogenous formation of small amœbæ within the encysted form.

There is considerable difference of opinion as to the pathogenic importance of the amœba coli. On the one hand, there are those who insist that this organism is directly and solely responsible for the changes met in amebic dysentery, basing their views mainly upon the large number of

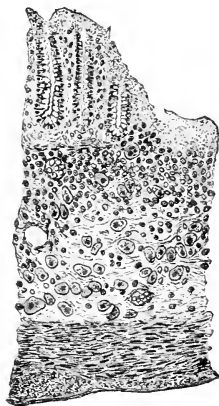


FIG. 141.—Section of wall of colon at border of dysenteric ulcer; showing loss of substance of mucosa, thickening of submucosa from inflammatory changes and in the latter large numbers of amœbæ coli.

the parasites to be found in the stools and in the diseased tissues, upon the coincident disappearance of the amœbæ with the recovery of the patient from the dysenteric attack, and upon similar data. On the other hand, it is well known that amœbæ morphologically identical are not infrequently met in individuals presenting no symptoms of dysentery and without history of dysentery; it has been impossible to carry out conclusive inoculation experiments because it has been impossible to isolate the organisms from bacteria, with which of course they are associated in the infected fecal matter; and further it has been shown that certain bacteria of the group of Shiga's bacillus are capable without the presence of amœbæ of inducing dysenteric results. There are those persons who would in consequence of such objection recognize the existence of innocuous and pathogenic types of amœbæ coli, the true dysenteric form according to these individuals being mainly distinguishable by the blood cells and blood débris which the parasites have by their phagocytic action included in the sarcode. Others would not insist upon such a division; but regard the amœbæ as exercising perhaps some minor influence in producing the irritative and inflammatory changes in the intestine and elsewhere, but as being of more influence as the conveyers of the more important bacteria into the intestinal walls, and into the liver and other sites of secondary changes in dysenteric individuals. It has been objected to this view that a large proportion of such secondary lesions, as amebic abscesses of the liver, are bacteriologically sterile; yet it must be acknowledged that sterile cultures from such lesions may have been due to fault of method or fault of time. At least the experience of the writer, who in about a dozen such abscesses has not failed to demonstrate the existence with the amœbæ of some form of bacterium (usually one of the colon group or ordinary pyogenic group), would suggest this; and he is disposed to give credence to the last idea, accepting, however, the probability that the amœbæ, although of minor irritative influence, do possess some agency in this direction in combination with the more important bacterial infection.

Schaudinn and other authors distinguish especially between the amœbæ met in individuals free from evidence of dysentery and those met in dysenteric conditions. Schaudinn, for example, speaks of the first as *entamoeba coli* and the second as *entamoeba histolytica*. Recently, too, there has arisen a feeling that among the definitely dysenteric amœbæ several species are included, workers in our Philippine dependency recognizing as a separate species certain smaller parasites than the ordinary amœba coli. The experience of J. Allen Smith in Texas tends to confirm the view that certain cases of dysentery are characterized by such small parasites in contrast to others in which the organisms conform to the ordinary mensurations.

A remedial measure of considerable value which should be mentioned in addition to the procedures recommended in the section upon amebic dysentery (p. 104) is the use of infusions or the fluid extract of the *chaparra amargosa*, a simarubacea growing in Mexico and Texas, given preferably by the mouth but also employed in enemata. The infusions of the entire plant seem to be more valuable than the fluid extracts of the pharmaceutical houses; and, given in wineglassful measure three or four times daily,

often show extremely satisfactory results, causing the disappearance of the symptoms of amebic dysentery and at the same time the rapid disappearance of the parasites from the stools. As prophylactic measures, the thorough filtration or boiling of all water used for drinking in infected districts and the protection of articles of food from access by flies and other skatophagous insects which may bring the amebæ to such substances, should be enforced.

*Other types of amæba in man:* Smith (personal communication) has once encountered an amœba of medium size, with long delicate pseudopods, in considerable numbers in the pus of a subphrenic abscess which was regarded as *amaba gracilis*. The bodies known as *Leydenia gemmipara* obtained in serous fluids from the pleura and peritoneum in cancerous affections of these parts and looked upon by several observers as amebic in character are doubtful; it being held by a number of authorities that they are no more than altered cells, probably of endothelial nature. The amebiform bodies encountered in the oral secretions and about the teeth by several observers, having been classified as amœbæ under the names *amaba dentalis*, *a. buccalis*, *a. gingivalis*, are likewise of uncertain nature. Ijima has described under the name *a. miurai*, certain amebiform bodies found in the fluid from a case of adenocarcinoma (originally thought to have been an endothelioma) of the peritoneum and pleura, and in the last day or two of life also in the feces of the same case, each showing a peculiar protuberance at one side with fine, thread-like pseudopods projecting from it. Such an appearance is met in certain marine amœbæ; but the case must as yet be held in doubt, awaiting confirmatory instances, and as open to the same objections offered to *leydenia gemmipara*, Schaudinn.

## II. CLASS: FLAGELLATA; SUBCLASS: *FLAGELLIDIA*;

Order: POLYMASTIGIDA; MONOSTOMEA;

Genus: *Trichomonas*.

*Trichomonas vaginalis* (Donné),

*Trichomonas intestinalis* (Leuckart, etc.).

Colorless protozoon, usually of a pyriform or spindle shape with the posterior end pointed, but not bearing a flagellum, and with the anterior end more obtuse or rounded and bearing three flagella which are apt to be merged at the base and which are easily lost; about 20 or 25 micromillimeters in length and 8 or 10 in width at thickest part; along the body starting from the base of the flagella runs an undulating membrane in a somewhat spiral manner to the posterior end; this in motion gives the effect of a series of cilia with which it is apt to be confused; thin cuticle; finely granular cytoplasm; nucleus vesicular, at anterior end; cytosome sometimes evident; multiplication by cell division; encysted forms not known surely.

Originally it was believed that *trichomonas vaginalis* was to be met solely as a parasite of the vaginal canal, in women with an acid, spumous type of vaginal secretion, occurring mainly in young females, but possible at any time of life and irrespective of conditions of pregnancy or of actual menstruation at the time of examination. A number of instances of its occurrence in the urinary bladder and urethra of the male have, however, been recorded; and at present it is generally accepted that the organism described under the name *trichomonas intestinalis* is identical. It is believed, too, that similar organisms met in the mouth, stomach, and in pulmonary cavities and described as separate species are really of the same nature. It may be accepted, however, that it most frequently occurs in the vaginal secretions. It is apparently unproductive of any important results. There need be no definite vaginal discharge or any recognizable degree of vaginal catarrh; doubtless in the existence of such condition the parasite may have some minor influence in maintaining the irritative state, but is apparently unable or unlikely to initiate it. So, too, while symptoms of cystitis coexisted with the presence of the parasite in the bladder and urine in certain cases, it is not to be held as

the essentially influential agency in their production. In the intestine it is present along with other protozoa, either with diarrheal symptoms or entirely without any symptoms.

As to its origin in the human host practically nothing is known. For the intestinal occurrence it is natural that unfiltered water should have been suspected and several instances suggestive of this mode of acquirement have been published; perhaps females may by the use of similarly unclean water in bathing the genitals transmit it to the vaginal mucous membrane; and it has been suggested that it may be air-borne to explain its occasional occurrence in the lung. Experiments seeking to transmit the organism by the mouth to lower mammals have failed. Its persistence is variable. Often in young females it would appear that the menstrual discharge mechanically rids the canal of the parasites, yet it may in instances not infrequently be found persisting over months and years. It is not difficult of destruction by the use of alkaline vaginal douches or douches of very hot water. In the intestinal occurrence it often disappears without treatment of any kind; and generally the use of calomel and intestinal antiseptics is followed by the early disappearance of the organism.



FIG. 142.—*Trichomonas vaginalis*.

Genus: *Lamblia*.

*Lamblia intestinalis* (Lambl),

(*Cercomonas intestinalis*, Lambl, 1850—nec 1875; *Hexamitus duodenalis*; *Dimorphus muris*; *Megastoma entericum*; *m. intestinale*).

Colorless, pyriform protozoon with anterior end rounded; posterior end continued into a pointed extremity bearing a pair of flagella; the anterior end has one side concave, with a raised border or lip, one pair of flagella arising at the anterior border of this disk-like concavity, and two pairs together from its posterior margin; thin cuticle covering the finely granular cytoplasm, but not preventing limited change of body shape from time to time; a dumb-bell-shaped nucleus at anterior about middle level of the mouth-like concavity; reproduction not completely known, but encystment occurs; encysted form appearing as oval cells, 10. : 7. microm., with thick wall and containing organism with recognizable features.

This parasite has been frequently found in the intestine of man and of a number of lower mammals, notably rats. Its common habitat is in the upper part of the small intestine, where it adheres to the epithelial cells by means of its mouth-like disk. For the most part its presence is not attended by symptoms, but it has been found not infrequently in individuals who are afflicted with some type of diarrheal condition, and has been suspected of bearing some causal relations. Especially in such cases the parasite is met lower down in the intestinal canal and is found with greater frequency in the dejecta. In the stool it is apt to be found in the encysted form and is supposed to be transmitted in this condition. Man is thought to acquire the parasite from the rat, such an animal perhaps having soiled

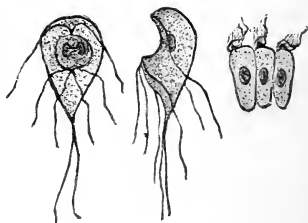


FIG. 143.—*Lamblia intestinalis*, showing disk-surface and lateral views in larger figures, and three epithelial cells with attached examples to the right.



some article of food, as bread or one of the cereals, with its dejecta in which the parasites have existed in encysted form. It has been reported from a wide distribution, but most of the cases recorded have been European.

Order: MONADIDA; Family: CERCOMONADIDÆ;

Genus: *Cercomonas*.

*Cercomonas hominis* (Davaine),

(*C. intestinalis*, Lambl, 1875; *trichomonas intestinalis*, Leuckart, 1879; *monocercomonas hominis*; *cincomonas hominis*; *trichomonas hominis*).

A small flagellate, colorless, pyriform, 8.-10.-12. microm. long, with round anterior and pointed posterior ends; anterior end with one long flagellum; no undulatory membrane; at base of flagellum a cytostome (?); one or two non-contractile vacuoles toward posterior end.

Cercomonads probably identical with this form are not infrequently met in wide geographical distribution coming from the intestine of human beings, mainly in diarrheal affections; but there is no clear evidence of their bearing causal influence. A number of instances in which cercomonads have been obtained from other than intestinal situations, as in the sputum of persons with pulmonary cavities, and from pleural exudates, should probably be referred to this species.

Grimm in 1804 recorded the discovery of a large type of monad in the pus of a lung and liver abscess in a Japanese, to which Blanchard has given the name *monas pyophila*. Including the long, flagellum-like anterior end, it varied from 30. to 60. microm. in length, and had the appearance of a large spermatozoon, the body of the cell being of a cordate shape. It was quite active, was able to retract the flagellum, and was provided with a very definite cell-membrane. The recorded case is isolated and further observations are needed for fuller knowledge.

Family: RHIZOMASTIGIDA;

Genus: *Trypanosoma*.

*Trypanosoma gambiense* (Dutton); (*Sleeping Sickness*).

Elongate flagellates, two to four times the length of a human red blood-corpuscle: with an undulatory membrane extending the length of the more or less curved and slightly spirally twisted, delicately fusiform body, and prolonged into a long, single flagellum at one end; at base of undulatory membrane at non-flagellate end is a small refractile body regarded as a centrosome or by others as a micronucleus; an oval nucleus near middle of body; reproduction by cell division (believed to take place after sexual fertilization and ookinet formation in the intestine and body of the human tse-tse fly, the definitive host); parasitic in human blood and cerebrospinal fluid (human beings regarded as the intermediate hosts).

Trypanosomes of different species have been discovered in the blood of frogs, birds, rats, rabbits, guinea-pigs, of horses suffering from diseases

known as surra, douraine, mal de caderas, of cattle with tse-tse fly disease; and within recent years the form above outlined has been encountered in the human blood by Nepveu, Dutton, and Manson. Quite recently Castellani has demonstrated with much uniformity the presence of the same species in the cerebrospinal fluid of individuals, almost invariably negroes, presenting the symptoms of the African *sleeping disease*;

and has apparently led to the solution of this mysterious and fatal affection, the etiology of which has hitherto been entirely a field for



FIG. 144.—*Cercomonas hominis*; A, larger and B, smaller varieties.



FIG. 145.—Trypanosomes; showing ordinary structural appearance on left; in middle a trypanosome undergoing division; on the right an agglutinated group.

surmise. This malady is practically unknown save in Africa; and is but infrequently met in Europeans in the locations where it is endemic. It runs a rather long course, the period of incubation being of months or even a year or two in duration, the period of the active manifestations extending over three, four or five months in addition before the fatal termination. When fully developed the disease is essentially a meningo-encephalo-myelitis and is characterized by progressive lassitude and mental dullness, deepening into somnolence and coma, by tremors and uncertainty of gait and eventually inability to progress, edema of moderate degree, especially about the face, irregular temperature, rapid pulse, emaciation, glandular enlargements, a papulovesicular eruption becoming superficial ulcers, and eventually death. L. Lorand ascribes the malady to a degeneration of the thyroid consequent on the action of the toxins generated by the trypanosime.

The parasites are readily found in the cerebrospinal fluid and at times also in the blood. They may also be obtained in the juices removed by a hypodermic syringe from the enlarged lymph nodes. They are to be sought for in ordinary fresh moist films or in dried preparations just as one examines the blood for malarial hematozoa; and in dried and fixed films are stained in the same manner as are the malarial organisms. In the moist film the trypanosomes may be seen winding their way among the corpuscles, imparting a slight motion to the cells. There can be little doubt from the symptomatic picture of the disease and from the experimentally discovered fact that the pathogenic power of an allied species (*T. evansi*, of the rat, cultivated by Novy on agar with defibrinated rabbit blood added—the first successful artificial cultivation of a protozoon) may be lost by prolonged artificial culture, that the effects of the parasite are largely the result of some toxin in some way elaborated by it. It has been shown both by clinical studies and by experiments upon monkeys that this species is transmitted by the human tse-tse fly (*glossina palpalis*), thus closely following the transmission of *t. brucei* in cattle which is conveyed by *glossina morsitans*, the tse-tse fly of cattle. It is of interest to know that Schaudinn has recently suggested that spirochetæ, regarded as of bacterial nature, and known best in connection with relapsing fever, are in reality trypanosomes. Trypanosomes of the rat and of horses are known in this country, but as yet no instances of human trypanosomiasis have been published from the United States or elsewhere in America.

In the treatment of sleeping sickness a number of trypanocides are available, as members of the benzidin group such as trypan red, various arsenical compounds, among which atoxyl (an aniline compound of arsenic acid) has attained especial prominence, and various basic anilines, as well as mercurial. Atoxyl, administered by subcutaneous injections in doses of 0.4 or 0.5 gm., has been widely used with marked benefit, but cannot be employed with impunity because of serious complications to which it gives rise. The method best suited to escape such consequences is to administer the chemical in the dose mentioned for two days, then to permit an interval of ten or 15 days for the elimination of the drug, repeating this plan for months. In the intervals mercurials may be given or some of the anilines. The combination of trypanocides in this fashion is further

sustained by the fact that Ehrlich has shown in experimentations that trypanosomes may attain immunity against the various chemicals used for their destruction and that such resistance may be carried forward for many generations; but that where a strain of trypanosomes is encountered which is resistant to a given chemical it may be readily destroyed by some other type of trypanocide. After administration of atoxyl the parasites are soon diminished or even lost from the fluids used for examination, but improvement of the general condition of the patients is not likely to be recognized until after some weeks of persistence of treatment.

Prophylaxis must of course be of great importance. It contemplates the destruction of herbage about the damp places where the human tse-tse flies around, the careful screening of all dwellings, the proper protection of those exposed to their bites by suitable clothing, the removal of all infected individuals from districts where the disease does not ordinarily prevail to situations where the disease is endemic, and the destruction of such animals (crocodiles) from which the flies seem ordinarily to obtain the blood which seems necessary for their life and reproductive ability.

Order: HETEROMASTIGIDA; Family: BODONIDÆ;  
Genus: *Bodo*.

*Bodo urinarius* (Hassall),

(*Cystomonas urinaria*; *plagiomonas urinarius*; *p. irregularis*).

Small, colorless flagellates, pyriform, about 10 microm. in length, with two flagella at the anterior rounded end, and with the posterior extremity prolonged into a flagellum-like point; no undulatory membrane; nucleus at anterior end.

These minute objects, with rapid, darting motion, are to be met in the urine, especially in that of persons showing albuminuria or having some admixture of pus and similar inflammatory products from disease along the urinary tract. By some it was held that they do not properly belong in the urine, but when found have fallen from the air into the urine and there rapidly multiplied; this objection being especially directed to the *bodo* described by Hassell; but in case of the organisms in an instance described by Künstler, regarded generally as identical, there could be no doubt, as they were found in the freshly passed urine. Nothing is known of the mode of acquirement; and there is no evidence pointing to any pathogenic influence possessed by these organisms, which are probably only accidental parasites finding favorable nutritive matter in the altered urine.

### III. CLASS: SPOROZOA (PSOROSPERMIASIS); SUBCLASS: TELOSPORIDIA.

The sporozoa embrace large numbers of parasites, comparatively few of which, however, are known to occur as parasites of the human body. The class is subdivided into two great groups: the *telosporidia* (cytosporida), which are usually of fixed cell-shape, rarely ameboid, always mononucleated in the early stages and living at least in their developing period as cellular parasites, sporulation occurring at the close of the life-cycle; and the *neosporidia*, with variable shape, polynucleated in the earlier stages, and with sporulation proceeding during the growth of the individual cell. Numerous studies of recent years have led to stubbornly debated claims of different authors that parasites of this class and mainly of the first subclass are responsible for the production of cancers, perhaps also of sarcomas and as well perhaps of a group of infectious fevers, including smallpox, scarlet fever, measles, and possibly yellow fever. Discussion of these claims and description of the supposed parasitic organisms cannot properly here be entered upon for the reason that too much uncertainty, and in some instances improbability, are as yet attached to these views.

While a few types of neosporidia have unquestionably been established as parasites in man, the bulk of interest attaches to the telosporidia. This subclass includes three important orders, the *gregarines*, *coccidia*, and *haemosporidia*, which in many particulars of their life-history, especially in their modes of reproduction, present analogies. Of these three orders the gregarines are but little likely to be met in human pathology, being well known as parasites of the cells lining the intestinal tract of arthropods, but unknown as parasites of the mammals and vertebrates generally. Briefly, these organisms are elongated cells of fixed shape and with a rather thick cell-membrane, often with division of the cell into an anterior portion known as the *protomerite* and a posterior (nucleated) known as the *deutomerite*, some forms showing a special part of the anterior division adapted for fixation purposes known as the *epimerite*. They are incapable of much motion, being slightly contractile and slowly progressing by secreting material at one part, which matter serves to push the cell in the opposite direction. The parasite gains entrance to a cell in the host's intestines as a naked and motile young form known as a *sporozoite* (or as a *merozoite*, which is not quite synonymous) and in its growth comes to occupy more and more of the cell space until it breaks through the cell-wall into the intestinal lumen.

The coccidia, on the other hand, are of an oval or spherical shape, without divisions of the cell, fixed in their shape, thick-walled and non-motile; and are endocellular parasites throughout the life-cycle. These are encountered not infrequently in the higher animals and man; most of the debated instances of parasitism above referred to being suspected of belonging to this order.

The third order, that of the haemosporidia, includes a number of sporozoa of small size, living in the blood cells and blood plasma of various vertebrates including man, as well as in a few invertebrates; are more or less mobile, often amebiform.

Two modes of reproduction are possible for each order, *schizogony* (a sexual division) and *sporogony* (sexual and complicated process of multiplication). The gregarines are true cellular parasites only in their early state, the adults either with or without conjugation reproducing after having broken from their cellular position to the lumen of the host's intestine, whence they may be carried with the intestinal material to the exterior to enter under favorable conditions a second host. The coccidia are completely intracellular parasites both in the adult period and after schizogony or after the sporocyst stage, their mode of transmission to a second host being practically unknown (but probably as spores). The haemosporidia in schizogony are the parasites of the blood cells and plasma of one host; but undergo sexual reproduction after withdrawal by some blood-sucking organism, as a mosquito or tick, in whose economy the sporocyst stage and formation of sporozoites take place.

In schizogony, these telosporidia after full development undergo nuclear division by a process reminding one of fragmentation, the nuclear fragments being distributed in the cytoplasm (often especially toward the periphery of the cell); where small portions of the protoplasm of the parent surround each (*merozoites*, in distinction to the sexually produced *sporozoites*, but otherwise not necessarily different, both being able to grow into the adult sporozoon); these with rupture of the parent cell-wall escape, enter a second cell, and grow directly into the adult form. This asexual form of reproduction is of special importance in the explanation of the continued infestation of the original host in such case where the sporocysts are carried from the host or form only in a second host. In sporogony, the difference rests in the fact that of the merozoites formed in schizogony some grow into large ovoid cells (*female, macrogametocytes*); while others develop into cells (*microgametocytes*) which give origin to a number of small, flagellate male elements (*microgametes*). The latter penetrate the macrogametes as a copulatory act; nuclear fusion of the male and female cells and division by repeated mitosis take place; and within the body of the fertilized female cell spores are formed (*sporocyst*), which may be of constant and specific appearance in different cytosporidia. Within each of these spores there then develop germs or *sporozoites*, which later, upon rupture of the spore-membranes and wall of the macrogamete, escape, and under suitable circumstances penetrate a proper cell, where they again grow into adult sporozoa.

Order: COCCIDIE; Family: TETRASPOREA;  
Genus: *Coccidium*.

### 1. *Coccidium cuniculi* (Leuckart),

(*Psorospermium cuniculi*; c. *oviforme*).

A coccidium ordinarily parasitic in the epithelium of the gall-ducts of rabbits; reproduction by schizogony and by sporogony; in latter after growth of macrogamete (*oocyte*) this appears as a long, oval cell, surrounded by a well-marked, double-contoured cell-wall with distinct micropyle at the narrower end, measuring 33.-46. microm. in length and in breadth, 15.-28. microm.; this is filled with a uniformly granular cytoplasm and has a faint greenish tint; after fertilization by microgamete entering through the micropyle the cytoplasm shrinks toward the

middle of the oocyte (*oocyst*) and gradually develops from its substance four oval bodies (spores), no residual substance remaining; by this time the parasite has increased to such extent as to have broken through the wall of the infested epithelial

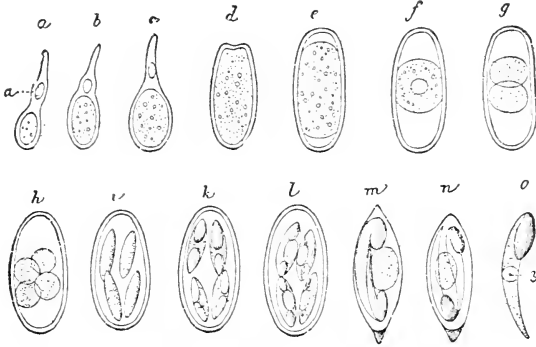


FIG. 146.—Development of *coccidium cuniculi*; a, b, c, young coccidia in epithelial cells of gall duct; d, e, f, fully grown encysted coccidia; g, h, i, k, l, showing development of spores; m, isolated spore, greatly magnified, showing the two falciform bodies (*pseudonavicella*; *sporozoites*) in natural position; n, a spore compressed so as to separate the two sporozoites; o, a sporozoite or falciform body with  $\gamma$ , its nucleus. (From Railliet after Balbiani.)

cell and falls into the bile duct of the host; if favored it is hence carried to the exterior by way of the gall-passages and intestines, where in water or in moist earth the process continues, to the formation within each spore of two falciform bodies (sporozoites) with a small amount of residual material; the spores with contained sporozoites being swallowed by a second host with water or food, the sporozoites are freed by the digestive juices and in unknown way enter the bile ducts to invade the lining epithelial cells and grow into adult coccidia.

As above indicated, the common habitat of this organism is in the biliary epithelium of rabbits; it has also been observed in the cells lining the upper part of the intestine. A few cases have been reported as occurring in man, in whom too the most frequent situation has been the liver. It causes considerable epithelial destruction and regeneration with inflammatory changes in the deeper portions of the wall of the infested ducts; often eventually leading to the formation of tumor-like nodules from the size of miliary tubercles to that of a small cherry, which are apt to present a cheesy center made up of shed epithelial cells, pus, coccidia in varying stages of development, and granular and fragmentary detritus. The general appearances of these nodules and the evidences of epithelial prolifera-

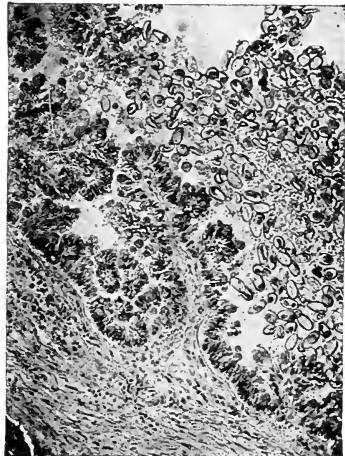


FIG. 147.—*Coccidium cuniculi*: photomicrograph of portion of wall of gall duct and of its distended lumen, from rabbit. In lumen are seen great numbers of coccidia together with cellular debris; the fibrous thickening of the wall duct, the villous growths into the interior, the proliferated epithelial lining, at places showing the contained coccidia, are distinct.

tion in them have long caused the idea of some relation with cancerous formations, and have been suggestive of much of the effort to establish the latter as the result of some allied form of cellular parasitism. Coccidiosis is often fatal to the infested rabbits, is readily transmitted, and when introduced into a rabbit hutch may quickly devastate it of its inhabitants. In several of the human instances the hepatic coccidial nodules have been large enough to have been recognized in life, were accompanied by more or less hepatic enlargement and by both local hepatic and peritoneal symptoms and by general phenomena. In one of these (Silcock's case) foci of the same nature were found in the spleen. The parasite is widely distributed over the world.

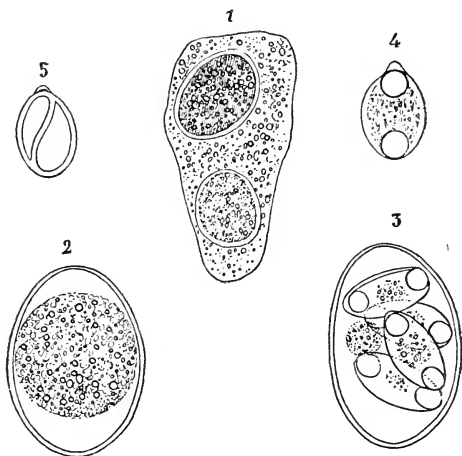


FIG. 148.—*Coccidium hominis*, from intestine of rabbit: 1, a degenerate epithelial cell containing two coccidia; 2, free coccidium from intestinal contents; 3, coccidium with four spores and residual substance; 4, an isolated spore; 5, spore showing the two falciform bodies— $\times 1140$ . (From Railliet.)

## 2. *Coccidium hominis* (Rivolta),

(*Cystospermium hominis*; *coccidium perforans*).

A coccidium differing from the *coccidium cuniculi* by the more rounded shape and smaller size (24.-35. : 12.-20. microm.) of the oocyst, by the persistence of a small amount of residual substance in the latter after spore formation, as well as by its shorter period of sporulation and its more common habitat in the epithelium of the intestinal wall.

This species, like the preceding, is most common in rabbits, in the small intestine, causing a rapid, severe, and often fatal inflammation and diarrhea. The parasites may be found as intracellular parasites or oocysts or sporocysts within the intestinal lumen or in the crypts of the mucous membrane where they have fallen after breaking through the wall of the cells formerly infested. Examples of this species with the same pathological results have been found in horses, goats, cows, sheep, in the hog, mole, marmot, guinea-pig, and weasel; and in man a few instances of intestinal disease have been reported with findings of this parasite.

A number of cases originally regarded as coccidial infections of man, as that of Wernicke, of Rixford and Gilchrist, and of others, are now known to be due not to coccidia, but to blastomycetes and blastomycetoid organisms of a number of different types. So, too, the older views as to the coccidial nature of certain bodies found in the tissues of such lesions as Paget's disease of nipple are no longer held. Rarely the *coccidium bigeminum*, ordinarily found in the intestinal villi of dogs and cats, has been met in the same site in man; it is known by the usual occurrence of the coccidia in twos as the result of cellular division. The effects of internal coccidiosis in general are those of intense irritation of the part invaded and are not infrequently fatal.

Order: HEMOSPORIDIA.

In this order are included a number of sporozoa, parasitic in the blood of various animals, of much importance in comparative and in human pathology. To man the species met in the different clinical forms of malaria, *plasmodium malariae* (of quartan), *plasmodium vivax* (of tertian), and *plasmodium præcox* of estivo-autumnal malarial fever), are of extreme importance and interest; for the consideration and description of which the reader is referred to the section of this work dealing with malarial fever.

It has been suggested, following the discovery of organisms very similar to those of malarial fever in the blood of individuals suffering from beri-beri, that perhaps this disease is also one induced by some form of the hæmosporidia; but the general feeling in this connection is that the findings referred to were merely the result of a coincidence of malaria in persons afflicted with beri-beri. In cases of leukemia certain bodies met in the white blood cells (and in the cells of some of the organs, as spleen), have been tentatively regarded as forms of hæmosporidia; but questions of artificial production by cellular degeneration have not been eliminated and it is impossible to accept as yet claims for their parasitic nature and identity.

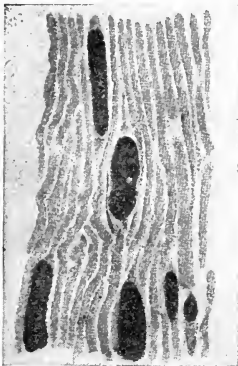


FIG. 150.—Longitudinal section through muscle of hog containing Miescher's tubules. 30/1. (From Braun.)

of the parasite (*pansporocyst*); spores covered with a membrane and dividing into sporozoites (sometimes with a polar, thread-bearing capsule) complete organization, modes of development and transmission as parasites not known.

These intramuscular or intermuscular parasites are known (Miescher's or Rainey's tubules) in hogs, sheep, beef, deer, mice, and other animals, and

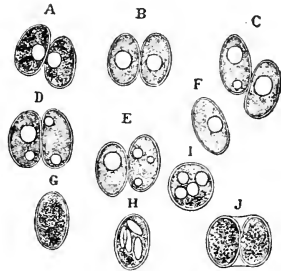


FIG. 149.—*Coccidium bigeminum*, from intestinal villi of dog: A, B, C, D, E, double coccidia showing development of spores; F, G, H, I, isolated coccidia; G, showing granular protoplasm; H, showing four spores and residual mass; I, same as H, seen from pole; J, two coccidia in a single envelope— $\times 650$ . (From Railliet.)

SUBCLASS: NEOSPORIDIA;  
Order: SARCOSPORIDIA.

Sporozoa whose early stage is passed in the muscle of vertebrates; usually elongate, tubular, oval, or rounded bodies of variable but small size (when fully formed sometimes large enough to be detected by the unaided eye and mistaken for trichina cysts); forming spores throughout the life of the ameboid parent, these contained in the body of the parasite.

in some of the birds (duck). It is impossible at present to distinctively arrange and classify them. They may be of minute size or may appear as small yellowish-white foci in the flesh of the infested animal, sometimes in large numbers. They are probably of long duration in the host, and are sometimes distinctly calcified and gritty. Microscopically they are doubtless often passed over as areas of disintegration and calcified granular detritus. When comparatively young, however, the pansporocyst should be recognized by its delicate but clear membrane surrounding the elongated or rounded mass of finely granular protoplasm, in which occur numerous rounded bodies, each with a definite membrane (spores), many of which, particularly toward the middle of the mass, contain a number of falciform or reniform sporozoites.

A very few instances of human infestation involving the skeletal muscles, the heart (or in one case recorded by Kartulis, the liver) have been published.

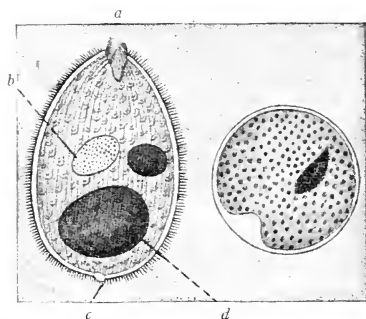


FIG. 151.—*Balantidium coli*, free and encysted: *a*, cytostome; *b*, nucleus; *c*, cytopig; *d*, masses ingested. (From Braun, after Cassagrandi and Barbagallo.)

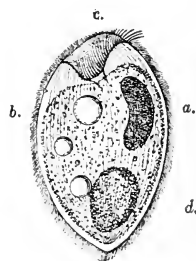


FIG. 152.—*Balantidium coli*: *a*, nucleus; *b*, vacuoles; *c*, cytostome, with pit and peristome; *d*, ingested material. (From Leuckart.)

#### IV. CLASS: INFUSORIA;

Order: HETEROTRICHIDA; Family: BURSARIDÆ;

Genus: *Balantidium*.

##### 1. *Balantidium coli* (Malmsten).

Infusorium of ovoid shape; colorless; 70.-100.: 50.-70. microm.: with finely granular cytoplasm containing fragments taken up from surrounding intestinal material; a clear ectoplasm showing numerous longitudinal striations; cuticle firm and provided generally with cilia which run in rows longitudinally between the striations; with the anterior end somewhat more rounded than the posterior; at anterior end a funnel-shaped cytostome ending in a short pharynx and surrounded with cilia, which anteriorly and along the left border are especially large (*peristome*); cytopig at posterior, obtusely angular extremity; usually to slightly contractile vacuoles; macronucleus and micronucleus toward the anterior end, the former large and bean-shaped, the latter small and spherical; reproducing by longitudinal division and also by conjugation and encystment (but the subsequent life of the encysted form is not known).

This parasite has been found in the intestines and dejecta of hogs and man. It is not an uncommon parasite of man; has been found in connection with various types of diarrheal affections and also in persons who were entirely free from intestinal symptoms. It is of wide distribution, and while not published extensively from this country, is by no means uncommon.



It is of doubtful pathogenic importance. It is not known how it is obtained, but presumably with unfiltered water. It is not difficult to destroy it by administration of dilute hydrochloric, acetic, or salicylic acid or similar remedies.

2. A considerably smaller species (*balantidium minutum*) with a more pointed anterior and rounded posterior extremity, measuring 32. : 20. microm., has been encountered twice from the human intestine in connection with diarrheal symptoms. In one of these cases a bean-shaped infusorium with cytostome and peristome along the concave border (*nictotherus faba*) was also discovered, thus far being recorded from but this single instance.

## II—VERMES OR WORMS.

Worms are bilaterally symmetrical, more or less elongate animals, without articulated members, with the body usually showing a number of apparent rings or segments (metameres), and are either flat or cylindrical in transverse section. Excluding a number of classes as of no interest in the present connection, there remains the classes of Flat worms and Round worms as including various genera and species in which occur human parasites.

### A—PLATHELMINTHES (FLAT WORMS).

Several orders of flat worms live free, non-parasitic lives, the Turbellarians and Nemertines, both being recognizable by the presence of hair-like projections upon the surface of the body, as well as by their habitat (in water) from the parasitic flat worms, which at least in their adult stages have the cuticle free from hairs (small spines sometimes found, however). With the exception of a few comparatively rare intermediate forms (grouped under the name *Cystodaria*) the parasitic flat worms are divided into two orders: the *Trematodes* or Fluke-worms (with but an incomplete digestive canal, without anus), and the *Cestodes* or Tapeworms (devoid of any digestive tube).

#### I—TREMATODES OR FLUKE-WORMS.

Flukes are naked and unsegmented flat worms, usually of the shape of a leaf or of the tongue (occasionally pyramidal or elongated and more or less cylindrical), provided with incompletely digestive canal (without anus), possessing one or more suckers and occasionally hooklets; with but few exceptions hermaphroditic, and as a rule presenting a complicated series of metamorphoses in their development. Most examples are comparatively small worms.

In structure it is customary to speak of the surface upon which the genital pore opens as the ventral; this surface commonly also showing the orifices of the mouth and one or more suckers. On the dorsal surface in many occurs the opening of a small canal, spoken of as *Laurer's canal*, of unknown function. The surface of the body is covered by a fairly thick and firm cuticle, often provided over variable areas with small spines or tubercles. Beneath the cuticle over its internal surface is spread the *superficial muscular layer* (not showing the structure of muscle of higher animals, however), with longitudinal, circular, and diagonal fibers, while within this along the borders (and in thin strands or as isolated dorso-ventral fibers running through the general body tissue) is met the *parenchymatous muscle*. The general internal tissue of the body, spoken of as the *parenchyma*, is a fine reticular connective tissue which closely surrounds the various organs.

The suckers of trematodes vary in number and arrangement on the anterior and posterior extremities, the ventral surface and its borders, and in a few cases also on the dorsal surface. Usually the oral opening is surrounded by such a sucker (*oral sucker*) and in addition, in the forms likely to be met in man, on the ventral surface some distance posterior to the oral sucker is a second, known as the *ventral sucker* or *acetabulum*, in the median line. Not infrequently in the lining of these suckers, on their lips or on the cuticle close to the lips, chitinous hooklets are to be found.

The alimentary system consists of a mouth, opening in the oral sucker and situated terminally or on the ventral surface of the anterior end of the worm. This cavity continues into a dilated tube with thick walls, the *pharynx*, this extending posteriorly by a short, straight, and usually narrow *esophagus*, which divides in the anterior portion of the body into the two *intestinal tubes* or *ceca*; these running,

one in each longitudinal half of the worm, either as simple tubes or more or less branched, to the posterior portion of the body, where they end blindly (in a few cases joining in posterior portion to form a single cecum). About the esophagus more or less developed single-cell digestive glands are attached to the outer surface. It may readily be seen that in such arrangement the mouth must serve both for ingestion and as an anus. At the posterior extremity of the body as a small orifice the *excretory pore*, which serves as outlet for a series of more or less complex canals for the convection of the fluid waste, which begin in various parts of the body in special "excretory cells"—the arrangement representing a low nephridial apparatus.

Flukes present a fairly definite but low type of nervous system. A ganglionic mass on each side in the cephalic end sends three trunks to the posterior end of the body (*dorsal, lateral, and ventral*), there existing commissures in the head, about the pharynx, and anastomosing branches between the longitudinal trunks, as well as a complex system of fine branches to the various parts of the body tissues. Moreover in the larval stage (as in the cercarial period) there may be seen in this or that species certain superficial pigmented spots regarded as *eye-spots* or *ocelli*, examples of low sensory apparatus; these disappear from the adult animal.

The reproductive system is highly developed, showing numerous minor variations in the different genera and species. In general, taking the more common hermaphroditic forms as examples, the following features may be recognized. The sexual organs for the most part lie in the so-called "middle area" of the body, that is between the two lateral ceca. Usually there are two testicles, variable in size and shape, most frequently situated in the posterior portion of the worm; a seminal duct arising from each passes forward and toward the middle line to unite in a *vas deferens*, which extends anteriorly to continue into a thick-walled pouch (*cirrus pouch*), the latter opening on the ventral surface at the *genital pore*, either in close proximity or in common with the vulvar opening of the female canal. This genital pore is generally in the anterior portion of the body, in or near the median line, and near (anteriorly, laterally, or posteriorly) the acetabulum. A thread-like organ, the *cirrus* or *penis*, of variable size and appearance, lies in this pouch or is sometimes seen protruded externally from it. Internal to the vulvar orifice the *vaginal tube*, here spoken of as the *metratrum*, is continuous with the uterine tube, which extends in numerous folds or coils in the area between the intestinal ceca, generally anterior to the testes and ovary. At its inner end the uterus communicates in the midst of a mass of cells, spoken of as the "shell gland" (the function of which is not known and very probably not that of furnishing shell material in the formation of the ova), with three other tubes. One of these is the *oviduct*, a simple tube arising from the ovary (which as a rule lies anterior to the testes, is smaller than the latter, single, and generally rounded or lobate). Another is the *vitelline duct*, formed by the union of two tubes passing transversely to the median line from the *yolk glands* (or *vitelline follicles*), which are distributed in greater or less number along the lateral margins of the body; the third is a small canal, Laurer's canal, opening on the dorsum of the worm, and often distended in its inner end into a *receptaculum seminis* (which in adult specimens is found filled with sperm). Where these four tubes unite in the shell-gland (uterus, oviduct, vitelline duct, and Laurer's canal) is commonly a small vesicle known as the *oötype*.

Both cross-fertilization and self-fertilization probably take place (but in the former case it is not likely that the sperm enters by way of Laurer's canal as once believed, but rather by the vagina and through the uterine canal to the oötype and receptaculum seminis). After formation the ovum is passed from the uterine canal by route of the vagina and vulvar orifice, either without evident development or in some instances with a well-formed embryo showing within its wall. Commonly the ovum has at one end a small opening (*operculum*) covered until the escape of the embryo by a lid (demonstrable where not evident by the addition of a little sulphuric acid to the medium containing the ovum under observation). For the development and emergence of the embryo the egg (directly in case of the ectoparasitic forms; after discharge from the definitive host in case of endoparasitic trematodes) should be deposited in water. Here the embryo leaves the ovum as a ciliated and minute form (*miracidium*), swimming free for a time, and eventually under favorable circumstances gaining entrance into the tissues of a first intermediate host (molluscs, leeches, worms, arthropods, fish, amphibia). In this host after simple intermediate development the larval forms may remain encysted until the host is devoured by the definitive host, in whom they develop into the adult and sexual trematodes; or, as is quite common, one or two larval generations may be formed in this first intermediate host, a variable (multiple) number of larval flukes (*cercaria* being in such case produced from the one original ovum. These then entering a second intermediate host and becoming encysted, remain until it is eaten by the definitive host, when the larvæ grow into the adult form. In this latter and more complicated form of development the miracidium penetrates from the water in which it has been swimming into the tissues of the first intermediate host (as a snail) and becomes encysted (*sporocyst*), dividing into a number of individuals known as *rediae*. These, escaping from the distended cyst, penetrate further into the tissues of the host, each again to become encysted and multiplying into a number of the final larvæ which have

somewhat the shape of a tadpole and are known as *cercariæ*. These by disruption of the tissues of the host escape to the water and for a time live a free life; eventually, if fortunate, gaining entrance in unknown manner to the tissues of the second definitive host (snail, mollusc, or other water animal); lose their tails and again become encysted (in absence of such second host may become attached to a blade of grass or other foreign body and become encysted upon it, the cuticular glands furnishing a substance hardening into a resistant cyst wall), remaining in this situation until the second host (animal or grass blade) is devoured by a definitive host. Arrived in the alimentary canal of the latter the cyst-wall is dissolved off by the digestive juices and in unknown manner the larva finds its way to its preferred habitat and grows into the adult. (In case of ectoparasitic flukes the development is usually direct and simple, often in close proximity to the adult from which the ovum was derived—as upon the surface or gills of some fish.)

Adult flukes are parasitic upon a wide range of animal life, including the higher animals, fish, amphibia, reptiles, and birds, living both as ectoparasites and endoparasites. The endoparasitic forms prefer commonly the passages and cavities in communication with the exterior, alimentary system (any part from mouth to anus and branches), the urinary passages, bladder or kidneys, the respiratory tubes or air-sacs of the lungs. The genitalia, the blood-vessels, the eye, brain, cysts in the subcutaneous tissue and general tissues, may be the seat in this or that case of one or other species.

The varieties affecting man are comparatively few, of the very great number in existence; the most common parts of the human body to be infested being the intestine, gall-ducts, respiratory tubes, and blood-vessels.

The following classification of trematodes is here adopted from Braun with minor modifications:

I—*HETEROCOTYLEA*: ectoparasitic, with well-developed fixation organs (suckers, hooklets); distinguished by the excretory pores opening on the dorsal surface in anterior end, and by their direct development; living upon the gills of fishes (fresh-water and marine), but also in the urinary bladder of amphibia and esophagus of turtles.

II—*ASPIDOCOTYLEA*: endoparasitic; low trematodes with large ventral fixation apparatus; excretory pore posterior; and direct development; parasitic in the intestines or gall-bladder of turtles, marine fishes, as well as in certain mussels (in excretory organs of latter especially).

III—*MALACOCOTYLEA*: flukes with fixation apparatus usually consisting of one or two suckers (oral and ventral); accessory suckers rare (only in *Holostomidae*); without chitinous hooklets; intestine usually divided; oral opening at anterior end (except *Gasterostomum*); male and female organs usually in one individual; genital pore usually on ventral surface; excretory pore opening at posterior extremity; always endoparasitic and almost without exception in vertebrates, especially in intestine.

According to their mode of development this order is divided:

A—*METASTATICA*: development direct, without intermediate generations, but with two larval forms (miracidium, cercaria) and one change of host.

Family: *HOLOSTOMIDÆ*. (Genera: *Hemistomum*, *Holostomum*, *Diplostomum*, *Polycotyle*.)

B—*DIGENEA*: development complicated by the introduction of sexless, self-multiplying generations (sporocyst, redia) and with one or two changes of host.

Family 1—*PARAMPHISTOMIDÆ*: with posterior terminal sucker above which on dorsal surface the excretory pore opens; genital pore in median line of ventral surface in anterior third of body; intestine without appended glands; pharynx carried far anteriorly, generally into oral sucker; hermaphrodites. (Genera, *Paramphistomum*, *Gastrothylax*, *Gastrodiscus*, *Cladorchis*, etc.)

Family 2—*FASCOLIDÆ*: with oral sucker and acetabulum; excretory pore opening at posterior extremity; genital pore on ventral surface or on lateral or

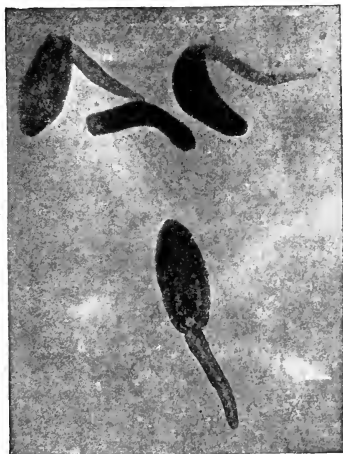


FIG. 153.—A group of free cercariæ.

posterior border; intestine usually without glandular appendages; hermaphrodites. (Genera, *Fasciola*, *Fasciolopsis*, *Paragonimus*, *Opisthorchis*, *Clonorchis*, *Cotylagonimus*, *Dicrocoelium*, etc.)

Family 3—SCHISTOSOMIDÆ: approaching *fasciolida* in structure, but with sexes separate. (Genera, *Schistosomum*, *Bilharziella*.)

Family 4—DIDYMOZOONIDÆ: a poorly defined group whose representative (*Didymozoon*, *Nematobothrium*) live in couples in cysts in the superficial tissues or mouth or gill cavities of marine fishes; sexes separate.

Family 5—RHOPALIDÆ: hermaphrodites; approaching *fasciolida* in structure; with oral and ventral suckers and with two retractile snouts; genital pore in anterior third of body on ventral surface; genital glands in posterior portion. (Genus, *Rhopalias*.)

Family 6—GASTEROSTOMIDÆ: with ventrally situated oral opening and single intestinal sac. (Genera: *Gasterostomum*, in intestine of fish; here too the form *Bucephalus*, known only in cercarial stage.)

Family 7—MONOSOMIDÆ: approaching *fasciolida* in structure, but with only anterior sucker; genital pore ventral, in anterior third of body; genital glands usually in posterior third of body; intestine with or without glandular appendages; posterior portions of intestine often uniting into a single cecum.

Order: MALACOCOTYLEA; DIGENEA;

Family: PARAMPHISTOMIDÆ;

Genus: *Gastrodiscus*.

***Gastrodiscus hominis* (Lewis & McConnell),**

(*Amphistomum hominis*).

Measures 5.-8. mm. long and 3.-4. mm. wide; body consists of anterior rather slender conical part and a posterior broader, circular disk-like part with its ventral surface concave, each portion of about equal length; ventral sucker posterior; anterior sucker at anterior extremity, elliptical, transverse; genital pore about middle of anterior portion at level of bifurcation of esophagus; pharynx with two lateral pockets; fresh specimen reddish; ova ovoid, operculated, averaging 150.: 72. microm.

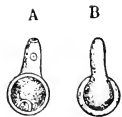


FIG. 154.—*Gastrodiscus hominis*: enlarged twice; A, ventral and B, dorsal view. (Railliet, after Lewis and McConnell.)

This fluke has been met twice in man (in an Assamese and in a Hindoo) in large numbers in the cecum and colon, fixed by its posterior sucker to the intestinal mucous membrane. It is probably only an accidental human parasite, its proper definitive host being in all likelihood some other mammal. The two individuals in whom it was encountered were dead from cholera and nothing is known of the symptomatology induced by the worm itself. The intestinal mucous surface of these subjects were dotted over with numerous small red foci looking like the lesions caused by some of the blood-sucking parasites.

Genus: *Cladorchis*.

***Cladorchis Watson* (Conyngham),**

(*Amphistomum watsoni*).

Worm pear-shaped, measuring 8 mm. in length, 4 mm. thick at thickest part, 5 mm. wide at posterior third, tapering anteriorly to 2.5 mm. It is rounded dorsally and is flattened or slightly concave ventrally; is of a dark slate color, the cuticle marked by transverse ridges which are best defined on ventral surface. Anterior sucker small, terminal, set in a small sulcus which extends ventrally. Posterior sucker larger, circular, subterminal. Genital pore rather prominent, in median line, about one-fifth the length of worm from head end. Pharynx small; short, muscular esophagus; cecal branches extend in lateral fields nearly to posterior end. Ovaries small, median, just in front of posterior sucker; shell-gland at same level, to the side of ovary; vitelline glands marginal from level of cecal division to posterior fifth of worm. Testes in median line, ventral to uterus, compactly arranged, occupying the middle third of length. Uterus plicated through the greater part of median field. Ova ovoid; 30.: 80. microm.

This parasite was discovered in the dejecta and in the upper part of the small intestine of a negro from German West Africa, the patient dying

from an intense diarrhea. Thus far this is the only instance of the recognition of the parasite.

Family: FASCIOLIDÆ;

Genus: *Fasciola*.

***Fasciola hepatica*** (Lambé),

(*Distomum hepaticum*; *d. cavia*; *fasciola humana*; *cladocælium hepaticum*; the common liver fluke).

A comparatively large fluke, measuring 20.-50. mm. long and 8.-13. mm. wide, of leaf shape, with anterior extremity prolonged into a small cone; greatest width of body about anterior third of length; light brown color; cuticle provided with alternating transverse rows of spines, extending on ventral surface to the posterior level of testes, but not as far posteriorly on dorsal surface; oral sucker at anterior end of cephalic cone, inclining to ventral surface (1. mm. in diameter); ventral sucker near anterior end behind cephalic cone (1.6 mm. in diameter); well-developed pharynx and short esophagus; intestinal branches extending nearly to posterior extremity of worm, approaching the median line posteriorly, with few median and numerous lateral branches; excretory pore at posterior extremity, with well-developed system of excretory tubes; genital pore in median line anterior to ventral sucker; two large, highly branched testes, mostly posterior to the transverse vitelline duct; ovary single, branched, lying in front of testes and to one side of median line; uterus coiled into a rosette, showing as a brown spot (from ova contained) just back of ventral sucker on ventral surface; vitelline glands numerous, ranging along each lateral border from the level of the ventral sucker to the posterior extremity of the worm; vitelline ducts running transversely at about the end of the anterior third of body; ova yellowish-brown, oval, operculated, measuring 130.-145. microm. long and 70.-90. microm. wide.



FIG. 155.—*Fasciola hepatica*: natural size; cleared in oil. (Gould after Leuckart.)

This parasite is a common one in sheep; and is also found in cattle, deer, goats, hogs, horses, asses, camels, rabbits, guinea-pigs, and other mammals. It is occasionally (23 cases recorded according to Braun) met in man. It has a wide geographical distribution over the world, and is not infrequently found in this country. Its usual habitat is the gall ducts; but it has been encountered ("errant flukes") in the gall-bladder, intestines, in the portal and other venous channels, and rarely in subcutaneous cysts. The life-history has been unusually well followed out and may be outlined as follows. The ova after oviposition are carried by route of the gall-passages and intestines to the exterior where, if fortune favors, they are deposited in water. Here the embryo develops and escapes through the operculum, swimming about as the free miracidium until it can gain entrance to the tissues of a snail (some form of *Limnæa*), in which the sporocyst is formed and the rediæ (half a dozen or more) develop; these presently emerge from the parent cyst and wander further into the tissues of the snail, each then again encysting and dividing into a number of cercariæ. By this time probably the snail has died from the effects of the parasites; and its tissues disintegrating, the tadpole-like cercariæ escape in the water and for a time swim free. These later become attached to a blade of grass or other similar object, lose their tails, and become covered with a hard covering, a product of their cuticular glands, and thus remain protected for a variable time. Later the definitive host, probably a sheep, devours the grass and with it the cercaria, which on arrival in the alimentary tract has its covering removed through the action of the digestive juices and in some manner (whether by the common duct into the hepatic duct and its radicals, or by boring through the intestinal wall into the portal vein and

thus carried to the liver, is unknown) finds its way into the bile ducts, where it grows into the adult worm. Doubtless in the occasional cases of human acquirement it is similarly conveyed upon some water vegetables, as cress, to the stomach. In the lower animals there are often found large numbers (from dozens to hundreds) of the flukes in the bile ducts of a single host; but in man, while this is possible, ordinarily one finds but very few.

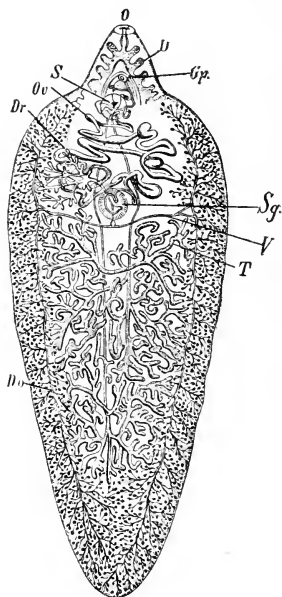


FIG. 156.—Showing the sexual organs of *fasciola hepatica*; 5 x 1. O, oral sucker; D, intestinal caeca; Do, vitelline glands; Dr, ovary; Ov, uterine canal; T, testis; Sg., "shell gland," V, transverse vitelline duct; Gp, genital pore; S, ventral sucker. (Braun.)

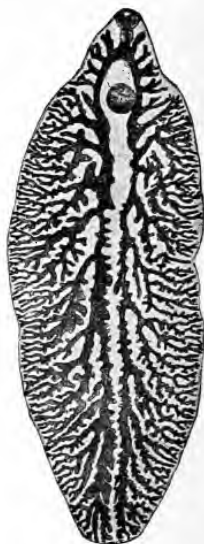


FIG. 157.—Showing the alimentary system of *fasciola hepatica*, other parts suppressed; 5 x 1. (From a fluke as yet undeveloped in its sexual organs.) (Braun.)

The effects as seen in the lower animals—quite similar in general character in case of man—are of little severity and may well be overlooked in case the parasites are but few; but when the parasitism is of serious grade a condition often proving fatal, and known in sheep as "liver-rot," is induced. The worms are well anchored in the small tubes by their suckers and posteriorly inclined cuticular spines, and the ducts are often at site of the parasites distended into small cysts. The flukes suck blood from the walls of the ducts, and cause considerable biliary and peribiliary irritation with fibrous thickening of the walls and a cirrhotic extension into the surrounding hepatic tissue, which undergoes atrophic and degenerative changes in some degree. Hemorrhages into the ducts often occur, constituting one of the influences producing the more or less severe anemia characterizing the affection. Gallstone formation is quite common,

mixed concretions of biliary matter, mucus, and blood remnants sometimes forming complete casts of greater or less length of the infested ducts. Thus biliary obstruction with the development of icterus, and portal interference with the production of ascites, are common. At first, the liver is enlarged, but eventually becomes atrophic from the cirrhosis and tissue degeneration. Digestive disturbances with anemia, loss of flesh and enfeeblement appear, and eventually death is apt to take place from exhaustion. These symptoms, usually first appearing in a month or two after the parasites gain access to the liver, are evidence of an active but definite inflammatory and degenerative hepatic affection; and for the absolute diagnosis of the nature of the case recourse must be had to the microscopic examination of the dejecta for the ova of the parasites. The majority of instances encountered in man have been met at autopsy, without previous suspicion of their existence.

It is probable that the cases of flukes in the eye and described under the names *Distomum oculi humani* (Ammon, 1833), *Monostomum lentis* (v. Nordmann, 1832) and *d. ophthalmobium* (Diesing, 1850), were but errant and immature examples of the worm under discussion.

**Treatment.**—But little of value can be said in connection with treatment of the condition, the most important measures being prophylactic and looking to the restriction of the flocks and herds from pastures on badly drained land where the common grass snails are known to be present. In active treatment it must be clear, because of the position of the flukes, that difficulty exists to reach the parasites with medicaments capable of destroying them. Numerous remedies have been suggested for the affection in sheep and the same substances may be tried in human cases. Salol is said to have lethal effects upon the trematodes in the liver, but must be given in comparatively large doses and persistently; the ethereal extract of male fern is sometimes employed, as well as naphthalin, various salts of iron, sodium chlorid, and a number of other substances. In addition measures may be indicated to combat the digestive and nutritive symptoms, but these are in no wise peculiar.

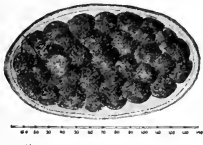


FIG. 159.—Ovum of *Fasciola hepatica*.



FIG. 158.—Miracidium of *Fasciola hepatica*. (Gould after Leuckart.)

Genus: *Fasciolopsis*.

*Fasciolopsis buski* (Laukester),

(*Distomum buski*; *d. crassum*).

Length variable, 24–70. mm.; breadth, 5.5–14 mm.; lance-shaped; narrowing more rapidly anteriorly than posteriorly, maximal width about middle of length; no cephalic cone; brownish; cuticle without spines; oral sucker small, on ventral surface of anterior extremity; ventral sucker two or three times as large as oral, placed near anterior end and showing a saccular distention extending posteriorly; very short esophagus back of the fairly developed pharynx; the two ceca without branches; genital pore at anterior border of acetabulum; cirrus pouch large; testicles branched in posterior part of body, one back of the other; uterus in anterior half

of body, tortuously coiled; ovary at middle of length of body, to right of median line; Laurer's canal present; vitelline follicles numerous along lateral margins from level of ventral sucker to posterior extremity; the transverse vitelline ducts at equator of body; ova brownish, ovoid, operculated, measuring 12.5 : 7.5 microm.

Busk's intestinal fluke has been encountered but a few times (six or eight) in the small intestine of man in India and China. An unpublished case, in a Lascar sailor, has been reported personally to the writer from Galveston, Texas, by J. J. Terrill. Practically nothing is known of the intermediate stages and their hosts; but the common diet of India and China (fresh vegetables, fish, oysters, etc.) doubtless furnishes the means of convection to man and accommodates the cercariæ.

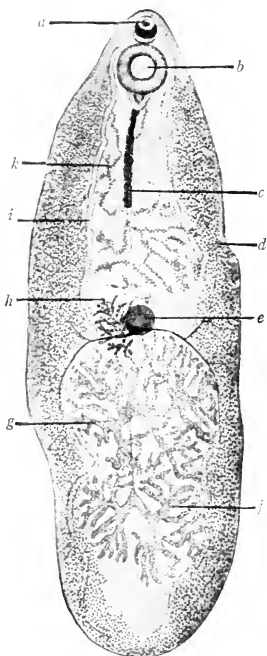


FIG. 160.—*Fasciolopsis buski*: *a*, oral sucker; *b*, acetabulum; *c*, cirrus pouch; *d*, vitelline glands; *e*, "shell-gland"; *f* and *g*, posterior and anterior testes; *h*, ovary; *i*, cecum; *k*, uterus. (Braun, after Odhner.)

coiled tube; vitelline follicles numerous along the lateral borders of body from anterior to posterior end, reaching well into the middle area of the worm, their transverse ducts at about the equator of body; ova yellowish, oval, thin-walled, operculated, averaging 94. : 57. microm., but varying on either side of these figures, in length and breadth.

The Asiatic lung fluke inhabits the bronchial tubes of man, cat, dog, hog, and mouse; it has also been recorded from the bronchial tubes of a tiger in the zoological gardens of Amsterdam; the worm has also been found in the brain and a few other situations in the body. Usually there are small bronchiectatic cysts in the lungs, in which in the midst of a reddish-brown mass of blood and mucus the worms are found, generally two in each such cyst; the pulmonary tissue about these cysts, fibroid or

A shorter and broader fluke, known as *distomum rathousi*, has been regarded by many as identical with Busk's fluke; but aside from its different shape there are a number of features (testes in same level in posterior part of body; ovary back, instead of in front of the transverse vitelline ducts; and the very small size of the oral sucker) which seem sufficient to separate the species. This form has been met three times in the human intestine in China and North Borneo.

Genus: *Paragonimus*.

*Paragonimus westermanni* (Karbut),

(*Distomum westermanni*; *d. ringeri*; *d. pulmonale*; *d. pulmonis*; *mesogonimus westermanni*; the lung fluke).

Length 8.-10. mm.; breadth (at anterior third) 4.-6. mm.; nearly as thick as broad; reddish-brown cuticle with scale-like spicules; oral sucker ventral at anterior end; ventral sucker just anterior to middle of length; pharynx small, esophagus short, ceca run a zigzag course rather close to the lateral margins to near the posterior extremity; the excretory system showing a large canal or vesicle in median line of body and numerous branched; excretory pore on ventral side of posterior extremity; genital pore just back of border of ventral sucker on one or other side; cirrus and pouch lacking; testes tubular, branched, back of transverse vitelline ducts, not quite on equal level, one on each side of excretory vesicle; just back of ventral sucker, in front of vitelline ducts, near equator of body, on one side of the median line lies the branched ovary; on the other side lies the uterus as a fairly closely



otherwise changed, and the bronchial mucous membrane in the vicinity of the cyst more or less inflamed. From tissue destruction in the cyst-wall bronchial hemorrhages from time to time are apt to take place, constituting

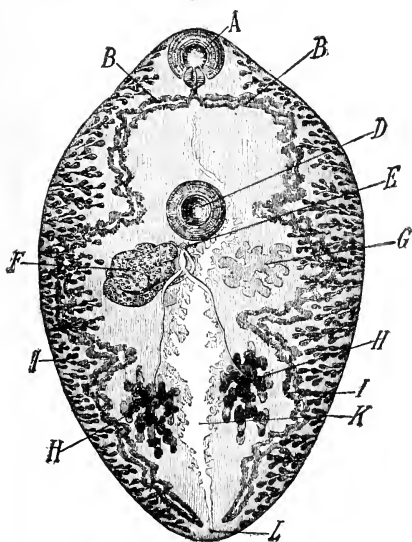


FIG. 161.—*Paragonimus westermani* (ventral view).  $10 \times 1$ . A, oral sucker; B, ceca; D, acetabulum; E, genital pore; F, uterus; G, ovary; H, testes; I, vitelline glands; K, excretory canal; L, excretory pore. (Braun, after Leuckart.)



FIG. 162.—*Paragonimus westermani*; photograph from a sexually immature specimen.

the most pronounced evidence of the affection and leading to some degree of anemia. As a rule, the patient suffers but little inconvenience beyond a slight cough, and the hemoptysis rarely requires special attention. In

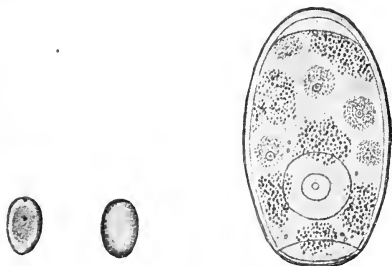


FIG. 163.—*Paragonimus westermani*: natural size; to left showing ventral surface; to right showing dorsal surface. (Braun, after Katsurada.)

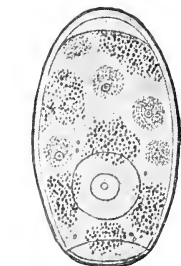


FIG. 164.—Ovum of *paragonimus westermani*, from sputum;  $1000 \times$ . (Braun, after Katsurada.)

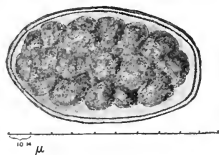


FIG. 165.—Ovum of *paragonimus westermani*, from sputum.

the sputum the ova are readily found, their recognition establishing the diagnosis. These are known to develop in from six to eight weeks in water into a ciliated miracidium; but all further knowledge as to the intermediate

stages and their hosts is lacking. The parasite has been encountered most frequently in Japan, Formosa, Korea, and China; in the hog, dog, and cat, it is known to exist in this country, and one imported case in man has been reported from Portland, Oregon.

The condition is not incurable; inhalations of balsamic material, of chloroform short of anesthesia, and similar measures holding out some promise of success in destroying the parasites and allowing them to be dislodged by coughing efforts, providing they are not too deeply encysted in the bronchial pockets. Nothing is known of the modes of acquirement of the worm and hence no known prophylactic measures exist at present.

Genus: *Opisthorchis*.

1. *Opisthorchis felineus*.

(*Distomum conus*; *d. lanceolatum*, v. Siebold, 1836; *d. sibiricum*; *d. tenuicollis*; the European cat fluke.)

Variable in size according to the state of contraction (8.-11. mm. long; 1.5-2 mm. broad); yellowish-red and nearly transparent; flat, lanceolate; anterior end constricted and attenuated into a cone; posterior end more obtuse; cuticle without spines; oral sucker toward ventral surface at anterior extremity; ventral sucker at base of cone (about one-fourth of body length); pharynx and esophagus of equal length, both rather small; ceca comparatively straight and unbranched, reaching

nearly to posterior extremity and often seen filled with blood; excretory pore terminal, and its vesicle (tubular) winds in median line between the testes and branches in front of the anterior testes; testes in posterior parts of body, one anterior (four-lobed) to other (five-lobed); cirrus and pouch absent; genital pore in median line, in front of ventral sucker; ovary in median line, anterior to testes, slightly lobate; receptaculum seminis prominent; uterus anterior to ovary and testes, coiled in middle third of body; vitelline follicles occupy about middle third of body, beginning anteriorly at level of ventral sucker; oval in shape, operculated, containing ciliated embryo when deposited, 30. : 11. microm.



FIG. 167.—*Opisthorchis felineus*: from liver of cat. 10×1. (Braun.)



FIG. 166.—Ovum of *opisthorchis felineus*: 830×1. (After Braun.)

This worm has been met as a parasite inhabiting the gall ducts in the cat, dog, fox, glutton, and in man. It has been reported from Russia, Siberia, France, Holland, Germany, Hungary, Italy, and Japan. In man it has been encountered in 6.45 per cent. of autopsies at Toms, constituting the most frequent example of all verminous parasites. It causes dilatation and thickening of the walls of the gall ducts with surrounding diffuse and focal atrophic and degenerative changes in the hepatic substance, leading after a period of hepatic enlargement to a condition of cirrhotic reduction in size, with icterus, ascites, and marked digestive and nutritive faults, anemia and exhaustion.

As many as several hundred parasites have been obtained from a single liver. Azkanazy, in two cases, has met carcinoma of the liver associated with conditions distinctly due to the parasites. In several cases reported by the latter writer and Winogradoff a few flukes were encountered also in the intestines in addition to those found in the usual position in the liver. Nothing is known of the intermediate stages and of their hosts.

In 1895 Ward stated that he had found this species in a cat in Nebraska. Further study has shown, however, that Ward's parasite is not identical, although closely allied; this species is known as *opisthorchis pseudo-felineus*.

## 2. *Opisthorchis noverca*.

(*Distomum conjunctum*; the Indian liver fluke.)

A small fluke, 10.-12. mm. long, 2.5 mm. broad; lanceolate, more attenuate anteriorly than posteriorly, but rather narrow toward each end; cuticle covered with small spines; oral and ventral suckers close to each other, former subterminal; pharynx globular, esophagus short, ceca slender, unbranched, reaching close to posterior extremity; genital pore in median line directly in front of ventral sucker; the two testes in posterior third of body, one on each side of median line, overlapping (anterior to left, posterior to right of median line) slightly lobate; cirrus absent; ovary in median line in front of testes; uterus in front of ovary, coiled in middle field and reaching anteriorly to ventral sucker and testes; excretory pore terminal, its tube (vesicle) branching in Y-shaped manner between the ovary and testes; ova oval, 34. : 21. microm.

The parasite has been encountered only a few times, at autopsy, in the slightly distended gall ducts of man in India. Similar parasites, but of doubtful identity, have been retained with this species from the dog in India and in one instance from an American red fox in the zoological gardens in London.



FIG. 168.—Ovum and miracidium of *Clonorchis sinensis*. (Braun, after Leuckart.)



FIG. 169.—*Clonorchis sinensis*: to left a young example from cat (ventral view); to right a more mature specimen from man (dorsal view).

Genus: *Clonorchis*.

### 1. *Clonorchis Sincusis*.

Gums: *Clonorchis*.

#### 1. CLONORCHIS SINCUSIS.

(*Distoma sincuse*; *d. spatulatum*, Leuckart; *d. hepatis innocuum*; *d. hepatis endemicum*; *s. perniciosum*; *d. japonicum*; *clonorchis endemicus*.)

Length, 10.-20. mm.; breadth (near middle of length), 2.-5. mm.; long, lanceolate; reddish, nearly transparent when fresh; cuticle without spines; oval larger than ventral sucker, on ventral face of anterior extremity; ventral sucker about one-fourth body length posterior to former; pharynx and esophagus small, and bifurcation of latter close to oval sucker; ceca unbranched, reaching close to posterior extremity; excretory pore terminal, its vesicle simple, curved like an italic S, dorsal to testes. In posterior fourth of body the two testes, one in front of the other, each with long coarsely divided branches reaching beyond the ceca laterally; no cirrus or pouch; genital pore in median line just in front of acetabulum; ovary trilobed, placed just anterior to a large gourd-shaped receptaculum seminis, both in median line and anterior to testes; uterus well developed and coiled in middle area of body between ovary and ventral sucker; vitelline glands in marginal fields along middle third of body. Ova brown, oval, operculated, 27.-30. microm. in length, 15.-17. microm. in width.

This fluke usually described under the generic name *opisthorchis* has recently been erected by Loos into a new genus, mainly because of the length of the testicular branches and the simple excretory vesicle. Loos, following in this respect Baelz, recognizes two species, although there has been some opposition. He describes as one species examples of comparatively large size, with a proportionately small ventral sucker and with yellowish to

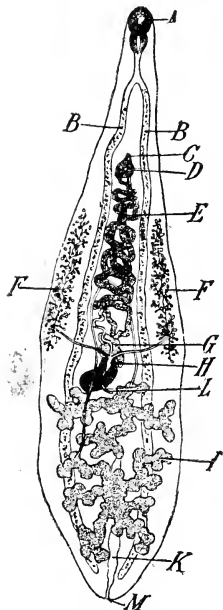


FIG. 170.—*Clonorchis sinensis*: ventral surface, stretched; a, oral sucker; b, ceca; c, genital pore; d, acetabulum; e, uterus; f, vitelline glands; g, ovary; h, receptaculum seminis; l, Laurer canal; i, testicles; k, excretory canal; m, excretory pore. (Braun, after Leuckart.)

brownish granules in the parenchyma, applying to them the name *clonorchis sinensis* (*d. innocuum* of Baelz). Smaller examples, ranging from 6. to 13. mm. in length and from 1.8 to 2.6 mm. in width, without pigment granules in the parenchyma, and with a relatively larger ventral sucker, constitute, according to Loos, a second species, *clonorchis endemicus* (*d. endemicum*, *s. perniciosum*, of Baelz). For the present J. Allen Smith prefers to consider these possible species as one.

This fluke, comparatively common in Japan and Eastern Asia, has been reported also from this country in a few imported cases. It infests the gall-ducts, gall-bladder (has also been found in the pancreatic duct and in the intestine) of man, cat, and dog. The number of parasites in one host has in some cases reached several thousand; and serious, often fatal, changes result from the higher grades of infection. The liver for a time becomes more or less enlarged, but eventually is decreased in size, cirrhotic, and degenerated, with distended, obstructed, and thick, fibrosed-walled ducts. The symptoms are much as above outlined for other hepatic flukes,

as digestive disturbances, anemia, exhaustion, jaundice, and ascites. It is estimated that as high as 14 per cent. of infected individuals die from the affection. Nothing beyond the ciliated miracidium is known of the intermediate stages or their hosts, although it has been suspected in this as in case of *opisthorchis felineus* that fish may accommodate an intermediate stage. No successful mode of treatment or prophylaxis is as yet known; although suggestions along such lines as made in connection with *fasciola hepatica* should tentatively be adopted.

Genus: *Cotylagonimus*.

*Cotylagonimus heterophyes*.

(*Distomum heterophyes*; *mesogonimus heterophyes*; *canogonimus heterophyes*; *heterophyes heterophyes*; Egyptian intestinal fluke.)

Small fluke measuring two millimeters long and one broad; anterior end thin and contractile upon the thicker posterior end; former pointed and narrow, latter

more rounded; surface, except toward posterior end, thickly beset with quadrate scales; reddish-brown in color; oral sucker on ventral side of anterior extremity, smaller than ventral sucker, which is situated in front of the middle of the worm, near the junction of the thin anterior with the thick posterior portion; esophagus moderately long; ceca unbranched, reaching to terminal extremity; genital pore back of ventral sucker in median line or to one side, its border raised and beset with branched spines; male and female tubes unite to form a cloaca before opening in the genital pore; testes oval, in posterior extremity, lying close to ceca and parallel with the margins of the body; deferent canal widened to form a large seminal vesicle before opening in genital cloaca; ovary single, oval, anterior to testes in median line; large, gourd-shaped receptaculum seminis; uterus widely coiled in posterior portion of the worm, between ventral sucker and testes; vitelline follicles few, along the margins of the posterior fourth of the body length; ova oval, reddish-brown, thick-walled, 30. : 17. microm., containing, when deposited, the ciliated miracidia.

This worm has been found recently in increasing frequency at autopsy in the small intestine of man in Egypt; and is also reported from the same host and habitat from Japan. Identical forms have also been encountered in the dog, cat, and fox. It apparently gives rise to no important pathological changes. Its intermediate stages and their hosts are unknown.

Genus: *Dicrocoelium*.

***Dicrocoelium lanceatum***  
(Styles & Hassall).

(*Distomum lanceolatum*; *fasciola lanceolata*; lance-shaped fluke.)

Body lanceolate, a little more attenuate anteriorly than posteriorly; semi-transparent, yellowish, often blotched with brownish spots from the ova in the uterus; 8.-10. mm. long, 1.5-2.5 mm. wide (broadest about equator); smooth; oral sucker at anterior extremity, subterminal, smaller than ventral sucker; ventral sucker about one-fifth the body length posterior to the former; pharynx small and globular, esophagus rather long and slender; ceca unbranched, reaching to posterior fifth of worm; excretory pore at posterior end of worm with a simple tubular vesicle; genital pore in median line midway between suckers, close to the bifurcation of esophagus; testes in anterior half of body, one behind the other, lying just back of the ventral sucker in the middle area of the worm; ovary small ovoid, back of testes; uterus posterior to ovary, coiled loosely in posterior half of body, extending close to the margins of the body in the posterior extremity; ova brown, oval, thick-walled, 38.-45. microm. long by 22.-30. microm. in width, with miracidium ciliated at anterior portion in interior at time of oviposition.

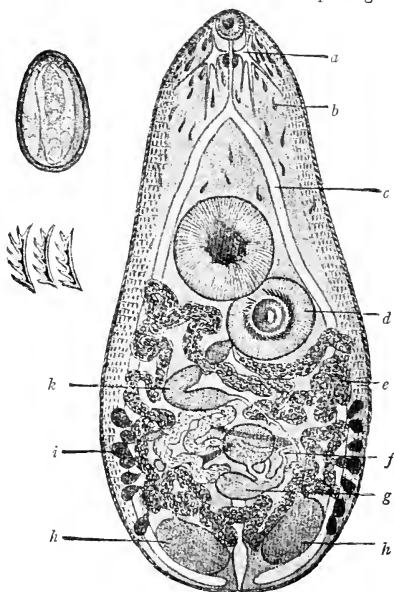


FIG. 171.—*Cotylogonimus heterophyes*: 53×1; *a*, cerebral ganglion; *b*, cuticular glands; *c*, cecum; *d*, genital pore; *e*, uterus; *f*, Laurer's canal; *g*, receptaculum seminis, in front of which is the ovary; *h*, testes, between which is seen the excretory system; *i*, vitelline glands; *k*, seminal vesicle. To the left, above is shown the ovum, 700×1; below are three chitinous spines from the border of genital pore. (Braun, after Loos.)

The lanceolate fluke has been met in the gall ducts of a large number of herbivora and omnivora, sheep, cow, goat, ass, horse, deer, rabbit, hog; and is occasionally associated with the common large liver fluke (*fasciola hepatica*). Geographically it is widely distributed in Europe and in Siberia,

Turkey, Egypt, and Algeria. In man, according to Braun, but seven instances have been met, in all cases without definite symptoms of its presence, although in the lower animals, probably because of higher degrees of infection, its symptomatology is much as in case of *fasciola hepatica*. Nothing is known of the intermediate stages and their hosts.

Family: SCHISTOSOMIDÆ;

Genus: *Schistosomum*.

1. *Schistosomum hæmatobium* (Bilharz).

(*Distomum hæmatobium*; *d. capense*; *Bilharzia hæmatobia*; *gynecophorus hæmatobius*; *thecosoma hæmatobium*; African blood fluke.)

Sexes separate. *Male*: whitish, 12.-14. mm. long (often less), with margins back of ventral sucker folded on ventral surface so as to form a long groove (gynecophorous groove) and when thus folded the thickness is about half a millimeter; oral and ventral suckers close together in the attenuated anterior end of the worm on ventral surface, prominent; esophagus short, dividing into two simple intestinal tubes which back of the testes reunite to form a single cecum; numerous gland cells about esophagus; excretory pore opening at posterior extremity slightly dorsally; genital opening in median line back of ventral sucker; no cirrus pouch; testes five or six in number, vesicular; cuticle of

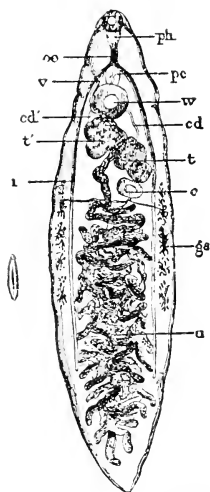


FIG. 172. — *Dicrocoelium lanceatum*: on left natural size; on right enlarged 10 times (ventral view); ph, pharynx; œ, œsophagus; i, intestine; t and t', testes; cd and cd', vasa deferentia; pc, cirrus pouch; o, ovary; ga, vitelline glands; u, uterus; v, vagina; w, acetabulum. (Railliet.)

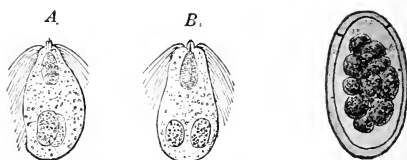


FIG. 173. — Miracidium of *dicrocoelium lanceatum*: A, lateral and B, flat view. (Braun, after Leuckart.)

FIG. 174. — Ovum of *dicrocoelium lanceatum*.  $\times 600$ .

dorsal surface covered with small spinulated tubercles, of ventral surface bearing spines except along the median line. *Female*: whitish to reddish-brown; filiform; length 15.-20. mm.; suckers as in male, prominent; cuticle with spines; digestive tube as in male (single cecum from reunion of intestinal tubes posterior to ovary); ovary oblong, lobate, lying in posterior fork of intestine; vitelline follicles extend posteriorly to extremity of body from just back of ovary; oviduct and longitudinal vitelline duct run forward to unite at "shell-gland" with the uterus in a dilated oötype; uterus straight, tubular, extending forward to the genital pore, which opens at posterior border of ventral sucker. The two sexes lie constantly together, ventral surfaces in contact, the female in the gynecophorous groove of the male. Ova oval in shape, thin-walled, without operculum, with a spine at one end or along the side of one end, 135.-180. microm. long, 55.-60. microm. broad.

The blood fluke is found in the veins, commonly the portal veins and its branches, and the plexuses about the bladder and rectum, in man and a few species of monkeys. It is met mainly in Africa (Egypt, Abyssinia, Sudan, Mozambique, Natal, Tunis, Algeria, etc.); but has been reported in imported cases from this country and elsewhere. It is said also to occur in Cuba and Porto Rico. It is more common in the young than in adults.

The presence of the adult worm is not the serious feature of the infection, the fault depending rather upon the fact that the ova are liable to

obstruct the vessels and give rise to important pathological results. Lodged for example in the small veins of the vesical plexus, an inflammation of the bladder and rupture of the occluded vessel with appearance of blood in the urine are apt to result; or if in the wall of the lower bowel, a proctitis or colitis with dysenteric hemorrhages. The vesical symptoms are not infrequently marked, pain and tenderness in the hypogastrium, a burning pain in the urethra, especially on micturition, difficulty of micturition, sometimes evidence of prostatic swelling, with the urine containing blood, pus, and

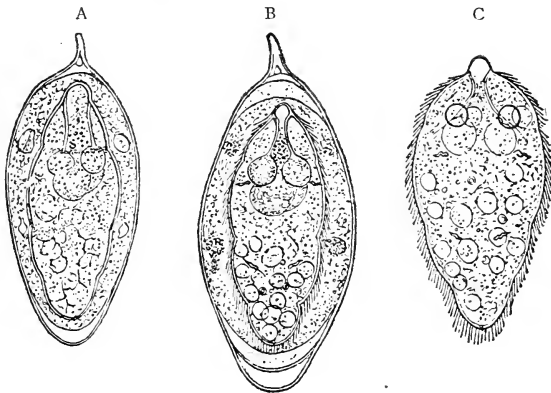


FIG. 175.—Ova and miracidium of *schistosomum hamatobium*,  $\times 300$ ; A, ovum as seen in urine; B, the same after addition of water; C, miracidium. (Railliet.)

mucus as well as the ova of the parasite. Sometimes the inflammatory disturbances may extend along the ureter to the pelvis of the kidney and the latter organ itself, inducing the symptoms of a more or less grave nephritis. Occasionally from convection of the ova into the liver or lungs symptoms referable to these organs may also be met. Fatal results are to be apprehended after a variable period of such symptoms, with secondary anemia, debility, and exhaustion.

No knowledge is had of the intermediate stages beyond the miracidium, which is not infrequently seen in the ova in the urine or feces. It is suspected that the infection is carried through unfiltered drinking-water, and as a measure of prophylaxis this should be strictly cared for in infested districts. No plan of successful medication is known; but all means of ordinary character for conservation of nutrition and repair of blood loss should of course be undertaken as well as the usual methods of overcoming the actual hemorrhage, as the use of ergot, etc.

## 2. *Schistosomum Japonicum* (Katsurada.)

(*Schistosoma cattoi*; Asiatic blood fluke.)

Sexes separate. *Male*: brownish-yellow; 7.-12. mm. long, forming gynecophorous groove as in preceding species; cuticle provided in canal with minute spines, but on dorsum the spinulated tubercles met in *s. hamatobium* are wanting; oval sucker terminal, provided with minute spines; ventral sucker larger than oval and more prominent than in *s. hamatobium*, provided with small spines, situated

0.5 mm. posterior to oval sucker. Alimentary tubes much as in *s. hematobium*, but anastomoses several times. Genital pore closely posterior to acetabulum; vas deferens longer than *s. hematobium*; testes five or six in number, lobular, close set, in anterior part of posterior portion of body, between ceca. *Female*: darker in color, especially posteriorly, where the color becomes almost black; almost cylindric, somewhat longer than male, and 0.4 mm. thick at thickest part; suckers as in male; cuticle smooth; alimentary tubes as in *s. hematobium*; ovary and uterus much as in *s. hematobium*; vitellogenic glands more compactly arranged than in *s. hematobium*. Ova smaller and with blunter ends than those of *s. hematobium*, without spine, non-operculated, oval, brownish-yellow, 58.-90. : 30.-72. microm.

This fluke has been met in cats and in man in Japan and China. It is believed to be responsible for an endemic affection known in Japan as



FIG. 176.—*Schistosomum hematobium*: male with female in gynecophorous groove. (Braun, after Loos.)

Katayama, characterized by enlarged liver and spleen, disturbances of appetite, diarrhea (the dejecta often containing blood and mucus), and in severe cases anemia, fever, ascites and edemas, and occasionally death from exhaustion. The worms inhabit the vena porta and its mesenteric branches, and the ova are found in the liver and in the walls of the intestine, especially the large intestine. Unlike *s. hematobium*, these ova are not apt to be met in the urine but are found in the intestinal dejecta. In the liver and wall of the bowel, as well as in mesenteric lymph-glands, in the pancreas and other situations into which the ova are carried, there ensue either from the mechanical irritation of these objects or possibly partly from toxic factors produced by the worms and similarly disseminated (or from both of these influences) chronic hyperplastic and indurative changes which may be of serious importance. Anemic symptoms are best seen in heavy infestments, and are

thought to be partly due to the blood destruction and partly to toxic influences. Yamagiwa, according to Katsurada, believes that a case of epilepsy which he originally attributed to lodgment of ova of *paragonimus westermanni* in the brain of the patient was due in reality to ova of the parasite here mentioned.

## II—CESTODES OR TAPEWORMS.

**Historical.**—The larger forms, at least, of tapeworms, were known to the ancients as animal parasites infesting the alimentary canal. The correct notion of the origin and development of a tapeworm is, however, comparatively recent, and for a long time the young worm was supposed to start from the proglottids of the adult worm. The larval forms, or bladder-worms, have also been known, but were



regarded as simple cystic tumors, until almost simultaneously Redi in Italy and Hartmann and Wepfer in Germany inferred their animal nature, after which they were regarded as worms and made by Zeder, in 1800, a separate class, bladder-worms. In 1683 Edward Tyson discovered the head with its double row of hooklets in a large tapeworm in a dog; in 1684 Redi recognized the head and suckers of several forms; in 1700 Andry recognized the head of *taenia saginata*; and in 1777 Bonnet, and in 1776 Gleichen-Russworm, that of *dibothriocephalus latus*. From that time it was believed that a tapeworm was an animal which nourished itself by fastening its head into the intestinal wall. About the middle of the last century Kuchenmeister, by his celebrated feeding experiments, proved that the cysticeri or bladder-worms represented a larval stage in the development of the tapeworm, the latter having for its habitat the intestine of man (in case of those species infesting the human intestine), and the former the muscles and solid organs of certain lower animals and rarely of man.

**General Description.**—The cestodes or tapeworms are naked flat worms of elongated ribbon shape, endoparasitic at least in their adult stage, and in many instances in all stages, without a digestive canal, and always more or less distinctly divided into segments. The entire parasite, or *strobile*, may be looked upon as a colony of individuals united in ribbon fashion from their mode of origin, for convenience in their development and functional performance; the various segments being derived by a process of constriction from the originally acquired parasite, which is spoken of as the *head*, *nurse*, or *scolex* of the strobile. This scolex has obtained entrance as a larva into the intestinal tract (the natural habitat of adult tapeworms) of the host, has become attached by special fixation apparatus to the mucous membrane, and has there developed the adult characteristics of the parasite, forming the anterior extremity of the strobile in the developed worm. It is usually a very small and inconspicuous object, of globular, pyriform, or clubbed shape, with a short posterior extension spoken of as the *neck*. In the middle of the frontal face of the head there is often a small prominence, known as a *rostellum*, about which may be arranged in one or more rows, as one of the means of fixation of the parasite, small hooklets as a crown. As more constant means of fixation the head is provided with two or four suckers, rounded or linear depressions with more or less definite lips. Back of the head by a process of constriction from the neck, the segments, also known as *links* or *proglottids*, arise, the newest formed always being intercalated between the neck and the next older link. Thus the older segments are always by each newly formed proglottid, more and more separated from the head, each as it grows older and recedes farther and farther developing in size; the length of the strobile being thus dependent upon the two factors, growth of the individual links and the new formation from the neck of more and more links. These new segments as they are first formed are usually very short and proportionately broader, but as they increase in size with age they generally increase especially in their long diameter, and come to be more or less square or even elongate in their full development. The structure of each link, and hence of the whole strobile, includes an interior or matrix of an indeterminate connective reticular material, from which the various organs appear to develop and in which they are embedded; over which are to be recognized exteriorly a delicate cuticle and beneath the latter two layers of so-called muscle (contractile but not having the well-known appearance of ordinary muscle of higher forms of life), the outer layer disposed longitudinally and the inner transversely and circumferentially. These tissues, while more or less isolated into the different segments of the strobile, have some connecting filaments from segment to segment and maintain the continuity of the strobile. There is a low form of nervous system common to the entire strobile, beginning in the head as a set of commissural anastomosing fibers and extending in several longitudinal cords, with doubtful anastomoses, throughout all the links of the strobile. A so-called "water-vascular system" (*excretory canals*) also begins in the head and extends along the margins of the segments throughout the strobile, ending in a single excretory duct at the posterior end of the last link, which is re-formed each time a link is separated from the strobile. Transverse anastomosing canals exist in each link.

Aside from the common parts the various links may be looked upon as individuals. There is no digestive canal, all nutrition being obtained by the parasite from absorption of dissolved material from the fluids in the infested intestine. The only really highly organized parts are the generative organs, each link containing both male and female organs. The male organs reach their development the earlier, and after maturing the seminal elements and depositing them in the female canal undergo regressive changes and practically disappear, the female part meanwhile becoming more and more evident. Thus the links best showing the male part are usually but partially developed and comparatively near the head end of the strobile; those best showing the female parts are lower down; while the terminal links are usually so crowded with the ova in the gravid uterus that little else can be readily made out. The male parts consist primarily of a set (few or many) of small rather pyriform bodies variously situated in the different genera, the *testes*, each emptying by a fine duct into a larger canal, the *vas deferens* or *seminal duct*, which opens on the margin of the link or on its ventral surface in a prominence known as the *genital*

*prominence* (pore of genital prominence) in common with or in close proximity to the female orifice. At the outer end of the seminal duct its walls are somewhat dilated and thickened (*cirrus pouch*) containing a protrusile thread-like organ (*penis* or *cirrus*) which when inserted into the vagina serves to bring into contact the openings of the male and female canals for the penetration of the spermatozooids. The female canal (*vagina*) extends into the substance of the segment from its vulvar opening at the genital pore and is continuous with the *oviduct* (a canal which represents both *uterus* and at its inner end the oviduct proper); and close to its entrance into the proper uterine canal is usually somewhat pocketed for the accommodation of the spermatozooids (*receptaculum seminis*) which have been deposited from the already disappearing male canals. The inner end of the oviducts opens by a *pavilion* for the reception of the ova from the single or multiple *ovary*, and receives also the ducts of special glands (as of the *vitelline glands*). The ova in their development in the oviduct are formed of the ovum proper received from the ovaries, this being spoken of as the *embryophore*, and on the outside the vitellus deposited from the vitelline glands. Not infrequently the ova, as they are seen in fecal matter or in the uterus, retain more or less of the vitellus and its membrane; other instances show the embryophore alone. In their development the ova fill the canal of the oviduct more and more, often causing the appearance of side pockets of more or less branching character and giving the canal a distinctly branching appearance; either the entire length of the oviduct may thus accommodate the ova in the ripe segment or only a portion (to which the name of uterus is more clearly applied in such case).

In some instances the ova are discharged from the canal by route of the vagina and genital pore (as in *dibothriocephalus latus*); or they may rupture the uterine wall and be found scattered through the substance of the link and eventually break through the muscular and cuticular wall of the segment; or be retained within the segment until its discharge and disintegration. The terminal ripe links either actually containing the ova or after discharge of more or less of the original number (often some thousands) are apt to become separated from the strobile and be carried with the fecal matter from the intestine of the host; and by the older observers were looked on as special and individual types of intestinal parasites ("cucumber worms," etc.); thus discharged, in some instances they retain their vitality and may be more or less actively motile for a variable period (as in case of the proglottid of *tania mediocanellata*). Either free in the fecal matter or within the discharged ripe proglottids (which eventually disintegrate and free the contained ova), the ova thus escape from the host in which they were formed. They are themselves subject to disintegration, but are usually sufficiently protected by their walls from moderate drying, heat, and cold; and may under favorable conditions maintain their vitality until arrived in proper circumstances for their further development. As a rule, their deposit in moisture best favors their maintenance of life, and the water may serve as the medium for intermediate development (as in case of *dibothriocephalus*) or of convection to a fresh host within whom they may develop. Either with or without intermediate development the embryo is in some way, by water or on solids (perhaps herbage), carried into the alimentary canal of a second host. Arrived in this situation, both by its own activity and by passive convection by blood and lymph streams, the embryo penetrates the intestinal wall and becomes deposited in one or other situation as a *larva*, *bladder-worm* or *cysticercus*. There are variations in the type of this larval form, but in general it presents the following features: It is surrounded by a delicate connective-tissue outer wall, derived from the host by a process of reactive inflammation, within which lies the true bladder-worm. This is essentially the scolex or head of the future strobile, with beginning constriction of its neck into incomplete segments, the last one of which is itself cystic and distended into a bladder-like body. Into this the head of the larva is invaginated and can be detected as a small opaque body on one side of the cyst beneath the cyst membrane; while close inspection will usually reveal at the top of the slight eminence of this opaque spot a tiny opening, which is the outer end of the canal of invagination. Careful pressure on the freshly obtained cyst will generally cause the expulsion of the head through this opening and show the cyst to actually bear the relation to the head just described, that is, that it is a cystic condition of the posterior end of the neck. These bladder-worms in exceptional cases may multiply to the production of multiple cysts (as in the hydatid cysts of *tania echinococcus*), but are usually simple. Many of the smaller tapeworms have extremely poorly developed cysts in which the head is invaginated, these inconspicuous forms being spoken of as *cysticercoids*. It is believed that for a few forms of tape-worms in man there is a possibility of development of the ova directly in the original host (*hymenolepis nana*) with encystment as cysticercoids in the wall of the intestine and subsequent development of the strobile in the same intestine. The general rule prevails, however, that the cysticercus after remaining a variable period, perhaps a prolonged one, in the tissues, is devoured with the flesh of its host by a third (definitive) host; when the larva, having its cyst wall removed by digestion or otherwise freed, becomes attached by its fixation apparatus to the intestinal wall and gives origin to link after link and thus forms a new strobile.

The following system, arranged from Braun, may be offered as an outline of the classification of the cestodes:

I—*BOTHRIOCEPHALOIDEA*: scolex armed or unarmed, with two, generally poorly developed, shallow groove-like suckers; external segmentation absent or clear; three genital openings (cirrus, vagina, and uterus); genital parts rarely duplicated; yolk-gland follicles numerous and best seen about borders of segments; ova similar to those of *fasciolida*, but not always operculated.

1. Family, *DIBOTHRIOCEPHALIDÆ*: suckorial grooves variably developed (may be converted into tubes by union of the free margins or be replaced by an apical suckorial organ); uterus rosette-shaped; ova operculated.

Subfamily, *Ligulinæ*.

Subfamily, *Dibothriocephalina* (*Dibothriocephalus*, etc.).

Subfamily, *Cyathocephalina*.

Subfamily, *Triacnophorina*.

2. Family, *PTYCHOBOTHRIDÆ*: scolex unarmed; uterus does not form rosette; spacious uterine cavity; ova thin-shelled without operculum.

Subfamily, *Amphicotylina*.

Subfamily, *Ptychobothriina*.

3. Family, *AMPHITRETIDÆ*: vitelline glands in outer fields of segments; uterus with cavity apparent; ova thin-shelled, without operculum.

II—*TETRAPHYLLIDEA*: scolex armed or unarmed, with four very variable, raised or sessile bothridia or with four suckorial cups; segmentation always definite; cirrus and vagina open on margin of links; vitelline gland follicles lateral or about borders; ova thin-walled, without operculum.

1. Family, *ONCHOBOTHRIDÆ*: in the sessile or raised bothridia accessory suckorial cups, always hooks.
2. Family, *PHYLLOBOTHRIDÆ*: bothridia generally raised, simple, or with accessory cups or areole, always without hooks.
3. Family, *ICHTHYOTÆNIIDÆ*: with four suckorial cups, usually unarmed.

III—*CYCLOPHYLLIDEA*: scolex with four suckers, between which an apical rostellum may exist; hooklets on rostellum, rarely on suckers; segmentation almost invariably definite; no uterine opening; vagina and cirrus generally open on margin of link; genital organs rarely duplicated; yolk-gland unpaired usually posterior to ovary; ova thin-walled, non-operculated; oncosphere (embryonal enclosure) with one or more membranes.

1. Family, *TÆNIIDÆ*: showing the characteristics of the class.

Subfamily, *Mesocestoidina*: with genital pore on surface of link.

Subfamily, *Acoliina*: without vagina (*Acoleus*); separate sexually (*Diacoccestus*).

Subfamily, *Amabulina*: vagina opening on surface of link, cirrus on margin.

Subfamily, *Terabothriina*: yolk-gland anterior to ovary; anterior border of suckers grown outward into a muscular extension; genital pore unilateral.

Subfamily, *Anoplocephalina*: scolex unarmed, large, without neck; uterus transverse, tubular or reticular; ova with "pyriform apparatus."

Subfamily, *Dipylidiina*: rostellum with hooklets; suckers unarmed; genital pore marginal; genital organs simple or duplicated; uterus separating into ovisacs or atrophying, with the ova then free in parenchyma of link (*Dipylidium*, *Hymenolepis*, etc.).

Subfamily, *Davaineina*: rostellum and suckers armed; ova generally in ovisacs.

Subfamily, *Tæniina*: with rostellum and usually a double crown of hooklets; uterus with median longitudinal trunk and lateral branches (*Tænia*).

IV—*ECHINOBOTHRIDÆ*: scolex consisting of head and pedicle; head with two suckers and rostellum; pedicle with longitudinal rows of T-shaped hooks; genital apparatus as in *Tetraphyllidæ*, but with pore opening on surface of link.

V—*RHYNCHOBOTHRIDÆ*: scolex with head and pedicle; former with two or four bothridia and four retractile and armed projections; pedicle unarmed.

### I—*BOTHRIOCEPHALOIDEA*.

Family: *DIBOTHRIOCEPHALIDÆ*; Subfamily: *DIBOTHRIOCEPHALINÆ*;

Genus: *Dibothriocephalus*.

#### 1. *Dibothriocephalus latus* (Leuckart).

(*Tænia lata*; *bothriocephalus latus*; *dibothrium latum*; *bothriocephalus latissimus*; fish tapeworm; etc.)

DESCRIPTION.—Strobile two to ten meters or more in length (reported 20 in one or two cases); strobile yellowish; marked in ripe segments by brownish central rosette (uterus with ova) when specimen is soaked in water; head elongated almond-shape (2.-5. mm. long, and 0.71 mm. transversely), with two lateral grooves or bothridia as suckers; neck variable according to degree of contraction; 3000-4000 segments: the anterior links poorly defined, in their growth increasing slowly in length but markedly in breadth; ripe links back of middle of strobile measure 2.-4.

mm. long and 10.-12.-20. mm. wide, with opaque brownish rosette in middle line; terminal links shrunken and narrower than above in proportion to the length after discharge of ova; vagina and cirrus open in small prominence in midventral line near anterior border of link and just back of this a third opening (uterine); testes numerous, best seen toward the margins; uterus of a number of plicated tubes in form of rosette; ova brownish, ellipsoidal (68.-71. microm. long, 44.-45. microm. transversely), operculated.

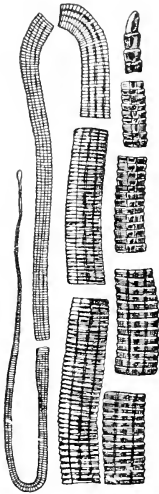


FIG. 177.—*Dibothriocephalus latus*. (Leuckart.)

This parasite in its adult stage is most commonly met in the human intestine, but has been encountered also in dogs and cats. It is most common in parts of central Europe (Switzerland, northern part of Italy, southern Germany and this vicinity), along the Baltic borders, occasionally in Denmark and in the Netherlands, and British Islands. In Asia it has been met a few times in Turkestan and in Japan. The few examples which from time to time are reported from this country occur invariably in foreigners.

The strobile, the longest met in man, is generally found singly, the head attached in the upper part of the small intestine and the length trailing through the gut in a somewhat plicated fashion and not infrequently extending beyond the ileo-cecal valve. Unlike other large tapeworms of the human intestine ovulation takes place in this form, the eggs being discharged through the uterine opening without the necessity of destruction of the link, and large numbers are usually encountered in the fecal matter, where they are readily recognized on microscopic inspection. In the life-history of the parasite, these ova, being carried out with the fecal matter, require for their further development immersion in water. If thus favored, in about two weeks at a temperature of about 30° C. (longer time in cooler water) the operculum at the end of the eggs opens and permits the escape of a minute hexacanthous embryo, which is surrounded by a ciliated membrane and

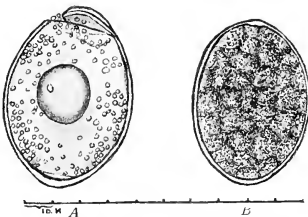


FIG. 178.—Ova of *dibothriocephalus latus*: A, after treatment with sulphuric acid so as to render lid apparent; B, natural appearance in fecal matter.

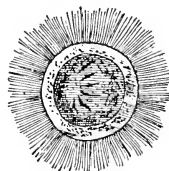


FIG. 179.—Free swimming embryo of *dibothriocephalus latus*.  $\times 500$ . (Leuckart.)



FIG. 180.—Plerocercoid of *dibothriocephalus latus*: A, with head projected; B, head retracted. (Braun.)

which lives a free existence in the water for a time. It is not known how this embryo passes to the intermediate host, one or other of several fresh-water fishes, but it is probably swallowed; in event of failure

to attain this secondary host, it dies after some days. Within the fish it develops into a small worm-like larva (S. mm. long, 3. mm. thick), known as a *plerocercoid*, which, without a surrounding (adventitious) capsule, is found in the ovary, wall of the intestine, liver and other viscera, and in the muscular system. It possesses a slight vermicular movement. Essentially it is the anterior end of the future adult tapeworm. The head is generally invaginated, but may be caused to protrude if the specimen is placed for a time in warm water, when it will be found to present the characteristics above outlined for the adult head; unlike the common bladder-worms of many tapeworms the posterior part of this larva is not cystic. From experiments it has been found that under ordinary conditions these plerocercoids will retain their vitality in the flesh of the dead fish for about 18 days, that they are quickly killed in a saturated sodium chlorid solution, that they are comparatively resistant to cold but are soon destroyed by a heat above  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$ .– $53^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Transmission of the parasite to man is believed to be confined to the swallowing of the plerocercoid in the flesh of the infested fish imperfectly salted or cooked; although formerly it was believed if the ciliated embryo were taken into the human alimentary canal with unfiltered water, it was able to develop directly into the strobile. The fish most liable to contain the larval worms are fresh-water fish, as pike, turbot, perch, tench, grayling, etc. In countries where these fish abound it not infrequently happens

that certain parts, as the roe or liver, are eaten as delicacies very imperfectly cooked, such habits distinctly favoring the acquirement of the parasite, should the fish be infested.

The symptoms of parasitism by *dibothriocephalus latus*

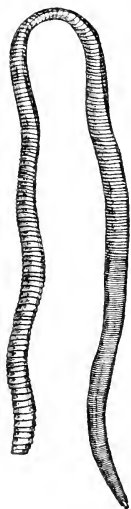


FIG. 181.—*Dibothriocephalus cordatus*: adult. (Leuckart.)



FIG. 182.—Young specimens of *dibothriocephalus cordatus*; natural size. (Leuckart.)

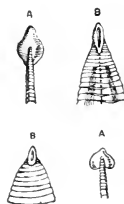


FIG. 183.—Head and anterior segments of *dibothriocephalus cordatus*: A, seen from margin of strobile; B, seen from surface of strobile. (Leuckart.)

are for the most part quite similar to those occasioned by other tapeworms, *alimentary* and *nutritive* and *reflex nervous*. Usually the alimentary or local symptoms are the most pronounced, and proportionately more marked than in the case of infestation by the beef and the pork tapeworms. These may be

very trivial and be entirely neglected, however, although there is commonly some degree of abdominal discomfort, fullness, and a sense of weight, with now and again some little pain. Often the pains, irregularly intermittent in occurrence, are severe. Diarrhea alternating with constipation is common, and occasionally nausea and vomiting are noted. The appetite is apt to be capricious. In time some loss of weight and strength and a more or less striking and notable anemia may be expected, the latter being supposed to be due to the absorption of some toxic principle elaborated by the parasite or developing under conditions of its presence in the alimentary tract. The nervous phenomena are generally of little moment, but may exceptionally be pronounced. There may be nasal and anal pruritus, ocular disturbances, sometimes a functional and transitory strabismus, choreiform twitching, epileptiform seizures, headaches, mental hebetude, tinnitus, etc.



FIG. 184.—*Bothriocephalus mansoni*: A, after Leuckart; B, after Cobbold.

*Treatment* rests upon the general principles and measures detailed in the section devoted to treatment of tapeworm disease in general (p. 1353). For personal prophylaxis the individual should not be permitted to eat of the flesh of fish from infected districts except it be well cooked; and as a general measure to prevent

the infestation of the fish, human excreta should be kept from the drainage into lakes and rivers inhabited by fishes suitable for the plerocercoid stage.

2. *Dibothriocephalus cordatus* (Leuckart): A tapeworm of the same genus as the above, ordinarily parasitic in seals, has been reported as derived from the human intestine in at least a single instance (Greenland). It is a rather large tapeworm (strobile a yard or more—80.-115. cm.—in length) and is readily told by its large and heart-shaped head.

3. *Bothriocephalus Mansoni* (Cobbold): Thus far the adult characters of this parasite are not known, the larval form alone having been found. It has been met a number of times in the subcutaneous tissue, once in the pleural cavity, and a number of times passed by the urethra with bloody urine, from human beings (mainly Chinese and Japanese); and similar or identical plerocercoids are recorded from a number of mammals (J. Allen Smith has recently examined an example obtained from the subcutaneous tissue of the neck of a hog in China). It was originally regarded as a ligula; is a thick, flat, worm-shaped larva (varying up to 30. mm. in length and 3.-6.-12. mm. in thickness), not segmented, but with faint transverse striations; with a small, usually invaginated head showing two shallow shallow marginal sucker-like grooves. Nothing is known of its development or origin.

Genus: *Diplogonoporus*.

*Diplogonoporus grandis* (Blanchard).

(*Bothriocephalus* sp.; *Krabbea grandis*).

Strobile measures up to 10. m. in length; proglottids short and broad (10.-25. m. wide); number of segments unknown; head and neck unknown; double set of genital organs in each segment, arranged in two rows in the length of strobile; genital pores open in two longitudinal grooves on ventral surface; each uterus rosette-shaped, with several, usually two, loops on each side; ova brownish, operculated, oval, measure 63. microm. in length and 48.-50. microm. in width.

Ijima and Kuromoto have recorded two instances of infestation by this worm; the first subject having for some years been troubled with vague abdominal discomfort and pain, alternating periods of constipation and diarrhea, maldigestion and gradual loss of nutrition and moderate anemia; the second subject having but little disturbance and recognizing the existence of the parasite by the presence of the proglottids in the dejecta. In neither case was the head of the worm obtained, although long lengths of the strobile were passed after the administration of filix mas. The ova are to be carefully differentiated from those of *dibothriocephalus latus*, which they closely resemble, being, however, slightly smaller. Nothing is known of the intermediate host, but some kind of fish probably acts this rôle.

III—CYCLOPHYLLIDEA.<sup>1</sup>

Family: TÆNIIDÆ; Subfamily: DIPYLIDIINÆ; Genus: DIPYLIDIUM.

**Dipylidium caninum** (Leuckart).(*Tænia canina*; *t. moniliformis*; *t. cucumerina*; *t. elliptica*; *dipylidium cucumerinum*.)

Strobile 15–35. cm. long; head small, rhomboidal, with clavate rostellum surrounded by three or four crowns of hooklets (48–60); four large suckers with radially marked borders; neck very short; anterior links broad and short, middle ones as long as broad, fully developed ones longer than broad (6–7. : 2–3. mm.). The worm when fresh has a slightly reddish color. The links swell out in the middle so that the strobile has an appearance not unlike a chain of beads of melon-seeds. Genital pores on both margins of links (double); testes in large numbers, in middle substance of link, connecting by fine tubes to the median line where a vas deferens passes in tortuous course to each side to the cirrus pouch, a claviform organ opening at genital pore and containing a thread-like cirrus. Each half of the link contains an ovary, made up of ramifying tubes, and a yolk-gland, the ovarian canals uniting to form a simple oviduct, which near its beginning receives the vitelloguct. Vagina opens at genital pore behind the cirrus opening, is well dilated at inner end into receptaculum seminis. A single uterus is common to the two oviducts, consisting of a network of tubes in which the ova lie in groups filling small sacculi developed by their pressure, each containing 10 or 15 ova and surrounded by a reddish intermediate material which gives the color, above mentioned, to the worm. Ova spherical (43–50. microm.), with double wall and containing a hexacanthous embryo.



FIG. 185.—*Dipylidium caninum* (Leuckart, after Weinland.)

This worm is a common parasite of dogs and is regarded as identical with the worm formerly known as *tænia elliptica* of cats; in these animals it is widely distributed over the world. In occasional cases it has been known to infest the human intestine, almost always in children (24 cases, according to Braun). The parasite is usually without symptoms in human subjects and when these are present they are of the same general character as detailed in connection with the more common tapeworms. It is readily recognized by the shape and color of the links passed in the stools and by the fact that a genital pore is to be found on each lateral border of the link. The intermediate hosts are fleas (*pulex serraticeps*) and lice (*trichodectes canis*) of the dog, and the ordinary flea of man (*pulex irritans*). These insects presumably get the ova from the fecal matter adherent about the anus or on the coat of the dog; and the animal biting at infested fleas or lice transfers the *cysticercoid* (the invaginated scolex, differing from a true bladder-worm in that no true cystic change has taken place in the posterior part of the larva to form a bladder, and hence the larval mass is much more minute). Human beings probably acquire the cysticercoid in the crushing of infested insects between the fingers, which later, if unwashed, carry the larva adherent to the skin to the mouth; or possibly dogs having these larvae clinging to the lips, after having bitten infested insects, may transfer them to the hands of the human being by licking the hands.

Genus: *Hymenolepis*.1. *Hymenolepis nana* (von Sicbold).(*Tænia nana*; *t. ægyptica*; *dipylacanthus nana*; *hymenolepis murina*; dwarf tapeworm.)

DESCRIPTION.—Average length of strobile 10–15. mm. (may reach 25. mm.); head subglobular, measuring 0.25–0.30 mm. in transverse diameter; head provided with four large rounded suckers and a large rostellum retractile into an infundibulum; rostellum surrounded by a single crown of hooklets (24–30); neck rather long and

<sup>1</sup> The II, IV and V classes of tapeworms are not considered here because they are not found in human beings.

slender; about 150 proglottids, very small, broader than long; the largest, near the posterior end of strobile, measure 0.14–0.30 mm. long by 0.4–0.9 mm. broad, while the terminal links narrow slightly and lengthen, so as to give a rounded posterior extremity to the strobile. Genital pores all on the same (left) margin, near anterior end of margin of links; three spherical testes, in posterior part of segment near dorsal wall; vas deferens small, straight, slightly distended before reaching cirrus pouch; cirrus pouch club-shaped, near anterior end of segment. Vagina distended into prominent receptaculum seminis, in anterior part of segment; ovary bilobed, extending transversely just anterior to middle of segment; back of it the yolk-gland and between the two the "shell-gland"; uterus distended with ova occupies nearly the



FIG. 186.—*Hymenolepis nana*:  $\times 10$ . (Gould, after Leuckart.)

whole segment, obscuring the other parts (ova often free in parenchyma of segment). Ova round or oval, double-walled; outer diameter averaging 40. microm., but variable (30.: 32. microm. to 56.: 42. microm.); inner wall showing measurements ranging from 20.: 18. to 32.: 24. microm.; at each pole of inner membrane a small protuberance from which spring a number of clear, refractile threads which are distributed in a waving fashion through the substance intermediate to the outer and inner walls; within the egg a hexacanthous embryo slightly separated from the inner membrane.

This parasite, now regarded by most authorities as identical with *hymenolepis murina* of rats and mice, is an intestinal parasite of these animals and of man. It has a wide geographical distribution, being perhaps best known in Italy and neighboring parts of southern Europe. Recently a number of cases have been encountered in the eastern and southern states of

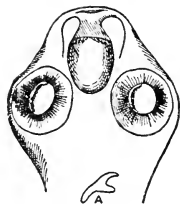


FIG. 187.—Head of *hymenolepis nana*: with rostellum retracted,  $\times 75$ ; A, an isolated hooklet,  $\times 300$ . (Gould, after Leuckart.)

this country, and there is some reason in the supposition that it will come to be regarded as one of the most common tapeworms of this portion of the world. It is most frequently met in children, especially in those of the poor and those living in poorly cared-for homes. The parasite inhabits the ileum, usually from the middle toward the ileo-cecal valve, and is commonly met in large numbers in the individual infested (sometimes a thousand or more.) The usual life-history is not finally established. For a long time certain cysticercoids met in



FIG. 188.—Ovum of *hymenolepis nana*,  $\times 300$ . (Gould, after Leuckart.)

the common meal-worm were suspected as representing the intermediate stage, but the evidence now held would refer these to another tapeworm; although it is not excluded that some such intermediate host may perhaps at times serve as a connecting link. However, it has been shown by Grassi that if the ova be fed to rats (best from one to three months old) the adult worm will develop in the intestine of the rat; and it has been found in such cases that the embryos having had the shell removed by the action of the upper digestive juices penetrate into the villi of the mucous membrane, and there become encysted as minute



cysticeroids, which later drop into the intestinal lumen and develop the adult worms. This would suggest the possibility of direct multiplication within the intestine of the definitive host, but this is a mistake. The ova are not affected by the juices of the lower intestinal canal and are passed from the original host without change and for their further progression must gain access to a second suitable host (rat, mouse, man) or perhaps to the original host of reinfecting himself with ova from his own intestine. The means of convection to the second host probably include unfiltered water tainted with human or murine dejecta, food to which rats or mice have had access, or in case of man the fingers soiled with fecal matter after scratching about the anus.

The symptoms caused by the parasite are of the same general nature as those induced by the common larger tapeworms; but in children, and when in large numbers, may be of marked severity and even terminate fatally. When present in but small numbers and in resistant individuals, the symptoms may be trivial and overlooked. In their severer manifestations, in addition to the intestinal discomfort and pain (sometimes severe) and irregular diarrhea, there may be marked nutritive disturbances with more or less severe anemia; and the nervous phenomena, as epileptiform convulsions, may be a marked feature of the case, continuing for years until the parasites are gotten rid of or perhaps until death. The presence of the parasite being suspected, the diagnosis may readily be confirmed by the discovery of the ova by microscopic examination of the fecal matter, large numbers being usually found where the parasites are present in any marked degree of infection.

The treatment is much as in other types of tapeworm disease; but male fern has proved most satisfactory among the common anthelmintics (p. 1353).

## 2. *Hymenolepis diminuta* (Rudolphi).

(*Tania diminuta*; *t. leptocephala*; *t. flavopunctata*;  
*hymenolepis flavopunctata*.)

DESCRIPTION.—Strobile 10.-60. mm. long; head small, globular, 0.2-0.6 mm. in width, with small pyriform rostellum devoid of hooklets, with four globose suckers situated close to apex; neck short; 800-1300 segments, broader than long, the largest near the posterior end of strobile measuring 3.5 mm. wide and 0.66 mm. long; genital pores all on left margins, in front of middle of margin; three testes (two on right, one on left) in each segment; vas deferens straight, distended before entering cirrus pouch; vagina after passing inward from genital pore distended into a prominent receptaculum seminis (which when filled with spermatozooids has a yellow color and causes the appearance of a yellow spot in the anterior part of the segments to the left of the median line, whence the name "*flavopunctata*") ; gravid uterus nearly fills segments, showing as transverse line when not ripe; two ovaries near middle of link, communicating by transverse canal, which receives canal from receptaculum seminis and communicates with transverse uterine canal. Ova round or slightly oval, yellowish, double-walled (outer diameter, 54.-86. microm., inner from 24.: 20. to 40.: 35. microm.); inner wall with slight protuberances at poles, layer of albuminous material between the walls. In man many of the segments are non-fertile; the gravid ones are slightly brownish in color from the ova contained and are larger than the non-fertile ones.

This worm has been found as a parasite of man, rats, and mice. It has been reported from this country (twice from Philadelphia; Leidy, 1884; Packard, 1896), from Brazil, France, Italy, and Sicily.



FIG. 189.—Head and neck of *hymenolepis diminuta*. (Braun after Zschokke.) Enlarged.

The cysticeroid of this species has been found in larval and adult meal-moths (*asopia farinalis*), earwigs, and several beetles, the first being regarded as the most important intermediate host. Experiments on man by feeding these cysticeroids have been followed in 15 days by the appearance of ova in the dejecta and by numerous specimens of the adult parasite after dosage with male fern. In the cases reported but few worms, perhaps only one, exist in the intestine of the individual host, the lower part

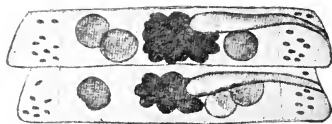


FIG. 190.—*Hymenolepis diminuta*: two proglottids somewhat magnified. (Braun, after Grassi.)



FIG. 191.—Ovum of *hymenolepis diminuta*. (Braun, after Grassi.)

of the intestine, from what little is known, being the favored habitat. Usually there are no symptoms, or at most no distinctive ones, from the presence of the worm. It is readily dislodged by practically any of the tenifuges, being sometimes passed spontaneously.

### 3. *Hymenolepis lanceolata* (Bloch),

(*t. lanceolata*, *drepanidotænia lanceolata*.)

One instance of a human being infested by this species is reported by Zschokke from Breslau, two examples having been obtained at different times from a 12-year-old boy. The parasite is found in geese and ducks in Europe, but is unknown in this country. The larval stage is believed to exist in certain crustaceans. The strobile ranges from 30. to 130. mm. in length, increasing in width directly from the head backward to close to the posterior end, where it again quickly narrows to a rounded extremity. The head is very small, has a retractile rostellum armed with a single row of about eight hooklets; four rounded suckers. Neck short. About 300 links; segments much broader than long; genital pore on one margin (right); and the rather prominent ovaries and uterus in opposite half of segment; three testes. Ova much like those of *h. diminuta*, double-walled, with albuminous substance between walls (outer diameter, 60.-100. microm.; inner wall measurements, 30.: 25. to 40.: 28. microm.).

Subfamily: DAVAINÆ; Genus: DAVAINÆ

### *Davainea madagascariensis* (Davaine).

(*Tænia madagascariensis*; *t. demerariensis*.)

Strobile 25.-30. cm. long; head small, with rostellum retractile into an infundibulum, rostellum armed with double crown of about 90 hooklets; head with four large globose suckers bordered by numerous small spines; 500-700 segments, the fully developed ones measuring 2. mm. long and 1.4 mm. broad; genital pore on one margin; about 50 testes in each link; uterus formed of a number of tubes, the ova in each thus appearing in separate groups (often free in parenchyma of link); oncosphere (embryo) hexacanthous, 8.-15. microm. long, surrounded by delicate double wall, the inner closely adherent to embryo, the outer showing at each pole a pointed projection. The worm has thus far only been found as a human parasite; intermediate stages unknown. It has been reported from Madagascar, Comores, Bangkok, Guiana, and Mauritius.

Subfamily: TÆNIINÆ; Genus: TÆNIA.

### 1. *Tænia saginata* (Goeze).

(*Tænia mediocanellata*; *t. inermis*; beef tapeworm.)

Average length, 3.-8. meters (in relaxed condition often reaching 10. meters), head tetragonal, pyriform, without hooklets or rostellum (in place of latter a central depression in center of frontal face, often slightly pigmented), with four cup-shaped suckers placed at the corners of frontal face, these provided with rather thick lips and often slightly pigmented at the border.; head measuring two millimeters in

transverse diameter at frontal face; neck rather long and slender; first segments very short and broader than long; the segments increasing in their development so as to become much longer than broad (almost cord-like at posterior extremity) and when fully ripe (near posterior extremity) of long quadrate shape, 18.-20. mm. long and 5.-7. mm. broad; genital pores in adjacent segments irregularly alternating upon opposite margins and situated a little back of the middle of the margin of each; gravid uterus showing a median longitudinal trunk with lateral single or dichotomously branching and slender diverticula (25-35 on each side); embryophore ovoid, nearly spherical, slightly brownish, 30.-40. microm. long and 20.-30. microm. transversely, with thick radially striated shell and containing granular hexacanthous embryo.

*Habitat and Transmission.*—This tapeworm, in its adult stage almost solely found in the small intestine of man, is widely disseminated over the world, especially in districts where beef is largely consumed, particularly when by habit of populace the flesh is not well preserved or thoroughly cooked. At present it is by far the most frequent tapeworm of man in this country, and is also the most common cestode of man in western Europe. It is a mistake to trust in the popular idea prevailing in the United States that of the large tapeworms met in man, most are derived from pork. The late Professor Leidy, to whom large numbers of worms were constantly being sent for opinion, informed the author of this work that all specimens sent him for examination during a period of 15 years were *tæniæ saginata*; and while in central Germany *tænia solium* has in previous periods been comparatively common, Heller has found in Holstein the beef tapeworm four times as prevalent as the pork worm.

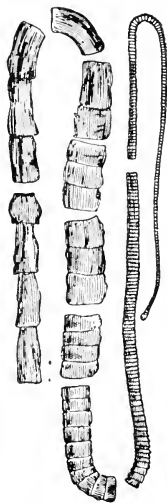


FIG. 192.—*Tania saginata*. (Gould, after Leuckart.)

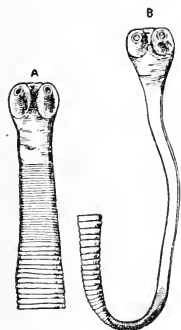


FIG. 193.—Head and neck of *tænia saginata*: A, retracted. B, extended. (Gould after Leuckart.)

The parasite is obtained from eating improperly cooked fresh beef containing the bladder-worm of the cestode. This, the *cysticercus bovis*, is a small spherical or ovoid vesicle, colorless and glistening, usually about half a centimeter in diameter (occasionally reaching or exceeding one centimeter), and surrounded by a thin connective-tissue capsule formed at the expense of the host. After separating the bladder from this envelope one may note a small, opaque, whitish point on one side of the cyst. This is the invaginated head of the future tape-worm, which can be expelled from the cyst by careful pressure of the latter between the thumb and finger or

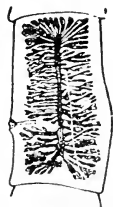


FIG. 194.—Proglottid of *tænia saginata*.  $\times 2$  (Braun.)

may be caused to protrude by immersion in slightly warmed water; thus exposed, the head will be found to possess the characters of the future head of the adult tapeworm, with its neck faintly striated transversely (future segments) and with its posterior end distended into the cyst into

which the head was invaginated. This bladder-worm because of its small size and small numbers (usually) is often missed in inspections of slaughtered beef; it may be found in any part of the striated muscular system and sometimes in the solid viscera, but Hertwig has pointed out its special frequency in the muscles of the masseteric region, in the internal and external pterygoid muscles. It develops from the ingested ovum apparently in a period of about three or four weeks; as a rule, is not of long life in this stage, as experimentally produced cysticercosis of but a few months' duration has repeatedly shown numbers of dead and calcified specimens in the muscles of the experiment animals. There is no doubt of the statement that transmission of the parasite to man follows only when the meat eaten is imperfectly cooked, as it has been shown that brief periods of exposure (several minutes) to temperatures of  $45^{\circ}$ – $48^{\circ}$  C. will kill the larval parasite, and it is safe to say that well-roasted meat ( $70^{\circ}$  C.) cannot transmit the worm in vital condition. Moreover, while temporary drying of the flesh is by no means lethal to the bladder-worm (which while thus shrunken will again assume its vesicular appearance on soaking in water). Perroncito has found all cysticerci dead at the end of two weeks in a well dried and salted piece of veal. After eating noxious beef the subject requires from *seven to ten weeks* before manifesting evidence of the presence of a fully developed *tania saginata* by the passage from the anus of ripe segments of the worm.

These separated segments, usually single, may be found in the dejecta or may be passed in the interval between stools; they were formerly regarded as special intestinal parasites and spoken of as "cucumber-worms," "water-worms," etc.; they are yellowish-white in color, range up to about two centimeters in length, and are either distinctly quadrate and flat or are shrunken into nearly a cylindrical shape; they are usually quite active, having a mode of motion not unlike that of "measuring worms," and in this country among the ignorant there is a superstition that they will, if undisturbed, always crawl toward the nearest water (whence the name "water-worms"). Quite commonly they do gain access to water, but only in a passive convection with ordinary drainage, and when immersed may retain their vitality and activity for a number of days. Ferdinand Herff, of San Antonio, speaks of having found a number of actively moving proglottids of this parasite in the water of a well into which surface drainage carried the contents of a cesspool. If deposited on a dry surface they soon die and are disintegrated and the ova are scattered over the herbage, these not losing vitality for some time because of the protection which their thick shells afford against drying and the elements. Cattle eating the blades of grass thus acquire the embryos within their alimentary tubes, and later these penetrate the intestinal walls and gain access to suitable parts, where they are encysted as larvæ or bladder-worms.

The adult tapeworm in the human intestine has an undetermined duration of life; it is well known to persist for years, and Railliet quotes Wawurch in connection with a case known to have passed segments over a period of 35 years. The parasite is found invariably in the small intestine when discovered at autopsy; usually the head is fixed a short distance

below the pylorus among the villi, the strobile ranging loosely through the extent of the small bowel and only rarely found extending beyond the ileocecal valve. (Recently Shoemaker in Philadelphia found in the lumen of an appendix vermiformis which he removed from a young Syrian woman several actively motile segments of this parasite, although there was little reason to suppose their presence, the real agency in establishing the chronic appendicitis which existed.) Although not provided with hooklets as is the pork tapeworm, it is apparently more firmly fixed than the latter to the mucous membrane.<sup>1</sup> Usually but a single example of the beef tapeworm exists in one host, but cases are reported furnishing as many as five or six.

But little difficulty can be experienced in attempting to distinguish between this worm and the *tænia solium*, with which alone it is likely to be confused at first. As a rule, the strobile is considerably larger and longer; the segments are larger and more active in their movements, and are more likely to be discharged from the anus in the intervals between the stools; the uterus in each link is more highly branched than in case of the tapeworm of the hog; the head is not provided with hooklets; the ova are somewhat larger than those of the latter and a little less spherical. In examining a link for study of the arrangement of the uterus, it is usual to compress it between two glass slides in a small amount of a 1 per cent. solution of caustic potash, or in a 20 per cent. solution of acetic acid.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms occasioned by the parasite are partly local and partly of a reflex nervous type, and are both often so trivial as to pass unnoted. The former are generally of the nature of an indefinite abdominal discomfort, of weight and fullness, of occasional indistinct pain, usually most marked at meal-times, capricious appetite, irregular periods of diarrhea alternating with constipation, occasional nausea and vomiting, slow loss of flesh and strength, and eventually a moderate degree of anemia. The nervous phenomena are also very variable and indefinite, such as nasal pruritus, slight vertigo, choreiform twitching and occasionally epileptiform convulsions, visual disturbances and restless sleep. When the parasite is suspected, the stools should be carefully watched for discharged proglottids and the patient instructed as to the appearance of these should they pass in the intervals from the anus upon the clothing. By microscopic examination occasionally the ova may be discovered, but probably the safer and almost as quick a recognition will be obtained by noting the links themselves as they appear.

The treatment of parasitism by this worm presents no special features differing from the treatment of tapeworms generally and will be discussed (p. 1353) in the latter connection.

## 2. *Tænia Solium* (Leuckart).

(*Tænia cucurbitina*; *t. dentata*; *cystotænia solium*; pork tapeworm.)

**DESCRIPTION.**—Average length of strobile, 2–3. meters, occasionally reaching twice this measurement; head more spherical than that of the *tænia mediocanellata*, but with a somewhat tetragonal shape given by the four rather prominent cup-like suckers with thick lips; head provided with a short thick rostellum bearing a double crown of hooklets (22–32 in number, usually 28); transverse diameter of head 0.6–1. mm.; neck rather thin and approaching one centimeter in length; about 800–900

<sup>1</sup> At least this is the opinion of Railliet, page 239 of his "Treatise on Medical Zoology," although it does not seem reasonable that the worm armed with suckers only should be more difficult to dislodge than the worm armed with suckers and hooklets. I cannot speak from my own experience, for I have never had a case of pork tapeworm.

proglottids; fairly developed links found unusually close to head; fully grown and ripe segments measure 10.-12. mm. long and 5.-6. mm. broad; regular alternation of genital pore on opposite margins of adjacent links, back of middle of margin; uterus consisting of a median longitudinal trunk with from seven to ten coarsely dendritic branches on each side; embryophore nearly spherical, light brownish, with thick radially marked shell and containing a granular hexacanthous embryo, measures 31.-36. microm.

*Habitat and Transmission.*—This parasite in its adult stage is practically limited to the small intestine of man in its occurrence. It is extremely rare in this country, popular impressions to the contrary notwithstanding; and is most frequently met with in Germany, France, Italy, and the British Islands. Because of the more careful meat inspection prevailing at present it is, however, decidedly less frequently met with than formerly. That it does occur occasionally among us is strongly indicated by the fact that the bladder-worm in pork is occasionally found in America; although the above statement as to its rarity is the experience of practically all American helminthologists. While the bladder-worm is occasionally encountered in other animals than the hog (and rarely in man), human beings obtain the intestinal parasites practically solely

from eating improperly cooked pork containing the cysticerci. The encysted larva, known as *cysticercus cellulosæ*, is generally when found in pork encountered in large numbers, commonly in the muscles and especially in those of the shoulder, neck, tongue, diaphragm, and loins, but often in any part of the muscular system and sometimes in the solid viscera and even in the central nervous system. It is somewhat larger than that of the beef tapeworm, is a pale, shining cyst of ovoid shape,

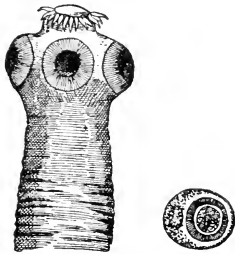


FIG. 195.—Head and neck, and ovum  $\times 300$ , of *tania solium*. Embryophore surrounded by vitellus. (Gould, after Leuckart.)

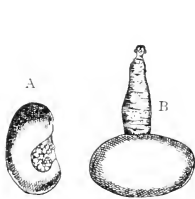


FIG. 196.—*Cysticercus cellulosæ*: A, with invaginated head, B, with evaginated head. (Leuckart.)



FIG. 197.—*Cysticercus cellulosæ*,  $\times 12$ . (Coplin and Bevan, after Leuckart.)



FIG. 198.—*Cysticercus cellulosæ* after digestion of the bladder,  $\times 10$ . (Leuckart.)

measuring from one-half to two centimeters in length, and from three to ten millimeters in transverse diameter; and as above described for cysticerci in general is surrounded by an additional thin connective-tissue wall derived from the surrounding tissues through inflammatory reaction. When picked out of such a situation there may be noted on one side of the cyst a small, slightly elevated spot of opaque white color, with a minute opening at the tip of the prominence. The white mass is the

invaginated head, the tiny opening the outer end of the canal of invagination; and by careful pressure or by immersion in warm water the head may be caused to protrude from its bed through the opening referred to, showing the characters belonging to the scolex of the adult worm. The actual relationship between the cysticercus and the developed *tænia solium* has frequently been demonstrated by feeding experiments. In pork there are usually large numbers of these cysticerci, the muscles of favored parts being literally riddled with the bladder-worms; many of which are usually found in a shrunken and calcified condition (dead). The duration of life in this larval stage encysted in pork is unknown, but probably varies between several months to several years. Young hogs (less than six months of age) are more apt to be infested than older ones, which seem to possess some degree of immunity against the larval worms; and as would readily be supposed, hogs which are not carefully stalled and fed, but which are allowed to roam about, often rooting about manure-heaps (in which in country districts human fecal material is apt to be deposited), are most likely to show infested flesh. As in case of the *cysticercus bovis* above mentioned, careful cooking and prolonged and thorough salting and drying of the meat will destroy the vitality of the bladder-worms; but they seem slightly more resistant to such influences than the cysticerci of beef. About two and one-half months or over are required for the development of the adult worm after the infested pork has been devoured; after which the ripe links may be found in the stools of the patients. They are readily known from those of the beef tapeworm by their smaller size, their less active movement, and by the coarser and less highly branched appearance of the uterus as seen in compressed links cleared with acetic acid, caustic potash solution, or glycerin. The ova are less frequently encountered in the stools than those of the beef tapeworm, being more apt to be retained in the ripe segment until after its discharge and disintegration.

The habitat of the strobile in the human intestine, as seen in cases discovered at autopsy, is similar to that noted for the *tænia saginata*; usually but a single specimen is found (whence the name "*solium*," "the solitary worm"), but occasionally several are encountered in the single host. The duration of its existence in the intestine is unknown, but instances of infested persons who passed links for years are common.

**Symptoms.**—The symptoms caused by this parasite are practically the same as those above detailed for the beef worm. Human cysticercosis is rare; when the bladder-worms occur in the musculature as is usually the case, there are no symptoms of their presence; in the rare cases where the encysted larva is seated in the membranes of the brain or in the central nervous system, irritative and compression nervous symptoms corresponding to the area involved are induced. In man the cysticercus seems to have a longer period of vitality than in the hog, cases extending over 15 to 20 years being recorded with undegenerated scolices found post-mortem in the cysts. The acquirement of this stage of the worm by man means, of course, his previous ingestion of the embryophore, possibly in eating vegetables (salads) grown in ground fertilized with human excrement, or from drinking unfiltered water into which latrines drain, or occasionally from coprophagism or by autoinfection (where the subject has been

the host of the intestinal worm and has transferred the ova to the mouth by some uncleanly habit, perhaps on the fingers soiled by fecal material).

The treatment of cases of parasitism by this worm is the same as outlined below (p. 1353) for the treatment of tapeworm disease generally.

### 3. *Tænia Echinococcus* (von Siebold).

(*Echinococcifer echinococcus*; *tænia nana*, v. Beneden; dog tapeworm.)

DESCRIPTION.—Strobile 2.5–5. mm. long; head small, subglobular, measuring in transverse diameter 0.3 mm., with a prominent rostellum with a double row of hooklets (28–50), with four prominent cup-shaped suckers; neck short and rather thick; three (sometimes four) proglottids, the last of which is commonly longer than the rest of the worm put together (about 15.–3. mm. long and 0.6 mm. wide); genital pore marginal, alternating; uterus consisting of a thick longitudinal median trunk with a few short lateral branches; embryophore spheroidal, with thin radially striated shell and containing a granular hexacanthous embryo; long diameter of embryophore, 30.–36. microm., transverse diameter, 25.–30. microm.

The parasite in its adult stage is met, usually in great numbers, in the upper part of the small intestine of dogs, wolves, and jackals, each with its

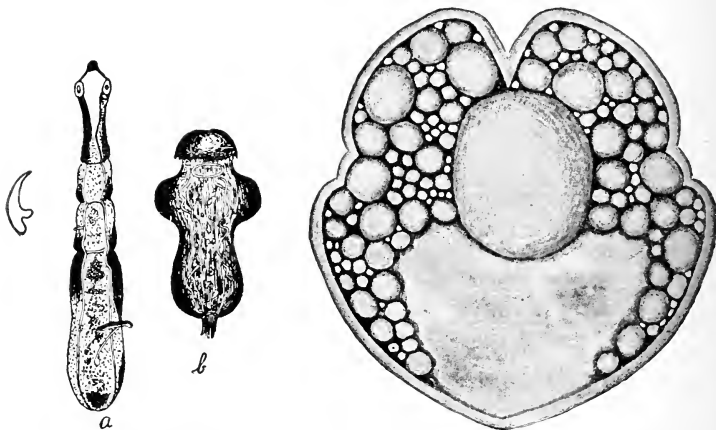


FIG. 199.—*Tænia echinococcus*: a, adult; b, head from echinococcus cyst. On left a detached hooklet, as seen in fluid from cyst. (Coplin and Bevan, after Leuckart.)

FIG. 200.—Hydatid cyst, showing daughter cysts. In the lower part of field is a whitish mass containing parts of the walls of ruptured daughter cysts. The thick wall of the mother cyst is well shown. From liver of man,  $\times \frac{3}{8}$ . (Coplin.)

head embedded among the villi; the ripe segments, when the intestine is laid open and immersed in fluid, floating out and giving the mucous surface the appearance of a coarse, shaggy velvet.

### *Hydatid Disease.*

The worm is of importance in human pathology because its larval stage, known as a *hydatid cyst*, is not infrequently met in the human body, although also encountered in a large range of the lower animals, as the ox, hog, horse, dog, cat, bear, panther, camel, etc., and occasionally in birds (turkeys).

As far as man is concerned, hydatid disease is fortunately rare except in a few localities where dogs are very numerous and are kept in unduly intimate relations with the human beings. Thus in Iceland and Australia,



where such conditions prevail, the disease is not uncommon. In Iceland the ratio is put by various authorities as 1 in 6 to 1 in 61 residents. In some parts of Germany it is not very rare. Thus in Rostock, during a period of 23 years, there was one case of hydatid disease to 1414 residents; in Upper Mecklenburg, one in 129,000 persons; and in Greifswald, one out of 75 autopsies disclosed the disease. In Manitoba, North America, where there are settlements of Icelanders, the disease is not very infrequent. A. H. Ferguson reports that between 45 and 50 subjects have been treated in Winnipeg since 1874, when the Icelandic immigration began. The disease is also occasionally encountered in India, as might be expected from the large numbers of dogs and their lack of proper

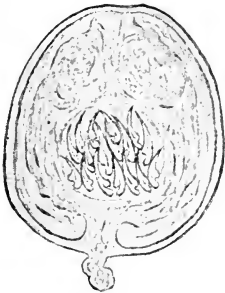


FIG. 201.—Daughter cyst from hydatid cyst, considerably enlarged. (Coplin.)



FIG. 202.—A group of daughter cysts from hydatid cysts. (Coplin.)

care in that country. While in the United States hydatid disease is occasionally met at autopsies, a large proportion of the subjects are foreigners, and presumably have acquired their parasite elsewhere than in this country.

Echinococcus disease is acquired solely through the swallowing of the embryophore of the *tænia echinococcus*; and this must, as above indicated, be practically always referred back to the dog as the original host. The transmission to man comes from eating food tainted with the excrement of the infested dog (as insufficiently cleansed green vegetables grown in soil in which dogs are permitted to deposit their excrement). Or it is possible that where dogs are allowed to roam about the house any food might become tainted by dust bearing ova; unfiltered water might well bear the ova. Probably a common transmission is directly from the dog; thus a dog, which in biting in the anal region because of itching may have had ova cling to the lips or the tongue, may later in licking its master's hand transfer these to the latter, whence they may be transferred to the mouth if the man neglect to wash his hand; or doubtless in many instances the ova become adherent to the hair of the dog while rolling over ground upon which the infected fecal matter has been scattered, and a human being may well have these embryophores carried to the mouth ignorantly, if after petting the dog the hands be not well washed. Conveyed in some such fashion to the human alimentary canal the embryo develops and

penetrates the wall, probably often being passively conveyed some distance in blood or lymph-streams which it may enter, and lodging in some more or less distant situation, where it becomes encysted. The most common site of the resulting hydatid is in the liver, the portal route being probably traversed in its convection, fully half of all hydatids met being found in this organ. After this range the kidneys, bladder, and genitals in about ten per cent.; intestinal canal, nine per cent.; bones, 3 1/2 per cent.; other organs, eight per cent. Of 85 cases collected by William Osler in Canada and this country up to 1891, the liver was the seat in 59—considerably over 50 per cent.

A description of the hydatid cyst has been detailed above in the section on hepatic diseases (p. 516), to which the reader is referred; consideration being there given also to the symptomatology and treatment of hepatic hydatids. No further description of echinococci located elsewhere need be given as they present identical features; and aside from symptoms of the purely local involvement nothing need be added in the symptomatology. When situated in the lungs and pleura the evidences of local tumor, respiratory disturbances and perhaps cardiac labor, the peculiar hydatid fremitus heard on auscultation, and the possible detection of hooklets or of daughter-cysts in the sputum or in fluid obtained from the pleural cavity, would lead to recognition. In case of involvement of the urinary organs the appearance of hooklets in the urine should constitute the certain feature of diagnosis. The symptoms of hydatids of the brain are those of brain tumors, the disease being more frequent on the right side. When absorption of the contents of a hydatid cyst is impossible, usually after rupture or puncture, a rather marked and troublesome urticarial eruption is often met.

#### *Occasional Tæniæ of Other Types.*

4—Braun mentions the occurrence of the cysticercus (*cysticercus tenuicollis*) of *t. marginata* in man, but acknowledges the uncertainty of diagnosis. The adult worm is a common parasite of the dog in this country and elsewhere. The cysticerci, among the largest of bladder-worms, are not infrequently found in sheep and cattle, often in the subserous tissues of the peritoneum. The size of the cyst and the slender neck of the evaginated head should lead to suspicion as to the nature; the head possesses four suckers and 36–38 hooklets.

5—Von Linstow in 1900 described under the name *tænia africana* a tænia obtained from a negro soldier in Africa which presents the following features: strobile over 1.3 meters long; head with apical suckorial depression and four suckers at angles of frontal face (diameter of central sucker, 0.16 mm., of ordinary suckers 0.63 mm.); transverse diameter of head, 1.38 mm.; neck very short, somewhat broader than head; about 600 segments; terminal segments 7. mm. long by 12.–15. mm. broad; genital pore marginal, irregularly alternating, situated in middle of margin of link; testes very numerous, filling the whole interior substance of link; vas deferens very tortuous; cirrus pouch pyriform and thick-walled; cirrus bristled; vagina similarly beset with bristles; receptaculum spindle-shaped; ovary large, paired, made up of radially arranged, unbranched, and non-communicating club-shaped tubes; vitellogene in posterior part of link; between it and ovary the "shell-gland"; uterus consisting of median longitudinal trunk with 15–24 undivided branches on each side; embryophore spherical (31.–34. microm.) or oval (39. by 34. microm.), with thick radially striated wall and containing hexacanthous embryo (hooklets of latter 7.8 microm. in length). The intermediate stage is unknown, but the cysticercus is believed to exist in the zebu.

6—In 1896 Ward described under the name *tænia confusa* a large tapeworm of which he encountered two incomplete specimens, given him by a physician in Lincoln, Nebraska, having been passed at different times from the bowel of a human subject. The head and neck were not obtained. Estimated number of segments 700–800; segments always longer than broad; terminal links 35. mm. long by 4.–5.

mm. broad; genital pore irregularly alternating, placed back of middle of margin of link; testes numerous; vas deferens somewhat tortuous; cirrus pouch thick-walled, long, club-shaped, cirrus bristled; receptaculum seminis subglobular; ovary small, paired, each half somewhat bean-shaped; vitelline gland small, trilobed; "shell-gland" globular; uterus composed of median longitudinal trunk with 14-18 short, divided branches on each side; embryophores oval (30. microm, long, 30. microm. transversely), shell thick, radially striated. Braun suggests this is possibly a variety of *tania solium*.

**Treatment of Tapeworm Diseases.**—There is, perhaps, no morbid condition which has brought more opprobrium upon the regular profession and more "grist to the mill" for advertisers and those who use secret remedies than tapeworm, and to our humiliation it must be said that these persons do seem to have more success in getting rid of tapeworm promptly than we do. There are, I think, two reasons why this is so. In the first place, it is certain that they do not use different remedies from those commonly in use by the profession, but they give larger doses. In the second place, they see a larger number of cases and develop a sort of specialty which, like all specialties, produces greater skill in treatment. In order that a tapeworm may be successfully removed it is necessary that it shall be of a certain size; so that, if a large part of the worm has been brought away by medicine, it is useless to give anything more until the remaining part increases sufficiently in size.

It is sometimes useful to know the exact course pursued in a given successful case. Thus, in such a case the patient was fasted for 29 hours. Twelve hours after fasting began he was given one ounce of castor oil. Twenty-four hours after fasting began he was given 1 1/2 drams (5.55 c.c.) of oleoresin of male fern. In 5 hours more he was given another ounce of oil. The worm came away entire in a mass.

There are half a dozen remedies for tapeworm, and they are all good. I think that the two best are probably the ethereal extract of male fern and kousso flowers. Some prefer the first of these, while others prefer the second. In my hands kousso has been decidedly the most efficient—that is, having failed with everything else and having succeeded with *kousso*, it has naturally become the remedy with which I usually begin the treatment. It is the dried flowers and immature fruit of the *brayera anthelmintica*, a tree native to Abyssinia.

Patients require some preparation before any remedy is employed. In all cases they should be kept absolutely quiet during treatment. They should eat nothing from breakfast time of one day until the next morning, during which time the bowels should be moved by a saline cathartic; when 1 ounce (30 gm.) of kousso and 8 ounces (240 c.c.) of water are to be taken. A more pleasant way is to give 75 grains (5 gm.) in a glass of white wine every half-hour until four doses are taken. If at the end of six hours no movement of the bowels has taken place, a promptly acting aperient, as a dose of oil, compound jalap powder, or elaterium, is taken, but generally kousso requires no purgative after it. The worm is usually discharged entire. Of course, one is never certain that this is the case unless the head is found. At the same time, it does not follow because the head cannot be found that it has not been passed, for it is very small, and may be lost in the discharges. In the *tania solium* the head is about the size of a small pin's head; in the *mediocanellata*

it is a little larger, and in the bothriocephalus it is still larger. If the head has not been removed, it is certain that in from 10 to 16 weeks the worm will grow out again and begin to discharge links. Kouso is said to have induced miscarriage; it should not, therefore, be given to pregnant women. Instead of kouso, the resin which it contains, called koussir, may be given, but I have had no experience with it. The dose is from 20 to 40 grains (1.33 to 2.66 gm.), inclosed in a wafer. The fluid extract is also efficient in dose of  $1/2$  a fluidounce (15 c.c.).

The next remedy in efficiency is the ethereal extract of the rhizome of *aspidium filix mas*, or male fern, whose active principle—an oleoresin—is extracted by ether. The preparation of the patient is about the same as for kouso. The dose of the ethereal extract is from 2 to 2  $1/2$  drams (8 to 10 c.c.), followed in a couple of hours by a purgative. It is a dark, thick liquid, bitter, slightly acrid, and nauseous. Instead of the ethereal extract of male fern the oleoresin may be given in a gelatin capsule. The dose is from 1  $1/2$  to 2 fluidrams (3.88 to 7.4 gm.). Two hours later a dose of purgative medicine should be administered. An important point to be borne in mind is the varying quality of these drugs, and that they deteriorate with age.

The third remedy, in order of efficiency, is the bark of the root of the pomegranate. This has been given in the shape of a decoction, from 2 to 4 ounces (60 to 120 c.c.) to the pint (0.5 liter). Boil the bark half an hour, strain, and drink. The fluid extract is more convenient in the dose of from 45 minims to 2 fluidrams (3 to 8 c.c.). Two hours later a purgative should be given. An alkaloid is obtained from pomegranate, named pelletierine, in honor of the chemist, Pelletier. This is sold in a single dose from 8 to 25 grains (0.5 to 1.6 gm.). When first introduced, it was vaunted as a "sure cure," but the experience of practitioners has not been uniform, and success has been by no means inviolable. I have been successful with it.

Kamala, the hair of the *rotlera tinctoria*, is said to be very efficient in tapeworm, but I have had no experience with it. It is given in doses of from 1 to 2 drams (4 to 8 gm.) suspended in syrup, repeated in from eight to ten hours if it does not purge. The fluid extract is also given in doses of  $1/2$  a dram to 1 dram (2 to 4 c.c.). It is purgative, sometimes drastically so. It may also cause nausea and vomiting.

Another efficient remedy is the oil of turpentine. It is, however, apt to produce symptoms so unpleasant that it should be last used. The dose is from 1 ounce to 2 ounces (30 to 60 c.c.), mixed with twice that amount of castor oil—a horrid dose; but if others fail, it may be tried.

Still another is pumpkin-seed. There are two ways in which it may be given. Three or 4 ounces (30 to 120 gm.) of the seeds may be crushed in a mortar with water, then strained, and the emulsion taken fasting, after a day's dieting. A few hours later a brisk purge should be taken. Second, the seeds may be made into an electuary which is almost as pleasant as sugar candy, and often is about as effectual. I should place these different remedies in the order of their efficiency as follows: kouso, male fern, pomegranate, kamala, turpentine, and lastly, pumpkin-seed.

Combinations are sometimes very efficient. The following is recommended by Strümpell:

R	Granati corticis radices. . . . .	3 iv-v (120 to 150 gm.)
	Aquæ . . . . .	Oij (1000 c.c.)
	Macerate for 24 hours and boil until it is reduced to five fluid-ounces (150 c.c.)	
	Add:	
	Oleoresinæ filicis . . . . .	gr. lxxv (5 gm.).

The whole amount is to be taken in three or four doses as close together as possible.

Thymol, in doses of 10 grains (0.66 gm.) three times a day in a wafer, has been recommended. Another method is to give five grains (0.33 gm.) every hour with or without preparation. Papain, juice of *carica papaya*, is given in doses of from 1 to 10 grains (0.066 to 0.66 gm.).

*Prophylaxis* is of the greatest importance. Great attention should be paid to the cooking of meats, especially of large joints, in order that they may be thoroughly "done." Rare meats should not be eaten.

## B—NEMATHELMINTHES (ROUND WORMS.)

The nematelmintes, or round worms, embrace three orders: *acanthocephala*, *gordiidae*, and *nematoda*. All of these include numerous parasitic organisms, few in fact being free-living; but the *acanthocephala* and *gordiidae* are not known as parasites of man, and may therefore be placed aside from further consideration here.

### NEMATODA.

The nematode worms, like the other orders of the round worms, are unsegmented, elongate, circular or nearly so in their transverse sections, cylindrical or more or less delicately fusiform and tapering toward each end. They are with but few exceptions parasitic and include important examples parasitic in man.

They are covered with a firm and rather transparent cuticle of a hyaloid or fibrillar and non-cellular type, which is believed to be a product of the cellular coverings of the early or larval stages, which is apt to be finely striated transversely (ringed) and which may bear in fixed positions papillæ, tubercles, bristles, spines or hook-like armature, or vesicular or wing-like expansions and folds. The cuticle extends into the oral cavity and is carried as the lining along the esophagus; a delicate continuation with pores moreover extends through the intestine, and at the posterior end of the canal forms the full lining of the rectum and is continuous at the anus with the external cuticular substance. The deep layer of this cuticle, known as the *hypoderm*, is a soft, fibrillar, nucleated, but not cellular structure, internally in close contact with the muscular wall of the worm, and along certain lines in the length of the worm is accumulated in considerable amount so as to form longitudinal ridges projecting internally toward the body cavity. These thickened lines, known as the *longitudinal lines* of the round worms, can often be recognized from the exterior as slightly depressed lines of a more opaque appearance than the rest of the surface. There are usually four, two larger ones, one along each side (lateral lines), and two in the median plane (one dorsal and one ventral), the former usually the more marked; occasionally intermediate lines of the same character, but much less pronounced, are seen between each median and lateral line. These thickenings of the hypoderm, as seen in transverse sections of the animal, separate the muscular layer into four lateromedian fields; and accommodate special structures which extend longitudinally in the worm (each lateral thickening inclosing one of the two longitudinal excretory canals and two lateral nerve trunks; each median carrying one nerve trunk).

The muscular layer forms the bulk of the thickness of the body wall; is in close relation externally with the inner surface of the hypoderm and internally with the so-called body-cavity. It is made up of numerous muscle cells which have their peripheral substance transversely striated and the internal material made up of a soft, reticulated protoplasm in which is embedded a fairly prominent nucleus.

They are of a fusiform shape (sometimes almost bladder-like, with the body much more prominent than the narrow ends), with one end in contact with the deeper layer of the cuticle and the length of the cell extending longitudinally and somewhat obliquely toward the body-cavity, inclining toward one of the lines to receive innervation from one or other of the longitudinal nerve trunks inclosed in the latter structures. According to the number of muscle cells to be seen in the transverse section of the worm in each of the fields between the median and lateral longitudinal lines, the nematodes are often divided into the *polymyariæ* (numerous cells in each of the latero-median fields) and the *meromyariæ* (two muscle cells in each latero-median field); those forms in which the fields are not well separated from each other sometimes being considered as forming a third group, the *holomyariæ*.

The alimentary system of the nematodes is a comparatively simple one. At the anterior extremity of the worm is the oral orifice, a round or transversely oval aperture, about which are often developed definite lips, papillæ (sensory), bristles or chitinous tooth-like armatures. The oral cavity is usually somewhat globular, lined with the internally continued cuticle, and at its deeper part (which may be specially developed as a buccal cavity or vestibule) there may be a chitinous armature of lance-like or spine-like elements. The muscular, suctorial esophagus, with triangular or triradiate lumen, is generally of a long flask shape or cylindrical; often at its posterior extremity it shows special lobes or "valves," which may also present special chitinous structures as an armature. The intestine proper is a long, straight, unbranched, thin-walled tube reaching from the esophagus to near the posterior extremity of the worm. It lies in the so-called body-cavity, held in position by strands of the body-wall derived from the longitudinal lines, mostly the lateral ones. In transverse section this tube is generally flattened dorso-ventrally. The wall is made up of cylindrical or cuboidal cells placed on a basement membrane and internally covered by a very thin and porous continuation of the cuticle continued from the front and hind ends of the gut. Close to the posterior end the tube loses its cellular structure, the cuticular lining becoming more pronounced; this portion is spoken of as the rectum. The anal orifice is usually situated close to the tail on the ventral side of the worm, is generally a transverse aperture, at times with well-marked lips and often with papillæ at its border or about it. In the male sex the rectum forms a *cloaca* with the sexual apparatus; but in the females is isolated from the latter. As appendages to the digestive apparatus may be found in some examples special unicellular glands opening into the esophagus or oral cavity (*esophageal and head glands*) or into the anal lumen (*anal glands*).

The excretory (supposed) apparatus consists of two longitudinal tubes lying in the tissues of the lateral longitudinal lines of the body wall near to the body-cavity, these beginning blindly posteriorly (in a few forms having communication with the body-cavity) and extending anteriorly close to the head, where they pass ventrally and unite in a common tube which opens on the ventro-median line upon the external surface of the worm. These are supposed to carry off waste fluid material from the body wall and to some extent from the body-cavity. Perhaps here, too, may be placed the "*erivical glands*," large unicellular glands situated along the esophagus, with a duct opening on each side to the exterior in a more or less marked lateral papilla.

The nervous system consists briefly of a ring containing ganglionic cells encircling the anterior end of the esophagus or depth of the oral cavity, sending six trunks of small size anteriorly into the head end of the worm and four or six posteriorly. The larger of the latter extend in the tissues of the median longitudinal lines; and either one or two smaller ones in each of the lateral longitudinal lines. Commissures exist about the opening of the excretory duct and in the male about the cloaca; while commissural and muscular branches are given off in the length of each of these trunks. In a few free-living forms eye-spots exist; but in the parasitic ones these are not present, the only sensory apparatus being the papillæ and bristles (oral, anal, or sexual) which exist in variable number and position in the different forms.

There is no definite blood-circulatory system, but the so-called body-cavity probably serves in a measure the same purpose, it being filled with a plasma which in some forms may contain a few cells and which bathes the alimentary and sexual tubes within the cavity and the inner surface of the body-wall.

The nematodes almost invariably have the sexes separate. The male has a simple tubular testis, plicated along the intestine and continuing as a somewhat narrower vas deferens (sometimes with a special dilatation, the *seminal vesicle*) to the posterior extremity of the worm, where it opens with the rectum into the cloaca. On the dorsal side of the latter, inclosed in tubular extensions of the wall (sheaths) are one or two chitinous spicules (penis), projectile and retractile through the action of strands of muscle attached to the base; which, when extended and entered into the vagina of the female, serve to hold the vulvar orifice open for the reception of the seminal elements and which also in some measure serve for attaching the male and female in coition. As an additional feature in the male, not infrequently the cuticular layer, including "rays" of the muscular wall, at the posterior end is expanded so as to form a pocket or "bursa" about the cloacal opening; this musculo-cuticular expansion being applied about the body of the female in coition for pur-

pose of prehension. The female apparatus is similarly arranged as one or two tubes (ovary and uterus) folded along the intestine in the body-cavity. The vulvar opening, guarded by rather prominent lips, often bearing sense papillæ, is generally situated about the middle of the length of the worm, or anterior to this (sometimes posterior) on the ventral side. From this there extends internally a short vaginal tube directly continuous with the single uterine and ovarian tube in the smaller forms, or dividing into the double (anterior and posterior) uterine tube (the far end of which serves as an ovary) in the larger forms. These tubes, as above stated, range in a plicated fashion along the intestine within the body-cavity. Generally the female is readily distinguished from the male by being of larger size and by the fact that the posterior end terminates more pointedly (that of the male being curved or flared out into the copulatory bursa above described).

The life-history of the nematode worms is extremely varied. They are oviparous or ovoviviparous. As parasites they are to be found in many possible situations in the economy of the host, as the alimentary canal, urinary and genital passages (as this paper is being written Dr. Powell of the Methodist Hospital of this city has brought to the writer a fully developed male *heterakis perspicillum*, inclosed in the albumen of a chicken's egg, the worm having evidently passed from its natural habitat in the fowl's intestine by way of the cloaca into the oviduct and there become included in the egg before the formation of the shell-membranes and shell), respiratory passages, blood-vessels, body-cavities or general tissues; and much complication may be met in connection with the different life-stages and with the transmission of the parasites to their hosts. Among the numerous possibilities the following may be outlined as examples. The embryos may develop within the shell-membrane either within the parent or after oviposition within the body of the host; in some forms may escape from the membrane as larvæ and develop directly in the host into the adult parasite (as perhaps occasionally in case of *oxyuris vermicularis*); or may remain as larvæ in the host to be passively transferred to a second host before development into adult form (as in case of *trichinella spiralis*, transferred as encysted larvæ in the muscle of the first host when this is devoured by the second host); or the larvæ being expelled from the host may pass a period as free animals, in which case sometimes (as in case of *strongyloides intestinalis*) a second generation intervenes (alternation of generations) before the animal again becomes parasitic. The ova of some of these worms are passed to the exterior without evidence of development of the embryo and may require for development that they be taken up by a second host in whom development occurs (as is probably the case with the common whip-worm); or may develop only as embryos within the shell-membrane before entering the second host, or again may incubate outside of the body and the larvæ with more or less intermediate development reach some fixed stage and thus await transference to the second host for their full growth and organization (as in case of *uncinaria*). While thus complicated it is to be noted that the intermediate hosts, so essential for the intermediate stages of the flukes and tapeworms, are in these parasites practically absent, the original or the second definitive host being sufficient for the embryonic and larval forms or a free period existing for their development, in most instances.

The following outlined classification, somewhat modified from Braun, may be offered for this large and important group:

- Family 1—ENOPLIDÆ: only free-living forms, commonly marine; sometimes with single bulb; fine hairs and bristles about mouth sometimes; often eyes and mouth armature. Genera: *Enoplus*, *Dorylaimus*, etc.
- Family 2—ANGUILLULIDÆ: mostly free, in water, earth, fermenting or macerating materials; here too a number of parasites in plants and rarely in animals; usually very small and especially characterized by fact that esophagus has two swellings (double bulb); many with a chitinous spine in oral cavity, or teeth; two equal male spicules; often a copulatory bursa; female posterior extremity pointed; vulva in middle of body-length. Genera: *Anguillula*, *Rhabditis*, etc.
- Family 3—ANGIOSTOMIDÆ: characterized by alternation of free-living generation with separate sexes and parasitic parthenogenetic female generation (Heterogony). Genera: *Strongyloides*, *Angiostoma*, *Allantonema*, etc.
- Family 4—GNATHOSTOMIDÆ: a small group including *Gnathostoma* or *Cheiracanthus*, representatives of which live in the stomach of vertebrates, especially mammals; characterized by numerous branching spines, either generally over the surface or only over surface of anterior portion of the body.
- Family 5—FILARIIDÆ: very long, filiform nematodes; oral orifice with papillæ or with two lips; esophagus thin, cylindrical, without bulb; four pairs of preanal papillæ and one unpaired; one or two unequal spicules in male; vulva usually in anterior half of body; generally ovoviviparous. Genera: *Filaria*, *Spiroptera*, *Dispharagus*, etc.

Family 6—TRICHOTRACHELIDÆ: characterized by a beaded esophagus, small oral orifice devoid of papillæ, anterior part of body very slender and filiform; posterior portion more or less thick and bearing the reproductive organs; male spicule single or absent; only one ovary; vulva at border between the anterior slender and posterior thicker part of body. Genera: *Trichinella*, *Trichiuris*, *Trichosoma*, etc.

Family 7—STRONGYLIDÆ: a very large group embracing a number of genera; characterized by possession of six oral papillæ; armature of chitinous teeth or spines frequent; esophagus flask-shaped; male with copulatory bursa and one or two spicules; for the most part small worms. Genera: *Eustrongylus*, *Strongylus*, *Syngamus*, *Sclerosoma*, *Uncinaria*, etc.

Family 8—ASCARIDÆ: mouth with three papillæ, one dorsal and two ventral; esophagus with bulb; male with one or two spicules; ovary double. Genera: *Ascaris*, *Oxyuris*, *Heterakis*.

#### Family: ANGUILLULIDÆ.

This family includes a number of small nematodes with thin, smooth cuticle, filiform, with a small mouth sometimes followed by a vestibule in which there may be a tooth-like armature, and this followed by an esophagus with two bulbous swellings (in the posterior one of which there may or may not be some form of chitinous armature). The males usually have the posterior end flared out into a copulatory bursa, and two equal spicules; the female has the posterior end pointed, with vulva back of the middle of the worm, and a double ovary; they are ovoviviparous.

For the most part they live in water, earth, fermenting matters, and in plants; and are occasionally accidental parasites in man. Thus several instances of the discovery of the common "vinegar eel" (*anguillula aceti*) in the human urine have been recorded; it is quite possible that, in some of these, mistakes have been made concerning the real parasitism, the urine perhaps having been placed before examination in some container in which previously vinegar or fermenting wine had been kept, the worms having been really living in some remaining portion of such material.

The *rhabditis pellio* reported by Schneider as occurring in the bloody and purulent urine of a woman with pyelonephritis was probably introduced into the vagina in bathing the genitals with unclean water, lived and multiplied there, examples being from time to time swept out with the urine, in which it was noted that they soon died. Similar cases have been published by Peiper and by Baginsky. The male of this worm is 0.8–1.05 mm. long; the female, 0.9–1.3 mm. The posterior end of the male has a heart-shaped or leaf-shaped copulatory bursa with from seven to ten muscular rays on either side, unequal spicules. The female has a pointed tail, vulva back of the middle of the body length. The ova within the uterine tube measures 60. : 35. microm.

The form known as *rhabditis niellyi*, found as the larva of an unknown nematode in vesicles in the skin of a boy by Nielly, is usually placed in this family, but it should be recalled here that rhabditiform larvæ of other round worms, as of uncinariæ, gain access to their host through the skin, and it may well be that Nielly's case and other instances of larval rhabditiform worms in the skin (mostly in lower animals) are but examples of other nematodes passing to a new host.

Occasionally some of the anguillulidæ naturally living in vegetables have been found in the vomit of persons who have eaten of the infested vegetables, as in the case recorded by Botkin where the anguillula of onions (*anguillulina putrefaciens*) was thus met.

#### Family: ANGIOSTOMIDÆ;

##### Genus: *Strongyloides*.

#### *Strongyloides intestinalis* (Grassi).

(*Anguillula intestinalis* et *stercoralis*; *leptodera intestinalis* et *stercoralis*; *pseudorhabditis stercoralis*; *rhabdonema strongyloides*; *rhabdonema intestinale*.)

Living as two different (heterogonous) generations; the first dioic and free; the second parasitic as parthenogenetic females. The parasitic form lives in the upper intestinal tract of man; 2.5 mm. long; cylindrical, with pointed tail end; smooth cuticle; simple mouth with four (3?) lips; long, slender cylindrical esophagus, reaching one-quarter of the length of the worm; anus close to tail; vulva at posterior third; containing yellowish-green oval ova (50.–58. : 30.–34. microm.); larvæ develop in intestine (at first 200.–240. microm. in length, but increase to two or three times this length) and are passed in the fecal material. The larvæ differ essentially from the parent in having an esophagus with two bulbs (rhabditiform). In the discharged feces at suitable temperature (about 30 °C.) these develop with one moulting of the cuticle to a free-living generation with separate sexes (at lower temperature are apt to remain at least in part asexual). In this free sexual generation the worms are smooth, cylindrical, and tapering, with pointed tail end; mouth as in parasitic form;



esophagus rhabditiform (two bulbs) with its anterior portion long and with the posterior pyriform and containing a Y-shaped chitinous armature; anus at base of tail; male with tail curved and two spicules, body length 0.7 mm.; female 1. mm. long, with straight pointed tail, vulva a little back of middle; ova few, yellowish, ellipsoid, thin-shelled, 70. : 45. microm., sometimes hatching in uterus. The larvæ of this generation look much as their free parents, are at first 0.22 mm. in length, but grow to 0.55 mm., then moult and assume a filariform or strongyloid character like that of the parasitic grandparent. In unknown manner these gain access to the intestine of a new host or shortly die.

The above outline follows that known for the tropical *strongyloides*; it is said that in the European examples the intermediate generation with separate sexes fails, that the rhabditiform larvæ of the parasitic worms pass with moulting to the condition of the strongyloid larvæ and these, if introduced into the intestine of the next host, directly develop into the parasitic females as above.

The worm is commonly spoken of as *strongyloides intestinalis* when one refers to the parasitic parthenogenetic females and their larval offspring; as *strongyloides stercoralis* in the free form having separate sexes. The parasite was first met in the stools of persons suffering from Cochin-China diarrhea, and was supposed to be the cause of this affection; and at one time, too, was suspected of being in causal relation to Asiatic cholera. Both these views are erroneous, the worm probably having no direct pathological significance; although perhaps, when present in large numbers, it is capable of aiding in keeping up the intestinal irritation of a diarrheal affection caused by some other original influence. The parthenogenetic females are found in the upper part of the small intestine, burrowed in the crypts or a little way in the mucous membrane. Here they deposit their ova. These retained in the crypts or between the folds rapidly incubate and give origin to the larvæ found in the stools. These are usually found in great numbers, scarcely a bit of the fecal matter but contains at least two or three of the young worms in ordinary cases. They are readily observed with low powers of magnification in thin layers of the fecal

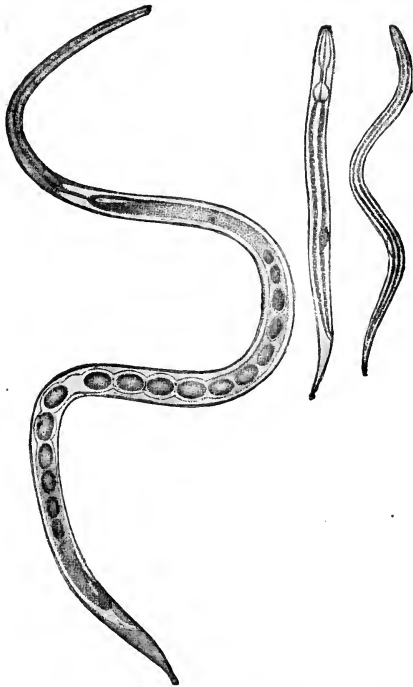


FIG. 203.—*Strongyloides intestinalis*: on the left a gravid female from human intestine (natural size, 2.5 mm.). In the middle a rhabditiform larva from fresh fecal matter,  $\times 120$ ; to the right a filariform larva from culture,  $\times 120$ . (Braun.)

matter, actively wriggling. In autopsies there are occasionally found a few sexually developed examples of the intermediate generation (*s. stercoralis*) in the intestine of the cadaver; but it is probable that these develop after the death of the host from the intestinal larvæ in the same manner that they usually follow after ordinary discharge to the exterior.

Nothing is known as to the mode of transmission to the second host, but presumably unfiltered water or unclean vegetables (uncooked) which may have been grown in soil watered with fecal infusions (as is rather common in China, Japan, and elsewhere) may bear the second generation of larvæ to the intestine of the next person. The worm is found widely distributed in Indo-China, the East Indies, Africa, Europe, and in both North and South America. Few cases have been reported from this country, but it is not an infrequent parasite, at least in our Southern States, where the writer has encountered it a number of times, invariably without notable symptoms.

It may be expelled without much difficulty by the use of the ethereal extract of male fern; and in case of infested persons who for some reason decline treatment, or in whom perhaps treatment temporarily fails, the stools should as a matter of precaution be disinfected to prevent the dissemination of the parasite.

#### Family: GNATHOSOMIDÆ.

This family, generally parasitic in the stomach of a few vertebrates as cats, hogs, is easily recognized by the existence of spines set in the posterior border of the transverse rings or striations of the cuticle, either over the entire worm or only over the anterior portion.

One single example is known to have existed parasitically in man, that found by Levinson, derived from a swelling of the skin of the breast of a young woman in Siam and known as *gnathosoma siamense*. Only one female worm was obtained from this case, although as many as five or six specimens were obtained, but subsequently lost, from several other cases. This female example was 9. mm. long and 1. mm. thick; the anterior extremity was slightly narrowed and the oral transverse opening guarded by two prominent lips, about which were eight circles of spines; the anterior portion of the specimen was beset with three-branched spines (middle branch largest) in front, becoming smaller and simple toward the end of the first third of the body length, back of which the cuticle was free from spines; vulva back of the middle of length.

#### Family: FILARIIDÆ;

##### Genus: *Filaria*.

#### 1—*Filaria bancrofti* (Cobbold).

(*Trichina cystica*; *filaria sanguinis hominis*; *filaria sanguinis hominis ægyptica*; *f. wuchereri*, *f. sanguinis hominum*; *f. sanguinis hominis nocturna*; *f. nocturna*.)

*Male*: colorless; 40. mm. long, 0.1 mm. thick; filiform; anterior end slightly clubbed, the head being a little thicker than the neck; posterior end curved, but not spiral; anus close to tail on ventral side, with three pairs of small preanal papillæ and same number of postanal papillæ; unequal spicules. *Female*: brownish; 76.-80. mm. long, 0.2-0.3 mm. thick; extremities rounded; vulva 1.27 mm. back of anterior extremity, anus 0.28 mm. anterior to posterior extremity; nearly the whole of the body is occupied by the two uterine tubes in which may be seen the ova and already developed larval filariæ. *Larvæ*: covered by a delicate sheath-like membrane, 130.-300. microm. in length, 7.-11. microm. thick.

Bancroft's filaria, the common form of human blood filaria, is met in most tropical countries. It occurs in the West Indian islands, in our own Southern States (where it was first demonstrated by Dr. John Guitéras, and later by a number of observers), and in South America. It is encountered frequently in India, China, and Japan, in the East Indian

islands and the South Sea islands, in Australia, commonly in Africa, and has even been met in southern Europe (Spain). The worm was first known only as the larva found in the circulating blood, no recognition being made of the species *f. diurna*, *f. perstans* and others later described as separate species by Manson. From the fact that these larvæ were met in the blood of infested individuals, the name *filaria sanguinis hominis* was first attached; but later, when the adults were recognized, it was found that the proper habitat of the worm in man is in one of the lymph passages, usually one of the large lymph vessels of the trunk, as in the groins, the pelvis, or thoracic duct; although as errant forms they are also to be found in subcutaneous lymph vessels, and even in the heart and blood-vessels. In such situation are usually found two worms,

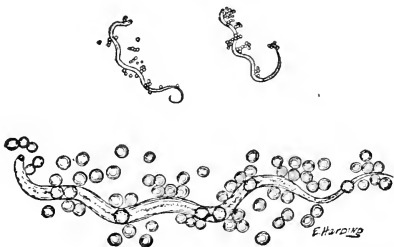


FIG. 204.—Larval *filaria bancrofti* in blood. (Coplin.)

male and female, intimately coiled together and probably living thus for long periods and producing their larvæ. The female generally gives birth to the larvæ (occasionally ova), in large numbers, each inclosed in a so-called "sheath" (the shell-membrane). These are carried along the lymph vessels by the current and eventually are poured into the blood-vessels, each larva being probably capable of several months of life in the blood. The establishment of a positive diagnosis of filariasis is made by the discovery of these larvæ in the blood of the subject examined. They are readily detected with ordinary laboratory powers of the microscope in thin moist films of the fresh blood made just as in examination for malarial parasites, each larva being about as thick as the diameter of a red blood cell, and about forty times as long. They are nicely demonstrated with the sheath stained by drying a film of blood over the fumes of acetic or osmic acid and then staining with hematoxylin and eosin or carmine and methylene blue. In the fresh blood they are seen to have an active, wriggling movement, but because of their inclosure in the sac-like sheath they accomplish but little progression by their activity. They may be obtained at any hour from the interior blood; but show a peculiar periodicity in the peripheral blood, that drawn as in ordinary clinical examinations from the subcutaneous tissues only showing their presence when taken at night (best between dusk and midnight). While no certain knowledge is had explanatory of this periodicity it probably does not rest with periodicity in the life of the worm, but is rather due to a variation in caliber of the peripheral capillaries at night and in day. From the tonicity of the walls of the capillaries and their surrounding tissues in the waking hours of the subject, probably the capillary lumen is too narrow for the easy progression of these larvæ; while in the relaxation from fatigue, and in sleep, it may become sufficiently wide to allow the worm fair opportunity to be borne along with the blood. In support of such an idea stands the fact that if the habits of the infested individual be changed so that he

sleep in day and be awake and active at night, after a short period of indifference the larvæ are to be found in the peripheral blood only in the day. While in the blood the larvæ retain their sheaths and are only passively carried in the blood stream; were it otherwise they could probably actively progress at any hour through the finest blood channels, and could in all likelihood be found in the peripheral blood at all hours, and perhaps might penetrate the vessel walls and tissues of the host. It has repeatedly been noted that in blood preparations after the cells disintegrate and give off their hemoglobin, the plasma thus becoming thicker (although not coagulated), the larvæ are able by their active movements to break through the sheath (which is somewhat fixed by the denser plasma) and then are actively progressive, each showing on close examination a small boring apparatus at the head end.

The further life-history of these larvæ is not certainly established; but it is known that at least some are removed from the infested subject by mosquitoes of the genus *Culex* in withdrawal of blood by these insects. It has been observed that in the stomach of the mosquito, as the blood disintegrates and the plasma thickens, the larvæ, just as in the blood-film alluded to, escape from their sheaths and penetrate the walls of the stomach to bore into the thoracic muscles of the gnat. Here they grow to an intermediate size, reaching as much as 1.5 mm. in length. It was generally believed that the larvæ are next, with the death of the infested gnat, freed into the water upon which commonly the mosquito has died, and that they are transferred with this to the alimentary canal of the next host, boring through the walls of the digestive tube and attaining one of the abdominal or pelvic lymphatics. This idea is by no means abandoned; but it is known that larvæ experimentally kept in water die in the course of a few days, and attempts to infect monkeys with water containing the larvæ have failed. On the other hand, it is well established that the larvæ after growth in the muscles of the gnat, may travel and get into the proboscis; and it is thought quite possible that if the *Culex* at such times should bite a fresh human subject these larvæ may readily gain access to the wound and thus enter the new host. Strong analogy exists in the established similar mode of transmission of *f. immitis* of the dog by mosquitoes shown by Noé; and the present attitude favors this view.

**Pathology and Symptomatology.**—The symptoms of filariasis, aside from the presence of the larvæ in the blood, vary much in individual cases. It is well known that the infested persons, with numerous larval filariæ in their blood, may for years show no symptoms and be apparently in excellent health. Doubtless in such cases the parent worms are located in some portion of the lymphatic circulation which they do not occlude (as the receptaculum chyli) or in such part where free anastomosis prevents serious fault in the lymph flow. If, however, the parasites should occasion obstruction and cause stoppage of the lymph circulation, then in a limited or extensive portion of the body, according to the lymphatic area affected, there follows dilatation of the lymph vessels. This may result in rupture of the distended vessels and lymph edema; or a lymph fistula may develop to the external surface of the body or into one of the body cavities or hollow viscera. Not infrequently such fistula opens into a

ureter or the urinary bladder, the urine becoming milky from the lymph admixture (chyluria); and at times in the development of the fistula some of the small blood-vessels may also be broken into and blood is added (hematochyluria). The distention of the lymphatics may involve the lymph glands; thus those of the inguinal region sometimes form tumor-like masses of a peculiar boggy quality ("varicose glands"), giving on palpation the sensation of interior small solid areas, occasionally growing to half the size of a fist, and requiring to be differentiated from hernia. Along with such conditions the tissues about the dilated lymph vessels and passages become hyperplastic, especially in the skin, where the sometimes enormous thickening of the corium known as elephantiasis (the possibility of a combined or secondary bacterial infection in the production of which should be held in mind) is occasioned. This last is usually met in the skin of the lower members and about the genitals, but is occasionally seen elsewhere. These changes are essentially permanent, and for this reason not every case showing elephantiasis, lymph edema, varicose glands, lymph-fistula, or chyluria need necessarily show the presence of the filarial larvæ in the blood, all of the parent and larval parasites having perhaps died—moreover, lymph obstruction with any of the above secondary results may arise, of course, from other than parasite cause; yet it is safe to say that in infested districts the majority of such conditions as above mentioned should be regarded as due to existing or previous presence of filarial parasites. In addition, there are likely to develop some blood changes, eosinophilia and more or less reduction in the number of red cells, enlargement of the general lymphatics and of the spleen, some indefinite febrile disturbances, more or less alteration of nutrition, together with possible inflammatory changes of the peritoneum, bladder, pelvis of the kidney or of the latter organ itself.

The mechanism of the obstructive phenomena and their results are thus outlined by Manson:

"A parent filaria is lodged in the left thoracic duct. In some way not yet understood it injures the walls of the vessel, causing ulceration or inflammatory thickening. In time this lesion leads to stenosis of the duct. *Pari passu* with the development of the stenosis the thoracic duct on the distal side of the stricture dilates owing to the rising lymph. After a time the stricture becomes so narrow that the lymph and chyle no longer find their way past it to the left subclavian vein. They seek, however, to reach the blood by another route; a retrograde movement down the thoracic duct sets in, and so, by way of the pelvic lymphatics in the walls of the abdomen and the anastomosis between these and the lymphatics of the upper part of the body, the chyle from the intestines and the lymph from the lower extremities find their way into the circulation by the right thoracic duct. Possibly there are other routes, as by the lymphatics of the esophagus, diaphragm, and back. It is certain, however, that a frequent course pursued is that described, which is much the same as that pursued by the blood in the case of obstructed portal circulation. To accommodate this diverted chyle and lymph, the lymphatics by which they pass become enlarged and in many places varicose. The tendency to varicosity is very evident in such places as the scrotum, mucous membrane of the bladder, or wherever the lymphatics are abundant and feebly supported. In many instances these varices, when superficial, can be seen or felt and their nature readily recognized. If the inguino-femoral glands are involved, the varicose groin glands, so characteristic of filaria infection, are produced. Sometimes the varix is apparent on the surface of the abdomen even, as in a case related by Sir William Roberts and in another by Havelhing. That these varices are really part of an anastomosis conveying chyle from the abdominal viscera to the blood is proved by the nature of their contents, which are usually milky-white or slightly red-tinted chyle—not clear and limpid lymph, such as comes from the legs. As the lacteals are the only source of chyle, these chylous contents of the varicose lymphatics must have come from that source,

and the route followed must have been the retrograde one described. Now, if the lymphatics of the bladder happen to be involved in the compensatory anastomosis, and if they give way, as the lymphatics of the scrotum so frequently do in similar circumstances, the result is a leakage of chyle in the bladder, and chyluria. It is evident from this that the embryo filariæ, although they are generally present in the blood and the urine in chyluria, have nothing whatever to do with its production. This is further proved by the fact that in some few cases of genuine and persistent tropical chyluria no embryo filaria can be found either in blood or urine. Proper treatment of chyluria is in principle the same as the treatment of acquired varix in any accessible region. This should consist of rest, elevation, lowering of the tension in the lymphatic vessels by the use of saline purgatives, limited and appropriate food, and abstinence from fluids as much as possible. Certain drugs have been vaunted as specifics for chyluria. Temporary recovery from time to time is the rule, and the drug which was being used at the time the urine cleared spontaneously from the healing of the rupture in the varix of the bladder is often credited with the cure. I cannot understand how a drug introduced by the mouth can possibly cause the closure of a gaping varix in the bladder."

Besides *f. bancrofti* reference may be made at this point to the following species of filariæ, the larvæ of which are to be met in the blood and liable to be confused with those of the ordinary form of human blood filariæ:

2—*Filaria diurna* (*f. sanguinis hominis*, var. *major*): a larval filaria found by Manson in the blood of negroes in West Africa, and differentiated by this observer from the larvæ of *f. bancrofti* by its presence in the peripheral blood in the day rather than at night, and by the fact that its intestine is not as granular as that of *f. bancrofti*. It is of the same size and general appearance as the latter, however. Manson has suggested this as the larval form of *f. loa*. In the few cases in which it was seen it presented no special symptomatology. It seems quite possible that this species is identical with *f. bancrofti*, the time of appearance in the peripheral blood being perhaps dependent rather upon conditions of the host than of the parasite, the less granular condition of the intestine being scarcely enough to justify the idea of specific difference.

3—*Filaria perstans* (*f. sanguinis hominis*, var. *minor*): This form was met as the larva by Manson in the blood of negroes along the west coast of Africa and by him erected into a separate species. It is distinguished from the ordinary filariæ of human blood by the fact that it is present in the peripheral blood at all times, without diurnal or nocturnal periodicity; is smaller; as seen in the blood has no sheath and is actively progressive; has its posterior end truncated and abruptly rounded; and the boring spicule at the head end is more prominent than that of *f. bancrofti*. The adult parasites, subsequently recognized, inhabit the mesenteric and retroperitoneal tissues. The parasite is apparently of little or no pathogenic importance, as the hosts present no symptoms or important lesions thus far referable to the worms or their embryos. The male reaches a length of 45. mm. and is 0.06 mm. in thickness; the female is about twice as long and as thick as the male. The head end is rounded. The tail of the male is curled, and is marked by four pairs of preanal and one pair of postanal papillæ; spicules unequal; a pair of small cuticular appendages at the tip of the tail. Vagina 0.6 mm. from the head end; tail with cuticular appendages at tip as in male; one anal papilla.

The intermediate hosts are as yet unknown.

4—*Filaria demarquayi*: Manson gave this name to certain larval filariæ found in the blood of natives of the West Indies and New Guinea, which look like those of *f. bancrofti* but are only about half as large. The larvæ are apparently ensheathed, but of this Manson is not sure; they were found in the peripheral blood both in day and in the night. The adult female only has been met, reaching 80. mm. in length and 0.25 mm. in thickness. It was found in the mesentery of a nation of St. Lucia by Galgey and described by Daniels and Ozzard. Nothing is known of the intermediate host; and the specific isolation of the parasite is as yet not without question. It is not known to be of pathogenic importance.

5—*Filaria ozzardi*: a larval form obtained from the blood of Caribs of British Guiana and established by Manson as a separate species; resemble the larvæ of *f. perstans*; measure 0.173–0.240 mm. in length and 0.0043–0.005 mm. thick; have no sheath and are actively progressive in the fresh blood preparations; have blunt tails (sharp-tailed forms also found in the blood of the same patients and supposed to represent another phase of the same parasite). Manson states that more recently Daniels has found at autopsy in several Caribs, known to have shown these larvæ in the blood in lifetime, numerous adults in the mesentery and fat at the base of the mesentery (and in one case in the subpericardial fat). These were 7.5 cm. in length and very slender (about one-third as thick as *f. bancrofti*), head somewhat club-shaped and without papillæ; tail of male coiled and showing one projecting spicule.

6—*Filaria magalhæsi*: At autopsy in the heart of a child in Rio Janeiro Magalhães found two sexually mature filarial worms, male and female, to which the above name has been applied. *Male*: 83. mm. long and from 0.28 to 0.4 mm. thick, with thick finely transversely striated cuticle, rounded head end without papillæ, posterior end with double curl and four large pairs of preanal and of postanal papillæ, with one (probably two unequal) spicule, anus 0.11 mm. anterior to tail, mouth round and unarmed. *Female*: 155 mm. long, 0.6–0.8 mm. thick, with cuticle a little more coarsely striated than in male; head-end as in male; tail slender, ending bluntly; vulva 2.5 mm. from anterior end; anus 0.13 mm. in front of tail; two ovaries, with the ova contained measuring 38. microm. long and 14. microm. wide, the larvæ 300–350. microm. in length.

**Treatment of Filariasis.**—There are no established remedial measures in case of these forms of filarial infection. Thymol has been lauded as almost a specific and has at times seemed to have given excellent results, but in many other cases it has been apparently of no value. So, too, benzoic acid and benzoate of soda have been recommended for the destruction of the parasites, but are of not more promise than the thymol. At best treatment has most to deal with the effects of the parasites in the way of the elephantiasis, lymph edema, fistulæ, chyluria, etc., and of course, the above drugs can have no value in such relation. Such conditions must be met individually and symptomatically. Elephantiasis is at times to be dealt with surgically, as in case of elephantiasis of such restricted regions as the scrotum, or of the female genitalia. It may be dealt with in cases of general involvement of the skin of the limbs by elevation of the member, application of pressure by bandage from foot upward, and perhaps some value may be realized from the internal administration of iodid of potash. Inasmuch as there is reason to believe that the dermal thickening of elephantiasis is, at least in the early stages of the inflammation, in part due to associated infection of the skin by various common bacteria of the surface of the body, there is reason in employing internal antiseptics (as methylene blue or ichthyol) or applications of ichthyol or other antiseptics to the surface beneath the bandages advised. Treatment of chyluria or hematochyluria demands rest in the recumbent position, the lowering of lymphatic tension by saline purgatives, appropriate food, and limitation of fluids; such measures being appropriate also in connection with the pressure treatment of elephantiasis and in that of all of the mechanically induced lesions.

As measures of prophylaxis the careful screening of infested individuals from mosquitoes, particularly at night, all efforts to destroy mosquitoes and prevent their breeding and entering human habitations, and the careful filtration and boiling of water used by inhabitants of infested districts (in recognition of the possibility of correctness of the old theory of water transference of the larvæ) should all be practised—such measures much more than attempted remedy of existing cases holding out promise of valuable results.

#### 7—*Filaria medinensis* (Linneus).

(*Vena medinensis*; *dracunculus Persarum*; *gordius medinensis*; *filaria dracunculus*; *f. athiopica*; *dracunculus medinensis*, Guinea-worm.)

Only the female certainly known; whitish or yellowish; 50–80. cm. or more in length, 0.5–1.7 mm. thick; cylindrical; anterior end rounded; oral orifice terminal; small, with two lips back of which are two lateral and four submedian papillæ, posterior extremity curved into a hook and terminating in a blunt point; intestine missing (probably atrophied by pressure of gravid uterus) up to esophagus; vulva

and vaginal tube not recognized; nearly the whole body occupied by the double uterus full of larvæ and ova in various stages of development. Males probably represented by the small worms found by Charles in an autopsy on a native in Lahore, in whom in the subperitoneal tissue he encountered two female Guinea-worms each having a small worm about four centimeters in length attached about 14 centimeters back of the head end; it is from this believed that males are much smaller than females and that after coition they perish and are lost. Larvæ in uterus measure 0.5-0.75 mm. in length, slightly tapering toward the head extremity and gradually tapering from the middle to a long fine straight posterior extremity, finely striated transversely, somewhat flattened laterally; escaping to the exterior of host through the mouth of the parent by rupture of uterine sac when the mother worm comes to the surface of the body of the infested individual.

The Guinea-worm, known of old as the "fiery serpent" of the children of Israel in their wandering through the wilderness and mentioned in the ancient writings of other races, occurs in India, Persia, Turkestan,

in Egypt, and in fact all through tropical Africa, especially on the west coast. It has been introduced with negroes from Africa into this country, but has not taken permanent hold in the western hemisphere save in a few isolated localities in South America. It has been found occasionally in cattle, horses, the dog, jackal, leopard, and wild cat; but it is most common in man. It occurs without reference to race or age, is more common among males, but probably only because of some difference in exposure from habits; and generally is most frequently seen during the wet season and in the succeeding hot months of the year. Its usual habitat in the host is in the subcutaneous tissue of the lower extremities, down near the ankles, but it has been found in the trunk, in the face, and about the eyes and in the tongue, and elsewhere. It does not remain in one locality, but wanders through the tissue, usually causing some minor itching as it travels; and after maturation, which is reached after some months or a year or more after entrance of the larval worm, it coils itself in

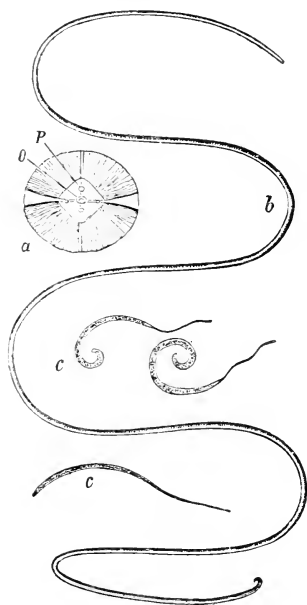


FIG. 205.—*Filaria medinensis*: a, anterior extremity; O, mouth; P, papilla; b, female, reduced to less than half normal adult size; c, larvæ, enlarged. (Braun, after Claus.)

some locality, as about the ankles, and there occasions a red and painful tumefaction. Probably, as above suggested, in the original infestation both a male and a female larva enter the host; after coition it is thought the male dies and is absorbed and the female continues to grow, developing an enormous number of larvæ in the uterus, pressure from the distended uterine sac causing the atrophy of the other structures internally and being largely responsible for the size of the mature worm. After several days the swelling, which may be as big as a pigeon's egg, becomes vesicular at the top and breaks down into an ulcer. When



moisture is applied over this ulcerated tip (either water purposely dripped upon it or incidentally applied when the host is wading) the worm seems to be stimulated to discharge the larvæ, and the head end is slightly protruded through a small opening in the midst of the ulcer. The uterine sac seems to be forced through the oral orifice, breaks, and from it escapes a milky fluid abounding in actively moving larvæ. Some days may elapse before the entire discharge of the latter, the worm coincidentally shriveling and eventually spontaneously passing out from the tissue.

Nothing is really certainly known as to the life-history of the larvæ. It has been definitely shown that they may be directly passed with the water into which they have escaped to the next host and reach full development in such individual; but whether this is the rule is not established. Manson and others believe that, having escaped from the host into water, they enter the bodies of certain minute water arthropods (*cyclops*), therein moulting several times, becoming cylindrical, losing the delicate tail, and developing a small tripartite tail appendage. Whether the larvæ enter the next human host ordinarily with the water into the intestine (either free or inclosed in the arthropods), or whether they penetrate the skin of some individual who may be wading in water containing them, is not known. It is known that in clean water they are not of long life, dying in five or six days; in muddy water they live for several months as free-swimming larvæ; and when parasitic in *cyclops* are still more enduring.

There is rarely more than one parasite of the species in one host, although there have been placed on record as many as 50. The symptoms occasioned are practically entirely localized to the place of escape of the worm and under conditions of cleanliness after the removal of the parasite entirely disappear. Occasionally, in the height of the local inflammation, there may be a slight febrile general state induced, but this is not of importance; however, should the worm be broken in an endeavor to drag it out, suppuration and more or less septic absorption with general symptoms may ensue.

**Treatment.**—Attempts to destroy the worm before its maturation and pointing are practically useless with means at present known; and the treatment is limited to the safe withdrawal of the worm and antiseptic dressing of the sore occasioned. The natives are in the habit of allowing water to drip over the ulcerated surface to cause the protrusion of the head of the worm; this is then fastened to a small stick, which is bound loosely to the surface by a well-moistened bandage. From time to time, several times daily, a turn is taken upon the stick, thus winding the protruding part upon it until finally the entire length is safely and without breakage withdrawn. A more excellent method has been suggested by a French surgeon, Emily, who injects with a fine hypodermic needle a little corrosive sublimate solution into the head end of the worm, which kills the parasite and allows it to be more readily withdrawn. Or if this cannot be done he would inject a small amount of the bichlorid solution into the swollen tissue about the worm, which is also likely to destroy the worm, and then cuts down upon it and carefully extracts it. Faulkner has said that he has been able to expel the worm entire within an hour by applying one pole of the constant current over the tumefied area.

It is impossible to be specific as to prophylaxis; but at least with our present knowledge it is advisable to refrain from the use of water for drinking which has not been boiled or well filtered, and lest perhaps the larvæ enter the host through the skin it would be well to refrain from wading in muddy water in countries where the parasite is known to exist.

#### 8—*Filaria loa* (Guyot).

(*Filaria oculi*; *dracunculus oculi*; *d. loa*; *f. subconjunctivalis*; *f. lachrymalis*.)

*Male*: length, 20.–30. mm.; width, 0.3–0.4 mm. whitish or yellowish; cuticle not striated but, except at extremities, beset with numerous irregularly placed protuberances; anterior end as a truncated cone; at base of cone, dorsally and ventrally, a small papilla; posterior end slightly curved ventrally, pointed; mouth unarmed; anus 82. microm. in front of tail; three pairs of prominent preanal papillæ, two pairs of smaller postanal papillæ; two unequal sexual spicules. *Female*: 30.–40. mm. or more long, 0.5 mm. thick; surface and anterior end as in male; posterior end straight and tapering, round at tip; vulva at end of first fourth of body; double uterine tube nearly filling the body, the ends of tubes as ovaries; the uterus filled with ova and larvæ (253.–262. microm. in length) with rounded head ends and long pointed tails.

This worm is, as far as now known, confined to Western Africa; it has been known in America, having been conveyed in negro slaves to this country, but has never become permanent here. The adults live and wander through the subcutaneous tissues, especially about the face, nose, and eyes, and have been especially found in the subconjunctival tissue. Crawling in the skin, the worms cause considerable itching and burning pain; and in the eyelids and conjunctivæ induce more or less troublesome inflammation and swelling. The adults are known to persist for months or even several years in these situations in the host; but, as a rule, there are only a few present in one individual. The mode of escape of the larvæ from the host and their subsequent history are unknown. The treatment is limited to the removal of the parasite by surgical methods, as the clipping of an opening in the conjunctiva and withdrawal of the worm cautiously by means of suitable forceps.

#### *Occasional or Accidental Filaria in Man.*

9—*Filaria immitis* (*f. canis cordis*; *f. papillosa*, *hæmatica canis domestici*.)

*Male*: 12.–18. cm. in length, 0.7–0.9 mm. in thickness; filiform; whitish; rounded head end, and posterior end pointed and coiled spirally; oral orifice round, unarmed, terminal, with six small papillæ around it; anus close to tail, with three pairs of large preanal papillæ and one pair of smaller postanal papillæ (by some a larger number recognized); feebly developed lateral cuticular wings at tail end; two unequal spicules. *Female*: 25.–30. cm. in length, 1.–1.3 mm. in thickness; anterior end as in male; posterior end tapering to obtuse point, straight; vulva 7. mm. from anterior end; viviparous. *Larvæ*: 285.–295. microm. long, 5. microm. in thickness, with finely tapering and pointed tail.

This worm is commonly met in the heart and larger blood-vessels of the dog; and has a wide distribution in the body. Bowlby has described its occurrence in considerable numbers in the body of an Arab in the portal vein. The worm is of considerable interest, too, because of the proven convection of the larvæ from one dog to another by mosquitoes (Grassi and Noë).

10—*Filaria oculi humani* (*f. lentis*); Several instances of the occurrence of small worms, apparently filariæ, in the lens have been recorded by ophthalmologists, ranging from 1. to 12. mm. in length. It is very questionable whether a definite species exists, the above name having been coined without sufficiently careful examination of any of these parasites; which may well be of different species and probably errant examples of known filariæ.

11—*Filaria hominis oris*: Under this name Leidy described a male (?) filaria which he found preserved in alcohol in the collection of the Philadelphia Academy of Natural Sciences, labeled "from the mouth of a child," but without any further record. It was 14. cm. long, 0.16 mm. in thickness, head end rounded, with mouth

round and simple; posterior end obtuse, furnished with a short curved epidermal hooklet 0.05 mm. in length.

12—*Filaria restiformis*: Leidy has proposed this name for a filaria, a single specimen of which was submitted to him having been passed *via* the urethra from a young man in West Virginia, the urine just before and for a few days after passage of the parasite being milky, slightly bloody and rich in mucus. It was 65. cm. long, 1.5 mm. thick; nearly cylindrical; red when fresh; with smooth, shining, and tough cuticle; head end rounded, without appendages; posterior end not tapering and tail bluntly rounded, incurved, and without appendages; mouth terminal, round, unarmed, without papillæ; no evident anus or genital aperture; straight cylindrical intestine apparently ending blindly; generative organs unobserved. Leidy regarded it as merely an accidental parasite of man, but was unable to identify it with known species and hence proposed the above terminology.

13—*Filaria peritonei hominis* (*f. conjunctiva*; *f. inermis*): Thus far the female only is known. Length about 16. cm.; thickness 0.4–0.5 mm.; whitish to brownish; filiform; extremities slightly tapering, posterior more than anterior; posterior end terminated by an incurved point; cuticle striated transversely and showing longitudinal lines; head without papillæ; mouth small, round, unarmed; anus 0.3 mm. from tail; vulva 0.05–0.1 mm. back of mouth; ova developing in uterus to larvæ, 350. microm. long, with finely tapering and pointed tail.

This worm is known to occur in the horse and the ass, probably more frequently than has been supposed, as there is some chance of its being confused with *f. equina*; in man it is doubtless but an accidental parasite. It is suspected as being identical with a filaria (*f. palpebralis*) obtained from a small cyst in the upper eyelid of a boy in Palermo by Pace; and Railliet suggests that it may represent the adult stage of some form of *f. oculi humani*. It has been found three times in man, once in the eye by Dubini, encysted in the folds of the gastrosplenic omentum by Babes, and by Addario in a pea-sized tumor of the ocular bulb.

14—*Filaria labialis*: Pane gave this name to a filaria (female only found) obtained from a small pustule on the inner side of the upper lip of a Neapolitan. It was about 30. mm. long; anterior end slightly tapering, with small terminal mouth about which were four papillæ; posterior end tapering, but a little bulbous at the tip; anus 0.5 mm. in front of tail; vulva 2.5 mm. anterior to anus; double uterus, the posterior tube of which is apparently rudimentary.

15—*Filaria lymphatica* (*Hamularia lymphatica*; *f. hominis bronchialis*): This worm as originally described (male) was found by Treutler in the bronchial lymphatic glands of a phthisical subject; length, 26 mm., brownish blotched with white, almost transparent posteriorly, filiform, slightly compressed laterally; with two spicules. Instances supposed to be of the same type have since been recorded by Blanchard, Brera, and v. Linstow. Braun regards the worm as identical with *f. equina*, a common parasite of the peritoneal and pleural serous membranes in the horse; but the data in hand from the original case are too meager to permit this view to definitely prevail.

16, etc.—Leuckart has found in several small cystic tumors from the subcutaneous tissue of negroes of the west coast of Africa numerous filariæ, male and female, occurring in tangled masses in a fluid in the interior, this fluid containing numerous larvæ, like those of *f. bancrofti*. The males measured 30.–35. cm. long; the females, 60.–70. cm. Similar instances have been found in Africa by Labadie-Lagrave, Deguy, and Prout. Leuckart describes the worm under the term *f. volvulus* (*volvulans*, Railliet?).

A small filaria measuring 1. mm. long and 0.03 mm. thick, with mature alimentary and sexual apparatus, was found in the blood of a Roumanian by Sarcan and termed *f. romanorum-orientalis*.

Kolb has recorded the discovery of a filaria bearing some similarity to *f. medinensis* free in the peritoneal cavity of a negro in eastern Africa, under the name *f. kilimariæ*.



FIG. 206.—*Filaria immitis*: natural size; to left, male; to right, female. (Railliet.)

Family: TRICHOTRACHELIDÆ;

Genus: *Trichiuris*.***Trichiuris trichiura* (Leuckart).**(*Ascaris trichiura*; *trichocephalus trichiurus*; *trichocephalus hominis*;  
*trichocephalus dispar*; whip-worm.)

*Male*: 35.-45. mm. long; whitish; anterior three-fifths slender and thread-like; posterior two-fifths thicker, cylindrical, terminally rounded and curled; anus terminal; single spicule in a tubular sheath containing small spinules. *Female*: 35.-50. mm. long; shape as in male for front and body; posterior extremity straight, bluntly pointed terminally; vulva at beginning of thick posterior portion of body; ova brown, oval, thick-walled with a colorless shining button-like protuberance at each pole (50.-54. microm. long; 23. microm. broad).

This parasite, commonly known as the "whip-worm" because of the shape (the anterior filiform end suggesting the lash, the posterior thicker part the handle of the whip), is a very common and widely distributed parasite of man, finding its habitat in the large intestine, where the worms are found adhering to the wall by the anterior ends, which are buried a short distance in the tissues of the mucous membrane. It is one of the most common intestinal parasites in this country, although but little attention is given it and few records are to be had. The ova are



FIG. 207.—*Trichiuris trichiura*, natural size: A, male; B, female.

discharged with the fecal matter from the intestine, and in water or moist earth the embryo develops within the shell, but does not escape to free larval life. The thick shell affords considerable protection and the embryo may live for months before destruction, thus incased. Probably with water or food the developed ova are introduced into the intestine of the next host, where in about a month or less the fully matured adult worms will



FIG. 208.—Ovum of *trichiuris trichiura*.

be found. The parasite is of little pathological importance; there are not often more than a dozen present in one host, and apparently they do but little damage and practically never give rise to appreciable symptoms of their presence. Doubtless some little irritation and a very slight loss of blood from the lesions occasioned in the mucous membrane of the cecum and colon may result, but these are not of sufficient gravity to be noted. It is a somewhat difficult worm to dislodge with the ordinary parasitocides, probably yielding more readily to male fern than to other drugs of this class.

Genus: *Trichinella*.***Trichinella Spiralis* (Owen).**(*Trichina spiralis*.)

*Male*: Length, 1.4-1.6 mm.; thickness 0.04 mm.; cylindrical; anterior end tapering, posterior end gradually and slightly thickening and terminating in bifid extremity with two lateral somewhat conical tail appendages; cloacal aperture between these, which form a sort of bursa; back of cloacal aperture two pairs of papillae. *Female*: 3.-4. mm. long; anterior end as in male; posterior end nearly of same thickness to tail, which is rounded; anus terminal; vulva at anterior fifth of body; viviparous. *Larvæ*: when born, 90.-100. microm. in length, obtuse anteriorly, posteriorly prolonged to a pointed tail; when encysted as "muscle trichinæ" the larvæ measure about 1. mm. long and 0.04 mm. in thickness, tapering anteriorly, more thick and obtuse posteriorly, with complete organization as in the adult and showing the characters of the different sexes.

This important parasite in its adult, sexual stage infests for a brief period the intestinal tract of man and a number of animals (mainly mammals), gives origin to a large number of larval worms after which the adults die; the larvæ make their way into the muscles of the same host

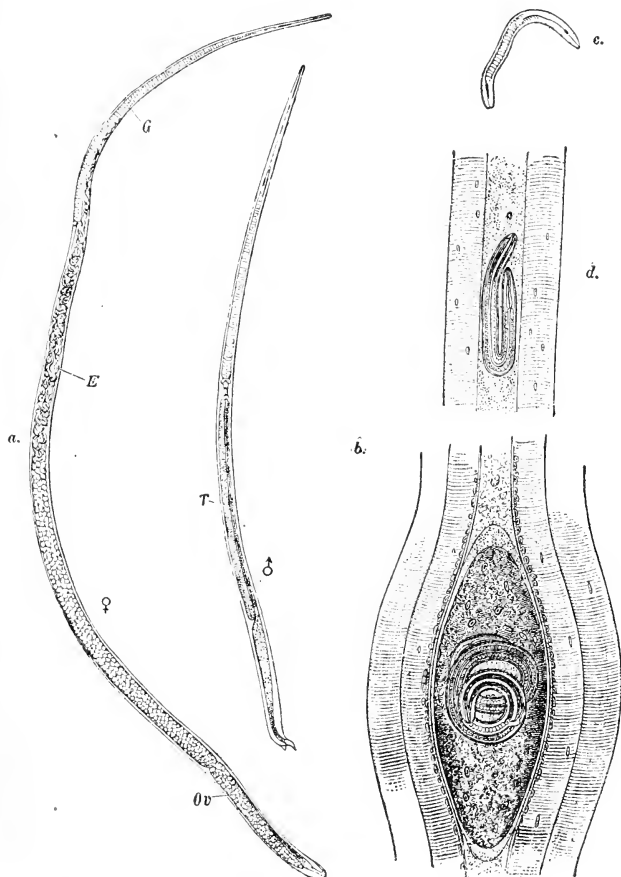


FIG. 209.—*Trichinella spiralis*: a, gravid female "intestinal trichina"; E, embryos; G, vulva; Ov, ovary; b, adult male "intestinal trichina"; T, testicles; c, young larva; d, larva in musculature; e, encapsulated larva in muscle. (Braun, after Claus)

and pass an indefinite encysted stage in this situation until transferred to the next host by the ingestion of the infested flesh by the latter. The species was first established by Owen in 1835, from encysted larvæ in the muscles of human anatomical subjects; in 1846 Leidy announced the discovery of the encysted larvæ in pork; but it was not until 1860, mainly through Zenker, that the full relation with the intestinal form and the development of the worm were understood.

Besides in man the worm is commonly found in the hog (domestic and wild), in rats, and in mice; it has also been met in rabbits, guinea-pigs, cow, sheep, horse, dog, cat, fox, martin, badger, bear, raccoon, mole, skunk, hedgehog, hippopotamus, hamster, and in birds as hen, pigeon, and duck. It is most common in man, hog, rat, guinea-pig, and rabbit.

Man commonly acquires trichiniasis by eating infected ham insufficiently cooked. The capsules are digested and the trichinæ set free; they



FIG. 210.—Section of human muscle containing encysted *trichinella spiralis*; parasite and its cyst cut in section, and but a part of the larval worm shown; about upper pole a local fat deposit.

pass into the small intestine and there develop into the sexually mature worms, attaining maturity about the third day; of these the males die after fertilization, while the females adhere to the mucous membrane, or may perforate the intestinal wall and may find their way into the mesentery and lymphatic glands of the mesentery. Each of these gives birth to large numbers of larvæ; the young brood is carried away from the bowel or mesentery in the lymph stream, and is distributed partly through the blood and lymph streams and partly by active migration. Before birth the young trichinæ are from 0.09 to 0.1 mm. (0.0035 to 0.0393 inch) long, growing slightly during migration, say from 0.12 to 0.16 mm. (0.0047 to 0.0063 inch). Their favorite seat of lodgment is the striated muscular tissue, within the striped muscular fasciculus itself, or between the muscular fasciculi and parallel to them. In nine or ten days after infection

the first brood reaches its destination, to be followed by others, since the intestinal trichinæ continue to produce young throughout a life of seven weeks. A single worm, it is said, may bring forth from 8,000 to 10,000.

The young trichinæ begin to be encysted in the muscle about the second or third week after infection, by which time the parasite has grown to 0.8 mm. (0.0314 inch) in length. Each one arranges itself in a spiral, of which the outline is oval, and becomes surrounded by a capsule of corresponding shape, the worm cyst lying with the long axis parallel to the direction of the muscular fibers. The cyst is transparent, 0.4 mm. (0.0157 inch) long, and 0.25 mm. (0.0098 inch) wide. After from five to eight months calcification may even involve the inclosed trichina itself. On the other hand, the capsule may undergo fatty degeneration and calcifications, a pathological change which takes place at times early, at others only after the lapse of years. The encapsulated trichina remains living and capable of development for a long time—according to Damman, in hogs eleven years, while in man they have remained living 25, 27, 30, and 40 years after infection. It has been shown by Zenker that the encysting is not a necessary condition to the mature development of young trichinæ.

Human infection having been conclusively shown to be due to the eating of raw pork infested with trichinæ, it is not at once evident how swine become infected. It is well known that the rats which infest slaughter

houses are infected in large numbers, but it is plain also that they may acquire trichinæ by eating pork. The two probably contribute mutually to the perpetuation of the disease.

As to the distribution of the trichiniasis: most epidemics have been in Germany. Even in America, where there have been two or three epidemics, it has been in German immigrant communities. Apparently it is rather the imperfect cooking of the pork which is responsible, for although a larger percentage of American pork appears to be infected than German, yet, as already stated, the disease is much more infrequent in America than in Germany. It is to be remembered that while thorough cooking effectually destroys the parasites, the requisite heat may fail to reach the interior of large masses of meat containing viable larvæ.

**Symptoms.**—The immigration of numerous active parasites in muscular tissue is followed by intense irritation, manifested at first by fever and muscular pain. The latter is especially severe during motion. The acts of chewing, swallowing, and breathing are particularly difficult, because of the pain excited by these acts. In the early stage of the disease diarrhea is quite common, so that certain epidemics have been mistaken for typhoid fever and as often also for rheumatism. In the very beginning of the immigration into the muscles edema has sometimes been observed. The more general and thorough the invasion, the more intense the symptoms. Very high fever, delirium, infiltration of the lungs, and fatty degeneration of the liver have been observed. Death may take place either from exhaustion as the result of extreme irritation, or later in the disease from the same cause preceded by anemia and gradual loss of strength. Usually, however, improvement sets in about the fourth or fifth week, though convalescence in bad cases is slow, and many weeks elapse before recovery is complete.

**Diagnosis.**—It is usually the unexpectedness of the disease which leads to delay in diagnosis. The resemblance of the symptoms to those of *typhoid fever* and *muscular rheumatism* has been referred to, yet in the presence of a possible cause—as, for example, a German picnic or other feasting occasion where the favorite ham or sausage has formed part of the feast—such symptoms should immediately excite suspicion. The discovery by Thomas R. Brown in 1897<sup>1</sup> that eosinophilia is constantly associated with trichiniasis is important and, when present, is confirmatory of the existence of the disease. A differential blood count should therefore be made in suspected cases. When doubt exists, the harpoon, designed for obtaining samples of muscle for examination, should be unhesitatingly used, under ether or local anesthesia, and the part removed carefully examined under the microscope.

**Treatment.**—Salting of the pork, while causing the death of a few of the encysted larval trichinæ, is insufficient to destroy any large proportion unless prolonged much more than is usually practised; smoking is also lethal to the larvæ, but insufficient to guarantee the death of all; cold storage is of little or no value; but an exposure to heat of 70° C., as should be assured in thorough cooking, is known to be uniformly fatal to any remaining parasites and should render the infested flesh innocuous.

<sup>1</sup> "Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin," April, 1897.

However, it must be remembered that heat does not well penetrate to the interior of large masses of meat; and nothing but certainty of the thoroughness of cooking can be relied upon; and imperfectly cooked pork is more apt to be eaten than well cooked when hams are boiled entire.

Here, as so often elsewhere, an "ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure." Such prevention consists in thorough official inspection of all pork brought to market, because cooking may fail of its purpose for the reasons already mentioned. For a similar reason swine should be grain-fed, rather than allowed to feed on offal. It is doubtful whether any direct measures can be used for arresting the disease after the muscles have once been invaded. It is a simple conflict for the mastery between the strength of the patient and the life of the trichinæ. In the majority of cases the former triumphs, though death is not infrequent from the causes named. If the disease is recognized early, the alimentary canal should be treated with vermicides and purgatives, with a view to getting rid of all the sexually mature worms which may happen to remain there, since it will be remembered that successive broods develop from the same mother-worm while in the intestinal tract. Glycerin, given in a tablespoonful (30 c.c.) dose hourly, is said to destroy the trichinæ. Benzine, in 1 to 2-dram (4 to 8 gm.) doses in capsules, and picric acid in dose of from 5 to 8 grains (0. to 0.5 gm.), are also recommended, but are regarded as less reliable. To relieve the pains, hypodermic injections of morphin, 1/4 grain (0.0165 gm.), or warm baths may be used. Restoratives and stimulants should be given to keep up strength.

Family: STRONGYLIDÆ;

Genus: *Eustrongylus*.

*Eustrongylus gigas* (Rudolphi).

(*Ascaris canis et martis*; *a. visceralis et renalis*; *strongylus gigas*; *s. renalis*; *eustr. visceralis*.)

*Male*: red in color; 14.-40. cm. in length, 4.-6. mm. thick; slightly tapering anteriorly; mouth terminal, with a hexagonal orifice surrounded by six lips bearing papillæ; cuticle thin and transparent, finely striated transversely; about 150 papillæ along the longitudinal lines laterally (best marked near middle of body length); caudal extremity with an oval plate-like expansion serving as a bursa (transverse diameter the longer), its margin bearing small papillæ and slightly indented dorsally and ventrally; single sexual spicule. *Female*: general appearance and head end as in male; 20.-100. cm. in length and 5.-12. mm. thick; caudal extremity obtuse, straight, with anus subterminal; vulva 50.-70. mm. posterior to mouth; single ovarian and uterine tube plicated from near anterior end along the intestine nearly to anus, then returning to vulva near anterior end. Ova brown, ellipsoid, with thick shell marked by external cribriform depressions, 64.-48. microm. long and 40.-44. microm. broad.

This worm, more common in the dog (and also found in other animals as seal, otter, wolf, horse, cow, martin, and skunk), has been recorded a number of times as a parasite of man, although in most cases with some reservation as to the correctness of diagnosis. It is the largest of the nematodes and has its habitat in the pelvis of the kidney, where one or several of the parasites may exist. It has been known, too, to be free in the abdominal cavity, and is said to have in rare instances been found in the liver and in the pleural cavity (in lower animals). Little is known of its life-history. At the time of oviposition the interior of the ova



is segmented. Passed with the urine into water or moist earth outside the host, a larval worm develops in the course of five or six months in winter and probably much more rapidly in summer; this remains for a long time living within the shell, apparently several years. If removed experimentally from the ovum it soon dies in pure water, but may be kept alive for a longer time in albuminous fluids. As yet no successful transference of the larval worm has been accomplished experimentally, and in consequence it is thought that in nature it passes to some intermediate host, possibly some fish.

In its usual habitat the worm causes considerable dilatation of the renal pelvis, and sometimes the whole kidney becomes reduced to a thin hydronephrotic sac, in which in the midst of a red and bloody urinous

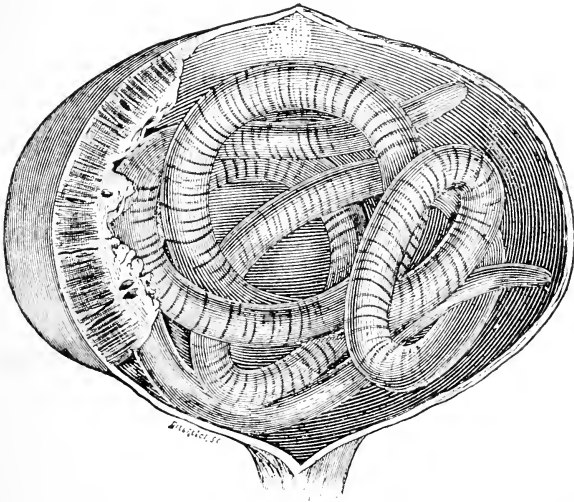


FIG. 211.—*Eustrongylus gigas*: female, natural size, in kidney of dog. (Railliet.)

fluid the parasites are found. In man the worm has not been recognized antemortem, having only accidentally been observed in autopsies; and this is also usual in case of infestation of the lower animals. However, in the dog the urine often becomes notably bloody, the animal sometimes whines as if in pain, the gait becomes tremulous, the bark altered, the animal becoming depressed and showing nervous symptoms which have been confused with those of rabies. The diagnosis must, of course, rest upon the discovery of the characteristic ova in the urine; and the only treatment, should a safe conclusion as to the presence of the worm in one or other renal pelvis be arrived at, would rest with the enucleation of the worm or of the entire kidney by surgical procedure. Thus far but one kidney has been found infested in a single host, although, of course, care should be exercised to exclude the possibility of a bilateral infestation.

Genus: *Strongylus*.

1—*Strongylus apri* (Gmelin): (*gordius pulmonalis apri*; *ascaris apri*; *strongylus suis*; *s. paradoxus*; *s. elongatus*; *s. longevaginatus*; *metastrongylus paradoxus*):

*Male*: 12.-25. mm. long, cylindrical; white to brownish; mouth terminal, with six lips, two lateral the largest; copulatory bursa bilobed, with five muscular rays in each lobe; two spicules, 4. mm. long, slender. *Female*: up to 50. mm. long; posterior end terminated by a mucronate, ventrally curved tail; anus subterminal; vulva close in front of anus. Ova within uterus elliptical, 50.-100. microm. long, 39.-72 microm. broad; embryo developed at oviposition; and larvæ quickly escape within the mucus of bronchial tubes infested, 220.-350. microm. long and 10.-12. microm. thick.

This worm is comparatively common in the bronchial tubes of the hog in this

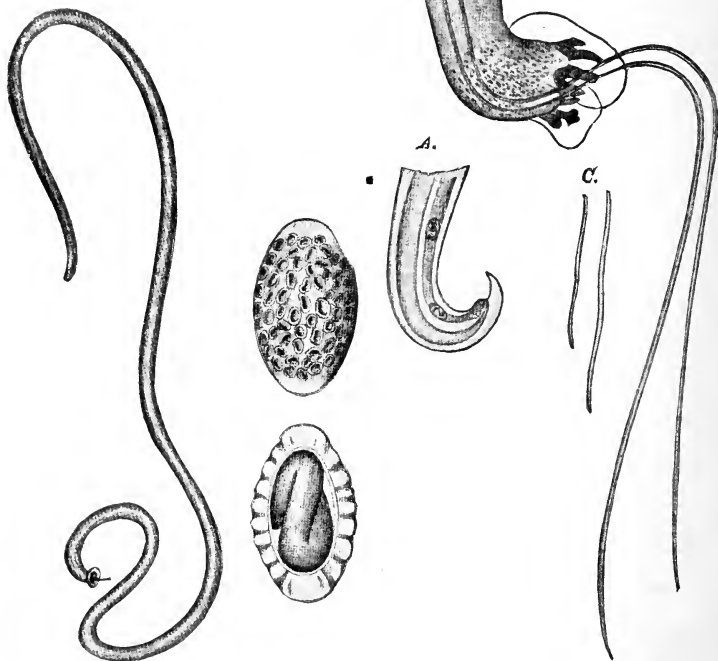


FIG. 212.—*Eustrongylus gigas*: male, natural size. (Braun, after Railliet.)

FIG. 213.—Ova of *eustrongylus gigas*:  $\times 250$ . (Braun after Railliet.)

FIG. 214.—*Strongylus apri*: A, tail of female, enlarged; B, tail of male, showing bursa and sexual spicules; C, male (left), and female (right), in natural size. (Braun, after Railliet.)

country as well as in Europe; it has also been recorded from Japan. Large numbers of the worms exist commonly in the single host and the presence of these adults together with many larval worms are in the hog apt to set up a troublesome bronchitis and bronchopneumonia which may be fatal, at least to young hogs. The cases recorded in man have occasioned the same type of lesions and symptoms; their identification with this species being probable but not absolutely certain.

2—*Trichostrongylus instabilis* (Railliet): In 1895 Loos described under this name certain very small examples found by him by microscopic examination of the intestinal contents at autopsy of natives of the Egyptian lowlands. Later he found

the same worm in the intestinal contents of a camel; and a worm regarded as identical has been encountered in a Japanese by Ogata. The following description is given by Loos: *Male*: 4.-5. mm. long, thickest near posterior end (0.07 mm.); anteriorly tapering and at head end measuring in thickness only 9. microm.; esophagus occupies about one-sixth of body length; two single-cell esophageal glands on dorsal side of esophagus, one back of the other; copulatory bursa two-lobed, with asymmetrical muscular rays; two spicules; cuticle thin, finely striated transversely; excretory pore 0.19 mm. from anterior end. *Female*: 5.6-7. mm. long; greatest body thickness about posterior third (0.09 mm.); anteriorly tapering to a thickness of 10. microm. at head; posterior end with a rapidly tapering and pointed tail; anus 0.097 mm. anterior to tail; vulva at level of posterior fifth of body length; double uterus and ovarian tube. Ova thin-walled, oval, highly granular interiorly, measure 63. : 41 microm.

Loos does not regard the parasite as of pathological significance because of the small size of the mouth, the usually small number of parasites present, and the small size of the parasites. Ijima, reporting Ogata's case, questions whether the worms, in this instance found to the number of about two hundred, may not, however, have had some harmful influence.

Genus: *Uncinaria*.

*Uncinaria duodenalis* (Dubini).

(*Anchylostoma duodenale*; *strongylus quadridentatus*; *dochmius anchylostomum*; *sclerostoma duodenale*; *strongylus duodenalis*; *dochmius duodenalis*; European or old-world hook-worm).

*Male*: whitish or blotched posteriorly with brownish, when intestine contains blood; 8.-10. mm. long; cuticle finely striated transversely; tapering to a blunt point anteriorly and with head curved upon dorsum so as to give a slightly hooked anterior end; on each side of median line on ventral side of oral border two hook-like chitinous teeth and on dorsal border on each side of median line one less curved chitinous tooth; with a dorsal conical tooth extending along back of oral cavity from base of cavity; in oral cavity about esophageal opening a delicate armature consisting of two dorsal and two ventral lancet-like pieces; posteriorly the body ends in an



FIG. 215.—Ova of *uncinaria duodenalis*.



FIG. 216.—Anterior end, showing mouth parts of *uncinaria duodenalis* (dorsal view).

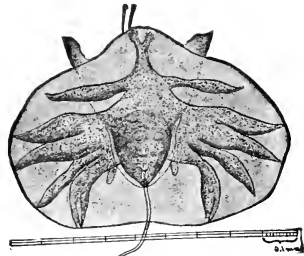


FIG. 217.—Tail, with expanded bursa, of male *uncinaria duodenalis*.

abruptly pointed tail in a copulatory bursal expansion of the cuticle, this having one dorsal and two lateral lobes; in folds of bursa one dorsal subdivided muscular ray each division ending tridigitately, and on each side symmetrically an undivided dorso-lateral, a divided lateral, undivided latero-ventral, subdivided ventral and undivided small subventral muscular rays; cloacal aperture superterminal; two equal spicules. *Female*: General appearance and anteriorly like male; 12.-18. mm. long; posteriorly tapering to a finely pointed tail; anus subterminal; vulva about posterior third of body length; two uterine and ovarian tubes. Ova: colorless, elliptical, thin-shelled, 50.-60. : 39. microm.

This important parasite of man has a wide distribution in tropical and subtropical countries, but probably properly belongs to such localities in the older hemisphere as southern Europe (especially Italy, Switzerland, and Austria), the Mediterranean borders of Africa, southern Asia, and the eastern archipelago. It is found also in the tropical and subtropical regions of America, but here has been much confused with the American species of hook-worm recently recognized as a separate species. As im-

ported cases, perhaps occasionally giving rise to small endemic foci, it has been met in the cooler parts of the United States.

Its habitat is in the duodenum, jejunum, and upper part of the ileum of man, where it is found in numbers varying from a few to considerably more than a thousand. With its strong armature it attaches itself to the intestinal mucous membrane producing a small excavation, and thus fixed, sucks the nutrient juices, lymph and blood, from the mucosa. Through the agency of certain glands situated in the anterior end the worm produces a substance inhibiting blood coagulation; and thus from the tiny lesions produced by the worm, which are frequently forsaken for fresh situations, considerable bloody oozing takes place. From this factor, as well probably from nutritive faults following upon the intestinal disturbances induced and perhaps also from some undiscovered toxic influences, there results a loss of bodily weight and strength and an anemia which in its severer forms ranks among the pernicious anemias. Fatal cases are not infrequent. When from the first but few parasites are present there may be practically no symptoms appreciated (unless the parasites are but a complication of other serious disturbance as malaria, the anemic results of which they are likely to accentuate, or unless the host be quite young or a weakling). In severer grades of infestation, discomfort and actual pain in the abdomen, nausea, altered appetite (often *kakophagism*), and alternating diarrhea and constipation are apt to be noted. In course of time flesh and strength are lost, the patient becomes dull and slothful; the young do not develop with the usual vigor; and an anemia of varying grade comes to be appreciated (miner's anemia, tunnel anemia, etc.). This latter may be profound in loss and change of the red cells, is apt to show in its typical appearance some increase in the eosinophilic leukocytes, and a comparatively low hemoglobin proportion. With the severer anemia, and probably largely secondary to this, arise wide-spread degenerations, mainly fatty in type, involving almost any of the body structures, but especially noteworthy in the important parenchymatous structures as the wall of the heart, the liver, and kidneys. These in turn give further manifestations of disease; the urine becomes albuminous, the circulation becomes feeble, and a cachectic type of dropsy is apt to develop; and eventually, if no relief be afforded, the patient may die, as in any severe anemia, from exhaustion, intercurrent affection, or, perhaps, accidental terminal hemorrhage. The course of the case is apt to be a prolonged one, the parasites often persisting in the host for years.

The affection, known as *uncinariasis* or *anchylostomiasis*, is readily recognized from the general picture and the discovery of the ova of the worms in the stool, these being very numerous in the dejecta from subjects of even moderate infestation. They are readily determined by means of the ordinary laboratory powers of the microscope in thin layers of fecal matter, diluted if needed with a drop of water.

Of the life-history of the parasite it is known that the larvæ escape from the ova within from 24 to 48 hours at a temperature of 25° C. or therabouts in the fecal matter, in moist soil or in dirty water. The incubation goes on best in fair access to air, and therefore the most favorable situation is in moist sandy soil. When first emerged the larva measures

about 0.2 mm. in length, is obtuse anteriorly, and posteriorly tapers to a finely pointed tail and shows a rhabditiform type of esophagus. In 48-72 hours a moulting occurs, the larva having grown in size, but preserving its structural features unchanged; a second moulting follows about the fifth day, the larva remaining, however, in the old cuticle (so-called "encystment") and assuming the adult type of esophagus. In this encysted stage it is still motile and now lives well in water or moist soil for several months, eventually dying or gaining access to a fresh host. From actual personal experience and from experimentation on man and dogs, Loos has established the fact that at this stage the parasite may pass into the human host by penetration of the skin. Should the moisture containing these larvæ come in contact with the skin, as about the feet of persons walking barefooted on the wet and infested sand, or wading in infested water, the larval worms attack the exposed surface, rapidly penetrating the skin and leaving their mantles (old cuticle) behind. In so doing, if there be many of the larvæ entering, considerable irritation and consequent mild inflammation may be induced. It is supposed that this feature is the origin of certain inflammatory skin affections common in tropical regions and known as "ground itch," "water itch" and by other local terms; probably only a portion of cases of such affections depends upon this cause, as there are doubtless many other possible irritants which may act in a similar manner, and, moreover, it is probable that much of the inflammatory mischief is caused and prolonged in these cases by bacteria of one or other sort conveyed by the larval worms to the subcutaneous tissues. From the position of entrance into the skin the larvæ make their way, probably largely by passive convection by the blood and lymph, to the lungs. Here they penetrate to the air-passages, where it is thought they undergo another ecdysis, or moulting. They are still minute; are supposed to be carried by the bronchial mucus upward to the mouth and then to be swallowed, thus gaining their proper habitat and growing into adult size and sexual ability in the upper part of the intestine.

While this mode of infestation may be regarded as established, the older belief that the encysted larvæ are transmitted to the host by direct ingestion in dirty water or on unclean vegetables, or in dirt (in kakophagism), etc., cannot be as yet excluded, and must be kept in mind in considerations as to prophylaxis.

Genus: *Necator*.

*Necator Americanus* (Stiles).

(*Uncinaria americana*; *anchylostoma americanum*.)

*Male*: differs from *uncinaria duodenalis* in being of smaller size (6.-9. mm. long and more slender than *u. duodenalis*), in the smaller size and more conical shape of the head, in having no hooklets on the oral rim, but instead on each side a large ventral and smaller dorsal chitinous lip extending from the rim toward the median line; in a greater prominence and projection into the oral cavity of the dorsal conical tooth; in the smaller size of the copulatory bursa, its dorsal lobe being subdivided and the ventral margin being extended so as to form an indefinite ventral lobe and showing the dorsal muscular ray of the bursa divided, each division ending in a bipartite tip. *Female*: differs from *u. duodenalis* in being shorter and more slender (8.-15. mm. long), with similar differences of the anterior end as above outlined for male; vulva just in front of the middle of body length instead of at posterior third, as in *u. duodenalis*. Ova somewhat larger than those of *u. duodenalis* (68.-70. : 38.-40. microm.), but otherwise similar.

*Necator americanus*, originally established as a species of *uncinaria* by Stiles, but subsequently determined as generically distinct and given the name now used, is found especially in tropical and subtropical America, and in the West Indian islands; and prior to 1902, when the species was established, was probably often confused with *uncinaria duodenalis*. The latter is also met in imported instances and has been encountered not infrequently either alone or in association with the American form; but is scarcely to be regarded as properly an American parasite, especially since it is almost certain that many of the records of its occurrence in America are based by mistake upon *necator americanus*. The two worms are analogous in their influences and the term *uncinariasis* is usually employed to indicate the state of infestation



FIG. 218.—Ova of *necator americanus*.



FIG. 219.—Anterior end, showing mouth parts, of *necator americanus* (dorsal view).

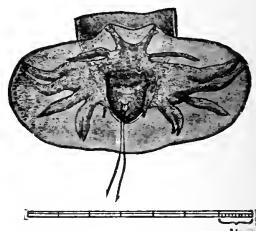


FIG. 220.—Tail, with expanded bursa, of male *necator americanus*.

by *necator americanus* or *uncinaria duodenalis* more or less indifferently. The worm in question is very common in our own Southern States, where it is apparently responsible for a group of anemic conditions in the inefficient, undernourished, pallid, and complaining classes of population known by various contemptuous terms in different localities, as "poor white trash," "crackers," "sand-lickers," "dirt-eaters," etc. The conditions produced by the American hook-worm are comparable to those caused by the old-world form, but are probably less intense for a given degree of infection in the individual host. The affection in this country has long been popularly known as dirt-eaters' disease, sand-lappers' disease, mountain anemia, etc.

**Treatment of Uncinariasis.**—For the expulsion of the parasites, thymol is perhaps the most efficient remedy. It is given in large doses of the undissolved drug with precautions as below indicated, reliance being had upon its slow and partial solution in the intestine in close contact with the parasites, thus directly influencing the latter, but not being sufficiently dissolved to afford ease of serious absorption and intoxication of the host. The patient is prepared the day prior to the administration by a mild catharsis and by taking but a light evening meal or none. The following morning thymol is given in capsule or cachet, in three doses an hour apart of 0.6–2. g. (9–30. grains) each, making from 1.8 to 6. grams in all. During the period in which the drug is in the alimentary canal oils, alcoholics, and other solvents of thymol are withheld to prevent massive solution and absorption of the substance. Within an hour after

the last dose, if free purgation has not meanwhile taken place, a purgative (an ordinary saline) is administered; and the stools are to be closely examined for the discharged worms. In the course of a week or ten days, if examination of the dejecta continue to show the presence of ova, the above procedure may be repeated. Sometimes mental wandering, dizziness, and faintness appear as toxic symptoms from absorption of thymol, but usually rest in bed, a little weak coffee, and a small amount of hot bouillon after purgation has begun allay these symptoms. Male fern is strongly recommended by a number of European writers for the old-world hook-worm; but the writer's experience with the American form would indicate the greater efficiency of thymol. Filmaron, the non-toxic active principle of filix mas, has been recommended by Nagel.

As measures of prophylaxis there should be recommended the use of only boiled or well-filtered water for drinking purposes, thorough cleanliness of all vegetable food which has been grown in suspicious soils and which is eaten uncooked, together with refraining from going barefooted and wading in dirty water or mud in infested districts. The drainage of soils contaminated by the dejecta of infected persons, together with its exposure to the sun by plowing, should also be considered; and the stools of infested persons should be disinfected before disposal.

Genus: *Physaloptera*.

*Physaloptera caucasica*: v. Linstow has described under this name a worm obtained from the human intestine and submitted to him from the collection of the Imperial Academy of Sciences in St. Petersburg. As far as is known, the specimens were all obtained from a single individual. *Male*: 14.2 mm. long, 0.71 mm. thick; cuticle smooth, swollen into a prominent ring which incloses the mouth; latter with two lateral lips which in the submedian lines bear four small papillæ; two slender teeth at oral orifice; posterior end tapering to a blunt-pointed tail provided with a bursa formed by lateral alar expansions of the cuticle, this bursa being large and rounded anteriorly, but narrowing posteriorly so as to give the tail somewhat of the shape of an arrow; four pairs of petiolated papillæ on each side supporting the bursa, two sessile papillæ in front of cloacal aperture and four in two rows back of aperture, and six in the tail; spicules unequal. *Female*: 27. mm. long, 1.14 mm. thick; anteriorly and general appearance as in male; tail rounded; vulva at anterior sixth of body length; ova thick-shelled; measure 57. : 39. microm.

Family: ASCARIDÆ;

Genus: *Ascaris*.

1—*Ascaris lumbricoides* (Leuckart).

(Maw-worm; common round worm of children.)

*Male*: whitish to reddish-yellow; 15.-17. cm. long, 3.-3.5 mm. thick; elongate, fusiform; cuticle finely ringed; oral orifice terminal, with three lips (one dorsal and the other two meeting in median ventral line), each with fine denticulations on margins; at base of superior lip two papillæ, one only at base of other two lips; posterior end terminating conically, curved ventrally, with two slightly curved, short, equal spicules projecting from subventral cloaca; 70.-75. papillæ on ventral face of posterior end, of which seven pairs are postanal. *Female*: 20.-25. cm. long, 5.-5.5 mm. thick; anterior end and general appearance as in male; posterior end tapering, ending in conical, pointed, straight tail; vulva at level of first third of body length (in a slightly depressed annular band); anus subterminal. Ova ellipsoidal, 50.-75. microm. long and 40.-58. microm. broad; thick-shelled; stained yellowish from fecal matter when found in dejecta, but colorless in uterus; covered with a mammilated albuminous envelope.

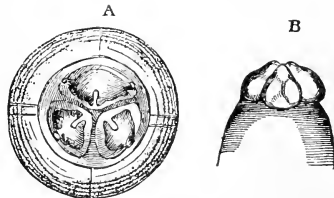


FIG. 221.—Anterior extremity of *ascaris lumbricoides*: A, seen from front; B, seen from dorsal surface. (Railliet.)

This worm has a world-wide distribution, its habitat being in the small intestine of man. It is more common in the young, but may occur in persons of any age. The number in a single host is usually small, two to six or eight, but in rare instances there have been reported some hundreds from one individual; and Cruveilhier found in the small intestine of a young idiot girl great masses of the worms, the number of which he estimated at about one thousand.

The presence of but a few of the parasites may pass unnoticed; but even where the parasites are but few there may result in children severe nervous disturbances, either reflex from intestinal irritation or possibly from absorption of some toxic material elaborated by the worms or generated in the intestine in their presence, as epileptiform attacks, cerebral congestion and headache, vertigo, chorea, ocular disturbances, or manifold hysterical manifestations. Capricious appetite, nausea, indefinite abdominal pains, symptoms of maldigestion, restless sleep are often complained of; occasionally swelling and congestion of the lachrymal papillæ, undue lachrymation, itching about the eyes, itching and swelling of the fingers are encountered. The worms possess active motility and not infrequently wander from their proper habitat, either up or down the canal and perhaps into some of the collateral passages. Thus, the writer some years since met an instance in which an adult ascaris was found in the cavity of a periappendiceal abscess, the worm having penetrated the appendix and escaped through a perforation in its distal end into the abscess cavity, having probably had much to do with the appendicitis and perforation of the wall. Not infrequently they wander to the rectum and spontaneously pass from the anus. They have been found in the biliary duct, producing obstructive jaundice; in the pancreatic duct; in the stomach, whence they are commonly expelled by vomiting excited by their presence and movements. A specimen was formerly in the collection of the University of Pennsylvania, in which the worm, having been thus carried from the stomach to the pharynx, had been retracted into the larynx in

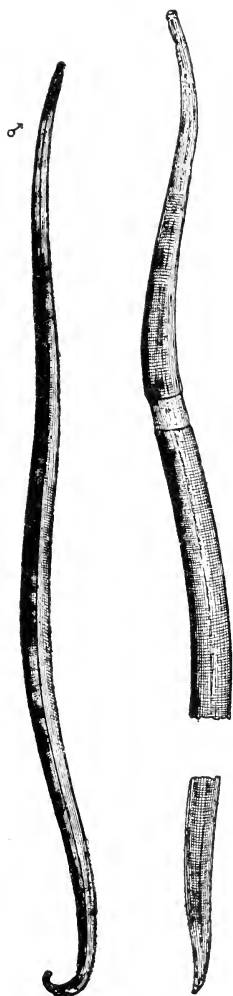


FIG. 222.—*Ascaris lumbricoides*: to left, male in lateral aspect; to right, female, ventral aspect, natural size. (Railliet.)

the deep inspiration following the retching, obstructing the lumen and causing the death of the child. Bunches of these worms have been known to cause intestinal obstruction; and occasionally at such positions of



obstruction perforation of the wall has taken place and the parasites have been found in the abdominal cavity.

The ordinary life-history is about as follows: The ovum, after discharge in the fecal matter, slowly develops in water or moist earth, the larval worm being retained within the shell and preserved for months from destruction by the resistant shell; it is transferred directly to the alimentary canal of the next host with unclean water or food, there quickly freed from its wall by the action of the digestive juices, and developing to adult stage in the course of about five weeks.

The recognition of the presence of these parasites, while perhaps suggested by the presence of the more common symptoms above indicated, is only established by the discovery in the stools of the host of the ova or by the recognized passage of one or more worms.

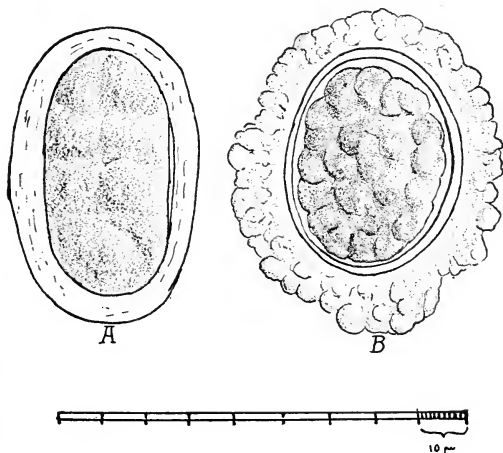


FIG. 223.—*A*, Ovum of *ascaris texana* drawn from specimen in uterus; *B*, ovum of *ascaris lumbricoides* drawn for comparison from examples taken from uterus of formaldehyd specimen.

**Treatment.**—The remedy which has been most satisfactory in my hands is santonin in combination with calomel. Powders containing santonin and calomel, of each 1 or 2 grains (0.066 to 0.132 gm.), may be prescribed rubbed up with sugar of milk. One is given night and morning until the bowels are freely moved. The santonin may color the urine and produce yellow vision, or xanthopsia, but I have never seen harmful results in a large experience, though poisoning, manifested by convulsion, is said to have been produced. For very young children the dose may be reduced to  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.0165 to 0.033 gm.). The worm tablets extensively advertised usually contain santonin as their basis. There is an official troche, U. S. P., containing  $\frac{1}{2}$  grain (0.033 gm.) of santonin. Santonica, or Levant wormseed, whence santonin is derived, is no longer used. What is known as wormseed oil, the oil of chenopodium, another excellent remedy for round worm, is derived from the *chenopodium anthelminticum*, or American wormseed. The

dose is 10 minims (0.65 c.c.) to a child of five years, on a lump of sugar or in emulsion—before breakfast, dinner, and supper for two days—followed by a purge, of which none is more suitable for children than calomel, itself a vermicide.

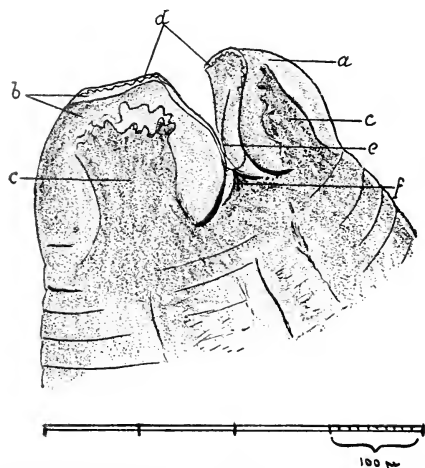


FIG. 224.—Lips of *ascaris texana* (camera lucida drawing from compressed specimen): *a*, superior lip; *b*, inferior lips, the left overlying the right; *c*, pulpa; *d*, denticulate anterior margin of superior and right inferior lips; *e*, keel of superior lip on inner surface; *f*, interlabium.

The prophylactic measures are principally the careful filtration or boiling of all water used for drinking purposes, and thorough cleanliness of all uncooked food.

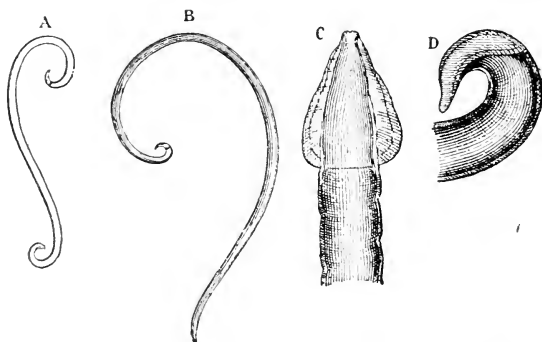


FIG. 225.—*Ascaris canis*: A, male; B, female; C, anterior extremity, enlarged and shown from dorsum to exhibit the lateral wing-like cuticular expansions, D, same showing in profile. (Railliet.)

2—Leuckart in 1876 gave the name *ascaris maritima* to a single undeveloped female ascaris obtained some years before by Paff from the vomit of a child in the northern part of Greenland. It has not since been observed and Railliet suggests its relation with *ascaris transfuga* of the brown bear. The specimen was 43. mm. in length, 1 mm. thick, with but poorly developed lips, a crest-like expansion of the cuticle at the anterior end; posterior end drawn into a fine point.

3—*Ascaris texana*: In 1904 Smith and Goeth described under this name an ascaris obtained from the dejecta of a man in San Antonio, Texas. Two females, badly preserved, alone constituted the material for study. The man had passed numbers of the parasites over a period of some years, had had no pathological consequences as far as known from their presence, but had been unable after many attempts with vermifuges to rid himself of the worms. The specimens measured 50.-60. mm. in length, 1.-1.5 mm. in thickness; colorless to slightly yellowish; tapering gradually to anterior end; mouth terminal; superior lip the largest, margins of lips denticulate; interlabia present; no cuticular expansion at either end; posterior end conical ending in a mucronate tail slightly curved dorsally; anus subterminal; papillæ at posterior end present, but indeterminate in material examined; vulva not surely located, but apparently 20. mm. back of oral lips; ova within uterus colorless, oval, 60. : 40. microm., with thick wall without external envelope or markings, segmented in uterus.

The species is as yet doubtful, until male specimens and other fresh material is obtained for further study; but probably the worm is but an accidental parasite of man, being seemingly most closely allied to known species parasitic in birds and reptiles.

4—*Ascaris canis* (*lumbricus canis*; *ascaris teres*; *a. caniculæ*; *a. cati*; *a. canis et felis*; *a. tricuspidata*; *a. felis*; *a. werneri*; *a. marginata*; *a. mystax*; *a. alata*; *fusaria mystax*): This worm, the common round worm of dogs and cats, has occasionally been encountered as a parasite of the intestine of man, in Germany, England, Denmark, and in this country. *Male*: whitish or slightly brownish; 40.-60. mm. long. 1. mm. thick; anterior end usually curved, with lateral cuticular expansions making the end look somewhat arrow-like; mouth terminal, with three nearly equal lips with denticulate margins; at base of superior lip two papillæ, on inferior lips one ordinary and two minute papillæ; posterior end curled and with lateral cuticular alar expansions, and on each side of cloacal aperture 26 papillæ of which five are post-anal. *Female*: 120.-180. mm. long; anterior end and general appearance as in male; posterior end straight, terminating obtusely; vulva at anterior fourth of body length; anus subterminal. Ova almost spherical; 68.-72. microm.; thin-shelled; with thin albuminous envelope showing an alveolated surface.

The general life-history and effects of this parasite are similar to those outlined for *ascaris lumbricoides*.

#### Genus: *Oxyuris*.

#### *Oxyuris vermicularis* (Leuckart).

(*Ascaris vermicularis*; *fusaria vermicularis*; pin-worm; thread-worm; seat-worm.)

*Male*: whitish; 3.-5. mm. long, 0.3-0.4 mm. thick; cuticle transversely striated and at head end showing a vesicular swelling along the dorsal and ventral median lines; lateral lines distinct; mouth terminal, with three retractile lips; esophagus with distinct bulb; posterior end conical, curved ventrally, with six pairs of papillæ and slight cuticular expansion on each side; one spicule hooked at free end. *Female*: 10. mm. long, 0.6 mm. thick; anterior end and general appearance as in male; posterior end straight; extended to a long mucronate tail; anus 2. mm. in front of tail; vulva at anterior third of body length. Ova oval, flattened on one side, 50.: 16.-20. microm.; thin-shelled; colorless with embryo developed at oviposition.

This worm is an extremely common parasite of man, of practically world-wide occurrence, having its proper habitat in the lower end of the ileum and the cecum. It is especially frequent in children, but is also found in individuals of any age. The worms usually are in large numbers in the individual host; and are possessed of considerable activity, wandering from their natural habitat so that occasionally they are found in the upper end of the small intestine and have been known to get into the stomach and be vomited, but more commonly passing downward to the rectum, and spontaneously crawling from the anus. They are not as apt to be found in errant positions as *ascaris lumbricoides*, but in this respect much that has been said of the latter is true also of the present type. A specimen recently brought into the pathological laboratory of the University of Pennsylvania shows in a catarrhal appendix large numbers of the parasites. It was long thought that the entire evolution of the worm from the ovum to adult stage takes place in the original host, and Vix has actually

seen the larval worms after emergence from the egg in the rectal mucus; but that this takes place, save exceptionally, is no longer held. It is believed that the ova with the developed embryos within are scattered after defecation over vegetables and fruit, being strongly resistant for some time at least to the effects of drying; or they may become adherent to the nails and fingers of the host when the latter, because of the intolerable itching about the anus, scratches himself.

It is thought possible, too, that they may be transferred from the fecal mass to food-stuffs by flies. Ingested with foods they are directly swallowed. Upon the hands of one host they may readily be transferred to the hands of a second human being and thus endanger the latter. From the fingers they may be transferred to the mouth, or perhaps, may be carried into the nose, when the habit of nose-picking exists; and in the nasal mucus the larvæ may emerge from the shell and later be swallowed. It is not likely that they are transferred by water, soon dying in the latter fluid. If the eggs have been swallowed, the larvæ probably emerge from the shells in the stomach and upper intestine. Here they undergo several moults before maturation, copulate, and the females become gravid. The males after copulation apparently soon die and are carried off in the intestinal contents, explaining the comparative rarity of the latter among samples obtained. The females in their wanderings lodge for the most part about the ileo-cecal region, where most of the ova are deposited; but are apt to continue moving slowly along the gut to the rectum, continuing to deposit their eggs. Their duration in the intestine is apparently at least some months; and the common persistence of parasitism in spite of treatment argues for the ease and frequency of self-infection by the host.

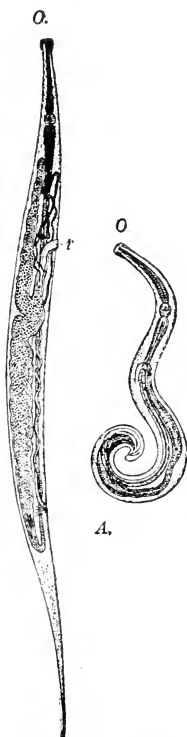


FIG. 226.—*Oxyuris vermicularis*: to the left, female; to right, male (considerably enlarged). A, anus; O, mouth; v, vulva. (Braun, after Claus.)

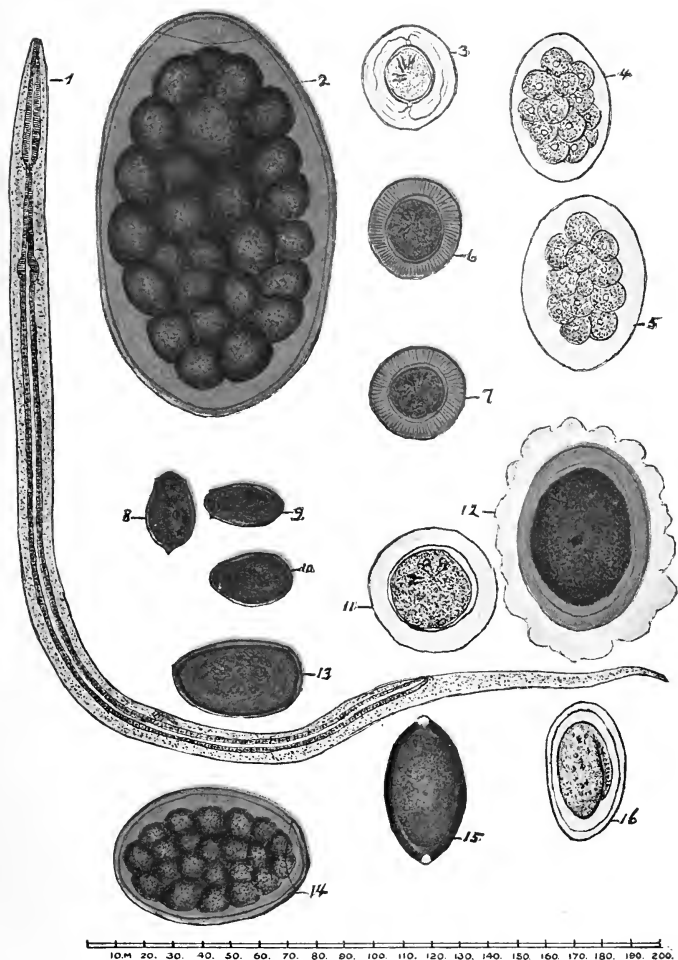
When in small numbers but little disturbance is ordinarily occasioned, but nervous symptoms, much as outlined in connection with *ascaris lumbricoides*,

may be induced. The greatest common inconvenience is occasioned by their movements and the irritation of the mucous membrane of the rectum, inducing a proctitis and troublesome pruritus. Sometimes, especially at night, the worms spontaneously escape from the anus and may be found in the bedclothes; or they have been known to crawl into the genital canal of females, where they may set up a vaginal catarrh and by the itching occasioned lead children to take up the habit of masturbation.

**Treatment.**—Some perseverance is commonly necessary to get rid of the thread-worm. I usually prescribe the same powder of santolin



FIG. 227.—Ovum of *oxyuris vermicularis*.



1. Larval *strongyloides intestinalis*.
2. Ovum of *fasciola hepatica*.
3. Ovum of *hymenolepis nana*.
4. Ovum of *uncinaria duodenalis*.
5. Ovum of *necator americanus*.
6. Ovum of *tania mediocanellata*.
7. Ovum of *tania solium*.
8. Ovum of *opisthorchis sinensis*.

9. Ovum of *episthorchis felinus*.
10. Ovum of *cotylogonimus heterophyes*.
11. Ovum of *dipylidium caninum*.
12. Ovum of *ascaris lumbricoides*.
13. Ovum of *dicrocoelium lanceatum*.
14. Ovum of *dibothriocephalus latus*.
15. Ovum of *trichiuris trichiura*.
16. Ovum of *oxyuris vermicularis*.

FIG. 228.—Parasitic bodies, ova and larva met in human feces; color approximate only.

and calomel as for the round worm—*i. e.*, from 1 to 2 grains (0.066 to 0.132 gm.) of each—but at the same time order nightly injections into the rectum of vermicides, of which there are many—the infusion of quassia, of aloes, lime-water, vinegar, corrosive sublimate (1 to 5000), salt and water. The injection should be retained for some time, and to this end the buttocks should be raised, or the child may be placed on its hands and knees. Only as much should be introduced—from 2 to 4 ounces (60 to 120 c.c.)—as can be conveniently retained. Too large a quantity is promptly rejected.

Stools from infested individuals require to be disinfected before disposition; the anal region, especially in children, should be well washed after every defecation; and under no circumstances should the infested person be permitted to scratch about the anus lest the ova of the pin-worms become adherent to the nails, and through careless and uncleanly habit be transferred to the nose or mouth. Cleanliness and prevention of self-infestation, if persevered in will eventually be followed by the natural death and disappearance of the parasites; it is safe to say in all cases of very protracted presence of these pin-worms that in some way these essentials have not been fully maintained.

### III—ARTHROPODA.

Arthropods are bilaterally symmetrical, segmented animals whose segments do not correspond, but vary in their structure, and which primitively bear upon each segment a pair of jointed appendages. The segments are often more or less fused, thus forming special body-regions (head, thorax, and abdomen) which may themselves be more or less fused together as well. The covering of these animals is a comparatively thick and strong cuticle which remains pliable between the segments of the body and of the jointed appendages, but which commonly becomes hard and shell-like from chitinous or calcareous material directly over the different body segments and internodes of the jointed appendages. This arrangement requires that in the growth of the individual the firm external covering should from time to time be shed, such changes taking place periodically and being known as moults. While each segment in the primitive animal is provided with a pair of jointed appendages, these in the individual species are often lost from this or that part of the body, or may remain rudimentary and inconspicuous, or may take on special features of structure from the assumption of special function which causes their wide departure from the original and common type used for locomotion. They are usually best preserved for the latter purpose in the thoracic region; in the other parts of the body various types are developed. Thus they may serve as sensory organs, as in the palpi; for respiration as branchiæ; for mastication or other oral purposes as the mandibles and maxillæ; for sexual purposes as the ovipositors, etc. The arthropods commonly reproduce by ovulation, the development of the embryo to the adult often showing more or less complicated metamorphoses. The general organization, while presenting broad analogies in the different types, has a wide range of variation, many forms exhibiting high and complex structure in their different systems to adapt them for

the special environments of their lives; and can scarcely find place in a work of the limitations of the present volume. The entire group includes the largest number of known types of animal existence, the greater portion being free-living, existing in water or air-breathing, a comparatively small proportion being of importance from their parasitic character. Five classes are recognized: *Crustacea*, *Protracheata*, *Arachnoidea*, *Myriapoda*, and *Insecta*. While a large number are of medical interest because the individual species may serve as intermediate host or transmitter of definite animal or vegetable parasites, the true parasitic forms thus far met in man are limited to the Arachnoids and the Insects.

#### A—ARACHNOIDEA.

Among a number of arachnoids of more or less importance as parasites of man, either transitorily or permanently, the following species may be selected for brief mention.

##### Order: ACARINA (MITES, TICKS).

1. *Sarcoptes* or *acarus scabiei*—the itch insect. This is the most frequently met of the arachnide parasites. Its oval, nearly circular little body, provided with horns and bristles, is barely visible to the naked eye under favorable circumstances, the male being from 0.2 to 0.3 mm. (0.0078 to

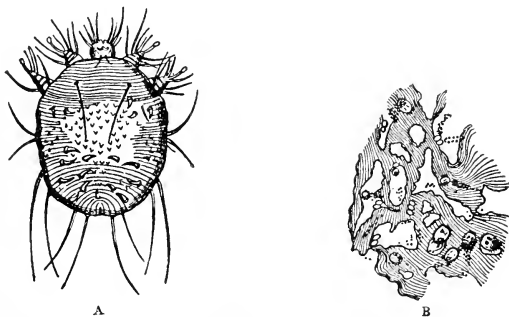


FIG. 229.—*Acarus scabiei*: A, female, dorsal view; B, portion of human epidermis, showing burrows with contained ova and young acarians. (Gould, after Leuckart.)

0.00118 inch) by 0.145 to 0.19 mm. (0.0057 to 0.0074 inch); the female, from 0.33 to 0.45 mm. (0.0129 to 0.0177 inch) by 0.25 to 0.35 mm. (0.0098 to 0.0137 inch).

The female lies at the end of a burrow in the epidermis, in situations where the skin is most delicate, as between the fingers, at the elbows, and under the knees, in the groin, and on the penis, very seldom in the face, but in any delicate part. In this burrow, some millimeters to a centimeter long, the female deposits her eggs. The male is seldom seen, dying after copulation, and the female after depositing her eggs. The eggs hatch in from four to eight days, and in about 14 days the larvæ are sufficiently matured to make their own burrows. The disease is communicated by personal contact or by clothing.

**Symptoms.**—These are first an intense itching which incites to scratching, which, in turn, causes excoriations, papules, vesicles, and pustules.

**Diagnosis.**—The diagnostic feature is the shining little vesicle readily recognized by a moderate magnifier in the webs of the fingers, though it is often obscured and obliterated by the eruption and marks caused by scratching.



FIG. 230.—*Demodex folliculorum*: from dog, enlarged. (Braun, after Mèguin.)

**Treatment.**—This is very simple. Sulphur ointment is a prompt specific. The body should be first bathed thoroughly with soft soap, and then as thoroughly anointed with the ointment, which should be allowed to remain until the next day, when there should be another bath, followed by another vigorous application of the ointment. Three or four days of this treatment should suffice. An ointment of naphthol, one dram to the ounce (4 gm. to 30 gm.) is recommended.

2. *Demodex folliculorum*, a minute parasite from 0.3 to 0.4 mm. (0.0118 to 0.0157 inch) long, which resides in the sebaceous follicles, with the grease of which it can sometimes be squeezed out. It is oftenest met on the face and nose. It is said to be present in about 50 per cent. of persons, but this is probably exaggerated. It usually gives rise to no symptoms, but is said sometimes to be the cause of obstruction of the follicles and produces thus the little worm-like accumulations of fat which may be squeezed out of the follicles, and which cause inflammation and acne.

**Treatment.**—Acne is well treated by a lotion of corrosive sublimate, 2 to 1000, and it may be by its effect on the demodex that it is useful.

3. *Leptus autumnalis*, or harvest bug, is a minute red parasite, from 0.3 to 0.5 mm. (0.0118 to 0.0196 inch) long, which has three pairs of legs, with rows of bristles upon its back and belly. It prevails in summer on grasses and plants, attaches itself to the skin of man and animals by its hooklets, and gives rise to irritation.

**Treatment.**—It is successfully destroyed by sulphur ointment and corrosive sublimate, 2 to 1000.

Order: LINGUATULIDA (PENTASTOMES).

The pentastomes include the *pentastomum tænioides*, or *linguacula rhinaria*, and the *pentastomum constrictum*, or *porcephalus constrictus*.

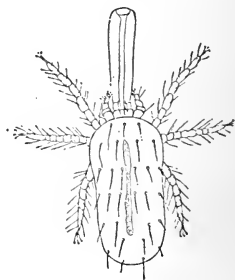


FIG. 231.—*Leptus autumnalis*: enlarged. (Braun.)

1. The *pentastomum tænioides* is a lancet-shaped worm-like animal, already described in connection with parasites of the liver. The male, white in color, is 18 to 20 mm. (0.72 to 0.8 inch) long, 3 to 4 mm. (0.12 to 0.16 inch) wide in the anterior part and 0.5 mm. (0.02 inch) in the posterior part. The female is 8 to 13 mm. (0.32 to 0.52 inch) long, anteriorly 8 to 10 mm. (0.32 to 0.4 inch) wide and posteriorly 2 mm. (0.08 inch) and yel-



low in color. The adult infests the frontal sinuses and nostrils of the dog, more rarely of the horse, and has been found in the nostrils of man.

2. The *pentastomum constrictum* has as yet been met only in the larval state. It is milk-white in color, with golden-yellow hooklets, 13 mm. (0.5118 inch) long and 2.2 mm. (0.0866 inch) wide, provided with 23 rings. It has been found by Pruner encysted in the liver of two negroes in Cairo, by Bilharz in two instances encysted in the liver and mucosa of the bowel, and by Aitken in the liver and lungs of an English soldier in the West Indies.

### B—INSECTA.

In this enormous class, too, a small proportion, embracing, however, a large number of individual species, are of interest as parasites either temporarily at some period in their existence or permanently. Moreover, many are important as conveyers of one or other type of parasitic or infectious disease in man and the higher animals. Of the parasitic forms brief mention may here be permitted the follow-

FIG. 232.—*Linguatula rhinaria* (*pentastomum tanioides*): female, natural size. (Braun.)



FIG. 233.—*Linguatula rhinaria* (*pentastomum tanioides*); larva, enlarged. (Braun, after Leuckart.)



### Order: HEMIPTERA.

#### Family: *Pediculidæ* (Lice).

1. The *pediculus capitis*, or head-louse. The male is from 1 to 1.5 mm. (0.0393 to 0.059 inch) long, the female from 1.8 to 2 mm. (0.0708 to 0.0757 inch) long. The color varies somewhat with the races. In the white it is gray with a dark border, in the negro and Chinamen darker. Its eggs are 0.6 mm. (0.0236 inch) long, of which the female lays about 50, which mature in about a week, and in 18 days are ready to reproduce. The eggs are attached to the hairs, and are easily visible, being known as nits.

The head-louse is found the world over, upon the hairy heads of men and sometimes in other parts of the body where there are hairs. Even when they are quite numerous they may produce no symptoms. Generally, however, they cause itching and scratching, especially when the louse bores deep into the skin and produces pustular dermatitis, with resulting crusts and scabs in which the hair becomes matted and tangled, forming the *plica polonica*, so called from its frequency in Poland.

2. The *pediculus vestimenti*, or body-louse, is considerably larger, being

from two to five mm. (0.1574 to 0.1968 inch) long and whitish-gray in color, the back part of the body being wider than the thorax. Its eggs are from 0.7 to 0.9 mm. (0.275 to 0.0354 inch) long, and about 70 are laid by the female. It lives on the clothing, in which it deposits its eggs, about the neck, back, and abdomen. The puncture incident to sucking is



FIG. 234.—Ovum of head-louse glued to hair:  $\times 70$ . (Braun.)

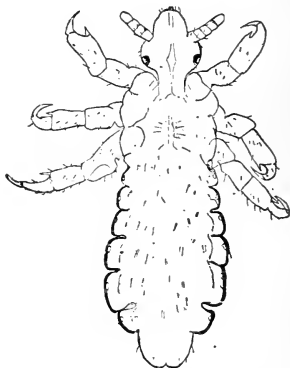


FIG. 235.—*Pediculus capitis*:  $\times 15$ . (Braun.)

often covered by a hemorrhagic point. It, too, causes itching and scratching, with irritation and inflammation of the skin, and in old cases a roughness and pigmentation causing dark spots and a condition known as *morbus errorum* or vagabond's disease, which has been mistaken for Addison's disease.

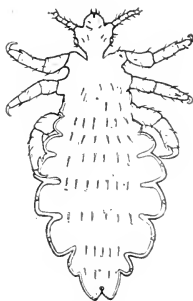


FIG. 236.—*Pediculus vestimentorum*:  $\times 10$ , circa. (Braun.)

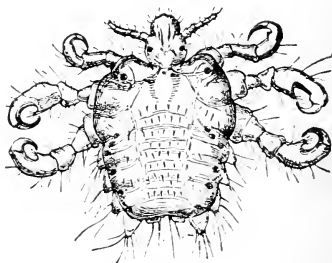


FIG. 237.—*Phthirus inguinalis*. (Braun.)

3. The *pediculus pubis*, *phthirus inguinalis*, or crab-louse, is smaller than the head-louse, grayish-yellow or grayish-white, the male being from 0.8 to 1 mm. (0.0314 to 0.0393 inch) long, the female 1.12 mm. (0.0441 inch) long. The eggs are pear-shaped, from 0.8 to 0.9 mm. (0.0314 to 0.0354

inch) long, and from 0.4 to 0.5 mm. (0.0157 to 0.0196 inch) wide. They infest the parts of the body covered by shorter hairs, such as the pubis, axilla, and eyebrows. The *pediculus pubis* does not wander so much as the *pediculus capitis* or *vestimenti*, but adheres more closely to the skin and therefore removal is often with difficulty.

These lice rarely give rise to symptoms.

**Treatment of Pediculosis.**—For the head lice: The hair should be cut short and burned, the head thoroughly washed with soap and water, and then anointed with mercurial ointment or washed with tincture of cocculus indicus, or with coal-oil or turpentine, or carbolic acid, 1 to 50. Cocculus indicus is to be preferred because of its freedom from odor. The washing should be repeated for several days in succession.

The treatment for the crab-louse is the same, but, as mentioned, it adheres firmly to the skin, and it is generally necessary to pick off the individual louse.

To get rid of the body-louse the clothing, if not too valuable, should be burned, but may be boiled, or, when this is not admissible, treated by superheated steam.

The itching promptly disappears with its cause, but, if necessary, it may be allayed by a warm bath to which 4 or 5 ounces (120 to 150 gm.) of sodium bicarbonate are added.

Repeated bathing with soft soap should be done until it is absolutely certain that the parasite and its ova are removed.

4. The *cimex lectularius*, or common bed-bug. This familiar insect is reddish-brown, oval in shape, from four to five mm. (0.0574 to 0.1967 inch) long, and three mm. (0.1181 inch) wide. The female lays three or four times a year about 50 eggs, 1.12 mm. (0.0441 inch) long, which require about 11 months for their perfect development to the sexually ripe condition. They live in the crevices of beds, floors, and rafters, in furniture, behind wash-boards and wall-paper, in the habitations of man. During the day they lie concealed; at night they wander in search of the blood of the human being, which they draw by means of a long proboscis. The peculiar odor of the insect is due to a secretion of a special organ with which the bug is provided.

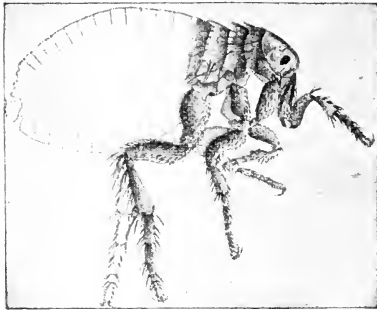
Human beings are variously susceptible to the bite of the bed-bug, some being quite indifferent to it, others being, as it were, special favorites of the little creature.

**Treatment.**—The irritation is confined to the moment of the bite. The aim to be sought is the extermination of the insect. This is often difficult when a thorough lodgment is secured, and it is often necessary that all wall-paper should be removed as well as loose woodwork. Bedsteads should be thoroughly scalded and then treated with the following: Two tablespoonfuls of metallic mercury should be thoroughly beaten up with the white of one egg until a froth is attained. Apply freely with a small paint-brush, filling in carefully all cracks and crevices. The pest is less apt to invade iron bedsteads, but even these must not be neglected, for they, too, in careless hands, may become infested. Solution of corrosive sublimate, 2 to 1000, may also be applied in the same manner.

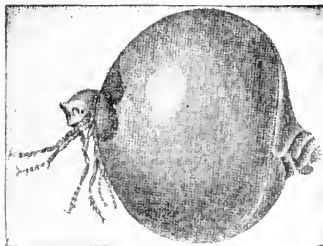
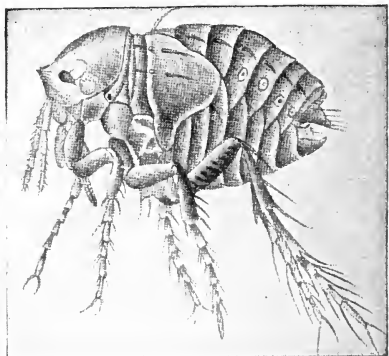
Order: DIPTERA.

Suborder: APHANIPTERA (Fleas).

1. The *pulex irritans*, or common flea. Of these little creatures, the male is from 2 to 2.5 mm. (0.0787 to 0.1181 inch) long, the female as much as four mm. (0.1574 inch), red or dark-brown in color. It is also highly capricious in its tastes, disturbing some persons not at all, others seriously.

FIG. 238.—*Pulex irritans*:  $\times 14$ . (Braun.)FIG. 239.—Larva of *pulex irritans* (Gould.)

It is not a parasite of man, and invades him usually because of its great abundance in certain places and countries. Though of world-wide distribution, it is more troublesome in hot countries where cleanliness of household, city, and person is a matter of indifference. The eggs are not

FIG. 240.—*Sarcopsylla (pulex) penetrans*: gravid female, enlarged. (Braun, after Moniez.)FIG. 241.—*Sarcopsylla (pulex) penetrans*: young female, enlarged. (Braun, after Moniez.)

laid on human beings, but in the cracks of boards, sweepings, and wooden spit-boxes.

**Treatment.**—The essential oils applied to the infested parts cause the retreat of fleas when applied.

2. The *pulex penetrans*, or sand-flea or jigger. The female buries herself in the skin of human beings as well as of dogs, swine, and other mammals, producing painful irritation, circumscribed swelling, and even suppuration. It especially attacks the feet. It prevails in tropical countries, especially in Central and South America. The eggs are land-hatched.

**Treatment.**—The flea may be picked out with a needle, after which the essential oils are rubbed in on the parts to keep it away.

Suborder: BRACHYCERA\* (Flies).

*Myiasis.*—The diptera also contribute to parasites through their larvæ, which are deposited sometimes in open sores which have been neglected and sometimes in the nasal passages and cavities—the ear, pharynx, vagina, etc. The condition is called myiasis, from the Greek *μύια*, a fly.

The most common of these is *myiasis vulnecrum*, in which an ulcer becomes filled with maggots, which are the larvæ of the blue-bottle or common flesh-fly, *sarcophaga carnaria*.

*Myiasis narium, aurium, conjunctivæ, vaginæ*, etc., are due to the *lucilia macellaria*, whose larva is deposited in these situations usually when they are diseased, and may produce serious mischief, perforating mucous membrane and even cartilage. The larvæ of the

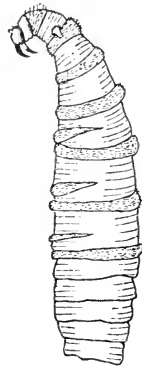


FIG. 242.—Larva of *lucilia macellaria*:  $\times 4$ . (Braun, after Conel.)

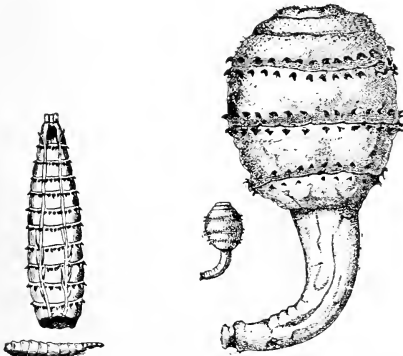


FIG. 243.—Larva of *musca vomitoria* (*calliphora vomitoria*): below, of natural size; above, enlarged. (Leuckart)



FIG. 244.—Larva of *dermatobia cyaniventris* ("Macaque worm"): to left, natural size; to right, enlarged. (Braun, after Blanchard.)



FIG. 245.—Larva of *anthomyia canicularis*, enlarged. Rarely found in the stool. (Gould.)

*lucilia nobilis* have also been found in the auditory passages, producing ringing of the ears as a symptom. The larvæ of *sarcophaga magnifica* have been found in ulcers and other situations, throughout Europe, and especially in Russia.

*Cutaneous myiosis* is commonly due to the larva of the *hypoderma bovis* or bot fly, the female of which lays her eggs on the skin of cattle and sheep, in which the larva bores its way and forms the gad boil, about as large as a pigeon's egg. Rarely in tropical countries this happens in the skin of man. Cutaneous myiosis is sometimes caused by the larva of the *musca vomitoria*, one of the domestic flies. More frequently it causes internal myiosis, having been swallowed and again discharged by vomiting.

In the tropics the macaque or moyaquil worm, the larva of a dermatobia, is not uncommon. More rarely dipterous larvæ are found in the feces, including those of the common house-fly and the *trichomyza fusca*, which has also been vomited.

## SECTION XIV.

### SUMMARY OF SYMPTOMS FOLLOWING OVERDOSES OF POISONS.

(Alphabetically Arranged.)

**ACONITE** (*Monkshood; Wolfsbane; Blue Rocket*).—All parts poisonous. The tincture may be mistaken for sherry or whisky; it has an exceedingly acrid taste.

**Symptoms.**—These appear quickly, and consist of an acrid taste in the mouth, a feeling of warmth in the stomach, followed by a tingling sensation throughout the body; muscular weakness, pulse weak and slow at first, later rapid and running; respirations slow and shallow; vomiting may be present, but is rare; the skin is cold and clammy and exceedingly pale; death may be gradual, from respiratory failure, or it may be sudden as a result of any movement of the body which throws any strain upon the heart. The mind is clear to the last.

**Treatment.**—Stomach-tube or emetics if seen early; recumbent posture, with feet elevated, not allowing the patient to arise for any cause. Stimulants freely, such as ammonia, ether, digitalis, atropin, and strychnin. External heat about the body, and artificial respiration for two hours.

**ALCOHOL.**—Taken in the form of spirituous beverages. Acute alcoholic poisoning. A brief period of excitement, with flushing of the face, followed by unconsciousness, stertorous breathing, rapid and, finally, weak pulse, vomiting, a subnormal temperature, delirium, complete muscular relaxation, at times convulsions; the pupils are usually dilated. Recovery commonly takes place in a day or two, but remissions may occur. Odor of alcohol on the breath.

**Treatment.**—Evacuation of stomach by pump; emetics, like apomorphin,  $\frac{1}{10}$  grain (0.0064 gm.); washing out the stomach. If coma and total relaxation is present, use external heat and stimulation by ammonia, atropin, caffein, digitalis, strychnin, or faradic current to muscles of respiration applied by passing an electric brush rapidly over the surface.

**DELIRIUM TREMENS.**—Delirium, with hallucinations; great restlessness and insomnia; slight fever, pulse rapid and soft.

**Treatment.**—Withdrawal of alcohol; hyoscin hydrobromid  $\frac{1}{100}$  grain (0.00064 gm.) hypodermically every two hours until patient is fully under its influence; bromids in full doses, or chloral, provided that the heart is not weak; aided by a cold bath to induce sleep; nourishing food and stimulation if the condition demands it, even by alcohol.

**AMMONIA.**—Taken by mistake or with suicidal intent in the form of "household ammonia," water of ammonia, spirit of hartshorn, and in liniments.

**Symptoms.**—At once, burning pain in the mouth, throat, esophagus, and stomach; the lips and tongue are intensely swollen and inflamed; vomiting of blood-tinged mucus, suffocative cough, with rapidly increasing dyspnea. The face is pale, pulse is rapid and thready, and collapse soon develops. Death may follow at once as the result of spasm or edema of the glottis, or some days later, from the violent gastro-enteritis and stricture of the esophagus.

**Diagnosis.**—Odor of ammonia on the breath, vapors of the corresponding salt when a rod dipped in hydrochloric acid is held before the mouth, together with the sudden onset of the symptoms.

**Treatment.**—Neutralization with vinegar, orange-juice, lemon-juice, or some other dilute acid, as soon as possible. If the patient lives, administer milk and bland oils to soothe the inflamed mucous membrane. Give morphin to relieve pain, stimulants to overcome depression, and apply external heat to maintain bodily temperature. Tracheotomy should be performed if there is danger of death from edema of the glottis.

**ANTIMONY.**—Taken as a tartar emetic, the tartrate of antimony and potassium. A heavy, white, odorless, slowly soluble powder having a sweetish, metallic taste; charring to redness upon heating.

**Symptoms.**—Metallic taste in the mouth, muscular relaxation, skin moist and relaxed, severe nausea and gastric distress followed by violent vomiting, and purging of, first, the normal contents of the bowel and later of serous material containing small shreds of mucous membrane. Cramps in the abdomen and in the muscles of the arms and legs occur as the result of the abstraction of water from the tissues by the violent purging. At the same time, symptoms of collapse appear—cold, clammy skin, feeble, shallow respirations, weak, thready pulse, subnormal temperature, coma and death.

**Treatment.**—Tannic acid as the chemical antidote, followed by washing out the stomach; recumbent posture with the head low, not allowing the patient to raise the head; external heat, stimulants, opium for the pain and demulcent drinks, such as bland oils, mucilages and albumin water, to soothe the inflamed mucous membrane.

**ARSENIC.**—Used in the form of arsenous acid in rat-poisons, in fly-paper, and to preserve stuffed birds and animals. Paris green, used as potato-bug poison, is an arsenite of copper, hence the symptoms are similar. Arsenous acid, or white arsenic, is an odorless, tasteless, white powder, quite heavy, and but slowly soluble in water.

**Symptoms.**—These appear usually in the course of an hour, and are those of violent gastro-enteritis, so severe as to suggest Asiatic cholera. Burning pain in the throat and stomach, persistent vomiting of brown matter streaked with blood, though the vomited matter may be green from bile. Purging is very severe; the stools, after the passage of the normal contents of the bowel, are serous as in antimonial poisoning, but



contain larger flakes of mucous membrane and blood. The urine is scanty, concentrated, and contains albumin. Great prostration accompanies these symptoms and the patient dies in collapse in one or two days. If the patient survives so long, there is usually an intermission in the symptoms about the third day which in a few hours is followed by a return of the symptoms. Nervous symptoms may appear. The poisoning resembles cholera morbus and Asiatic cholera.

**Treatment.**—An emetic if seen early, wash out the stomach, external heat and stimulants. The best antidote is the official ferri hydroxidum cum magnesii oxido, or ferri hydroxidum. These should be freshly prepared. In the absence of these official preparations, any liquid preparation of iron may be used by diluting with water, then adding a dilute solution of ammonia, strain out the precipitate, wash it free of ammonia while on the strainer, then dilute with fresh water and administer freely.

**ATROPIN** (*Belladonna*).—The deadly nightshade. Used as a mydriatic and in liniments. The leaves impart a narcotic odor to the tincture, but recognition depends upon the physiological effect.

**Symptoms.**—Face flushed, skin hot and dry, throat dry, pupils widely dilated, pulse rapid and bounding, respirations quickened and deepened; if the dose has been large there may be active, talkative delirium. An erythematous or scarlatiniform rash is sometimes present. The urine contains the alkaloid, hence it will cause dilatation of the pupil if dropped into the eye of an animal.

**Treatment.**—Tannic acid as a chemical antidote, followed by the stomach-tube or emetics. Morphin, physostigmin or pilocarpin as physiological antagonists. External heat and stimulants if the patient goes into collapse.

**BELLADONNA.**— See Atropin.

**BROMIN.**—A dark red, very heavy liquid, emitting reddish vapors resembling chlorin.

The fumes, when inhaled, cause convulsive cough, bloody expectoration, dyspnea, and spasm of the glottis.

**Treatment.**—Fresh, moist air and cautious inhalations of ammonia.

**BROMISM.**—The symptoms of chronic gastro-intestinal disturbance, such as fetor of the breath, anorexia, diarrhea; great depression of all the functions, especially the sexual function, with languor and mental apathy. A general eruption of acne is an early sign.

**Treatment.**—Stop the administration and aid elimination.

**CARBONIC ACID GAS.**—The choke damp or after-damp of miners. May be accidentally inhaled in overcrowded rooms, in fermenting vats, over lime-kilns, or wherever the products of complete combustion cannot escape.

**Symptoms.**—Headache, dizziness, noises in the ears, a sense of tightness across the chest, great drowsiness, loss of muscular power, followed

by symptoms of asphyxia; coma, tumultuous heart action, stertorous breathing, cyanosis, possibly convulsions and sometimes delirium.

**Treatment.**—Fresh air, if need be; artificial respiration, kept up steadily and unceasingly; ammonia by inhalation; oxygen, if obtainable; cold douche to the head and chest, with external heat and stimulation as occasion requires.

CARBONIC OXID (*Carbon Monoxid*) is formed during the incomplete combustion of carbon, and is a direct poison, while carbonic acid gas, the product of complete combustion, kills merely by exclusion of oxygen.

**Symptoms.**—The same as in carbonic acid poisoning.

**Treatment** as for carbonic acid gas.

CAUSTIC POTASH OR SODA.—Taken in the form of “lye.”

**Symptoms.**—An acrid, burning taste, the burning extending down to the stomach, followed by vomiting, purging, and collapse. The mucous membrane of the mouth shows evidence of corrosion. Convulsions may occur. Stricture of the esophagus may follow recovery from the acute symptoms.

**Treatment.**—Dilute vegetable acids, such as vinegar, lemon-juice, or orange-juice, to neutralize. Demulcent drinks, such as bland oils, mucilages, milk, or white of egg. Opium or morphin for the pain. External heat and stimulants. The stomach-tube should not be used. If the patient lives, the resulting stricture of the esophagus may require dilatation.

CHEESE POISONING.—Decayed cheese owes its poisonous properties probably to tyrotoxinon.

**Symptoms.**—Violent vomiting and purging; pain in abdomen; tongue first coated white, later red and dry; pulse weak and irregular; face is first pale, later cyanotic. The poisoning, while severe, rarely causes death.

**Treatment.**—The stomach-tube may be used if vomiting has not been free; subsequent lavage; opium and demulcent drinks to relieve pain and irritation; stimulants.

CHLORAL.—A popular somnifacient and sedative. Occurs in delicate crystals with characteristic odor and acrid, burning taste.

**Symptoms.**—Shortly after swallowing a poisonous dose of chloral, the patient becomes drowsy and gradually passes into a state of coma, from which he cannot be aroused. Respirations are slow and labored at first, later shallow and feeble; the pulse is feeble and shallow; the face may be white, livid, or cyanotic; the skin is relaxed, cold, and clammy; the pupils, at first contracted, later become widely dilated; there is complete muscular relaxation and abolition of reflexes; the temperature is lowered more than by any other toxic agent.

**Treatment.**—An emetic if seen early, or use the stomach-pump. The maintenance of bodily temperature is of the utmost importance. Rouse the patient, and employ artificial respiration with the faradic current and by other methods usually employed. The head should be kept lower than the feet, and the patient should not be allowed to raise the head or body for any reason. Stimulants should be given in full doses.

**CHLOROFORM.**—Identified by its peculiar ethereal odor and sweet, pungent taste; a heavy, volatile, non-inflammable liquid, not miscible with water.

**Symptoms.**—First stage of narcosis, excitement, struggling, a flushed face, contracted pupils, lessened sensibility to pain. Second stage, muscular relaxation, loss of sensibility, unconsciousness, reflexes abolished, temperature subnormal, respiration slow, pupils dilated, pulse slow. Third stage, that of paralysis, in which the pulse is irregular and weak, respiration fails, skin becomes cyanotic. Death, which results primarily from vasomotor paralysis with secondary respiratory paralysis and cardiac failure, may occur in any stage.

If the drug has been swallowed, the patient experiences an intense burning pain in the mouth, throat, and stomach, vomiting and purging, followed by the symptoms of narcosis enumerated above.

**Treatment.**—In case of accident during anesthesia, the patient should be held head downward; employ artificial respiration; rhythmical traction of the tongue by grasping it with a forceps and pulling it out of the mouth and upward about 14 times a minute; bandages to the extremities, and compression of the abdomen by means of a compress and bandage to confine the blood to vital centers; external heat; strychnin and other stimulants hypodermically; adrenalin chlorid intravenously or by hypodermoclysis. The faradic current may be used by sweeping the electrode over the chest to promote respiration. When swallowed, the stomach-tube or emetics should be used prior to the treatment above.

**COCAIN.**—Solution used as a local anesthetic, particularly in eye surgery.

**Symptoms.**—Vertigo, headache, paroxysmal dyspnea, rapid weak pulse, elevated temperature, mental excitement, blindness, delirium, coma, and convulsions. Some of these may be caused by the local application of solutions to mucous membranes. The pupil is dilated, but the power of accommodation remains in part.

**Treatment.**—Nitrite of amyl, stimulants, atropin, caffein, and ammonia. Wash out the stomach or administer an emetic if the drug has been swallowed. Death is unusual.

**CONIUM** (*Poison Hemlock; Common or Spotted Hemlock*).—Not a native of this country, hence cases of poisoning must be restricted to the use of the preparations. The plant and some of the preparations have a peculiar odor, resembling the urine of mice.

**Symptoms.**—Loss of muscular power, first felt in the legs, going on to complete paralysis which creeps up toward the trunk, the arms being less rapidly affected. The muscles of respiration become involved eventually, the patient becomes cyanotic, and death results from asphyxia. The pupils are dilated, the skin is relaxed and clammy and ptosis is a prominent symptom. Sometimes delirium, coma and convulsions are prominent from the first.

**Treatment.**—Stomach-pump or emetics; tannic acid; stimulants, particularly strychnin; external heat; artificial respiration.

**COPPER.**—The sulphate, blue stone or blue vitriol, is used in the arts. Recognized by its crystalline, shape, blue color, and acrid, metallic taste. Articles of food are frequently prepared in imperfectly cleansed copper kettles; a bright piece of steel, such as a knife, will show a deposit of metallic copper a few minutes after immersion in a liquid containing copper. Verdigris (subacetate) is another source.

**Symptoms.**—An astringent, metallic taste in the mouth; pain in the stomach and abdomen; violent vomiting of a greenish or bluish liquid; profuse purging of the normal contents of the bowel, later mucus and blood, accompanied by tenesmus; jaundice, respiratory failure, collapse, coma, and death.

**Treatment.**—Stomach-pump and emetics if vomiting has not already emptied the stomach; yellow prussiate of potassium (potassium ferrocyanid) as the chemical antidote; demulcents, such as bland oils, white of egg, and milk; opium for the pain; external heat and stimulants.

**DIGITALIS** (*Foxglove*).—A native of Europe. The tincture has a distinct odor of tea, the drug itself lacking a narcotic odor.

**Symptoms.**—Nausea, vomiting, pain, with or without diarrhea; headache, often severe, occasionally delirium and convulsions; the skin is cold and clammy; the pupils are dilated; the pulse at first slow and full, later becomes dicrotic or shuttle-like and difficult to count, while the heart-beat is irregular and tumultuous; the patient may show an inclination to somnolence, which may deepen into coma; death may not result for several days or it may occur suddenly following a muscular exertion.

**Treatment.**—Emetics or the stomach-pump may be used early; tannic acid as the chemical antidote; aconite may be used early as the physiological antagonist; external heat; horizontal position for several days after active symptoms have subsided; stimulants, such as ammonia, ether, atropin and strychnin, may be used in the later stages to combat collapse.

**ERGOT.**—Used to produce abortion.

**Symptoms of Acute Poisoning.**—Giddiness; pain in the stomach; thirst; nausea; vomiting; cardiac oppression; numbness and tingling of fingers and toes, extending along the limbs; cramp; dyspnea; coldness of the body, especially the limbs; great anxiety; delirium; coma and convulsions are among the symptoms which may be produced.

**Treatment.**—Emetics or stomach-tube. Stimulants and external heat as necessary. Nitroglycerin may be administered by the mouth.

*Chronic ergotism* occurs as a result of eating bread made from grain contaminated with the fungus. *Early symptoms* are gastric pain, general depression, nausea, occasionally vomiting; sometimes diarrhea, at others constipation, dizziness, insomnia, and lack of energy. *Subsequent symptoms* may take one or both of two courses: (1) Gangrenous ergotism characterized by patches of anesthesia, with a sensation of coldness of the parts affected, or by a burning sensation with redness of the skin. This usually occurs in the fingers and toes, and is followed by dry gangrene which may advance as far as the elbows or knees, but rarely affects the trunk. (2) Spasmodic ergotism characterized by paresthesias of various kinds;

sometimes there is complete anesthesia. Motor disturbances follow: twitchings, spastic muscular contractions attended with great pain, paralyses, and disturbance of the special senses.

**FISH-POISONING.**—Tainted fish probably contains ptomains, while several kinds of fish are constantly poisonous.

**Symptoms.**—Vomiting, profuse purging, thirst, great pain in the abdomen and in the head, with subsequent collapse and death in some instances.

**Treatment.**—Emetic or stomach-pump if vomiting has not occurred, stimulants, external heat, and artificial respiration if required.

**HYDROCHLORIC ACID.**—See Mineral Acids.

**HYDROCYANIC ACID** (*Prussic Acid*).—The pure acid is an exceedingly poisonous gas. In medicine it is employed as a 2 per cent. aqueous solution. Contained in oil of bitter almonds distilled from the seed; not found in the artificial or the purified natural product. Its salt, the cyanid of potassium, is employed as a quickly acting poison for the destruction of animals. Contained also in cherry-laurel water.

**Symptoms.**—The patient may drop dead almost immediately after a large dose of the poison has been swallowed. When smaller doses have been taken there is first difficult respiration, slow pulse, dizziness, impeded locomotion, a sense of constriction and heaviness in the head, progressive intellectual confusion, followed by tetanic convulsions, involuntary evacuations of urine and feces, with ejaculations of semen, dilated pupils, in turn succeeded by asphyxia, collapse, general paralysis, and death.

The odor of hydrocyanic acid about the body, the wide-staring eyes, the clinched teeth covered with froth, and the cyanotic face are diagnostic of death by this poison.

**Treatment.**—Stomach-pump or emetics, stimulants, artificial respiration, rapidly interrupted current applied by means of an electric brush swept quickly over the chest, alternate hot and cold douche. If the patient survives for 20 minutes or half an hour, the chances are in favor of his recovery.

**IODIN.**—May be taken by mistake; the tincture has the odor of iodine, which somewhat resembles chlorin.

**Symptoms.**—Metallic taste in the mouth, salivation, great pain in esophagus, stomach, and abdomen, followed by violent vomiting and purging. Face pale, pulse rapid, running, and feeble; urine suppressed; death occurs from respiratory paralysis. The presence of iodine is detected by the blue color of the vomited material if starch has been present.

**Treatment.**—Boiled starch (arrowroot or flour), as a chemical antidote; emetics and stomach-pump; opium or morphin for the pain; external heat, stimulants, and demulcent drinks.

**IODOFORM.**—Rarely taken internally, but toxic symptoms may appear when used freely as an antiseptic dressing.

**Symptoms.**—In mild cases, malaise, nausea, vomiting, headache, anorexia, followed by cerebral excitement, insomnia, fever, erythematous

rashes on the skin; small, rapid pulse; hematuria, or retention of urine, and in severe cases maniacal delirium, coma, and at times death.

**Treatment.**—Soullier advocates sodium bicarbonate to unite with the iodine and so aid in its elimination. External heat, stimulants. Emetics may be used if the drug has been swallowed.

**LEAD.**—Taken most frequently as sugar of lead (acetate), or in the form of Goulard's solution (subacetate), lead water (subacetate), white lead (carbonate).

**Symptoms of Acute Poisoning.**—After the acetate has been swallowed, the patient complains of a sweet, metallic taste in the mouth, a feeling of constriction in the esophagus, followed by vomiting of white, opaque masses; great thirst; cramps in the calves of the legs, occasionally paralysis; constipation or diarrhea, the feces being black, due to the formation of lead sulphid; great prostration, coma, and death.

**Treatment.**—Emetics and the stomach-pump. Magnesium or sodium sulphate in large quantities as chemical antidotes. Opium or morphin for the pain. External heat. Stimulants. Demulcent drinks.

**Chronic Poisoning.**—Obstinate constipation, with colicky pains centering around the umbilicus; abdominal walls retracted and hard; a blue line on the gums, due to a deposit of lead sulphid; the tongue is coated; the appetite diminished; pulse hard and tense; bilateral wrist-drop, due to peripheral neuritis, with paralysis of the extensor muscles of the forearm; arthralgia, especially of the knee-joints, less frequently involving the elbows and shoulders; cerebral disturbances—headache, vertigo, insomnia, delirium, epileptiform convulsions.

**Treatment.**—Remove the cause; promote elimination by the administration of potassium iodid in full doses, and by the use of hot baths; opium or morphin for the pain and to relax the spasm of the intestine caused by the lead; strychnin in full doses with electricity, massage, fresh air, and good food to overcome paralysis and increase general nutrition.

**MEAT POISONING.**—*Vide* Ptomain Poisoning.

**MERCURY** (*Corrosive Sublimate; Bichlorid of Mercury; Mercuric Chlorid, or the Perchlorid*).—Used in aqueous solution as bed-bug poison, as an insecticide, to preserve specimens, and as an antiseptic surgical dressing.

**Symptoms of Acute Poisoning.**—Acrid, metallic taste in the mouth, followed by burning pain in the esophagus, stomach and abdomen; the mucous membrane of mouth and pharynx is white and swollen; severe vomiting of the stomach contents mixed with shreds of mucous membrane and blood; violent purging accompanied by severe tenesmus, the stools being watery and blood-streaked; urine scanty or suppressed; profound prostration, collapse, and death.

**Treatment.**—White of egg as the chemical antidote; wash out the stomach or give emetics if vomiting is not profuse; external heat; opium for the pain; demulcent drinks; stimulants.

**Chronic Poisoning.**—**Symptoms.**—Increased salivation; swelling and tenderness of the gums when the jaws are snapped together; fetid breath;

nausea, vomiting and diarrhea may be present at intervals; loss of flesh and strength; anemia; skin eruptions; nervous disorders—tremors, psychical disturbances, choreic movements, hallucinations, mania, and paralyses as a result of peripheral neuritis.

**Treatment.**—Remove the cause; aid elimination; administer stimulants, good food and tonics; combat other symptoms as necessity arises.

#### MINERAL ACIDS.

**HYDROCHLORIC ACID** (*Muriatic Acid; Spirit of Salt*).

**Symptoms.**—Similar to those mentioned under sulphuric acid, though the acid is not so powerful and leaves no distinctive stain. It may be recognized by its odor and by the white fumes formed when the gaseous acid comes into contact with ammonia. Medicinally and in the arts hydrochloric acid is used in aqueous solution, the commercial variety tinted yellow from a trace of iron.

**Treatment.**—Same as for sulphuric acid.

**NITRIC ACID** (*Aqua fortis*).—A colorless, moderately heavy liquid of peculiar and characteristic odor, staining organic tissues yellow.

**Symptoms.**—The same as those mentioned under sulphuric acid, though the characteristic yellow stain may be found on the lips.

**Treatment.**—As for sulphuric acid.

**SULPHURIC ACID** (*Vitriol; Oil of Vitriol*).—A very heavy, colorless, odorless liquid, having a very acid taste and mixing with water with the production of great heat. Used largely in the arts. Turns organic matter black.

**Symptoms.**—Intense burning pain in mouth, stomach, and abdomen; mucous membrane of mouth is swollen, corroded or excoriated, sometimes white; lips swollen and excoriated; vomiting of a blackish fluid, containing shreds of mucous membrane and coagulated mucus; intense thirst with great dysphagia; bowels usually constipated, occasionally diarrhea, the stools containing altered blood and shreds of mucous membrane; urine scanty or suppressed; great feebleness and collapse.

Death may occur in the stage of collapse. It often occurs suddenly either from edema of the glottis, from pulmonary embolism or thrombosis, from perforation of the stomach, or later by the secondary effects resulting from esophageal stricture and destruction of the gastric mucous membrane.

**Treatment.**—Neutralize by giving calcined magnesia, chalk, lime-water, soap and water, and water in large quantity; demulcent drinks; opium or morphin for the pain; external heat; stimulants. The stomach-pump should not be used in sulphuric-acid poisoning.

**MORPHIN POISONING.**—See Opium Poisoning.

**MUSHROOM POISONING.**—Harmless varieties may prove poisonous to some individuals. *Agaricus muscarius* is the most poisonous variety,

containing the active principle muscarin. The fungus is bright red, with yellow spots. As a rule, highly colored fungi, with an astringent, styptic taste and a pungent odor should be avoided; they frequent especially dark and shady places.

**Symptoms.**—These may be divided into gastro-intestinal and nervous.

*Gastro-intestinal symptoms* appear six to ten hours after the fungi have been swallowed. Pain in the stomach and abdomen, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Great thirst; small, weak pulse; skin cold, clammy and livid; great prostration which may result in death.

*Nervous symptoms* consist of muscular twitchings; convulsions; delirium; disorders of special senses, especially of vision; stupor or profound coma.

**Treatment.**—Emetic; castor oil to evacuate the bowels; atropin as the physiological antidote; external heat; stimulants.

**NICOTIN.**—The liquid, volatile alkaloid of tobacco. An acrid, oily liquid of amber color, smelling of tobacco. A very deadly and quickly acting poison.

**Symptoms.**—Burning in throat; dizziness; muscular weakness; nausea; vomiting; skin cold, clammy; pulse rapid and feeble; pupils at first contracted, later dilated; mental confusion, delirium, and convulsions. Death may occur within a short time after the poison has been taken.

**Treatment.**—Emetics or the stomach-tube, followed by tannic acid as an antidote; stimulants; external heat; artificial respiration, if necessary; strychnin.

**NITROBENZOL** (*Nitrobenzene; Oil of Mirbane; Artificial Oil of Bitter Almonds*).—Used in the preparation of anilin dyes and in the arts on account of its flavor (soaps, etc.). Recognized by its highly characteristic odor.

**Symptoms.**—Characteristic intense cyanosis extending over the whole body; headache; dizziness; muscular weakness; breathing irregular and stertorous; vomiting may occur, the vomited matter having the odor of the poison, as does the breath; mental confusion, stupor and coma; pulse weak; temperature lowered; skin relaxed; the pupils may be dilated or contracted, usually dilated.

**Treatment.**—Evacuate and wash out the stomach thoroughly; external heat with friction; artificial respiration and faradism, if necessary; stimulants as required; alcoholic stimulants should not be given until after evacuation of the stomach because alcohol renders the poison more soluble.

**OPIUM POISONING (ACUTE).**—Taken accidentally or with suicidal intent in the shape of morphin or laudanum.

**Symptoms.**—The first stage, which is of short duration, is marked by restlessness; increased mental activity with a feeling of exhilaration; cardiac stimulation and flushed face. This is succeeded by a second stage of stupor, ushered in by drowsiness, followed by deep sleep; slow, full pulse; respirations slow and full; contracted pupils; warm, dry skin. During this



stage, the patient can be aroused, but goes to sleep again when he is not disturbed. The patient passes insensibly into the third stage which is characterized by inability to arouse the patient; cyanosis; respirations very slow and shallow; muscular relaxation; the skin becomes relaxed, cold and clammy; the pupils dilate just before death occurs.

**Treatment.**—Wash out the stomach thoroughly and frequently; solution of potassium permanganate or tannic acid as chemical antidotes; strong, hot coffee by enema; strychnin hypodermically with atropin; keep the patient awake by mild flagellation, shaking, shouting, or by the use of the electric brush swept quickly over his chest, using the faradic current; artificial respiration, external heat and stimulants in the later stage.

**OXALIC ACID.**—Mistaken for Epsom salt; taken with suicidal intent. Occurs in prismatic, colorless, odorless crystals, with a very sour taste. Volatile without charring at a red heat.

**Symptoms.**—After large amounts have been swallowed there is pain in the mouth, stomach, and abdomen; persistent vomiting of altered blood; violent purging of a bloody material; cramps in the legs; the skin is cold, clammy and cyanotic; collapse follows; more rarely convulsions occur.

**Treatment.**—Calcium carbonate in the form of chalk, lime-water, whiting, marble dust, plaster from the walls, or egg-shells powdered and suspended in a little water. Calcined magnesia may be given. Follow these by an enema or castor oil to sweep out the bowel.

**PHENOL (*Carbolic Acid*). AND CREOSOTE.**—Phenol is a white crystalline solid when pure, very deliquescent, and when liquefied is a colorless or reddish colored liquid, having a characteristic odor. Impure phenol is a dark colored liquid.

**Symptoms.**—When pure phenol is swallowed death may follow almost at once from sudden respiratory failure. If the patient does not die at once, he suffers intense burning pain in the mouth, esophagus, and stomach; the mucous membrane is stained and swollen, the eschar being white and surrounded by a zone of inflammation. The face is ghostly; the skin cold and clammy; violent vomiting and purging may be present, although vomiting may be absent. The urine is diminished or suppressed, that which is passed being dark colored; collapse follows with a small, imperceptible pulse, low temperature, and extreme dyspnea. The odor of phenol on the breath and the white eschar on the mouth are characteristic of this poison.

**Treatment.**—Any soluble, non-poisonous sulphate, such as magnesium, or sodium sulphate, as the chemical antidote. Wash out stomach, use emetics or the stomach-pump. Morphin for pain, demulcent drinks, such as albumin, mucilage of acacia, but *no oils*. External heat and stimulants to overcome collapse.

**PHOSPHORUS.**—Employed in the form of a paste as a rat and roach poison; matches are sometimes sucked for suicidal purposes. The paste is recognized by its peculiar garlicky odor, and by the luminous fumes it emits in the dark.

**Symptoms.**—These usually do not appear until eight or ten hours after the poison has been swallowed, and are manifested by a peculiar taste in the mouth; the odor of phosphorus on the breath; burning pain in the alimentary tract; vomiting, the vomit being luminous and consisting of food, mucus, bile, and perhaps blood; purging, the stools being also phosphorescent in the dark; constipation may be present. At the end of 24 or 48 hours a cessation of the primary symptoms occurs which may last two or three days or longer. At the end of this time, jaundice develops and the primary symptoms return with renewed vigor; the vomit is like "coffee-grounds," due to altered blood; obstinate constipation may exist; the fecal masses, if passed, are white and clay colored; the urine is scanty, albuminous and contains casts, sarcolactic acid and bile pigments; the nervous symptoms consist of headache, vertigo, delirium, convulsions, and unconsciousness, followed by death. If the patient survives the acute symptoms, he may die later as the result of fatty degeneration of vital organs.

**Treatment.**—Wash the stomach freely with a 1 per cent. solution of potassium permanganate as a chemical antidote; hydrogen peroxid may also be given; demulcent drinks. *No oils* should be given, as they increase the solubility of the phosphorus. Stimulants. External heat.

#### POTASSIUM NITRATE (*Nitre; Saltpetre*).

**Symptoms.**—After a large dose, the patient experiences violent pain; in the stomach and abdomen; vomiting and purging, the ejected matter sometimes containing blood; occasionally convulsions, labored respiration, cramps in the legs, paresthesia, paralysis of the limbs and aphonia have been observed; collapse occurs, followed by coma and death.

**Treatment.**—Emetics, and wash out the stomach; opium for the pain; demulcent drinks; external heat, with counterirritation over the stomach; stimulants.

**PTOMAIN POISONING.**—Ptomains are alkaloidal bodies, the products of the decay of animal tissues. These are probably the cause of the poisonous action of tainted meat and fish, cream-puffs, ice-cream, *blanc mange*, and cheese.

**Poisonous Fish.**—Vomiting, profuse purging, thirst, great pain in the abdomen, headache, itching of the skin, collapse, and death in some instances.

**Shell Fish, Mussels.**—Erythematous or urticarial eruptions on the skin with itching; abdominal pain, thirst, vomiting, diarrhea; dyspnea; pupils dilated; collapse; paralysis and death.

**Poisonous meat** contains ptomains, those produced when stale meat is just beginning to decay being more virulent than others which replace the first when decomposition is well under way.

**Symptoms.**—Headache, anorexia, rigors, thirst, vomiting, purging, pains in the back or limbs, skin eruptions, delirium, collapse. The temperature is usually subnormal.

**Ices, Ice-cream.**—The cheap varieties are colored with anilin dyes, which may not be free from arsenic. Again, the highly poisonous alkaloid, tyrotoxinon, may have formed in the milk used, and to this principle most cases of poisoning of this kind are traced.

**Symptoms.**—Nausea, vomiting, cramps in the abdomen, collapse; diarrhea may be present.

**Treatment.**—Emetic or stomach-pump if vomiting has not occurred, stimulants, external heat, and artificial respiration if required.

SILVER NITRATE (*Lunar Caustic*).—Used in the form of the fused nitrate as a caustic. Otherwise in colorless, rhombic crystals, freely, soluble, with astringent metallic taste. Yields a white precipitate with chlorids and stains organic matter black.

**Symptoms.**—Violent pain in the stomach and abdomen, soon followed by vomiting and purging; the vomited matter is white at first, turning dark later; the lips are at first white, but soon turn brown, then black; the skin is cold and clammy; cramps in the legs may occur; cardiac depression and collapse. Nervous symptoms, consisting of epileptiform convulsions, and delirium are sometimes severe.

**Treatment.**—Common salt and water, followed by an emetic or stomach-pump; opium for the pain; oils and demulcent drinks; external heat; stimulants.

STRYCHNIN.—An alkaloid occurring in *nux vomica* and *ignatia*. Appears in the form of white, prismatic, odorless crystals which have an intensely bitter taste. Used as a vermin killer.

**Symptoms.**—These may come on suddenly or gradually. If suddenly, the patient may be thrown into tetanic convulsions without warning. If they develop gradually, the patient experiences stiffness at the back of the neck, and muscular twitchings, with a feeling of anxiety and impending suffocation, followed by violent tetanic convulsions in which the body assumes the position of opisthotonos, occasionally emprosthotonos or pleurosthotonos, the eyeballs are prominent, the pupils dilated, and the corners of the mouth drawn into risus sardonicus. Respiration is much impeded or entirely arrested, producing marked cyanosis. The patient is conscious and experiences the most acute physical pain with mental anguish at the prospect of death which he believes to be imminent.

Intervals of relaxation occur in which the patient lies exhausted, the respirations are more rapid and full, and the cyanosis clears up. Any external impulse is sufficient to cause another convulsion, and these may succeed each other so rapidly that the patient dies of cramp asphyxia or from exhaustion.

In tetanus there is usually the history of a wound; symptoms develop much more gradually; the muscles of the jaw are early involved and trismus is much more marked than spasm of the respiratory muscles, and the convulsions are tonic.

**Treatment.**—Emetics or wash out the stomach, if seen early. Amyl nitrite to relax the spasm, followed by chloroform. During anesthesia, the stomach may be washed out and a solution of tannic acid given to act as a chemical antidote, while hydrated chloral with bromids in full doses may be given by enema to act as physiological antagonists. Artificial respiration if necessary.

SULPHURETED HYDROGEN has the characteristic odor of rotten eggs. It forms the bulk of the gas emanating from sewers and cess-pools, some ammonium sulphid and nitrogen occurring with it.

**Symptoms.**—If inhaled in small quantity, irritation of the eyes, nose, and throat occurs, with headache, vertigo, muscular relaxation, nausea, and diarrhea.

If inhaled in large quantities, unconsciousness rapidly follows, with cyanosis, dilated pupils, collapse, and fatal coma, sometimes interrupted by violent convulsions.

In a state approaching purity, sewer gas kills almost instantly; in moderate amount it frequently causes death in 24 hours, all efforts to restore consciousness proving useless.

**Treatment.**—Fresh air; artificial respiration for many hours; ammonia by inhalation; stimulation.

**ZINC.**—The chlorid, in solution, is used as a disinfectant (Burnett's Disinfecting Fluid). A very heavy, corrosive, colorless liquid, of astrigent taste. It partakes of the nature of a corrosive poison.

**Symptoms.**—Burning sensation in throat and stomach, perhaps signs of local corrosion. Nausea, vomiting, purging, dyspnea, collapse, coma, death.

**Treatment.**—Carbonate of potassium or sodium in water; milk; eggs; tannic acid; opium as a sedative; demulcent drinks; external heat, and stimulants.

# APPENDIX.

## TABLES FOR REDUCING THE METRIC SYSTEM INTO THE ENGLISH. (Troy Weight.)

### GRAINS TO GRAMS.

$\frac{1}{200}$	= 0.00033
$\frac{1}{195}$	= 0.00034
$\frac{1}{190}$	= 0.00035
$\frac{1}{185}$	= 0.000357
$\frac{1}{180}$	= 0.00036
$\frac{1}{175}$	= 0.000377
$\frac{1}{170}$	= 0.000388
$\frac{1}{165}$	= 0.0004
$\frac{1}{160}$	= 0.000413
$\frac{1}{155}$	= 0.000425
$\frac{1}{150}$	= 0.00044
$\frac{1}{145}$	= 0.000455
$\frac{1}{140}$	= 0.00048
$\frac{1}{136}$	= 0.00049
$\frac{1}{130}$	= 0.0005
$\frac{1}{125}$	= 0.000528
$\frac{1}{120}$	= 0.00055
$\frac{1}{115}$	= 0.000574
$\frac{1}{110}$	= 0.0006

### GRAINS TO GRAMS.

$\frac{1}{105}$	= 0.000628
$\frac{1}{100}$	= 0.00066
$\frac{1}{95}$	= 0.000694
$\frac{1}{90}$	= 0.0073
$\frac{1}{85}$	= 0.0077
$\frac{1}{80}$	= 0.0082
$\frac{1}{75}$	= 0.0085
$\frac{1}{70}$	= 0.0094
$\frac{1}{65}$	= 0.001
$\frac{1}{60}$	= 0.0011
$\frac{1}{55}$	= 0.0012
$\frac{1}{50}$	= 0.00132
$\frac{1}{45}$	= 0.00146
$\frac{1}{40}$	= 0.00165
$\frac{1}{35}$	= 0.00188
$\frac{1}{30}$	= 0.0022
$\frac{1}{25}$	= 0.00264
$\frac{1}{20}$	= 0.0033
$\frac{1}{15}$	= 0.0044

### GRAINS TO GRAMS.

$\frac{1}{15}$	= 0.0055
$\frac{1}{10}$	= 0.0066
$\frac{1}{8}$	= 0.0082
$\frac{1}{6}$	= 0.0094
$\frac{1}{5}$	= 0.011
$\frac{1}{4}$	= 0.0132
$\frac{1}{3}$	= 0.0165
$\frac{1}{2}$	= 0.022
1	= 0.033
1	= 0.060
2	= 0.132
3	= 0.198
4	= 0.264
5	= 0.33
6	= 0.396
7	= 0.462
8	= 0.528
9	= 0.594
10	= 0.66

### GRAMS TO GRAINS.

1	= 15.43
2	= 30.86
3	= 46.29
4	= 61.72
5	= 77.15
6	= 92.58
7	= 108.01
8	= 123.44
9	= 138.87
10	= 154.3
1 pound avoirdupois	= 453.5925 gm.
1 ounce avoirdupois	= 28.3495 gm.
1 grain avoirdupois	= 0.0648 gm.

### GRAINS TO MILLIGRAMS.

1	= 64.8
2	= 129.6
3	= 194.4
4	= 259.2
5	= 324
6	= 388.8
7	= 453.6
8	= 518.4
9	= 583.2
10	= 648
1 dram or 60	= 3.89 gm.
1 ounce or 480	= 31.1 gm. <sup>1</sup>

## FLUID MEASURES.

1 teaspoonful distilled water	= 1 fluidram	= 3.7 c.c.
1 dessertspoonful distilled water	= 2 fluidrams	= 7.4 c.c.
1 tablespoonful distilled water	= 4 fluidrams	= 14.8 c.c.
1 wineglassful distilled water	= 2 fluidounces	= 59.14 c.c.
1 fluidounce distilled water		= 29.57 c.c. (circa 30 c.c. <sup>1</sup> )
16 fluidounces distilled water	= 1 pint	= 473.11 c.c. (circa 480 c.c.)

<sup>1</sup>A fluidounce of water which measures 30 c.c. does not weigh 31.1 gm., because an ounce of water really weighs but 455.7 grains Troy, and not 480 grains.

TABLES FOR REDUCING THE METRIC SYSTEM INTO THE ENGLISH  
FLUID MEASURES—(Continued).

MINIMS TO CUBIC CENTIMETERS.	CUBIC CENTIMETERS TO MINIMS.	FLUIDRAMS TO CUBIC CENTIMETERS.	CUBIC CENTIMETERS TO FLUIDRAMS.
1 = 0.06	1 = 16.2	1 = 3.7	1 = 0.27
2 = 0.12	2 = 32.4	2 = 7.4	2 = 0.54
3 = 0.18	3 = 48.6	3 = 11.1	3 = 0.81
4 = 0.24	4 = 64.8	4 = 14.8	4 = 1.08
5 = 0.31	5 = 81	5 = 18.5	5 = 1.35
10 = 0.62	6 = 97.2	6 = 22.2	6 = 1.62
15 = 0.92	7 = 113.4	7 = 25.9	7 = 1.89
16½ = 1	8 = 129.6	8 = 29.6	8 = 2.16
20 = 1.23	9 = 145.8	9 = 33.3	9 = 2.43
30 = 1.85		10 = 37	10 = 2.7
40 = 2.46			

FLUIDOUNCES TO CUBIC CENTIMETERS.	LITERS TO FLUIDOUNCES.	LITERS TO PINTS	PINTS TO LITERS.
1 = 29.57	1 = 33.8	1 = 2.1	1 = 0.473
2 = 59.14	2 = 67.6	2 = 4.2	2 = 0.946
3 = 88.71	3 = 101.4	3 = 6.3	3 = 1.419
4 = 118.28	4 = 135.2	4 = 8.4	4 = 1.892
5 = 147.75	5 = 169	5 = 10.5	5 = 2.365
6 = 177.42	6 = 202.8	6 = 12.6	6 = 2.838
7 = 206.99	7 = 236.6	7 = 14.7	7 = 3.311
8 = 236.56	8 = 270.4	8 = 16.8	8 = 3.784
9 = 266.13	9 = 304.2	9 = 18.9	9 = 4.257
10 = 295.7	10 = 338	10 = 21	10 = 4.73
12 = 354.84			
16 = 473.12			

LINEAR MEASURES.

CENTIMETERS TO INCHES.	INCHES TO CENTIMETERS.	INCHES TO MILLIMETERS.	MILLIMETERS TO INCHES.
1 = 0.3937	1 = 2.54	1 = 25.4	1 = 0.03937
2 = 0.7974	2 = 5.08	2 = 50.8	2 = 0.07874
3 = 1.1817	3 = 7.62	3 = 76.2	3 = 0.11811
4 = 1.5784	4 = 10.16	4 = 101.6	4 = 0.15784
5 = 1.9685	5 = 12.7	5 = 127	5 = 0.19685
6 = 2.3622	6 = 15.2	6 = 152.4	6 = 0.23622
7 = 2.7559	7 = 17.78	7 = 177.8	7 = 0.27559
8 = 3.1496	8 = 20.32	8 = 193.2	8 = 0.31496
9 = 3.5433	9 = 22.86	9 = 228.6	9 = 0.35433
10 = 3.9370	10 = 25.4	10 = 254	10 = 0.3937

FEET TO METERS.

1 = 0.3048
2 = 0.6096
3 = 0.9144
4 = 1.2192
5 = 1.524
6 = 1.8288
7 = 2.1336
8 = 2.4384
9 = 2.7432
10 = 3.048

METERS TO FEET.

1 = 3.28
2 = 6.56
3 = 9.84
4 = 13.12
5 = 16.4
6 = 19.68
7 = 22.96
8 = 26.24
9 = 29.52
10 = 32.8

A micromillimeter = 0.001 millimeter. Symbol  $\mu$ .

## TO CONVERT DEGREES OF FAHRENHEIT'S THERMOMETER TO CENTIGRADE, AND VICE VERSA.

## CENTIGRADE TO FAHRENHEIT.

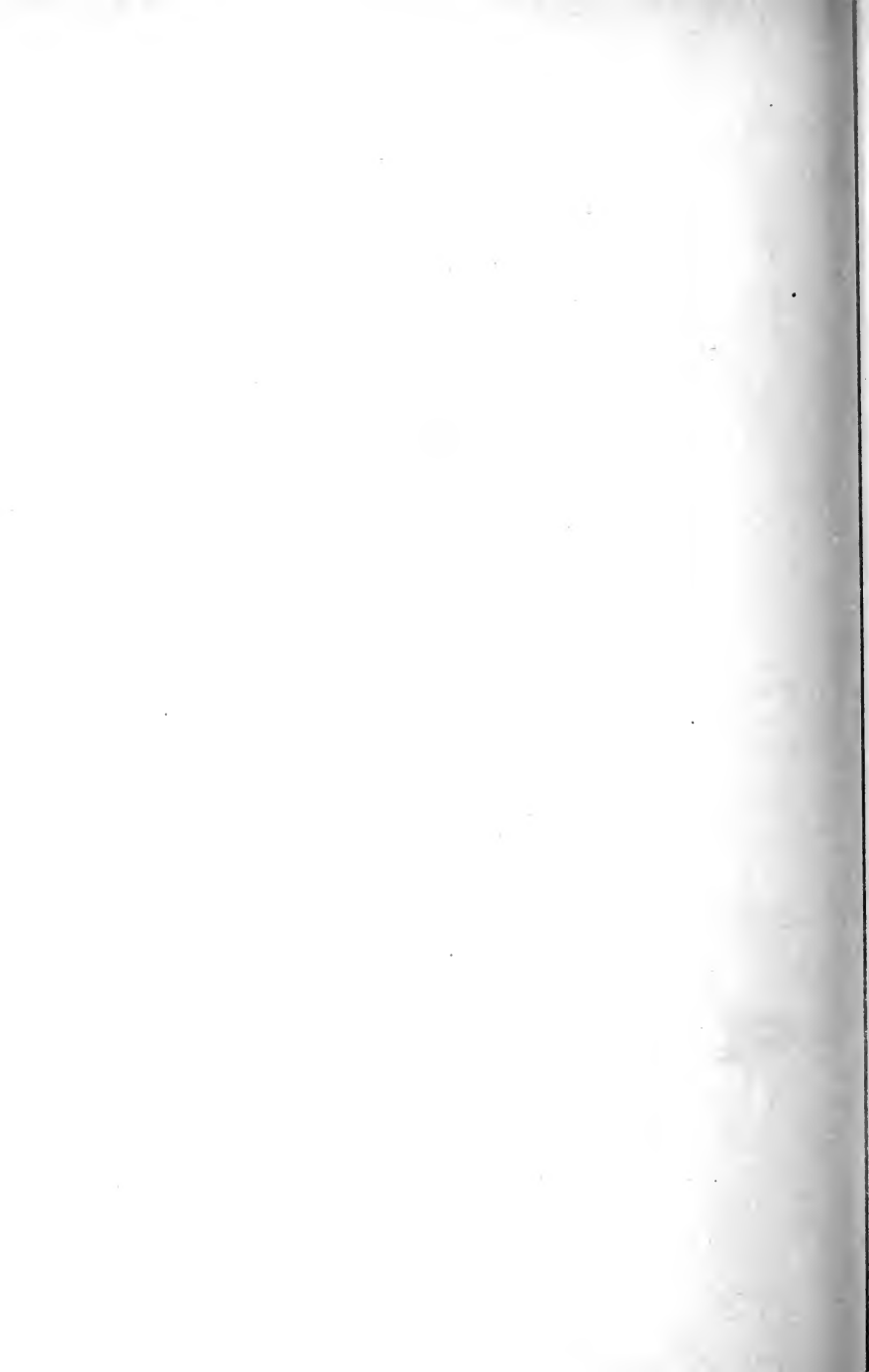
1	=	1.8
2	=	3.6
3	=	5.4
4	=	7.2
5	=	9
6	=	10.8
7	=	12.6
8	=	14.4
9	=	16.2
10	=	18

To use this table, convert the given number of degrees Centigrade into degrees Fahrenheit, and add  $32^{\circ}$ .

## FAHRENHEIT TO CENTIGRADE.

1	=	0.555
2	=	1.11
3	=	1.665
4	=	2.22
5	=	2.775
6	=	3.33
7	=	3.885
8	=	4.44
9	=	4.95
10	=	5.55

To use this, table subtract  $32^{\circ}$  from the given number of degrees Fahrenheit and convert the remainder into degrees Centigrade.





# INDEX

## A

- Abasia-astasia, 1248  
 Abscess, mediastinal, 598  
   of the brain, 1196  
   of the heart, 661  
   of the liver, 497  
   of the spleen, 748  
   paranephritic, 809  
   perinephric, 809  
   postpharyngeal, 343  
 Absorption, to determine  
   rate of, 363  
 Acanthocephali, 1355  
 Acarinae, 1389  
 Acetone, test for, 890  
 Achondroplasia, 914  
 Acidity of gastric contents,  
   estimation of, 355  
 Aconite poisoning, 1397  
 Acromegaly, 1255  
 Actinomycosis, 203  
   of brain, 204  
   of lungs, 204  
   of skin, 204  
   symptoms of, 204  
   treatment of, 204  
 Active congestion of kid-  
   ney, 762  
 Acute albuminuria, 765  
   alcoholism, 1275  
   angioneurotic edema,  
     1251  
   anterior poliomyelitis of  
     children, 1012  
   arsenical poisoning, 1398  
   articular rheumatism,  
     218, 848  
   atrophic spinal paralysis  
     of adults, 1015  
   Bright's disease, 765  
   bronchial catarrh, 553  
   bulbar palsy, 1051  
   catarrhal dysentery, 99  
     gastritis, 365  
     nephritis, 765  
   degeneration of internal  
     organs of newborn,  
       924  
   delirium, 1203  
   desquamative nephritis,  
     765  
   diarrhea, 405  
   diffuse nephritis, 765  
   dyspepsia, 365  
   encephalitis der Kinder,  
     1171  
   febrile jaundice, 315  
   gastric catarrh, 365  
   hydrocephalus, 268  
   ileocolitis, 416  
   intestinal catarrh, 405  
   leptomeningitis, 1146
- Acute:  
   miliary tuberculosis, 263  
   nasal catarrh, 532  
   nephritis, 765  
   parenchymatous hepati-  
     tis, 502  
     tonsillitis, 335  
   phthisis, 264  
   poliomyelitis in adults,  
     1015  
     in children, 1012  
   renal dropsy, 755  
   rheumatism, 218  
   softening of the brain,  
     1163  
   tracheobronchitis, 553  
   tubal nephritis, 765  
   yellow atrophy of the  
     liver, 502  
     diagnosis of, 503  
     etiology of, 502  
     histology of, 502  
     prognosis of, 504  
     symptoms of, 503  
     treatment of, 504  
     urine in, 503
- Adams-Stokes syndrome, 670  
 Addison's disease, 745  
   diagnosis of, 747  
   morbid anatomy, 745  
   prognosis of, 747  
   symptoms of, 745  
   coloration of skin, 746  
   treatment of, 747  
 Adénie and lymphadénie,  
   721  
 Adiposis dolorosa, 972  
 Adipositas universalis, 905  
 Agénèse cérébrale, 1171  
 Ageusia, 1074  
 Agraphia, motor, 1077  
 Ague, 53  
 Ainhum, 1259  
 Akinesia algera, 953  
 Alalia, 1077  
 Albumin digestion, 360  
   examination of products  
     of, 360  
   tests for, 754  
 Albuminoid disease, 799  
   liver, 488  
 Albuminous nephritis, 765  
 Albuminuria, 751  
   extrarenal, 751  
   general remarks on, 751  
   physiological or function-  
     al, 753  
   renal, 752  
   immediate cause of,  
     752  
 Albuminuric retinitis, 790  
 Alcohol poisoning, 1397
- Alcoholism, 1275  
   acute, 1275  
     diagnosis of, 1275  
     symptoms of, 1275  
   chronic, 1276  
     morbid anatomy, 1276  
     symptoms of, 1277  
       digestive apparatus,  
         1278  
       kidney changes, 1277  
       liver, 1278  
       lungs, 1277  
       nervous system,  
         1277  
       vascular changes,  
         1278  
   treatment, 1279  
 Alveolar ectasia, 569  
 Amaurosis, 757  
   hysterical, 1089  
   toxic, 1089  
   uremic, 1089  
 Amaurotic family idiocy,  
   1273  
 Amblyopia, 1089  
   tobacco, 1089  
 American disease, 1244  
   gout, 874  
 Amimia, 1078  
 Ammonia poisoning, 1398  
 Amnesic aphasia, 1076  
 Amœba coli, 498, 1306  
   urogenitalis, 1307  
   gracilis, 1309  
   gingivalis, 1309  
   dentalis, 1309  
   buccalis, 1309  
   miurai, 1309  
 Amphistomum hominis,  
   1322  
 Amusia, 1075  
 Amyloid disease, kidney,  
   799  
   liver, 488  
   diagnosis of, 489  
   etiology, 489  
   morbid anatomy, 489  
   prognosis of, 490  
   treatment of, 490  
 Amyotrophic lateral sclero-  
   sis, 1053  
 Analgesic paresis with pan-  
   aritium, 1038  
 Analgic panaritium, 1038  
 Anarthria, 1071  
 Anchovy sauce-like pus  
   from abscess of liver, 499  
 Anchylostomiasis, 1378  
 Anemia, general, 698  
   local, 698  
   lymphatic, 721  
   diagnosis of, 724  
   etiology, 721

- Anemia:**  
 morbid anatomy of, 721  
 prognosis of, 725  
 symptoms of, 723  
 treatment of, 725  
 of the brain, 1152  
 primary or essential, 702  
 progressive pernicious, 706  
 diagnosis of, 711  
 etiology of, 707  
 morbid anatomy of, 711  
 prognosis of, 712  
 symptoms of, 708  
 blood changes, 709  
 Eichhorst's corpuscle, 710  
 treatment of, 712  
 secondary or symptomatic, 699  
 diagnosis of, 701  
 due to drain of chronic disease, 699  
 due to hemorrhage, 699  
 from inanition, 699  
 symptoms of, 700  
 treatment of, 701  
 splenic, 726  
 toxic, 700  
 Anemias, the, 698  
**Aneurysm, differential diagnosis of,** 689  
 from aortic incompetency, 689  
 from mediastinal tumors, 689  
 from pulsating empyema, 690  
 intracranial, 1170  
 of the abdominal aorta, 687  
 of the branches, 688  
 of the celiac axis, 688  
 of the aorta, 679  
 of the ascending aorta, 686  
 of the descending aorta, 687  
 of the heart, 689  
 etiology of, 679  
 false, 679  
 dissecting, 679  
 traumatic, 679  
 true, 679  
 varix or anastomotic, 679  
 of the hepatic artery, 688  
 of the innominate, 688  
 of the pulmonary artery, 689  
 of the renal artery, 688  
 of the splenic artery, 688  
 of the subclavian, 688  
 of the superior mesenteric artery, 688  
 of the thoracic aorta, 680  
 physical signs of, 684
- Aneurysm:**  
 diastolic shock, 685  
 Drummond's sign in, 686  
 Glasgow's sign, 686  
 Perez's sign, 686  
 Scheele's sign, 686  
 points of election, 680  
 symptoms of, 681  
 capillary pulse, 684  
 Cardarelli's sign, 683  
 pain, 681  
 pressure, 681  
 tracheal tug in, 683  
 voice, 682  
 of the transverse part of aorta, 687  
 Traube's sign, 690  
 prognosis of, 690  
 treatment of, 691  
 varieties of, 679  
**Angina follicularis,** 337  
 Ludovici, 334  
 maligna, 130  
 membranacea, 130  
 pectoris, 672  
 diagnosis of, 673  
 from hysterical form, 673  
 from intercostal neuralgia, 674  
 morbid anatomy of, 673  
 prognosis of, 674  
 symptoms of, 673  
 treatment, 674  
**Anguillulidæ,** 1358  
**Animal parasites,** 1303  
**Anisocoria,** 1101  
**Anorexia nervosa,** 381  
**Anosmia,** 1074  
**Anthrax,** 198  
 bacillus, 198  
 diagnosis of, 200  
 external, 199  
 malignant, edema, 199  
 pustule, 199  
 in animals, 199  
 incubation, 199  
 internal, 200  
 intestinal anthrax, 200  
 wool-sorter's disease, 200  
 etiology of, 198  
 morbid anatomy of, 199  
 prognosis of, 200  
 symptoms of, 199  
 treatment of, 200  
**Antimony poisoning,** 1398  
**Aortic incompetency,** 627  
**Aortic insufficiency,** 627  
 physical signs of, 629  
 capillary pulse, 629  
 Corrigan pulse, 629
- Aortic:**  
 Duroziez's double murmur, 631  
 Traube's double sound, 630  
 sphygmogram, 628  
 symptoms of, 629  
 stenosis and Roughening, 631  
 occurrence and mechanism, 631  
 physical signs, 632  
 sphygmogram, 632  
 symptoms of, 632  
 and insufficiency, 633  
**Aphasia, motor or ataxic,** 1077  
 or loss of faculty of speech, 1075  
 various forms of, 1071  
 Marie's views on, 1080  
**Aphemia,** 1077  
**Aphtha,** 326  
**Aphthæ epizooticæ,** 204  
**Apoplexy,** 1154  
 cerebral hemorrhage, 1155  
 arterial distribution, 1155  
 diagnosis of, 1161  
 etiology of, 1155  
 morbid anatomy of, 1156  
 prognosis of, 1162  
 symptoms of, 1157  
 treatment of, 1162  
 embolism and thrombosis of the cerebral vessels, 1163  
 diagnosis of, 1167  
 etiology of, 1164  
 morbid changes in, 1164  
 prognosis of, 1168  
 relative frequency, 1164  
 symptoms of, 1165  
 treatment of, 1168  
**Appendicitis,** 422  
 bacilli, 427  
 catarrhal, 422  
 chronic, 434  
 complications and sequelæ, 433  
 definition of, 422  
 diagnosis of, 434  
 differential diagnosis of, 434  
 etiology of, 427  
 exciting causes, 427  
 gangrenous, 431  
 history, 423  
 intestinal or parietal, 426  
 morbid anatomy of, 425  
 of catarrhal, 425  
 of intestinal, 426  
 of ulcerative, 426  
 obliterans in, 425  
 pathology, 425  
 perforation in, 433

- Appendicitis:  
   predisposing causes, 428  
   prognosis of, 436  
   recurring, 434  
   relapsing, 434  
   symptoms of, 428  
   ulcerative, 426  
     pain, 429  
     rigidity of muscle, 430  
     Rovsing's sign, 429  
     tenderness, 429  
     tumor, 430  
   treatment of, 437  
     diet, 438  
     medicinal, 438  
     operative, 437
- Apraxia, 1073  
 Aproxesia, 337  
 Arachnoidea, 1389  
 Argyll Robertson pupil, 1100  
 Arrhythmia, 665-669  
 Arithmomania, 1212  
 Arm-jerks, 938  
 Arsenical poisoning, 1291  
   acute, 1291  
   chronic, 1292  
 Arterial pyemia, 617  
 Arteriocapillary fibrosis, 675  
 Arteriosclerosis, 675  
   sphygmogram in, 678  
 Arthralgia saturnina, 1287  
 Arthritis deformans, 852  
   multiple, 855  
   partial or monarthritic, 856  
 Arthritis, gonorrhœal, 216  
 Arthropoda, 1388  
   arachnoidea, 1389  
   acarinae, 1389  
   linguatulidae or pentastomes, 1390  
   insecta, 1391  
   diptera, 1394  
 Ascarides, 1381  
 Ascaris lumbricoides, 1381  
   maritima, 1384  
   texana, 1385  
   canis, 1385  
 Ascites, 520  
   character of fluid, 522  
   chylosus, 523  
   differential diagnosis of, 522  
     from cyst of the omentum, 523  
     from hydronephrosis, 523  
     from overdistended bladder, 523  
   etiology of, 520  
   physical signs of, 521  
   symptoms of, 521  
   treatment of, 521
- Aspiration pneumonia, 245  
 Associated movements, 935  
 Astereognosis, 952  
 Asthma, bronchial, 563  
   cardiac, 599  
   humidum, 557  
   uremic, 757
- Atacilia, 1074  
 Ataxia, hereditary, 1032  
 Ataxia, progressive locomotor, 1020  
 Atelectasis of the lung, 247  
 Atheroma of the blood-vessels, 673  
 Athetosis, 1175  
 Athyrea, 738  
 Atrophia musculorum lipomatosa, 1269  
 Atrophic bulbar paralysis, 1047  
   spinal paralysis, 1012  
 Atrophy, acute yellow, of the liver, 502  
   diagnosis of, 503  
   etiology of, 502  
   morbid anatomy of, 502  
   symptoms of, 503  
   treatment of, 504  
   facio - scapulo - humeral type of, 1271  
   juvenile hereditary, Erb's form of, 1270  
   muscular, 1269  
     primary myopathic, forms of, 1269  
     progressive, peroneal type of, 1271
- Atropin poisoning, 1399  
 Auditory hyperesthesia, 1118  
   or eighth nerve, lesions of, 1116  
 Automatic chorea, 1215  
 Autumnal catarrh, 536  
   fever, 1
- B
- Babinski reflex, 938  
 Baccelli's sign, 582  
 Bacillus dysenteriae, 101  
 Bacillus typhosis, 2  
 Bacillus X, 77  
 Bacteremia, 183  
 Balantidium coli, 1318  
   minutum, 1319  
 Ballismus, 1188  
 Bamberger's sign, 606  
 Banti's disease, 727  
 Barbadoes distemper, 76  
 Barlow's disease, 921  
 Basedow's disease, 731  
 Basilar meningitis, 268  
 Bedbug, 1393  
 Bednar's aphthæ, 329  
 Beef tape-worm, 1344  
 Bell's mania, 1203  
   palsy, 1107  
 Beri-beri, 970  
 Big jaw, 203  
 Bilateral infantile spastic hemiplegia, 1174  
   mental defects in, 1175  
 Bile-duct, carcinoma, 482  
   cicatricial contraction, 483  
   parasites, 483  
   stenosis, 483
- Bile-passages and gall-bladder, diseases of, 466  
 Bilharzia hæmatobia, 1332  
 Biliary cancer, 482  
   cirrhosis, 492  
   colic, 471  
 Bilious fever, 53  
   headache, 1227  
   remittent fever, 76  
   typhoid fever, 315  
 Birth palsies, 1174  
 Bisulphid of carbon poisoning, 1292  
 Black death, 109  
   plague, 109  
   vomitus, 79  
 Blackwater fever, 69  
 Bladder and rectum, mechanism of function, 935  
 Bladder, catarrh of, 835  
   diseases of, 835  
   hemorrhoidal veins of, 846  
   morbid growths of, 846  
   muscular spasm of, 843  
     treatment of, 844  
     of incontinence, 844  
     of retention, 845  
   neuroses of, 842  
   paralysis of, 843  
   stone in, 842  
   worm, 1346  
 Blaud's pill, 701  
 Bлеpharospasm, 1115  
 Blood, 694  
   and blood-making organs, diseases of the, 694  
   minute structure of, 694  
     blood plaques, 694  
     cell forms not found in normal, 697  
     large lymphocyte or large mononuclear cell, 695  
     nucleated red corpuscles, 697  
     megablasts, 697  
     microblasts, 697  
     normoblasts, 697  
   polymorphonuclear or polynuclear cells, 695  
     basophilic or mast cells, 696  
     eosinophiles, 696  
     neutrophiles, 695  
   red blood disks, 694  
   small lymphocyte, 695  
   transitional leukocytes, 695  
 Blood-striking, 198  
 Blood-vessel, diseases of, 675  
 Bloody flux, 98  
   murrain, 198

- Bodo urinarius, 1313  
 Body louse, 1391  
 Bone tumor, 203  
 Bothriocephalus latus, 1337  
 Bothriocephalus mansonii, 1340  
 Bowel, carcinoma of, 458  
   diagnosis of, 459  
   from chronic inflammatory thickening, 460  
   from circumscribed peritoneal exudate, 460  
   from floating kidney, 459  
   of part of bowel involved, 459  
   prognosis of, 461  
   symptoms of, 458  
   treatment of, 461  
   embolic ulcer of, 422  
   hemorrhagic infarct of, 420  
   intussusception of, 440  
   invagination of, 440  
   nervous affections of, 454  
     derangement of motion, 454  
     nervous cramp, 455  
     of sensibility, 455  
   enteralgia, 455  
   diagnosis of, 455  
   seretion neurosis, 457  
   treatment of, 457  
   obstruction of, 438  
   by fecal matter, 442  
   by foreign bodies, 441  
   by morbid growths, 442  
   by stricture, 442  
   strangulation of, 439  
   syphilitic ulcer, 421  
   twists and knots in, 441  
   ulceration of, 420  
 Brachial plexus, 1136  
   lesions of, 1136  
 Bradycardia, 663  
   explanation of, 664  
   treatment of, 669  
 Brain, abscess of, 1106  
   affections of the blood-vessels of, 1151  
   anemia of, 1152  
   diseases of, 1061  
     general and functional, 1203  
     the membranes of, 1144  
   hyperemia of, 1151  
   inflammation of, 1196  
   edema of, 1154  
   sclerosis of, 1179  
   syphilis of, 1260  
   tumors of the, 1188  
     diagnosis of, 1195  
     etiology of, 1189  
     prognosis of, 1195  
     symptoms of, 1189  
       of basal ganglia or internal capsule, 1194
- Brain:  
   of base of the, 1194  
   of central or motor region, 1192  
   of cerebellum, 1193  
   of corpora quadrigemina, 1194  
   of corpus callosum, 1194  
   of crus, 1194  
   of occipital lobe, 1193  
   of parietal area, 1192  
   of pons and medulla oblongata, 1193  
   of prefrontal area, 1191  
   of temporosphenoidal area on right side, 1193  
   treatment, 1195  
 Breakbone fever, 84  
 Breathing, alterations, in, in nervous disease, 955  
 Bright's disease, acute, 765  
   chronic, 776  
 Broadbent's sign, 606  
 Broca's convolution, 1071  
 Bromin poisoning, 1399  
 Bronchial asthma, 563  
   diagnosis of, 566  
     from cardiac asthma, 566  
     from hysterical dyspnea, 566  
     from spasm of the glottis, 566  
   etiology of, 563  
   morbid anatomy of, 564  
   physical signs in, 566  
   prognosis of, 567  
   symptoms of, 564  
   treatment of, 567  
   gland, tuberculosis of, 304  
   tubes, diseases of, 553  
 Bronchiectasis, 561  
   diagnosis of, 562  
   from abscess of the lung, 562  
   from circumscribed empyema, 562  
   from phthisical cavity, 562  
   etiology of, 561  
   morbid anatomy of, 561  
   physical signs of, 562  
   symptoms of, 562  
   treatment of, 563  
 Bronchitis, 553  
   acute, 553  
     diagnosis of, 554  
     etiology of, 553  
     morbid anatomy of, 554  
     physical signs of, 554  
     prognosis of, 555  
     symptoms of, 554  
     treatment of, 555  
   capillary, 245  
   chronic, 556
- Bronchitis:  
   diagnosis of, 558  
   etiology of, 556  
   morbid anatomy of, 556  
   physical signs of, 558  
   prognosis of, 559  
   symptoms and course of, 556  
   treatment of, 559  
   foreign resorts in the, 560  
   plastic or fibrinous, 568  
     diagnosis of, 569  
     etiology of, 568  
     morbid anatomy of, 568  
     physical signs of, 569  
     symptoms of, 568  
     treatment of, 569  
 Bronchocele, 729  
 Bronchopneumonia, 245  
   tubercular, 246  
 Bronchopneumonic phthisis, 264  
 Bronchorrhea, 557  
 Brown atrophy of the heart, 655  
 Bruit de diable, 705  
 Bubo, parotid, 333  
 Bubonic plague, 109  
   bacillus of, 110  
   diagnosis of, 112  
   etiology of, 110  
   morbid anatomy of, 110  
   prognosis of, 112  
   symptoms of, 111  
   treatment of, 112  
   serum therapy, 112  
   varieties of, 110  
     bubonic form, 111  
     malignant adenitis, 111  
     pestis minor, 111  
     pneumonic form, 111  
     siderans or fulminant, 111  
     septicemic form, 111  
 Buccal psoriasis, 332  
 Buhl's disease, 924  
 Bulbar palsy, acute, 1051  
   asthenic, 1051  
   progressive, 1047  
 Busk's fluke, 1326
- C
- Cachexia, malarial, 54  
   thyroidea vel strumipriva vel thyreopriva, 738  
 Cachexie pachydermique, 738  
 Caisson disease, 1003  
 Calmette's reaction, 285  
 Camp fever, 42  
 Cammidge's test for glycerose in the urine, 518  
 Cancer in hepatic fissure, 517

- Cancer:**  
 of the gall-bladder, 482  
 of the esophagus, 347  
 of the pancreas, 516  
 of the pericardium, 610  
 of the peritoneum, 531  
 of the transverse colon, 517  
**Cancrum oris**, 330  
**Canker**, 326  
**Capillary bronchitis**, 245  
**Capillary pulse**, 629  
**Capillary pulse in aneurysm of the aorta**, 684  
**Carbolic acid poisoning**, 1407  
**Carbonic acid gas poisoning**, 1399  
 oxid poisoning, 1400  
**Carbuncle fever**, 198  
**Carcinoma of the bowel**, 458  
 of the liver, 504  
 massive form, 505  
 nodular form, 504  
 radiating form, 505  
 with cirrhosis, 505  
 ventriculi, 398  
**Cardarelli's sign**, 683  
**Cardiac asthma**, 599  
 disease, 599  
 general symptomatology of, 599  
 muscle, degeneration of, 656  
 albuminoid, 656  
 amyloid, 658  
 calcareous, 658  
**Cardiothyroid exophthalmos**, 731  
**Catarrh, acute bronchial**, 553  
 chronic bronchial, 556  
 nasal, 533  
 of the bladder, 835  
**Catarrhal fever**, 162  
 pneumonia, 245  
**Catarrhus æstivus**, 536  
**Cauda equina, lesions of**, 1046  
**Caudate nucleus**, 1084  
**Caustic potash or soda**, 1400  
**Cavities in lung**, 275  
**Cellulitis of the neck**, 334  
**Celiac affection in children**, 419  
**Central ganglia**, 1084  
**Centrum ovale**, 1082  
**Cephalodynia**, 849  
**Cercomonas intestinalis**, 1311  
**Cerebellar hereditary ataxia**, 1034  
**Cerebellum, disease of**, 1085  
 changes of, due to thrombosis and embolism, 1163  
 form of lesion of, 1086  
**Cerebral disease**, 1061  
 localizations of, 1061  
 summary of facts bearing on, 1086  
**Cerebral:**  
 hemorrhage, 1155  
 hyperemia, 1151  
 palsies of children, 1170  
 softening, 1163  
 vessels, a summary of the effects of plugging of, 1166  
**Cerebritis**, 1196  
**Cerebrospinal fever**, 168  
 brain in, 170  
 complications and sequelæ, 174  
 cranial nerves in, 170  
 diagnosis of, 174  
 from muscular rheumatism, 174  
 from tubercular meningitis, 175  
 from typhus fever, 175  
 etiology of, 168  
 forms of, 169  
 abortive, 173  
 chronic, 173  
 intermittent, 173  
 malignant, 173  
 mild, 173  
 ordinary, 171  
 sporadic, 176  
 incubation period, 171  
 Kernig's sign of, 172  
 morbid anatomy of, 170  
 predisposing causes of, 169  
 prognosis of, 176  
 Quincke's lumbar puncture in, 175  
 sequelæ of, 174  
 spinal cord in, 170  
 treatment of, 177  
**Cervical plexus**, 1135  
**Cestodes**, 1334  
**Charbon**, 198  
**Charcot's disease**, 1053  
**Cheese poisoning**, 1400  
**Cheirospasmus**, 1230  
**Cheyne-Stokes breathing**, 956  
**Chiasm and tract, lesion of**, 1093  
**Chicken-pox**, 156  
 complications in, 157  
 infantile paralysis, 157  
 varicella gangrenosa, 157  
 eruption in, 156  
 incubation in, 156  
**Children, reflex convulsions of**, 1226  
**Chill, the congestive**, 67  
**Chills and fever**, 53  
**Chloremia**, 702  
**Chloral poisoning**, 1400  
**Chloranemia**, 702  
**Chlorin treatment of typhoid fever**, 37  
**Chlorism**, 1283  
**Chloroform poisoning**, 1401  
**Chloromas**, 718  
**Chlorosis:**  
 diagnosis of, 705  
 from pernicious anemia, 705  
 from secondary anemia, 705  
 etiology of, 702  
 morbid anatomy of, 702  
 prognosis of, 705  
 symptoms of, 703  
 murmur, 705  
 treatment of, 706  
**Choked disk**, 1090  
**Choking quinsy**, 198  
**Cholangitis, chronic catarrhal**, 475  
 suppurative, 476  
**Cholecystitis, acute infectious**, 479  
 diagnosis of, 481  
 etiology of, 479  
 morbid anatomy of, 480  
 symptoms of, 480  
 treatment of, 481  
**Cholelithiasis**, 471  
 etiology of, 471  
 morbid anatomy of, 472  
**Cholera**, 86  
 bacillus of, 86  
 examination for, 97  
 postmortem test in, 98  
 Schottelius' culture method in, 98  
 of Koch, 91  
 of Prior and Finkler, 91  
 collapse in, 89  
 diagnosis of, 90  
 diarrhea, 89  
 differentiation from cholera morbus, 90  
 epidemics of, 86  
 etiology of, 86  
 examination of the dejecta of, 98  
 Koch's views of, 86  
 medium of infection, 86  
 morbid anatomy of, 87  
 prognosis of, 91  
 symptoms of, 88  
 incubation, 88  
 stage of collapse, 89  
 of preliminary diarrhea, 89  
 of reaction, 90  
 treatment of, 91  
 directions to nurses, 94  
 enteroclysis, 97  
 Haffkine's method, 92  
 of attack, 94  
 protective inoculation, 93  
 algida, 86  
 Asiatica, 86  
 infantum, 417  
 diagnosis of, 418  
 etiology of, 417  
 prognosis of, 418  
 symptoms of, 418  
 treatment, 418

- Cholera:**  
   infectiosa, 86  
   maligna, 86  
   morbus, 412  
     diagnosis of, 413  
     etiology of, 412  
     prognosis of, 413  
     symptoms of, 413  
     treatment of, 413  
   nostras, 412  
**Chorea, acute,** 1204  
   diagnosis of, 1209  
   etiology of, 1204  
   morbid anatomy of, 1206  
   nature of, 1206  
   prognosis of, 1209  
   symptoms of, 1207  
   treatment of, 1209  
**Chronic hereditary,** 1213  
   progressive, 1213  
     diagnosis of, 1214  
     morbid anatomy of, 1214  
     symptoms, 1214  
   electric, 1211  
   hysterical, 1215  
   major, 1215  
   mild, 1204  
   minor, 1204  
   postchoreal paralysis and  
     postparalytic, 1215  
   procurvsa, 1185  
   spastica, 1175  
**Choreic movements,** 935  
**Choreiform affections,** 1210  
**Chronic angina,** 342  
   anterior poliomyelitis, 1055  
   bronchial catarrh, 556  
   catarrhal dyspepsia, 366  
     gastritis, 366  
     nephritis, 776  
   degeneration of the motor nerve nuclei, 1055  
   diarrhea, 409  
   diffuse meningo-encephalitis, 1181  
     nephritis, 776  
   endocarditis, 618  
   enlargement of the tonsils, 337  
   enterocolitis, 409  
   follicular pharyngitis, 342  
   gastric catarrh, 366  
   hereditary chorea, 1213  
   interstitial hepatitis, 490  
   malaria, 70  
   nasal catarrh, 533  
   nasopharyngeal obstruction, 337  
   parenchymatous nephritis, 776  
   rheumatic arthritis, 852  
   rhinitis, 533  
   tubal nephritis, 776  
   ulcerative phthisis, 273  
   valvular disease, 618  
**Chronically contracted kidney,** 786  
**Chvostek's sign,** 744  
**Chyluria, nonparasitic,** 827  
**Cimex lectularius,** 1393  
**Circumflex nerve, lesions of,** 1137  
**Circumscribed serous spinal meningitis,** 1045  
**Cirrhosis of the liver,** 490  
   atrophic, 491  
   biliary, 492  
     diagnosis of, 495  
     from amyloid liver, 496  
     multilocular hydatid disease, 496  
     tubercular peritonitis, 495  
   etiology, 490  
   Glissonian, 501  
   hypertrophic, 492  
   morbid anatomy of, 491  
     of atrophic, 491  
     of biliary, 492  
     of hypertrophic, 492  
   prognosis of, 496  
   symptoms of, 493  
     of atrophic, 493  
     of biliary, 493  
     of hypertrophic, 494  
   treatment of, 496  
**Cirrhosis of the lung,** 250  
**Cirrhotic kidney,** 786  
**Clergyman's sore throat,** 342  
**Coagulation necrosis,** 132  
**Coated tongue,** 323  
   black, 323  
   bright red, 323  
   dry brown, 323  
   strawberry, 323  
**Cocain poisoning,** 1401  
**Cocainism,** 1284  
**Coccidium cuniculi,** 1314  
   hominis, 1316  
   bigeminum, 1317  
**Coccygodynia,** 975  
**Coli,** 1318  
**Colica pictorum,** 1285  
**Colitis, mucous,** 409  
**Colles' law in syphilis,** 208  
**Colon, dilatation of,** 453  
**Color of tongue, natural,** 323  
**Combined lateral and posterior sclerosis,** 1034  
   sclerosis, 1034  
**Compression myelitis,** 1039  
**Congenital absence of kidney,** 821  
**Congenital hypotonia,** 1179  
**Congestion of the brain,** 1151  
   of the kidney, 762  
   Congestive chill, 67  
   Conium poisoning, 1401  
   Constipation, 450  
     treatment of, 451  
     in infants, 452  
   Constitutional diseases, 848  
   Constriction of the bowel, 439  
   Consumption of the lungs, 271  
   Contagious carbuncle, 198  
**Contracted kidney,** 786  
**Contracture des nourrices,** 742  
**Conus medullaris, lesions of,** 1046  
**Convulsions, epileptiform,** 934  
   reflex in children, 1226  
   Convulsive tic, 1114  
**Copodyscinesia,** 1230  
**Copper poisoning,** 1402  
**Coprolalia,** 1212  
**Cord, spinal, diseases of membranes of,** 992  
**Coronary arteries, sclerosis of,** 658  
**Corpora quadrigemina,** 1084  
**Corpuence,** 905  
**Corrigan pulse,** 628  
**Cortex, functional assignments of,** 1062  
   lesion of the sensory tract of, 1070  
   irritative, 1071  
   motor areas of, 1062  
   sensory areas of, 1067  
**Cortical areas covering speech,** 1071  
   whose function is unknown or uncertain, 1082  
   epilepsy, 1220  
**Coryza,** 532  
**Costiveness,** 450  
**Cotylagonimus heterophyes,** 1330  
**Coup de soleil,** 1299  
**Cow-pox,** 151  
**Crab louse,** 1392  
**Cranial nerves, diseases of,** 1087  
**Cretinism,** 740  
   congenital, 740  
   endemic, 740  
   sporadic, 740  
   treatment of, 741  
**Cretinoid idiocy,** 740  
   state supervening in adult life in women, 739  
**Crises, tabetic,** 1026  
**Croup, catarrhal,** 544  
   false, 544  
   spasmodic, 544  
     treatment of, 545  
**Croupous enteritis,** 419  
   nephritis, 765  
   pneumonia, 227  
**Crura cerebri,** 1084  
**Cruveilhier's atrophy,** 1055  
**Cryptogenetic septicemia,** 319  
**Cucumber worm,** 1336  
**Curschmann's spirals,** 565  
**Cutis tensa chronica,** 1257  
**Cyanotic induration of kidney,** 762  
**Cycloplegia,** 1100  
**Cynanche contagiosa,** 130  
   gangrenosa, 334  
   tonsillaris, 335

- Cystitis, 835  
   bacteria in, 835  
   calculous, 837  
   diagnosis of, 836  
   morbid anatomy of, 835  
   symptoms of, 835  
   treatment of, 837  
     of acute, 837  
     of chronic, 838  
 Cysts, echinococcus, en-  
   dogenous, 512  
   hydatidosus, 512  
   veterinorum, 511  
   of the pancreas, 517  
   D  
 Dandy fever, 84  
 Davainea madagascariensis, 1344  
 Deafness, nervous, 1116  
 Degeneration of the heart,  
   amyloid, 658  
   calcareous, 658  
   fatty, or metamorphosis, 650-656  
   circumscribed, 657  
   parenchymatous or albuminoid (cloudy swelling), 656  
   diagnosis of, 657  
   prognosis of, 657  
   treatment of, 657  
 Deglutition pneumonia, 245  
 Delayed conduction of sensation, 951  
 Delirium, acute, 1203  
   cordis, 666  
   tremens, 1278  
 Delusions, 954  
 Dementia paralytica, 1181  
   diagnosis of, 1184  
   etiology of, 1181  
   morbid anatomy of, 1182  
   prognosis of, 1184  
   symptoms of, 1182  
   treatment of, 1184  
 Demodex folliculorum, 1390  
 Dengue, 84  
   diagnosis of, 85  
   from acute rheumatism, 85  
   etiology of, 84  
   prognosis of, 85  
   symptoms of, 84  
   treatment of, 85  
 Dentition, derangements due to, 323  
 Depurative disease, 799  
 Derangement of speech of irritative origin, 1079  
   prognosis of, 1081  
   treatment of, 1081  
 Derbyshire neck, 729  
 Dermatosclerosis, 1257  
 Dettweiler's pocket spitcup, 301  
 Devonshire colic, 1285  
 Diabetes insipidus, 900  
   diagnosis of, 903  
   etiology of, 900  
   morbid anatomy of, 901  
   physical and chemical character of the urine, 902  
   prognosis of, 903  
   symptoms of, 901  
   duration of, 903  
   treatment of, 904  
   hygienic, 905  
   medicinal, 905  
   mellitus, 876  
   acetone in, 887  
   beta oxybutyric acid in, 887  
   coma in, 883  
   geographical and racial distribution, 876  
   diacetic acid in, 887  
   test for, 890  
   glucose in, 885  
   test for, 880  
   glycosuria, 879  
   morbid anatomy of, 880  
   pathogenesis of, 877  
   prognosis of, 891  
   symptoms of, 882  
   eczema, 882  
   gangrene, 882  
   inosite, 887  
   polyuria, 882  
   thirst, 882  
   uric acid, 887  
   treatment of, 891  
   diabetic coma, 900  
   dietetic, 891  
   diet table, 894  
   hygienic, 896  
   medicinal, 898  
   of complications, 899  
   pruritus, 899  
 Diagram showing order of teeth eruption, 324  
 Diarrhea, alba, 419  
   chylosa, 419  
   nervous, 454  
 Diazo reaction, 14  
 Dicrothricephalus latus, 1337  
   cordatus, 1340  
 Dicrotism of pulse in typhoid fever, 11  
 Microcœlium lanceatum, 1331  
 Digestive system, diseases of, 323  
 Digitalis poisoning, 1402  
   relative value of different preparations of, 642  
 Digitalon, 642  
 Dilatation, bronchial, 561  
   of the colon, 453  
   symptoms of, 454  
   treatment of, 454  
   of the heart, 647-650  
 Diphtheria, 130  
 Diphtheria:  
   complications and sequelæ, 134  
   ataxic symptoms, 135  
   bronchopneumonia, 135  
   capillary bronchitis, 135  
   heart, 135  
   nephritis, 134  
   paralysis, 135  
   tendon reflexes, 135  
   toxic neuritis, 135  
   contagiousness of, 130  
   diagnosis of, 135  
   from diphtheroid faucitis, 135  
   from scarlet fever, 136  
   epidemic, 130  
   etiology of, 130  
   forms of, 133  
   laryngeal, 133  
   nasal, 133  
   constitutional infection in, 134  
   pharyngeal, 133  
   in animals, 132  
   Klebs-Loeffler bacillus, 133  
   morbid anatomy of, 132  
   prognosis of, 136  
   symptoms of, 133  
   laryngeal cough, 134  
   of nasal, 134  
   period of incubation, 133  
   seats of invasion, 133  
   treatment of, 137  
   antitoxin, 138  
   administration of antitoxin for immunization, 138  
   complications and sequelæ, 142  
   constitutional, 140  
   prophylactic, 142  
   serum therapy, 138  
 Diphtheritic endocarditis, 614  
   enteritis, 419  
 Diphtheroid sore throat, 130-135  
 Diplegia, 932  
   facialis, 1050  
 Diplogonoporus grandis, 1340  
 Diptera, 1394  
 Dipylidium caninum, 1341  
 Disseminated nodular sclerosis, 1179  
 Distomum Buskii, 1325  
   heptaticum, 1323  
   oculi humani, 1325  
   ophthalmobium, 1325  
   rathousi, 1326  
   westermanni, 1326  
 Diver's paralysis, 1003  
 Double vision in disease of motor nerves of the eye, 1103  
 Drummond's sign, 686  
 Dubini's disease, 1212

- Duchenne's-Aran's disease, 1055  
 Duchenne's disease, 1020-1047  
 Duodenal ulcer, 383  
 Duodeno-cholangitis, 469  
 Duroziez's murmur, 631  
 Dysentery, 98  
   amebic, 104  
     complications, 105  
     diagnosis of, 105  
     etiology of, 104  
     prognosis of, 106  
     symptoms of, 105  
     treatment of, 107  
   bacillary, 101  
     complications and sequelæ, 103  
     diagnosis of, 103  
     etiology of, 101  
     morbid anatomy of, 101  
     prognosis of, 104  
     symptoms of, 103  
     treatment of, 107  
       serum, 108  
   bilious, 100  
   catarrhal, 99  
     diagnosis of, 100  
     etiology of, 99  
     morbid anatomy of, 99  
     symptoms of, 100  
     treatment of, 106  
   chronic, 108  
     morbid anatomy of, 108  
     treatment of, 108  
   croupous, 101  
   diphtheritic, 101  
   pseudomembranous, 101  
     tropical, 104  
     ulcerative, 101  
     vaccines, 108  
 Dyspepsia, 374  
   atonic, 376  
   flatulent, 376  
   intestinal, 376  
   nervous, 374  
     diagnosis of, 375  
     etiology, 374  
     symptoms of, 374  
     treatment of, 375  
 Dystrophy, progressive muscular, 1269
- E
- Echolalia, 1212  
 Echokinesis, 1212  
 Eclampsia, infantile, 1226  
   uremic, 788-1226  
 Edema, angioneurotic, 1251  
   of the brain, 1154  
 Ehrlich's Biondi stain, 604  
 Ehrlich's triple stain, 604  
 Eighth nerve, lesions of, 1116  
 Electrical excitation of motion, 942  
 Elephantiasis græcorum, 312
- Eleventh nerve, lesions of, 1129  
 Elodes icterodes, 76  
 Embolic pneumonia, 253  
   non-septic, 253  
   septic, 254  
 Embolism of cerebral vessels, 1163  
 Embryocardia, 668  
 Emphysema of the lung, 569  
   alveolar, 569  
   atrophic, 570  
   compensatory, 570  
   interlobular or interstitial, 569  
   pseudohypertrophic, 570  
   senile, 570  
   vesicular, 570  
     diagnosis of, 573  
     etiology of, 570  
     morbid anatomy of, 571  
     physical signs of, 572  
     prognosis of, 574  
     symptoms of, 572  
     treatment of, 574  
 Empyema, 580  
   pulsating, 585  
 Encephalasthenia, 1244  
 Encephalitis, suppurative, 1196  
   diagnosis of, 1198  
   etiology of, 1196  
   morbid anatomy of, 1197  
   prognosis of, 1199  
   symptoms of, 1197  
   treatment of, 1199  
 Endarteritis chronica deformans, 675  
 Endarteritis obliterans, 675  
 Endocarditis, acute, mild or simple form, 611  
   diagnosis of, 613  
   etiology of, 611  
   morbid anatomy of, 612  
   prognosis of, 613  
   symptoms of, 612  
   treatment of, 613  
   chronic, 618  
   severe or malignant form, 614  
   diagnosis of, 617  
   etiology of, 614  
   morbid anatomy of, 614  
   prognosis of, 618  
   symptoms of, 615  
   treatment of, 618  
   ulcerative, 614  
 Endocardium, diseases of, 610  
 English sweat, 316  
 Enteralgia, 455  
 Enteric fever. See Typhoid  
 Enteritis, amebic, 104  
   acute dyspeptic, of children, 414  
   diagnosis of, 415  
   etiology of, 414  
   prognosis of, 415
- Enteritis:  
   symptoms of, 415  
   treatment of, 415  
 chronic catarrhal, 409  
   diagnosis of, 410  
   etiology, 409  
   morbid anatomy of, 409  
   prognosis of, 411  
   symptoms of, 410  
   treatment of, 411  
 croupous, 419  
 diphtheritic, 419  
 follicular, 416  
 phlegmonous, 420  
 pseudomembranous, 419  
 simple acute catarrhal, 405  
   diagnosis of, 408  
   etiology of, 406  
   morbid anatomy of, 406  
   symptoms of, 407  
   treatment of, 408  
 Enterocolitis, acute, 416  
   diagnosis of, 417  
   etiology of, 416  
   morbid anatomy of, 416  
   prognosis of, 417  
   symptoms of, 416  
   treatment of, 417  
 Enteroptosis, 403  
 Eosinophiles, 696  
 Ephemer fever, 318  
 Epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis, 168  
 cholera, 86  
 erysipelas, 179  
 hemoglobinuria of infants, 924  
 parotitis, 161  
 pneumonia, 227  
 roseola, 118  
 Epilepsia acuta, 1226  
   nutans, 1212  
 Epilepsy, 1216  
   diagnosis of, 1221  
   etiology, 1216  
   morbid anatomy of, 1217  
   prognosis of, 1222  
   symptoms of, 1218  
     of clonic spasm, 1219  
     of coma, 1219  
     of grand mal, 1218  
     of hysterical, 1220  
     of Jacksonian, 1220  
     of petit mal, 1220  
     of psychical, 1220  
     of toxic spasm, 1219  
   treatment of, 1223  
   asylum, 1225  
   of convulsion, 1225  
 Equilibrium, disturbance of, associated with defect of hearing, 1116, 1119  
   diagnosis of, 1120  
   etiology of, 1119  
   pathology of, 1119  
   prognosis of, 1121



- Equilibrium:  
 symptoms of, 1120  
 treatment of, 1121
- Erb's form of juvenile hereditary dystrophy, 1270
- Ergot poisoning, 1402
- Ergotism, 1206
- Erichsen's disease, 1247
- Erroneous projection, 1103
- Eruptive-disease table, 157
- Erysipelas, 179  
 bacillus of, 179  
 complications of, 181  
 diagnosis of, 182  
 epidemic of, 180  
 etiology of, 179  
 facial, 180  
 prognosis of, 182  
 relapses and recurrences of, 180  
 sequelæ of, 181  
 symptoms of, 180  
 incubation, 180  
 treatment of, 182
- Erythromelalgia, 958
- Esophagismus, 348
- Esophagitis, 344  
 acute, 344  
 chronic, 345
- Esophagus, 344  
 cancer of, 347  
 dilatation of, 349  
   diffuse or total, 349  
 disease of, 344  
 diverticula, 349  
 pressure, 349  
 traction, 349  
 exploration of, 344  
 peptic ulcer of, 345
- Estivo-autumnal fever, 53, 66
- Essential contractions, 1174  
 paralysis of children, 1012
- Eustes Smith's sign, 596
- Eustrongylus gigas, 1374
- Exophthalmic goitre, 731
- External popliteal nerve, lesions of, 1141
- Eye-ball, lesions of the motor nerves of, 1099
- Eyes, phenomena of paralysis of motor nerves of, 1102
- F
- Facial hemiatrophy, 1254  
 nerve, lesions of, 1107  
 paralysis of, 1107  
   diagnosis of, 1111  
   etiology of, 1108  
   infranuclear of peripheral facial, 1108  
   monoplegia, 1107  
   nuclear, 1108  
   prognosis, 1112  
   supranuclear, 1107  
 symptoms of, 1109  
 treatment, 1113
- Facial:  
 spasm, 1113  
   etiology of, 1114  
   prognosis of, 1115  
   symptoms of, 1114  
     blepharospasm, 1115  
   treatment of, 1115
- Falling fits, 1216
- False croup, 544  
 measles, 114
- Familial periodical paralysis, 1250
- Famine fever, 47
- Farcy, 201  
 acute, 202  
 chronic, 202
- Fasciola hepatica, 1323
- Fasciolopsis buski, 1325
- Fatty degeneration of the heart, 650  
 infiltration of the heart, 657  
   of the liver, 487  
   diagnosis of, 488  
   etiology of, 487  
   morbid anatomy of, 487  
   prognosis of, 488  
   symptoms, 488  
   treatment of, 488  
 metamorphosis of heart, 656
- Febricula, 318
- Fehling's test solution for sugar, 889
- Fetid stomatitis, 327
- Fever, estivo-autumnal, 66  
 and ague, 53  
 backbone, 84  
 cerebrospinal, 168  
 ephemeral, 318  
 glandular, 317  
 famine, 47  
 intermittent, 63  
 malarial, 53  
 Malta, 51  
 miliary, 316  
 mountain, 41  
 paratyphoid, 41  
 pernicious malarial, 67  
 relapsing, 47  
 remittent, 66  
 scarlet, 120  
 ship, 42  
 simple continued, 319  
 typhoid, 1  
 typhus, 42  
 yellow, 76
- Fibrillary contractions, 935
- Fibrinous pneumonia, 227
- Fibroid heart, 658  
 phthisis, 286
- Fibrous myocarditis, 658
- Fiery-serpent worm, 1366
- Fifth nerve, lesions of, 1106  
 paralysis of motor portion, 1106  
   of sensory portion, 1106
- Filaria bancrofti, 827, 1360
- demarquay, 1364
- diurna, 1364
- Filaria:  
 hominis oris, 1368  
 immitis, 1368  
 kilimare, 1369  
 labialis, 1369  
 loa, 1368  
 lymphatica, 1369  
 magalhães, 1365  
 medinensis, 1365  
 oculi humani vel lentis, 1368  
 of the dog, 1362  
 ozzardi, 1364  
 peritonei hominis, 1369  
 perstans, 1364  
 restiformis, 1369  
 romanorum orientalis, 1369  
 sanguinis, 1360  
 volvulus, 1369
- Filariasis, 1360  
 treatment of, 1365
- Flagellata, 1309
- Flat worm, 1319
- Flea, 1394
- Flies, 1395
- Flint murmur, 625
- Floating kidney, 822  
 diagnosis of, 823  
 etiology of, 822  
 symptoms of, 822  
 treatment of, 824
- Flukes, 1319  
 blood, 1332  
 Busk's, 1326  
 European cat, 1328  
 intestinal, 1326-1330  
 lance-shaped, 1331  
 liver, 1323, 1329  
 lungs, 1326
- Focal symptoms, 956, 1191
- Folie pourquoi, 1212
- Follicular dysentery, 416  
 enteritis, 416  
 stomatitis, 326  
 tonsillitis, 337
- Foot and mouth disease, 204  
 etiology, 205  
 incubation, 205  
 symptoms of, 205  
 treatment of, 205
- Foraminifera, 1305
- Fourth disease, 129
- Fourth nerve, lesions of the, 1102
- Friedreich's disease, 1032
- Friedreich's sign, 606
- Functional diseases of nervous system, 1203
- Functional paralysis, other forms of, 1248
- G
- Gall-bladder, cancer of, 482  
 atrophy of, 477  
 dilatation of, 473  
 inflammation of, 479
- Gallop rhythm, 668
- Gall-stone, 471  
 acute impacted, 473

- Gall-stone:  
 diagnosis of, 474  
 etiology of, 471  
 inflammation of, 479  
 prognosis of, 474  
 symptoms of, 473  
 chronic impacted, 475  
 symptoms of, 475  
 due to obstruction of the common duct, 475  
 due to chronic obstruction of the cystic duct, 475  
 diagnosis of, 477  
 treatment of, 478  
 preventive, 479
- Gangrene of the lung, 337  
 of the spleen, 198
- Gangrenous stomatitis, 330
- Gastralgia, 380
- Gastrextasia, 400  
 acute, 400
- Gastric cancer, 393
- Gastric contents, chemical examination of, 355  
 fever, 318-365  
 neurasthenia, 374
- Gastritis, acute catarrhal, 365  
 diagnosis of, 366  
 etiology of, 365  
 morbid anatomy of, 365  
 symptoms of, 365  
 treatment of, 366  
 chronic catarrhal, 366  
 diagnosis of, 368  
 etiology of, 367  
 morbid anatomy of, 367  
 prognosis of, 368  
 symptoms of, 367  
 treatment of, 368  
 dietetic of, 369  
 diphtheritic, 374  
 mycotic, 374  
 phlegmonous or suppurative, 372  
 traumatic and toxic, 373
- Gastrodiaaphany, 355
- Gastrodiscus hominis, 1322
- Gastro-enteric fever, 1
- Gastroptosis, 403
- Gastrosocopy, 355
- General paresis, 1181
- Geographical tongue, 331
- German measles, 118
- Giant urticaria, 1251
- Gilles de la Tourette's disease, 1212
- Gin liver, 490
- Girdle pains, 1026
- Glanders and farcy, 201  
 diagnosis of, 202  
 etiology of, 201  
 incubation, 201  
 morbid anatomy of, 201  
 prognosis of, 202
- Glanders:  
 symptoms of, 201  
 treatment of, 202
- Glands, bronchial, tuberculous of, 274
- Glandular fever, 317
- Glasgow's sign, 686
- Glénard's disease, 403
- Glissonian cirrhosis, 501
- Globulin, test for, 755
- Glossitis, 331  
 desiccans, 331  
 parenchymatous, 331
- Glossolabiopharyngeal paralysis, 1047
- Glossopharyngeal nerve, lesions of, 1121
- Glossy skin, 1257
- Glottis, edema of, 550
- Gnathosoma siamense, 1360
- Goitre, exophthalmic, 731  
 diagnosis of, 734  
 etiology of, 731  
 prognosis of, 734  
 symptoms of, 732  
 Stellwag's sign, 732  
 Moebius' sign, 732  
 von Graefe's sign, 732  
 treatment of, 735  
 simple, 729  
 etiology of, 729  
 morbid anatomy of, 729  
 symptoms of, 730  
 treatment of, 730
- Gonorrheal arthritis, 216  
 complications of, 218  
 morbid anatomy of, 216  
 symptoms of, 217  
 treatment of, 218  
 varieties of, 217  
 infection, 216
- Gout, 858  
 etiology of, 859  
 morbid anatomy of, 863  
 pathology of, 860  
 retrocedent or metastatic, 865  
 symptoms of, 864  
 of chronic, 866  
 of irregular or atypical, 865  
 of typical acute, 864  
 pharyngitis, 865  
 thread test for uric acid, 860  
 treatment of, 867  
 dietetic, 867  
 hygienic, 871  
 medicinal, of acute, 871  
 of retrocedent, 873
- Gouty kidney, 786
- Grain poisoning, 1295  
 ergotism, 1296  
 gangrenous, 1296  
 spasmodic, 1296
- Grain poisoning:  
 lathyrism or lupinosis, 1297  
 pellagra, 1296  
 treatment of, 1297
- Grand mal, 1218
- Granular kidney, 786  
 liver, 490  
 pharyngitis, 342
- Graphospasmus, 1230
- Graves' disease, 731
- Green sickness, 702
- Gregarines, 1304
- Grip, 162
- Grocco's sign, 583
- Ground-itch, 1379
- Guinea-worm, 1366
- Günzburg's reagent, 356

## H

- Habit chorea, 1211  
 spasm, 1211
- Hallucinations, 954
- Hay asthma, 536
- Hay-fever, 536  
 etiology of, 536  
 symptoms of, 537  
 treatment of, 538
- Headache, bilious, 1227  
 paroxysmal, 1227  
 sick, 1227
- Head-banging, 1212
- Hearing, modifications of, in nervous disease, 955
- Heart, abscess of, 661  
 aneurysm of, 661  
 atrophy of, 655  
 brown, 655  
 chronic valvular defects of, 618  
 congenital defects of, 636  
 dilatation of, 647-650  
 diagnosis of, 652  
 etiology of, 650  
 physical signs of, 651  
 symptoms of, 651  
 treatment of, 653  
 Nauheim baths, 653  
 disease, relation of, to kidney disease, 828  
 diseases of, 599  
 fatty degeneration of, 650  
 fibroid degeneration of, 658  
 irritable, 650  
 nervous palpitation, 662  
 diagnosis of, 663  
 treatment of, 663-669  
 neuroses of, 662  
 rupture of, 661
- Heat exhaustion, 1298  
 fever, 1299
- Heberden's nodosities, 855
- Heller's test for albumin, 754
- Hematorrhachis, 996
- Hemathorax, 588
- Hematuria, idiopathic, 824
- Hemeralopia, 1090
- Hemiachromatopsia, 1095

- Hemianopsia, 1093  
   heteronymous, 1093  
   homonymous, 1093  
   lateral, 1093  
   nasal, 1093  
   temporal, 1093  
 Hemispheric, 1227  
 Hemiplegia spastica cere-  
   bralis, 1171  
   infantile, 1171  
 Hemoglobinuria, 69, 825  
   paroxysmal, 826  
   toxic, 826  
 Hemopericardium, 609  
 Hemophilia, 925  
   etiology of, 925  
   morbid anatomy of, 925  
   prognosis of, 926  
   symptoms of, 926  
   treatment of, 926  
 Hemoptysis, 277, 283  
 Hemorrhagic infarct of the  
   bowel, 420  
   lung, 253  
 Hemorrhagic nephritis, 765  
 Hemorrhoids, 461  
   diagnosis of, 463  
   etiology, 461  
   symptoms of, 462  
   external, 462  
   internal, 463  
   treatment of, 463  
 Hepatic artery and vein,  
   diseases of, 487  
   intermittent fever, 476  
 Hepatitis, suppurative, 497  
   diagnosis of, 499  
   etiology of, 497  
   morbid anatomy, 498  
   prognosis of, 500  
   symptoms of, 499  
   treatment of, 500  
 Hereditary ataxic para-  
   plegia, 1032  
   ataxia, 1032  
   diagnosis of, 1033  
   etiology of, 1032  
   morbid anatomy of,  
     1032  
   prognosis of, 1034  
   symptoms of, 1033  
   treatment of, 1034  
 Herpes zoster, 1177  
 Heterakis perspicillum,  
   1357  
 Hobnail liver, 490  
 Hodgkin's disease, 721  
 Hook-worm, 1377  
 Holys, roller 1215  
 Hooping-cough, 157  
 Huntington's chorea, 1213  
 Hutchinson's teeth, 213  
 Hybrid measles, 118  
   scarlet fever, 118  
 Hydrocephalus, 1199  
   internal, 1200  
   congenital, 1200  
   diagnosis, 1201  
   etiology, 1200  
   morbid anatomy,  
     1200  
   prognosis, 1201  
 Hydrocephalus:  
   symptoms, 1200  
   treatment, 1202  
   acquired, 1201  
     diagnosis, 1201  
     etiology, 1201  
     morbid anatomy,  
       1201  
     prognosis, 1201  
     symptoms, 1201  
     treatment, 1202  
 Hydrochloric acid poison-  
   ing, 1403  
 Hydrochloric acid, test for,  
   356  
 Hydrocyanic acid poison-  
   ing, 1403  
 Hydronephrosis, 819  
 Hydropericardium, 609  
 Hydroperitoneum, 520  
 Hydrophobia, 187  
   diagnosis of, 189  
   etiology of, 187  
   incubation, 187  
   morbid anatomy of, 188  
   Pasteur Institute, 191  
   prognosis of, 190  
   symptoms of, 188  
   treatment of, 190  
 Hydropneumothorax, 589  
 Hydrorachis, 1047  
 Hydrothorax, 588  
 Hymenolepis nana, 1341  
   diminuta, 1343  
 Hyperemia of brain, 1151  
   etiology of, 1151  
   morbid anatomy of,  
     1151  
   symptoms, 1151  
   treatment of, 1152  
   of the liver, 483  
     active, 485  
       treatment, 485  
     passive, 483  
       etiology, 483  
       morbid anatomy  
       of, 484  
       symptoms of, 484  
       treatment of, 485  
 Hyperchlorhydria, 376  
   diagnosis of, 377  
   etiology of, 377  
   prognosis of, 378  
   symptoms of, 377  
   treatment of, 378  
   diet, 379  
 Hyperpepsia, 376  
 Hypertrophic cirrhosis of  
   the liver, 492  
   symptoms of, 494  
 Hypertrophy of heart, 647  
   diagnosis of, 649  
   etiology of, 647  
   prognosis of, 649  
   symptoms of, 648  
   treatment of, 649  
 Hypnosis and suggestion,  
   1239  
 Hypoglossal nerve, lesions  
   of, 1133  
   diagnosis of, 1134  
   etiology of, 1133  
 Hypoglossal nerve:  
   symptoms of, 1134  
   treatment of, 1135  
 Hypoparathyreosis, 742  
   status parathyreoprivus,  
     742  
 Hypotonia muscular in  
   tabes dorsalis, 1025  
   of muscles of childhood,  
     1179  
 Hysteria, 1234  
   diagnosis of, 1241  
   etiology of, 1234  
   prognosis of, 1241  
   symptoms of, 1235  
   treatment of, 1241  
 Hysterical epilepsy, 1239  
   fever, 1237  
 Hysterical, stigmata, 1235  
 Hysterogenous zones, 1240

## I

- Ichthyosis lingualis, 332  
 Icterus, 466  
   gravis, 502  
   neonatorum, 469  
 Idiopathic anemia, 706  
 Idiopathic hematuria, 824  
 Ileus paralyticus vel ner-  
   vosus, 442  
 Illusions, 954  
 Impacted gall-stone, 475  
 Incubation periods, infec-  
   tious diseases, 157-321  
 Infantile convulsions, 1226  
   palsy, 1012  
   scurvy, 921  
 Infectious diseases of  
   doubtful nature, 315  
 Inflammatory rheumatism,  
   218  
 Influenza, 162  
   complications of, 164  
   diagnosis of, 166  
   etiology of, 163  
   incubation of, 163  
   morbid anatomy of,  
     163  
   prognosis of, 166  
   symptoms of, 163  
   treatment of, 166  
   varieties of, 163  
 Infusoria, 1318  
 Inhalation tuberculosis,  
   271  
 Insecta, 1391  
 Insular sclerosis, 1179  
 Interglobular emphysema,  
   569  
 Intermittent fever, 63  
   treatment of, 72  
 Internal capsule, lesions of,  
   1083  
 Interstitial suppurative ne-  
   phritis, 803  
 Interstitial nephritis,  
   chronic, 786  
 Intestinal obstruction, 438  
   acute and chronic, 439  
   diagnosis of, 445

- Intestinal**  
   etiology of, 439, 441, 442  
   prognosis of, 448  
   symptoms of, 443  
   treatment of, 448  
**Intestines, diseases of, 405**  
**Intoxications, the, 1275**  
**Intracranial aneurysm, 1170**  
   tumors, 1188  
**Intrathoracic tumors, 595**  
**Intussusception, 440**  
   treatment of, 448  
**Invagination, intestinal, 440**  
**Iodin poisoning, 1403**  
**Iodoform poisoning, 1403**  
**Iridoplegia, 1100**  
   accommodative, 1100  
   reflex, or Argyll Robertson pupil, 1100  
   skin, 1101  
**Irritation of auditory nerve, 1116**  
**Irritative fever, 318**  
**Itch, 1389**  
   ground, 1379  
   water, 1379
- J**
- Jacksonian epilepsy, 1220**  
**Jail fever, 42**  
**Jaundice, 466**  
   obstructive, 467  
     diagnosis of, 470  
     symptoms, 468  
   of the new-born, 469  
   simple catarrhal, 469  
     diagnosis of, 470  
     etiology of, 469  
     morbid anatomy of, 469  
     prognosis of, 470  
     symptoms of, 470  
     treatment of, 470  
**Jerkers, 1215**  
**Jigger, 1395**  
**Jugular pulse, 621**  
   false, 634  
**Jumpers, 1215**  
**Justus test in syphilis, 214**
- K**
- Keloid of Addison, 1258**  
**Kendall's fever, 76**  
**Keratosis mucosæ oris, 332**  
**Kernig's sign, 172**  
**Kidney, abscess of, 803**  
   amyloid, 799  
   anomalies of form and position, 821  
   congenital absence of, 821  
   floating, 822  
   horseshoe, 821  
   lobulated, 821  
   cirrhotic, 786  
   congestion of, 762  
     active, 762
- Kidney:**  
   passive, or cyanotic induration, 762  
   diagnosis of, 764  
   morbid anatomy of, 763  
   prognosis of, 764  
   symptoms of, 763  
   treatment of, 764  
   contracted, 786  
   cysts of, 819  
   congenital, 819  
   dermoid, 819  
   differential diagnosis of, 820  
   echinococcus or hydatid, 820  
   hydronephrosis, 819  
   retention or obstruction, 819  
   treatment of, 821  
   derangement of circulation, 762  
   diseases of, 762  
   fatty and contracting, 778  
   gouty, 786  
   granular, 786  
   lardaceous, 799  
   large white, 776  
   movable, 822  
   relation of disease of, to heart disease, 828  
   small white, 778  
   stone in, 810  
   tuberculosis of, 309  
   tumors of, 816  
     diagnosis of, 817  
     symptoms of, 817  
     treatment of, 818  
   waxy, 799  
**Kinepox, 151**  
**Knee-jerk, 937**  
**Koplik's sign, 116**  
**Korsakow's psychosis, 963**  
**Krouomania, 1213**
- L**
- Labyrinthine vertigo, 1119**  
**Lacunar tonsillitis, 337**  
**La Grippe, 162**  
**Lagophthalmos, 1110**  
**Lambliæ intestinalis, 1310**  
**Landry's paralysis, 968-1016**  
**Lardaceous disease of the kidney, 779, 799**  
   diagnosis of, 802  
   duration of, 802  
   etiology of, 799  
   morbid anatomy of, 799  
   prognosis of, 802  
   symptoms of, 801  
   treatment of, 803  
   liver, 488  
**Large white kidney, 776**  
**Laryngeal muscles, paralysis of, 550**  
   treatment of, 553
- Laryngitis, acute catarrhal, 543**  
   chronic catarrhal, 546  
   etiology of, 546  
   morbid anatomy of, 546  
   prognosis of, 546  
   symptoms of, 546  
   treatment of, 546  
   syphilitic, 549  
   tubercular, 547  
   diagnosis of, 548  
   etiology of, 547  
   morbid anatomy of, 547  
   prognosis of, 548  
   symptoms of, 547  
   treatment of, 548  
**Laryngoplegia, 551**  
**Larynx, 539**  
   bilateral abductor paralysis of, 1125  
   diseases of, 539  
   examination of, 539  
   spasm of, 1126  
   tensor paralysis of, 1126  
   total paralysis of, 1124  
   unilateral abductor paralysis of, 1125  
**Lata, 1215**  
**Lateral sclerosis. amyotrophic, 1053**  
**Lathyrism, 1297**  
**Lead poisoning, 1285**  
   etiology of, 1285  
   morbid anatomy of, 1286  
   prognosis of, 1289  
   symptoms of, 1287  
     blue line, 1287  
   treatment of, 1290  
**Legal's test for acetone, 890**  
**Lenhartz treatment for gastric ulcer, 391**  
**Leontiasis ossea, 1267**  
**Leprosy, 312**  
   anesthetic form of, 314  
   diagnosis of, 314  
   etiology, 312  
   morbid anatomy of, 313  
   prognosis of, 314  
   symptoms of, 313  
   treatment of, 315  
**Leprous neuritis, 971**  
**Leptus autumnalis, 1390**  
**Leptomeningitis, acute, 1146**  
   diagnosis of, 1148  
   etiology of, 1146  
   morbid anatomy of, 1147  
   prognosis of, 1149  
   symptoms of, 1147  
   treatment of, 1149  
   cerebral, 1146  
   chronic, 1150  
   spinal, 994  
   acute, 994  
   chronic, 996  
**Leukemia, 713**  
   diagnosis of, 718

- Leukemia:  
   etiology of, 714  
   morbid anatomy of, 714  
   prognosis of, 720  
   symptoms of, 716  
     blood changes, 717  
     treatment of, 720  
 Leukocytosis, 719  
 Leukoplakea buccalis, 332  
 Lice, 1391  
 Leydenia gemmipara, 1309  
 Lithemia, 874  
   diagnosis of, 875  
   etiology of, 874  
   prognosis of, 875  
   symptoms of, 874  
   treatment of, 875  
 Little's disease, 1174  
 Liver, abnormalities of position of, 465  
   abscess of, 497  
   active hyperemia of, 485  
   acute yellow atrophy of, 502  
   altered shape of, 465  
   amyloid, 488  
   atrophic cirrhosis of, 491  
     diagnosis of, 495  
     etiology, 490  
     morbid anatomy of, 491  
       symptoms of, 493  
   biliary cirrhosis of, 492  
   carcinoma of, 504  
   changes in hepatic artery and vein, 487  
   cirrhosis of, 490  
   diseases of, 465  
     blood-vessels of, 483  
   dislocation of, 465  
   echinococcus disease of, 510  
   fatty, 487  
     infiltration of, 487  
     metamorphosis of, 488  
   floating, 465  
   hydatid cyst of, 483  
   hyperemia of, 483  
   hypertrophic cirrhosis of, 492  
     diagnosis of, 495  
     etiology of, 490  
     morbid anatomy of, 492  
       prognosis, 496  
       symptoms of, 494  
       treatment, 496  
   lardaceous, 488  
   morbid growths of, 504  
   parasites of, 510  
   passive hyperemia of, 483  
   red atrophy of, 483  
   sarcoma of, 505  
   syphilis of, 508  
 Lobar pneumonia, 227  
 Lobular pneumonia, 245  
 Local asphyxia, 1252  
 Localization of cerebral disease, 1061  
 Lockjaw, 193  
 Long thoracic nerve, lesions of, 1136  
 Ludwig's angina, 334  
 Lues venerea, 206  
 Lumbago, 849  
 Lumbar plexus, lesions of, 1140  
 Lung, abscess of, 237  
   cavities in, 275  
   cirrhosis of, 237  
   diseases of, 569  
   emphysema of, 569  
   fibroid induration of, 237  
   gangrene of, 237  
   hemorrhagic infarct of, 253  
   metastatic abscess of, 254  
   tuberculosis of, 255  
   tumors of, 575  
     carcinoma, 575  
       diagnosis of, 577  
       peribronchial cancer, 576  
       physical signs, 577  
 Lupinosis, 1297  
 Lymphadenitis, simple, 508  
   tuberculous, 598  
 Lymphadenoma, 721  
 Lymphadenosis, 721  
 Lymphatic glands, tuberculosis of, 304  
 Lymphatism, 725  
 Lyssa, 187
- M
- Maladie de la tic convulsif, 1212  
 Malaria, chronic, 70  
   plasmodium of, 71  
 Malarial cachexia, 70  
   fever, 53  
   algid form, 68  
   blood changes, 62  
     in chronic, 62  
   cachexia, 70  
   chronic form, 70  
   clinical varieties, 63  
   comatose form, 68  
   estivo-autumnal, 53, 66  
   favoring causes, 61  
   geographical distribution, 61  
   hematuria, 69  
   incubation of, 63  
   intermittent form of, 63  
   irregular forms of, 68  
   latent form of, 69  
   morbid anatomy of, 62  
   plasmodium, 55  
   prophylaxis against, 71  
   quartan, 54  
   quotidian, 54  
   remittent form, 66  
   seasons favoring, 61  
   tertian, 54  
 Malignant jaundice, 502  
   lymphoma, 721  
   pustule, 198  
 Malleus humidus, 201  
 Malta fever, 51  
   distribution of, 51  
   etiology of, 51  
   morbid anatomy of, 51  
   symptoms of, 53  
   treatment of, 53  
 Mania-a-potu, 1278  
   treatment of, 1279  
 Marie, views on aphasia, 1080  
 Marsh fever, 53  
 Mast-cell, 696  
 Mastication, spasm of muscles of, 1107  
 Maw worm, 1381  
 Measles, 114  
   complications and sequelæ of, 117  
   contagiousness of, 114  
   diagnosis of, 117  
   morbid anatomy of, 115  
   pneumonia in, 117  
   prognosis of, 118  
   recurrent attacks of, 115  
   symptoms of, 115  
     bronchitis, 116  
     incubation, 115  
     Koplik's sign, 116  
   treatment of, 118  
 Measuring worm, 1346  
 Meat poisoning, 1293  
 Median nerve, lesions of, 1139  
 Mediastinal abscess, 598  
   disease, 592  
   tumors, 594  
   diagnosis of, 597  
   morbid anatomy of, 594  
   pathology of, 594  
   symptoms of, 595  
   treatment of, 598  
 Mediterranean fever, 51  
 Megrin, 1227  
 Membranes of the brain, diseases of, 1144  
 Membranous croup, 130  
 Mènière's disease, 1119  
 Meningeal apoplexy, 996  
 Meningitis, cerebrospinal, 168  
   tuberculous, 175, 268, 283  
 Meningocele, 1047  
 Mercury poisoning, 1404  
 Merycismus, 376  
 Metastatic abscess of lung, 254  
 Miasmatic fever, 53  
 Miescher's tubules, 1317  
 Micromegaly, 1267  
 Migraine, 1227  
   diagnosis of, 1229  
   etiology of, 1227  
   morbid anatomy of, 1228  
   prognosis of, 1229  
   symptoms of, 1228  
   treatment of, 1229  
   preventive, 1230  
 Migné, 1227  
 Miguet, 327  
 Mikulicz's disease, 335

- Mild chorea, 1204  
 Miliary fever, 316  
   diagnosis of, 317  
   duration of, 317  
   etiology of, 316  
   morbid anatomy of, 316  
   prognosis of, 317  
   symptoms of, 316  
   treatment of, 317  
 Milk sickness, 206  
 Miltzbrand, 198  
 Mimetic facial paralysis,  
   1107  
   spasm, 1113  
 Miosis, 1100  
 Miryachit, 1215  
 Mites, 1389  
 Mitral insufficiency, 620  
   etiology of, 621  
   mechanism of, 620  
   murmur, 622  
   physical signs, 621  
   symptoms of, 621  
   treatment of, 640  
   stenosis, 623  
   etiology of, 624  
   mechanism of, 623  
   murmur in, 625  
   physical signs of, 624  
   symptoms of, 624  
   treatment of, 640  
 Moebius disease, 732  
 Mोगigraphy, 1230  
 Monas pyophila, 1311  
 Monoplegia facialis, 1107  
 Monostomum lentis, 1325  
 Morbilli, 114  
 Morbus maculosus, 923  
   neonatorum, 924  
   Werlhofi, 923  
   virginus, 702  
 Morphin habit, 1281  
   poisoning, 1405  
 Morphinism, 1281  
 Morphea, 1258  
 Morvan's disease, 1038  
 Motor aphasia, 1077  
   aphasia, 1077  
   function of the stomach,  
     to test, 363  
 Mountain fever, 41  
   sickness, 42  
 Mouth-breathing, 337  
 Mouth, diseases of, 323  
 Mucous colitis, 409  
 Multiple arthritis deformans,  
   855  
   myeloma, 917  
   neuritis, 963  
   sclerosis of brain and  
     cord, 1179  
 Mumps, 161  
   complications of, 161  
   diagnosis of, 162  
   etiology of, 161  
   morbid anatomy of, 161  
   prognosis of, 162  
   symptoms of, 161  
   treatment of, 162  
 Muscle-jerk, 937-939  
 Muscular system, diseases  
   of, 1268  
 Musculospiral nerve, le-  
   sions of, 1137  
 Mushroom poisoning, 1405  
 Myalgia, 848  
 Myasthenia gravis, 1051  
 Myatonia congenita, 1179  
 Mycotic endocarditis, 614  
 Mydriasis, 1100  
 Myelitis, diffuse, acute and  
   chronic, 1005  
   diagnosis of, 1010  
   etiology of, 1005  
   morbid anatomy of, 1005  
   prognosis of, 1010  
   symptoms of, 1007  
   treatment of, 1011  
   acute anterior poliomye-  
     litis of children,  
       1012  
     diagnosis of, 1014  
     etiology of, 1012  
     morbid anatomy of,  
       1012  
     prognosis of, 1014  
     symptoms of, 1013  
     treatment of, 1014  
 Myelocoele, 1047  
 Myeloma, multiple, 917  
 Myelopathic albumosuria,  
   917  
 Myosis, 1396  
 Myocarditis, 658  
   acute suppurative, 661  
   diagnosis of, 660  
   etiology of, 658  
   physical signs, 659  
   prognosis of, 660  
   symptoms of, 659  
   treatment of, 660  
 Myocardium, disease of, 647  
 Myoclonia, 1211  
 Myodegeneration, 658  
 Myohypotania, 1272  
 Myositis, 1268  
   acute, 1268  
   chronic, 1268  
   infectious, 1268  
   progressive ossifying,  
     1268  
   rheumatic, 1268  
 Myotonia congenita, 1272  
 Myxedema, 738  
   diagnosis of, 741  
   etiology of, 739  
   morbid anatomy of, 739  
   prognosis of, 741  
   symptoms of, 739  
   treatment of, 741
- N
- Neapolitan fever, 51  
 Nemathelminthes, 1355  
 Nematodes or round  
   worms, 1355  
 Neoplasmata cerebri, 1188  
 Nephritis, acute parenchy-  
   matous, 765  
   complications of, 770  
   pneumonia in, 770  
   diagnosis of, 771  
   etiology of, 765  
 Nephritis:  
   morbid anatomy of, 766  
     glomerular  
       changes, 767  
     interstitial  
       changes, 767  
     tubal changes,  
       767  
   prognosis of, 772  
   symptoms of, 768  
     urine, 768  
   treatment of, 772  
 chronic interstitial, 786  
   complications of,  
     794  
   diagnosis of, 794  
   etiology of, 787  
   morbid anatomy of,  
     788  
   prognosis of, 795  
   symptoms of, 790  
     cardiac, 792  
     dimness of vision,  
       793  
     hypertrophy of  
       the left ventri-  
       cle, 791  
     urine, 791  
   treatment of, 796  
 chronic parenchymatous,  
   776  
   complications of,  
     781  
   diagnosis of, 781  
   morbid anatomy of,  
     777  
   prognosis of, 782  
   symptoms of, 779  
     duration of, 781  
     urine, 780  
   treatment of, 782  
     diet, 783  
     hygienic meas-  
       ures, 784  
   septic and pyemic, 803  
   suppurative interstitial,  
     803  
   diagnosis of, 807  
   etiology of, 804  
   morbid anatomy of,  
     804  
   prognosis of, 808  
   symptoms of, 805  
     urine, 806  
   treatment of, 808  
 Nephrolithiasis, 810  
   diagnosis of, 813  
     X-ray in, 813  
   etiology of, 811  
   morbid anatomy of, 810  
   prognosis of, 814  
   symptoms of, 812  
   treatment of, 814  
 Nephroptosis, 822  
 Nerve, phrenic, affections  
   of, 1135  
   circumflex, 1137  
   median, 1139  
   musculospiral, 1137  
   suprascapular, 1137  
   treatment of lesions  
     of, 1140

- Nerve:**  
 ulnar, 1139  
 tumors of, 979  
**Nervous deafness,** 1116  
 etiology of, 1116  
 symptoms of, 1117  
 treatment of, 1118  
 diseases, alterations in  
 breathing and  
 pulse, 955  
 in vision and hear-  
 ing, 955  
 mental phenomena in,  
 954  
 sensory motor phe-  
 nomena, 953  
 after-sensation in,  
 951  
 delayed conduc-  
 tion of sensory  
 impressions, 951  
 muscular sense,  
 951  
 sense of locality,  
 950  
 of pain, 950  
 of temperature,  
 950  
 tactile sensibility,  
 949  
 vasomotor and trophic  
 phenomena, 953  
 exhaustion, 1244  
 fever, 1  
 hypersecretion of hy-  
 drochloric acid, 376  
 system, diseases of, 928  
 bladder and rectum,  
 control in, 935  
 general symptomato-  
 logy of, 931  
 histology of, 928  
 phenomena of mo-  
 tion in, 931  
 athetosis, 1175  
 cataleptic rigid-  
 ity, 935  
 choreic move-  
 ments, 935  
 constant or co-or-  
 dinate spasm,  
 935  
 co-ordination,  
 933  
 epileptiform con-  
 vulsion, 934  
 fibrillary contrac-  
 tion, 935  
 motor irritation,  
 934  
 nystagmus, 935  
 rhythmical con-  
 tractions, 934  
 single contrac-  
 tions, 435  
 tremor or trem-  
 bling motions,  
 934  
**Neuralgia,** 972  
 diagnosis of, 976  
 etiology of, 972  
 prognosis of, 976
- Neuralgia:**  
 symptoms of, 973  
 treatment of, 976  
 varieties of, depending  
 upon nerves  
 involved, 973  
 brachial, 974  
 cervicobrachial,  
 974  
 cervico-occi-  
 pital, 974  
 of the feet, 975  
 of the fifth pair,  
 973  
 of the phrenic  
 nerve, 975  
 of the spinal  
 column,  
 975  
 dorso-inter-  
 costal, 975  
 lumbo-abdo-  
 minal, 975
- Neurasthenia,** 1244  
 diagnosis of, 1245  
 etiology of, 1244  
 morbid anatomy, 1244  
 prognosis of, 1245  
 symptoms of, 1244  
 treatment of, 1246
- Neuritis, endemic,** 970  
**Neuritis, localized,** 957  
 diagnosis of, 959  
 etiology, 957  
 morbid anatomy of, 957  
 prognosis of, 959  
 symptoms of, 958  
 treatment of, 961  
 multiple, 963  
 complications, 967  
 diagnosis of, 967  
 etiology of, 963  
 morbid anatomy of, 964  
 prognosis of, 968  
 symptoms of, 964  
 treatment of, 969
- Neuroses,** 1203  
**Newborn, acute degenera-**  
 tion of internal organs,  
 of, 924  
 hemorrhagic diseases of,  
 924  
 syphilitic diseases of, 924  
 Nicotin poisoning, 1406  
 Nictotherus faba, 1319  
 Ninth nerve, lesions of,  
 1121  
 Nitric acid poisoning, 1405  
 Nitrobenzol poisoning,  
 1406  
 Noma, 330  
 Nose, diseases of, 532  
 Noguchi's test for syphilis,  
 1265  
 Nutmeg liver, 484  
 Nystagmus, 1099
- O
- Obesity,** 905  
 symptoms of, 906  
 treatment of, 907
- Obstruction of bowel,** 434  
 Occult blood, 364  
 Occupation neuroses, 1230  
 Ocular palsy, 1103  
 treatment of, 1104  
 Olfactory nerve, 1087  
 Oliver's sign, 683  
 Onomatomania, 1212  
 Ophthalmic reaction of  
 tuberculosis, 285  
 Ophthalmoplegia, 1103  
 Opisthorchis felinus, 1328  
 pseudofelineus, 1329  
 noverca, 1329  
 Opium poisoning, 1406  
 Oppler-Boas bacillus, 395  
 Opsonin index and treat-  
 ment, 321  
 Optic atrophy, 1092  
 gray, 1092  
 nerve, affections, 1088  
 and tract, 1088  
 neuritis, 1090  
 etiology of, 1091  
 morbid anatomy of,  
 1090  
 symptoms of, 1092  
 Organic acids of stomach,  
 determination of, 358  
 Oriental plague, 109  
 Osteo-arthritis, 852  
 Osteomalacia, 915  
 diagnosis of, 916  
 etiology of, 915  
 morbid anatomy of,  
 916  
 pathogeny, 915  
 prognosis of, 917  
 symptoms of, 916  
 treatment of, 917  
 Oxalic acid poisoning, 1407  
 Oxyuris vermicularis, 1385  
 Ozena, 533
- P
- Pachymeningitis, cerebral,**  
 1144  
 external, 1144  
 hemorrhagic, 1145  
 internal, 1144  
 pseudomembranous,  
 1144  
 purulent, 1144  
 spinal, 993  
 cervical hypertrophic,  
 993  
 external, 993  
 hemorrhagic, 994  
 internal, 993  
 Painless whitlows, 1038  
 Palpable kidney, 822  
 Palsies, cerebral, of chil-  
 dren, 1170  
 Paludal fever, 53  
 Pancreas, cancer of, 516  
 diagnosis of, 517  
 morbid anatomy of,  
 516  
 symptoms of, 516  
 cysts of, 517  
 diseases of, 518

- Pancreatitis, acute, 515  
   diagnosis of, 516  
   etiology of, 515  
   morbid anatomy of, 515  
   prognosis of, 516  
   symptoms of, 515  
   treatment of, 516  
   chronic, 516  
 Pandemic chorea, 1215  
 Papillitis, 1090  
 Paradoxical contractions, 942  
 Paragonimus westermanni, 1326  
 Paragraphia, 1078  
 Paralysis general spinal anterior sub-acute of Duchenne, 1016  
   acute ascending, spinal, 1016  
     diagnosis of, 1017  
     etiology of, 1016  
     prognosis of, 1017  
     symptoms of, 1016  
     treatment of, 1017  
   agitans, 1185  
     diagnosis of, 1187  
     etiology of, 1185  
     morbid anatomy of, 1185  
     prognosis of, 1188  
     symptoms of, 1186  
     treatment of, 1188  
   combined, of the inter-arytenoid and thyro-arytenoid muscles, 553  
   of the abductors of the glottis, 552  
   of the cricothyroid muscle, 551  
   of the arytenoid muscles, 552  
   of the laryngeal muscles, 550  
   of the thyro-epiglottidean and aryteno-epiglottidean muscles, 551  
   of the thyro-arytenoid muscle, 552  
   of the tongue, the soft palate, and lips, 1047  
 Paramimia, 1078  
 Paramyoclonus, multiple, 1204  
 Paranephritis, 809  
   diagnosis of, 810  
   etiology of, 809  
   morbid anatomy of, 809  
   symptoms of, 809  
   treatment of, 810  
 Paraphasia, 1077  
 Paraplegia, ataxic, 1034  
   diagnosis of, 1035  
   etiology of, 1034  
   morbid anatomy of, 1034  
   prognosis of, 1036  
   symptoms of, 1035  
   treatment of, 1036  
   cerebralis spastica, 1176  
   spastic, 1176  
   Parasites, animal, 1303  
     of the liver, 510,  
   Parasitic stomatitis, 327  
   Parathyroid gland, 743  
   Paratyphlitis, 422  
   Paretic dementia, 1181  
   Parkinson's disease, 1185  
   Parotid bubo, 333  
   Parotitis, acute, 333  
     chronic, 333  
     epidemic, 161  
     secondary, 162  
   Paroxysmal headache, 1227  
   Parry's disease, 731  
   Pasteur's treatment of hydrophobia by attenuated virus, 191  
   Pathogenic fever, 1  
   Pediculus capitis, 1391  
     vestimenti, 1391  
     pubis, 1392  
   Peduncles, cerebellar, disease of, 1086  
   Pelioidosis, 918  
   Pellagra, 1296  
   Pentastomum tænioides, 1390  
     constrictum, 1391  
   Peptic ulcer, 383  
   Perez's sign, 686  
   Pericarditis, 602  
     acute, 602  
     diagnosis of, 607  
     etiology of, 602  
     morbid anatomy of, 602  
     physical signs, 604  
       Bamberger's sign, 606  
       Broadbent's sign, 606  
       Ewart's sign, 606  
       Friedreich's sign, 606  
       Pins' sign, 606  
       of chronic adhesive, 606  
     pleuropericardial friction sound, 608  
     Rotch's sign, 608  
     prognosis of, 608  
     symptoms of, 603  
     treatment of, 609  
   Pericardium, cancer of, 610  
     diseases of, 602  
   Perihepatitis, 500  
     diagnosis of, 501  
     etiology of, 500  
     morbid anatomy of, 500  
     prognosis of, 501  
     symptoms of, 500  
     treatment of, 501  
   Perioneuritic abscess, 809  
   Periodical oculomotor paralysis, 1105  
   Periosteal cachexia, 921  
   Peripheral nerves, affections of, 957  
     neuritis, 963  
   Perisplenitis, 748  
   Peritoneum, cancer of, 531  
     diseases of, 520  
     tuberculosis of, 307  
   Peritonitis, acute, 523  
     diagnosis of, 526  
     etiology of, 523  
     morbid anatomy of, 524  
     physical signs, 525  
     prognosis of, 527  
     symptoms of, 525  
     treatment of, 527  
     chronic, 528  
     circumscribed, 526  
     hysterical, 527  
     in typhoid fever, 34  
   Perityphlitis, 422  
   Pernicious anemia, 706  
     malarial fever, 67  
     algid type, 68  
     asthmatic type, 68  
     bilious type, 68  
     comatose type, 68  
     hematuric type, 69  
     temperature, 68  
     treatment of, 72  
   Pertussis, 157  
   Pestilential or putrid fever, 42  
   Petechial fever, 42, 168  
   Petit mal, 1220  
   Pharyngitis, acute catarrhal, 341  
     chronic catarrhal, 342  
     phlegmonous, 343  
     ulcerative, 342  
   Pharynx, circulatory derangement of, 340  
     diseases of, 335  
     hypertrophy of adenoid tissue of, 337  
     spasm of, 1123  
   Phlegmonous enteritis, 420  
   tonsillitis, 335  
   Phosphorus poisoning, 1407  
   Phrenic nerve, affections of, 1135  
   Phthisis, acute, 263  
     bronchopneumonic, 264  
     chronic ulcerative, 273  
     fibroid, 286  
     florid, 264  
     pneumonic form of, 265  
     pulmonalis, 271  
     physaloptera caucasica, 1381  
   Piles, 461  
   Pins' sign, 606  
   Pin worm, 1385  
   Pityriasis ethiops, 1259  
   Plague, bubonic, 109  
   Plasmodium malarie, 1317  
     vivax, 1317  
     præcox, 1317  
   Plathelminthes, 1319  
     cestodes, 1334  
     trematodes, 1319  
       blood fluke, 1332  
       liver fluke, 1320  
   Pleura, diseases of, 577  
     hydatid disease, 592  
     morbid growths of, 591



- Pleura:**  
 carcinoma, 591  
 chondroma and lipoma, 592  
 sarcoma, 591  
 tuberculosis of, 584  
**Pleurisy, 577**  
 acute, 577  
 diagnosis of, 584  
 etiology of, 577  
 morbid anatomy of, 579  
 paravertebral triangle of dullness in, 583  
 physical signs of, 581  
 Skoda's resonance, 582  
 prognosis of, 585  
 pus-formation in, 580  
 resolution in, 579  
 serous accumulation in, 580  
 symptoms of, 580  
 treatment of, 586  
 blood-letting, 586  
 tapping, 587  
 chronic, 587  
 treatment of, 588  
 diaphragmatic, 584  
 encysted or circumscribed, 584  
 exudative, 587  
 hemorrhagic, 584  
 interlobular, 584  
 latent, 587  
 plastic, 587  
 pulsating, 587  
 suppurative, 587  
 tubercular, 588  
**Pleurodynia, 975**  
**Plumbism, 1285**  
**Pneumogastric nerve, lesions of, 1122**  
 cardiac branches of the, 1127  
 diagnosis of, 1126  
 etiology of, 1123  
 gastric and esophageal branches of the, 1127  
 involving the nucleus and trunk, 1122  
 laryngeal branches of the, 1123  
 etiology of, 1123  
 symptoms of, 1124  
 pharyngeal branches of the, 1123  
 etiology of, 1123  
 symptoms of, 1123  
 pulmonary branches of the, 1128  
 treatment of, 1128  
**Pneumonia, aspiration or deglutition, 245**  
 broncho-, 245  
 diagnosis of, 248  
 etiology of, 245  
 morbid anatomy of, 247  
 physical signs, 248  
**Pneumonia:**  
 prognosis of, 249  
 symptoms of, 247  
 treatment of, 249  
 chronic interstitial, 250  
 diagnosis of, 252  
 etiology of, 250  
 morbid anatomy of, 251  
 physical signs of, 252  
 prognosis of, 252  
 symptoms of, 251  
 treatment of, 252  
 croupous, 227  
 bacillus of, 228  
 complications of, 238  
 diagnosis of, 239  
 duration of stages of, 231  
 etiology of, 228  
 in children, 240  
 incubation, 231  
 in the aged, 239  
 larval, 227  
 migratory, 227  
 morbid anatomy of, 229  
 stage of congestion, 230  
 of gray hepatization, 230  
 of red hepatization, 230  
 of yellow hepatization, 230  
 mortality in, 239  
 nature of, 229  
 physical signs of, 233  
 first stage, 233  
 second stage, 233  
 Skoda's resonance, 233  
 third stage, 234  
 prognosis of, 239  
 symptoms of, 231  
 delayed resolution, 237  
 herpes, 236  
 phlegmasia alba dolens, 236  
 prune-juice expectoration, 235  
 termination, 236  
 by abscess of lung, 237  
 by fibroid induration or cirrhosis, 237  
 by gangrene of lung, 237  
 by resolution, 236  
 by tubercular phthisis, 238  
 treatment, 240  
 serum, 244  
 embolic, 253  
 non-septic, 253  
 septic, 254  
 streptococcus, 236  
**Pneumonic phthisis, 264**  
**Pneumonitis, 227**  
**Pneumopericardium, 610**  
**Pneumothorax, 589**  
 diagnosis of, 590  
**Pneumothorax:**  
 etiology of, 589  
 physical signs of, 590  
 Hippocratic succussion, 590  
 metallic tinkling, 590  
 symptoms of, 589  
 treatment of, 591  
 Podagra, 858  
 Poisons, overdoses of, 1397  
**Polioencephalitis inferior chronica, 1047**  
**Poliomyelitis, acute, 1015**  
 in adults, 1015  
 diagnosis of, 1015  
 treatment of, 1015  
 in children, 1012  
 diagnosis of, 1014  
 etiology of, 1012  
 morbid anatomy of, 1012  
 prognosis of, 1014  
 symptoms of, 1013  
 treatment of, 1014  
 subacute and chronic, 1016  
 superior, 1104  
 Pollen catarrh, 536  
**Polyneuritis, 963**  
**Polysarcia adiposa, 905**  
**Popliteal nerve, lesion of, 1141**  
 external, 1141  
 internal, 1141  
**Porencephalia, 1171**  
**Postchorea paralysis and postparalytic chorea, 1215**  
**Posterior spinal sclerosis, 1020**  
**Posthemiplegic mobile spasm, 1215**  
**Postpharyngeal abscess, 343**  
**Pregnancy in typhoid, 27**  
**Pressure paralysis of the spinal cord, 1029**  
**Presystolic murmur, 625**  
**Primary lateral sclerosis, 1018**  
**Profata's law (syphilis), 209**  
**Professional spasm, 1230**  
**Progressive bulbar palsy, 1047**  
 diagnosis of, 1050  
 etiology of, 1048  
 morbid anatomy of, 1048  
 prognosis of, 1050  
 symptoms of, 1049  
 treatment of, 1050  
 facial hemiatrophy, 1254  
 general paralysis of the insane, 1181  
 muscular atrophy, type Duchenne-Aran, 1055  
 neural muscular atrophy, 1271  
 pernicious anemia, 706  
 spastic paraplegia, 1034  
 spinal muscular atrophy, 1055

## Progressive:

- diagnosis of, 1059
- etiology of, 1056
- morbid anatomy of, 1056
- prognosis of, 1060
- symptoms of, 1057
- treatment of, 1060

## Prosopalgia, 973

## Proteolysis, 360

## Protozoa, 1304

- parasitic infusoria, 1318

## Protracted simple contin-

ued fever, 319

etiology of, 319

symptoms of, 319

treatment of, 320

## Prune-juice expectoration, 235

## Pseudo-angina, 673

## Pseudohypertrophic em-

physema, 570

## Pseudohypertrophy of

muscles, 1269

## Pseudoleukemia, 721-726

## Pseudomembranous croup, 134

## Pseudomembranous enter-

itis, 419

## Pseudoparalytic myasthe-

nia, 1051

## Psorospermiasis, 1313

## Psychical epilepsy, 1220

## Ptomain poisoning, 1408

treatment of, 1409

## Ptosis, 1099

## Ptyalism, 332

## Puking fever, 206

## Pulex irritans, 1394

penetrans, 1395

## Pulmonary consumption, 271

hemorrhage, 277

insufficiency, 635

stenosis, 636

## Pulmonohepatic angle, 353

## Pulse, irregular, 665

anacrotic, 667

delirium cordis, 666

dicrotic, 666

embryocardial, 668

explanation of, 665

gallop rhythm, 668

peculiarities of, 665

varieties of, 665

## Pulsus bigeminus, 666

bisferiens, 667

paradoxus, 666

trigeminus, 666

## Purpura, 918

arthritic, 922

treatment of, 923

hemorrhagica, 923

treatment of, 923

Henoch's, 922

scorbutic, 919

simple arthritic, 922,

symptomatic, 919

## Putrid sore mouth, 327

## Pyemia, 183

arterial, 617

diagnosis of, 185

## Pyemia:

etiology of, 184

prognosis of, 186

symptoms of, 185

treatment of, 186

## Pyelonephritis, 804

## Pylephlebitis, 486

## Pylethrombosis, 485

## Pyopneumothorax, 589

## Pythogenic fever, 1

## Q

## Quigila, 1259

## Quincke's lumbar punc-

ture, 175

## Quinsy, 335

etiology of, 335

morbid anatomy of, 335

symptoms of, 335

treatment of, 336

## R

## Rabies, 187

## Rachitis, 909

## Railway brain, 1247

spine, 1247

## Rainey's tubules, 1317

## Raynaud's disease, 1252

## Reaction of degeneration, 946

partial, 1058

## Rectum, cancer of, 458

mechanism of control of, 935

neuralgia of, 456

## Red atrophy of the liver, 483

granular kidney, 786

## Reflexes, 1160

ankle, 938

cutaneous, 937

deep-seated, 942

patellar, 937

periosteal, 938

## segments of cord presid-

ing over, 941

tendon or deep, 942

their significance, 941

## Reichmann's disease, 377

## Relapsing fever, 47

diagnosis of, 50

etiology of, 47

incubation in, 48

morbid anatomy of, 48

prognosis of, 50

relapse in, 50

spleen in, 48

symptoms of, 48

treatment of, 51

## Relation of locality to

symptoms in cerebral

disease, 1061

## Remittent fever, 53, 66

chill in, 66

diagnosis of, 67

prodromal symptoms

of, 66

treatment of, 72

## Renal cirrhosis, 786

associated with hyper-

## Renal:

trophy of the left ven-

tricle without valv-

ular disease, 828

relation of, to heart dis-

ease, 828

dropsy, 755

infarct, 833

sclerosis, 786

## Ren mobilis, 822

## Rennet, action of, 361

## Respiration and degluti-

tion, muscles of, affec-

tions of, 1123-1126

## Respiratory system, dis-

eases of, 532

## Retina, affections of, 1088

functional disturbances

of, 1089

hemorrhage into, 1088

hyperesthesia of, 1090

organic disease of, 1088

## Retinitis, 1088

albuminuric, 1088

syphilitic, 1089

## Revaccination, 154

## Rheumatic fever, 218

complications of, 222

diagnosis of, 223

etiology of, 218

morbid anatomy of,

220

prognosis of, 223

symptoms of, 220

prodrome, 220

recurrence, 222

subcutaneous nodules,

222

treatment of, 224

joint, 852

myositis, 848

purpura, 919

## Rheumatism, 848

acute articular, 218, 848.

See Infectious Dis-

eases.

chronic articular, 851

morbid anatomy of,

851

symptoms of, 851

treatment of, 852

muscular, 848

diagnosis of, 850

etiology of, 848

symptoms of, 849

cephalodynia, 849

lumbago, 849

pleurodynia, 849

stiff neck of torticol-

lis, 849

treatment of, 850

simulating joint affec-

tions, 852

## Rheumatoid arthritis, 852

## Rhinitis, acute, 532

chronic, 533

atrophic, 534

hyperatrophic, 534

symptoms of, 534

treatment of, 534

syphilitic, 212

## Rhizopoda, 1306

- Rhythmical contractions, 934  
or hysterical chorea, 1215
- Rickets, 909  
complications, 913  
diagnosis of, 913  
etiology of, 909  
morbid anatomy of, 910  
shape of chest, 911  
prognosis of, 913  
symptoms of, 912  
treatment of, 913
- Riga's disease, 326
- Rock fever, 51
- Rocky Mountain fever, 41
- Romberg's symptoms, 1025
- Rovsing's sign of appendicitis, 429
- Rose cold, 536
- Rotch's sign, 604
- Rötheln, 118
- Round worm, 1355
- Rubella, 118  
diagnosis of, 120  
etiology of, 119  
incubation of, 119  
prognosis of, 120  
symptoms of, 119  
treatment of, 120
- Rubeola, 114-118  
notha, 118
- S
- Sacral plexus, lesion of, 1140  
treatment of, 1141
- Sahl's desmoid reaction, 361
- Salivary glands, diseases of, 332  
inflammation of, 333
- Salt solution, normal, composition of, 97
- Sand flea, 1395
- Sarcoma of the liver, 505  
diagnosis of, 507  
symptoms of, 506
- Sarcoptes scabiei, 1389
- Sarcosporidia, 1317
- Saturnism, 1285
- Scarlatina, 120  
simplex, 123 (see also Scarlet Fever)  
scarlatina anginosa, 123  
maligna, 125  
miliaris, 122
- Scarlet fever, 120  
Löffler's bacillus, 125  
complications and sequelæ, 125  
diagnosis of, 126  
etiology of, 120  
epidemics of, 125  
hemorrhagic, 125  
morbid anatomy of, 122  
prognosis of, 127  
symptoms of, 122
- Scarlet:  
raspberry tongue, 123  
strawberry tongue, 122  
treatment of, 128
- Scheele's sign, 686
- Schnell's sign, 682
- Schistosomum hæmato-bium, 1332
- Sciatica, 960  
diagnosis of, 961  
etiology of, 960  
symptoms of, 960  
treatment of, 961
- Sciatic nerve, lesions of, 1140
- Sclerema, 1252
- Scleroderma, 1257
- Scérose cérébrale, 1171  
en plaques, 1179
- Sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral, 1053  
diagnosis of, 1055  
etiology of, 1053  
morbid anatomy of, 1053  
symptoms of, 1054  
treatment of, 1055
- of brain and spinal cord, 1179  
diagnosis of, 1181  
etiology of, 1180  
morbid anatomy of, 1180  
symptoms of, 1180  
treatment, 1181
- of the coronary arteries, 658  
toxic, 1034
- Scotoma, 1098
- Scrivener's palsy, 1230
- Scrofula, 304
- Scurvy, 919  
diagnosis of, 921  
etiology of, 919  
morbid anatomy of, 920  
prognosis of, 921  
symptoms of, 920  
treatment of, 921
- infantile, 921  
deviation of vision, 1102
- Seat-worm, 1385
- Senile tremor, 1188
- Septicemia, 183  
and pyæmia, 183  
bacilli, 183  
diagnosis of, 185  
etiology, 184  
prognosis of, 186  
symptoms of, 185  
treatment of, 186
- Serratus palsy, 1136
- Serum treatment of typhoid fever, 38
- Seven-day fever, 47
- Seventh nerve, lesions of, 1107
- Shaking palsy, 1185
- Shiga's bacillus, 1308
- Ship fever, 42
- Sick headache, 1227
- Silver nitrate poisoning, 1409
- Simple angina, 341  
continued fever, 319  
or round ulcer, 383
- Sixth nerve, lesions of, affecting the eyeball, 1102
- Skodaic sign, 574
- Sleeping sickness, 1311
- Slow consumption, 273  
nervous fever, 1
- Slows, 206
- Smallpox, 143  
complications of, 148  
contagium, 145  
diagnosis of, 149  
forms of, 148  
confluent, 147  
dicrete, 147  
hemorrhagic, 148  
protozoon causing, 143  
morbid anatomy of, 146  
prognosis of, 149  
symptoms of, 146  
incubation, 146  
muscular pain, 146  
initial rashes, 146  
diffuse scarlatinous, 147  
measly, 147  
treatment of, 149  
special modes, 150
- Small sciatic nerve, lesions of, 1141
- Smoker's tongue, 332
- Solitary worm, 1349
- Soor, 327
- Sore throat, 341
- Spasm, constant or coordinate, 933  
of muscles of mastication, 1107  
tonic and clonic, 934
- Spasmodic tabes dorsalis, 1018
- Spasms of the muscles of respiration and deglutition, 1213
- Spastic diplegia, 1174  
paralysis of children, 1174  
paraplegia, 1176  
diagnosis of, 1176  
etiology, 1176  
morbid anatomy of, 1176  
symptoms of, 1176  
treatment of, 1177
- Spastic infantile hemiplegia, 1171
- Spastic rigidity of the newborn, 1174  
spinal paralysis, 1018  
diagnosis of, 1019  
etiology, 1018  
morbid anatomy conditions, 1018  
prognosis of, 1019  
symptoms of, 1018  
treatment of, 1020

- Speech areas in cortex of  
   brain, 1071  
   derangements of,  
   irritative origin  
   of, 1079  
   to test derange-  
   ments of, 1079
- Sphygmograms, 622, 625,  
 628, 632, 667, 668, 678
- Spina bifida, 1047
- Spinal accessory nerve, le-  
 sions of, 1129  
 symptoms of, 1130  
 spasm of, 1130  
 symptoms of, 1130
- cord, acute affections of,  
 1001  
 anemia, 1001  
 congestion, 1001  
 embolism, 1002  
 thrombosis, 1002  
 affections of, 981  
 the membranes of,  
 981  
 the substance of,  
 997  
 chronic affections of,  
 1018  
 compression of, 1039  
 diagnosis of, 1041  
 etiology of, 1039  
 morbid anatomy of,  
 1039  
 prognosis of, 1041  
 symptoms of, 1039  
 treatment of, 1441  
 hemorrhage into the  
 substance of, 1002  
 localization, 985  
 secondary systemic de-  
 generations of, 998  
   after cerebral  
   lesions, 998  
   after injuries of  
   the cauda  
   equina, 1001  
   after transverse  
   lesions of the  
   cord, 1000  
 hemorrhage into mem-  
 branes of, 996  
 extrameningeal, 996  
 intrameningeal, 996  
 medullary, 996  
 nerves and branches,  
 diseases of, 1135  
 paralysis of children, 1012
- Spinal meningitis, circum-  
 scribed serous, 1045
- Spirochæta pallida, 207
- Splanchnoptosis, 403
- Spleen, abscess of, 748  
 amyloid, 748  
 atrophy of, 749  
 diseases of, 748  
 echinococcus, 749  
 hemorrhagic infarct, 749  
 in anthrax, 198  
 in cirrhosis of the liver,  
 490  
 in leukemia, 715  
 in malaria, 62
- Spleen:  
   in typhoid fever, 9  
   in typhus fever, 43  
   neoplasm of, 749  
   rupture of, 748  
   wandering, 749
- Splenic apoplexy, 198  
 fever, 198
- Splenitis, 748
- Split spine, 1047
- Sporadic cerebrospinal  
 fever, 168  
 cholera, 412
- Sporozoa, 1313
- Spotted fever, 168
- St. Anthony's fire, 179
- Starch and sugar, diges-  
 tion of, 362
- Status epilepticus, 1219  
 lymphaticus, 725
- Stenocardia, 672
- Steppage gait, 965
- Stereognosis, 952
- Stigmata, hysterical, 1235
- Stokes-Adams syndrome,  
 671
- Stomacace, 327
- Stomach, action of, rennet  
 in, 361  
 cancer of, 393  
 bacillus of, 395  
 diagnosis of, 397  
 etiology of, 393  
 morbid anatomy of,  
 394  
 prognosis of, 398  
 secondary, 394  
 symptoms of, 394  
 treatment of, 399  
 chemical examination  
 of contents of, 355  
 determination of acid  
 salts in, 357  
 determination of  
 loosely combined  
 HCl in, 358  
 of organic acids in,  
 358  
 examination of prod-  
 ucts of albumin di-  
 gestion in, 360  
 reaction of, 356  
 determination of rate of  
 absorption from, 363  
 digestion of starch and  
 sugar in, 362  
 dilatation of the, 400  
 diagnosis of, 402  
 physical signs of, 401  
 morbid anatomy, 400  
 prognosis of, 402  
 symptoms of, 400  
 treatment of, 402  
 dietetic, 403  
 diseases of, 351  
 diagnostic technic for,  
 351  
 external examination of,  
 351  
 auscultation, 354  
 palpation, 352  
 percussion, 352
- Stomatitis, acute catarrhal,  
 325  
 aphthous, 326  
 mercurial, 328  
 mycotic, 327  
 syphilitic, 328  
 ulcerative, 327  
 treatment of different  
 forms of, 329  
 prophylaxis against, 329
- Strauss' method, 359
- Strongyloides intestinalis,  
 1358
- Strongylus apri, 1376
- Struma exophthalmica, 731  
 simple, 731
- Strychnin poisoning, 1409
- St. Vitus' dance, 1204-  
 1215
- Suckers, 1319
- Sudor anglicus, 316
- Suffocative catarrh, 245
- Sugar and starch, digestion  
 of, 362
- Suggestion and hypnosis,  
 1239
- Sulphureted hydrogen poi-  
 soning, 1410
- Sulphuric acid poisoning,  
 1405
- Sunstroke, 1299
- Suprarenal capsule, disease  
 of, 745
- Suprascapular nerve, le-  
 sions of, 1137
- Surgical kidney, 803
- Swamp fever, 53
- Sweating disease of Picar-  
 dy, 316
- Swelled head, 203
- Sydenham's chorea, 1204
- Syphilis, 206  
   acquired, 209  
   Colles' law in, 208  
   initial sore, 208  
   Justus' test in, 214  
   primary, 207  
   secondary, 207  
   tertiary, 207  
 congenital, 208  
   contagiousness of, 207  
   diagnosis of, 213  
   hereditary, 208  
   germ inheritance, 208  
   sperm inheritance, 208  
   transmission, 208  
   morbid anatomy of,  
   209  
   fibroid indura-  
   tion, 210  
   gumma, 210  
   mucous patch, 209  
   papular eruption,  
   210  
   pustular eruption,  
   210  
   syphilides, 209  
   macular, 210  
   squamous, 210  
   venereal wart, 209  
   Hutchinson's  
   teeth, 213

- Syphilis:  
 of brain and spinal cord, 1260  
 of the liver, 508  
 diagnosis of, 510  
 symptoms of, 509  
 treatment of, 510  
 of the nervous system, 1260  
 diagnosis of, 1264  
 etiology of, 1260  
 morbid anatomy of, 1260  
 prognosis of, 1266  
 symptoms of, 1262  
 treatment of, 1266
- Syphilitic ulcer of bowel, 421
- Syringomyelia, 1036  
 diagnosis of, 1038  
 etiology of, 1036  
 symptoms of, 1037  
 treatment of, 1038
- T
- Tabes dorsalis, 1020  
 course of, 1020  
 differential diagnosis of, 1020  
 etiology of, 1020  
 morbid anatomy of, 1022  
 prognosis of, 1020  
 symptoms of, 1024  
 arthropathies, 1028  
 cerebral, 1028  
 gait, 1025  
 girdle pains, 1026  
 inco-ordination, 1025  
 motor phenomena, 1025  
 reflex, 1027  
 Romberg's sign, 1025  
 sensory, 1026  
 vasomotor and trophic phenomena, 1028  
 visceral pain, 1026  
 treatment of, 1030  
 mesenteric, 307
- Tabetic crises, 1026
- Tables for conversion of metric into English system, 1411
- Tachycardia, 663  
 explanation of, 664  
 paroxysmal, 663  
 treatment of, 669
- Tachycardia strumosa, 731
- Tactile sensibility in nervous diseases, 949
- Tænia africana, 1352  
 confusa, 1352  
 echinococcus, 1350  
 elliptica, 1341  
 marginata, 1352  
 saginata, 1344  
 solium, 1347  
 various types, 1352
- Tape-worm, 1334, 1346, 1352  
 beef, 1344  
 dog, 1350  
 dwarf, 1341  
 fish, 1337  
 pork, 1347  
 treatment of, 1353
- Teichmann's hemin crystals, 825
- Temperature, effects of high, 1208
- Tendon reflexes, 941
- Tenth nerve, lesions of, 1122
- Test breakfast, 356  
 dinner, 356  
 for free HCl, 357  
 Boas' test, 357  
 for lactic acid, Uffelmann's, 359
- Tests of albumin, 754  
 contact method with nitric acid, or Heller's, 754  
 heat and acid, 754  
 picric acid, 754  
 for globulin, 755
- Tetanilla, 742
- Tetanoid pseudoparaplegia, 1176
- Tetanus, 193  
 bacillus of, 193  
 diagnosis of, 196  
 etiology of, 193  
 morbid anatomy of, 194  
 predisposing causes of, 194  
 prognosis of, 196  
 symptoms of, 195  
 treatment of, 196  
 varieties of, 194  
 idiopathic, 194  
 neonatorum, 194  
 traumatic, 194
- Tetany, 742
- The plague, 109  
 diagnosis, 112  
 etiology, 110  
 morbid anatomy, 110  
 symptoms, 111  
 treatment, 112  
 varieties, 110
- The pox, 206
- The rose, 179
- Theories of cardiac hypertrophy in renal disease, 828
- Thermic fever, 1299  
 treatment of, 1302
- Thick neck, 729
- Third nerve, lesions of, 1099
- Thomsen's disease, 1272
- Thornhead worms (see Acanthocephali)
- Thread worms, 1385
- Thrombosis and embolism, 485  
 of cerebral sinuses and veins, 1163-1169  
 primary, 1169  
 secondary, 1169
- Thrush, 327
- Thyroccele, 729
- Thyroid gland, enlargement of, 731  
 neoplasms of, 745  
 glands, diseases of, 729
- Tic, complex co-ordinated, 1212  
 douloureux, 973  
 simple, 1211  
 generalized, 1211  
 localized, 1211  
 with explosive utterances, 1212
- Ticks, 1389
- Tinnitus aurium, 1118  
 etiology of, 1119  
 treatment of, 1119
- Tobacco habit, 1284
- Tongue, inflammation of, 331  
 psoriasis of, 332
- Tonic contraction of extremities, 1174
- Tonsillar abscess, 335
- Tonsillitis, 335  
 acute parenchymatous, 335  
 chronic, 337  
 diagnosis of, 339  
 etiology of, 337  
 morbid anatomy of, 338  
 prognosis of, 339  
 symptoms of, 338  
 treatment of, 340  
 follicular, 337
- Tonsils, diseases of, 335
- Tooth rash, 325
- Tropical diagnosis of cerebral lesions, 1061
- Torticollis, or wry-neck, 1130  
 congenital, 1131  
 pathology of, 1132  
 rheumatic, 849  
 spasmodic, 1131  
 treatment of, 1133
- Trachea, diseases of, 553
- Tracheal tug in aneurysm, 683
- Tracheobronchitis, acute, 553
- Tracts within the brain, 1082
- Transverse myelitis, 1005
- Traube's double sound, 630  
 half-moon space, 353
- Traumatic hysteria, 1247  
 neuroses, 1247
- Trematodes, 1319
- Trembles, 206
- Tremor, hereditary, 1188  
 hysterical, 1188  
 other forms of, 1188  
 asthenic, 1188  
 senile, 1188  
 simple, 1188  
 toxic, 1188
- Trichiniasis, 1372
- Trichomonas vaginalis, 1309

- Trichomonas:**  
 intestinalis, 1309  
 evansi, 1312  
 brucei, 1312  
 gambiense, 1311
- Trichostrongylus instabilis**, 1376
- Trichiuris trichiura**, 1370
- Trichinella spiralis**, 1370
- Tricuspidincompetency**, 633  
 physical signs of, 634  
 jugular pulse, 634  
 stenosis, 635  
 physical signs of, 635
- Trifacial nerve**, lesions of, 1106  
 diagnosis of, 1107  
 symptoms of, 1106  
 paralysis of motor portion of the, 1106  
 of sensory portion of the, 1106  
 treatment of, 1107
- Trigeminus**, lesions of, 1106
- Trophic derangements** due to nervous diseases, 954
- Tube-casts**, 759  
 blood, 759  
 cylindroid, 761  
 epithelial, 759  
 granular, 760  
 hyaline, 760  
 mucous, 761  
 oily or fatty, 761  
 pus, 759  
 waxy, 760
- Tubercle**, 260  
 anatomy and history of, 260  
 calcareous infiltration of, 262  
 caseation of, 262  
 degeneration of, 262  
 fibroid change in, 262  
 histogenesis of, 261  
 retroactive inflammation caused by, 262  
 softening of, 262  
 solitary, 261
- Tubercular consumption**, 271  
 peritonitis, 307  
 ulcer of bowel, 420
- Tuberculin test** for tuberculosis, 284
- Tuberculin treatment**, 293
- Tuberculosis**, 255  
 bacillus of, 255  
 to stain, 256  
 etiology of, 256  
 age, 258  
 climate, 258  
 defective food, 257  
 Fleck's studies, 257  
 heredity, 257  
 locality, 258  
 race, 258  
 shape of chest, 259  
 traumatism, 259  
 acute, clinical varieties, 263
- Tuberculosis:**  
 general miliary or typhoid form, 266  
 miliary meningeal form, 268  
 diagnosis of, 270  
 etiology of, 268  
 morbid anatomy of, 268  
 prognosis of, 271  
 symptoms of, 269  
 treatment of, 271  
 miliary pulmonary form succeeding bronchitis, chronic tuberculosis, whooping-cough, or measles, 263  
 pneumonic phthisis, 263  
 chronic fibroid, 286  
 physical signs, 286  
 prognosis of, 287  
 symptoms of, 286  
 treatment (see of ulcerative)
- chronic ulcerative**, 273  
 diagnosis of, 284  
 morbid anatomy of, 273  
 physical signs, 277  
 prognosis of, 286  
 symptoms of, 276  
 treatment of, 287  
 climatic, 287  
 hygiene and dietetic, 289  
 medicinal, 291  
 special symptoms, 297  
 pneumotherapy, 297  
 prophylactic, 300  
 serum-, 293  
 of the heart and blood-vessels, 311  
 of the kidney, 308  
 miliary granulations in, 308  
 morbid anatomy of, 308  
 primary foci in, 308  
 symptoms of, 308  
 treatment of, 309  
 of the lymphatic glands, 304  
 diagnosis of, 305  
 etiology of, 304  
 prognosis of, 305  
 symptoms of, 304  
 tabes mesenterica, 304  
 treatment of, 305  
 of the mammary glands, 311  
 of the ovaries, Fallopian tubes, and uterus, 310  
 of the pelvis of the kidney, ureters, and bladder, 309  
 of the peritoneum, 307  
 of the pleura, 306
- Tuberculosis:**  
 of the serous membranes, 306  
 of the testes, prostate gland, and seminal vesicles, 310
- Tuberculous leptomeningitis**, 268  
 lymphadenitis, 304
- Tumors of the brain**, 1188
- Tumors of the spinal cord** and membrane, 1042  
 diagnosis of, 1044  
 prognosis of, 1045  
 symptoms of, 1043  
 treatment of, 1045  
 varieties of, 1042
- Turbellarians**, 1319
- Twelfth nerve**, lesions of, 1133
- Typhilitis**, 422
- Typhoid fever**, 1  
 abortive form of, 18  
 albuminuria in, 14  
 antiseptic treatment of, 36  
 atypical forms of, 17  
 bacteriology of, 2  
 bed-sores in, 35  
 blood changes in, 15  
 boils in, 20  
 bone lesions in, 20  
 Brand bath treatment of, 29  
 cardiac complications in, 20  
 chills in, 17  
 cholecystitis in, 21  
 circulatory system, 7  
 complications in, 18  
 constipation in, 33  
 contagiousness of, 3  
 cystitis in, 36  
 delirium in, 13  
 diagnosis, 22  
 diazo-reaction of urine in, 14  
 diet in, 28  
 disinfection of stools in, 39  
 Ehrlich's reaction in, 14  
 eliminative and antiseptic treatment of, 37  
 etiology, 1  
 expectant symptomatic treatment of, 32  
 hemorrhage in, 34  
 hemorrhagic form of, 18  
 herpes in, 8  
 in children, 8, 27  
 incubation of, 7  
 indications for alcohol in, 32  
 influence of age on, 4  
 influence of seasons on, 4

- Typhoid:**  
 management of convalescence in, 36  
 meteorism in, 12  
 methods of reducing temperature in, 31  
 milk leg in, 19  
 mode of conveyance of, 4  
 morbid anatomy of, 5  
 nervous or meningeal form of, 18  
 noma, 19  
 parotitis in, 19  
 perforation in, 13-34  
 peritonitis in, 34  
 Peyer's patches in, 5  
 predisposing causes of, 4  
 prodromal symptoms, 8  
 prophylaxis in, 39  
 pulmonary form, 20  
 relapses in, 21  
 renal form, 14  
 rose-colored spots in, 8  
 sequelæ of, 18  
 serum-therapy in, 38  
 skin rashes in, 8  
 splenic enlargement in, 6-9  
 temperature in, 9  
 thrombosis in, 19  
 tonsillar form of, 18  
 treatment of, 28  
   by cultures of serum, 38  
   by diet and rest, 28  
   expectant symptomatic, 32  
   of convalescence, 36  
   of special symptoms, 33  
 tubercular phthisis in, 20  
 tympanitic distention in, 34  
 typhoid spine in, 21  
 unusual form of onset, 17  
 urine in, 14  
 walking form of, 8  
 Widal reaction, 23
- Typhus abdominalis, 1**  
 exanthematicus, 42  
 fever, 42  
 etiology, 42  
 contagiousness, 43  
 diagnosis of, 45  
 eruption of, 43  
 incubation of, 43  
 morbid anatomy, 43  
 prognosis of, 46  
 symptoms of, 43  
 treatment of, 46  
 icterodes, 47, 76  
 tropicus, 76
- U
- Uffelmann's test for lactic acid, 359**
- Ulcer, gastric and duodenal, 383**  
 course and termination of, 387  
 diagnosis of, 388  
   from cancer, 389  
 etiology of, 383  
 morbid anatomy of, 384  
 prognosis of, 389  
 symptoms of, 385  
 hemorrhage, 386  
 treatment of, 390  
   operative, 393
- Ulceration of the bowel, 420**
- Ulcerative colitis, 409**
- Ulcerative endocarditis, 614**
- Ulcus ventriculi pepticum, 383**
- Ulnar nerve, lesions of, 1139**
- Uncinariasis, 1378**
- Uncinaria duodenalis, 1377**  
 americana, 1379
- Undulant fever, 51**
- Unilateral progressive facial atrophy, 1254**
- Uremia, 756**  
 symptoms of, 756  
 treatment of, 775
- Uric acid, thread test, 860**
- Uricacidemia, 874**
- Uricemia, 874**
- Urinary organs, diseases of, 751**
- V
- Vaccina, 151**
- Vaccine disease, 151**  
 disease, humanized lymph in, 152  
 operation in, 153  
 phenomena of, 153  
 rashes, 154
- Vaccinia, 151**  
 hemorrhagica, 154  
 nature of, 152
- Vaccinosyphilis, 155**
- Vagus nerve, lesions of, 1122**
- Valvular (chronic) defects, 618**  
 congenital, 620  
 morbid anatomy of, 619  
 relative frequency of, 637  
 disease, chronic, prognosis of, 639  
 treatment of, 640  
   of dropsy, 645  
   of dyspnea, 644  
   of irregularities of heart action and palpitations, 646  
 lesions, associated or combined, 638
- Valvulitis, 610**
- Varicella, 156**
- Variola, 143**  
 protozoon of, 145  
 Variolæ sine variolis, 148  
 Variolæ cytoryctes, 145
- Vasomotor and trophic derangements, 1251**
- Vermes, 1319**
- Vesical catarrh, 835**
- Vesicular emphysema, 570**
- Vesicular or herpetic stomatitis, 326**
- Visceroptosis, 403**  
 etiology of, 403  
 symptoms of, 404  
 treatment of, 405
- Visceral pains, 1026**
- Vision, modifications of, in nervous disease, 955**
- Vocal cords, paralysis of, 551**
- W
- Ward's parasite, 1329**
- Warty or verrucose endocarditis, 611**
- Wasserman's test for syphilis, 1264**
- Wasting palsy, 1055**
- Water cancer, 330**
- Water-itch, 1379**
- Water worm, 1346**
- Waxy kidney, 799**  
 liver, 488
- Weil's disease, 315**
- Wernicke's scheme, 1072**
- Whip worm, 1370**
- Whooping-cough, 157**  
 complications and sequelæ of, 159  
 diagnosis of, 159  
 morbid anatomy of, 158  
 prognosis of, 160  
 shape of chest in, 158  
 symptoms of, 158  
 treatment of, 160
- Widal reaction, 23**
- Winckel's disease, 924**
- Wool-sorter's disease, 198**
- Word-blindness, 1076**
- Word-deafness, 1076**
- Word-image, 1072**
- Worms, 1319**  
 bladder, 1346  
 cucumber, 1336  
 fiery-serpent, 1366  
 flat, 1319  
 guinea, 1366  
 hook, 1377  
 maw, 1381  
 measuring, 1346  
 pin, 1385  
 round, 1355  
 seat, 1385  
 solitary, 1349  
 thread, 1385  
 water, 1346  
 whip, 1370

Writer's cramp, 1230  
  etiology of, 1230  
  diagnosis of, 1232  
  symptoms, 1231  
  treatment of, 1232  
Wry-neck, 1131

## X

Xerostomia, 333

## Y

Yellow atrophy of the  
  heart, 656  
  of the liver, acute, 502  
fever, 76  
  albuminuria in, 81  
  bacillus icterodes of,  
    77  
  diagnosis of, 81

## Yellow:

  jaundice in, 80  
  morbid anatomy of, 78  
  prognosis of, 82  
  prophylaxis of, 83  
  slow pulse of, 81  
  symptoms of, 80  
  treatment of, 83  
    by vaccination, 84







**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

---

**UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY**

---

RC  
46  
T9  
1911

**BioMed**

PioMed

